

The background of the entire image is a photograph of the Terracotta Army in Xi'an, China. It shows several life-sized clay soldier figurines standing in rows. The lighting is dramatic, with a strong blue/cyan light from the left and a warmer orange/red light from the right, creating a high-contrast, atmospheric effect. The focus is sharp on the central figure in the foreground.

lonely planet

# China

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

[China Cover](#)

[How to Use This Guide](#)

[China Map](#)

[PLAN YOUR TRIP](#)

[ON THE ROAD](#)

[UNDERSTAND CHINA](#)

[SURVIVAL GUIDE](#)

[Behind the Scenes](#)

[Our Writers](#)



# Get a great iBook experience

## › How to navigate through your eBook

**Library** ☰ **Lonely Planet Southern Italy** ⌕ 🔍 🔖

AD 30, complete with a nymphaeum. You can still see the carved Roman landing stage towards the rear of the cave.

**Capri**

**Top Sights**

- Costa Azzurra B1
- Villa Iovis G1
- Villa San Michele di Axel Munthe C1

**Sights**

- 1 Arco Naturale F2

**Activities, Courses & Tours**

- 2 Banana Sport E1
- 3 Sercurmar E2

**Naples & Campania**  
Page 112

Back to page 103      115 of 606      83 pages left in this chapter

**Callouts:**

- Hit this button to reach the table of contents. You can navigate to book sections from here.
- Underlined text links to other destinations, pages, maps and websites.
- Touch the bottom of the page to access a slider that will take you quickly through the book.
- Use the bookmark to save pages for later. You can find these again on the contents page.
- Use the search button to find specific information.

## › Get the most from our maps



### Offline map

So you don't incur roaming charges this book is packed with great offline maps that you can pinch and zoom for greater detail.



### Google map

When you're on wifi or 3G use the Google Map links to get online maps and to find a route from your current location to a specific sight.

# Get the right Lonely Planet guide for your trip

## Mobile Apps

**Lonely Planet guides, enhanced with mobile smartness such as offline GPS tracking and audio**

- > City guides
- > Audio walking tours
- > Audio phrasebooks



**For more information**

[Download for Android](#)

[Available on the App Store](#)

## Ebooks

**Interactive and informative, experience Lonely Planet guides like never before**

- > City and country travel guides
- > Audio phrasebooks



**Available from your favorite retailer for your favorite eReader**

## Books

**The perfect guides for any type of trip**





## GETTING THE MOST OUT OF LONELY PLANET MAPS

E-reader devices vary in their ability to show our maps. To get the most out of the maps in this guide, use the zoom function on your device. Or, visit <http://media.lonelyplanet.com/ebookmaps> and grab a PDF download or print out all the maps in this guide.

# Plan Your Trip



[Welcome to China](#)

[Top Experiences](#)

[Need to Know](#)

[First Time](#)

[If You Like...](#)

[Month by Month](#)

[Itineraries](#)

[Regions at a Glance](#)

# welcome to China

---

*Antique yet up-to-the-minute, familiar yet unrecognisable, outwardly urban but quintessentially rural, conservative yet path-breaking, space-age but old-fashioned, China is a land of mesmerising contradictions.*



Watchtowers along the Great Wall near Beijing ([Click here](#))  
VERA BOGAERTS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## **Awe-Inspiring Antiquity**

China is modernising at a head-spinning pace, but slick skyscrapers, Lamborghini showrooms and Maglev trains are little more than dazzling baubles. Let's face it: the world's oldest continuous civilisation is bound to pull an artefact or two out of its hat. You won't find history at every turn – three decades of full-throttle development and socialist iconoclasm have taken their toll – but travel selectively in China and rich seams of antiquity pop into view. With tumble-down chunks of the Great Wall, mist-wreathed, temple-topped mountains, quaint villages, water towns and eye-catching ethnic borderlands, China is home to one of the world's oldest and most remarkable civilisations. You'll need a well-made pair of travelling shoes and a strong stomach for long-distance wayfaring: China's artefacts are strewn about, so put some serious mileage under your soles.

## **Stupendous Scenery**

China is vast. Off-the-scale massive. You simply have to get outside: island-hop in Hong Kong, gaze over the epic grasslands of Inner Mongolia or squint up at the mind-blowing peaks of the Himalayas. Expect to trek, cycle between fairy-tale karst pinnacles, or merely stand and ponder the desiccated enormity of the northwestern deserts or the preternatural mists of China's sacred mountains. Swoon before the rice terraces of the south, size up some awesome sand dunes in Gansu, trace the Great Wall as it meanders across mountain peaks, get lost in forests of bamboo, sail through dramatic river gorges or, when your energy fails you, flake out for a tan on a distant beach. China's sublime scenery is also richly flecked with seasonal shades, from the crimson leaves of autumn maples to the colourful azaleas of spring in Huangshan and the ice-encrusted roofs of mountaintop Buddhist temples. Your camera will be glued to your hand.

## **Cuisine**

China may be fixated with food but treat yourself by swapping your meagre local Chinatown menu for the lavish Middle Kingdom cookbook. Wolf down Peking duck, size up a sizzling lamb kebab in



Kaifeng or gobble down a bowl of Lanzhou noodles on the Silk Road. Spicy Hunan or Sichuan dishes really raise the temperature but don't forget about what's cooking along China's frontier lands – always an excellent excuse to get off the beaten path. Impress your friends as you *ganbei* (down-in-one) the local firewater, sip an ice-cold beer in a slick Beijing bar or survey the Shanghai skyline through a raised cocktail glass. Culinary exploration is possibly the most enticing aspect of Middle Kingdom travel: you'll return with stimulated taste buds and much cherished gastronomic memories.



Canals of Zhujiajiao ([Click here](#))  
DIANA MAYFIELD / GETTY IMAGES ©

# TOP experiences

---

## Forbidden City

**1** Not a city and no longer forbidden, Beijing's enormous palace ([Click here](#)) is the be-all-and-end-all of dynastic grandeur with its vast halls and splendid gates. No other place in China teems with so much history, legend and good old-fashioned imperial intrigue. You may get totally lost here but you'll always find something to write about on the first postcard you can lay your hands on. The complex also heads the list with one of China's most attractive admission prices and almost endless value-for-money sightseeing.



ROEVIN / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Great Wall

**2** Spotting it from space is both tough and pointless: the only place you can truly put the Great Wall ([Click here](#)) under your feet is in China. Select the Great Wall according to taste: perfectly chiselled, dilapidated, stripped of its bricks, overrun with saplings, coiling splendidly into the hills or returning to dust. The fortification is a fitting symbol of those perennial Chinese traits: diligence, mass manpower, ambitious vision and engineering skill (coupled with a distrust of the neighbours).



Part of the wall at Mutianyu, northeast of Beijing  
TIM MAKINS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Tiger Leaping Gorge

**3** Picture snowcapped mountains rising on either side of a gorge so deep that you can be 2km above the river rushing across the rocks far below. Then imagine winding up and down trails that pass through tiny farming villages, where you can rest while enjoying views so glorious they defy superlatives. Cutting through remote northwest Yunnan for 16 kilometres, Tiger Leaping Gorge ([Click here](#)) is a simply unmissable experience. Hikers returning from the gorge invariably give it glowing reviews.



YAN LIAO / ALAMY ©

## The Bund, Shanghai

**4** More than just a city, Shanghai is the country's neon-lit beacon of change, opportunity and sophistication. Its sights set squarely on the not-too-distant future, Shanghai offers a taste of all the superlatives China can dare to dream up, from the world's highest observation deck to its largest underground theatre. Whether you're just pulling in after an epic 40-hour train trip from Xinjiang or it's your first stop, you'll find plenty to indulge in here. Start with the Bund ([Click here](#)), Shanghai's iconic riverfront area where it all began.



View across to Pudong from the Bund  
DAN HERRICK / GETTY IMAGES ©



## Yangzi River Cruise

**5** Snow melting from the world's 'third pole' – the high-altitude Tibet–Qinghai plateau – is the source of China's mighty, life-giving Yangzi. The country's longest river, the Yangzi surges west–east across the nation before pouring into the Pacific Ocean. It reaches a crescendo with the Three Gorges, carved out throughout the millennia by the inexorable persistence of the powerful waters. The gorges are a magnificent spectacle and a Yangzi River cruise ([Click here](#)) is a rare chance to hang up your travelling hat, take a seat and leisurely watch the drama unfold.



Little Three Gorges, Hubei  
DAVID SOUTH / ALAMY ©

## Mt Kailash, Western Tibet

**6** Worshipped by more than a billion Buddhists and Hindus, Asia's most sacred mountain ([Click here](#)) rises from the Barkha plain like a giant four-sided 6714m-high *chörten* (stupa). Throw in stunning nearby Lake Manasarovar and a basin that forms the source of four of Asia's greatest rivers, and it's clear that this place is special. Travel here to one of the world's most beautiful and remote corners brings a bonus: the three-day pilgrim path around the mountain erases the sins of a lifetime.



HIROYUKI NAGAOKA / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Hiking Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces

**7** After a bumpy bus ride to northern Guangxi, you'll be dazzled by one of China's most archetypal and photographed landscapes: the splendidly named Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces ([Click here](#)). The region is a beguiling patchwork of minority villages, with layers of waterlogged terraces climbing the hillsides. You'll be enticed into a game of village-hopping. The most invigorating walk between Ping'an and Dazhai villages offers the most spine-tingling views. Visit after the summer rains when the fields are glistening with reflections.



KRZYSZTOF DYDYNKI / GETTY IMAGES ©

## China's Cuisine

**8** Say *zaijian* (goodbye) to that Chinatown schlock and *nihao* (hello) to a whole new world of food and flavour ([Click here](#)). You'll certainly find dim sum, noodles and dumplings aplenty, but there's also the liquid fire of a Chongqing hotpot, Tibetan cuisine, or the adventurous flavours of Kaifeng's night market. You'll see things you've never seen before, eat things you've never heard of and drink things that could lift a rocket into space. And that's just for starters.



Wonton soup and dumplings  
GREG ELMS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Diaolou in Kaiping

**9** If you only have time for one attraction in Guangdong, Kaiping's *diaolou* ([Click here](#)) should be it. Approximately 1800 outlandishly designed watchtowers and fortified residences scatter higgledy-piggledy in the farmland in Kaiping, a town not far from Guangzhou. These sturdy bastions built in the early 20th century may not be what you'd typically expect in the Middle Kingdom, but they inspire awe with their eccentric fusion of foreign and domestic architectural styles. Greek, Roman, Gothic, Byzantine and baroque – you name it, they've got it.



MICHAEL COYNE / GETTY IMAGES ©

## French Concession, Shanghai

**10** Once home to the bulk of Shanghai's adventurers, revolutionaries, gangsters, prostitutes and writers, though ironically many of them weren't French, the former concession (also called Frenchtown) is the most graceful part of Puxi. The Paris of the East turns on its European charms to maximum effect here, where leafy streets and 1920s villas meet art deco apartment blocks, elegant restaurants and chic bars. The French Concession ([Click here](#)) is Shanghai sunny side up, at its coolest, hippest and most alluring.



Xintiandi shopping precinct ([Click here](#))  
LONELY PLANET / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Huangshan & Hui Villages

**11** Shrouded in mist and light rain more than 200 days a year, and maddeningly crowded most of the time, Huangshan ([Click here](#)) has an appeal that attracts millions of annual visitors. Perhaps it's the barren landscape, or an otherworldly vibe on the mountain. Mist – a fickle mistress – rolls in and out at will; spindly bent pines stick out like lone pins across sheer craggy granite faces. Not far from the base are the perfectly preserved Hui villages including Xidi ([Click here](#)) and Hongcun ([Click here](#)). Unesco, Ang Lee and Zhang Yimou were captivated – you will be too.

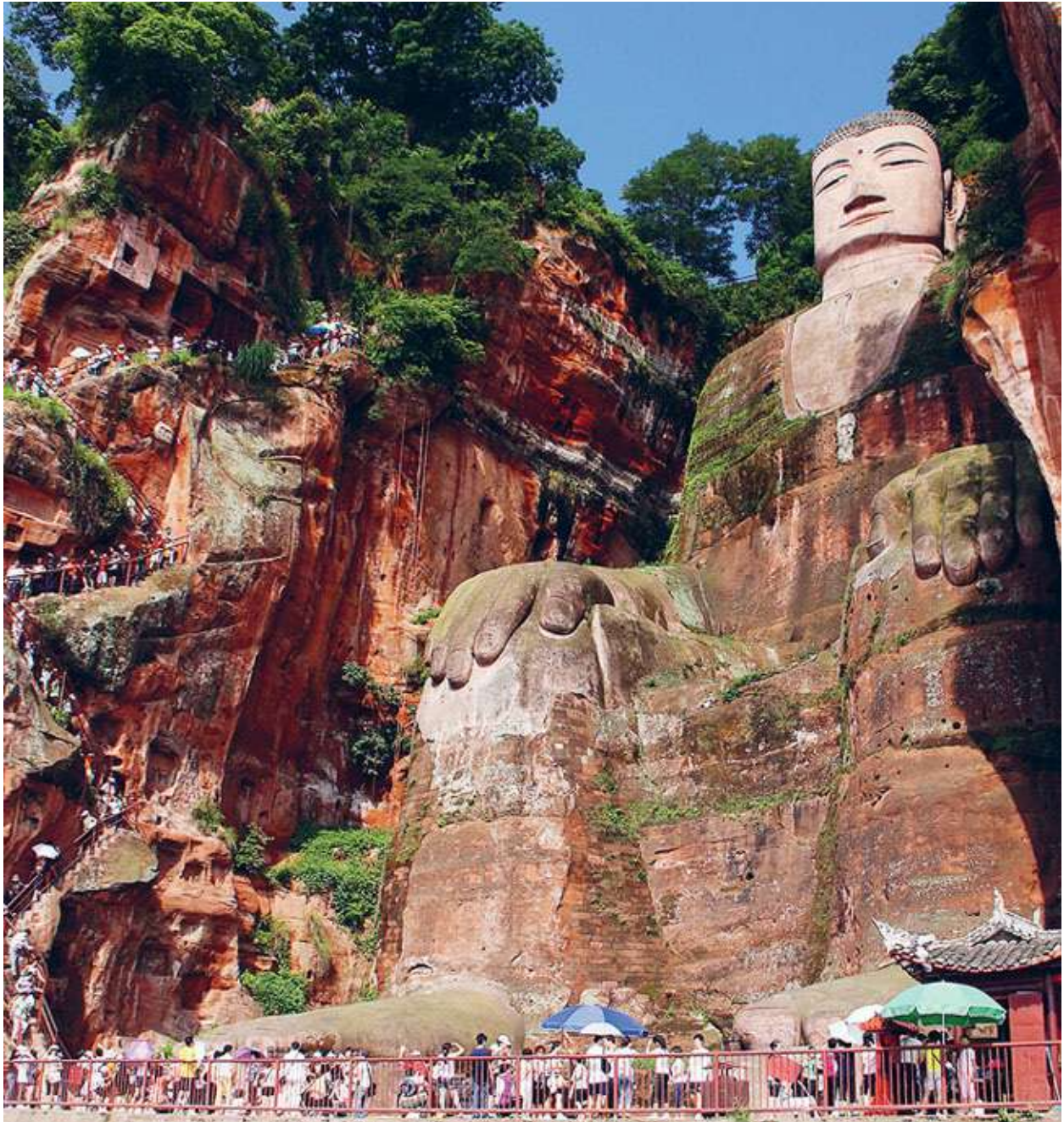




Mercy Light Temple, Huangshan  
SHAYNE HILL XTREME VISUALS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Grand Buddha, Leshan

**12** You can read all the stats you like about Leshan's Grand Buddha statue ([Click here](#)) – yes, its ears really are 7m long! – but until you descend the steps alongside the world's tallest Buddha statue and stand beside its feet, with its toenails at the same level as your eyes, you can't really comprehend just how massive it is. Still not impressed? Consider then that this wonderful, riverside stone statue was carved painstakingly into the cliff face above you more than 1200 years ago.



SIMON PODGORSEK / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Terracotta Warriors

**13** Standing silent guard over their emperor for more than 2000 years, the terracotta warriors ([Click here](#)) are one of the most extraordinary archaeological discoveries ever made. It's not just that there are thousands of the life-sized figures lined up in battle formation; it's the fact that no two of them are alike, with every single one of them wearing a distinct expression. This is an army, but it's one made up of individuals. Gazing at these superbly sculpted faces brings the past alive in a unique way.



SEAN CAFFREY / GETTY IMAGES ©

## The Li River & Cycling Yangshuo

**14** It's hard to exaggerate the beauty of Yangshuo ([Click here](#)) and the Li River ([Click here](#)) area, renowned for classic images of mossy-green jagged limestone peaks providing a backdrop for weeping willows leaning over bubbling streams, wallowing water buffaloes and farmers sowing rice paddies. Ride a bamboo raft along the river and you'll understand why this stunning rural landscape has inspired painters and poets for centuries. Another popular way to appreciate the scenery is a bike tour along the Yulong River ([Click here](#)).



Li River  
HAIBO BI / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Lhasa

**15** The holy city of Lhasa ([Click here](#)) is the perfect introduction to Tibet, and just arriving here can make the hairs stand up on the back of your neck. The spectacular prayer halls of the Potala Palace, the medieval Jokhang Temple and the monastic cities of Drepung and Sera are the big draws, but don't miss the less-visited chapels and pilgrim paths. The whitewashed alleys of the old town hold the real heart of the Tibetan quarter, and you could spend hours here wandering around backstreet handicraft workshops, hidden temples and local teahouses.



Potala Palace

KEVEN OSBORNE / FOX FOTOS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## The Silk Road

**16** There are other Silk Road cities in countries such as Uzbekistan and Turkmenistan, but it's in China where you get the feeling of stepping on the actual 'Silk Road', with its pervasive Muslim heritage and fragments from ancient Buddhist civilisations. Travel by bus and experience the route as ancient traders once did – mile by mile, town by town. Kashgar ([Click here](#)) is the ultimate Silk Road town and remains a unique melting pot of peoples, but Hotan ([Click here](#)) is equally special: a rough-and-tumble town still clinging to bygone days.



Tadjik camel driver, Xinjiang  
KEREN SU / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Pingyao

**17** Time-warped Pingyao ([Click here](#)) is a true gem: an intact, walled Chinese town with an unbroken sense of continuity to its Qing-dynasty heyday. Pingyao ticks most of your China boxes with a flourish: imposing city walls, atmospheric alleys, ancient shopfronts, traditional courtyard houses, some excellent hotels, hospitable locals and all in a compact area. You can travel the length and breadth of China and not find another town like it. In fact, when you discover Pingyao, you may never want to leave.

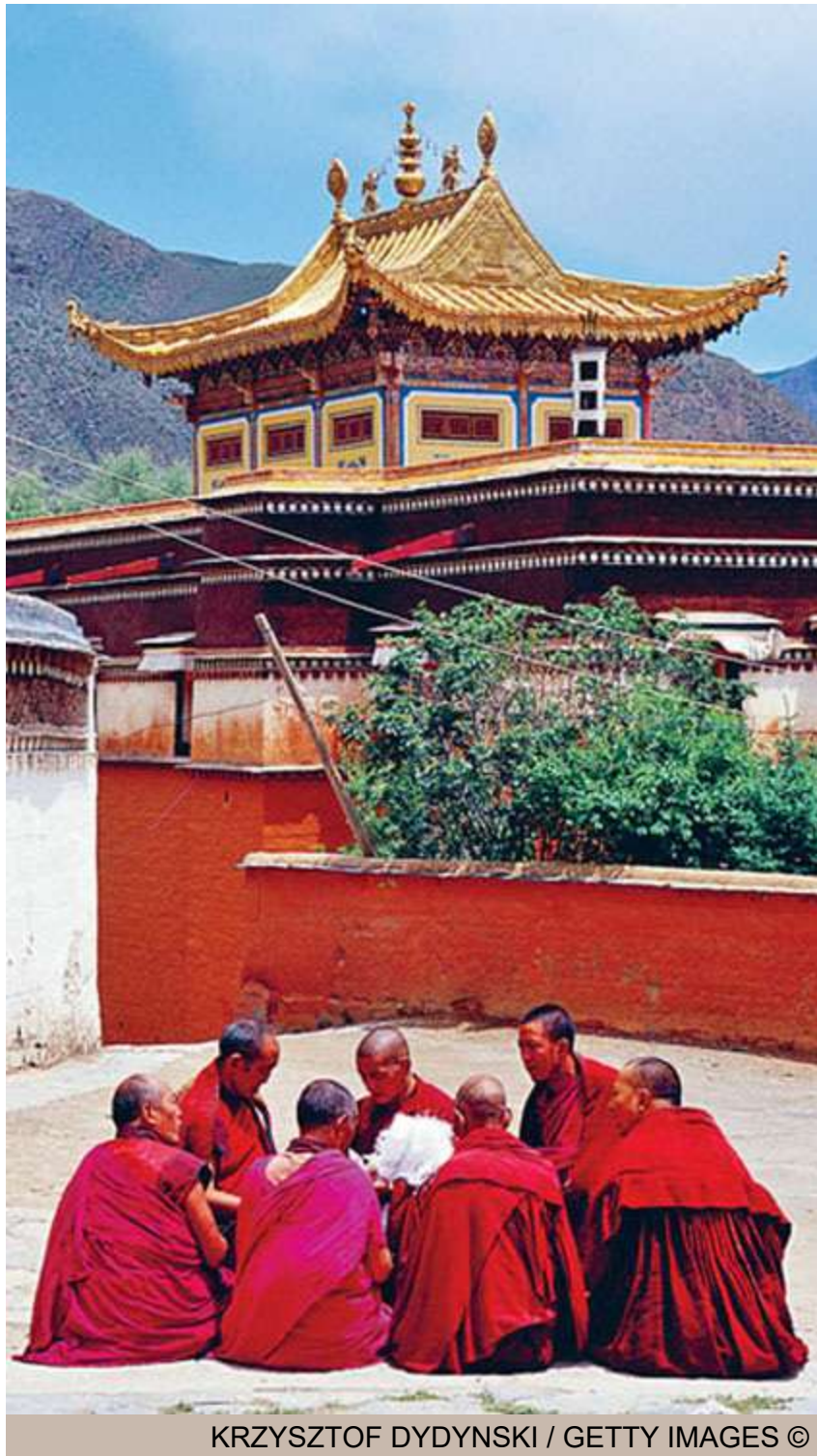


The intact Ming-dynasty city walls of Pingyao  
CHRISTIAN KOBER / GETTY IMAGES ©



## Labrang Monastery

**18** If you can't make it to Tibet, visit the Gansu province town of Xiahe, a more accessible part of the former Tibetan region of Amdo. One moment you are in Han China, the next you are virtually in Tibet. Here, Labrang Monastery ([Click here](#)) attracts legions of suntanned Tibetan pilgrims who perambulate single-mindedly around the huge monastery's prayer-wheel-lined *kora* (pilgrim path). As a strong source of spiritual power, the monastery casts its spell far and wide, and with great hiking opportunities plus an intriguing ethnic mix, it's a fascinating corner of China.



KRZYSZTOF DYDYNKI / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Beijing's Hutong

**19** To get under the skin of the capital, you need to get lost at least once in its enchanting, ancient alleyways ([Click here](#)). *Hutong* are Beijing's heart and soul; it's in these alleys that crisscross the centre of the city that you'll discover the capital's unique street life. Despite its march into the 21st century, Beijing's true charms – heavenly courtyard architecture, pinched lanes and a strong sense of community – are not high-rise. It's easy to find that out; just check into a courtyard hotel and true Beijing will be right on your doorstep.



BEST VIEW STOCK / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Yungang Caves

**20** Buddhist art taken to sublime heights, these 5th-century caves ([Click here](#)) house some of the most remarkable statues in all of China. Carved out of the harsh yellow earth of Shanxi and surrounded by superb frescoes, the statues inside the caves represent the highpoint of the Tuoba people's culture and draw on influences from as far away as Greece and Persia. Marvel at how the pigment on some of them has miraculously survived 1500-odd years, and respect how potent they remain to followers of Buddhism.



KRZYSZTOF DYDYNKI / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Taichi

**21** An ethereal form of moving meditation to some, an awesome arsenal of martial-arts techniques to others, taichi ([Click here](#)) is quintessentially Chinese. Daily practice could add a decade or more to your lifespan or give you some handy moves for getting on those crowded buses. And it's not all slow-going: Chen style has snappy elements of Shaolin boxing and it'll give you a leg-busting workout. Find a teacher – in Beijing, Shanghai, Yangshuo, Wudangshan – and put some magic and mystery into your China adventure.



HUW JONES / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Yuanyang Rice Terraces

**22** Hewn out of hills that stretch off into the far distance, the rice terraces of Yuanyang ([Click here](#)) are testimony to the wonderfully intimate relationship the local Hani people have with the sublime landscape they live in. Rising like giant steps, the intricate terraces are a stunning sight at any time of year. But when they are flooded in winter and the sun's rays are dancing off the water at sunrise or sunset, they're absolutely mesmerising. Just make sure you have enough space on your camera's memory card.



WILLIAM YU PHOTOGRAPHY / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Cruising up Victoria Harbour

**23** A buzzer sounds, you bolt for the gangplank. A whistle blows, your boat chugs forward. Beyond the waves, one of the world's most famous views unfolds – Hong Kong's skyscrapers in their steel and neon splendour, against a backdrop of mountains. You're on the Star Ferry ([Click here](#)), a legendary service that's been carrying passengers between Hong Kong Island and Kowloon Peninsula since the 19th century. Ten minutes later, a hemp rope is cast, then a bell rings, and you alight. At only HK\$2, this is possibly the world's best-value cruise.

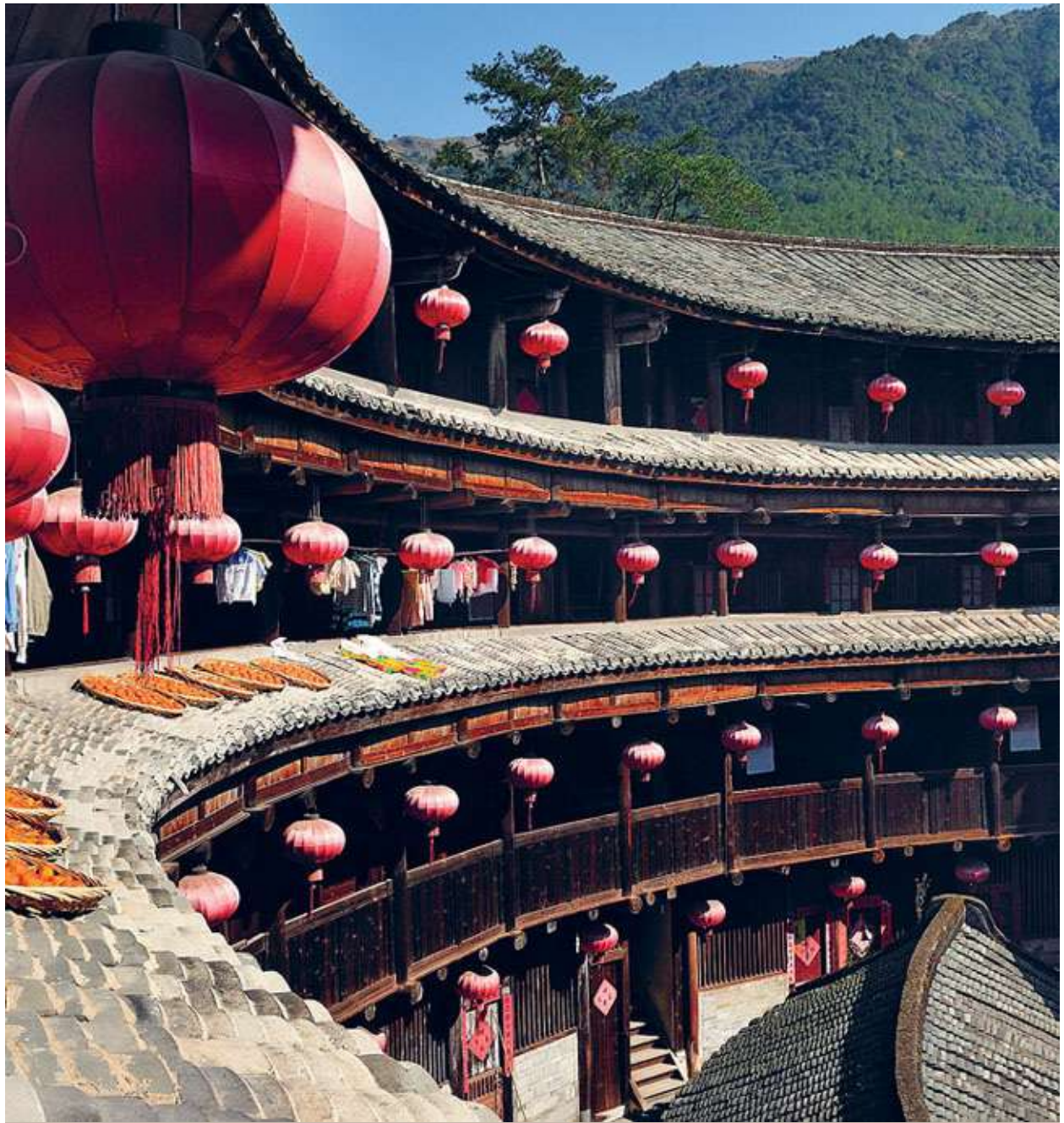


Star Ferry  
RINGO CHIU / ZUMA PRESS / CORBIS ©

## Tulou Roundhouses

**24** Rising up in colonies from the hilly borderlands of Fujian, Guangdong and Jiangxi, the stupendous *tulou* roundhouses house entire villages, even though occupant numbers are way down these days. The imposing and well-defended bastions of wood and earth – not all circular it must be added – were once mistaken by the CIA for missile silos. Do the right thing and spend the night in one: this is a vanishing way of life, the pastoral setting is quite superb and the architecture is unique.





HUANG XIN / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Hiking in Jiuzhaigou National Park

**25** Strolling the forested valleys of Jiuzhaigou National Park ([Click here](#)) – past bluer-than-blue lakes and small Tibetan villages, in the shadow of snow-brushed mountains – was always a highlight of any trip to Sichuan province, but an excellent new ecotourism scheme means travellers can now hike and even camp their way around this stunning part of southwest China. Guides speak English and all camping equipment is provided, so all you need to bring is your sense of adventure and a spare set of camera batteries.



Pearl Shoals Waterfall  
DIANA MAYFIELD / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Tai Shan

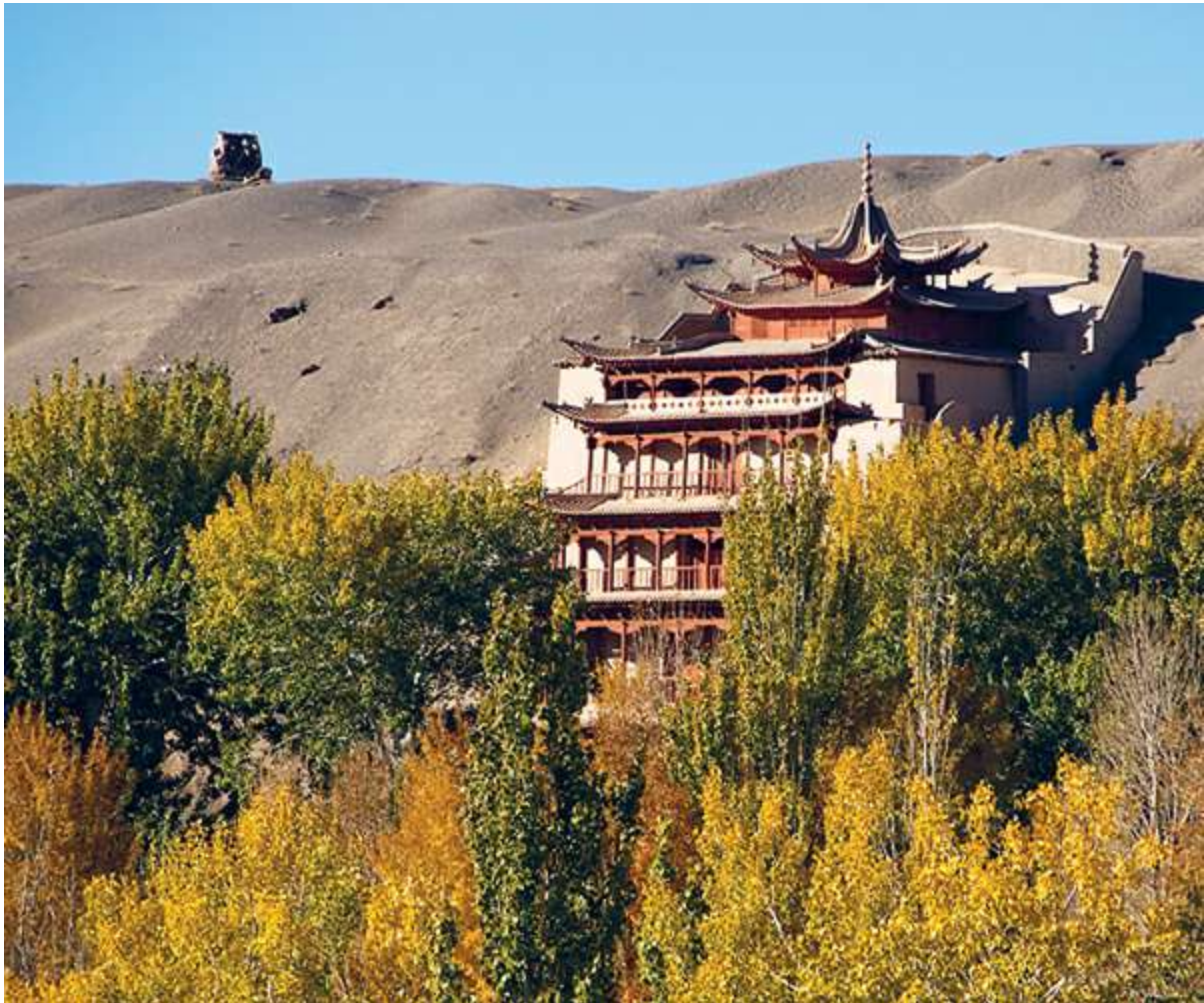
**26** A visit to China just isn't complete without scaling a sacred mountain or two, and antediluvian Tai Shan ([Click here](#)) in Shandong province is the granddaddy of them all. Climb the Taoist mountain and you'll live to 100, they say, even if you feel you are going to drop dead with exhaustion on the gruelling Path of 18 Bends (lightweights can hitch a ride on the cable car instead). The views are standout and with Tai Shan's mountainous aspect in the east, summit sunrises are the order of the day.



ZOU YANJU / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Dunhuang

**27** Where China starts transforming into a lunar desertscape in the far west, the handsome oasis town of Dunhuang ([Click here](#)) is a natural staging post for dusty Silk Road explorers. Mountainous sand dunes swell outside town while Great Wall fragments lie scoured by abrasive desert winds, but it is the magnificent caves at Mogao ([Click here](#)) that truly dazzle. Mogao is the cream of China's crop of Buddhist caves, and its statues are ineffably sublime and some of the nation's most priceless cultural treasures.



Mogao Caves  
MARTIN MOOS / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Kashgar's Sunday Market

**28** Avoid lunchtime, and arrive at the tail end of the Livestock Market ([Click here](#)), when the crowds are vanishing and the tour buses have rolled on. Wander around and peek over the shoulders of traders as they inspect sheep, goats, camels and other beasts for sale. Amid the dust, heaving crowds and animal odours, you'll find yourself on the very western edge of China, where the local culture takes on more pronounced Central Asian shades and Beijing is further away than Baghdad.



JANE SWEENEY / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Fenghuang

**29** Houses perched precariously on stilts, ancestral halls, crumbling temples and gate towers set amidst a warren of back alleys full of shops selling mysterious foods and medicines – it's enough on its own to make the ancient town of Fenghuang ([Click here](#)) an essential stop. Add in the seductive setting on either side of the Tuo River and the chance to stay at an inn right by the water, and you have one of the most evocative towns in China.



Hong Bridge and stilt houses  
DIANA MAYFIELD / GETTY IMAGES ©

## Cycling Hainan

**30** The same blue skies and balmy weather that make China's only tropical island ([Click here](#)) ideal for a do-nothing holiday, make it superb for exploring on a bicycle. Hit the east for picturesque rice-growing valleys, spectacular bays and some of Asia's finest beaches. And don't miss the sparsely populated central highlands, a densely forested region that's home to the island's original settlers, the Li and the Miao. Here, even the road more taken is still not taken by many at all.



Sanya Bay  
VINNYP IMAGES / ALAMY ©



# need to know

---

## CURRENCY

» » The yuan (¥)

## LANGUAGE

» » Mandarin  
» » Cantonese

## MONEY

» » ATMs in big cities and towns. Credit cards less widely used; always carry cash.

## VISAS

» » Needed for all visits to China except Hong Kong and Macau. Additional permit required for Tibet and a few other areas.

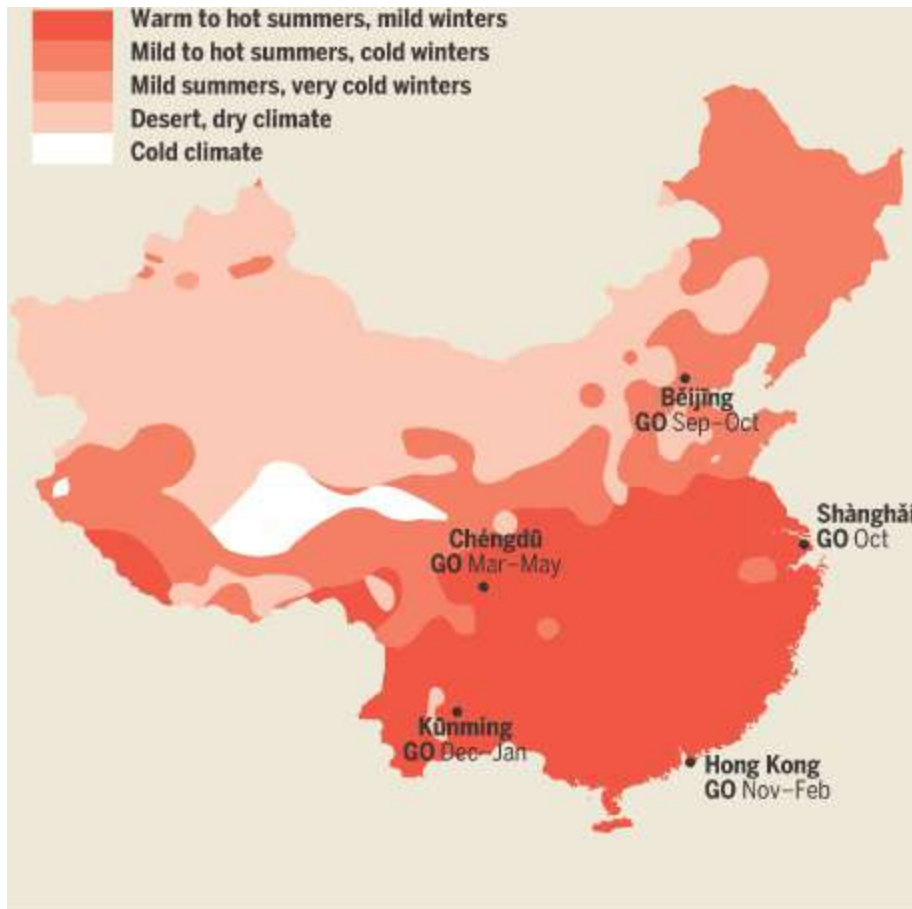
## MOBILE PHONES

» » Inexpensive pay-as-you-go SIM cards can be bought locally for most mobile phones. Buying a local mobile phone is also cheap.

## TRANSPORT

» » The train and bus network is extensive, domestic and air routes are plentiful. Cars can be hired in Beijing, Shanghai, Hong Kong and Macau, for local use.

## When to Go



## HIGH SEASON (MAY–AUG)

- » » Prepare for crowds at traveller hot spots and summer downpours.
- » » Accommodation prices peak during the first week of the May holiday period.

## SHOULDER (FEB–APR, SEP & OCT)

- » » Expect warmer days in spring, cooler days in autumn.
- » » In the north this is the optimum season, with fresh weather and clear skies.
- » » Accommodation prices peak during holidays in early October.

## LOW SEASON (NOV–FEB)

- » » Domestic tourism is at a low ebb, but things are busy and expensive for Chinese New Year.
- » » Weather is bitterly cold in the north and at altitude, and only warm in the far south.

# Your Daily Budget

## BUDGET LESS THAN ¥200

- » » Dorm Beds: ¥40–60
- » » Food markets, hole-in-the-wall restaurants and street food: ¥40
- » » Affordable internet, bike hire or other transport: ¥20
- » » Some free museums

## MIDRANGE ¥200–1000

- » » Double room in mid-range hotel: ¥200–600
- » » Lunch/dinner in local restaurant: ¥80–100
- » » Drinks in a bar: ¥60
- » » Riding by taxi: ¥60

## TOP END OVER ¥1000

- » » Double room in a top-end hotel: ¥600+
- » » Lunch and dinner in excellent restaurants: ¥300
- » » Shopping at top-end shops: ¥300
- » » Two tickets to Chinese opera: ¥300

## Websites

- » » **Lonely Planet** ([www.lonelyplanet.com/china](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/china)) Destination information, hotel bookings, traveller forum and more.
- » » **Ctrip** ([www.english.ctrip.com](http://www.english.ctrip.com)) Hotel booking, air ticketing.
- » » **Danwei** ([www.danwei.org](http://www.danwei.org)) Perspectives into the real China.
- » » **Chinasmack** ([www.chinasmack.com](http://www.chinasmack.com)) Human-interest stories and videos.
- » » **Tea Leaf Nation** ([www.tealeafnation.com](http://www.tealeafnation.com)) Chinese social media pickings.
- » » **Popupchinese** ([www.popupchinese.com](http://www.popupchinese.com)) Excellent podcasts (great to learn Chinese).

## Exchange Rates

---

<b>Australia</b>	A\$1	¥6.32
------------------	------	-------

---

<b>Canada</b>	C\$1	¥6.70
---------------	------	-------

---

<b>Euro zone</b>	€1	¥10.36
<b>Hong Kong</b>	HK\$1	¥0.98
<b>Japan</b>	¥100	¥6.50
<b>New Zealand</b>	NZ\$1	¥5.58
<b>UK</b>	UK£1	¥15.22
<b>USA</b>	US\$1	¥7.72

For current exchange rates see [www.xe.com](http://www.xe.com).

## Important Numbers

<b>Ambulance</b>	 120
<b>Fire</b>	 119
<b>Police</b>	 110
<b>Country code (China/Hong Kong/Macau)</b>	 86/852/853
<b>International access code</b>	 00
<b>Directory assistance</b>	 114

## Arriving in China

### » » Beijing Capital Airport

Airport Express – Every 15 minutes

Airport Bus – To central Beijing every 10 to 20 minutes

Taxi – ¥80–100

### » » Shanghai Pudong International Airport

Maglev – Every 20 minutes

Metro – Line 2 to Hongqiao Airport

Airport Bus – Every 15 to 25 minutes



Taxi – ¥160

### » » Hong Kong International Airport

Airport Express – Every 12 minutes

Taxi – About HK\$300 to Central

## Internet Access in China

Pack a wi-fi equipped mobile phone, tablet or laptop for use in wi-fi zones in hotels, restaurants, cafes and other hotspots in large cities and towns to access the internet. Be warned that internet cafes in a large number of towns and cities across China do not permit users to get online without Chinese ID. Plan ahead and don't be caught out: if you don't have a wi-fi equipped mobile phone, tablet or laptop, you may need to find a hotel or cafe with a terminal you can use, or a hotel room equipped with a computer. Wi-fi enabled hotels in this book carry the  wi-fi icon; hotels equipped with internet access display the  internet icon. Social networking sites such as Facebook and Twitter are banned and therefore inaccessible in China.

# first time

---

*Everyone needs a helping hand when they visit a country for the first time. There are phrases to learn, customs to get used to and etiquette to understand. The following section will help demystify China so your first trip goes as smoothly as your fifth.*

---

## Language

It is entirely possible to travel around China hardly hearing any English at all. Tourist industry employees across the land are more likely to speak English; in the big cities such as Shanghai, Beijing and of course Hong Kong, English is more widely spoken and understood, but generally only among educated Chinese. In smaller towns and the countryside, English is often of little or no use (the vast majority of Chinese do not speak the language at all). See the language section of this book ([Click here](#)) for some phrases you'll need.

## Booking Ahead

Reserving a room, even if only for the first night of your stay, is the best way to ensure a smooth start to your trip. These phrases should see you through a call if English isn't spoken.

---

**Hello Nihao**

---

**I would like to book a room** Wo xiang ding fangjian

---

**a single room** danren jian

---

**a double room** shuangren jian

---

**My name is...** Wo jiao...

---

**from... to... (date)** cong... dao...

---

**How much is it per night/person?** Mei tian/ren duoshao qian?

---

**Thank you** Xiexie ni

## What to Wear

You can pretty much wear casual clothes throughout your entire journey in China, unless dining in a smart restaurant in Shanghai, Beijing or Hong Kong, when you may need to dress less casually. In general, trousers (pants) and shirts or tees for guys; dresses, skirts or trousers for women will serve you well nationwide; shorts and short sleeves are generally fine in summer, but don long trousers and long sleeves in the evenings to keep mosquitoes at bay. A sunhat can be invaluable. A thin waterproof coat and sturdy shoes are a good idea for all-weather hiking and sightseeing. Winter is a different ball game up north and especially at altitude: you'll need several layers, thick shirts, jerseys and warm coats, jackets, gloves, socks and a hat.

## What to Pack

- » » Passport
- » » Credit card
- » » Phrasebook
- » » Money belt
- » » Travel plug
- » » Medical kit
- » » Insect repellent
- » » Mobile (cell) phone charger
- » » Clothes
- » » Earplugs
- » » Toiletries

- » » Sunscreen
- » » Sunhat and shades
- » » Tissues
- » » Waterproof clothing
- » » Padlock
- » » Torch
- » » Pocketknife
- » » Camera
- » » Pen
- » » Novel

## Checklist

- » » Check the validity of your passport
- » » Make any necessary bookings (for accommodation and travel)
- » » Work out your itinerary ([Click here](#))
- » » Secure your visa and additional permits well in advance
- » » Check what clothing you will need
- » » Check the airline baggage restrictions
- » » Inform your credit/debit card company
- » » Organise travel insurance ([Click here](#))
- » » Check if you can use your mobile/cellphone ([Click here](#))

## Etiquette

China is a pretty relaxed country regarding etiquette, but there are a few things you need to be aware of:

- » » **Greetings & Goodbyes** Shake hands, but never kiss someone's cheek. Say 'Nihao' as you greet someone and 'Zaijian' to say goodbye.
- » » **Asking for Help** To ask for directions start by saying 'Qing wen....' ('Can I ask...'); say 'Duibuqi...' (sorry) to apologise.
- » » **Religion** Dress sensitively when visiting Buddhist (especially in Tibet) and Taoist temples, churches and mosques.
- » » **Eating & Drinking** Help fill your neighbour's plate or bowl at the dinner table; toast the host and others at the table; at the start of dinner, wait till toasting starts before drinking from your glass; offer your cigarettes around if you smoke; always offer to buy drinks in a



bar but never fight over the drink/food tab if someone else wants to pay.

» » **Gestures** Don't use too many hand movements or excessive body language.

## Money

» » **Credit Cards** Credit/ debit cards are increasingly accepted in tourist towns/big cities, particularly Visa and MasterCard. Ask if bars and restaurants take cards before ordering.

» » **ATMs** 24-hour ATMs are available at Bank of China and ICBC branches.

» » **Changing Money** Change money at hotels, large Bank of China branches, some department stores and international airports. Some towns don't have money-change facilities: carry enough cash.

» » **Tipping** Don't tip taxi drivers or restaurants. Some restaurants add a service charge.

## Tours

The vast majority of sights in China can be visited independently. Tours (easy to arrange through your hotel or travel agent) may use mediocre English speakers and can be expensive and uninspiring so avoid taking them to places you can easily visit on your own (eg some sections of the Great Wall or the water towns around Shanghai). Note some tours are Chinese-language only, and watch out for predatory tours that drag you to shops or commercial diversions en route. Always consider hiring a taxi driver to ferry you around, as it may be a lot cheaper and offer more flexibility. Arranged tours can be helpful though, for difficult-to-reach sights, for overnight or multiday/week expeditions to more inaccessible regions, or for lassoing together a disparate array of sights. Recommended individual tour guides and outfits are listed throughout the destination chapters of this book.

## if you like...

---

### Imperial Architecture

If ancient monuments are your cup of *cha*, you can't go far wrong in China. Crumbling dynasties have scattered an imposing trail of antiquity across north China from vast imperial palaces to the noble ruins of the Great Wall and altars reserved for the emperor. Beijing should be your first port of call, before turning to the ancient dynastic cities of Kaifeng, Xi'an and Datong.

---

**Forbidden City** China's standout imperial residence in Beijing, home to two dynasties of emperors and their concubines ([Click here](#))

---

**Summer Palace** An epic demonstration of traditional Chinese aesthetics with all essential ingredients: hills, lakes, bridges, pavilions and temples ([Click here](#))

---

**Imperial Palace** Manchu splendour in Shenyang within the former Manchurian heartland of Liaoning province ([Click here](#))

---

**Xi'an** Shaanxi home of the Terracotta Warriors, an imposing Ming city wall and traces of the city's famous Tang apogee ([Click here](#))

---

**Chengde** Summer bolt hole of the Qing emperors, with palatial remains and a riveting brood of Tibetan-style temples ([Click here](#))

---

### The Great Wall

There's far more to the wall than Badaling's crowds and over-restored masonry; get off the beaten path and unearth the real brickwork. The wall most famously belongs to Beijing, but fragments create a ragged

band across a lot of north China, trailing from the North Korean border to the windswept deserts of China's wild west.

---

**Jiankou** Beijing's prime chunk of Great Wall ruin, a sublime portrait of disintegrating brickwork, overgrown with trees and set against a magnificent mountain panorama ([Click here](#))

---

**Zhuangdaokou** Little-visited length of wall near Beijing packing supreme views and hiking opportunities ([Click here](#))

---

**Huanghua Cheng** Excellent hiking opportunities along some of the most authentic sections of wall to be found around Beijing ([Click here](#))

---

**Jiayuguan Fort** Confront weathered slogans from Mao's Cultural Revolution scoured by the Gansu desert winds ([Click here](#))

---

**Simatai** Embark on the leg-busting four-hour trek between Jinshanling and Simatai outside Beijing and admire the awesome Great Wall panorama unfold before you ([Click here](#))

---

## Modern Architecture

Befitting its ascendancy on the world stage, China has reached for the stars with some dazzling and funky newfangled architecture. And you don't have to be a building buff to get a buzz from the sleek skyline of Shanghai or Hong Kong; all you need is a taste for the up-to-the-minute, the unexpected and high-altitude observation decks.

---

**Shanghai World Financial Center** Reigning supreme over Lujiazui, but soon to be eclipsed by the even more titanic Shanghai Tower ([Click here](#))

---

**CCTV Building** 'Big Underpants' to Beijing locals, a masterclass in engineering complexity to others ([Click here](#))

---

**National Centre for the Performing Arts** The opinion-dividing Beijing edifice drops jaws whatever your perspective or persuasion ([Click here](#))

---

**HSBC Building** Hong Kong's most elaborate and precision engineered building and a masterclass in feng shui design ([Click here](#))

---

**Shanghai Tower** Still forming in Shanghai's Lujiazui district, but already beginning to overshadow its soaring rivals ([Click here](#))



City Tower in Pingyao, China's best-preserved ancient walled town ([Click here](#))  
KRZYSZTOF DYDYNKI / GETTY IMAGES ©

---

## Ancient Settlements

China's traditional livelihoods can be glimpsed in its picturesque, ancient villages and towns. Here Ming- and Qing-dynasty architecture, pinched, narrow lanes and superlative feng shui combine to create a pastoral aesthetic complemented by a relaxed rural tempo. Some settlements are home to ethnic minorities and their distinctive building styles.

---

**Pingyao** China's best-looking, best-preserved walled town – by a long shot – warrants thorough exploration ([Click here](#))

---

**Hongcun** Within easy reach of Huangshan, this delightful Anhui village is a primer in the Huizhou style ([Click here](#))

---

**Wuyuan** Take time off to village-hop in the gorgeous Jiangxi countryside and dream of abandoning urban China for good ([Click here](#))

---

**Tulou earth buildings** Explore the fortress-like earthen 'roundhouses' of the Guangdong, Fujian and Jiangxi borderlands, distinctive for their imposing enormity ([Click here](#))

---

**Zhenyuan** Gorgeous Guizhou riverside town, a good-looking spectacle of cliff-side temples, history and charm ([Click here](#))

---

## Urban Extravaganzas

China's most dynamic and stylish environments belong to cities like Shanghai, where glittering skyscrapers overlook Maglev trains, and hard-working, hard-playing middle-class consumers shop in chic malls, drink at elegant cocktail bars and dine at fashionable restaurants. China's unfathomable reservoirs of energy and manpower are sucked up by its leading cities for transmutation into iconic skylines.

---

**Shanghai** The city that somehow single-handedly achieved the repositioning of China in the global psyche ([Click here](#))

---

**Hong Kong** Poised between China and the West, the ex-British colony continues to plough its own lucrative furrow on the south China coastline ([Click here](#))

---

**Beijing** Engaging blend of ancient capital and modern metropolis, China's leading city matches its newfound guise with a bevy of historical sights ([Click here](#))

---

---

**Hangzhou** One of China's most attractive cities with the sublime and romantic West Lake at its heart ([Click here](#))

---

## Boat Trips

China is cut by some dramatic and breathtaking rivers, including the mighty Yangzi River, which snakes across the width of the land from its high-altitude source as snowmelt on the Tibet-Qinghai plateau. Occasionally it's time to unplug from travel on the road and ease into a totally different experience of China's landscapes. Hopping on a riverboat to explore riverine panoramas slots you into a lower gear for enjoyment of the landscape drifting leisurely by.

---

**Three Gorges** China's most awesome river panorama ([Click here](#))

---

**Li River** The dreamlike karst landscapes of northeast Guangxi ([Click here](#))

---

**Star Ferry, Hong Kong** The short but iconic ferry hop across Victoria Harbour from Tsim Sha Tsui ([Click here](#))

---

**Evening river cruise, Chongqing** Before getting all misty through the Three Gorges, experience Chongqing's nocturnal, neon performance ([Click here](#))

---

**Qingyuan boat trip, Guangdong** Lazily float along the Bei River from Qingyuan past secluded Feilai Temple and Feixia monastery ([Click here](#))

---



Mt Everest from Everest Base Camp, Tibet ([Click here](#))  
SEAN CAFFREY / GETTY IMAGES ©

---

## Great Food

With its novel flavours, and unexpected aromas and tastes, China is a culinary travel adventure. Beijing, Shanghai and Hong Kong are stuffed with Chinese and international dining options, but it could be a meal in a village tucked away up a distant mountainside that is most memorable. Head west for zing, zest and spice, north for hearty and salty flavours, east for fresh and lightly flavoured seafood, and south for dim sum. Don't forget the border regions where the culinary recipes of neighbouring lands permeate into China.

---

**Peking duck** Once bitten, forever smitten, and only in Beijing ([Click here](#))

---

**Chongqing hotpot** Sweat like never before over China's most volcanic culinary creation ([Click here](#))

---

**Xiaolongbao** Shanghai's bite-sized snack packs a lot of flavour (but watch out for the super-heated meat juice) ([Click here](#))

---

**Street food** Everywhere you go, street snacks fill in between meals

---

and cost a pittance

---

## Museums

Urbanisation means that museum collections can be the clearest window onto China's past, and they are ubiquitous, covering everything from ethnic clothing to Beijing tap water or Buddhist artefacts. And with a growing number of museums waiving admission fees, museums are an affordable and comprehensive inroad into local culture and history.

---

**Palace Museum** The official and highly prosaic name for the Forbidden City, China's supreme link to its dynastic past ([Click here](#))

---

**Shanghai Museum** A dazzling collection of ceramics, paintings, calligraphy and much more at the heart of Shanghai ([Click here](#))

---

**Poly Art Museum** Bronzes and Bodhisattvas in Beijing ([Click here](#))

---

**Hong Kong Museum of History** Entertaining, resourceful and informative leafing through the pages of Hong Kong history ([Click here](#))

---

**Cultural Revolution Museum** One-of-a-kind in China and a testament to an almost forgotten decade ([Click here](#))

---

## Sacred China

Modern China's modern overlays – an amalgam of communism, Yves Saint Laurent and epic traffic jams – cannot hide the nation's compelling spiritual seam. From the esoteric mysteries of Tibetan Buddhism to the palpable magic of its holy Taoist mountains and the country's disparate collection of Christian churches, mosques and shrines, China's sacred realm is the point at which the supernatural and natural worlds converge.

---

**Puning Temple, Chengde** Be rendered speechless by China's



---

largest wooden statue, a towering effigy of the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy ([Click here](#))

---

**Labrang Monastery** Tap into the ineffable rhythms of south Gansu's place of pilgrimage for legions of Tibetans ([Click here](#))

---

**Gyantse Kumbum** An overwhelming sight and monumental experience, the nine-tiered *chörten* is Tibet's largest stupa ([Click here](#))

---

**Qinglong Dong** Climb through Taoist, Buddhist and Confucian realms in this cliffside labyrinth in riverside Zhenyuan ([Click here](#))

---

**Wudang Shan** Commune with the spirit of Taoist martial arts in the birthplace of taichi ([Click here](#))

---

## Hiking

Despite urban encroachment, China is one of the world's most geographically varied and largest nations, with stupendous hiking opportunities amid breathtaking scenery. With its combination of physical exertion, stunning backdrops, ethnic minority life and unexpected discoveries, trekking is perhaps the best way to experience China. As a rule, the further west and southwest you travel from Beijing, the more exhilarating the opportunities.

---

**Tiger Leaping Gorge** Yunnan's best-known and most enticing hike is not for the faint-hearted ([Click here](#))

---

**Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces** Work your way from Dazhai to Ping'an through some of China's most delicious scenery ([Click here](#))

---

**Wuyuan** Follow the old postal roads from village to village in the drop-dead gorgeous Jiangxi countryside ([Click here](#))

---

**Langmusi** Excellent trekking options radiate in most directions from the charming monastic town on the Gansu–Sichuan border ([Click here](#))

---

**Ganden to Samye** Go all out on this 80km, four- to five-day high-

---

altitude hike between Ganden and Samye monasteries in Tibet ([Click here](#))

---

## Ethnic Minorities

Han China hits the buffers around its far-reaching borderlands, where a colourful patchwork of ethnic minorities preserves distinct cultures, languages, architectural styles and livelihoods. From Yunnan, Guizhou and the southwest to Tibet, Xinjiang, Inner Mongolia and the hardy northeast, China is a vibrantly rich nation of contrasting peoples and traditions.

---

**Tibet** Explore this vast region in the west of China or jump aboard our itinerary ([Click here](#)) through the easier-to-access regions outside the Tibetan heartland ([Click here](#))

---

**Dehang** This Miao village in Hunan finds itself delightfully embedded in some breathtaking scenery ([Click here](#))

---

**Lijiang** Yunnan's famous home of the blue-clothed Naxi folk affords glorious views across to the stunning slopes of Yulong Xueshan ([Click here](#))

---

**Kashgar** Dusty Central Asian outpost and Uighur China's most famous town, on the far side of the Taklamakan Desert ([Click here](#))

---

## Stunning Scenery

You haven't really experienced China until you've had your socks blown off by one of its scenic marvels. China's man-made splendours have lent cities such as Shanghai head-turning cachet, but Mother Nature steals the show. Shoulder your backpack and make a break for the hills (but don't forget that extra pair of socks).

---

**Yangshuo** You've probably seen the karst topography before in picture-perfect photographs; now see the real thing ([Click here](#))

---

**Huangshan** When suffused in their spectral mists, China's Yellow mountains enter a different dimension of beauty ([Click here](#))

---

**Jiuzhaigou National Park** Turquoise lakes, waterfalls, snow-capped mountains and green forests: all this and more ([Click here](#))

---

**Chishui** Trek past waterfalls and through ancient forests dating to the Jurassic ([Click here](#))

---

**Everest Base Camp** Rise early for dramatic images of the mountain in the morning sun ([Click here](#))

---

**Yuanyang Rice Terraces** Be transfixed by the dazzling display of light and water ([Click here](#))

---

**If you like... communist collectives** Spend a day exploring Nanjiecun, China's last Maoist collective ([Click here](#))

**If you like... beer** Head to seaside Dalian for its International Beer Festival in July ([Click here](#))

# month by month

---

## Top Events

---

**Monlam Great Prayer Festival**, February or March

---

**Naadam**, July

---

**Beijing International Literary Festival**, March

---

**Spring Festival**, January, February or March

---

**Luoyang Peony Festival**, April

---

## January

North China is a deep freeze but the south is far less bitter; preparations for the Chinese New Year get under way well in advance of the festival, which arrives any time between late January and March.

---

### **SPRING FESTIVAL**

The Chinese New Year is family-focused, with dining on dumplings and gift-giving of *hongbao* (red envelopes stuffed with money). Most families feast together on New Year's Eve, then China goes on a big week-long holiday. Expect fireworks, parades, temple fairs and lots of colour.

---

### **HA'ERBIN ICE & SNOW FESTIVAL**

Heilongjiang's good-looking capital Ha'erbin is all aglow with rainbow lights refracted through fanciful buildings and statues carved from blocks of ice. It's outrageously cold, but that's the whole point. ([Click](#)

[here](#))

---

## YUANYANG RICE TERRACES

The watery winter is the optimum season for the rice terraces' spectacular combination of liquid and light. Don't forget your camera, or your sense of wonder. ([Click here](#))

---

## February

North China remains shockingly icy and dry but things are slowly warming up in Hong Kong and Macau. The Chinese New Year could well be firing on all cylinders but sort out your tickets well in advance.

---

## MONLAM GREAT PRAYER FESTIVAL

Held during two weeks from the third day of the Tibetan New Year and celebrated with spectacular processions across the Tibetan world, huge silk *thangka* (Tibetan sacred art) is unveiled and, on the last day, a statue of the Maitreya Buddha is conveyed around towns and monasteries; catch it in Xiahe. ([Click here](#))

---

## LANTERN FESTIVAL

Held 15 days after the spring festival, this celebration was traditionally a time when Chinese hung out highly decorated lanterns. Lantern-hung Pingyao in Shanxi ([Click here](#)) is an atmospheric place to soak up the festival (sometimes held in March).

---

## March

China comes back to life after a long winter, although high-altitude parts of China remain glacial. The mercury climbs in Hong Kong and abrasive dust storms billow into Beijing. Admission prices are still low-season.

---

---

## **BEIJING BOOK BASH**

Curl up with a good book at the Bookworm cafe ([Click here](#)) for Beijing's international literary festival, and lend an ear to lectures from international and domestic authors. Also earmark Shanghai for its international literary festival in the Bund-side Glamour Bar ([Click here](#)) or the Man Hong Kong International Literary Festival.

---

## **FIELDS OF YELLOW**

Delve into south Chinese countryside to be bowled over by a landscape saturated in bright yellow rapeseed. In some parts of China, such as lovely Wuyuan ([Click here](#)) in Jiangxi province, it's a real tourist draw.

---

## **April**

**Most of China is warm so it's a good time to be on the road, ahead of the May holiday period and before China's summer reaches its full power. The Chinese take several days off to pass the Qingming festival, a traditional date for honouring their ancestors.**

---

## **A GOOD SOAKING**

Flush away the dirt, demons and sorrows of the old year and bring in the fresh at the Dai New Year, with its vast amount of water at the water-splashing festival in Xishuangbanna ([Click here](#)). Taking an umbrella is pointless.

---

## **PAEON TO PEONIES**

Wangcheng Park in Luoyang ([Click here](#)) bursts into full-coloured bloom with its peony festival: pop a flower garland on your head and join in the floral fun (but don't forget your camera).

---

## **THIRD MOON FESTIVAL**

This Bai ethnic minority festival is an excellent reason to pitch up in the lovely north Yunnan town of Dali ([Click here](#)). It's a week of horse racing, singing and merrymaking at the end of April and the beginning of May.

---

## **FORMULA ONE**

Petrol heads and aficionados of speed, burnt rubber and hairpin bends flock to Shanghai for some serious motor racing at the track near Anting. Get your hotel room booked early: it's one of the most glamorous events on the Shanghai calendar.

---

## **May**

**China is in full bloom in mountain regions such as Sichuan's Wolong Nature Reserve. The first four days of May sees China on vacation for one of the three big holiday periods, kicking off with Labour Day (1 May).**

---

## **WALKING AROUND THE MOUNTAIN FESTIVAL**

On Paoma Shan, Kangding's famous festival celebrates the birthday of Sakyamuni, the historical Buddha, with a magnificent display of horse racing, wrestling and a street fair. ([Click here](#))

---

## **GREAT WALL MARATHON**

Experience the true meaning of pain (but get your Great Wall sightseeing done and dusted at the same time). Not for the infirm or unfit (or the cable car fraternity). See [www.great-wall-marathon.com](http://www.great-wall-marathon.com) for more details.

---

## **June**

**Most of China is hot and getting hotter. Once-frozen areas, such as Jilin's Heaven Lake, are accessible – and nature springs**

instantly to life. The great peak season is cranking up.

---

### **DRAGON BOAT FESTIVAL**

Find yourself the nearest large river and catch all the waterborne drama of dragon boat racers in this celebration of one of China's most famous poets. The Chinese traditionally eat *zongzi* (triangular glutinous rice dumplings wrapped in reed leaves).

---

### **SHANGRI-LA HORSE RACING FESTIVAL**

In mid- to late June, the north Yunnan town of Shangri-la ([Click here](#)) lets go of the reins with this celebration of horse racing, coupled with singing, dancing and merriment, on the southeastern fringes of Tibet.

---

## July

**Typhoons can wreak havoc with travel itineraries down south, lashing the Guangdong and Fujian coastlines. Plenty of rain sweeps across China: the big 'plum rains' give Shanghai a serious soaking and the grasslands of Inner Mongolia and Qinghai turn green.**

---

### **MONGOLIAN MERRYMAKING**

Mongolian wrestling, horse racing, archery and more during the week-long Naadam festival on the grasslands of Inner Mongolia at the end of July, when the grasslands are at their summer best.

---

### **DALIAN INTERNATIONAL BEER FESTIVAL**

Xinghai Square in the Liaoning port city is steeped in the aroma of hops and ale and strewn with beer tents in this 12-day celebration of more than 400 international and Chinese beers from a plethora of breweries. ([Click here](#))



---

## August

The temperature gauge of the ‘three ovens’ of the Yangzi region – Chongqing, Wuhan and Nanjing – gets set to blow. Rainstorms hit Beijing, which is usually way hotter than 40°C; so is Shanghai. So head uphill: Lushan, Moganshan, Huangshan or Guoliangcun.

---

### LITANG HORSE FESTIVAL

Occasionally cancelled in recent years (restrictions on travel may suddenly appear) and also shrunk from one week to one day, this festival in West Sichuan is a breathtaking display of Tibetan horsemanship, archery and more.

---

### QINGDAO INTERNATIONAL BEER FESTIVAL

Slake that chronic summer thirst with a round of beers and devour a plate of mussels in Shandong’s best-looking port town, home of the Tsingtao beer brand.

---

## September

Come to Beijing and stay put – September is part of the fleetingly lovely *tiangao qishuang* (‘the sky is high and the air is fresh’) autumnal season – it’s an event in itself.

---

### MID-AUTUMN FESTIVAL

Also called the moon festival, locals celebrate by devouring daintily prepared moon cakes – stuffed with bean paste, egg yolk, walnuts and more. With a full moon, it’s a romantic occasion for lovers and a special time for families. It’s on the 15th day of the eighth lunar month.

---

### INTERNATIONAL QIANTANG RIVER TIDE OBSERVING FESTIVAL

The most popular time to witness the surging river tides sweeping at up to 40km per hour along the Qiantang River in Yanguan is during

the mid-autumn festival, although you can catch the wall of water during the beginning and middle of every lunar month. ([Click here](#))

---

## **CONFUCIUS' BIRTHDAY**

Head to the Confucius Temple in Qufu ([Click here](#)) for the 28 September birthday celebrations of axiom-quipping philosopher, sage and patriarch Confucius.



Yuyuan Bazaar, Shanghai ([Click here](#)) during the lantern festival  
RICHARD I'ANSON / GETTY IMAGES ©



Musicians performing during the celebrations for Chinese New Year  
RICHARD I'ANSON / GETTY IMAGES ©

---

## October

The first week of October can be hellish if you're on the road: the National Day week-long holiday kicks off, so everywhere is swamped. Go mid-month instead, when everywhere is deserted.

---

✳️ **KURBAN BAIRAM (GU'ERBANG JIE)**

Catch the four-day festivities of the Muslim festival of sacrifice in communities across China; the festival is at its liveliest and most colourful in Kashgar.

---

### **HAIRY CRABS IN SHANGHAI**

Now's the time to sample delicious hairy crabs in Shanghai; they are at their best – male and female crabs eaten together with shots of lukewarm Shaoxing rice wine – between October and December.

---

### **MIAO NEW YEAR**

Load up with rice wine and get on down to Guizhou for the ethnic festivities in the very heart of the minority-rich southwest.

---

## **November**

**Most of China is getting pretty cold as tourist numbers drop and holidaygoers begin to flock south for sun and the last pockets of warmth.**

---

### **SURFING HAINAN**

Annual surfing competition in Shimei Bay and Sun and Moon Bay in Hainan ([Click here](#)) as the surfing season gets under way and hordes of Chinese flee the cold mainland for the warmer climes of the southern island.

# itineraries

---

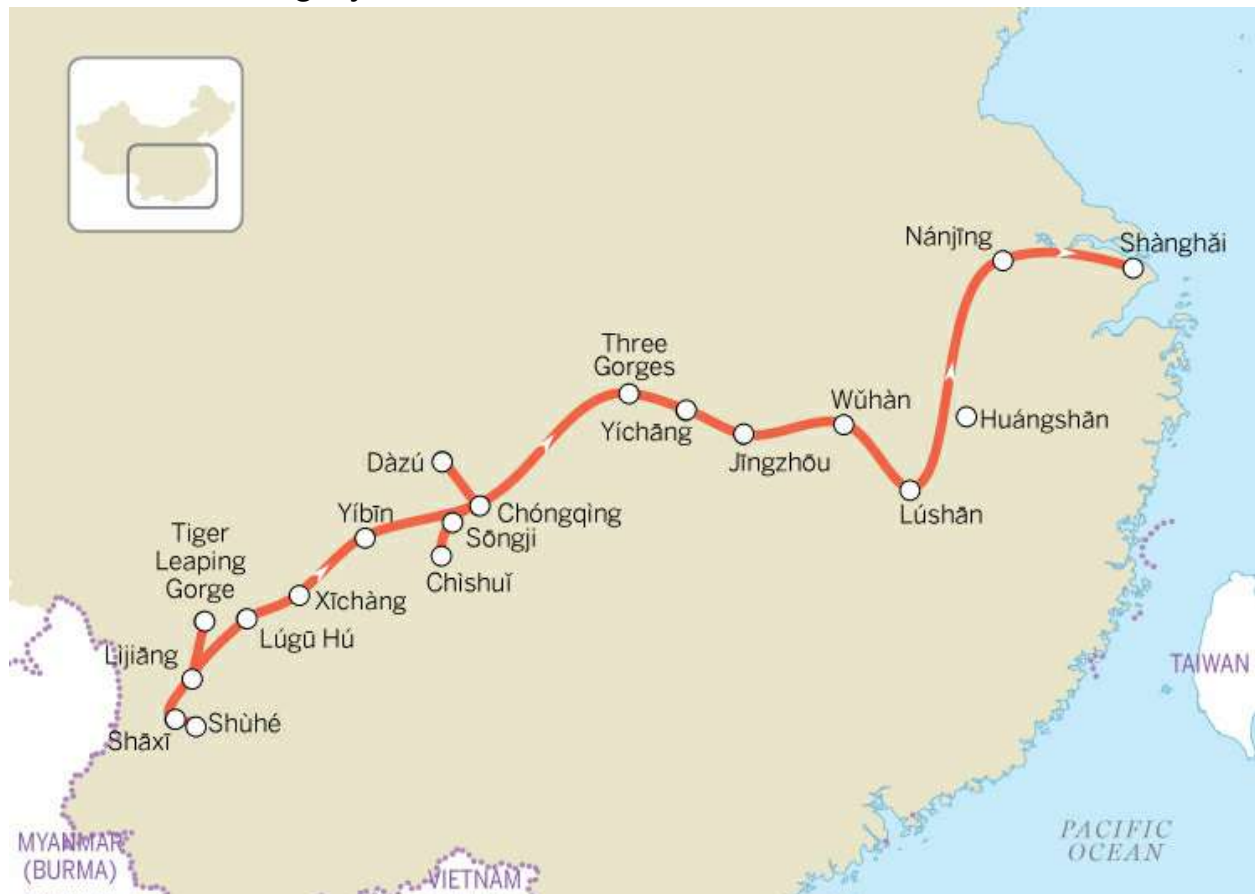
*Whether you have six days or 60, these itineraries provide a starting point for the trip of a lifetime. Want more inspiration? Head online to [lonelyplanet.com/thorntree](http://lonelyplanet.com/thorntree) to chat with other travellers.*



## Four Weeks Northern Tour

---

**Beijing** is fundamental to this tour, so you'll need at least five days to do the Forbidden City, size yourself up against the Great Wall, wander like royalty around the Summer Palace and lose your bearings amid the city's *hutong* (narrow alleyways). The splendour of the **Yungang Caves** outside Datong should put you in a Buddhist mood, heightened by a few nights on monastic **Wutai Shan**. We recommend a three-day stopover in **Pingyao**, an age-old walled town you imagined China *should* look like. The historic walled city of **Kaifeng** in Henan was the traditional home of China's small community of Chinese Jews and has a remarkable night market; move on to **Luoyang** and the Buddhist spectacle of the Longmen Caves and the Shaolin Temple, also within reach. Four days' sightseeing in **Xi'an** brings you face-to-face with the Army of Terracotta Warriors and gives you time for the Taoist mountain of **Hua Shan**. Xi'an traditionally marked the start of the Silk Road which you can follow through Gansu province all the way to the oasis-town of **Dunhuang**. From Dunhuang continue into **Xinjiang** for a taste of the mighty northwest.



## Three to Four Weeks Yangzi River Tour

---

After exploring north Yunnan's ancient Naxi town of **Lijiang**, pick up the trail of the Jinsha River (Gold Sand River, which spills down from Tibet and swells into the Yangzi River) on a breathtaking multiday hike along **Tiger Leaping Gorge**. Rest your worn-out legs before discovering the scattered villages and old towns around Lijiang, including **Shaxi** and **Shuhe** on the old Tea-Horse Road, and being blown away by the magnificent views of Yulong Xueshan. Also consider (warmer months only) a trip from Lijiang northeast towards west Sichuan and the gorgeous **Lugu Hu** on the provincial border, where you can spend several days unwinding by the lakeside. During the winter months this entire area is snowbound, so you may have to fly on from Lijiang. A morning bus from Lugu Hu runs to **Xichang** in Sichuan, from where you can reach **Yibin** and then **Chongqing**; alternatively, return to Lijiang to fly to Chongqing, home of the spicy and searing Chongqing hotpot and gateway to the Three Gorges. Detour by backtracking by bus to the stunning landscapes and natural beauty of **Chishui** on the Guizhou border to relax, unwind and explore the region before returning by bus to urban Chongqing. You'll need around three days in Chongqing for the sights in town and for a journey to the Buddhist Caves at **Dazu** and a trip to the Yangzi River village of **Songji** to keep a perspective on historic, rural China. Then hop on a cruise vessel or passenger boat (or even a bus followed by hydrofoil) to **Yichang** in Hubei through the magnificent **Three Gorges**. Journey from Yichang to the Yangzi River city of **Wuhan** via the walled town of **Jingzhou**, where it's worth spending the night. After two days in **Wuhan**, hop on a bus to **Lushan** in Jiangxi province, from where you can reach **Nanjing** or make your way to **Huangshan** in the Yangzi River province of Anhui. Alternatively, travel direct to Nanjing and thread your way to **Shanghai** via a delightful string of canal towns – Suzhou, Tongli, Luzhi and Zhujiajiao. Explore Shanghai and consider launching yourself into the East–South Rural Tour ([Click here](#)).





## Three Weeks Silk Road Tour

---

Overlapping with the end of the Northern Tour ([Click here](#)), this breathtaking journey takes you on an epic journey along the ancient Silk Road. From the southernmost extents of the Silk Road at **Xi'an**, discover one of imperial China's most iconic remains at the Army of Terracotta Warriors and, for a major workout, climb the precipitous Taoist mountain of **Hua Shan** – just don't look down. Back in Xi'an, explore the Muslim Quarter to feast on local Hui specialities – one of the culinary highpoints of China travel – and climb atop the imposing city walls. Hop aboard the train to **Lanzhou** but get off in southeast Gansu at **Tianshui** for the remarkable Buddhist grottoes at verdant Maiji Shan. From Lanzhou you have the option of disembarking temporarily from the Silk Road to ramble along the fringes of the Tibetan world (see the Tibet Fringes Tour, [Click here](#)) in the Buddhist monastic settlements of **Xiahe** and **Langmusi**. The Hexi Corridor draws you on to the ancient Great Wall outpost of **Jiayuguan**, via the

Silk Road stopover town of **Wuwei**, and the Great Buddha Temple with its outsize effigy of a reclining Sakyamuni in **Zhangye**. Stand on the wind-blasted ramparts of Jiayuguan Fort, the last major stronghold of imperial China, and tramp alongside westerly remnants of the Great Wall. The delightful oasis outpost of **Dunhuang** is one of China's tidiest and most pleasant towns, with the mighty sand dunes of the Singing Sands Mountains pushing up from the south, a scattered array of sights in the surrounding desert and some excellent food. The town is the hopping-off point for China's splendid hoard of Buddhist art, the spellbinding Mogao Caves. From Dunhuang you can access the mighty northwestern Uighur province of Xinjiang via the melon-town of **Hami** before continuing to **Turpan** and **Urumqi**; consider also spending the night in a yurt or camping on the shores of mountainous **Tian Chi**. Thread your way through a string of Silk Road towns by rail to the Central Asian outpost of **Kashgar**, or reach the distant Uighur town via the Marco Polo-journeyed Southern Silk Road along the cusp of the Taklamakan Desert. From Kashgar, hatch exciting plans to conquer the Karakoram Highway or, in the other direction, work out how to get back into China proper.



## Three to Four Weeks Coastal China

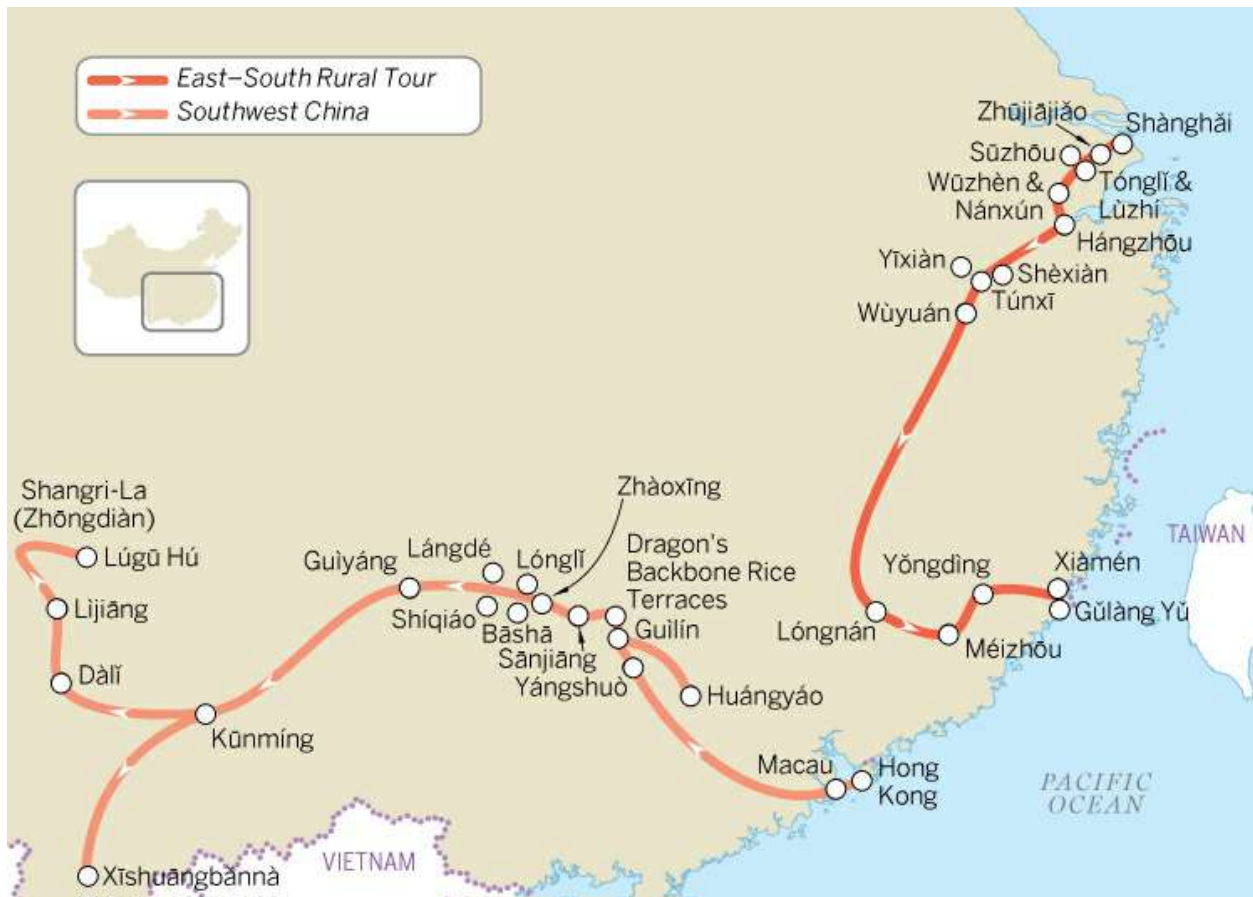
From **Beijing**, hop on the high-speed train to face-lifted **Tianjin** en route to the Ming dynasty garrison town of **Shanhaiguan** on the edge of Manchuria. Beyond the ancient port town of **Xingcheng** and on around the coast is urbane **Dalian**, where you can weigh up trips to the North Korean border at **Dandong**, or the ferry crossing to **Yantai** en route to a two-day sojourn around breezy **Qingdao**, the eye-catching Shandong port city. Cashing in on dashing **Shanghai** is crucial – allow four to five days to tick off surrounding sights, including a mid-week expedition over the waves to insular **Putuoshan** and a trip to the cultured former southern Song dynasty capital of **Hangzhou**. Work your way south around the coast to **Xiamen** (Amoy) to capture some of the magic of **Gulang Yu**, using the port town as a base to explore the Hakka roundhouses around **Yongding**. Conclude the tour

feasting on dim sum and getting in step with the rhythms of **Hong Kong** before surrendering to the Portuguese lilt of **Macau**, or go further along the coast to the sleepy port town of **Beihai** in Guangxi and bounce over the sea in a boat to the volcanic island of **Weizhou**.

## **Two Weeks Big Ticket Tour**

---

After four days satiating yourself on **Beijing's** mandatory highlights – the Forbidden City, Tian'anmen Square, the Summer Palace, the Great Wall and the city's charming *hutong* (alleyways) – hop on the overnight high-speed Z class sleeper across north China from Beijing West to **Xi'an** to inspect the famed Terracotta Warriors, walk around the city's formidable Ming dynasty walls and climb the granite peaks of Taoist **Hua Shan**. Climb aboard the late-afternoon high-speed Z class sleeper to pulsating **Shanghai**, which pulls into town before breakfast. After three days sightseeing, museum-going, shopping and sizing up the sizzling skyscrapers of Pudong, detour for a day to the former southern Song dynasty capital of **Hangzhou**, before flying from either Hangzhou or Shanghai to **Guilin** for some of China's most serene and ageless panoramas, the breathtaking karst landscapes of **Yangshuo**. For a fitting and natural conclusion to your journey, fly straight from Guilin to **Hong Kong**, or to Guangzhou or Shenzhen to make your way south across the border to the former British territory. Squeeze in a day for exploring **Macau** to add a Portuguese complexion to your voyage.



## Two Weeks East-South Rural Tour

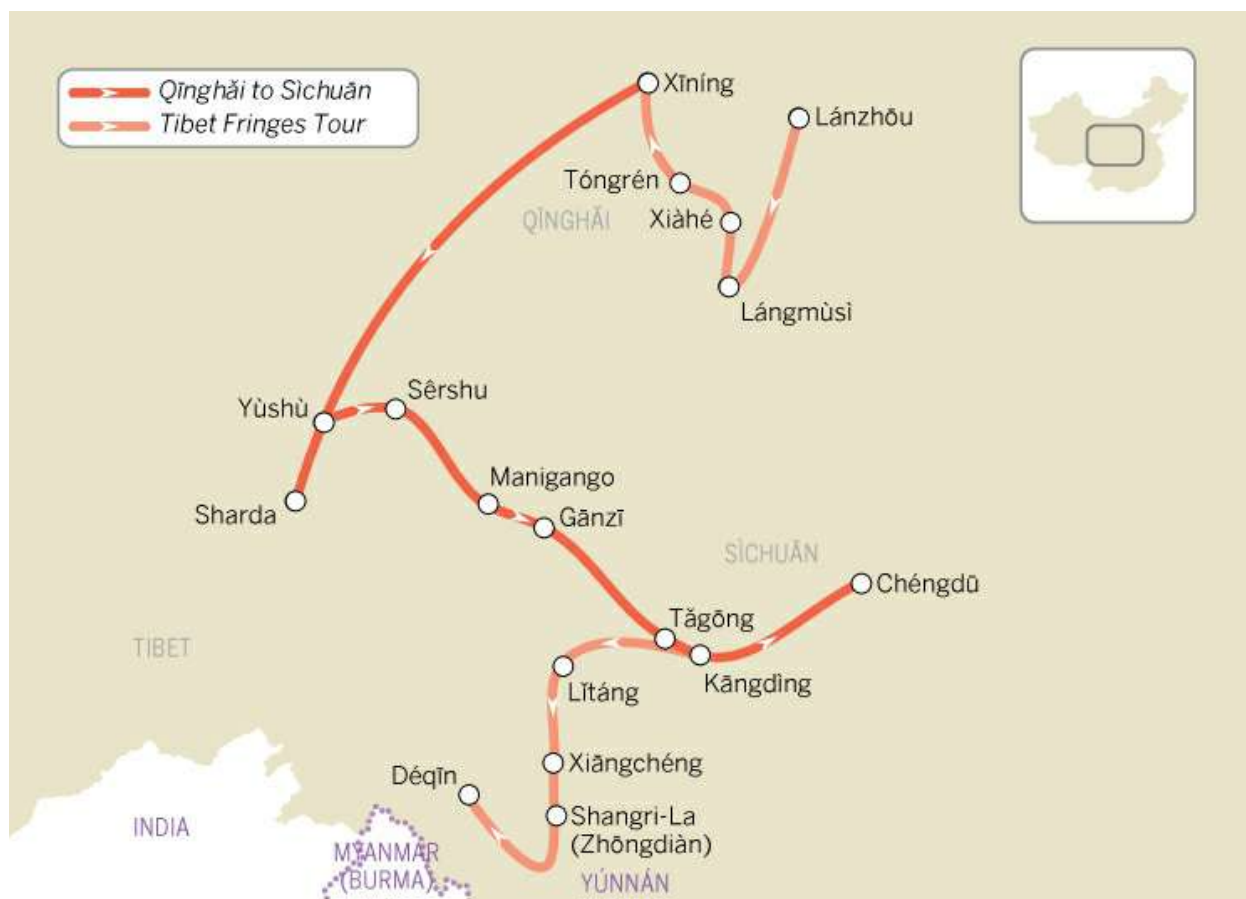
From **Shanghai**, head to **Zhujiajiao** in the municipality's rural west to catch its canal-side charms; if you find yourself in a canal-town mood, the water towns of Jiangsu and north Zhejiang – including **Tongli**, **Luzhi**, **Wuzhen** and **Nanxun** – are easy to get to. From either **Suzhou** or **Hangzhou**, take a bus to **Tunxi** in Anhui province to spend several days exploring the delightful clusters of ancient Huizhou villages of **Yixian** and **Shexian**. Bus it across the border to Jiangxi province for two or three days' fabulous hiking from village to village in the gorgeous rural landscape around **Wuyuan**. Work your way to the south of the province to enter Hakka country – a hilly region dotted with fortified villages around **Longnan** – and give yourself four days to ramble around the neighbouring roundhouse areas of **Meizhou** and **Yongding** in Guangdong and Fujian, where you can spend the night

in an earth building and fully tap into the local rhythms. Round off the tour at coastal **Xiamen**, spending a night or two amid the colonial remains of **Gulang Yu**.

## **Three Weeks Southwest China**

---

Four days' wining and dining in **Hong Kong** and **Macau** should whet your appetite, before you head inland to **Guilin** and three days' immersing yourself in the dreamy karst landscape of **Yangshuo**. Jump on a bus to delightful **Huangyao** before backtracking to Guilin and journeying north to the **Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces** and the wind-and-rain bridges and ethnic hues of **Sanjiang**. Creep over the border to explore the minority-rich villages of eastern Guizhou, including **Langde**, **Shiqiao**, **Longli**, **Basha** and **Zhaoxing**, before continuing to **Guiyang** and on by train to the capital of Yunnan province, **Kunming**. Spend a few days in Kunming before penetrating north Yunnan to explore **Dali**, **Lijiang** and **Shangri-la (Zhongdian)**. Consider exploring the border area with Sichuan at the remote **Lugu Hu**, from where you can head into Sichuan. In the other direction, the fertile **Xishuangbanna** region lies in the deep south of the province, where Yunnan's Southeast Asian complexion comes to the fore. You will be rewarded with a profusion of ethnic villages and countless hiking opportunities around China's southwest borders.



## 10 Days Qinghai to Sichuan

This colossal, rough-and-ready journey draws you through stunning landscapes from Xining to Chengdu. The scenery is sublime but do this trip only in summer (it's too cold even in spring), and take cash and lots of food with you (you won't be able to change money). Prepare also for bus breakdowns, irregular transport connections, simple accommodation and the effects of high altitude. The epic bus journey from **Xining** to **Sharda** in the former Tibetan kingdom of Nangchen, where monasteries and dramatic scenery await, takes 20 to 24 hours. From Nangchen you can continue to Sichuan via the Tibetan trading town of **Yushu** (Jyekundo). You can also fly direct (or take the bus) from Xining to Yushu to continue to Sichuan direct from there, but we don't recommend staying in Yushu as it is still recovering from the 2010 earthquake. Buses from Yushu run to **Sêrshu** (Shiqu

Xian) in northwest Sichuan, where bus connections run through some stunning scenery past **Manigango** (perhaps with a side trip to Dege), the Tibetan town of **Ganzi** and on past **Tagong** to **Kangding** (Dardo) along the Sichuan–Tibet Hwy, from where you can head west in the direction of Tibet or east to **Chengdu**.

## **Three to Four Weeks Tibet Fringes Tour**

---

Travel permits are required for the Tibet Autonomous Region (TAR), a land that is periodically inaccessible to foreigners and always an arduous undertaking. This tour immerses you in more accessible areas, rich with the colour of Tibet. Only undertake the tour in the warmer summer months; other times can be dangerous. From **Lanzhou** in Gansu province, go southwest to **Langmusi** and **Xiahe**, before passing awesome scenery by bus or taxi into **Qinghai** via the monastery town of **Tongren**. Pick up a *thangka* (Tibetan sacred art) and continue by bus to **Xining**, then fly to **Chengdu** in Sichuan and take the bus to **Kangding**, or fly to Kangding via Chengdu. The long, overland bus route from Xining to Kangding is also possible via Yushu in south Qinghai. While Yushu is still recovering from the 2010 earthquake, transport connections are possible. From Kangding you can journey by bus west to the stupendous scenery around **Litang**, with some breathtaking hiking opportunities, or travel south to **Xiangcheng** and on to **Shangri-la (Zhongdian)** and the gorgeous Tibetan region of north Yunnan. From Zhongdian take a bus to high-altitude **Deqin**, enveloped in gorgeous mountain scenery.





## 10 Days Northeast Tour

With **Beijing** as a start point, hop on a train to stylish **Dalian**, but plan to spend a few days exploring the historic walled coastal towns of **Shanhaiguan** and **Xingcheng** en route. You'll need several days for Dalian's sights, including the historic port of **Lushun** and an adorable coastline. Border watchers will be keen to get to **Dandong**, on the border with North Korea, for its peculiar frisson. Take a boat tour along the Yalu River, dine on North Korean food and visit Tiger Mountain Great Wall. Consider a trip by rail and bus to **Heaven Lake** in **Changbai Shan** (the largest nature reserve in China) via **Tonghua**. Straddling the North Korea border, the volcanic lake is a stunning sight (only accessible mid-June to September). Alternatively, take the train to **Shenyang** and visit its Qing dynasty Imperial Palace and the tomb of Huang Taiji, founder of the Qing dynasty. Hop on a bus or a

train to **Ha'erbin** to Daoliqū district and wonder at the city's Russian and Jewish ancestry. If you've really picked up momentum and can't stop, make a full meal by journeying to China's 'North Pole Village' to try to catch the *aurora borealis* in **Mohe**.

## **One Week Beijing to Mongolia**

---

After exhausting the superb sightseeing, and wining and dining choices, in **Beijing**, jump aboard a train to **Hohhot** in Inner Mongolia where a late-July arrival should coincide with the Naadam festivities at Gegentalā to the north, when the grasslands are turning green. Explore Hohhot's lamaseries and temples and make a trip to the grasslands outside town for a taste of the epic Inner Mongolian prairie. From Hohhot you can either take the train direct to **Ulaan-baatar** in Mongolia; or an alternative route to Mongolia is to first journey by train from Hohhot to **Shangdu** – vanished site of Kublai Khan's celebrated palace at Xanadu – and then on to **Haila'er** in the far north of Inner Mongolia, towards the border with Mongolia and Russia. The grasslands outside Haila'er are a real highlight, so consider spending the night under the stars in a yurt on the prairie. If you are Russia-bound, you can enter the country via the nearby trading town of **Manzhouli** on the border. Alternatively, hop on a train from Haila'er to Ha'erbin in Heilongjiang (to hook up with the Northeast Tour) or jump aboard a flight to **Choibalsan** in eastern Mongolia.



Buddha statues at the Unesco World Heritage site of the Longmen Caves ([Click here](#))  
KRZYSZTOF DYDYNKI / GETTY IMAGES ©



Grand (Sunday) bazaar in the old Silk Road town of Kashgar ([Click here](#))  
CHRISTIAN KOBER / GETTY IMAGES ©

## regions at a glance

---

*The high-altitude, far west of China, including Tibet, Qinghai and west Sichuan, gradually and unevenly levels out as it approaches the prosperous and well-watered canal-town provinces of Jiangsu and Zhejiang, and the metropolis of Shanghai in the east. The lion's share of scenic marvels and hiking territory belongs to the mountainous interior of China, while in the mighty northwest, peaks and deserts meet in dramatic fashion. Minority culture is a speciality of the west and southwest, and of the remote border regions. Different cuisines range across the entire nation, from the hardy northeast to the warm jungles of the far southwest.*



## Beijing

---

### History

## Temples

## Food

Beijing's imperial pedigree assures it a rich vein of dynastic history, balanced by splendid seams of temple and *hutong* (narrow alley-way) architecture. Wining and dining is a further attraction as the capital is home to a resourceful restaurant scene. [Click here](#)



## Tianjin & Hebei

---

### History

### Temples

### Outdoors

Tianjin's spruced-up foreign concession streetscapes echo stylish Shanghai, and some standout pagodas and temples can be found in Hebei, where the rural side of China – brimming with rustic village getaways – comes to the fore. [Click here](#)



## Shandong

---

**History**

**Tsingtao**

**Mountains**

Shandong groans under the weight of its historical heavy-hitters: the revered Confucian home and tomb at Qufu, and sacred Tai Shan. Then, of course, there is the home of Tsingtao beer, Qingdao, today a breezy, laid-back port city. [Click here](#)



## Shanghai

---

**Architecture**

**Food**

**Urban Style**

Shanghai exudes a unique style unlike anywhere else in China. There's plenty to do, from nonstop shopping and skyscraper-hopping to standout art, fantastic eats and touring the city's elegant art deco heritage. [Click here](#)



## **Jiangsu**

---

**Canal Towns**

**Outdoors**

**History**

Jiangsu is awash with cute-as-pie canal towns – from Tongli to Suzhou – all reachable as day trips from neighbouring Shanghai. The provincial capital, Nanjing, has history in spades, with its fabulous Ming wall and epic past as former national capital. [Click here](#)





## Zhejiang

---

**Canal Towns**

**Outdoors**

**Islands**

Flushed with water and vaulted with bridges, Zhejiang's water towns are full of traditional charm. Pastoral escapes abound further south; Hangzhou is one of China's most appealing cities; and the Buddhist island of Putuoshan makes a breezy escape off the coast. [Click here](#)



## Fujian

---

**Architecture**

## Food

## Islands

Fujian is Hakka heartland and home to the intriguing *tulou* – massive packed stone, wood and mud structures once housing hundreds of families. Gulang Yu, a tiny and hilly island off Xiamen, is decorated with crumbling colonial villas, each one distinctive. [Click here](#)



## Liaoning

---

### Festivals

### History

### Minority Culture

In history-rich Liaoning, imperial relics contend with the legacy of Russian and Japanese colonialism. The North Korean border at Dandong is a sobering contrast to the wild beer festival at Dalian.

[Click here](#)



## Jilin

---

**Landscapes**

**Culture**

**Skiing**

Boasting China's largest nature reserve, and a top ski destination, Jilin exerts a pull on the nature lover. On the trail of the exotic? Head to Ji'an for the ruins of an ancient Korean empire. [Click here](#)



# Heilongjiang

---

## Festivals

## Culture

## Nature

Fire and ice are the highlights in this province where volcanic explosions have left one of China's most mesmerising landscapes, and the winter's bitter climate provides the raw materials for a spectacular ice sculpture festival. [Click here](#)



# Shanxi

---

## History

## Culture

## Mountains

Repository of one of China's most superlative Buddhist grottoes, Shanxi also brings you one of its most magical Buddhist mountains. His- tory is on all sides: the walled city of Pingyao is the most intact of its kind. [Click here](#)



## Shaanxi

---

**Historic Sites**

**Museums**

**Mountains**

A treasure trove of archaeological sites is scattered across the plains surrounding Shaanxi's capital, Xi'an, where there are museums galore. Blow off all that ancient dust with a trip to Hua Shan, one of China's five holy Taoist peaks. [Click here](#)



# Anhui

---

## Villages

## Mountains

## Outdoors

The amazing Unesco-listed Hui villages of Hongcun and Xidi are some of China's best-preserved. But let's not forget *that* mountain, Huangshan. Its soaring granite peaks have inspired a legion of poets and painters. [Click here](#)



# Henan

---

## History

## Temples

## Mountains

Henan's overture of dynastic antiquity is balanced by some excellent mountain escapes and the quirky allure of Nanjiecun, China's last Maoist collective. The province's *wushu* (martial arts) credentials come no better: the Shaolin Temple is here. [Click here](#)



## Hubei

---

### Scenic Wonders

### History

### Rivers

Slashed by the mighty Yangzi River, history-rich Hubei is one of the gateways to the Three Gorges, but Taoist martial artists may find themselves mustering on Wudang Shan, home of taichi and scenic views. [Click here](#)



# Jiangxi

---

## Scenery

## Mountains

## Ancient Villages

Communists herald it as the mythic starting point of the Long March, but it's the spectacular mountain scenery and hiking trails past preserved villages and terraced fields that should pop Jiangxi into your travel plans. [Click here](#)



# Hunan

---

## Ancient Towns

## Minority Villages

## Mountains

Home to one of China's most noteworthy ancient towns, Fenghuang, as well as the sacred mountain of Heng Shan, the other-worldly karst peaks of Wulingyuan, and secluded Miao and Dong villages. [Click here](#)





## Hong Kong

---

**Food**

**Shopping**

**Scenery**

This culinary capital offers the best of China and beyond, while a seductive mix of vintage and cutting-edge fashion attracts armies of shoppers. Meanwhile, leafy mountains, shimmering waters, skyscrapers and tenements make an unlikely but poetic match. [Click here](#)



# Macau

---

**Food**

**Architecture**

**Casinos**

Marrying flavours from five continents, Macanese cooking is as unique as the cityscape, where Taoist temples meet baroque churches on cobbled streets with Chinese names. It's also a billionaire's playground where casino-resorts and other luxuries vie for space.

[Click here](#)



# Guangdong

---

**Food**

**History**

**Architecture**

A strong gastronomic culture offers travellers the chance to savour world-renowned Cantonese cuisine. Guangdong's seafaring temperament has brought the region diverse, exotic architectural styles, including the World Heritage-listed watchtowers. [Click here](#)



## Hainan

---

**Beaches**

**Cycling**

**Surfing**

When it comes to golden-sand beaches and warm clear waters, this tropical island doesn't disappoint. An ideal cycling destination, Hainan attracts in-the-know adventurers with its good roads, balmy winters and varied landscape. [Click here](#)



## Guangxi

---

**Scenery**

**Outdoors**

**Cycling**

Much famed for its out-of-this-world karst landscape, Guangxi offers the adventure-loving traveller lush green valleys, charming folksy villages and countless walking, cycling and rafting opportunities. [Click here](#)



## Guizhou

---

**Festivals**

**Minority Villages**

**Waterfalls**

With more than a third of the population made up of minorities, and more folk festivals than anywhere else in China, you can party here with the locals year-round. For nature lovers, there's an abundance of waterfalls; for old-town watchers, there's lovely Zhenyuan. [Click here](#)



# Yunnan

---

**Ancient Towns**

**Mountains**

**Minority Villages**

Yunnan is the province that has it all: towering Himalayan mountains, tropical jungle, sublime rice terraces and over half of China's minority groups. And did we mention gorgeous historic towns like Lijiang, the fantastic trekking and the great food? [Click here](#)



# Sichuan

---

**Mountains**

**Scenery**

**Cuisine**

One province: three regions. Stay in central or southern Sichuan for steamy bamboo forests and cute Ming-dynasty villages. Head north for stunning lakes set among alpine-esque mountain scenery. Venture west for remote Tibetan-plateau grasslands. [Click here](#)



## Chongqing

---

**Cuisine**

**Ancient Villages**

**River Trips**

A unique city with a unique location, hilly Chongqing hugs cliffs overlooking the Yangzi, bursts with old-China energy, offers some fascinating day trips and is home to hotpot – the spiciest dish on the planet. [Click here](#)



# Xinjiang

---

## History

## Minority Culture

## Nature

Bazaars, kebabs and camels are just a few of the icons that hint at your arrival in Central Asia. Ancient Silk Road towns include Turpan, Kashgar and Hotan, while hikers gravitate to Kanas Lake and the Tian Shan. [Click here](#)



# Gansu

---

## Silk Road

## Tibetan Areas

## Buddhism

Gansu is all about diversity: colourful Tibetan regions in the southwest, Inner Mongolia alongside the north, and a rich accumulation of Silk Road culture through the middle. Think deserts, mountains, Buddhist artefacts, camels, yaks, pilgrims and nomads. [Click here](#)





## Ningxia

---

### History

### Minority Culture

### Activities

In the designated homeland of the Hui, visit the great tombs of the Xia, nomadic rock art and the enormous Buddhas of Xumi Shan. For camel trekking or sliding down the sand dunes, head for the Tengger Desert. [Click here](#)



# Inner Mongolia

---

## Remote Journeys

### Food

### Activities

Ride a famed Mongolian horse at a yurt camp near Hohhot and Haila'er and sit down to a Mongolian hotpot (a delicious stew of meat and vegies). Further-flung western Inner Mongolia is a hard-to-reach landscape of towering sand dunes, desert lakes and ancient sites.

[Click here](#)



# Qinghai

---

## Monasteries

## Scenery

## Culture

Vast and remote, the best parts of Qinghai – way up on the Tibetan plateau – are for those who like their travel rough. Need a hot shower and a coffee every morning? Go somewhere else. [Click here](#)



## Tibet

---

**Monasteries**

**Scenery**

**Culture**

The 'Roof of the World' is a stunningly beautiful high plateau of turquoise lakes, desert valleys and Himalayan peaks, dotted with monasteries, yaks and sacred Buddhist sites. Tight and ever-changing travel regulations can easily derail travel plans. [Click here](#)

# On the Road

---

➤ Every listing is recommended by our authors, and their favourite places are listed first

➤ Look out for these icons:



Our author's top recommendation



A green or sustainable option



No payment required

---

## **BEIJING**

[AROUND BEIJING](#)

## **THE GREAT WALL**

## **TIANJIN & HEBEI**

[TIANJIN](#)

[HEBEI](#)

[Shijiazhuang](#)

[Chengde](#)

[Shanhaiguan](#)

[Jimingyi](#)

## **SHANDONG**

[Ji'nan](#)

[Tai'an](#)

[Tai Shan](#)

[Qufu](#)

[Qingdao](#)

[Lao Shan](#)

[Yantai](#)

## **SHANGHĀI**

[AROUND SHANGHĀI](#)

## **JIANGSU**

[Nanjing](#)

[Suzhou](#)

## **ZHEJIANG**

[Hangzhou](#)

[Wuzhen](#)

[Nanxun](#)

[Wuyi](#)

[Putuoshan](#)

## **FUJIAN**

[Xiamen](#)

[Gulang Yu](#)

[Fujian Tulou](#)

[Quanzhou](#)

[Fuzhou](#)

[Wuyi Shan](#)

## **LIAONING**

[Shenyang](#)

[Dalian](#)

[Dandong](#)

[Xingcheng](#)

## **JILIN**

[Changbai Shan](#)

[Ji'an](#)

[Changchun](#)

## **HEILONGJIANG**

[Ha'erbin](#)

[Mudanjiang](#)

[Wudalian Chi](#)

## **SHANXI**

[Datong](#)

[Wutai Shan](#)

[Taiyuan](#)

[Pingyao](#)

[Qikou](#)

[Jincheng](#)

## **SHAANXI (SHǎNXI)**

[Xi'an](#)

[Hua Shan](#)

[Hancheng](#)

[Yan'an](#)

[Yulin](#)

[Mizhi](#)

## **ANHUI**

[Tunxi](#)

[Huizhou Villages](#)

[Huangshan](#)

[Jiuhua Shan](#)

[Hefei](#)

## **HENAN**

[Zhengzhou](#)

[Song Shan & Dengfeng](#)

[Luoyang](#)

[Guoliangcun](#)

[Kaifeng](#)

[Zhuxian Zhen](#)

## **HUBEI**

[Wuhan](#)

[Jingzhou](#)

[Wudang Shan](#)

[Shennongjia](#)

[Yichang](#)

## **JIANGXI**

[Nanchang](#)

[Wuyuan](#)

[Sanqing Shan](#)

[Longhu Shan](#)

[Lushan](#)

## **HUNAN**

[Changsha](#)

[Shaoshan](#)

[Heng Shan](#)

[Wulingyuan & Zhangjiajie](#)

[Dehang](#)

[Fenghuang](#)

[Hongjiang Old Town](#)

## **HONG KONG**

## **MACAU**

## **GUǍNGDONG**

Guangzhou

Foshan

Kaiping

Yangjiang

Zhaoqing

Nanling National Forest Park

Shenzhen

Zhuhai

Chaozhou

Meizhou

## **HǍINAN**

Haikou

Central Highlands

Around Wuzhishan

The East Coast

Sanya

## **GUǍNGXI**

Guilin

Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces

Yangshuo

Nanning

Beihai

Weizhou Island

Detian Waterfall



Leye

**GUIZHOU**

CENTRAL GUIZHOU

EASTERN GUIZHOU

WESTERN GUIZHOU

NORTHERN GUIZHOU

**YUNNAN**

CENTRAL YUNNAN

NORTHWEST YUNNAN

NU JIANG VALLEY

BAOSHAN REGION

DEHONG PREFECTURE

XISHUANGBANNA REGION

**SICHUAN**

CENTRAL SICHUAN

SOUTHERN SICHUAN

WESTERN SICHUAN

NORTHERN SICHUAN

**CHONGQING**

Chongqing City

Dazu Buddhist Caves

Zhongshan

**CRUISING THE YANGZI**

**XINJIANG**

CENTRAL XINJIANG

SOUTHWEST XINJIANG – KASHGARIA

SOUTHERN SILK ROAD  
NORTHERN XINJIANG

## **GANSU**

LANZHOU & SOUTHERN GANSU  
HEXI CORRIDOR  
EASTERN GANSU

## **NINGXIA**

Yinchuan  
Zhongwei  
Guyuan & Around

## **INNER MONGOLIA**

Hohhot  
Shangdu (Xanadu)  
Baotou  
Haila'er  
Manzhouli

## **QINGHAI**

Xining  
Tongren (Repkong)  
Guide  
Yushu (Jyekundo)  
Golmud

## **TIBET**

Lhasa  
The Friendship Highway  
Western Tibet



# Beijing

 010 / POP 19.6 MILLION

## Includes »

[Sights](#)

[Activities](#)

[Courses](#)

[Sleeping](#)

[Eating](#)

[Drinking](#)

[Entertainment](#)

[Shopping](#)

[Getting There & Away](#)

[Around Beijing](#)

[Ming Tombs](#)

[Chuandixia](#)

---

## Why Go?

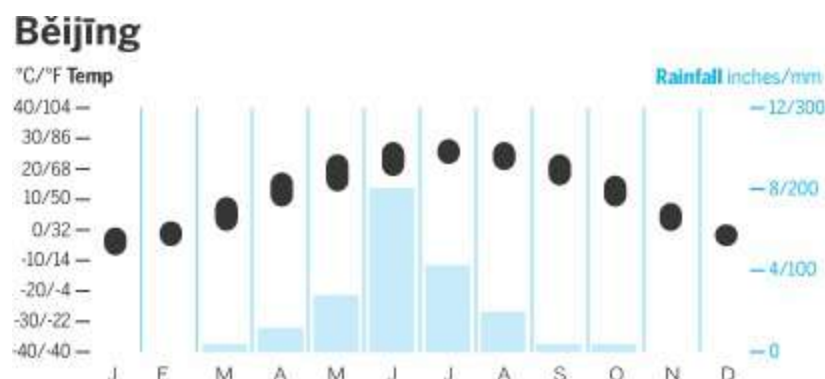
Not only is Beijing U one of China's true ancient citadels, it's also a confident and increasingly modern capital seemingly assured of its destiny to rule over China till the end of time.

Through its magnificent architecture – including numerous stretches of the Great Wall – visitors can trace every historical mood swing from Mongol times to the present day. Reminders of epic imperial grandeur and of imposing socialist realism stand strong amidst an emerging global powerhouse preparing to dominate the 21st century.

The city's denizens chat in Beijinhua – the gold standard of Mandarin – and marvel at their good fortune for occupying the centre of the known world. And yet for all its gusto, Beijing dispenses with the persistent pace of Shanghai or Hong Kong. The remains of its historic *hutong* (alleyways) still exude a unique village-within-a-city vibe, and it's in these neighbourhoods that locals shift down a gear and find time to sit out front, play chess and watch the world go by.

---

## When to Go



**Oct–Nov** Gorgeously fresh after the scorching summer, with blue skies and fewer tourists.

**Apr–May** Warming up after the winter freeze. Windy, but usually dry and clear.

**Dec–Feb** Dry as a bone and brutally cold, but clear skies and quiet streets.

---

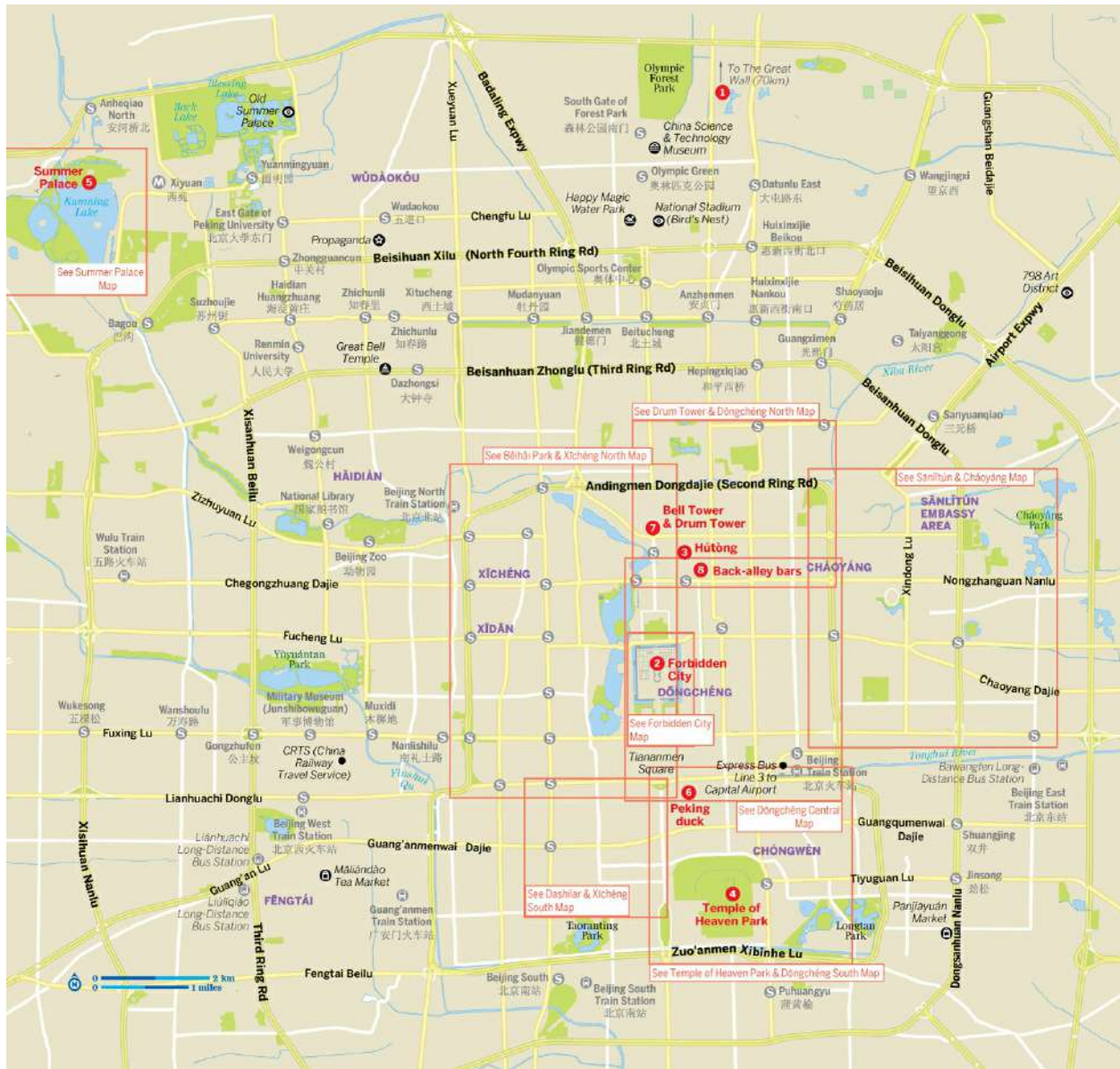
## Best Places to Eat

- » Zuo Lin You She ([Click here](#))
- » Dali Courtyard ([Click here](#))
- » 4Corners ([Click here](#))
- » Yaoji Chaogan ([Click here](#))
- » Najia Xiaoguan ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Places to Stay

- » Peking Youth Hostel ([Click here](#))
- » Courtyard 7 ([Click here](#))
- » Red Capital Residence ([Click here](#))
- » Opposite House Hotel ([Click here](#))
- » DuGe ([Click here](#))



## Beijing Highlights

- ① Hike your way along an unrestored 'wild' section of China's most famous icon; **the Great Wall** ([Click here](#))
- ② Marvel at the might and splendour of the awe-inspiring **Forbidden City** ([Click here](#)), the world's largest palace complex and one-time home of 24 emperors of China

- 3 Lose yourself in the city's warren of historic **hutong** (alleyways, [Click here](#)), or follow our absorbing *hutong* walking tour ([Click here](#))
- 4 Beijing is blessed with a host of splendid royal parks, but the highlight is unmissable **Temple of Heaven Park** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Enjoy a taste of imperial high life by wandering the sumptuous gardens, temples, pavilions and corridors of the **Summer Palace** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Scoff **Peking duck** ([Click here](#)), the capital's signature dish, in the restaurants where it originated
- 7 Climb the magnificent **Drum Tower** ([Click here](#)) or its charming counterpart, the **Bell Tower** ([Click here](#)), and look over the grey-tiled rooftops in the alleys below
- 8 Down a beer or catch some live music in one of Beijing's **back-alley bars**. Jiang Hu ([Click here](#)) is a good place to start

## History

Although seeming to have presided over China since time immemorial, Beijing (literally, Northern Capital) – positioned outside the central heartland of Chinese civilisation – only emerged as a cultural and political force that would shape the destiny of China with the 13th-century Mongol occupation of China.

Chinese historical sources identify the earliest settlements in these parts from 1045 BC. In later centuries Beijing was successively occupied by foreign forces: it was established as an auxiliary capital under the Khitan, nomadic Mongolic people who formed China's Liao dynasty (AD 907–1125). Later the Jurchens, Tungusic people originally from the Siberian region, turned the city into their Jin-dynasty capital (1115–1234) during which time it was enclosed within fortified walls, accessed by eight gates.

But in 1215 the army of the great Mongol warrior Genghis Khan razed Beijing, an event that was paradoxically to mark the city's transformation into a powerful national capital. Apart from the first 53 years of the Ming dynasty and 21 years of Nationalist rule in the 20th

century, it has enjoyed this status to the present day.

The city came to be called Dadu ( Great Capital), also assuming the Mongol name Khanbalik (the Khan's town). By 1279, under the rule of Kublai Khan, grandson of Genghis Khan, Dadu was the capital of the largest empire the world has ever known.

The basic grid of present-day Beijing was laid during the Ming dynasty, and Emperor Yongle (r 1403–24) is credited with being the true architect of the modern city. Much of Beijing's grandest architecture, such as the Forbidden City and the iconic Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests in Temple of Heaven Park, date from his reign.

The Manchus, who invaded China in the 17th century to establish the Qing dynasty, essentially preserved Beijing's form. In the last 120 years of the Qing dynasty, Beijing, and subsequently China, was subjected to power struggles and invasions and the ensuing chaos. The list is long: the Anglo-French troops who in 1860 burnt the Old Summer Palace to the ground; the corrupt regime of Empress Dowager Cixi; the catastrophic Boxer Rebellion; General Yuan Shikai; the warlords; the Japanese occupation of 1937; and the Kuomintang. Each and every period left its undeniable mark, although the shape and symmetry of Beijing was maintained.

Modern Beijing came of age when, in January 1949, the People's Liberation Army (PLA) entered the city. On 1 October of that year Mao Zedong proclaimed a 'People's Republic' from the Gate of Heavenly Peace to an audience of some 500,000 citizens.

Like the emperors before them, the communists significantly altered the face of Beijing. The *pailou* (decorative archways) were destroyed and city blocks pulverised to widen major boulevards. From 1950 to 1952, the city's magnificent outer walls were levelled in the interests of traffic circulation. Soviet experts and technicians poured in, bringing their own Stalinesque touches.

The past quarter of a century has transformed Beijing into a modern city, with skyscrapers, shopping malls and an ever-expanding subway system. The once flat skyline is now crenellated with vast apartment blocks and office buildings. Recent years have also seen a convincing beautification of Beijing: from a toneless and unkempt city to a greener, cleaner and more pleasant place.



But as Beijing continues to evolve, it is shedding its increasingly tenuous links with its ancient past one fibre at a time. Even the old-school newspaper *China Daily* has observed that 4.43 million sq metres of old courtyards have been demolished in Beijing's historic *hutong* neighbourhoods since 1990; around 40% of the total area of the city centre. Preservation campaign groups have their work cut out to save what's left.

## Climate

In winter, it's glacial outside (dipping as low as -20°C) and the northern winds cut like a knife through bean curd. But the air is clear and fresh at this time and the city unusually quiet. Arid spring is much more comfortable (unless there is a sand storm in town), but it only lasts for a month or so (April to May). Spring also sees the *liuxu* (willow catkins) wafting through the air like snowflakes. From May onwards the mercury surges above 30°C, reaching the 40s in late summer. Sporadic downpours help clear the air for a day or two – this is often a smog-filled time of the year. Beijing becomes cooler and clearer in autumn (end of September to early November), which is the best time to visit.

## Language

Beijinghua U, the Chinese spoken in the capital, is seen by purists as the finest variety of the Chinese language. Although the standard Mandarin is based on the Beijing dialect, the two are very different in both accent and colloquialisms. Beijinghua is under threat from migrants who flock to town, bringing their own dialects in tow.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### **Sleeping**

\$ less than ¥400 (for a standard twin room)

\$\$ ¥400 to ¥1000

\$\$\$ more than ¥1000

## Eating

\$ less than ¥40 (for a meal for one)

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

## Sights

Historic **Dongcheng District** ( Dongcheng Qu) is the largest of Beijing's central districts and by far the most interesting for visitors. For convenience, we've split it into North, Central and South neighbourhoods. Dongcheng Central has the lion's share of top-name sights, including the immense Forbidden City. A fascinating network of imperial *hutong* (alleyways) fans out north and east from here. Dongcheng North is also a fabulously historic, *hutong* -rich neighbourhood, and arguably the most pleasant area in which to base yourself while in Beijing. Dongcheng South is dominated by the wonderful Temple of Heaven Park.

**Chaoyang District** ( Chaoyang Qu) sprawls east from Dongcheng and is home to the majority of Beijing's foreign embassies, as well as most of its expat population. The area lacks history and character, but it does contain some of the capital's best modern restaurants, bars and shops, many of which are in the area known as Sanlitun.

West of Dongcheng, **Xicheng District** ( Xicheng Qu) has strong historical links. We've split it into north and south neighbourhoods. The north includes the city's lovely central lakes – at Houhai and within the centuries-old Beihai Park. The south includes the backpacker-central neighbourhood of Dashilar.

Outlying **Haidian** ( Haidian Qu), is the capital's main university district – head to Wudaokou to tap into student life in Beijing – but it also includes some great day-trip destinations, including the hugely attractive Summer Palace.

**BEIJING IN...**

## Two Days

Stroll around the incense smoke-filled courtyards of the **Lama Temple** before hopping over the road to the even more laid-back **Confucius Temple**. Grab a coffee and lunch at **Confucius Cafe** before walking through the **hutong alleys** to the ancient **Drum and Bell Towers** and finishing off the day with a meal in **Dali Courtyard**.

Get up early to enjoy the **Temple of Heaven Park** at its magical, early-morning best: filled with opera-singing locals rather than photo-snapping tourists. Grab a bite to eat in historic **Dashilar** before walking across **Tian'anmen Square** en route to exploring the awe-inspiring **Forbidden City**. Finish the day by tucking into Beijing's signature dish – roast duck – at China's most famous restaurant **Quanjude Roast Duck Restaurant**.

## Four Days

Follow the itinerary above, but save plenty of energy for the trip of a lifetime on day three; your journey to **The Great Wall**. There are plenty of options, from a quick half-day jaunt at touristy **Badaling** to a strenuous hike along wild, unrestored sections such as **Huanghua Cheng** or **Jiankou**. **Mutianyu** makes a good option for families. Pack a picnic and don't expect to get back to the city until nightfall.

Hop on the subway on day four to visit the **Summer Palace**. You could spend the day here or make side trips to the **Botanic Gardens**, **Old Summer Palace** or **Fragrant Hills Park**, all of which are close. Return for an early evening meal so that you have time to catch a show, the **Peking Opera** or **acrobatics**, on your final evening.

# FORBIDDEN CITY & DONGCHENG CENTRAL

## Forbidden City *HISTORIC SITE*

(*Zijin Cheng*; [Offline map](#); [www.dpm.org.cn](http://www.dpm.org.cn); admission Nov-Mar/Apr-Oct ¥40/60, audio guide ¥40; 🕒 8.30am-4pm May-Sep, 8.30am-3.30pm Oct-Apr; 📍 Tian'anmen West or Tian'anmen East) Ringed by a 52m-wide moat at the very heart of Beijing, the Forbidden City is China's largest and best-preserved collection of ancient buildings, and the largest palace complex in the world. So called because it was off limits for 500 years, when it was steeped in stultifying ritual and Byzantine regal protocol, the otherworldly palace was the reclusive home to two dynasties of imperial rule until the Republic overthrew the last Qing emperor.

Today, the Forbidden City is prosaically known as the Palace Museum (Gugong Bowuguan), although most Chinese people simply call it *gugong* (former palace).

In former ages the price for uninvited admission was instant

execution; these days ¥40 or ¥60 will do. Allow yourself the best part of a day for exploration or several trips if you're an enthusiast.

Guides – many with mechanical English – mill about the entrance, but the automatically activated audio tours are cheaper (¥40; more than 40 languages) and more reliable. Restaurants, a cafe, toilets and even ATMs can be found within the palace grounds. Wheelchairs (¥500 deposit) are free to use, as are pushchairs (¥300 deposit).

## Forbidden City

### WALKING TOUR

After entering through the imperious Meridian Gate, resist the temptation to dive straight into the star attractions and veer right for a peek at the excellent **1** **Ceramics Gallery** housed inside the creaking Hall of Literary Glory.

Walk back to the central complex and head through the magnificent Gate of Supreme Harmony towards the Three Great Halls: first, the largest – the **2** **Hall of Supreme Harmony**, followed by the **3** **Hall of Middle Harmony** and the **4** **Hall of Preserving Harmony**, behind which slopes the enormous Marble Imperial Carrieway.

Turn right here to visit the fascinating **5** **Clock Exhibition Hall** before entering the **6** **Complete Palace of Peace & Longevity**, a mini Forbidden City constructed along the eastern axis of the main complex. It includes the beautiful **7** **Nine Dragon Screen** and, to the north, a series of halls, housing some excellent exhibitions and known collectively as The Treasure Gallery. Don't miss the **8** **Pavilion of Cheerful Melodies**, a wonderful three-storey opera house.

Work your way to the far north of this section, then head west to the **9** **Imperial Garden**, with its ancient cypress trees and pretty pavilions, before exiting via the garden's West Gate (behind the Thousand Year Pavilion) to explore the **10** **Western Palaces**, an absorbing collection of courtyard homes where many of the emperors lived during their reign.

Exit this section at its southwest corner before turning back on yourself to walk north through the Gate of Heavenly Purity to see the three final Central Halls – the **11** **Palace of Heavenly Purity**, the **12** **Hall of Union** and the **13** **Palace of Earthly Tranquility** – before leaving via the North Gate.



**Water Vats**  
More than 300 copper and brass water vats dot the palace complex. They were used for fighting fires and in winter were prevented from freezing over by using thick quilts.

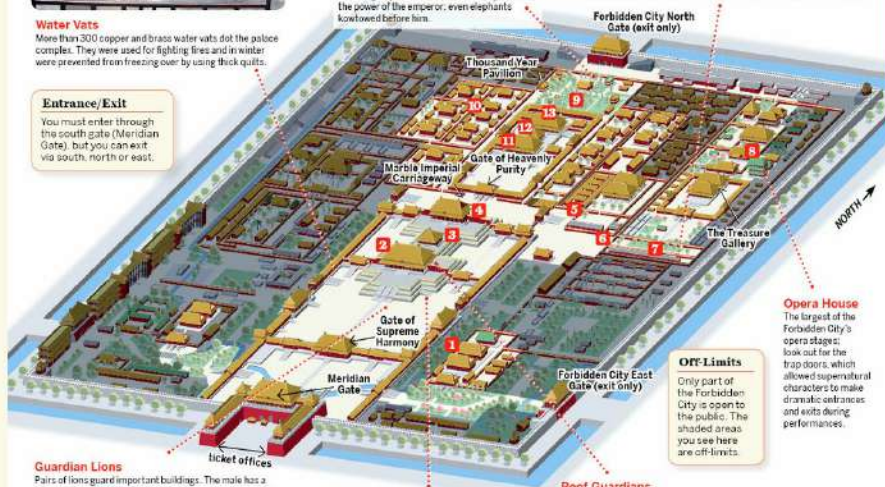
**Entrance/Exit**  
You must enter through the south gate (Meridian Gate) but you can exit via south, north or east.



**Kneeling Elephants**  
At the northern entrance of the Imperial Garden are two bronze elephants kneeling in an anatomically impossible fashion, which symbolises the power of the emperor, even elephants knelt down before him.



**Nine Dragon Screen**  
One of only three of its type left in China, this beautiful glazed dragon screen served to protect the Hall of Imperial Supremacy from evil spirits.



**Guardian Lions**  
Pairs of lions guard important buildings. The male has a paw placed on a globe (representing the emperor's power over the world). The female has her paw on a baby lion (representing the emperor's fertility).



**Dragon-Head Spouts**  
More than a thousand dragon-head spouts enliven the raised marble platforms at the centre of the Forbidden City. They were – and still are – part of the drainage system.



**Roof Guardians**  
The imperial dragon is at the tail of the procession, which is led by a figure riding a phoenix followed by a number of mythical beasts. The more beasts, the more important the building.



**Off-Limits**  
Only part of the Forbidden City is open to the public. The shaded areas you see here are off-limits.

**Opera House**  
The largest of the Forbidden City's opera stages; look out for the trap doors, which allowed supernatural characters to make dramatic entrances and exits during performances.

## Entrance

Tourists must enter through **Meridian Gate** (Wu Men), a massive U-shaped portal at the south end of the complex, which in former times was reserved for the use of the emperor. Gongs and bells would sound imperial comings and goings, while lesser mortals used lesser gates: the military used the west gate, civilians the east gate. The

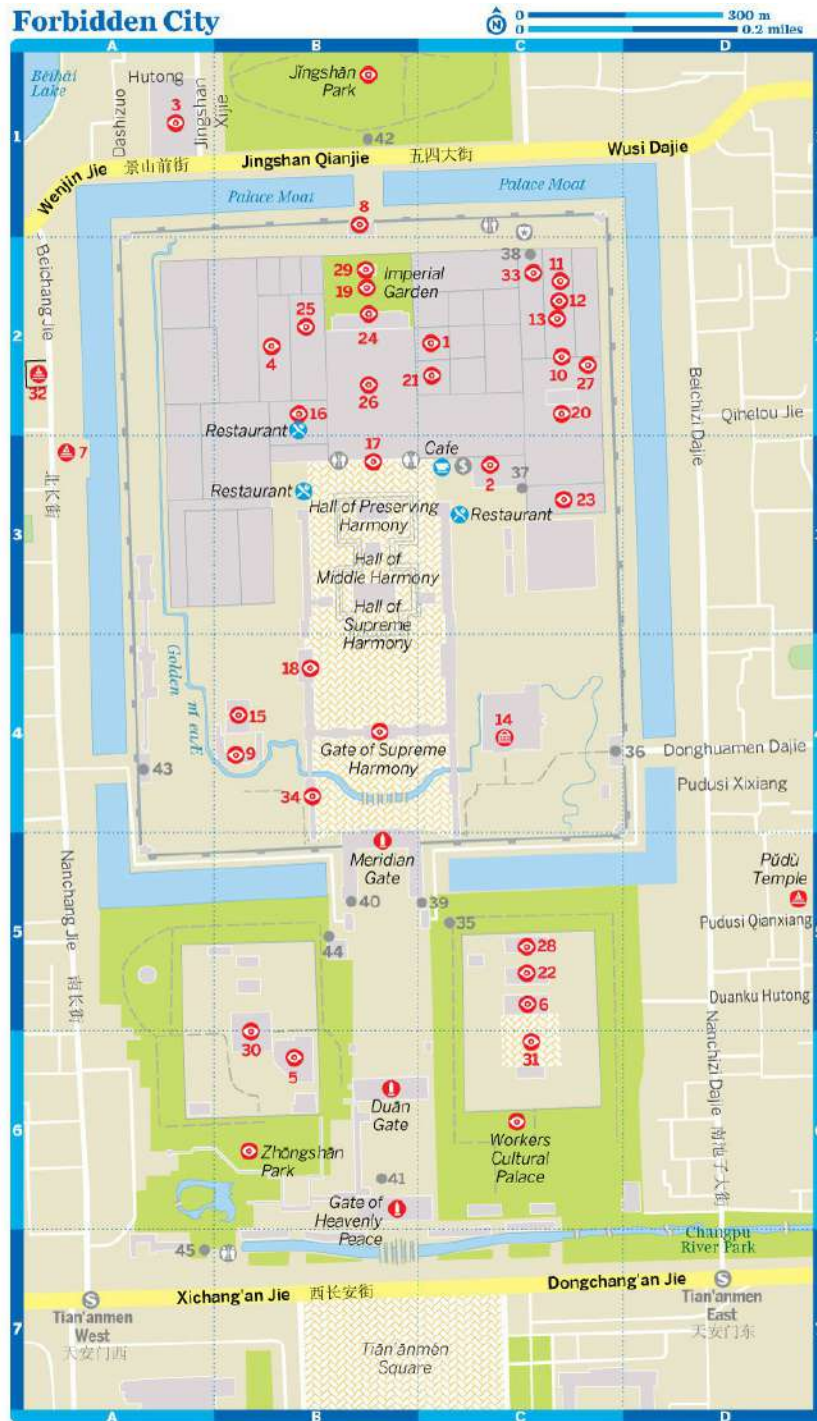
emperor also reviewed his armies from here, passed judgement on prisoners, announced the new year's calendar and oversaw the flogging of troublesome ministers.

Through Meridian Gate, you enter an enormous courtyard, and cross the **Golden Stream** ( Jin Shui) – shaped to resemble a Tartar bow and spanned by five marble bridges – on your way to the magnificent **Gate of Supreme Harmony** ( Taihe Men). This courtyard could hold an imperial audience of 100,000 people. For an idea of the size of the restoration challenge, note how the crumbling courtyard stones are stuffed with dry weeds, especially on the periphery.

### *First Side Galleries*

Before you pass through the Gate of Supreme Harmony to reach the Forbidden City's star attractions, veer off to the east and west of the huge courtyard to visit the Calligraphy and Painting Gallery inside the **Hall of Martial Valor** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Wu Ying Dian) and the particularly good Ceramics Gallery, housed inside the creaking **Hall of Literary Glory** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Wen Hua Dian).

# Forbidden City



# Forbidden City

## Sights

- 1 Chengqiang Hall **C2**
- 2 [Clock Exhibition Hall](#) **C3**
- 3 Dagaoxuan Temple **A1**
- 4 Eternal Spring Palace **B2**
- 5 [Forbidden City Concert Hall](#) **B6**
- 6 Front Hall **C5**
- 7 Fuyou Temple **A3**
- 8 [Gate of Divine Prowess \(exit only\)](#) **B1**
- 9 Gate of Heavenly Purity **B3**
- 10 Gate of Military Prowess **B4**
- [Hall for Ancestral Worship](#) (see 2)
- 11 Hall of Character Cultivation **C2**
- 12 Hall of Harmony **C2**
- 13 Hall of Jewellery **C2**
- 14 Hall of Joyful Longevity **C2**
- 15 [Hall of Literary Glory](#) **C4**
- 16 [Hall of Martial Valor](#) **B4**
- 17 [Hall of Mental Cultivation](#) **B2**
- 18 Hongyi Pavilion **B4**
- 19 Imperial Peace Hall **B2**
- 20 Imperial Supremacy Hall **C2**
- 21 Jingren Hall **C2**
- 22 Middle Hall **C5**
- 23 [Nine Dragon Screen](#) **C3**
- 24 [Palace of Earthly Tranquility](#) **B2**
- 25 [Palace of Gathered Elegance](#) **B2**
- 26 [Palace of Heavenly Purity](#) **B2**
- 27 [Pavilion of Cheerful Melodies](#) **C2**
- 28 Rear Hall **C5**
- 29 Shunzhen Gate **B2**
- 30 Square Altar **B6**
- 31 [Supreme Temple](#) **C6**
- 32 Wanshou Xinglong Temple **A2**
- 33 Well of Concubine Zhen **C2**
- 34 Xihe Gate **B4**

## Information

- 35 Cultural Workers Palace northwest entrance **C5**
- 36 Donghua Gate (exit only) **C4**
- 37 Entrance to Complete Palace of Peace and Longevity **C3**
- 38 Exit of Complete Palace of Peace and Longevity **C2**

- 39 Forbidden City ticket office **C5**
- 40 Forbidden City ticket office **B5**
- 41 Gate of Heavenly Peace ticket office **B6**
- 42 Jingshan Park south entrance **B1**
- 43 Xihua Gate (closed) **A4**
- 44 Zhongshan Park northeast entrance **B5**
- 45 Zhongshan Park south entrance **A7**

### *Three Great Halls*

Raised on a three-tier marble terrace with balustrades are the Three Great Halls ( San Dadian), the glorious heart of the Forbidden City. The recently restored **Hall of Supreme Harmony** ( Taihe Dian) is the most important and largest structure in the Forbidden City. Built in the 15th century and restored in the 17th century, it was used for ceremonial occasions, such as the emperor's birthday, the nomination of military leaders and coronations. Inside the Hall of Supreme Harmony is a richly decorated **Dragon Throne** ( Longyi), from which the emperor would preside over trembling officials. The entire court had to touch the floor nine times with their foreheads (the custom known as kowtowing) in the emperor's presence. At the back of the throne is a carved Xumishan, the Buddhist paradise, signifying the throne's supremacy.

Behind the Hall of Supreme Harmony is the smaller **Hall of Middle Harmony** ( Zhonghe Dian), which was used as the emperor's transit lounge. Here he would make last-minute preparations, rehearse speeches and receive close ministers. On display are two Qing-dynasty sedan chairs, the emperor's mode of transport around the Forbidden City. The last of the Qing emperors, Puyi, used a bicycle and altered a few features of the palace grounds to make it easier to get around.

The third of the Great Halls is the **Hall of Preserving Harmony** ( Baohe Dian), used for banquets and later for imperial examinations. The hall has no support pillars. To its rear is a 250-tonne **marble imperial carriageway** carved with dragons and clouds, which was transported into Beijing on an ice path. The emperor used to be carried over this carriageway in his sedan chair as he ascended or



descended the terrace. The outer housing surrounding the Three Great Halls was used for storing gold, silver, silks, carpets and other treasures.

A string of side halls on the eastern and western flanks of the Three Great Halls usually, but not always, house a series of excellent exhibitions, ranging from scientific instruments and articles of daily use to objects presented to the emperor by visiting dignitaries. One contains an interesting diorama of the whole complex.

### *Lesser Central Halls*

The basic configuration of the Three Great Halls is echoed by the next group of buildings. Smaller in scale, these buildings were more important in terms of real power, which in China traditionally lies at the back door.

The first structure is the **Palace of Heavenly Purity** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Qianqing Gong), a residence of Ming and early Qing emperors, and later an audience hall for receiving foreign envoys and high officials.

Immediately behind it is the **Hall of Union** ( Jiaotai Dian), which contains a clepsydra – a water clock made in 1745 with five bronze vessels and a calibrated scale. There's also a mechanical clock built in 1797 and a collection of imperial jade seals on display. The **Palace of Earthly Tranquility** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Kunning Gong) was the imperial couple's bridal chamber and the centre of operations for the palace harem.

### *Imperial Garden*

At the northern end of the Forbidden City is the Imperial Garden ( Yu Huayuan), a classical Chinese garden with 7000 sq metres of fine landscaping, including rockeries, walkways, pavilions and ancient cypresses. Before you reach the **Gate of Divine Prowess** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Shenwu Men), the Forbidden City's north exit, and Shunzhen Gate ( Shunzhen Men), which leads to it, note the pair of **bronze elephants** whose front knees bend in an anatomically impossible fashion, signifying the power of the emperor; even

elephants would kowtow before him.

DON'T MISS

## CLOCK EXHIBITION HALL

The [Clock Exhibition Hall](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Zhongbiao Guan*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-4pm summer, 8.30am-3.30pm winter) is one of the unmissable highlights of the Forbidden City. Located in the [Hall for Ancestral Worship](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Fengxian Dian) – just off to the right after the Three Great Halls – the exhibition contains an astonishing array of elaborate timepieces, many of which were gifts to the Qing emperors from overseas. Many of the 18th-century examples are crafted by James Cox or Joseph Williamson (both of London) and imported through Guangdong from England; others are from Switzerland, America and Japan. Exquisitely wrought and fashioned with magnificently designed elephants and other creatures, they all display astonishing artfulness and attention to detail. Standout clocks include the 'Gilt Copper Astronomy Clock' equipped with a working model of the solar system, and the automaton-equipped 'Gilt Copper Clock with a robot writing Chinese characters with a brush'. Time your arrival for 11am or 2pm to see the [clock performance](#) in which choice timepieces strike the hour and give a display to wide-eyed children and adults.

### *Complete Palace of Peace and Longevity*

A mini Forbidden City, known as the Complete Palace of Peace and Longevity ( *Ning Shou Quan Gong*) was built in the northeastern corner of the complex, mimicking the structure of the great halls of the central axis. During the Ming dynasty this was where the empress dowager and the imperial concubines lived. Now it houses a series of quieter courtyard buildings, which contain a number of fine museum exhibitions, known collectively as the [Treasure Gallery](#) ( *Zhen Bao Guan*; entrance ¥10).

The complex is entered from the south – not far from the Clock Exhibition Hall. Just inside the entrance, you'll find the beautiful glazed [Nine Dragon Screen](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Jiulong Bi*), one of only three of its type left in China.

Visitors then work their way north, exploring a number of peaceful halls and courtyards before being popped out at the northern end of

the Forbidden City. Don't miss the **Pavilion of Cheerful Melodies** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Changyin Ge), a three-storey wooden opera house, which was the palace's largest theatre. Note the trap doors that allowed actors to make dramatic stage entrances.


### *Western & Eastern Palaces*

About half a dozen smaller palace courtyards lie to the west and east of the Lesser Central Halls. They should all be open to the public, although at the time of research many of the eastern ones were closed for extensive renovation. It was in these smaller courtyard buildings that most of the emperors actually lived and many of the buildings, particularly those to the west, are decked out in imperial furniture. The **Hall of Mental Cultivation** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Yang Xin Dian) is a highlight, while the **Palace of Gathered Elegance** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Chu Xiu Gong) contains some interesting photos of the last emperor Puyi, who lived here as a child ruler at the turn of the 20th century.

## FORBIDDEN CITY WALKING TOUR

Don't miss our full-colour 3D illustration of the Forbidden City on [Click here](#). It's brand new for this edition and includes our author's recommended walking tour of the complex.

### **FREE** Tian'anmen Square *SQUARE*

( *Tian'anmen Guangchang*; [Offline map](#);  *Tian'anmen West, Tian'anmen East or Qianmen*) Flanked by stern 1950s Soviet-style buildings and ringed by white perimeter fences, the world's largest public square (440,000 sq metres) is an immense flatland of paving stones at the heart of Beijing.

Here one stands at the symbolic centre of the Chinese universe. The rectangular arrangement, flanked by halls to both east and west, to some extent echoes the layout of the Forbidden City: as such, the

square employs a conventional plan that pays obeisance to traditional Chinese culture, but many of its ornaments and buildings are Soviet-inspired. Mao conceived the square to project the enormity of the Communist Party, and during the Cultural Revolution he reviewed parades of up to a million people here. The 'Tian'anmen Incident', in 1976, is the term given to the near-riot in the square that accompanied the death of Premier Zhou Enlai. Another million people jammed the square to pay their last respects to Mao in the same year. Most infamously, in 1989 the army forced prodemocracy demonstrators out of the square. Hundreds lost their lives in the surrounding streets, although contrary to widespread belief, it is unlikely that anyone was killed in the square itself.

Despite being a public place, the square remains more in the hands of the government than the people; it is monitored by closed circuit TV cameras, Segway-riding policemen and plain-clothes officers. The designated points of access, security checks on entry and twitchy mood cleave Tian'anmen Square from the city. A tangible atmosphere of restraint and authority reigns.

All this – plus the absence of anywhere to sit – means the square is hardly a place to chill out (don't whip out a guitar), but such is its iconic status that few people leave Beijing without making a visit. In any case, there's more than enough space to stretch a leg and the view can be breathtaking, especially on a clear blue day or at nightfall when the area is illuminated.

If you get up early, you can watch the **flag-raising ceremony** at sunrise, performed by a troop of People's Liberation Army (PLA) soldiers drilled to march at precisely 108 paces per minute, 75cm per pace. The soldiers emerge through the Gate of Heavenly Peace to goosestep impeccably across Chang'an Jie; all traffic is halted. The same ceremony in reverse is performed at sunset.

## Gate of Heavenly Peace *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Tian'anmen*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥15, bag storage ¥2-6; ☺  
8.30am-4.30pm; 🚶 *Tian'anmen West or Tian'anmen East*) Hung with a vast likeness of Mao Zedong, and guarded by two pairs of Ming

stone lions, the double-eaved Gate of Heavenly Peace ( Tian'anmen), north of Tian'anmen Square, is a potent national symbol. Built in the 15th century and restored in the 17th century, the gate was formerly the largest of the four gates of the Imperial City Wall, and it was from this gate that Mao proclaimed the People's Republic of China on 1 October 1949. Today's political coterie watches mass troop parades from here.

Climb the gate for excellent views of the square, and peek inside at the impressive beams and overdone paintwork; in all there are 60 gargantuan wooden pillars and 17 vast lamps suspended from the ceiling. Within the gate tower there is also a fascinating photographic history of the gate and Tian'anmen Square, although captions are in Chinese only.

There's no fee for walking through the gate, en route to the Forbidden City, but if you climb it you'll have to pay. The ticket office is on the north side of the gate. For Forbidden City tickets, keep walking about 600m further north.

# Dōngchéng Central



# Dongcheng Central

## Sights

- 1 [Ancient Observatory](#) G6
- 2 [Běijīng Police Museum](#) C8
- 3 [Beijing Railway Museum](#) B8
- 4 [Chairman Mao Memorial Hall](#) B7
- 5 [China Art Museum](#) C3
- 6 Dong'an Men Remains C5
- 7 Duan Gate B6
- 8 [Dutch Legation](#) B7
- 9 [Former Belgian Legation](#) D8
- 10 [Former French Legation](#) D7
- 11 Former French Post Office C7
- 12 [Front Gate \(Zhengyang Gate Arrow Tower\)](#) B8
- 13 Front Gate (Zhengyang Gate) B8
- 14 [Gate of Heavenly Peace](#) B6
- 15 [Imperial Granaries](#) G2
- 16 [Jingshan Park](#) B3
- 17 Monument to the People's Heroes B7
- 18 [National Museum of China](#) B7
- 19 [Poly Art Museum](#) G1
- 20 [St Joseph's Church](#) D5
- 21 [St Michael's Church](#) D7
- 22 [Supreme Temple](#) B6
- [Workers Cultural Palace](#) (see 22)
- 23 [Yokohama Specie Bank](#) C7

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 24 [Bike Běijīng](#) C4
- 25 [Jingshan Table Tennis Park](#) B2
- 26 [Milun Kungfu School](#) D5

## Sleeping

- 27 [Běijīng City Central International Youth Hostel](#) F7
- 28 [City Walls Courtyard](#) B2
- 29 [Côte Cour](#) E4
- 30 [Grand Hyatt](#) D6
- 31 [Jingyuan Hotel](#) D5
- 32 [Park Plaza](#) E5
- 33 [Peninsula](#) D5
- 34 [Red Capital Residence](#) F2
- 35 [Regent Běijīng](#) E5

[36 The Emperor](#) C4

## Eating

[37 Běijīng Dadǒng Roast Duck Restaurant](#) E5

[38 Courtyard](#) B5

[39 Crescent Moon Muslim Restaurant](#) F2

[40 Donghuamen Night Market](#) C5

[41 Lǎo Zhai Yuan](#) C3

[42 Quanjude Roast Duck Restaurant](#) D5

[43 Wangfujǐng Snack Street](#) C6

[44 Zuǒ Lin You She](#) C2

## Drinking

[45 Alley Coffee](#) B3

## Entertainment

[46 Forbidden City Concert Hall](#) A6

## Shopping

[47 Foreign Languages Bookstore](#) D5

[48 Oriental Plaza](#) D6

[49 Ruifuxiang](#) D6

## Information

[50 Bag Storage for Chairman Mao Memorial Hall](#) B7

[51 CITS](#) E5

[52 CITS \(international train ticket office\)](#) F6

[53 Jingshan Park East Gate](#) B3

[54 Jingshan Park South Gate](#) B3

[55 Jingshan Park West Gate](#) A3

## Front Gate *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Qian Men*; admission ¥20, audio guide ¥20; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun; 📍 *Qianmen*) Front Gate actually consists of two gates. The northernmost is the 40m-high **Zhengyang Gate** (Zhengyang Men Chenglou), which dates from the Ming dynasty and which was the largest of the nine



gates of the Inner City Wall separating the inner, or Tartar (Manchu) city from the outer, or Chinese city. Partially destroyed in the Boxer Rebellion around 1900, the gate was once flanked by two temples that have since vanished. With the disappearance of the city walls, the gate sits out of context, but it can be climbed for decent views of the square and of Arrow Tower, immediately to the south.

Inside the upper levels are some fascinating **historical photographs**, showing the area as it was at the beginning of the last century, before the city walls and many of the surrounding gates and temples were demolished. Explanatory captions are in English as well as Chinese.

**Zhengyang Gate Arrow Tower** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Zhengyangmen Jianlou), directly south, can't be climbed. It also dates from the Ming dynasty and was originally connected to Zhengyang Gate by a semicircular enceinte (demolished last century).

## **FREE** **National Museum of China** *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Zhongguo Guoji Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); [en.chnmuseum.cn](http://en.chnmuseum.cn); admission with passport only, audio guide ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 📍 Tian'anmen East; 📶) After years of renovation, China's premier museum, housed in the immense 1950s building on the eastern side of Tian'anmen Square, finally reopened in 2011. It was still a work in progress at the time of research, with some halls closed, but much of what was open was well worth visiting. The Ancient China exhibition on the basement floor is outstanding. It contains dozens and dozens of stunning pieces, from prehistoric China through to the Qing dynasty, all displayed beautifully in modern, spacious, low-lit exhibition halls.

Also worth seeking out is the Ancient Chinese Money exhibition on the top floor. The **Bronze Art and Buddhist Sculpture** galleries, one floor below, are also impressive.

Many of the other halls housed temporary art galleries when we last visited, which were eye-catching, but lacked English captions. The museum, which is vast and energy sapping, also has a pleasant

ground-floor **cafe** (coffee from ¥20, pastries/sandwiches ¥10-20).

## **FREE** Chairman Mao Memorial Hall MAUSOLEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Mao Zhuxi Jiniantang*; [Offline map](#); admission with passport only; bag storage ¥2-10, camera storage ¥2-5; ☹️ 8am-noon Tue-Sun; 🚶 Tian'anmen West, Tian'anmen East or Qianmen) Chairman Mao died in September 1976 and his Memorial Hall was constructed shortly thereafter on the former site of the Zhonghua Gate.

The Chinese display an almost religious respect when confronted with the physical presence of Mao. The Great Helmsman's mummified corpse lies in a crystal cabinet, draped in a red flag emblazoned with hammer and sickle while impatient guards in white gloves brusquely wave the hoi polloi on towards further rooms housing Mao memorabilia. Bags must be deposited at a building east of the memorial hall across the road.

## **Former Foreign Legation Quarter** HISTORIC SITE

(🚶 Qianmen or Tian'anmen East) For grand shades of Europe, the former Foreign Legation Quarter where the 19th-century foreign powers flung up embassies, schools, churches, post offices and banks is worth a quick stroll if you are in the Tian'anmen Square area.

Access the area walking up the steps east from Tian'anmen Sq into Dongjiaomin Xiang U, once called Legation St and renamed 'Anti-Imperialism Road' during the iconoclastic Cultural Revolution. You'll soon reach an archway on your right, through which is the **Legation Quarter** (23 Qianmen Dongdajie), a classy cluster of elegantly restored legation buildings, now home to several exclusive restaurants, shops and an art gallery. Back on Dongjiaomin Xiang, the excellent **Police Museum** is at No 36, while the attractive green-roofed, orange brick building further east at No 40 is the stately former **Dutch Legation** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#).

The domed building at 4a Zhengyi Lu, on the corner of Zhengyi Lu U and Dongjiaomin Xiang, is the former **Yokahama Specie Bank**. The grey building at No 19 Dongjiaomin Xiang is the former **French**

**post office**, now housing the low-key Sichuanese restaurant Jingyuan Chuancai. Nearby is the former **French Legation** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) ( Faguo Shiguan Jiuzhi) at No 15.

Backing onto a small school courtyard, the twin spires of the Gothic **St Michael's Church** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Dongjiaominxiang Catholic Church) rise ahead at No 11, facing the green roofs and ornate red brickwork of the former **Belgian Legation** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#).

North along Taijichang Dajie is a brick street sign embedded in the northern wall of Taijichang Toutiao U, carved with the old name of the road, Rue Hart.

## **Beijing Police Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beijing Jingcha Bowuguan; 36 Dongjiaomin Xiang; [Offline map](#); admission ¥5, through ticket ¥20; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Qianmen*) Propaganda-filled it may be, but some riveting exhibits make this museum a fascinating peek into Beijing's police force. Learn how Beijing's first Public Security Bureau college operated from the Dongyue Temple in 1949, and how the Beijing PSB was destroyed during the 'national catastrophe' of the Cultural Revolution. Upstairs gets to grips with morbid crimes and their investigations; for police weapons, head to the 4th floor. The 'through ticket' includes laser shooting practice and a souvenir. The building was once the First National City Bank of New York.

## **Jingshan Park** PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jingshan Gongyuan; [Offline map](#); summer/winter ¥5/2; 🕒 6am-9.30pm; 🚇 Tian'anmen West, then bus 5*) The dominating feature of Jingshan – one of the city's finest parks – is one of central Beijing's few hills; a mound that was created from the earth excavated to make the Forbidden City moat. Called Coal Hill by Westerners during Legation days, Jingshan also serves as a feng shui shield, protecting the palace from evil spirits – or dust storms – from the north. Clamber

to the top for a magnificent panorama of the capital and princely views over the russet roofing of the Forbidden City. On the eastern side of the park a locust tree stands in the place where the last of the Ming emperors, Chongzhen, hung himself as rebels swarmed at the city walls. The rest of the park is one of the best places in Beijing for people watching. Come early to see (or join in with) elderly folk going about their morning routines of dancing, singing, performing taichi or playing keepie-uppies with oversized shuttlecocks. In April and May the park bursts into bloom with fabulously colourful peonies and tulips forming the focal point of a very popular flower fair.

**Alley Coffee** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (cnr of Jingshan Dongjie & Shatan Houjie; ☺ 8.30am-11pm), a cute courtyard cafe near the east gate, makes a decent lunch stop here.

## Zhongshan Park *PARK*

(Zhongshan Gongyuan; [Offline map](#); admission ¥3; ☺ 6am-9pm summer, 6.30am-7pm winter; 🚶 Tian'anmen West) This lovely little park, west of the Gate of Heavenly Peace, has a section hedging up against the Forbidden City moat. Formerly the sacred Ming-style Altar to the God of the Land and the God of Grain (Shijitan), where the emperor offered sacrifices, it's tidy and tranquil and, like Jingshan Park to the north, it bursts into bloom in April and May for its **Spring Flower and Tulips Show** (¥10).

## Workers Cultural Palace *PARK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Laodong Renmin Wenhua Gong; [Offline map](#); admission ¥2; ☺ 6.30am-7.30pm; 🚶 Tian'anmen East) Sounding like a social centre for Leninist labourers, this haven of peace was actually the emperor's premier place of worship, centred on the magnificent **Supreme Temple** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Tai Miao; admission ¥10). The often-overlooked temple halls, cloaked in imperial yellow tiles and hunched over expansive courtyards, are like a mini version of the Forbidden City, only without the crowds.

## Poly Art Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Baoli Yishu Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6500 8117;

[www.polymuseum.com](http://www.polymuseum.com); 9th fl, Poly Plaza, 14 Dongzhimen Nandajie; admission ¥20, audio guide ¥10; 🕒 9.30am-4.30pm; 📍 Dongsishitiao)

This small, but exquisite museum displays a glorious array of ancient bronzes from the Shang and Zhou dynasties, a magnificent high-water mark for bronze production. In an attached room are four of the Western-styled 12 bronze animals plundered with the sacking of the Old Summer Palace ([Click here](#)) that have been acquired by the museum. The last room is populated with a sublime collection of standing bodhisattva statues, most of which date from the Northern Qi, Northern Wei and Tang dynasties.

Those interested in Ming-dynasty architecture should check out the nearby **Imperial Granaries** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Nan Xin Cang).

Nine of the storehouses, dating from 1409, have been lovingly restored. They once contained grain and rice for Beijing's royalty; they now house posh wine bars and members' clubs.

**FREE**

## St Joseph's Church CHURCH

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Dong Tang*; [Offline map](#); 74 Wangfujing Dajie; 🕒 6.30-7am Mon-Sat,

to 8am Sun; 📍 Dengshikou) A crowning edifice on Wangfujing Dajie, and one of Beijing's four principal churches, St Joseph's was originally built during the reign of Shunzhi in 1655, but was damaged by an earthquake in 1720 and reconstructed. The luckless church also caught fire in 1807, was destroyed again in 1900 during the Boxer Rebellion and restored in 1904, only to be shut in 1966. Now fully repaired, the church is a testament to the long history of Christianity in China. A large piazza in front swarms with children playing, elderly folk resting and newlyweds posing for photographs. Mass is held in Chinese at 6.30am and 7am from Monday to Saturday, and at 6.15am, 7am and 8am on Sundays. An English version is held every Sunday at 4pm.

## Ancient Observatory HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Gu Guanxiangtai*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥20; ☎ 9.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚶 *Jianguomen*) This unusual former observatory is mounted on the battlements of a watchtower lying along the line of the old Ming City Wall and originally dates back to Kublai Khan's days, when it lay north of the present site. Khan, like later Ming and Qing emperors, relied heavily on astrologers to plan military endeavours. The present observatory – the only surviving example of several constructed during the Jin, Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties – was built between 1437 and 1446 to facilitate both astrological predictions and seafaring navigation.

## REDEVELOPMENT PLANS

In late 2012 controversial plans to redevelop the *hutong*-rich area around the Drum and Bell Towers looked like they were back on the table. At press time it was not clear if, when and how much of the area might be demolished.

Clamber the steps to the roof of the watchtower to admire a mind-boggling array of Jesuit-designed astronomical instruments, embellished with sculptured bronze dragons and other particularly Chinese flourishes – a kind of East meets West astronomical fusion.

## **FREE** China Art Museum ART GALLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Zhongguo Meishuguan*; [Offline map](#); 1 Wusi Dajie; ☎ 9am-5pm, last entry 4pm; 🚶 *Chinese Museum of Art*) This revamped museum has received a shot of imagination and flair, with absorbing exhibitions from home and abroad. For something more cutting edge, though, consider a trip to 798 Art District ([Offline map](#)). Lifts allow for wheelchair access. Note, you must bring your passport along to gain entry.

## Drum Tower & Dōngchéng North



## Drum Tower & Dongcheng North

### Sights

- 1 [Bell Tower](#) A4
- 2 [Confucius Temple & Imperial College](#) D4
- 3 [Drum Tower](#) A5
- 4 [Lama Temple](#) E3
- 5 [Nanluogu Xiang](#) B6

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 6 [Black Sesame Kitchen](#) B5
- 7 [Culture Yard](#) E5
- 8 [Ditan Sports Centre](#) C2
- 9 [Natooke](#) D3
- 10 [Qingnian Hu Park Swimming Pool](#) B2
- 11 [The Hutong](#) E5

## Sleeping

- 12 [Beijing Downtown Backpackers](#) B5
- 13 [Beijing P-Loft Youth Hostel](#) E3
- 14 [Courtyard 7](#) B5
- 15 [DuGe](#) C5
- 16 [Peking Youth Hostel](#) B6
- 17 [The Orchid](#) B4

## Eating

- 18 [Bǎihe Vegetarian Restaurant](#) F4
- 19 [Dalǐ Courtyard](#) C4
- 20 [Jin Ding Xuan](#) D2
- 21 [Qi Shan Mian](#) E4
- 22 [Rong Tian Sheep Spine](#) B4
- 23 [Tan Hua Lamb BBQ](#) E4
- 24 [Veggie Table](#) D3
- 25 [Vineyard Cafe](#) D3
- 26 [Xinmin Food Market](#) A3
- 27 [Yang Fang Lamb Hotpot](#) B5
- 28 [Yaoji Chǎogan](#) A5

## Drinking

- 29 [12SQM](#) B6
- 30 [46 Fangjia Hutong](#) D4
- 31 [Ball House](#) A4
- 32 [Cafe Confucius](#) D4
- 33 [Courtyard No 28](#) E4
- 34 [Drum & Bell](#) A4
- 35 [El Nido](#) D4
- 36 [Great Leap Brewing](#) B5
- 37 [If](#) B4
- 38 [Irresistible Cafe](#) B6



[39 Mao Mao Chong](#) C6

[40 Passby Bar](#) B6

[41 Reef Bar](#) B5

[Sculpting in Time](#) (see 44)

[42 Xiāoxin's Cafe](#) B6

## ★ Entertainment

[43 Jiang Hu](#) C6

[44 Jiang Jin Jiu](#) A5

[45 MAO Livehouse](#) C5

[46 Penghao Theatre](#) C5

[47 Yugong Yishan](#) D6

## 🔒 Shopping

[48 Ruifuxiang](#) A5

[49 Tian Yi Goods Market](#) A6

## Information

[50 Cycle Rickshaw tours ticket office](#) A4

# DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH

## Drum Tower *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Gulou*; [Offline map](#); *Gulou Dongdajie*; admission ¥20, both towers through ticket ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm, last tickets 4.40pm; 📍 *Shichahai or Gulou Dajie*) Along with the older-looking Bell Tower, which stands behind it, the magnificent red-painted Drum Tower used to be the city's official timekeeper, with drums and bells beaten and rung to mark the times of the day; effectively the Big Ben of Beijing.

Originally built in 1272, the Drum Tower was once the heart of the Mongol capital of Dadu, as Beijing was then known. That structure was destroyed in a fire before a replacement was built, slightly to the east of the original location, in 1420. The current structure is a Qing-dynasty version of that 1420 tower.

You can climb the steep inner staircase for views of the grey-tiled rooftops in the surrounding *hutong* alleys. But, you can't view the Bell Tower as the north-facing balcony has been closed. It's well worth climbing the tower, though, especially if you can time it to coincide with one of the regular drumming performances, which are played out on reproductions of the 25 Ming-dynasty watch drums, which used to sound out across this part of the city. One of the original 25 drums, the **Night Watchman's Drum** ( Genggu), is also on display; dusty, battered and worn. Also on display is a replica of a Song-dynasty water clock, which was never actually used in the tower, but is interesting nonetheless.

The times of the **drumming performances**, which only last for a few minutes, are posted by the ticket office. At the time of research they were: 9.30am, 10.30am, 11.30am, 1.30pm, 2.30pm, 3.30pm and 4.45pm.

## **Bell Tower** *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhonglou; [Offline map](#); Gulou Dongdajie; admission ¥20, both towers through ticket ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm, last tickets 4.40pm; 🚶 Shichahai or Gulou Dajie) The more modest, grey-stone structure of the Bell Tower is arguably more charming than the resplendent Drum Tower, after which this area of Beijing is named.

Along with the Drum Tower's drums, the bells in the Bell Tower were used as Beijing's official timekeepers throughout the Yuan, Ming and Qing Dynasties, and until 1924. The Bell Tower looks older, perhaps because it isn't painted, but both are of similar age.

The Bell Tower can also be climbed, up an incredibly steep inner staircase (take care), but the views from the top are even better here, partly because the structure is set back more deeply into the surrounding *hutong*, and partly because you can view the Drum Tower from the balcony. Marvel too at the huge, **63-tonne bell** that is suspended in the pleasantly unrestored interior. Note how Chinese bells have no clappers but are instead struck with a stout pole.

The **Drum & Bell Square**, which lies between the two towers, is a great people-watching space, especially during the evening when

locals congregate for formation dancing. There is a handful of excellent bars and cafes here too, some with rooftop views over the square. Both towers are lit up beautifully come evening.

## Lama Temple *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yonghe Gong*; [Offline map](#); 28 Yonghegong Dajie; admission ¥25, English audioguide ¥50; 🕒 9am-4.30pm; 📍 Yonghegong-Lama Temple) This exceptional temple is a glittering attraction in Beijing's Buddhist firmament. If you only have time for one temple (the Temple of Heaven isn't really a temple) make it this one, where riveting roofs, fabulous frescoes, magnificent decorative arches, tapestries, eye-popping carpentry, Tibetan prayer wheels, Tantric statues and a superb pair of Chinese lions mingle with dense clouds of incense.

The most renowned Tibetan Buddhist temple outside Tibet, the Lama Temple was converted to a lamasery in 1744 after serving as the former residence of Emperor Yong Zheng. Today the temple is an active place of worship, attracting pilgrims from afar, some of whom prostrate themselves in submission at full length within its halls.

Resplendent within the **Hall of the Wheel of the Law** (Falun Dian), the fourth hall you reach from the entrance, is a substantial bronze statue of a benign and smiling Tsong Khapa (1357–1419), founder of the Gelugpa or Yellow Hat sect, robed in yellow and illuminated by a skylight.

The fifth hall, the **Wanfu Pavilion** (Wanfu Ge), houses a magnificent 18m-high statue of the Maitreya Buddha in his Tibetan form, clothed in yellow satin and reputedly sculpted from a single block of sandalwood. Each of the Bodhisattva's toes is the size of a pillow. Behind the statue is the Vault of Avalokiteshvara, from where a diminutive and blue-faced statue of Guanyin peeks out. The Wanfu Pavilion is linked by an overhead walkway to the Yansui Pavilion (Yansui Ge), which encloses a huge lotus flower that revolves to reveal an effigy of the Longevity Buddha.

Don't miss the collection of bronze Tibetan Buddhist statues within the **Jietai Lou**, a small side hall. Most effigies date from the Qing dynasty, from languorous renditions of Green Tara and White Tara to

exotic, Tantric pieces (such as Samvara) and figurines of the fierce-looking Mahakala. Also peruse the collection of Tibetan Buddhist ornaments within the **Banchan Lou**, another side hall, where an array of *dorje* (Tibetan sceptres), mandalas and Tantric figures are displayed along with an impressive selection of ceremonial robes in silk and satin.

The street outside the temple entrance heaves with shops piled high with statues of Buddha, talismans, Buddhist charms, incense and keepsakes, picked over by a constant stream of pilgrims.

## BEIJING MUSEUM PASS

If you're staying in the capital for a while, the Beijing Museum Pass (Bowuguan Tongpiao) is a great investment that will save you both money and queuing for tickets. For ¥120 you get either complimentary access or discounted admission (typically 50%) to 65 museums, temples and tourist sights in and around Beijing. Attractions covered include the **Great Wall at Badaling** ([Click here](#)), **Front Gate** ([Click here](#)), the **Drum Tower**, the **Bell Tower**, the **Confucius Temple** ([Click here](#)), the **Botanic Gardens** ([Click here](#)), the **Beijing Railway Museum** ([Click here](#)) and **Dongyue Temple** ([Click here](#)). Not all museums are worth visiting, but many are, and you only have to visit a small selection to get your money back. The pass comes in the form of a booklet (Chinese with minimal English), valid from 1 January to 31 December in any one year. The pass, which is harder to obtain as the year goes on, can be picked up from participating museums and sights, from some post offices or, most easily, from the huge bookstore known as **Beijing Books Building** ([Offline map](#)) [Google map](#) (*Xidan Tushu Dasha; 17 Xichang'an Jie 17* 🕒 9am-9pm; 📍 Xidan). Go to the service desk to your far right as you enter the bookstore.

The scheme has a website ([www.bowuguan.bj.cn](http://www.bowuguan.bj.cn)), but it's in Chinese only, as is the phone service (☎ 6222 3793).

## Confucius Temple & Imperial College CONFUCIAN TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Kong Miao; [Offline map](#); 13 Guozijian Jie; admission ¥20, audio guide ¥30; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm; 📍 Yonghegong-Lama Temple*) An incense stick's toss away from the Lama Temple, the desiccated Confucius Temple had a pre-Olympics spruce up that failed to shift its indelible sense of otherworldly detachment. Like all Confucian shrines, China's

second-largest Confucian temple feels rather like a mausoleum, so expect peace and quiet. Some of Beijing's last remaining *pailou* (decorative archways) survive in the *hutong* outside (Guozijian Jie) while antediluvian *bixi* (tortoise-like dragons) glare inscrutably from repainted pavilions. Lumpy and ossified ancient cypresses claw stiffly at the sky, while at the rear a 'stone' forest of 190 stelae (upright slabs etched with figures or inscriptions) records the 13 Confucian classics in 630,000 Chinese characters.

A footnote lies unrecorded behind the tourist blurb. Beijing writer Lao She was brought here in August 1966, forced to his knees in front of a bonfire of Beijing opera costumes to confess his 'antirevolutionary crimes', and beaten. The much-loved writer drowned himself the next day in Taiping Lake.

Next to the Confucius Temple, but within the same grounds, is the **Imperial College** ( Guozijian), where the emperor expounded the Confucian classics to an audience of thousands of kneeling students, professors and court officials – an annual rite. Built by the grandson of Kublai Khan in 1306, the former college was the supreme academy during the Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties. On the site is a marvellous glazed, three-gated, single-eaved decorative archway. The Biyong Hall beyond is a twin-roofed structure with yellow tiles surrounded by a moat and topped with a shimmering gold knob.

The surrounding streets and *hutong* are ideal for browsing, harbouring a charming selection of cafes and boutique shops.

## **Nanluogu Xiang** HISTORIC STREET

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#) ) Once neglected and ramshackle, strewn with spent coal briquettes in winter and silent except for the hacking coughs of shuffling old-timers and the jangling of bicycle bells, the funky north-south alleyway of Nanluogu Xiang (literally 'South Gong and Drum Alley', and roughly pronounced 'nan-law-goo-syang') has been undergoing evolution since 1999 when **Passby Bar** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) (at No 108) first threw open its doors, and it was the subject of a complete makeover in 2006. Today, the alley is an insatiably bubbly strip of bars, wi-fi cafes, restaurants, courtyard hotels and

trendy shops. Don't miss exploring the quieter alleys, which fan out from the main lane and house Qing-dynasty courtyards as well as hidden cafes, restaurants and bars. Our Hutong Walking Tour ([Click here](#)) can help here. See our Sleeping section ([Click here](#)) for recommendations on how to make this historic area your home while in Beijing.



**START** **S** NANLUOGU XIANG  
**FINISH** DRUM & BELL TOWERS  
**DISTANCE** 2KM  
**DURATION** ONE HOUR

## Walking Tour: Hutong

This easy tour explores some of the historic alleyways that branch off Beijing's most famous *hutong*, Nanluogu Xiang.

Exit Nanluoguxiang subway station and turn right into Chaodou Hutong U. Starting at No 77, the next few courtyards once made up the **1 former mansion of Seng Gelinqin**, a Qing-dynasty army general. Note the enormous *baogushi* (drum stones) at the entranceway to No 77, followed by more impressive gateways at Nos 75, 69, 67 and 63. After No 53 turn left up an unmarked winding alleyway before turning left onto Banchang Hutong U.

At No 19, turn right through a **2 hallway gate**, a connecting passageway leading to Dongmianhua Hutong U. Turn right here, then left down an unnamed alley, signposted to Penghao Theatre Cafe.

Turn left onto Beibingmasi Hutong U and continue across Nanluogu Xiang into particularly historic **3 Mao'er Hutong** U. Stop for a drink at Irresistible Cafe or just admire the entranceways to the charming old courtyards at Nos 5 and 11; both worth a peek if the gates are open. Further on, No 37 was the **4 former home of Wan Rong**, who would later marry China's last emperor Puyi.

Next, turn right down Doujiao Hutong U and wind your way to Fangzhuanchang Hutong U then Nanxia-wazi Hutong U. Just before the end turn right onto Qiangulouyan Hutong U, then immediately left down Hougulouyuan Hutong U and work your way north to busy Guloudong Dajie U. Turn left here and then, just before you reach the imperious red-painted **5 Drum Tower**, turn right into Caochang Hutong U. Continue down the lane beside Sea View Cafe, then take the second left, where you'll see the magnificent grey-brick **6 Bell Tower** in front of you. Follow this wonderfully winding alley to the back of the Bell Tower then walk around the tower to **7 Drum & Bell Square**, a great place for people-watching, where you can end your walk with a drink on the rooftop terrace at **8 Drum & Bell**.

## Wudaoying Hutong *STREET*

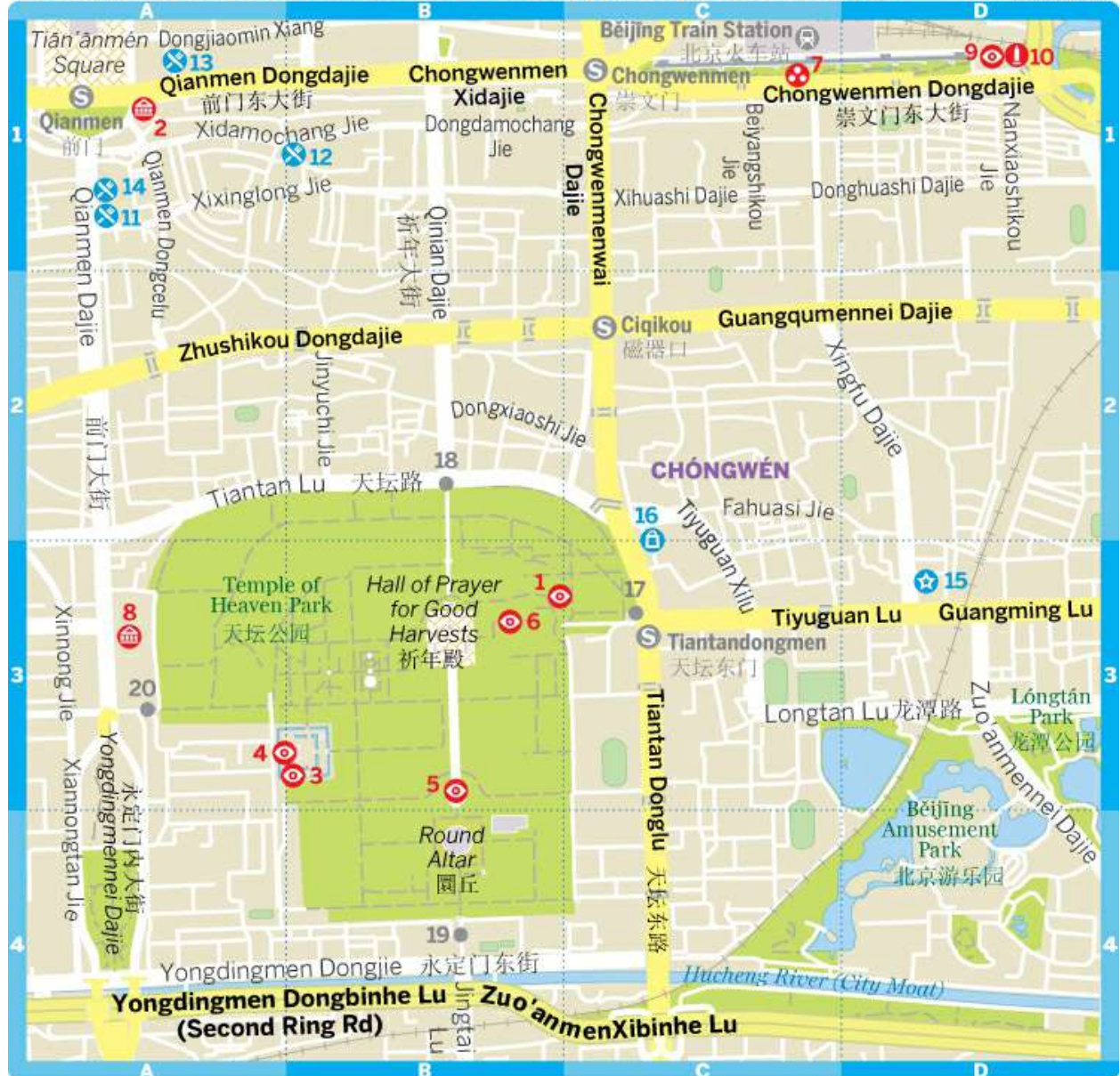
([Offline map](#); **5 Yonghegong Lama Temple**) Following the huge success of the Nanluogu Xiang renovation project, Wudaoying Hutong was given a massive facelift a couple of years back, and this once-residential back-alley is now another wannabe trendy lane packed with wi-fi cafes, cute restaurants, boutique shops and a couple of bars. It's nowhere near as popular, or historic as Nanluogu Xiang, but there are some decent places worth visiting; namely Veggie Table ([Click here](#)), Beijing's first vegan restaurant, **Natooke** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#)) (at No 19-1), the capital's coolest bike shop, and **Vineyard Cafe** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#)) (at No 31), every expat's favourite brunch stop.

## Ditan Park *PARK*

( *Ditan Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#); *park admission* ¥2, *altar* ¥5; ☀ 6am-9pm; 🚶 *Yonghegong-Lama Temple*) Directly north of the Lama Temple, but cosmologically juxtaposed with the likes of Temple of Heaven Park and Ritan Park ([Click here](#)), Ditan is the Temple of the Earth. The park, site of imperial sacrifices to the Earth God, lacks the splendour of Temple of Heaven Park but is a popular spot for kite-flying, badminton and morning exercises, and is certainly worth a stroll if you've just been to nearby Lama Temple. During Chinese New Year a huge temple fair is held here. The park's large **altar** (*fangze tan*) is square in shape, symbolising the earth.



## Temple of Heaven Park & Dōngchéng South



## Temple of Heaven Park & Dongcheng South

 Sights

- 1 [Animal Killing Pavilion](#) B3
- 2 [Beijing Railway Museum](#) A1
- 3 [Divine Music Administration](#) B3
- 4 [Fasting Palace](#) A3
- 5 [Imperial Vault of Heaven](#) B3
- 6 [Long Corridor](#) B3
- 7 [Ming City Wall Ruins Park](#) C1
- 8 [Natural History Museum](#) A3
- 9 [Red Gate Gallery](#) D1
- 10 [Southeast Corner Watchtower](#) D1

### Eating

- 11 [Duyichu](#) A1
- 12 [Liqun Roast Duck Restaurant](#) B1
- 13 [Lost Heaven](#) A1
- 14 [Qianmen Quanjude Roast Duck Restaurant](#) A1

### Entertainment

- 15 [Red Theatre](#) D3

### Shopping

- 16 [Hongqiao \(Pearl\) Market](#) C2

### Information

- 17 [Temple of Heaven East Gate](#) C3
- 18 [Temple of Heaven North Gate](#) B2
- 19 [Temple of Heaven South Gate](#) B4
- 20 [Temple of Heaven West Gate](#) A3

## TEMPLE OF HEAVEN PARK & DONGCHENG SOUTH

### Temple of Heaven Park *PARK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Tiantan Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#); *Tiantan Donglu*; admission park/through ticket ¥15/35, audio tour available at each gate ¥40; 🕒)

*park 6am-9pm, sights 8am-6pm; 5 Tiantandongmen*) A tranquil oasis of peace and methodical Confucian design in one of China's busiest urban landscapes, the 267-hectare Temple of Heaven Park is encompassed by a long wall with a gate at each compass point. Although not strictly speaking a temple – the Chinese name means 'Altar of Heaven', so don't expect burning incense or worshippers – it originally served as a vast stage for solemn rites performed by the Son of Heaven (a title bestowed on the emperor of the time), who prayed here for good harvests and sought divine clearance and atonement.

The arrangement is typical of Chinese parks, with the imperfections, bumps and wild irregularities of nature largely deleted and the harmonising hand of man accentuated in obsessively straight lines and regular arrangements. This effect is magnified by Confucian objectives, where the human intellect is imposed on the natural world, fashioning order and symmetry. The resulting balance and harmony have an almost haunting – but slightly claustrophobic – beauty. Police whir about in electric buggies as visitors stroll among old buildings, groves of ancient trees and birdsong. Around 4000 ancient, knotted cypresses (some 800 years old, their branches propped up on poles) poke towards the Beijing skies within the grounds.

Seen from above, the temple halls are round and the bases square, in accordance with the notion 'Tianyuan Difang' U – 'Heaven is round, Earth is square'. Also observe that the northern rim of the park is semicircular, while its southern end is square. The traditional approach to the temple was from the south, via **Zhaoheng Gate** (Zhaoheng Men); the north gate is an architectural afterthought.

### **Central Structures**

The highlight of the park, and an icon of Beijing in its own right, is the **Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests** (*Qinian Dian*; admission ¥20), an astonishing structure with a triple-eaved purplish-blue umbrella roof mounted on a three-tiered marble terrace. The wooden pillars (made from Oregon fir) support the ceiling without nails or cement – for a building 38m high and 30m in diameter, that's quite an accomplishment. Embedded in the ceiling is a carved dragon, a

symbol of the emperor. Built in 1420, the hall was reduced to carbon after being zapped by a lightning bolt during the reign of Guangxu in 1889; a faithful reproduction based on Ming architectural methods was erected the following year.

Continuing south along an elevated imperial pathway, you soon reach the octagonal **Imperial Vault of Heaven** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Huang Qiongyu), which was erected at the same time as the Round Altar, but with its shape echoing the lines of the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests. The hall contained tablets of the emperor's ancestors, employed during winter solstice ceremonies.

Wrapped around the Imperial Vault of Heaven is **Echo Wall** (*Huiyinbi*; admission ¥20). A whisper can travel clearly from one end to your friend's ear at the other – unless a cacophonous tour group joins in (get here early for this one).

Immediately south of Echo Wall, the 5m-high **Round Altar** (*Yuanqiu*; admission ¥20) was constructed in 1530 and rebuilt in 1740. Consisting of white marble arrayed in three tiers, its geometry revolves around the imperial number nine. Odd numbers possess heavenly significance, with nine the largest single-digit odd number. Symbolising heaven, the top tier is a huge mosaic of nine rings, each composed of multiples of nine stones, so that the ninth ring equals 81 stones. The stairs and balustrades are similarly presented in multiples of nine. Sounds generated from the centre of the upper terrace undergo amplification from the marble balustrades (the acoustics can get noisy when crowds join in).

### **Other Notable Structures**

Off to the eastern side of the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests, and with a green-tiled tow-tier roof, the **Animal Killing Pavilion** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Zaisheng Ting) was the venue for the slaughter of sacrificial oxen, sheep, deer and other animals. Today it stands locked and passive but can be admired from the outside. Stretching out from here runs a **Long Corridor** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Changlang), where locals sit out and deal cards, listen to the radio, play keyboards, practise Beijing opera, try dance moves and kick hacky-sacks. Just north of here is a large and very popular exercise park.

In the west of the park, sacrificial music was rehearsed at the [Divine Music Administration](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Shenyue Shu), while wild cats inhabit the dry moat of the green-tiled [Fasting Palace](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) .

## BEIJING CITY WALLS

Had they been preserved – or even partially protected, Nanjing-style – rather than almost entirely obliterated in the ideological 1950s and '60s, Beijing's mighty city walls and imposing gates would rank among China's top sights. Their loss is visceral, for they were once a central part of Beijing's identity and the city's geographic rationale owed so much to their existence. Many Beijingers over the age of 50 lament their destruction in the same way they might deplore the devastation of Beijing's *hutong*. A disparate collection of original gates (Front Gate, Deshengmen, the Gate of Heavenly Peace) survive and the occasional portal, such as Yongding Men, has been rebuilt, but otherwise the lion's share of Beijing's grand gates is at one with Nineveh and Tyre.

An epitaph for the city walls, the [Ming City Wall Ruins Park](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Ming Chengqiang Yizhi Gongyuan; Chongwenmen Dongdajie*; [Offline map](#); admission free; 🕒 24hr; 🚶 Chongwenmen;) runs next to a section of the Ming inner-city wall along the entire length of the northern flank of Chongwenmen Dongdajie. The part-restored wall stretches for around 2km, rising to a height of around 15m and interrupted every 80m with *dun tai* (buttresses), which extend south from the wall.

The park extends from the former site of Chongwen Men (one of the nine gates of the inner city wall) to the [Southeast Corner Watchtower](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Dongnan Jiaolou; Dongbianmen*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥10; 🕒 8am-5.30pm; 🚶 *Jianguomen or Chongwenmen*);. Its green-tiled, twin-eaved roof rising up imperiously, this splendid Ming-dynasty fortification is punctured with 144 archer's windows. The highly impressive interior has some staggering carpentry: huge red pillars surge upwards, topped with solid beams. On the 1st floor is the superb [Red Gate Gallery](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Hongmen Hualang*; [www.redgategallery.com](http://www.redgategallery.com); admission free; 🕒 10am-5pm); say you are visiting the Red Gate Gallery and the ¥10 entry fee to the watchtower is waived. An exhibition on the 2nd floor details the history of Beijing's city gates and includes some fascinating old photographs.

Humble counterpart of the Southeast Corner Watchtower, the [Southwest Corner Watchtower](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Xibianmen Jiaolou*; [Offline map](#)) is not as impressive as its famous sibling, but you can climb up onto a section of the old city wall amid the roaring traffic.

In an excavated pit on Beiheyuan Dajie, east of the Forbidden City, sits a pitiful stump – all that remains of the magnificent [Dong'an Men](#), the east gate of the Imperial City. The remains are located in the [Imperial Wall Foundation Ruins Park](#), a slender strip of park

following the footprint of the eastern side of the vanished Imperial City Wall.

## Beijing Railway Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beijing Tielu Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6705 1638; 2A Qianmen Dongdajie 2A admission ¥20; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚉 Qianmen) Located in the historic former Qianmen Railway Station, which once connected Beijing to Tianjin, this museum offers an engaging history of the development of the capital and China's railway system, with plenty of photos and models. Its size, though, means it doesn't have many actual trains. But there is a life-size model of the cab of one of China's new high-speed trains which you can clamber into (¥10). Hard-core trainspotters should make tracks for the [China Railway Museum](#) ( *Zhongguo Tiedao Bowuguan*; 📍 6438 1519; Jiuxianqiao North Rd, Chaoyang District 1 ¥20; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun) on the far northeastern outskirts of Beijing, which is vast and has far more loco action.

## Natural History Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Ziran Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); 126 Tianqiao Nandajie; admission ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-5pm Tue-Sun, last tickets 4pm; 🚉 Qianmen or Tiantandongmen) The main entrance hall to the recently restored Natural History Museum is hung with portraits of the great natural historians, including Darwin and Linnaeus. Escort kiddies to the revamped dinosaur hall facing you as you enter, which presents itself with an overarching skeleton of a *Mamenchisaurus jingyanensis* – a vast sauropod that once roamed China – and a much smaller *protoceratops*.

## BEIJING'S HUTONG

Beijing's medieval genotype is most discernible down the city's leafy *hutong* ( narrow

alleyways). The spirit and soul of the city lives and breathes among these charming and ragged lanes where a warm sense of community and hospitality survives. Criss-crossing chunks of Beijing within the Second Ring Rd, the *hutong* link up into a huge and enchanting warren of one-storey dwellings and historic courtyard homes. Hundreds of *hutong* survive but many have been swept aside in Beijing's race to build a modern city. Identified by white plaques, historic homes are protected, but for many others a way of life hangs in a precarious balance.

After Genghis Khan's army reduced the city of Beijing to rubble, the new city was redesigned with *hutong*. By the Qing dynasty more than 2000 such passageways riddled the city, leaping to around 6000 by the 1950s; now the figure has drastically dwindled to somewhere above 1000. Today's *hutong* universe is a hotchpotch of the old and the new: Qing-dynasty courtyards are scarred with socialist-era conversions and outhouses while others have been assiduously rebuilt.

*Hutong* nearly all run east-west so that the main gate faces south, satisfying feng shui (wind/water) requirements. This south-facing aspect guarantees sunshine and protection from negative principles amassing in the north.

Old walled *siheyuan* (courtyards) are the building blocks of this delightful universe. Many are still lived in and hum with activity. From spring to autumn, men collect outside their gates, drinking beer, playing chess, smoking and chewing the fat. Inside, scholar trees soar aloft, providing shade and a nesting ground for birds. Flocks of pigeons whirl through the Beijing skies overhead, bred by locals and housed in coops often buried away within the *hutong*.

More venerable courtyards are fronted by large, thick red doors, outside of which perch either a pair of Chinese lions or drum stones. To savour Beijing's courtyard ambience, down a drink at Irresistible Cafe ([Click here](#)), devour a meal at the Dali Courtyard ([Click here](#)) and sleep it all off at Courtyard 7 ([Click here](#)). Alternatively, follow our leisurely Hutong Walking Tour ([Click here](#)).

Organised tours are easy to find: *hutong* rickshaw riders lurk in packs around the Drum and Bell Square ([Click here](#)) and Qianhai Lake ([Click here](#)), charging between ¥60 and ¥120 per person for a 45-minute or one-hour tour. Alternatively, Bike Beijing ([Click here](#)) does guided cycle tours of *hutong* areas.

## SANLITUN & CHAOYANG

### Dongyue Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dongyue Miao*; [Offline map](#); 141 Chaoyangmenwai Dajie; adult ¥10, with guide ¥40; 🕒 8.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚶 Chaoyangmen)

Dedicated to the Eastern Peak (Tai Shan) of China's five Taoist mountains, the morbid Taoist shrine of Dongyue Temple is an unsettling albeit fascinating experience. With its roots poking deep into

the Yuan dynasty, what's above ground level has been revived with care and investment. Dongyue Temple is an active place of worship where Taoist monks attend to a world entirely at odds with the surrounding glass-and-steel high-rises. Note the temple's fabulous *paifang* (memorial archway) lying to the south, divorced from its shrine by the intervention of the busy main road, Chaoyangmenwai Dajie.

## **FREE** Ritan Park *PARK*

( *Ritan Gongyuan; Ritan Lu*; [Offline map](#); ☀ 6am-9pm; **S**)

*Chaoyangmen*) Meaning 'Altar of the Sun', Ritan (pronounced 'rer-tan') is arguably the most pleasant area to spend time in this part of Beijing. One of a set of imperial parks, which covers each compass point, Ritan dates from 1530 and is the eastern counterpart to the likes of Temple of Heaven ([Click here](#)) and Temple of Earth (Ditan Park; [Click here](#)). The altar is now little more than a raised platform, but the surrounding park is beautifully landscaped and a popular city-centre escape. Activities include dancing, singing, kite flying, rock-climbing (¥30 to ¥50), table tennis and pond fishing (¥5 per hour). Otherwise, just stroll around and enjoy the flora, or head to one of the park's pleasant cafes; the standout one is **Stone Boat** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Shifang Kafei; beer & coffee from ¥25, cocktails from ¥35; ☀ 10am-10pm*), located by a large landscaped pond.

WORTH A TRIP

## 798 ART DISTRICT

A vast area of disused factories built by the East Germans, **798 Art District** (*798 Qi Jiu Ba Yishu Qu*; [Offline map](#)), also known as Da Shanzi U, is Beijing's leading concentration of contemporary art galleries.

The industrial complex celebrates its proletarian roots in the communist heyday of the 1950s via retouched red Maoist slogans decorating gallery interiors and statues of burly, lantern-jawed workers dotting the lanes. The voluminous factory workshops are ideally suited to art galleries that require space for multimedia installations and other ambitious projects.

You could easily spend half a day wandering around the complex. Signboards with



English-language maps on them dot the lanes.

### Galleries

Some are more innovative than others. Highlights include:

**BTAP** (*Ceramics Third St*; ☺ *Tue-Sun*) One of 798's original galleries.

**UCCA** (*798 Rd*) Big-money gallery with exhibition halls, a funky shop and a small cinema screening films (¥15) most days. Thursday is free.

**Pace** (*797 Rd*) Wonderfully large space holding some top-quality exhibitions.

**Galleria Continua** (*just south of 797 Rd*) Another large space; below a towering, hard-to-miss, brick chimney.

### Eating & Drinking

Most places have fresh coffee, free wi-fi, Western food and English menus.

**At Cafe** (*798 Rd*; ☺ *10am-11pm*) 798's first cafe and a popular hangout for artists.

**Timezone 8** (*798 Rd*; ☺ *8.30am-8pm*) Cool cafe attached to the best art bookshop in Beijing.

**Happy Rooster** (*cnr 7 Star Rd & Ceramics First St*; ☺ *9.30am-9pm*) Cheapest decent Chinese restaurant in 798. Has picture menu, plus coffee and wi-fi.

### Getting There & Away

From Exit C of Dongzhimen subway station, take Bus 909 (¥2) for about 6km northeast to Dashanzi Lukou Nan U, where you'll see the big red 798 sign. Buses run until 8.30pm.

A further extensive colony of art galleries can be found around 3km northeast of 798 Art District at **Caochangdi** U. Bus 909 continues here.

## CCTV Building ARCHITECTURE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yangshi Dalou*; [Offline map](#); *32 Dongsanhuan Zhonglu*; 5

*Jintaixizhao*) Shaped like an enormous pair of trousers, and known locally as Da Kucha U, or Big Underpants, the astonishing CCTV Tower is an architect's wet dream. Its overhang (the bum in the pants) seems to defy gravity and is made possible by an unusual engineering design which creates a three-dimensional cranked loop, supported by an irregular grid on its surface. Designed by Rem Koolhaas and Ole Scheeren of OMA, the building is an audacious statement of modernity (despite its nickname) and has created a unique addition to the Beijing skyline.

## Bird's Nest & Water Cube ARCHITECTURE

( *Guojia Tiyu-chang & Guojia Youyong Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#); *Bird's Nest* ¥50; ☺ 9am-5.30pm; *Water Cube* ¥30; ☺ 9am-6.30pm; [S](#) *Olympic Sports Centre*) So quiet and desolate these days, it's hard to imagine that this was the scene of such great sporting exultation in 2008, but such is the fate of most Olympics projects. Squinting in the sun, guards in ill-fitting black combat gear point the occasional group of map-clutching domestic tourists to the signature National Stadium, known colloquially as the Bird's Nest ( *Niaochao*). Occasional events are held here, but it's generally empty. Nevertheless, it's still an iconic piece of architecture, as is the bubble-covered National Aquatics Centre (aka the Water Cube) next door, which is at least being put to some use, now housing Happy Magic Water Park ([Click here](#)).

## China Science & Technology Museum *MUSEUM*

( *Zhongguo Kejiguan*; [Offline map](#); *5 Beichendong Lu* 5 adult/child ¥30/20; ☺ 9.30am-5pm Tue-Sun; [S](#) *South Gate of Forest Park*) About 8km north of the city centre, and a big favourite with kids, this huge facility has an array of hands-on scientific exhibitions, a science playground and state-of-the-art 3D and '4D' cinemas. Walk east from South Gate of Forest Park subway station, then take the second right (10 minutes).

## BEIHAI PARK & XICHENG NORTH

### Beihai Park *PARK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beihai Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#); *admission high/low season* ¥10/5, *through ticket high/low season* ¥20/15; ☺ 6am-9pm, *sights until 5pm*; [S](#) *Xisi or Nanluogu Xiang*) Beihai Park, northwest of the Forbidden City, is largely occupied by the North Sea (*beihai*), a huge lake that freezes in winter and blooms with lotuses in summer. Old folk dance together outside temple halls and come twilight, young couples cuddle on benches. It's a restful place to stroll around, rent a rowing boat in summer and watch calligraphers practising characters on paving slabs with fat brushes and water.

The site is associated with Kublai Khan's palace, Beijing's navel before the arrival of the Forbidden City. All that survives of the Khan's court is a large jar made of green jade in the **Round City** (Tuancheng), near the southern entrance. Also within the Round City is the **Chengguang Hall** (Chengguang Dian), where a white jade statue of Sakyamuni from Myanmar (Burma) can be found, its arm wounded by the allied forces that swarmed through Beijing in 1900 to quash the Boxer Rebellion. At the time of writing, the Round City was closed to visitors.

Attached to the North Sea, the South (Nanhai) and Middle (Zhonghai) Seas to the south lend their name to **Zhongnanhai** (literally 'Middle and South Seas'), the heavily-guarded compound less than a mile south of the park where the Chinese Communist Party's top leadership live.

Topping **Jade Islet** (Qiongdao) on the lake, the 36m-high Tibetan-style **White Dagoba** (Baita) was built in 1651 for a visit by the Dalai Lama, and was rebuilt in 1741. Climb up to the dagoba via the **Yong'an Temple** (Yong'an Si).

**Xitian Fanjing** (Western Paradise), situated on the northern shore of the lake, is a lovely temple (admission to which is included in the park ticket). The nearby **Nine Dragon Screen** (Jiulong Bi), a 5m-high and 27m-long spirit wall, is a glimmering stretch of coloured glazed tiles depicting coiling dragons, similar to its counterpart in the Forbidden City. West, along the shore, is the pleasant **Little Western Heaven** (Xiao Xitian), a further shrine.

## **FREE** **Capital Museum** MUSEUM


(*Zhongguo Shoudu Bowuguan*; ☎ 6337 0491;

[www.capitalmuseum.org.cn](http://www.capitalmuseum.org.cn); 16 Fuxingmenwai Dajie; 🕒 9am-5pm; 📍

*Muxidi*) Behind the riveting good looks of the Capital Museum are some first-rate galleries, including a mesmerising collection of ancient Buddhist statues and a lavish exhibition of Chinese porcelain. There is also an interesting chronological history of Beijing, an exhibition that is dedicated to cultural relics of Peking opera, a fascinating Beijing Folk Customs exhibition, and displays of ancient bronzes, calligraphy and paintings. Bring your passport for free entry. The museum is 400m

east of Muxidi station.

## Houhai Lakes LAKES

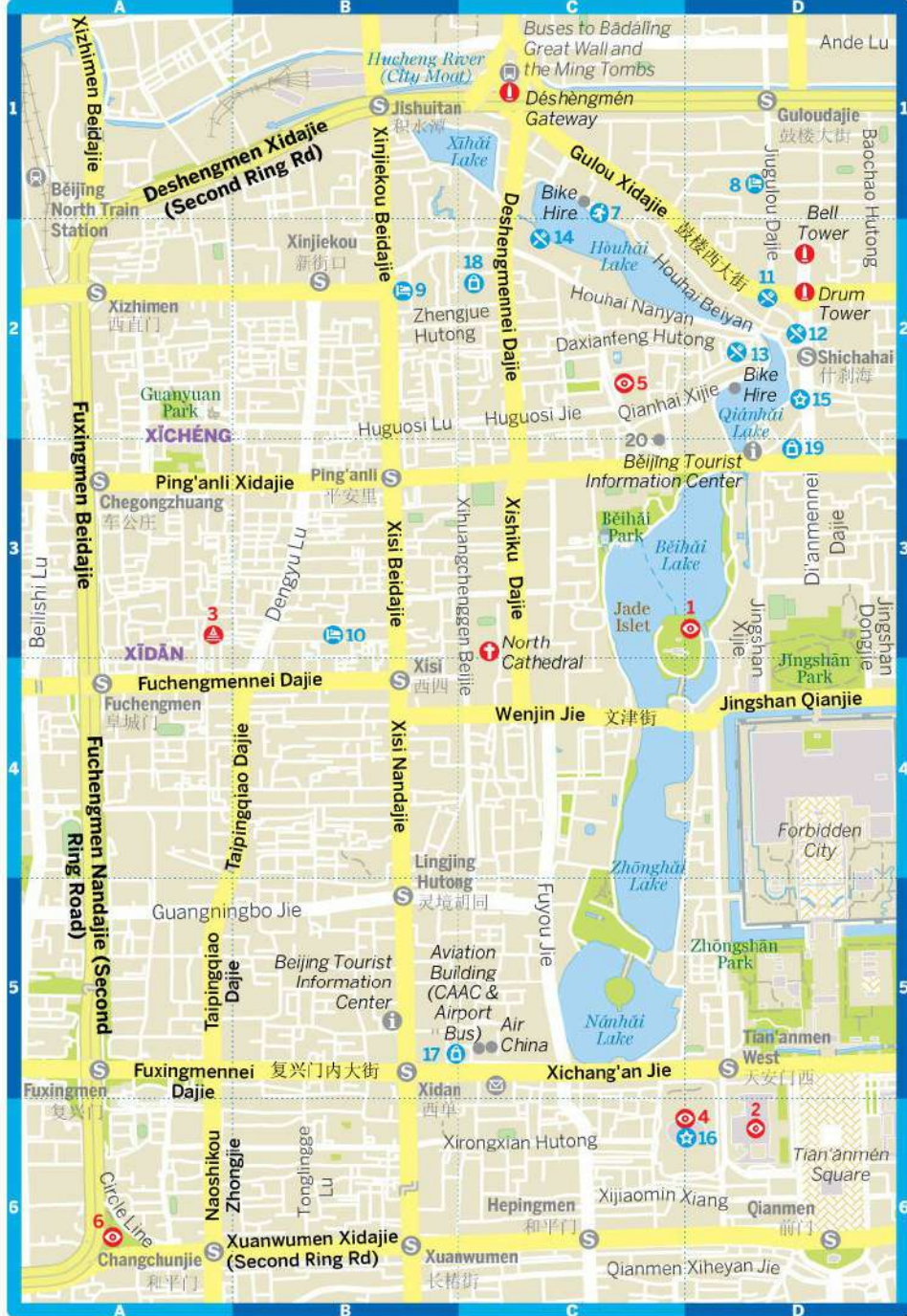
(*Houhai*; [Offline map](#);  *Shichahai, Nanluogu Xiang or Jishuitan*) Also known as Shichahai U but mostly just referred to collectively as 'Houhai', the Houhai Lakes are comprised of three lakes: Qianhai ('Front Lake'), Houhai ('Back Lake') and Xihai ('West Lake'), two of which (Qianhai and Houhai) are linked. They are one of the capital's favourite outdoor spots and provide great people-spotting action.

During the day, people fish, fly kites or just meander along. In the evening, the area turns into one of the more popular nightlife areas, as the restaurants, bars and cafes that surround the lakes spring into life and the lakes become a mass of pedalos circling round and round.

Numerous places by the lakeshores hire out bikes by the hour (¥10 per hour, ¥200 deposit). There are many spots to rent pedalos too (¥80 per hour, ¥300 deposit), if you want to take to the water (some locals swim in the lakes, but we wouldn't advise that).

The lakes look majestic in the winter, when they freeze over and become the best place in Beijing to ice skate. Local vendors appear magically at this time of year, with all the gear you'll need.

# Běihǎi Park & Xìchéng North



**Beihai Park & Xicheng North**

## Sights

- 1 [Beihai Park](#) D3
- 2 [Great Hall of the People](#) D6
- 3 [Miaoying Temple White Dagoba](#) A3
- 4 [National Centre for the Performing Arts](#) D6
- 5 [Prince Gong's Residence](#) C2
- 6 [Southwest Corner Watchtower](#) A6

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 7 [Houhǎi Exercise Ground](#) C1

## Sleeping

- 8 [Drum Tower Youth Hostel](#) D1
- 9 [Red Lantern East Courtyard](#) B2
- 10 [Red Lantern House West Yard](#) B3

## Eating

- 11 [4Corners](#) D2
- 12 [Běipingju](#) D2
- 13 [Hutong Pizza](#) D2
- 14 [Kǒng Yǐjī](#) C2

## Entertainment

- 15 [East Shore Jazz Cafe](#) D2
- [Grand Opera House](#) (see 5)
- 16 [National Centre for the Performing Arts](#) D6

## Shopping

- 17 [Beijing Books Building](#) B5
- 18 [Rundeli Food Market](#) C2
- 19 [Three Stone Kite Shop](#) D3

## Information

- 20 [Cycle Rickshaw tours ticket office](#) C3

**Prince Gong's Residence** *HISTORIC RESIDENCE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Gongwang Fu*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8328 8149; 14 Liuyin Jie; admission ¥40, guided tours incl tea & opera performance ¥70; 🕒 7.30am-4.30pm summer, 8am-4pm winter; 📍 Pinganli or Shichahai) Reputed to be the model for the mansion in Cao Xueqin's 18th-century classic *Dream of the Red Mansions*, this huge courtyard is one of Beijing's largest private residential compounds. If you can, get here ahead of the tour buses and admire the rockeries, plants, pools, pavilions, corridors and elaborately carved gateways. Arrive with the crowds and you won't want to stay. Performances of Beijing opera are held regularly in the Qing-dynasty **Grand Opera House** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Daxi Lou*) in the east of the grounds.

## National Centre for the Performing Arts (NCPA) THEATRE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guojia Dajuyuan*; [Offline map](#); 2 Xichang'an Jie 2 [www.chncpa.org/ens](http://www.chncpa.org/ens); admission ¥40; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 📍 Tian'anmen West) Critics have compared it to an egg, but it looks more like a massive mercury bead, an ultramodern missile silo, or the futuristic lair of a James Bond villain. Sometimes known as the National Grand Theatre, and now one of Beijing's key cultural hubs, the NCPA rises like some huge reflective mushroom nosing up from the ground.

Examine the bulbous interior, including the titanic steel ribbing of interior bolsters (each of the 148 bolsters weighs 8 tonnes). Inside, you can tour the three halls, although individual ones are occasionally shut. Check the website for upcoming performances (tickets ¥80-800).

## Great Hall of the People HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Renmin Dahuitang*; [Offline map](#); adult ¥30, bag deposit ¥5; 🕒 8.30am-3pm; 📍 Tian'anmen West) On the western side of Tian'anmen Sq – on a site previously occupied by Taichang Temple, the Jinyiwei (Ming-dynasty secret service) and the Ministry of Justice – the Great Hall of the People is the venue of the legislature, the National People's

Congress (NPC). The 1959 architecture is monolithic, and a fitting symbol of China's political inertia. The tour parades visitors past a choice of 29 of its lifeless rooms named after the provinces of the Chinese universe. Also here is the 10,000-seat auditorium with the familiar red star embedded in a galaxy of ceiling lights. The Hall is closed to the public when the NPC is in session. The ticket office is down the south side of the building. Bags must be checked in but cameras are admitted.

## Miaoying Temple White Dagoba BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Miaoying Si Baita*; [Offline map](#); 171 Fuchengmennei Dajie; admission ¥20; ☀ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚶 Fuchengmen) Towering over the surrounding *hutong*, the Miaoying Temple slumbers beneath its distinctive chalk-white Yuan-dynasty pagoda, which was being refurbished at the time of writing. The highlight of a visit here is its diverse collection of Buddhist statuary: pop into the **Hall of the Great Enlightened One** (Dajue Baodian), which glitters splendidly with hundreds of Tibetan Buddhist effigies. In other halls reside a four-faced effigy of Guanyin (Goddess of Mercy, and here called Parnashavari), as well as a trinity of the past, present and future Buddhas and a population of bronze *luohan* figures. After you finish here, exit the temple and wander the tangle of local alleyways for earthy shades of *hutong* life.

## White Cloud Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

(*Baiyun Guan*; *Baiyunguan Jie*; admission ¥10; ☀ 8.30am-4.30pm May-Sep, to 4pm Oct-Apr; 🚶 Muxidi) Founded in AD 739, White Cloud Temple is a lively complex of shrines and courtyards, tended by distinctive Taoist monks with their hair twisted into topknots. Today's temple halls principally date from Ming and Qing times.

Near the temple entrance, a queue snakes slowly through the gate for a chance to rub a polished stone carving for good fortune. Drop by the White Cloud Temple during Chinese New Year for a magnificent *miaohui* (temple fair).




To find the temple, walk east from Muxidi subway station on Fuxingmenwai Dajie for 400m and then turn right on Baiyun Lu and walk south until you reach Baiyunguan Jie. Turn left there and the temple is 50m ahead on the left.



## DASHILAR & XICHENG SOUTH

### Dashilar *HISTORIC SHOPPING STREET*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)



(*Dashilan'er*; [Offline map](#);  *Qianmen*) Just west of Qianmen Dajie is this centuries-old shopping street. While it has been given a makeover, which has sadly robbed it of much of its charm, many of the shops are the same ones which have been here for hundreds of years and are well worth a browse for the sometimes esoteric goods – ancient herbal remedies, handmade cloth shoes – they sell.

### Niu Jie Mosque *MOSQUE*

(*Niu Jie Libai Si*; [Offline map](#); 88 Niu Jie; admission ¥10, Muslims free;  8am-sunset;  *Caishikou*) Dating back to the 10th century and lively with worshippers on Fridays (it's closed to non-Muslims at prayer times), Beijing's largest mosque is the centre of the community for the 10,000 or so Hui Chinese Muslims who live nearby. The Chinese-styled mosque is pleasantly decorated with plants and flourishes of Arabic – look out for the main prayer hall (note that only Muslims can enter), women's quarters and the **Building for Observing the Moon** (*Wangyuelou*), from where the lunar calendar was calculated. Remember to dress appropriately (no shorts or short skirts). The mosque is about 1km from Caishikou subway station. Walk west out of the station then turn left down Niu Jie U and the mosque will soon be on your left.

### Fayuan Temple *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Fayuan Si*; 7 *Fayuansi Qianjie*; admission ¥5;  8.30-5pm;  *Caishikou*) With its air of monastic reverence and busy monks, this

bustling temple east of Niu Jie Mosque was originally constructed in the 7th century. Now the China Buddhism College, the temple follows a typical Buddhist layout, but make your way to the fourth hall for its standout copper **Buddha** seated atop four further Buddhas, themselves atop a huge bulb of myriad effigies. Within the Guanyin Hall is a Ming-dynasty Thousand Hand and Thousand Eye Guanyin, while a huge supine Buddha reclines in the rear hall.

## Summer Palace



# Summer Palace

## Sights

- 1 [17-Arch Bridge](#) C3
- 2 [Boathouses](#) B1
- 3 [Buddhist Fragrance Pavilion](#) C1
- 4 [Buddhist Temple of the Sea of Wisdom](#) C1
- 5 [Cloud Dispelling Hall](#) C2
- 6 [Dragon King Temple](#) C3
- 7 [Hall of Benevolence & Longevity](#) D2
- 8 [Long Corridor](#) C1
- 9 [Marble Boat](#) B1
- 10 [Rowing Boat Dock](#) B2

## Sleeping

- 11 [Aman at Summer Palace](#) D1

## SUMMER PALACE & HAIDIAN

### Summer Palace *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yihe Yuan*; 19 *Xinjian Gongmen*; ticket ¥30, through ticket ¥60, audio guide ¥40; 🕒 8:30am-5pm; 🚶 *Xiyuan* or *Beigongmen*) Virtually as mandatory a Beijing sight as the Great Wall or the Forbidden City, this former playground for emperors fleeing the suffocating summer torpor of the old imperial city easily merits an entire day's exploration, although a (high-paced) morning or afternoon may suffice.

The grounds, temples, gardens, pavilions, lakes, bridges, gate-towers and corridors are a marvel of landscaping. Unlike the overpowering flatland of the Forbidden City or the considered harmonies of the Temple of Heaven, the Summer Palace – with its huge lake, hilltop views and energising walks – offers a pastoral escape into the landscapes of traditional Chinese painting.

The domain had long been a royal garden before being considerably enlarged and embellished by Emperor Qianlong in the 18th century. He marshalled a 100,000-strong army of labourers to deepen and expand **Kunming Lake** ( Kunming Hu), and reputedly surveyed imperial navy drills from a hilltop perch.

Anglo-French troops vandalised the palace during the Second Opium War (1856–60). Empress Dowager Cixi launched into a refit in 1888 with money earmarked for a modern navy; the marble boat at the northern edge of the lake was her only nautical, albeit quite unsinkable, concession.

Foreign troops, angered by the Boxer Rebellion, had another go at torching the Summer Palace in 1900, prompting further restoration work. By 1949 the palace had once more fallen into disrepair, eliciting a major overhaul.

Glittering Kunming Lake swallows up three-quarters of the park, overlooked by **Longevity Hill** ( Wanshou Shan). The principal structure is the **Hall of Benevolence and Longevity** ( Renshou Dian; [Offline map](#)), by the east gate, housing a hardwood throne and attached to a courtyard decorated with bronze animals, including the mythical *qilin* (a hybrid animal that only appeared on earth at times of harmony). Unfortunately, the hall is barricaded off so you will have to peer in.

An elegant stretch of woodwork along the northern shore, the **Long Corridor** ( Chang Lang) is trimmed with a plethora of paintings, while the slopes and crest of Longevity Hill behind are adorned with Buddhist temples. Slung out uphill on a north-south axis, the **Buddhist Fragrance Pavilion** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Foxiang Ge) and the **Cloud Dispelling Hall** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Paiyun Dian) are linked by corridors. Crowning the peak is the **Buddhist Temple of the Sea of Wisdom** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zihui Hai), tiled with effigies of Buddha, many with obliterated heads.

Cixi's **marble boat** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Qingyan Chuan) sits immobile on the north shore, south of some fine Qing **boathouses** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Chuan Wu). When the lake is not frozen, you can traverse Kunming Lake by ferry to **South Lake Island** ( Nanhu

Dao), where Cixi went to beseech the **Dragon King Temple**

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Longwang Miao) for rain in times of drought. A graceful **17-arch bridge** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Shiqikong Qiao) spans the 150m to the eastern shore of the lake. In warm weather, **pedal boats** (4-/6-person boat per hr ¥40/60; 🕒 8.30am-4.30pm in summer) are also available from the dock.

Try to do a circuit of the lake along the **West Causeway** (Xidi) to return along the east shore (or vice versa). It gets you away from the crowds, the views are gorgeous and it's a great cardiovascular workout. Based on the Su Causeway in Hangzhou, and lined with willow and mulberry trees, the causeway kicks off just west of the boathouses. With its delightful hump, the grey and white marble **Jade Belt Bridge** (Yudai Qiao) dates from the reign of emperor Qianlong and crosses the point where the Jade River (Yuhe) enters the lake (when it flows).

Towards the North Palace Gate, **Suzhou Street** ( Suzhou Jie) is an entertaining and light-hearted diversion of riverside walkways, shops and eateries, which are designed to mimic the famous Jiangsu canal town.

WORTH A TRIP

## BOTANIC GARDENS

Exploding with blossom in spring, the well-tended **Botanic Gardens** ( *Beijing Zhiwuyuan*; [Offline map](#) ; adult ¥10, through ticket ¥45; 🕒 6am-9pm summer, last entry 7pm, 7am-7pm winter, last entry 5pm; 📍 Xiyuan or Yuanmingyuan, then 🚏 331), set against the backdrop of the Western Hills and about 1km northeast of Fragrant Hills Park, make for a pleasant outing among bamboo fronds, pines, orchids, lilacs and China's most extensive botanic collection. Containing a rainforest house, the standout **Beijing Botanical Gardens Conservatory** (admission with through ticket; 🕒 8.30am-4pm) bursts with 3000 different varieties of plants.

About a 15-minute walk from the front gate (follow the signs), but within the grounds of the gardens, is the **Sleeping Buddha Temple** (*Wofo Si*; adult ¥5, or entry with through ticket; 🕒 8am-5pm). The temple, first built during the Tang dynasty, houses a huge reclining effigy of Sakyamuni weighing 54 tonnes.

On the eastern side of the gardens is the **Cao Xueqin Memorial** (*Cao Xueqin*

*Jianguan*; 39 Zhengbaiqi; admission ¥10, or entry with through ticket; ☺ 8.30am-4.15pm), where Cao Xueqin lived in his latter years. Cao (1715–63) is credited with penning the classic *Dream of the Red Mansions*, a vast and lengthy family saga set in the Qing period. Making a small buzz in the west of the gardens is the little **China Honey Bee Museum** (📍 8.30am-4.30pm Mar-Oct).

## **Old Summer Palace** HISTORIC SITE

(*Yuanming Yuan*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥10, palace ruins ¥25, map ¥6; ☺ 7am-7pm; 📍 *Yuanmingyuan*) Forever etched on China's national consciousness for its sacking and destruction by British and French forces during the Second Opium War, the old Summer Palace was originally laid out in the 12th century. Resourceful Jesuits were later employed by Emperor Qianlong to fashion European-style palaces for the gardens, incorporating elaborate fountains and baroque statuary. During its looting, much went up in flames and considerable booty was sent abroad, but a melancholic tangle of broken columns and marble chunks from the hardier Jesuit-designed stone palace buildings remain.

The subdued marble ruins of the **Palace Buildings Scenic Area** (Xiyanglou Jingqu) can be mulled over in the **Eternal Spring Garden** (Changchun Yuan) in the northeast of the park, near the east gate. There were once over 10 buildings here, designed by Giuseppe Castiglione and Michael Benoist.

The **Great Fountain Ruins** (Dashuifa Yizhi) themselves are considered the best-preserved relics. Built in 1759, the main building was fronted by a lion-head fountain. Standing opposite is the **Guanshuifa** U, five large stone screens embellished with European carvings of military flags, armour, swords and guns. The screens were discovered in the grounds of Peking University in the 1970s and later restored to their original positions.

West of the Great Fountain Ruins are the vestiges of the **Haiyantang Reservoir** (Haiyantang Xushuichi Taiji), where the water for the impressive fountains was stored in a tower and huge water-lifting devices were employed. Also known as the Water Clock, the **Haiyantang**, where 12 bronze human statues with animal heads jetted water in 12 two-hour sequences, was constructed in 1759. The

12 animal heads from this apparatus were distributed among collections abroad, and Beijing is attempting to retrieve them (four animal heads can be seen at the Poly Art Museum ([Click here](#))). Just west of here is the Fangwaiguan, a building turned into a mosque for an Imperial concubine; an artful reproduction of a former labyrinth called the **Garden of Yellow Flowers** ( Migong) is also nearby.

The gardens cover a huge area – some 2.5km from east to west – so be prepared for some walking. Bus 331 goes from the south gate (which is by Exit B of Yuanmingyuan subway station) to the east gate of the **Summer Palace** ([Click here](#)) before continuing to the **Botanic Gardens** ([Click here](#)) and eventually terminating at **Fragrant Hills Park** ([Click here](#)).

## **Great Bell Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( *Dazhong Si*; [Offline map](#); 31a Beisanhuan Xilu; admission ¥20; ☺ 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚶 *Dazhongsi*) Once a shrine where Qing emperors prayed for rain, the temple today is named after its gargantuan Ming-dynasty bell: 6.75m tall and weighing a hefty 46.5 tonnes, the colossal bell was cast in 1406 and is inscribed with Buddhist sutras, comprising more than 227,000 Chinese characters and decorated with Sanskrit incantations. Also on view are copies of the bells and chimes of the Marquis of Zeng and a collection of Buddhist and Taoist bells including *vajra* bells and the wind chimes (*fengling*) that tinkle from temple roofs and pagodas across China. The temple is 500m west of Dazhongsi subway station.

WORTH A TRIP

## **FRAGRANT HILLS PARK**

Easily within striking distance of the Summer Palace are Beijing's Western Hills ( Xi Shan), another former villa-resort of the emperors. The section closest to Beijing is known as Fragrant Hills Park ( *Xiang Shan Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#); summer/winter ¥10/5; ☺ 6am-7.30pm; 🚶 *Xiyuan* or *Yuanmingyuan*, then 🚶 331).

Scramble up the slopes to the top of **Incense-Burner Peak** (Xianglu Feng), or take the **chairlift** (one way/return ¥30/50; ☺ 8.30am-5pm). From the peak there's an all-embracing

view of the countryside, and you can leave the crowds behind by hiking further into the Western Hills. Beijingers flock here in autumn when the maple leaves saturate the hillsides in great splashes of red.

Near the north gate of Fragrant Hills Park, but still within the park, is the excellent **Azure Clouds Temple** (*Biyun Si*; adult ¥10; 🕒 8am-5pm), which dates back to the Yuan dynasty. The **Mountain Gate Hall** contains two vast protective deities: Heng and Ha, beyond which is a small courtyard and the drum and bell towers, leading to a hall with a wonderful statue of Milefo; bronze, but coal-black with age. Only his big toe shines from numerous inquisitive fingers.

The **Sun Yatsen Memorial Hall** contains a statue and a glass coffin donated by the USSR on the death of Mr Sun in 1925. At the very back is the marble **Vajra Throne Pagoda**, where Sun Yatsen was interred after he died, before his body was moved to its final resting place in Nanjing. The **Hall of Arhats** is well worth visiting; it contains 500 *luohan* statues, each crafted with an individual personality.

Southwest of the Azure Clouds Temple is the Tibetan-style **Temple of Brilliance** (Zhao Miao), and not far away is a glazed-tile pagoda. Both survived visits by foreign troops intent on sacking the area in 1860 and 1900.

There are dozens of cheap **restaurants** and snack stalls on the approach road to the north gate of the park, making this your best bet for lunch out of any of the sights in this part of the city.

Note, sometime after 2013, the subway will extend all the way out here, via the Summer Palace and Botanic Gardens.

## Activities

### Cycling

Beijing is flat as a pancake and almost every road has a dedicated cycle lane, meaning cycling is easily the best way to see the city; it's especially fun to explore *hutong* areas by bike. Most hostels rent bikes. There are also bike rental depots around the Houhai Lakes ([Click here](#)). Look out for the new bike-sharing scheme which was about to be unveiled as this book was being researched.

The scheme was only open to Chinese nationals when it launched, but there were plans to open it to foreigners at a later stage. To use the bikes you first needed to get an ordinary travel card ([Click here](#)) which you had to activate for bike rental use. The two most convenient places to activate the cards were Exit A2 of Tiantandongmen station and by Exit A of Dongzhimen station. You could only activate the cards from Monday to Friday (9am to 11am and 2pm to 4pm), but



once activated they could be used any time for renting bikes.

## Bike Beijing CYCLING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Kangduo Zixingche Zulin*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6526 5857; [www.bikebeijing.com](http://www.bikebeijing.com); 34 *Donghuangchenggen Nanjie*; 🕒 9am-7pm; 📍 *China Museum of Art*) Rents a range of good quality bikes (per day ¥50–100) and equipment, and runs guided bike tours around the city and beyond, including trips to the Great Wall. Guides and shop assistants speak English.

## Kite Flying

The quintessential Chinese pastime, kite flying is hugely popular in Beijing. Top spots include the northeast portion of Temple of Heaven Park ([Click here](#)) and the east gate of Ditan Park ([Click here](#)). Note, you are no longer allowed to fly kites in Tian'anmen Square.

## Three Stone Kite Shop KITES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Sanshizhai Fengzheng*; [Offline map](#); 25 *Dianmen Xidajie*; 🕒 9am-9pm; 📍 *Nanluogu Xiang*) Kites by appointment to the former Qing emperors; the great-grandfather of the owner of this friendly store used to make the kites for the Chinese royal family. There's a tremendous selection of handmade, hand-painted kites in all sizes.

## Swimming

Locals swim daily in the **Houhai Lakes** ([Click here](#)) – even in icy midwinter! If that's not clean enough for you, head to the outdoor leisure pools at **Qingnian Hu Park** ( *Qingnianhu Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#) ), **Tuanjiehu Park** ( *Tuanjiehu Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#) ) or **Chaoyang Park** ( *Chaoyang Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#) ) or the indoor pool at **Ditan Sports Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Ditan Tiyuguan*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥30; 🕒 8.30am-3.30pm & 6.30-10pm Mon-Fri, noon-10pm Sat & Sun).

## Happy Magic Water Park SWIMMING

( *Shuilifang Xishui Leyuan*; [Click here](#); Olympic Green, off Beichen Lu; water park entrance adult/child ¥200/160, swimming only ¥50; ☀ 10am-9pm; 🚶 Olympic Green) The 2008 Beijing Olympics National Aquatics Centre, aka the Water Cube, is now China's largest indoor water park.

## Table Tennis

China's national sport can be played all over the capital at free-to-use, outdoor tables in parks, squares and housing estates. If you fancy being on the wrong end of a ping-pong thrashing, head to **Jingshan Table Tennis Park** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#). **Houhai Exercise Ground** ([Offline map](#)) also has tables. Pick up a cheap table tennis bat on the 2nd floor of **Tian Yi Goods Market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Offline map](#)).

## CON 'ARTISTS' & TEA MERCHANTS

Beware pesky 'art students' and English students around Wangfujing Dajie, Tian'anmen Sq and other tourist areas. They drag Western visitors to exhibitions of overpriced art or extortionate tea ceremonies; the latter may cost ¥2000 or more. If approached by over-friendly girls wanting to speak English, refuse to go to a place of their choosing.

## Courses

### Language & Culture

#### Culture Yard CULTURAL PROGRAMMES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Tianjing Yueyang*; [Offline map](#); 📞 8404 4166; [www.cultureyard.net](http://www.cultureyard.net); 10 Shique Hutong 10 ☀ 10am-7pm; 🚶 Beixinqiao) Tucked away down a *hutong*, this cultural centre focuses on language classes (Chinese, English, French, Spanish, Portuguese), including crash-course beginners' Chinese, but also does Chinese culture workshops (tea,

calligraphy, *hutong* photography).

## Martial Arts

### Milun Kungfu School *MARTIAL ARTS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Beijing Milun Chuantong Wushu Xuexiao*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 138 1170 6568; [www.kungfuinchina.com](http://www.kungfuinchina.com); 33 Xitangzi Hutong 33 drop-in rate per class ¥100, 8-class card ¥600; 🕒 7pm-8.30pm Mon & Thu, 5pm-6.30pm Sat & Sun; 📍 *Dengshikou*) Runs classes in various forms of traditional Chinese martial arts (including taichi) from an historic courtyard near Wangfujing shopping district. In summer, typically in August, all classes are held in Ritan Park ([Click here](#)). Class times listed above are for drop-in group classes, but private classes can be arranged. Instruction is in Chinese, but with an English translator.

## Cookery

### Black Sesame Kitchen *COOKERY*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.blacksesamekitchen.com](http://www.blacksesamekitchen.com); ☎ 136 9147 4408; 3 Heizhima Hutong) Runs popular cooking classes with a variety of recipes from across China; just off Nanluogu Xiang.



## THE HUTONG

Hidden down a maze of narrow alleys, [The Hutong](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (☎ 159 0104 6127, [www.thehutong.com](http://www.thehutong.com); 1 Jiudaowan Zhongxiang Hutong, off Shique Hutong 1 🕒 9am-9pm; 📍 *Beixinqiao*) is a highly recommended Chinese-culture centre, run by a group of extremely knowledgeable expats and skilled locals. Classes are held in a peaceful converted courtyard, and focus on three main areas:

**Cookery** (¥250; 🕒 10.30am, 2.30pm & 7pm) Hugely popular, and run three times a day, the focus is on cuisine from around China, but other Asian-cuisine classes are also run. Some classes include trips to a local food market.

**Chinese Tea** (☎ 135 0112 6093; [www.t-journeys.com](http://www.t-journeys.com); tea tasting/tea-market tours ¥160/250) The Hutong's 'Tea Journeys' are a wonderfully accessible way to learn about

this ancient Chinese tradition. They also sell beautifully packaged own-brand teas (¥110–¥180).

**Traditional Chinese Medicine** ( 150 1151 0363; [www.straightbamboo.com](http://www.straightbamboo.com);  8am–6pm Sun–Thu) Run by Alex Tan, an Australian-Chinese TCM expert, classes range from introductions to qi gong, yoga and Taoism as well as to Chinese medicine itself.







### Getting There & Away

Come out of Exit C of Beixinqiao subway station and turn left onto Shique Hutong. Take the second right down the very narrow Jiudaowanxi Xiang U, then take the first left followed by the first right and you'll see The Hutong on your right.

## Sleeping

*Hutong* -rich Dongcheng North is Beijing's most pleasant neighbourhood to stay in, although Dongcheng Central has some great digs too. Dashilar, in Xicheng South, is ground zero for budget backpackers, although there are good hostels throughout the capital.

Frustratingly, some of the very cheapest hotels still do not accept foreigners.

If you want to splash the cash, **Peninsula**   ([www.peninsula.com](http://www.peninsula.com)), **Grand Hyatt**   ([www.beijing.grand.hyatt.com](http://www.beijing.grand.hyatt.com)) and **China World Hotel**   ([www.shangri-la.com](http://www.shangri-la.com)) are three of the city's better five-star options, offering familiar international-standard top-end facilities.

## Dashilar & Xicheng South



## Dashilar & Xicheng South

### Sights

1 [Dashilar](#) D1

2 [Fayuan Temple](#) A3

- 3 Qianmen Decorative Arch D1
- 4 [Zhengyang Gate Arrow Tower](#) D1

### Sleeping

- 5 [Leo Courtyard](#) C2
- 6 [Leo Hostel](#) D2
- 7 [Qianmen Hostel](#) D1
- 8 [Three-Legged Frog Hostel](#) C2

### Entertainment

- 9 [Huguang Guild Hall](#) C3
- 10 [Lao She Teahouse](#) D1
- 11 [Tianqiao Acrobatics Theatre](#) D3

### Shopping

- 12 [Liulichang Xijie](#) C1
- 13 [Ruifuxiang](#) D1





## FORBIDDEN CITY & DONGCHENG CENTRAL

### **Red Capital Residence** COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xinhongzi Kezhan*; [Offline map](#) ; ☎ 8403 5308;

[www.redcapitalclub.com.cn](http://www.redcapitalclub.com.cn); 9 Dongsì Liútiao 9 s/d ¥1150/1500; 

*Zhangzizhonglu*;     ) Dressed up with Liberation-era artefacts and established in a gorgeous Qing-dynasty courtyard, this tiny but unique guest house – owned by American activist and author Laurence Brahm – offers a heady dose of nostalgia for a vanished age. Make your choice from four rooms which, though small, are decked out with paraphernalia that wouldn't look out of place in a museum. Don't miss the unique cigar bar, housed in an underground bomb shelter below the courtyard. There's no sign on the front door; just a number. It also has a sister branch – the Red Capital Ranch – within a 20-acre estate near the Great Wall; see boxed text below.

## City Walls Courtyard HUTONG HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Chengqiang Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6402 7805;

[www.beijingcitywalls.com](http://www.beijingcitywalls.com); 57 Nianzi Hutong 57 8-/4-bed dm

¥100/120, d ¥420; 📍 *Nanluoguxiang*; 📶📶📶) Expensive for a hostel, and staff could do with smiling a bit more often, but this is still an attractive choice because of its peaceful courtyard atmosphere and fabulous *hutong* location – authentically hidden away in one of the city’s most historic areas. The maze-like web of alleyways can be disorientating: from Jingshan Houjie, look for the *hutong* opening just east of Jingshan Table Tennis Park. Walk up the *hutong* and follow it around to the right and then left; the hostel is then on the left-hand side.

## Jingyuan Hotel COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jingyuan Yazhu Binguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6525 9259;

[jyyz2008@yahoo.com.cn](mailto:jyyz2008@yahoo.com.cn); 35 Xitangzi Hutong 35 r with shared

bathroom ¥486, r ¥988-1398; 📍 *Dengshikou*; 📶📶📶) Once the home of the Qing-dynasty painter Pu Jin – a cousin of China’s last emperor Puyi – this peaceful, good-value courtyard hotel is tucked away beside St Joseph’s Church. Rooms are fairly ordinary – like those of a standard midrange Chinese hotel – but are situated around two pleasant courtyards, and come with good discounts. The ones with shared bathrooms were going for ¥298 when we were here, while those with private bathrooms could be had for ¥680. English-language skills are limited.

## Côte Cour COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beijing Yanyue Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6523 3958;

[www.hotelcotecourbj.com](http://www.hotelcotecourbj.com); 70 Yanyue Hutong 70 d ¥1150-2000; 📍

*Dengshikou*; 📶📶📶) With a calm, serene atmosphere and a lovely magnolia courtyard, this 14-room *hutong* hotel makes a charming place to rest your head. Like all courtyard hotels, rooms and

bathrooms are petite, but the decor in some of them is exquisite and there's plenty of space to relax in the courtyard.

## The Emperor BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Huangjia Yizhan Jiudian; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6526 5566;

[www.theemperor.com.cn](http://www.theemperor.com.cn); 33 Qihelou Jie, off Beichizi Dajie 33 r from ¥1000; 📍 Dengshikou; 🚗🌐📶📶) Attempting to capitalise on a majestic position just east of the Forbidden City, the Emperor's lofty ambitions were undermined by height restrictions so upper-floor rooms merely graze the rooftops of the imperial palace. Nonetheless you can't question the excellent feng shui this locale brings. The un-numbered rooms are named after emperors and come with funky, albeit slightly weird fitted furniture with lots of smooth curves and strange cubbyholes. It's quirky, but cool and the views from the rooftop bar are simply imperial.

## Park Plaza HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Beijing Liting Jiudian; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8522 1999;






[www.parkplaza.com/beijingcn](http://www.parkplaza.com/beijingcn); 97 Jinbao Jie 97 d from ¥900; 📍 Dengshikou; 🚗🌐📶📶) A good-value riposte to the overblown top-flight hotels in the area (see the gaudy Legendale across the road for what *not* to do), the Park Plaza is a treasured find. If you can't or don't want to stretch to a five-star hotel, this friendly place has a strong location and a comfortable, modern and well-presented four-star finish. It's hidden away behind its glitzier sister hotel, the excellent [Regent Beijing](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Beijing Lijing Dajiudian; ☎ 8522 1888; [www.regenthotels.com](http://www.regenthotels.com); 99 Jinbao Jie 99 r from ¥1600; 📍 Dengshikou; 🚗🌐📶📶).

## Beijing City Central International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Beijing Chengshi Guoji Qingnian Lushe; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6525 8866, 8511 5050; [www.centralhostel.com](http://www.centralhostel.com); 1 Beijingzhan Xijie 1 4-8 bed dm








¥60, s/d with shared bathroom ¥128/160, d from ¥298-368;  Beijing Railway Station;    ) The first youth hostel you hit after exiting Beijing Train Station, this place is a decent choice if you can't be bothered to lug your heavy rucksack to nicer parts of the city. Rooms are pretty basic, but clean and spacious enough, and there's a large bar-cafe area with free wi-fi, internet terminals, pool tables and Western food.

## ESCAPE TO THE GREAT WALL

As well as the usual accommodation options in our special Great Wall chapter ([Click here](#)), the following luxury digs offer some exclusivity beside more remote parts of China's best-known icon.

### **Commune by the Great Wall** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

(Changcheng Jiaoxia de Gongshe;  8118 1888; [www.communebythegreatwall.com](http://www.communebythegreatwall.com); r from ¥2500;    ) The Commune is seriously expensive but the cantilevered geometric architecture, location and superb panoramas are simply standout. Positioned at the Shuiguan Great Wall, off the Badaling Hwy, the Kempinski-managed Commune may have a proletarian name but the design and presentation are purely for the affluent. Take out another mortgage and treat yourself – this is the ultimate view, with a room. There is a kid's club to boot.

### **Red Capital Ranch** HERITAGE HOTEL \$\$\$

(Xinhongzi Bishushanzhuang;  8403 5308; [www.redcapitalclub.com.cn](http://www.redcapitalclub.com.cn); 28 Xiaguandi Village, Yanqi Town, Huairou County 28 r from ¥1500;    ) Doing its own thing miles from civilisation, Red Capital Ranch is *the* Beijing escapist option. Ten individually styled villas are housed in a Manchurian hunting lodge on a 20-acre estate. If the mountain setting – complete with Great Wall remains running through the estate – doesn't dissolve your stress, the Tibetan Tantric Space Spa will. Free transport is laid on daily from its city-centre sister branch, Red Capital Residence ([Click here](#)).

## DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH



### Peking Youth Hostel HUTONG HOSTEL \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Beiping Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8403 9098; [pekinghostel@yahoo.com.cn](mailto:pekinghostel@yahoo.com.cn); 113 Nanluogu Xiang; 113 dm/tw from ¥120/450; 📍 Nanluoguxiang; 🌐📶📶) Fabulous, flower-filled youth hostel located on trendy Nanluogu Xiang, an historic *hutong* that's been transformed into a lively lane of bars, cafes, restaurants and boutique shops. In keeping with its fashionable location, this is more of a boutique hostel than a backpackers' haven, with a beautifully renovated building including a quaint, country cottage-like restaurant and a wonderful rooftop cafe-bar. All the usual youth hostel services are dished up, though, including bike hire and trips to the Great Wall.



### Courtyard 7 COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Siheyuan Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6406 0777; [www.courtyard7.com](http://www.courtyard7.com); 7 Qiangulou Yuan Hutong, off Nanluogu Xiang; 7 r ¥900-1500; 📍 Nanluoguxiang; 🌐📶📶) Immaculate rooms, decorated in traditional Chinese furniture face on to two, 300-year-old courtyards, which over the years have been home to government ministers, rich merchants and even an army general. Despite the historical narrative, rooms still come with modern comforts such as underfloor heating, broadband internet (but no wi-fi) and cable TV, and the *hutong* location – down a quiet alley, but very close to trendy Nanluogu Xiang – is a winner. Breakfast included.



### DuGe COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Duge Siheyuan Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6406 0686; [www.dugecourtyard.com](http://www.dugecourtyard.com); 26 Qianyuan Ensi Hutong; 26 r ¥1800-2500; 📍 Nanluoguxiang or Beixinqiao; 🌐📶📶) This 19th-century former

residence was originally home to a Qing-dynasty minister but was recently converted by a Belgian–Chinese couple into an exquisite designer courtyard hotel. Each of the six rooms is decorated uniquely with modern and artistic touches blended with overall themes of traditional China. Some of the wood furniture – four-poster beds, decorative Chinese screens – is simply beautiful. Rooms are set around small, romantic, bamboo-lined courtyards. The only downside is that, as with most courtyard hotels, space is at a premium, so rooms are far smaller than you'd expect from similarly priced top-end hotels.



## Beijing Downtown Backpackers HUTONG HOSTEL \$

Offline map

Google map

( Dongtang Kezhan; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8400 2429;

[www.backpackingchina.com](http://www.backpackingchina.com); 85 Nanluogu Xiang; 85 dm/s/tw/tr from ¥75/160/170/270, sq/tr per bed ¥75/85, d ¥150-190, ste ¥300; 📍

Beixinqiao; 📶@📶) A cheaper option than the excellent Peking International Youth Hostel, but still with the same wonderful *hutong* location, Downtown Backpackers is Nanluogu Xiang's original youth hostel and it hasn't forgotten its roots. Rooms are basic, therefore cheap, but are kept clean and tidy, and staff members are fully plugged in to the needs of Western travellers. Rents bikes and runs recommended hiking trips to the Great Wall (¥280) plus a range of other city trips. Rates include breakfast.

## The Orchid COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( Lanhua Binguan; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8404 4818;

[www.theorchidbeijing.com](http://www.theorchidbeijing.com); 65 Baochao Hutong; 65 d ¥700-1200; 📍

Gulou Dajie; 📶@📶) Opened by a Canadian guy and a Tibetan girl, this place may lack the history of other courtyard hotels, but it's been renovated into a beautiful space, with a peaceful courtyard and some rooftop seating with distant views of the Drum and Bell Towers. Rooms are doubles only, and are small, but are tastefully decorated and all come with an Apple TV home entertainment system. Hard to spot, The Orchid is down an unnamed, shoulder-width alleyway

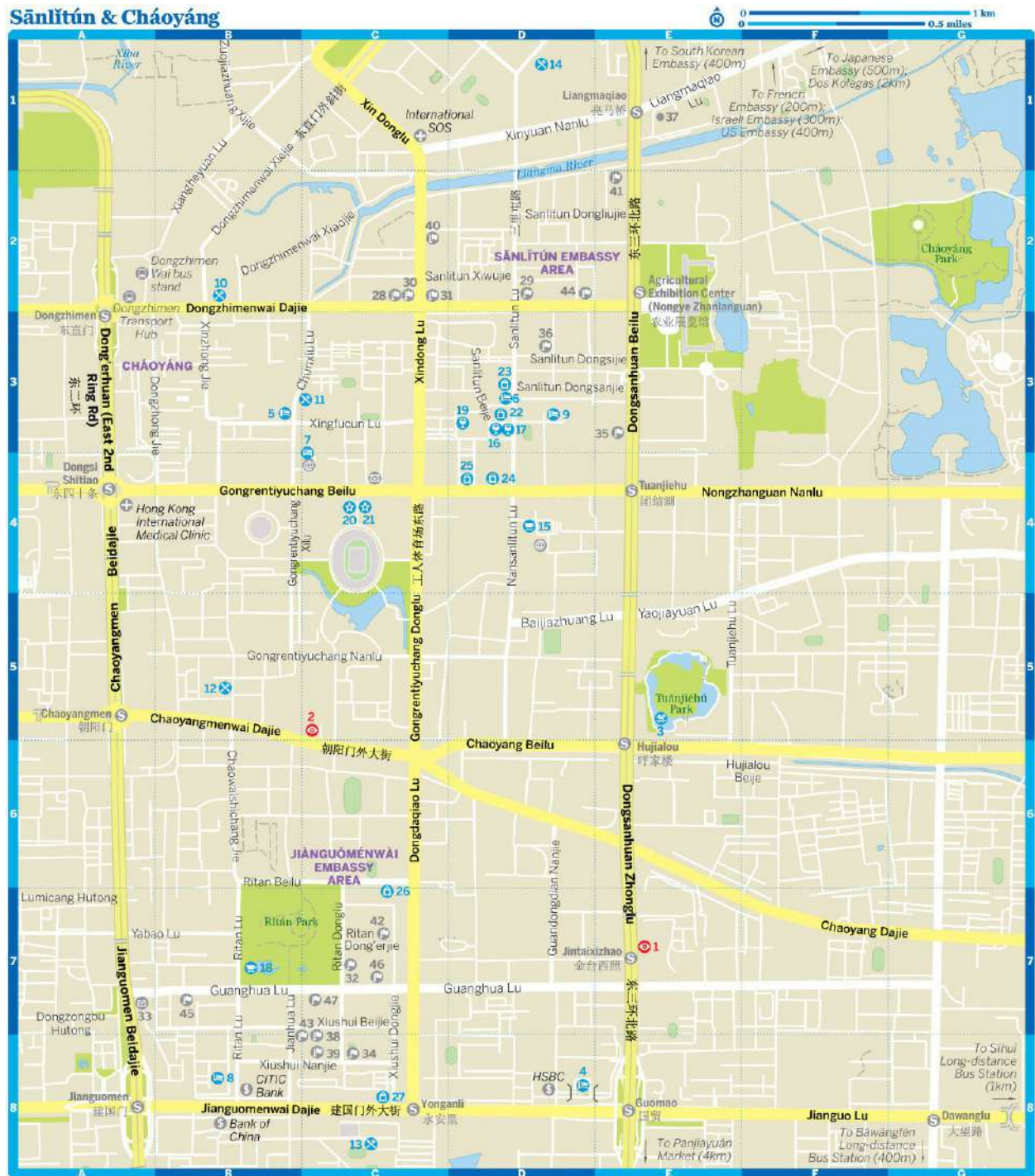
opposite Mr Shi's Dumplings.

## Beijing P-Loft Youth Hostel *HUTONG HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Paoju Gongchang Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6402 7218; [ploft@yahoo.cn](mailto:ploft@yahoo.cn); 29 *Paoju Toutiao*; 29 dm/r from ¥56/195; 📍 *Yonghegong-Lama Temple*; 📶@📶) First an 18th-century artillery factory, then a prison; now a hidden gem of a youth hostel with a distinctly urban feel to it. Embedded in a *hutong* warren behind the Lama Temple, P-Loft seems to be on the fringe of things, but it's only a short meander to the subway system. Dorms are fine, as are the private rooms with en suite, and a degree on anonymity is guaranteed by the hard-to-find-location. Facilities include bar, bike hire and a roomy sports area for table tennis and pool.

## Sānlītún & Cháoyáng



## Sanlitun & Chaoyang

## Sights

- 1 [CCTV Building](#) E7
- 2 [Dongyue Temple](#) C5

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 3 [Tuanjiehu Park swimming pool](#) E5

## Sleeping

- 4 [China World Hotel](#) D8
- 5 [Holiday Inn Express](#) B3
- 6 [Opposite House Hotel](#) D3
- 7 [Sanlitun Youth Hostel](#) C4
- 8 [St Regis](#) B8
- 9 [Yoyo Hotel](#) D3

## Eating

- 10 [Baodǔ Huang](#) B2
- [Běi](#) (see 6)
- 11 [Jingzun Peking Duck](#) C3
- 12 [Jixiangniǎo Xiangcǎi](#) B5
- 13 [Najia Xiǎoquǎn](#) C8
- 14 [Sanyuanli Market](#) D1

## Drinking

- [Apothecary](#) (see 17)
- 15 [Bookworm](#) D4
- 16 [First Floor](#) D3
- [Migas](#) (see 17)
- 17 [Nali Patio](#) D3
- [Saddle Cantina](#) (see 16)
- 18 [Stone Boat](#) B7
- 19 [Tree](#) D3

## Entertainment

- 20 [Mix](#) C4
- 21 [Vics](#) C4

## Shopping

- 22 [3.3 Shopping Centre](#) D3

- 23 Sanlitun Village (North) **D3**
- 24 Sanlitun Village (South) **D4**
- 25 [Sanlitun Yashow Clothing Market](#) **D4**
- 26 [Shard Box Store](#) **C7**
- 27 [Silk Market](#) **C8**

## Information

- 28 Australian Embassy **C2**
- 29 Cambodian Embassy **D2**
- 30 Canadian Embassy **C2**
- 31 German Embassy **C2**
- 32 Indian Embassy **C7**
- 33 [International Post Office](#) **A7**
- 34 Irish Embassy **C8**
- 35 Italian Embassy **E3**
- 36 Laotian Embassy **D3**
- 37 Lufthansa Centre **E1**
- 38 Mongolian Embassy **C8**
- 39 Mongolian Embassy (visa section) **C8**
- 40 Nepalese Embassy **C2**
- 41 Netherlands Embassy **E2**
- 42 New Zealand Embassy **C7**
- 43 Singapore Embassy **C8**
- 44 South African Embassy **D2**
- 45 Thai Embassy **B7**
- 46 UK Embassy **C7**
- 47 Vietnamese Embassy **C7**

## SANLITUN & CHAOYANG



**Opposite House Hotel** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Yushe; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6417 6688; [www.theoppositehouse.com](http://www.theoppositehouse.com); Bldg 1, Village, 11 Sanlitun Lu; 11 1 r from ¥2500; 🚗 🌐 📶 📺 📺 📺) With see-all open-plan bathrooms, American oak bath tubs, lovely mood lighting, underfloor heating, sliding doors, complimentary beers, TVs on extendable arms and a metal basin swimming pool, this trendy Swire-

owned boutique hotel is top-drawer chic. Chinese motifs are muted: this is an international hotel with prices to match. It's not the sort of place to take the kids, but couples can splash out or sip drinks in its trendy bar, Mesh. The location is great for shopping, restaurants and drinking. No obvious sign, or reception area. Just walk into the striking green glass cube of a building and ask.

## Sanlitun Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Sanlitun Qingnian Luguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 5190 9288;

[www.itisbeijing.com](http://www.itisbeijing.com); *Chunxiu Lu*; 250 dm/tw from ¥60/220; 🇺🇸

*Dongsishitiao or Dongzhimen*; 🇺🇸🇨🇦🇸🇯) Sanlitun's only decent youth hostel, this place is very well run and extremely popular. It has added an outdoor terrace to its good-value bar-restaurant area, and still offers its usual trustworthy travel advice. Rooms are functional, but clean, and there's internet, wi-fi, a pool table, table football, bike rental (¥30) and friendly staff.

## St Regis *LUXURY HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beijing Guoji Julebu Fandian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6460 6688;

[www.stregis.com/beijing](http://www.stregis.com/beijing); 21 *Jianguomenwai Dajie*; 21 r from ¥2600; 🇺🇸

*Jianguomen*; 🇺🇸🇨🇦🇸🇯) Its extravagant foyer, thorough professionalism and tip-top location make the St Regis a marvellous, albeit costly, five-star choice. Sumptuous and soothing rooms ooze comfort, 24-hour butlers are at hand to fine-tune your stay and a gorgeous assortment of restaurants steers you into one of Beijing's finest dining experiences. Wi-fi costs ¥80 per day.

## Holiday Inn Express *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Zhixuan Jiari Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6416 9999;

[www.holidayinnexpress.com.cn](http://www.holidayinnexpress.com.cn); 1 *Chunxiu Lu*; 1 r ¥598; 🇺🇸

*Dongsishitiao or Dongzhimen*; 🇺🇸🇨🇦🇸🇯) Brand new 350-room hotel with bright, clean, comfortable rooms (we love the big puffy pillows!) that



come equipped with wide-screen TV, free wi-fi and internet access via a cable. The lobby has Apple computers for the use of guests. Staff members are friendly and speak some English.

## Yoyo Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Youyou Kejudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6417 3388; [www.yoyohotel.cn](http://www.yoyohotel.cn); Bld 10 Dongsanjie Erjie, off Sanlitun Lu; 10 r from ¥310; 📍 Tuanjiehu; 📶@📶) Has a modern, boutique feel to it, but rooms here are tiny.

Nevertheless, they are excellent value for the location and are kept clean and tidy. Staff members speak some English and are friendly considering how rushed off their feet they usually are. There's internet via a cable inside rooms. Wi-fi is in the lobby only.

## BEIHAI PARK & XICHENG NORTH



## Red Lantern House West Yard *COURTYARD HOTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Hong Denglong*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6617 0870; 12 Xisi Beiertiao; 12 s ¥280, d & tw ¥360, ste ¥450; 📍 Xisi; 📶@📶) Set around two lovely, quiet courtyards, the rooms here are thoughtfully and comfortably furnished in an old Beijing style – wooden beds and fittings – and the staff are efficient and unobtrusive. There's also a honeymoon suite for those in the mood for love. It's essential to book ahead here. To find it, walk north on Xisi Beidajie from Xisi subway and it's two *hutong* up on the left.

## Drum Tower Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guyun Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8401 6565; [www.24hostel.com](http://www.24hostel.com); 51 Jiugulou Dajie; 51 6-bed dm without/with bathroom ¥60/80, d & tw without/with bathroom ¥200/280; 📍 Gulou Dajie; 📶@📶) A few years ago, this place had a deservedly bad rep amongst travellers. Now, it has upped its game with staff who are actually interested in helping people and clean, if uninspired, dorms

and rooms. The added bonuses are a cool roof terrace and the attached next-door bar Lakers, which serves up reasonably-priced Western comfort food and standard Chinese dishes. Bike hire is ¥35 a day.

## DASHILAR & XICHENG SOUTH

### Qianmen Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Qianmen Kezhan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6313 2370/2369; [www.qianmenhostel.com](http://www.qianmenhostel.com); 33 Meishi Jie; 33 6-8/4-bed dm ¥60/70, tw/d/tr without/with bathroom ¥200-240/240-300; 📍 Qianmen; 📶@📶)

This heritage hostel combines a relaxing environment with high-ceilinged original woodwork, charming antique buildings and able staff. Affable hostel owner Genghis Kane may show off his environmentally sound heating equipment (fired with dried pellets of plant matter). Heritage rooms are simple; purpose-built rooms are more modern with less character. Western breakfasts, bike hire nearby, laundry available.

### Three-Legged Frog Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jingyi Shi Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6304 0749, 6304 3721; [3legs@threeleggedfroghostel.com](mailto:3legs@threeleggedfroghostel.com); 27 Tieshu Xiejie; 27 6-bed dm with bathroom ¥70, 10-bed dm ¥60, d & tw ¥220, tr ¥300, q ¥420; 📍

*Qianmen*; 📶@📶) The name is a mystery but this is a welcome addition to the growing band of hostels along and off Dazhalan Xijie. The six-bed dorms are an excellent deal, while the rooms are compact but clean and all are set around a cute courtyard. There's a communal area out front which does Western breakfasts and beers in the evening and a sardonic, but helpful, owner.

### Leo Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangjuyuan Fandian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8660 8923, 6303 1595;

[www.leohostel.com](http://www.leohostel.com); 52 Dazhalan Xijie; 52 10-12-bed dm ¥50, 8-bed dm with toilet ¥70, 6-bed dm ¥60, q ¥60-80, tr ¥210-300, d & tw ¥240; 📍 Qianmen; 📶📶📶) Far less atmosphere than its venerable cousin Leo Courtyard, but the dorms and rooms are more modern and frankly better, even if the overall vibe is rather sterile. But there's a fair-sized communal area which does OK food and it's close to Tian'anmen Sq and the surrounding sights. Always busy, it's worth booking ahead.

## Leo Courtyard HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(, Shangling Binyuan; [Offline map](#); 📞 8316 6568, 6303 4609;

[www.leohostel.com](http://www.leohostel.com); 22 Shanxi Xiang; 22 6-bed dm ¥50, tw ¥160; tr ¥270; 📍 Qianmen; 📶📶📶) It's a superb, historic building with a racy past featuring courtesans and the imperial elite, but the rooms themselves are a little tatty and the bathrooms nothing to write home about. Nor do the sleepy staff inspire confidence. That said, the small dorms and communal showers are clean and the attached bar/-restaurant next door is a good place for a libation come sundown. It's down an alley off Dazhalan Xijie.

## SUMMER PALACE & HAIDIAN



## Aman at Summer Palace HERITAGE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yihe Anman; [Offline map](#); 📞 5987 9999;

[www.amanatsummerpalace.com](http://www.amanatsummerpalace.com); 1 Gongmen Qianjie; 1 r US\$650, courtyard r US\$750, ste US\$950; 📍 Xiyuan; 📶📶📶📶) Hard to fault this exquisite hotel, which is a true candidate for best in Beijing. From the location around the corner from the Summer Palace – part of the hotel buildings date back to the 19th century and were used to house distinguished guests waiting for audiences with Empress Cixi – to the superbly appointed rooms in a series of picture-perfect pavilions set around courtyards, to step through the imposing red gates here is to enter a very different, very hushed and very privileged world. Choice restaurants, a spa, a library, a cinema, pool, squash courts and, of

course, silky-smooth service round off the refined picture.

## Eating

Eating out will almost certainly be a highlight of your trip here. Beijing has a staggering 60,000 restaurants, and between them they cater to all tastes and all budgets. True to its north China roots, Beijing cuisine is warming, fatty and filling, with generous amounts of garlic finding its way into many dishes. The adventurous can sample some unusual stuff here – boiled tripe, tofu paste, sour soy milk... Just be sure to leave your table manners at home; Beijingers like mealtimes to be raucous affairs, with plenty of drinking, smoking and shouting to accompany their hearty platters.

Every cuisine from every corner of China finds its way onto the tables of Beijing's restaurants, and there's also plenty of snacks and street food to eat on the go. If you're missing home, you'll find the whole gamut of international options too, including some decent Western food in some of Beijing's excellent independent coffee shops.

## FORBIDDEN CITY & DONGCHENG CENTRAL



### Zuo Lin You She CHINESE BEIJING \$

Offline map

Google map

( [Offline map](#) ; 50 Meishuguan Houjie; 50 dumplings per liang ¥4-6, dishes ¥5-20; 🕒 11am-9.30pm; 📍 Chinese Museum of Art; 🗺️ ) This small, no-nonsense and often noisy restaurant focuses on Beijing cuisine. The speciality is *dalian huoshao* ( ), golden-fried finger-shaped dumplings stuffed with all manner of savoury fillings; we prefer the pork ones, but there are lamb, beef and veggie choices too. They are served by the *liang* ( ), with one *liang* equal to three dumplings, and you must order at least two *liang* ( ; *er liang*) of each filling to make it worth their while cooking a batch. Other specialities include the pickled fish ( ; *su ji yu*), the spicy tofu paste ( ; *ma doufu*) and the deep-fried pork balls ( ; *gan zha wanzi*), while filling bowls of millet porridge ( ; *xiao mi zhou*) are served up for free. There's no English sign (look for the wooden signboard), and no English spoken, but there is an

English translation of the menu available (*yingwen caidan*).

**TOP CHOICE** **Courtyard** FUSION \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Siheyuan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6526 8883; 95 Donghuamen Dajie; 95 mains ¥130-300, set menu ¥488; 🕒 6-10pm; 📍 Tian'anmen East or Dengshikou; ☹️) Classy Courtyard enjoys a peerless location perched by the side of the moat surrounding the Forbidden City. Romantics will need to book ahead to ensure they have one of the cosy window tables that offer the best views. The menu is small but sumptuous and the wine list impressive, while the basement houses a small art gallery.

**Crescent Moon Muslim Restaurant** CHINESE XINJIANG \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xinjiang Wanwanyueliang Weiwu'er Musilin Canting*; [Offline map](#); 16 Dongsì Liutiao Hutong; 16 (); dishes from ¥18; 🕒 10am-midnight; 📍 Dongsishitiao; 📍) Located down a *hutong* off Dongsì Beidajie, and owned and staffed by Uighur Muslims from Xinjiang province, this place attracts many Beijing-based Uighurs and people from Central Asia, plus a lot of Western expats. It's more expensive than most other Muslim-food restaurants in Beijing, but the food is consistently good, and it has an English menu. The speciality is the leg of lamb (¥128).

**Lao Zhai Yuan** ROAST DUCK \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 14 Liangguochang, off Meishuguan Houjie; 14 mains ¥30-50; 🕒 10am-1.30pm & 4.30pm-8.30pm; 📍 Chinese Museum of Art; 📍) Good-value Beijing roast duck in a small courtyard restaurant. The duck on the English menu costs ¥135, and is the better quality of the two types available. If you want the cheaper, but still tasty version, which costs ¥98, ask for *putong kao ya* (; ordinary roast duck).

---

## BEIJING MENU

The following are all classic Beijing dishes, many of which you'll only find at places specialising in Beijing cuisine. Try Zuo Lin You She ([Click here](#)), Yaoji Chaogan ([Click here](#)) or Baodu Huang ([Click here](#)). Many roast duck restaurants will have some of the other Beijing specialities as well as roast duck.

**Roast Duck** (; *kao ya*) Beijing's most famous dish, the duck here is fatter but much more flavoursome than the roast duck typically served in Chinese restaurants in the West. Like back home, though, it also comes with pancakes, cucumber slices and plum sauce.

**Zha Jiang Mian** () Very popular noodle dish found in many regions, but a favourite in Beijing; thick wheat noodles with ground pork and cucumber shreds mixed together in a salty fermented soybean paste. Chilli oil (; *la jiao you*) is a popular optional extra.

**Dalian Huoshao** () Finger-shaped fried dumplings with a savoury filling.

**Ma Doufu** () Spicy tofu paste.

**Zha Guanchang** () Deep-fried crispy crackers served with a very strong garlic dip.

**Chao Ganr** () Sauteed liver served in a gloopy soup.

**Bao Du** () Boiled tripe, usually lamb. Sometimes served in a seasoned broth.

**Yang Za** () Similar to *bao du*, but includes an assortment of sheep's innards, not just tripe, and is always served in a broth.

**Rou Bing** () Meat patty, usually filled with pork or beef, before being lightly fried.

**Jiao Quan** () Deep-fried dough rings, usually accompanied with a cup of *dou zh i*.

**Dou Zhi** () Sour-tasting soy milk drink.

### Beijing Dadong Roast Duck Restaurant PEKING DUCK \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beijing Dadong Kaoyadian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8522 1111; 5th fl Jinbaohui Shopping Centre, 88 Jinbao Jie; 88 5 roast duck ¥238; 🕒 11am-10pm; 📍 *Dengshikou*) Ultra modern Dadong sells itself on being the only restaurant which serves Beijing roast duck with all the flavour of the classic imperial dish, but none of the fat; the leanest roast duck in the capital. For some it's hideously overpriced and far from authentic. For others it's the best roast duck restaurant in China.

### Donghuamen Night Market STREET FOOD \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Donghuamen Yeshi*; [Offline map](#); *Dong'anmen Dajie*; snacks ¥5-15; ☺ 4-10pm; [S](#) *Wangfujing*) A sight in itself, the bustling night market near Wangfujing Dajie is a veritable food zoo: lamb, beef and chicken skewers, corn on the cob, smelly *doufu* (tofu), cicadas, grasshoppers, kidneys, quail's eggs, snake, squid, fruit, porridge, fried pancakes, strawberry kebabs, bananas, Inner Mongolian cheese, stuffed eggplants, chicken hearts, pitta bread stuffed with meat, shrimps – and that's just the start. Prices are all marked and in English. The daytime version can be found nearby at [Wangfujing Snack Street](#) ( *Wangfujing Xiaochijie*; off Wangfujing Dajie; ☺ 9.30am-10pm; [M](#) *Wangfujing*).

## DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH



### [Yaoji Chaogan](#) CHINESE BEIJING \$

( [Offline map](#); 311 *Gulou Dongdajie*; 311 mains ¥5-20; ☺ 6am-10.30pm; [S](#) *Shichahai*) Proper locals joint, serving proper Beijing dishes in a noisy, no-nonsense atmosphere. The house speciality is *chaogan* (; pig's liver stew; ¥5-8). This is also a good place to try *zha guanchang* (; garlic-topped deep-fried crackers; ¥6) and *ma doufu* (; spicy tofu paste; ¥10). Their steamed pork dumplings (; *baozi*; per dumpling ¥1) are excellent, and are perfect for breakfast with a bowl of *xiaomi zhou* (; millet porridge; ¥2) or local favourite *douzhi* (; soy milk; ¥2). It also does a decent bowl of Beijing's best-known noodle dish *zhajiang mian* (; ¥10). No English menu or English sign.



### [Dali Courtyard](#) CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$\$

( *Dali*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8404 1430; 67 *Xiaojingchang Hutong*, *Gulou Dongdajie*; 67 set menus from ¥128; ☺ 11am-3pm & 6pm-11pm; [S](#) *Andingmen*) The beautiful setting in a restored open-air *hutong* courtyard makes this one of Beijing's more idyllic places to eat, especially in summer. Specialising in the subtle flavours of the cuisine of southwestern Yunnan province, it's also one of Beijing's more creative restaurants. There's no menu. Instead, you pay ¥128, ¥200 or ¥300 per head (drinks are extra) and the chef decides what to give

you, depending on what inspires him and what ingredients are fresh. It's the first left down Xiaojingchang Hutong; look for the red lanterns.

## Yang Fang Lamb Hotpot MONGOLIAN HOTPOT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yang Fang Shuan Rou*; [Offline map](#); 270 Guloudong Dajie; 270 broth ¥6-10, dips ¥2-4, raw ingredients ¥5-20; ☺ 11am-11pm; 📍 Shichahai) There are two main types of hotpot in China: the ridiculously spicy one that comes from the fire-breathing southwestern city of Chongqing, and the milder version which is cooked in an unusual conical brass pot and which originally hails from Mongolia, but has been adopted as a Beijing speciality. Yang Fang is a salt-of-the-earth version of the latter, and is a real favourite with the locals round here. First order the broth you want in your pot – clear (; *qing tang guodi*), or spicy (; *la guode*). Then choose your dipping sauce – sesame (; *ma jiang*) or chilli oil (; *la jiao you*) – before finally selecting the raw ingredients you want to cook. Our favourites include wafer-thin lamb slices (; *xian yang rou*), lotus root slices (; *ou pian*), tofu slabs (; *xian doufu*), sweet potato (; *hong shu*) and spinach (; *bo cai*). No English sign; no English menu; no English spoken.

## Rong Tian Sheep Spine HOTPOT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Rongtian Tuguo Yangjiezi Guan*; [Offline map](#); 8 Jingtū Hutong, off Beiluogu Xiang; 8 sheep spine per jin ¥29, other ingredients ¥5-10; ☺ 10.30am-10pm; 📍 Gulou Dajie) Rough-and-ready locals favourite serving mouth-wateringly good sheep-spine hotpot. Order your sheep-spine chunks by the *jin* (500g). Two *jin*'s worth (; *er jin*) is normally about right. They will then come ready-cooked in a boiling broth – the longer you leave them to simmer, the juicier they get. You then add other raw ingredients to cook in the broth like a standard Chinese hotpot. Our favourite extras include sweet potato (; *hong shu*), tofu blocks (; *xian doufu*), mushrooms (; *mu'er*), Oriental raddish (; *bai luobo*) and Chinese spinach (; *you mai cai*). Complimentary fresh noodles are thrown in at the end, to soak up the juices. When you're ready for them, say 'fang mian' (put the noodles in). There's no



English sign, no English menu and no English spoken. Some outdoor seating.

## Baihe Vegetarian Restaurant *VEGETARIAN* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Baihe Sushi*; [Offline map](#); 23 Caoyuan Hutong; 23 dishes from ¥25; ☺ 11.30am-3pm & 5-9.30pm, tea-drinking only ☺ 2-5pm; 📍 Dongzhimen or Beixinqiao; 🚶🚲🚼) Set around a large courtyard and specialising in vegetarian dishes that masquerade as meat or fish. Courteous service, an excellent tea menu and non-smoking throughout.

## Veggie Table *VEGETARIAN* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 19 Wudaoying Hutong; 19 mains ¥50-70, ☺ 11.30am-2pm & 5.30-9.30pm; 📍 Yonghegong-Lama Temple; 🚶🚲🚼) Beijing's first fully vegan restaurant and the most organic-focused restaurant in the capital.

## Qi Shan Mian *CHINESE SHAANXI* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 32 Yonghegong Dajie; 32 noodles ¥10-18, ☺ 10.30am-10pm; 📍 Yonghegong Lama Temple; 🚶🚲🚼) This very popular restaurant specialises in dishes from Shaanxi province. The badly translated English menu includes delicious noodle dishes – try the 'particular handmade noodle with hot oil and seasoner' or the 'Qi Shan Mian (dry style with pork)' – as well as the house speciality, *roujiamo* (; ¥7), a baked bun filled with juicy shreds of pork, and China's answer to the burger. It's translated onto the English menu as 'traditional Chinese pork (beef) pancake (Xi'an style)'. The bowls of hot noodle juice (; *mian tang*) are free, and the friendly manager keeps a strict no-smoking policy; very rare for a budget restaurant in China. No English spoken.

## Tan Hua Lamb BBQ *LAMB BARBECUE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Tan Hua Kao Yangtui*; [Offline map](#); 63 *Beixintiao Santiao Hutong*; 63 *lamb per jin* ¥32, *side dishes* ¥1-12; ☺ 11am-midnight; 🚶 *Beixinqiao*) Meat-loving Beijingers flock to this raucous joint where you roast a leg of lamb on your own personal table-top barbecue spit before hacking away at the meatiest bits with a rudimentary, long-handled knife and fork. Tables spill out onto the lively *hutong*, creating a party atmosphere of multi-barbecue revelry. Order your leg of lamb (; *yang tui*) by the *jin* (500g). Three *jin* (; *san jin*) is enough for two or three people. You'll then be given a selection of free cold dishes as accompaniments, plus a cumin-based dry dip to roll your lamb slices in. Other popular side dishes include barbecued naan bread (; *kao nang*), soy fried rice (; *jiang you chao fan*) and noodle-drop soup (; *geda tang*). Outdoor seating.

## **Jin Ding Xuan** CHINESE CANTONESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 77 *Hepingli Xijie*; 77 *dim sum* ¥8-20, *mains* ¥30-100; ☺ 24hr; 🚶 *Yonghegong-Lama Temple*; 📍) By the south gate of Ditan Park ([Click here](#)), this giant, busy, neon-lit, 24-hour restaurant on three floors serves up good-value dim sum, as well as a host of other mostly Cantonese dishes. Note there is a separate menu for dim sum (; *dian xin*). Menus are in English and have photos, but not much English is spoken.

## **Ghost Street** FOOD STREET

( *Gui Jie*; [Offline map](#)) Hopping at weekends and one of Beijing's busiest and most colourful restaurant strips at virtually any hour, Ghost Street is the English nickname of this spirited section of Dongzhimennei Dajie, where scores of restaurants converge to feed legions of locals and out-of-towners. Splendidly lit with red lanterns from dusk to dawn, Ghost Street is lined with vocal restaurant staff enticing passersby into hotpot eateries, spicy seafood restaurants and other heaving outfits. It's always open so you'll always be able to get fed. Take the subway to Beixinqiao, and walk east.

## TEMPLE OF HEAVEN PARK & DONGCHENG SOUTH



### Lost Heaven CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Huama Tiantang*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8516 2698; 23 Qianmen Dongdajie; 23 dishes from ¥40; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚶 Qianmen; 🚻🚰) The latest addition to the restaurants clustered in this former section of the Legation Quarter, Lost Heaven specialises in the subtle and light, but sometimes spicy, folk cuisine of Yunnan province. Try the Dai-style roast pork in banana leaf (¥68), or one of their many splendid salads such as the marinated beef salad and peppers or the Burmese tea leaves salad. There's an elegant outside area and attentive service. Book ahead.



### Liqun Roast Duck Restaurant PEKING DUCK \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Liqun Kaoyadian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6702 5681, 6705 5578; 11 Beixiangfeng Hutong; 11 roast duck ¥220; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚶 Qianmen; 🚻🚰) The approach to this compact courtyard restaurant is through a maze of crumbling *hutong* that have somehow survived total demolition; look for the signs pointing the way. The delectable duck on offer here is so in demand that it's essential to call ahead to reserve both a bird and a table (otherwise, turn up off-peak and be prepared to wait an hour). Inside, it's a little tatty (no prizes for the toilets), but walk by the ovens with their rows of ducks on hooks, squeeze past the scurrying, harried waiters and then sit back and enjoy some of the finest duck in town.

### Duyichu CHINESE DUMPLINGS \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 6702 1555; 38 Qianmen Dajie; 38 dumplings from ¥42; 🕒 9am-9pm; 🚶 Qianmen; 🚰) Now back on the newly spiffy street where it started business during the mid-Qing dynasty, Duyichu

specialises in the delicate dumplings called *shaomai*. The shrimp and leek (¥42) are especially good, but they also do a nice line in seasonal variations, such as sweet corn and bean (¥42) in the summer, or beef and yam (¥48) in the winter.

## **Qianmen Quanjude Roast Duck Restaurant** PEKING DUCK \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Qianmen Quanjude Kaoyadian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6701 1379, 6511 2418; 30 *Qianmen Dajie*; 30 roast duck ¥228; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 📍 Qianmen; 📍) The most popular branch of Beijing's most famous destination for duck, which is roasted here in ovens fired by fruit-tree wood. Another popular branch is by Wangfujing shopping street.

## **SANLITUN & CHAOYANG**

### **Najia Xiaoguan** CHINESE MANCHU \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 6567 3663; 10 *Yong'an Xili*, off *Jianguomenwai Dajie*; *Chunxiu Lu*; 10 mains ¥40-70; 🕒 11am-9.30pm; 📍 *Yonganli*; 📍) There's a touch of the traditional Chinese teahouse to this excellent restaurant, housed in a reconstructed two-storey interior courtyard, and bubbling with old-Peking atmosphere. The menu is based on an old imperial recipe book known as the Golden Soup Bible, and the dishes are consistently good. No English sign, and not much English spoken, but the menu is in English.

### **Jingzun Peking Duck** PEKING DUCK \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jingzun Kaoya*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6417 4075; 6 *Chunxiu Lu*; 6 mains ¥30-50; 🕒 11am-10pm; 📍 *Dongzhimen* or *Dongsishitiao*; 📍) Very popular place to sample Beijing's signature dish. Not only is the duck here extremely good value at ¥128 including all the trimmings but, unusually for a roast duck restaurant, you can also sit outside, on the wooden decking overlooking the street. The rest of the menu is a mix

of Chinese cuisines, rather than Beijing specialities, but the food here is all decent.

## Jixiangniao Xiangcai CHINESE HUNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); *Jishikou Donglu; mains ¥20-50; ☺ 11am-9.30pm; 📍* *Chaoyangmen; 📍*) There aren't enough places in Beijing that serve up *xiang cai* ( ), the name given to the notoriously spicy cuisine of Hunan province, but this large, fiery restaurant is arguably the best of them. The braised pork with brown sauce (¥38), known in China as *hongshao rou* ( ), is understandably popular – it's well known for being the favourite dish of Mao Zedong, who hailed from Hunan. But the fish head with chopped pepper (¥68) is also sumptuous. Not much English spoken here, but the menu has photos and English translations. No English sign; look for the red neon Chinese characters.

## Baodu Huang CHINESE BEIJING \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); *15 Dongzhimenwai Dajie; 15 mains ¥10-30; ☺ 11am-2pm & 5-9pm; 📍 Dongzhimen*) In-the-know locals pile into this no-nonsense apartment-block restaurant to gobble and slurp their way through its authentic Beijing-grub menu. The speciality is *baodu* ( ; boiled lamb tripe; from ¥13). If that's something you feel you can't, er, stomach, then plump instead for a delicious *niurou dacong roubing* ( ; beef and onion fried patty; ¥8). The blanched vegetables are popular side dishes; choose from *chao baicai* ( ; blanched cabbage; ¥4), *chao fensi* ( ; blanched glass noodles; ¥4) or *chao dong doufu* ( ; blanched tofu; ¥4). And if you haven't ordered a meat patty, grab a *zhima shaobing* ( ; roasted sesame-seed bun; ¥1.50) instead. True Beijingers will also nibble on *jiao quan* ( ; deep-fried dough rings; ¥1), washed down with gulps of *dou zhi* ( ; sour soy milk). But you may prefer to go for a bottle of local beer ( ; *pijiu*; ¥5). No English spoken, no English menu, no English sign.

## Bei EAST ASIAN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 6410 5230; *Opposite House, Bldg 1, 11 Sanlitun Lu; 11 1 mains ¥150-400*; 🕒 6pm-10pm; 📍 Tuanjiehu; 📍) Located in the nightclub-like basement below ultra-trendy boutique hotel Opposite House ([Click here](#)), this achingly cool Asian restaurant specialises in Korean and Japanese cuisine. The sushi is top-notch, the tuna outstanding, and there's a strong selection of *saki* and *soju* to keep you in high spirits. Booking recommended.

## BEIHAI PARK & XICHENG NORTH

 **4Corners** VIETNAMESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Sijiao Canba*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6401 7797; [www.these4corners.com](http://www.these4corners.com); 27 Dashibei Hutong; 27 dishes from ¥34; 🕒 11am-3am; 📍 Shichahai; 📶📶) A laid-back spot with a cosy outside area, 4Corners serves up a medley of zingy Vietnamese, and some Thai, dishes. There's a tremendous selection of spring rolls for those who just want to graze while imbibing one of their excellent martinis (¥40), and live music some nights too. It's hidden down a *hutong* just off Gulou Xidajie.

**Kong Yiji** CHINESE ZHEJIANG \$\$

( 📍 6618 4915; *Deshengmennei Dajie, Shichahai, Houhai Nan'an*; dishes from ¥28; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 📍 Jishuitan) Zhejiang Province is famous for Shaoxing, a sherry-like wine, so it's entirely appropriate that this lively restaurant with a nice outdoor area right by Houhai Lake serves some dishes – such as drunken shrimp (; *zuixia*) and drunken chicken (; *zuiji*) – swimming in the stuff. There's no English or picture menu; take a look at what other people are eating and point.

LOCAL KNOWLEDGE

## PICNIC SUPPLIES

---

Western-style supermarkets are on the rise, but thankfully there are still some atmospheric food markets in Beijing where you can stock up on fresh fruit and unusual snacks as you watch locals pick their favourite frogs and fish.

**Rundeli Food Market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Rundeli Caishichang*; [Offline map](#); ☹️ *7am-7pm*), also known as Sihuan Market (; Sihuan Shichang), is close to the Houhai Lakes, while **Xinmin Food Market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Xinmin Caishichang*; ☹️ *5am-noon*) is north of the Drum Tower.

For more familiar foodstuffs, **Sanyuanli Market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Sanyuanli Caishichang*; *Shunyuan Jie*; ☹️ *5am-7pm*) has a great range of imported products alongside all the usual Chinese favourites.

## Hutong Pizza PIZZA \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Hutong Bisa*; [Offline map](#); *9 Yindingqiao Hutong Hou*; pizzas from ¥65; ☹️ *11am-11pm*; 📍 *Shichahai*; 🚶) The Chinese accuse Marco Polo of stealing pizza from China, and it's come back again. This relaxing, but busy spot just off Houhai Lake fires up some enormous pizzas (although they can be slow in coming). The *hutong* house interior is funky and the attic room is handsome, with old painted beams.

## Beipingju ROAST DUCK \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); *29 Di'anmenwai Dajie*; *29 mains* ¥20-40; ☹️ *11am-9.30pm*, 📍 *Shichahai*; 🚶) One of the best-value duck restaurants in the city, this bright, clean, family-friendly restaurant does delicious, authentic roast duck, plus a small range of other Beijing specialities, as well as dishes from other parts of China. The standard whole duck (; *dandian kaoya*) costs ¥98. You then choose the trimmings: cucumber (; *guatiao*; ¥2), spring onion (; *cong*; ¥2), pancakes (; *yabing*; ¥6), plum sauce (; *tianmianjiang*; ¥2). It has an English menu with photos.

## Drinking

There are three top spots for a night out in Beijing (and others you can explore). **Sanlitun** ([Offline map](#)), loud, brash and relatively expensive,

is where expats and Chinese party-goers come when they want to drink all night long. Here you'll find the city's best cocktail bars, biggest night clubs and seediest dives. Head to Sanlitun Lu or the Workers Stadium.

**Nanluogu Xiang** ( [Offline map](#) ), in Dongcheng North, is far more laid back than Sanlitun. This historic *hutong*, and the network of lanes branching off it, houses smaller bars – some are in converted courtyards – that are better for a drink and a chat, rather than a dance. The city's coolest live-music venues are in this area too. Head to Nanluogu Xiang, Beiluogu Xiang or the square between the Drum & Bell Towers.

At **Houhai Lakes** ( [Offline map](#) ) there's a noisy but undoubtedly fun strip of bars, located attractively on the banks of Houhai and Qianhai Lakes in Xicheng North and specialising in neon-lit guitar bars with karaoke on tap. More popular with Chinese drinkers than foreigners, and dead in winter.

At the time of research **Fangjia Hutong** ( [Offline map](#) ), a largely residential lane, south of the Confucius Temple, was fast developing into another drinking hotspot with quirky, laid-back bars similar to those found in the Nanluogu Xiang area.

## DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH

### Great Leap Brewing *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dayue Pijiu*; [Map](#) [Offline map](#); [www.greatleapbrewing.com](http://www.greatleapbrewing.com); 6 Doujiao Hutong; 6 beer per pint ¥25-50; ☺ 7pm-midnight Tue-Fri, 3pm-midnight Sat, 2pm-9pm Sun; 🚶 Shichahai) A hidden gem to beat all hidden gems, this micro-brewery, run by American beer enthusiast Carl Setzer, is housed in a hard-to-find, 100-year-old Qing-dynasty courtyard and serves up a wonderful selection of unique ales made largely from locally sourced ingredients. Sip on familiar favourites such as pale ales and porters or choose from China-inspired tipples such as the one made with lip-tingling Sichuan peppercorns. From Nanluogu Xiang, walk west down Jingyang Hutong ( ), bearing right, then left, then right again before turning left down Doujiao Hutong.



## El Nido *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(59 Wushijiu Hao Jiuba; [Offline map](#); 59 Fangjia Hutong Dongdajie; 59 beers from ¥10; 🕒 6pm-late; 📍 Andingmen) Friendly pint-sized bar, with some outdoor seating and more than 100 types of imported beer. There's no drinks menu; just dive into the fridge and pick out whichever bottles take your fancy. If it gets too packed (it really is tiny) then try walking up the road to No 46, where there's a bunch of bars and cafes in a small cul-de-sac.

## Reef Bar *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chujiao; [Offline map](#); 14-1 Nanluogu Xiang; 14-1 beers from ¥20, cocktails from ¥25; 🕒 2pm-late; 📍 Nanluoguxiang) Much more of a bar for locals than many others in the area, Reef, run by a cheerful husband-and-wife team, has a friendly vibe and stays open into the wee hours on busy nights.

## Ball House *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bolou Jiuba; [Offline map](#); Lao Mo; 40 Zhonglouwan Hutong; 40 🕒 2pm-late; 📍 Gulou Dajie) A bar for those in the know, Ball House is impossible to stumble across; there's no sign and it's set back from the main *hutong* (which circumnavigates the Bell Tower) at the end of a narrow pathway. Inside, though, it's an enormous, beautifully restored split-level room with pool tables (¥30 per hour) and table football tables (free) dotted around the place – hence the name – but enough nooks and crannies to find your own quiet spot. Beers from ¥15.

## Mao Mao Chong *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Maomao Chong; [Offline map](#); 12 Banchang Hutong; 12 beers from

¥25, cocktails from ¥40; ☹️ 7pm-midnight, closed Mon & Tue; 📍 Nanluoguxiang; ☹️) This small but lively expat favourite has a rustic interior, good-value cocktails and a no-smoking policy. Its pizzas get rave reviews.

## If BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Ruguo Jiuba*; [Offline map](#); 67 Beiluogu Xiang; 67 beers from ¥15; ☹️ 1pm-2am; 📍 *Gulou Dajie*) Housed on three small levels, this quirky bar includes strangely shaped furniture, cheese-like wall panelling punctured with holes, and floors with rather disconcerting glass sections that allow you to view the level below.

## Drum & Bell BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guzhong Kafeiguan*; [Offline map](#); 41 Zhonglouwan Hutong; 41 beers from ¥15, cocktails from ¥35; ☹️ 1pm-2am; 📍 *Gulou Dajie*) Located in between the Drum and Bell Towers, from whom it takes its name, the main attraction of this bar is its splendid roof terrace. It's a great spot to catch some rays on lazy Sunday afternoons, or to wile away a summer evening. In winter, retreat downstairs, where there are comfy sofas to sink into.

### LOCAL KNOWLEDGE

## HUTONG CAFES

Cute wi-fi cafes have been all the rage in Beijing for some time now and these days there are dozens of excellent ones, particularly in and around the *hutong* of North Dongcheng. Some are housed in converted courtyards, most have free wi-fi, fresh coffee (from ¥20), well-priced local beer (from ¥10) and a limited choice of mostly Western food (dishes from ¥30). They are also among the cheapest places in Beijing to sample Chinese tea (from ¥20 per cup, with unlimited refills).

**Irresistible Cafe** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *You Huo Kafeiting*; [Offline map](#); 14 Mao'er Hutong; 14 ☹️ 11am-midnight, closed Mon & Tue; 📶) Large courtyard. Czech beers. Good, healthy food.

**Cafe Confucius** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Xiu Guan Kafei*; [Offline map](#) ; 25 Guozijian Jie; 25 ☺ 8.30am-8.30pm; 📶 ) Buddhist themed. Very friendly.

**Xiaoxin's Cafe** ( *Xiaoxinde Dian*; [Offline map](#) ; 103 Nanluogu Xiang; 103 ☺ 9.30am-midnight; 📶 ) Quiet retreat from the Nanluogu Xiang shopping frenzy.

**Sculpting in Time** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Diaoke Shiguang Kafei*; [Offline map](#) ; 2 Zhongku Hutong, Drum & Bell Square; , 2 ☺ 10am-10pm; 📶 ) Rooftop terrace with views of the Drum and Bell Towers.

**Courtyard No 28** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *28 Ershiba Hao Yuan*; [Offline map](#) ; Xilou Hutong; 📶 ) Lovely courtyard. Cheap beer.

## SANLITUN & CHAOYANG

### Nali Patio *BAR AREA*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nali Huayuan*; [Offline map](#) ; off Sanlitun Lu; ) Sanlitun's current drinking hotspot, Nali Patio is a small square surrounded and overlooked by clusters of hugely popular bars and restaurants. The big favourite is **Migas** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Mi Jia Si*; 6th fl ), a three-in-one venue which houses a good-quality Spanish restaurant, a cosy indoor bar and a wildly popular roof terrace bar. **Apothecary** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Jiu Shu*; [www.apothecarychina.com](http://www.apothecarychina.com); 3rd fl ) is Beijing's best cocktail bar, while **Saddle Cantina** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 1st & 2nd fl ) offers a decent pub vibe, and terrace seating. Most places are open from around midday until the early hours.

Just round the corner from Nali Patio, behind Saddle Cantina, is **First Floor** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Yi Lou*; Ground fl Tongli Studios, Sanlitun Houjie; 1 ), which is another popular pub-like venue, and **Tree** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Shu Jiuba*; 43 Sanlitun Beijie; 43 ), which does dozens of Belgian beers plus great pizza.

## ★ Entertainment

## FORBIDDEN CITY & DONGCHENG CENTRAL

## Forbidden City Concert Hall CLASSICAL MUSIC

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhongshan Gongyuan Yinyue Tang; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6559 8285; Zhongshan Park; tickets ¥30-880; 🕒 performances 7.30pm; 📍 Tian'anmen West) Located on the eastern side of Zhongshan Park, this is a wonderfully romantic venue for performances of classical and traditional Chinese music. It's also one of the best acoustically.

## DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH



### Jiang Hu LIVE MUSIC

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiang Hu Jiuba; [Offline map](#); 7 Dongmianhua Hutong; 7 admission from ¥30; 🕒 7pm-2am; 📍 Nanluoguxiang) One of the coolest places to hear Chinese indie and rock bands, Jiang Hu, run by a trombone-playing, music-loving manager, is housed in an old courtyard and packs in the punters on a good night. Intimate, cool, and a decent spot for a drink in a courtyard, even when no bands are playing. Beers from ¥20.



### Jiang Jin Jiu LIVE MUSIC

( Jiangjin Jiuba; [Offline map](#); 2 Zhongku Hutong; 2 (); admission from ¥20; 🕒 1pm-2am; 📍 Gulou Dajie or Shichahai) This tiny, laidback venue is the best place to hear Chinese folk music from the country's ethnic minorities, particularly Uighur and Mongolian. Live music is Thursday to Sunday and is usually free, although there's sometimes a small cover charge on Fridays and Saturdays if a more popular act is playing. Beers from ¥15. Cocktails from ¥25.

## Yugong Yishan LIVE MUSIC

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); ☎ 6404 2711; [www.yugongyishan.com](http://www.yugongyishan.com); West Courtyard, 3-2 Zhangzizhong Lu; 3-2(); admission from ¥50; 🕒 7pm-2am; 📍 Zhangzizhonglu) Reputedly one of the most haunted places in Beijing,

this historic building has been home to Qing dynasty royalty, warlords and the occupying Japanese army in the 1930s. You could probably hear the ghosts screaming if it wasn't for the array of local and foreign bands, solo artists and DJs who take to the stage here every week. With a very sound booking policy and a decent space to play with, this is one of the best places in town to listen to live music.

## **Mao Livehouse** *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangmang*; [Offline map](#); 111 Gulou Dongdajie; 111 admission from ¥50; 🕒 8pm-late; 📍 Shichahai) Large enough to give the many gigs it hosts a sense of occasion, but small enough to feel intimate.

## **Penghao Theatre** *CONTEMPORARY THEATRE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Penghao Juchang*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6400 6452; [www.penghaoren.com](http://www.penghaoren.com); in an alley beside 35 Dongmianhua Hutong; 35 tickets from ¥50; 📍 Nanluoguxiang) Students from the nearby drama academy sometimes perform here, in this small informal non-profit theatre, tucked away down a narrow, unnamed alleyway between Dongmianhua Hutong and Beibinmasi Hutong. The venue, which doubles as a cafe, is enchanting, and has some lovely rooftop seating areas, shaded by a 200-year-old tree which slices through part of the building. Performances are mostly modern drama, and are often held in English as well as Chinese.

## **TEMPLE OF HEAVEN PARK & DONGCHENG SOUTH**

### **Red Theatre** *ACROBATICS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Hong Juchang*; 📞 6714 2473, 6714 8691; 44 Xingfu Dajie; tickets ¥180-680; 🕒 performances 5.15pm & 7.30pm; 📍 Tiantandongmen) The daily show is *The Legend of Kung Fu* and it follows one boy's journey to becoming a warrior monk. Look for the all-red exterior set

back from the road.

## SANLITUN & CHAOYANG

### Vics NIGHTCLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Weikesi*; [Offline map](#); *Workers' Stadium, Gongrentiyuchang Beilu, Fri & Sat ¥50*; 🕒 *7pm-late*; 📍 *Dongsishitiao*) Vics is not the most sophisticated nightclub, but has remained a favourite with the young crowd for many years now. The tunes are mostly standard R&B and hip-hop, there's an infamous ladies night on Wednesdays (free drinks for women before midnight), and weekends see it crammed with the footloose and fancy free. If you can't score here, you should give up trying. Entry is free from Monday to Thursday; located inside the Workers Stadium north gate, opposite [Mix](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), a very similar, equally popular venue.

## BEIHAI PARK & XICHENG NORTH



### East Shore Jazz Cafe LIVE MUSIC

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dong'an*; [Offline map](#); *2nd fl, 2 Shichahai Nanyan; beers from ¥35, cocktails from ¥40*; 🕒 *3pm-2am*; 📍 *Shichahai*) Fine views over Qianhai Lake and the place to hear the best local jazz bands, with live performances from Wednesdays to Sundays (from 10pm) in a laid-back atmosphere.

## DASHILAR & XICHENG SOUTH

### Huguang Guild Hall PEKING OPERA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huguang Huiguan*; [Offline map](#); *3 Hufang Lu; tickets ¥180-680*; 🕒 *performances 6.30pm*; 📍 *Caishikou*) With a magnificent red, green and gold interior and balconies surrounding the canopied stage, this theatre dates from 1807 and is a great spot to catch a Beijing opera

show. There's also a small **opera museum** (admission ¥10; 🕒 9am to 5pm) opposite the theatre.

## Lao She Teahouse TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lao She Chaguan*; [Offline map](#); 3rd fl, 3 Qianmen Xidajie; evening tickets ¥180-380; 🕒 performances 7.50pm; 📍 Qianmen) This popular teahouse has nightly shows, largely in Chinese. Performances include folk music, tea ceremonies, theatre, puppet shows and matinee Beijing opera, as well as acrobatics and magic. Prices depend on the type of show and your seat option.

## Tianqiao Acrobatics Theatre ACROBATICS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Tianqiao Zaji Juchang*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6303 7449; 95 Tianqiao Shichang Lu Jie; tickets ¥180-380; 🕒 performances 5.30pm; 📍 Taoranting) West of the Temple of Heaven Park, this 100-year-old theatre offers one of Beijing's best acrobatic displays. The entrance is down the eastern side of the building.

## SUMMER PALACE & HAIDIAN

### Propaganda CLUB

(*Huaqing Jiayuan*; 🕒 8.30pm-late; 📍 Wudaokou) Wudaokou's student crew are drawn like moths to this long-running club, thanks to cheap drinks, hip-hop sounds and the chance for cultural exchange with the locals. Entry is free. To find it, walk 50m west of Wudaoku subway station and turn left onto Huaqing Jiayuan.

## Shopping

With much of the nation's wealth concentrated in Beijing, shopping has become the favourite pastime of the young and the rising middle class in recent years. Whether you're a diehard shopaholic or just a casual browser, you'll be spoiled for choice with shiny shopping malls,

markets, specialist shopping streets, pavement vendors and itinerant hawkers all doing their best to part you from your cash.

## RED LIGHT PEKING


These days, Dazhalan Xijie and the surrounding *hutong* just to the west of Dashilar are Beijing's backpacker central. But for hundreds of years, these innocuous-looking alleys were infamous for being old Peking's red-light district (; *hongdengqu*).

Centered around Bada Hutong, a collection of eight alleys, the area had already acquired a raunchy reputation in the 18th century. By the time of the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911, there were reckoned to be more than 300 brothels lining the lanes. The working girls ranged from cultivated courtesans whose clients were aristocrats and court officials, to more mundane types who served the masses.

Many of the eight alleys that made up Bada Hutong have been demolished and/or rebuilt and show no sign of what went on there in the past. Shanxi Xiang, though, is still standing and the historic building that is now the hostel Leo Courtyard ([Click here](#)) was once one of the most upmarket knocking shops in the capital. But it didn't do dorm beds back then.

## FORBIDDEN CITY & DONGCHENG CENTRAL

### Wangfujing Dajie SHOPPING STREET

( [Offline map](#);  *Wangfujing*) Prestigious, but these days rather old-fashioned, this part-pedestrianised shopping street not far from Tian'anmen Sq, is generally known as Wangfujing. It boasts a strip of stores selling well-known, midrange brands, and a number of tacky souvenir outlets. At its south end, [Oriental Plaza](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) is a top-quality, modern shopping mall. Further north, just before the pedestrianised section ends, is the well-stocked [Foreign Languages Bookstore](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) .

## DRUM TOWER & DONGCHENG NORTH



### Nanluogu Xiang SHOPPING STREET

( [Offline map](#);  *Nanluoguxiang*) The wildly popular historical *hutong* of



Nanluogu Xiang contains an eclectic mix of clothes and gifts, sold in trendy boutique shops, alongside dozens of cute cafes, bars and restaurants. It's an extremely pleasant place to shop for souvenirs, but avoid summer weekends if you can, when it gets unfeasibly busy.

## TEMPLE OF HEAVEN & DONGCHENG SOUTH

### Hongqiao Pearl Market SOUVENIR MARKET

(*Hongqiao Shichang*; [Offline map](#); *Tiantan Donglu*; ☹️ 9am-7pm; 🚇 *Tiantandongmen*) The cosmos of clutter across from the east gate of Temple of Heaven Park ranges from shoes, leather bags, jackets, jeans, silk by the yard, electronics, Chinese arts, crafts and antiques to a galaxy of pearls (freshwater and seawater, white and black) on the 3rd floor. Prices for the latter vary incredibly depending on the quality; the more expensive specimens are on the 4th and 5th floors.

## SANLITUN & CHAOYANG



### Panjiayuan Market ANTIQUES MARKET

(*Panjiayuan Guwan Shichang*; [Click here](#); *West of Panjiayuan Qiao*; ☹️ 8.30am-6pm Mon-Fri, 4.30am-6pm Sat & Sun; ☹️ *Jinsong*) The best place in Beijing to shop for arts, crafts and antiques, Panjiayuan hosts around 3000 dealers and up to 50,000 visitors a day, all scoping for treasures. Make a few rounds to compare prices before forking out for something.

The market is about 1km south of Jinsong subway station on Line 10. Come out of Exit D and keep walking straight. Turn right at the flyover and you'll see the market on your left. At the time of research, Line 10 was due to be extended south and will eventually include a Panjiayuan station.



### Sanlitun Village SHOPPING MALL

(*19 Sanlitun Lu*; 19 ☹️ 10am-10pm; 🚇 *Tuanjiehu*) This ultra modern, eye-catching collection of midsized malls is a shopping and architectural highlight of this part of the city. The Village looms over

what was once a seedy strip of dive bars (there are still a few of those left, mind) and has transformed the area into a hangout hotspot for locals and foreigners alike. The complex is in two sections, which book-end the slightly older **3.3 Shopping Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#). The **South Village** was completed a few years back and is home to Beijing's first Apple store, the world's largest Adidas shop and a number of midrange Western clothing stores. Nearby **North Village** is home to more high-end labels and local designer boutiques.



### **Bookworm** BOOKSHOP & CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shuchong*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6586 9507; [www.beijingbookworm.com](http://www.beijingbookworm.com); Bldg 4, Nansanlitun Lu; 4 mains from ¥70; 🕒 9am-2am; 📍 Tuanjiehu; 🚶📶) A combination of a bar, cafe, restaurant and library, the Bookworm is a Beijing institution. There are 16,000-plus books you can browse whilst sipping your coffee, or working your way through the extensive wine list, but this is also one of the epicentres of Beijing cultural life, hosting lectures, poetry readings and a very well-regarded annual book festival.

### **Shard Box Store** JEWELLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shendege*; [Offline map](#); 4 Ritan Beilu; 4 🕒 9am-7pm; 📍 Yonganli) Using porcelain fragments from Ming- and Qing-dynasty vases that were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, this fascinating family-run store creates beautiful and unique shard boxes (from ¥30), bottles and jewellery.

### **Silk Market** SOUVENIR MARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xiushui Shichang*; [Offline map](#); 14 Dongdaqiao Lu; 14 🕒 10am-8.30pm; 📍 Yonganli) The six-storey Silk Market continues to thrive despite some vendors being hit by lawsuits from top-name brands tired of being counterfeited on such a huge scale. Not that the legal

action has stopped the coach loads of tourists who descend on this place every day. Their presence makes effective bargaining difficult. But this is a good place for cashmere, T-shirts, jeans, shirts, skirts and, of course, silk, which is one of the few genuine items you will find here.

## Sanlitun Yashow Clothing Market *SOUVENIR MARKET*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Sanlitun Yaxiu Fuzhuang Shichang*; [Offline map](#); 58 Gongrentiyuchang Beilu; 58 🕒 10am-9pm; 🚶 Tuanjiehu) Five floors of virtually anything you might need and a favourite with expats and visitors. Bargain hard.

## DASHILAR & XICHENG SOUTH

### Liulichang Xijie *ANTIQUES*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Liulichang*) Beijing's premier antique street, not far west of Dashilar, is worth delving along for its quaint, albeit dressed-up, age-old village atmosphere and (largely fake) antiques. Alongside ersatz Qing monochrome bowls and Cultural Revolution kitsch, you can also rummage through old Chinese books, paintings, brushes, ink and paper. Prepare yourself for pushy sales staff and stratospheric prices. If you want a chop (carved seal) made, you can do it here. At the western end of Liulichang Xijie, a collection of ramshackle stalls flog bric-a-brac, Buddhist statuary, Cultural Revolution pamphlets and posters, fake Tang-dynasty *sancai* (three-colour porcelain), shoes for bound feet, silks, handicrafts, Chinese kites, swords, walking sticks, door knockers etc.

### Ruifuxiang *CLOTHING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Ruifuxiang Sichoudian*; [Offline map](#); 5 Dazhalan Jie; 🕒 9.30am-8.30pm; 🚶 Qianmen) Housed in a historic building on Dashilar, this well-renowned clothing store is one of the best places in town to browse for silk. It starts at ¥98 a metre, although most of the fabric is

more expensive. On the 2nd floor ready-made, traditional Chinese clothing is sold. Also has an outlet on Wangfujing Dajie ([Click here](#)) and one just south of the Drum Tower, at No 50 Di'anmenwai Dajie ([Offline map](#)).

WORTH A TRIP

## MALIANDAO TEA MARKET

The largest tea market in Beijing, [Maliandao](#) ( *Maliandao Chacheng*; [Click here](#); 6 *Maliandao Lu*; 6 ☀ 9am-7pm; 5 *Beijing West Railway Station*), a few minutes walk south of Beijing West Train Station, is home to, if not all the tea in China, then an awful lot of it. Although it's mostly for wholesalers, this is a great place to wander for anyone interested in tea and the vendors are normally happy to let you sample some.

## Information

### Internet Access

Internet cafes (; *wangba*) are everywhere, although some are tucked away down side streets and above shops. They rarely have English signs, so memorise the characters . They are generally open 24 hours. Standard rates are ¥3 to ¥5 per hour. You must show your passport, and you may be photographed at the front desk. We've marked some handy internet cafes on our Beijing maps with the @ icon.

All hotels and hostels we've reviewed in this chapter provide internet access of some sort, and numerous bars and cafes around Beijing have free wi-fi.

### Maps

English-language maps of Beijing can be grabbed for free at most big hotels and branches of the Beijing Tourist Information Center. The Foreign Languages Bookstore and other bookshops with English-language titles have maps. Pushy street vendors hawk cheap Chinese character maps near subway stations around Tian'anmen Sq and

Wangfujing Dajie. The Beijing Tourist Map, labelled in both English and Chinese, has little detail but is quite useful.

## Medical Services

Pharmacies (; *yaodian*) are identified by a green cross and are widespread.

**Beijing Union Hospital** (*Xiehe Yiyuan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6529 6114, emergency 6529 5284; 53 Dongdan Beidajie, Dongcheng; 🕒 24hr) A recommended Chinese hospital with a full range of facilities for inpatient and outpatient care, plus a pharmacy. Head for **International Medical Services** (*Guoji Yiliao Bu*; ☎ 6915 4270; 6529 5284), a wing reserved for foreigners which has English-speaking staff and telephone receptionists.

**Hong Kong International Medical Clinic** (*Beijing Xianggang Guoji Yiwu Zhensuo*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6553 2288; [www.hkclinic.com](http://www.hkclinic.com); 9th fl, Office Tower, Hong Kong Macau Center, Swissôtel, 2 Chaoyangmen Beidajie, Chaoyang; 🕒 9am-9pm, dental 🕒 9am-7pm) Well trusted dental and medical clinic with English-speaking staff. Prices are more reasonable than at International SOS. Medical consultations cost ¥680. Has night staff on duty too, so you can call for advice round the clock.

**International SOS** (*SOS Guoji SOS Yiwu Zhensuo*; [Offline map](#); [www.internationalsos.com](http://www.internationalsos.com); ste 105, Wing 1, Kunsha Bldg, 16 Xinyuanli, Chaoyang; 🕒 9am-8pm Mon-Fri, 9am-6pm Sat & Sun; ☎ clinic appointments 6462 9199, dental appointments 6462 0333, 24hr alarm centre 6462 9100) Offering 24-hour emergency medical care, with a high-quality clinic with English-speaking staff. Dental check up ¥900; medical consultation ¥1160.

## Money

**ATMs** (; *qukuanji*) taking international cards are in abundance, including at the airport. Carry cash at all times as credit cards are much less widely accepted than you'd expect.

Foreign currency and travellers cheques can be changed at large branches of Bank of China, CITIC Industrial Bank, Industrial & Commercial Bank of China (ICBC), HSBC, the airport and hotel

moneychanging counters.

For international money transfers, branches of **Western Union** ([www.westernunion.com](http://www.westernunion.com)) can be found in the **International Post Office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) and the Chaoyang branch of **China Post** (3 Gong-rentiyuchang Beilu).

Useful banks with money-changing facilities include:

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*) Lufthansa Center (1st fl, Lufthansa Center Youyi Shopping City, 50 Liangmaqiao Lu); Novotel Peace Hotel (foyer, Novotel Peace Hotel, 3 Jinyu Hutong); Oriental Plaza (Oriental Plaza, cnr Wangfujing Dajie & Dongchang'an Jie); Sundongan Plaza (next to main entrance of Sundongan Plaza, Wangfujing Dajie); Swisshotel (2nd fl, Swisshotel, 2 Chaoyangmen Beidajie)

**Citibank** ( *Huaqi Yinhang*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6510 2933; 6th fl, Tower 2, Bright China Chang'an Bldg, 7 Jianguomennei Dajie)

**HSBC** ( *Huifeng Yinhang*; ☎ 6526 0668, 800 820 8878) China World Hotel (ste L129, Ground fl, China World Hotel, 1 Jianguomenwai Dajie); COFCO Plaza (Ground fl, Block A, COFCO Plaza, 8 Jianguomennei Dajie); Lufthansa Center (Ground fl, Lufthansa Center, 50 Liangmaqiao Lu)

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; *Gongshang Yinhang*; [Offline map](#); Wangfujing Dajie) Opposite Bank of China ATM at entrance to Sundongan Plaza.

## China Post

Large offices (; *youju*) are generally open daily between 8.30am and 6pm. We've marked some on our Beijing maps.

Letters and parcels marked 'Poste Restante, Beijing Main Post Office' will arrive at the **International Post Office** ( *Guoji Youdian Ju*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6512 8114; Jianguomen Beidajie, Chaoyang; 🕒 8.30am-6pm). Outsized parcels going overseas should be sent from here (parcels can be bought at the post office); smaller parcels (up to around 20kg) can go from smaller post offices. Both outgoing and incoming packages will be opened and inspected. If you're sending a parcel, don't seal the package until you've had it inspected.

**Express Mail Service** (EMS; ; *kuaidi*) is available for registered deliveries to domestic and international destinations from most post offices around town. Prices are very reasonable. Alternatively, **Federal Express** ( *Lianbang Kuaidi*; FedEx; [Offline map](#); 📍 6561 2003, 800 810 2338; 1217, Tower B, Hanwei Bldg, 7 Guanghua Lu) is near the CBD, and also has a branch at **Wangfujing Dajie** (Room 107, No 1 Office Bldg, Oriental Plaza).

### Public Security Bureau

**PSB** ( *Gong'anju*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8402 0101, 8401 5292; 2 Andingmen Dongdajie; 🕒 8.30am-4.30pm Mon-Sat) The Foreign Affairs Branch of the PSB handles visa extensions; [Click here](#) for further information. The visa office is on the 2nd floor.

### Tourist Information

Hotels often have tourist information desks, but the best travel advice for independent travellers is usually dished out at youth hostels.

**Beijing Tourist Information Center** ( *Beijing Luyou Zixun Fuwu Zhongxin*; 🕒 9am-5pm) Beijing Train Station (📍 6528 4848; 16 Laoqianju Hutong); Capital Airport (📍 6459 8148); Houhai Lakes (49 Di'anmenxi Dajie; 49 ); Wangfujing Dajie (269 Wangfujing Dajie; 269 🕒 9am-9pm). English skills are limited and information is basic, but you can grab free maps. The detailed map of the *hutong* surrounding Houhai Lakes, which is given out at the Houhai branch, is particularly useful.

### Travel Agencies

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8511 8522; [www.cits.com.cn](http://www.cits.com.cn); Room 1212, CITS Bldg, 1 Dongdan Beidajie) Useful for booking tours, although aimed mostly at domestic tourists.

## **i** Getting There & Away

As the nation's capital, getting to Beijing is straightforward. Rail and air connections link the city to virtually every point in China, and fleets of

buses head to abundant destinations from Beijing. Using Beijing as a starting point to explore the rest of the country makes perfect sense.

## Air

Beijing has direct air connections to most major cities in the world. For more information, [Click here](#).

Daily flights connect Beijing to every major city in China. There should be at least one flight a week to smaller cities throughout China. Prices vary depending on when you fly and when you book, but as a rough guide, expect to be able to find seats for between ¥600 and ¥1200 for any internal one-way flight from Beijing.

For good deals, check the following websites:

**C-trip** ([www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com))

**eLong** ([www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net))

**Travel Zen** ([www.travelzen.com](http://www.travelzen.com))

**eBookers** ([www.ebookers.com](http://www.ebookers.com))

**Expedia** ([www.expedia.com](http://www.expedia.com))

If for some reason you can't get online, you can also purchase tickets in person at the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** ( CAAC; *Zhongguo Minhang; Aviation Bldg; Minhang Yingye Dasha*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6656 9118, domestic 6601 3336, international 6601 6667; 15 *Xichang'an Jie*; 🕒 7am-midnight).

You can make enquiries for all airlines at Beijing's **Capital Airport** (PEK; [Offline map](#); ☎ from Beijing only 962 580). Call ☎ 6454 1100 for information on international and domestic arrivals and departures.

## Bus

No international buses serve Beijing; however, there are plenty of long-distance domestic routes from the city's numerous long-distance bus stations. **Bawangfen long-distance bus station** ( *Bawangfen changtu keyunzhan*; [Click here](#); 17 *Xidawang Lu*) is in the east of the city, 500m south of Dawanglu subway station. Destinations include:

**Baotou** sleeper ¥181, 12 hours, one daily (6pm)

**Changchun** ¥320, 12 hours, one daily (6pm)

**Dalian** ¥326, 8½ hours, two daily (noon and 10pm)



**Ha'erbin** ¥301, 14 hours, once daily but only if enough passengers (5.30pm)

**Shenyang** ¥165, nine hours, regular (8am–10pm)

**Tianjin** ¥35, two hours, regular (9.30am–6.30pm)

**Sihui long-distance bus station** ( *Sihui changtu qichezhan*; [Click here](#)) is in the east of town, 200m east of Sihui subway station.

Destinations include:

**Baotou** ¥180, 12 hours, one daily (10.30am)

**Chengde** ¥85, four hours, regular (7am–4pm)

**Dandong** ¥220, 12 hours, one daily (4pm)

**Jixian** ¥30, two hours, regular (6.40am–7.20pm)

**Liuliqiao long-distance bus station** ( *Liuliqiao changtuzhan*; [Click here](#)) is in the southwest of the city, one subway stop from Beijing West Train Station. Destinations include:

**Datong** ¥133, 4½ hours, regular (7.10am–6pm)

**Hefei** ¥380, 13 hours, one daily (1.45pm)

**Luoyang** ¥148, 10 hours, one daily (7.30pm)

**Shijiazhuang** ¥83, 3½ hours, two daily (8am and 5.30pm)

**Xiamen** ¥580, 30 hours, every other day (11am)

**Xi'an** ¥298, 12 hours, one daily (5.45pm)

**Zhengzhou** seat/sleeper ¥128/158, 8½ hours, seat 8.30am, sleeper 7pm and 9pm

**Lianhuachi long-distance bus station** ( *Lianhuachi changtu qichezhan*; [Click here](#)) is a short walk north of Liuliqiao long-distance bus station. Destinations include:

**Anyang** ¥120, 6½ hours, 8am-7pm (regular)

**Luoyang** ¥150, 11 hours, one daily (6.30pm)

**Yan'an** ¥251, 14 hours, one daily (2.30pm)

**Zhaogongkou long-distance bus station** ( *Zhaogongkou qichezhan*; [Click here](#)) is in the south, 10 minutes walk west of Liujiayao subway station. Destinations include:

**Ji'nan** ¥129, 5½ hours, four daily (6am, 8am, 11am and 12.40pm)

**Shanghai** ¥340, 16 hours (4.30pm)

**Tianjin** ¥30–35, two hours, regular (7am–6pm)

## Train

There are no longer dedicated ticket offices for foreigners at the main stations in Beijing, although there is sometimes a ticket window with a temporary ‘for foreigners’ sign attached to it. Look out for this.

Otherwise, join any queue, but arm yourself with a few key Chinese phrases, or better still have a Chinese person write down what you want so you can show the ticket seller. Increasingly, ticket sellers at the three main stations speak a bit of English, but don’t bank on it.

Almost all hotels and hostels, can buy train tickets for you, for a small commission, of course. Official **train ticket offices** (; *huochepiao daishouchu*) are dotted around town and charge a very reasonable ¥10 commission per ticket. But although they have an English sign, English-language skills are usually nonexistent.

For more on trains and train travel in China, [Click here](#).

**Beijing Train Station** ( *Beijing Zhan*; [Offline map](#) ) is the most central of Beijing’s four main train stations, and is linked to the subway system. It’s mainly for T class trains (*tekuai*), slow trains and trains bound for the northeast; most fast trains heading south now depart from Beijing South Train Station and Beijing West Train Station. Slower trains to Shanghai still leave from here, though.

Typical fares (hard-sleeper unless indicated) include:

**Dalian** Z series train, soft sleeper ¥390, 10½ hours (8.46pm)

**Dalian** T & K series, ¥260, 12 hours (6.07pm and 8.06pm)

**Datong** K series, ¥108, six hours (regular)

**Ha’erbin** D series, soft seat ¥267, 10 hours (7.13am, 1.51pm and 2.18am)

**Ha’erbin** T series, ¥281, 12 hours (4.50pm and 9.26pm)

**Jilin** T series, ¥263, 12 hours (7.10pm)

**Shanghai** T series, soft-sleeper ¥327, 14 hours (4.56pm and 7.28pm)

**Beijing West Train Station** ( *xi zhan*; [Click here](#) ) is gargantuan. At the time of research, it was on the disconnected subway Line 9, so it was better to use Military Museum station on Line 1 (turn left out of Exit D of the station, then left again and keep walking; 15 minutes). By

the time you read this, though, Line 9 should be connected to the rest of the subway network.

Beijing West accommodates fast Z series trains, such as the following (fares are soft-sleeper unless indicated):

**Changsha** ¥529, 13 hours (6.16pm)

**Fuzhou** ¥458, 20 hours (3.08pm)

**Hankou (Wuhan)** ¥429, 10 hours (8.54pm and 9.12pm)

**Kowloon (Hong Kong)** ¥488, 24 hours (train Q97, 1.08pm)

**Lanzhou Z & T series, hard-sleeper** ¥345, 17 hours (2.31pm and 8.09pm)

**Nanchang hard sleeper** ¥319, 11½ hours (7.45pm, 8pm and 8.06pm)

**Wuchang (Wuhan) hard sleeper** ¥281, 10 hours (9pm and 9.06pm)

**Xi'an hard sleeper** ¥270–290, 11–12 hours (8.03pm and 8.48pm)

Other typical train fares for hard-sleeper tickets include:

**Changsha T & K series, ¥345, 14 hours (regular)**

**Chengdu T & K series, ¥418–469, 26–31 hours (9am, 11.08am, 6.29pm and 9.52pm)**

**Chongqing T & K series, ¥409–458, 25-30 hours (five daily)**

**Guangzhou T & K series, ¥458, 21 hours (five daily)**

**Guiyang T series, ¥490, 29 hours (3.58pm and 4.57pm)**

**Kunming T series, ¥578, 38 hours (4.37pm)**

**Shenzhen T & K series, ¥467, 24–29 hours (8.12pm and 11.45pm)**

**Shijiazhuang D series, 2nd-class seat, ¥82, two hours (regular)**

**Urumqi T series, ¥569, 34 hours (10.08am) Xi'an T series, ¥274, 13–14 hours (regular from 2pm onwards)**

**Xining T series, ¥379–430, 20–24 hours (1.59pm and 8.09pm)**

**Yichang K series, ¥319–333, 21½ hours (1.35pm and 11.11pm)**

## TRAIN TO TIBET

For Lhasa (; Lasa) in Tibet (; Xizang), the **T27** (*hard seat/hard-sleeper/soft-sleeper* ¥389/766/1189, 44 hours) leaves Beijing West Train Station at 8.09pm, taking just under two days. In the return direction, the T28 departs Lhasa at 1.45pm and arrives at Beijing

West at 8.07am.

You will, of course, need all your Tibet permits in order before taking this train.

**Beijing South Train Station** (*nan zhan*; [Click here](#)) is ultra modern, and is linked to the subway system on Line 4. It accommodates very high speed 'bullet' trains to destinations such as Tianjin, Shanghai, Hangzhou and Qingdao. Sample fares:

**Fuzhou** D series, second-class seat ¥676, 15 hours (7.50am)

**Hangzhou** G series, second-class seat ¥631, six hours (regular)

**Ji'nan** G series, second-class seat ¥185, 1½ hours (regular)

**Nanjing** G series, second-class seat ¥445, four hours (regular)

**Qingdao** G & D series, second-class seat ¥250–315, five hours (regular)

**Shanghai (Hongqiao Station)** G class trains, second-class seat, ¥555, 5½ hours (regular)

**Suzhou** G series, second-class seat ¥525, five hours (regular)

**Tianjin** C series, ¥55, 30 minutes (regular)

**Beijing North Train Station** (*bei zhan*; [Click here](#)) is a short walk north of Xizhimen subway station, and is much smaller. Destinations include:

**Badaling Great Wall** hard/soft seat ¥7/10, 75 minutes (regular)

**Hohhot** K series, hard-sleeper ¥137, nine hours (11.47pm)

## INTERNATIONAL TRAINS

### Mongolia

Two, sometimes three direct weekly trains leave from Beijing Train Station to the Mongolian capital of Ulaanbaatar (; Wulanbatuo). The **Trans-Mongolian (K3)** (hard-sleeper/soft-sleeper/delux ¥1430/2056/2241, 30 hours, 7.45am) to Moscow goes via Ulaanbaatar, and leaves every Wednesday. Meanwhile the **K23** train has a Tuesday service (¥1430/2056/2241, 30 hours, 8.05am) and a Saturday service (¥1472/2056/2202, 30 hours, 8.05am). During the summer, both trains usually run, but at other times of the year it is only one or the other. Double check at the CITS international train ticket office.

In the other direction, the **K4** leaves Ulaanbaatar at 7.15am on Tuesday and arrives in

Beijing at 2.04pm on Wednesday. The **K24** departs from Ulaanbaatar at 8.05am on either Thursday, Friday or both days, and reaches Beijing the following day at 2.04pm.

## Russia

The Trans-Siberian Railway runs from Beijing to Moscow (; Mosike) via two routes: the **Trans-Mongolian (K3)** (¥4049/5962/6527, see Mongolia above) and the **Trans-Manchurian (K19)** (hard-sleeper/delux ¥4473/6953). The K19 leaves Beijing Train Station every Saturday at 11pm, arriving in Moscow on Friday at 5.58pm.

The return **K20** leaves Moscow at 11.55pm on Saturday and arrives in Beijing on Friday at 5.32am.

## Vietnam

There are two weekly trains from Beijing to Hanoi (; Henei). The **T5** (M2 in Vietnam) leaves Beijing West Train Station at 3.45pm on Thursday and Sunday, arriving in Hanoi at 8.10am on Saturday and Wednesday.

In the other direction, the **T6** (M1 in Vietnam) leaves Hanoi at 6.30pm on Tuesday and Friday and arrives at Beijing West at 12.07pm on Friday and Monday. Only soft-sleeper tickets (¥2390) are available.

## North Korea

There are four weekly services to Pyongyang (; Pingrang; hard-sleeper ¥1164-1214, soft-sleeper ¥1692-1737). The **K27** and **K28** both leave twice a week from Beijing Train Station, meaning there's a train on Monday, Wednesday, Thursday and Saturday. Each train leaves at 5.30pm and arrives the following day at 7.30pm.

Return trains leave from Pyongyang at 10.10am on Monday, Wednesday, Thursday and Saturday and arrive the following day in Beijing at 8.31am.

## Visas, Tickets & Tours

Visas aren't available at these border crossings. Ensure you arrange yours beforehand.

You can't buy international tickets at Beijing train stations without going through a travel agency. For Mongolia, Russia and Vietnam, buy tickets at the helpful **CITS** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) (*China International Travel Service; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe;*

[Offline map](#); ☎ 6512 0507; *Beijing International Hotel, 9 Jianguomennei Dajie,*

*Dongcheng;* 🕒 *9am-noon & 1.30-5pm Mon-Fri, 9am-noon Sat & Sun*), at the rear of the left side of the hotel lobby, one block north of Beijing Train Station.

For North Korea, buy tickets at the office of **CRTS** (*China Railway Travel Service; Zhongguo Tiedao Luxingshe; [Click here](#); ☎ 5182 6541; 20 Beifengwo Lu; 20 🕒 9am-4pm*). There's no English sign, but it's opposite the easy-to-spot Tianyou Hotel (; Tianyou Dasha). Walk straight out of Exit C1 of Military Museum subway station, take the first right and CRTS will be on your left (10 minutes).

Trans-Siberian/Mongolian/Manchurian tickets can be bought from home, using **Intourist Travel** ([www.intourist.com](http://www.intourist.com)), which has branches in the UK, the USA, Canada, Finland and Poland.

For help with booking a tour to North Korea, Beijing's leading tour company for the area is **Koryo Tours** ([www.koryogroup.com](http://www.koryogroup.com)).

## **i** Getting Around

### To/From Capital Airport

The **Airport Express** (*Jichang Kuaigui*; one-way ¥25; 30 minutes), also written as ABC (Airport Beijing City), is quick and convenient and links Terminals 2 and 3 to Beijing's subway system at Sanyuanqiao station (Line 10) and Dongzhimen station (Lines 2 and 13). Trains leave every few minutes. Train times are as follows: Terminal 3 (6.21am–10.51pm); Terminal 2 (6.35am–11.10pm); Dongzhimen (6am–10.30pm).

A **taxi** (using its meter) should cost ¥80–100 from the airport to the city centre, including the ¥15 airport expressway toll; bank on 30 minutes to one hour to get into town. Join the taxi ranks and ignore approaches from drivers. When you get into the taxi, make sure the driver uses the meter (; *da biao*). It is also useful to have the name of your hotel written down in Chinese to show the driver. Very few drivers speak English.

There are 10 different routes for the airport **shuttle bus** (*jichang bashi*; one-way ¥16) including those listed below. They all leave from all three terminals and run from around 5am to midnight.

**Line 1** To Fangzhuang (), via Dabeyiao () for the CBD (; *guo mao*)

**Line 3** To Beijing Train Station (; Beijing Zhan), via Dongzhimen (), Dongsishitiao () and Chaoyangmen ()

**Line 7** To Beijing West Train Station (; xi zhan)

**Line 10** To Beijing South Train Station (; nan zhan)

**Coach service to Tianjin** (, ¥80, 2½ hours, 8am–10pm hourly)

## **TAKEN FOR A RIDE**

A well-established illegal taxi operation at the airport attempts to lure weary travellers into a ¥300-plus ride to the city, so be on your guard. If anyone approaches you offering a taxi ride, ignore them and join the queue for a taxi outside.

## To/From Nanyuan Airport

The very small **Nanyuan Airport** ( *Nanyuan Jichang*; *NAY*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6797 8899; *Jingbeixi Lu, Nanyuan Zhen, Fengtai District*; ) feels more like a provincial bus station than an airport, but it does service quite a few domestic routes. Airport facilities are limited to a few shops and snack stalls, and English-language skills are minimal.

The **shuttle bus** (; *jichang bashi*) goes to Xidan (; ¥16; two hours; 11.15am–12.50am), from where you can pick up the subway.

A **taxi** costs around ¥60 to the Tian'anmen Square area. Ignore drivers who approach you. Use the official taxi queue. And make sure the driver uses the meter (; *da biao*).

## Bicycle

See Activities ([Click here](#)).

## Subway

Massive, and getting bigger every year, the **Beijing subway system** ( *ditie*; [www.bjsubway.com](http://www.bjsubway.com); per trip ¥2; 🕒 6am-11pm) is modern, easy to use and cheap. Get hold of a **travel card** ( *jiaotong yikatong*; refundable deposit ¥20) if you don't fancy queuing for tickets each time you travel. The card won't make subway trips any cheaper, although it will get you a 60% discount on all bus journeys within the municipality of Beijing. You'll find a pull-out subway map in the back of this book.

## Taxi

Taxis (; *chuzuche*) are everywhere, although finding one can be a problem during rush hour and rainstorms. It can also take longer than usual to flag down a taxi between around 8pm and 10pm – prime time for people heading home after eating out at a restaurant.

Flag fall is ¥10, and lasts for three kilometres. After that it's ¥2 per kilometre. Drivers also add a small flat-rate fuel surcharge (usually ¥3). Rates increase slightly at night.

Drivers rarely speak any English so it's important to have the name and address of where you want to go written down in Chinese characters. And always remember to keep your hotel's business card


on you so you can get home at the end of the night.

By law, taxi drivers must use the meter (; *da biao*). If they refuse, get out and find another cab. The exception is for long, out-of-town trips to, say, the Great Wall, where prices are agreed (but not paid for!) beforehand.

For taxi companies in Beijing, see our Great Wall chapter ([Click here](#)).

## Car

See our Great Wall chapter ([Click here](#)) for more on car rentals.

The **Vehicle Administration Office** (*Cheguansuo*; [Offline map](#);  6453 0010; ☎ 9am-6pm) on the 1st floor of Terminal 3 at Capital Airport – look for the ‘Traffic Police’ sign – issues temporary driving licences for use in Beijing municipality. Applicants must be between the ages of 18 and 70 and must hold a temporary Chinese visa (three months or less). The straightforward procedure takes about 30 minutes and costs ¥10.

## Bus

Beijing’s buses (; *gonggong qiche*) have always been numerous and dirt cheap (from ¥1), but they’re now becoming easier to use for non-Chinese-speaking visitors, with swipe cards, announcements in English, and bus stop signs written in Pinyin as well as Chinese characters. Nevertheless, it’s still a challenge to get from A to B successfully, and the buses are still as packed as ever, so you rarely see foreigners climbing on board.

If you use a travel card (see subway section), you get 60% discount on all journeys. Useful routes include:

**4** Runs along Chang’an Jie, Jianguomenwai Dajie and Jianguomennei Dajie: Gongzhufen, Junshi Bowuguan, Muxidi, Xidan, Tian’anmen West, Dongdan, Yong’anli, Bawangfen, Sihuzhan

**5** Deshengmen, Di’anmen, Beihai Park, Xihuamen, Zhongshan Park, Qianmen

**20** Beijing South Train Station, Tianqiao, Dashilar, Tian’anmen Sq, Wangfujing, Dongdan, Beijing Train Station



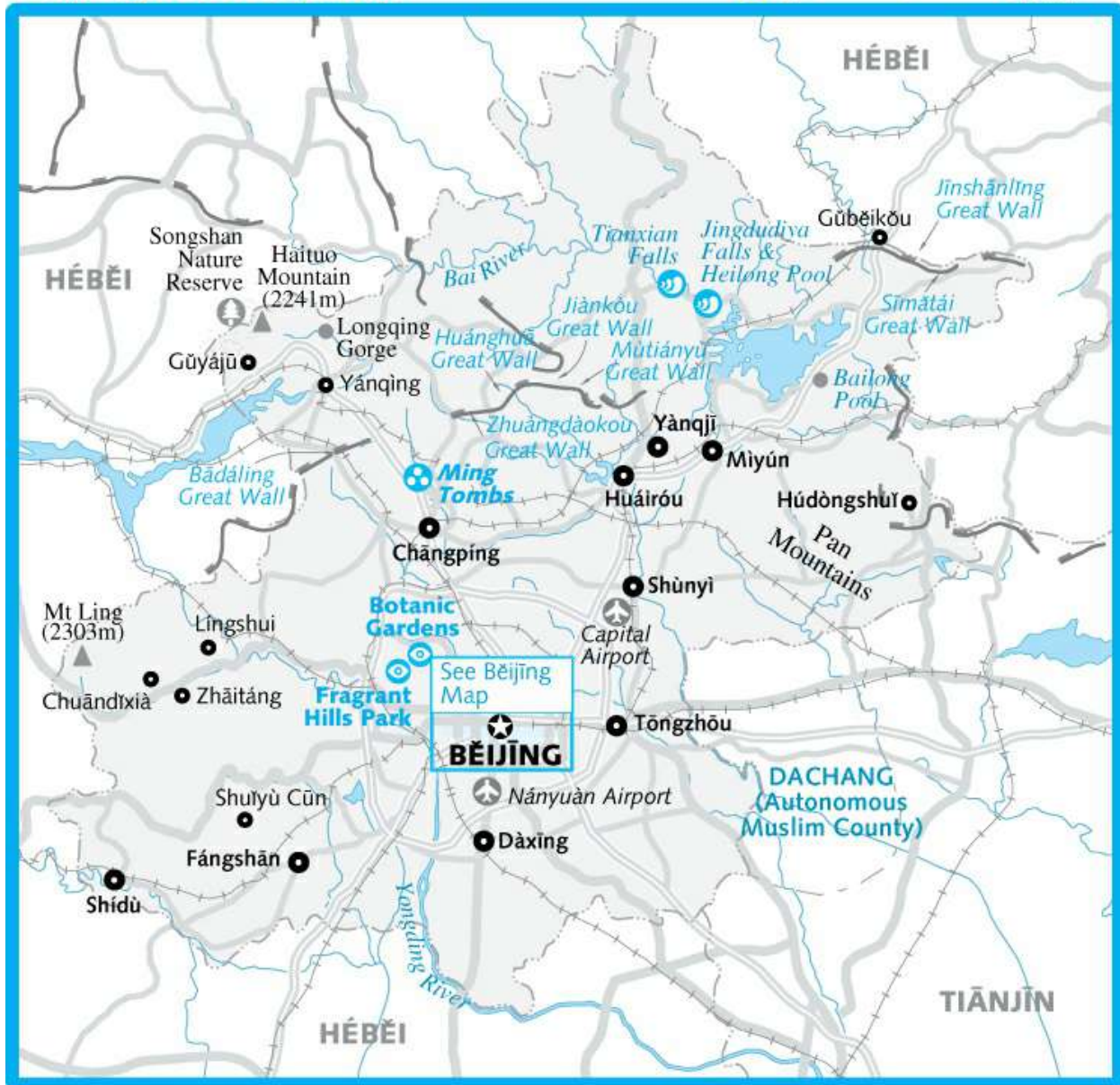
**52** Beijing West Train Station, Muxidi, Fuxingmen, Xidan, Gate of Heavenly Peace, Dongdan, Beijing Train Station, Jianguomen

**103** Beijing Train Station, Dengshikou, China Art Gallery, Forbidden City (north entrance), Beihai Park, Fuchengmen, Beijing Zoo

**332** Beijing Zoo, Weigongcun, Renmin Daxue, Zhongguancun, Haidian, Beijing University, Summer Palace

**2** Qianmen, north on Dongdan Beidajie, Dongsì Nandajie, Dongsì Beidajie, Lama Temple, Zhonghua Minzu Yuan (Ethnic Minorities Park), Asian Games Village

## Běijīng Municipality



## AROUND BEIJING

### The Great Wall

See our dedicated Great Wall chapter ([Click here](#)) for trips to the Great Wall.

---

# Ming Tombs

The Unesco-protected Ming Tombs ( Shisan Ling; [Offline map](#)) are the resting place for 13 of the 16 Ming-dynasty emperors, and makes a fascinating half-day trip. The scattered tombs – each a huge temple-like complex, guarding an enormous burial mound at its rear – back onto the southern slopes of Tianshou Mountain. Only three of the 13 tombs are open to the public, and only one has had its underground burial chambers excavated. But what you do see is impressive, and leaves you wondering just how many priceless treasures must still be buried here.

**Chang Ling** ( *admission ¥45, audio guide ¥50*), the resting place of the first of the 13 emperors to be buried here, contains the body of Emperor Yongle (1402–1424), his wife and 16 concubines, and is the largest, most impressive and most important of the tombs. Seated upon a three-tiered marble terrace, the standout structure in this complex is the **Hall of Eminent Favours** (; Ling'en Dian), containing a recent statue of Yongle, various artefacts excavated from Ding Ling, and a breathtaking interior with vast *nanmu* (cedar wood) columns. As with all three tombs here, you can climb the **Soul Tower** (; Ming Lou) at the back of the complex for fine views of the surrounding hills.

**Ding Ling** ( *admission ¥65, audio guide ¥50*), the final resting place of Emperor Wanli (1572–1620) and his wife and concubines, is at first less impressive than Chang Ling because many of the halls and gateways have been destroyed. A number of the priceless artefacts were ruined after being left in a huge, unsealed storage room that leaked water, and what treasures that were left – including the bodies of Emperor Wanli and his entourage – were looted and burned by red guards during the Cultural Revolution. However, this is the only tomb where you can climb down into the burial chambers. Learn from signs dotted around the tomb how archaeologists found their way in, a la Indiana Jones, after following instructions they discovered on a carved tablet.

**Zhao Ling** ( *admission ¥35*) is the smallest of the three, and many of its buildings are recent rebuilds. But it's much less visited than the other two, so is more peaceful, and the **fortified wall** (; *bao cheng*)

surrounding the burial mound at the back is unusual in both its size and form. The tomb, which is the resting place of Emperor Longqing (1537–1572), is located at the end of the small and eerily quiet village of Zhaoling Cun ().

**Spirit Way** ( *Shen Dao*; admission ¥35) is the original road leading up to the tombs. Commencing from the south with a triumphal triple archway, known as the **Great Palace Gate** (; Dagong Men), the road (now a pedestrianised pathway) passes through **Stele Pavilion** (; Bei Ting), which contains a giant *bixi* bearing the largest stele in China. A guard of 12 sets of giant stone animals and officials awaits.

## Eating

There's a small restaurant (Chinese menu) in the car park at Ding Ling, and a cafe further towards the tomb entrance.

## Getting There & Away

Bus 872 (¥9, one hour, 7.10am–7.10pm) leaves regularly from the north side of the **Deshengmen Gateway** (; [Offline map](#)) and passes all the sights, apart from Zhao Ling, before terminating at Chang Ling, the main tomb. Last bus back is at 6pm.

It's easy to bus hop around. Start at Chang Ling, the main tomb, then take bus 872 (¥2) or 314 (¥1) to Ding Ling, then bus 67 (¥1) to Zhao Ling. Take bus 67 again to Hu Zhuang () bus stop, from where you either catch bus 872 back to Beijing, or walk along Spirit Way to see the stone statues. At the other end of Spirit Way is Da Gong Men () bus stop, from where you can also catch the 872 back to Beijing.

---

## Chuandixia

Nestled in a valley 90km west of Beijing and overlooked by towering peaks, the Ming-dynasty village of Chuandixia (entrance ¥35) is a gorgeous cluster of historic courtyard homes with old-world charm. The backdrop is lovely: terraced orchards and fields with ancient houses and alleyways rising up the hillside. Two hours is more than

enough to wander around the village because it's not big, but staying the night allows you to soak up its historic charms without the distraction of all those day-trippers.

There are **Maoist slogans** to track down, and **temples** in the surrounding hills, but the main attraction here is the **courtyard homes** and the steps and alleyways that link them up. Many of the homes are Qing-dynasty, some remain from Ming times, and some have been turned into small restaurants or guesthouses, meaning you can eat, drink tea or even stay the night in a 500-year-old Chinese courtyard.

## Eating & Sleeping

Restaurant and guesthouse signs are clearly labelled in English, so places are easy to spot. Most restaurants have English menus.

### **Cuan Yun Inn** INN

( *Chuanyun Kezhan*; 23 *Chuandixia Village*; 23 mains ¥20-40; ☺ 6.30am-8.30pm) Best place to sample the village speciality roast leg of lamb (; *kao yang tui*; ¥150). On the right of main road as you enter the village.

### **Cheng Bao Inn** INN

( *Chengbao Kezhan*; bed ¥20, r ¥80-100; mains ¥20-40) Translated as Castle Inn, this 400-year-old building is perched high above most of the rest of the village and enjoys fine views from its terrace restaurant. Rooms are simple but charming. Two of the four rooms have traditional stone *kang* beds, which can be fire-heated in winter. The shared bathroom has no shower, but you can use their neighbour's. Cheng Bao Inn is located in the top left-hand corner of the village.

## Getting There & Away

Bus 892 leaves from a bus stop 200m west of Pingguoyuan subway station (come out of Exit D and turn right) and goes to Zhaitang (; ¥16, two hours, 6.30am–5.50pm), from where you'll have to take a taxi (¥20) for the last 6km to Chuandixia. The last bus back leaves

Zhaitang at 5pm. If you miss that you're looking at around ¥200 for a taxi back to Pingguoyuan.

---

## Other Historic Villages

If the enchanting Chuandixia is a bit too touristy for you, these three lesser-known gems might just do the trick. If you fancy staying the night in Lingshui or Shuiyu, look out for signs for (*nongjiayuan*; village guesthouse). There's nowhere to stay at Guyaju, although some travellers have camped in the caves. This is almost certainly not allowed, though.

### Lingshui VILLAGE

Packed with history, the alluring village of Lingshui ( ) is home to Beijing's oldest temple; **Lingquanchan Temple** (; Lingquanchan Si). It's in ruins, with the main gate pretty much all that has survived, but it dates from the Han dynasty (206 BC–AD 220). Also seek out the **Dragon King Temple** (; Longwang Miao) and the **Goddess Temple** (; Niangniang Miao), which are joined together, and complimented by a pair of ancient intertwining trees.

Lingshui is famed for being a village of scholars. No less than 22 former residents passed the notoriously hard imperial exams back in the day, and the village marks their achievements each year with small celebrations on 6 and 7 August. Doors marked ' ' (*juren*; graduate) show where scholars here used to live.

To get here, turn right out of Exit D of Pingguoyuan subway station and walk 200m to a bus stop. Take bus 829 to Junxiang (, ¥12, 90 minutes, 6.30am–5.30pm) from where you can take a taxi (¥10–20) for the final 5km.

### Shuiyu Cun VILLAGE

Shuiyu Cun ( ) is one of Beijing's most attractive ancient villages (entrance ¥20). Head to the west side of the more modern half of town for your fix of charming cobblestoned alleys and Ming- and Qing--dynasty courtyards (there are more than 100 old courtyards). Hunt

down the weathered **Goddess Temple** (; Niangniang Miao) – yes, this village has one too! – and keep an eye out for the numerous Qing-dynasty millstones dotted around the place. Try not to miss the traditional flagpole ceremony carried out each morning and afternoon by women of the village.

To get here, from Tianqiao long-distance bus station (; *Tianqiao changtu qichezhan*; [Offline map](#)), take bus 836 to Fangshan Gouwu Zhongxin bus stop (, ¥11, 90 minutes, 5.40am–8pm) then cross the road to find Fangshan bus station (; Fangshan keyunzhan) and take bus 23 (*fang ershisan*) to Shuiyu Cun (; ¥11, two hours). Returning, the last 23 bus leaves Shuiyu at 4.20pm.

## **Guyaju** CAVE VILLAGE

Guyaju (; entrance ¥40) is an enigma; an ancient abandoned cave village of unknown origin, it pokes out from rocks in the water-starved hills of Yanqing District and is the stuff of storybook legends. More than a dozen cave dwellings, spanning five or six levels of an open rockface, look out over the surrounding barren landscape. Steps carved into the side of the rock allow you to climb up and explore the pleasingly cool caves, some of which have two or three rooms. Some of the caves on the upper levels have been cordoned off, but there's still plenty of scope for exploration. Pack some food, and picnic in one of the strangest spots in Beijing.

To get here, from Deshengmen gateway (; [Offline map](#)), take bus 919 (¥12, two hours, 6am–6pm) to Yanqing Dongguan () then take bus 920 (¥5, 40 minutes, 6am–6pm) to Dongmenying (), which is about a 2km walk from Guyaju. The last 919 back to Deshengmen Gate leaves Yanqing Dongguan at 5.30pm.

# The Great Wall

Top of section

## Includes »

[Great Wall History](#)

[Visiting the Wall](#)

[Mutianyu](#)

[Jiankou](#)

[Huanghua Cheng](#)

[Zhuangdaokou](#)

[Jinshanling](#)

[Badaling](#)

He who has not climbed the Great Wall is not a true man.

Mao Zedong

China's greatest engineering triumph and must-see sight, the Great Wall (; Wanli Changcheng) wriggles haphazardly from its scattered Manchurian remains in Liaoning province to wind-scoured rubble in the Gobi desert and faint traces in the unforgiving sands of Xinjiang.

The most renowned and robust examples undulate majestically over the peaks and hills of Beijing municipality – and these are the sections we focus on in this chapter – but the Great Wall can be realistically visited in many north China provinces. See the relevant regional chapters for details. It is mistakenly assumed that the wall is one continuous entity; in reality, the edifice exists in chunks interspersed with natural defences (such as precipitous mountains) that had no need for further bastions.



---

# Great Wall History

The 'original' wall was begun more than 2000 years ago during the Qin dynasty (221–207 BC), when China was unified under Emperor Qin Shi Huang. Separate walls that had been constructed by independent kingdoms to keep out marauding nomads were linked together. The effort required hundreds of thousands of workers – many of whom were political prisoners – and 10 years of hard labour under General Meng Tian. An estimated 180 million cubic metres of rammed earth was used to form the core of the original wall, and legend tells that one of the building materials used was the bones of deceased workers.

Its beacon tower system, using gunpowder explosions or smoke signals from burning wolves' dung, quickly conveyed news of enemy movements back to the capital. To the west was Jiayuguan, an important link on the Silk Road, where a customs post of sorts existed and where unwanted Chinese were ejected through the gates to face the terrifying wild west.

Ming engineers made determined efforts to revamp the eroding bastion, facing it with some 60 million cubic metres of bricks and stone slabs. This project took more than a century, and the cost in human effort and resources was phenomenal. The picture- postcard brick-clad modern day manifestations of the Great Wall date from Ming times.

The wall occasionally served its impractical purpose but ultimately failed as an impenetrable line of defence. Genghis Khan dryly noted, 'The strength of a wall depends on the courage of those who defend it'. Sentries could be bribed. Despite the wall, the Mongol armies managed to impose foreign rule on China from 1279 to 1368 and the bastion failed to prevent the Manchu armies from establishing two and a half centuries of non-Chinese rule on the Middle Kingdom. The wall did not even register with the 19th-century European 'barbarians' who simply arrived by sea, and by the time the Japanese invaded, it had been outflanked by new technologies (such as the aeroplane).

The wall was largely forgotten after that. Mao Zedong encouraged the use of the wall as a source of free building material, a habit that

continues unofficially today. Its earthen core has been pillaged and its bountiful supply of shaped stone stripped from the ramparts for use in building roads, dams and other constructions.

Without its cladding, lengthy sections have dissolved to dust and the barricade might have vanished entirely without the tourist industry. Several important sections have been rebuilt, kitted out with souvenir shops, restaurants, toboggan rides and cable cars, populated with squads of hawkers and opened to the public.

## The Great Wall



## Visiting the Wall

**Badaling** is the most touristy part of the wall, followed by **Mutianyu**. Part-renovated and much less commercial are **Simatai**, **Jinshanling** and, to a lesser extent, **Huanghua Cheng**. Unrenovated sections of

'wild wall' include **Jiankou** and **Zhuangdaokou**, but there are many others. Most of the above can be reached using public transport. Some require a taxi/minivan ride for the last part of the journey.

Tours run by hostels, or by specialist tour companies, are far preferable to those run by ordinary hotels or state-run travel companies, as they tend to cater more to the needs of adventurous Western travellers and don't come with any hidden extras, such as a side-trip to the Ming Tombs (a common add-on) or a tiresome diversion to gem factory or a traditional Chinese medicine centre.

Almost all the hostels reviewed in the Beijing chapter ([Click here](#)) of this guide run Great Wall trips that we recommend.

Independent companies, which run trips to the wall that we like, include the following:

**Beijing Sideways** ([www.beijingsideways.com](http://www.beijingsideways.com)) For trips in a motorbike sidecar.

**Bespoke Beijing** ([www.bespokebeijing.com](http://www.bespokebeijing.com))

**Bike Beijing** ([www.bikebeijing.com](http://www.bikebeijing.com)) For cycling trips.

**Dandelion Hiking** ([www.chinahiking.cn](http://www.chinahiking.cn))

**SnapAdventures** ([www.snapadventures.com](http://www.snapadventures.com))

---

## Mutianyu

Like Badaling, **Mutianyu** (*adult/student ¥45/25; ☀ 7am-6.30pm, winter 7.30am-5.30pm*), 90km northeast of Beijing, is a recently renovated stretch of wall, which sees a lot of tourists and is fairly easy to reach from Beijing. It's also well set up for families, with a cable car, a chair lift and a hugely popular toboggan ride. Far fewer tour groups come here than go to Badaling, though, so the crowds are much more manageable, and there is the opportunity to do some good hiking.

Famed for its Ming-era guard towers and excellent views, this 3km-long section of wall is largely a recently restored Ming dynasty structure that was built upon an earlier Northern Qi-dynasty edifice. With 26 watchtowers, the wall is impressive and manageable, and although it can get crowded, most souvenir hawking is reserved to the lower levels.

From the ticket office, there are three or four stepped pathways leading up to the wall, plus a **cable car** (*lan che*; one-way/return ¥60/80, children half price), a **chair lift** (*suodao*; one-way ¥50) and a **toboggan ride** (*hua dao*; adult/child ¥60/50), making this ideal for those who can't manage too many steps, or who have young kids in tow.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

As with Badaling, Mutianyu has a branch of **Subway** (just down from the car park). There are also lots of fruit stalls here. Up by the main entrance is **Yi Song Lou Restaurant** (*Yi Song Lou Canting*; mains ¥20-50; 🍴), which does OK Chinese food.

## **The Schoolhouse** HOLIDAY HOMES \$\$\$

(*Xiaoyuan*; 📞 6162 6505; [www.theschoolhouseatmutianyu.com](http://www.theschoolhouseatmutianyu.com); *Mutianyu Village*; houses per night ¥2600-5000; 📶📶) The main building is a former primary school, about 1km down from the Mutianyu car park, but accommodation is in a collection of lovingly restored buildings dotted around the area, each comprising luxury self-contained multi-roomed accommodation, which can sleep families or small groups. Excellent food.

## **Getting to Mutianyu**

From **Dongzhimen Wai bus stand** (; ; Dongzhimen Wai chezhan), bus 867 makes a special detour to Mutianyu twice every morning (¥16, 2½ hours, 7am and 8.30am, 15 March to 15 November only) and returns from Mutianyu twice each afternoon (2pm and 4pm).

Otherwise, you need to go via the town of Huairou (). From **Dongzhimen transport hub** (; Dongzhimen shuniuzhan) take bus 916 (the character is 'kuai', and means 'fast') to Huairou (¥12, one hour, 6.30am to 7.30pm). Get off at Mingzhu Guangchang () bus stop (ignore touts that try to lure you off the bus before that), then take the first right to find a bunch of minivans waiting to take passengers to Mutianyu (per person ¥15, 30 minutes).

Return minivans start drying up from around 6pm. The last 916 back to Beijing leaves Huairou at around 7pm.

---

## Jiankou

For stupefyingly gorgeous hikes along perhaps Beijing's most incomparable section of 'wild wall', head to the rear section of the **Jiankou Great Wall** ( *Hou Jiankou Changcheng*; admission ¥20), accessible from the town of Huairou. Tantalising panoramic views of the Great Wall spread out in either direction from here, as the crumbling brickwork meanders dramatically along a mountain ridge; the setting is truly sublime. But this is completely unrestored wall, so it is both dangerous and, strictly speaking, illegal to hike along it. Make sure you wear footwear with very good grips, and never attempt to traverse this section in the rain, particularly during thunderstorms. When the weather is fine, though, the Jiankou area offers fabulous opportunities to hike and camp along the wall.

From the drop off at Xizhazi Village (; Xizhazi Cun), it's a one-hour walk uphill to the wall, along a narrow dirt path, which climbs through a beautiful pine forest. From here turn east (left) to hike all the way to Mutianyu (two hours), from where you can easily pick up transport back to Huairou, or even to Beijing. Note, there are different parts, or *dui* () to Xizhazi Village. All have paths that lead up to the wall, but for the sake of ease, head to the first part of the village (; yi dui), which is down a lane to your left immediately after the ticket office.

## Sleeping & Eating

The following are friendly but basic, have no English signs, and no English is spoken.

### **Jiankou Changcheng Nongjiayuan** GUESTHOUSE \$

( ☎ 6161 1794, 136 9307 0117; r ¥80-100; 🌿 ) The first *nongjiayuan* (; farmers-style courtyard) you come to as you enter Xizhazi Village, rooms here are set around a vegetable-patch courtyard, and are simple, but have private bathrooms. Does food.

## Guohuai Dayuan *GUESTHOUSE* \$

(☎ 137 1698 2205, 136 2136 2662; r ¥80-120; 🌐) Further into the village, this place has similarly clean but simple rooms. Meals here cost a set-price ¥30.

## Getting to Jiankou

As with getting to Mutianyu, take bus 916 from the **Dongzhimen transport hub** (; Dongzhimen shuniuzhan) to Huairou (¥12, one hour, 6.30am to 7.30pm). Get off at Mingzhu Guangchang () bus stop, then start negotiating for a taxi to Xizhazi Village (; Xizhazi Cun; one-way ¥100-130, one hour).

### TAXIS AND CAR HIRE

**Miles Meng** (☎ 137 1786 1403; [www.beijingtourvan.blog.sohu.com](http://www.beijingtourvan.blog.sohu.com)) is a friendly, reliable, English-speaking driver with a variety of decent-quality vehicles at his disposal. Prices for day-long trips to the Great Wall start at ¥600 to ¥700 per vehicle (for the Mutianyu Great Wall area), and he is happy to drop you at one part of the wall and pick you up at another to allow you to hike from A to B. See his blog for a full list of prices.

**Mr Sun** ( *Sun Xiansheng*; ☎ 136 5109 3753) only speaks Chinese but is very reliable and can find other drivers if he's busy. Does round trips to the Great Wall from around ¥600.

**Xin Lucheng** (☎ 6235 5003) is a local Beijing taxi company. He does round trips to the Great Wall for around ¥500. No English spoken.

**Hertz** ( *Hezi*; ☎ 800 988 1336, 5739 2000; [www.hertzchina.com](http://www.hertzchina.com); 🕒 8am-8am Mon-Fri, 9am-6pm Sat & Sun) has an office at Terminal 3 of Beijing airport. Self-drive hire cars (; zija) start from ¥230 per day (up to 150km per day), with a ¥20,000 deposit. See [Click here](#) for details on getting a temporary driving licence. A car-with-driver service (; daijia) is also available from ¥660 per day.

---

## Huanghua Cheng

Strikingly free of crowds, **Huanghua Cheng**, 77km north of Beijing, allows visitors to admire this classic and well-preserved example of


Ming defence, with high and wide ramparts, intact parapets and sturdy beacon towers, in relative isolation. The patchy and periodic restoration work on the wall here has left its crumbling nobility and striking authenticity largely intact, with the ramparts occasionally dissolving into rubble and some of the steps in ruins.

From the road, you can go either west (left) towards Zhuangdaokou, or east (right) up the stupidly steep section that rises up from the reservoir and which eventually leads to Jiankou and Mutianyu (if you've got three days on your hands). Not only is it very steep, the stonework here has been worn smooth, making it very slippery. You need shoes with very good grip. There are also no guardrails here.

To head west, it's easiest to climb the path that leads up to the wall from behind the guesthouse Tenglong Fandian. The wall on this side of the road is almost as steep and, in places, equally smooth and slippery. The views from the top, looking down on the reservoir and at the opposite section of the wall stretching over the mountain, are simply stunning.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Tenglong Fandian *GUESTHOUSE* \$

( 6165 1929; *r without/with attached bathroom ¥50/80*) One of a number of small guesthouses here. Most are on the river side of the road, but this friendly place, accessed via steps on your left just before the wall, clings to the hillside on the other side of the road and sports fine views of the wall. Rooms are basic, but clean and sleep two to three people. No English spoken, but the restaurant, with terrace seating, has an English menu (mains ¥15 to ¥35).

## Getting to Huanghua Cheng

From **Dongzhimen transport hub** (; Dongzhimen shuniuzhan) take bus 916 to Huairou (¥12, one hour, 6.30am to 7.30pm). Get off at Nanhuayuan Sanqu () bus stop, then walk straight ahead about 200m (crossing one road), until you get to the next bus stop, called

Nanhuayuan Siqu ( ). A bus to Huanghua Cheng (¥8, one hour, until 6.30pm) stops here, but it doesn't have a number. Instead look for a placard in the front windscreen reading: ' ', which means 'Huairou to Huanghua Cheng'. It only runs about once an hour, though, so if you get bored waiting, hop in one of the minivans (¥10), which regularly trawl the bus stop for passengers.

The last 916 from Huairou back to Beijing leaves Huairou at around 7pm.

---

## Zhuangdaokou

The small village of **Zhuangdaokou**, 80km north of Beijing, and just over the hill from Huanghua Cheng, has access to a rarely visited and completely unrestored section of 'wild wall'. It's also possible to hike over to Huanghua Cheng on a restored section from here, although surprisingly few people do this, considering how straightforward it is.

The bus should drop you off at the far end of Zhuangdaokou Village, where the road crosses a small stream. Pick up some water and snacks at the small shop near here, then turn right and follow the lane along the stream and then up behind the houses until it meets a rocky pathway that leads up the wall. Once at the wall (20 minutes), turn right for a one-hour walk along a restored, but very steep section of wall which eventually leads down to the road at Huanghua Cheng, via some fabulous viewpoints. Or turn left to commence a two-hour hike along a crumbling stretch of shrub-covered wall towards Shui Changcheng. You'll see almost no one on this unrestored section and the going can get tricky, so take extra care here. See [Click here](#) for more details.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Zaoxiang Tingyuan *GUESTHOUSE* \$

( 📞 135 2208 3605; r ¥40-100) On your right, just before the stream at the end of the village, this modest guesthouse – one of a few here – is housed in a 70-year-old courtyard building. A couple of rooms have



TV, a couple have air-conditioning, and one has a private bathroom. No English sign, no English spoken. Does home-cooked meals, but the menu is in Chinese only. Dishes we've enjoyed here include stewed pork with roast chestnuts (; lizi rou), pork fried with chillies (; chaorou jianjiao), braised pork belly (; hong shao rou), barbecued fish (; kao yu) and beef and potato stew (; tudou niurou).

## Getting to Zhuangdaokou

Same as getting to Huanghua Cheng, but once you've arrived at the bus stop in Huairou called Nanhuayuan Siqu (), board a bus to Shui Changcheng, which stops at Zhuangdaokou (¥8, one hour, every 30 minutes until 6.30pm). It doesn't have a number. Instead look for a placard in the front windscreen reading: , which means Huairou to Shui Changcheng.

---

## Jinshanling

The **Jinshanling** (*Jinshanling Changcheng; summer/winter ¥65/55*) section of the Great Wall, near the small town of Gubeikou (), is 142km northeast of Beijing and marks the starting point of an exhilarating 7km hike to **Simatai** (*admission ¥40; ☺ 8am-5pm*). The adventure – winding through stunningly remote mountainous terrain – takes three to four hours as the trail is steep and parts of the wall have collapsed, but it can be traversed without too much difficulty, provided you are reasonably fit. Note that the watchtowers are in various states of preservation and some have been stripped of their bricks. The scenery is perhaps less picturesque than at, say, Jiankou – here the landscape is drier and more stark – but arguably more powerful and it leaves you with a feeling that you're hiking through genuinely remote territory.

Autumn is the best season for hiking here; in summer you'll be sweating gallons, so load up with water before you go (ever-present hawkers on the wall sell pricey water for around ¥10 a bottle or more, depending on how thirsty you appear).

To commence the hike to Simatai, turn left when you reach the wall and keep going. If you need it, there's a **cable car** (*lan che*; one way/return trip ¥30/50) by the west gate ticket office.

Simatai, which is more touristy than Jinshanling, was closed for renovations at the time of research, but should be open again when you read this. Arriving at Simatai, having walked from Jinshanling, you used to have to buy another ticket to cross a rope bridge (¥5), as well as the entrance ticket to the Simatai section.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

It can be a long trip out here, so take the stress out of having to rush back the same day by arriving mid-afternoon and hunting around near the West Gate (*Ximen*) for some lodgings. Rooms range from ¥50 to ¥100; meals from ¥30. Look for signs on buildings saying (*nongjiayuan*; *farmers-style courtyard*). You can then mount your assault on the wall the next morning.

The East Gate entrance (*Dongmen*), about 2km up from the West Gate, has a hotel-lobby-like cafe, with an English menu.

## **Getting to Jinshanling**

### **Local Bus**

There are two options: catch a bus to Chengde (; ¥85, 2½ hours) from **Sihui long-distance bus station** (; Sihui changtu qichezhan), 200m walk southeast of Sihui subway station, and tell the driver you want to get off at Jinshanling. You'll be dropped at a service station on the highway, about 1km from the east gate ticket office (walk back under the highway and keep going). Note, you have to pay the full price ¥85 ticket to Chengde, even though you get off early at Jinshanling.

Your second option is to catch Bus 980 from **Dongzhimen transport hub** (Dongzhimen shuniuzhan; [Offline map](#)) to the town of Miyun (¥15), and then take a taxi to Jinshanling (one-way ¥50).

The last bus 980 back to Beijing leaves Miyun at 7pm. Chengde-to-Beijing buses run along the main highway until mid-evening and usually have spare seats if you flag one down at the service station.

If you're returning from Simatai after the hike from Jinshanling, you should be able to catch a shared minivan or taxi to Miyun from where you can pick up bus 980.

### Tourist Bus

A special tourist bus (; jinshanling changcheng luyou banche zhuanxian; ¥120, two hours) leaves once a day for Jinshanling from **Dongzhimen Wai bus stand** (; ) at 8am and returns from Jinshanling at 3pm.

### Tours

Before renovation work began on the Simatai section of the wall, youth hostels in Beijing used to run highly recommended early-morning trips by minibus (excluding/including ticket ¥180/260) to Jinshanling for the four-hour hike to Simatai. Buses usually left at around 6am or 7am. They would drop you at Jinshanling, then pick you up four hours later in Simatai. The entire journey from Beijing and back would take up to 12 hours. **Beijing Downtown Backpackers** ([Click here](#)) said at the time of research that it was planning to restart the trip once Simatai had opened again. Check with staff there, or with other hostels, for details.

---

## Badaling

The mere mention of its name sends a shudder down the spine of hardcore Great Wall walkers, but **Badaling** (*Badaling Changcheng*; adult/student ¥45/25; ☀ 6am-7pm summer, 7am-6pm winter), 70km northwest of Beijing, is the easiest part of the wall to get to and as a result, if you are really pushed for time, this may be your only option. It ticks all the iffy Great Wall boxes in one flourish: souvenir stalls, T-shirt-flogging hawkers, restaurants, heavily restored brickwork, little authenticity, guardrails and mobs of sightseers. However, on the plus side, the scenery is raw and striking and the wall, which snakes off in classic fashion into the hills, is extremely photogenic. It dates back to Ming times (1368–1644), although it underwent particularly heavy restoration work during the 1950s and 1980s when it was essentially

rebuilt.

There is a **cable car** (*lan che*; one-way/return ¥60/80; 🕒 8am-4.30pm) as well as disabled access. You'll find a **Bank of China ATM** near the west car park.

## Eating

There are dozens of restaurants on the main drags leading up to the entrance to the wall. Most lead up from the west car park, and most are fast-food outlets or snack stalls. Give KFC and Subway a miss and go next door instead, to **Yong He King** (*Yonghe Dawang*; mains ¥10-20; 🕒 10am-9pm; 🍴), for the Chinese version of fast food: rice meals, dumplings, noodles.

## TOP GREAT WALL HIKES

### Jinshanling to Simatai

**Three to four hours** Very popular with youth hostel groups before Simatai closed for renovation, but should be open again by the time you read this, the three- to four-hour hike from Jinshanling is straightforward, but breathtaking. Scenery is vast, rugged and remote and the wall is a photogenic mix of part-restored and unrestored sections. Access the wall from the East Gate at Jinshanling (20-minute climb up steps), then turn left when you hit the wall.

### Jiankou to Mutianyu

**Two hours** Unrivalled for pure 'wild-wall' scenery, this stretch of the wall at Jiankou is very tough to negotiate, but soon links up with the easier, restored section at Mutianyu. Access the wall from the back of Jiankou Great Wall (; Hou Jiankou) at the first part of Xizhazi Village (; Xizhazi Cun Yidui). It takes an hour to reach the wall from the village; from the sign that says the Great Wall here is closed, follow a narrow dirt path uphill and through a lovely pine forest. Go straight on at the abandoned wooden hut, rather than right, and then when you hit the wall, turn left.

### Zhuangdaokou to Huanghua Cheng

**One hour** This very steep climb on a restored section of the wall offers fabulous views of Huanghua Cheng Great Wall once you reach the top. Access the wall from Zhuangdaokou Village; turn right at the end of the village, by the small river, then follow the river (keeping it on your left) before turning right up the hill behind the houses, to climb a stony pathway. When you reach the wall (20 minutes), turn right and keep climbing before eventually descending to the main road by the reservoir, from where you can pick up buses back to Huairou.

### Zhuangdaokou to Shui Changcheng

**Two hours** Climb up to the wall from Zhuangdaokou Village, only this time turn left at the wall to be rewarded with this dangerous, but fabulous stretch of crumbling bastion. When the wall eventually splits at a corner tower; turn left. Soon after, you reach another tower from where you can see the reservoir far below you, and the wall crumbles down the mountain and is impassable. Take the path that leads down to your left, just before the tower. This path links up with the wall again, but if you follow it all the way down to the road from here, you'll be able to pick up a bus back to Huairou from the lower of the two large car parks.

## Getting to Badaling

### Local Bus

The **877** (¥12, one hour, 6am-5pm), **919** (¥12, 1½ hours, 6am-6.30pm) and **880** (¥12, 1½ hours, 7am-5pm) all leave for Badaling from the northern side of the Deshengmen Gateway ( ; ) , about 500m east of Jishuitan subway station. Bus 877 goes to the east car park, the 919 and 880 go to the west car park. The main entrance, beside two large archways, is between the two car parks and uphill from both.

### Tour Bus

Tour buses to Badaling depart from the beautifully named **Beijing Hub of Tourist Dispatch** ( *Beijing Luyou Jisan Zhongxin*; ☎ 8353 1111), by Arrow Tower, south of Tian'anmen Sq. Line C runs to Badaling (¥120 return, price includes entry to Great Wall, departs 9.30am to 11am); Line A runs to Badaling and the Ming Tombs (¥180, includes entrance tickets and lunch, departs 7am to 9.30am). Plan about nine hours for the whole trip. The tours are primarily aimed at Chinese domestic tourists, so don't expect much English to be spoken.

### Train

Badaling Train Station is a short walk down from the west car park. Morning trains (hard/soft seat ¥7/11, 75 minutes) leave from Beijing North Station ([Click here](#); ; Beijing Beizhan) – which is beside Xizhimen subway station – at these times: 6.12am, 7.58am, 8.34am, 9.02am and 10.57am. Afternoon trains return at 1.02pm, 3.19pm, 3.52pm, 4.21pm, 5.33pm and 7.55pm.



# Tianjin & Hebei

POP 110 MILLION

## Includes »

[Tianjin](#)

[Around Tianjin](#)

[Hebei](#)

[Shijiazhuang](#)

[Around Shijiazhuang](#)

[Chengde](#)

[Shanhaiguan](#)

[Jimingyi](#)

---

## Why Go?

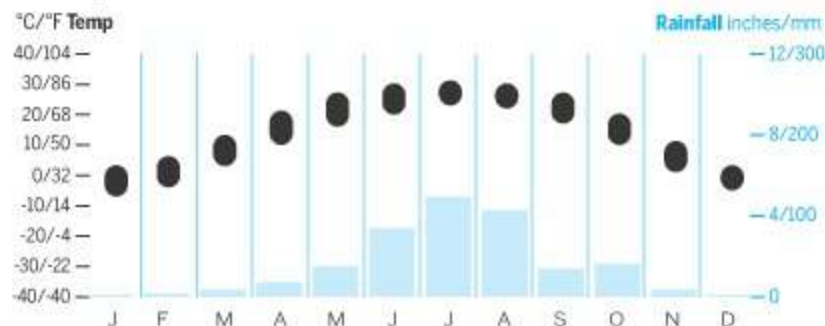
A slow-moving panorama of grazing sheep, brown earth and fields of corn and wheat, Hebei ( ) is Beijing's back garden. Cosmopolitan Tianjin ( ) may put on a dazzling show, and providential economic feng shui from Beijing lends a sparkle here and there, but arid Hebei's main charms are its timeworn and earthy textures. More than any- thing,

Hebei offers the chance to disengage from Beijing's modernity and frantic urban tempo, and experience a more timeless China. Wander through ancient settlements and walled towns, skirt the wild edges of the former Manchuria and journey to the majestic 18th-century summer retreat of the Qing emperors in Chengde. There are temples galore to explore, or just head for the hills and little-visited towns whose ancient rhythms and rural seclusion make them the perfect retreats.

---

## When to Go

### Tiānjīn



**Mar & Apr** Avoid the intense summer crush and roasting north China weather.

**Jun & Jul** Get bronzed on the beaches of Beidaihe.

**Sep & Oct** Catch the fresh Hebei autumnal weather (not too hot, not too cold).

---

## Best Ancient Towns

- » Chengde ([Click here](#))
- » Jimingyi ([Click here](#))
- » Yujiacun ([Click here](#))
- » Zhengding ([Click here](#))

# Best Temples

- » Longxing Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Monastery of Deep Compassion ([Click here](#))
- » Puning Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Taishan Temple ([Click here](#))





## Tianjin & Hebei Highlights

- 1 Say *zaijian* (goodbye) to China's growing urban sprawl in the centuries-old stone village of **Yujiacun** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Be rendered speechless by the colossal multiarmed occupant of **Puning Temple** ([Click here](#)) in Chengde
- 3 Steal across the Liaoning border to see **Jiumenkou Great Wall** ([Click here](#)) plunging into the Jiujiang River
- 4 Step back in time in the ancient walled town of **Jimingyi** ([Click here](#)), China's oldest surviving postal station
- 5 Explore the temple town of **Zhengding** ([Click here](#)) and size up the giant metal statue of Guanyin in the Longxing Temple
- 6 Wander the grand, European-inspired streets of the former foreign concession areas in **Tianjin** ([Click here](#))
- 7 See where the Great Wall meets the sea in **Shanhaiguan** ([Click here](#))

## Climate

Considerable temperature differences exist between the mountainous north and the south of the province, as well as between coastal and inland regions, but Hebei generally gets very hot in summer and freezing cold in winter, with dust fallout in spring and heavy rain in July and August.

## Language

Although Hebei is a Mandarin-speaking region, areas furthest from Beijing have pronounced regional accents and a distinctive argot.

## Getting There & Away

Beijing and Tianjin are the most convenient bases for exploring the province and the two cities are connected by high-speed express train. Hebei is also linked to numerous other domestic destinations by both bus and rail.

## Getting Around

The provincial rail hub is Shijiazhuang, with rail links to all major towns and cities in Hebei. Travel to Chengde, Jimingyi and Shanhaiguan is best done from Beijing. Bus connections cover the entire province.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥400

\$\$ ¥400 to ¥1000

\$\$\$ more than ¥1000

### Eating

\$ less than ¥50

\$\$ ¥50 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

## TIANJIN

---

# Tianjin

 022 / POP 4.57 MILLION

Stepping out of the long shadow cast by its near neighbour Beijing at a rate of knots, the ambitious and booming port of Tianjin is a special municipality that sits in the east of Hebei. Its past as a foreign concession and impressive European architecture is redolent of Shanghai. Now, after a facelift of its historic quarters and riverfront, Tianjin's potential as a tourist destination is finally being realised. Some stunning modern architecture pushes towards the sky here, dramatic new bridges span the Hai River and luxury hotels are opening all the time. And with the local economy growing faster than

anywhere else in China, at a dizzying rate of 16.7% a year according to the city government, Tianjin clearly means business. Best of all, slick and very speedy trains link Tianjin to Beijing, making day trips supremely easy.

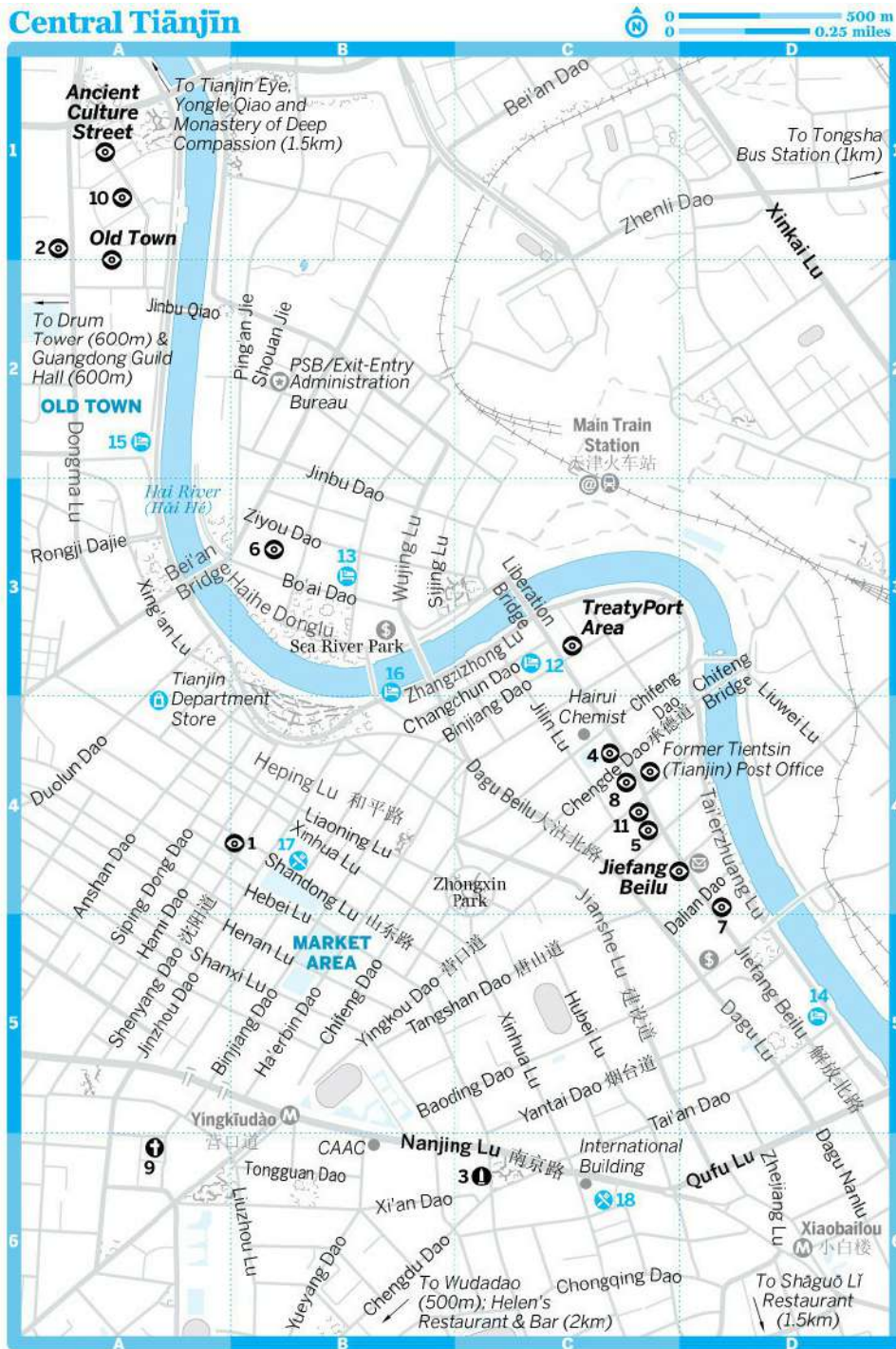
## History

Tianjin rose to prominence as a grain-storage point during the Mongol Yuan dynasty. The city found itself at the intersection of both inland and port navigation routes, and by the 15th century the town had become a walled garrison.

During the foreign concession era, the British and French settled in, joined by the Japanese, Germans, Austro-Hungarians, Italians and Belgians between 1895 and 1900. Each concession was a self-contained world, with its own prison, school, barracks and hospital. During the Boxer Rebellion, the foreign powers levelled the walls of the old Chinese city.

The Tangshan earthquake of 28 July 1976 registered 8.2 on the Richter scale and killed nearly 24,000 people in the Tianjin area. The city was badly rocked, but escaped the devastation that virtually obliterated nearby Tangshan, where (according to government estimates) some 240,000 residents died.

# Central Tiānjīn



**Central Tianjan**

## Top Sights

[Ancient Culture Street](#) A1

[Jiefang Beilu](#) C4

[Old Town](#) A1

[Treaty Port Area](#) C3

## Sights

1 [Antique Market](#) B4

2 [Confucius Temple](#) A1

3 [Earthquake Memorial](#) C6

4 [Former French Municipal Administration Council Building](#) C4

5 [Hongkong & Shanghai Bank Building](#) C4

6 [Italian Concession](#) B3

7 [Jardine Matheson & Co Building](#) D4

8 [Sino-French Industrial and Commercial Bank](#) C4

9 [St Joseph's Church](#) A6

10 [Tianhou Temple](#) A1

11 [Yokohama Specie Bank Ltd](#) C4

## Sleeping

12 [Astor Hotel](#) D5

13 [Home Inn](#) C3

14 [Home Inn](#) B3

15 [Orange Hotel](#) A2

16 [St Regis Tianjin](#) B3

## Eating

17 [Goubuli](#) B4

18 [YY Beer House](#) C6

## Sights

The grandiose vista that greets visitors as they exit Tianjin train station signals the city's intent to rise even further. To the west the glittering **Tianjin World Financial Centre** (Jinrong Dasha), a singularly bold statement of glass and steel, towers over the river. Facing you across **Liberation Bridge** (; Jiefang Qiao) is a lengthy and ostentatious

sweep of rebuilt red and orange Sino-European pomposity in brick, splendidly illuminated at night. A huge and rather surreal mechanical clock tells the time just north of Liberation Bridge, while a bizarre collection of erotic statues do their thing west of the bridge on the south side of the water.

## Treaty Port Area *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

South of the station across Liberation Bridge was the British concession, on and around Jiefang Lu. Cross over the bridge to walk around the newly revamped concession district near the river. You need to walk a fair distance south along **Jiefang Beilu** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( ) to delve behind the rebuilt riverside facade, an

impressive sight at night from the north side of the river,.

Buildings of note include the **former French Municipal Administration Council Building** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yuan Faguo Gongyiju Dalou), built in 1924, on Chengde Dao; the **Sino-French Industrial and Commercial Bank** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zhongfa Gongshang Yinhang), dating from 1932; and the **Yokohama Specie Bank Ltd** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Hengbin Zhengjin Yinhang), dating from 1926.

Next door at No 82 is the former **Hongkong & Shanghai Bank Building** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Huifeng Yinhang), a pompous creation, now housing the Bank of China. Look out also for the former address of **Jardine Matheson & Co** (; Yihe Yanghang), decorated with vast pillars, at No 157.

## Old Town *HISTORIC SITE*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( ) Originally enclosed by a wall, Tianjin's old town centres on the restored **Drum Tower** [Offline map](#) ( *Gu Lou; Chengxiang Zhonglu; admission free*; 🕒 *9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun*). Decorated with *pailou* (ornate archways), the pedestrianised shopping street to the north of the Drum Tower is excellent for buying items such as calligraphy brushes, kites, paper cuts, snuff bottles, fans, silk, ceramics, jade,

taichi swords, chops, jewellery, candy floss and sugarcane juice.

Opposite the Drum Tower you'll find the **Guangdong Guild Hall** (*Guangdong Huiguan*; 📍 2727 3443; 31 Nanmenli Dajie; admission ¥10; 🕒 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun), built in 1907 and also known as the Museum of Opera; it's a lovely old ornate hall with lavishly carved woodwork and performances of traditional music from old-timers. The historic **Confucius Temple** (*Wen Miao*; 📍 2727 2812; 1 Dongmennei Dajie; admission ¥30; 🕒 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun) is also nearby.

### **Monastery of Deep Compassion** *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

(*Dabei Chanyuan*; 40 Tianwei Lu; admission ¥5; 🕒 9am-6.30pm Apr-Oct, 9am-5pm Nov-Mar) Tianjin's most important Buddhist temple is noted for its **Shijia Bao Hall** (Shijia Baodian) and the subsequent large hall where a huge and golden multiarmed statue of Guanyin awaits, her eyes following you around the hall. The covered alleys to the side of the temple house an extraordinary market of religious paraphernalia: from prayer mats to books, Buddhist rosaries, talismans, statues and incense.

### **Italian Concession** *HISTORIC AREA*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yishi Fengjingqu*) Like a well-cut suit discovered hanging in the back of a wardrobe, Tianjin's newly spruced up Italian Style District aims to dress up the city as a cosmopolitan and elegant destination. It's more for domestic visitors, who come here to dine at Italian and French restaurants and daydream they are in Europe. While it's an attractive quadrant for exploration, prices are stratospheric and the blatant commercial bent reduces its charm.

### **Ancient Culture Street** *HISTORIC STREET*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guwenhua Jie*) Ancient Culture Street is stuffed with vendors flogging Chinese calligraphy, paintings, tea sets, paper cuts, clay figurines, chops and goods from all over China. The fascinating **Tianhou Temple** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Tianhou Gong*; admission

free; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun), Tianjin's version of the shrine dedicated to the goddess of sailors that is found in every Chinese seaport, is also here, as well as a shoe museum.

## **Wudadao** HISTORIC SITE

(*Five Large Roads*) The area of Wudadao is rich in the villas and pebble-dash former residences of the well-to-do of the early 20th century. Consisting of five roads in the south of the city – Machang Dao, Changde Dao, Munan Dao, Dali Dao and Chengdu Dao – the streetscapes are European, lined with charming houses dating from the 1920s and before. Some scream of English suburbia; others are art deco. Hop on a horse and carriage for ¥50 tours or jump on an electric buggy (¥20 per person).

## **St Joseph's Church** CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xikai Tianzhu Jiaotang; Binjiang Dao; ☺ 5.30am-4.30pm Mon-Sat, 5am-8pm Sun*) Erected by the French in 1917, this Catholic church is the largest church in Tianjin and its fine brick exterior is a marked contrast to the shopping malls surrounding it. Inside, it's rather more decorative than most Chinese churches. English Mass is at 11.30am on Sundays.

## **Tianjin Eye** FERRIS WHEEL

(*Tianjin Zhi Yan; Yongle Qiao; adult/child ¥70/35; ☺ 9.30am-9.30pm Tue-Sun, 5-9.30pm Mon*) To get the city's transformation in perspective, or for a night-time angle on Tianjin, ride this Ferris wheel situated slap on the Hai River.


## **Antique Market** MARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guwan Shichang; cnr Shenyang Dao & Shandong Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm Sat & Sun*) Best visited on Sunday, the antique market is great for a rifle through its stamps, silverware, porcelain, clocks, Mao badges and Cultural Revolution memorabilia.



## Tours

A variety of pleasure boats cruise the Hai River. Night trips are especially popular. **Fine Line Hai Cruises** ( 5878 9911) has a number of different boats leaving from Yongle Qiao on the hour every hour from 9am to 5pm during the summer (¥80). Night cruises depart at 7.30pm and 8.30pm (¥100).

## Sleeping



### **St Regis Tianjin** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)




[Google map](#)

( *Tianjin Ruiji Jinrongjie Jiudian*;  5830 9999; [www.stregis.com/tianjin](http://www.stregis.com/tianjin); 158 Zhangzizhong Lu; 158 d ¥1035-1298;     ) A vast, hulking, hollowed-out square of a building that is the most eye-catching of all the recent additions to the riverfront, the St Regis is the last word in luxury in Tianjin. Super-comfy beds, huge bathrooms and splendid service cocoon weary travellers and there are great river views too. European and Chinese restaurants are onsite as well.

### **Orange Hotel** HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)





[Google map](#)

( *Juzi Jiudian*;  2734 8333; 7 Xing'an Lu; 7 d/tw ¥258-358;   ) That rare beast, a boutique hotel outside of Beijing and Shanghai, this quirky place attracts a younger clientele to its stylish and unfussy rooms, some of which have river views. Bicycle hire is available, with the first two hours free. At the time of research, roadworks meant the hotel could only be accessed from the rear via an alley running off Xing'an Lu. Look for the big sign with an orange on it to direct you.

### **Astor Hotel** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( *Lishunde Dafandian*;  2331 1688; [www.luxurycollection.com/astor](http://www.luxurycollection.com/astor); 33 Tai'erzhuang Lu; 33 d ¥1035;     ) Staying in this elegant

hotel steeped in history is to travel back in time to the foreign concession era. From the imposing, marbled lobby and solid and traditional wooden furniture, to the staff dressed in formal morning coats, there's an old school charm to the place that makes it special. Like all historic hotels, the rooms and bathrooms are huge.

## Home Inn *HOTEL* \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Rujia*; d ¥209-229; ☎@) Binjiang Dao (📍 5899 6888; 32 *Binjiang Dao*; 32 ); Xinkai Lu (📍 8469 9999; 225 *Xinkai Lu*; 225 ); Ziyou Dao (📍 5819 9388; 5 *Ziyou Dao*; 5 ) The *Binjiang Dao* location on the south side of Liberation Bridge, off Jiefang Beilu, has bright bedrooms and fresh bathrooms and makes this a decent choice. Free broadband; ground-floor restaurant. Other branches are southwest and east of the train station.

## Eating & Drinking



## Shaguo Li *NORTHERN CHINESE* \$\$

( 📍 2326 0075; 46 *Jiujiang Lu*; 46 dishes ¥10-88; 🕒 11.30am-2.30pm & 5.30-8.30pm; 📍) Of all Tianjin's restaurants, this is the one the locals recommend. They flock here in droves for the speciality pork spare ribs in a sweet barbecue sauce; so tender that they pull apart at the touch of a chopstick. The small portion (¥58) is easily enough for two people. There are many other classic northern Chinese dishes on the menu too.

## YY Beer House *THAI* \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Yueyuan Taicanting*; 📍 2339 9634; 3 *Aomen Lu*; 3 dishes ¥40-80; 🕒 11am-midnight; 📍📍) Despite its name, this atmospheric place is actually a Thai restaurant with a wide range of flavoursome dishes from the land of smiles. But it does have an excellent selection of foreign beers too. It's tucked away down a quiet street behind Nanjing

Lu. Perennially popular with expats, as well as well-heeled locals, reservations are essential at weekends.

### **Helen's Restaurant & Bar** INTERNATIONAL \$

(*Hailun Canting*; ☎ 2334 0071; 116 Heyan Lu; 116 dishes ¥25-45; ☺ 10am-3am; 📶📺) Heaving most evenings with an enthusiastic crowd downing cheap beers (¥10) and scoffing Western comfort food (pizza, pasta and hamburgers), Helen's is more sedate during the day when it becomes a decent place for a coffee or an all-day breakfast (¥25).

### **Goubuli** DUMPLINGS \$\$

(☎ 2730 2540; 77 Shandong Lu; 77 dishes ¥26-70; ☺ 9am-10pm) Tianjin's most famous restaurant is a mixed bag. The trademark *baozi* (steamed dumplings), including veggie options, are big, juicy and delicious. They're also seriously overpriced, but the place is always packed which may explain the prices. The set meal (¥70), available at the ground-floor cafeteria and including dumplings, soup and a cold dish, is more reasonable than the upstairs restaurant. Picture menu.

## **i** Information

A handful of 24-hour internet cafes can be found above the shops around the train station concourse.

Try to score a copy of the magazine *Jin*, which has listings of restaurants, bars and cultural events in town; it also publishes an annual guidebook. A useful expat community website is [www.tianjinexpats.net](http://www.tianjinexpats.net).

**Agricultural Bank of China** (*Nongye Yinhang; Jiefang Beilu*) Has a 24-hour ATM.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; 80-82 Jiefang Beilu*) The 24-hour ATM takes international cards.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; 153 Jiefang Beilu*)

**Hairui Chemist** (*Hairui Yaodian; 22 Chifeng Dao; ☺ 7.30am-10.30pm*)

**HSBC** (*Huifeng Yinhang; Ocean Hotel, 5 Yuanyang Guangchang*)

There's an ATM at the International Building, 75 Nanjing Lu.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju/Churujing Guanliju; ☎ 2445 8825; 19 Shouan Jie)

**Tianjin International SOS Clinic** (; Tianjin Guoji Jinji Jiuyuan Yiliao Zhensuo; ☎ 2352 0143; Sheraton Tianjin Hotel, Zijinshan Lu)

## Getting There & Away

### Air

**Tianjin Binhai International Airport** (Tianjin Binhai Guoji Jichang; ☎ 2490 2950) is 15km east of the city centre. Destinations include Shanghai (¥620), Guangzhou (¥1700), Shenzhen (¥930), Xi'an (¥430) and Chengdu (¥1230). Tickets can be bought from the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 2490 6296; 10 Baoding Lu; 🕒 8.30am-7pm) or [www.elong.com](http://www.elong.com) or [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com).

### Boat

Tianjin's harbour is Tanggu, 50km (30 minutes by train or one hour by bus) from Tianjin. See the boxed text opposite for details of arriving and departing by boat.

### Bus

Tianjin-bound buses run from Beijing's Zhaogongkou bus station (¥30, 1½ hours, every 45 minutes), the Sihui bus station (¥23, hourly) or regularly from the Bawangfen bus station (¥41, every 40 minutes). A shared taxi to Beijing from the main train station will cost around ¥60 per person.

**TONGSHA BUS STATION** Tianjin's **Tongsha bus station** ( Tongsha keyunzhan; ☎ 6053 3950; 43 Zhenli Dao) is closest to the centre of town and has regular buses:

**Beijing** (Bawangfen, Sihui and Zhaogongkou long-distance bus stations) ¥30, 1½ hours, hourly 7.45am to 5.45pm

**Hohhot** ¥212, 5pm

**Qingdao** ¥181, 8pm

**Qinhuangdao** ¥99, hourly 9.30am to 6pm

**Shenyang** ¥182, 6pm

**Shijiazhuang** ¥ 117, 8am, 11.30am and 1pm

**TIANHUAN BUS STATION** Bus services from **Tianhuan bus station** (*Tianhuan keyunzhan*; ☎ 2305 0530; cnr Hongqi Lu & Anshan Xidao).

**Beijing** ¥37, 7am to 4.30pm

**Dalian** ¥288, 3pm

**Shanghai** ¥317, 6pm

**Xi'an** ¥308, 3.30pm

**TIANJIN WEST STATION** Bus services from **Tianjin West Station** (*Tianjin Xizhan Keyunzhan*; ☎ 2732 1282; Xiqing Dao) :

**Ji'nan** ¥120, 2pm and 8.50pm

**Qinhuangdao** ¥100, 9am, 2pm and 4.30pm

**Shijiazhuang** ¥120, every half-hour from 6.30am to 6.30pm

## Train

Tianjin has four train stations: main, north, south and west. Most trains leave from the **Main Train Station** (*Tianjin Zhan*; ☎ 6053 6053). If you have to alight at the **West Train Station** (☎ 2618 2662), bus 24 runs to the main train station. The far-off **South Train Station** (☎ 2421 0073) is solely for high-speed trains to Shanghai.

C class trains connect Tianjin with Beijing, making day trips feasible. Regular trains (¥55, every 20 to 30 minutes) take around 30 minutes to cover the 120km journey. The first and last trains leaving Beijing South Train Station at 6.30am and 9.40pm. The last train to Beijing leaves Tianjin at 10.20pm. Slower trains also link the two cities.

Tianjin is a major north–south train junction:

**Ha'erbin** hard seat/sleeper ¥154/281

**Ji'nan** express train ¥90, two hours; hard seat ¥52

**Nanjing** express train ¥405, three hours 40 minutes; hard seat/sleeper ¥130/239

**Qingdao** express train ¥260, four hours; hard seat/sleeper ¥103/191

**Shanghai** express train ¥510, four hours 50 minutes; hard seat/sleeper ¥165/301

**Shanhaiguan** express train ¥88, two hours 40 minutes; hard seat ¥24

**Shenyang** express train ¥202, five hours; hard seat/sleeper ¥83/164

**Shijiazhuang** hard seat/sleeper ¥63/118

**Xi'an** hard seat/sleeper ¥170/309

**Zhengzhou** hard seat/sleeper ¥113/209

## **i** Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Taxis ask ¥60 to the airport from the city centre. Airport buses for Beijing's Capital Airport leave from the Tianhuan bus station every hour from 4am to 6am, then half-hourly to 6pm (¥70, 2½ hours). From Beijing Capital Airport terminal 2 to Tianjin buses run hourly from 7am to 9am, then every 30 minutes to 11pm. Bus 689 (¥3) leaves from the main train station from 6am to 7pm.

### Public Transport

Tianjin's **metro** has three lines and trains run from around 6.30am to just after 10pm (tickets ¥2 to ¥5). Chargeable transport cards (*chengci piao*) are available. Another four lines are under construction, while a light rail (Metro Line 9) connects Tianjin with the port of Tanggu.

Buses run from 5am to 11pm. Useful routes include:

**Bus 600** Runs from the square behind Tianjin train station to stops for the Tianjin Eye, Ancient Culture Street, the Old Town, St Joseph's Church, Wudadao, Binjiang Dao, Da Guangming Qiao (for Jiefang Beilu and the concession districts) and back again.

**Bus 24** Runs between the main and west train stations.

**Bus 8** Starts at the main train station then zigzags down to the southwest of town.

### Taxi

Flag fall is ¥9 for the first 3km, then ¥1.70 per kilometre thereafter.

**GETTING TO JAPAN, SOUTH KOREA OR**

## DALIAN

After not running for almost a year, ferries to Dalian (¥290 to ¥1590, 13 hours) now depart every day from Tanggu (), about 50km east of Tianjin. Weekly boats to Kobe (Japan; ¥1540 to ¥4500, 51 hours, departs Monday) and Incheon (South Korea; ¥888 to ¥1930, 25 hours, departing Thursday and Sunday) also sail from Tanggu.

In Tianjin, buy tickets from the **ticket office** (☎ 2339 2455; 1 Pukou Dao); in Tanggu, tickets can be bought from the **Passenger Ferry Terminal** ( Tianjingang Keyunzhan; ☎ 2587 3261).

Frequent minibuses and buses to Tanggu (¥10) leave from Tianjin's main train station; bus 835 (¥5) also runs to Tanggu. In Tanggu, minibuses to Tianjin run from outside the train station. A light rail system runs between Zhongshanmen station in southeast Tianjin and Donghailu station in Tanggu (¥5, 50 minutes, roughly every 15 minutes, from 7am to 7pm).

---

## Around Tianjin

### SHI FAMILY COURTYARD

In Yangliuqing, in the far western suburbs of Tianjin, is the marvellous **Shi family residence** ( *Shi Jia Dayuan*; 47 Yangliuqing Guyi Jie; 47 admission ¥27; 🕒 9am-5pm Apr-Oct, 9am-4.30pm Nov-Mar), a vast warren of courtyards and enclosed gardens.

Formerly belonging to a prosperous merchant family, the restored residence contains a theatre and 278 rooms, some of which are furnished. From Tianjin, take bus 153 (¥2) from the west train station or bus 672 from the Tianjin Department Store to Yangliuqing. A taxi costs around ¥120 return.

## HEBEI

---

### Shijiazhuang

☎ 0311 / POP 2.65 MILLION

Until relatively recently a small hamlet – the quaint name literally means village of the Shi family – Shijiazhuang is today an archetypal

Chinese city and the provincial capital of Hebei: a frantic, prosperous and sprawling railway junction town with little sensation of history. But Shijiazhuang's nearby sights – including historic Zhengding and rural Yujiaocun – are more than enough to warrant the short hop down from Beijing.



## Shijiazhuang

### Sights

- 1 [Hebei Provincial Museum](#) D2

### Sleeping

- 2 [Huiwen Hotel](#) A2
- 3 [World Trade Plaza Hotel](#) D1

### Eating

- 4 [Chengde Huiguan](#) A2
- 5 [Quanjude](#) C2
- 6 [Tudari](#) A1



## Sights

### **Hebei Provincial Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Hebei Sheng Bowuguan; Zhongshan Donglu; ☀ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun*) It's a colossus of a building; a shame that inside there are far more photos than there are exhibits. That might change in the future if the museum ever gets round to putting its real treasures on display: the finds from the Mancheng Western Han tombs, including two jade Han burial suits, one of which is sewn with 1.1kg of gold thread. Bring your passport for free entry.

### **Revolutionary Martyrs' Mausoleum** PARK

(*Lieshi Lingyuan; 343 Zhongshan Xilu; ☀ 6am-5.30pm*) With its emphasis on patriotic education, this mausoleum is located in a pleasant tree-shaded park and contains the tomb of Canadian doctor Norman Bethune (1890–1939), a surgeon with the Eighth Route Army in the war against Japan.

## Sleeping

Like other cities in Hebei, foreigners are barred from staying in many of the cheaper hotels here. Shijiazhuang takes that policy to extremes by banning foreign travellers from the one hostel in town and the chain hotels.

### **World Trade Plaza Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shimao Guangchang Jiudian; ☎ 8667 8888; [www.wtphotels.com](http://www.wtphotels.com); 303 Zhongshan Donglu; 303 d/tw ¥818-918, ste ¥1318; 🚗🌐📧📶*) Shijiazhuang's finest hotel wouldn't rate five stars in Beijing, but is still impressively efficient and comfortable. Rooms are big and spick and

span; it's worth shelling out the extra ¥100 for the deluxe rooms which come with excellent bathrooms. There are Chinese and Western restaurants onsite and small discounts are available in quiet periods.

## Huiwen Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Huiwen Dajjudian*; 📍 8786 5999; [www.hwhotel.cn](http://www.hwhotel.cn); 6 Zhanqian Jie; 6 s ¥358, d/tw ¥483; 🌟🍷) Directly opposite the train station, this busy, big place makes a decent base. Reasonably sized, bright and clean rooms for the price, especially with the generous discounts, but go for the quieter ones at the back. The staff, though, is nonplussed by foreign guests. Discounts of 50%.

## Eating

Nan Xiaojie ( ), south of the train station, is good in the summer for outdoor *shaokao* (barbecue) places, as well as hotpot restaurants, while nearby Minzu Lu ( ) has a whole crop of noodle and dumpling restaurants.



## Chengde Huiguan HEBEI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 12 Zhanqian Jie; 12 dishes ¥20-40; 🕒 10am-9pm) Specialising in northern Hebei cuisine, this place is actually two restaurants in one. Go through the flash entrance for the posh one with stone floors, a water feature and wooden booths; right next door is the more proletarian *canting* where the prices are much more reasonable. But the food is still good, even if the setting is mundane. Picture menu.

## Tudari KOREAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Tudali*; [www.tudari.com.cn](http://www.tudari.com.cn); 2 Jinqiao Beijie; dishes from ¥18; 🕒 11am-3pm & 6-11pm; 🌟) A bustling, spotless Korean eatery that's open later than most Shijiazhuang restaurants. Tasty hotpots, including the ever-popular *shiguo banfan* (¥25; meat, rice, vegetables

and egg served in a claypot), spicy salads and many different barbecued skewer options. There's a picture menu and it's just to the side of the Dongfang City Plaza Shopping Centre (; Dongfang Dasha).

## **Quanjude** PEKING DUCK \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 9 Jianshe Nandajie; roast duck ¥198; ☺ 10am-2pm & 5-9pm) If you didn't manage your full fix of Peking duck in the capital, this big and swish branch of the Beijing chain fires up its duck traditional-style over fruit wood. A half-duck with all the trimmings is ¥99. Picture menu.

## **i** Information

At the time of writing, foreigners were barred from using Shijiazhuang's internet cafes.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang; Jinqiao Beidajie*) Through the west door of the Dongfang City Plaza Shopping Centre.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Gongli Jie & Zhongshan Xilu;* ☺ 24hr)

**Meijue Internet Cafe** ( *Meijue Wangba; Zhanqian Jie; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr*) Just to the side of the Huiwen Hotel.

**Public Security Bureau** (*PSB; Gong'anju; Dongfeng Lu*)

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

Flights from Shijiazhuang:

**Chengdu** ¥900

**Guangzhou** ¥780

**Kunming** ¥1020

**Shanghai** ¥500

**Xi'an** ¥600

### Bus

Most buses depart from the **long-distance bus station** (*shijiazhuang keyun zongzhan*) :

**Beijing** ¥83, 3½ hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 6.30pm)

**Chengde** ¥160, seven hours, four daily

**Ji'nan** ¥115, four hours, every 40 minutes (7.20am to 5.30pm)

**Kaifeng** ¥140, eight hours, one daily (11am)

**Tianjin** ¥120 to ¥130, four hours, every 40 minutes (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Zhengzhou** ¥121, six hours, nine daily (9am to 6.30pm)

## Train

Shijiazhuang is a major rail hub with D series express trains from the **train station** (📍 8760 0111) to/from Beijing West (¥88, two hours), Zhengzhou and Anyang. The speed of connections to Beijing makes Shijiazhuang possible as a day trip. Most trains heading south from Beijing come via Shijiazhuang.

**Changchun** hard sleeper ¥309, 15½ hours

**Chengde** hard sleeper ¥134, 11 hours

**Datong** hard sleeper ¥149, 8½ hours

**Guangzhou** hard sleeper ¥409, 18½ hours

**Ji'nan** hard seat ¥47, 4½ hours

**Luoyang** express ¥162, 4½ hours; hard seat ¥76, five hours

**Nanjing** hard sleeper ¥231, 8½ hours

**Shanghai** hard sleeper ¥290, 11 hours

**Shanhaiguan** express ¥178, 5½ hours; hard sleeper ¥175, 7½ hours

**Tianjin** hard seat ¥55, four hours

**Zhengzhou** hard seat ¥63, 3½ hours

Some trains also stop at or depart from Shijiazhuang North Train Station (Shijiazhuang Beizhan).

## Getting Around

Shijiazhuang's international airport is 40km northeast of town. Airport

buses (¥25, 35 minutes, 6am to 8pm) to the airport depart from the Civil Aviation Hotel next to the **CAAC office** ( *Zhongguo Minhang*; 📞 8505 4084; 471 Zhongshan Donglu); the office can be reached on bus 1. There are numerous buses per day, with departures depending on flights. A taxi to the airport will take about an hour and cost ¥130. Taxis are ¥5 at flag fall, then ¥1.60 per kilometre.

---

## Around Shijiazhuang

### ZHENG DING

📞 0311 / POP 130,300

Its streets littered with needy Taoist soothsayers and temple remains, walled Zhengding is an appetising – albeit incomplete – slice of old China. From atop Zhengding's South Gate, you can see the silhouettes of four distinct pagodas jutting above the sleepy town. Nicknamed the town of 'nine buildings, four pagodas, eight great temples and 24 golden archways', Zhengding has tragically lost many of its standout buildings and archways – Pingyao it isn't – but enough remains to lend the townscape an air of faded grandeur.

### 👁 Sights

All attractions are either off the east–west Zhongshan Lu or the north–south Yanzhao Nandajie. Beginning with Longxing Temple, you can see almost everything by walking west until reaching Yanzhao Nandajie, then continuing south to the city gate.

No through ticket (; *tongpiao*) was available at the time of writing. Opening hours are from 8am to 5.30pm.

### Longxing Temple *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

( 109 Zhongshan Donglu; adult/student ¥40/30, guide ¥40) Of Zhengding's temple tribe, the most notable is this impressive site, more popularly known as **Dafo Temple** (; Dafo Si) or 'Big Buddha Temple', in the east of town.

The time-worn bridge out front constitutes a handsome historical

prelude. Dating way back to AD 586, the temple has been much restored and stands divided from its spirit wall by Zhongshan Donglu.

You are greeted in the first hall by the jovial Milefo, chubby enough that temple caretakers have pluralised him – he’s now the ‘Monks with a Bag’. The four Heavenly Kings flanking him in pairs are disconcertingly vast.

Beyond is the **Manichaean Hall**, an astonishingly voluminous hall flagged in smoothed stone with amazing carpentry overhead, a huge gilded statue of Sakyamuni and delectable Ming frescoes detailing Buddhist tales. At the rear of the hall is a distinctly male statue of the goddess Guanyin, seated in a lithe pose with one foot resting on her/his thigh (a posture known as *lalitasana*) and surrounded by *luohan* (those freed from the cycle of rebirth).

The **Buddhist Altar** behind houses an unusual bronze Ming-dynasty two-faced Buddha, gazing north and south. Signs say ‘no touching’ but it’s evident that its fingers and thumb have been smoothed by legions of worshippers. There are two halls behind the Buddhist Altar. On the left is the **Revolving Library Pavilion** (Zhuanlunzang Ge), which contains a revolving octagonal wooden bookcase for the storing of sutras and a stele on the back of a snarling *bixi* (a mythical tortoiselike dragon). Opposite stands the **Pavilion of Kindness**, containing a 7.4m-high statue of Maitreya, one hand aloft.

The blurb introducing the **Pavilion of the Imperial Library** (Yushu Lou) draws your attention to a statue of Guanyin and 18 *luohan* but they are nowhere to be found. The library is connected by a walkway to the immense **Pavilion of Great Mercy** (; Dabei Ge), where a bronze colossus of Guanyin rises. At 21.3m high, cast in AD 971 and sporting a third eye, the effigy is wonderful, standing on a magnificently carved base from the Northern Song. Examine the carvings which include myriad characters and musicians, including Buddhist angels and a woman blowing a conch. Overhead towers the dusty goddess with a litter of smaller Guanyin statues at her feet: clamber up into the galleries surrounding Guanyin for free, but the third level is often out of bounds. The wooden hall in which the goddess is housed was rebuilt in 1999 with reference to Song-dynasty architecture manuals.

Circumnambulated by worshippers, the **Hall of Vairocana** at the rear contains a four-faced Buddha (the Buddha of four directions), crowned with another four-faced Buddha, upon which is supported a further set. The entire statue and its base contain 1072 statues of Buddha.

### **Tianning Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Tianning Si*; admission ¥15) About 10 minutes' walk west (right as you exit) of Dafo Temple are the remains of this temple, whose 41m-high Tang-dynasty **Lofty Pagoda** (; Lingxiao Ta) – also called Muta or Wooden Pagoda – originally dates from AD 779; it was later restored in 1045. The octagonal, nine-eaved and spire-topped pagoda is in fine condition and typical of Tang brickwork pagodas. Sadly, it is not possible to climb it.

The half-finished shell of a building to the right of the temple is supposed eventually to become the **Zhengding Museum** (*Zhengding Bowuguan*). No one knows when it will be finished, though.

Further west on Zhongshan Xilu from Tianning Temple, about 250m past the intersection with Yanzhao Nandajie and down an alley, is the unassuming **Confucius Temple** (*Wen Miao*; admission ¥15), though there is little to see here.

### **Kaiyuan Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Kaiyuan Si*; admission ¥15) South on Yanzhao Nandajie this temple originally dates from AD 540 but was destroyed in 1966, the first year of the Cultural Revolution. Little remains apart from some leftover good vibes (it's a popular spot for qi gong and taichi practitioners), the **Bell Tower** and the drawcard dirt-brown **Xumi Pagoda**, a well-preserved and unfussy early-Tang-dynasty brickwork, nine-eaved structure, topped with a spire. Its round arched doors and carved stone doorway are particularly attractive, as are the carved figures on the base.

Also displayed is a colossal stone *bixi* statue – China's largest – near the entrance, with a vast chunk of its left flank missing and its head propped up on a plinth. Dating from the late Tang era, the

creature was excavated in 2000 from a street in Zhengding.

### **Linji Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Linji Si; Linji Lu*) This active monastery, around 500m southeast of Kaiyuan Temple, is notable for its tall, elegant, carved brick **Chengling Pagoda** (; also called the Green Pagoda), topped with an elaborate lotus plinth plus ball and spire. The main hall behind has a large gilt effigy of Sakyamuni and 18 golden *luohan*. At the rear of the hall is Puxian astride an elephant, Wenshu on a lion and a figure of Guanyin. In the Tang dynasty, the temple was home to one of Chan (Zen) Buddhism's most eccentric and important teachers, Linji Yixuan, who penned the now famous words, 'If you meet the Buddha on the road, kill him!'

### **Guanghui Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Guanghui Si; admission ¥15*) Nothing remains of this temple a little further south, except its unusual Indian-style pagoda decorated with lions, elephants, sea creatures, *pusa* (Bodhisattvas; those worthy of nirvana who remain on earth to help others attain enlightenment) and other figures (some missing). With a brick base and four doors, the pagoda has stone-carved upper storeys and a brickwork cap.

### **City Walls** HISTORIC SITE

(; Chengqiang) Much of Zhengding's main street (Yanzhao Dajie) has been restored and is now a pleasant stretch of traditional Chinese roofing, brickwork and willows called the **Zhengding Historical Culture Street** (; *Zhengding Lishi Wenhua Jie*). At the southern end of the street is **Changle Gate** (*Changle Men; admission ¥15*), also known as Nanchengmen or South Gate. The original wall (which dates back to the Northern Zhou) was made up of an outer wall (*yuecheng*) and an inner wall (*neicheng*), with enceintes (*wengcheng*), and had a total length of 24km. You can climb onto Changle Gate and view a few dilapidated remains of the wall.

### **Sleeping & Eating**



For a town with such a strong Buddhist heritage, Zhengding has a significant Hui population (their modern mosque is to the side of Guanghui Temple) and there are many Muslim noodle restaurants on Yanzhao Dajie. Zhongshan Donglu has loads of eateries too, including Sichuan places and cake outlets.

## Huayang Vacation Hotel *HOTEL* \$

(*Huayang Jiari Jiudian*; 📍 8801 1470; 2 Shanxi Lu; 2 tw/d ¥268/288; 🌐📞) One of a handful of places that will take foreigners, the Huayang has attractive and modern rooms and bathrooms. The staff are friendly, but speak no English.

### **i** Information

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (*ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang; cnr Zhongshan Donglu & Yanzhao Nandajie*)

**Internet cafe** (*wangba; Yanzhao Nandajie; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr*) Just down an alley a few metres south of the intersection between Yanzhao Nandajie and Zhongshan Donglu.

### **i** Getting There & Away

From Shijiazhuang, buses 131 and 132 (¥2, 45 minutes, 6.30am to 6.30pm) run regularly to Zhengding's bus station from the main bus stop in the train station square. Regular train services also run through Zhengding from Shijiazhuang.

### **i** Getting Around

Zhengding is not huge and walking is easy as sights are largely clustered together. Taxi flagfall within Zhengding is ¥5; three-wheel motorcycles cost ¥4 for anywhere in town. Bus 177 runs past Dafo Temple down Zhongshan Donglu and then Yanzhao Nandajie.

## YUJIACUN

POP 1600

Also known as **Stone Village** (; Shitou Cun) and hidden in the hills near the Hebei–Shanxi border is the peaceful little settlement of

**Yujiacun** (admission ¥20). Nearly everything, from the houses to furniture inside, was originally made of stone. As such, Yujiacun is remarkably well preserved: bumpy little lanes lead past traditional Ming- and Qing-dynasty courtyard homes, old opera stages and tiny temples. Actually, ‘traditional’ doesn’t quite describe it: this is a model Chinese clan village, where 95% of the inhabitants all share the same surname of Yu ().

One of the more unusual sights is inside the **Yu Ancestral Hall** (; Yushi Zongci), where you’ll find the 24-generation family tree, reaching back over 500 years. There are five tapestries, one for the descendants of each of the original Yu sons who founded the village.

Another oddity is the three-storey **Qingliang Pavilion** (; Qingliang Ge), completed in 1581. Supposedly the work of one thoroughly crazed individual (Yu Xichun, who wanted to be able to see Beijing from the top), it was, according to legend, built entirely at night, over a 16-year period, without the help of any other villagers. It was certainly built by an amateur architect: there’s no foundation, and the building stones (in addition to not being sealed by mortar) are of wildly different sizes (some as large as 2m), giving it a higgledy-piggledy look that’s quite uncommon in Chinese architecture.

Other buildings worth hunting down are the **Guanyin Pavilion** (; Guanyin Ge) and the **Zhenwu Temple** (; Zhenwu Miao). Near the primary school is the **Stone Museum** (; Shitou Bowuguan) displaying local items made of stone.

## **Sleeping**

The Mandarin accent here is as thick as the coal dust that settles everywhere in the Hebei–Shanxi borderlands, but mercifully Yujiacun is free of the pollution and it’s definitely worth spending the night here. As the sun sets, the sounds of village life – farmers chatting after a day in the fields, clucking hens, kids at play – are miles away from the raging pace of modern Chinese cities.

Villagers rent out rooms for ¥15 per person; home-cooked meals are another ¥15 each, a bottle of beer is ¥2. One friendly place is the **Chunying Yuan** ( ☎ 0311 8237 6583), which has simple rooms for around ¥15. It’s very close to the Zhenwu Temple.

## **i** Getting There & Away

All roads to Yujiacun pass through Jingxing (), about 35km west of Shijiazhuang. The quickest and easiest way to get there is to catch one of the many buses (¥11, one hour, every 30 minutes 7am to 6pm) to Jingxing from Shijiazhuang's **Xiwang bus station** (*Xiwang keyunzhan*). Take bus 9 (¥1) to Xiwang from Shijiazhuang train station. A taxi will cost ¥17 to ¥20.

From Jingxing you can catch buses through a landscape blackened with coal dust to Yujiacun (¥5, one hour, regular departures 7.30am to 5.15pm) and Cangyan Shan (¥5, one hour, departures 9am to 1pm, returns noon to 5pm). Buses arrive at and depart from various intersections in town; tell the bus driver where you are going and he will drop you at the right place. Alternatively, hire a taxi for one destination (¥80 return) or for the day (¥200). Be warned that the roads in these parts can be full of coal trucks so journeys can take longer. To reach Cangyan Shan from Yujiacun, take a bus to Baishan (; ¥2) and change.

## **CANGYAN SHAN**

**Cangyan Shan** (*admission ¥50*) – literally 'Green Crag Mountain' – is the site of the transcendent cliff-spanning Hanging Palace, a Sui-dynasty construction perched halfway up a precipitous gorge. If you think you've seen it before, you probably have; this was one of the locations for the hit movie *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*.

Given its dramatic setting, it must have been an impressive temple complex at one time, though these days the best views after the main hall are of the surrounding canyons. It is a quick, steep jaunt up to the palace, and then another 45 minutes past scattered pagodas and shrines to the new temple at the mountain's summit. The standard lunar festivals see a lot of worshippers and are a good time to visit if you don't mind crowds.

Morning buses (¥26, two hours) for Cangyan Shan leave from Shijiazhuang's Xiwang station at 7am, returning in the late afternoon. It can also be combined with a trip to Yujiacun and Jingxing.

## **ZHAOZHOU BRIDGE**

China's oldest-standing **bridge** (*Zhaozhou Qiao*; admission ¥30) has spanned the Jiao River (Jiao He) for 1400 years. In Zhaoxian County, about 40km southeast of Shijiazhuang and 2km south of Zhaoxian town, this is the world's first segmental bridge (ie its arch is a segment of a circle, as opposed to a complete semicircle) and predates other bridges of its type throughout the world by 800 years. In fine condition, it is 50.82m long and 9.6m wide, with a span of 37m. Twenty-two stone posts are topped with carvings of dragons and mythical creatures, with the centre slab featuring a magnificent *taotie* (an offspring of a dragon). The bridge is also known as (; Anji Qiao) or 'Safe Crossing Bridge'.

To reach the bridge from Shijiazhuang's long-distance bus station, take bus 30 to the **south bus station** (*nanjiao keyunzhan*; 📍 8657 3806), then take a minibus to Zhaoxian town (; ¥10, one hour). There are no public buses from Zhaoxian to the bridge, but a *sanlunche* (three-wheeled pedicab) can oblige for ¥3.

---

## Chengde

📍 0314 / POP 479,703

Chengde might look like an unremarkable provincial town at first glance, but it has an extraordinary history as the summer playground of the Qing-dynasty emperors. In the early 18th century, it evolved into both the Qing rulers' holiday resort and Manchu headquarters of foreign affairs. Beginning with Kangxi, the Qing emperors fled here to escape the torpid summer heat of the Forbidden City (and occasionally foreign armies) and for closer proximity to the hunting grounds of their northern homelands.

The Bishu Shanzhuang (Fleeing-the-Heat Mountain Villa) is a grand imperial palace and the walled enclosure behind houses China's largest regal gardens. Beyond the grounds is a remarkable collection of politically chosen temples, built to host dignitaries such as the sixth Panchen Lama. Autumn visits are recommended, as tourists swarm like termites during summer while winters are face-numbingly cold.

### History

In 1703, when an expedition passed through the Chengde valley, Emperor Kangxi was so enamoured with the surroundings that he had a hunting lodge built, which gradually grew into the summer resort. Rehe – or Jehol (Warm River; named after a hot spring here) – as Chengde was then known, grew in importance and the Qing court began to spend more time here, sometimes up to several months a year, with some 10,000 people accompanying the emperor on his seven-day expedition from Beijing.

The emperors also convened here with the border tribes – undoubtedly more at ease here than in Beijing – who posed the greatest threats to the Qing frontiers: the Mongols, Tibetans, Uighurs and, eventually, the Europeans. The resort reached its peak under Emperor Qianlong (1735–96), who commissioned many of the outlying temples to overawe visiting leaders.

In 1793 British emissary Lord Macartney arrived to open trade with China. The well-known story of Macartney refusing to kowtow before Qianlong probably wasn't the definitive factor in his inevitable dismissal (though it certainly made quite an impression on the court) – in any case, China, it was explained, possessed all things and had no need for trade.

The Emperor Xianfeng died here in 1861, permanently warping Chengde's feng shui and tipping the Imperial Villa towards long-term decline.



## Top Sights

[Guandi Temple](#) B5

[Main Palace](#) C5

[Putuozongcheng Temple](#) B1

[Temple of Sumeru, Happiness & Longevity](#) C1

## Sights

1 [Anyuan Temple](#) D2

2 [Boat Rental](#) C4

3 [Misty Rain Tower](#) C4

4 [Pule Temple](#) D2

5 [Puren Temple](#) D3

6 [Wenjin Pavilion](#) B3

7 [Yongyousi Pagoda](#) C3

## Sleeping

8 [Chengde Binguan](#) B6

9 [Ming's Dynasty Hostel](#) C7

10 [Mountain Villa Hotel](#) C5

11 [Yunshan Hotel](#) C7

## Eating

12 [Da Qing Hua](#) D7

13 [Da Qing Hua](#) C5

14 [Night Food Market](#) B5

15 [Xiao Feiyang](#) C5

## Information

[Bank of China](#) (see 13)

## Sights

### **Bishu Shanzhuang** HISTORIC SITE

( admission Apr-Oct ¥120, Nov-Mar ¥90; 🕒 palace 7am-6pm Apr-Oct, 8am-5.30pm Nov-Oct) The imperial summer resort is composed of a main palace complex and vast parklike gardens, all enclosed by a

good-looking 10km-long wall. The peak season entrance price is steep, but the gardens provide splendid walks away from the crowds.

A huge spirit wall shields the resort entrance from the bad spirits and traffic fumes of Lizhengmen Dajie. Through **Lizheng Gate** (; Lizheng Men), the **Main Palace** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zheng Gong) is a series of nine courtyards and five elegant, unpainted halls, with a rusticity complemented by towering pine trees. The wings in each courtyard have various exhibitions (porcelain, clothing, weaponry), and most of the halls are decked out in period furnishings.

The first hall is the refreshingly cool **Hall of Simplicity and Sincerity**, built of an aromatic cedar called *nanmu*, and displaying a carved throne draped in yellow silk. Other prominent halls include the emperor's study (Study of Four Knowledges) and living quarters (Hall of Refreshing Mists and Waves). On the left-hand side of the latter is the imperial bedroom. Two residential areas branch out from here: the empress dowager's **Pine Crane Palace** (; Songhe Zhai), to the east, and the smaller Western Apartments, where the concubines (including a young Cixi) resided.

Exiting the Main Palace brings you to the gardens and forested hunting grounds, with landscapes borrowed from famous southern scenic areas in Hangzhou, Suzhou and Jiaxing, as well as the Mongolian grasslands. The 20th century took its toll on the park, but you can still get a feel for the original scheme of things.

The double-storey **Misty Rain Tower** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yanyu Lou), on the northwestern side of the main lake, served as an imperial study. Further north is the **Wenjin Pavilion** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Wenjin Ge), built in 1773 to house a copy of the *Siku Quanshu*, a major anthology of classics, history, philosophy and literature commissioned by Qianlong. The anthology took 10 years to compile, and totalled an astounding 36,500 chapters. Four copies were made, only one of which has survived (now in Beijing). In the east, elegant **Yongyousi Pagoda** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yongyousi Ta) soars above the fragments of its vanished temple.

About 90% of the compound is taken up by lakes, hills, forests and plains, with the odd vantage-point pavilion. In the northern part of the park, the emperors reviewed displays of archery, equestrian skills and



fireworks.

Just beyond the Main Palace are electric carts that whiz around the grounds (¥50); further on is a **boat-rental area** (*Chuzu Xiaochuan*; per hr ¥30-40, deposit ¥300). Almost all of the forested section is closed from November through May because of fire hazard in the dry months, but fear not, you can still turn your legs to jelly wandering around the rest of the park.

## **Guandi Temple** TAOIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guandi Miao*; 18 Lizhengmen Dajie; admission ¥20; 🕒 7am-7pm Apr-Oct, 8am-5pm Nov-Oct) The heavily restored Taoist Guandi Temple was first built during the reign of Yongzheng, in 1732. For years the temple housed residents but is again home to a band of Taoist monks, garbed in distinctive jackets and trousers, their long hair twisted into topknots.

## **Eight Outer Temples** BUDDHIST TEMPLES

(; *wai ba miao*) Skirting the northern and eastern walls of the Bishu Shanzhuang, the eight outer temples were, unusually, designed for diplomatic rather than spiritual reasons. Some were based on actual Tibetan Buddhist monasteries but the emphasis was on appearance: smaller temple buildings are sometimes solid, and the Tibetan facades (with painted windows) are often fronts for traditional Chinese temple interiors. The surviving temples and monasteries were all built between 1713 and 1780; the prominence given to Tibetan Buddhism was as much for the Mongols (fervent Lamaists) as the Tibetan leaders.

Bus 6 taken to the northeastern corner will drop you in the vicinity and bus 118 runs along Huancheng Beilu, though pedalling the 12km (round trip) by bike is an excellent idea.

## **Puning Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Puning Si*; *Puningsi Lu*; admission Apr-Oct ¥80, Nov-Mar ¥60; 🕒 8am-6pm Apr-Oct, 8.30am-5pm Nov-Mar) With its squeaking prayer

wheels and devotional intonations of its monks, Chengde's only active temple was built in 1755 in anticipation of Qianlong's victory over the western Mongol tribes in Xinjiang. Supposedly modelled on the earliest Tibetan Buddhist monastery (Samye), the first half of the temple is distinctly Chinese (with Tibetan buildings at the rear).

Enter the temple grounds to a stele pavilion with inscriptions by the Qianlong emperor in Chinese, Manchu, Mongol and Tibetan. The halls behind are arranged in typical Buddhist fashion, with the **Hall of Heavenly Kings** (; Tianwang Dian) and beyond, the **Mahavira Hall** (; Daxiong Baodian), where three images of the Buddhas of the three generations are arrayed. Some very steep steps rise up behind (the temple is arranged on a mountainside) leading to a gate tower, which you can climb.

On the terrace at the top of the steps is the dwarfing **Mahayana Hall**. On either side are stupas and square blocklike Tibetan-style buildings, decorated with attractive water spouts. Some buildings have been converted to shops, while others are solid, serving a purely decorative purpose.

The mind-bogglingly vast gilded statue of **Guanyin** (the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy) towers within the Mahayana Hall. The effigy is astounding: over 22m high, it's the tallest of its kind in the world and radiates a powerful sense of divinity. Hewn from five different kinds of wood (pine, cypress, fir, elm and linden), Guanyin has 42 arms, with each palm bearing an eye and each hand holding instruments, skulls, lotuses and other Buddhist devices. Tibetan touches include the pair of hands in front of the goddess, below the two clasped in prayer, the right one of which holds a sceptre-like *dorje* (*vajra* in Sanskrit), a masculine symbol, and the left a *dril bu* (bell), a female symbol. On Guanyin's head sits the Teacher Longevity Buddha. To the right of the goddess stands a huge male guardian and disciple called Shancai, opposite his female equivalent, Longnu (Dragon Girl). Unlike Guanyin, they are both coated in ancient and dusty pigments. On the wall on either side are hundreds of small effigies of Buddha.

If you're fortunate, you may be able to clamber up to the first gallery (¥10) for a closer inspection of Guanyin; torches are provided to cut through the gloom. Sadly, higher galleries are often out of bounds, so

an eye-to-eye with the goddess may be impossible. To climb the gallery, try to come in the morning, as it is often impossible to get a ticket in the afternoon, and prepare to be disappointed, as the gallery may simply be shut.

Puning Temple has a number of friendly lamas who manage their domain, so be quiet and respectful at all times. The ticket price includes admission to the Puyou Temple. Take bus 6 from in front of the Mountain Villa Hotel.

## Putuozongcheng Temple *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Putuozongcheng Zhimiao; Shizigou Lu; admission Apr-Oct ¥80, Nov-Mar ¥60; ☀ 8am-6pm Apr-Oct, 8.30am-5pm Nov-Mar*) Chengde's largest temple is a not-so-small replica of Lhasa's Potala Palace and houses the nebulous presence of Avalokiteshvara (Guanyin). A marvellous sight on a clear day, the temple's red walls stand out against its mountain backdrop. Enter to a huge stele pavilion, followed by a large triple archway topped with five small stupas in red, green, yellow, white and black. In between the two gates are two large stone elephants whose knees bend impossibly.

Fronted by a collection of prayer wheels and flags, the **Red Palace** (also called the Great Red Platform) contains most of the main shrines and halls. Continue up past an exhibition of *thangka* (sacred Tibetan paintings) in a restored courtyard and look out for the marvellous sandalwood pagodas in the front hall. Both are 19m tall and contain 2160 effigies of the Amitabha Buddha.

Among the many exhibits on view are displays of Tibetan Buddhist objects and instruments, including a *kapala* bowl, made from the skull of a young girl. The main hall is located at the very top, surrounded by several small pavilions and panoramic views.

The admission ticket includes the neighbouring Temple of Sumeru, Happiness and Longevity. Bus 118 (¥1) runs along Huancheng Beilu past the temple.

## Temple of Sumeru, Happiness & Longevity

## BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xumifushou Zhimiao; Shizigou Lu; admission Apr-Oct ¥80, Nov-Mar ¥60; ☺ 8am-6pm Apr-Oct, 8.30am-5pm Nov-Mar*) East of the Putuozongcheng Temple, this huge temple was built in honour of the sixth Panchen Lama, who stayed here in 1781. Incorporating Tibetan and Chinese architectural elements, it's an imitation of the Panchen's home monastery Tashilhunpo in Shigatse, Tibet. Note the eight huge, glinting dragons (each said to weigh over 1000kg) that adorn the roof of the main hall. The admission price includes Putuozongcheng Temple. Bus 118 (¥1) runs along Huancheng Beilu past the temple.

## Pule Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Pule Si; admission incl Hammer Rock ¥50; ☺ 8am-5.30pm Apr-Oct, 8.30am-4.30pm Nov-Mar*) This peaceful temple was built in 1776 for the visits of minority envoys (Kazakhs among them). At the rear of the temple is the unusual Round Pavilion, reminiscent of the Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests at Beijing's Temple of Heaven. Inside is an enormous wooden mandala (a geometric representation of the universe).

It's a 30-minute walk to [Hammer Rock](#) ( *Qingchui Feng*) from Pule Temple – the club-shaped rock is visible for miles around and is said to resemble a kind of musical hammer. There is pleasant hiking and commanding views of the area. Bus 10 will take you to the chairlift (return ¥50) for Hammer Rock.

## Puyou Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( *Puyou Si; ☺ 8am-6pm*) Just east of Puning Temple, this temple is dilapidated and missing its main hall, but it has a plentiful contingent of merry gilded *luohan* in the side wings, although a fire in 1964 incinerated many of their confreres. Admission is included in the ticket for Puning Temple.

## Guangyuan Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(; Guangyuan Si) Unrestored and inaccessible, the temple's rounded doorway is blocked up with stones and its grounds are seemingly employed by the local farming community. The temple is a couple of hundred metres southeast of Puning Temple.

### **Anyuan Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Anyuan Miao; admission ¥20; 🕒 8am-5.30pm Apr-Oct, 8.30am-4.30pm Nov-Mar) Closed for repairs at the time of writing, this is a copy of the Gurza Temple in Xinjiang. Only the main hall remains, which contains deteriorating Buddhist frescoes. Take bus 10.

### **Puren Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; Puren Si) Built in 1713, this is the earliest temple in Chengde, but is not open to the public.

### **Shuxiang Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(; Shuxiang Si) Surrounded by a low red wall, with its large halls rising on the hill behind and huge stone lions parked outside, this temple is almost permanently closed. Just to the west of Shuxiang Temple is a military zone which foreigners are not allowed to access, so don't go wandering around.

## **Sleeping**

Chengde has an unremarkable and expensive range of tourist accommodation. At the time of writing, foreigners were barred from many hotels, both cheap and midrange. Hotel room prices increase at the weekend and during the holiday periods.



### **Ming's Dynasty Hostel** HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Mingchao Guoji Chengshi Qingnian Jiudian; 📞 761 0360; [www.mingsdynastyhostel.com](http://www.mingsdynastyhostel.com); Huilong Plaza, Xinjuzhai, Chezhan Lu;

*dm* ¥70, *tw* without/with bathroom ¥160/300; 🚶🌐📶📶) A lifesaver for budget travellers in Chengde, this family-run hostel has shifted location to a more hotel-like building while retaining its friendly, homely feel. The dorms and rooms are simple, clean and comfortable and the staff solicitous, handing out advice, free maps and booking transport. Turn right out of the train station and it's a five-minute walk.

## Mountain Villa Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanzhuang Binguan*; 📍 209 1188; [www.hemvhotel.com](http://www.hemvhotel.com); 11 *Lizhengmen Dajie*; 11 *d* ¥680-780, *tr* ¥400; 🌐📶) The cavernous Mountain Villa has a plethora of rooms and offers pole position for a trip inside the Bishu Shanzhuang. The rooms are a little dreary and functional for the price, but with the big discounts on offer at slack times they are a decent deal for pricy Chengde. Take bus 7 from the train station and from there it's a short walk. All major credit cards are accepted. Discounts of 50%.

## Yunshan Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Yunshan Dajiudian*; 📍 205 5588; 6 *Nanyuan Donglu*; 6 *d* ¥880-980; 🌐📶) The dirty white tile exterior makes it resemble a towering public convenience, but inside the rooms at this four-star hotel are comfortable enough, albeit a little faded. The bathrooms are small. Good location, though. Discounts of 35%.

## Chengde Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( *Chengde Binguan*; 📍 590 1888; 19 *Nanyingzi Dajie*; 19 *d/tw* ¥780-880, *discounts of 35%*; 🌐📶) Another big hotel that could do with an upgrade, but a prime position in the centre of town, big rooms with reasonable bathrooms and efficient staff.

## Eating

Chengde is famous for wild game –notably *lurou* (venison) and *shanji*

(pheasant), a reminder of its past as an imperial hunting base, but don't expect to see too much on the menus these days. On summer nights, do as the locals do and head for Shaanxiying Jie (northern end of Nanyingzi Dajie) to a night food market for a good choice of *shaokao* and Muslim noodle restaurants, as well as a few bars. Nanxinglong Jie is good for *roujiamo* (; meat in a bun) and other snacks. Dongxing Lu () is full of big, brash hotpot restaurants.



## Da Qing Hua DUMPLINGS \$

Offline map

Google map

(📍 208 2222; 241 Chezhan Lu; 241 dishes from ¥12; 🕒 11.30am-9pm) The finest dumpling house in Chengde, this excellent establishment has a big choice of juicy *jiaozi*, with veggie options such as pumpkin and egg (¥18), as well as a huge range of other dishes. The fresh, pine wood interior is a delight to eat in, and all orders come with a selection of free cold nibbles. There is another branch at Lizhengmen Dajie. Picture menu.

## Xiao Feiyang HOTPOT \$

Offline map

Google map

(Xinyifulai Hotel; 📍 202 2166; Lizhengmen Dajie; meals ¥50; 🕒 10am-late) Right across the way from Lizheng Gate, this hotpot restaurant is excellent for post-Imperial Summer Resort ramblings. The two-flavour, spicy and mild *yuanyang* (; ¥20) base is best, into which you fling plate loads of lamb (; *yangrou*; ¥18), cabbage (; *baicai*; ¥4), potatoes (; *tudou*; ¥4), eggs (; *jidan*; ¥1) and more. No English menu but the waitresses will help you tick the form. It's on the ground floor of the Xinyifulai Hotel ().

## Information

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*; 4 Dutongfu Dajie) Also on Xinsheng Lu and Lizhengmen Dajie; 24-hour ATMs.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng*; cnr Lizhengmen Dajie & Dutongfu Dajie; 🕒 8am-6pm) A smaller branch is on Lizhengmen Dajie, east of

the Main Gate of the Imperial Summer Resort.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 202 2352; 9 Wulie Lu; ☹ 8.30am-5pm Mon-Fri)

**Xiandai Internet Cafe** ( Xiandai Wangba; Chezhan Lu; per hr ¥3; ☹ 24hr) West of the train station.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Bus

Buses for Chengde leave Beijing hourly from Liuliqiao bus station (¥50, four hours); buses also run from Beijing's Sihui long-distance station (¥50, four hours, 6am to 4pm). Buses from Chengde leave every half-hour for Beijing (¥85, three hours, last bus 6.30pm) from the train station car park.

Buses also leave from Chengde's **east bus station** (*dong qichezhan*; ☎ 212 3566), 8km south of town:

**Beijing** ¥87, four hours, every 20 minutes (6am to 6pm)

**Dalian** ¥221, 13 to 14 hours, 3pm

**Jixian** ¥57, four hours, 9.30am and 7.30pm

**Qinhuangdao** ¥112, five hours, six daily (for Shanhaiguan)

**Tianjin** ¥122, six hours, 8.50am and 10pm

### Train

The fastest regular trains from Beijing Train Station take over four hours (hard/soft seat ¥41/61); slower trains take much longer. The first train from Beijing departs at 8.05am, arriving in Chengde at 12.31pm. Alternatively, catch the 12.15am train from Beijing and reach Chengde at 6.31am. In the other direction, the 1.53pm service from Chengde is a useful train, arriving in Beijing at 6.19pm. The first train to Beijing is at 4.19am, arriving at 10.09am.

**Shenyang** hard seat/hard sleeper ¥45/100, 12/13 hours, two daily (6.53am and 5.31pm)

**Shijiazhuang** hard seat/hard sleeper ¥67/134, 10 hours

**Tianjin** hard seat/hard sleeper ¥31/71, seven hours, one daily



(10.50pm)

## **i** Getting Around

Taxis are ¥7 at flag fall (then ¥1.40 per kilometre); on the meter, a taxi from the train station to the Bishu Shanzhuang should cost around ¥9. There are several minibus lines (¥1), including minibus 5 from the train station to Lizhengmen Dajie, minibus 1 from the train station to the east bus station and minibus 6 to the Eight Outer Temples, grouped at the northeastern end of town. Bus 11 also runs from the train station to the Bishu Shanzhuang. To reach the east bus station, take bus 118 or a taxi (¥20).

---

## Shanhaiguan

 0335 / POP 19,500

A possible day trip from Beijing or pit stop on the way to the northeast Manchurian heartland, the drowsy walled town of Shanhaiguan marks the point where the Great Wall snakes out of the hills to meet the sea.

In recent years, Shanhaiguan has sold some of its soul for a rebuild of the old town's central sections. Thoughtful restoration of Shanhaiguan's rundown buildings would have been desirable, but their replacement with faux traditional buildings is the typical default mode of tourist developers keen to make a fast buck. The effect has been to render Shanhaiguan more than a little sterile, although thankfully a few pockets of original buildings remain in the *hutong* (alleys) running off the main streets.

Shops along Nan Dajie and Bei Dajie have been rebuilt (with lashings of carefully concealed concrete) along with the Drum Tower, rows of *pailou* and a smattering of temples. The old town is still a pleasant place for a wander; just bear in mind that what you are seeing is a recreation.

### History

Guarding the narrow plain leading to northeastern China, the Ming garrison town of Shanhaiguan and its wall were developed to seal off

the country from the Manchu, whose troublesome ancestors ruled northern China during the Jin dynasty (AD 1115–1234). This strategy succeeded until 1644, when Chinese rebels seized Beijing and General Wu Sangui opted to invite the Manchu army through the impregnable pass to help suppress the uprising. The plan worked so well that the Manchus proceeded to take over the entire country and establish the Qing dynasty.

An ironic footnote: in 1681 Qing rulers finished building their own Great Wall, known as the Willow Palisade (a large ditch fronted by willow trees), which stretched several hundred kilometres from Shanhaiguan to Jilin, with another branch forking south to Dandong from Kaiyuan. The purpose of the Palisade, of course, was to keep the Han Chinese and Mongols out of Manchuria.



## Shanhaiguan

## Top Sights

[First Pass Under Heaven](#) B1

[Great Wall Museum](#) B1

## Sights

1 [Dabei Pavilion](#) A1

2 [Drum Tower](#) A1

3 [Wang Family Courtyard House](#) A1

4 [West Gate](#) A1

## Sleeping

5 [Friendly Cooperate Hotel](#) B2

6 [Shanghai Holiday Hotel](#) A1

## Sights

### [First Pass Under Heaven](#) HISTORIC SITE

Offline map

( *Tianxia Diyi Guan*; cnr *Dong Dajie & Diyiguan Lu*; adult/student ¥40/20; 🕒 7am-5.30pm) A restored section of wall studded with watchtowers and tourist paraphernalia, the First Pass Under Heaven is also called East Gate (; *Dong Men*). The 12m-high wall's principal watchtower – two storeys with double eaves and 68 arrow-slit windows – is a towering 13.7m high.

The calligraphy at the top (attributed to the scholar Xiao Xian) reads 'First Pass Under Heaven'. Several other watchtowers can also be seen and a *wengcheng* (enceinte) extends out east from the wall. To the north, decayed sections of battlements trail off into the hills; to the south you can walk to the ramp just east of the South Gate.

### [Great Wall Museum](#) MUSEUM

Offline map

( *Changcheng Bowuguan*; *Diyiguan Lu*; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun) The

most worthwhile sight in Shanhaiguan, this impressive museum, housed in a geometric block of grey stone, provides a comprehensive history of the wall's evolution from mud embankment to permanent barrier. Plenty of photos and artefacts, as well as decent English captions.

## **Jiao Shan** *HISTORIC SITE*


(*admission ¥30; ☺ 7am-sunset*) Closed at the time of research (expect some changes and an increase in the ticket price), Jiao Shan offers an excellent hike up the Great Wall's first high peak; a telling vantage point over the narrow tongue of land below and one-time invasion route for northern armies. For something more adventurous, follow the wall's unrestored section indefinitely past the watchtowers or hike over to the secluded **Qixian Monastery** (*Qixian Si; admission ¥5*).

Jiao Shan is a 3km bike ride north of town or a half-hour walk from the north gate; otherwise take a *sanlunche* (¥10). It's a steep 20-minute clamber from the base, or a cable car can yank you up for ¥20.

## **Old Dragon Head** *HISTORIC SITE*

(*Laolongtou; admission ¥30; ☺ 7.30am-6.30pm*) The mythic origin/conclusion of the Great Wall at the sea's edge, Old Dragon Head is 4km south of Shanhaiguan. What you see now was reconstructed in the late 1980s – the original wall crumbled away long ago. The name derives from the legendary carved dragon head that once faced the waves; as attractions go, it's essentially a lot more hype than history. Buses 25 and 21 (¥1) go to Old Dragon Head from Shanhaiguan's South Gate.

## **Other Sights** *HISTORIC SITE*

The vaguely interesting 18th-century **Wang Family Courtyard House**  (*Wang- jia Dayuan; 29-31 Dongsantiao Hutong; admission ¥25; ☺ 7.30am-5.30pm*) is a large residence with an amateur display of period furnishings.

The wall attached to **North Gate** (; Bei Men) has been partially

restored. The city gates once had circular enclosures attached to them, as you can see at the East Gate. The excavated outlines outside the **West Gate** [Offline map](#) (; Xi Men) are discernible, as are slabs of the original Ming-dynasty road lying 1m below the current level of the ground.

The **Dabei Pavilion** [Offline map](#) (*Dabei Ge; Bei Dajie; admission ¥15; ☺ 7am-6pm*) in the northwest of town has been rebuilt, as has the Taoist **Sanqing Temple** (*Sanqing Guan; Beihou Jie; admission free; ☺ 8am-5pm*), which is a half-mile walk outside the walls from the west gate. Shanhaiguan's **Drum Tower** (*Gulou*) has been similarly rebuilt, with a liberal scattering of newly constructed *pailou* running off east and west along Xi Dajie and Dong Dajie.

The Taoist **Mengjiangnu Temple** (*Mengjiangnu Miao; admission ¥25; ☺ 7am-7pm*) is a large and handsome Song–Ming reconstruction 6km east of Shanhaiguan. A round trip in a taxi is ¥50.

## JIUMENKOU GREAT WALL

In a mountain valley 15km north of Shanhaiguan stretches **Jiumenkou Great Wall** (*Jiumenkou; admission ¥60*), the only section of the Great Wall ever built over water. Normally the wall stopped at rivers, as they were considered natural defence barriers all on their own. At Jiumenkou Great Wall, however, a 100m span supported by nine arches crosses the Jiujiang River, which we can only guess flowed at a much faster and deeper rate than it does today (or else the arches would function more like open gates).

Much effort has gone into restoring this formidable-looking bridge and on both sides the wall continues its run up the steep, rocky hillsides. Heading left, you can quickly see where the wall remains unrestored on the opposite side. Sadly, access to this area is blocked but the distant sight of crumbling stone watchtowers truly drives home the terrible isolation that must have been felt by the guardians of frontier regions such as this.

No buses head to the wall from Shanhaiguan but the taxis that gather beyond the South Gate will make the return trip for ¥100 to ¥120. Don't expect to have this place to yourself any more though. The crowds have found their way, as have the hawkers and the cheap amusement attractions, though they're not too hard to escape.

## Sleeping & Eating

Most hotels close to the old town do not accept foreigners and it's best

to do Shanhaiguan as a day trip from Beijing. The other alternative is to stay in nearby Qinhuangdao, where there are far more hotel and restaurant options. The **Qinfa Holiday Hotel** ( *Qinfa Jiari Jiudian*; 📍 385 1428; [www.qinfa.com.cn](http://www.qinfa.com.cn); 123 Yingbin Rd; 123 d/tw ¥438-518, discounts of 50%; 🌐📞) has reasonable, if dull, rooms and is handy for the train and bus stations and buses to Shanhaiguan.

In the summer, *shaokao* and noodle stalls line the sides of the market opposite the south gate.

## **Shanghai Holiday Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

( *Shanghai Jiari Jiudian*; 📍 535 2888; [www.shanghai-holiday.com](http://www.shanghai-holiday.com); Bei Madao; d/tw ¥880-1280, discounts of 50%; 🌐📞) A traditional-style four-star hotel with attractive courtyard rooms, pleasant staff and a good location near the West Gate. It's a tourist vision of old China, but done in a tasteful way.

## **Friendly Cooperate Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

( *Yihe Jiudian*; 📍 593 9777; 4-1 Nanhai Xilu; 4-1 d/tw/tr ¥380/420/560, discounts of 40%; 🌐📞) This well-maintained two-star hotel is the only realistic option close to the old town. Clean rooms with broadband access. The attached restaurant has an outside area and is good for *shaokao* in the summer. It's next door to the post office.

## **i** Information

There are no internet cafes in or close to the old town. In Qinhuangdao, a few cluster near the bus and train stations.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; *Nanhai Xilu*; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) Foreign exchange facility, but small amounts of US dollars only.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; *Nanhai Xilu*; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) Next door to the Friendly Cooperate Hotel.

**Kodak Express** ( *Keda*; *Nanhai Xilu*) CD burning costs ¥15 per disc. Next to the Bank of China.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 505 1163)** Opposite the entrance to First Pass Under Heaven, on the corner of a small alleyway.

**Zhongxing Pharmacy ( Zhongxing Yaodian; Nan Dajie; 🕒 7am-9pm)**  
You'll find it just south of Dongwutiao Hutong ( ).

## **i** Getting There & Around

The fastest and most convenient train from Beijing train station is the D 21 soft-seat express to Shenyang, which leaves Beijing Train Station at 7am, arriving in Shanhaiguan at 9.32am (¥93). The D 19 leaves at 10.02am and gets in at 12.38pm. Other slower trains also pass through Shanhaiguan from Beijing and Tianjin. Alternatively, trains from Beijing stop in the larger city of Qinhuangdao (¥39 to ¥88, two to four hours), from where bus 33 (¥2, 30 minutes) connects with Shanhaiguan. Buses from Beijing's Bawangfen station also run to Qinhuangdao ( ; ¥81, 3½ hours regularly from 7.30am to 6pm).

In the return direction, buses leave for Beijing's Bawangfen station (¥75, 3½ hours, regularly from 7.30am to 6pm) and Beijing's Capital Airport (¥140, four hours, hourly 5am to 3pm) from Qinhuangdao. There are also direct buses from Qinhuangdao to Chengde (¥110, five hours), departing hourly from 7am to 11am, and at 5pm. From Chengde, you can take a bus from the east bus station for Qinhuangdao (¥112, five hours).

Cheap taxis are ¥5 flag fall and ¥1.40 per kilometre after that. Shanhaiguan has a vast miscellany of motor tricycles, which cost ¥2 for trips within town.

Near Shanhaiguan, Qinhuangdao's little airport has flights from Dalian, Shanghai, Taiyuan, Ha'erbin and Changchun.

## **BEIDAIHE**

The breezy seaside resort of Beidaihe ( ) was first stumbled upon by English railway engineers in the 1890s. To this day it retains a kitsch atmosphere reminiscent of Brighton or Margate (without the fish and chips), even though these days it's flooded with

vacationing Russians, as well as senior CCP officials on their hols.

During the May to October high season, Beidaihe comes alive with holiday-goers who crowd the beaches and feast on seafood. During the low season, however, the town is a freezing dead zone. Wandering the streets and seafront is enjoyable, or you can hire a bike to wheel around the beachfront roads. Otherwise, fork out for a rubber ring or inner tube from one of the street vendors and plunge into the sea (after elbowing through the crowds).

Beidaihe can be reached by direct bus or train from Beijing, or by bus from Qinhuangdao. From Shanhaiguan, the beach resort is a short journey away via Qinhuangdao: catch bus 33 (¥2, 30 minutes) to Qinhuangdao and then bus 34 to Beidaihe (¥2, 30 minutes) from in front of the train station on Yingbin Lu. Buses to Beijing's Bawangfen long-distance bus station (¥100, three hours) from Beidaihe leave from Haining Lu () and Bao'er Lu () three times a day – at 8am, 1pm and 4pm.

---

## Jimingyi

POP 1000

An ancient snapshot of China, the very sleepy hamlet of Jimingyi is a delightful surprise to find amidst the scruffy northern Hebei countryside. China's oldest surviving post station, the walled town of Jimingyi is a historic reminder of a system that endured for 2000 years and enabled the officials in the Forbidden City to keep in touch with their far-flung counterparts around China. Whipped by dust storms in the spring and with archaic, fading Mao-era slogans still visible on the walls, Jimingyi sees few visitors and feels a long, long way from the gleaming capital – much further than the 140km distance would suggest.

During the Ming and Qing dynasties, Jimingyi was a place of considerably more bustle and wealth, as evidenced in the numerous surviving temples and its town wall. Many of its courtyard houses remain too, albeit in dilapidated condition. Their residents are a friendly lot, even if their thick Mandarin accents are a struggle to comprehend, and will help find the gatekeepers to the various temples if they are locked.

There has been a flurry of activity in Jimingyi recently, with the town walls and gates newly restored, as the local government attempts to boost its appeal as a tourist destination. There is now also an



**admission fee** (¥40), although the ticket does provide access to all the principal sites. Jimingyi is likely to change more in the near future, so get here before it does finally move into the modern world.

## History

For more than 2000 years, imperial China employed a vast network of postal routes for conveying official correspondence throughout the land. Post stations, where couriers would change horses or stay the night, were often fortified garrison towns that also housed travelling soldiers, merchants and officials. Marco Polo estimated there were some 10,000 post stations and 300,000 postal-service horses in 13th-century China. While Marco clearly recognised that a little embellishment makes for a good story, there is little doubt the system was well developed by the Yuan dynasty (AD 1206–1368). Jimingyi was established at this time under Kublai Khan as a stop on the Beijing– Mongolia route. In the Ming dynasty, the town expanded in size as fortifying the frontiers with Chinese soldiers became increasingly important.

## Sights

The infamous Empress Dowager Cixi passed through here on her flight from Beijing in 1900; you can see the room she slept in but it's decidedly unimpressive.

## **Confucius Temple** *CONFUCIAN TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wenchang Gong*) Meandering along the baked-mud-wall warren of Jimingyi's courtyard houses takes you past scattered temples, including this simple Ming-dynasty temple which, like many Confucius temples, also doubled as a school.

## **Taishan Temple** *TEMPLE*

( *Taishan Xinggong*) Not far away is this larger temple, whose simply stunning Qing murals depicting popular myths (with the usual mix of Buddhist, Taoist and Confucian figures) were whitewashed – some

say for protection – during the Cultural Revolution. A professor from Qinghua University helped to uncover them; you can still see streaks of white in places.

## Other Temples *HISTORIC SITES*

Other small temples that can be visited include the **Temple of the God of Wealth** (*Caishen Miao*) and the **Temple of the Dragon King** (*Longwang Miao*). You will find the occasional *yingbi* (spirit wall) standing alone, its courtyard house demolished, and a few ancient stages. Adding to the time-capsule feel are the numerous slogans from the Cultural Revolution daubed on walls that seem to have been simply left to fade.

## City Walls *HISTORIC SITE*

Jimingyi's walls have been restored so you can promenade all around them. Ascend the **East Gate** (; Dong Men) for fine views of the town, surrounding fields and **Jiming Mountain** (; Jiming Shan) to the north. Across town is the **West Gate**; the **Temple of the Town Gods** (; Chenghuang Miao), overgrown with weeds and in ruins, stands nearby. There are a few intriguing Qing caricatures of Yuan-dynasty crime fighters remaining on the chipped walls. The largest and oldest temple in the area is the **Temple of Eternal Tranquility** (; Yongning Si), located 12km away on Jiming Mountain.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Most people visit Jimingyi as a day trip, but spending the night is a great way to experience rural life once others have returned to Beijing's luxuries. Ask around and you'll soon find a local willing to host you for ¥25; a home-cooked meal will cost the same. There are a few restaurants outside the north wall; bear in mind they eat a lot of donkey in these parts.

## **Getting There & Away**

Jimingyi can be reached by bus (¥3, 30 minutes, 8.30am to 5pm) from

the town of Shacheng (). You'll be dropped off along the north wall. Direct buses (¥50, 11.50am and 2pm) to Shacheng run from Beijing's Liuliqiao Station; otherwise, regular buses run past Shacheng (¥60, three hours, hourly from 7.40am to 4pm). Ask to be dropped off at the Jimingyi turn-off, then scramble up to the overpass and head towards the toll gate. Jimingyi is a 2km walk away. From Shacheng, buses return to Beijing from 8.30am to 4pm, but it is much quicker to walk back to the expressway and flag down any Beijing-bound bus.

Frequent trains run to Shacheng from Beijing West and Beijing Train Station (hard seat ¥19, 2½ to three hours). You can also catch a train on to Datong (hard seat ¥41, four hours, eight trains a day).

You'll need to take a taxi (¥6) or motor tricycle between Shacheng's train and bus stations. You can store luggage at the bus station for a fee of ¥1.



# Shandong

POP 96.8 MILLION

## Includes »

[Ji'nan](#)

[Around Ji'nan](#)

[Tai'an](#)

[Tai Shan](#)

[Qufu](#)

[Qingdao](#)

[Lao Shan](#)

[Yantai](#)

---

## Why Go?

Steeped in myth and supernatural allure, the Shandong ( ) peninsula on China's northeastern coast is the stuff of legends. Its captivating landscape – a fertile flood plain fed by rivers and underground springs capped by granite peaks and framed in wild coastline – can't help but

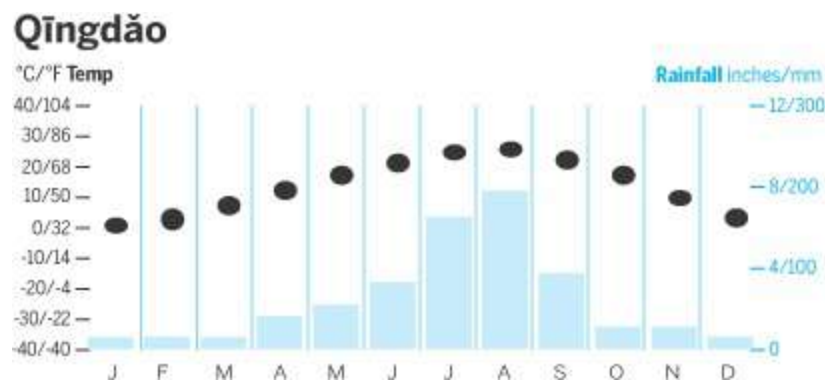
inspire wonder.

A lumpy-headed boy named Confucius was born here and grew up to develop a philosophy of virtue and ethics that would reach far beyond his lectures under an apricot tree. Three centuries later China's first emperor Qin Shi Huang would climb Tai Shan, Shandong's highest peak, to proclaim a unified empire in 219 BC.

But this place is more than its past. The gorgeous seaside city of Qingdao ranks among the best places to live in Asia. This is the Shandong's real draw: you can climb mountains, explore the legacies of kingdoms of old, and still have time to hit the beach.

---

## When to Go



**Jun–Jul** Cool sea breezes and warm waters make summer the time to explore Qingdao.

**Sep–Oct** Sacred Tai Shan is gloriously shrouded in mist for part (not all) of the day.

**Dec–Jan** Dress warmly and ascend Shandong's frosted peaks in winter.

---

## Best Historical Sights

- » Tai Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Confucius Mansion ([Click here](#))
- » Zhujiayu ([Click here](#))

» Penglai Pavilion ([Click here](#))

## Best Places for a Dip

» Shilaoren Beach ([Click here](#))

» Nos 2 and 3 Bathing Beach, Qingdao ([Click here](#))

» Wangfu Pool ([Click here](#))

» No 1 Beach, Yantai ([Click here](#))



## Shandong Highlights

- 1 Climb the slopes of **Tai Shan** ([Click here](#)), where stones speak the wisdom of millennia
- 2 Be charmed by village life in venerable **Zhujiayu** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Chill in **Qingdao** ([Click here](#)) with a pitcher of China's most famous beer
- 4 Visit ancient **Qufu** ([Click here](#)), hometown of the sage Confucius
- 5 Hike **Lao Shan** ([Click here](#)), with its hidden springs
- 6 Escape to the port city of **Yantai** ([Click here](#))

**7** Discover the legends of immortals and pirates at **Penglai Pavilion** ([Click here](#))

## History

Shandong's tumultuous history is tied to the capricious temperament of the Yellow River, which crosses the peninsula before emptying into the Bo Sea. The 'Mother River' nurtured civilisation but when unhinged left death, disease and rebellion in its wake. In 1898 the river flooded the entire Shandong plain, capping a decade of floods and droughts. The disaster also followed a long period of economic depression and unrest, and an influx of demobilised troops and refugees in 1895 after Japan defeated China in Korea.

The Europeans had also arrived. After two German missionaries died in a peasant uprising in western Shandong in 1897, Germany seized Qingdao and Britain forced a lease of Weihai. The Europeans' ensuing railroad projects and feverish missionary work emboldened a band of superstitious nationalists. In the closing years of the 19th century, the Boxers rose out of Shandong, armed with magical spells and broadswords to lead a rebellion against the eight-nation alliance. After the foreign powers violently seized Beijing in 1900, the Empress Cixi effectively surrendered and Boxer and other resistance leaders were executed. The Qing dynasty would soon collapse.

Emerging from decades of war, Shandong recovered its cities following Japan's surrender in WWII.

Today Ji'nan, the provincial capital, and the prospering coastal cities of Yantai and Weihai, all play a supporting role to Qingdao, the province's headliner.

## Climate

Temperatures average 26°C in summer (May to August), down to -3°C in winter (November to March). Temperatures on the coast stay at least a few degrees cooler in the summer and warmer in the winter than in the interior.

## Language

Standard Mandarin is the primary language spoken in Shandong, but regional varieties of northern Mandarin often pop up in casual conversation. The characteristic drawls of the three most common dialects, Jilu (), Zhongyuan () and Jiaoliao (), are each distinctive but tend to condense syllables and merge Mandarin's standard four tones into three.

### **i** Getting There & Around

Shandong is linked to neighbouring and distant provinces by both bus and rail. The provincial transportation hub is Ji'nan, with rail connections to all major towns and cities in Shandong. The express rail now links Ji'nan, Taishan, Qufu and Qingdao to Beijing and Shanghai. Buses also reach every corner of the province.

With South Korea and Japan just across the water, there are direct international flights through the Ji'nan, Qingdao and Yantai airports. Ferries also sail from Qingdao to South Korea (Incheon and Gunsan) and Japan (Shimonoseki), and from Yantai to Incheon.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### **Sleeping**

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### **Eating**

\$ less than ¥75

\$\$ ¥75 to ¥200

\$\$\$ more than ¥200

---

## Ji'nan



📍 0531 / POP 2.37 MILLION

Ji'nan is a busy capital city serving as a transit hub to other destinations around Shandong. On its surface, the city is in flux, but beneath the construction and sprawl are 72 artesian springs, which gently roil in azure pools and flow steadily into Daming Lake (Daming Hu).

The train stations are to the west. The heart of the city, encircled by the Hucheng River, is more tourist friendly with the major shopping zone on Quancheng Lu and Quancheng Sq.



Ji'nan

## Top Sights

[Baotu Spring Park](#) C2

[Five Dragon Pool Park](#) C1

[Great Southern Mosque](#) B2

[Ji'nan Museum](#) D3

## Sights

1 [Black Tiger Spring Park](#) D2

2 [Wangfu Pool](#) C1

## Sleeping

3 [Shandong Hotel](#) A1

4 [Silver Plaza Quancheng Hotel](#) D2

5 [Sofitel Silver Plaza](#) D2

## Eating

6 [Daquan Gardens](#) A2

7 [Furong Jie](#) C1

[Fushunjujiachang Restaurant](#) (see 7)

[Luxi'nan Flavor Restaurant](#) (see 6)

8 [Seasons Minghu](#) C1

9 [Wei Erlu](#) A2

10 [Yinhuchi Jie](#) B2

## Transport

11 [Ji'nan Railway Hotel](#) A1

12 [Shengxiangyuan Plane/Train Ticket Office](#) A1

## Sights

### **Parks** PARKS

(*Gongyuan*) Strolling through the willows is a pleasant escape from Ji'nan's din. The most central include the sprawling **Baotu Spring**

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Baotu Quan; Gongqingtuan Lu; admission*

¥40); **Black Tiger Spring** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Heihu Quan; Heihuquan Donglu; admission free*) along the Hucheng River and **Five Dragon Pool** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Wulongtan; Gongqingtuan Lu; admission ¥5*), a serene study of local life, where residents paint calligraphy with water on the steps. In a quiet alleyway off Furong Jie (turn east at the police stand), the neighbourhood comes to soak in the spring-fed **Wangfu Pool** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (, *Wangfu Chi; admission free*).

## **Thousand Buddha Mountain** *BUDDHIST MOUNTAIN*

( *Qianfo Shan; 18 Jingshi Yilu; admission ¥30; ☺ 5am-9pm; 🚏 K51*) Beginning in the Sui dynasty (581–618), the pious carved Buddhas into this hillside southeast of the city centre. The oldest are at **Xinguochan Temple** ( *admission ¥5; ☺ 7.30am-4.30pm*), the golden-roofed complex near the **cable car** (*one way/return ¥20/30*) and **luge** (¥25/30) drop-off on the mountaintop. On the rare clear day looking south, you can spot Tai Shan, the anthill in the distance.

## **FREE** **Ji'nan Museums** *MUSEUMS*

North of Thousand Buddha Mountain's main entrance, the **Ji'nan Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Ji'nan Bowuguan; 📞 8295 9204; 3 Jing Shiyilu; audio tour ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun*) has a small but distinctive collection including paintings, calligraphy, ceramics, Buddhist figures from the Tang dynasty and a delightful boat carved from a walnut shell.

The enormous, new **Provincial Museum** ( *Sheng Bowuguan; 11899 Jingshi Donglu; audio tour ¥30; ☺ 9am-4pm Tue-Sun; 🚏 115, 51*) – a 7km slog east of the city centre – surveys Shandong's culture from the Mesolithic age to the present. On display are oracle bone fragments, Qi and Lu kingdom pottery, Han tomb murals and clothing worn by the Kong clan (Confucius's descendants).

## **FREE** **Great Southern Mosque** *MOSQUE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Qingzhen Nan Da Si; 47 Yongchang Jie*) Ji'nan's oldest mosque has stood in the centre of town since 1295. Cover arms and remove hats before entering. A lively Hui (Muslim Chinese) neighbourhood is to the north.

## **Sleeping**

Budget hotels are clustered around the main train station, though not all cater to foreigners. Look first.

### **Silver Plaza Quancheng Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Yinzuo Quancheng Dajiudian; 📍 8629 1911; 2 Nanmen Jie; incl breakfast d/tr ¥478/680; 🚶🌐📶*) You know this is a Chinese-business hotel from the blinding Euro-style bling in the lobby. Professional staff and a good location overlooking Quancheng Sq makes up for that and the compact rooms with stained tile ceilings. Shell out for an upgrade in the renovated B-wing.

### **Shandong Hotel** HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shandong Binguan; 📍 8606 7000; 92 Jing Yilu; d/tr ¥179/209; 🌐📶*) On the corner of Jing Yilu and Wei Sanlu across from the train station, this old-timer hosted Mao and other dignitaries in its heyday, but today is used to dealing with budget travellers.

### **Sofitel Silver Plaza** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Suofeite Yinzuo Dafandian; 📍 8981 1611; 66 Luoyuan Dajie; r from ¥1101, plus 10% service charge; 🚶🌐📶🍷*) The city's first five-star is in the commercial district and still the best option, though we wish standard rooms were as spacious as the lobby promises. Discounts up to 50% often available.

## Eating

Ji'nan is a famed centre of *Lu* cuisine, characterised by bold flavours brought out by cooking over high heat with plenty of oil. Most of the best eating is had in the city's alleyways.

### Food Streets *STREET FOOD* \$

Evenings are smoky on **Yinhuchi Jie** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) () in the Hui district near the Great Southern Mosque. Hawkers fan the flames of charcoal grills lining the street, roasting up all manner of *shaokao* (barbecue on a stick). They make crisp, scallion pancakes and fresh noodles too.

Off Quancheng Lu's shopping strip, **Furong Jie** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) () is a pedestrian alley crammed with restaurants and food stalls. **Fushunjujiachang Restaurant** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Fushunjujiachang Fanguan*; 📞 188 0640 9638; 112 Furong Jie; most dishes ¥8–28; 🕒 9.30am–10.30pm) has *Lu* cuisine's greatest hits pictured on its menu.

About 1km south of the main train station, **Daguan Gardens** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Daguan Yuan*; *Jing Silu*) is a dandified enclave of modern eateries. The alley next to it, **Wei Erlu** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) () is a messy strip of noodle, *shaokao* and lamb soup carts that buzzes until late. Beers are ¥4!

### Luxi'nan Flavor Restaurant *SHANDONG* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)  
(*Luxi'nan Laopaifang*; 📞 8605 4567; 2 Daguan Yuan; dishes ¥28–98; 🕒 11am–2.30pm & 5–10pm) Just inside Daguan Gardens' north gate, this is the place for a refined take on *Lu* cuisine. Order the down-home classics like sweet and spicy cabbage with glass noodles (¥18) and lamb (braised or sauteed, from ¥38), accompanied with sesame cakes (¥2) – not rice. Chinese menu with pictures.

### Seasons Minghu *CANTONESE* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Siji Minghu*; ☎ 6666 9898; 188 Quancheng Lu, Parc66, 7th fl; 🕒 11am-10pm; 📍) The dandy waiters at this elegant restaurant on the top of the Parc66 () don gloves when serving southern Chinese classics such as steamed lily and pumpkin (¥32), salt-baked chicken (¥48) and black bean spareribs (¥58). Steamed fish can be pricey – up to ¥998 per *jin* !

## **i** Information

**ATMs** ( *Zidong Qukuan Ji*) Available in the lobbies of the Sofitel and Crowne Plaza hotels. There are plenty of full-service banks in town.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 22 Luoyuan Dajie; 🕒 9am-5pm Mon-Fri) Currency exchange/24-hour ATMs accepting foreign cards.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 162 Jing Erlu; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) A red-brick building on the corner of Wei Erlu.

**Internet cafes** Often restricted to Chinese nationals, but if open to foreigners will require a passport. Look around the train station (¥2 to ¥5 per hour).

**Public Security Bureau (PSB)** ( *Gong'anju*; ☎ 8508 1088 ext 2, visa inquiries ext 2459; 145 Jing Sanlu; 🕒 8-11.40am & 2-4.40pm Mon-Fri) On the corner of Wei Wulu.

**Thousand Buddha Mountain Hospital International Clinic** ( *Qianfo Shan Yiyuan Guoji Yiliao Zhongxin*; ☎ 8926 8018, 8926 8017; 16766 Jinshi Lu; 🕒 8-11am & 2-5pm) English and Japanese spoken. Take bus K51 or K68 to *nankou* () stop on Lishan Lu.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

Ji'nan is connected to most major cities, with daily flights to Beijing (¥760, one hour), Dalian (¥1050, two hours), Guangzhou (¥1790, 2½ hours), Ha'erbin (¥1330, two hours), Shanghai (¥960, 80 minutes), Xi'an (¥1080, 1½ hours) and Yantai (¥790, 50 minutes).

Lines at the station's ticket office can be slow. Book tickets at **Shengxiangyuan plane/train ticket office** ( *Shengxiangyuan*

*hangkong tielu shoupiaochu*; 📍 8610 9666; 115 Chezhan Jie, 1st fl, Quancheng Binguan; 🕒 plane 7.30am-10pm, train 8am-8pm) immediately south of the train station, or in the lobby of the **Ji'nan Railway Hotel** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Ji'nan Tiedao Dajudian*; 19 Chezhan Jie; 🕒 8am-midnight), immediately east of the train station. Both take ¥5 commission.

## Bus

Ji'nan's most convenient station is the **main long-distance bus station** ( *changtu zongqichezhan*; 📍 8594 1472; 131 Jiluo Lu;) about 3km north of the train station, though buses to destinations within the province also leave from the **bus station** (📍 8830 3030; 22 Chezhan Jie;) directly across from the train station.

Some buses departing regularly from the main long-distance bus station:

**Beijing** ¥124, 5½ hours, hourly

**Qingdao** ¥113, 4½ hours, every 40 minutes

**Qufu** ¥44, two hours, every 50 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥266, 12 hours, four daily (9am, 3pm, 5pm and 6pm)

**Tai'an** ¥25, two hours, every 30 minutes

**Tianjin** ¥120, 4½ hours, hourly

**Yantai** ¥120, 5½ hours, hourly

## Train

Ji'nan is a major hub in the east China rail system and has several busy train stations. Most travellers can rely on the **Main Train Station** ( *Huoche ZongZzhan*) and the **West Train Station** ( *Huoche Xi Zhan*), about 20km west of the city centre. Bus K156 (¥2) connects these two stations.

Some regular trains (seat/hard sleeper) departing from the **Main Train Station** :

**Qingdao** ¥65/109, 4½ to five hours, nine daily

**Qufu** ¥17/71, 2½ hours, three daily (5.13am, 8.11am and 4pm)

**Tai Shan** ¥12/103, one hour, frequently

**Xi'an** ¥150/274, 15 to 18 hours, four daily (3.45pm, 4.32pm, 6.56pm)

and 10.41pm)

**Yantai** ¥76/143, 6½ to eight hours, five daily (1.27am, 6.45am, 7.20am, 11.12am and 2.53pm)

**Zhengzhou** ¥92/170, 8½ to 10 hours, regularly

Some express D trains (hard/soft seat only) departing from the **West Train Station** (G trains also available):

**Beijing** ¥125/150, two to three hours, eight daily

**Nanjing** ¥190/228, 4½ hours, seven daily



**Qingdao** ¥121/146, 2½ hours, regularly

**Qufu** ¥40/48, 40 minutes, regularly

**Shanghai** ¥281/338, five to 6½ hours, six daily

## Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Ji'nan's Yaoqiang **airport** ( 8208 6666) is 40km from the city. Airport shuttles (¥20) run from the **Yuquan Simpson Hotel** (*Yuquan Senxin Dajjudian*;  96888; *Luoyuan Dajie*) and from the main train station hourly from 6am to 7pm. A taxi costs about ¥100.



### Public Transport

Bus 84 (¥1) connects the main long-distance bus station with the main train station. Bus K51 (¥2) runs from the main train station through the city centre and then south past Baotu Spring Park to Thousand Buddha Mountain.

### Taxi

Taxis cost ¥7.50 for the first 3km then ¥1.75 (slightly more at night) per kilometre thereafter.

### Water Taxi

Open-air, motorised **boats** ( 8690 5886; per stop ¥10;  every 20 min, 8am-8pm) circle clockwise around the scenic Hucheng River and the south side of Daming Lake, making 10 stops at attractions including Baotu Spring Park, Black Tiger Spring, Five Dragon Pool



Park and Quancheng Sq. It takes about 1½ hours for the full circuit.

---

## Around Ji'nan

### ZHUJIAYU

📍 0531

Eighty kilometres east of Ji'nan, **Zhujiayu** (*admission ¥15*) is one of Shandong's oldest intact hamlets, dating back as far as the Xia dynasty (2070–1600 BC). Most of Zhujiayu's buildings are from the more recent Ming and Qing dynasties, and many have been spruced up to serve as Chinese movie and soap opera sets, but strolling the narrow streets is still a journey back in time. Wander on your own or hire one of the elderly residents playing tour guide (¥10 to ¥20, Chinese-speaking only) inside the city walls.

Flanked by bucolic panoramas of rolling hills, Zhujiayu can be explored in half a day. Pay at the main gate in the restored wall on the village's northern end and then walk along the Ming-dynasty, **double-track ancient road** (; *shuanggui gudao*) to the Qing-dynasty **Wenchang Pavilion** (; Wenchang Ge), an arched gate topped by a single-roofed shrine where teachers would take new pupils to make offerings to Confucius before their first lesson. On your left is **Shanyin Primary School** (; Shanyin Xiaoxue), a series of halls and courtyards with exhibits on local life. Further along the road looms a wall with two fading portraits of Chairman Mao dating from 1966.

Wander to see the many ancestral temples, including the **Zhu Family Ancestral Hall** (; Zhushi Jiaci), packed mudbrick homesteads (many are deserted and collapsing), and delightful, arched *shiqiao* (stone bridges). The **Lijiao Bridge** (; Lijiao Qiao) is an early form of traffic overpass dating from 1671. A further 30-minute climb past the last drystone walls of the village will take you to the gleaming white **Kuixing Pavilion** (*Kuixing Lou; admission ¥2*) crowning the hill.

If you want to spend the night, look for flags posting (*nongjiale*; a guesthouse or homestay). The basic **Gucun Inn** (*Gucun Jiujia*; 📍 8380 8135; *d with bath ¥100*) is a lovely old courtyard home with a spirit wall decorated with a peacock, 80m past the Lijiao Bridge. The

owners will also cook up dinner (dishes from ¥12). At **Lao Jia Restaurant** (), next to the Mao portraits, the genial owners take their sleepy yellow dog hunting for wild rabbit and forage for fresh mushrooms and greens in the hills (¥35 per *jin* for rabbit and veggie dishes from ¥10).

To reach Zhujiayu from Ji'nan, catch the Zhangqiu bus (; ¥21, 1½ hours, from 7am to 6.30pm) from the bus station directly across from the train station; ask for the village drop off. From there, it's a further 2km walk (locals offer lifts for ¥10). Returning to Ji'nan, flag down a bus across from the massive gate on the main road. Buses are rare after 6pm.

---

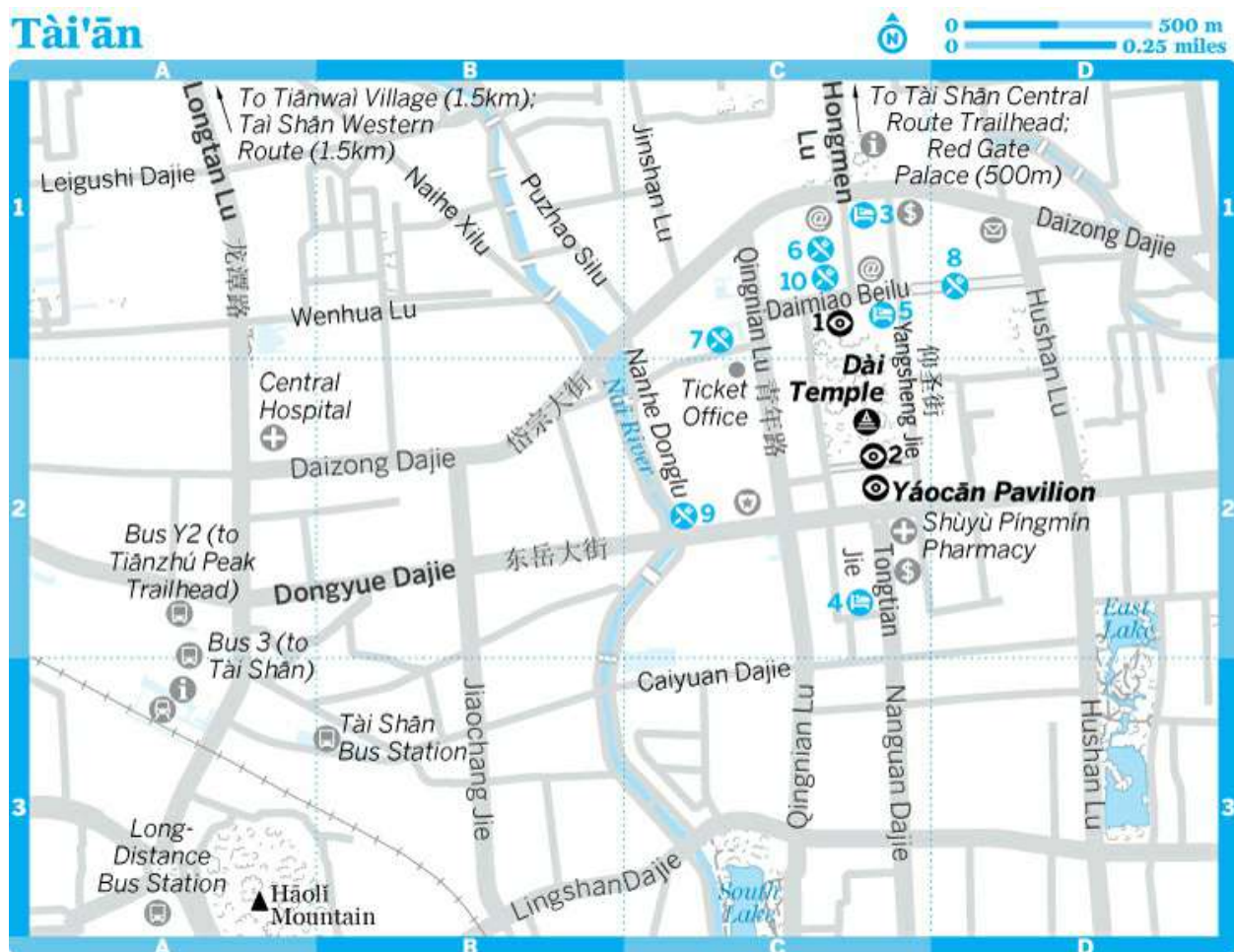
## Tai'an

 0538 / POP 1.05 MILLION

Gateway to Tai Shan's sacred slopes, Tai'an's tourist industry has been in full swing since before the Ming dynasty. In the 17th-century, historian Zhang Dai described package tours that included choice of lodging (enormous inns with more than 20 kitchens and hundreds of servants, opera performers and courtesans) and post-summit congratulatory banquet, plus an optional sedan chair upgrade. (Special mountain-climbing tax of eight *fen* silver not included in the advertised price.)

Today's tourist scene in Tai'an is much more subdued in comparison. Though there's not much to see outside of the magnificent Dai Temple, you will need the better part of a day for the mountain, so spending the night here or at the summit is advised.

# Tai'an



## Tai'an

### Top Sights

[Dai Temple](#) C2

[Yaocan Pavilion](#) C2

### Sights

[1 Hou Zai Gate](#) C1

[2 Zhengyang Gate](#) C2

### Sleeping

- 3 [Roman Holiday](#) C1
- 4 [Taishan International Youth Hostel](#) C2
- 5 [Yuzuo Hotel](#) C1

## Eating

- 6 [A Dong de Shuijiao](#) C1
- 7 [Beixin Snack Street](#) C1
- 8 [Dai Bei Market](#) D1
- 9 [Night Market](#) C2
- 10 [Shengtaoyuan Coffee & Tea](#) C1

## Sights

### Dai Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dai Miao; Daimiao Beijie Lu; adult/child ¥30/15; ☺ 8am-6pm summer, to 5pm winter*) This magnificent Taoist temple complex is the place in town where all the roads lead, being the traditional first stop on every pilgrimage route up the mountain. It is dedicated to the Lord of Tai Shan, whose responsibilities include deciding the length of every person's life. The grounds are an impressive example of Song-dynasty (960–1127) temple construction with features of an imperial palace, though other structures stood here a millennium before that.

Most visitors enter from the north through the [Hou Zai gate](#)

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) () at the end of Hongmen Lu. Entering from the south through the [Zhengyang gate](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) () allows you to follow the traditional passage through the temple and up Hongmen Lu to [Red Gate Palace](#), and the start of the Tai Shan ascent.

From the south end, two lions flank a memorial gate and watch cars pass by on Dongyue Dajie. Beyond is the [Yaocan Pavilion](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Yaocan Ting; ☺ 6.30am-6pm*) containing a hall dedicated to the grandmother of Tai Shan (Taishan Laomu), Bixia, and Songzi Niangniang, a deity to whom couples wanting children dutifully pay their respects. The splendid [Daimiao Fang](#), a *paifang* (ornamental

arch) decorated with four pairs of weathered lions and dragon and phoenix motifs, towers just before the Zhengyang gate.

Inside the complex, the courtyards are filled with prized examples of poetry and imperial records. Fossilised-looking *bixi* (the mythical tortoise son of the dragon), dating from the 12th century onward, carry stelae (stone slabs or columns decorated with figures or inscriptions) on their backs documenting everything from the civil exam process to emperors' birthdays. Across the way, the Han Emperor Wudi is said to have planted some of the massive, twisting trees in the **Han Cypress Tree Pavilion** 2100 years ago. The main hall is the colossal, twin-eaved, nine-bay-wide **Hall of Heavenly Blessing** (*Tiankuang Dian*; *shoe covers ¥1*), which dates to AD 1009. The dark interior houses a marvellous 62m-long Song-dynasty fresco depicting Emperor Zhenzong as the god of Tai Shan. Take time to scale the walls over the Hou Zai gate to see what's in store for your pilgrimage up the mountain.

## **Sleeping**

There are many midrange options in town, mostly clustered around the train station. Ask for discounts. The **Tai'an Tourist Information Centre** in front of the train station can help you book a room.

### **Taishan International Youth Hostel** *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Taishan Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 628 5196; 65 *Tongtian Jie*; dm ¥40-60, d/tw/tr ¥228/160/180; 📶@📶) Tai'an's first youth hostel has clean spartan rooms with pine furnishings and old propaganda posters. Bike rental, free laundry and a bar on the 3rd floor make this a pleasant experience. Dorms are a bargain. Look for the pair of arches just off *Tongtian Jie*.

### **Yuzuo Hotel** *HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yuzuo Binguan*; 📍 826 9999; 50 *Daimiao Beilu*; tw/d/ste ¥360/780/1680; 📶@) This pretty hotel next to the Dai Temple's north

gate was purposely kept to two storeys out of respect for its neighbour. Deluxe rooms are decked out imperial style; cheaper rooms are rather ordinary. The attached bakery and restaurants serve Taoist food (12-course set menu ¥168 per person). Discounts of 20%.

## Roman Holiday HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Luoma Jiari Shangwu Jiudian*; 📍 627 9999; 18 Hongmen Lu; incl breakfast s/d ¥298/358; 🌐📶) This oddly named hotel's location along the sacred route to Tai Shan can't be beat. Discounts get singles down to ¥168. Small, neat rooms with see-through showers and worn carpeting, but no Audrey Hepburn.

## Ramada Plaza Tai'an HOTEL \$\$\$

(*Dongzun Huameida Dajiu-dian*; 16 Ying Sheng Donglu; s/d ¥1160-1400, ste ¥1960-3360; 🌐📶📶) The town's only five-star is on the northwest side of town and has all the usual comforts plus fantastic views of the main attraction.

## Eating

There are three busy food streets. The **night market** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) (*ye shi*; 🕒 5.30pm-late) on the Nai River's east bank has many hotpot stalls. Pick your ingredients (thinly sliced meats, fish balls, vegetables, tofu etc) and take a seat at a low table. Meals cost about ¥25, and a large jug of beer is ¥6. Vendors on **Beixin Snack Street** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Beixin Xiaochi Buxing Jie*) set up carts for lunch (except Saturday) and dinner. Look for *mantou* (, steamed buns), various meats on skewers, fried chicken and more. Hawkers serve similar delights by the temple at **Dai Bei Market** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) (*Daibei Shichang*) but expect tourist prices.

## A Dong de Shuijiao CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(31 Hongmen Lu; meals from ¥12; 🕒 9am-10pm; 📶) This centrally

located restaurant serves up northern Chinese staples including *shuijiao* (; dumplings). There are a wide range of fillings including lamb (¥24 per *jin* – enough for two) and vegetable (¥18 per *jin*). The English menu is incomprehensible so be prepared to point.

## Shengtaoyuan Coffee & Tea *INTERNATIONAL* \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Shengtaoyuan Xiuxian Canting*; 33 Hongmen Lu; dishes ¥25-150; ☺ 8.30am-midnight; 📶📶) The ivory baby grand piano beside the toilet may be overkill but the comfy couches and 41-page menu (with photos) are lovely. Decent pizzas (from ¥25), salads (from ¥12) and spaghetti (¥25).

## Dongzun Court *CHINESE* \$\$

(, *Dong Zunge*; 📞 836 8222; 16 Yingsheng Donglu; ☺ 11.30am-2.30pm & 5.30-8.30pm; mains from ¥48; 📶) This tablecloth affair at the Ramada Plaza has an entire room dedicated to live seafood (priced by the *jin*) and freshly made spring-water bean curd (¥38).

## **i** Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** (22 Daizong Jie; ☺ 8.30am-4pm Mon-Fri) Currency exchange and 24-hour ATM accepts foreign cards.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 116 Tongtian Jie; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm) Currency exchange 24-hour ATM accepts foreign cards.

**Central Hospital** ( *Zhongxin Yiyuan*; 📞 822 4161; 29 Longtan Lu) Limited English.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 232 Daizong Dajie; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm)

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju;** 📞 827 5264; *cnr Dongyue Dajie & Qingnian Lu*). **The visa office** ( ☺ 8.30am-noon & 1-5pm Mon-Fri, or by appointment) is on the east side of the shiny grey building.

**Shuyu Pingmin Pharmacy** ( *Shuyu Pingmin Dayaofang*; 38 Shengping Jie; ☺ 7.30am-9pm)

**Tai'an tourist information centre** ( *Tai'anshi Luyou Zixun Zhongxin*; ☎ *info hotline 12301*) Hongmen Lu (☎ *bookings 218 7989*; 22 *Hongmen Lu*; 🕒 *8am-6pm*); Train station (☎ *bookings 688 7358*; 🕒 *8.30am-7.30pm*) Can book hotels, train tickets (¥20 fee per ticket), and air tickets. Limited English.

**Internet cafes** are often restricted to Chinese customers and always require a passport.

**Wanjing Internet Cafe** ( *Wanjing Wangba*; 180 *Daizong Dajie*; per hr ¥2; 🕒 *7am-midnight*) **World Net Bar Internet** ( *Dashijie Wangba*; 2nd fl, 6-1 *Hongmen Lu*; per hr ¥2; 🕒 *24hr*) Nonsmoking room available.

## **i** Getting There & Away

Most travel routes pass through Ji'nan, 80km north. Keep in mind that bus and train agents sometimes refer to Tai'an and Tai Shan interchangeably.

Buy tickets west of the temple at **train and plane ticket bookings** (☎ *train 611 1111*, *plane 218 3333*; 111 *Qingnian Lu*; 🕒 *8.30am-5.30pm*). Tickets sell out quickly so book early.

### **Bus**

The **long-distance bus station** ( *changtu qichezhan*; ☎ *218 8777*; *cnr Tai'shan Dalu & Longtan Lu*), also known as the old station (*lao zhan*), is just south of the train station. Buses regularly depart for these destinations:

**Beijing** ¥140, six hours, one daily (2.30pm)

**Ji'nan** ¥25, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 6pm)

**Qingdao** ¥126, 5½ hours, four daily (6am, 8am, 2.30pm and 3.30pm)

**Qufu** ¥21, one hour, hourly

**Shanghai** ¥205, 12 hours, two daily (3.20pm and 4.30pm)

**Weihai** ¥165, seven hours, one daily (7.20am)

### **Train**

Two train stations service this region. **Tai Shan Train Station** (☎ *688 7358*; *cnr Dongyue Dajie & Longtan Lu*) is the most central, but



express trains only pass through **Tai'an Train Station** ( 📍 138 0538 5950; *Xingao tiezhan Lu*), sometimes referred to as the new station (*xin zhan*), about 9km west of the town centre.

Some regular trains (prices for seat/hard sleeper) departing from **Tai Shan Train Station** :

**Beijing** ¥79/149, seven to 9½ hours, five daily

**Ji'nan** ¥8 to ¥14/¥67 to ¥109, one hour, regularly

**Nanjing** ¥82/155, seven to 8½ hours, regularly

**Qingdao** ¥70/131, five to seven hours, regularly

**Shanghai** ¥102 to ¥120/¥201 to ¥222, 8½ to 13 hours, regularly

Some express D trains (prices for hard/soft seat only) departing from **Tai'an Train Station** (G trains also available):

**Beijing** ¥143/172, two to three hours, four daily

**Nanjing** ¥172 to ¥254/¥207 to ¥432, three to four hours, six daily

**Qingdao** (G train only) ¥207/353, three hours, one daily (5.55pm)

**Shanghai** ¥263/316, five to six hours, five daily

## **i** Getting Around

Buses connect the Tai Shan Train Station with access points to the mountain. Bus 3 (; ¥2) reaches both the central route trailhead and the western route trailhead at Tianwai Village (Tianwai Cun). Bus Y2 ( ( ) ) runs to the Tianzhu Peak trailhead. Bus 16 reaches Peach Blossom Park. Bus 4 reaches Dai Temple.

Taxis cost ¥6 for the first 3km and ¥1.50 (slightly more at night) per kilometre thereafter.

---

## Tai Shan

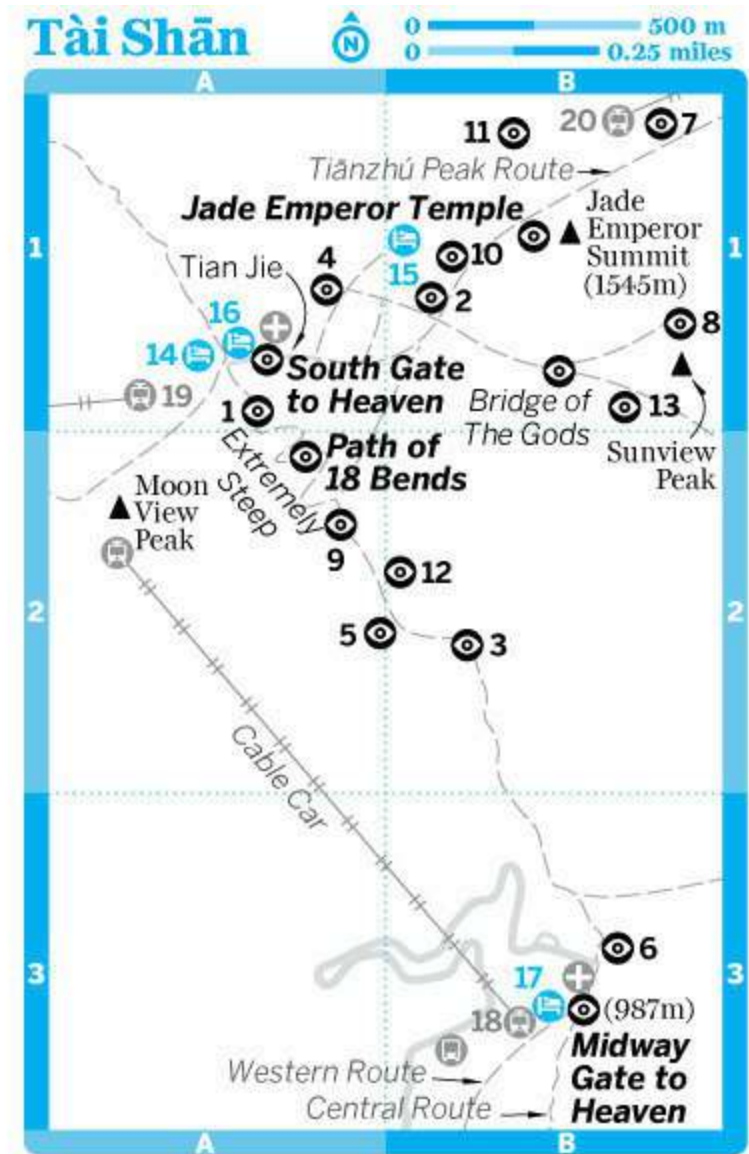
📍 0538

Sacred mountains are a dime a dozen in China, but in the end the one that matters most is **Tai Shan** (*admission Feb-Nov ¥127, Dec-Jan ¥102*). Its fellow Unesco World Heritage sites Emei Shan may be higher and Huangshan more photogenic, but Tai Shan has been

worshipped since at least the 11th century BC.

Qin Shi Huang, the First Emperor, chose its summit to proclaim the unified kingdom of China in 219 BC. Seventy-one other emperors and countless figures including Du Fu and Mao Zedong also left their marks on the mountain. Their poetry and prose are inscribed into tablets, boulders, caves and cliffs all over the slopes. Pilgrims still make their way up the steps as a symbol of their devotion to Taoist and Buddhist teachings.

Autumn, when humidity is low, is the best time to visit; early October onwards has the clearest weather. In winter temperatures dip below freezing and most summit hotels have no hot water. Tourist season peaks from May to October, with climbers converging for the **International Climbing Festival** ([www.mttaishan.com](http://www.mttaishan.com)) every September. Avoid major holidays.



## Tai Shan

### 📍 Top Sights

[Jade Emperor Temple](#) B1

[Midway Gate to Heaven](#) B3

[Path of 18 Bends](#) A2

[South Gate to Heaven](#) A1

## Sights

- 1 [Archway to Immortality](#) A1
- 2 [Azure Clouds Temple](#) B1
- 3 [Cloud Step Bridge](#) B2
- 4 [Confucius Temple](#) A1
- 5 Five Great Pines A2
- 6 [God of Wealth Temple](#) B3
- 7 North Gate to Heaven B1
- 8 [North Pointing Rock](#) B1
- 9 [Opposing Pines Pavilion](#) A2
- 10 [Qingdi Palace](#) B1
- 11 [Rear Rocky Recess](#) B1
- 12 [Ten-Thousand Zhang Tablet](#) B2
- 13 Zhanlu Terrace B1

## Sleeping

- 14 [Nan Tian Men Binguan](#) A1
- 15 [Shenqi Hotel](#) B1
- 16 [Xianju Binguan](#) A1
- 17 [Yuyequan Hotel](#) B3

## Transport

- 18 Cable Car to Moon View Peak B3
- 19 Cable Car to Peach Blossom Park A1
- 20 Cable Car to Rear Rocky Recess B1

## Sights & Activities

There are three routes up the mountain to its highest peak, 1532m above sea level, that can be followed on foot: the **central route** (; *yu dao*), historically the Emperor's Route winding 7.5km from base to summit, gaining 1400m of elevation; the **western route**, which follows the bus route; and the less travelled **Tianzhu Peak** trail up the back of the mountain. The central and western routes converge at the halfway point (Midway Gate to Heaven), from where it's another 3.5km up steep steps to the summit.

If this sounds like too much for your knees, take a minibus to

Midway Gate to Heaven and then a cable car to South Gate to Heaven near the summit, and then a bus back down.

Keep in mind that sights at the summit close around 5.15pm. Weather can change suddenly and the summit can be very cold, windy and wet, so bring warm layers and rain gear. You can buy rain ponchos and at the top, rent overcoats (¥20).

As with all Chinese mountain hikes, viewing the sunrise is considered an integral part of the experience. Stay overnight at one of the summit guesthouses to greet the first rays of dawn.

## CENTRAL ROUTE

This has been the main route up the mountain since the 3rd century BC, and over the past two millennia a bewildering number of bridges, trees, rivers, gullies, inscriptions, caves, pavilions and temples have become famous sites in their own right. Although the central route is well paved, don't underestimate the challenge of its 7000 steps. Figure on at least four hours to get to the top.

Tai Shan functions as an outdoor museum of calligraphic art. Prize works include the **Rock Valley Scripture** (; Jingshi Yu), in the first part of the climb, a massive inscription of a Buddhist text that was once hidden behind a waterfall, and **North Prayer Rock** (; Gongbei Shi) commemorating an imperial sacrifice to heaven at the summit.

Purists can begin with a south–north perambulation through Dai Temple in Tai'an, 1.7km south of the trailhead, in accordance with imperial tradition, but there is no shame in starting at the bus stop by **Guandi Temple** ( *Guandi Miao*; admission ¥10), the first of many dedicated to the Taoist protector of peace. Passing **First Gate of Heaven** (; Yitian Men) marks the start of the actual ascent, though the **ticket office** [Offline map](#) ( *Shoupiao Chu*; ☎ 806 6077; 🕒 24hr) is still a way further. The **Red Gate Palace** ( *Hong Men Gong*; admission ¥5; 🕒 8am-5pm) is the first of a series of temples dedicated to Bixia, the compassionate daughter of the god of Tai Shan. She wears a headdress adorned with phoenixes and is accompanied by nine attendants including the Goddesses of Children and of Eyesight.

Take a detour into the **Geoheritage Scenic Area** (; Dizhi Yuanqu) for a look at unusual radial rock formations that mesmerised

Confucius himself. Back on the main path is the Buddhist **Doumu Hall** (; Doumu Gong), first constructed in 1542 under the more magical name 'Dragon Spring Nunnery'. The back of the temple yard offers a quiet view of a triple waterfall, best seen in July and August. Prayers are written on the ribbons festooning the pines. Continue through the tunnel of cypresses known as **Cypress Cave** (; Bodong) to **Balking Horse Ridge** (; Huima Ling), which marks the point where Emperor Zhenzong had to dismount and continue by litter because his horse refused to go further.

The **Midway Gate to Heaven** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zhong Tian Men) marks the point where some travellers, seeing the stairway disappearing into the clouds, turn heel for the cable car. Don't give up! Rest your legs, visit the small and smoky **God of Wealth Temple** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Caishen Miao), and stock up on snacks. (If you need them, 24-hour **first aid stations** are at both the Midway and South Gate.)

If you decide to catch a ride, the **main cable car** (*kongzhong suodao*; one way/return ¥80/140; 🕒 7.30am-6.30pm 16 Apr-15 Oct, 8.30am-5pm 16 Oct-15 Apr) is near the Midway Gate to Heaven. The 15-minute ride is to Moon View Peak (Yueguan Feng), near the South Gate to Heaven. Be warned: peak season and weekend queues can take two hours. Also, the cable car stops when there is any risk of lightning.

If you continue on foot you'll come next to **Cloud Step Bridge** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yunbu Qiao), once a modest wooden bridge spanning a torrent of waterfalls, and the withered and wiry **Wudafu Pine** (Wudafu Song), under which Emperor Qin Shi Huang, overtaken by a violent storm, sought shelter. Across the valley each character carved in the **Ten-Thousand Zhang Tablet** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), dated 1748, measures 1m across.

You'll pass **Opposing Pines Pavilion** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Duisong Ting) and then finally reach the arduous **Path of 18 Bends** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Shibapan), a 400m near-vertical ascent to the mountain's false summit; climbing it is performed in slow motion as legs turn to lead. If you have the energy, see if you can spot the small shrine dedicated to the Lord of Tai Shan's grandmother along the way.

There is an alternate route to the Azure Clouds Temple here via a steep, narrow staircase to the right. If you continue on the main route, at the top is the [Archway to Immortality](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Shengxian Fang), once believed to bestow immortality on those dedicated enough to reach it. From here to the summit, emperors were carried on huge litters.

The final stretch takes you to the [South Gate to Heaven](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Nan Tian Men), the third celestial gate, which marks the beginning of the summit area. Bear right along Tian Jie, the main strip, and pass through the gate to reach the sublimely perched [Azure Clouds Temple](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Bixia Ci*; admission ¥5; 🕒 *morning-5.15pm*). The iron tiling of the temple buildings is intended to prevent damage by strong winds, and *chiwen* (ornaments meant to protect against fire) decorate their bronze eaves.

You have to climb higher to get to the [Confucius Temple](#) (; Kong Miao), where statues of Confucius (Kongzi), Mencius (Mengzi), Zengzi and other Confucian luminaries are venerated. The Taoist [Qingdi Palace](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Qingdi Gong) is right before the fog- and cloud-swathed [Jade Emperor Temple](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yuhuang Ding), which stands at the summit, the highest point of the Tai Shan plateau. Inside is an effigy of the Jade Emperor, who governs all mortal realms.

The main sunrise vantage point is the [North Pointing Rock](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Gongbei Shi); if you're lucky, visibility extends over 200km to the coast. At the rear of the mountain is the tranquil [Rear Rocky Recess](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Hou Shiwu), where ruins are hidden in the pine forests and brush.

You can descend to another side of the reserve by taking the [Peach Blossom Park cable car](#) (*Taohua Yuan suodao*; 📞 833 0763; *one way/return ¥80/140*; 🕒 *8am-5.30pm*) to Peach Blossom Park, a scenic area that explodes with colour in late spring. This cable car operates infrequently, so call ahead. From the Peach Blossom Park cable car drop-off it is another 10km on foot or by minibus (one way ¥25) to reach the park exit and buses to Tai Shan train station.

## CONFUCIUS: THE FIRST TEACHER

Born into a world of violent upheaval, Confucius (551–479 BC) spent his life trying to stabilise society according to traditional ideals. By his own measure he failed, but over time he became one of the most influential thinkers the world has known. Confucius' ideals remain at the core of values in east Asia today.

Confucius was born Kong Qiu (孔丘), earning the honorific Kongfuzi (孔夫子), literally 'Master Kong', after becoming a teacher. His family was poor but of noble rank, and eventually he became an official in his home state of Lu (in present-day Shandong). At the age of 50, he put a plan into action to reform government that included routing corruption. This resulted in his exile, and he spent 13 years travelling from state to state, hoping to find a ruler who would put his ideas into practice. Eventually, he returned to his hometown of Qufu and spent the remainder of his life expounding the wisdom of the Six Classics (*The Book of Changes*, *Songs*, *Rites*, *History*, *Music* and the *Spring and Autumn Annals*). Taking on students from varied backgrounds, he believed that everyone, not just aristocracy, has a right to knowledge. This ideal became one of his greatest legacies.

Confucius' teachings were compiled by his disciples in *The Analects (Lunyu)*, a collection of 497 aphorisms. Though he claimed to be merely transmitting the ideals of an ancient golden age, Confucius was in fact China's first humanist philosopher, upholding morality (humaneness, righteousness and virtue) and self-cultivation as the basis for social order. 'What you do not wish for yourself,' he said, 'do not do to others.' For more on Confucian philosophy, [Click here](#).

## WESTERN ROUTE

The most popular way to descend the mountain is by bus (¥30) via the western route. If you walk, the poorly marked footpath and road often intercept or coincide. You may decide to hop on a bus rather than inhale its fumes, but buses will not stop once they leave the Midway Gate to Heaven.

The western route treats you to a variety of scenic orchards and pools. The main attraction along this route is **Black Dragon Pool** (黑龙潭); Heilong Tan), just below **Longevity Bridge** (长寿桥); Changshou Qiao). Mythical tales swarm about the pool, which is fed by a small waterfall and said to conceal grand carp palaces and herbs that turn humans into beasts.

At the mountain's base, **Pervading Light Temple** (普照寺; admission ¥5; ☺ 8am-5.30pm), a Buddhist temple dating from the Southern and Northern dynasties (420–589), offers a serene end to



the hike.

## TIANZHU PEAK ROUTE

The route up the back of the mountain from the **Tianzhu Peak Scenic Area** (Tianzhu Feng Jingqu) offers a rare chance to ascend Tai Shan without crowds. It's mostly ancient forest and peaks back there, so take the central route down for the manmade sights.

Get an early start; the bus ride takes 45 minutes, and the climb itself can take upwards of five hours.

It's 5.4km from the trailhead to the **Rear Rocky Recess cable car** (*Hou Shiwu suodao*; 📞 833 0765; one way ¥20; 🕒 8.30am-4pm Apr-Oct, closed 16 Oct-15 Apr), which takes you from the back of the mountain to the **North Gate to Heaven cable car stop** (; Bei Tianmen suodao zhan) and views of Tianzhu Peak – when it's running. Call in advance.

## 🛏 Sleeping & Eating

Look for signs posting (*rujia*) or (*bingguan*) at the summit area along Tian Jie for inns starting from ¥120 and going way up on weekends. Rates provided below don't apply to holiday periods, when they can triple. At other times, ask for discounts.

There is no food shortage on Tai Shan; the central route is dotted with stalls and restaurants, but prices rise as you do. Expect food to cost double the usual.

### **Nan Tian Men Binguan** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📞 833 0988; 1 Tian Jie; tw ¥300-400, with private bath ¥680, tr ¥600-800; 📶📧) Located smack bang before you turn onto Tian Jie, this is the easiest place to reach on weary legs. Rooms are a bit beaten up but still clean and airy.

### **Shenqi Hotel** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shenqi Binguan*; 📍 822 3866; fax 826 3816; s/d ¥1000-1800, ste ¥6000; 🌐📧) As the only hotel on the actual summit, prices reflect that. The priciest mountain-view, standard rooms have new everything and are the only rooms on the mountain with hot water in the winter. The restaurant serves 'Taoist banquet' fare.

## Xianju Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 823 9984; 5 Tian Jie; tw ¥100-360, d/tr ¥420-700; 🌐) By the South Gate to Heaven, this two-star hotel has decent rooms. Some even have large windows overlooking greenery.

## Yuyequan Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 822 6740, Midway Gate to Heaven; s/d ¥200-300, ste ¥760-1200; 🌐) The only thing going at the Midway Gate to Heaven has drab but tidy rooms facing an indoor courtyard. Plenty of food options next door.

## **i** Getting There & Away

Bus 3 (¥2) connects the Tai Shan central route trailhead to the western route trailhead at Tianwai Village via the Tai Shan train station. Bus Y2 (¥3) and bus 19 (¥2) connect from Caiyuan Dajie across from the train station to the Tianzhu Peak trailhead. Bus 16 connects the train station to Peach Blossom Park. The last bus returns to Tai'an at 5pm.

## **i** Getting Around

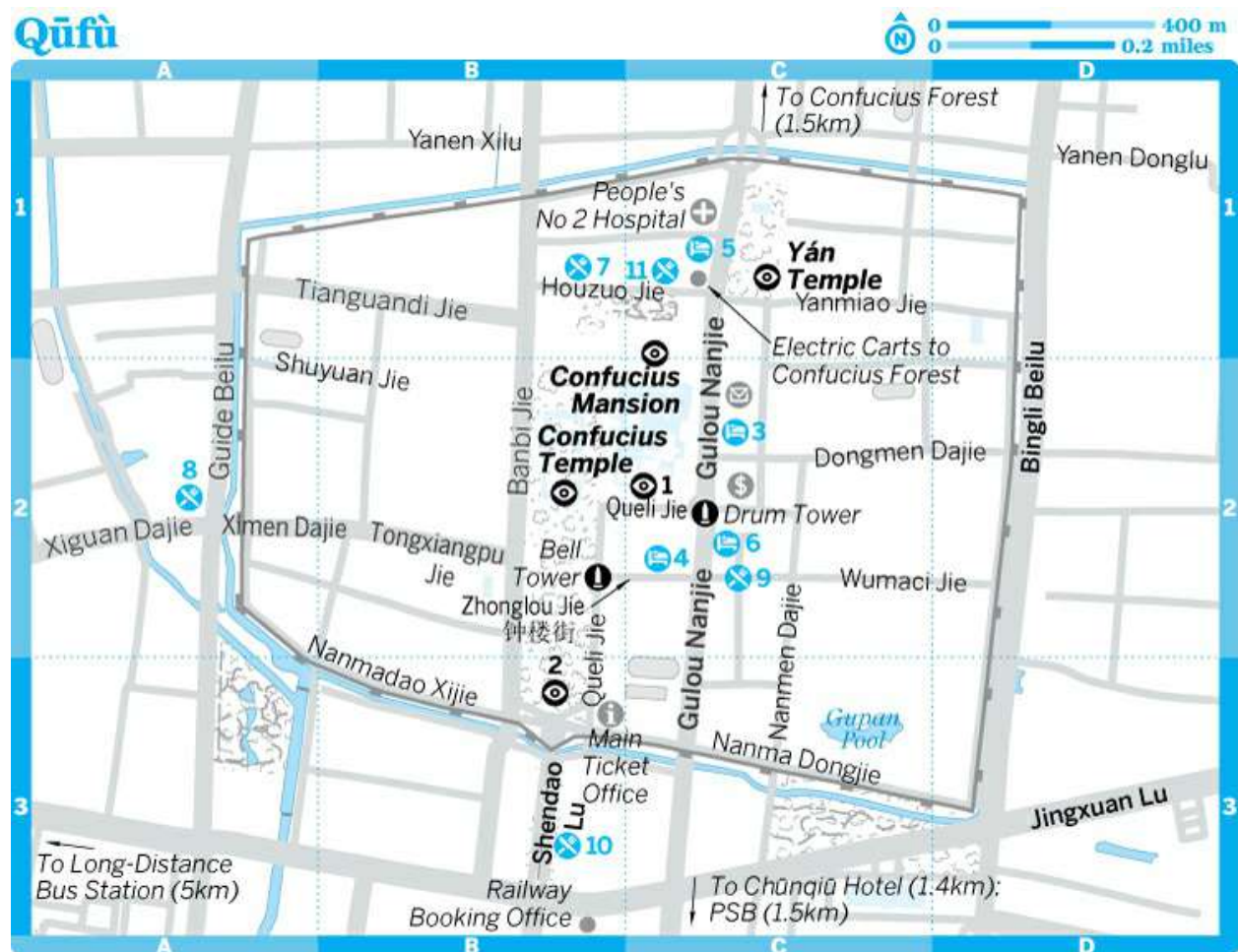
From Tianwai Village, minibuses (¥30 each way) depart every 20 minutes (or when full) for the 13km journey to Midway Gate to Heaven, halfway up Tai Shan, from 4am to 8pm in peak season and from 7am to 7pm in low season. Frequent buses come down the mountain. Cable cars reach the summit area from Midway Gate to

Heaven, Peach Blossom Park and Rear Rocky Recess.

# Qufu

📍 0537 / POP 88,905

Hometown of the great sage Confucius and his descendants the Kong clan, Qufu is a testament to the importance of Confucian thought in imperial China. Viewing the main sights within the city walls of ancient Qufu will take a full day.



Qufu

## Top Sights

[Confucius Mansion](#) C1

[Confucius Temple](#) B2

[Yan Temple](#) C1

## Sights

1 Entrance to Confucius Mansion C2

2 Entrance to Confucius Temple B3

## Sleeping

3 [Mingya Confucianist Hotel](#) C2

4 [Queli Hotel](#) C2

5 [Qufu International Youth Hostel](#) C1

6 [Ruguangge Business Hotel](#) C2

## Eating

7 Muen Lou Halal Food and Drink B1

8 [Muslim Quarter](#) A2

9 [Night Market](#) C2

10 [Shendao Lu](#) B3

11 [Yu Shu Fang](#) C1

WORTH A TRIP

## HOME OF THE SECOND SAGE

Twenty-three kilometres south of Qufu is [Zoucheng](#) (also called Zouxian, ), where the revered Confucian scholar Mencius (c 372–289 BC) was born. Like Confucius, Mencius was raised by a single mother and as an adult travelled the country trying to reform government. His belief that humanity is by nature good formed the core of all his teachings, including his call to overthrow self-serving rulers. Though unpopular among his contemporaries, a thousand years after his death Mencius' work was elevated a step below Confucius'.

Zoucheng today is a relaxed town with fewer tourist hassles than Qufu. Combined tickets are sold for ¥40 at either of the adjacent main attractions from 8am to 6pm. [Mencius Temple](#) (; Meng Miao) originally dates to the Song dynasty and bears the marks of past anti-Confucian mood swings, though restoration is in progress. With few visitors around to cut in, you can stand in the shade of ancient gnarled cypresses and absorb the serene surroundings. The twin-roofed Hall of the Second Sage (; Yasheng Dian) looms in the

centre of the grounds. A small shrine next to it is dedicated to Mencius' mother, the 'model for all mothers'. West of the Temple, **Mencius Family Mansion** (; Meng Fu) exhibits the family's living quarters, including teacups and bedding left by Mencius' 74th-generation descendant, who lived there into the 1940s.

Zoucheng is any easy day trip from Qufu. Buses make the 40-minute journey from Qufu (¥7) every 15 minutes from 6.50am to 6pm. A taxi will cost about ¥60. From Zoucheng's bus station, bus 20 (¥1) stops within a 10-minute walk of the sights, or just catch a motorcycle (¥5) or taxi (¥7).

## Sights

The principal sights – Confucius Temple, Confucius Mansion and Confucius Forest – are known collectively as 'San Kong' ('Three Kongs'). The **main ticket office** (*shoupiaochu*) is at the corner of Queli Jie and Nanma Dao, east of the Confucius Temple's main entrance. You can buy admission to individual sights, but the **combination ticket** (*per person ¥150*), grants access to all three plus free or half-price entry to a number of other Confucius-related sights, including **Confucius Cave** (; Fuzi Dong) about 30km southeast of Qufu on Ni Shan. This is where, according to legend, a frighteningly ugly Confucius was born, abandoned, and cared for by a tiger and an eagle before his mother realised he was sent from heaven and decided to care for him.

From 16 November to 14 February, admission is ¥10 cheaper than listed (combined ticket stays the same) and sights close about a half-hour earlier.

## **Confucius Temple** TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Kong Miao*; admission ¥90, included in combination ticket; 🕒 8am-5.10pm) China's largest imperial building complex after the Forbidden City began as Confucius' three-room house. After his death in 478 BC, the Duke of the Lu state consecrated his simple house as a temple. Everything in it, including his clothing, books, musical instruments and a carriage, was perfectly preserved. The house was rebuilt for the first time in AD 153, kicking off a series of repairs, expansions and

renovations in subsequent centuries. By 1012, it had four courtyards and over 300 rooms. An imperial palace-style wall was added. After a fire in 1499, it was rebuilt to its present scale.

Like shrines to Confucius throughout Asia, this is more museum than altar. Over 1000 stelae documenting imperial gifts and sacrifices from the Han dynasty onwards as well as treasured examples of calligraphy and stone reliefs are preserved on the grounds. Look for a *bixi*, mythical tortoise, bearing the **Cheng Hua stele** ( ), dedicated by the Ming emperor in 1468, which praises Confucius in a particularly bold, formal hand. The characters are so perfect that copies were made to teach script. The **Shengji temple** ( ) houses 120 famed Tang-dynasty paintings depicting Confucius' life immortalised as carvings.

The temple has nine courtyards arranged on a central axis. Halfway along rises the triple-eaved **Great Pavilion of the Constellation of Scholars** ( ; Kuiwen Ge), an imposing Song-dynasty wooden structure. A series of gates and colossal, twin-eaved stele pavilions lead to the **Apricot Altar** ( ; Xing Tan), which marks the spot where Confucius taught his students under an apricot tree.

The core of the complex is the huge yellow-eaved **Dacheng Hall** ( ; Dacheng Dian), which in its present form dates from 1724. Craftspeople carved the 10 dragon-coiled columns so expertly that they were covered with red silk when Emperor Qianlong visited, lest he feel that the Forbidden City's Hall of Supreme Harmony ([Click here](#)) paled in comparison. Inside is a huge statue of Confucius resplendent on a throne. Above him are the characters for ' *wanshi shibiao* ', meaning 'model teacher for all ages'.

South of **Chongsheng Hall** ( ; Chongsheng Ci), which was once the site of the original, modest family temple, the **Lu Wall** ( ; Lu Bi) stands where Confucius' ninth descendant hid Confucius' writings in the walls of his house during Emperor Qin Shi Huang's book-burning campaign around 213 BC. The texts were uncovered during an attempt to raze the grounds in 154 BC, spurring new schools of Confucian scholarship and long debates over what Confucius really said.

## Confucius Mansion MUSEUM

Offline map

Google map

(*Kong Fu*; admission ¥60, included in combination ticket; ☺ 8am-5.15pm) Adjacent to Confucius Temple is this maze of 152 buildings and 480 halls, rooms and side passages. The mansion buildings were moved from the temple grounds to the present site in 1377 and expanded in 1503 into nine courtyards and 560 rooms. More remodelling followed, including reconstruction following a fire in 1885.

The mansion was for centuries the most sumptuous private residence in China, thanks to imperial sponsorship and the Kong clan's rule, which included powers of taxation and execution, over Qufu as an autonomous estate. They indulged in 180-course meals, and kept servants and consorts. Male heirs successively held the title of Duke Yan Sheng from the Song dynasty until 1935.

Confucius Mansion is built on an 'interrupted' north-south axis with administrative offices (taxes, edicts, rites, registration and examination halls) at the entrance (south) and private quarters at the back (north). The **Ceremonial Gate** (; Chongguang Men) was opened only when emperors dropped in for visits. The central path passes a series of halls, including the **Great Hall** (; Da Tang) and **Neizhai Gate** (; Neizhai Men), which separated the private and public parts of the residence and was guarded at all times.

The large ' *shou*' character (; longevity) within the single-eaved **Upper Front Chamber** (; Qian Shang Fang) north of Neizhai Gate was a gift from Qing Empress Cixi. The Duke lived in the two-storey **Front Chamber** (; Qian Tang Lou).

East just before the Neizhai Gate is the **Tower of Refuge** (; Kui Lou), not open to visitors, where the Kong clan could gather if the peasants turned nasty. It has an iron-lined ceiling on the ground floor and a staircase that could be yanked up.

## **Confucius Forest** CEMETERY

(*Kong Lin*; admission ¥40, included in combination ticket; ☺ 7.30am-6pm) About 2km north of town on Lindao Lu is the peaceful Confucius Forest, a cemetery of pine and cypress covering 200 hectares bounded by a 10km-long wall. Confucius and more than 100,000 of his descendants have been buried here for the past 2000 years, a tradition still ongoing.

When Confucius died in 479 BC he was buried on the bank of the Si River beneath a simple marker. In the Western Han dynasty, Emperor Wudi deemed Confucianism the only worthy school of thought, and the **Tomb of Confucius** (; Kongzi Mu) became a place of pilgrimage. Today the tomb is a simple grass mound enclosed by a low wall and faced with a Ming-dynasty stele. Pairs of stone guardians stand at the ready. The sage's son and grandson are buried nearby, and scattered through the forest are dozens of temples and pavilions.

A slow walk through the parklike cemetery can take a couple of hours, though Confucius' tomb is just a 15-minute walk from the entrance (turn left after the carts). **Sightseeing carts** (¥20) allow you to hop on and off at the main attraction.

To get to the Confucius Forest, take an **electric cart** (*Diandong Luyou Che*; one way/return ¥10/15) from the corner of Houzuo Jie and Gulou Dajie. Otherwise take a pedicab (¥5) or bus 1 (¥2) from Gulou Beijie. Walking takes about 30 minutes.

## **Yan Temple** TEMPLE

Offline map

Google map

(*Yan Miao*; *Yanmiao Jie*; admission ¥50, included in combination ticket; 🕒 8am-5.30pm) This tranquil temple northeast of Confucius Mansion is dedicated to Confucius' beloved disciple Yan Hui, whose death at age 32 caused the understated Confucius 'excessive grief'. The main structure, **Fusheng Hall** (; Fusheng Dian), has a magnificent ceiling decorated with a dragon head motif. Outside a *bixi* carries a stele that posthumously granted Yan the title of Duke of Yanguo (in both Han and Mongol script) in AD 1331.

## **Festivals & Events**

Confucius Temple holds two major festivals a year, **Tomb Sweeping Day** (usually 5 April; celebrations may last all weekend) and the **Sage's Birthday** (28 September). The city also comes alive with crafts people, healers, acrobats and peddlers during annual fairs in the spring and autumn.



## Sleeping



### Qufu International Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Qufu Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 441 8989; [www.yhaqf.com](http://www.yhaqf.com); *Gulou Beijie*; *dm/tw/tr* ¥45/110/130; 📶📶📶) A fantastic hostel at the north end of Gulou Beijie with rooms so clean you can smell the fresh linen. Bike rental, ticket bookings, and a cafe/bar (cocktails are ¥15 to ¥18) serving Chinese and Western fare. Dorms have five to eight beds with a shared bathroom. Only fault? Hot water can be scarce in the mornings.

### Chunqiu Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

(*Chunqiu Da Jiudian*; 📍 505 1888; *13 Chunqiu Lu*; *13 incl breakfast s* ¥398-788, *d* ¥298-788; 📶📶📶) Just outside the city walls, this rather subdued business hotel is a favourite of bureaucrats (government buildings are next door). Standard rooms have plush beds, views of the park, and bathrooms sized for an airplane. Discounts available.

### Mingya Confucianist Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Mingya Rujia Dafandian*; 📍 505 0888; *8 Gulou Beijie*; *incl breakfast s* ¥128, *d* ¥218-238, *tr* ¥338; 📶📶) While we're pretty sure the great sage would not approve of his name on a hotel banner, we are sure he would like the efficient location (smack-bang in the middle of town) and the courteous staff. Avoid the stuffy, windowless economy rooms. Discounts up to 40%.

### Queli Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Queli Binshe*; 📍 486 6400; *15 Zhonglou Jie*; *15 s/d/ste* ¥498/568/2288; 📶📶📶) The four-star Queli was once the fanciest hotel in town, but the photos of visiting dignitaries on the walls are fading. A refurb is in progress, so some rooms look great while others are

musty. Look first.

## Ruguangge Business Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Ruguangge Shangwu Bingguan*; 📞 446 0688; 12 Gulou Nanjie; 12 incl breakfast s/d ¥258-588, tr ¥468; 🚶🌐📧 ) The best rooms in this new, faux-Ming building overlook Gulou Nanjie. The entrance is in an alley off Wumaci Jie. Discounts of up to 50% make this a good economy choice. No smoking on the premises.

## Eating

The local speciality is Kong-family cuisine ( ), which despite its name is the furthest thing from home cooking since it developed as a result of all the banquets the family threw.

Restaurants skip the pageantry nowadays but for still less formal fare, head to the area around **Shendao Lu** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (south of Confucius Temple) or the **night market** ( ; *yeshi*), off Wumaci Jie, east of Gulou Nanjie. Vendors make noodles, grill skewers of meat, and *jianbing guozi* ( ; ¥3 to ¥5), a steaming parcel of egg, vegetables and chilli sauce in a crêpe. Stalls displaying raw meat and produce cook it to order. Just point at what you want. At night, the **Muslim Quarter** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) comes alive outside the western gate on Xiguan Dajie ( ).

## Yu Shu Fang CHINESE BANQUET \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📞 441 9888; 2nd fl, Houzuo Jie; set meals ¥128-500; 🕒 9am-1.30pm & 5-8.30pm ) With private rooms overlooking the Confucius Mansion, this is a fantastic place to take a breather after following kilometres of courtyards. Recharge with some very fine teas ( ; *tie guanyin*) from ¥38 per pot ( ), or shell out for the banquet meal ( ; *tao can*). The most basic serves eight to 10 Kong-family dishes in quick succession. No English spoken; enter by the door beside the furniture store (the owner is also a woodcarver).

## Mu'en Lou Halal Food and Drink CHINESE MUSLIM \$

( *Muen Lou, Qingzhen Canyin*; ☎ 448 3877; *Houzuo Jie*; mains ¥15-48; ☺ 8.30am-1.30pm & 5-8.30pm) A friendly Hui family has run this place by the Confucius Mansion's exit for decades, serving house specialities like beef spiced with cumin, star anise and turmeric (; *nanqian niurou pian*; ¥68) and tongue-numbing, spicy tofu (; *mala doufu*; ¥12).

## **i** Information

**ATMs** accepting foreign cards are along or just off Gulou Beijie.

**Internet cafes** are often restricted to Chinese nationals or always require a passport. Look for signs posting ' around Wumaci Jie (per hour ¥2 to ¥5), or surf at **Qufu International Youth Hostel** (per hour ¥5).

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 96 *Dongmen Dajie*; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm) Foreign exchange and ATM.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; *Gulou Beijie*, ☺ 8am-6pm summer, 8.30am-5.30pm winter) In front of the Drum Tower.

**People's No 2 Hospital** ( *Di'er Renmin Yiyuan*; ☎ 448 8120; 7 *Gulou Beijie*) Next to the Qufu International Youth Hostel.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju)**; ☎ 443 0007; 1 *Wuyutai Lu*; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2-6pm Mon-Fri) South of the city walls.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Bus

Qufu's **long-distance bus station** ( *changtu qichezhan*; ☎ 441 2554; *Yulong Lu*) is 6km southwest of the city walls. **Left luggage** (¥2; ☺ 6am-6pm) is available here.

**Beijing** ¥160 to ¥180, six hours, two daily (8.10am and 11.20am)

**Ji'nan** ¥44, three hours, every 30 minutes

**Qingdao** ¥125, five hours, five daily (8.30am, 9.30am, 1.30pm, 2.20pm and 4.40pm)

**Tai'an** ¥23, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Yanzhou** ¥5, 20 minutes, frequently

## Train

The newly built **East train station** (; 📍 442 1571), 12km east of the walled city, offers convenient access to the express rail. The **Yanzhou Train Station** ( 📍 346 2965; *Beiguan Jie*), 16km west of Qufu, is also convenient for destinations on the Beijing to Shanghai line. The **Huodong Train Station** ( 📍 442 1571; *Dianlan Lu*) is closest to the walled city (6km east) but only slow trains stop there.

Buy tickets at the **railway booking office** (*huoche shoupiao chu*; 📍 335 2276; 8 *Jingxuan Lu*; 🕒 7.30am-6pm); ¥5 commission. The Qufu International Youth Hostel also books tickets (¥15 to ¥20 commission).

Some regular trains (seat/hard sleeper) departing from **Yanzhou Train Station** :

**Ji'nan** ¥15/67, two to three hours, frequently

**Qingdao** ¥76/143, six to 8½ hours, frequently

**Yantai** ¥43/76, nine to 10½ hours, six daily

Some express D trains (hard/soft seat only; G trains also available) departing from **East Train Station** :

**Beijing** ¥165/198, three to four hours, six daily

**Ji'nan** ¥40/48, one hour, eight daily

**Nanjing** ¥151/181, 2½ to 3½ hours, five daily

**Shanghai** ¥242/290, 4½ to 5½ hours, three daily

**Tianjin** ¥127/153, two to three hours, four daily

## Getting Around

Bus K01 (¥3) connects the long-distance bus station to Qufu's south gate and the east train station. A taxi from within the wall is about ¥30 to the east train station and ¥15 to the long-distance bus station. Bus 1 travels along Gulou Beijie and Lindao Lu between the bus station and Confucius Forest.

Minibuses (¥5 to ¥7, every 15 minutes) connect Yanzhou train station to the walled city from 6.30am to 5.30pm. Otherwise, a taxi costs about ¥50.

Persistent pedicabs (¥5 to ¥6 within Qufu; ¥10 to ¥20 outside the walls) chase all and sundry. Decorated horse carts take short tours (¥30 to the Confucius Forest from Queli Jie).

---

## Qingdao

 0532 / POP 1.83 MILLION

Offering a breath of fresh air to those emerging from the polluted urban interior, Qingdao is a rare modern city that has managed to preserve some of its past. Its blend of concession-era and modern architecture puts China's standard, white-tile and blue-glass developments to shame.

The city's beauty, the local saying goes, is in its red roofs, green trees, cerulean sea and azure sky. In truth, the beaches are overhyped and trees are rare in the new neighbourhoods, but Qingdao is right to take pride in its mixed heritage, including its mostly intact German concession structures. The winding cobbled streets and red-capped hillside villas are captivating. There is also plenty to enjoy in the city's diverse food scene, headlined by the ubiquitous hometown beer Tsingtao.

Qingdao is rapidly expanding into a true multidistrict city, but for now, most of the fun is in or around Shi'nan district (市南), the strip of land along the sea.

### History

Before catching the acquisitive eye of Kaiser Wilhelm II, Qingdao was a harbour and fishing village known for producing delicious sea salt. Its excellent strategic location was not lost on the Ming dynasty, which built a defensive battery – nor on the Germans who wrested it from them in 1897. China signed a 99-year concession, and under German rule during the next decade the future Tsingtao Brewery was opened, electric lighting installed, missions and a university established, and the railway to Ji'nan built.

In 1914 the Japanese took over after a successful joint Anglo-Japanese naval bombardment of the city. The Treaty of Versailles strengthened Japan's occupation in 1919, sparking fervent student demonstrations in Beijing that came to be known as the May 4th Movement. The city reverted to Chinese rule in 1922 but the Japanese seized it again in 1938 in the Sino-Japanese War and held it until the end of WWII.

In peacetime, Qingdao became one of China's major ports and a flourishing centre of trade and manufacturing (home to both domestic and international brands). It hosted the Olympic sailing events in 2008. All this and the clean air keep it at the top of the list of Asia's most liveable cities.



## Qingdao

### Top Sights

[Governor's House Museum](#) C2

[Protestant Church](#) C3

[Tianhou Temple](#) B3

## Sights

1 [Chinese Navy Museum](#) C4

2 [Huilan Pavilion](#) B3

3 [Little Fish Hill](#) D3

4 [Little Qingdao](#) B4

5 [Little Qingdao Lighthouse](#) B4

6 [No 1 Bathing Beach](#) D4

7 [No 3 Bathing Beach](#) G4

8 [No 6 Bathing Beach](#) A3

9 [Qingdao Underwater World](#) C4

10 [St Michael's Cathedral](#) B2

11 [Taiping Shan](#) F2

12 [Tsingtao Beer Museum](#) E1

13 [TV Tower](#) F2

[Zhan Bridge](#) (see 2)

14 [Zhanshan Temple](#) G3

## Sleeping

15 [Hailong Castle Hotel](#) C3

16 [Hengshan No. 5 Hostel](#) C3

17 [Kaiyue Hostelling International](#) B2

18 [Nordic Osheania Youth Hostel](#) B1

19 [Oceanwide Elite Hotel](#) B3

20 [Qingdao International Youth Hotel](#) D3

21 [Starway Hotel, Pichaiyuan](#) B2

22 [YHA Old Observatory](#) C2

## Eating

23 [Chun He Lou](#) B2

[Firewood Court](#) (see 21)

24 [Huangdao Market](#) B2

25 [Ma Jia La Mian](#) B2

26 [Wangjie Shaokao](#) B2

## Drinking

27 [Beer Street](#) E1

[Mamahuhu Lounge](#) (see 22)

[Old Church Lounge](#) (see 17)

## Shopping

[28 Jimolu Market](#) B1

[29 Parkson](#) B2

## Information

Qingdao Shinan Tourist Information Center ([see 21](#))

[30 Ticket Office](#) A2

## Transport

[31 Dongsheng Air Ticket Office](#) B2

## Sights

Most sights are squeezed into the Old Town (the former concession area), with the train and bus stations, historic architecture and budget accommodation, and Badaguan, a serene residential area of parks, spas and old villas. East of Shandong Lu rises the modern city with the central business district (CBD) to the north and the latest in retail and dining in Dongbu, closer to the water to the south. Further east still is the developing Lao Shan ( ) district, anchored by the Municipal Museum, Grand Theatre and International Beer City (site of the annual festival).

The Qingdao Municipal Government has put up plaques identifying notable historic buildings and sites throughout the city.

## **Governor's House Museum** MUSEUM

Offline map

( *Qingdao Deguo Zongdu Lou Jiuzhi Bowuguan*; 26 Longshan Lu; admission summer/winter ¥20/15, multilingual audio tour ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm; 📍 1, 221) East of Xinhaoshan Park stands one of Qingdao's best examples of concession-era architecture – the former German governor's residence constructed in the style of a German palace. It was built in 1903 at a cost of 2,450,000 taels of silver by an indulgent governor, whom Kaiser Wilhelm II immediately sacked when



he saw the bill. In 1957 Chairman Mao stayed here with his wife and kids on holiday. So did defence minister Lin Biao, who would later attempt to assassinate him (supposedly, Lin had an aversion to sunlight and kept the curtains drawn). The building's interior is characteristic of *Jugendstil*, the German arm of art nouveau, with some Chinese furnishings.

## Protestant Church CHURCH

Offline map

(*Jidu Jiaotang*; 15 Jiangsu Lu; admission ¥ 7; ☺ 8.30am-5pm, weekend services; 🚏 1, 221, 367) On a street of German buildings, this copper-capped church was designed by Curt Rothkegel and built in 1908. The interior is simple and Lutheran in its sparseness, apart from some carvings on the pillar cornices. You can climb up to inspect the clock mechanism (Bockenem 1909).

## FREE Tianhou Temple TEMPLE

Offline map

(*Tianhou Gong*; 19 Taiping Lu; ☺ 8am-6pm; 🚏 25, 220) This small restored temple dedicated to the patron of seafarers has stood by the shore since 1467. The main hall contains a colourful statue of Tianhou, flanked by fearsome guardians. There is also Dragon King Hall (; Longwang Dian), where a splayed pig lies before the ruler of oceans, and a shrine to the God of Wealth. Vendors in the alley adjacent (21 Taiping Lu) sell handicrafts.

## St Michael's Cathedral CHURCH

Offline map

(*Tianzhu Jiaotang*; 15 Zhejiang Lu; 🚏 1, 221, 367) Up a hill off Zhongshan Lu looms this grand Gothic- and Roman-style edifice. It is closed for renovation until 2014, but you can still wander the exterior. Completed in 1934, the church spires were supposed to be clock towers but Chancellor Hitler cut funding of overseas projects and the plans were scrapped. The church was badly damaged during the Cultural Revolution and the crosses capping its twin spires torn off.

Devout locals rescued the crosses and buried them in the hills. Workers uncovered them while repairing pipes in 2005.

## **Huashi Lou** CONCESSION BUILDING

(*Huashi Lou; 18 Huanghai Lu; admission ¥8.50; ☺ 8am-5pm; 🚏 26, 231, 604*) This granite and marble villa built in 1930 was first the home of a Russian aristocrat, and later the German governor's hunting lodge. It is also known as the 'Chiang Kaishek Building' as the generalissimo secretly stayed here in 1947. While most of the rooms are closed, you can clamber up two narrow stairwells to the turret for views of the hills and bay. Located on the east end of No 2 Bathing Beach at the southern tip of Zijinguan Lu in Badaguan.

## **Tsingtao Beer Museum** MUSEUM

Offline map

(*Qingdao Pijiu Bowuguan; 56-1 Dengzhou Lu; admission ¥60, English guide ¥60; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm; 🚏 1, 205, 221*) For a self-serving introduction to China's iconic beer, head to the original and still operating brewery. On view are old photos, preserved brewery equipment and statistics, but there are also a few fascinating glimpses of the modern factory line. The aroma of hops is everywhere. Thankfully, you get to sample brews along the way. Alternatively, skip the tour and head straight for Beer St just outside. If you're taking a bus, get off at the '15 *shiwu zhong*') stop. A taxi from Old Town costs ¥10.

## **MADE IN TSINGTAO**

The beer of choice in Chinese restaurants around the world, Tsingtao is one of China's oldest and most respected brands. Established in 1903 by a joint German-British corporation, the Germania-Brauerei began as a microbrewery of sorts using spring water from nearby Lao Shan to brew a Pilsener Light and Munich Dark for homesick German troops. In 1914 the Japanese occupied Qingdao and confiscated the plant, rechristening it Dai Nippon and increasing production to sell under the 'Tsingtao,' 'Asahi' and 'Kirin' labels. In 1945 the Chinese took over and gave the brewery its current name. At first, only China's elite could afford to drink it, but advertisements touting Tsingtao as a health drink boosted its appeal ('It's not only harmless, it strengthens the body!'). In 2011 China's beer

consumption topped 766 million kegs, enough to convince Tsingtao's distant cousin Asahi Breweries to invest in a minority stake.

## **Qingdao Beaches** *BEACHES*

( *Qingdao Shatan*) Qingdao is famed for its beaches, which are pleasant enough, but don't expect the French Riviera. Chinese beach culture is low-key, though swimming season (June to September) attracts hordes of sun-seekers fighting for towel space. Shark nets, lifeguards, lifeboat patrols and medical stations are on hand.

There are ways to enjoy the water without jumping in. If you give in to touts, rides around the bay are ¥10 to ¥40 depending on the boat. Or stroll the **Binhai boardwalk** (), which stretches 40km along the city's shoreline from Tuandao Bay to **Shilaoren Beach** () on the far east of town in the Lao Shan district.

Shilaoren, a 2.5km-long strip of clean sand and polished seashells, is Qingdao's largest. There's been heavy development, but the rocky outcrop, the 'Old Stone Man' from which the beach gets its name, still stands on its eastern end. Take bus 304 from Zhan Bridge (Zhan Qiao; ¥2.50, 45 minutes) or catch a taxi (¥40).

Closest to the train station is the **No 6 Bathing Beach** [Offline map](#) and neighbouring **Zhan Bridge** [Offline map](#) (; Zhan Qiao), a pier that reaches out into the bay. At its tip, the eight-sided **Huilan Pavilion** [Offline map](#) ( *Huilan Ge*; admission ¥4; 🕒 8am-9pm) is constantly packed to the rafters. If the pavilion looks familiar, that's because it's on every Tsingtao beer label.

South of Badaguan, the sand at **No 1 Bathing Beach** [Offline map](#) is coarse-grained and littered with seaweed. The prettier, sheltered coves of **Nos 2 and 3 Bathing Beaches** are just east of Badaguan. Take bus 214 directly, or bus 26 to the *wushengguan* () stop to wander past the exquisite villas, spas and guesthouses scattered within Badaguan's wooded headlands down to the sea.

For wide open spaces of sand, sea and sky, there's **Golden Sand Beach** () on the western peninsula of Huangdao district (). An undersea tunnel linking Huangdao and Shinan puts it within easy

reach of Old Town. Take the red double-decker sightseeing bus 2 (¥15, 30 minutes) by the train station at 9am or 10am, or tunnel bus 3 (3; ¥2) from in front of the Municipal Hospital ( ) on Jiaozhou Lu in Old Town to the terminus and then transfer to bus 18 (¥1). A taxi costs ¥70 including toll.

## **Qingdao Parks** *PARKS*

Within central Qingdao, **Zhongshan Park** ( *Zhongshan Gongyuan*; ☺ 24hr; 📍 26, 202, 501) is a vast 69 hectares of lakes and trees. There's an amusement park, botanical gardens and walking paths, and the park hosts lively festivals in the spring and summer. In the park's northeast rises hilly **Taiping Shan** [Offline map](#) ( *Taiping Shan*). Reach the **TV Tower** [Offline map](#) ( *Dianshi Ta*; admission depending on view ¥45/80/100) on top by **cable car** (one way/return ¥60/80; ☺ 7.30am-6.30pm). Free admission to the tower with reservations at its lacklustre **restaurant** (📞 8635 4020; set meal ¥108; ☺ 8am-7pm).

Also within the park is Qingdao's largest temple, **Zhanshan Temple** [Offline map](#) ( *Zhanshan Si*; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-4pm), an active Buddhist sanctuary. When you get off the cable car at the temple, look for a round concrete dome on the right. This is the entrance to a bunker, which the Germans used as a wine cellar, and today houses a wine bar. Fantastic!

Many parks with ticket booths, including **Little Fish Hill** [Offline map](#) ( *24 Fushanzi Lu*; admission ¥15; ☺ 6.30am-6.30pm) by No 1 Bathing Beach and **Signal Hill Park** ( *16 Longshan Lu*; viewing platform ¥15; ☺ 7.30am-6pm) in Old Town, are free to wander in after 6.30pm.

## **Little Qingdao** *LIGHTHOUSE*

[Offline map](#)

( *Xiao Qingdao*; 26 *Qinyu Lu*; admission summer/winter ¥15/10; ☺ 7am-6.30pm; 📍 6, 26, 202, 231, 304) In the shape of a *qin* (a stringed instrument) jutting into Qingdao Bay, this former island was connected to the mainland in the 1940s. The Germans built the white lighthouse in 1900 on the leafy promontory. It is an excellent spot for watching the city come to life in the morning.

## Chinese Navy Museum *MUSEUM*

Offline map

( *Zhongguo Haijun Bowuguan*; admission ¥80; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm; 📍 6, 26, 304) Just adjacent to Little Qingdao, this museum's main attractions are the rusty submarine and destroyer anchored in the harbour. There are also, of course, displays on Chinese naval history.

## Qingdao Underwater World *AQUARIUM*

( *Qingdao Haidi Shijie*; 1 *Laiyang Lu*; summer/winter ¥120/100, 6yr & under free, students ¥60/50; 🕒 8am-5.30pm; 📍 6, 26, 304, 321, 501) Kids will love this long-standing aquarium's spectacular 82m underwater glass-enclosed tunnel, jellyfish tanks and various underwater performances. Try to avoid weekends.

## **FREE** Municipal Museum *MUSEUM*

(, *Qingdao Shi Bowuguan*; 📞 8889 6286; 51 *Meiling Lu*; 51 🕒 9am-4.30pm, closed Mon; 📍 230, 321) This massive collection of relics anchors the budding cultural zone about 13km east of Old Town in Lao Shan district. It has the usual broad span of exhibits expected in a big city museum. This does not make them any less impressive.

## Festivals & Events

### Lantern Festival *SPRING*

The city glows at the end of the Chinese New Year/Spring Festival in February/March.

### Cherry Blossom Festival *cherry BLOSSOM*

The cherry blossoms explode with colour in Zhongshan Park around April.

### International Beer Festival *BEER*

([www.qdbeer.cn](http://www.qdbeer.cn)) The city's premier party draws more than three

million tipplers every August.

## International Sailing Week *SPORTS*

([www.qdsailing.org](http://www.qdsailing.org)) Watch (or join) the regattas and windsurfing by the Olympic Sailing Center every August/September.

## Sleeping

Old Town has excellent budget and midrange options. The CBD and Dongbu have the top-end international chains but a lot less soul. Rates increase by as much as 30% in July and August.



## Kaiyue Hostelling International *HOSTEL \$*

Offline map

(*Kaiyue Guoji Qingnian Luguan*; 📍 8284 5450; [www.yhaqd.com](http://www.yhaqd.com); 31 Jining Lu; 31 dm ¥25-30, f ¥100-179, r ¥80-100, with private bath from ¥189; 📶@📶) This hostel in a historic church at Sifang Lu and Jining Lu has a lively congregation. The sociable staff create a real community in the great bar and restaurant (Old Church Lounge), and cosy public spaces. They offer thoughtful services like bike rental (¥10) and a free beer each night. Clean dorms are large; doubles vary in quality. Book in advance.

## YHA Old Observatory *HOSTEL \$*

Offline map

(*Aoboweite Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8282 2626; [www.hostelqingdao.com](http://www.hostelqingdao.com); 21 Guanxiang Erlu; 21 dm ¥40-50, r with private bath ¥138-238; 📶@📶) Perched on a hill in a working observatory, this happy hostel has unbeatable views of the city and bay. Take them in with a beer in hand at the rooftop Mamahuhu Lounge. Staff (and resident pooch Wilson) provide all the usual plus organise group outings. Comfort level varies – revamped doubles have swank bathrooms. Some dorms are huge. A private car service (¥25) is handy for late-night arrivals. Book in advance.

## China Community Art and Culture HOTEL \$\$

( *Laozhuancun Gongshe Wenhua Yishu Jiudian*; 📍 8576 8776; 8 *Minjiang Sanlu*; s ¥198-498, d ¥298-398, ste ¥598-980) With silk lanterns illuminating the hallways, ceramic bowls serving as sinks, wood-floor showers and antique furnishings, each sumptuously decorated room in this polished hotel in the heart of Dongbu has the feel of a courtyard residence. There's a fantastic restaurant next door.

## Starway Hotel, Pichaiyuan HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

( *Pichaiyuan Minsu Zhuti Jiudian*; 📍 8280 7288; 34 *Jiangning Lu*, inside *Firewood Court*; s ¥189, d ¥239-309; 📶📺) Set in a conserved *liyuan*, apartment complexes once common in old Qingdao, this 'folk-custom theme' hotel has TVs and modern bathrooms. Everything else is a throwback, down to the neighbours who have been here for generations. Upgrade to rooms with traditional bed rolls (; *ruzi*; ¥239) or a Chinese wedding bed (¥309). Look for the wooden door and round blue sign.

## Hengshan No. 5 Hostel HOSTEL \$

Offline map

( 5, *Hengshan Wu Hao*; 📍 8288 9888; 5 *Hengshan Lu*; dm/r ¥60/175; 📶📺) On a short street south of the Governor's Mansion Museum, this new arrival boasts a primo location in a three-storey, white stuccoed German mansion. Beds are all the same (pine frame, reasonably soft) but rooms with private baths are like small apartments, while some bunk rooms are windowless closets. There's a small bar and cafe across the garden.

## Oceanwide Elite Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

( *Fanhai Mingren Jiudian*; 📍 8299 6699; 29 *Taiping Lu*; d without/with sea view ¥1160/1560, ste ¥2800 plus 10% service charge; 📶📺) This pretty five-storey hotel benefits from a superb seafront location overlooking (if you opt for the pricier sea-view rooms) Zhan Bridge and

Qingdao Bay. Little touches like complimentary snacks put it leagues ahead of its neighbours. Low-season prices for doubles drop to ¥700.

### Sea View Garden Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

(*Haijing Huayuan Jiudian*; 📍 8587 5777; 2 Zhanghua Lu; r ¥1017-1491, ste ¥2043; 🚗🌐📶📺) With all the five-star competition, this hotel on the water in Dongbu distinguishes itself with beyond professional (dare we say, neo-imperial) service. Refreshments, hot towels and even unsolicited delivery of homemade soup to ease a cough – we could get used to this assuming our credit cards don't max out. Fortunately, the 10% service charge is already included, and discounts up to 40% are available.

### Hailong Castle Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

Offline map

(*Qingdao Hailong Gubao Jiudian*; 📍 8289 2626; 23 Changzhou Lu; s ¥300-438, d/tr ¥338/438; 🌐📶) This recently redone beachside hotel, off Taiping Lu near Badaguan, occupies the police offices of the former Qingdao Prison and shares the grounds with the current museum, but 'Prison Hotel' doesn't have much of a ring to it. Spartan rooms with standard pine furniture.

### Qingdao International Youth Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

Offline map

(*Qingdao Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8286 5177; [www.youthtaylor.com](http://www.youthtaylor.com); 7a Qixia Lu; 7 dm ¥60, s/d/tr ¥260-480; 🌐📶📺) Despite the name, this hotel in Badaguan feels more like a B&B/hostel. Rooms (and bathrooms) are cavernous. There's some dust on the yesteryear charm, but there is a shared kitchen.

### Nordic Osheania Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

Offline map

(*Qingdao Chaocheng Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8282 5198; [www.nordicosheania.com](http://www.nordicosheania.com); 28 Guantao Lu; 28 dm ¥40-65, s/d ¥168-178, tr ¥228; 🌐📶) This hive of basic rooms is on the north edge of Old



Town. Management prioritised putting in a great bar and a huge movie room over revamping the crummy bathrooms (all shared).

## Eating

Qingdao's kitchens have no problem satisfying all tastes. The waterfront area from No 6 to No 1 Bathing Beach is brimming with restaurants – priced for tourists. The Dongbu neighbourhood of **Hong Kong Garden** (*Xianggang Huayuan*; ☎ 222, 501) around Xianggang Zhonglu is jam-packed with hip eateries: Korean, Japanese, Thai, Italian and Russian are just some of the cuisines.

For the city's staple seafood, stick to the streets. The **Taidong** neighbourhood between Taidong Yilu () and Taidong Balu () in Shibei district () north of Old Town is packed with restaurants, street markets and carts. Take bus 2, 222 or 217. For the quintessential Qingdao meal, buy a *jin* of clams – in local-speak *gala* (; from ¥16) – and take it to a streetside stall with ' ' (*jia gong*) on its sign. They'll cook up your catch for ¥5, and pour a bag of fresh Tsingtao beer for ¥6 more. (Pints and pitchers available if you want to be fancy.)



## **China Community Art and Culture** CHINESE \$\$\$

(*Laozhuancun Gongshe Wenhua Yishu Jiudian*; ☎ 8077 6776; 8 *Minjiang Sanlu*; mains from ¥48; 🕒 11.30am-2.30pm & 5.30-10pm; ☎ 222, 304) This gorgeous restaurant next to its namesake hotel in Hong Kong Garden is set in a stylised Hakka roundhouse (the sort once mistaken by the CIA for missile silos). The kitchen turns out sophisticated regional cuisine from Shandong and Sichuan. Everything from the mushrooms to water for the tea is locally sourced from Lao Shan.

## **Huangdao Market** STREET MARKET \$

Offline map

(*Huangdao Lu Shichang*; meals from ¥5; 🕒 8am-9pm; ☎ 228, 231) In the heart of Old Town, this long-standing, frenetic street market is chock-a-block with stalls selling squirming seafood, fried chicken, pancakes, fruit, soymilk...it's all cheap, so just stop when something

catches your fancy. Nearby Zhifu Lu has sit-down curbside joints such as No 17 with the red awning that will prepare whatever you bring for ¥5.

## Firewood Court *STREET MARKET* \$

Offline map

( *Pichaiyuan*; meals from ¥10; ☺ 6am-10pm; 📍 2, 228) Off Zhongshan Lu, an archway with a plaster motif '1902' leads to a vast warren of food stalls and the Jiangning Assembly Hall (), a long-time draw for renowned performers that still puts on musical acts. The whole place is rather done up, but at least that means prices are labelled and eateries have picture menus.

## Chun He Lou *CHINESE* \$\$

Offline map

( 📞 8282 4346; 146 Zhongshan Lu; meals from ¥40; ☺ 11am-3pm & 5-9.30pm; 📍 2, 228) This *Lu* cuisine institution, which was founded in 1891, makes legendary potstickers (; *guotie*) and crispy, fragrant chicken (; *xiangsu ji*). The top-floor tables have the most atmosphere and get the full attention of the chefs. Downstairs is a fast-food version and a take-out counter for dumplings.

## Ma Jia La Mian *NOODLES* \$

Offline map

( *Yizhou Lu near Gaomi Lu*; noodles ¥7-12; ☺ 9am-11pm; 📍 222, 308) This no-frills restaurant, run by a Muslim family in the Old Town, makes a variety of handmade noodles. The beef noodle soup (; *nirou mian*) is savoury and good, but you can't go wrong with any choice and it's all cheap. Bottomless refills of soup and raw garlic for accompaniment.

## Wangjie Shaokao *ROAST GRILL* \$

Offline map

( 113 Zhongshan Lu & Dexian Lu; skewers ¥2-12; ☺ 10am-9.30pm) Qingdao's famous meat skewers will require your undivided attention.

Join the throng outside this street-side stand gorging on lamb (; *yangrou*), cuttlefish (; *youyu*) and chicken hearts (; *jixin*), and toss your spent skewers in the bucket. There's a sit-down restaurant around the corner.

### **Cafe Yum** INTERNATIONAL \$\$\$

(☎ 8388 3838, ext 6008; 9 Xianggang Zhonglu; buffet lunch/dinner ¥198/228; 🕒 noon-2.30pm & 6-9.30pm) This all-you-can-eat buffet in the swish Shangri-La Hotel is pricey but the spread is a glutton's paradise. Did we mention the all-you-can-drink beer? Reservations recommended.

### **The Canvas** INTERNATIONAL \$\$

(☎ 8565 5688; 63B Zhangzhou Yilu; 63 meals from ¥48; 🕒 9am-midnight Sun-Thu, 9am-2am Fri & Sat) The owners' craving for *al dente* pasta inspired this stylish bistro in Hong Kong Garden. The pasta is great, but the burger with blue cheese, rocket and tomato (¥55) hits the spot. Decent wines from ¥30 per glass.

## **Drinking & Entertainment**

Qingdao wouldn't be Qingdao without Tsingtao, the beer that bears its name. The first stop for any committed tipplers should probably be the many drinking holes along **Beer Street** [Offline map](#) (; Pijiu Jie) where you can sample the delicious dark, unfiltered *yuanjiang* (), which is hard to find elsewhere. The youth hostel bars are pleasant, particularly **Mamahuhu Lounge** [Offline map](#) on the top of YHA Old Observatory and **Old Church Lounge** [Offline map](#) in Kaiyue Hostelling International. Check out *Red Star* (online or magazine racks in hostels and foreign restaurants) for the latest.

### **Club New York** BAR

(*Niuyue Ba*; 2nd fl, 41 Xianggang Zhonglu; beer from ¥35; 🕒 7pm-2am; 📍 208, 216) Despite the overpriced drinks, this expat favourite overflows with revellers and sports fans when there's a match on.

There's a cover band most nights (9pm to 1am) and an incongruously classy sushi bar (5pm to 9pm, meals from ¥250) adjoining. Above the lobby of the Overseas Chinese International Hotel in Dongbu.

### **Spark Cafe and Brewery** *BAR \$\$*

( 📞 8578 2296; *Qingdao Beer Bldg, 35 Donghai Xilu Rd; 35* , 📍 ) Grab a seat on a long wooden bench in this crowded watering hole on the east edge of the Municipal Government square. There's all manner of drinks – beer (including the house 'dark' and 'light' microbrews at ¥35 a pint), cocktails, coffee, tea and milkshakes. For more than pizza and sausage platters (¥65 to ¥88), move next door to the sister restaurant.

## **Entertainment**

### **Broadway Cinemas** *CINEMA*

( *Bailaohui Yingcheng; 88 Aomen Lu; 88 tickets from ¥40* ) Domestic and Hollywood blockbusters on the 3rd floor of Marina City shopping mall, in the CBD. Half-price Tuesdays and Thursdays.

### **Qingdao Grand Theatre** *THEATRE*

( 📞 8066 5555; [www.qingdaograndtheatre.com](http://www.qingdaograndtheatre.com); *5 Yunling Lu; 5* 📍 230, 321 ) North of Shilaoren in the Lao Shan district, the city's grand performing arts centre puts world-class theatre, music, dance, comedy and kiddie acts on its three stages. Check the website or [www.qingdaonese.com](http://www.qingdaonese.com) for dates.

## **Shopping**

Qingdao's main shopping drags are in Dongbu, around Xianggang Zhonglu, but there are plenty of places to spend.

### **Book City** *BOOKS*

( *Shu Cheng; 67 Xianggang Zhonglu at Yan'erdao Lu; ☎ 9am-7pm* ) Vast aisles of Chinese media and some in English.

### **Carrefour** HYPERMART

( *Jialefu*; ☺ 8.30am-10pm) Massive general store at Nanjing Lu and Xianggang Zhonglu.

### **Culture Street** ANTIQUES

( *Wenhua Lu*; *Changle Lu* btwn *Lijin Lu* & *Huayang Lu*; ☺ 8am-4pm) 'Antiques' and handicrafts sold in front of a tidy row of concession architecture north of Old Town.

### **Jimolu Market** MALL

Offline map

( *Jimolu Xiaoshangpin Shichang*; *45 Liaocheng Lu*; ☺ 9am-5.30pm) A four-storey bargain bonanza north of Old Town. Pearls, purses, clothing, shoes, backpacks, jade, wigs for the haggling.

### **Jusco** SUPERMARKET

( *Jiashike*; *Xianggang Zhonglu*; ☺ 9am-11pm) Food court and supermarket at Fuzhou Nanlu and Xianggang Zhonglu.

### **Marina City** MALL

( 📍 6606 1177; *88 Aomen Rd*; ☺ 10am-10pm) International brands plus an ice rink.

### **Parkson** MALL

Offline map

( *44 Zhongshan Lu*; ☺ 9.30am-9pm) Multi-level shopping and a supermarket.

## **i** Information

### Internet Access

**Internet cafes** () abound in the city and often are restricted to Chinese nationals or always require a passport. Hostels have terminals for use.

**Haodu Wangba** ( 2 Dagu Lu; per hr ¥2; ☺ 24hr) Near the train station.

**Yijieyu Wangba** ( 120 Zhangzhou Lu; per hr ¥2; ☺ 24hr) In Hong Kong Garden, on the north end of the plaza.

### Medical Services

**Qingdao Municipal Hospital, International Clinic** ( Qingdaoshi Shili Yiyuan, Guoji Menzhen; 📞 International clinic 8593 7690, ext 2266; emergency 8278 9120; 5 Donghai Zhonglu; ☺ 8am-noon & 1.30-5.30pm Mon-Sat)

### Money

ATMs are easy to find in Qingdao.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 66 & 68 Zhongshan Lu; ☺ 8.30am-5pm Mon-Fri, 9.30am-4pm Sat & Sun) On the corner of Feicheng Lu in Old Town. Also 59 Xianggang Zhonglu; ☺ 8.30am to 5pm; i n the tower at the intersection of Fuzhou Nanlu in the CBD. Branches have currency exchange and 24-hour ATMs.

### Post

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 23-1 Taidong Yilu; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) On the west edge of Taidong, north of Old Town. Also 119 Nanjing Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri, 9am-4.30pm Sat & Sun; b y the ICBC tower in the CBD.

### Public Security Bureau

(PSB; Gong'anju; 272 Ningxia Lu; ☺ 9am-noon & 1.30-5pm Mon-Fri) Take bus 301 from the train station to the terracotta-coloured building (stop 14). *Visa inquiries* (); 📞 6657 3250, ext 2860. The general police hotline is 📞 6657 0000.

### Tourist Information

**Qingdao Shi'nan tourist information centre** ( Qingdao Shi'nan Luyou Xinxi Zixun Zhongxin; 📞 8287 2787; 56 Jiangning Lu) Free maps and travel info in Firewood Court.

### Travel Agencies

**China International Travel Service (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe;** 📞 8389 5022, booking hotline 400 600 8888; 33 Lianyungang Lu; B 5 ( 33 ); 🕒 8.30am-5pm Mon-Fri, 9am-4pm Sat & Sun) On 5th flr, Wanda Plaza, Bldg B in CBD.

### Websites

**Qingdaonese** ([www.qingdaonese.com](http://www.qingdaonese.com)) Listings and active forums.

**Red Star** ([www.myredstar.com](http://www.myredstar.com)) Online entertainment guide and monthly magazine – pick it up in hostels, bars, foreign restaurants or at their offices at 100 Nanjing Lu, Creative 100 building in the CBD.

**That's Qingdao** ([www.thatsqingdao.com](http://www.thatsqingdao.com)) Listings and news clips.

## BORDER CROSSING: JAPAN & SOUTH KOREA

International boats depart from Qingdao's **passenger ferry terminal** ( *Qingdaogang keyunzhan*; 📞 8282 5001; 6 Xinjiang Lu). **Orient Ferry** (📞 389 7646; [www.orientferry.co.jp](http://www.orientferry.co.jp); *Haitian Hotel, 48 Xianggang Xilu*) sells tickets for the twice-weekly boats to Shimonoeki, Japan (¥1100, 26 hours, 3.30pm Mon and Thu). **Weidong Ferry Company** (📞 8280 3574; [www.weidong.com](http://www.weidong.com); 4 Xinjiang Lu) operates boats regularly departing for South Korea, via Incheon (from ¥750, 17 hours, 5pm Mon, Wed and Fri) and Gunsan (¥920, 16 hours, 2.30pm Mon, Wed and Sat). Boats sail from Yantai and Weihai for Incheon.

## **i** Getting There & Away

A handy ticket office sells air, train and boat tickets in the ground floor of the **Tianqiao Hotel** ( *Qingdao Xin Tianqiao Bingguan Shoupiaochu*; 📞 train 8612 0111, air & boat 8612 0222; 47 Feicheng Lu; 🕒 7.30am-9pm), near the train station.

### Air

Qingdao's **Liuting International Airport** (📞 8471 5139, booking & flight status hotline 96567; [www.qdairport.com](http://www.qdairport.com)) is 30km north of the city. There are flights to most large cities in China, including daily services to Beijing (¥710, 1¼ hours), Shanghai (¥740, 1¼ hours) and

Hong Kong (¥1220, three hours). International flights include daily flights to Seoul (¥570), Tokyo (¥1660) and four weekly flights to Osaka (¥1660).

Book tickets directly through the airport's hotline or airline offices (many are on Xianggang Zhonglu). These ticket offices book for no additional fee:

**Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; *Zhongguo Minhang*) Domestic (☎ 8289 5577; 29 *Zhongshan Lu*; 🕒 8am-5pm); Domestic & International (☎ 8578 2381, 8577 5555; 30 *Xianggang Lu*; 🕒 8am-5pm) Book domestic tickets in person to save yourself grief.

**Dongsheng Air Ticket Office** [Offline map](#) ( *Dongsheng Hangkong Shoupiao Chu*; ☎ 8069 0169; 140 *Jiaozhou Lu*; 🕒 8am-6pm) Below the KFC. Book by phone 24 hours.

## Boat

Boats regularly depart for Dalian across the bay from Yantai (¥168 to ¥300, six to eight hours) or Weihai (¥180 to ¥320, eight to 10 hours); tickets from CITS or Dongsheng Air Ticket Office.

## Bus

Among Qingdao's many bus stations, the **long-distance bus station** ( *changtu qichezhan*; ☎ 400 691 6916; 2 *Wenzhou Lu*) in the Sifang () district, north of most tourist sights, best serves most travellers. A limited number of buses also depart for provincial destinations including Yantai (¥81, four hours, every 20 to 30 minutes, 6am to 5.30pm) directly across from the train station.

Daily buses from the long-distance bus station:

**Beijing** ¥195 to ¥230, nine hours, seven daily

**Hangzhou** ¥310, 12 hours, four daily (10.45am, 11.30am, 6pm and 6.30pm)

**Hefei** ¥219, 10 hours, seven daily

**Ji'nan** ¥84 to ¥113, 4½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Qufu** ¥127, six hours, four daily

**Shanghai** ¥200 to ¥286, 11 hours, six daily

**Tai'an** ¥116 to ¥125, six hours, six daily



**Weihai** ¥94, 3½ hours, hourly

**Yantai** ¥67, four hours, every 30 minutes

## Train

All trains from Qingdao pass through Ji'nan except the direct Qingdao to Yantai and Weihai trains. Buy tickets at the **train station** (📍 9510 5175; 2 *Tai'an Lu*), which has a hectic 24-hour ticket office on the east side (bring your passport). Booking offices around town collect a service charge, typically ¥5. Tickets sell out quickly so buy early.

Regular trains (seat/hard sleeper):

**Beijing** ¥113/209, 13½ hours, one daily (12.42pm)

**Ji'nan** seat ¥28 to ¥65, hard sleeper ¥67 to ¥109, 4½ to six hours, regularly

**Qufu** ¥32/74, eight hours, one daily (7.28am) **Tai'shan** ¥70/131, five to seven hours, 11 daily

**Xi'an** ¥191/345, 21 to 24 hours, three daily (9.45am, 11.12am and 1.42pm)

**Yantai** ¥22/71, four hours, one daily (6.15am)

**Zhengzhou** seat ¥123 to ¥140, hard sleeper ¥249 to ¥257, 13½ to 16 hours, six daily

Except where noted, express D (hard/soft seat only) trains (G trains also available) regularly depart for:

**Beijing** ¥253/303, five to 5½ hours, six daily

**Ji'nan** ¥121/146, 2½ to three hours, hourly

**Qufu** ¥239/407, three hours, one daily (1.55pm)

**Shanghai** G train ¥596/1014, 6½ hours, four daily (6.55am, 9.26am, 1.55pm and 4.35pm)

**Tai'an** ¥207/353, three hours, one daily (6.55am)

## Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Bright blue **airport shuttles** ( *Jichang Bashi*; 📍 8286 0977; ¥20) follow three routes through town. Shuttles leave hourly from the **Green**

**Tree Inn** (77 Zhongshan Lu) in Old Town from 5.40am to 7.40pm, and every half-hour from **Haitian Hotel** (48 Xianggang Xilu) near No 3 Bathing Beach from 6am to 8pm and the CBD's **Century Mandarin Hotel** (10 Haijiang Lu) from 6.10am to 5.45pm. A taxi to/from Shinan district is ¥80 to ¥100.

### Public Transport

From the train station, buses 26 and 501 head east past Zhongshan Park and continue north on Nanjing Lu and east along Xianggang Lu, respectively. From the long-distance bus station, buses 221 and 366 go to Old Town and Dongbu, respectively. Bus 5 connects the long-distance bus and train stations. Most city buses cost ¥1 to ¥2, but onboard conductors issue tickets for further destinations. Plan your trip with [www.qdjyjt.com](http://www.qdjyjt.com), in Chinese.

Outside the train station, red double-decker **sightseeing buses** (*unlimited ¥30, per stop ¥10; hourly*) head to all the biggies: bus 1 passes sights along the water going east to Lao Shan from 9am to 3pm, last return at 5pm. Bus 3 swings by Firewood Court, Beer Street, Culture Street and Taidong from 7pm onward. Bus 2 (¥15) goes to Huangdao district.

The highly anticipated underground metro, scheduled to open in late 2014, will hopefully ease Qingdao's gridlock.

### Taxi

Flag fall is ¥9 or ¥12 for the first 6km and then ¥2.10 (slightly more at night) per kilometre thereafter, plus a ¥1 fuel surcharge. If your driver takes detours, it's because many city streets are restricted from 7am to 10pm.

---

## Lao Shan

A short ride from Qingdao, an arresting jumble of sun-bleached granite and hidden freshwater springs rises over the sea. It's easy to understand why Lao Shan has attracted spiritual seekers throughout the centuries.

In his quest for immortality, Emperor Qin Shi Huang ascended these

slopes (with the help of a litter party of course), and the Buddhist pilgrim Faxian landed here upon returning from India in the 5th century with the first set of Buddhist scriptures. Lao Shan has its share of religious sites, but it is most steeped in Taoist tradition. Adepts of the Quanzhen sect, founded near Yantai in the 12th century, cultivated themselves in hermitages scattered all over the mountain.

Paths wind past ancient temples (and ruins), bubbling springs trickling into azure pools, and inscriptions left by Chinese poets and German alpinists. For the most part, routes are paved but there are plenty of opportunities to off-road as well (look for red flags tied to branches marking trails).

The loop through **Beijiushui Scenic Area** (*admission peak ¥95, off-peak ¥70*) on the north end of the park is mostly flat and takes a couple of hours. The path winds beside and across limpid waters before reaching **Chaoyin Waterfall** (), which in the wet season roars like the ocean tide. (In drier months, the water falls in pieces, hence its ancient name, Fish Scales Waterfall.)

To the south, the picturesque hike to **Jufeng** (*admission peak ¥95, off-peak ¥65*), the highest point at 1133m above sea level, can start with a **cable car** (*suo dao; one way/return ¥40/80*) partway up the mountain. From there, it takes another four hours to hike up steps past temples and a spring to the stone terrace at the peak for awe-inspiring views of mountains, sky and sea.

On the east side, the **Yangkou Scenic Area** (*admission Apr-Oct ¥130, Nov-Mar ¥100, includes admission to Taiqing Palace*) offers an opportunity to ascend by foot or **cable car** (*one way ¥60*) past wind- and water-carved granite. There's a 30m scramble in total darkness up a crevice to the top of **Looking for Heaven Cave** () and then upward still for views of the sea. The hike takes about three hours.

Of Lao Shan's temples, **Taiqing Palace** (*Taiqing Gong; admission ¥20 or included with Yangkou ticket; ☺ closes 5.30pm*) is the oldest and grandest, established by the first Song emperor around AD 960 to perform Taoist rites to protect the souls of the dead. Devotees in blue and white still live here, and many credit their good health to drinking from the **Spring of the Immortals** (), which feeds into the grounds. The massive, hoary ginkgoes, cedars and cypress trees apparently

also benefit.

If you want to extend your stay, pick-your-own seafood restaurants and a range of guesthouses line the main road hugging the coast. The Yangkou branch of the **Qingdao Old Observatory Youth Hostel** ( 📍 0532 8282 2626; *dm* ¥50, *r with private bath* ¥168-268) overlooks a picturesque fishing village and organises off-trail day trips into the park. To the south in Liuqinghe, **Baoyudao Hotel** ( 📍 8882 0333; *r* ¥398) has a handful of simple rooms above an excellent seafood restaurant.

From Qingdao, catch red sightseeing bus 2 (¥10) by the train station or bus 304 (¥7, one hour, from 6.30am) from the Zhan Qiao stop by No 6 Bathing Beach. The ride ends at the Dahedong Tourist Service Center on the park's south end, where you can pay admission and catch a park bus (included with ticket). Private cars aren't allowed within park boundaries. Tour buses to Lao Shan (around ¥40 return, excluding entrance fees) ply Qingdao's streets from 6am onwards but stop at 'sights' on the way to the mountain and back.

---

## Yantai

📍 0535 / POP 878,981

The sleepy portside town of Yantai somehow has one of the fastest-developing economies in China – no small feat in a country of exponential growth. It managed to court foreign investment in its high-tech industry while building itself into a popular beach resort. A new tunnel connects the old district of Zhifu with the developing Laishan district to the southeast. With Penglai Pavilion not far away, the town makes for a relaxing two-day sojourn.

WORTH A TRIP

### PENGLAI PAVILION

About 75km northwest of Yantai perched on a bluff overlooking the waves, the 1000-year-old **Penglai Pavilion** ( *Penglai Ge*; admission ¥140; 🕒 7am-5.30pm summer, to 5pm

winter) is closely entwined with Chinese mythology and the Taoist legend of the *Eight Immortals Crossing the Sea*.

The route up to the pavilion passes the grounds of an ancient naval base and a series of temples. The pavilion itself is unassuming as its restored exterior is rather similar to surrounding structures. Inside is a collection of prized inscriptions left by famous visitors since the Song dynasty, and a beautiful modern rendering of the *Eight Immortals*, by Zhou Jinyun. There are many versions of the story, but in this one the immortals, who came from different walks of life, shared drinks at the pavilion before crossing the Bo Sea using unique superpowers.

After the pavilion, zip across the bay by **cable car** (¥30/50 return, 8am to 5.10pm) for cliffside walks overlooking the Bo and Yellow Seas. There are also museums (open 7.30am to 5.30pm) dedicated to ancient shipbuilding, regional relics and Qi Jiguang, a Ming-dynasty general who battled pirates.

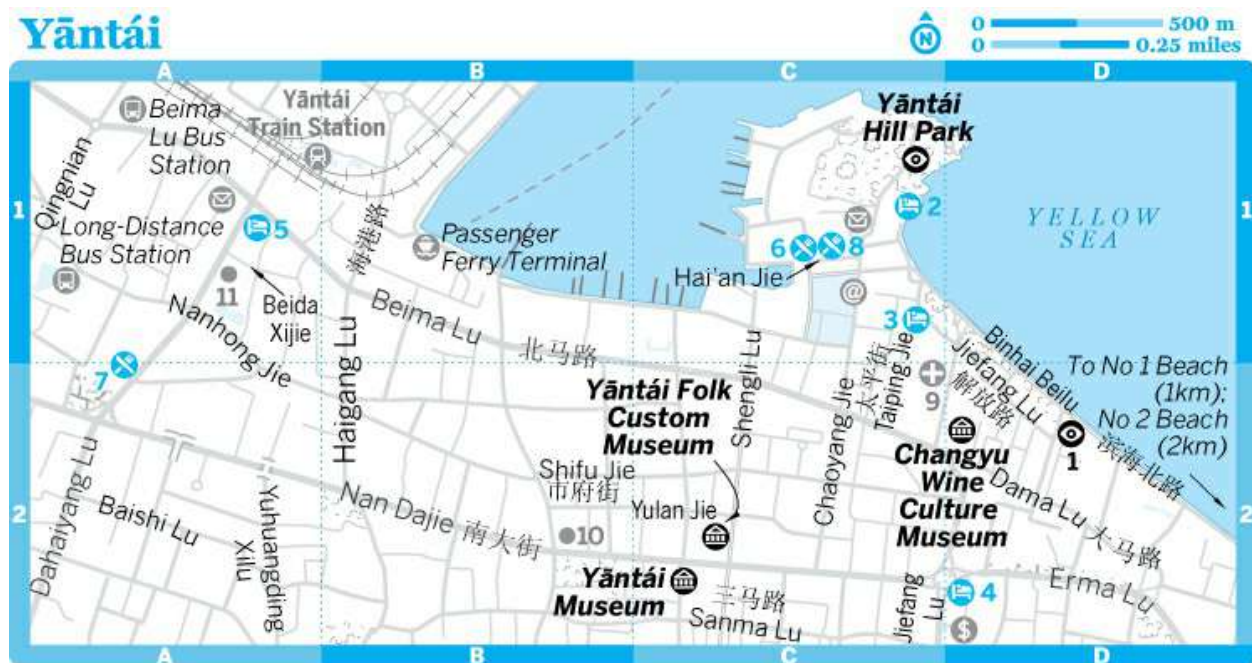
If you arrive after a heavy rain, keep an eye on the marine layer where mirages appear every few years. Long ago, this earned Penglai a reputation as a gateway to immortal lands and compelled Emperor Qin Shi Huang to send ships in search of islands of immortality further east.

Penglai is an easy day trip by bus from Yantai (¥24, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes, 5.30am to 6pm), with the last returning at 7.45pm. The bus station (166 Zhonglou Beilu) is a 15-minute walk to the park. Taxi drivers will go for ¥7 but sometimes stop elsewhere first.

## History

Starting life as a defence outpost and fishing village, Yantai's name literally means 'Smoke Terrace'; wolf-dung fires were lit on the headlands during the Ming dynasty to warn villagers of Japanese marauders. Yantai was thrust under the international spotlight in the late 19th century when the Qing government, reeling from defeat in the Opium War, surrendered it to the British. The British established a treaty port here and named it Chefoo (Zhifu). The eight national alliance of Austria-Hungary, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, Russia, the UK and the USA set up trading establishments and the town became a resort area.

# Yāntái



## Yantai

### 📍 Top Sights

[Changyu Wine Culture Museum](#) D2

[Yantai Folk Custom Museum](#) C2

[Yantai Hill Park](#) C1

[Yantai Museum](#) C2

### 📍 Sights

1 [Amber Coastal City Walk](#) D2

### 🏠 Sleeping

2 [Golden Gulf Hotel](#) C1

3 [Karen Bayview Hotel](#) C1

4 [Shandong Machinery Hotel](#) D2

5 [Waitinn](#) A1

### 🍴 Eating

6 [Brazil Barbecue](#) C1

7 [Parkson](#) A2

8 [Shide Wu](#) C1

## Information

9 [Yantaishan Hospital](#) C2

## Transport

China Travel Service ([see 1](#))

10 [Shandong Airlines](#) B2

11 [Yantai International Airport Group Air Travel Agency](#) A1

## Sights

### **Yantai Hill Park** PARK

Offline map

(*Yantaishan Gongyuan*; admission ¥30; 🕒 7am-6pm) This quaint park of stone paths, leafy gardens and ocean vistas is also a museum of Western treaty port architecture. The former **American Consulate Building** retains some original interior features and contains an exhibit on Yantai's port days. Nearby, the former **Yantai Union Church** dates from 1875, and now serves as the office for a wedding-planning company. The former **British Consulate** overlooks the bay with its **Annexe** surrounded by an overgrown English garden. At the top of the hill is the Ming-dynasty **Dragon King Temple**, which in 1860 was co-opted as military headquarters for French troops. Wolf-dung fires burned continuously along the smoke terrace above, beginning in the 14th-century reign of Emperor Hongwu. Behind the temple, the **lighthouse** (admission ¥5) houses a maritime museum in progress at the time of writing. In the west of the park, the 1930s-built **Japanese Consulate** is an austere brick structure with a 'torture inquisition room'.

**FREE**

### **Yantai Folk Custom Museum** MUSEUM

Offline map

( *Yantai Minsu Bowuguan; 2 Yulan Jie; ☺ 8.30-11.30am & 1.30-4.30pm*) About 200m east of the Yantai Museum stands this museum housed in a guild hall constructed between 1884 and 1906 by arrivals from Fujian. In the centre of the courtyard is a spectacularly intricate, decorated gate. Supported by 22 pillars, the portal is adorned with hundreds of carved and painted figures, flowers, beasts, phoenixes and animals depicting folk legends, including *The Eight Immortals Crossing the Sea*. In the **Hall of Heavenly Goddess**, Tianhou the patron of seafarers is surrounded by a set of tin instruments in the shapes of gourds and tiny mice, crawling dragons and dragon heads.

**FREE** **Yantai Museum** MUSEUM

Offline map

( *Yantai Shi Bowuguan; 📞 623 2976; 61 Nan Dajie; ☺ 9am-4pm, closed Mon*) The sparkling new museum traces the historical development of the Jiaodong peninsula, where Yantai currently stands, from the prehistoric age and successive kingdoms to the present. There's a display on the Shell Mound culture (a glimpse at a Neolithic civilisation's trash) and a wonderful collection of rare porcelain. English descriptions.

## MAKING COPIES

For millennia, everything from imperial decrees to poetry, religious scriptures and maps were preserved by carving them into stone. This was done either as an inscription (yin-style) or a relief (yang-style). Copies could then be made by applying ink to the stone and pressing rice paper onto it, or by tamping a damp sheet of paper into the crevices and allowing it to dry, before patting ink onto the paper's surface. Over time, even stone would wear and the clearest, best-made prints became works of art themselves. Unfortunately, this prompted unscrupulous collectors to damage carvings to ensure they had the very best copy. These are the gouges and scratches you see in many of the most prized tablets and stelae.

**Changyu Wine Culture Museum** MUSEUM



Offline map

( *Zhangyu Jiuwenhua Bowuguan*; 56 Dama Lu; admission ¥50; ☺ 8am-5.30pm) The unexpected Changyu Wine Culture Museum introduces the history of China's oldest and largest Western-style winery, which produces grape wines as well as brandy and a Chinese 'health liquor'. Cheong Fatt-Tze, dubbed 'China's Rockefeller' by the *New York Times*, founded the winery in 1894, supposedly after overhearing that the Yantai climate might grow good grapes at a party at the French Consulate. Tastings of the (mostly so-so) wines are in the old wine cellar and included in admission.

## Beaches *BEACHES*

Yantai has two main beaches, **No 1 Beach** ( *Diyi Haishui Yuchang*), a long stretch of soft sand in a calm bay, is much nicer than **No 2 Beach** ( *Di'er Haishui Yuchang*), which is less crowded but more polluted. Bus 17 passes both.

## Amber Coastal City Walk *HISTORIC AREA*

Offline map

( *Guang Ren Buxingjie*) East of the Changyu Wine Culture Museum is an attractive (but rather soulless) cluster of restored concession buildings, housing a variety of restaurants, clubs and bars.

## Sleeping

Many hotels are clustered around the train and bus stations where it's noisy and dull. It's much more pleasant staying around the charming northern end of Chaoyang Jie.

## Golden Gulf Hotel *HOTEL \$\$\$*

Offline map

( *Jinhaiwan Jiudian*; 📞 663 6999; fax 663 2699; 34 Haian Lu; 34 s/d incl breakfast ¥920-1200; 🌐📧) The city's first five-star has a superb sea and parkside location and bright, well-maintained rooms. Barbecue on the seaside patio in the evenings.

## Karen Bayview Hotel HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

( *Kailin Haijing Jiudian*; 📍 622 6600; 30 Dongtaiping Jie; 30 s/d ¥160/260; 🌐📞) Jutting out at a striking angle to allow a few rooms a view of the bay, this hotel also has its share of drab, windowless rooms. Sea-view rooms are the same price but come with clean carpets, new furniture and a better floorplan.

## Shandong Machinery Hotel HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

(, *Shandong Jixie Binguan*; 📍 621 6469; 162 Jiefang Lu; s/d ¥320-480, ste ¥580; 🌐📞) With a Korean, Japanese and Cantonese restaurant, and an Asiana Airlines office on the premises, staff here know how to cater to non-Mandarin-speaking guests. The Asian-decor rooms have nicer details (wooden soaking tubs) than the Western-style ones, but all are comfy. Discounts up to 70% make this a bargain.

## Waitinn HOTEL \$

Offline map

( *Weite Fengshang Jiudian*; 📍 212 0909; 73 Beima Lu; tw & d ¥88-228, tr ¥258; 🌐📞) Opposite the train station, this refurbished hotel is a good place to, as it were, wait in. Rooms are large, comfortable and equipped with flat-screen TVs. Add breakfast for ¥8 and ask for a discount, up to 20%.

## Eating & Drinking

South of Yantai Hill Park, the pedestrian streets Chaoyang Jie and Hai'an Jie have a range of bars, cafes and even an Irish pub, though outside of summer some places are closed. The area surrounding the train station also has plenty of options, including late night joints dishing up noodle soups ( ) for ¥15. There's a small strip of street food stalls on the east side of the **Parkson** (📍 6293322; 166 Nan Dajie, near Qingnian Lu, 🕒 9am-8pm) in the heart of the shopping district. If you crave tablecloths, the Korean, Latin and Chinese restaurants in

the **Crowne Plaza** (📍 689 9999; *Gangcheng Donglu*) may be worth the 50-minute ride to Laishan district. Take bus 50 (¥2) or a taxi (¥50) from the town centre.

## **Shide Wu** JAPANESE \$\$

Offline map

(*Shide Wu*; 📍 621 6676; 23 *Hai'an Jie*; meals ¥120; 🕒 lunch & dinner 11am-1pm & 5-9.30pm) Chef Hao lived in Japan for a decade before opening up this place with his wife. Now it's a popular spot for sashimi (from ¥38), fried pork cutlets (¥30), and udon and ramen (¥25 to ¥36). The soothing wood decor balances out the Japanese TV turned up full blast.

## **Brazil Barbecue** BARBECUE \$\$

Offline map

(*Baxi Kaorou Zhuti Canting*; 📍 661 0185; 23 *Hai'an Jie*; buffet ¥58; 🕒 11.30am-2pm & 5.30am-9pm) The Chinese take on Brazilian *churrascaria* (barbecue) includes pork seasoned with garlic, sliced beef tongue and chicken giblets. The accompanying all-you-can-eat buffet has everything from French fries to scallops in the shell. Staff offering grilled meats come round once, so don't feel shy to call out for more.

## **i** Information

There are numerous **internet cafes** (*wangba*) along Chaoyang Jie, south of Ya'tai Hill Park, and across from the train station on Beima Lu (from ¥2 per hour). Many are restricted to Chinese nationals or always require a passport.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*; 166 *Jiefang Lu*) ATM accepts all cards. Full-service branch at Beima Lu and Dahaiyang Lu opens from 8.30am to 4.20pm.

**China International Travel Service** (*CITS*; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; 📍 626123; 180 *Jiefang Lu*; 🕒 9-11.30am & 2-5.30pm) Guided Chinese day tours to Weihai (from ¥170) and Penglai (from

¥220). Ticket bookings including the boat (¥30 per ticket).

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng; Beima Lu & Dahaiyang Lu, across from the train station*) Another branch is at 28 Hai'an Jie.

**China Travel Service** ( 📍 668 8777; 26 Guangren Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) In Amber Coastal City Walk. Books tours and tickets including boat.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju;** 📍 629 7050; 78 Shifu Jie; 🕒 8-11.30am & 2-5.30pm Mon-Sat) On the corner of Chaoyang Jie.

**Entry-exit visas** ( 📍 629 7050; 7 Chang'an Jie; 7 🕒 8.30-11.30am & 2-5.30pm Mon-Sat) are available in Laishan district.

**Yantaishan Hospital** [Offline map](#) ( *Yantaishan Yiyuan;* 📍 660 2001; 91 Jiefang Lu)

## BORDER CROSSING: SOUTH KOREA

International boats depart from Yantai's **passenger ferry terminal** ( *Yantaigang keyunzhan;* 📍 624 2715; 155 Beima Lu) for Incheon (from ¥960, 16 hours, 5pm Mon, Wed and Fri) in South Korea. **Weidong Ferry Company** ([www.weidong.com](http://www.weidong.com)) Incheon ( 📍 8232 777 0490; *International Passenger Terminal, 71-2 Hang-dong*); Seoul ( 📍 822 3271 6710; *10th fl, 1005 Sungji Bldg, 585 Dohwa-dong, Mapo-gu*) also operates boats to Incheon (deluxe/1st/2nd/economy ¥1370/1090/890/750, 15 hours, 5pm Tue, Thur and Sun). From Weihai, buy at the **ticket office** ( 📍 522 6173; *48 Haibin Beilu*) south of the passenger ferry terminal (; Weihaiyang keyunmatou). Boats also sail from Qingdao for Incheon and Gunsan.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

Yantai **Laishan International Airport** ( 📍 624 1330) is 20km south of town. Book tickets near the train station at **Yantai International Airport Group Air Travel Agency** [Offline map](#) ( *Yantai Guoji Luxingshe Youxiangongsi;* 📍 625 3777; 6 Dahaiyang Lu; 🕒 8am-5.30pm); the Civil Aviation Hotel **ticket centre** ( *Yantai Guoji Jichang Shoupiao Zhongxin;* 📍 658 3366; 78 Dahaiyang Lu; 78 ); or **Shandong Airlines** [Offline map](#) ( *Shandong Hangkong;* 📍 662 2737; 236 Nan Dajie, Bihai

*Dasha*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) in the Bihai Hotel.

There are regular flights to Beijing (¥690, one hour), Shanghai (¥790, 1½ hours), Guangzhou (¥1930, three hours), Seoul (¥1116, one hour) and Osaka (¥2388, 1½ hours).

## Boat

Purchase tickets for fast boats to Dalian (seat ¥160, bed ¥200 to ¥800, six to seven hours, 9am, 10am, 12.30pm, 3.30pm, 8.30pm and 10pm) at the **Yantai Harbour passenger transit terminal** (*Yantaigang Keyunzhan*; ☎ 650 6666; [www.bohaiferry.com](http://www.bohaiferry.com); 155 *Beima Lu*) or from numerous ticket offices east of the train station.

## Bus

Minibuses to Penglai (¥24, 1½ hours, 5.15am to 6.30pm) depart every 20 minutes from **Beima Lu bus station** (*Beimalu qiche zhan*; ☎ 665 8714; *cnr Beima Lu & Qingnian Lu*).

From the **long-distance main bus station** (*changtu zong qiche zhan*; ☎ 666 6111; *cnr Xi Dajie & Qingnian Lu*;) there are buses to numerous destinations:

**Beijing** ¥246, 13 hours, one daily (3pm)

**Ji'nan** ¥175, 5½ hours, hourly

**Qingdao** ¥85, four hours, every 30 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥320, 12 hours, one daily (5pm), every other day (8.15pm)

**Tianjin** ¥184, 11 hours, one daily (7.30pm), every other day (10am)

**Weihai** ¥25 to ¥31, one hour, hourly

## Train

Trains from **Yantai Train Station** (*huochezhan*; *Beima Lu*) :

**Beijing** hard seat/soft sleeper ¥130/365, 13½ hours, one daily (11.25pm)

**Ji'nan** hard seat/soft sleeper ¥76/215, 7½ hours, eight daily

**Qingdao** hard/soft seat ¥22/31, 4½ hours, one daily (2.58pm)

**Shanghai** hard seat/soft sleeper ¥182/511, 20½ hours, one daily (9.40am)

**Xi'an** hard seat/soft sleeper ¥200/554, 24 hours, one daily (3.30pm)

## **i** Getting Around

**Airport shuttles** ( ☎ 1510 659 0123, 666 6111; ¥10) depart from the long-distance main bus station from 6am to 7.30pm, and the Civil Aviation Hotel at 78 Dahaiyang Lu and Xinshi Nanlu from 6.15am to 8pm. Bus 17 connects the city's two beaches. Buses 10 and 50 connect Zhifu and Laishan district's main streets.

Taxi flag fall is ¥7 or ¥8 for the first 6km and ¥2.25 (slightly more at night) per kilometre thereafter.



# Shanghai

 021 / POP 23 MILLION

## Includes »

[Sights](#)

[Courses](#)

[Tours](#)

[Festivals & Events](#)

[Sleeping](#)

[Eating](#)

[Drinking](#)

[Entertainment](#)

[Shopping](#)

[Getting There & Away](#)

[Around Shanghai](#)

---

## Why Go?

You can't see the Great Wall from space, but you'd have a job missing

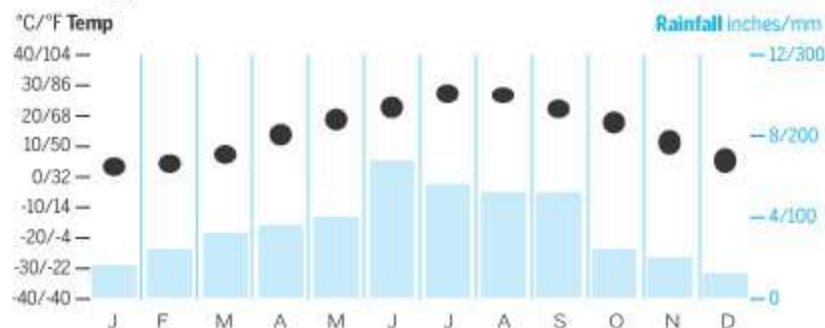
Shanghai (. One of the country's largest and most vibrant cities, Shanghai somehow typifies modern China while being unlike anywhere else in the land. Shanghai *is* real China, but – rather like Hong Kong or Macau – just not the China you had in mind.

This is a city of action, not ideas. You won't spot many Buddhist monks contemplating the dharma, oddball bohemians or wild-haired poets handing out flyers, but skyscrapers will form before your eyes. Shanghai is best seen as an epilogue to your China experience: submit to its debutante charms after you've had your fill of dusty imperial palaces and bumpy 10-hour bus rides. From nonstop shopping to skyscraper-hopping to bullet-fast Maglev trains and glamorous cocktails – this is Shanghai.

---

## When to Go

### Shànghǎi



**Feb** Visit Yuyuan Gardens for the lantern festival, two weeks after Chinese New Year.

**Apr & May** March is chilly and 1 May is chaos, but otherwise spring is ideal.

**Oct** The optimal season: neither too hot nor too rainy.

---

## Best Places to Eat

» Huanghe Rd food street ([Click here](#))

» Yin ([Click here](#))

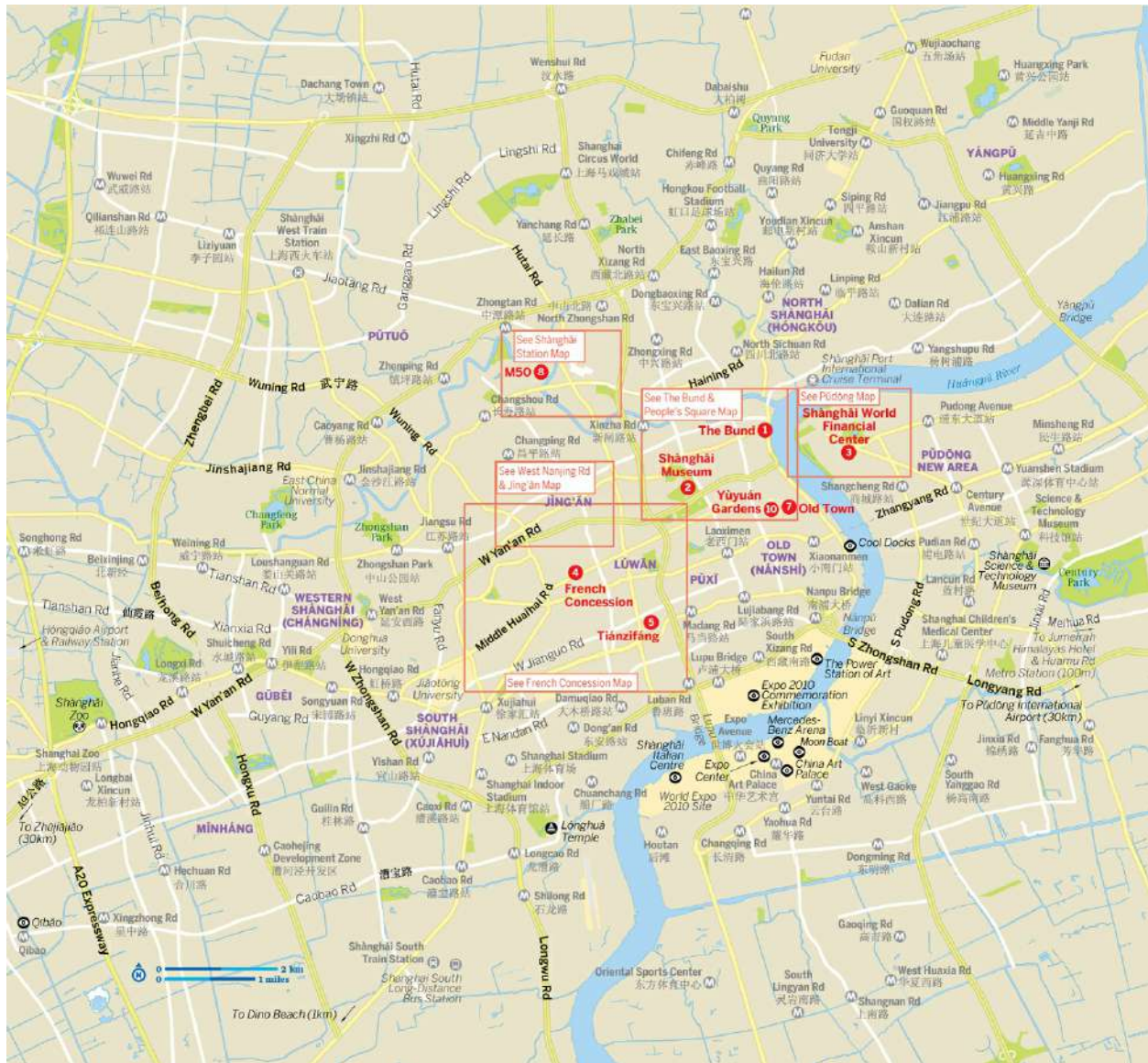


- » Din Tai Fung ([Click here](#))
- » Lost Heaven ([Click here](#))
- » Fu 1039 ([Click here](#))

---

## **Best Places to Stay**

- » Fairmont Peace Hotel ([Click here](#))
- » Urbn ([Click here](#))
- » Ritz-Carlton Shanghai Pudong ([Click here](#))
- » Magnolia Bed & Breakfast ([Click here](#))
- » Le Tour Traveler's Rest Youth Hostel ([Click here](#))



## Shanghai Highlights

- 1 Stroll down the **Bund** promenade ([Click here](#)) or raise a glass to the Pudong lights
- 2 Contemplate the masterpieces of traditional Chinese art in the **Shanghai Museum** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Admire the curvature of the earth from atop the **Shanghai World Financial Center** ([Click here](#))

- 4 Treat your taste buds: from fusion cuisine to Sichuanese peppercorns, **French Concession restaurants** ([Click here](#)) have you covered
- 5 Delve into the old alleyways and quirky boutiques at **Tianzifang** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Put on your best shoes and step out into the **Shanghai night** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Bargain hunt for faux antiques and tailormade clothes in the **Old Town** ([Click here](#))
- 8 Test your aesthetic boundaries with the latest in Chinese art at **M50** ([Click here](#))
- 9 Escape the big city for the canal-town vistas of **Zhujiajiao** ([Click here](#))
  - a Find yourself a quiet pocket and sit down within the **Yuyuan Gardens** ([Click here](#))

## History

As the gateway to the Yangzi River (Chang Jiang), Shanghai (the name means 'by the sea') has long been an ideal trading port. However, although it supported as many as 50,000 residents by the late 17th century, it wasn't until after the British opened their concession here in 1842 that modern Shanghai really came into being.

The British presence in Shanghai was soon followed by the French and Americans, and by 1853 Shanghai had overtaken all other Chinese ports. Built on the trade of opium, silk and tea, the city also lured the world's great houses of finance, which erected grand palaces of plenty. Shanghai also became a byword for exploitation and vice; its countless opium dens, gambling joints and brothels managed by gangs were at the heart of Shanghai life. Guarding it all were the American, French and Italian marines, British Tommies and Japanese bluejackets.

After Chiang Kaishek's coup against the communists in 1927, the Kuomintang cooperated with the foreign police and the Shanghai

gangs, and with Chinese and foreign factory owners, to suppress labour unrest. Exploited in workhouse conditions, crippled by hunger and poverty, sold into slavery, excluded from the high life and the parks created by the foreigners, the poor of Shanghai had a voracious appetite for radical opinion. The Chinese Communist Party (CCP) was formed here in 1921 and, after numerous setbacks, 'liberated' the city in 1949.

The communists eradicated the slums, rehabilitated the city's hundreds of thousands of opium addicts, and eliminated child and slave labour. These were staggering achievements; but when the decadence went, so did the splendour. Shanghai became a colourless factory town and political hotbed, and was the power base of the infamous Gang of Four during the Cultural Revolution.

Shanghai's long slumber came to an abrupt end in 1990, with the announcement of plans to develop Pudong, on the eastern side of the Huangpu River. Since then Shanghai's burgeoning economy, leadership and intrinsic self-confidence have put it miles ahead of other Chinese cities. Its bright lights and opportunities have branded Shanghai a mecca for Chinese (and foreign) economic migrants. In 2010, 3600 people squeezed into every square kilometre, compared with 2588 per sq km in 2000 as the city's population leaped to a staggering 23 million. Around nine million migrants live in Shanghai, colouring the local complexion with a jumble of dialects, outlooks, lifestyles and cuisines.

## Language

Spoken by more than 13 million people, the Shanghainese dialect (Shanghaihua in Mandarin) belongs to the Wu dialect. Due to the spread of Mandarin and the absence of a standard form of Shanghainese, fewer and fewer young people are able to speak it properly.

## Climate

Shanghai's winters are cold and damp while summers are hot, humid and sapping, with sudden epic rains. Try to catch the weather in between: April to mid-May is probably the best time to visit, along with autumn (late September to mid-November).

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### **Sleeping**

\$ less than ¥500

\$\$ ¥500 to ¥1300

\$\$\$ more than ¥1300

### **Eating**

(based on meal)

\$ less than ¥60

\$\$ ¥60 to ¥160

\$\$\$ more than ¥160

## Sights

Shanghai municipality covers a vast area, but the city proper is more modest. Broadly, central Shanghai is divided into two areas: Puxi (west of the Huangpu River) and Pudong (east of the Huangpu River). The historical attractions and charm are in Puxi, where Shanghai's personality lives: the Bund (officially called East Zhongshan No 1 Rd) and the former foreign concessions, the principal shopping districts, and Shanghai's trendiest clusters of bars, restaurants and nightclubs. Pudong – the location of the financial district and the famous Shanghai skyline – is a very recent creation, with sights falling in the observation deck/skyscraping towers/museums arena.

The last entrance to many Shanghai museums is one hour before closing.

## **THE BUND**

The area around the Bund is the tourist centre of Shanghai and is the city's most famous mile.

## The Bund

The best way to get acquainted with Shanghai is to take a stroll along the Bund. The waterfront was the seat of colonial power from the mid-19th century onward, and the city's landmark hotels, banks and trading houses all established themselves here, gradually replacing their original buildings with even grander constructions as the decades passed.

The Bund had its golden age in the 1920s and '30s before the turmoil of war and occupation brought an end to the high life enjoyed by

Shanghai's foreign residents. Mottoballd during the communist era, it's only in the past 15 years that the strip has sought to rekindle its past glory, restoring one heritage building after another. Today, it has become China's showcase lifestyle destination, and many of the landmarks here house designer restaurants, swish cocktail bars and the flagship stores of some of the world's most exclusive brands.

Once you've wandered the promenade and ogled at the Pudong skyline opposite, return to

examine the Bund's magnificent facades in more detail and visit the interiors of those buildings open to the public.

This illustration shows the main sights along the Bund's central stretch, beginning near the intersection with East Nanjing Road. The Bund is 1km long and walking it should take around an hour. Head to the area south of the Hongkong & Shanghai Bank Building to find the biggest selection of prominent drinking and dining destinations.

### FACT FILE

- Number of remaining heritage buildings on the Bund: 22
- Date the first foreign building on the Bund was constructed: 1861
- The year in which M on the Bund, the first high-profile Bund restaurant, opened: 1999
- Approximate number of wooden piles supporting the Fairmont Peace Hotel: 1600



**Hongkong & Shanghai Bank Building (1923)**

Head into this massive bank (9am-4.30pm Mon-Fri) to marvel at the beautiful mosaic ceiling, featuring the 12 zodiac signs and the world's (former) eight centres of finance.



**North China Daily News Building (1924)**

Known as the 'Old Lady of the Bund', the News ran from 1864 to 1951 as the main English-language newspaper in China. Look for the paper's motto above the central windows.



**Former Palace Hotel (1909)**

Now known as the Swatch Art Peace Hotel (an artists' residence and gallery, with a top-floor restaurant and bar), this building hosted Sun Yat-sen's 1911 victory celebration following his election as the first president of the Republic of China.



**Custom House (1927)**

One of the most important buildings on the Bund, Custom House was capped by the largest clock face in Asia and 'Big Chang', a bell modelled on London's Big Ben.

**Former Bank of Communications (1947)**

**Bund Public Service Centre (2010)**

**Former Chartered Bank Building (1923)**

Reopened in 2004 as the upscale entertainment complex Bund 18, the building's top-floor Bar Rouge is one of the Bund's premier late-night destinations.

**Fairmont Peace Hotel (1929)**

Originally built as the Cathay Hotel, this art deco masterpiece was the place to stay in Shanghai and the crown jewel in Sassoon's real estate empire.



### Top Tip

The promenade is open around the clock, but it's at its best in the early morning, when locals are out practising tai chi, or in the early evening, when both sides of the river are lit up and the majesty of the waterfront is at its grandest.



## The Bund ARCHITECTURE

Offline map

Google map

Symbolic of colonial Shanghai, the **Bund** (*Waitan*; [Offline map](#)) was the city's Wall St, a place of feverish trading and fortunes made and lost. Coming to Shanghai and missing the Bund is like visiting Beijing and bypassing the Forbidden City or the Great Wall. Originally a towpath for dragging barges of rice, the Bund (an Anglo-Indian term for the embankment of a muddy waterfront) was gradually transformed into a grandiose sweep of the most powerful banks and trading houses in Shanghai. The majority of art deco and neoclassical buildings here were built in the early 20th century and presented an imposing – if strikingly un-Chinese – view for those arriving in the busy port.

Today it has emerged as a designer retail and restaurant zone, and the city's most exclusive boutiques, restaurants and hotels see the

Bund as the only place to be. The optimum activity here is to simply stroll, contrasting the bones of the past with the futuristic geometry of Pudong's skyline. Evening visits are rewarded by electric views of Pudong and the illuminated grandeur of the Bund. Other options include taking a boat tour on the Huangpu River or relaxing at some fabulous bars and restaurants. Huangpu Park, at the north end of the promenade, features the modest **Bund History Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Waitan Lishi Jinianguan*; [Offline map](#); admission free; ☹️ 9am-4pm Mon-Fri), which contains a collection of old photographs and maps. See the illustrated highlight ([Click here](#)) for a rundown of the area's most famous buildings.

## **East Nanjing Rd** ARCHITECTURE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

Once known as Nanking Rd, East Nanjing Rd (; [Offline map](#)) was where the first department stores in China were opened in the 1920s, and where the modern era – with its new products and the promise of a radically different lifestyle – was ushered in. A glowing forest of neon at night, it's no longer the cream of Shanghai shopping, but it's still one of the most famous and crowded streets in China. Shanghai's reputation as the country's most fashionable city was forged in part here, through the new styles and trends introduced in department stores such as the Sun Sun (1926), today the Shanghai No 1 (First) Food Store ([Click here](#)), and the Sun Company (1936), now the **Shanghai No 1 Department Store** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Shanghai Diyi Baihuo Shangdian*; [Offline map](#); 800 East Nanjing Rd; 🚇 People's Square).

Guard against English-speaking Chinese women and students shanghaiing you towards extortionate 'tea ceremonies'.

## **Rockbund Art Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Waitan Meishuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.rockbundartmuseum.org](http://www.rockbundartmuseum.org); 20 Huqiu Rd; 20 adult ¥15; ☹️ 10am-6pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) Housed in the former Royal Asiatic

Society building (1933), this private museum behind the Bund focuses on contemporary art, with rotating exhibits year-round. Opened in 2010 to mark the opening of the Rockbund (north Bund) renovation project – funded by the Rockefeller Group – the museum has since become one of the city’s top modern-art venues.

In addition to the art museum, there are a number of other architectural gems in this area that are part of the project, including the **former British Consulate** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), which can be accessed at the Bund’s northern tip. The most extensively renovated section is along **Yuanmingyuan Rd** (), a magnet for the latest crop of high-profile restaurants and luxury brands to come to Shanghai. Additional landmark buildings in the area are slated for redevelopment, including the wonderful curved facade of the art deco Capitol Theatre (1928), at the north end of Huqiu Rd.

### **FREE** Shanghai Post Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Youzheng Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); 250 North Suzhou Rd; 250 ☎ 9am-5pm Wed, Thu, Sat & Sun; **M** Tiantong Rd) It may sound like a yawner, but this is actually a pretty good museum, where you can learn about postal history in imperial China and view rare pre- and post-Liberation stamps (1888–1978). It’s located in a magnificent 1924 post office, with panoramic views from the rooftop garden (garden closed at time of writing).

### **Bund Sightseeing Tunnel** *TUNNEL*

( *Waitan Guanguang Suidao*; [Offline map](#); *The Bund*; one way/return ¥50/60; ☎ 8am-10pm; **M** East Nanjing Rd) The weirdest way to get to Pudong, where train modules convey speechless passengers through a tunnel of garish lights between the Bund and the opposite shore. The entrance is behind the Tourist Information & Service Centre.

**SHANGHAI IN...**



### One Day

Rise with the sun for early morning riverside scenes on **the Bund** as the vast city stirs from its slumber. Then stroll down East Nanjing Rd to **People's Sq** and either the **Shanghai Museum** or the **Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall**. After a dumpling lunch on Huanghe Rd food street, hop on the metro at People's Sq to shuttle east to Pudong. Explore the fun and interactive **Shanghai History Museum** or contemplate the Bund from the breezy Riverside Promenade, then take a high-speed lift to the world's highest observation deck, in the **Shanghai World Financial Center**, to put Shanghai in perspective. Stomach rumbling? Time for dinner in the French Concession, followed by a nightcap on the Bund if you want to go full circle.

### Two Days

Beat the crowds with an early start at the Old Town's **Yuyuan Gardens** before poking around for souvenirs on Old St and wandering the alleyways. Make your next stop **Xintiandi** for lunch and a visit to the **Shikumen Open House Museum**. Taxi it to **Tianzifang** for the afternoon, before another French Concession dinner. Caught a second wind? Catch the acrobats, hit the clubs or unwind with a traditional Chinese massage.

## PEOPLE'S SQUARE

Once the site of the Shanghai Racecourse, People's Sq is the modern city's nerve centre. Overshadowed by the dramatic form of **Tomorrow Sq** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Mingtian Guangchang*; [Offline map](#)), the open space is peppered with museums, performing arts venues and leafy People's Park. Beneath it all, the city's frenetic energy reaches full crescendo amid the tunnels of Shanghai's busiest subway interchange.

## Shanghai Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghai Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.shanghaimuseum.net](http://www.shanghaimuseum.net); 201 Renmin Ave; 201 admission free; 🕒 9am-5pm; 🚇 People's Square)

This must-see museum guides you through the craft of millennia while simultaneously escorting you through the pages of Chinese history. Expect to spend half, if not most of, a day here (note that entrance is from East Yan'an Rd).

Designed to resemble the shape of an ancient Chinese *ding* vessel, the building is home to one of the most impressive collections in China. Take your pick from the archaic green patinas of the **Ancient**

**Chinese Bronzes Gallery** through to the silent solemnity of the **Ancient Chinese Sculpture Gallery**, and from the exquisite beauty of the porcelain and pottery in the **Ceramics Gallery** to the measured and timeless flourishes captured in the **Chinese Calligraphy Gallery**. Chinese painting, seals, jade, Ming and Qing furniture, coins and ethnic costumes are also on offer in this museum, intelligently displayed in well-lit galleries. Seats are provided outside galleries on each floor for when lethargy strikes.

Photography is allowed in some galleries. The audio guide (available in eight languages) is well worth the ¥40 (deposit ¥400 or your passport). The excellent **museum shop** sells postcards, a rich array of books, and faithful replicas of the museum's ceramics and other pieces. There is an overpriced teahouse and restaurant inside the museum; you're better off eating at nearby **Yunnan Rd food street** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (see the boxed text, [Click here](#)).

## **Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghai Chengshi Guihua Zhanshiguan*; [Offline map](#); 100 Renmin Ave; 100 adult ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun, last entry 4pm; 🚇 People's Square) Some cities romanticise their past, others promise good times in the present, but only in China are you expected to visit places that haven't even been built yet. The third floor features Shanghai's idealised future (c 2020), with an incredible model layout of the megalopolis-to-come plus a dizzying Virtual World 3D wrap-around tour complete with celebratory fireworks. Balancing it all out are photos and maps of historic Shanghai. Entrance is from Xizang Rd.

## **Shanghai Museum of Contemporary Art** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Moca Shanghai*; *Shanghai Dangdai Yishuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.mocashanghai.org](http://www.mocashanghai.org); People's Park; adult ¥30; 🕒 10am-9.30pm; 🚇 People's Square) This nonprofit contemporary art centre has an all-glass construction to maximise Shanghai's often dismal sunlight and a tip-top location in People's Park. Temporary exhibits range from urban

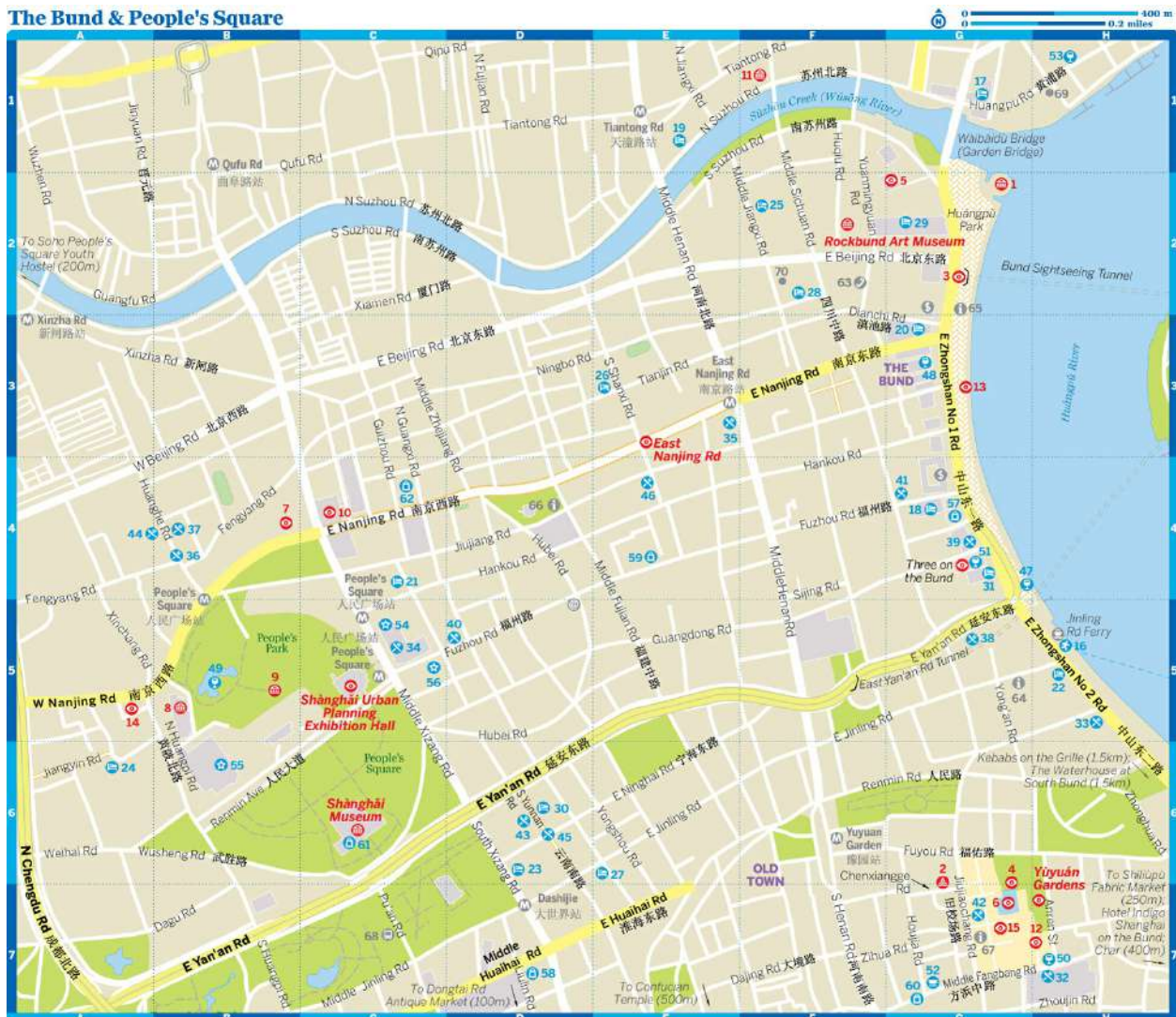
dystopia sculptures to Japanese ecodesign and multimedia instalments.

## FREE Shanghai Art Museum MUSEUM

Offline map Google map

(Shanghai Meishuguan; Offline map; [www.sh-artmuseum.org.cn](http://www.sh-artmuseum.org.cn); 325 West Nanjing Rd; 325 🕒 9am-5pm; 🚇 People's Square) The exhibits of modern Chinese art are hit-and-miss, but the building (the former Shanghai Racecourse Club) and its period details are simply gorgeous. English captions are sporadic.

The Bund & People's Square



# The Bund & People's Square

## Top Sights

- [East Nanjing Rd](#) E3
- [Rockbund Art Museum](#) F2
- [Shanghai Museum](#) C6
- [Shanghai Urban Planning Exhibition Hall](#) C5
- [Yuyuan Gardens](#) H7

## Sights

- [Bund History Museum](#) G2
- [Chenxiangge Nunnery](#) G6
- Entrance to Bund Sightseeing Tunnel G2
- Entrance to Yuyuan Gardens G6
- [Former British Consulate](#) G2
- [Huxinting Teahouse](#) G7
- Madame Tussaud's B4
- [Shanghai Art Museum](#) B5
- [Shanghai Museum of Contemporary Art](#) B5
- [Shanghai No 1 Department Store](#) C4
- [Shanghai Post Museum](#) F1
- [Temple of the Town God](#) H7
- [The Bund](#) G3
- [Tomorrow Sq](#) A5
- Yuyuan Bazaar G7

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- [Huangpu River Cruise \(The Bund\)](#) H5

## Sleeping

- [Astor House Hotel](#) G1
- [Captain Hostel](#) G4
- [Chai Living Residences](#) E1
- [Fairmont Peace Hotel](#) G3
- [JW Marriott Tomorrow Square](#) (see 14)
- [Langham Yangtze Boutique](#) C4
- [Les Suites Orient](#) H5
- [Marvel Hotel](#) D6

- 24 [Mingtown Etour Youth Hostel](#) **A6**
- 25 [Mingtown Hiker Youth Hostel](#) **F2**
- 26 [Mingtown Nanjing Road Youth Hostel](#) **E3**
- 27 [Motel 168](#) **E6**
- 28 [Motel 268](#) **F2**
- 29 [Peninsula Hotel](#) **G2**
- 30 [The Phoenix](#) **D6**
- 31 [Waldorf Astoria](#) **G4**

## Eating

- 32 [Din Tai Fung](#) **H7**
- 33 [el Willy](#) **H5**
- 34 [Food Republic](#) **C5**
- 35 [Hongyi Plaza](#) **E3**
- 36 [Huanghe Rd Food Street](#) **B4**
- 37 [Jiajia Soup Dumpings](#) **B4**
- 38 [Lost Heaven](#) **G5**
- 39 [M on the Bund](#) **G4**
- 40 [Nanxiang Steamed Bun Restaurant](#) **D5**
- 41 [Shanghai Grandmother](#) **G4**
- 42 [Songyuelou](#) **G7**
- 43 [Wu Fang Zhai](#) **D6**
- 44 [Yang's Fry Dumpings](#) **A4**
- 45 [Yunnan Rd Food Street](#) **D6**
- 46 [Yuxin Chuancai](#) **E4**

## Drinking

- 47 [Atanu](#) **G4**
- 48 [Bar Rouge](#) **G3**
- 49 [Barbarossa](#) **B5**
- [Captain's Bar](#) (see 18)
- [Glamour Bar](#) (see 39)
- [Long Bar](#) (see 31)
- 50 [Moonlight Teahouse](#) **H7**
- 51 [New Heights](#) **G4**
- 52 [Old Shanghai Teahouse](#) **G7**
- 53 [Vue](#) **H1**

## Entertainment

- [Fairmont Peace Hotel Jazz Bar](#) (see 20)
- 54 [Peace Cinema](#) **C5**

[55 Shanghai Grand Theatre](#) B6

[56 Yifu Theatre](#) C5

## Shopping

[57 Annabel Lee](#) G4

[58 Cybermart](#) D7

[59 Foreign Languages Bookstore](#) E4

[60 Old Street](#) G7

[61 Shanghai Museum Shop](#) C6

[62 Shanghai No 1 \(First\) Food Store](#) C4

[Suzhou Cobblers](#) (see 18)

## Information

[63 China Mobile](#) F2

[64 Domestic Boat Tickets shop](#) G5

[65 Tourist Information & Service Centre](#) G2

[66 Tourist Information & Service Centre](#) D4

[67 Tourist Information & Service Centre](#) G7

## Transport

[68 Pu'an Rd Bus Station](#) C7

[69 Train Ticket Office](#) H1


[70 Train Ticket Office](#) F2

## OLD TOWN & SOUTH BUND

Known to locals as Nan Shi (Southern City), the Old Town is the most traditionally Chinese part of Shanghai, bar Qibao. Its oval layout still reflects the footprint of its 16th-century walls, erected to keep marauding Japanese pirates at bay. Sections of the Old Town have been bulldozed over the past decade to make room for developments but tatty charm survives along the neighbourhood's narrow and pinched alleyways. On the South Bund, the **Cool Docks** (*Shishang Laomatou*) is a kind of riverside Xintiandi-lite, with *shikumen* (low-rise tenement buildings built in the early 1900s) and converted warehouses.

**Yuyuan Gardens & Bazaar** GARDENS, BAZAAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yuyuan & Yuyuan Shangcheng*; [Offline map](#); admission gardens ¥40, bazaar free; ☀ gardens 8.30am-5.30pm, last entry 5pm;  *Yuyuan Garden*) With their shaded alcoves, glittering pools churning with carp, pavilions, pines sprouting wistfully from rockeries and roving packs of Japanese tourists, these **gardens** are one of Shanghai's premier sights – but are overpoweringly crowded on weekends.


The Pan family, rich Ming-dynasty officials, founded the gardens, which took 18 years (1559–77) to be nurtured into existence before bombardment during the Opium War in 1842. The gardens took another trashing during French reprisals for attacks on their nearby concession by Taiping rebels. Restored, they are a fine example of Ming garden design. The spring and summer blossoms bring a fragrant and floral aspect to the gardens, especially in the heavy petals of its *Magnolia grandiflora*, Shanghai's flower. Other trees include the Luohan pine, willows, towering ginkgos, cherry trees and fine-needed dawn redwoods.

Next to the garden entrance is the **Huxinting Teahouse** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Huxinting*; [Offline map](#); ☀ 8.30am-9.30pm), once part of the gardens and now one of the most famous teahouses in China.

The adjacent **bazaar** may be tacky and crowded, but it's good for a browse if you can handle the crowds and fake Rolex vendors. The nearby Taoist **Temple of the Town God** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Chenghuang Miao*; [Offline map](#); *Yuyuan Bazaar*; admission ¥10; ☀ 8.30am-4.30pm) is also worth visiting. Just beyond the bazaar is **Old Street** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Lao Jie*), known more prosaically as Middle Fangbang Rd, a busy street lined with curio shops and teahouses.

## **Chenxiangge Nunnery** BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Chenxiang Ge*; [Offline map](#); 29 *Chenxiangge Rd*; 29 admission ¥10; ☀ 7am-5pm;  *Yuyuan Garden*) Sheltering a community of dark-brown-clothed nuns, this gorgeous yellow-walled temple is a tranquil portal to a devout existence far from the city's frantic temporal realm. Climb the

**Guanyin Tower** ( *Guanyin Lou*; admission ¥2) at the rear hall to view an exquisite statue of Guanyin, the Buddhist goddess of compassion; the original vanished during the Cultural Revolution.

## **Confucian Temple** CONFUCIAN

( *Wen Miao*; [Offline map](#); 215 Wenmiao Rd; 215 admission ¥10; ☺ 9am-5pm; 🚇 *Laoximen*) This well-tended temple to the dictum-coining sage-cum-social theorist is a cultivated acreage of maples, pines, magnolias and birdsong. Originally dating from 1294, the temple was moved to its current site in 1855. There's a **secondhand book market** (☺ 7.30am-4pm; admission ¥1) here on Sundays.

## **SEDUCTION & THE CITY**

Shanghai owes its reputation as the most fashionable city in China to the calendar poster, whose print runs once numbered in the tens of millions and whose distribution reached from China's interior to Southeast Asia. The basic idea behind the poster – associating a product with an attractive woman to encourage subconscious desire and consumption – today sounds like Marketing 101, but in the early 20th century it was revolutionary. Calendar posters not only introduced new products to Chinese everywhere, their portrayal of Shanghai women – wearing make-up and stylish clothing, smoking cigarettes and surrounded by foreign goods – set the standard for modern fashion that many Chinese women would dream of for decades. Today reproduction posters are sold throughout the Old Town for as little as ¥10, though finding a bona fide original is quite a challenge. For an in-depth look at calendar posters and Shanghai's role in shaping modern China, see Wenshin Yeh's *Shanghai Splendor*.

## **FRENCH CONCESSION**

Once home to the bulk of Shanghai's adventurers, revolutionaries, gangsters, prostitutes and writers, the French Concession is the most graceful part of the city. Today a residential, retail and restaurant district with atmospheric tree-lined streets, the French Concession is a name you won't find appearing on any Chinese maps, but it ranges elegantly through the districts of Luwan and Xuhui, also taking in slices of Changning and Jing'an.


The cream of Shanghai's old residential buildings and art deco



apartment blocks, hotels and edifices are preserved here, while commercial Huaihai Rd teems with shoppers. The district naturally tends towards gentrification, but it's also a trendy and happening enclave, excellent for random exploration in a slow progression or by full immersion in Tianzifang, a hip quadrant of lane housing overflowing with shops and cafes, which has overtaken Xintiandi as one of the latest retail and entertainment hot spots.

## Tianzifang *SHOPPING PRECINCT*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); Lane 210, Taikang Rd; 210  Dapuqiao) Xintiandi and Tianzifang are based on a similar idea – an entertainment complex housed within a warren of traditional *longtang* (alleyways) – but when it comes to genuine charm and vibrancy, Tianzifang is the one that delivers. A community of design studios, wi-fi cafes and boutiques, this is the perfect antidote to Shanghai's oversized malls and skyscrapers. With some families still residing in neighbouring buildings, a community mood survives.


There are three main north–south lanes (Nos 210, 248, 274) criss-crossed by irregular east–west alleyways, which makes exploration slightly disorienting and fun. On the main lane is the **Deke Erh Art Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Er Dongqiang Yishu Zhongxin; [Offline map](#); No 2, Lane 210), owned by a local photographer and author. An even better gallery is the tiny **Beaugeste** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Biji Yingxiang; [Offline map](#); [www.beaugeste-gallery.com](http://www.beaugeste-gallery.com); 5th fl, No 5, Lane 210; ☺ 10am–6pm), with exhibits that feature contemporary Chinese photographers.

Of course, the real activity here is shopping, and the recent explosion of creative start-ups makes for some interesting finds, from ethnic embroidery and hand-wrapped pu-erh teas to retro communist dinnerware. Elsewhere, a growing band of cool cafes, such as Kommune ([Click here](#)), can sort out meals and drinks and take the weight off your feet. Don't bother looking for Chinese food here; there isn't any.

## Xintiandi SHOPPING PRECINCT

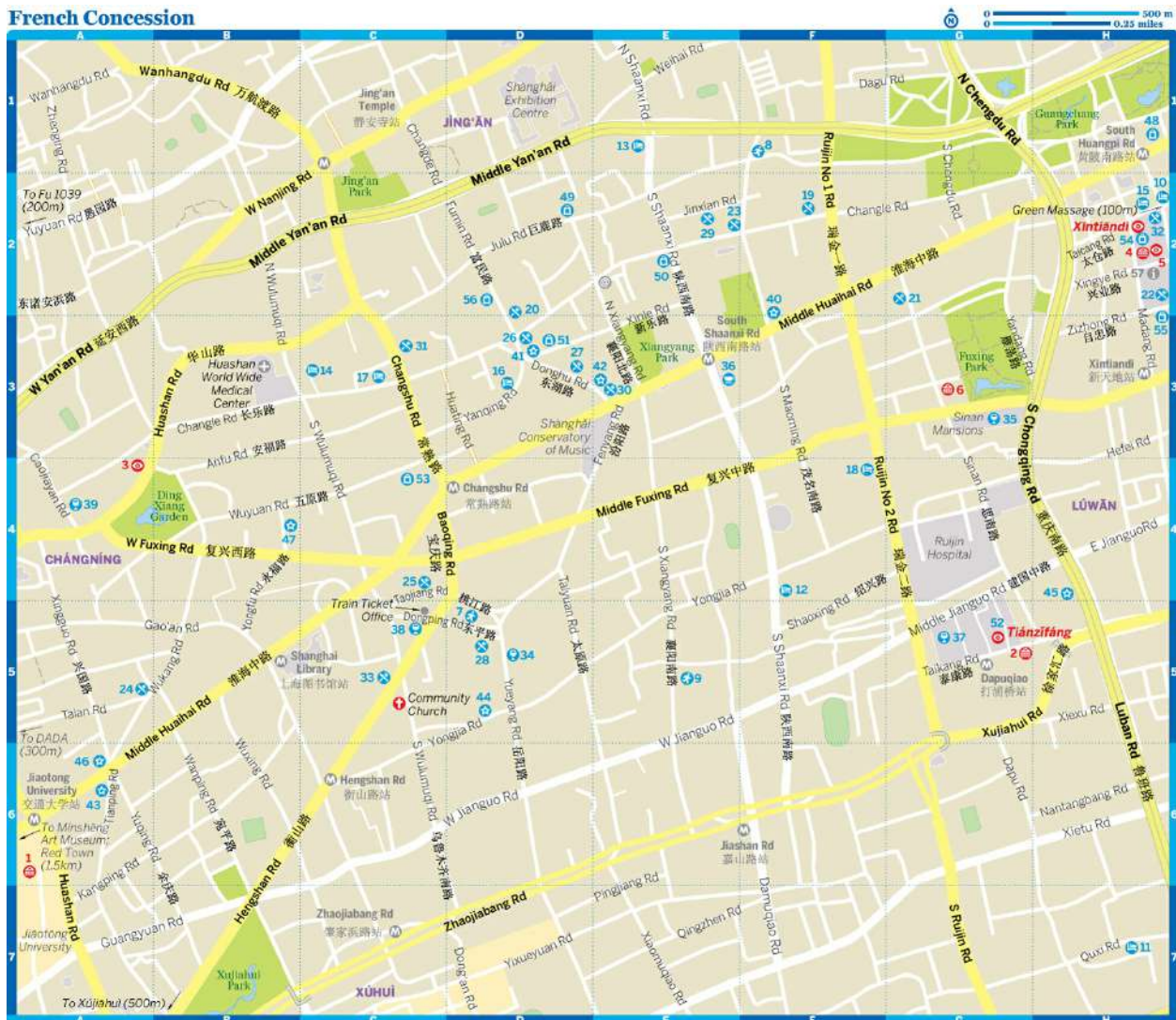
[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.xintiandi.com](http://www.xintiandi.com); *cnr Taicang & Madang Rds*;  *South Huangpi Rd or Xintiandi*) Xintiandi has only been around for a decade and already it's a Shanghai icon. An upmarket retail and dining complex consisting of largely rebuilt *shikumen* houses, this was the first development in the city to prove that historic architecture does, in fact, have economic value. Well-heeled shoppers and al fresco diners keep the place busy until late, while two museums add a dash of culture to the mix.

The north block is where most of the action is. The small **Shikumen Open House Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Wulixiang Shikumen Minju Chenlieguan*; [Offline map](#); *admission ¥20*; 🕒 *10.30am-10.30pm*) depicts traditional life in a 10-room Shanghai *shikumen*. Beyond this, it's best for strolling the prettified alleyways and enjoying a summer's evening over drinks or a meal.

## French Concession



## French Concession

### Top Sights

[Tianzifang](#) G5

[Xintiandi](#) H2

### Sights

[Beaugeste](#) (see 52)

1 [CY Tung Maritime Museum](#) A6

[Deke Erh Art Centre](#) (see 52)

2 [Liuli China Museum](#) G5

3 [Propaganda Poster Art Centre](#) A4

4 [Shikumen Open House Museum](#) H2

5 [Site of the 1st National Congress of the CCP](#) H2

6 [Sun Yatsen's Former Residence](#) G3

## Activities, Courses & Tours

7 [Chinese Cooking Workshop](#) D5

8 [Longwu Kungfu Center](#) F1

9 [The Kitchen at...](#) E5

## Sleeping

10 [Andaz](#) H2

11 [Blue Mountain Youth Hostel](#) H7

12 [Hanting Hotel](#) F4

13 [Hengshan Moller Villa](#) E1

14 [Kevin's Old House](#) C3

15 [Langham Xintiandi](#) H2

16 [Magnolia Bed & Breakfast](#) D3

17 [Quintet](#) C3

18 [Ruijin Hotel](#) F4

## Eating

19 [Bankura](#) F2

20 [Baoluo Jiulou](#) D2

21 [Cha's](#) G2

22 [Crystal Jade](#) H2

23 [Di Shui Dong](#) E2

[Din Tai Fung](#) (see 22)

24 [Ferguson Lane](#) A5

25 [Haiku](#) C4

26 [Noodle Bull](#) D3

27 [Sichuan Citizen](#) D3

28 [Simply Thai](#) D5

29 [Southern Barbarian](#) E2

30 [Spicy Joint](#) E3

31 [Xibo Grill](#) C3

32 [Xinjishi](#) H2

33 [Yin](#) C5

## Drinking

[34 Abbey Road](#) D5

[Apartment](#) (see 47)

[Bell Bar](#) (see 52)

[35 Boxing Cat Brewery](#) G3

[36 Cafe 85°C](#) E3

[37 Kaiba](#) G5

[Kommune](#) (see 52)

[38 Shanghai Brewery](#) C5

[39 Time Passage](#) A4

## Entertainment

[40 Cathay Theatre](#) F2

[41 Dragonfly](#) D3

[42 Dragonfly](#) E3

[43 Eddy's Bar](#) A6

[44 Lola](#) D5

[45 MAO Livehouse](#) H4

[No 88](#) (see 41)

[46 Shanghai Studio](#) A6

[47 Shelter](#) B4

## Shopping

[Annabel Lee](#) (see 54)

[48 Apple Store](#) H1

[49 Brocade Country](#) D2

[Chouchou Chic](#) (see 52)

[50 Garden Books](#) E2

[51 NuoMi](#) D3

[Shanghai 1936](#) (see 52)

[Shanghai Tang](#) (see 54)

[52 Tianzifang](#) G5

[Woo](#) (see 52)

[53 XinleLu.com](#) C4

[54 Xintiandi](#) H2

[55 Xintiandi Style](#) H3

[56 Yu](#) D2

[Zhenchalin Tea](#) (see 52)

## Information

## Liul i China Museum *MUSEUM*

(*Liuli Yishu Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.liulichinamuseum.com](http://www.liulichinamuseum.com); 25 Taikang Rd; 25 admission ¥20; 🕒 10am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Dapujiao) Founded by Taiwanese artists Loretta Yang and Chang Yi, the Liul i China Museum is dedicated to the art of glass sculpture. Peruse the collection of ancient artefacts – some of which date back over 2000 years – to admire the early craftsmanship of pieces such as earrings, belt buckles and even a Tang-dynasty crystal *weiqi* (go) set.

The collection transitions fluidly to more contemporary creations from around the world, before moving on to Yang's serene Buddhist-inspired creations, including a sublime 1.6m-high 1000-armed Guanyin.

## **FREE** Site of the 1st National Congress of the CCP

*MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Zhonggong Yida Huizhi*; [Offline map](#); 76 Xingye Rd; 76 🕒 9am-5pm; 🚇 South Huangpi Rd or Xintiandi) The CCP was founded in July 1921 in this French Concession *shikumen* building in one fell swoop, converting an unassuming block into one of Chinese communism's holiest shrines. Now a museum, its dizzying Marxist spin and communist narcissism is a bit much, but you can nonetheless visit the room where the Party began. Passport required for entry.

## Propaganda Poster Art Centre *GALLERY*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xuanchuanhua Nianhua Yishu Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#); [www.shanghaipropagandaart.com](http://www.shanghaipropagandaart.com); Room B-OC, President Mansion, 868 Huashan Rd; 868 admission ¥20; 🕒 10am-5pm; 🚇 Shanghai Library or Jiangsu Rd) If phalanxes of red tractors, bumper harvests, muscled peasants and lantern-jawed proletariat get you going, this

small gallery in the bowels of a residential block will truly fire you up. Go weak-kneed at the cartoon world of anti-US defiance, and size up a collection of 3000 original posters from the 1950s, '60s and '70s – the golden age of Maoist poster production. The centre divides into a showroom and a shop featuring posters and postcards for sale. Once you find the main entrance, a guard will point the way.

## Sun Yatsen's Former Residence *HISTORIC BUILDING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Sun Zhongshan Guju*; [Offline map](#); 7 Xiangshan Rd; 7 admission ¥20; ☎ 9am-4.30pm; 🚇 *South Shaanxi Rd or Xintiandi*) China is stuffed to the gills with Sun Yatsen memorabilia, and this former residence, on what was previously rue Moliere, is where the founder of modern China (posthumously dubbed Guofu, Father of the Nation) lived for six years. After Sun's death, his wife Song Qingling (1893–1981) remained here until 1937, watched by plainclothes Kuomintang and French police. The two-storey house is decorated with period furnishings, despite looting by the Japanese.

## WEST NANJING ROAD & JING'AN

Lined with sharp top-end shopping malls, clusters of foreign offices and a dense crop of embassies and consulates, West Nanjing Rd is where Shanghai's streets are paved with gold, or at least Prada and Gucci.

But head north of West Nanjing Rd and you're plunged into a grittier and more absorbing section of Jing'an, which extends until reaching the Shanghai Railway Station. Like Hongkou (north of the Bund), this area is primed for development.

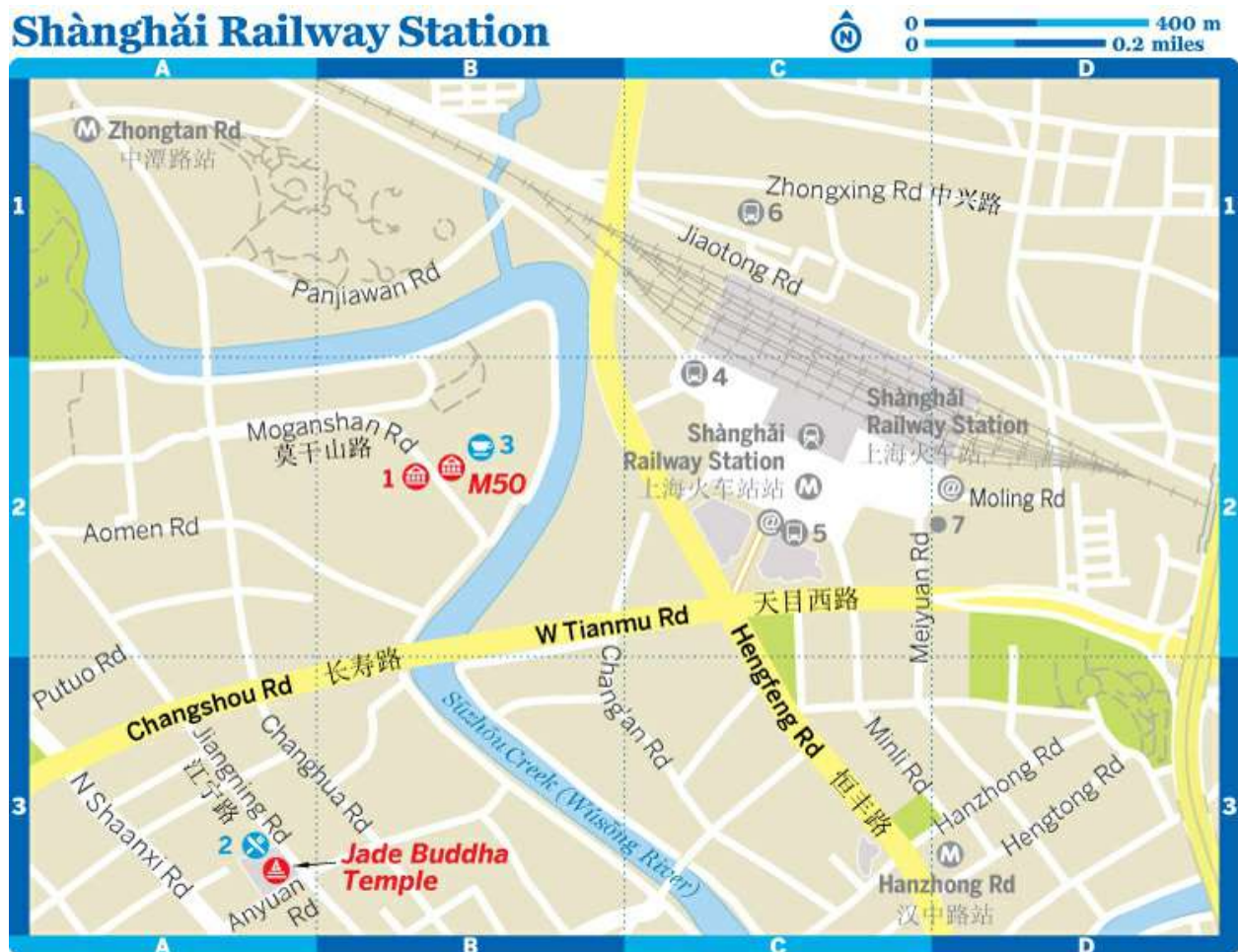
## Jade Buddha Temple *BUDDHIST*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Yufo Si*; [Offline map](#); 170 Anyuan Rd; 170 adult ¥20; ☎ 8am-4.30pm; 🚇 *Changshou Rd*) One of Shanghai's few active Buddhist monasteries, this temple was built between 1918 and 1928. The centrepiece is the 1.9m-high pale green **Jade Buddha**, seated

upstairs in his own hall. It is said that Hui Gen (Wei Ken), a Putuoshan monk, travelled to Myanmar (Burma) via Tibet, shipped five jade Buddhas back to China and then sought alms to build a temple for them. The beautiful effigy of Sakyamuni, clearly Southeast Asian in style, gazes ethereally from a cabinet. Visitors are not able to approach the statue, but can admire it from a distance. An additional charge of ¥10 is levied to see the statue (no photographs).

## Shànghǎi Railway Station



## Shanghai Railway Station

### Top Sights

[Jade Buddha Temple](#) A3



[M50](#) B2

## Sights

[island6](#) (see 3)

1 [m97](#) B2

[OFoto](#) (see 3)

[ShanghART](#) (see 3)

## Eating

2 Jade Buddha Temple Vegetarian Restaurant A3

## Drinking

3 [Bandu Cabin](#) B2

## Transport

4 Bus 941 to Hongqiao Airport C2

5 Bus to Pudong International Airport C2

6 [Shanghai Long-Distance Bus Station](#) C1

7 Train Ticket Office D2

An equally elegant **reclining Buddha** is downstairs, opposite a much more substantial copy in marble. A large **vegetarian restaurant** (*sucai canting*; 999 Jiangning Rd) is attached to the temple around the corner.

In February the temple is very busy during the Lunar New Year, when some 20,000 Chinese Buddhists throng to pray for prosperity.

**FREE** **M50** GALLERIES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(M50 M Wushi Chuangyi Chanye Jijuqu; [Offline map](#); 50 Moganshan Rd; 50 🕒 10am-6pm Tue-Sun; 🚉 Shanghai Railway Station) Beijing may dominate the art scene in China, but Shanghai has its own thriving gallery subculture, centred on this complex of industrial buildings down dusty Moganshan Rd in the north of town. Although most of the artists who originally established the enclave are long

gone, it is well worth putting aside a half-day to poke around the many galleries here.

Like most galleries, cutting-edge work is often surrounded by mediocrity, so be prepared to sift. The best of the bunch include old-timer **ShanghART** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Xianggena Hualang*; [Offline map](#); [www.shanghartgallery.com](http://www.shanghartgallery.com); Bldg 16 & 18), the collaborative and provocative **island6** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.island6.org](http://www.island6.org); 2nd fl, Bldg 6), and photography from **OFoto** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.ofoto-gallery.com](http://www.ofoto-gallery.com); 2nd fl, Bldg 13) and **m97** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.m97gallery.com](http://www.m97gallery.com); 2nd fl, 97 *Moganshan Rd*), the latter of which is across the street. When your legs finally give way, flop down at Bandu Cabin ([Click here](#)) or at the **Roof Club**, a cafe located on the roof of Building 17.

## **Jing'an Temple** BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jing'an Si*; [Offline map](#); 1686-1688 West Nanjing Rd; 1686-1688 admission ¥30; 🕒 7.30am-5pm; 🚇 *Jing'an Temple*) After over a decade of restoration, Jing'an Temple is finally coming together as one of the city's most eye-catching temples. Although it lacks an air of venerability and there are fewer devotees than at the Jade Buddha Temple, there can be no denying its spectacular location among the district's soaring skyscrapers.

## **PUDONG NEW AREA**

On the east side of the Huangpu River, the colossal concrete and steel Pudong New Area (Pudong Xinqu) is best known for the skyscraper-stuffed skyline of Lujiazui, one of China's most photographed panoramas. The best time to visit is at night when the neon effect is intoxicating and towers are lit up like TV screens. Pudong's multilane roads and unyielding expanses can turn pedestrians' legs to concrete, but the main attractions are around Lujiazui station.

## **Shanghai World Financial Center** ARCHITECTURE

(SWFC; *Shanghai Huanqiu Jinrong Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#); [www.swfc-observatory.com](http://www.swfc-observatory.com); 100 Century Ave; 100 observation deck 94th/94th, 97th & 100th/exclusive tour ¥120/150/300, concessions for children, seniors & students; 🕒 8am-11pm, last admission 10pm; 🚇 Lujiazui) Awaiting displacement by the nearby **Shanghai Tower** (completion date 2014) as the city's tallest building, the neck-craning 492m-high Shanghai World Financial Center is an astonishing sight, even more so come nightfall when its 'bottle opener' top dances with lights. There are three observation decks in total (94th, 97th and 100th floors), with head-spinning, altitude-adjusted ticket prices and wow-factor elevators thrown in. Clear, smog-free day are be imperative; the 100th-floor Skywalk includes sections of transparent glass walkways. To make a meal (or a cocktail) of it, there's always the option of sashaying into the restaurant/bar on the 91st floor of the Park Hyatt instead (but it's not cheap).

## **Jinmao Tower** ARCHITECTURE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

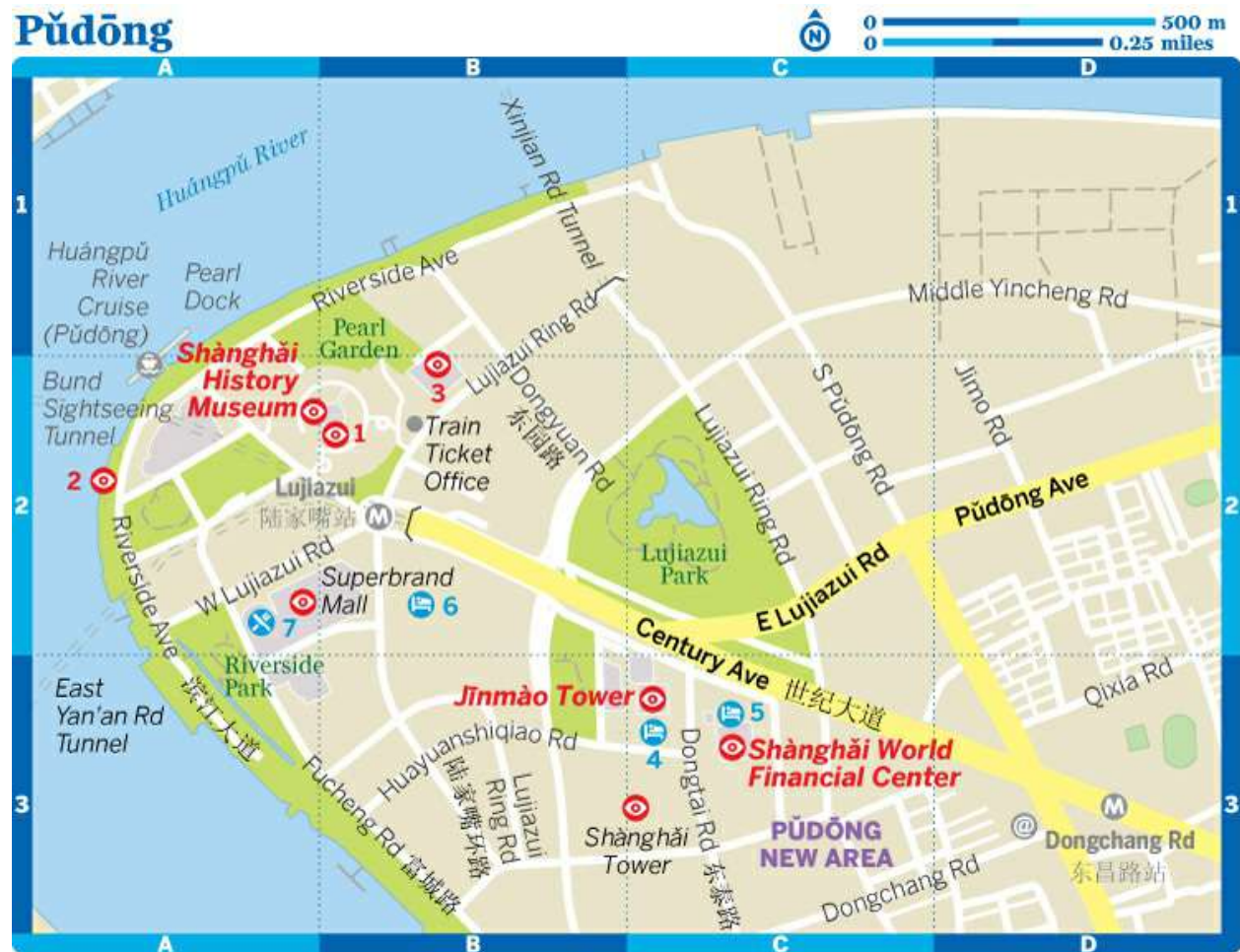
(*Jinmao Dasha*; [Offline map](#); 88 Century Ave; 88 adult/student/child ¥120/90/60; 🕒 8.30am-9.30pm; 🚇 Lujiazui) The deco-esque Jinmao Tower is Pudong's most graceful and second (soon-to-be third) tallest (420.5m) tower. An observation deck is on the 88th floor (no admittance for those 'drunk or not properly dressed'), or contemplate sinking a drink in the Cloud 9 bar ([Click here](#)) on the 87th floor (time your visit for dusk for both day and night views).

## **Shanghai History Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghai Chengshi Lishi Fazhan Chenlieguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.historymuseum.sh.cn](http://www.historymuseum.sh.cn); Oriental Pearl Tower basement; adult ¥35, audio tour ¥30; 🕒 8am-9.30pm; 🚇 Lujiazui) In the basement of the Oriental Pearl Tower, this informative museum has fun multimedia presentations and imaginative displays re-creating the history of Shanghai, with an emphasis on the pre-1949 era. Life-sized models of traditional shops are peopled by realistic wax figures, and the museum

abounds with a wealth of historical detail.



## Pudong

### Top Sights

[Jinmao Tower](#) C3

[Shanghai History Museum](#) A2

[Shanghai World Financial Center](#) C3

### Sights

1 [Oriental Pearl Tower](#) B2

2 [Riverside Promenade](#) A2

### 3 [Shanghai Ocean Aquarium](#) B2

#### **Sleeping**

4 [Grand Hyatt](#) C3

5 [Park Hyatt](#) C3

6 The Ritz-Carlton Hotel Pudong Shanghai B2

#### **Eating**

100 Century Avenue (see 5)

7 [Element Fresh](#) A2

#### **Drinking**

[Cloud 9](#) (see 4)


[Flair](#) (see 6)

#### **Shopping**

[IFC Mall](#) (see 6)

[South Beauty](#) (see 7)

## World Expo 2010 Site ARCHITECTURE

(*Shibo Hui Qu*; [Offline map](#);  *Yaohua Rd, Lines 7 & 8*) Most of the pavilions at the 2010 World Expo site were dismantled. However, at least five structures on the Pudong side remain standing and continue to host exhibits and events, including the iconic **China Pavilion** (*Zhongguo Guojia Guan*; [Offline map](#)), **Expo Center** (*Shibo Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#)) and the galactically styled UFO **Mercedes-Benz Arena** (*Meisaidesi Benchi Wenhua Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#); [www.mercedes-benzarena.com](http://www.mercedes-benzarena.com)).

At the time of writing a handful of structures were open on the Pudong side: the underwhelming **Moon Boat** (*Yueliang Chuan*; [Offline map](#); admission Mon-Fri ¥60, Sat & Sun ¥80, holiday ¥100; 🕒 9am-6pm Tue-Sun) – the former Saudi Pavilion – and the **Shanghai Italian Centre** (admission ¥60; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) in the former Italian World Expo Pavilion.

With 6000 sq metres of exhibition space, the China Pavilion was relaunched in 2012 as the **China Art Palace** (🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 *China Art Palace*) and was set to become a landmark art museum. Hosting the Shanghai Biennale, the **Power Station of Art** (Lane 20 Huayangang Rd; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 *South Xizang Rd*) also opened in late 2012 on the far side of the Huangpu River in the disused Nanshi power station (the former Pavilion of the Future).

Engaging highlights of the Expo are on display at the **Expo 2010 Commemoration Exhibition** ( *Shanghai Shibohui Jinianzhan*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 *Luban Rd*) on the Puxi side, including exhibits and parts of the original pavilions. Sadly there are no English captions.

## **Oriental Pearl Tower** SKYSCRAPER

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dongfang Mingzhu Dianshi Ta*; [Offline map](#); 1 Century Ave; 1 tickets ¥120-298; 🕒 8am-10pm; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) Best viewed when illuminated at night, this poured-concrete, atomic age retro rocket tower is one of Lujiazui's unmissable structures. The Shanghai History Museum in the basement is well worth exploring, and not just because it's the one part of Pudong where you can't see the tower itself.

## **Science & Technology Museum** MUSEUM

( *Shanghai Kejiguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.sstm.org.cn](http://www.sstm.org.cn); 2000 Century Ave; 2000 adult ¥60; 🕒 9am-5.15pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 *Science & Technology Museum*) You need to do a huge amount of walking to get around this spaced-out museum but there are some fascinating exhibits, from Rubik's-cube-solving robots to taking penalty kicks against a computerised goalkeeper. There are also four theatres (two IMAX, one 4D and one outer space) that show themed 15- to 40-minute **films** (tickets ¥20 to ¥40) throughout the day.

## **Riverside Promenade** PROMENADE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Binjiang Dadao*; [Offline map](#); 🕒 6.30am-11pm; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) The best

stroll in Pudong, the promenade alongside Riverside Ave offers splendid Bund photo-ops across the water and some choicely positioned riverfront cafes.

## Shanghai Ocean Aquarium *AQUARIUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Haiyang Shuizuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.sh-aquarium.com](http://www.sh-aquarium.com); 1388 Lujiazui Ring Rd; 158 adult/child ¥160/110; 🕒 9am-6pm; 🚇 Lujiazui) Education meets aquatic entertainment in this slick and intelligently designed aquarium.

## NORTH SHANGHAI (HONGKOU)

More off the beaten trail, the gritty northeast districts of Hongkou and Zhabei have some interesting backstreets and a few minor sights. Originally the American Settlement before the Japanese took over, Hongkou also welcomed thousands of Jewish refugees fleeing persecution.

## Ohel Moishe Synagogue *MUSEUM*

( *Moxi Huitang*; 62 Changyang Rd; 62 admission ¥50; 🕒 9am-4.30pm; 🚇 Dalian Rd) Built by the Russian Ashkenazi Jewish community in 1927, this synagogue lies in the heart of the 1940s Jewish ghetto. Today it houses the synagogue and the Shanghai Jewish Refugees Museum, with exhibitions on the lives of the approximately 20,000 Central European refugees who fled to Shanghai to escape the Nazis. There are English-language tours every 45 minutes (9.30am to 4.15pm).

## Duolun Road Cultural Street *ARCHITECTURE*

This restored **street** ( *Duolun Wenhua Mingren Jie*; 🚇 Dongbaoxing Rd) of fine old houses was once home to several of China's most famous writers (as well as Kuomintang generals). Today it has a few excellent antique shops (Dashanghai at No 181 is fascinating to browse), some historic architecture (the brick Hongde Temple at No 59 is a Christian church) and a few cafes, including the **Old Film Cafe**

(No 123; ☎ 10am-midnight), by the bell tower at the bend in the road. The **Shanghai Duolun Museum of Modern Art** (*Shanghai Duolun Xiandai Meishuguan*; No 27; admission ¥10; ☎ 10am-6pm Tue-Sun) puts on exhibits of contemporary Chinese art. The street ends in the north at the Moorish-looking **Kong Residence** (No 250), built in 1924, with its Middle Eastern tiles and windows.

## **SOUTH SHANGHAI (XUJIAHUI)**

Originally a Jesuit settlement dating back to the 17th century, Xujiahui was known to 1930s expat residents as Ziccawei or Sicawei. Today it's more characterised by shopping malls, including the massive Grand Gateway.

### **Longhua Temple** BUDDHIST

(*Longhua Si*; [Offline map](#); 2853 Longhua Rd; 2853 admission ¥10; ☎ 7am-4.30pm; [M](#) Longcao Rd) Southwest of central Shanghai, this is the oldest and largest temple in the city; said to date from the 10th century, it's much restored. Opposite the temple rises a seven-storey pagoda, originally built in AD 977 and also rebuilt. From Longcao Rd station head east along North Longshui Rd for about 1km.

### **FREE** **CY Tung Maritime Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dong Haoyun Hangyun Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); 1954 Huashan Rd, Jiaotong University campus; 1954 ☎ 1.30-5.30pm Tue-Sun; [M](#) Jiaotong University) This small but fascinating museum features exhibits on the legendary explorer Zheng He and the often overlooked world of Chinese maritime history.

### **Bibliotheca Zi-Ka-Wei** LIBRARY

(*Xujiahui Cangshulou*; ☎ 6487 4095, ext 208; 80 North Caoxi Rd; 80 ☎ library tour 2pm Sat; [M](#) Xujiahui) This former Jesuit library has a free 15-minute group tour of the main library and its stunning collection of antiquarian tomes on Saturdays. Reservations are essential.



## St Ignatius Cathedral *CATHEDRAL*

( *Tianzhu Jiaotang; 158 Puxi Rd; 158* 🕒 *1-4.30pm Sat & Sun; 🚇 Xujiahui*) This dignified twin-spired cathedral (1904) has some stunning recently installed stained glass inscribed with archaic Chinese. Across the road stands the former St Ignatius Convent, now a restaurant.

## Tousewe Museum *MUSEUM*

( *Tushanwan Bowuguan; 55-1 Puhuitang Lu; 55-1 admission ¥10; 🕒 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Shanghai Indoor Stadium/Xujiahui*) Next to a middle school along Puhuitang Rd, this magnificent museum is dedicated to the Sino-Western arts and crafts of the former red-brick Tousewe Orphanage, established here by the resourceful Jesuits in 1864. Audio tours available.

## WEST SHANGHAI

West Shanghai includes a large area made up of the districts of Minhang ( ) and Changning ( ), which envelops the smaller residential community of Gubei ( ). It is mainly of interest for long-term expats and those on business. That said, there are a few sites in the area, as well as Hongqiao Airport.

## Qibao *HISTORIC VILLAGE*

( [Offline map](#); *Minhang district; admission ¥45; 🚇 Qibao*) When you tire of Shanghai's incessant quest for modernity, this tiny town is only a hop, skip and metro ride away. An ancient settlement that prospered during the Ming and Qing dynasties, it is littered with traditional historic architecture, threaded by small, busy alleyways and cut by a picturesque canal. If you can somehow blot out the crowds, Qibao brings you the flavours of old China along with huge doses of entertainment.

There are nine official sights included in the through ticket, though you can also skip the ticket and just pay ¥5 to ¥10 per sight as you go. The best of the bunch include the **Cotton Textile Mill**, the **Shadow Puppet Museum** (performances from 1pm to 3pm Wednesday and

Sunday) and the **Old Trades House**. Half-hour **boat rides** (*per person* ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) along the canal slowly ferry passengers from Number One Bridge to Dongtangtan ( ) and back. Also worth ferreting out is the 19th-century **Catholic Church** ( 50 Nanjie), adjacent to a convent off Qibao Nanjie, south of the canal.

Wander along Bei Dajie north of the canal for souvenirs; Nan Dajie south of the canal is full of snacks and small eateries such as No 26, which sells sweet *tangyuan* (dumplings) and No 9, which is a rarely seen traditional **teahouse** (*storytelling* 🕒 12.20-2.30pm).

## Minsheng Art Museum & Red Town MUSEUM

( *Minsheng Xiandai Meishuguan, Hong Fang*; [Offline map](#); Bldg F, 570 West Huaihai Rd; 570 admission ¥20; 🕒 10am-9pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Hongqiao Rd) Although sponsored mainly by the Minsheng Bank, this edgy art space also counts the Tate, Centre Pompidou, MoMA and Guggenheim among its partners, so it should come as no surprise that the exhibits (about three per year) are generally excellent. Adding to its street cred is artistic director Zhou Tiehai, one of Shanghai's most well-known artists. It's located in the sculpture-dotted Red Town complex (formerly the No 10 Steel Factory).

## Courses

Learn how to balance your yin and yang with the following courses.

### The Kitchen at... COOKING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 6433 2700; [www.thekitchenat.com](http://www.thekitchenat.com); Bldg 20, 3rd fl, 383 South Xiangyang Rd; 383 20 3 🚇 South Shanxi Rd) Great culinary school offering courses in regional Chinese and Western cuisines; good for both long-term residents and short-term visitors.

### Chinese Cooking Workshop

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)


([www.chinesecookingworkshop.com](http://www.chinesecookingworkshop.com)) Learn different Chinese cooking

styles from dim sum to Sichuanese. It also offers market tours and courses for kids.

## Longwu Kungfu Center *MARTIAL ARTS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Longwu Gongfu Guan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6287 1528;

[www.longwukungfu.com](http://www.longwukungfu.com); 1 South Maoming Rd; 1  South Shaanxi Rd) The largest centre in the city, with classes in Chinese, Japanese and Korean martial arts, children's classes and lessons in English.

## SHANGHAI FOR CHILDREN

Shanghai isn't exactly at the top of most kids' holiday wish lists, but the new Disney theme park in Pudong (estimated completion date 2015) will no doubt improve its future standing. In the meantime, if you're passing through the city with children, the following sights should keep the entire family entertained.

- » Shanghai World Financial Center ([Click here](#)) or Jinmao Tower ([Click here](#))
- » Shanghai History Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Shanghai Ocean Aquarium ([Click here](#))
- » Science & Technology Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Acrobatics show ([Click here](#))
- » Bus tours (see the boxed text, [Click here](#))

Note that, in general, 1.4m (4ft 7in) is the cut-off height for children's tickets. Children under 0.8m (2ft 7in) normally get in for free.

If sightseeing mutiny strikes, also check out the following:

- » **Happy Valley** ( *Huanle Gu*; <http://sh.happyvalley.cn>; adult/child 1.2-1.4m ¥200/100; Linyin Ave, Sheshan, Songjiang County; ☎ 9am-6pm;  Sheshan, Line 9) Popular national amusement park an hour from Shanghai by metro.
- » **Dino Beach** ( *Redai Fengbao*; [www.dinobeach.com.cn](http://www.dinobeach.com.cn); 78 Xinzhen Rd; 78 admission ¥100-200; ☎ 10am-11pm Tue-Sun, 2-11pm Mon Jun-Sep;  Xinzhuang, Line 1, then bus No 763 or 173) Way down in south Shanghai, this water park has a beach, a wave pool and water slides.
- » **Shanghai Zoo** ( *Shanghai Dongwuyuan*; [Offline map](#); [www.shanghaizoo.cn](http://www.shanghaizoo.cn); 2381 Hongqiao Rd; 2381 adult/child ¥40/20; ☎ 6.30am-6pm Apr-Sep, to 5pm Oct-Mar;  Shanghai Zoo) As Chinese zoos go, this is just about the best there is.

## Tours

From boats to bikes to buses, organised tours offer a great introduction to Shanghai.

### **BOHDI** CYCLING TOUR

(📞 5266 9013; [www.bohdi.com.cn](http://www.bohdi.com.cn); tours ¥220) Night-time cycling tours on Tuesdays (March to November) and trips around the region.

### **Huangpu River Cruise (The Bund)** BOAT TOUR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huangpujiang Youlanchuan*; [Offline map](#); 219-239 East Zhongshan No 2 Rd; 219-239 tickets ¥128; 🕒 11am-8.30pm) Ninety-minute cruises run from the south end of the Bund (near East Jinling Rd) up to the Shanghai Port International Cruise Terminal and back – and then they do it all over again. Try to find a rarer 40- to 60-minute cruise (¥100), which only makes the trip once.

### **Huangpu River Cruise (Pudong)** BOAT TOUR

(*Huangpujiang Youlanchuan*; [Offline map](#); Pearl Dock; tickets ¥100; 🕒 10am-1.30pm; 🚇 Lujiazui) Six 40-minute cruises depart from Pudong.

### **Shanghai Sideways** MOTORCYCLE TOUR

([www.shanghaisideways.com](http://www.shanghaisideways.com); tours from ¥800) Unusual motorcycle-sidecar tours of the city for up to two passengers, setting off from the Peninsula Hotel.

### **Shanghai Sightseeing Buses** BUS TOUR

(*Shanghai Luyou Jisan Zhongxin*; [www.chinassbc.com](http://www.chinassbc.com); 🚇 Shanghai Stadium) Daily tours from Shanghai Stadium to nearby canal towns (eg Tongli, Nanxun and Zhouzhuang). Convenient, but less fun than visiting on your own. For more bus tours, see the boxed text ([Click here](#)).

## SISU CYCLING TOUR

(☎ 5059 6071; [www.sisucycling.com](http://www.sisucycling.com); tour ¥150) Night-time cycling tours on Wednesdays, and trips out of town.

## Suzhou Creek Boat Tours BOAT TOUR

( *Suzhouhe Youlanchuan*; Changhua Rd Dock, 1250 Yichang Rd; 1250 Danba Rd Dock, 2690 West Guangfu Rd; 2690 tickets ¥80-150; 🕒 1.30-8.15pm; 🚇 Changshou Rd, then taxi) One-way or 1¾-hour round trips along newly dredged Suzhou Creek from Changhua Rd Dock to Danba Rd Dock near Changfeng Park in Putuo district. You can board the boat from either dock. Plans are to extend the trip east to Waibaidu Bridge north of the Bund. Charter boats are also available.

## GOING FOR A RIDE

Tickets for the handy hop-on, hop-off open-top **City Sightseeing Buses** (☎ 6252 0000; [www.springtour.com](http://www.springtour.com); tickets ¥30; 🕒 9am-8.30pm summer, 6pm winter) last 24 hours and are, besides touring Shanghai's highlights, a great way to get around the city centre and Pudong. A recorded commentary runs in eight languages: just plug in your earphones (supplied). Buses have their own stops across central Shanghai, including the Bund, the Old Town and People's Sq. **Big Bus Tours** (☎ 6351 5988; [www.bigbustours.com](http://www.bigbustours.com); adult/child US\$44/29) also operate hop-on, hop-off bus services, lassoing in the top sights along 22 stops across two routes. Tickets are valid for 48 hours and include a one-hour boat tour of the Huangpu River plus admission to the 88th-floor observation tower of the Jinmao Tower.

## Festivals & Events

### Lantern Festival TRADITIONAL

A colourful time to visit Yuyuan Gardens. People make *yuanxiao* or *tangyuan* (glutinous rice dumplings with sweet fillings) and some carry paper lanterns on the streets. The **lantern festival** ( *Yanxiao Jie*) falls on the 15th day of the first lunar month (14 February 2014 and 5

March 2015).


### **Shanghai International Literary Festival** LITERARY

Held in March or April, this massively popular **festival** (*Shanghai Guoji Wenxue Yishu Jie*) for bibliophiles is staged in the Glamour Bar ([Click here](#)), with international and local authors in attendance.

### **Longhua Temple Fair** TRADITIONAL

This **fair** (*Longhua Si Miaohui*) at Longhua Temple, held for several weeks during the third lunar month (late March, April or early May), is eastern China's largest and oldest folk gathering, with all kinds of snacks, stalls, jugglers and stilt walkers.

### **Formula 1** SPORT

([www.formula1.com](http://www.formula1.com); 2000 Yining Rd, Jiading;  Shanghai International Circuit, Line 11) The slick Shanghai International Circuit hosts several high-profile motor-racing competitions, including the hotly contested Formula 1 in April.

### **Dragon Boat Festival** SPORT

Celebrated on the fifth day of the fifth lunar month (12 June 2013, 2 June 2014, 20 June 2015), this **festival** (*Duanwu Jie*) sees dragon boats raced along Suzhou Creek.

### **China Shanghai International Arts Festival** ARTS

(*Zhongguo Shanghai Guoji Yishu Jie*; [www.artsbird.com](http://www.artsbird.com)) A month-long program of cultural events held in October and November, including the Shanghai Art Fair, international music, dance, opera, acrobatics and the Shanghai Biennale.

## **WANT MORE?**

For in-depth information, reviews and recommendations at your fingertips, head to the Apple App Store to purchase Lonely Planet's *Shanghai City Guide* iPhone app.

Alternatively, head to [Lonely Planet](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/china/shanghai) ([www.lonelyplanet.com/china/shanghai](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/china/shanghai)) for planning advice, author recommendations, traveller reviews and insider tips.

## Sleeping

Shanghai's sleeping options are excellent at either end of the spectrum, though quality in the midrange market remains in short supply – it's best to do your homework and secure a room well ahead of time. Don't forget top-end hotels, however, as discounts often make them considerably affordable. In general, hotels fall into five main categories: luxury skyscraper hotels, historic old villa and apartment block hotels, boutique hotels, Chinese chain hotels, and hostels. There's also a handful of B&Bs, though these are relatively scarce.

The most central neighbourhoods are the Bund and People's Sq. If you'd rather be based in a more residential area, consider the French Concession and Jing'an, where unique choices exist. Pudong is perfect for panoramas and high-altitude rooms, with a price tag.

Rack rates are listed here, but discounts are standard outside holiday periods. Four- and five-star hotels add a 10% or 15% service charge (sometimes negotiable).

For hotel bookings, the online agencies [CTrip](http://www.ctrip.com) (☎ 400 619 9999; <http://english.ctrip.com>) and [Elong](http://www.elong.net) (☎ 400 617 1717; [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net)) are good choices.

## THE BUND & PEOPLE'S SQUARE



### **Astor House Hotel** HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Pujiang Fandian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6324 6388; [www.astorhousehotel.com](http://www.astorhousehotel.com); 15 Huangpu Rd; 15 d/ste ¥1280/2800; 📶; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) Stuffed with history (and perhaps a ghost or two), this august old-timer shakes up an impressive cocktail from select ingredients: a location just off the Bund, old world Shanghai charm, great discounts and colossal rooms. There's enough wood panelling to build an ark, and you could shove a bed in the capacious

bathrooms, while the original polished wooden floorboards, corridors and galleries (the forlorn-looking Richard's Bar and massage parlours aside) pitch the mood somewhere between British public school and Victorian asylum. Only partial wi-fi cover; broadband is ¥60 per day. Discounts of 40%.

## Fairmont Peace Hotel *HISTORIC HOTEL* \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

(*Fei'ermeng Heping Fandian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6321 6888;

[www.fairmont.com](http://www.fairmont.com); 20 East Nanjing Rd; 20 d ¥2200-3400; 🚇 East

Nanjing Rd; 🚶🏻‍♂️🚶🏻‍♀️🚶🏻‍♂️🚶🏻‍♀️) If anywhere in town fully conveys the swish

sensations of 1930s Shanghai, it's the old Cathay rising majestically

from the Bund (see the boxed text, [Click here](#)). Reopened in 2010

after years of renovations, it's since reasserted its claim as one of the

city's most iconic hotels. Rooms are decked out in art deco style, from

the light fixtures on down to the coffee tables, and the entire hotel is

cast in the warm, subdued tints of a bygone era. Wi-fi access is an

extra ¥99 per day.

DON'T MISS

### KEEPING THE PEACE

Lording it over the corner of East Nanjing and East Zhongshan Rds is the most famous building on the Bund, the landmark [Fairmont Peace Hotel](#), constructed between 1926 and 1929. It was originally built as the Sassoon House, with Victor Sassoon's famous Cathay Hotel on the 4th to the 7th floors. It was not a hotel for the hoi polloi, with a guest list running to Charlie Chaplin, George Bernard Shaw and Noel Coward, who penned *Private Lives* here in four days in 1930 when he had the flu. Sassoon himself spent weekdays in his personal suite on the top floor, just beneath the green pyramid.

You don't have to be a guest to admire the wonderful art deco lobby and magnificent rotunda or listen to the old jazz band ([Click here](#)) in the evening. It's also possible to arrange an hour-long tour (¥100) of the premises through the [Peace Gallery](#) (📞 6321 6888, ext 6751; 🕒 10am-7pm), a small museumlike space that contains hotel memorabilia and is hidden up a flight of stairs near the main entrance. It's recommended you book a half-day in advance.



## Marvel Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shangyue Qingnianhui Dajiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 3305 9999; [www.marvelhotels.com.cn](http://www.marvelhotels.com.cn); 123 South Xizang Rd; 123 d ¥1080-1580; 📍📞; 🚇 *Dashijie*) Occupying the former YMCA building (1931) just south of People's Sq, the Marvel is one of the city's standout midrange hotels. The successful mix of history, central location and modern comfort (broadband access via the TV, soundproofed windows, comfy down pillows) makes it one of Shanghai's best-value hotels. Wi-fi in the lobby only.

## Chai Living Residences *APARTMENT* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(☎ 3366 3209; [www.chailiving.com](http://www.chailiving.com); *Embankment Building, 400 North Suzhou Rd; 400 apt 3 days/1 week/1 month from ¥3300/6000/13500*; 🚇 *Tiantong Rd*; 📍📞📶) If you need a stylish Shanghai address for three days or more (minimum stay), you can't get much better than these swish individually-styled apartments in the art deco Embankment Building, a living, breathing residential block (bumping into local tenants merely adds authentic charm). Apartments range from 40 to 200 sq metres, with daily maid service, underfloor heating, kitchens and tantalising river views.

## Langham Yangtze Boutique *BOUTIQUE HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Langting Yangzi Jingpin Binguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6080 0800; [www.langhamhotels.com](http://www.langhamhotels.com); 740 Hankou Rd; 740 d ¥1300-1800; 🚇 *People's Square*; 📍📞📶) Originally built in the 1930s, this art deco beauty was refurbished and reopened in 2010. In addition to period decor, rooms feature deep baths, glass-walled bathrooms (with Venetian blinds) and even tiny balconies – a rarity in Shanghai. The hammam and sauna in the fabulous Chuan spa are complimentary for guests; breakfast is served in the Italian restaurant Ciao. Wi-fi costs extra.

## JW Marriott Tomorrow Square LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Mingtian Guangchang JW Wanyi Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 5359 4969; [www.marriott-hotels.com/shajw](http://www.marriott-hotels.com/shajw); 399 West Nanjing Rd; 399 d ¥2180-3330; 🚗🌐📶📶📶; 🚇 *People's Square*) Victor Sassoon probably would have traded in his old digs in a heartbeat if he could have stayed in the chairman's suite here. Housed across the upper 24 floors of one of Shanghai's most dramatic towers, the JW Marriott boasts marvellously appointed rooms with spectacular vistas (the view over People's Sq from the 38th-floor lobby cafe is something in itself) and showers with hydraulic massage functions to soak away the stress. Wi-fi access is an extra ¥120 per day.

## Les Suites Orient LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dongfang Shanglu Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6320 0088; [www.hotelsuitesorient.com](http://www.hotelsuitesorient.com); 1 East Jinling Rd; 1 d ¥1580-2280; 🚇 *Yuyuan Garden*; 🚗🌐📶📶📶) Located at the southern edge of the Bund, Les Suites Orient is notable as the only hotel on the strip with standard rooms (Bund Studio) that have fantastic river and Bund views – in some rooms even the bathtub has a view. It's housed in a modern 23-storey tower, with hardwood floors and minimalist design adding to the appealingly chic interior. Excellent service.

## Peninsula Hotel LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Bandao Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 2327 2888; [www.peninsula.com](http://www.peninsula.com); 32 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; 32 d ¥2300-4600; 🚗🌐📶📶📶; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*) This luxury hotel at the Bund's northern end combines art deco motifs with Shanghai modernity, but it's the little touches that distinguish it from the numerous other five-star places in the neighbourhood: a TV in the bathtub, valet box, Nespresso machine, and fabulous views across the river or out onto the gardens of the former British consulate.

## Waldorf Astoria LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huaer Daofu Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6322 9988;

[www.waldorfastorianshanghai.com](http://www.waldorfastorianshanghai.com); 2 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; 2 d ¥2500-3500; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd; 🚗🌐📶📺) Marking the southern end of the Bund is the stately Shanghai Club (1910), once the Bund's most exclusive gentlemen's club. The 20 original rooms here were reconverted in 2010 to house the Waldorf Astoria's premium suites, six of which look out onto Huangpu River. Behind this heritage building is a new hotel tower, which holds 252 state-of-the-art rooms, each featuring luxuries such as touch digital controls, espresso machine, walk-in closet and even a TV in the mirror.

## Motel 268 MOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Motai Liansuo Luguan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 5179 3333;

[www.motel168.com](http://www.motel168.com); 50 Ningbo Rd; 50 d ¥268-308; 🌐📶📺; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) The ever-dependable Motel 268 comes through with modern doubles near the Bund, with huge beds, wood-trimmed furnishings, and smartly tiled chrome and glass bathrooms. Check the website for other locations around Shanghai, including the **Motel 168**

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📍 5153 3333; 531 East Jinling Rd; d ¥311-338; 🌐📶; 🚇 Dashijie) near People's Sq.

## Mingtown Nanjing Road Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Mingtang Shanghai Nanjing Lu Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6322 0939; 258 Tianjin Rd; 258 dm ¥55, s/d ¥150/220; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd; 🌐📶) This new Mingtown hostel is located halfway between the Bund and People's Sq and is just a short hop away from the nearest metro station. The six-bed dorms each have a private bathroom, laminated wood flooring and simple particleboard decor; perks include laundry, a real kitchen, bar-restaurant, DVD room and pool table.

## Mingtown Etour Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Xinyitu Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6327 7766; 55 Jiangyin Rd; 55 dm ¥55, d without/with bathroom ¥160/260; \*@☎; M People's Square) The Etour has a choice location just behind People's Sq, and pleasant rooms (many with reproduction antique furniture) to boot. But it's the tranquil courtyard with fish pond and split-level bar-restaurant that really sells this one. The superb communal area comes with computers, a projector-screen DVD player, free pool table and plenty of outdoor seating.

## Mingtown Hiker Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Luxingzhe Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6329 7889; 450 Middle Jiangxi Rd; 450 dm without/with window ¥50/55, s/d ¥160/220; \*@; M East Nanjing Rd) A short hike from the Bund, this is a well-located and friendly hostel. Rooms include tidy four- and six-bed dorms (some with shower, cheapest without windows) and a handful of good-value luxury doubles, decorated in a Chinese style. There's a bar with pool table, free movies, and internet access. Wi-fi in the lobby only.

## Soho People's Square Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( *Suzhou Hepan Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 5888 8817; 1307 South Suzhou Rd; 1307 dm without/with bathroom ¥55/65, d ¥200-300, tr ¥400; \*@☎; M Xinzha Rd) Set in a former warehouse along Suzhou Creek, this spacious hostel features high ceilings, painted murals on the walls and oodles of laid-back common space. It's a bit out of the way, but only a five-minute walk from the Xinzha Rd metro station on Line 1, which runs direct through People's Sq and the French Concession. Laundry and some kitchen facilities (microwave, fridge) available.

## The Phoenix HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Laoshan Kezhan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6328 8680;

[www.thephoenixshanghai.com](http://www.thephoenixshanghai.com); 17 South Yunnan Rd; 17 dm/d ¥55/230; 📶@📶; 🚇 *Dashijie*) Although the corridors are a bit grotty, the rooms at this friendly place are actually in pretty good shape. Dorms sleep eight people, and doubles are more appealing than similar choices in more expensive midrange hotels. The rooftop bar and ground-floor Shaanxi dumpling restaurant adds to the appeal. Good location close to People's Sq.

### **Captain Hostel** HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Chuanzhang Qingnian Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6323 5053;

[www.captainhostel.com.cn](http://www.captainhostel.com.cn); 37 Fuzhou Rd; 37 dm ¥65, r ¥358-458; 📶@) Hands down the least-friendly youth hostel in Shanghai, this state-run place still reels in punters by the boatload with its fantastic location off the Bund and spot-on rooftop bar. Wi-fi in the lobby area only.

## **OLD TOWN & SOUTH BUND**

### **The Waterhouse at South Bund** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

(☎ 6080 2988; [www.waterhouseshanghai.com](http://www.waterhouseshanghai.com); 1-3 Maojiayuan Rd, Lane 479, South Zhongshan Rd; 479 1-3; d ¥1100-2800; 🚇 *Xiaonanmen*; 📶@📶) This 19-room, four-storey South Bund converted 1930s warehouse right by the Cool Docks has excellent views, with natty guestrooms (some with terrace) dressed with swish designer furniture. The ethos is industrial chic, capped by a lovely rooftop bar.

### **Hotel Indigo Shanghai on the Bund** HOTEL \$\$\$

(*Yingdige Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); [www.hotelindigo.com](http://www.hotelindigo.com); 585 East Zhongshan No 2 Rd; 585 d ¥4546-5006; @📶📶; 🚇 *Xiaonanmen*) With its creatively conceived lobby, the towering Hotel Indigo is a stylish South Bund arrival overlooking the Huangpu River. The chic and playful rooms are all colourful cushions, whimsical design, lovely rugs and spotless shower rooms, while the infinity pool is a dream. Regular

discounts reach up to 60%.

## FRENCH CONCESSION

### Langham Xintiandi LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xintiandi Langting Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 2330 2288;

<http://xintiandi.langhamhotels.com>; 99 Madang Rd; 99 r ¥1550-2900;

🚇 *Changshu Rd*; 🚶🌳📶🚰) Xintiandi has become a magnet for luxury hotels and they don't come much nicer than this one. Its 357 rooms all feature huge floor-to-ceiling windows, plenty of space to spread out and an attention to minute details: Japanese-style wooden tubs in suites, heated bathroom floors and white orchids in bloom year-round.

### Andaz LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Andashi Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 2310 1234;

<http://shanghai.andaz.hyatt.com>; 88 Songshan Rd; 88 r ¥1820-2820;

🚇 *South Huangpi Rd*; 🚶🌳📶🚰) Housed in one of the twin skyscrapers just north of Xintiandi, Andaz brought in Japanese interior designer Super Potato to lay out the rooms, and the result is a hip, modern space, with clean lines, natural materials (hardwood floors, granite bathrooms) and the signature LED lighting, which can be customised to suit your mood. Discounts of up to 35% online.



### Magnolia Bed & Breakfast B&B \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.magnoliabnbshanghai.com](http://www.magnoliabnbshanghai.com); 36 Yanqing Rd; 36 r ¥650-1200; 🚶

🌳📶; 🚇 *Changshu Rd*) Opened by the duo that started the cooking school The Kitchen at... ([Click here](#)), this cosy little B&B is located in a 1927 French Concession home. It's Shanghai all the way, with an art deco starting point followed by a stylish quest for modernity in both comfort and design. While the five rooms are on the small side, the place is a true labour of love and you couldn't ask for a better neighbourhood to base yourself.

## Quintet B&B \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 6249 9088; [www.quintet-shanghai.com](http://www.quintet-shanghai.com); 808 Changle Rd; 808 d ¥850-1200; 🚗📶📶; 🚇 Changshu Rd) This chic B&B has six beautiful double rooms in a 1930s townhouse that's not short on character. Some of the rooms are on the small side, but each is decorated with style, incorporating modern luxuries such as big-screen satellite TV, wi-fi and laptop-sized safes, with more classic touches such as stripped-wood floorboards and deep porcelain bathtubs. No elevator.

## Kevin's Old House B&B \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Laoshiguang Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6248 6800; [www.kevinsoldhouse.com](http://www.kevinsoldhouse.com); No 4, Lane 946, Changle Rd; 946 4 ste ¥1180-1280; 🚇 Changshu Rd; 📶📶) Housed in a secluded 1927 French Concession villa, this lovely boutique hotel has been lovingly restored to create an elegant yet affordable place to stay. Six suites are spread throughout the house; each is decorated with care and comes with wooden floorboards, traditional Chinese furniture, stylish artwork and a few antiques.

## Hengshan Moller Villa HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Hengshan Male Bieshu Fandian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6247 8881; [www.mollervilla.com](http://www.mollervilla.com); 30 South Shaanxi Rd; 30 r ¥1500-2800; 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd; 📶📶) This fairy-tale castle lookalike, built by Swedish businessman and horse-racing fanatic Eric Moller, was a family home until 1949 when the Communist Youth League took it over. One of Shanghai's strangest buildings, it's nonetheless a gorgeous place, with parquet floors in the lobby and a lush garden in the back. Wi-fi in the lobby only.

## Ruijin Hotel HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Ruijin Binguan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6472 5222; [www.ruijinhotelsh.com](http://www.ruijinhotelsh.com); 118 *Ruijin No 2 Rd, French Concession East*; 118 *d standard/executive* ¥1320/2310; 🚇 *South Shaanxi Rd*; 📶📶) There are four buildings in this lovely garden estate, but the one you want is building No 1, a 1919 red-brick mansion and the former residence of Benjamin Morris, one-time owner of *North China Daily News*. Expect discounts of 20%.

## Blue Mountain Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Lanshan Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6304 3938; [www.bmhostel.com](http://www.bmhostel.com); Bldg 1, 2nd fl, 1072 *Quxi Rd*; 1072 1 2 *dm* ¥55-65 *d* ¥190; 📶📶📶; 🚇 *Luban Rd*) A good hostel that's not exactly in the thick of things, but it is next to a metro station so transport is at least convenient. Rooms are simple but clean, and there are women-only, men-only and mixed dorms. The communal facilities are excellent, including a bar-restaurant area with free pool table, internet and films, plus a kitchen and washing machines.

## Hanting Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Hanting Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 5465 6633; [www.htinns.com](http://www.htinns.com); 233 *South Shaanxi Rd, French Concession East*; 233 *d from* ¥339; 📶📶📶; 🚇 *South Shaanxi Rd or Jiashan Rd*) Although rooms are a bit on the small side at this midrange chain, they're nonetheless spotless and in good condition, with a sprig of plastic ivy on the air conditioner to add that special touch. English is limited.

## WEST NANJING ROAD & JING'AN

### **Urbn** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 5153 4600; [www.urbnhotels.com](http://www.urbnhotels.com); 183 *Jiaozhou Rd*; 183 *r from* ¥1500; 🚶📶📶; 🚇 *Changping Rd*) China's first carbon-neutral hotel not only uses recyclable materials and low-energy products where



possible, it also calculates its complete carbon footprint – including staff commutes and delivery journeys – then offsets it by donating money to environmentally friendly projects. The 26 open-plan rooms are beautifully designed with low furniture and sunken living areas exuding space.



## Le Tour Traveler's Rest Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Letu Jing'an Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6267 1912; [www.letourshanghai.com](http://www.letourshanghai.com); 36, Alley 319, Jiaozhou Rd; 319 36 dm/d ¥70/260; 📶📶📶; 🚇 *Jing'an Temple*) Housed in a former towel factory, this fabulous youth hostel leaves most others out to dry. Sitting quietly in a *lilong* (alleyway), this great place has bundles of space, and the old-Shanghai textures continue once inside, with red-brick interior walls and reproduced stone gateways above doorways. Internet, laundry, kitchen, free umbrella loan, table tennis and a pool table.

## Jia Shanghai BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(☎ 6217 9000; [www.jiashanghai.com](http://www.jiashanghai.com); 931 West Nanjing Rd; 931 studio ¥2500; 📶📶📶) It's easy to miss the understated and anonymous front door of this chic boutique hotel (entrance down Taixing Rd), announced with an unassumingly minute plaque. Offbeat, fun and modish, the lobby ornaments (funky birdcages, amusingly designed clocks) and dapper staff prepare you for the colourful studio rooms in this 1920s building. Discounts of up to 50%.

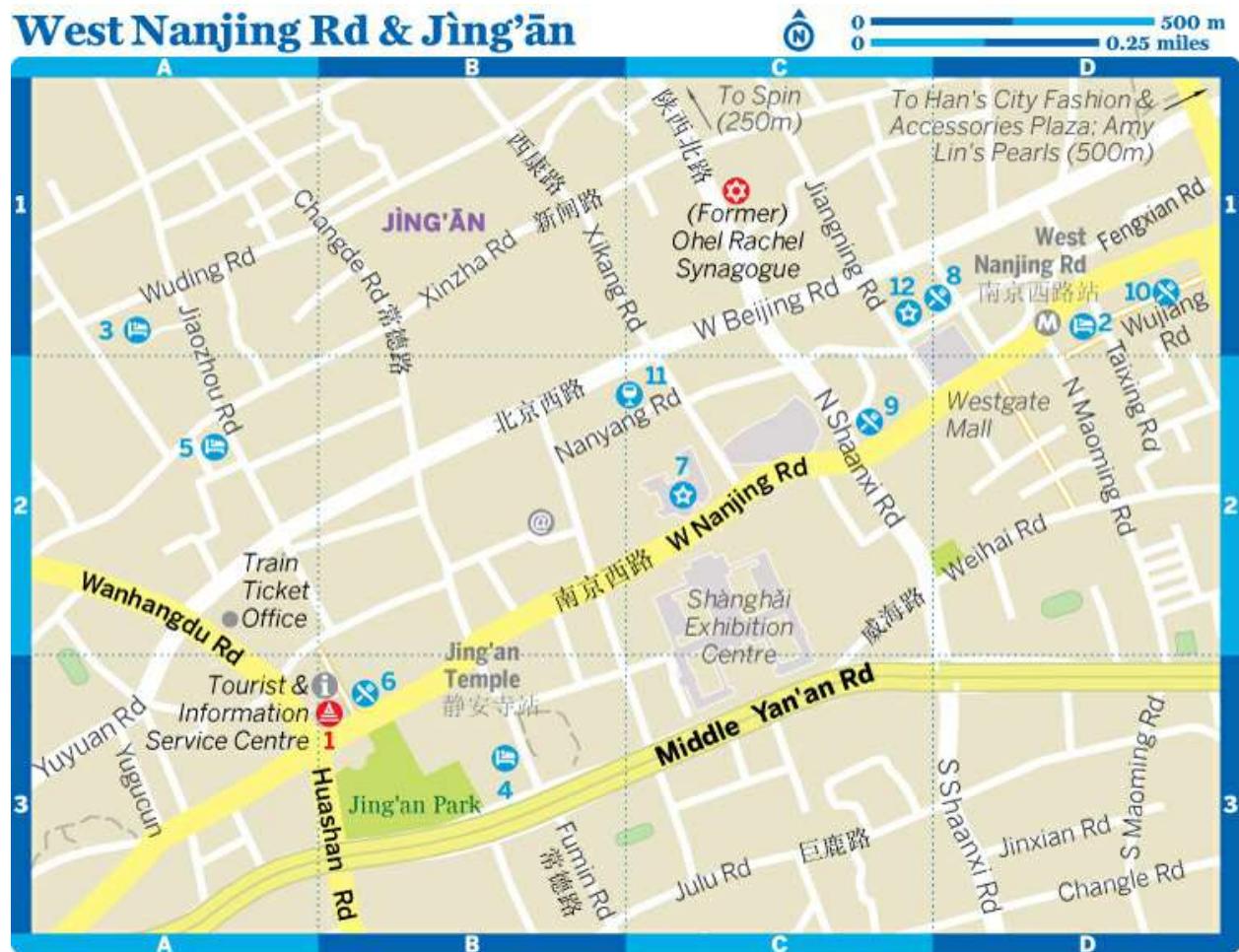
## Puli LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Puli Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 3203 9999; [www.thepuli.com](http://www.thepuli.com); 1 Changde Rd; 1 d from ¥3380; 📶📶📶📶; 🚇 *Jing'an Temple*) A future-forward Shanghai edifice, with open-space rooms divided by hanging screens, and an understated beige and mahogany colour scheme accentuated by the beauty of a few well-placed orchids. Twenty-five storeys high, the Puli makes a strong case for stylish skyscrapers. Book ahead for

discounts of up to 60%.



## West Nanjing Road & Jing'an

### Sights

- 1 [Jing'an Temple](#) B3

### Sleeping

- 2 [Jia Shanghai](#) D1
- 3 [Le Tour Traveler's Rest Youth Hostel](#) A1
- 4 [Puli](#) B3
- 5 [Urbn](#) A2

## Eating

[6 Guyi Hunan Restaurant](#) B3

[7 Shanghai Centre](#) C2

[8 Vegetarian Lifestyle](#) D1

[9 Wagas](#) C2

[10 Wujiang Rd Food Street](#) D1

## Drinking

[11 Big Bamboo](#) C2

## Entertainment

[Green Massage](#) (see 7)

[Shanghai Centre Theatre](#) (see 7)

[12 Shanghai Cultural Information & Booking Centre](#) C1

## PUDONG NEW AREA



### **The Ritz-Carlton Shanghai Pudong** LUXURY HOTEL

\$\$\$

(*Shanghai Pudong Lisi Ka'erdun Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 2020 1888; [www.ritzcarlton.com](http://www.ritzcarlton.com); *Shanghai IFC, 8 Century Ave; 8 d from ¥2400*; 📶 @📶📶; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) From the stingray skin effect wallpaper in the lift to its exquisite accommodation and stunning alfresco bar, the deliciously styled 285-room Ritz-Carlton in the Shanghai IFC seizes the much-contested Pudong hotel crown with aplomb. The beautifully designed rooms – a blend of feminine colours, eye-catching art deco motifs, chic elegance and dramatic Bund-side views – are a stylistic triumph. Divided from the room by a screen, delightful open plan bathrooms feature deep and inviting freestanding bathtubs.

### **Park Hyatt** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Boyue Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6888 1234;

[www.parkhyattshanghai.com](http://www.parkhyattshanghai.com); *100 Century Ave; 100 d from ¥3600*; 📶

@☎☎; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) Spanning the 79th to 93rd floors of the towering Shanghai World Financial Center, this stratospheric hotel is cool. Beyond the ample windows, the huge towers below dwarf into Lego blocks while from the lobby your view grazes the tip of the Jinmao Tower. The 174-room hotel is modern and subdued with deco touches: high-walled corridors with beige and brown fabric and tranquilising grey-stone hues lead to luxurious rooms where in-room espresso machines, mist-free bathroom mirrors (containing a small TV screen) and automatically opening toilet seats await. The Park Hyatt is accessed from the south side of the tower. Discounts of up to 20%.

### **Jumeirah Himalayas Hotel** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

( *Zhuomeiya Ximalaya Jiudian*; 📍 3858 0888; [www.jumeirah.com](http://www.jumeirah.com); 1108 Meihua Rd; 1108 d ¥4149, ste ¥5989-6564; ☎@☎☎; 🚇 *Huama Rd*) Its awesome lobby is festooned with traditional Chinese paintings as an overhead screen swarms with hypnotic images above a Chinese pavilion – this hotel is jaw-dropping. Feng shui-planned rooms are gorgeous and spacious, designed with a strong accent on traditional Chinese aesthetics, given a highly contemporary twist. Discounts are good, but book ahead. The hotel is located south of Century Park, at the junction of Huama Rd and Fangdian Rd, very near Huama Rd metro station.

### **Grand Hyatt** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jinmao Kaiyue Dajiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📍 5049 1234; [www.shanghai.grand.hyatt.com](http://www.shanghai.grand.hyatt.com); 88 Century Ave; 88 d from ¥2500; ☎@☎☎; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) Commencing on the 54th floor of the Jinmao Tower, the 555-room Grand Hyatt is still one of Shanghai's finest. Its once unimpeachable standard for quality high-rise hotel living in Shanghai drew inevitable competition, but an ongoing floor-by-floor refurbishment has pepped up rooms, with eye-catching calligraphic Tang-dynasty poems above beds, espresso-making machines and smart tan leather work desks. Corner rooms are coveted, and the neck-craning 33-storey atrium is always astonishing, while service remains highly attentive and restaurants outstanding.

## Eating

In true Shanghai style, today's restaurant scene is a reflection of the city's craving for outside trends and tastes, whether it's Hunanese spice or French foie gras. Most visitors will gravitate to the Chinese end of the spectrum, of course, for that's where the best cooking is.

While a dinner overlooking the Huangpu River or safe in the Xintiandi bubble makes for a nice treat, real foodies know that the best restaurants in China are often where you least expect to find them. Part of the fun of eating out in Shanghai is stumbling across those tiny places in malls, metro stations or down backstreets that offer an inimitable dining experience. Don't be put off by eating in chain restaurants; many of Shanghai's better eateries have branches scattered across town.

Shanghai cuisine itself is generally sweeter than other Chinese cuisines, and is heavy on fish and seafood. Classic dishes and snacks to look for include *xunyu* (; smoked fish), *hongshao rou* (; braised pork belly), *shengjian* (; fried dumplings) and the *xiaolongbao* (Shanghai's steamed dumpling copied everywhere else in China but only true to form here. Make sure to reserve at fancier places.

## THE BUND & PEOPLE'S SQUARE

### Lost Heaven CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huama Tiantang*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6330 0967; [www.lostheaven.com.cn](http://www.lostheaven.com.cn); 17 East Yan'an Rd; 17 dishes ¥38-180; 🚶🚗; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) Lost Heaven might not have the views that keep its rivals in business, but why go to the same old Western restaurants when you can get sophisticated Bai, Dai and Miao folk cuisine from China's mighty southwest? Specialities are flowers (banana and pomegranate), wild mushrooms, chillies, Burmese curries, Bai chicken and superb pu-erh teas, all served in gorgeous Yunnan-meets-Shanghai surrounds.



### Hongyi Plaza CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Hongyi Guoji Guangchang*; [Offline map](#); 299 East Nanjing Rd; 299 meals from ¥30; 📶; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) Not all malls are created equal: the Hongyi effortlessly slices and dices the competition with its star-studded restaurant line-up, and the whole shebang is a mere stone's throw from the waterfront. Top picks here are South Memory (6th floor), which specialises in spicy Hunanese; Dolar Hotpot (5th floor), whose delicious sauce bar makes it popular even outside of winter; Charme (4th floor), a rip-roarin' Hong Kong-style tea restaurant; Wagas (ground floor), Shanghai's own wi-fi cafe chain; and Ajisen (basement), king of Japanese ramen.

## **Yuxin Chuancai** SICHUANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 5th fl, Huasheng Tower, 399 Jiujiang Rd; 399 5 dishes ¥18-98; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd; 📶📶) A regular contender for Shanghai's best Sichuanese, Yuxin pulls no punches when it comes to the blistering chillies and numbing peppercorns.

## **Nanxiang Steamed Bun Restaurant** DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nanxiang Mantou Dian*; [Offline map](#); 2nd fl, 666 Fuzhou Rd; 666 2 steamer 8 dumplings ¥25-50; 🚇 People's Square; 📶) Pleasant branch of Shanghai's most famous *xiaolongbao* restaurant near People's Sq.

## **FOOD STREETS**

Shanghai's food streets are great spots for gourmands to search for something new. It's not really street food like elsewhere in Asia, but rather a collection of tiny restaurants, each specialising in a different Chinese cuisine.

With a prime central location near People's Park, **Huanghe Rd** (*Huanghe Lu Meishi Jie*; [Offline map](#); 🚇 People's Square) covers all the bases from cheap lunches to late-night post-theatre snacks. It's best for dumplings – get 'em fried at **Yang's Fry Dumplings** (No 97) or served up in bamboo steamers across the road at **Jijia Soup Dumplings** (No 90).

**Yunnan Rd** (*Yunnan Lu Meishi Jie*; 🚇 Dashijie) has some interesting speciality restaurants and is just the spot for an authentic meal after museum-hopping at People's

Sq. Look out for Shaanxi specialities at No 15 and five-fragrance dim sum at **Wu Fang Zhai** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ; No 28). You can also find *yan shui ya* (; salted duck) – it's better than it sounds – and Mongolian hotpot here.

## **el Willy** SPANISH \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 5404 5757; [www.el-willy.com](http://www.el-willy.com); 5th fl, 22 East Zhongshan No 2 Rd; 22 5 tapas ¥45-165, rice for 2 ¥195-265; ☺ Mon-Sat; 🚗🚶; 🚇 Yuyuan Garden) The unstoppable energy of colourful sock-wearing Barcelona chef Willy fuels this new South Bund space, which ups its charms with cool river views through the 5th-floor arched windows. Take a taxi from the metro station.

## **M on the Bund** CONTINENTAL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Mishi Xicanting*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6350 9988; [www.m-onthebund.com](http://www.m-onthebund.com); 7th fl, 20 Guangdong Rd; 20 7 mains ¥188-288, 2-course lunches ¥186; 🚗🚶; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) With table linen flapping in the breeze alongside exclusive rooftop views to Pudong, the grand dame of the Bund still elicits applause from Shanghai's gastronomes.

## **Shanghai Grandmother** CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Laolao*; [Offline map](#); 70 Fuzhou Rd; 70 dishes ¥20-52; 🚶; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) This packed home-style eatery is within easy striking distance of the Bund and handy for a casual lunch or dinner. You can't go wrong with the classics, like Grandma's braised pork and fried tomato and egg.

## **Food Republic** FOOD COURT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dashidai*; [Offline map](#); 6th fl, Raffles City, 268 Middle Xizang Rd; 268 meals from ¥40; 🚇 People's Square) King of the food courts, Food

Republic offers Asian cuisines in abundance for busy diners, with handy branches around town – this one overlooks the nonstop action on People’s Sq. Prepay, grab a card (¥10 deposit) and head to the stall of your choice for on-the-spot service.

## OLD TOWN & SOUTH BUND

### Din Tai Fung SHANGHAINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); [www.dintaifungsh.com.cn](http://www.dintaifungsh.com.cn); 2nd fl, Yu Fashion Garden, 168 Middle Fangbang Rd; 168 2 dumplings from ¥29; ☎ 10.30am-10pm; 🚶🚶; 🚇 Yuyuan Garden) This brightly lit and busy Taiwan-owned chain – one of six branches in town – delivers scrummy Shanghai *xiaolongbao* at the apex of flavour – not cheap, but worth every *jiao*. Service is top-notch.

### Kebabs on the Grille INDIAN \$\$

(📍 6152 6567; No 8, The Cool Docks, 479 South Zhongshan Rd; 479 mains from ¥45, steamed rice ¥25, naan ¥20; ☎ 11am-10.30pm; 🚶🚶; 🚇 Xiaonanmen) This very popular Cool Docks restaurant is a real crowd-pleaser. The Boti Mutton (barbecued lamb pieces) is adorable, and there’s a delicious range of tandoori dishes, live table-top grills, an excellent range of vegetarian options, and an all-you-can-eat Sunday brunch (¥150).

### Char STEAKHOUSE \$\$\$

([Offline map](#); 📍 3302 9995; [www.char-thebund.com](http://www.char-thebund.com); 29-31 fl, Hotel Indigo Shanghai on the Bund, 585 East Zhongshan No 2 Rd; steaks from ¥390, burger ¥290, other mains from ¥140; ☎ 6-10pm; 🚶🚶; 🚇 Xiaonanmen) Park yourself on a sofa and size up your Tajima Wagyu rib-eye steak, grilled black cod, seafood tower and stirring views of Lujiazui. The views continue in spectacular fashion from the terrace of the supremely chilled-out upstairs bar. Book ahead.

### Songyuelou VEGETARIAN, CHINESE \$



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 99 Jiujiachang Rd; dishes ¥25-48; 🕒 7am-10pm; 📍📞; 🚗) *Yuyuan Garden*) This humble spot is Shanghai's oldest veggie restaurant, with the usual mix of tofu masquerading as meat. English menu on the 2nd floor.

## FRENCH CONCESSION

 **Yin** CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 5466 5070; 2nd fl, 4 Hengshan Rd; 4 2 dishes ¥38-108; 📞📍; 🚗 *Hengshan Rd*) A throwback to the 1930s, Yin emanates soft, jazzy decadence with its antique furnishings, Song dynasty-style tableware and Ella Fitzgerald on the stereo. It has standout regional dishes from across China, including the superbly named 'squid lost in a sandstorm'.

**Di Shui Dong** HUNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 6253 2689; 2nd fl, 56 South Maoming Rd; 56 2 dishes ¥25-88; 📞📍; 🚗 *South Shaanxi Rd*) Shanghai's oldest Hunanese restaurant is surprisingly down-home, but the menu is sure-fire, albeit mild for one of China's spiciest culinary traditions. The spicy bean curd and *ziran* (cumin) ribs hit the mark; flesh out the meal with Mao's stewed pork.

**Xinjishi** SHANGHAINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 6336 4746; Xintiandi North Block, Bldg 9; 9 dishes ¥38-88; 📞📍; 🚗 *South Huangpi Rd or Xintiandi*) Delectable Shanghainese home cooking in swish surrounds: specialities include crab dumplings, stuffed red dates and the classic Grandma's braised pork. Several branches.

## Spicy Joint SICHUANESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xinxianghui*; [Offline map](#); 3rd fl, K Wah Center, 1028 Middle Huaihai Rd; 1028 3 dishes ¥12-58; 📶📶; 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd) The blistering heat at this Sichuanese joint is matched only by its scorching popularity. Dishes are inexpensive by the city's standards; favourites include massive bowls of spicy catfish in hot chilli oil, smoked tea duck and chilli-coated lamb chops. They may ask for a mobile number to secure a place in the queue.

## Southern Barbarian CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nanmanzi*; [Offline map](#); 📞 5157 5510; 2nd fl, 169 Jinxian Rd; 169 2 dishes ¥25-68; 📶; 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd) Despite the alarming name, there's nothing remotely barbaric about the food here. Instead you get superb MSG-free Yunnan cuisine: barbecued snapper, beef and mint casserole, chicken wings and the famous Yunnan goat cheese. Enter through the mall.

## Baoluo Jiulou SHANGHAINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📞 6279 2827; 271 Fumin Rd; 271 dishes ¥20-68; 🕒 11am-3am; 📶; 🚇 Changshu Rd or Jing'an Temple) Gather up a boisterous bunch of friends for a fun-filled meal at this typically chaotic and cavernous Shanghai institution, which has lines out the door late into the night. Try the excellent lion's head meatballs, lotus-leaf roasted duck or the *baoluo kaoman* (; baked eel).

## Crystal Jade DIM SUM \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Feicui Jiujiu*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6385 8752; Xintiandi South Block, 2nd fl, Bldg 6; 123 6 2 noodles & dim sum ¥16-40; 📶; 🚇 South Huangpi Rd or Xintiandi) What distinguishes Crystal Jade from other dim sum restaurants is the dough: dumpling wrappers are perfectly tender,

steamed buns come out light and airy, and the fresh noodles have been pulled to perfection. Go for lunch, when both Cantonese and Shanghainese dim sum are served. It's located in the mall, on the same floor as an equally popular branch of Din Tai Fung ([Click here](#)).

### **Sichuan Citizen** SICHUANESE \$\$

(*Longmen Chenchu Wu*; [Offline map](#); 📍 5404 1235; 30 Donghu Rd; 30 dishes ¥28-98; 📶📍; 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd) Citizen has opted for the 'rustic chic' look: the wood panelling and ceiling fans conjure up visions of an old-style Chengdu teahouse that's been made over for an *Elle* photoshoot. But the food is the real stuff, prepared by a Sichuan kitchen crew to ensure no Shanghainese sweetness creeps into the peppercorn onslaught.

### **Simply Thai** THAI \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Tiantai Canting*; [Offline map](#); 📍 6445 9551; 5c Dongping Rd; 5 C dishes ¥48-68; 📶📍; 🚇 Changshu Rd) Everyone raves about this place for its delicious MSG-free curries and salads, and crisp decor. There's nice outdoor seating, a decent wine list and good-value lunch specials. Another branch is in Xintiandi.

### **Ferguson Lane** ITALIAN, FRENCH \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Wukang Ting*; [Offline map](#); 376 Wukang Rd; 376 meals ¥48-130; 📶📍; 🚇 Shanghai Library or Jiaotong University) On those rare days when Shanghai's skies are cloud free, the elegant Ferguson Lane courtyard fills up in the blink of an eye with sun-starved diners. There are several tempting options, including **Coffee Tree** (☺ 9am-10pm; 📶), which features panini, salads and organic coffee, and French bistro fare at **Franck** (📍 6437 6465; ☺ Tue-Sun, lunch Sat & Sun only).

### **Noodle Bull** NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Henniu Mian*; [Offline map](#); 3b, 291 Fumin Rd; 291 1F3b noodles ¥28-35; 🍴📍; 🚇 *Changshu Rd or South Shaanxi Rd*) Far cooler than your average street-corner noodle stand (minimalist concrete chic and funky bowls), Noodle Bull's secret ingredient is the super-slurpable MSG-free broth. Entrance is on Changle Rd.

## Cha's CANTONESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Cha Canting*; [Offline map](#); 30 Sinan Rd; 30 dishes ¥20-50; 🍴📍; 🚇 *South Shaanxi Rd*) Busy, retro Hong Kong-style diner (sweet and sour pork, baked salt chicken, noodles). Plan on a minimum 15-minute wait.

## Bankura JAPANESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wanzang*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6215 0373; 344 Changle Rd; 344 noodles ¥30-45; 🍴📍; 🚇 *South Shaanxi Rd*) Underground Japanese noodle bar, with delectable extras such as grilled fish, curried prawns and fried shiitake mushrooms.

## Haiku JAPANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Yinquan Zhi Yu*; [Offline map](#); 📞 6445 0021; 28b Taojiang Rd; 28 maki rolls ¥68-98; 🍴📍; 🚇 *Changshu Rd*) Wacky maki rolls from the Ninja (prawns, crab and killer spicy sauce) and the Philly (cream cheese and salmon) to the Pimp My Roll (everything).

## Xibo Grill CENTRAL ASIAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xibo Canting*; [Offline map](#); 📞 5403 8330; 3rd fl, 83 Changshu Rd; 83 3 dishes ¥52-98; 🍴📍; 🚇 *Changshu Rd*) If you're in need of a mutton fix, try out the 3rd-floor terrace of this stylish Xinjiang joint.

## WEST NANJING ROAD & JING'AN

### Fu 1039 SHANGHAINESE \$\$\$

(Fu Yao Ling San Jiu; [Offline map](#); ☎ 5237 1878; 1039 Yuyuan Rd; 1039 dishes ¥48-108; 📍; 🚇 Jiangsu Rd) Set in a three-storey 1913 villa, Fu is upmarket Shanghainese all the way, with an unusual old-fashioned charm in a city hell-bent on modern design. Not easy to find, it rewards the persistent with succulent standards such as the smoked fish starter and stewed pork in soy sauce.

To get here, follow Yuyuan Rd west from the metro station for about 200m (after crossing Jiangsu Rd) and then turn south down an alley. The unmarked entrance will be the first on your left. There's a minimum charge of ¥200 per person.



### Wujiang Road Food St FOOD STREET \$

(Wujiang Rd; meals from ¥30; 🚇 West Nanjing Rd) This two-block pedestrian snack strip has still got the goods, with plenty of cafes, Japanese and Korean noodle joints, and ice-cream vendors. For Shanghainese, head into the mall at No 269 (above the metro station exit) and look for Yang's Fry Dumplings or Nanxiang Steamed Bun on the 2nd floor.

### Guyi Hunan Restaurant HUNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Guyi Xiangweinong; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6232 8377; 8th fl, City Plaza, 1618 West Nanjing Rd; 1618 8 dishes ¥28-98; 🚇 Jing'an Temple; 📍) Classy Hunanese dining and mouth-watering cumin ribs right next to Jing'an Temple (in the mall).



### Vegetarian Lifestyle CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Zaozi Shu; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6215 7566; 258 Fengxian Rd; 258 dishes ¥22-68; 📍; 🚇 West Nanjing Rd) For light and healthy organic

vegetarian Chinese food, with zero meat and precious little oil, this welcoming place has excellent fare. The health-conscious, eco-friendly mentality extends all the way to the toothpicks, made of cornflour.

## Shanghai Centre *DUMPLINGS, PIZZERIA* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Shangcheng*; [Offline map](#); 1376 West Nanjing Rd; 1376 pizza ¥58-88; 🚶📶📱📺; 🚇 *Jing'an Temple or West Nanjing Rd*) You can't beat the Shanghai Centre for gourmet offerings: to-die-for dumplings from Din Tai Fung, super smoothies from Element Fresh, thin-crust pies from Pizza Marzano, and carrot cake and sandwiches from Baker & Spice.

## Wagas *CAFE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wogesi*; [Offline map](#); [www.wagas.com.cn](http://www.wagas.com.cn); 11a, Citic Sq, 1168 West Nanjing Rd; 1168 11a meals from ¥48; 🕒 7am-10pm; 🚶📶📱📺; 🚇 *West Nanjing Rd*) Breakfasts are 50% off before 10am, pasta is ¥38 after 6pm, you can hang out here for hours with your laptop and no one will shoo you away – need we say more? Locations abound.

## PUDONG NEW AREA

## South Beauty *SICHUANESE, CANTONESE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Qiao Jiangnan*; 📞 5047 1817; 10th fl, Superbrand Mall, 168 West Lujiazui Rd; 168 10; dishes from ¥18; 🕒 11am-10pm; 🚇 *Lujiazui*) Views, views and more views – while everyone else is gazing at Pudong's lights, you can stare back at them with loaded chopsticks from this elegant Sichuan-Cantonese combo. Reserve for window seats.

## Element Fresh *SANDWICHES* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Xinyuansu; [Offline map](#); [www.elementfresh.com](http://www.elementfresh.com); 1st fl, Superbrand Mall, 168 West Lujiazui Rd; 168 breakfast ¥38-88; 📶🚶📶; 🚇 Lujiazui) This funky Pudong outpost of the Element Fresh chain provides healthy eats through the day from endless coffee refills on breakfasts for early starters to terrific salads, hefty sandwiches, pastas, smoothies and a kid's menu through the day.

## NORTH SHANGHAI (HONGKOU)



### Guoyuan HUNAN \$

(520 Dongjiangwan Rd; 520 meals from ¥30; 🚇 Hongkou Football Stadium) The cool lime-green tablecloths do little to prepare you for the serious red-hot, chilli-infused flavours of this fantastic Hunan restaurant not too far north of Hongkou Football Stadium metro station. The *tieban niurou* (; sizzling beef platter; ¥30) is a magnificent dish, but its fiery flavours are almost eclipsed by the enticing *xiangwei qiezibao* (; Hunan flavour aubergine hotpot).

## SOUTH SHANGHAI (XUJIAHUI)

### 1001 Noodles House NOODLES \$

(Unit 502, 5th fl, Grand Gateway; 5 502 noodles from ¥22; 📶🕒 10am-10pm; 🚇 Xujiahui) The *yuxiang* shredded pork noodles (¥22) or pork chop noodles (¥26) are served in ample and comely bowls at this spotless, sophisticated but cheap noodle house for the dapper dining set in Grand Gateway.

### Xinjiang Fengwei Restaurant UIGHUR \$

(Weiwu'er Canting; 280 Yishan Rd; 280 dishes from ¥15; 🕒 10am-2am; 📶; 🚇 Yishan Rd or Xujiahui) Kashgar kitsch is the name of the game at this raucous upstairs Uighur restaurant with the bright brass grill out the front, tinsel on the banisters and a menu of tasty Xinjiang grilled lamb dishes. Things start buzzing from early evening when the music and dance kick in.


## Drinking

Shanghai is awash with watering holes, their fortunes cresting and falling with the vagaries of the latest vogue. Drinks are pricier here than in the rest of China, retailing from around ¥40 (beer) or ¥60 (cocktails) at most places, so happy-hour visits (typically 5pm to 8pm) can be crucial. Bars open either for lunch or in the late afternoon, calling it a night at around 2am.

## THE BUND & PEOPLE'S SQUARE



### Glamour Bar COCKTAIL BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Meili Jiuba*; [Offline map](#); [www.m-glamour.com](http://www.m-glamour.com); 6th fl, 20 Guangdong Rd; 20 6 ☎ 5pm-late;  East Nanjing Rd) Michelle Garnaut's stylish bar is set in a splendidly restored space just beneath M on the Bund. In addition to mixing great drinks, it hosts an annual literary festival, music performances and China-related book launches.



### Long Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lang Ba*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6322 9988; 2 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; 2 ☎ 4pm-1am;  East Nanjing Rd; ) For a taste of colonial-era Shanghai's elitist trappings, you'll do no better than the gorgeous Long Bar inside the Waldorf Astoria. This was once the members' only Shanghai Club, whose most spectacular accoutrement was a 34m-long wooden bar, said to be the longest in Asia.

### Captain's Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Chuanzhang Qingnian Jiuba*; [Offline map](#); 6th fl, 37 Fuzhou Rd; 37 6 ☎ 11am-2am; ;  East Nanjing Rd) There's the odd drunken sailor and the crummy lift needs a rethink, but this is a fine Bund-side terrace-equipped bar atop the Captain Hostel. Come for cheap drinks and phosphorescent nocturnal Pudong views, with pizza and without



wall-to-wall preening sophisticates.

## Barbarossa BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Babalusha Huisuo*; [Offline map](#); *People's Park, 231 West Nanjing Rd; 231 ☎ 11am-2am*; 📶; 🚇 *People's Square*) Bringing a whiff of Middle Eastern promise to the Pearl of the Orient, this Moroccan-styled bar-restaurant sits pondside in People's Park like something from a mirage. It's more than a mere novelty: there's excellent music, outside seating and evening views.

## New Heights BAR, CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xin Shijiao*; [Offline map](#); *7th fl, Three on the Bund, 3 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; 3 7 ☎ 11am-1.30am*; 📶; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*) The terrace of this casual Three on the Bund bar pretty much has *the* definitive angle on Lujiazui's neon nightfall overture.

## Bar Rouge BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*7th fl, Bund 18, 18 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; 18 7 ☎ 6pm-2am Sun-Thu, to 4.30am Fri & Sat*; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*) Bar Rouge attracts a cashed-up party crowd who come for the fantastic views from the terrace and the all-night DJ parties.

## Atanu BAR, CAFE


[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Atanu Kafei Jiuba*; [Offline map](#); *1 Zhongshan East No 2 Rd; 1 ☎ 10am-2am*; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*) Located on the top two floors of the former signal tower at the Bund's southern terminus, this is an ideal pit stop.

## OLD TOWN


## Old Shanghai Teahouse TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lao Shanghai Chaguan*; [Offline map](#); 385 Middle Fangbang Rd; 385 ☺  
9am-9pm;  Yuyuan Garden) Heading up here is like barging into  
someone's attic, where ancient gramophones, records, typewriters,  
fire extinguishers and even an ancient Frigidaire refrigerator share  
space with the aroma of Chinese tea and tempting snacks.

## **Moonlight Teahouse** TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)



(*Gengyueren Chaguan*; [Offline map](#); 4th fl, 235 Middle Fangbang Rd;  
235 4 ☺ 10am-11pm;  Yuyuan Garden) Squirreled away on the 4th  
floor, the Qing-dynasty setting of stone carvings, Chinese lions and  
antiques is unrepentently faux, but this is a relaxing place caressed  
with traditional Chinese music and infused with the aroma of tea. It's  
next to the Temple of the Town God, on the corner of Anren St (); take  
the lift.

## **FRENCH CONCESSION**





## **Abbey Road** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Aibi Zhi Lu*; [Offline map](#); 45 Yueyang Rd; 45 ☺ 4pm-late Mon-Fri,  
8.30am-late Sat & Sun; ;  Changshu Rd) The cheap beer-classic  
rock combination works its stuff again, attracting plenty of regulars to  
this French Concession favourite.

## **Apartment** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(3rd fl, 47 Yongfu Rd; 47 ☺ 11-2am; ;  Shanghai Library) This  
trendy loft-style bar has a dance space located across from the bar  
and a top-level terrace for summer BBQ action.

## **Bell Bar** BAR, CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(<http://bellbar.cn>; Tianzifang, No 11 (back door) Lane 248, Taikang Rd; 248 11 ☹️ 11am-2am; 📶; 🚇 Dapujiao) Perhaps the most discreet of Tianzifang's drinking options, this dimly lit hookah-equipped den is the perfect spot to chill for an hour or three. It's located in the second alley (Lane 248) on the right.

## Kommune CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Gongshe Jiuba; [Offline map](#); Tianzifang, No 7, Lane 210, Taikang Rd; 210 7 ☹️ 8am-midnight; 📶; 🚇 Dapujiao) The original Tianzifang cafe, Kommune is a consistently packed hang-out with outdoor courtyard seating, drinks, big breakfasts and sandwiches on the menu.

## Kaiba BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.kaiba-beerbar.com](http://www.kaiba-beerbar.com); Tianzi-fang, 2nd fl, 169 Middle Jianguo Rd; 169 2 ☹️ 11am-2am; 🚇 Dapujiao; 📶) The Kaiba beer specialists run one of Tianzifang's most popular bars. You'll need to explore to find it.

## Boxing Cat Brewery BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Quanjimao Pijiuwu; [Offline map](#); [www.boxingcatbrewery.com](http://www.boxingcatbrewery.com); Unit 26A, Sinan Mansions, 519 Middle Fuxing Rd; 519 26A; ☹️ 11am-2am; 🚇 Xintiandi) Deservedly popular microbrewery in the Sinan Mansions complex with Southern-style grub.



## Cafe 85°C CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(85 Bashiwu Du Kafeidian; [Offline map](#); 117 South Shaanxi Rd; 117 ☹️ 24hr; 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd) The cheapest caffeine fix (and breakfast) in town, with quality coffee, tea and never-before-seen Taiwanese pastries. Dozens of branches in town.



## Shanghai Brewery *BREWERY*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.shanghaibrewery.com](http://www.shanghaibrewery.com); 15 Dongping Rd; 15 ☺ 10am-2am;  Changshu Rd, Hengshan Rd; ) Hand-crafted microbrews, a huge range of comfort food, pool tables and sports on TV...this massive two-storey hang-out might have it all.

## Time Passage *BAR*



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Zuotian Jintian Mingtian; [Offline map](#); No 183, Lane 1038, Caojiayan Rd; 1038 183 ☺ 5.30pm-2am; ;  Jiangsu Rd) If you like cheap beer an undemanding, lived-in ambience and John and Yoko posters, this businessman-free bar has been charting its passage since 1994.

## JING'AN

### Big Bamboo *SPORTS BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(132 Nanyang Rd; 132 ☺ 9.30am-2am; ;  Jing'an Temple) Huge sports bar ranging over two floors with mammoth sports screen backed up by a constellation of TV sets, Guinness, pool and darts.

### Bandu Cabin *CAFE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Bandu Yinyue; [Offline map](#); 📞 6276 8267; Bldg 11, 50 Moganshan Rd; 50 11 ☺ 10am-6.30pm; ;  Shanghai Railway Station) A welcoming low-key Moganshan Rd Art Centre enclave with pine tables, low-cost menu (noodles, coffee) and traditional Chinese musical events on Saturday evenings at 7.30pm (reserve).

## PUDONG NEW AREA

### Flair *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(58th fl, *The Ritz-Carlton Shanghai Pudong*, 8 Century Ave; 8 58 ☺ 5.30pm-2am; 🚇 Lujiazui) To wow your date (and your bank manager), take the lift to Flair, the highest alfresco terrace in town, for ringside seats onto some of the most sublime neon-scape views of nocturnal Shanghai. Clear evenings are crucial, but drink prices can be sky scraping on the terrace itself (although the bar inside is almost as knock-out).

## Cloud 9 BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jiuchongtian Jiulang*; [Offline map](#); 87th fl, *Jinmao Tower*, 88 Century Ave; 88 87; ☺ 5pm-1am Mon-Fri, 11am-2am Sat & Sun; 🚇 Lujiazui) Atop the Grand Hyatt, this is no longer the highest bar in the city, but it's still cool.

## NORTH SHANGHAI (HONGKOU)

### Vue BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Feichang Shimao*; [Offline map](#); 32nd & 33rd fl, *Hyatt on the Bund*, 199 Huangpu Rd; 199 32-33 ☺ 6pm-1am; 🚇 Tiantong Rd) Extra-sensory nocturnal views of the Bund and Pudong with an outdoor Jacuzzi to go with your glasses of bubbly or Vue martinis (vodka and mango puree).

## ★ Entertainment

There's something for most moods in Shanghai: opera, rock, hip-hop, techno, salsa and early-morning waltzes in People's Sq. None of it comes cheap, however (except for the waltzing, which is free). Expect a night on the town in Shanghai to be comparable to a night out in Hong Kong or Taipei.



## TICKETS

Tickets for all of Shanghai's performing-arts events can be purchased at the venues where the performances take place. Tickets are also available from [Smart Ticket](#) ([www.smartshanghai.com/smartticket](http://www.smartshanghai.com/smartticket)) and the [Shanghai Cultural Information & Booking Centre](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Shanghai Wenhua Xinxi Piaowu Zhongxin*; [Offline map](#) ; ☎ 6217 2426; [www.culture.sh.cn](http://www.culture.sh.cn); 272 Fengxian Rd; 272 🕒 9am-7pm; 🚇 *West Nanjing Rd*), which is directly behind the Westgate Mall on West Nanjing Rd. It often has tickets available when other places have sold out.

## Traditional Performances

The Shanghai acrobatics troupes are among the best in the world, and spending a night watching them spinning plates on poles and contorting themselves into unfeasible anatomical positions never fails to entertain.

### Yifu Theatre OPERA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Yifu Wutai*; [Offline map](#) ; ☎ 6322 5294; 701 Fuzhou Rd; tickets ¥30-280; 🚇 *People's Square*) A block east of People's Sq, this is the main opera theatre in town, staging a variety of regional operatic styles, including Beijing opera, Kunqu opera and Yue opera, with a Beijing opera highlights show several times a week at 1.30pm and 7.15pm.

### Shanghai Centre Theatre ACROBATICS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanghai Shangcheng Juyuan*; [Offline map](#) ; ☎ 6279 8948; [www.pujiangqing.com](http://www.pujiangqing.com); 1376 West Nanjing Rd; 1376 tickets ¥100-280; 🚇 *Jing'an Temple*) The Shanghai Acrobatic Troupe has short but entertaining performances here most nights at 7.30pm. The ticket office is on the right-hand side at the entrance to the Shanghai Centre.

## Live Music

### Fairmont Peace Hotel Jazz Bar *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 6138 6883; 20 East Nanjing Rd; 20 🕒 5.30pm-1am; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) Shanghai's most famous hotel features Shanghai's most famous jazz band, a septuagenarian sextet that's been churning out nostalgic covers like 'Moon River' and 'Summertime' since time immemorial. The original band takes the stage from 7pm to 9.45pm; afterwards it's Theo Croker's smokin' contemporary group (from 10pm to 1am Tuesday to Saturday). Entrance is ¥100; reserve on weekends.

### Yuyintang *ROCK*

( [www.yuyintang.org](http://www.yuyintang.org); 1731 West Yan'an Rd, 1731 admission ¥40; 🕒 8pm- midnight Thu-Sun; 🚇 West Yan'an Rd) Small enough to feel intimate, but big enough for a sometimes pulsating atmosphere, Yuyintang has long been the place in the city to see live music. Rock is the staple diet, but anything goes, from hard punk to gypsy jazz. It's west of the city, on Lines 3 and 4. The entrance is on Kaixuan Rd.

### MAO Livehouse *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.mao-music.com](http://www.mao-music.com); 3rd fl, 308 South Chongqing Rd; 308 3 🚇 Madang Rd) One of the city's best and largest music venues, MAO is a stalwart of the Shanghai music scene, with acts ranging from rock to pop to electronica. Check the website for upcoming shows.

## ACUPRESSURE MASSAGE

Shanghai's midrange massage parlours are a must – for the price of a cocktail or three, you get your own set of PJs, some post-therapy tea and Chinese flute music to chill out with. Just don't expect the masseuses to be gentle. As they say: no pain, no gain. Reserve in advance.

**Dragonfly** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Youting Baojian Huisuo*; [Offline map](#) ; [www.dragonfly.net.cn](http://www.dragonfly.net.cn); massages ¥168-420; ☺ 10am-2am); Donghu Rd (📍 5405 0008; 20 Donghu Rd; 20 **M** South Shaanxi Rd); Xinle Rd (📍 5403 9982; 206 Xinle Rd; 206 **M** South Shaanxi Rd) Offers hour-long Chinese body massages, Japanese-style shiatsu and traditional foot massages in soothing surroundings. There are several branches around town.

**Green Massage** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Qing Zhuanye Anmo*; [www.greenmassage.com.cn](http://www.greenmassage.com.cn); massages ¥118-528; ☺ 10.30am-2am) French Concession (📍 5386 0222; 58 Taicang Rd; 58 **M** South Huangpi Rd); Jing'an (📍 6289 7776; 2nd fl, Shanghai Centre, 1376 West Nanjing Rd; 1376 2 **M** Jing'an Temple) Has 45-minute *tuina* and shiatsu massages with Chinese cupping and hour-long foot massages.

## Nightclubs

Shanghai's swift transition from dead zone to party animal and its reputation as a city on the move forges an inventive clubbing attitude and a constant stream of clubbers. There's a high turnover, so check listings websites and magazines for the latest on the club scene.

### Shelter CLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(5 Yongfu Rd; 5 ☺ 9pm-4am Wed-Sun; **M** Shanghai Library) The darling of the underground crowd, Shelter is a converted bomb shelter where you can count on great music and cheap drinks. A good line-up of DJs and hip-hop artists pass through; admission for big shows is around ¥30.

### No 88 CLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(88 Souhao Baba Jiuba; [Offline map](#) ; [www.no88bar.com](http://www.no88bar.com); 2nd fl, 291 Fumin Rd; 291 ☺ 9pm-6am; **M** South Shaanxi Rd or Changshu Rd) One of the city's most popular party spots, this is the place to go when you're ready to get down China style. The interior is totally over the top – you have to see it to believe it.

### Lola CLUB



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.lolaclubshanghai.com](http://www.lolaclubshanghai.com); Bldg 4, Surpass Ct, 570 Yongjia Rd; 570 ☹️ 10pm-3am Tue-Sat; 🚇 Hengshan Rd) A superior sound system and wall-to-ceiling video projections that sync with the beat pull in the crowds at this first-rate club, opened by a trio of Catalan DJs.

## DADA CLUB

(115 Xingfu Rd; 115 ☹️ 8pm-late; 🚇 Jiaotong University) This friendly no-frills place out by Jiaotong University is one of Shanghai's most popular dives, specialising in cheap drinks, Tuesday-night slasher flicks (free popcorn) and popular weekend dance parties.

## Gay & Lesbian Venues

### Shanghai Studio GAY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Jianong Xiuxian; [Offline map](#); No 4, Lane 1950, Middle Huaihai Rd; 1950 4 ☹️ 9pm-2am; 🚇 Jiaotong University) This hip addition to the Shanghai gay scene has transformed the cool depths of a former bomb shelter into a laid-back bar, art gallery and men's underwear shop.

### Eddy's Bar GAY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Jianong Kafei; [Offline map](#); 1877 Middle Huaihai Rd; ☹️ 8pm-2am; 🚇 Jiaotong University) A gay-friendly bar-cafe attracting a slightly more mature Chinese and international gay crowd with inexpensive drinks and neat decor.

## Classical Music, Opera & Theatre

### Shanghai Grand Theatre PERFORMING ARTS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Shanghai Dajuyuan; [Offline map](#); ☎️ 6386 8686; [www.shgtheatre.com](http://www.shgtheatre.com); 300 Renmin Ave; 300 tickets ¥50-2280; 🚇 People's Square) This


state-of-the-art venue is in People's Sq and features both national and international opera, dance, music and theatre performances.

## Cinemas

Only a limited (and generally late) selection of foreign-language films makes it to cinemas, and they are often dubbed into Chinese, so ensure your film is *yingwenban* (; English-language version). Tickets generally cost ¥70 to ¥100; you could also look out for free movie screenings in bars around town.


### Peace Cinema CINEMA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Heping Yingdu*; [Offline map](#); 290 Middle Xizang Rd; 290  People's Square) A useful location at People's Sq, with an IMAX cinema.

### Cathay Theatre CINEMA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guotai Dianyingyuan*; [Offline map](#); 870 Middle Huaihai Rd; 870  South Shaanxi Rd) Landmark 1932 art deco theatre in the French Concession.

## Shopping

It is no exaggeration to say that there are some people who come to Shanghai specifically to shop. What the city lacks in terms of historical sights, it makes up for with its fashion-forward attitude and great bargains. From megamalls to independent boutiques and haute couture, Shanghai is once again at the forefront of Chinese fashion and design.

## WHERE CAN I FIND...

» **Faux antiques and souvenirs?** Old St or the Dongtai Rd Antique Market in the Old Town.

- » **Local fashion?** Tianzifang and the French Concession (Xinle and Changle Rds).
- » **Tailormade clothing and fabric?** Shiliupu Fabric Market in the Old Town.
- » **Discount (OK, fake) clothing and accessories?** Han City Fashion & Accessories Plaza in Jing'an or the AP Xinyang Fashion & Gifts Market in Pudong.
- » **Real pearls?** Amy Lin's Pearls in Jing'an.
- » **Handicrafts?** Brocade Country, Yu or Suzhou Cobblers.
- » **Electronics? My laptop crashed in Sichuan!** Cybermart or the Apple Store in the French Concession.

## THE BUND & PEOPLE'S SQUARE

### Annabel Lee *FASHION*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Anli Jiaju*; [Offline map](#); [www.annabelle.com](http://www.annabelle.com); No 1, Lane 8, East Zhongshan No 1 Rd; ☎ 10am-10pm; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) On the Bund, Annabel Lee sells a lovely range of playfully designed, soft-coloured accessories in silk, linen and cashmere, many of which feature delicate embroidery. There's another branch in Xintiandi.

### Shanghai Museum Shop *ART*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghai Bowuguan Shangdian*; [Offline map](#); 201 Renmin Ave; ☎ 9am-5pm; 🚇 People's Square) This shop sells excellent but expensive imitations of museum pieces, which are far superior to the mediocre clutter in tourist shops.

### Suzhou Cobblers *SHOES*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghai Qixiang Yishupin*; [Offline map](#); [www.suzhou-cobblers.com](http://www.suzhou-cobblers.com); Room 101, 17 Fuzhou Rd; ☎ 10am-6pm; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) For hand-embroidered silk slippers and shoes, pop into this minute shop just off the Bund.

## Cybermart *ELECTRONICS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Saibo Shuma Guangchang*; [Offline map](#); 1 Middle Huaihai Rd; 1 ☺ 10am-8pm; [M](#) *Dashijie*) Cybermart is the most central and reliable location for all sorts of gadgetry, including laptops, digital cameras and memory sticks. You can try to bargain, but don't expect enormous discounts.

## Foreign Languages Bookstore *BOOKS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Waiwen Shudian*; [Offline map](#); 390 Fuzhou Rd; ☺ 9.30am-6pm Sun-Thu, to 7pm Fri & Sat; [M](#) *East Nanjing Rd*) Hit the 1st floor for guidebooks and China-related material, and the 4th floor for imported non-fiction and novels.

## Shanghai No 1 (First) Food Store *FOOD*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shanghaishi Diyi Shipin Shangdian*; [Offline map](#); 720 East Nanjing Rd; ☺ 9.30am-10pm; [M](#) *East Nanjing Rd*) It's bedlam, but this is how the Shanghainese shop and it's a lot of fun. Trawl the ground floor for egg tarts, moon cakes, dried mushrooms, ginseng and dried seafood, or pop a straw into a thirst-quenching coconut.

## OLD TOWN

Yuyuan Bazaar is a frantic sprawl of souvenir shops with some choice gift-giving ideas and quality handicrafts, from painted snuff bottles to paper and leather silhouette cuttings, delightful Chinese kites, embroidered paintings, and clever palm and finger paintings, but sadly the hard sale is off-putting. Shops along nearby [Old Street](#) (*老街*; *Middle Fangbang Rd*; [Offline map](#)) are more ye olde, selling everything under the Shanghai sun from calligraphy to teapots, memorabilia, woodcuts, reproduction 1930s posters and surreal 3D dazzle photos of kittens.

## Shiliupu Fabric Market *FABRIC*

( *Shiliupu Mianliao Cheng*; [Offline map](#); 2 *Zhonghua Rd*; 2 ☹️ 8.30am-6.30pm; [M](#) *Xiaonanmen*) Expats and travellers line up for made-to-measure clothing at this market, popular for its bolts of cheap silk, cashmere, wool, linen and cotton. Follow Middle Fangbang Rd from the Yuyuan Bazaar east towards the river and you'll reach it after about 10 minutes (500m).

## Dongtai Rd Antique Market *SOUVENIRS*

( *Dongtailu Gushangpin Shichang*; [Offline map](#); *Dongtai Rd*; ☹️ 8.30am-6pm; [M](#) *Laoximen*) West of the Old Town towards Xintiandi, the Dongtai Rd Antique Market is a long sprawl of miniature terracotta warriors, Guanyin figures, imperial robes, walnut-faced *luohan* (arhat) statues, twee lotus shoes, fake old tin cars, helicopter pilot helmets and Mao-era knick-knacks; generally only recent stuff such as art deco ornaments are genuine. Get haggling.

## FRENCH CONCESSION

The French Concession is where it's at for shoppers; there are boutiques on almost every corner. For a one-stop trip head to Tianzifang. With more time, start near the South Shaanxi metro station and try South Maoming Rd for tailormade *qipao* (a tight-fitting Chinese-style dress that came into fashion in 1920s Shanghai), and Xinle and Nanchang Rds (between Ruijin No 1 and S Chengdu Rds) for more contemporary fashion. Afternoon and evening are the best hours for browsing: some smaller shops don't open their doors until noon, but most stay open until 10pm.

## Tianzifang *FASHION, SOUVENIRS*

( [Offline map](#); *Taikang Rd*; ☹️ 10am-8pm; [M](#) *Dapuqiao*) Burrow into the *lilong* here for a rewarding haul of creative boutiques, selling everything from hip jewellery and yak-wool scarves to retro communist dinnerware. Stores get shuffled around about as regularly as mahjong tiles, but keep your eyes peeled for [Shanghai 1936](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Unit 110, No 3, Lane 210*) offering tailored Chinese

clothing, **Woo** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Unit 7, No 10, Lane 210) for scarves and shawls, and **Chouchou Chic** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (No 47, Lane 248) for kid's clothes, as well as artsy tea shop **Zhenchalin Tea** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (No 13, Lane 210).

## **Xintiandi** FASHION

(*cnr Taicang & Madang Rds; ☎ 11am-11pm; 🚇 South Huangpi Rd or Xintiandi*) Browse the north block for upmarket boutiques, from the fluorescent chic of **Shanghai Tang** (Bldg 15) to embroidered accessories at **Annabel Lee** (Bldg 3), and the mall **Xintiandi Style** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Xintiandi Shishang; 245 Madang Lu; 245*), which features a handful of local designers including la vie, Heirloom, The Thing and Shanghai Trio. It's the second mall at the end of the South Block.

## **NuoMi** CLOTHING, JEWELLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nuomi; [Offline map](#); 196 Xinle Rd; 196 🚇 Changshu Rd*) This Shanghai-based label seems to do everything right: gorgeous dresses made from organic cotton, silk and bamboo, eye-catching jewellery fashioned from recycled materials, and a sustainable business plan that gives back to the community.

## **XinleLu.com** CLOTHING, VINTAGE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*[www.xinlelu.com](http://www.xinlelu.com); 87 Wuyuan Rd; 87 ☎ noon-10pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Changshu Rd*) Local style mavens XinleLu.com have finally ventured out into the offline world with this original showroom, displaying the best of its handpicked bags, shoes and dresses from local designers. Also sharing the space is vintage store William the Beekeeper.

## **Yu** CERAMICS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*[Offline map](#); 164 Fumin Rd; 164 ☎ 11am-9pm; 🚇 Changshu Rd*) Man

Zhang and her husband create the personable porcelain at this tiny shop, the latest link in the Shanghai-Jingdezhen connection, which is an excellent place to browse for handmade and handpainted teaware, bowls and vases.

## Brocade Country *HANDICRAFTS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jinxiu Fang*; [Offline map](#); 616 *Julu Rd*; 616 ☺ 10.30am-7pm; **M** *Changshu Rd*) Exquisite collection of minority handicrafts from China's southwest, personally selected by owner, Liu Xiaolan a Guizhou native.

## Garden Books *BOOKS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Taofen Xiwen Shuju*; [Offline map](#); 325 *Changle Rd*; 325 ☺ 10am-10pm; **Wi-Fi**; **M** *South Shaanxi Rd*) Ice-cream parlour or bookshop? You decide.

## Apple Store *ELECTRONICS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)


(*Hong Kong Plaza North Block*, 282 *Middle Huaihai Rd*; 282 ☺ 10am-10pm; **Wi-Fi**; **M** *South Huangpi Rd*) Stop by the Genius Bar for advice or troubleshooting, get online or browse the latest wonders of the tech world in this two-floor Apple outlet.

## JING'AN

### Spin *CERAMICS*


(*Xuan*; [Offline map](#); 360 *Kangding Rd*; 360 ☺ 11am-9.30pm; **M** *Changping Rd*) New-wave and snazzy Jingdezhen ceramics, from cool celadon tones and oblong teacups to 'kung-fu' vases, presented in a sharp and crisp showroom.

### Amy Lin's Pearls *PEARLS*

(Aimin Linshi Zhenzhu; [Offline map](#); Room 30, 3rd fl, 580 West Nanjing Rd; 580 3 30 ☎ 10am-8pm;  West Nanjing Rd) Shanghai's most reliable retailer of pearls of all colours and sizes, which come for a fraction of the price that you'd pay back home.

## Han City Fashion & Accessories Plaza


CLOTHING, SOUVENIRS

(Hancheng Fushi Lipin Guangchang; [Offline map](#); 580 West Nanjing Rd; 580 ☎ 9am-9pm;  West Nanjing Rd) This unassuming-looking building is one of the best locations to pick up bargain T-shirts, jackets, bags and so on, with hundreds of stalls spread across several floors. Bargain hard.

## PUDONG


### IFC Mall MALL

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(IFC, 8 Century Ave; [www.shanghaiifcmall.com.cn](http://www.shanghaiifcmall.com.cn); ☎ 10am-10pm;  Lujiazui) This incredibly glam and glitzy six-storey mall beneath the Cesar Pelli-designed twin towers of the Shanghai International Finance Center (IFC) hosts a swish coterie of top-name brands from Armani and Prada to Vivienne Westwood, along with some dining options.

### AP Xinyang Fashion & Gifts Market


CLOTHING, SOUVENIRS

(Yada Xinyang Fushi Lipin Shichang; ☎ 10am-8pm;  Science & Technology Museum) Well worth a trip, this mammoth underground market by the Science & Technology Museum metro station is Shanghai's largest collection of shopping stalls, with a separate market devoted to pearls. Shop vendors are persistent and clawing, with scouts at metro exit turnstiles to turn shoppers their way. Haggling is the *lingua franca*.

## HONGKOU



## Qipu Market *CLOTHING, SHOES*


( *Qipu Fuzhuang Shichang*; 168 & 183 Qipu Rd; 168 & 183 ☺ 7am-5pm;  *Tiantong Rd*) One big 'everything must go now' sale, this is Shanghai's cheapest and most full-on clothes and shoes market. Haggle hard.

## Information


Free English and bilingual maps of Shanghai are available at airports, tourist information & service centres, bookshops and many hotels. Metro maps (; *ditie xianlutu*) are usually available at all stations.


### Internet Access

Internet cafes are now scarce in touristy areas – it's more convenient to get online at your hotel or at a wi-fi hotspot. Otherwise, ask your hotel for the closest *wangba* (; internet cafe) and take your passport.


**Bule Internet Cafe** ( *Bule Wangba*; ; 2nd fl, *Moling Rd*; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) Corner of Moling Rd by main Shanghai Train Station.

**Eastday Bar** ( *Dongfang Wangdian*; 30 East Yuyuan Rd; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr)

**Internet Cafe** ( *Wangba*; ; 3rd fl, 565 *Dongchang Rd*; per hr ¥4; ☺ 8am-midnight) Just off South Pudong Rd.

**Internet Cafe** ( *Wangba*; ; per hr ¥5; ☺ 24hr) Down the escalator, across the road opposite the main Shanghai Train Station.

**Internet Cafe** ( *Wangba Youyicheng*; 5th fl, eastern entrance to *Duolun Rd*; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr)

**Jidu Internet Cafe** ( *Jidu Wangluo*; ; 2nd fl, cnr *Changle & North Xiangyang Rds*; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr)

**Tashi Internet Cafe** ( *Tashi Wangba*; 3rd fl, 18 *Yuyuanzhi Rd*; 18 3 per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr)

**Xiwang Internet Cafe** ( *Xiwang Wangba*; ; 515 *Fuzhou Rd*; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr)

### Media

Grab free copies of *That's Shanghai*, *City Weekend* and *Time Out Shanghai* from an expat-centric restaurant or bar and for a plug into what's on in town, from art exhibitions and club nights to restaurant openings.

## Medical Services

**Huashan World Wide Medical Center** (☎ 6248 3986; [www.sh-hwmc.com.cn](http://www.sh-hwmc.com.cn); 12 Middle Wulumuqi Rd; 12 🚇 Changshu Rd) Hospital treatment and outpatient consultations are available at the 8th-floor foreigners' clinic in Building 1 (open 8am to 10pm daily) of Huashan Hospital (; Huashan Yiyuan), with 24-hour emergency treatment on the 15th floor in Building 6.

**Parkway Health** ( Yijijia Yiliao Baojian Fuwu; ☎ 24hr hotline 6445 5999; [www.parkwayhealth.cn](http://www.parkwayhealth.cn)) Seven locations around Shanghai, including at the **Shanghai Centre** ( Shanghai Shangcheng; Ste 203-204, Shanghai Centre, 1376 West Nanjing Rd; 1376 203 🚇 West Nanjing Rd). Private medical care by expat doctors, dentists and specialists.

**Watson's** ( Quchenshi) French Concession (787 Middle Huaihai Rd; 787 🚇 South Shaanxi Rd); West Nanjing Rd (Westgate Mall, 1038 West Nanjing Rd; 1038 🚇 West Nanjing Rd) For Western cosmetics, over-the-counter medicines and health products, with numerous outlets around the city.

## Money

Almost every hotel has money-changing counters. Most tourist hotels, upmarket restaurants and banks accept major credit cards. Twenty-four hour ATMs are everywhere; most accept major cards.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; [Offline map](#); The Bund; ☺ 9am-noon & 1.30-4.30pm Mon-Fri, 9am-noon Sat) Right next to the Fairmont Peace Hotel. Tends to get crowded, but is better organised than Chinese banks elsewhere around the country (it's worth a peek for its grand interior). Take a ticket and wait for your number. For credit-card advances, head to the furthest hall (counter No 2).

**Citibank** ( Huaqi Yinhang; [Offline map](#); The Bund; ☺ 24hr) Useful ATM.

**Hongkong & Shanghai Bank** ( HSBC; Huifeng Yinhang) Shanghai

Centre (*West Nanjing Rd*); The Bund (*15 East Zhongshan No 1 Rd*)  
Has ATMs in the above locations; also an ATM at Pudong  
International Airport arrivals hall.

## Post

Larger tourist hotels have post offices where you can mail letters and small packages – the most convenient option. China Post offices and postboxes are green. The **International Post Office** (*Guoji Youju*; *276 North Suzhou Rd*; 276 ☎ 7am-10pm; 🚇 *Tiantong Rd*) is just north of Suzhou Creek.

## Public Security Bureau

(PSB; *Gong'anju*; 📞 2895 1900, ext 2; *1500 Minsheng Rd*; 1500 ☎ 9am-4.30pm Mon-Sat; 🚇 *Science & Technology Museum*) Handles visas and registrations; 30-day visa extensions cost around ¥160. In Pudong.

## Telephone

After **Skype** ([www.skype.com](http://www.skype.com)) and **Viber** ([www.viber.com](http://www.viber.com)), internet phone (IP) cards are the cheapest way to call internationally (¥1.80 per minute to the US), but may not work with some hotel phones. Using a mobile phone is naturally the most convenient option. For mobile phone SIM cards, China Mobile shops are ubiquitous; cards can also be bought from newspaper kiosks with the China Mobile sign.

**China Mobile** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Zhongguo Yidong Tongxin*; [Offline map](#); *21 Yuanmingyuan Rd*; 21 ☎ 8.30am-6.30pm; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*)

## Tourist Information

Your hotel should be able to provide you with maps and most of the tourist information you require. For other helpful websites, [Click here](#).

**Shanghai Call Centre** (📞 962 288; ☎ 24hr) This toll-free English-language hotline is possibly the most useful telephone number in Shanghai – it can even give your cab driver directions if you've got a mobile phone.


**Shanghai Information Centre for International Visitors** (📞 6384


9366; No 2, Alley 123, Xingye Rd) Xintiandi information centre with currency exchange and free brochures.

**Tourist Information & Service Centres** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Luyou Zixun Fuwu Zhongxin*) The Bund (*beneath the Bund promenade, opposite the intersection with East Nanjing Rd*); East Nanjing Rd (*Century Sq, 518 Jiujiang Rd*); Jing'an ( ; Lane 1678, 19 West Nanjing Rd); Old Town (*149 Jiujiachang Rd*) These centres are conveniently located near major tourist sights. The standard of English varies from good to nonexistent, but free maps and some information are available.

### Travel Agencies

For details on train and ferry ticket agencies, [Click here](#) and [Click here](#).

**CTrip** ( 400 619 9999; <http://english.ctrip.com>) Helpful online agency for hotel and flight bookings.

**Elong** ( 400 617 1717; [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net)) Online agency good for hotel and flight bookings.

**STA Travel** ( 2281 7723; [www.statravel.com.cn](http://www.statravel.com.cn); Room 1609, Shanghai Trade Tower, 188 Siping Rd; ☎ 9.30am-6pm Mon-Fri, 9.30am-12.30pm Sat; 🚇 Hailun Rd) Sells train and air tickets, and can issue international student identity cards.

### Websites

**City Weekend** ([www.cityweekend.com.cn](http://www.cityweekend.com.cn)) Listings website.

**Shanghai Daily** ([www.shanghaidaily.com](http://www.shanghaidaily.com)) (Censored) coverage of local news.

**Shanghai Expat** ([www.shanghaiexpat.com](http://www.shanghaiexpat.com)) A must-see if you are thinking of relocating to Shanghai; useful forum.

**Shanghaiist** ([www.shanghaiist.com](http://www.shanghaiist.com)) Local entertainment and news blog.

**SmartShanghai** ([www.smartshanghai.com](http://www.smartshanghai.com)) For food, fun and frolicking. Good entertainment coverage.

**That's Shanghai** ([www.thatsmags.com/shanghai](http://www.thatsmags.com/shanghai)) Listings website.

**Time Out Shanghai** ([www.timeoutshanghai.com](http://www.timeoutshanghai.com)) Excellent listings

and reviews.





**Virtual Shanghai** ([www.virtualshanghai.net](http://www.virtualshanghai.net)) Amazing database of old photos, maps and texts plus blog.

## Getting There & Away

Shanghai is straightforward to reach. With two airports, rail and air connections to places all over China, and buses to destinations in adjoining provinces and beyond, it's a handy springboard to the rest of the land.

### Air

Shanghai has international flight connections to most major cities, many operated by China Eastern, which has its base here.

All international flights (and a few domestic flights) operate out of **Pudong International Airport** (*Pudong Guoji Jichang*;  flight information 96990; [www.shairport.com](http://www.shairport.com);  Pudong International Airport), with most (but not all) domestic flights operating out of **Hongqiao Airport** (*Hongqiao Jichang*;  flight information 96990; [www.shairport.com](http://www.shairport.com);  Hongqiao Airport) on Shanghai's western outskirts. If you are making an onward domestic connection from Pudong, it is essential that you find out whether the domestic flight leaves from Pudong or Hongqiao, as the latter will require *at least* an hour to cross the city.

Daily (usually several times) domestic flights connect Shanghai to major cities in China:

**Beijing** ¥1220, 1½ hours

**Chengdu** ¥1700, two hours and 20 minutes

**Guangzhou** ¥1280, two hours

**Guilin** ¥1200, two hours

**Qingdao** ¥740, one hour

**Xi'an** ¥1260, two hours

You can buy air tickets almost anywhere, including at major hotels, travel agencies and online websites such as ctrip.com and elong.net. Discounts of up to 40% are standard.

## Boat

Domestic boat tickets can be bought from travel agents in the **domestic boat tickets shop** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (☎ 6336 8600; 21 East Jinling Rd; 21 🕒 9am-6pm; 🚇 East Nanjing Rd) on East Jinling Rd.

Overnight boats (¥109 to ¥499, 10½ hours) to Putuoshan depart daily at 8pm from the **Wusong Wharf** ( *Wusong Matou*; 🚇 *Songbing Rd*), almost at the mouth of the Yangzi River; to reach Wusong Wharf take metro Line 3 to Songbing Rd and then walk or hail a taxi.

A high-speed ferry service (¥255 to ¥340, three hours, 9.30am) to Putuoshan departs twice daily from Xiao Yang Shan (). A bus (price included in ferry ticket; two hours, departs 7.20am and 8am) runs to Xiao Yang Shan from Nanpu Bridge (; by the bridge).

## Bus

Shanghai has several long-distance bus stations, though given the traffic gridlock it's best to take the train when possible.

The vast **Shanghai south long-distance bus station** ( *Shanghai changtu keyun nanzhan*; [Offline map](#); [www.ctnz.net](http://www.ctnz.net); ☎ 5436 2835; 666 Shilong Rd; 🚇 *Shanghai South Railway Station*) serves cities in south China, including:

**Hangzhou** (Jiubao, Hangzhou north bus station and Hangzhou south bus station) ¥68, two hours, regular (7.10am to 7.20pm)

**Nanjing** ¥105, four hours

**Nanxun** ¥47, 2½ hours, eight daily, take the bus for Huzhou (; 6.50am to 7.28pm)

**Ningbo** ¥99, three hours, regular

**Shaoxing** ¥80, three hours, regular (7.10am to 7.55pm)

**Shenjiamen** ¥130

**Suzhou** (south and north bus stations) ¥38, 1½ hours, regular (6.27am to 7.30pm)


**Tunxi/Huang Shan** ¥135, six hours, eight daily

**Wuyuan** ¥194, five hours, two daily (9.28am & 6.45pm)

**Wuzhen** ¥49, two hours, eight daily (7.44am to 6.17pm)




**Xitang** ¥32, 1½ hours, 12 daily

The massive **Shanghai long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) ( *Shanghai changtu qiche keyun Zongzhan*; [Offline map](#) ; 1666 Zhongxing Rd;  *Shanghai Railway Station*), north of Shanghai train station, has buses to destinations as far away as Gansu province and Inner Mongolia. Regular buses run to Suzhou (frequent) and Hangzhou (frequent), as well as Nanjing (12 daily) and Beijing (¥311, 4pm). Although it appears close to the train station, it is a major pain to reach on foot. It's easiest to catch a cab here.

Shanghai Sightseeing Buses run to the canal towns outside Shanghai; [Click here](#) for details.

## Train

Many parts of the country can be reached by direct train from Shanghai. The city has three useful stations: the main **Shanghai Train Station** (*Shanghai Zhan*; [Offline map](#) ;  *Shanghai Railway Station*), the **Shanghai South Train Station** (*Shanghai Nanzhan*; [Offline map](#) ;  *Shanghai South Railway Station*) and the **Hongqiao Train Station** ( *Shanghai Hongqiao Zhan*;  *Hongqiao Railway Station*) near Hongqiao Airport. Most trains depart from the main station, though for some southern destinations, like Hangzhou, they leave from Shanghai South. International trains for Kowloon in Hong Kong leave from the main train station. The Hongqiao Train Station is for new express trains (many Nanjing and Suzhou trains leave from here) and serves as the terminus for the Shanghai–Beijing G class express. Wherever you're going, make sure to get your tickets as early as possible. If you're arriving in Shanghai, don't get off at **Shanghai West Train Station** (; Shanghai Xizhan; [Offline map](#) ), which is inconvenient for travellers.

There are several ways to purchase tickets: at the station (generally stressful), via your hotel or a travel agency (much easier but expect a commission charge), or at train ticket offices around town.

At the main station there are two ticket halls (; *shoupiaoting*) : one in the main building (same-day tickets) and another on the east side of the square (advance tickets). One counter will claim to have English speakers. The **bilingual automated machines** ( *zizhu shoupiaochu* )

require Chinese ID. You will need your passport to buy tickets.

Alternatively, tickets can be purchased for a small commission (¥5) from one of the numerous **train ticket offices** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*huochepiao yushouchu*) Bund (384 Middle Jiangxi Rd; 384 ☺ 8am-8pm); Hongkou (106 Huangpu Lu; 106 ☺ 8-11.30am & 12.30-6pm); Jing'an (; 77 Wanhangu Rd; 77 ☺ 8am-5pm); French Concession (12 Dongping Rd; ☺ 8am-noon & 1-6pm Mon-Fri, 9am-noon & 1-5.30pm Sat & Sun); Pudong (1396 Lujiazui Ring Rd; 1396 ☺ 8am-7pm) around town.

Prices and times listed following are always for the fastest train. Slower, less expensive trains have not been listed. Some trains leaving from Shanghai Train Station:

**Beijing (D class)** seat/sleeper ¥311/698, eight to 11½ hours, three daily

**Chengdu** seat/hard sleeper ¥267/467, 35 hours, four daily

**Hangzhou (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥93/148, 1½ hours, four daily

**Hong Kong** seat/hard sleeper ¥226/409, 18½ hours, one daily (6.24pm)

**Huangshan** seat/hard sleeper ¥94/175, 11½ hours, two daily

**Lhasa** hard/soft sleeper ¥845/1314, 48 hours, one every other day (7.28pm)

**Nanjing (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥140/220, two hours, frequent

**Suzhou (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥40/60, 30 minutes, frequent

**Urumqi** hard/soft sleeper ¥699/1079, 44 hours, one daily (8.32pm)

**Xi'an** seat/hard sleeper ¥182 to ¥333, 16 to 20 hours, 10 daily

Some trains leaving from Shanghai South Train station:

**Guilin** hard/soft sleeper ¥353/539, 22 hours, four daily

**Hangzhou** ¥29, 2½ to three hours, frequent

**Kunming** hard/soft sleeper ¥536/825, 38 hours, three daily

**Yushan (Sanqing Shan)** ¥130, six hours, six daily

Some trains leaving from Hongqiao Train Station:

**Beijing (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥555/935, 5½ hours, very regular (7am to 7.55pm)



**Hangzhou (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥78/124, one hour, very regular (6.38am to 9.32pm)

**Qingdao (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥520/820, 6½ hours, four daily

**Shaoxing (G class)** 2nd/1st class ¥65/78, two hours, 10 daily

**Suzhou (D class)** 2nd/1st class seat ¥26/31, 30 minutes, regular

**Xiamen (D class)** 2nd/1st class ¥339/408, nine hours, 10 daily

**Zhengzhou (D class)** 2nd/1st class ¥238/381, seven hours, three daily

## **i** Getting Around

The best way to get around Shanghai is the metro, which now reaches most places in the city, followed by cabs. Buses (¥2) are tricky to use unless you are a proficient Mandarin speaker. Whatever mode of transport you use, try to avoid rush hours between 8am and 9am, and 4.30pm and 6pm.

Although there are some fascinating areas to stroll around, walking from A to B is generally an exhausting and sometimes stressful experience.

### To/From the Airport

**Pudong International Airport** handles most international flights and some domestic flights. There are four ways to get from the airport to the city: taxi, Maglev train, metro and bus.

Taxi rides into central Shanghai cost around ¥160 and take about an hour; to Hongqiao Airport costs around ¥200. Most Shanghai taxi drivers are honest, though ensure they use the meter; avoid monstrous overcharging by using the regular taxi rank outside the arrivals hall. Regular buses run to Suzhou (¥84) and Hangzhou (¥100).

The bullet-fast and time-saving **Maglev train** ([www.smtdc.com](http://www.smtdc.com)) runs from Pudong International Airport to its terminal in Pudong in just eight minutes, from where you can transfer to the metro (Longyang Rd station) or take a taxi (¥40 to People's Sq). Economy single/return tickets cost ¥50/80, but show your same-day air ticket and it's ¥40 one

way. Children under 1.2m travel free (taller kids are half-price). Trains depart every 20 minutes from roughly 6.45am to 9.40pm.

Metro Line 2 runs from Pudong International Airport to Hongqiao Airport, passing through central Shanghai. It is convenient, though not for those in a hurry. From Pudong Airport, it takes about 75 minutes to People's Sq (¥7) and 1¾ hours to Hongqiao Airport (¥8).

There are also numerous **airport buses**, which take between one and 1½ hours to run to their destinations in Puxi. Buses leave from the airport roughly every 15 to 25 minutes from 6.30am to 11pm; they go to the airport from roughly 5.30am to 9.30pm (bus 1 runs till 11pm). The most useful buses are airport bus 1 (¥30), linking Pudong International Airport with Hongqiao Airport, and airport bus 2 (¥22), linking Pudong International Airport with the Airport City Terminal (; Shanghai Jichang Chengshi Hangzhan Lou) on West Nanjing Rd, east of Jing'an Temple. Airport bus 5 (¥22) links Pudong International Airport with Shanghai train station via People's Sq.

**Hongqiao Airport** is 18km from the Bund, a 30- to 60-minute trip. Most flights now arrive at Terminal 2, connected to the city centre via metro Lines 2 and 10 (30 minutes to People's Sq). If you arrive at Terminal 1, you can also catch the airport shuttle bus (¥4, 7.50am to 11pm) to the Airport City Terminal on West Nanjing Rd. Airport bus 1 (¥30, 6am to 9.30pm) runs to Pudong International Airport; bus 941 (¥6) links Hongqiao Airport with Shanghai main train station. Taxis cost ¥70 to ¥100 to central Shanghai.

Major hotels run airport shuttles to both airports (generally free to Hongqiao; ¥30 to Pudong).

## Public Transport

**FERRY** The **Jinling Rd Ferry** (; Jinling Lu Lundu Zhan) runs between the southern end of the Bund and the Dongchang Rd dock in Pudong. Ferries (¥2) run roughly every 15 minutes from 7am to 10pm. The **Fuxing Rd Ferry** (; Fuxing Lu Lundu Zhan) runs from Fuxing Rd north of the Cool Docks in the South Bund to Dongchang Rd as well. Ferries (¥2) run every 10 to 20 minutes from around 5am to 11pm.

**METRO** The **Shanghai metro system** ([www.shmetro.com](http://www.shmetro.com)), indicated by a red M, currently runs to 11 lines after huge expansion; two

additional lines (13 and 22) were expected to open by this book's publication and a further two lines are expected (12 and 16) in 2013. Lines 1, 2 and 10 are the most useful for travellers. Tickets cost ¥3 to ¥10 depending on distance, sold from coin and note-operated bilingual automated machines (and from booths at some stations); keep your ticket until you exit. Transport cards are available from information desks for ¥50 and ¥100; they don't offer any savings, but are useful for avoiding queues and can also be used in taxis and on most buses. A one-day metro pass is also sold from information desks for ¥18.

Metro maps are available at most stations; the free tourist maps also have a small metro map printed on them. Check out [www.shmetro.com](http://www.shmetro.com) for a map of the metro network.

## TRANSPORT CARD

If you are going to be doing a lot of travelling in Shanghai, it's worth investing in a *jiaotong ka* (transport card), as it can save you queuing. Sold at metro stations and some convenience stores, cards can be topped up with credit and used on the metro, most buses and in taxis. Credits are electronically deducted from the card as you swipe it over the sensor at metro turnstiles and near the door on buses; when paying your taxi fare, hand the card to the driver, who will swipe it for you. You'll need to pay a deposit of ¥20, which can be refunded before you leave at the East Nanjing Rd metro station.

## Taxi

Shanghai's taxis are reasonably cheap, hassle-free and easy to flag down outside rush hour, although finding a cab during rainstorms is impossible. Flag fall is ¥14 (for the first 3km) and ¥18 at night (11pm to 5am). A new 4000-strong fleet of more spacious and comfortable white Volkswagen Touran taxis was introduced for the World Expo (same flag fall).

Major taxi companies:

**Bashi** (☎ 96840)

**Dazhong** (☎ 96822)

**Qiangsheng** (☎ 6258 0000)

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO JAPAN

The **China-Japan International Ferry Company** (☎ 6595 6888, 6325 7642; [www.chinajapanferry.com](http://www.chinajapanferry.com); 18th fl) has staggered departures weekly to either Osaka or Kobe in Japan on Saturdays at 12.30pm. The **Shanghai International Ferry Company** (☎ 6595 8666; [www.shanghai-ferry.co.jp](http://www.shanghai-ferry.co.jp); 15th fl) has departures to Osaka on Tuesdays at 11am. Both ferry companies are located in the Jin'an Building (908 Dongdaming Rd; 908 ), north of the Bund. Fares on all boats (44 hours) range from ¥1300 in an eight-bed dorm to ¥6500 in a deluxe twin cabin. Reservations are recommended in July and August. Passengers must be at the harbour three hours before departure to get through immigration. All vessels depart from the **Shanghai Port International Cruise Terminal** ( *Shanghai Gang Guoji Keyun Zhongxin*; 800 Dongdaming Rd; 908 ).

At the time of writing, a recently opened, weekly 26-hour **ferry route** (<http://htbc.co.jp>; from ¥1160) between Shanghai and Nagasaki had been suspended but may run again.

## AROUND SHANGHĀI

The most popular day trips from Shanghai are probably to Hangzhou (a quick zip away on the train) and Suzhou.

---

### Zhujiajiao

Thirty kilometres west of Shanghai, **Zhujiajiao** (*optional ticket incl entry to 4/9 sights ¥30/90*) is easy to reach and charming – as long as your visit does not coincide with the arrival of phalanxes of tour buses.


What survives of this historic canal town today is a charming tableau of Ming- and Qing-dynasty alleys, bridges and *guzhen* (; old town) architecture, its alleyways steeped in the aroma of *chou doufu* (stinky tofu).





On the west side of the recently built City God Temple bridge stands the **City God Temple** ( *Chenghuang Miao*; admission ¥10; ☺ 7.30am-4pm), moved here in 1769 from its original location in Xuejiabang. Further north along Caohe St ( ), running alongside the canal, is the **Yuanjin Buddhist Temple** ( *Yuanjin Chanyuan*; admission ¥5; ☺ 8am-4pm) near the distinctive **Tai'an Bridge** ( *Tai'an Qiao*). Pop into the temple to climb the **Qinghua Pavilion** ( *Qinghua Ge*) at the rear, a

towering hall visible from many parts of town.

Earmark a detour to the **Zhujiajiao Catholic Church of Ascension** (*Zhujiajiao Yesu Shengyantang; No 317 Alley, 27 Caohe Jie; 27 317*), a gorgeous church with its belfry rising in a detached tower by the rear gate. Also hunt down the **Qing dynasty Post Office** (*admission ¥5*).

Of Zhujiajiao's quaint ancient bridges, the standout **Fangsheng Bridge** (; Fangsheng Qiao) is the most photogenic. First built in 1571, the five-arched bridge was originally assembled with proceeds from a monk's 15 years of alms gathering. You can jump on boats for comprehensive tours of town at various points, including Fangsheng Bridge. Tickets are ¥60/120 per boat for the short/long tour; speed boats (¥40) also run from the bridge for 30-minute trips.

Food sellers line Bei Dajie, flogging everything from pig's trotters to plump coconuts, above which flail plastic bags of fans to fend off flies. Plentiful cafes have squeezed in along Caohe Jie, Xihu Jie and Donghu Jie, and even a creperie has set up shop near Yongquan Bridge. Top pick for overnighting is the lovely old courtyard **Uma Hostel** ( 189 1808 2961; *umahos tel@gmail.com*; 103 Xijing Jie; 103 dm/d ¥80/240), near the Kezhi Gardens (; Kezhi Yuan). Book ahead.

To get to Zhujiajiao, head to the **Pu'an Rd Bus Station**   (*Pu'an Lu Qiche Zhan*; ;  *Dashijie*) just south of People's Sq, and hop on the pink and white Huzhu Gaosu Kuaixian bus (; ¥12, one hour, every 20 minutes from 6am to 10pm, less frequently in low season) direct to the town. If you're pushed, take a Shanghai Sightseeing Bus day tour (¥85, departs 9am and 10am) from the Shanghai Sightseeing Bus Center at the Shanghai Stadium; it returns to Shanghai at 3.45pm and 4.45pm. The price includes admission to the town. Zhujiajiao can also be reached from the bus station in Tongli (¥15, 1½ hours).



# Jiangsu

POP 78.9 MILLION

## Includes »

[Nanjing](#)

[Around Nanjing](#)

[Suzhou](#)

[Around Suzhou](#)

---

## Why Go?

Jiangsu () is alluring, especially to sedentary travellers. The province, which owed its historical wealth to silk and salt production, boasts the Grand Canal as well as elaborate waterways that thread through the Yangzi River (Chang Jiang). It's known throughout China for its cute canal towns, enchanting gardens and sophisticated opera and folk arts.

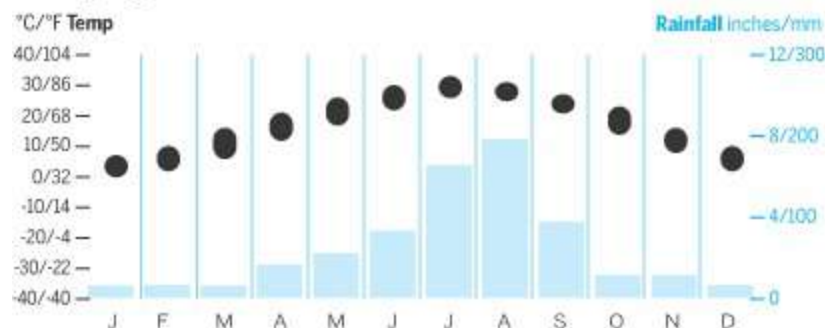
The charms of the province are so well known that it has attracted domestic tourists in large numbers since the 1990s, much earlier than

most other places in the country. Package tourists flock to Suzhou anytime of the year, and you're likely to be rubbing elbows with them in the gardens or any of the famous water towns. But don't be put off. Kick start your day early, go slightly off the main streets, and you'll see the old-world charm and have the place to yourself. In the provincial capital and university town of Nanjing there's a lot that remains relatively undiscovered by outsiders: Ming-dynasty heritage, leafy parks and fantastic museums.

---

## When to Go

### Nánjīng



**Mar & Apr** Best time to visit the gardens when flowers bloom in early spring.

**Oct** Mist-shrouded vistas of gardens and canals in autumn.

**Dec** Snow-covered views of the pretty canal towns of Suzhou in winter.

---

## Best Classical Gardens

- » Garden of the Master of the Nets ([Click here](#))
- » Humble Administrator's Garden ([Click here](#))
- » Presidential Palace ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Museums

- » Suzhou Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Nanjing Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Memorial Hall of the Nanjing Massacre ([Click here](#))



## Jiangsu Highlights



- 1 Come face-to-face with Chinese history in the **Memorial Hall of the Nanjing Massacre** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Feast your eyes on the historical artefacts at **Suzhou Museum** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Indulge in the beauty of the **gardens of Suzhou** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Suzhou's 'Venice of the East' moniker becomes clear along **Pingjiang Lu** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Enjoy tea-tasting and a traditional pingtan performance at the **Pingtan Teahouse** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Lose yourself in the alleys and canals of **Ton gli** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Four words: **Chinese Sex Culture Museum** ([Click here](#))
- 8 Relax in the charming towns of **Luzhi** ([Click here](#)), **Mudu** ([Click here](#)) or **Zhouzhuang** ([Click here](#))
- 9 Get some highbrow culture at a **Kunqu opera performance** ([Click here](#))
- 10 Scenic **Ming Xiaoling Tomb** ([Click here](#)) and **Ling g u Temple Scenic Area** ([Click here](#)) are perfect for a stroll

## History

Jiangsu was a relative backwater until the Song dynasty (960–1279), when it emerged as an important commercial centre because of trading routes opened up by the Grand Canal. In particular, the south of the province flourished: the towns of Suzhou and Yangzhou played an important role in silk production and began to develop a large mercantile class.

Prosperity continued through the Ming and Qing dynasties, and with the incursion of Westerners into China in the 1840s, southern Jiangsu opened up to Western influence. During the Taiping Rebellion (1851–64), the Taipings established Nanjing as their capital, calling it Tianjing (Heavenly Capital).

Jiangsu was also to play a strong political role in the 20th century when Nanjing was established as the capital by the Nationalist Party until taken over by the communists in 1949, who moved the capital to

Beijing.

Today, because of its proximity to Shanghai, southern Jiangsu benefits from a fast-growing economy and rapid development, although northern Jiangsu still lags behind.

## Climate

Jiangsu is hot and humid in summer (May to August), yet has temperatures requiring coats in winter (December to February, when visibility can drop to zero because of fog). Rain or drizzle can be prevalent in winter, adding a misty touch to the land. The natural colours can be brilliant in spring (March and April). Heavy rains fall in spring and summer; autumn (September to November) is the driest time of year, and the best time to visit.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥250

\$\$ ¥250 to ¥800

\$\$\$ more than ¥800

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥70

\$\$\$ more than ¥70

## Getting There & Around

Jiangsu is well connected to all major cities in China. There are numerous flights daily from Nanjing to points around the country, as well as frequent bus and train connections.

Jiangsu has a comprehensive bus system that allows travellers to get to most destinations within the province without difficulty. Travelling by train is straightforward.

---

# Nanjing

 025 / POP 3.7 MILLION

Many visitors only pass through Nanjing when travelling from Shanghai to Beijing (or vice versa), missing out on so much. This underrated capital city of Jiangsu, lying on the lower stretches of the Yangzi River, boasts a surprisingly rich and impressive historical heritage that survived the Cultural Revolution. The major attractions are the reminders of the city's brief, former glory as the nation's capital under the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) and then as the capital of the Republic of China in the early years of the 20th century. Solid evidence includes a magnificent city wall that still encloses most of the city, and the elegant republican-era buildings that dot the centre.

Today the city is sprawling, but its relaxed atmosphere remains intact even when the day is hazy. This famous university town has wide, tree-lined boulevards, chic cafes and wonderful museums, set in a beautiful landscape of lakes, forested parks and rivers. And the city's pleasant *wutong* trees afford glorious shade in the summer and lend the city a leafy complexion.

## History

During the Qin dynasty (221–207 BC), Nanjing prospered as a major administrative centre. Nanjing fell during the Sui dynasty (AD 589–618) and later enjoyed a period of prosperity under the long-lived Tang dynasty, before slipping into obscurity.

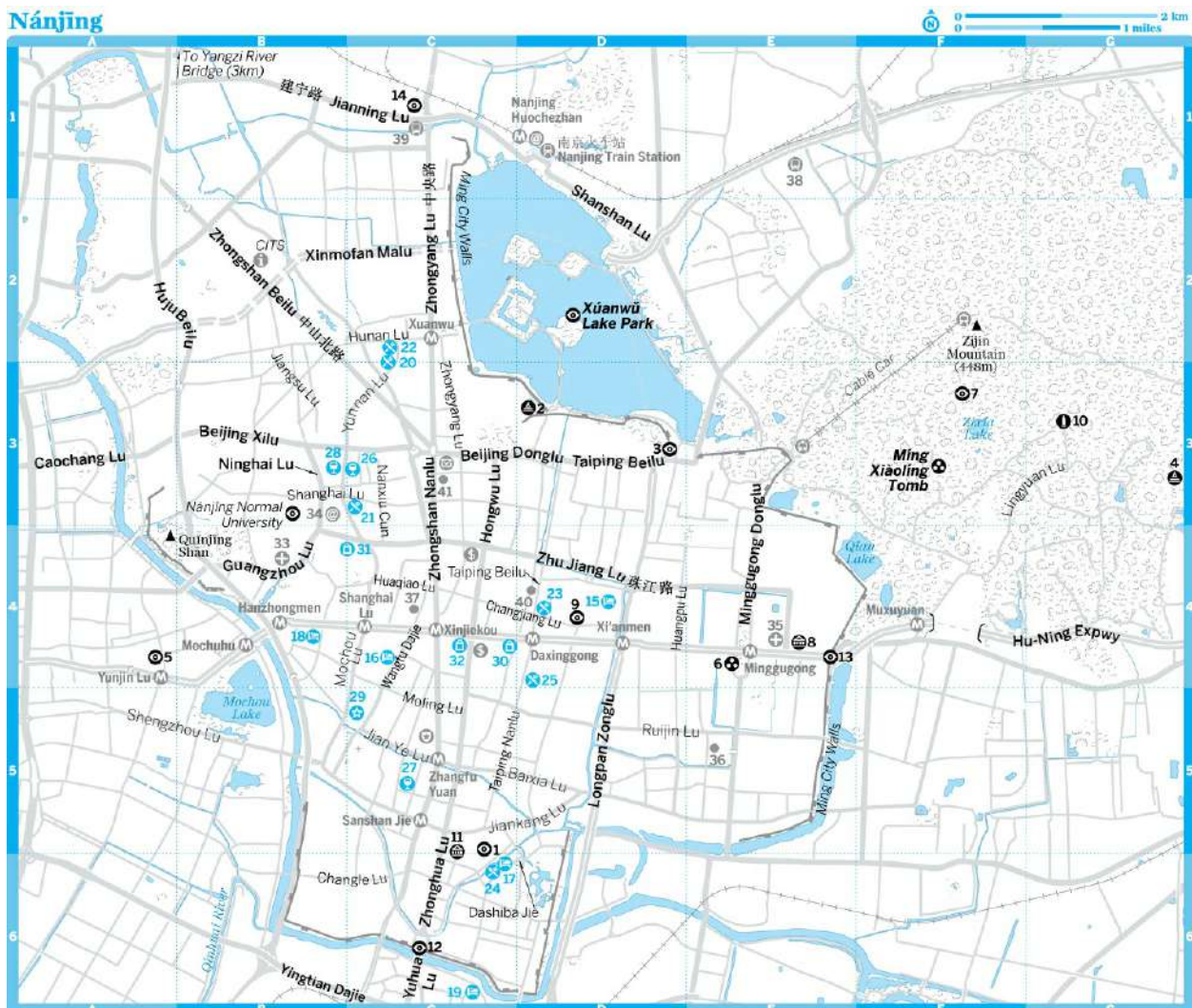
In 1356 a peasant rebellion led by Zhu Yuanzhang against the Mongol Yuan dynasty was successful. In 1368 it became capital under Zhu Yuanzhang's Ming dynasty, but its glory was short-lived. In 1420 the third Ming emperor, Yongle, moved the capital back to Beijing. From then on Nanjing's fortunes variously rose and declined as a regional centre, but it wasn't until the 19th and 20th centuries that the city again entered the centre stage of Chinese history.

In the 19th century the Opium Wars brought the British to Nanjing and it was here that the first of the 'unequal treaties' was signed, opening several Chinese ports to foreign trade, forcing China to pay a

huge war indemnity, and officially ceding the island of Hong Kong to Britain. Just a few years later Nanjing became the Taiping capital during the Taiping Rebellion, which succeeded in taking over most of southern China.

In 1864 the combined forces of the Qing army, British army, and various European and US mercenaries surrounded the city. They laid siege for seven months, before finally capturing it and slaughtering the Taiping defenders.

The Kuomintang made Nanjing the capital of the Republic of China from 1928 to 1937. But in the face of advancing Japanese soldiers, the capital was moved to Chongqing in 1937. Nanjing was again capital between 1945 and 1949, when the communists 'liberated' the city and made China their own.



# Nanjing

## Top Sights

[Ming Xiaoling Tomb](#) F3

[Xuanwu Lake Park](#) D2

## Sights

1 [Fuzi Temple](#) C5

[Imperial Examinations History Museum](#) (see 1)

2 [Jiming Temple](#) D3

3 [Jiuhuashan Park](#) D3

4 [Linggu Temple](#) G3

5 [Memorial Hall of the Nanjing Massacre](#) A4

6 [Ming Palace Ruins](#) E4

7 [Ming Xiaoling Scenic Area](#) F3

8 [Nanjing Museum](#) E4

9 [Presidential Palace](#) D4

10 [Sun Yatsen Mausoleum](#) G3

11 [Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum](#) C5

12 [Zhonghua Gate](#) C6

13 [Zhongshan Gate](#) E4

14 [Zhongyang Gate](#) C1

## Sleeping

15 [Nanjing Time International Youth Hostel](#) D4

16 [Nanjing Zhongfang Service Apartment](#) C4

17 [Orange Hotel](#) C6

18 [Sheraton Nanjing Kingsley](#) B4

19 [Travelers' Soul Inn Nanjing](#) C6

## Eating

20 [A Simple Diet](#) C3

21 [Cosima Restaurant](#) C3

22 [Maxiangxing](#) C2

23 [Nanjing 1912](#) D4

24 [Sculpting in Time](#) C6

25 [Sichuan Jiujiu](#) D4

[Yongheyuan](#) (see 1)

## Drinking

26 [Behind the Wall](#) C3

27 [Finnegans Wake](#) C5

28 [Florentina](#) B3

## Entertainment

29 [Lanyuan Theatre](#) C5

## Shopping

30 [Foreign Languages Bookstore](#) C4

31 [Librairie Avant-Garde](#) C4

32 [Popular Book Mall](#) C4

## Information

33 [Jiangsu People's Hospital](#) B4

34 [Jinsuo Internet Cafe](#) B3

35 [Nanjing International SOS Clinic](#) E4

## Transport

36 CAAC E5

37 [Dragonair](#) C4

38 [East Bus Station](#) E1

39 [Nanjing Long-Distance Bus Station](#) C1

40 [Train Ticket Office](#) D4

41 [Train Ticket Office](#) C3

## Sights

Dominating the eastern fringes of Nanjing is Zijin Mountain (; Zijin Shan), or 'Purple-Gold Mountain', a heavily forested area of parks and the site of most of Nanjing's historical attractions – Sun Yatsen Mausoleum, Ming Xiaoling Tomb, Linggu Temple Scenic Area and the Botanic Gardens (; Zhiwu yuan). It's also one of the coolest places to escape from the steamy summers. There are discounts if tickets to various sights are purchased together.



## Memorial Hall of the Nanjing Massacre MEMORIAL

( *Nanjing Datusha Jinian-guan*; 418 Shuiximen Dajie; admission free; ☎ 8.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚶 Yunjin Lu) In the city's southwestern suburbs, the unsettling exhibits in the Memorial Hall of the Nanjing Massacre document the atrocities committed by Japanese soldiers against the civilian population during the occupation of Nanjing in 1937. They include pictures of actual executions – many taken by Japanese army photographers – and a gruesome viewing hall built over a mass grave of massacre victims. Detailed captions are in English, Japanese and Chinese, but the photographs, skeletons and displays tell their own haunting stories without words. At times it feels overwhelming but visitors might begin to understand the link between the massacre and the identity of the city. Get there early to beat the surge of people.

### THE RAPE OF NANJING

In 1937, with the Chinese army comparatively weak and underfunded and the Japanese army on the horizon, the invasion into, and occupation of, Nanjing by Japan appeared imminent. As it packed up and fled, the Chinese government encouraged the people of Nanjing to stay, saying, 'all those who have blood and breath in them must feel that they wish to be broken as jade rather than remain whole as tile.' To reinforce this statement, the gates to the city were locked, trapping more than half a million citizens inside.

What followed in Nanjing was six weeks of continuous, unfathomable victimisation of civilians to an extent unwitnessed in modern warfare. According to journalists and historians such as Iris Chang and Joshua Fogel, during Japan's occupation of Nanjing between 200,000 and 300,000 Chinese civilians were killed, either in group massacres or individual murders. Within the first month, at least 20,000 women between the ages of 11 and 76 were raped. Women who attempted to refuse or children who interfered were often bayoneted or shot.


The Japanese, however, underestimated the Chinese. Instead of breaking the people's will, the invasion fuelled a sense of identity and determination. Those who did not die – broken as jade – survived to fight back.

Iris Chang's highly acclaimed *The Rape of Nanjing* details the atrocities suffered by Chinese civilians under the occupation of the Japanese. The dark nature of the massacre seemed to have played heavily on Chang and she later committed suicide. But Chang wasn't the first suicide linked to the massacre: Minnie Vautrin, an American missionary in Nanjing, felt responsible for not being able to save more Chinese civilians' lives and killed herself after the massacre.

---

## Ming Xiaoling Tomb TOMB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Ming Xiaoling*; admission ¥70; ☀ 8am-5.30pm, to 6.30pm summer;  *Muxuyuan*) Zhu Yuanzhang (1328–1398), the founding emperor of the Ming dynasty, was buried in the tomb of Ming Xiaoling, and he was the only Ming emperor buried outside of Beijing. The first section of this magnificent mausoleum is a 618m ‘spirit path’, lined with stone statues of lions, camels, elephants and horses that drive away evil spirits and guard the tomb. Among them lurks two mythical animals: a *xie zhi*, which has a mane and a single horn on its head, and a *qilin*, which has a scaly body, a cow’s tail, a deer’s hooves and one horn.


As you enter the first courtyard, a paved pathway leads to a pavilion housing several stelae. The next gate leads to a large courtyard with the **Linghun Pagoda** (Linghun Ta), a mammoth rectangular stone structure. Look for the stalactites and stalagmites formed by years of water dripping down the walls. Walk through a long tunnel and up a wall, 350m in diameter, to get to a huge earth mound. Beneath this mound is the unexcavated tomb vault of the emperor.

The area surrounding the tomb is the **Ming Xiaoling Scenic Area** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#)) (*Ming Xiaoling Fengjingqu*). A tree-lined pathway winds around pavilions and picnic grounds and ends at scenic **Zixia Lake** (*Zixia Hu*; admission ¥10), ideal for strolling. A combo ticket of the tomb and Liñggū Temple Scenic Area (below) is ¥115.

From Muxuyuan metro station (line 2), it’s a 1.6km walk uphill. Bus Y3 from the city centre also takes you there.

## **FREE** Sun Yatsen Mausoleum MEMORIAL

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Zhongshan Ling*; ☀ 6.30am-6.30pm;  *Xiamafang*) Dr Sun is recognised by the communists and Kuomintang alike as the father of modern China. He died in Beijing in 1925, and had wished to be buried in Nanjing, no doubt with greater simplicity than the Ming-style



tomb his successors built for him. Despite this, less than a year after his death, construction of this mausoleum began.

The tomb itself lies at the top of an enormous stone stairway – a breathless 392 steps. At the start of the path stands a dignified marble gateway, with a roof of blue-glazed tiles. The blue and white of the mausoleum symbolise the white sun on the blue background of the Kuomintang flag.

The crypt lies at the top of the steps at the rear of the memorial chamber. A tablet hanging across the threshold is inscribed with the ‘Three Principles of the People’, as formulated by Dr Sun: nationalism, democracy and people’s livelihood. Inside is a statue of a seated Dr Sun. The walls are carved with the complete text of the Outline of Principles for the Establishment of the Nation put forward by the Nationalist government. A prostrate marble statue of Dr Sun seals his copper coffin.

Buses 9, Y2 or Y3 go from the city centre to the Sun Yatsen Mausoleum. A shuttle bus (¥5) resembling a red steam train goes to the Linggu Temple Scenic Area.

## Linggu Temple Scenic Area TEMPLE

(*Linggu Si Fengjing Qu*; admission ¥80; ☀ 7am-6.30pm; 

*Zhonglingjie*) The large Ming Linggu Temple complex has one of the most interesting buildings in Nanjing – the **Beamless Hall** (Wuliang Dian), built in 1381 entirely out of brick and stone and containing no beam supports. Buildings during the Ming dynasty were normally constructed of wood, but timber shortages meant that builders had to rely on brick. The structure has a vaulted ceiling and a large stone platform where Buddhist statues once sat. In the 1930s the hall was turned into a memorial to those who died resisting the Japanese.

A road runs on both sides of the hall and up two flights of steps to the graceful **Pine Wind Pavilion** (Songfeng Ge), originally dedicated to Guanyin as part of **Linggu Temple** . The temple itself and a memorial hall to Xuan Zang (the Buddhist monk who travelled to India and brought back the Buddhist scriptures) are close by; after you pass through the Beamless Hall, turn right and then follow the pathway. Inside the memorial hall is a golden scale model of a 13-


storey wooden pagoda that contains part of Xuan Zang's skull, a sacrificial table and a portrait of the monk.

Nearby is the colourful **Linggu Pagoda** (Linggu Ta). This nine-storey, 60m-high, octagonal pagoda was finished in 1933 under the direction of a US architect, to remember those who died during the Kuomintang revolution. Tour buses Y2 and Y3 run to the Linggu Temple from Nanjing Train Station. A free shuttle bus connects the area to the Sun Yatsen Mausoleum.

## Ming Palace Ruins *PARK*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Ming Gugong*;  *Minggugong*) The Ming Palace Ruins are scattered around peaceful but maudlin **Wuchaomen Park** (*Wuchaomen Gongyuan*; *Zhongshan Donglu*; admission free; 🕒 6.30am-9.30pm). Built by Zhu Yuanzhang, the imperial palace is said to have been a magnificent structure after which the Imperial Palace in Beijing was modelled. Anyone familiar with the layout of the Forbidden City will see similarities in the arrangement.


You can clamber into the ruined **Meridian Gate** (Wu Men), which once had huge walls jutting out at right angles from the main structure, along with watchtowers. Today, the park is filled with locals practising ballroom dancing.

You can reach the Ming Palace Ruins by catching bus Y1 from Nanjing Train Station or bus 9 from Zhongyang Lu.

## Presidential Palace *HISTORICAL BUILDING*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Zongtong Fu*; 292 *Changjiang Lu*; admission ¥40; 🕒 8am-6pm;  *Daxinggong*) After the Taiping took over Nanjing, they built the **Mansion of the Heavenly King** (*Tianwang Fu*) on the foundations of a former Ming-dynasty palace. This magnificent palace did not survive the fall of the Taiping, but there is a reconstruction and a classical Ming garden, now known as the Presidential Palace. Other buildings on the site were used briefly as presidential offices by Sun Yatsen's government in 1912 and by the Kuomintang from 1927 to 1949. Bus

Y1 travels here.

## Jiming Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jiming Si*; admission ¥5; ☀ 7.30am-5pm winter, to 5.30pm summer) Close to the Ming walls and Xuanwu Lake (Xuanwu Hu) is the Buddhist Jiming Temple, which was first built in AD 527 during the Three Kingdoms period. It's been rebuilt many times since, but has retained the same name (which literally translates as 'rooster crowing') since 1387. This temple is the most active temple in Nanjing and is packed with worshippers during the Lunar New Year. The seven-storey-tall Yaoshifo Pagoda ( ) offers views over Xuanwu Lake. Walk up to the rear of the temple and out onto the **city wall** (admission ¥15). Tufts of grass poke out from between the stones and you can embark on a lengthy and fabulous jaunt east along the overgrown ramparts; see the boxed text on [Click here](#). Buses Y1 and 304 can get you here.

## Fuzi Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Fuzi Miao*; *Gongyuan Jie*; admission ¥30; ☀ 9am-10pm; **M** *Sanshan Jie*) The Confucian Fuzi Temple, in the south of the city in a pedestrian zone, was a centre of Confucian study for more than 1500 years. But what you see here today are newly restored, late-Qing-dynasty structures or wholly new buildings reconstructed in traditional style. Today the area surrounding Fuzi Temple has become Nanjing's main shopping quarter and is a particularly crowded and fairly unattractive place. The whole area is lit up at night, adding to the kitsch ambience. **Tour boats** (*youchuan*) leave from the dock across from the temple itself for 30-minute day (¥60) and evening (¥80) trips along the Qinhuai River (; Qinhuai He). Catch bus 1 or Y2 from Xinjiekou here.


## Imperial Examinations History Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jiangnan Gongyuan Lishi Chenlieguan*; 1 Jinling Lu; admission ¥20; ☺ 8.30am-10pm) Across from the Fuzi temple complex to the east is this museum. It's a recent reconstruction of the building where scholars once spent months – or years – in tiny cells studying Confucian classics in preparation for civil-service examinations.

### **FREE** Nanjing Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nanjing Bowuguan*; 321 Zhongshan Donglu; ☺ 9am-4.30pm;  *Minggugong*) Just west of Zhongshan Gate, modern China's first national museum displays artefacts from Neolithic times right through to the communist period...when it's not under renovation. The main building was constructed in 1933 in the style of a Ming temple. While this building is being tinkered with, a small collection has moved to the **Art Gallery** (; Yishuchenlieguan) building next door.

The limited offerings include a haphazardly arranged collection of porcelain, textiles, bronze ware, earthen ware and folk art. Some of the 500-plus-year-old porcelain, with striking colours, looks startlingly contemporary, while a large wooden weaving machine boggles the imagination. Some displays are labelled in (bad) English.

### **Xuanwu Lake Park** *PARK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xuanwuhu Gongyuan*; admission 1 Mar-1 May & 1 Sep-30 Nov ¥30, 1 Dec-29 Feb & 1 Jun-31 Aug ¥20; ☺ 7am-9pm) This verdant 530-hectare park, backing onto the Ming-dynasty city wall, has a connected network of five isles spread across its lake. Scattered on the isles are bonsai gardens, camphor and cherry-blossom trees, temples and bamboo forests. The entire lake circuit is 9.5km for those inclined to a long jaunt. For the lazy, take a languid boat ride (¥70 per hour) around the lake – just make sure your boat steers properly before taking off.

### **Taiping Heavenly Kingdom History Museum** *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Taiping Tianguo Lishi Bowuguan*; 128 Zhonghua Lu; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-5pm; 🚇 Sanshan Jie) Hong Xiuquan, the leader of the Taiping, had a palace built in Nanjing, but the building was completely destroyed when Nanjing was taken in 1864.

The museum (no English sign) was originally a garden complex, built in the Ming dynasty, and housed some of the Taiping officials before their downfall. There are displays of maps showing the progress of the Taiping army from Guangdong, Hong Xiuquan's seals, Taiping coins, weapons and texts that describe the Taiping laws on agrarian reform, social law and cultural policy. Bus Y2 goes to the museum from the Ming Palace Ruins or Taiping Nanlu.

## Yangzi River Bridge *BRIDGE*

( *Nanjing Changjiang Daqiao*) Opened on 23 December 1968, the Yangzi River Bridge is one of the longest bridges in China – a double-decker with a 4.5km-long road on top and a train line below. Wonderful socialist-realist sculptures can be seen on the approaches. Odds are that you'll probably cross the bridge if you take a train from the north. Probably the easiest way to get up on the bridge is to go through the **Bridge Park** (*Daqiao Gongyuan*; adult/child ¥12/10; ☺ 7.30am-6.30pm). Catch bus 67 from Jiangsu Lu, northwest of the Drum Tower ( Gulou), to its terminus opposite the park.

## MING CITY WALLS

Beijing will be forever haunted by the communists' destruction of its awe-inspiring city walls. Xi'an's mighty Tang-dynasty wall – which was far, far larger than its current wall – is a mere memory. Even Shanghai's modest city wall came down in 1912.

The same story is repeated across China, but Nanjing's fabulous surviving city wall is a constant reminder of the city's former glories. The wall may be overgrown, but this neglect – in a land where historical authenticity has too often courted destruction – has helped ensure its very survival.

Perhaps the most impressive remnant of Nanjing's Ming-dynasty golden years, the impressive, five-storey Ming bastion, which measures over 35km, is the longest city wall ever built in the world. About two-thirds of it still stands.

Built between 1366 and 1393, by more than one million labourers, the layout of the wall is irregular, an exception to the usual square format of these times; it zigzags around

Nanjing's hills and rivers, accommodating the local landscape. Averaging 12m high and 7m wide at the top, the fortification was built of bricks supplied from five Chinese provinces. Each brick had stamped on it the place it came from, the overseer's name and rank, the brick-maker's name and sometimes the date. This was to ensure that the bricks were well made; if they broke, they had to be replaced. Many of these stamps remain intact.

Some of the original 13 Ming city gates remain, including the [Zhongyang Gate](#) ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zhongyang Men) in the north, [Zhonghua Gate](#) ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Zhonghua Men*; admission ¥20) in the south and [Zhongshan Gate](#) ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zhongshan Men) in the east. The city gates were heavily fortified; built on the site of the old Tang-dynasty wall, Zhonghua Gate has four rows of gates, making it almost impregnable, and could house a garrison of 3000 soldiers in vaults in the front gate building. When walking through, observe the trough in either wall of the second gate, which held a vast stone gate that could be lowered into place. The gate is far more imposing than anything that has survived in Beijing.

You can climb onto the masonry for exploration at several points. Long walks extend along the wall from Zhongshan Gate in the east of the city and it's quite common to see locals walking their dogs or taking post-dinner walks along the weathered path; there is no charge for climbing the wall here.

One of the best places to access the gate is from the rear of Jiming Temple. Walk to Jiuhuashan Park off Taiping Beilu, looking out over huge [Xuanwu Lake Park](#) () and passing crumbling hillside pagodas along the way.

## Festivals & Events

### Nanjing International Plum Blossom Festival

*PLUM BLOSSOM*

Held yearly from the last Saturday of February to early March, it takes place on Zijin Mountain near the Ming Xiaoling Tomb when the mountain bursts with pink and white blossoms.

## Sleeping

Most of Nanjing's accommodation is midrange to top end in price. All rooms have broadband internet, and most places can help to book air and train tickets.

[Orange Hotel](#) *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Juzi Jiudian*; 📍 8696 8090; [www.orangehotel.com.cn](http://www.orangehotel.com.cn); 26 *Dashiba Jie*; 26 r ¥298-328; 📞📧) A great riverside location, this reliable chain is big bang for the buck. The ultra-modern rooms, with good bedding and lighting, have every gizmo and gadget your computer, PDA or mobile phone might ever need. It's worth paying a few more bucks for the rooms with river-facing balconies. Other pluses include complimentary fruit and free use of the hotel's bikes.

## Nanjing Time International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nanjing Shiguang Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8556 9053; [www.yhachina.com/ls.php?id=271](http://www.yhachina.com/ls.php?id=271); 6-5 *Yongyuan, Meiyuan Xincun*; 6-5 dm ¥60, r ¥180-260; 📞📧) Time – for atmosphere alone it's the best in town – is in a republican-era mansion not far from the Presidential Palace. The salubrious neighbourhood guarantees you a good sleep at night. Dorms are spotless and the rooms have a simplistic charm. There's a lot of common area, including a relaxing rooftop terrace. The hostel is hidden in an alley with lots of twists and turns in the Meiyuan Xincun district. Download a map from the hostel website for directions.

## Nanjing Zhongfang Service Apartment

SERVICE APARTMENT \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nanjing Zhongfang Jiudian Gongyu*; 📍 6867 8188; [www.njmyhome.com](http://www.njmyhome.com); 88 *Wangfu Dajie*; 88 r ¥328-368; 📞📧) All rooms at this central service apartment come with a kitchenette, fridge and washing machine/dryer, and they are immaculately clean and extremely comfortable. Enter via 118 Moling Lu ( 118 ), turn right and head to the last building. The reception is on the 4th floor.

## Travelers' Soul Inn Nanjing HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Nanjing Xinzhilu Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8329 2888; [www.nanjing-inn.com](http://www.nanjing-inn.com); Bldg B7/B5, 1865 *Creativity Industrial Park*; 1865 B7 4-/6-bed

*dm ¥55/45, d ¥180-668; ☑@*) This spanking new digs is both a hostel and a hotel, with a plethora of rooms to suit your budget. The dorms and simpler (cheaper) rooms are on the ground floor. All basic but clean. Above, the rooms are decorated with themes, ranging from kitschy to quirky. The location is a bit out of the way (it's outside the southern city wall). From the Zhonghuamen metro, it's a 1km walk east along Yingtian Dajie.

## Sheraton Nanjing Kingsley HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nanjing Jinsili Xilai-deng Jiudian; ☑ 8666 8888, 800 810 3088; [www.sheraton.com/nanjing](http://www.sheraton.com/nanjing); 169 Hanzhong Lu; 169 d ¥1580-2080*) The centrally located Sheraton is a safe bet for business travellers, with four restaurants and two bars, indoor pool and tennis court. Discounts of almost 50% are available.

## Eating

The two main eating quarters in Nanjing are at Fuzi Temple and Shiziqiao () off Hunan Lu. Both are lively pedestrian areas that come alive at night, packed with people, snack stands and small eateries. Shanghai Lu is home to a strip of restaurants popular with the university crowd. Near the Presidential Palace, **Nanjing 1912** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*cnr Taiping Beilu & Changjiang Lu*) is a compound of shiny neon-lit bars, coffee houses and upscale chain restaurants.

## Maxiangxing HALAL, CHINESE JIANGSU \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*32 Yunnan Beilu; dishes ¥12-158; ☑ ground fl 6.30am-7pm, 2nd fl 6.30am-9pm*) On the ground floor of this 172-year-old institution is a canteen, and you'll encounter beef at every repast. Try the hearty *niurou mian* (; beef noodles), or the crispy *niurou guotie* (; beef potstickers). Diners flock to the pricier restaurant upstairs for its carefully prepared *hui* dishes with a Jiangsu twist. Among the offerings are *meiren gan* (; duck liver with turnip and celeries) and *dan shaomai*



(; egg dumplings stuffed with shrimps). There's a picture menu.

## **Sichuan Jiuja** SICHUANESE, CHINESE JIANGSU \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 171 Taiping Nanlu; meals from ¥15; ☺ 10.30am-10.30pm) Rub shoulders with locals in the cheap, local dining area on the ground floor: there's *yanshui ya* (; Nanjing pressed duck), *dandanmian* (; spicy noodles), *cha shao* (; pork slices; ¥10), *jianjiao* (; fried dumplings); *Suancaiyou* (; fish and cabbage soup). Other Sichuan dishes are on the smarter and dearer 2nd floor. There's no English sign, so look for the bright-red building and the sign with dancing chilli peppers.

## **Cosima Restaurant** PIZZA, TAPAS \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(120 Shanghai Lu; pizza ¥48-80, tapas ¥12-48; ☺ 10am till late; 📞) Wash down the authentically made tapas with glasses of sangria in this teeny weeny Spanish joint, and you might soon forget you're in China. Pizzas are also served here. There are only three tables and no bookings are accepted.

## **A Simple Diet** CHINESE JIANGSU \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Cucha Danfan; 32 Shiziqiao; mains ¥8-20; ☺ 11am-9pm) This busy restaurant serves excellent *xiaolong tangbao* ( soup dumplings) and is by far the best place in the Shižqio strip to grab a cheap bite.

## **Yonghe Yuan** CHINESE JIANGSU, SHANGHAINESE \$

( 122 Gongyuan Jie; mains ¥15; ☺ 8.30am-9pm) Not far from the decorative arch roughly halfway along Gongyuan Jie, this long-serving food court is low on decor but that doesn't stop the crowds from packing in. It serves a great range of tasty snacks, from *paigu mian* ( ; spare ribs and noodles) and *xianrou huntun* ( meat dumplings) to *wuxiang dan* (; five-flavour eggs), *xiaolong* dumplings and the local favourite *yaxie fensi tang* (; mung bean vermicelli with duck blood pudding). Grab a tray, order your dishes, take them to the cashier and

pay.

## **Sculpting in Time** WESTERN, CAFE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Diaoke Shiguang*; 32 Dashiba Jie; mains ¥50; ☺ 9am-11pm; 📍) This branch of the excellent Taiwanese cafe chain is an appealing, relaxed spot with an outdoor terrace overlooking the river. It's a favourite eating and drinking place for a cool but unpretentious crowd. The pastries and cakes make a good afternoon treat.

## **Drinking**

Nanjing's nightlife scene is not as vibrant as Shanghai's. There are bars and clubs in **Nanjing 1912** (cnr Taipei Beilu & Changjiang Lu).

## **Behind the Wall** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Da'an*; 150 Shanghai Lu; pint ¥30; 📶) Very laid-back outside seating, convivial atmosphere and draught beer. A talented guitar duo performs most nights. The bar doubles as a Mexican restaurant. It's literally 'behind the wall'.

## **Finnegans Wake** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Fennigen Ji u ba*; 📞 5220 7362; 400 Zhongshan Nanlu; Guinness draft pint ¥70; ☺ 5pm-late Mon-Fri, 10.30am-late Sat & Sun) After relocating to an alley off Zhongshan Nanlu in a rebuilt historical neighbourhood, this pricey expats' bar has gone even pricier. Guinness on tap and an Irish bartender also belts out the tunes. Phone if you can't find the bar. Don't try the chilli vodka unless you want to spend the night writhing on the ground.

## **Florentina** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(cnr Nanyinyangying Xiang & Shanghai Lu; beer from ¥20) In an

alley just off Shanghai Lu, this studenty bar has 40+ Belgian and US beers, hookahs, and a young garrulous crowd. Feeling peckish? Feel free to order food from eateries next door.

## ★ Entertainment

### Lanyuan Theatre CHINESE OPERA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lanyuan Juchang*; 📍 8446 9284; 4 Chaotiangong) Kunqu, an extant form of Chinese opera originating from Jiangsu, is staged here every Saturday evening. There are English subtitles and tickets are ¥80.

## 🛒 Shopping

The area surrounding **Fuzi Temple** is a pedestrian zone with souvenirs, clothing, shoes, antiques and even animals for sale.

### Librairie Avant-Garde BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xianfeng Shudian*; 173 Guangzhou Lu; ☺ 10am-9.30pm; 🚇 Shanghai Lu) Housed in a disused bomb shelter, this mammoth indie bookshop has zero foreign-language books, but the ambience and the decor alone certainly deserve a visit. You'll see what we mean when you go and inspect it yourself. Students and literati alike love the sizeable collection of social science and humanities books in this Nanjing cultural landmark, and the fine selection of postcards and handmade accessories draws in the shoppers. There's also a nice cafe and plenty of comfortable seating areas. From Shanghai Lu metro station, it's a 15-minute walk to the bookshop.

### Foreign Languages Bookstore BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Waiwen Shudian*; 218 Zhongshan Donglu; ☺ 9am-7pm) This bookshop has English maps and pricey, imported English bestsellers.

## Popular Book Mall BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dazhong Shuju; Xinjiekou*; ☎ 9am-9pm) A range of English fiction can be found on the 4th floor.

## **i** Information

### Internet Access

**Jinsuo Internet Cafe** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Jinsuo Wangluo; 85 Shanghai Lu*; per hr ¥3; ☎ 24hr)

### Internet Resources

**Nanjing Expats** ([www.nanjingexpat.com](http://www.nanjingexpat.com)) Active forum, events and listings in Nanjing. It also distributes a magazine around the city.

### Media

**Map** ([www.mapmagazine.com.cn](http://www.mapmagazine.com.cn)) Expat listings magazine.

**Nanjing Expats** ([www.nanjingexpat.com](http://www.nanjingexpat.com)) Another expat listings magazine available at restaurants and bars.

### Medical Services

**Jiangsu People's Hospital** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Jiangsu Sheng Renmin Yiyuan*; ☎ 8371 8836; 300 Guangzhou Lu; ☎ 8am-noon & 2-5.30pm) Runs a clinic for expats and has English-speaking doctors available.

**Nanjing International SOS Clinic** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *SOS Nanjing Guoji SOS Jinji Jiuyuan Zhensuo*; ☎ 8480 2842, 24hr alarm centre 010 6462 9100) On the ground floor of the Grand Metropark Hotel. The staff speaks English.

### Money

An ATM taking international cards can be found in the Sheraton Nanjing Kingsley. Most bank ATMs are open 24 hours and take international cards. The banks listed below change major currency and travellers cheques.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 29 Hongwu Lu; ☎ 8am-5pm Mon-Fri, to 12.30pm Sat)

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 148 Zhonghua Lu; ☎ 8am-5pm Mon-Fri, to 12.30pm Sat)

## Post

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 2 Zhongshan Nanlu; ☎ 8am-6.30pm) Postal services and international phone calls.

## Public Security Bureau

**PSB** ( *Gong'anju*) On a small lane called Sanyuan Xiang down a nest of streets west off Zhongshan Nanlu.

## Travel Agencies

Most hotels have their own travel agencies and can book tickets for a service charge. They can also arrange tours around town and to neighbouring sights.

**China International Travel Service** (*CITS*; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; 📞 8342 1125; 202 Zhongshan Beilu; ☎ 9am-4pm) Across from the Nanjing Hotel; arranges tours, and books air and train tickets.

# Getting There & Away

## Air

Nanjing has regular air connections to all major Chinese cities. The main office for the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (*CAAC*; *Zhongguo Minhang*; 📞 8449 9378; 50 Ruijin Lu) is near the terminus of bus 37, but you can also buy tickets at most top-end hotels.

**Dragonair** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Ganglong Hangkong*; 📞 8471 0181; Room 751-53, World Trade Centre, 2 Hanzhong Lu) has daily flights to Hong Kong.

## Bus

Of Nanjing's numerous long-distance bus stations, **Nanjing long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Nanjing changtu*

*qichezhan*; 📍 8533 1288), aka Zhongyangmen long-distance station, is the largest, located southwest of the wide-bridged intersection with Zhongyang Lu. Regular buses departing from here:

**Hefei** ¥50, 2½ hours

**Shanghai** ¥88, four hours

**Suzhou** ¥64, 2½ hours

**Wuxi** ¥52, two hours

Buses departing the **east bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; changtu qiche dongzhan):

**Hangzhou** ¥125, four hours

**Huangshan** ¥120, four hours

**Yangzhou** ¥37, 1½ hours

**Zhenjiang** ¥24, 1½ hours

From Nanjing Train Station, take bus 13 north to Zhongyangmen long-distance bus station. Bus 2 from Xinjiekou goes to the east bus station. A taxi from town will cost ¥20 to ¥25 to either station.

## Train

**Nanjing Train Station** (📍 8582 2222) is a major stop on the Beijing–Shanghai train line. Heading eastward from Nanjing, the line to Shanghai connects with Zhenjiang, Wuxi and Suzhou. Most G trains terminate at the new **Nanjing South Train Station** (Nanjing Nanzhan), so check when you buy your ticket.

Frequent high-speed G trains run between Nanjing and Shanghai (¥135, ½ hour), stopping at Suzhou (¥100, 50 minutes). G trains to Beijing (¥274, five hours) run almost every 20 minutes from Nanjing South Train Station; the station also has 15 G trains to Hangzhou (¥211, 2½ hours). Regular trains go to Huangshan City in Anhui province (¥54 to ¥159, seven hours) from Nanjing Train Station.

A slow train to Guangzhou (¥208 to ¥658, 28 hours, two daily) goes via Shanghai.

Try to get tickets via your hotel or the **train ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*huochepiao shoupiaochu*; 2 Zhongshan Nanlu; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) on the 3rd floor of the post office, or the **train ticket**

**office** (35 Taiping Beilu) on Taiping Beilu.

## **i** Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Nanjing's Lukou airport is approximately one hour south of the city. Buses (¥25) run to the airport every 30 minutes between 6am and 9pm from the square east of Nanjing Train Station. Most hotels have hourly shuttle buses to and from the airport. A taxi will cost around ¥130.

### Public Transport

Nanjing has an efficient **metro system** that cuts through the city centre. Line No 1 runs north to south and links both train stations. Line No 2 goes east from Jingtianlu to Youfangqiao in the west and makes getting to some sights more convenient. Six more lines are under construction and are expected to be in service by 2015. Tickets are ¥2 to ¥4.

You can get to Xinjiekou, in the heart of town, by jumping on bus 13 from Nanjing Train Station or from Zhongyang Gate. There are also tourist bus routes that visit many of the sights:

**Bus Y1** Goes from Nanjing Train Station and Nanjing long-distance bus station through the city to the Sun Yatsen Mausoleum.

**Bus Y2** Starts in the south at the Martyrs' Cemetery (; Lieshi Mudi), passes Fuzi Temple and terminates halfway up Zijin Mountain.

**Bus Y3** Passes by Nanjing Train Station en route to the Ming Xiaoling Tomb and Linggu Temple.

Many local maps contain bus routes. Normal buses cost ¥1 and tourist buses cost ¥2.

### Taxi

Taxi fares start at ¥9 and it's ¥2.40 for each 3km thereafter. Trips to most destinations in the city are ¥10 to ¥14. Taxis are easy to flag down anywhere in the city.

---

## Around Nanjing

On Qixia Mountain, 22km northeast of Nanjing, **Qixia Temple** ( *Qixia Si*; admission ¥20; ☺ 7am-5.30pm) was founded by the Buddhist monk Ming Sengshao during the Southern Qi dynasty, and is still an active place of worship. It's long been one of China's most important monasteries, and even today it's still one of the largest Buddhist seminaries in the country. Relics believed to be part of the skull of Gautama Buddha were unveiled and interred here. There are two main temple halls: the Maitreya Hall, with a statue of the Maitreya Buddha sitting cross-legged at the entrance; and the Vairocana Hall, housing a 5m-tall statue of the Vairocana Buddha.

Behind Qixia Temple is the **Thousand Buddha Cliff** (Qianfo Ya). Several grottoes housing stone statues are carved into the hillside, the earliest of which dates as far back as the Qi dynasty (AD 479–502). There is also a small stone pagoda, **Sheli Pagoda** (; Sheli Ta), which was built in AD 601, and rebuilt during the late Tang period. The upper part has engraved sutras and carvings of Buddha; around the base, each of the pagoda's eight sides depicts Sakyamuni.

The temple is built in a scenic area. Continue northwards to admire a whole heap of views behind the temple. The steep path meanders along an array of pavilions and rocky outcrops. The entire area is rather serene and you could bring your lunch and spend the better part of your day here.

You can reach the temple from Nanjing by a public bus (, Nan Shang, ¥2.50, one hour) that departs from a stop beside the Nanjing Train Station. When you get off the bus, you will be approached by motorcycle taxis that will offer to take you into the temple the 'back' way for ¥10. Be warned, it's an arduous hike up and down a large hill to the temple if you take this option.

---

## Suzhou

📍 0512 / POP 1.3 MILLION

Historically, Suzhou was synonymous with high culture and elegance, and generations of artists, scholars, writers and high society in China



were drawn by its exquisite art forms and the delicate beauty of its gardens. Communist rule has spawned some mightily unattractive cities and disfigured many more, and like all modern Chinese towns, Suzhou has had to contend with the destruction of its heritage and its replacement with largely arbitrary chunks of modern architecture.

Having said that, the city still retains enough pockets of charm to warrant two to three days' exploration. Suzhou is one of the few (relatively) bike-friendly cities in China. And the gardens, Suzhou's main attraction, are a symphonic combination of rocks, water, trees and pavilions that reflects the Chinese appreciation of balance and harmony. You could easily spend an enjoyable several days wandering through gardens, visiting some excellent museums, and exploring some of Suzhou's surviving canal scenes, pagodas and humpbacked bridges.

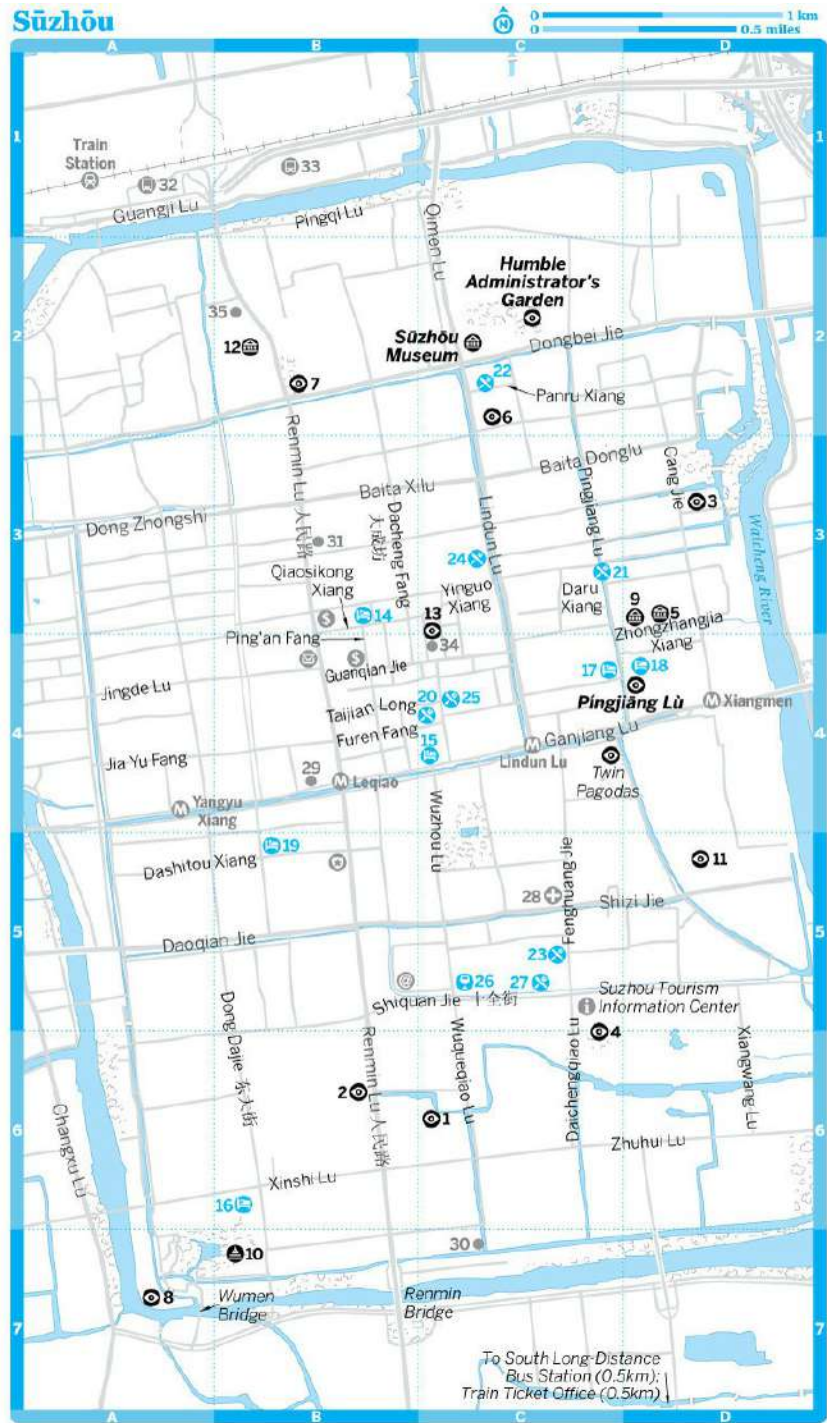
## History

Dating back some 2500 years, Suzhou is one of the oldest towns in the Yangzi Basin. With the completion of the Grand Canal during the Sui dynasty, Suzhou began to flourish as a centre of shipping and grain storage, bustling with merchants and artisans.

By the 14th century, Suzhou had become China's leading silk-producing city. Aristocrats, pleasure seekers, famous scholars, actors and painters arrived, constructing villas and garden retreats.

The town's winning image as a 'Garden City' or a 'Venice of the East' drew from its medieval blend of woodblock guilds and embroidery societies, whitewashed housing, cobbled streets, tree-lined avenues and canals. The local women were considered the most beautiful in China, largely thanks to the mellifluous local accent, and the city was home to a variety of rich merchants and bookish scholars...no doubt drawn by the beautiful women.

In 1860 Taiping troops took the town without a blow and in 1896 Suzhou was opened to foreign trade, with Japanese and other international concessions. Since 1949 much of the historic city, including its city walls, has vanished (yes, blame development and the Cultural Revolution).



# Suzhou

## Top Sights

[Humble Administrator's Garden](#) C2

[Pingjiang Lu](#) D4

[Suzhou Museum](#) C2

## Sights

1 [Blue Wave Pavilion](#) C6

2 [Confucian Temple](#) B6

3 [Couple's Garden](#) D3

4 [Garden of the Master of the Nets](#) C6

5 [Kunqu Opera Museum](#) D3

6 [Lion's Grove Garden](#) C2

7 [North Temple Pagoda](#) B2

8 [Pan Gate](#) A7

9 [Pingtan Museum](#) D3

10 [Ruiquang Pagoda](#) B7

11 [Soochow University](#) D5

12 [Suzhou Silk Museum](#) B2

13 [Temple of Mystery](#) C3

## Sleeping

14 [Hotel Soul](#) B3

15 [Marco Polo Suzhou](#) C4

16 [Pan Pacific Suzhou](#) B6

17 [Pingjiang Lodge](#) C4

18 [Suzhou Mingtown Youth Hostel](#) D4

19 [Suzhou Watertown Youth Hostel](#) B5

## Eating

20 [Deyue Lou](#) C4

21 [Pingvon](#) C3

22 [Wumen Renjia](#) C2

23 [Xishengyuan](#) C5

24 [Yaba Shengjian](#) C3

25 [Zhuhongxing Mianguan](#) C4

## Drinking

26 [Bookworm](#) C5

## ★ Entertainment

[Garden of the Master of the Nets](#) (see 4)

[Kunqu Opera Museum](#) (see 5)

[Pingtan Museum](#) (see 9)

27 [Pingtan Teahouse](#) C5

## Information

28 [No 1 Hospital](#) C5

## i Transport

29 [China Eastern Airlines](#) B4

30 [Grand Canal Boat Ticket Office](#) C7

31 [Lianhe Ticket Centre](#) B3

32 [Local Buses](#) A1

33 [North Long-Distance Bus Station](#) B1

34 [Train Ticket Office \(Guanqian Jie\)](#) C4

35 [Yangyang Bike Rental Shop](#) B2

## 👁 Sights & Activities

High-season prices listed are applicable from March to early May and September to October. Gardens and museums stop selling tickets 30 minutes before closing, and are best visited early in the mornings before they get too crowded.

### **FREE** Suzhou Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Suzhou Bowuguan; 204 Dongbei Jie; audioguide ¥30; 🕒 9am-5pm*)

An architectural triumph in Suzhou, this IM Pei–designed museum is an inspirational interpretation of a Suzhou garden, with a creative combination of water, bamboo and straight lines. Inside is a fascinating array of jade, ceramics, wooden carvings, textiles and other displays, all with good English captions. Look out for the boxwood statue of Avalokiteshvara (Guanyin), dating from the republican period. Draconian entry rules apply: flip-flops wearers get

turned away.

## Garden of the Master of the Nets GARDENS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wangshi Yuan*; high/low season ¥30/20; 🕒 7.30am-5pm) Off Shiquan Jie, this pocket-sized garden is considered one of the best preserved in the city. It was laid out in the 12th century, went to seed and was later restored in the 18th century as part of the home of a retired official turned fisherman (hence the name). The central section is the main garden. The western section is an inner garden where a courtyard contains the master's study.

The most striking feature of this garden is its use of space: the labyrinth of courtyards, with windows framing other parts of the garden, is ingeniously designed to give the illusion of a much larger area. Trivia nuts: the **Peony Study** is used as the model for the Astor Court and Ming Garden in the Museum of Modern Art, New York.

There are two ways to the entry gate, with English signs and souvenir stalls marking the way: you can enter from the alley on Shiquan Jie; or via Kuojiatou Xiang ( ), an alley off Daichengqiao Lu.

## Humble Administrator's Garden GARDENS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Zhuozheng Yuan*; 178 Dongbei Jie; high/low season ¥70/50, audioguide free; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm) First built in 1509, this 5.2-hectare garden is clustered with water features, a museum, a teahouse and at least 10 pavilions such as 'the listening to the sound of rain' and 'the faraway looking' pavilions – hardly humble, we know. It is the largest of all the gardens and considered by many to be the most impressive. With its zigzagging bridges, pavilions, bamboo groves and fragrant lotus ponds, it should be an ideal place for a leisurely stroll...sadly you'll have to battle with crowds for right of way!

## Lion's Grove Garden GARDENS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shizi Lin*; 23 Yuanlin Lu; high/low season ¥30/20; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm)

The garden was constructed in 1342 by the Buddhist monk Tianru to commemorate his master, who lived on Lion Cliff on Zhejiang's Tianmu Mountain. The legion of curiously shaped rocks in the garden was meant to resemble lions, protectors of the Buddhist faith. If the Humble Administrator's Garden was crowded, get ready to be pushed along by the tide of tourists here.

## **Garden to Linger In** GARDENS

(*Liu Yuan*; 79 *Liuyuan Lu*; high/low season ¥40/30; ☺ 7.30am-5pm)

One of the largest gardens in Suzhou, this 3-hectare garden was originally built in the Ming dynasty by a doctor as a relaxing place for his recovering patients. It's easy to see why the patients took to the place: the winding corridors are inlaid with calligraphy from celebrated masters, their windows and doorways opening onto unusually shaped rockeries, ponds and dense clusters of bamboo. Stone tablets hang from the walls, inscribed by patients recording their impressions of the place. The teahouse is a fantastic place to recover from crowd overload. Order a cup of *longjing* (; dragon well tea; ¥15) and relax.

The garden is about 3km west of the city centre and can be reached on tourist bus Y1 from the train station or Renmin Lu.

## **West Garden Temple** GARDENS

(*Xiyuan Si*; *Xiyuan Lu*; admission ¥25; ☺ 8am-5pm) The West Garden Temple, with its mustard-yellow walls and gracefully curved eaves, was burnt to the ground during the Taiping Rebellion and rebuilt in the late 19th century.

Greeting you on entry to the magnificent **Arhat Hall** (; Luohan Tang) in the temple is a stunning four-faced and thousand-armed statue of Guanyin. Beyond this lies mesmerising and slightly unnerving rows of 500 glittering Arhat statues (Arhats are monks who have achieved enlightenment and pass to nirvana at death), each one unique and near life-size. There's also a vegetarian restaurant serving noodles.

The temple is 400m west of the Garden to Linger In. Take Y1 or Y3 from the train station to get there.

## Soochow University *HISTORIC BUILDINGS*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

Before the communists took over the nation, this college (; Suzhou Daxue) was the oldest private university of the land, having been founded by missionaries of the Methodist church in 1900. The university is still in operation and its beautiful old campus is accessible from the west gate (; ximen) where you'll see **St Joseph Church**, built in 1881, standing right outside. Inside the leafy campus there are ivy-clad colonial buildings, and the most notable ones include the imposing **Clock Tower** and the **Laura Haygood Memorial Hall**.

The Xiangmen metro stop (exit 1) is next to the north gate of the campus, or bus 8 from the train station will drop you off at the west gate.

## Pingjiang Lu *STREET*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

While most of the canals in the city have been sealed and paved into roads, the pedestrianised **Pingjiang Lu** ( would give you some clue to the Suzhou of yesteryear. On the eastern side of the city, this road (watch out for electric bikes!) is set alongside a canal. Whitewashed local houses, most now converted to guesthouses, teahouses or trendy cafes selling overpriced beverages, sit comfortably side-by-side. Had enough of makeover studios and Tsingtao-swilling tourists? Duck down some of the side streets that jut out from the main path for a glimpse at the slow-paced local life.

## Blue Wave Pavilion *GARDENS*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( *Canglang Ting; Renmin Lu; high/low season ¥20/15; ☺ 7.30am-5pm*) Instead of attracting hordes of tourists, this wild, overgrown garden around the Blue Wave Pavilion is one of those where the locals actually go to chill and enjoy a leisurely stroll. Originally the home of a prince, the oldest garden in Suzhou was first built in the 11th century, and has been repeatedly rebuilt since.

Lacking a northern wall, the garden creates the illusion of space by

borrowing scenes from the outside. A double verandah out the front pavilion wends its way along a canal. From the outer path, you'll see green space inside and from the inner path you can see views of the water. Look out for a 'temple' whose dark walls are carved with the portraits of more than 500 sages, and the 'pure fragrance house' has some impressive furniture made from the gnarled roots of banyan trees.

### **FREE** Confucian Temple *TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wenmiao*; 613 *Renmin Lu*; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm) The main building of this former Confucian Temple is still under renovation and should look stunning when complete. The highlight now is the fabulous stela carved during the Southern Song dynasty (1137–1279). One features a map of old Suzhou – it details the canal system (much of which is now paved over and blocked), old roads and the city walls dating back to 1229. Surprisingly, the whole city grid is relatively unchanged from 800 years ago. There's also an astronomy stela from 1190 – one of the oldest astronomy charts in the world.

### **Suzhou Silk Museum** *MUSEUM*

( *Suzhou Sichou Bowuguan*; 2001 *Renmin Lu*; admission ¥15; ☺ 9am-5pm) Suzhou was renowned for silk production and weaving, and the Suzhou Silk Museum houses a number of fascinating exhibitions that detail the history of Suzhou's 4000-year-old silk industry. Exhibits include a section on silk-weaving techniques and a room with live silk worms munching away on mulberry leaves and spinning cocoons. There are many functioning looms and it's not uncommon to see staff at work on a large brocade. Many of the captions are in English. Adjacent to the museum is the new Suzhou Arts Museum, but the exhibitions are a bit hit and miss.

### **North Temple Pagoda** *PAGODA*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Beisi Ta*; 1918 *Renmin Lu*; admission ¥25; ☺ 7.45am-5.30pm) The



tallest pagoda south of the Yangzi, at nine storeys North Temple Pagoda dominates the northern end of Renmin Lu. Climb it for sweeping views of hazy modern-day Suzhou.

The temple complex goes back 1700 years and was originally a residence; the current reincarnation dates back to the 17th century. Off to the side is **Nanmu Guanyin Hall** (Nanmu Guanyin Dian), which was rebuilt in the Ming dynasty with some features imported from elsewhere.

## **Pan Gate** LANDMARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Pan Men; 1 Dong Dajie; admission Pan Gate only/with Ruiguang Pagoda ¥25/31; 🕒 7.30am-6pm*) This stretch of the city wall straddling the outer moat in the southwest corner of the city has Suzhou's only remaining original coiled gate, Pan Gate, which dates from 1355. This overgrown double-walled water gate was used for controlling waterways and has many defensive positions at the top. From the gate, you can spy the exquisite arched Wumen Bridge (Wumen Qiao) to the east and there are great views of the moat and the crumbling **Ruiguang Pagoda** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Ruiguang Ta), constructed in 1004. The gate is also connected to 300m of the ancient city wall, which visitors can walk along. To get there, take tourist bus Y5 from the train station or Changxu Lu.

## **Temple of Mystery** TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xuanmiao Guan; Guanqian Jie; admission ¥10, incl performance ¥30; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm*) The Taoist Temple of Mystery stands in what was once Suzhou's old bazaar, a rowdy entertainment district with travelling showmen, acrobats and actors. The temple's present surroundings of Guanqian Jie are just as boisterous, but the current showmen are more likely to sell you a fake designer watch, and blasphemously, the front hall of the temple is now selling gold and jewellery!

The temple was founded in the 3rd century AD, and restored many

times over its long history. The complex contains several elaborately decorated halls, including **Sanqing Dian** (Three Purities Hall), which is supported by 60 pillars and capped by a double roof with upturned eaves. The temple dates from 1181 and is the only surviving example of Song architecture in Suzhou.

## **Tiger Hill** *PARK*

(*Huqiu Shan; Huqiu Lu; admission high/low season ¥60/40; ☺ 7.30am-6pm, to 5pm winter*) In the far northwest of town, Tiger Hill is popular with local tourists. The hill itself is artificial and is the final resting place of He Lu, founding father of Suzhou. He Lu died in the 6th century BC and myths have coalesced around him – he is said to have been buried with a collection of 3000 swords be guarded by a white tiger.

The beacon drawing the visitors is the leaning **Cloud Rock Pagoda** (; Yunyan Ta) atop Tiger Hill. The octagonal seven-storey pagoda was built in the 10th century entirely of brick, an innovation in Chinese architecture at the time. The pagoda began tilting over 400 years ago, and today the highest point is displaced more than 2m from its original position. Tourist buses Y1 and Y2 from the train station go to Tiger Hill.

## **Couple's Garden** *GARDENS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Ou Yuan; high/low season ¥20/15; ☺ 8am-4.30pm*) The tranquil Couple's Garden is off the main tourist route and sees fewer visitors (a relative concept in China), though the gardens, pond and courtyards are quite lovely. Surrounding the garden on Pingjiang Lu are some fine examples of traditional Suzhou architecture, bridges and canals.

## **FREE** **Kunqu Opera Museum** *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xiqu Bowuguan; 14 Zhongzhangjia Xiang; ☺ 8.30am-4pm*) Down a warren of narrow lanes, the small Kunqu Opera Museum is dedicated to *kunqu*, the opera style of the region. The beautiful old theatre

houses a stage, musical instruments, costumes and photos of famous performers. It also puts on occasional performances of *kunqu*.

## Pingtan Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( *Pingtan Bowuguan*; 3 Zhongzhangjia Xiang; admission ¥4; 🕒 8.30am-noon, 3.30-4.30pm) Almost next to the Kunqu Opera Museum is the Pingtan Museum, which puts on wonderful performances of *pingtan*, a singing and storytelling art form sung in the Suzhou dialect. Shows are at 1.30pm daily.

## PINGTAN: TRADITIONAL STORYTELLING IN SUZHOU'S HEART

Savouring tea in a Suzhou teahouse while indulging in a *pingtan* performance is the local equivalent of whiling away an evening in a jazz bar in the West.

Unlike *kunqu* opera, an extant Chinese opera that also originated in Jiangsu and a dominant form of high culture in China, *pingtan* is more of a folk art. It combines exquisite storytelling and ballad singing in the local dialect, and is often accompanied by traditional instruments like *guzheng* (zither) and *pipa* (lute). The stories tend to revolve around Chinese classics such as *The Three Kingdoms* (a warring period from AD 220 to 280) and *The Legend of the White Snake*. Instead of a chamber group playing music in a theatre, *pingtan* is often a one-man (or a maximum of two) show in a teahouse. Done well, it's an enchanting blend of singing and strings that emotes the themes behind most of these tunes. Done poorly? Think wailing cats.

Most teahouses have Suzhou's version of 'live music' on the weekend, and reservation is essential. A handful of them have a *pingtan* master take the stage every night, for example, the delightful [Pingtan Teahouse](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Pingtan Chaguan*; 2nd fl, 626 Shiquan Jie), where *pingtan* enthusiasts get together to keep the traditions alive. The music usually starts between 8pm and 10pm. Order some tea (the speciality is Yunnan pu'erh, unlimited serves from ¥100), and pick songs (from ¥45, some lyrics have English translations) for the master to play. Enjoy!

## Tours

Evening boat tours wind their way around the outer canal leaving nightly from 6pm to 8.30pm (¥120, 55 minutes, half-hourly). The trips,

usually with *pingtan* performance on board, are a great way to experience old Suzhou. Remember to bring bug repellent as the mosquitoes are tenacious. Tickets can be bought at the port near Renmin Bridge, which shares the same quarters with the Grand Canal boat ticket office (; Huachuan Shoupiaochu).

## Festivals & Events

### Suzhou Silk Festival *SILK*

Every September Suzhou hosts a silk festival. There are exhibitions devoted to silk history and production, and silk merchants get to show off their wares to crowds of thousands.

## Sleeping

Hotels in general are terribly overpriced in Suzhou. Get ready to hone your bargaining skills.



### **Pingjiang Lodge** *BOUTIQUE HOTEL* \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Suzhou Pingjiang Kezhan*; 📍 6523 2888; [www.pingjianglodge.com](http://www.pingjianglodge.com); 33 *Niujia Xiang*; 33 r ¥988-2588; 📞📧) This 17th-century, traditional courtyard building has well-kept gardens and 51 rooms bedecked in traditional furniture (we love the wooden bathtub!). Rooms at the pointy end are suites with split-level living spaces. Services are attentive. Discounts of up to 50% are available.

### **Suzhou Watertown Youth Hostel** *HOSTEL* \$

( *Suzhou Sijifusheng Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 6521 8885; [www.watertownhostel.com](http://www.watertownhostel.com); 27 *Dashitou Xiang, Renmin Lu*; 27 6-/4-bed dm ¥50/60, r ¥130-220; 📞📧) Tucked away in an alley off Renmin Lu, this 200-year-old courtyard complex now houses a lovely, serene hostel with 18 rooms, every one of which is different. Rooms on the 2nd floor are quieter while ground-floor rooms have better wi-fi

reception. Most rooms have attached bathrooms but you may find more intimacy than privacy (no doors, shower curtain only). Dorms are compact but clean enough. The cosy Suzhou-styled patio invites you to chill. Another plus is that the airport bus station is just a stone's throw away.

## Suzhou Mingtown Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Suzhou Mingtang Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 6581 6869; 28 Pingjiang Lu; 28 6-bed dm ¥50, r ¥160-180; 📶📶) Across the canal from Pingjiang Lodge is this well-run youth hostel, whose rooms and dorms come with dark wooden 'antique' furniture, and the hot water is finally 24/7. The only downside is the rooms aren't soundproof in this compound. There's free internet, free laundry, and bike rental.

## Pan Pacific Suzhou *HOTEL* \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Suzhou Wugong Fantaipingyang Dajiudian*; 📍 6510 3388; [www.panpacific.com/Suzhou](http://www.panpacific.com/Suzhou); 259 Xinshi Lu; 259 d ¥1268; 📶📶) There's a kitschy feel to the exterior of this former Sheraton Hotel, which looks like a faux Forbidden City. But once you step into the lobby, you'll know this is truly a five-star luxury. The 500+ rooms are spacious and stylish, fitted with all the latest gadgets to make you happy. Services are simply impeccable. A bonus is guests get to enjoy free access to the adjacent Gan Gate Garden.

## Hotel Soul *HOTEL* \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Sugeli Jiudian*; 📍 6777 0777; [www.hotelsoul.com.cn](http://www.hotelsoul.com.cn); 27-33 Qiaosikong Xiang; 27-33 d & tw ¥1080-1680; 📶📶) This Philippe Starck-wannabe has a lot of sharp angles and neon blue lights but not much soul. It is, however, very good value. Rooms are huge with textured wallpaper, plush beds and tones that make you want to order a martini. Staff are eager and attentive.

## Marco Polo Suzhou HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( Suzhou Xuanmiao Makeb o luo Dajjudian; ☎ 6801 9888; [www.marcopolohotels.com](http://www.marcopolohotels.com); 818 Ganjiang Donglu; 818 d ¥1250-2200; ✳️@) Right in the heart of Suzhou, this former Sofitel has been rebranded and still makes the grade. Its 314 rooms are tailored to suit the needs of the business traveller. Leisure visitors also like the spacious rooms with modern furnishings. Discounts knocked rooms down to ¥500 during time of research.

## THE GRAND CANAL

The world's longest canal, the Grand Canal (; Dayunhe) once meandered for almost 1800km from Beijing to Hangzhou, and is a striking example of China's engineering prowess. Sections of the canal have been silted up for centuries and today perhaps half of it remains seasonally navigable.

The Grand Canal's construction spanned many centuries. The first 85km were completed in 495 BC, but the mammoth task of linking the Yellow River (Huang He) and the Yangzi River (Chang Jiang) was undertaken between AD 605–609 by a massive conscripted labour force during Sui times. It was developed again during the Yuan dynasty (1271–1368). The canal enabled the government to capitalise on the growing wealth of the Yellow River basin and to ship supplies from south to north.

The Jiangnan section of the canal (Hangzhou, Suzhou, Wuxi and Changzhou) is a skein of canals, rivers and branching lakes. There are boat rides along certain sections of the canal in Suzhou – with all the surrounding modernity, though, the grandness of the project seems to have all but faded.

## Eating

Plentiful restaurants can be found along Guanqian Jie, especially down the road from the Temple of Mystery.

Some local delicacies to try are *songshu guiyu* (; sweet-and-sour mandarin fish), *xiangyou shanhu* (; stewed shredded eel) and *xigua ji* (; chicken placed in watermelon rind and steamed).

## Wumen Renjia CHINESE JIANGSU \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 6728 8041; 31 Panru Xiang; dishes from ¥40; 🍴 ) Hidden in a quiet alley north of Lion's Grove Garden, this courtyard restaurant attracts a mix of locals and well-informed visitors who enjoy the subtle flavours of traditional Suzhou cooking. It's said that only locally sourced natural ingredients are used. Service can sometimes be a bit slow. Reservation essential.

## **Pingvon** TEAHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Pinfang; 94 Pingjiang Lu; dishes from ¥4; 🍴 ) A cute little teahouse perched beside one of Suzhou's most popular canal-side streets. Pingvon serves up excellent dumplings and delicate little morsels on small plates. The tea rooms upstairs are more atmospheric.

## **Xishengyuan** DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 43 Fenghuang Jie; dumplings from ¥8 ) Crowds pay and gather near the entrance to wait for the steaming fresh *xiaolong bao* (; soup dumplings) to come out of the kitchen. If you don't want to jostle, grab a seat and order several other great dishes including assorted *huntun* (; dumplings; ¥6 to ¥10).

## **Yaba Shengjian** DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 12 Lindun Lu; dumplings ¥10; 🕒 5.30am-7.30pm ) This 60-year-old institution also sells noodles but all hail its uber-fresh handmade *shenjian bao* (; pan-fried dumplings) stuffed with juicy pork. During lunch hours expect to queue for 30 minutes just to order! Join the line, snag a table and enjoy your trophy. No English menu.

## **Zhuhongxing** NOODLES \$

( Taijian Long; mains ¥20-47 ) Popular with locals, this eatery, with several branches across town, has a long history and wholesome,

filling noodles – try the scrummy *xiaren mian* (; noodles with baby shrimps) or the *baoshanmian* (, eel noodles, ¥10). There's no English menu.

## **Deyue Lou** CHINESE JIANGSU \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 6523 8940; 43 *Taijian Long*; mains ¥30-120; 🕒 24hr; 📺 ) It's hard to know what to start with in this institution, with a menu featuring over 300 items! The star is the freshwater fish. The restaurant is a popular stop for tour groups and for large wedding parties, and feels a little over the top at times.

## **Drinking**

There are stacks of trendy cafe-bars scattered along Pingjiang Lu. The nightlife scene on Shiquan Jie is dying as most of the expats' watering holes have moved to the new Suzhou Industrial Park, 9km east of the centre of town.

## **Bookworm** CAFE, BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Lao Shuchong*; 77 *Gunxiu Fang*; 🕒 9am-1am ) Beijing's Bookworm has wormed its way down to Suzhou, although the selection isn't as good as Beijing's. The food is crowd pleasers (lots of Western options) and the cold beers include Tsingtao and Erdinger. There are occasional events and books you can borrow or buy. Just off Shiquan Jie.

## **Entertainment**

Regular performances of *kunqu* opera and *pingtan*, two of the exquisite performance arts sung in local dialects, are regularly scheduled at the following places.

## **Kunqu Opera Museum** CHINESE OPERA



[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Kunqu Bowuguan; 14 Zhongzhangjia Xiang; tickets ¥30*) This place puts on performances of *kunqu* at 2pm on Sundays.

## Garden of the Master of the Nets *MUSIC*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Wangshi Yuan; tickets ¥100*) From March to November, music performances are held nightly from 7.30pm to 9.30pm for tourist groups at this garden. Don't expect anything too authentic.

## Pingtian Museum *TRADITIONAL SINGING*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Pingtian Bowuguan; 3 Zhongzhangjia Xiang; tickets ¥4-5*) This museum has traditional *shuoshu* (storytelling, in Chinese only) at 1.30pm daily. Tickets on sale at noon.

## Shopping

Suzhou-style embroidery, calligraphy, paintings, sandalwood fans, writing brushes and silk underclothes are for sale nearly everywhere. For good-quality items at competitive rates, shop along Shiquan Jie, east off Renmin Lu, which is lined with shops and markets selling souvenirs. The northern part of Renmin Lu has a number of silk stores (; Sichou Shangdian).

## Xinhua Bookshop *BOOKS*

(*Xinhua Shudian; 166 Guanqian Jie; ☺ 9am-9pm*) This bookshop sells a variety of English- and Chinese-language maps. Stodgy English novels on the 4th floor.

## Information

Major tourist hotels have foreign-exchange counters.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; 1450 Renmin Lu*) Changes travellers cheques and foreign cash. There are ATMs that take

international cards at most larger branches of the Bank of China.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Renmin Lu & Jingde Lu*)

**Hong Qingting Internet Cafe** (*Hong Qingting Wangba; 916 Shiquan Jie; per hr ¥2.50; ☺ 24hr*)

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (*Gongshang Yinhang; 222 Guanqian Jie*) It has 24-hour ATM facilities.

**No 1 Hospital** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Suda Fuyiyuan; 96 Shizi Jie*)

There are other hospitals in Suzhou.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 6522 5661, ext 20593; 1109 Renmin Lu)** Can help with emergencies and visa problems. The visa office is about 200m down a lane called Dashitou Xiang.

**Suzhou Tourism Information Center** (*Suzhou Luyou Zixun Zhongxin; 📞 6530 5887; [www.classicsuzhou.com](http://www.classicsuzhou.com); 345 Shiquan Jie*)

Several branches in town including at bus stations. Can help with booking accommodation and tours. Festival listings and general information on website.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

Suzhou does not have an airport, but **China Eastern Airlines** (*Dongfang Hangkong Gongs; 📞 6522 2788; 115 Ganjiang Lu*) can help with booking flights out of Shanghai. Buses leave here frequently for Hongqiao Airport in Shanghai. Tickets are ¥53.

### **Bus**

Suzhou has three long-distance bus stations and the two listed are the most useful. Tickets for all buses can also be bought at the **Lianhe ticket centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Lianhe shoupiaochu; 1606 Renmin Lu; ☺ bus tickets 8.30-11.30am & 1-5pm*).

The principal station is the **north long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*qiche beizhan; 📞 6577 6577*) at the northern end of Renmin Lu, next to the train station:

**Hangzhou** ¥71, two hours, regular services

**Nanjing** ¥75, 2½ hours, regular services

**Ningbo** ¥130, four hours, seven daily

**Yangzhou** ¥75, three hours, regular services

The **south long-distance bus station** (*qiche nanzhan; cnr Yingchun Lu & Nanhuan Donglu*) has buses to the following:

**Hangzhou** ¥71, two hours, every 20 minutes

**Nanjing** ¥75, two hours, every 20 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥35, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Yangzhou** ¥75, two hours, hourly

## Train

Suzhou is on the Nanjing–Shanghai express G line. Trains stop at either the more centrally located **Suzhou Train Station** (; Suzhou Zhan) or the new **Suzhou North Train Station** (; Suzhou Beizhan), 12km north of the city centre. Book train tickets on the 2nd floor of the **Lianhe ticket centre** (*Lianhe shoupiaochu; 1606 Renmin Lu; ☺ train tickets 7.30-11am & noon-5pm*). There's also a ticket office along Guanqian Jie across from the Temple of Mystery. Another ticket office can be found on the other side of the road from the south bus station.

**Beijing** ¥525, five hours, 15 daily

**Nanjing** ¥100, 50 minutes, frequent services

**Shanghai** ¥40, 25 minutes, frequent services

**Wuxi** ¥20, 15 minutes, frequent services

## **i** Getting Around

### Bicycle

Riding a bike is the best way to see Suzhou, though nutty drivers and traffic in the city centre can be nerve jangling. Search out the quieter streets and travel along the canals to get the most of what this city has to offer.

You can rent a bike from most hostels in Suzhou. The **Yangyang Bike Rental Shop** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Yangyang Chehang; 2061 Renmin Lu; ☺ 7am-6pm*), a short walk north of the Silk Museum,

offers bike rentals (¥25 per day plus ¥200 deposit). Check out the seat and brakes carefully before you pedal off.

### Public Transport

Suzhou has some convenient tourist buses that visit all sights and cost ¥2. They all pass by the train station.

**Bus Y5** Goes around the western and eastern sides of the city and has a stop at Suzho Museum.

**Bus Y2** Travels from Tiger Hill, Pan Gate and along Shiquan Jie.

**Buses Y1 & Y4** Run the length of Renmin Lu.

**Bus 80** Runs between two train stations.

The new Suzhou metro line runs along Ganjiang Lu. The second line will link Suzhou north station with downtown when it enters service (hopefully) in 2014.

### Taxi

Fares start at ¥10 and drivers generally use their meters. A trip from Guanqian Jie to the train station should cost around ¥15. From Suzhou north station to downtown, the fare is around ¥50 to ¥60. Pedicabs hover around the tourist areas and can be persistent (¥5 for short rides is standard).

---

## Around Suzhou

Suzhou's tourist brochures offer a mind-boggling array of sights around the town. Sadly, not all are great, and noteworthy ones are often overrun by tourists. Go early to avoid the crowds.



## TONGLI

📍 0512

This lovely **Old Town** ( *Laochengqu*; 📍 6333 1140; admission ¥100, free after 5.30pm), only 18km southeast of Suzhou, boasts rich, historical canal-side atmosphere and weather-beaten charm. Many of the buildings have kept their traditional facades, with stark whitewashed walls, black-tiled roofs, cobblestone pathways and willow-shaded canal views adding to a picturesque allure. The town is best explored the traditional way: aimlessly meandering along the canals and alleys until you get lost. It doesn't really matter where you

go, as long as you can elude the crowds.

You can reach Tongli from either Suzhou or Shanghai, but aim for a weekday visit.

The admission fee to the town includes access to the following sights, except the Chinese Sex Culture Museum.

## Sights & Activities

### **Gengle Tang** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(🕒 9am-5.30pm) There are three old residences that you'll pass at some point, the best of which is this sprawling Ming-dynasty estate with 52 halls spread out over five courtyards in the west of town. The buildings have been elaborately restored and redecorated with paintings, calligraphy and antique furniture to bring back the atmosphere of the original buildings.

### **Pearl Pagoda** *PAGODA*

(*Zhenzhu Ta*; 🕒 9am-5.30pm) In the north of town is this pagoda, which dates from the Qing dynasty but has recently been restored. Inside, you'll find a large residential compound decorated with Qing-era antiques, an ancestral hall, a garden and an opera stage. The place gets its name from a tiny pagoda draped in pearls.

### **Tuisi Garden** *GARDENS*

(*Tuisi Yuan*; 🕒 9am-5.30pm) This beautiful 19th-century garden in the east of the old town delightfully translates as the 'Withdraw and Reflect Garden', so named because it was a Qing government official's retirement home. The Tower of Fanning Delight served as the living quarters, while the garden itself is a lovely portrait of pond water churning with outsized goldfish, rockeries and pavilions, caressed by traditional Chinese music.

### **Chinese Sex Culture Museum** *MUSEUM*

(*Zhonghua Xingwenhua Bowuguan*; admission ¥20; 🕒 9am-5.30pm) This private museum, located east of Tuisi Garden, is quietly housed

in a historic but disused girls' school campus and you won't miss it. If you thought Confucius was a prude, think again.

## Tours

Slow-moving **six-person boats** (¥90 for 25 minutes) ply the waters of Tongli's canal system. The boat trip on Tongli Lake is free, though of no particular interest.

## FIVE THOUSAND YEARS OF EROTICA

Overall, there's not a whole lot distinguishing one canal town from another, and which ever one you choose to visit is ultimately a matter of either convenience or fate (or both). Tongli, however, does have an X-rated trump card up its sleeve, it's the **Chinese Sex Culture Museum**. Unfortunately, the name deters most people from even considering a visit (visitors tentatively approach, see the sign, giggle, blush and turn around), though in reality it is not that racy.

Founded by sociology professors Liu Dalin and Hu Hongxia against all odds, the museum's aim is not so much to arouse, but rather to reintroduce an aspect of the country's culture that, ironically, has been forcefully repressed since China was 'liberated' in 1949. The pair have collected several thousand artefacts relating to sex, from the good (erotic landscape paintings, fans and teacups) to the bad (chastity belts and saddles with wooden dildos used to punish 'licentious' women and 'zoophilia' statues), and the humorous (satirical Buddhist statues) to the unusual (a pot-bellied immortal with a penis growing out of his head topped by a turtle). This is also one of the only places in the country where homosexuality is openly recognised as part of Chinese culture.

Though some of the exhibits seem a little forced (a stone pillar displayed represents a 'penis'? That's stretching it), and the one-too-many pictures of penis- and vagina-shaped rocks will elicit schoolboy giggles, it's worth a visit simply to support this endeavour; and there isn't anything like this anywhere else in China.

## Sleeping & Eating

Guesthouses are plentiful, with basic rooms starting at about ¥100. Restaurants are everywhere, and food prices here are much higher than Suzhou. Some local dishes to try include *meigancaishaorou* (; stewed meat with dried vegetables), *yinyuchaodan* (; silver fish omelette) and *zhuangyuangti* (; stewed pig's leg).

## Zhengfu Caotang BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

( 📍 6333 6358; [www.zfct.net](http://www.zfct.net); 138 Mingqing Jie; 138 d ¥380-1380; 🌐📶 ) The place to stay in town. The 14 deluxe rooms and suites are all aesthetically set with Qing-style furniture and antiques. The rooms wouldn't be out of place in a *Wallpaper* spread, and each one is unique. Facilities like bathrooms and floor heating are ultramodern.

## Tongli International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Tongli Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 6333 9311; 210 Zhuhang Jie; 210 dm ¥45, r ¥120-150; 🌐📶📶 ) This youth hostel has two locations. The main one, slightly off Zhongchuan Beilu, is 300m west of Zhengfu Caotang. Rooms are decked out in traditional furniture, and the wooden pillars and stone courtyard ooze an old-China charm. The alternative location beside Taiping bridge has compact dorms, and all doubles have shared bathroom only.

### **i** Getting There & Away

From Suzhou, take a bus (¥8, 50 minutes, every 30 minutes) at the south long-distance bus station for Tongli. Grab an electric cart (¥2) from beside the Tongli bus station to the Old Town, or you can walk it in about 15 minutes.

Twelve daily buses (¥36) leave Tongli bus station for Shanghai and there are frequent buses to Zhouzhuang (¥6, 30 minutes).

## LUZHI

This minute, relatively less commercialised canal town, only a 25km public bus trip east of Suzhou, has bundles of charm. The entrance ticket of ¥78 can be skipped if you just want to wander the streets, alleys and bridges – you only have to pay if you enter the **tourist sights** (🕒 8am-5pm), such as the **Wansheng Rice Warehouse** (; Wansheng Mihang), the **Baosheng Temple** (; Baosheng Si) and a handful of museums, but these can be missed without detracting from the overall experience.

The humpbacked bridges here are delightful. Check out the centuries-old **Jinli Bridge** (; Jinli Qiao) and **Xinglong Bridge** (;



Xinglong Qiao). Taking a half-hour **boat ride** (¥40) is an excellent way to sample the canal views. Boats depart from several points, including the Yong'an Bridge (; Yong'an Qiao).

The newest attraction here is the **Luzhi Cultural Park** (), a huge, faux Ming-dynasty complex filled with tourist shops and a couple of exhibition halls. Admission is free and the landscaped gardens, ponds, pavilions and an opera stage make it a nice area to amble.

To get to Luzhi, take bus 518 from Suzhou's train station (¥4, one hour, first/last bus 6am/8pm) or from the bus stop on Pingqi Lu () to the last stop. When you get off, take the first right along Dasheng Lu () to the decorative arch; crossing the bridge takes you into the back of the old town in five minutes. Hordes of pedicabs will descend upon you offering to take you to the main entrance. Pay no more than ¥5.

The last bus back from Luzhi is at 7.30pm. If you want to continue to Shanghai from Luzhi, buses (¥18, two hours) from the Luzhi bus station run between 6.20am and 5pm.

## MUDU

Dating back to the Ming dynasty, Mudu was once the haunt of wealthy officials, intellectuals and artists, and later even attracted the Qing Emperor Qianlong to come and visit six times. Today, the village of Mudu has been swallowed up by Suzhou's growing urban sprawl. While it is neither the largest nor the most appealing of Jiangsu's canal towns, it makes for a convenient half-day tour.

Mudu is free if you merely want to soak up the atmosphere – the entrance fees are for the top sights. Sadly, as most of the buildings along the canal are now modern structures, it's actually worth shelling out the admission fees.

## Sights

### **Bangyan Mansion** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(*Bangyan Fudi; Xiatang Jie; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-4.30pm*) This dignified complex was the home of the 19th-century writer and politician Feng Guifen. It has a rich collection of antique furniture and intricate carvings of stone, wood and brick – it often does part-time

duty as a movie set. The surrounding garden is pretty but fairly typical – lotus ponds, arched bridges, bamboo – and can't compare to the more ornate gardens of Suzhou.

### **Hongyin Mountain Villa** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Hongyin Shanfang; Shantang Jie; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-4.30pm*)

By far the most interesting place in Mudu is this villa, with its elaborate opera stage, exhibits and even an imperial pier where Emperor Qianlong docked his boat. The stage in the centre hall is impressive; honoured guests were seated in front and the galleries along the sides of the hall were for women. The emperor was a frequent visitor and you can see his uncomfortable-looking imperial chair, which faces the stage. Said chair is more than 1000 years old, worn smooth in spots where hands have touched it. Operas are still performed here during the day. Surrounding the stage are some carefully arranged gardens, criss-crossed with dainty arched bridges and walkways. The old residence halls have been wonderfully preserved and have some interesting exhibits, including displays of dusty hats and gowns worn by imperial officers. Look out for the display on the Manchu-Han imperial feast: 111 faux, plastic dishes are on display.

### **Ancient Pine Garden** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Gusongyuan; Shantang Jie; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-4.30pm*) In the middle of Shantang Jie is this courtyard complex known for its intricately carved beams. Look out for wooden impressions of officials, hats, phoenixes, flowers and stuff most people can't identify.

### **Yan Family Garden** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Yanjia Huayuan; cnr Shantang Jie & Mingqing Jie; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-4.30pm*) In the northwest corner of the Old Town is this beautiful complex, which dates back to the Ming dynasty and was once the home of a former magistrate. The garden, with its rockeries and a meandering lake, is separated into five sections and divided by walls, with each section meant to invoke a season. Flowers, plants and rocks are arranged to create a 'mood'. If you come during the weekend, the only mood the crowds might invoke is exasperation.

## Tours

The most pleasurable way to experience Mudu is by **boat**. You'll find a collection of traditional skiffs docked outside the Bangyan Mansion. A ride in one of these will take you along the narrow canals, shaded by ancient bridges and battered stone walls. A 10-minute boat ride is ¥10 per person (¥30 per boat minimum charge).

### Getting There & Away

From Suzhou, tourist bus Y4 runs from the train station to Mudu (¥3). Get off at Mudu Yanjia Huayuan Zhan (,), across from a small road (; Mingqing Jie) leading to the main entrance. You'll see a big sign and a car park full of tour buses. The ride takes about 45 minutes.

Or you can take the metro and get off at the eponymous last stop. Take exit 1 and then board bus 38. Get off at Mudu Guzhen zhan (, four stops).

## **TIANPING SHAN & LINGYAN SHAN**

These two hill areas are along the bus route to Mudu and can be combined in one long day trip. Scenic **Tianping Shan** (*Lingtian Lu; admission ¥20; ☺ 7.30am-5pm*) is a low, forested hill about 13km west of Suzhou. It's a wonderful place for hiking or just meandering along one of its many wooded trails. It's also famous for its medicinal spring waters.

Eleven kilometres southwest of Suzhou is **Lingyan Shan** (*Lingtian Lu; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-4.30pm winter, to 5pm summer*), or 'Cliff of the Spirits', once the site of a palace where Emperor Qianlong stayed during his inspection tours of the Yangzi River valley. Now the mountain is home to an active Buddhist monastery. The climb to the peak is exhausting but it offers panoramic views of the city of Suzhou. On the way up, take the path on the left for an exciting clamber over rough-hewn stone and paths.

Tourist bus 4 goes to Lingyan Shan and Tianping Shan from Suzhou's train station.

## **ZHOUSHUANG**

Some 30km southeast of Suzhou, the 900-year-old water village of **Zhouzhuang** (*admission ¥100, free access after 8pm*) is probably the most commercialised canal town and often invaded by tour groups, thanks to Chen Yifei, the late renowned Chinese painter whose works of the once idyllic village are its claim to fame.

It is not impossible, though, to catch a glimpse of the old-world charm that still exists in Zhouzhuang. Get up early or take an evening stroll, before the crowds arrive or when they begin to thin out. Zhouzhuang boasts some appealing architectural delights, which makes a trip to this 'Venice of the East' worthwhile.

## Sights

### **Twin Bridges** BRIDGE

There're a total of 14 bridges in Zhouzhuang, but the most attractive is this pair of Ming-dynasty bridges (; Shuangqiao) gorgeously standing at the intersection of two waterways in the heart of this canal town.

**Shide Bridge** (; Shide Qiao) is a humpbacked bridge while the connecting **Yongan Bridge** (; Yongan Qiao) is the one with a square arch. The bridges were depicted in Chen Yifei's *Memory of Hometown*, which shot the whole town to fame from the 1980s onwards.

It's fun to go under bridge after bridge by **boat**. A one-hour boat ride is ¥100 per boat (six people).

### **Zhang's House** HISTORICAL BUILDING

(*Zhangting*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) To the south of the Twin Bridges, this magnificent 70-room, three-hall structure was built in the Ming-era and bought by the Zhang clan in the early Qing dynasty as their residence. There's an opera stage in the house to keep the ladies entertained as they were not supposed to leave home or seek entertainment outside. Note the chairs in the main hall. The unmarried women could only sit on those with a hollow seatback, symbolising that they had nobody to rely on! The servants' walkways, a long narrow lane with sharp zigzagging turns, are for the kid in you.

## Shen's House *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Shenting; Nanshi Jie*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) Near another famous bridge of Fu'an Qiao, this property of the Shen clan is a piece of lavish Qing-style architecture that boasts three halls and more than 100 rooms. The first hall is particularly interesting, as it has a water gate and a wharf where the family moors their private boats.

## Quanfu Temple *TEMPLE*

( *Quanfu Si*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) It's hard to miss this eye-catching amber-hued temple complex. The 'full fortune' temple was founded during the Song dynasty and has been rebuilt numerous times since then. The structure you see today is an incarnation from 1995, when a handful of halls and gardens were added to the mix. The setting is simply stunning. Surrounded by crisscrossing waterways, the whole complex appears to float on water, while there are ponds and lakes between each building, with bridges linking all of them. The gardens provide a nice retreat from the bustling streets throughout the village.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There're a handful of guesthouses in town. Expect to pay ¥80 for a basic room. With eateries at almost every corner, you won't starve.

## Zhengfu Caotang *BOUTIQUE HOTEL* \$\$\$

( 📞 5721 9333; [www.zfct.net](http://www.zfct.net); 90 Zhongshi Jie; 90 d ¥480-1080; \*@)

Again, kudos goes to this five-room boutique accommodation for beautifully combining antique furniture with top-notch facilities to create the best hotel in this water town. The courtyard gives a cosy feel where you can chill and sip tea.

## Zhouzhuang International Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

( 📞 5720 4566; 86 Beishi Jie; 86 dm ¥45, r ¥100-140; \*@📶) Near the old opera stage is this new youth hostel in a converted courtyard. It has a selection of tidy rooms and a clean (but dim) dorm, and offers free laundry. The hostel owner is a barista, so enjoy a perfect brew in the trendy cafe on the ground floor.

### **i** Getting There & Away

From the north long-distance bus station in Suzhou, half-hourly buses (¥20, 1½ hours) leave for Zhouzhuang between 6.55am and 5.20pm. From the bus station in Zhouzhuang, turn left and walk till you see the bridge. Cross the bridge and you'll see the gated entrance to the village of Zhouzhuang. The walk is about 20 minutes. A taxi ride from the bus station is no more than ¥10.



# Zhejiang

POP 47 MILLION

## Includes »

[Hangzhou](#)

[Around Hangzhou](#)

[Wuzhen](#)

[Nanxun](#)

[Wuyi](#)

[Around Wuyi](#)

[Putuoshan](#)

---

## Why Go?

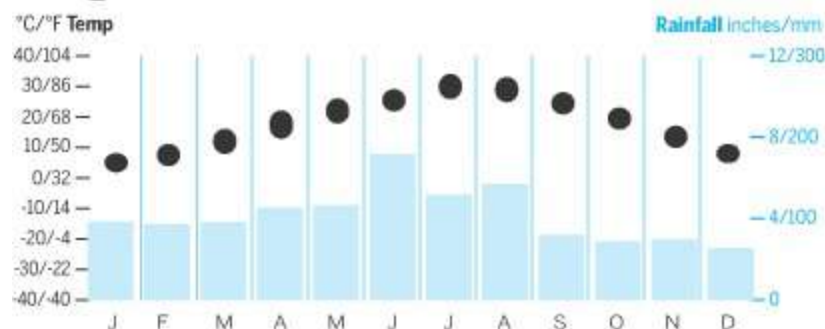
Zhejiang's trump card is its handsome and much-visited capital, Hangzhou. But while Hangzhou – a quick zip away on the train from Shanghai – is the front-running highlight, Zhejiang is no one-trick pony. There are the arched bridges and charming canal scenes of Wuzhen and Nanxun, water towns that typify the lushly irrigated north of Zhejiang () with its sparkling web of rivers and canals. The Buddhist

island of Putuoshan is the best known of the thousands of islands dotting a ragged and fragmented shoreline. The mist- and tree-cloaked slopes of Moganshan provide refreshing natural air-conditioning when the thermostat in Shanghai is set to blow in the steamy summer months. Zhejiang's rural aspect comes even more to the fore in the less-visited ancient villages of Guodong and Yuyuan outside the town of Wuyi.

---

## When to Go

### Hángzhōu



**Late Mar–early May** Spring sees low humidity and vegetation turning a brilliant green.

**Aug & Sep** Flee the simmering lowland heat to the cooler heights of Moganshan.

**Late Sep–mid-Nov** Steal a march on winter and evade the sapping summer in Hangzhou.

---

## Best Hikes

- » Moganshan ([Click here](#))
- » Guodong ([Click here](#))
- » Putuoshan ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Places to Stay



- » Moganshan House 23 ([Click here](#))
- » Le Passage Mohkan Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Four Seasons Hotel Hangzhou ([Click here](#))



## Zhejiang Highlights

① Hop on a bike for a leisurely circuit of Hangzhou's inimitable **West Lake** ([Click here](#))

② Turn your back on urban China and explore the forested inclines of lush **Moganshan** ([Click here](#))

③ Escape to the small village charms and pastoral shades of **Guodong** ([Click here](#))

④ Discover Zhejiang's picturesque canal-town culture at **Wuzhen** ([Click here](#))

## History

By the 7th and 8th centuries Hangzhou, Ningbo and Shaoxing had emerged as three of China's most important trading centres and ports. Fertile Zhejiang was part of the great southern granary from which food was shipped to the depleted areas of the north via the Grand Canal (Da Yunhe), which commences here. Growth accelerated when the Song dynasty moved court to Hangzhou in the 12th century after invasion from the north. Due to intense cultivation, northern Zhejiang has lost a lot of natural vegetation and much of it is now flat, featureless plain.

## Climate

Zhejiang has a humid, subtropical climate, with hot, sticky summers and chilly, clammy winters. Rain lashes the province in May and June (and typhoons can make landfall in summer) but slows to a drizzle for the rest of the year.

## Language

Zhejiang residents speak a variation of the Wu dialect, also spoken in Shanghai and Jiangsu. As the dialect changes from city to city, Mandarin is also widely used.

## Getting There & Away

Zhejiang is well connected to the rest of the country by plane, high-speed train and bus. The provincial capital Hangzhou is effortlessly

reached by train from Shanghai and Suzhou, and serves as a useful first stop in Zhejiang. Hangzhou and Putuoshan are both served by nearby airports.

### Getting Around

The province is quite small and getting around is straightforward. Travelling by high-speed train is fast and efficient but buses (and boats) are needed for some destinations; flying to the larger cities is also possible.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

---

# Hangzhou

 0571 / POP 6.16 MILLION

One of China's most illustrious tourist drawcards, Hangzhou's dreamy West Lake panoramas and fabulously green and hilly environs can easily lull you into long sojourns. Eulogised by poets and applauded by emperors, the lake has intoxicated the Chinese imagination for aeons. Religiously cleaned by armies of street sweepers and litter collectors, its scenic vistas draw you into a classical Chinese watercolour of willow-lined banks, ancient pagodas, mist-covered hills

and the occasional *shikumen* building and old *lilong* alleyway. Despite vast tourist cohorts, West Lake is a delight to explore, either on foot or by bike. You'll need about three days to fully savour the picturesque Jiangnan ('south of the Yangzi River') ambience, but the inclination is to take root – like one of the lakeside's litling willows – and stay put.

## History

Hangzhou's history dates to the start of the Qin dynasty (221 BC). Marco Polo passed through in the 13th century, calling Hangzhou Kinsai and noting in astonishment that Hangzhou had a circumference of 100 miles (161km), its waters vaulted by 12,000 bridges.

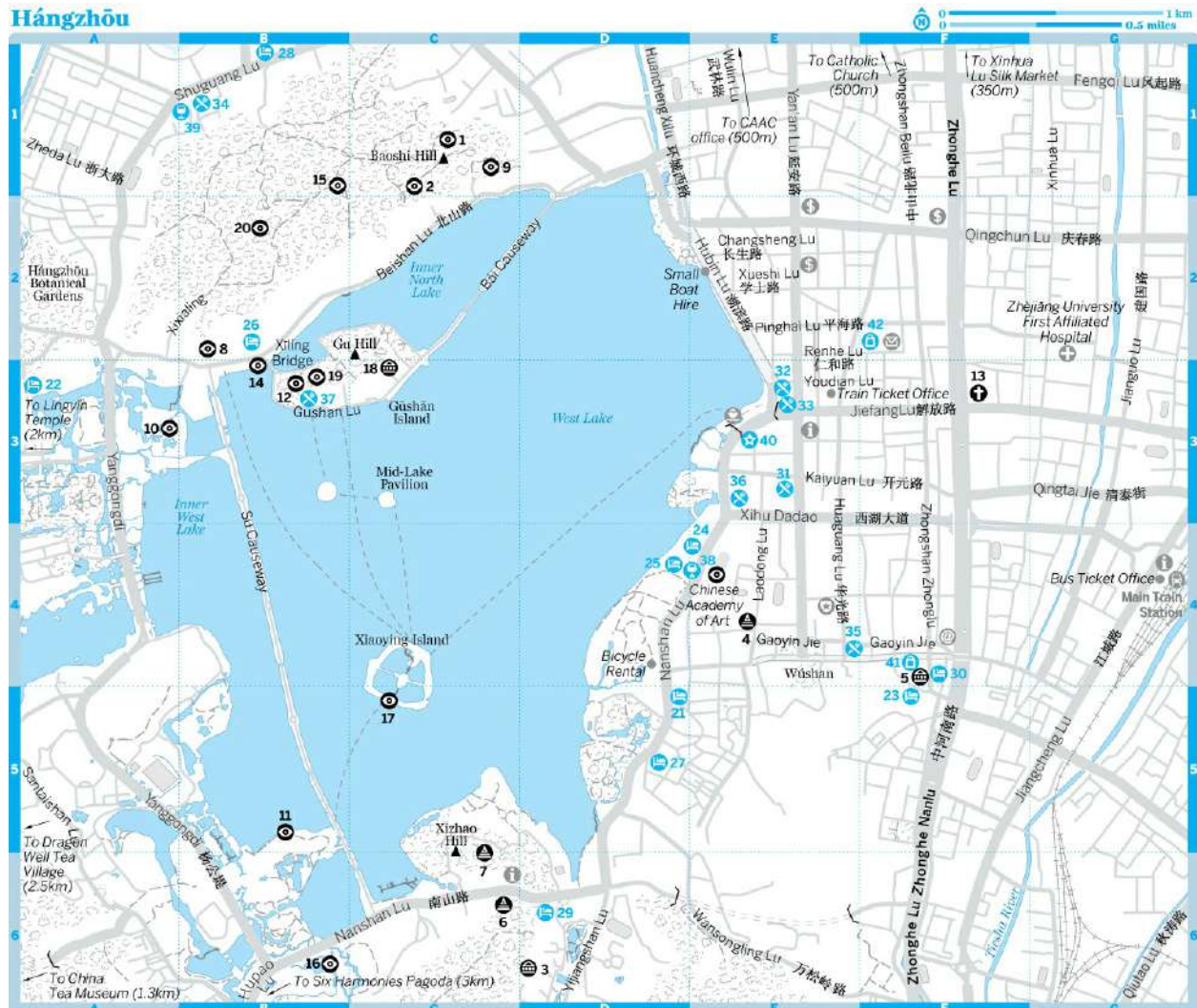
Hangzhou flourished after being linked with the Grand Canal in AD 610 but fully prospered after the Song dynasty was overthrown by the invading Jurchen, who captured the Song capital Kaifeng, along with the emperor and the leaders of the imperial court, in 1126. The remnants of the Song court fled south, finally settling in Hangzhou and establishing it as the capital of the Southern Song dynasty.

Hangzhou's wooden buildings made fire a perennial hazard; among major conflagrations, the great fire of 1237 reduced some 30,000 residences to piles of smoking carbon.

When the Mongols swept into China they established their court in Beijing, but Hangzhou retained its status as a prosperous commercial city. With 10 city gates by Ming times, Hangzhou took a hammering from Taiping rebels, who besieged the city in 1861 and captured it; two years later the imperial armies reclaimed it. These campaigns reduced almost the entire city to ashes, led to the deaths of over half a million of its residents through disease, starvation and warfare, and finally ended Hangzhou's significance as a commercial and trading centre.

Few monuments survived the devastation; much of what can be seen in Hangzhou today is of fairly recent construction.

## Hangzhou



# Hangzhou

## Sights

- 1 Baochu Pagoda C1
- 2 Baopu Taoist Temple C1
- 3 [China Silk Museum](#) D6
- 4 [Confucius Temple](#) E4
- 5 [Hugingyu Tang Chinese Medicine Museum](#) F4
- 6 [Jingci Temple](#) C6
- 7 [Leifeng Pagoda](#) C6

- 8 [Mausoleum of General Yue Fei](#) B2
- 9 Ming Dynasty Effigies C1
- 10 [Quyuan Garden](#) A3
- 11 [Red Carp Pond](#) B5
- 12 [Seal Engravers' Society](#) B3
- 13 [Sicheng Church](#) F3
- 14 Su Xiaoxiao's Tomb B3
- 15 Sunrise Terrace B1
- 16 [Taiziwan Park](#) B6
- 17 [Three Pools Mirroring the Moon](#) C5
- 18 [Zhejiang Provincial Museum](#) C3
- 19 [Zhongshan Park](#) B3
- 20 Ziyun Cave B2

## Sleeping

- 21 [Crystal Orange Hotel](#) D5
- 22 [Four Seasons Hotel Hangzhou](#) A3
- 23 [Hofang International Youth Hostel](#) F5
- 24 [In Lake Youth Hostel](#) E4
- 25 [Mingtown Youth Hostel](#) D4
- 26 [Shangri-La Hotel](#) B2
- 27 Starway Jingshang Youth Hostel D5
- 28 [Tea Boutique Hotel](#) B1
- 29 [West Lake Youth Hostel](#) D6
- 30 [Wushanyi International Youth Hostel](#) F4

## Eating

- 31 [Carrefour](#) E3
- 32 [Grandma's Kitchen](#) E3
- 33 [Green Tea Restaurant](#) E3
- Jin Sha (see 22)
- 34 [La Pedrera](#) B1
- 35 [Lao Hangzhou Fengwei](#) E4
- 36 [Laomajia Mianguan](#) E3
- 37 [Louwailou Restaurant](#) B3

## Drinking

- 38 [Eudora Station](#) E4
- 39 [Maya Bar](#) B1

## Entertainment

40 [JZ Club](#) E3

---

## Shopping

41 [Huichun Tang](#) F4

---

42 [Wushan Lu Night Market](#) F2

---

## Information

[Hangzhou Tourist Information Centre](#) (see 35)

---

## Sights & Activities

Hangzhou grants free admission to all museums and gardens. Other sights offer half-price tickets for children between 1m to 1.3m, free for those under 1m.

### **West Lake** LAKE

(; Xihu) The saccharine tourist brochure hyperbole extolling West Lake is almost justified in its cloying accolades. The very definition of classical beauty in China, West Lake continues to mesmerise and methodical prettification has worked a cunning magic. Pagoda-topped hills rise over willow-lined waters as boats drift slowly through a vignette of leisurely charm. With history heavily repackaged, it's not that authentic – not by a long shot – but it's still a grade-A cover version of classical China.

Originally a lagoon adjoining the Qiantang River, the lake didn't come into existence until the 8th century, when the governor of Hangzhou had the marshy expanse dredged. As time passed, the lake's splendour was gradually cultivated: gardens were planted, pagodas built, and causeways and islands were constructed from dredged silt.

Celebrated poet Su Dongpo himself had a hand in the lake's development, constructing the **Su Causeway** (; Sudi) during his tenure as local governor in the 11th century. It wasn't an original idea – the poet-governor Bai Juyi had already constructed the **Bai Causeway** (; Baidi) some 200 years earlier. Lined by willow, plum and

peach trees, today the traffic-free causeways with their half-moon bridges make for restful outings, particularly on a bike.

Connected to the northern shores by the Bai Causeway is **Gushan Island** (; Gushan Dao), the largest island in the lake and the location of the **Zhejiang Provincial Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Zhejiang Sheng Bowuguan; 25 Gushan Lu; admission free, audioguide ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun*) and **Zhongshan Park** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Zhongshan Gongyuan). The island's buildings and gardens were once the site of Emperor Qianlong's 18th-century holiday palace and gardens. Also on the island is the intriguing **Seal Engravers' Society** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Xiling Yinshe), dedicated to the ancient art of carving the name seals (chops) that serve as personal signatures.

On the northwest of the lake is the lovely **Quyuan Garden** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Quyuan Fenghe), a collection of gardens spread out over numerous islets and renowned for their fragrant spring lotus blossoms. Near Xiling Bridge (Xiling Qiao) is the tomb of **Su Xiaoxiao** (; Su Xiaoxiao Mu), a 5th-century courtesan who died of grief while waiting for her lover to return. It's been said that her ghost haunts the area and the tinkle of the bells on her gown can be heard at night.

The smaller island in the lake is **Xiaoying Island** (; Xiaoying Zhou), where you can look over at **Three Pools Mirroring the Moon** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Santan Yinyue), three small towers in the water on the south side of the island; each has five holes that release shafts of candlelight on the night of the mid-autumn festival. From Lesser Yingzhou Island, you can gaze over to **Red Carp Pond** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Huagang Guanyu), home to a few thousand red carp.

Impromptu opera singing and other cultural activities may suddenly kick off around the lake, and if the weather's fine don't forget to earmark the east shore for sunset over West Lake photos. Walking around West Lake at night is also gorgeous and very romantic, with loads of benches and seats facing the still waters.

The best way to get around the lake is by bike. **Buggies** (☺ 8am-6.30pm) speed around West Lake (just raise your hand to flag one



down). A complete circuit is ¥40, otherwise ¥10 takes you to the next stop. Tourist buses Y1 and Y2 also run around West Lake.

## Mausoleum of General Yue Fei TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yue Fei Mu; Beishan Lu; admission ¥25; ☺ 7am-6pm*) Commander of the southern Song armies, General Yue Fei (1103–42) led a series of successful battles against Jurchen invaders from the north in the 12th century. Despite his initial successes, he was recalled to the Song court, where he was executed, along with his son, after being deceived by the treacherous prime minister Qin Hui. In 1163 Song emperor Gao Zong exonerated Yue Fei and had his corpse reburied at the present site.

## Leifeng Pagoda PAGODA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Leifeng Ta; adult/child ¥40/20; ☺ 8am-8.30pm Mar-Nov, 8am-5.30pm Dec-Feb*) Topped with a golden spire, the eye-catching Leifeng Pagoda can be climbed for fine views of the lake. The original pagoda, built in AD 977, collapsed in 1924. During renovations in 2001, Buddhist scriptures written on silk were discovered in the foundations, along with other treasures.

## Jingci Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jingci Si; admission ¥10; ☺ 6.30am-5pm*) The serene Chan (Zen) Jingci Temple was originally built in AD 954 and is now fully restored. The splendid first hall is home to the massive and foreboding Heavenly Kings and a magnificent red and gold case encapsulating Milefo (the future Buddha) and Weituo. The main hall – the **Great Treasure Hall** – contains a simply vast seated effigy of Sakyamuni. Hunt down the awesome **1000-arm Guanyin** ( ) in the Guanyin Pavilion, with her huge fan of arms. The temple's enormous bronze bell is struck 108 times for prosperity on the eve of the Lunar New Year. Vegetarian restaurant attached.

## Lingyin Temple *BUDDHIST*

(*Lingyin Si; Lingyin Lu; grounds ¥35, grounds & temple ¥65; ☺ 7am-5pm*) Hangzhou's most famous Buddhist temple, Lingyin Temple was built in AD 326. Due to episodes of war and calamity, it has been destroyed and restored no fewer than 16 times. During the time of the Five Dynasties (907–60) about 3000 monks lived in the saffron-walled temple.

The main temple buildings are restorations of Qing-dynasty structures. The Hall of the Four Heavenly Kings is astonishing, with its four vast guardians and a beautifully elaborate cabinet housing Milefo. The **Great Hall** contains a magnificent 20m-high statue of Siddhartha Gautama (Sakyamuni), sculpted from 24 blocks of camphor wood in 1956 and based on a Tang-dynasty original. Behind the giant statue is a startling montage of Guanyin surrounded by 150 small figures, including multiple arhat (*luohan*), in a variety of poses. The Hall of the Medicine Buddha is beyond.

The walk up to the temple skirts the flanks of **Feilai Peak** (Feilai Feng; Peak Flying from Afar), magically transported here from India according to legend. The Buddhist carvings (all 470 of them) lining the riverbanks and hillsides and tucked away inside grottoes date from the 10th to 14th centuries. To get a close-up view of the best carvings, including the famed 'laughing' Maitreya Buddha, follow the paths along the far (east) side of the stream.

There are several other temples near Lingyin Temple that can be explored, including Yongfu Temple and Taoguang Temple.

Behind Lingyin Temple is the **Northern Peak** (Bei Gaofeng), which can be scaled by cable car (up/down/return ¥30/20/40). From the summit there are sweeping views across the lake and city.

Bus K7 and tourist bus Y2 (both from the train station), and tourist bus Y1 from the roads circling West Lake, go to the temple.

## Qinghefang Old Street *STREET*

(; Qinghefang Lishi Wenhua Jie) At the south end of Zhongshan Zhonglu is this fun, crowded and bustling pedestrian street, stuffed with all manner of shops, stalls and gift shops while snacking alleys

branching off from it swarm with diners. It's an entertaining place to browse and there are several traditional medicine shops, including the atmospheric **Huqingyu Tang Chinese Medicine Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Zhongyao Bowuguan; 95 Dajing Xiang; admission ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-5pm*), which is an actual dispensary and clinic. **Huichun Tang** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*117 Hefang Jie*) is another delightful old medicine shop with a swallow's nest inside, high above the entrance.

### **FREE** Confucius Temple *TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Wenmiao; cnr Fuxue Xiang & Laodong Lu; ☺ 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun*) A repository of silence and calm, Hangzhou's Confucius Temple is worth exploring for the main hall and the fabulous painted woodwork of its beams and ceiling. Seated within are imposing figures of Confucius and other Confucian philosophers, including Mencius.

## **SOUTH OF WEST LAKE**

The hills south of West Lake are a prime spot for walkers, cyclists and green tea connoisseurs.

### **FREE** China Silk Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Zhongguo Sichou Bowuguan; 73-1 Yuhuangshan Lu; audioguide ¥100; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm, closed Mon morning*) Close to the lake, this museum has absorbing displays of silk samples, and exhibits explain (in English) the history and processes of silk production.

### **FREE** China Tea Museum *MUSEUM*

(*Zhongguo Chaye Bowuguan; 88 Longjing Lu; ☺ 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun*) Not far into the hills, you'll begin to see fields of tea bushes planted in undulating rows, the setting for the China Tea Museum – 3.7 hectares of land dedicated to the art, cultivation and tasting of tea. Further up are several tea-producing villages, all of which harvest China's most famous variety of green tea, *longjing* (dragon well),

named after the spring where the pattern in the water resembles a dragon. You can enjoy one of Hangzhou's most famous teas at the **Dragon Well Tea Village** (*Longjing Wenchang*; ☺ 8am-5.30pm), near the first pass. Tourist bus Y3 or K27 will take you to the museum and the village.

## Taiziwan Park *PARK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nanshan Lu*; ☺ 24hr) This lovely and serene park just south of the Sudi Causeway off West Lake offers quiet walks among lush woodland, ponds, lakes, rose gardens and lawns along a wooden walkway. Just take off and explore.

## Six Harmonies Pagoda *PAGODA*

(*Liuhe Ta*; 16 *Zhijiang Lu*; grounds ¥20, grounds & pagoda ¥30; ☺ 6am-6.30pm) Three kilometres southwest of the lake, an enormous rail and road bridge spans the Qiantang River. Close by rears up the 60m-high octagonal Six Harmonies Pagoda, first built in AD 960. Stout (rather than the usual slender Chinese pagoda form), the pagoda also served as a lighthouse, and was said to possess magical powers to halt the 6.5m-high tidal bore that thunders up Qiantang River. You can climb the pagoda, while behind stretches a charming walk through terraces dotted with sculptures, bells, shrines and inscriptions. Take bus K4 or 504 from Nanshan Lu.

## CRUISING WEST LAKE

**Cruise boats** (*youchuan*; incl entry to Three Pools adult/child ¥45/22.50; ☺ 7am-4.45pm) shuttle frequently from four points (Hubin Park, Red Carp Pond, Zhongshan Park and the Mausoleum of General Yue Fei) to the Mid-Lake Pavilion (Huxin Ting) and Xiaoying Island (Xiaoying Zhou). Trips take 1½ hours and depart every 20 minutes. Alternatively, hire one of the six-person boats (; *xiao chuan*; ¥80 per person or ¥160 per boat) rowed by boatmen. Look for them across from the Overseas Chinese Hotel or along the causeways. Paddle boats (¥15 per 30 minutes, ¥200 deposit) on the Bai Causeway are also available for hire.

## OTHER SIGHTS

### Catholic Church CHURCH

( *Tianzhu Tang*; 415 Zhongshan Beilu; admission free) Hidden away behind sheet-metal gates, the blue-and-white Catholic church is a lovely old building, with a compassionate effigy of Mary above the door. Knock on the gate and the gatekeeper may let you in.

### Sicheng Church CHURCH

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( *Sicheng Tang*; 132 Jiefang Lu; admission free) Chinese-built, the brick Protestant Sicheng Church is more Chinese-style than the Catholic church, with a loyal and welcoming congregation; if it looks shut, try the entrance along Jueyuansi Alley ( ) down the east side of the church.

## WEST LAKE WALK

For a breathtaking trek into the hills above the lake, take Xixialing Lu ( ; also called Qixialing Lu) just west of the Mausoleum of General Yue Fei. The road runs past the west wall of the temple before entering the shade of towering trees to climb stone steps. At Ziyun Cave ( ; Ziyun Dong), the road forks; take the right-hand fork towards Baopu Taoist Temple (Baopu Daoyuan) 1km away and the Baochu Pagoda ( ; Baochu Ta). At the top of the steps turn left and, passing the Sunrise Terrace ( ; Chuyang Tai), again bear left. Down the steps bear right to the **Baopu Taoist Temple** ( admission ¥5; ☺ 6am-5pm), whose first hall contains a statue of Guanyin (Buddhist goddess nonetheless) before a yin-yang diagram; an effigy of Taoist master Gehong ( ) – who once smelted cinnabar here – resides in the next hall, behind a fabulously carved altar decorated with figures. Return the way you came to continue east to the Baochu Pagoda and after hitting a confluence of three paths, take the middle track. Squeeze into a gap between some huge boulders and you will spot the Baochu Pagoda rising up ahead. Repeatedly restored, the seven-storey brick pagoda was last rebuilt in 1933, although its spire tumbled off in the 1990s. Continue on down and you will pass through a *pailou* – or decorative arch – erected during the Republic (with some of its characters scratched off) to a series of cliff-side Ming-dynasty effigies, all of which were vandalised in the tumultuous 1960s, apart from two effigies on the right which were left untouched. Bear right and head down to Beishan Lu ( ), emerging from Baochutaqianshan Lu ( ).

## Tours

Just about every midrange and top-end hotel offers tours to West Lake and the surrounding areas. Frequent tours also run from the Hangzhou Tourist Information Centre.

## Festivals & Events

The international Qiantang River tide observing festival every autumn in Yanguan, outside Hangzhou, is a top event. See [Click here](#) for more details.

## Sleeping

Hangzhou's hotels have expanded in recent years across all budgets; youth hostels are now plentiful. Book well ahead in the summer months, at weekends and during the busy holiday periods. Room prices at hostels and some hotels get a weekend hike when there's an inflow of travellers from all compass points. Look out for and signs (meaning 'rooms available'), which identify cheap guesthouses that may take foreigners.

### Four Seasons Hotel Hangzhou *HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( Hangzhou Xizihu Siji Jiudian; 📞 8829 8888; [www.fourseasons.com/hangzhou](http://www.fourseasons.com/hangzhou); 5 Lingyin Lu; 5 d ¥3048-3738, ste from ¥6693; 🚗🌳🍷📶🚰) More of a resort than a hotel, the fabulous 78-room, two-swimming pool Four Seasons enjoys a seductive position in lush grounds next to West Lake. Low-storey buildings and villas echo traditional China, a sensation amplified by the osmanthus trees, ornamental shrubs, ponds and tranquillity. Checking into the gorgeously appointed and very spacious ground-floor deluxe premier rooms throws in a garden; rooms have lovely bathrooms, walk-in wardrobe and hugely inviting beds. The infinity pool alongside West Lake is a dream, as is the outstanding spa. Charge for wi-fi.

### Tea Boutique Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Hangzhou Tianlun Jingpin Jiudian*; 📍 8799 9888; [www.teaboutiquehotel.com](http://www.teaboutiquehotel.com); 124 Shuguang Lu; 124 d ¥988-1280, ste ¥2688; 🚗📶📶📶) The simply but effectively done wood-sculpted foyer area with its sinuously shaped reception is a presage to the lovely accommodation at this hotel where a Japanese-minimalist mood holds sway among celadon teacups, muted colours and – interestingly for China – a Bible in each room. Double-glazed windows roadside keep the traffic noise low while the wide corridors convey a sense of space the boutique label often lacks. Service is excellent and healthy discounts run between 20% and 40%.

## Hofang International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Hefang Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8706 3299; 67 Dajing Xiang; 67 dm ¥50-55, tw ¥100, d ¥99-119; 📶📶📶) Very pleasantly tucked away from the noise down a historic alley off Qinghefang Old Street, this hostel has an excellent location and exudes a pleasant and calm ambience, with attractive tatami loft rooms.

## Wushanyi International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Wushanyi Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 22 Zhongshan Zhonglu; 22 d/tr ¥248/320; 📶📶📶) With a healthy mix of Chinese and Western travellers, this quiet, unhurried and comfy hostel has clean and well-looked-after rooms and excellent, very helpful staff plus a charmingly tucked-away location off Qinghefang Jie (and not too far from West Lake either). Three computers (first half-hour free) are at hand in the (wi-fi-equipped) lobby.

## Mingtown Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Mingtang Hangzhou Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8791 8948; 101-11 Nanshan Lu; 101-11 dm ¥60, s/d ¥185/265; 📶) With its pleasant lakeside location, this friendly hostel is often booked out so reserve

well ahead. It has a relaxing cafe/bar, offers ticket booking, internet access, and rents bikes and camping gear.

## In Lake Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Liuhu Xiaozhu Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8682 6700; 5 Luyang Lu; 5 6-bed dm with shower ¥70, tw & d ¥368-448; 📶📶) Ideally located a few steps from picturesque West Lake off Nanshan Lu, this friendly and amenable hostel radiates a peaceful ambience, with a flower-bedecked courtyard, clean dorms (all with shower), smart doubles and twins, a roof terrace for barbecues, downstairs cafe and bar, and welcoming staff.

## West Lake Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Hangzhou Guoke Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 8702 7027; [www.westlakehostel.com](http://www.westlakehostel.com); 62-3 Nanshan Lu; 62-3 dm ¥50-55, s ¥170, tw ¥210-220; 📶📶) Set back off the road amid trees and foliage east of Jingci Temple, this is a good bet with decent rooms and comfy lounge-bar area hung with lanterns, and a good sense of character and seclusion; reserve ahead. The kindergarten next door may be noisy in the morning. From the train station take bus Y2 and get off at the Changqiao ( ) stop.

## Crystal Orange Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Juzi Shuijing Jiudian*; 📍 2887 8988; [www.orangehotel.com](http://www.orangehotel.com); 122 Qingbo Jie; 122 tw/ste ¥788/1388; 📶📶📶) Uncluttered and modern business hotel with a crisp and natty interior, Warhol prints in the lobby, glass lift and only four floors, but sadly no views of West Lake from the neat rooms. Discounts of 50%.

## Shangri-La Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Hangzhou Xianggelila Fandian*; 📍 8797 7951; [www.shangri-la.com](http://www.shangri-la.com);



78 Beishan Lu; 78 d ¥1650, with lake view ¥2500; 📶@📶📶)

Surrounded by forest on the north shore of the lake, this hotel enjoys a winning, picturesque location. The hotel has been around for a long time, so view rooms first, as quality varies. Wireless connection, swimming pool, health club and discounts of 30%.

## Starway Jingshang Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Jingshang Nanshan; 📍 2806 9000; 148-5 Nanshan Lu; 148-5 dm ¥50, d/tw ¥255/235; 📶@📶) Starway is an OK place with so-so dorms and doubles set back from the road near West Lake; there's little character, but it could be handy if other places are booked out.

## Eating

Hangzhou cuisine emphasises fresh, sweet flavours and makes good use of freshwater fish, especially eel and carp. Dishes to watch for include *dongpo rou* (; braised pork), named after the Song-dynasty poet Su Dongpo, and *jiaohua tongji* (; chicken wrapped in lotus leaves and baked in clay), known in English as 'beggar's chicken'. Bamboo shoots are a local delicacy, especially in the spring when they're most tender. Hangzhou's most popular restaurant street is **Gaoyin Jie**, parallel to Qinghefang Old St, a long sprawl of restaurants brashly lit up like casinos at night and aimed at visitors. On top of veggie options listed here, the Jingci Temple has a vegetarian restaurant that is open till 10pm.



## Green Tea Restaurant HANGZHOU \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( Lucha; 250 Jiefang Lu; 250 meals ¥70; 📍) Doing a brisk trade, this excellent Hangzhou restaurant has superb food and should be one of your first stops. With a bare brick finish and decorated with rattan utensils and colourful flower-patterned cushions, the dining style is casual. The long paper menu (tick what you want) includes clam soup (¥19) – a plate of mussels – a salty and moreish dish, spiced up with chilli. The eggplant clay pot (¥20) is simply gorgeous while the Green Tea roast chicken (half/whole ¥25/48) is tasty. Avoid the coffee unless

you like super-sweet creamer added automatically. Further four branches in town.

## La Pedrera SPANISH, TAPAS \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Batelu Xibanya Canting*; 📍 8886 6089; 4 Baishaquan, Shuguang Lu; 4 tapas from ¥30, meals ¥200; 🕒 11am-11pm) This fine two-floor Spanish restaurant just off Shuguang Lu bar street has tapas diners in a whirl, seafood paella-aficionados applauding and Spanish wine fans gratified. Prices may take a sizeable bite out of your wallet, but the convivial atmosphere and assured menu prove popular and enjoyable.

## Grandma's Kitchen HANGZHOU \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Waipojia*; 3 Hubin Lu; mains ¥6-55; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 📍) Highly popular with locals, this chain restaurant cooks up classic Hangzhou favourites; try the *hongshao dongpo rou* (). There are several other branches in town.

## Jin Sha CHINESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jin Sha Ting*; Four Seasons Hotel Hangzhou; 📍 8829-8888; [www.fourseasons.com/hangzhou](http://www.fourseasons.com/hangzhou); 5 Lingyin Lu; meals ¥300; 🕒 lunch & dinner) For fine waterside Hangzhou, Shanghai and Cantonese cuisine in a particularly elegant and well-presented ambience, you can't go far wrong with this signature restaurant at the Four Seasons Hotel Hangzhou; there's alfresco seating on the terrace outside and a fine selection of teas and wines.

## Lao Hangzhou Fengwei HANGZHOU \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 141 Gaoyin Jie; mains from ¥20; 🕒 11.30am-9pm; 📍) This overlit restaurant is one of several along Gaoyin Jie selling traditional Hangzhou cuisine. Try the flavoursome diced chicken and eggplant pot (*lao hangzhou jili qiezi bao*; ¥28) and the salty and fatty

Hangzhou-style lamb chops (*lao hangzhou kaoyangpai*; ¥68) or the *dongpo* pork (¥15 per chunk).

## Louwailou Restaurant HANGZHOU \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Louwailou*; 30 *Gushan Lu*; mains ¥30-200; ☺ 10.30am-3.30pm & 4.30-8.45pm; 📍) Founded in 1838, this is Hangzhou's most famous restaurant. The local speciality is *xihu cuyu* (; sweet and sour carp) and *dongpo* pork, but there's a good choice of other well-priced standard dishes.

## Laomajia Mianguan NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 232 *Nanshan Lu*; meals ¥15; ☺ 7am-10.30pm) Simple, popular and unfussy Muslim restaurant stuffed into an old *shikumen* tenement building with a handful of tables and spot-on *niurou lamian* (; beef noodles; ¥7) and super-scrummy *roujiamo* (; meat in a bun; ¥5).

## Carrefour SUPERMARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jialefu*; 135 *Yan'an Lu*; 135 ☺ 9am-9pm) On *Yan'an Lu* in between *Xihu Dadao* and *Kaiyuan Lu*.

## Drinking

For drinking, *Shuguang Lu* north of *West Lake* is the place; a brash clutch of lesser bars also operates opposite the *China Academy of Art* on *Nanshan Lu* (). For a comprehensive list of Hangzhou bars and restaurants, grab a copy of *More – Hangzhou Entertainment Guide* ([www.morehangzhou.com](http://www.morehangzhou.com)), available from bars and concierge desks at good hotels.

## Maya Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Maya Jiuba*; 94 *Baishaquan*, *Shuguang Lu*; ☺ noon-2am) Jim

Morrison, Kurt Cobain, Mick Jagger, Bob Dylan and the Beatles watch on approvingly from the walls of this darkly lit, solid and rock-steady bar. Almost as importantly, the drinks are seriously cheap; happy hour sees draught beer costing a risible ¥10 (¥20 at other times). Staff may be morose, but so what?

## Eudora Station *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yiduoruizhan*; 101-107 Nanshan Lu; ☺ 9am-2am) A fab location by West Lake, roof terrace aloft, strong menu and a sure-fire atmosphere conspire to make this welcoming watering hole a great choice. There's sports TV, live music, a ground-floor terrace, and a good range of beers; barbecues fire up on the roof terrace in the warmer months.

## ★ Entertainment

### JZ Club *CLUB*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huang Lou*; 📍 8702 8298; 6 Liuying Lu, by 266 Nanshan Lu; ☺ 6.30pm-2.30am) The folk that brought you JZ Club in Shanghai have the live jazz scene sewn up in Hangzhou with this neat and cultured three-floor venue near West Lake. There's live jazz nightly with international names on the billing.

## 🛍 Shopping

Hangzhou is famed for its tea, in particular *longjing* green tea, as well as silk, fans and, of all things, scissors. All of these crop up in the **Wushan Lu night market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Wushan Lu Yeshi*), now on Huixing Lu ( ) between Youdian Lu ( ) and Renhe Lu ( ), where fake ceramics jostle with ancient pewter tobacco pipes, Chairman Mao memorabilia, silk shirts and pirated CDs. Qinghefang Old Street ([Click here](#)) has loads of possibilities, from Chinese tiger pillows to taichi swords.

## **Xinhua Lu Silk Market** *SILK*

(*Xinhua Lu Sichou Shichang; Xinhua Lu*; ☺ 8am-5pm) For silk, try this string of silk shops strung out along the north of Xinhua Lu. Check out the Ming-dynasty residence (; Ming Zhai), now a silk emporium, at 227 Xinhua Lu.

## **i** Information

### **Internet Access**

Twenty-four-hour internet cafes are in abundance around the train station (typically ¥4 or ¥5 per hour); look for the neon signs ‘ ’. There is free internet access at some Hangzhou Tourist Information Centres, such as the branch at 10 Huaguang Lu.

**Yezitou Internet Cafe** (*Yezitou Wangba; 2nd fl, east end of Gaoyin Jie*; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr) Just west of intersection with Zhonghe Nanlu.

### **Medical Services**

**Zhejiang University First Affiliated Hospital** (*Zhejiang Daxue Yixueyuan Fushu Diyi Yiyuan*; 79 Qingchun Lu)

### **Money**

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*; 177 Laodong Lu) Offers currency exchange plus 24-hour ATM.

**HSBC** (*Huifeng Yinhang*; cnr Qingchun Lu & Zhonghe Lu) Has a 24-hour ATM.

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (*ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang*; 300 Yan'an Lu) Has a 24-hour ATM.

### **Post**

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; Renhe Lu*) Close to West Lake.

### **Public Security Bureau**

**Public Security Bureau Exit & Entry Administration Service Center** (*PSB; Gong'anju Banzheng Zhongxin*; ☎ 8728 0600; 35 Huaguang Lu; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2-5pm Mon-Fri) Can extend visas.

## Tourist Information

Asking at, or phoning up, your hostel or hotel for info can be very handy.

**Hangzhou Tourist Information Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Hangzhou Luyou Zixun Fuwu Zhongxin*; 📞 *hotline 96123*; *Hangzhou Train Station*) Provides basic travel info, free maps and tours. Other branches include Leifeng Pagoda, 228 Yan'an Lu and 10 Huaguang Lu, just off Qinghefang Old Street.

**Tourist Complaint Hotline** (📞 8796 9691)

**Travellers Infoline** (📞 96123) Helpful 24-hour information with English service from 6.30am to 9pm.

## Websites

**Hangzhou City Travel Committee** ([www.gotohz.com](http://www.gotohz.com)) Current information on events, restaurants and entertainment venues around the city.

**Hangzhou News** ([www.hangzhou.com.cn/english](http://www.hangzhou.com.cn/english)) News-oriented website with travel info.

**More Hangzhou** ([www.morehangzhou.com](http://www.morehangzhou.com)) Handy website with restaurant and nightlife reviews, forums and classifieds.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Hangzhou has flights to all major Chinese cities (bar Shanghai) and international connections to Hong Kong, Macau, Tokyo, Singapore and other destinations. Several daily flights connect to Beijing (¥1050) and Guangzhou (¥960).

One place to book air tickets is at the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; *Zhongguo Minhang*; 📞 8666 8666; 390 Tiyuchang Lu; 🕒 7.30am-8pm). Most hotels will also book flights, generally with a ¥20 to ¥30 service charge.

### Bus

All four bus stations are outside the city centre; tickets can be

conveniently bought for all stations from the **bus ticket office** (*changtu qiche shoupiaochu*; ☺ 6.30am-5pm) right off the exit from Hangzhou's main train station.

Buses from the huge **Jiubao bus station** (; Jiubao keyun zhongxin) in the far northeast of Hangzhou:

**Ningbo** ¥60, two hours

**Shanghai** ¥69, 2½ hours, regular

**Shaoxing** ¥26, one hour

**Suzhou** ¥60, two hours

**Wuzhen** ¥30, one hour

Until the metro line direct to Jiubao bus station opens, hop on bus K21 to Xihu Tiyuguan and change for bus K101 (1½ hours). A taxi will cost around ¥60 from West Lake, while bus K508 runs from Jiubao bus station to Hangzhou Main Train Station.

Buses from the **south bus station** (*qiche nanzhan; 407 Qiutao Lu*):

**Ningbo** ¥60, two hours, every 20 minutes

**Shaoxing** ¥26, one hour, every 20 minutes

**Wuyi** ¥60, six daily

Buses from the **north bus station** (*qiche beizhan; 766 Moganshan Lu*):

**Nanxun** ¥40, 1½ hours, regular

**Suzhou** ¥72, two hours, regular

**Tongli** ¥15, two hours, three daily

**Wukang** ¥15, one hour, hourly

From Shanghai, buses leave frequently for Hangzhou's various bus stations (¥65, 2½ hours) from the Shanghai south bus station. Buses to Hangzhou also run every 30 minutes between 10am and 9pm from Shanghai's Hongqiao airport (¥85, two hours). Regular buses also run to Hangzhou from Shanghai's Pudong International Airport (¥100, three hours).

Buses for Huangshan (¥100, four hours) leave from the **west bus station** (*qiche xizhan; 357 Tianmushan Lu*).

## Train

The easiest way to travel to Hangzhou from Shanghai is on the high-speed G class train to **Hangzhou Main Train Station** (; Hangzhou Huochezhan) east of West Lake. The overnight Z10 (¥194 to ¥539) departs Hangzhou Main Train Station for Beijing at 6.16pm, arriving at 7.28am. Also handy, the T32 (¥194 to ¥539) departs Hangzhou Main Train Station for Beijing at 6.25pm, arriving shortly after 10am the next day. Daily G class high-speed trains from Hangzhou Train Station:

**Beijing South Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥631/1058, 6½ hours, seven daily

**Nanjing South Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥211/353, two hours 20 minutes, 10 daily

**Shanghai Hongqiao Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥78/124, 55 minutes, first/last 6.14am/9.10pm, regular

**Suzhou** 2nd/1st class ¥111 to ¥188, 1½ hours, four daily

Daily D class high-speed trains from Hangzhou Train Station:

**Ningbo East Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥52/62, two hours, eight daily

**Shanghai Hongqiao Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥49/60, 70 minutes, eight daily

**Shaoxing** 2nd/1st class ¥19/22, 40 minutes, six daily

**Suzhou** 2nd/1st class ¥75/91, two hours, three daily

**Xiamen North Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥284/341, 7½ hours, two daily

**Wenzhou South Train Station** 2nd/1st class ¥131/158, four hours, seven daily

Regular D class trains (2nd/1st class ¥54/65, 1½ hours) also run to **Shanghai Hongqiao Train Station**, mostly from Hangzhou South Train Station (; Hangzhou Huoche Nanzhan), south of the Qiantang River. Due for completion by 2013, Hangzhou East Train Station (; Hangzhou Dongzhan) is being rebuilt to accommodate high-speed trains and will be linked to the metro system.

Booking sleepers can be difficult at Hangzhou Train Station, especially to Beijing. Most hotels can do this for you for a service charge. A handy **train ticket office** (*huoche piao shou piao chu*; 147





*Huansha Lu*) is north of Jiefang Lu, just east of West Lake. Other offices are at 72 Baochu Lu (near turning with Shengfu Lu) and 149 Tiyuchang Lu. Train tickets are also available at certain China Post branches including 10 Desheng Lu and 60 Fengqi Lu.

## Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Hangzhou's airport is 30km from the city centre; taxi drivers ask around ¥100 to ¥130 for the trip. Shuttle buses (¥20, one hour) run every 15 minutes between 5.30am and 9pm from the CAAC office (also stopping at the train station).

### Bicycle

The best way to hire a bike is to use the public **bike hire scheme** ( 8533 1122; [www.hzzxc.com.cn](http://www.hzzxc.com.cn), in Chinese). Stations are dotted in large numbers around the city. You can apply at one of the **booths** ( 6.30am-9pm Apr-Oct, 6am-9pm Nov-Mar) at certain bike stations (marked on the Hangzhou map) where you will need ¥300 (¥200 for the deposit and ¥100 as credit) and your passport as ID. You will then get a swipe card to hop aboard one of the bright red bikes which you can return to any other station. The first hour on each bike is free, so if you switch bikes within the hour, the rides are free. The second hour on the same bike is ¥1, the third is ¥2 and after that it's ¥3 per hour. Your deposit and unused credit is refunded to you when you return your swipe card. Note you cannot return bikes outside booth operating hours as the swipe units deactivate (you will be charged a whole night's rental). Youth hostels also rent out bikes, but these are more expensive.

### Public Transport

**Bus** Hangzhou has a clean, efficient bus system and getting around is easy (but roads are increasingly gridlocked). 'Y' buses are tourist buses; 'K' is simply an abbreviation of '*kongtiao*' (air-con). Tickets are ¥2 to ¥5. Following are popular bus routes:

**Bus K7** Usefully connects the main train station to the western side of

West Lake and Lingyin Temple.

**Tourist bus Y1** Circles West Lake in a return loop to Lingyin Temple.

**Tourist bus Y2** Goes from the main train station, along Beishan Lu and up to Lingyin Temple.

**Tourist bus Y3** Travels around West Lake to the China Silk Museum, China Tea Museum, Dragon Well Tea Village and the Southern Song–dynasty Guan Kiln.

**Bus K56** Travels from the east bus station to Yan'an Lu.

**Buses 15 & K15** Connects the north bus station to the northwest area of West Lake.

**Bus K95** Links Hangzhou Train Station with the north bus station.

**Bus K518** Connects the East Train Station with the main train station, via the east bus station.

**Metro** Line 1 of Hangzhou's new metro system was due to open by 2012 and will run through the main train station, Hangzhou East Train Station and Jiubao bus station.

## Taxi

Metered Hyundai taxis are ubiquitous and start at ¥10; figure on around ¥20 to ¥25 from the main train station (queues can be horrendous though) to Hubin Lu.

---

# Around Hangzhou

## QIANTANG RIVER TIDAL BORE

A spectacular natural phenomenon occurs when the highest tides of the lunar cycle sweep a wall of water up the narrow mouth of the Qiantang River from Hangzhou Bay (Hangzhou Wan) at thundering speeds of up to 40km per hour.

Although the tidal bore can be viewed from the riverbank in Hangzhou, the best place to witness this amazing phenomenon is on either side of the river at **Yanguan** (), a lovely ancient town about 38km northeast of Hangzhou. The most popular viewing time is during the mid-autumn festival, around the 18th day of the eighth month of

the lunar calendar, when the **international Qiantang River tide observing festival** takes place. However, you can see it throughout the year when the highest tides occur at the beginning and middle of each lunar month. For tide times, check with the Hangzhou Tourist Information Centre.

Hotels and travel agencies offer tours to see the bore during the mid-autumn festival, but you can visit just as easily on your own. To reach Yanguan, take a bus (¥25, one hour) from Hangzhou's Jiubao bus station to Haining and change to bus 106 (¥8) to Yanguan; alternatively, take a bus from Hangzhou Train Station (45 minutes) and change to bus 109 to Yanguan.

## MOGANSHAN

 0572

A blessed release from the suffocating summer torpor roasting north Zhejiang, this delightful **hilltop resort** (*admission ¥80*) was developed by 19th-century Europeans from Shanghai and Hangzhou during the concession era, in the style of Lushan and Jigongshan in Henan. Refreshingly cool in summer and sometimes smothered in spectral fog, Moganshan is famed for its scenic vistas, forested views, towering bamboo and stone villa architecture; the mountain remains a weekend bolt hole for expat *taitai* (wives) fleeing the simmering lowland heat.

### Sights & Activities

The best way to enjoy Moganshan is just to wander the winding forest paths and stone steps, taking in some of the architecture en route. There's Shanghai gangster **Du Yuesheng's old villa** (; Du Yuesheng Bieshu) – now serving as a hotel – Chiang Kaishek's lodge, a couple of churches (375 Moganshan and 419 Moganshan) and many other villas linked (sometimes tenuously) with the rich and famous, including the **house** (*Mao Zhuxi Xiatachu; 126 Moganshan*) where Chairman Mao rested his chubby limbs.

Apart from the gaunt villa architecture, more recent construction has flung up less attractive villas made of more regular blocks; the genuine older villas are made of irregularly shaped stone. Sadly, many of the original interiors have been ripped out, so much of the period charm is

absent. Mock classical porticos have been bolted on to other villas in a clumsy Chinese interpretation of European style. The blue and red corrugated-iron roofing looks new, but is actually the original roofing material.

Containing **Ta Mountain** (; Tashan) in the northwest, the **Da Keng Scenic Area** (; Dakeng Jingqu) is great for rambling. You can pick up a Chinese map (¥4) at your hotel for some sense of orientation, otherwise there are billboard maps dotted about.

For information on **hikes** or for suggestions for activities on Moganshan, contact well-informed Mark Kitto, author of the riveting *China Cuckoo*, at Moganshan Lodge (he may appreciate it if you bought a coffee there).

## **Sleeping**

Moganshan is full of hotels of varying quality, most housed in crumbling villas; room prices peak at weekends (Friday to Sunday). Don't expect to find any backpacker spots, but haggle your socks off to drive prices down; if you come off-season (eg early spring) you can expect good rates, but be warned that many hotels either shut up shop or close for renovation over the winter.



### **Moganshan House 23** HOTEL \$\$\$

( 23 Moganshan Hangliao 23 Hao; 📞 803 3822; [www.moganshanhouse23.com](http://www.moganshanhouse23.com); 23 Moganshan; 23 weekday d & tw ¥900, weekend 2 nights Y2400; 📶@📶) This exquisitely restored villa hits the Moganshan nail squarely on the head, bursting with period charm, from art deco–style sinks black-and-white tiled bathroom floors, wooden floorboards and the original staircase to a lovely English kitchen. It's also kid friendly with a family room, baby chairs and swings in the garden. With only six rooms, book well in advance, especially for weekend stays (when it's a minimum two-night stay). Breakfast is included in room price. Also ask about the two other Moganshan properties run by the same owners, House 2 and House 25.



### **Naked Home Village** FARM HOUSES \$\$

(☎ 021-6431 8901; [www.nakedretreats.cn](http://www.nakedretreats.cn); 329 Moganshan; 329 per person weekday lodge/bungalow ¥350/520, weekend ¥450/750; 🌿)

Naked Retreats is at the top of a gully below the village, offering a selection of eco-lodges, farm houses and bungalows enveloped in bamboo forest sleeping anything from a couple to a crowd; lovely views. A range of activities is also organised, from biking to fishing, hiking, star gazing, yoga and massage. Rates are for a minimum double occupancy.



### **Naked Stables Private Reserve** VILLAS \$\$\$

(☎ 021-6431 8901; [www.nakedretreats.cn](http://www.nakedretreats.cn); earth hut ¥2600, tree-top villas ¥5800; 🌿@🌿) For further unbridled escapism, Naked Retreats also runs these luxurious and beautifully situated mod-con-equipped tree-top villas and earth huts within a 24-hectare resort in Moganshan; expect serene forest views, infinity pools, a spa and wellness centre, and heaps of eco brownie points.



### **Le Passage Mohkan Shan** HOTEL \$\$\$

(Moganshanli Faguoshanju; ☎ 805 2958; [www.lepassagemoganshan.com](http://www.lepassagemoganshan.com); Xianrenkeng Tea Plantation, Ziling Village; per person r ¥1500-2100; 🚗📶🌿) A Gallic bid to cash in on the mountain's escapist colonial magic, Le Passage is a lovely and kid-friendly 38-room country house hotel ensconced within a Moganshan tea plantation. Rooms and bathrooms are high on period charm, with high ceilings. Rates are calculated on a two-night stay basis; add ¥1000 surcharge for a one-night stay. Pricy pick-up service from Shanghai and Hangzhou provided. There's a wine cellar, of course.



### **Eating**

Yinshan Jie has a number of restaurants and hotels with restaurants.



### **Moganshan Lodge** INTERNATIONAL \$\$

(*Make de Kafeiting*; ☎ 803 3011; [www.moganshanlodge.com](http://www.moganshanlodge.com); *Songliang Shanzhuang, off Yinshan Jie*; ☎ 9am-11pm; 📶) English Moganshan resident Mark Kitto can cook up a treat, brew up a fine coffee and give you the low-down on Moganshan's charms at this elegantly presented villa up some steps from Yinshan Jie.

### Information

The main village (Moganshan Zhen) is centred around Yinshan Jie (), where you will find the **China Post** (40 Moganshan; ☎ 8.30-11am & 1-4pm), a branch of the PSB (opposite the post office) and several hotels.

### Getting There & Away

From Hangzhou, buses leave from the north bus station to Wukang (; ¥15, 40 minutes, every 30 minutes) from 6.20am to 7pm; in the other direction, buses run every 30 minutes from 6.30am till 7pm; note that Wukang is also known as Deqing ().

From Wukang minivans run to the top of Moganshan for around ¥50; a taxi will cost around ¥70 to ¥80. Buses from Shanghai run to Wukang (¥53, four hours) and leave from the old north bus station near Baoshan Rd metro, at 80 Gongxing Rd. Buses depart from Shanghai at 6.30am, 11.50am and 12.50pm; buses depart from Wukang for Shanghai at 6.30am, 7.40am, 1pm and 3.30pm. Buses also run between Shanghai north bus station and Wukang (¥60).

---

## Wuzhen

☎ 0573

Like Zhouzhuang and other water towns in southern Jiangsu, Wuzhen's charming network of waterways and access to the Grand Canal once made it a prosperous place for its trade and production of silk.

### Sights

With its old bridges, ancient temples, age-old residences, museums and canal-side Ming and Qing-dynasty architecture, Wuzhen ([www.wuzhen.com.cn](http://www.wuzhen.com.cn)) is an appetising and photogenic if over-commercialised slice of old China. It's a lovely place to overnight, although you can easily make it a day trip from either Shanghai or Hangzhou.

The old town is divided into two areas: **Dongzha** ( *east scenic zone; admission ¥100*) and **Xizha** ( *west scenic zone; admission ¥120, ¥80 after 5pm*) with a combined ticket for both areas (¥150). Buy your ticket at the **main visitor centre** ( *rukou; Daqiao Lu; through ticket ¥150; ☺ 8am-5.30pm*), where money exchange and an ATM can be found; you can also take a boat from here across the lake.

The main street of Dongzha scenic zone, Dongda Jie, is a narrow path paved with stone slabs and flanked by wooden buildings. Some of these are workshops, such as the **Sanbai Wine Workshop** (; Sanbai Jiufang), an actual distillery churning out a pungent rice wine ripe for the sampling. Along here are many other workshops, embracing all trades from cloth dyeing to bamboo weaving and tobacco making.

### **Mao Dun's Former Residence** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Mao Dun Guju*) Mao Dun's Former Residence is also in the Dongzha scenic zone. Revolutionary writer Mao Dun was a contemporary of Lu Xun and the author of *Spring Silkworms* and *Midnight*. His great-grandfather, a successful merchant, bought the house in 1885 and it's a fairly typical example from the late Qing dynasty. There are photographs, writings and other memorabilia of Mao Dun's life, though not much explanation in English.

### **Hundred Beds Museum** *MUSEUM*

( *210 Dongzha Dajie*) The Hundred Beds Museum has an intriguing collection of historic beds from the region, while at the western end of the Dongzha scenic zone, around the corner on Changfeng Jie, is an interesting exhibit many visitors miss.

## Huiyuan Pawn House *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(; Huiyuan Dangpu) The Huiyuan Pawn House was once a famous pawnshop that eventually expanded to branches in Shanghai.

## Sleeping

### Wuzhen Guesthouse *GUESTHOUSE*

(☎ 873 1666; 137 Xizha Jie; r from ¥340; 🌐) This is a centralised collection of canal-side B&Bs on either side of the water run by families where you are then given a well-presented room with air-con, telephone and bathroom.

## Entertainment

One of the best reasons to visit Wuzhen is for the regular live performances of local **Flower Drum opera** (Huagu xi) held throughout the day in the village square, and shadow puppet shows (*piyingxi*) in the small theatre beside the square. The puppet shows in particular are great fun and well worth watching. You can hire a boat at the main gate (¥80 per person) for a ride down the canal.

## Getting There & Away

From Hangzhou, buses run from the Jiubao bus station to Wuzhen (¥30, one hour) leaving every hour or so from 6.25am to 6.25pm.

From Shanghai, buses (¥49, two hours, eight daily) run from the Shanghai south bus station. Tour buses (¥165 return, ticket includes the entrance fee to Wuzhen and a Chinese-speaking guide, 9am and 9.30am, two hours) also leave from Shanghai Stadium. Minibuses (¥10) connect Wuzhen with the canal town of Nanxun.

---

## Nanxun

 0572



Nestled on the border with Jiangsu province, about 125km from Hangzhou and only 20km from Wuzhen, Nanxun is a water town whose contemporary modest appearance belies its once glorious past. Established more than 1400 years ago, the town came to prominence during the Southern Song dynasty due to its prospering silk industry. By the time the Ming rolled around, it was one of Zhejiang's most important commercial centres. The town shares the typical features of other southern water towns – arched bridges, canals, narrow lanes and old houses – but what sets it apart is its intriguing mix of Chinese and European architecture, introduced by affluent silk merchants who once made their homes here.

## Sights

Since **Nanxun** (*adult/student through ticket ¥100/50; ☀ 8am-5pm summer, to 4.30pm winter*) isn't large, it won't take more than a couple of hours to see everything. The entrance fee includes all sights. On the back of your ticket is a small map to help you find your way around.

### **100 Room Pavilion** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(; Baijian Lou) Nanxun's most famous structure is the rambling 100 Room Pavilion in the northeast corner of town. It was built 400 years ago by a wealthy Ming official to supposedly house his servants. It's a bit creaky but in amazingly good shape for being so old.

### **Little Lotus Villa** *GARDENS*

(; Xiaolian Zhuang) Nanxun has some attractive gardens; the loveliest is Little Lotus Villa, once the private garden of a wealthy Qing official. The villa gets its name from its pristine lotus pond surrounded by ancient camphor trees. Within the garden are some elaborately carved stone gates and a small family shrine.

### **Jiaye Library** *LIBRARY*

(; Jiayetang Cangshulou) Jiaye Library was once one of the largest

private libraries in southeast China. It was home to more than 30,000 books, some dating back to the Tang dynasty. Inside is a large woodblock collection and displays of manuscripts. The library is surrounded by a moat – an effective form of fire prevention in the Qing.

## **Zhang Family Compound** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(; Zhang Shiming Jiuzhai) The Zhang Family Compound is one of the more interesting old residences in Nanxun. Once owned by a wealthy silk merchant, it was the largest and most elaborate private residence in southeastern China during the late Qing dynasty. The home was constructed with wood, glass, tiles and marble, all imported from France. The buildings are an intriguing combination of European and Chinese architecture surrounded by delicate gardens, fish ponds and rockeries. Most incongruous is a French-style mansion with red-brick walls, wrought-iron balconies and louvred shutters. Amazingly there's even a ballroom inside, complete with bandstand. This fondness for Western architecture is also seen in the **Liu Family Compound** (; Liushi Tihao) with its imported stained glass, heavy wooden staircases and red-brick exterior.

## **Eating**

It's pleasant after a day of walking to relax at one of the small restaurants facing the canal for a snack or some tea. You'll need to bargain for your meal; don't accept the first price you're given.

## **Getting There & Away**

Buses leave hourly from Hangzhou's north bus station for Nanxun (¥40, 10 daily). Buses also link Nanxun and Wuzhen (¥10). Regular buses run from Shanghai south bus station (¥47, 2½ hours, eight per day). Buses also run from the main Shanghai bus station (¥48).

Nanxun has two bus stations: the Tai'an Lu station (Tai'an Lu chezhan) and another station (*Nanxun qichezhan*) by the expressway. Both stations have buses from 5.50am to 5pm:

**Shanghai** ¥30 to ¥50, 2½ hours

**Suzhou** ¥21, one hour

## SHAOXING

With its winding canals, arched bridges and antiquated homesteads, Shaoxing (绍兴) is a large water town 67km southeast of Hangzhou. The town has been the birthplace of many influential and colourful figures, including mythical 'flood tamer' the Great Yu, painter and dramatist Xu Wei, female revolutionary hero Qiu Jin and China's first great modern novelist, Lu Xun, who lived here until he went abroad to study. He later returned to China, but was forced to hide out in Shanghai's French Concession when the Kuomintang decided his books were too dangerous.

Sights linked to Lu Xun are clustered along Lu Xun Zhonglu (鲁迅中路), including **Lu Xun's Former Residence** ( Lu Xun Guju; 393 Lu Xun Zhonglu; ☎ 8.30am-5pm); the **Lu Xun Memorial Hall** ( Lu Xun Jinianguan; ☎ 8am-5pm), at the same location; and the **Lu Xun Ancestral Residence** ( Luxun Zuju; 237 Lu Xun Zhonglu). Opposite is the one-room school (Sanwei Shuwu) the writer attended as a young boy. All sights are free but you need to register by showing your passport at the nearby **Tourist Centre Ticket Office** ( Mianfei Lingpiaochu; ☎ 8.30am-5pm).

Shaoxing can easily be done as a day trip from Hangzhou, where accommodation options are superior and more enjoyable. For eats, the **Apo Mianguan** ( ☎ 8513 0826; 100 Lu Xun Zhonglu; meals ¥20; ☎ 9am-11pm) does excellent noodle dishes.

The quickest way to reach Shaoxing is by D class train (¥19 to ¥22, 40 minutes, six daily) from Hangzhou Main Train Station, but plentiful long-distance buses run to Hangzhou south bus station (¥26, one hour, every 20 minutes) and Shanghai south long-distance bus station (¥80, three hours, regular). Shaoxing taxis start at ¥7.

---

## Wuyi

☎ 0579

Located far inland, Wuyi is itself an uninspiring city, but it is the gateway to the two villages of Yuyuan and Guodong in the surrounding scenic hilly countryside. It is preferable to spend the night in Guodong, which has more character and charm, but if you wish to stay in Wuyi, hotels can be found near the long-distance bus station.

The **Hongda Hotel** ( Hongda Dajjudian; ☎ 8762 2001; 2 Jiefang Beilu; 2 s & tw with computer ¥218, d ¥258; \*@) has a grim lift but rooms

are pleasant and clean with wood flooring, some with computer and discounts of around 60%; ask for the slightly pricier refurbished rooms.

Several popular fish restaurants can be found by the Shuxi River next to Jiefang Bridge on Shuxi Beilu ().

## **i** Information

Several internet cafes are stuffed into the Zijin Wusheng Shangye Zhongxin () block on the corner of Shang Jie () and Jiefang Zhonglu (), opposite KFC.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; 71 Hushanxia Jie*) In the south of town; has foreign currency exchange.

**ICBC** (*Gongshang Yinhang; Wuyang Lu*) Has a 24-hour ATM.

**Pengke W a ngba** (*Jiefang Beijie; per hr ¥2.50; ☺ 24hr*) For internet access.

## **i** Getting There & Around

Buses 2 and 302 connect the train station and the main bus station.

### **Bus**

Buses run to and from Wuyi's **main bus station** (*keyun zhongxin; ☺ 8851 5959*) from Hangzhou south bus station (¥76, six per day from 7.10am to 4.40pm), Ningbo (¥85, three per day) and Wenzhou (8.30am).

### **Train**

Wuyi is easy to reach by train from a number of destinations:

**Hangzhou** hard/soft seat ¥38/57, 3½ to four hours, six daily

**Nanjing** hard/soft sleeper ¥159/244, 9½ to 13 hours, four daily

**Shanghai South Train Station** hard/soft sleeper ¥101/156, six hours, one daily

**Wenzhou** hard/soft seat ¥38/57, four to five hours, 12 daily

---

# Around Wuyi

## GUODONG

Embraced by bamboo-clad hills and dating to the Song dynasty, this lovely old Zhejiang **village** (*through ticket ¥30*) is miles away from it all south of Wuyi. Exquisite in parts, Guodong offers ample opportunity for threading through ancient and cramped Ming-dynasty lanes with their even brickwork and mud-packed walls, past washer women, ancient wells and antique shops, and trekking in the surrounding scenery. Note the lovely brickwork along Qingyuan Lu (), which is where you also find a small church (in a courtyard, next to 20 Qingyuan Lu). The **Ancestral Hall of the He Clan** (; Heshi Zongci) is a huge affair at the heart of the village, originally dating to the Ming dynasty. Also worth looking out for are the Fanyu Hall () and the Renlan Hall (; Renlan Tang).

Beware if you've a fear of canines, Guodong has a large population of barking dogs.

Some homesteads are graced with Christian posters on their doors, while others are decorated with lovely poetic couplets celebrating the rhythms of nature, such as ' ' (Enter the mountains to know the sounds of birds, face the water to know the nature of fish). After you have explored the village, wander along Longshan Lu () and up into the bamboo and woods in the hill above the village (admission included in ticket).

A highlight is the **Dawan Lake Scenic Area** (*Dawanhu Jingqu; admission ¥5*), a 30-minute walk out of the village (follow the signs) past the Wenchang Pavilion (; Wenchang Ge) and a vast, 600-year-old fir tree. At the lake, cross over the dam and wander round the lake with its dark pine-green waters picturesquely surrounded by forests of bamboo.

It's well worth spending the night in Guodong (rather than Wuyi) and the village has more character than Yuyuan. Near the bus drop-off is the small **Qingyuan Hotel** (*Qingyuan Luguan; ☎ 6890 3801; d ¥80; \**), with clean and modern rooms with flat-screen TVs.

All hotels either have restaurants or can fix you a meal, but avoid

being pushed towards *tuji* (free-range chicken) unless you really want it, as it is expensive. A small plate of *xiao xiyu* (; grilled river fish) should cost around ¥18.

To reach Guodong, take bus 5 (¥1.50) to the east bus station (; *keyun dongzhan*) in Wuyi and hop on a Guodong-bound bus (¥3.50, one hour, every 30 minutes) collecting passengers across the road. Returning to Wuyi, the first/last bus from Guodong is at 7am/5.50pm.

## YUYUAN

Around 20km away through the glittering Zhejiang countryside from Wuyi, past mountains, fields of tea bushes, yellow and green bamboo, old bridges and fields of rapeseed is the riverside village of Yuyuan. The **ancient village** (*admission* ¥30) is famously based on the arrangement of the Taoist Taiji (twin fish) diagram, although this can be hard to discern if you don't have a definitive interest in feng shui.

### Sights

With its whitewashed residences, ancient halls, old doorways decorated with hanging red couplets, carved woodwork, cobbled lanes, crowing cocks and waddling geese, the village has an abundance of historic charm.

### Old Buildings *HISTORIC BUILDINGS*

Hidden away behind towering trees, the **Hall of Bowen** (; Bowen Caotang) is an attractive old structure, decorated with Taiji symbols. Originally dating to 1374, the **Ancestral Hall of the Yu Clan** (; Yushi Zongci) is a lovely and unrestored collection of halls around a magnificently carved stage daubed at the rear with a conspicuous slogan from the Cultural Revolution. At the rear is the **Qin Tang** (), where the tablets of the ancestors resided. The hall once burned down and was rebuilt, a battalion camped in the hall in 1930 and it served as a grain storage depot in 1951. Also track down the **Ancestral Hall of the Li Clan** (; Lishi Zongci) – in need of repair – with its light well (*tianjing*) courtyard and side halls bedecked with folk articles.

Several of the village's **old residences** – many in need of

restoration – are still occupied, such as Dunhou Tang (洞后堂) and the Xiatai Lou (下台楼). Also look out for the lovely wood-fronted Hongbin Lou (洪宾楼) by the Yin River (阴河; Yin He), the lovely Jingshen Lou (静身楼), the ample Yuhou Tang (玉后堂) – occupying 2560 sq m – and the **Shengyuan Tang** (圣元堂; also called Liufeng Hall), one of the most ambitious and best-preserved of Yuyuan's halls. A fair amount of Yuyuan's feng shui charm has been irreversibly ruined by modern eyesore attachments thrown up willy-nilly and white-tile buildings with aluminium shuttering that overlook old residences.

### **Temple of the Cave Host** TAOIST, TEMPLE

(洞主庙) Next to a bridge and by a large camphor tree by the river on the outskirts of Yuyuan, the lovely Taoist Temple of the Cave Host originally dates to the Northern Song and is seemingly one of the best preserved buildings in the village.

#### **i** Getting There & Away

To reach Yuyuan, take a direct bus (¥4.50, 30 minutes, every 30 minutes, first/last bus 6.30am/5.30pm) from the west bus station (西站) in Wuyi. Bus 5 (¥1.50) runs between the main bus station in Wuyi and the west bus station.

---

## **Putuoshan**

 0580

The lush and well-tended Buddhist island of Putuoshan – the Zhoushan Archipelago's most celebrated isle – is the abode of Guanyin, the eternally compassionate Goddess of Mercy. One of China's four sacred Buddhist mountains, Putuoshan is permeated with the aura of the goddess and the devotion of her worshippers. Endless boatloads of visitors, however, frequently upset the island's sacred nimbus, especially as access has improved in recent years. During holiday periods and weekends things can get rampant (aim for a midweek visit). Commercialism long ago ensnared Putuoshan: Buddhist chants emerge from speakers camouflaged as rocks and

something has been lost in the deliberate prettification of the island. To underline this, the island was reportedly considering a multimillion-dollar stock market flotation in 2012. Guanyin's three birthdays (19 February, 19 June and 19 September) are celebrated with gusto across the island.





## Sights

A crippling **entrance fee** (*summer/winter ¥160/140*) is payable when you arrive; entry to some other sights is extra.

Images of Guanyin are ubiquitous and Putuoshan's temples are all shrines for the merciful goddess. Besides the three main temples, you will stumble upon nunneries and monasteries everywhere you turn, while decorative archways may suddenly appear from the sea mist.

The central part of the island is around Puji Temple about 1km north of the ferry terminal, reachable by taking the roads leading east or west from the ferry terminal; either way takes about 20 minutes. Alternatively, minibuses from the ferry terminal run to Puji Temple and to other points of the island.

### **Puji Temple** TEMPLE

(*Puji Si; admission ¥5; ☺ 5.30am-6pm*) Fronted by large ponds and overlooked by towering camphor trees and Luohan pines, and undergoing restoration at the time of writing, this temple stands by the main square and dates to at least the 17th century. Past chubby Milefo sitting in a red, gold and green burnished cabinet in the Hall of Heavenly Kings, throngs of worshippers stand with flaming incense in front of the stunning main hall. Buses leave from the west side of the temple to various points around the island. Southwest of the temple is the enchanting and tranquil **Putuo Mountain Botanical Garden** (*admission free*).

### **Buddhism Museum** MUSEUM

(*Fojiao Bowuguan; ☺ 9am-3pm Tue-Sun*) A short walk from Puji temple is the five-storey **Duobao Pagoda** (; Duobao Ta), built in 1334. Next door stands the brand-new and ambitiously created Buddhism Museum which affords an intriguing glimpse at the culture of Buddhism by way of displays of ritual implements, Buddhist objects, ceramics and artefacts.

### **Fayu Temple** TEMPLE

( *Fayu Chansi*; admission ¥5; ☀ 5.30am-6pm) Colossal camphor trees and a huge ginkgo tree tower over this temple, where a vast glittering statue of Guanyin is seated in the main hall, flanked by rows of historic *luohan* effigies. In the hall behind stands a 1000-arm Guanyin. Get to the temple by bus from the ferry terminal (¥6).

## **Foding Mountain** MOUNTAIN

( *Foding Shan*; admission ¥5) A fantastic, shaded half-hour climb can be made from Fayu Temple to Foding Mountain – Buddha’s Summit Peak – the highest point on the island. This is also where you will find the less elaborate **Huiji Temple** ( *Huiji Chansi*; admission ¥5; ☀ 5.30am-6.30pm). In summer the climb is much cooler in the late afternoon; watch devout pilgrims and Buddhist nuns stop every three steps to either bow or kneel in supplication. The less motivated take the **cable car** (one way/return ¥30/50; ☀ 6.40am-5pm). The Xiangyun Pavilion (; Xiangyun Ting) is a pleasant spot for a breather.

## **Nanhai Guanyin** STATUE

( admission ¥6) The first thing you see as you approach Putuoshan by boat is this 33m-high glittering statue of Guanyin, overlooking the waves at the southernmost tip of the island.

## **Beaches** BEACHES

Putuoshan’s two large beaches, **One Hundred Step Beach** ( *Baibusha*; ☀ 6am-6pm) and **One Thousand Step Beach** (; Qianbusha) on the east of the island are attractive and largely unspoilt, although periodically you may have to pay for access; swimming (May through August) is not permitted after 6pm, but it’s lovely to plonk down on the sand in the early evening in warm weather.

## **Caves** CAVES

**Fanyin Cave** ( *Fanyin Dong*; admission ¥5; ☀ 5.30am-6pm), on the far eastern tip of the island, has a temple dedicated to Guanyin perched between two cliffs with a seagull’s view of the crashing waves

below. The sound of the roaring waves in **Chaoyang Cave** (*Chaoyang Dong*; admission ¥12), which overlooks the sea, is said to imitate the chanting of the Buddha. A fully fledged temple has been assembled around the small grotto of the Guanyin Old Cave (; Guanyin Gudong). Other natural wonders include the **Shancai Cave** (*Shancai Dong*; admission ¥5), **Gufo Cave** (*Gufo Dong*; admission ¥5), **Xianren Cave** (*Xianren Dong*; admission ¥5) and **Xitian Cave** (*Xitian Dong*; admission ¥5).

## **Sleeping**

Most hotels on Putuoshan are squarely aimed at tour groups and holidaying Chinese, so prices are not cheap. Room rates are generally discounted from Sunday to Thursday; prices given here refer to Friday and Saturday and holiday periods.

As you leave the arrivals building, local hotel touts flapping plastic photo sheets of their hotels will descend; these rooms are generally at the cheaper end in a nearby village, not luxurious, but serviceable and more affordable than many other hotels on the island. Alternatively, turn left upon exiting the arrivals building and walk to the cheap hotels clustering off Meicen Lu in Xishan Xincun (), a short walk over the hill to the west from the ferry terminal. They are all very similar, with standard singles, twins and perhaps triples. Some hotels may not take foreigners, but others should (speaking Chinese helps); rooms go for around ¥100 to ¥150 on a weekday but will rise considerably at weekends; bargain for your room. Look for the characters ‘ ’, which means rooms are available. Several of the larger hotels have shuttle buses to and from the pier.

### **Putuoshan Hotel** HOTEL \$\$\$

(*Putuoshan Dajiudian*; ☎ 609 2828; [www.putuoshanhotel.com](http://www.putuoshanhotel.com); 93 Meicen Lu; 93 d ¥1668-2268, ste from ¥2568; 📍📞) Maximising its feng shui by backing onto a green hill, Putuoshan's finest hotel has a pleasant and uncluttered feel, with agreeable rooms and service to match. Many other Putuoshan hotels are overwhelmed with Buddhist kitsch, avoided here. Discounts of up to 70% are regular midweek.

## Sanshengtang Fandian *HOTEL* \$\$\$

( 📍 609 3688; 121 Miao Zhuang Yanlu; 121 d ¥800-1040, tr ¥1020; 🌟 ) Often full, this traditional-style place is attractively set among trees off a small path near Puji Temple. Rooms are rather musty but generally go for around ¥300 during slack times.

## Haitong Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

( *Haitong Binguan*; 📍 609 2569; r ¥780-1180; 🌟 ) Across the road as you exit the ferry terminal, this agreeable place has helpful staff and a tempting traditional feel. Midweek discounts are as high as 60% to 70%; weekend discounts of 30% sometimes available.

## Eating

With a focus on seafood and hotel dining, eating on Putuoshan is expensive, unless you eat at places such as the noodle restaurants in small villages such as Xishan Xincun (eateries are off Meicen Lu) and also in Longwan Cun (, the village east of the Citic Putuo Hotel (22 Jinsha Lu). Some of the best places to eat are in the temples, where vegetarian lunches are usually served and sometimes breakfast and dinner for ¥2 to ¥10.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 85-7 Meicen Lu; 🕒 8-11am & 2-5pm ) Forex currency exchange. ATMs (24-hour) taking international cards for the Bank of China and other banks are down the side of the block (which is called 'Financial Street').

**China Mobile** ( *Zhongguo Yidong*; Meicen Lu ) For mobile phone SIM cards. Located near the banks.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 124 Meicen Lu ) Southwest of Puji Temple.

**Clinic** ( *Zhensuo*; 🕒 8am-5pm ) Situated down the side of the block behind the Bank of China.

**ICBC** ( *Gongshang Yinhang*; 85-15 Meicen Lu; 🕒 8-11am & 2-5pm )

Forex currency exchange.

**Left-luggage office** (*jicunchu*; per luggage piece ¥4; ☺ 6.30am-5pm)  
At the ferry terminal.

**Tourist Service Centre** (*Luyou Zixun Zhongxin*; ☎ 609 4921; ☺ 9am-6pm) Near Puji Temple.

## **i** Getting There & Away

The shortest and fastest ferry crossing to Putuoshan is from Shenjiamen ( ) on the neighbouring island of Zhoushan ( ), from where fast boats (¥28, 15 minutes) head every 10 minutes between 6.20am and 5.30pm for the short hop to Putuoshan. Slower boats (¥22) also run, but less frequently. The recent construction of bridges lashing the principle islands of the Zhoushan archipelago to the mainland means you can largely make the trip by bus from Shanghai or Hangzhou.

Tickets for buses to Hangzhou (¥95, first/last bus 6.20am/6.50pm, regular) and Shanghai Nanpudaoqiao (¥138, five hours, first/last bus 6.30am/6pm, regular) from Shenjiamen are available from the **passenger ferry terminal ticket office** (☎ 609 1186), from the **bus ticket office** (74 Meicen Lu; ☺ 8-10.40am & 1.20-4.15pm) opposite the Putuoshan Hotel or at the bus station by the wharf in Shenjiamen.

The nearest airport is Zhoushan (Putuoshan) airport on the neighbouring island of Zhujiajian ( ), linked to Putuoshan by regular fast boats (¥24) between 6.30am and 5.30pm.

A more sedate way to journey is on the night boat that leaves Putuoshan at 4.40pm for the 12-hour voyage to Shanghai's Wusong Wharf. Offering numerous grades of comfort from 4th class to special class, tickets cost ¥109 to ¥499 (or ¥998 for your own room); it's easy to upgrade (*bupiao*) once you're on board. From Shanghai, the boat leaves Wusong Wharf at 8pm, with an extra two services on Friday at 7.20pm and 8.40pm. To reach Wusong Wharf, take metro line 3 to Songbin Rd, from where it's a 15-minute walk. Cross the eight-lane highway and follow the signs to the wharf. Bank on a 1½-hour journey from People's Square.

A fast boat (¥255 to ¥340) departs Putuoshan for the port of Xiao Yang Shan ( ) south of Shanghai at 1.30pm, where passengers are

then bussed to Nanpu Bridge; the whole trip takes four hours. The twice-daily bus/ferry from Shanghai to Putuoshan departs from Xiao Yang Shan; shuttle buses depart Nanpu Bridge in Shanghai at 7.20am and 8am to connect with them.

Tickets for all of the above boats can either be bought at the ticket office at the jetty/arrivals halls or from the office at 74 Meicen Lu, opposite the Putuoshan Hotel.

Other boats from Putuoshan include fast ferries to Ningbo (¥83, first/last boat 7.40am/5.20pm, 10 per day) on the Zhejiang coast; the trip takes about 2½ hours, including the bus ride to the fast boat wharf outside Ningbo. Buses (¥60, three hours, every 30 minutes) from the **Ningbo north bus station** (*qiche beizhan*; 📞 8735 5321; 122 *Taodu Lu*) run to Shenjiamen.

Tickets for both ferry and bus/ferry services are available at the travel agents in the **shop** (📞 6336 8600; 21 *East Jinling Rd*; 21 🕒 9am-6pm; 🚇 *East Nanjing Rd*) on East Jinling Rd in Shanghai.

## Getting Around

Walking around Putuoshan is the most relaxing option if you have time. In recent years, wooden walkways have been added to sections of the island in an ongoing program which makes it easier on the knees and feet for pedestrians, and safer than walking on the roads. Minibuses zip from the passenger ferry terminal to various points around the island, including Puji Temple (¥5), One Thousand Step Beach (¥6), Fayu Temple (¥6), Fanyin Cave (¥8) and the cable car station (¥10). Bus stop signs are in English and Chinese. There are more bus stations at Puji Temple, Fayu Temple and other spots around the island serving the same and other destinations.



# Fujian

POP 36.8 MILLION

## Includes »

[Xiamen](#)

[Gulang Yu](#)

[Fujian Tulou](#)

[Quanzhou](#)

[Around Quanzhou](#)

[Fuzhou](#)

[Wuyi Shan](#)

---

## Why Go?

If you talk to Chinese descendents in Southeast Asia or in Taiwan, you're likely to find that many of them have roots that go back several centuries in Fujian ( ) on China's southern coast. With a seafaring mentality, Fujian used to be one of the windows that connected China to the outside world. Its multicultural heritage still stands beautifully in Xiamen and Quanzhou, where you can glimpse the region's glorious

maritime past.

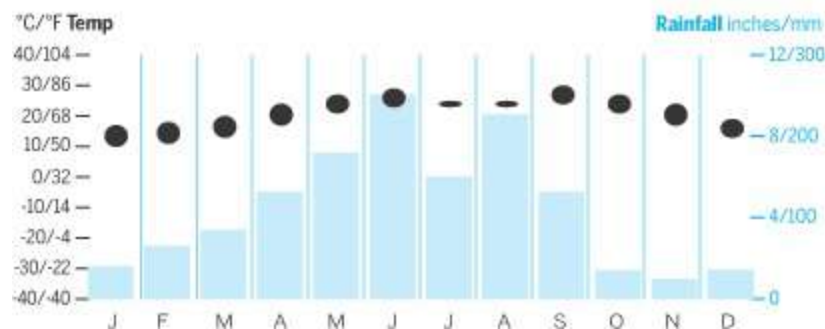
Moving inland, rolling hills are dotted with some of the quirkiest buildings in China. Rising like castles, the marvellous *tulou* (roundhouses) in Fujian's southwest will add delight to your China experience. Heading northwest, the mountainous Wuyi Shan offers hiking opportunities galore.

The slow-tempo harbour city of Xiamen is a useful first port of call. From here, you can drift to the popular isle of Gulang Yu, or the more enchanting Taiwanese island of Kinmen.

---

## When to Go

### Xiàmén



**Mar & Apr** Beat the summer heat with a springtime visit to the World Heritage-listed *tulou*.

**Jun & Sep** Visit the breezy coast of Xiamen and island-hop in summer or autumn.

**Oct** Low-season prices and clear mountain air coalesce in the rugged, lush Wuyi Shan.

---

## Best Temples

- » Nanputuo Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Kaiyuan Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Cao'an Manichean Temple ([Click here](#))



» Guandi Temple ([Click here](#))

## Best Tulou Clusters

» Tianluokeng Tulou Cluster ([Click here](#))

» Gaobei Tulou Cluster ([Click here](#))

» Hongkeng Tulou Cluster ([Click here](#))

» Yunshuiyao Tulou Cluster ([Click here](#))



## Fujian Highlights

- 1 Wander around the breezy **Xiamen** ([Click here](#)), one of China's most attractive cities
- 2 Lose yourself in the warren of back lanes in **Gulang Yu** ([Click here](#)), an island packed with colourful colonial villas
- 3 Explore the region's World Heritage Site, **Fujian tulou** ([Click here](#)), massive, semi-enclosed earthen edifices that are the ancient equivalents of modern-day condos
- 4 Conjure up the vanished era of China's maritime glory in **Quanzhou** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Amble down the alleys and ramparts of the walled city of **Chongwu** ([Click here](#)), one of the best preserved in China
- 6 Hike and marvel at some of Fujian's most magnificent terrain at **Wuyi Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Float on a raft down the **Nine Twists River** ([Click here](#)) and look for boat-shaped coffins in cavities along the rock faces
- 8 Detour to pretty **Kinmen** ([Click here](#)), Taiwan's closest island outpost to China

## History

The coastal region of Fujian, known in English as Fukien or Hokkien, has been part of the Chinese empire since the Qin dynasty (221–207 BC), when it was known as Min. Sea trade transformed the region from a frontier into one of the centres of the Chinese world. During the Song and Yuan dynasties the coastal city of Quanzhou was one of the main ports on the maritime silk route, which transported not only silk but other textiles, precious stones, porcelain and a host of other valuables. The city was home to more than 100,000 Arab merchants, missionaries and travellers.

Despite a decline in the province's fortunes after the Ming dynasty restricted maritime commerce in the 15th century, the resourcefulness

of the Fujian people proved itself in the numbers heading for Taiwan, Singapore, the Philippines, Malaysia and Indonesia. Overseas links that were forged continue today, contributing much to the modern character of the province.

## Climate

Fujian has a subtropical climate, with hot, humid summers and drizzly, cold-ish winters. June through August brings soaring temperatures and humidity, and torrential rains and typhoons are common. In the mountainous regions, winters can be fiercely cold. The best times to visit are spring (March to May) and autumn (September to October).

## Language

Fujian is one of the most linguistically diverse provinces in China. Locals speak variations of the Min dialect, which includes Taiwanese. Min is divided into various subgroups – you can expect to hear Southern Min (Minnan Hua) in Xiamen and Quanzhou, and Eastern Min (Dong Min) in Fuzhou. Using Mandarin is not a problem.

### Getting There & Away

Fujian is well connected to the neighbouring provinces of Guangdong and Jiangxi by train and coastal highway. Xiamen and Fuzhou have airline connections to most of the country, including Hong Kong, and Taipei and Kaohsiung in Taiwan. Wuyi Shan has flight connections to China's larger cities, including Beijing, Shanghai and Hong Kong. The coastal freeway also goes all the way to Hong Kong from Xiamen. The new D class train links Xiamen to Shanghai in eight hours.

### Getting Around

For exploring the interior, D trains are more comfortable and safer than travelling by bus. Wuyi Shan is linked to Fuzhou, Quanzhou and Xiamen by train. If the train is too slow, there are daily flights between Xiamen and Wuyi Shan. See the Getting There & Away information in the relevant sections of this chapter for more details.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥250

\$\$ ¥250 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥90

\$\$\$ more than ¥90

---

## Xiamen

 0592 / POP 668,000

With its quaint historical buildings, neat streets and a charming waterfront district, you can understand why Xiamen, also known to the West as Amoy, is a popular holiday destination for Chinese flashpackers.

The highlight of Xiamen is to stay on the tiny island of Gulang Yu, once the old colonial roost of Europeans and Japanese. The seaside gardens, meandering alleys and beautiful colonial villas ooze an old-world charm rarely seen in Chinese cities.

### History

Xiamen was founded around the mid-14th century in the early years of the Ming dynasty, when the city walls were built and the town was established as a major seaport and commercial centre. In the 17th century it became a place of refuge for the Ming rulers fleeing the Manchu invaders. Xiamen and nearby Jinmen were bases for the Ming armies who, under the command of the general Koxinga, raised their anti-Manchu battlecry, 'resist the Qing and restore the Ming'.

The Portuguese arrived in the 16th century, followed by the British

in the 17th century, and later by the French and the Dutch, all attempting, rather unsuccessfully, to establish Xiamen as a trade port. The port was closed to foreigners in the 1750s and it was not until the Opium Wars that the tide turned. In August 1841 a British naval force of 38 ships carrying artillery and soldiers sailed into Xiamen harbour, forcing the port to open. Xiamen then became one of the first treaty ports.

Japanese and Western powers followed soon after, establishing consulates and making Gulang Yu a foreign enclave. Xiamen turned Japanese in 1938 and remained that way until 1945.

# Xiàmén & Gǔlàng Yǔ



## Xiamen & Gulang Yu

### 📍 Top Sights

[Ecclesia Catholica](#) B3

[Nanputuo Temple](#) D4

[Shuzhuang Garden](#) A4

[Xiamen University](#) D4

## Sights

1 [Bo'ai Hospital](#) B3

Former British Consulate (see 1)

2 [Former Japanese Consulate](#) B3

3 Former Law Court A3

[Former Spanish Consulate](#) (see 2)

[Guancai Lou](#) (see 3)

4 [Haoyue Garden](#) B4

5 Huang Rongyuan Villa B3

6 [Kaihe Lu Fish Market](#) B1

7 [Koxinga Memorial Hall](#) A3

8 [Organ Museum](#) A3

9 [Overseas Chinese Museum](#) C3

10 [Sanyi Church](#) A3

[Statue of Koxinga](#) (see 4)

[Sunlight Rock](#) (see 11)

11 [Sunlight Rock Park](#) A3

12 [Yingxiong Hill](#) A4

[Yizu Shanzhuang](#) (see 3)

## Sleeping

13 [21 Howtel](#) C1

[46Howtel](#) (see 5)

14 [Gulang Yu International Youth Hostel](#) B3

15 [Gulang Yu Lu Fei International Youth Hostel](#) B3

16 [Hotel Indigo Xiamen Harbour](#) B2

17 [Lujiang Harbourview Hotel](#) B2

18 [Mogo Cafe Hotel](#) A3

19 [Xiamen International Youth Hostel](#) D3

20 [Xiamen Locanda International Youth Hostel](#) B3

21 [Xiamen Locanda International Youth Hostel](#) D3

## Eating

22 [Babycat Cafe](#) A3

[Cherry 32 Cafe](#) (see 13)

23 [Dafang Sucaiguan](#) D4

24 [Huangzehe Peanut Soup Shop](#) B2

25 [Kaihe Shachamian](#) B1

- [26 Liji Mudan Fishball](#) **A3**
- [27 Lucky Full Seafood City](#) **B2**
- [Seaview Restaurant](#) (see 17)
- [28 Tianhe Ximen Tusundong](#) **C1**

## **Transport**

- [29 Chunguang Hotel \(Airport Shuttle Buses\)](#) **B2**
- [30 Public Bus Terminal](#) **D4**
- [31 Silk Air](#) **B2**
- [Thai Airways International](#) (see 31)
- [32 Train Ticket Booking Office](#) **C2**

## **Sights & Activities**

The town of Xiamen is on the island of the same name. It's connected to the mainland by a 5km-long causeway bearing a railway, a Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) line, road and footpath. The most absorbing part of Xiamen is near the western (waterfront) district, directly opposite the small island of Gulang Yu. This is the old area of town, known for its colonial architecture, parks and winding streets.

### **Nanputuo Temple** *BUDDHIST*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nanputuo Si; Siming Nanlu; admission ¥3; ☺ 8am-6pm*) This Buddhist temple complex on the southern side of Xiamen is one of the most famous temples among the Fujianese, and is also considered a pilgrimage site by dedicated followers from Southeast Asia. The temple has been repeatedly destroyed and rebuilt. Its latest incarnation dates to the early 20th century, and today it's an active and busy temple with chanting monks and worshippers lighting incense.

The temple is fronted by a huge lotus lake. In front of the courtyard is the twin-eaved **Big Treasure Hall** (Daxiong Baodian), presided over by a trinity of Buddhas representing his past, present and future forms. Behind rises the eight-sided **Hall of Great Compassion** (Dabei Dian),



in which stands a golden 1000-armed statue of Guanyin, facing the four directions.

The temple has an excellent **vegetarian restaurant** (dishes ¥20-50; 🕒 10.30am-4pm) in a shaded courtyard where you can dine in the company of resident, mobile phone-toting monks. Round it all off with a hike up the steps behind the temple among the rocks and the shade of trees.

Take bus 1 from the train station or bus 21, 45, 48 or 503 from Zhongshan Lu to reach the temple.

## **Xiamen University** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xiamen Daxue*) Next to Nanputuo Temple and established with overseas Chinese funds, the university has beautiful republican-era buildings and an attractive lake. It's a good place for a pleasant stroll. The **anthropology museum** (; Renleixue Bowuguan) in the campus boasts two large 'boat coffins' unearthed from a cliff in Wuyi Shan. The campus entrance is next to the stop for bus 1.

## **Huli Shan Fortress** *MILITARY BUILDING*

(*Huli Shan Paotai*; admission ¥25; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm) Across Daxue Lu, south of the university, is this gigantic German gun artillery built in 1893. You can rent binoculars to peer over the water to the Taiwanese-occupied island of Kinmen (; Jinmen; see boxed text, [Click here](#)), formerly known as Quemoy and claimed by both mainland China and Taiwan. Boats (¥126) do circuits of Jinmen from the **passenger ferry terminal** ( *keyun matou*; 📞 298 5551) off Lujiang Lu.

## **FREE** **Overseas Chinese Museum** *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Huaqiao Bowuguan*; 73 Siming Nanlu; 🕒 9.30am-4.30pm Tue-Sun) An ambitious celebration of China's communities abroad, with dioramas, street scenes, photos and props.

## Kaihe Lu Fish Market *MARKET*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Kaihelu Caishichang; Kaihe Lu*) In the old district of Xiamen, this tiny but lively market sells various (weird) sea creatures with historical covered balcony buildings and a church as a backdrop. Access from Xiahe Lu.

## **Tours**

China International Travel Service (CITS;[Click here](#)) and many larger hotels can also help with tours.

## Apple Travel *TRAVEL AGENCY*

(☎ 505 3122; [www.appletravel.cn](http://www.appletravel.cn); Shop 20, Guanren Lu) Pricey but can help arrange tours to the Hakka *tulou* and Wuyi Shan. Also organises English-speaking guides.

## **Festivals & Events**

### Xiamen International Marathon *MARATHON*

([www.xmim.org](http://www.xmim.org)) Held in January, and draws local and international participants. Runners race around the coastal ring road that circles the island.

### Dragon Boat Races *DRAGON BOATING*

Held in Xiamen at the Dragon Pool (; Longzhou Chi) in Jimei ( ) every June, they are quite a sight.

## **Sleeping**




Xiamen is a popular, year-round destination in China, so making a reservation well in advance is essential. Hotels are clustered around the harbour and most are midrange, shading top end.

There's a wide range of top-end accommodation in Xiamen, but

much of it is badly located in the eastern part of town. Most places offer 40% discounts.

### **21 Howtel** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 205 0321; [www.21howtel.com](http://www.21howtel.com), in Chinese; 21 Huaxin Lu; 21 s ¥238, tw ¥268-388;  ) Tucked away in a tranquil neighbourhood of 1950s mansions, this quaint old villa has 14 rooms, every one of which is different. The whole place is a combination of clean and homey. Booking is a pain though. Walk in and try your luck, or reserve at least three weeks in advance. Not all the staffers speak English.




### **Hotel Indigo Xiamen Harbour** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xiamen Haigang Yindige Jiudian*;  226 1666; [www.hotelindigo.com](http://www.hotelindigo.com); 16 Lujiang Dao; 16 d ¥2600-3600, discounts around 50%;  ) This newest chain hotel addition to the waterfront district has found a balance between funky and kitschy in its design and decor. Both business travellers and tourists will appreciate the central location and the generous number of rooms with sweeping harbour views. Staff are attentive.

### **Xiamen International Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xiamen Guoji Qingnian Lushe*;  208 2345; [www.yhaxm.com](http://www.yhaxm.com); 41 Nanhua Lu; 41 dm from ¥55, s ¥80-160, d ¥160-240;  ) With clean dorms and doubles, this famous hostel is run by an efficient and helpful staff. There's also bike rental, a ticket-booking service, computer stations with internet access (¥2.50 per hour) and the cosy Anywhere Pub. Reservations essential.

### **Lujiang Harbourview Hotel** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lujiang Binguan*;  202 2922; [www.lujiang-hotel.com](http://www.lujiang-hotel.com); 54 Lujiang

Dao; 54 s ¥1345-1450, sea-view d ¥1955-2300, discounts 30%; 🌐📍) Finally, the rooms in this 1940s structure have received a complete makeover, giving them the modern facilities and quite tasteful furnishings that befit the hotel's four-star billing. It's worth paying more for the spacious sea-view rooms, some of which also boast balconies.

## Xiamen Locanda International Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

Offline map

Google map

(Xiamen Luka Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 208 2918; [www.locandahostel.com](http://www.locandahostel.com); 35 Minzu Lu; 35 4-/6-bed dm ¥60/55, s ¥208, d & tw ¥258; 🌐📍) This amicable hostel can be easily identified by its ochre walls and a lovely courtyard. All rooms are clean and amber-hued. The dorms are compact, though. It has a **branch** (📍 209 9053; 12 Nanhua Lu; 4-/6-bed dm ¥55/50, r ¥198-238; 🌐📍) not far from Xiamen International Youth Hostel, which, while being less attractive, offers more spacious rooms.

## Ring Island Coast Inn *GUESTHOUSE* \$\$

(Huandao Hai'an Kezhan; 📍 219 6677; [www.xm-inn.com](http://www.xm-inn.com); 20 Zeng Cuo An, Huandao Nanlu; 20 r ¥150-350; 🌐📍) Further southeast of Xiamen University is the fishing village of Zeng Cuo An, where family-run guesthouses are mushrooming. This nine-room guesthouse (aka the Blue House) has two cosy rooms with beautiful balcony views of the sea. The cheapest rooms have no attached bathroom. To get there, catch bus 29 from Siming Nanlu.

## Eating

Being a port city, Xiamen is known for its fresh seafood, especially oysters and shrimp. The alleys on both sides of Zhongshan Lu teem with eateries of all shapes and sizes. Yundang Lu ( ), near Marco Polo Hotel, has a long strip of cafes and restaurants popular with expats and trendy locals.

## Seaview Restaurant *DIM SUM, FUJIANESE* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Lujiang Binguan Guanhaiting; 7th fl, 54 Lujiang Dao; meals from ¥80; ☹️ 10am-10pm; 📍*) What's better than sipping tea and enjoying freshly made dim sum on a sun-kissed terrace with sweeping harbour views? This rooftop restaurant in Lujiang Harbourview Hotel is a choice place to savour Fujianese street snacks in a comfy setting. No English dim sum menu, but you can pick what you want from the cooking stations.

### **Kaihe Shachamian** NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *126 Xiahe Lu; noodles from ¥12; ☹️ 24hr*) This absolutely no-frills eatery is a perennial favourite of the locals for its *Shachamian* (satay-inspired noodles). The ingredients can be customised but a typical bowl will include shellfish, meatballs and pig innards. Let your fingers do the talking. The shop is identifiable by the yellow characters on the green front panel.

### **Huangzehe Peanut Soup Shop** SNACKS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Huangzehe Huasheng Tangdian; 20 Zhongshan Lu; snacks ¥4-10; ☹️ 6.30am-10.30pm*) Very popular restaurant with basic service and seating, famed for its delectably sweet *huasheng tang* (; peanut soup) and popular snacks including *halijian* (; oyster omelette) and *zhurou chuan* (; pork kebabs). You need to purchase coupons that you hand over when you order food.

### **Lucky Full City Seafood** DIM SUM \$\$

( *Chaofu Cheng; 28 Hubin Beilu; dim sum from ¥12, meals from ¥70; ☹️ 10am-10pm; 📍*) Priding itself on MSG-free dim sum and dishes, this extremely popular restaurant is where you'll have to try your luck or wait at least 30 minutes to get a table. Catch a taxi here: the driver will know where it is. It now has a **branch** (*33 Lujiang Dao; ☹️ 8am-2.30am*) next to Lundu Ferry Terminal.

### **Cherry 32 Cafe** CAFE \$\$

Offline map

Google map

(32 Huaxin Lu; coffee from ¥45; ☺ 11am-11pm; 📍) Run by 21 Howtel and just a stone's throw from it, Cherry 32 serves arguably the best coffee in town. The very delicate porcelains, the retro phones and clocks on the wall, together with the lovely courtyard, all evoke the mood in a grandma's home. It has a decent selection of wines, too.

## Dafang Sucaigu a n VEGETARIAN \$\$

(📍 209 3236; 3 Nanhua Lu; dishes ¥28-68; ☺ 9am-9.30pm; 📍📍)

This cheerfully furnished vegetarian restaurant has a very wide range of delicious dishes including hotpots and mock meat.

## NOT FOR THE SQUEAMISH!

Fancy aspic dishes, or some jelly with a difference? *Tusundong* ( ), or sandworm jelly, is one of the best loved appetisers in Fujian. The sandworms are boiled into a jelly mould and the crunchy end product, an aspic dish, is said to be rich in collagen. Locals love eating them with mustard, cilantro and turnip slices. You'll find the jelly sold in any street food joints, but Amoyers all recommend [Tianhe Ximen Tusundong](#) ( 33 Douxi Lu; snacks from ¥10; ☺ 8am-10pm) near the west gate of Zhongshan Park. If the idea of eating worms is too gross for you, the restaurant also serves delicious octopus and ark clams.

## Shopping

Zhongshan Lu is essentially a long shopping strip filled with souvenir shops and the latest fashion brands.

## Information

Pickpockets operate around the popular areas in Xiamen. This includes Zhongshan Lu and the ferry to/from Gulang Yu.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 6 Zhongshan Lu) The 24-hour ATM accepts international cards.

**China International Travel Service** (*CITS*; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; 335 Hexiang Xilu) There are several offices around town.

This branch near Yundang Lake is recommended.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Xinhua Lu & Zhongshan Lu*) Telephone services available.

**Life Line Medical Clinic** (*Mifu Zhensuo; 📍 532 3168; 123 Xidi Villa Hubin Beilu; 🕒 8am-5pm Mon-Fri, to noon Sat*) English-speaking doctors; expat frequented. Telephone-operated 24 hours.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; 📍 226 2203; 45-47 Xinhua Lu)** Opposite the main post and telephone office. The visa section (*churujing guanlichu; open 8.10am to 11.45am and 2.40pm to 5.15pm Monday to Saturday*) is in the northeastern part of the building on Gongyuan Nanlu.

**What's On Xiamen** ([www.whatsonxiamen.com](http://www.whatsonxiamen.com)) Up-to-date information on Xiamen.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

Air China, China Southern, Xiamen Airlines and several other domestic airlines operate flights to/from Xiamen to all major domestic airports in China. There are innumerable ticket offices around town, many of which are in the larger hotels, such as the Millennium Harbourview Hotel. There are international flights to/from Bangkok, Hong Kong, Jakarta, Kuala Lumpur, Los Angeles, Manila, Osaka, Penang, Singapore and Tokyo.

**All Nippon Airways** (📍 573 2888; 12-8 Zhenhai Lu) In Millennium Harbourview Hotel.

**Apple Travel** (📍 505 3122; [www.appletravel.cn](http://www.appletravel.cn); Shop 20, Guanren Lu) Flight and tour bookings. Located behind Marco Polo Hotel.

**Silk Air** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Sheng'an Hangkong; 📍 205 3280; International Plaza, 15th fl, Unit H, 8 Lujiang Dao*)

**Thai Airways International** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Taiguo Hangkong Gongsu; 📍 226 1688*) In the International Plaza.

### **Boat**

Fast boats (¥10, 20 minutes) leave for the nearby coastal Fujian town

of Zhangzhou ( ) from the passenger ferry terminal ( ; *keyun matou*). Boats run every 15 minutes between 6.30am and 9.30pm. There are also ferry services to Kinmen (Jinmen), Taiwan (¥180, one hour, hourly). For details, see boxed text, [Click here](#).

## Bus

Buses to the following destinations leave from **Hubin long-distance bus station** ( *Hubin changtu qichezhan; 58 Hubin Nanlu*) and tickets can also be bought two days in advance at the ticket booth in the local bus terminal adjacent to Xiamen University at the end of Siming Nanlu.

**Fuzhou** ¥75, four hours, every 10 minutes

**Guangzhou** ¥200, nine hours, two daily

**Guilin** ¥240, one daily (8.30am)

**Longyan** ¥58, three hours, regular services

**Nanjing (in Fujian)** ¥35, two hours, regular services

**Quanzhou** ¥37, two hours, every 20 minutes

**Wuyi Shan** ¥124, nine hours, one daily (11.10am)

**Yongding** ¥65, four hours, four daily

## Train

Book tickets at the train station or through the **train ticket booking office** (☎ 203 8565; *cnr Xinhua Lu & Zhongshan Lu*) behind the Gem Hotel (Jinhou Jiudian). Most trains leave from Xiamen's main train station on Xiahe Lu, and all northbound D trains stop at the new Xiamen north station 25km north of the city centre (prices range from hard seat to soft sleeper tickets):

**Beijing (west)** ¥253 to ¥705, 33 hours

**Hangzhou** (D train) ¥285, seven hours

**Kunming** ¥266 to ¥783, 41 hours

**Nanjing (in Jiangsu)** ¥150 to ¥452, 30 hours

**Shanghai** (D train) ¥237, 7½ hours

**Wuyi Shan** ¥149 to ¥232, 13½ hours



## Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Xiamen airport is 15km from the waterfront district. Taxis cost about ¥45. Bus 27 travels from the airport to Diyi ferry terminal (but not vice versa). From the city centre, airport shuttle buses leave from **Chunguang Hotel** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Chunguang Jiudian*; cnr *Datong Lu & Lujiang Dao*; ¥10), opposite the Lundu ferry terminal.

### Public Transport

Bus Rapid Transit (BRT) line 1 links the waterfront to both train stations via Xiahe Lu (¥1). Bus 19 runs to the train station from the ferry terminal (¥1). Buses to Xiamen University leave from the train station (bus 1) and from the ferry terminal (bus 2). Taxis start at ¥8 plus ¥3 fuel surcharge.

---

## Gulang Yu

 0592

The small island of Gulang Yu is the trump card of Xiamen. It's not hard to see why it attracts droves of visitors every year. Just a five-minute boat ride away, you'll find yourself on a breezy islet with warrens of backstreets, set in the architectural kaleidoscope of more than 1000 colonial villas, imposing mansions and ancient banyan trees. The area near the ferry terminal tends to get very crowded, but the higher and further you go, the more you have the island to yourself, and it's worth spending a few days here to soak up its charms.

The foreign community was well established on Gulang Yu by the 1880s, with a daily English newspaper, churches, hospitals, post and telegraph offices, libraries, hotels and consulates. In 1903 the island was officially designated an International Foreign Settlement, and a municipal council with a police force of Sikhs was established to govern it. Today, memories of the settlement linger in the many charming colonial buildings and the sound of classical piano wafting

from speakers (the island is nicknamed 'piano island' by the Chinese). Many of China's most celebrated musicians have come from Gulang Yu, including the pianists Yu Feixing, Lin Junqing and Yin Chengzong.

The best way to enjoy the island is to wander along the streets, peeking into courtyards and down alleys to catch a glimpse of colonial mansions seasoned by local life before popping into one of the many cute cafes for a beer or milk tea.

## Sights

### Historic Buildings *HISTORIC BUILDINGS*

Old colonial residences and consulates are tucked away in the maze of streets leading from the pier, particularly along Longtou Lu and the back lanes of Huayan Lu. Some of Gulang Yu's buildings are deserted and tumbledown, with trees growing out of their sides, as residents cannot afford their upkeep.

Southeast of the pier you will see the two buildings of the **former British Consulate** ( *14-16 Lujiao Lu*) above you, while further along at 1 Lujiao Lu ( ) is the cream-coloured former Japanese **Bo'ai Hospital** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), built in 1936. Residents have now barred access to the public via a warning near the entrance. Up the hill on a different part of Lujiao Lu at No 26 stands the red-brick **former Japanese Consulate** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), just before you reach the magnificent snow-white **Ecclesia Catholica** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Roman Catholic Church; Tianzhutang; 34 Lujiao Lu*), dating from 1917. The white building next to the church is the **former Spanish Consulate** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#). Just past the church on the left is the **Huang Rongyuan Villa** (*admission adult/child ¥60/30*); a marvellous pillared building, now the Puppet Art Center. There is also some art deco architecture. Take a look at the building at **28 Fujian Lu**. Other buildings worth looking at include the Protestant **Sanyi Church** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( ), a red-brick building with a classical portico and cruciform-shaped interior on the corner of Anhai Lu ( ) and Yongchun Lu ( ). Where Anhai Lu meets Bishan Lu ( ) is the former **Law Court** (*1-3 Bishan Lu*), now inhabited by local residents.

Doing a circuit of Bishan Lu will take you past a rarely visited part of the island. **Guancai Lou** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 6 Bishan Lu), a residence built in 1931, has a magnificently dilapidated interior with a wealth of original features and, like so many other buildings here, is crying out to be preserved. The building stands in stark contrast next to the immaculate **Yizu Shanzhuang** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 9 Bishan Lu), a structure dating from the 1920s.

## **Organ Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Fengqin B o wuguan*; admission ¥20; 🕒 8.40am-5.30pm) The highly distinctive Bagua Lou ( ) at No 43 Guxin Lu ( ) is now the Organ Museum, with a fantastic collection including a Norman & Beard organ from 1909.

## **Haoyue Garden** GARDEN

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Haoyue Yuan*; admission ¥15; 🕒 6am-7pm) Haoyue Garden is a rocky outcrop containing an imposing **statue of Koxinga** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) in full military dress.

## **Sunlight Rock Park** PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Riguang Yan Gongyuan*; admission ¥60; 🕒 8am-7pm) **Sunlight Rock** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Riguang Yan), in Sunlight Rock Park, is the island's highest point at 93m. At the foot of Sunlight Rock is a large colonial building known as the **Koxinga Memorial Hall** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Zheng Chenggong Jinianguan*; 🕒 8-11am & 2-5pm). Also in the park is **Yingxiong Hill** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Yingxiong Shan), near the memorial hall and connected via a free cable-car ride. It has an **open-air aviary** (admission free) with chattering egrets and parrots, and a terrible bird 'show'.

## **Shuzhuang Garden** GARDEN

Offline map

Google map

( *Shuzhuang Huayuan*; admission ¥30) The waterfront Shuzhuang Garden on the southern end of the island is a lovely place to linger for a few hours. It has a small *penzai* (bonsai) garden and some delicate-looking pavilions. The piano theme is in full effect at the piano museum housed within the grounds. One piano has its original bill of sale from Melbourne at the turn of the 20th century.

WORTH A TRIP

## KINMEN, TAIWAN

If you have a multiple-entry China visa, it's worth making a detour to the island of Kinmen (; Jinmen) in Taiwan. Lying only 2km off the coast of Xiamen, this peaceful islet was once part of a five-decade political tug-of-war between the mainland and Taiwan, and was subjected to incessant bombings from the mainland throughout the 1950s and 1960s. It wasn't until 1993 that martial law was lifted and people living on this once off-limit frontier island were allowed to travel freely to and from the mainland and Taiwan. In 2000, the government of Taiwan removed the ban on travel and trade between the mainland and the Strait Islands, and ferry crossings between the two sides have thrived ever since.

Today, Kinmen is fairly developed and visitor-friendly. The former battlefields and military bunkers are now opened up for tourism. In addition to war relics, the island has tree-lined streets, lakes, a national park and a cluster of beautiful villages dotted with colourful temples and Fujian-style houses (ironically, most of their counterparts back in Fujian have been demolished in the past 30 years). Attractions include **Chukuang Tower** ( *Juguang Lou*), built in 1952 to honour the fallen soldiers of Kinmen; the historical **Shuitou Village** (; Shuitou Cun) and **Jhushan Village** (; Zhushan); and the meandering alleys and market streets in **Kincheng** (; Jincheng), the largest city on Kinmen. All these are within reachable distance from the ferry terminal and ideal for a day trip.

The size of Kinmen (153 sq km) suggests that a multiday excursion is possible. It's rewarding to further venture to the cute **Lieyu Island** (; Lieyu Xiang), less than 2 sq km in area and a 10-minute boat ride from Kinmen.

Cycling is the best way to see the island. Bikes can be borrowed free-of-charge for a maximum of three days from most visitor information centres, with a handy one in Kincheng bus station (; Jincheng chezhan). Bike lanes as well as all sights are well-marked in both Chinese and English. Free Chinese maps are available in all visitor information centres, and the Chinese-speaking staff can recommend accommodation. Shuitou and Jhushan villages have lots of B&Bs (; *minsu*), and we love **Qin Inn** ( *Shuitou Yijiaqin*; ☎ 886-910-395565; <http://qininn.tumblr.com>; 63-64 Qian Shuitou; s NT\$1200, d NT2400-3600; 📶 📶). In Kincheng, the brand-new **In99 Hotel** (☎ 886-082-3248; [www.in99hotel.com](http://www.in99hotel.com); 60 Minsheng Lu, Jincheng Township; d NT\$1800-3000) is the place to stay.

To get there, see the boxed text, [Click here](#). On Kinmen island, bus 7 links the ferry terminal with Shuitou village and Kincheng, and bus 3 runs between Kincheng, Jhushan and the airport. Ferries to Lieyu Island depart from the dock diagonally opposite to the ferry terminal every 30 minutes between 6.30am and 8.30pm.

A friendly reminder: you need a multiple-entry China visa if you want to go back to Fujian. Otherwise you have to fly to Taipei or Kaohsiung to get one through a travel agent.




Free luggage storage is available at the departure hall in the ferry terminal. The money changers in the terminal only accept renminbi at the time of research.

## Sleeping

There's a plethora of accommodation choices in Gulang Yu, but its popularity means booking in advance is a must. Cars aren't allowed on the island, so try to book a hotel close to the ferry terminal if you've got a lot of luggage.

### 46Howtel *HOTEL* \$\$\$




[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 206 5550; [www.46howtel.com](http://www.46howtel.com); 46 Fujian Lu; 46 r ¥365-780;  )

The 17 rooms in this luxury boutique hotel are spacious, sleek and cutting-edge modern. Expect rooms straight out of a *Wallpaper* spread: sharp lines, glossy surfaces and plush carpets. Service is top notch too.

### Mogo Cafe Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Mogu Luguan*;  208 5980; [www.mogo-hotel.com](http://www.mogo-hotel.com); 3-9 Longtou Lu; 3-9 r ¥280-650;  ) Every one of the 19 rooms in this fabulous option is a distinctive statement of designer flair: think textured wallpaper, mood lighting, rain showers. The hotel is just a short walk from the ferry terminal, though you'll have to lug your bags up three flights of stairs when you arrive.

### Gulang Yu International Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Gulang Yu Guoji Qingnian Luguan*; 📍 206 6066; 18 Lujiao Lu; 18 6- /4-bed dm ¥50/75, s ¥110, d ¥270 & ¥370; 📶@📶) Housed in a revamped old building, this well-located hostel features large rooms with high beamed ceilings and a relaxing courtyard. We think it's the best value for money on the island. There's internet access, a laundry and lots of company.

## **Gulang Yu Lu Fei International Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Gulang Yu Lu Fei Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 208 2678; [www.yhalf.cn](http://www.yhalf.cn); 20 Guxin Lu; 20 dm ¥60, s & d ¥290-370; 📶@📶) Rooms are cute and sparkling clean, and each has a theme. We love its pastel hues and wrought-iron beds. It's 400m west of the ferry terminal.

## **Eating**

You'll find small eateries and trendy cafes aplenty, especially in the streets off Longtou Lu. Try the shark fishballs and the Amoy pie (a sweet filled pastry).

## **Babycat Cafe** CAFE \$\$

Offline map

Google map

(📍 206 3651; 143 Longtou Lu; ☺ 10.30am-11pm; 📶) This trendy cafe has attracted foodies from all corners of China for its Amoy handmade pies. Additionally, there's a large range of coffees and free wi-fi.

## **Liji Mudan Fishball** SEAFOOD \$

Offline map

Google map

( *Linji Mudan yuwan*; 56 Longtou Lu; meals from ¥15; ☺ 10am-9pm) Pull up a bench and order some local specialities: shark fishball noodles ( ) and a serve of oyster omelette ( ). Slurp it down and order a second serve.

## **Information**

There are different maps for sale (¥10). The flavour of the month seems to be a hand-drawn Chinese version printed on brown paper; while it lists all the sights of interest, it's not to scale and useless when you get lost.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 2 Longtou Lu; ☺ 9am-7pm) Forex and 24-hour ATM.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 102 Longtou Lu)

**Hospital** ( *Yiyuan*; 60 Fujian Lu) Has its own miniature ambulance for the small roads.

**Xiamen Gulang Yu Visitor Center** ( *Xiamen Gulang Yu Youke Zhongxin*; Longtou Lu) Left luggage ¥3 to ¥5.

## **i** Getting There & Around

Ferries for the five-minute trip to Gulang Yu leave from Lundu ferry terminal ( ) just west of Xiamen's Lujiang Harbourview Hotel. The round-trip fare is ¥8 (getting on the upper deck costs an additional ¥1). Boats run between 5.30am and midnight. Waterborne circuits of the island can be done by boat (¥15), with hourly departures from the passenger ferry terminal off Lujiang Lu between 7.45am and 8.45pm.

### **BORDER CROSSINGS: GETTING TO TAIWAN**

Eighteen ferries ply between Xiamen and Kinmen ( ; Jinmen) Island in Taiwan roughly between 8am and 7pm. You can catch the boat from the International Passenger Ferry Terminal (¥150/NT\$750, one hour), more commonly known as Dongdu Matou ( ), 4km north of Lundu ferry terminal; or from Wutong ferry terminal ( ; Wutong Matou; 20 minutes), 8km east of the airport. Check [www.kma.gov.tw](http://www.kma.gov.tw) for the schedule.

Tickets can only be bought an hour before departure time. In Kinmen, visas are issued on the spot for most nationalities. But you need a multiple-entry China visa if you want to return to Fujian.

Both ferry terminals can only be reached by taxi. Expect to pay ¥15 to get to the International Passenger Ferry Terminal from the waterfront district; and ¥20 to go from the airport to Wutong ferry terminal.

At the time of research, Renminbi is the only currency accepted in the money exchange counters in Kinmen's ferry terminal. There are no ATM machines in the pier area. From Kinmen, there are flights to other major cities in Taiwan.

Alternatively, you can catch a ferry (¥300, 90 minutes, 9.15am) from Fuzhou's Mawei ferry terminal (; Mawei Matou) to Taiwan's archipelago of Matzu (; Mazu). From there, you'll find boats to Keelung and flights to other cities in Taiwan.

---

## Fujian Tulou

 0597 / POP 40,200

Scattered all over the pretty, rolling countryside in southwestern Fujian, the remarkable *tulou* () are vast, fortified earthen edifices that have been home to both the Hakka and the Minnan (Fujianese) people since the year dot. Today, more than 3000 survive, many still inhabited and open to visitors.

Since Unesco status was conferred on 46 *tulou* in 2008, the local government has been in a flap revamping. New roads were added to link the *tulou* areas to the nearest counties and new hotels erected. Some *tulou* are more than eager to convert the family properties into guesthouses to meet the tourism demand. Needless to say, entry fees have increased. You'll see a convoy of tour buses bringing droves of visitors to some of the most popular *tulou* clusters, but don't be deterred by that. The setting and architectural structure of the *tulou* are simply stunning, and each one is unique. If you venture off the beaten path, crowds thin out considerably and some little-known or even nameless *tulou* are the most authentic reflection of rural life in these packed-earth chateaux.

### JUST WHAT IS A TULOUP?

*Tulou*, literally mud houses, are outlandish, multistorey, fortified mud structures built by the inhabitants of southwest Fujian to protect themselves from bandits and wild animals.

*Tulou* were built along either a circular or square floor plan. The walls are made of rammed earth and glutinous rice, reinforced with strips of bamboo and wood chips. These structures are large enough to house entire clans, and they did, and still do! They are a grand exercise in communal living. The interior sections are enclosed by enormous peripheral structures that could accommodate hundreds of people. Nestled in the mud walls were bedrooms, wells, cooking areas and storehouses, circling a central courtyard. The later *tulou* had stone fire walls and metal-covered doors to protect against blazes.



The compartmentalised nature of the building meant that these structures were the ancient equivalent of modern apartments. A typical layout would be the kitchens on the ground floor, storage on the next level and accommodation on the floors above this. Some *tulou* have multiple buildings built in concentric rings within the main enclosure. These could be guest rooms and home schools. The centre is often an ancestral hall or a meeting hall used for events such as birthdays and weddings. For defence purposes, usually there is only one entrance for the entire *tulou* and there are no windows on the first three storeys.

It was once believed that these earthen citadels were inhabited solely by the Hakka. They are the people who migrated from northwest China during the Jin dynasty (AD 265–314) to the south to escape persecution and famine, and they eventually settled in Jiangxi, Fujian and Guangdong. While most *tulou* in the vicinity of Yongding County are inhabited by the Hakka, there are far more *tulou* in other counties like Nanjing and Hua'an populated by the indigenous Minnan (Fujianese) people. A key distinguishing feature between the Hakka and Minnan *tulou* is that the former has communal corridors and staircases, as well as a central courtyard, while the latter *tulou* puts more emphasis on privacy, ie each unit has its own staircases and patio.

No matter what type or shape of *tulou* you're looking at, many of them are still inhabited by a single clan, and residents depend on a combination of tourism and farming for a living. The *tulou* are surprisingly comfortable to live in, being '*dong nuan, xia liang*' ( ), or 'warm in winter and cool in summer'. These structures were built to last.

## Sights

The most notable of the 3000-odd *tulou* are lumped into various clusters, and they are in the vicinity of two main counties: Nanjing ( ) and Yongding ( ). If you rely solely on public transport to see the *tulou*, you can base yourself in the small village of Liulian ( ), aka the Tulou Minsu Wenhuaacun ( ). The village is 800m south of the Hongke Tulou Cluster and is reachable by bus from Xiamen or Yongding. It consists of a small bus station, some hotels and restaurants. If you hire a vehicle, the scenic Taxia village ([Click here](#)), 55km northeast of Nanjing county, is an ideal base.

See [Click here](#) for details on how to get to the various *tulou*.

## HONGKENG TULOUC CLUSTER

Cluster admission is ¥90.

### Zhcheng Lou TULOUC

( ) A short walk from Liulian, this most visited *tulou* is a grandiose

structure built in 1912, with two concentric circles and a total of 222 rooms. The ancestral hall in the centre of the *tulou* is complete with Western-style pillars. The locals dub this *tulou wangzi* (王仔土楼), the prince *tulou*.

### **Kuiju Lou** TULOOU

() Near Zhencheng Lou, this much older, square *tulou* dates back to 1834.

### **Rusheng Lou** TULOOU

() The smallest of the roundhouses, this late-19th-century, pea-sized *tulou* has only one ring and 16 rooms.

### **Fuyu Lou** TULOOU

() Along the river, this five-storey square *tulou* boasts some wonderfully carved wooden beams and pillars. Rooms are available here for ¥100.

## **TIANLUOKENG TULOOU CLUSTER**

A pilgrimage to the earthen castles is not complete if you miss **Tianluokeng** (田螺坑), which is 37km northeast of Nanjing and home to arguably the most picturesque cluster of *tulou* in the region. The locals affectionately call the five noble buildings 'four dishes with one soup' because of their shapes: circular, square and oval. All of them were upgrading their guest rooms at the time of research. Wenchang Lou (文昌楼), for example, has fan rooms with wi-fi for ¥70. Expect more facilities to be available by the time you read this book.

There's one direct bus (¥55, 3½ hours) to the cluster from Xiamen, leaving at 8.30am. Make sure your driver, if you've hired one, takes you up the hill for a postcard-perfect view of Tianluokeng. Cluster admission is ¥100.

### **Yuchang Lou** TULOOU

() The tallest roundhouse in Fujian, this vast five-floor structure has an observation tower to check for marauding bandits and 270 rooms.

Interestingly, this 300-year-old property's pillars bend at an angle on the 3rd floor and at the opposite angle on the 5th floor, and each room and kitchen on the ground floor has its own well.

### **Taxia** VILLAGE

() This nearby village is a delightful river settlement, with several *tulou*, including the **Qingde Lou**, where you can spend the night in a modern *tulou* room (¥160). Another highlight of the village is the **Zhang Ancestral Hall**. It's surrounded by 23 elaborately carved spearlike stones, which celebrate achievements of prominent villagers. The bus station in Nanjing runs six buses (¥17, 1½ hours) to the village between 8am and 4.30pm.

### **Buyun Lou** TULOOU

() At the heart of the Tianluokeng cluster is this square building. First built in the 17th century, it burnt down in 1936 and was rebuilt in the 1950s.

### **Wenchang Lou** TULOOU

() The Tianluokeng cluster's oval-shaped building.

## **GAOBEI TULOOU CLUSTER**

Cluster admission is ¥50.

### **Chengqi Lou** TULOOU

() In the village of Gaobei (), this 300-year-old *tulou* has 400 rooms and once housed 1000 inhabitants. It's built with elaborate concentric rings, with circular passageways between them and a central shrine. It's one of the most iconic and photographed *tulou* and we're not surprised that it has been dubbed the king *tulou*.

### **Wuyun Lou** TULOOU

() Deserted and rickety, this square building took on a slant after an earthquake in 1918.

### **Qiaofu Lou** TULOOU

() A modern *tulou* constructed in 1962, housing 90 rooms across three levels. Decent rooms are available for ¥100.

### **Yijing Lou** TULOOU

() The largest rectangular *tulou* found in Fujian. The crumbling structure has 281 rooms, two schools and 51 halls. Built in 1851.

## **YUNSHUIYAO TULOOU CLUSTER**

The cluster, 48km northeast of Nanjing, is set in idyllic surrounds with rolling hills, verdant farms and babbling streams. There are six buses (¥20) to Yunshuiyao () that leave from the bus station in Nanjing. The admission is ¥90.

### **Hegui Lou** TULOOU

() The tallest rectangular *tulou* in Fujian has five storeys and was built on a swamp. It boasts 120 rooms, a school, two wells, and a fortified courtyard in front of the entrance. The mammoth structure was built in 1732.

### **Huaiyuan Lou** TULOOU

() This relatively young *tulou* (built in 1909) has 136 equally sized rooms and a concentric ring that houses an ancestral hall and a school.

### **Changjiao** VILLAGE

() Between the above two *tulou* is this beautiful village (now also called Yunshuiyao) where you can sip tea under the big banyan trees and watch water buffalo frolic in the river. The village has a few guesthouses that offer rooms from ¥200 ([Click here](#)).

## **NANXITULOOU CLUSTER**

Cluster admission is ¥70.

## Huanji Lou *TULO*

() Sitting midway between Yongding and Nanjing, this four-storey building is a huge roundhouse with inner concentric passages, tiled interior passages and a courtyard. It also sports a *huiyinbi* () – a wall that echoes and resonates to sharp sounds. Some villagers may ask you for a ‘sanitation fee’. It’s not legal. Don’t pay.

## Yanxiang Lou *TULO*

() This four-storey *tulou* rises up beautifully next to a river, and is in the same direction as Huanji Lou.

## Liben Lou *TULO*

() To the rear of Yanxiang Lou is this derelict *tulou* with crumbling walls. It was burnt down during the civil war and stands without its roof.

## Qingyang Lou *TULO*

() Also not far from Yanxiang Lou, this huge, rectangular, semi-decrepit structure was built between 1796 and 1820.

## Sleeping & Eating

There are many hotels in Yongding and Nanjing, but neither town is attractive. We recommend you base yourself in a *tulou*, which will give you a glimpse of a vanishing dimension of life in China. Bring a flashlight and bug repellent. Most families can cook up meals for you. Expect to pay ¥30 upwards for a dish and always ask the price before ordering.

You will be able to find a room in most of the *tulou* you visit as many families have now moved out. Some *tulou* have upgraded their rooms with modern facilities, but most are still very basic – a bed, a thermos of hot water and a fan. You might also find that the toilets are on the outside, and the huge gates to the *tulou* shut around 8pm.

Most *tulou* owners can also organise a pick-up from Xiamen and transport for touring the area.

## **Qingde Lou** TULOOU \$

( 📞 777 1868, 1386 0800 101; [www.qingdelou.com](http://www.qingdelou.com), in Chinese; d ¥100-160; 📶📶) The 30 rooms in this rectangular *tulou* are modern with air-con and wi-fi. Some rooms on the 2nd and 3rd floors have shared bathrooms only, but they are clean and comfy. Rooms with attached bathroom have a strong shower and heat lights. Located in the village of Taxia.

## **Fuyu Lou Changdi Inn** TULOOU \$

( 📞 553 2800, 1379 9097 962; [www.fuyulou.net](http://www.fuyulou.net), in Chinese; d incl breakfast ¥100-150; 📶) Rooms are basic but comfy doubles complete with fan and TV. The owners are friendly and speak some English.

## **Tulou Club** GUESTHOUSE \$

( *Tulou Huisuo*; 📞 777 3888, 1396 0090 178; [www.tulou168.com](http://www.tulou168.com); d ¥200; 📶📶) This wooden cottage is neither a *tulou* nor a club, but its riverside location in the idyllic village of Changjiao makes it a pleasant place to stay and chill. Windows in some rooms are small, but the whole place is neat and tidy. The kitchen dishes out delicious Hakka food.

## **i Getting There & Away**

### **Bus**

**NANJING** From Xiamen long-distance bus station, take a bus headed to Nanjing (¥35, two hours, 12 daily between 7am and 5.30pm). Upon arrival, you can either take the respective buses as mentioned on [Click here](#) to some of the clusters, or hire a private vehicle to take you there.

**YONGDING** Xiamen has eight daily buses to Yongding (; ¥72, four hours) from 7.10am to 4pm. They will pass Liulian and the Gaobei *tulou* cluster. In the other direction, check with local bus stops for timings closer to departure. Yongding can also be accessed by bus from Guangdong and Longyan (¥20, one hour, regular).

## Train

The new D trains that run to the *tulou* areas came into service in 2011. Eleven high-speed trains link Xiamen and Longyan via Nanjing (¥30, one hour) daily. Local buses 1 and 2 link the train and bus stations. But by the time you read this, buses to Tianluokeng and Yunshuiyao should be available from the train station.

## Getting Around

The easiest way to see the *tulou* is to book a tour, or hire a vehicle either from Xiamen, Nanjing or Yongding. You'll most probably need to find transport at the *tulou* areas, so it makes fiscal sense to just get transport from Xiamen (haggle but expect to pay ¥600 a day to/from Xiamen).

If you book a place to stay in one of the *tulou*, most owners can help with transport and they usually arrange pick-up from Nanjing or Yongding.

You'll find taxi drivers in Yongding, Liulian or Nanjing offering their services for around ¥450 a day (¥300 if you hire more than one day), setting off early morning and returning late afternoon. Expect to see two clusters per day.

Apple Travel ([Click here](#)) can organise English-speaking guided tours.

---

## Quanzhou

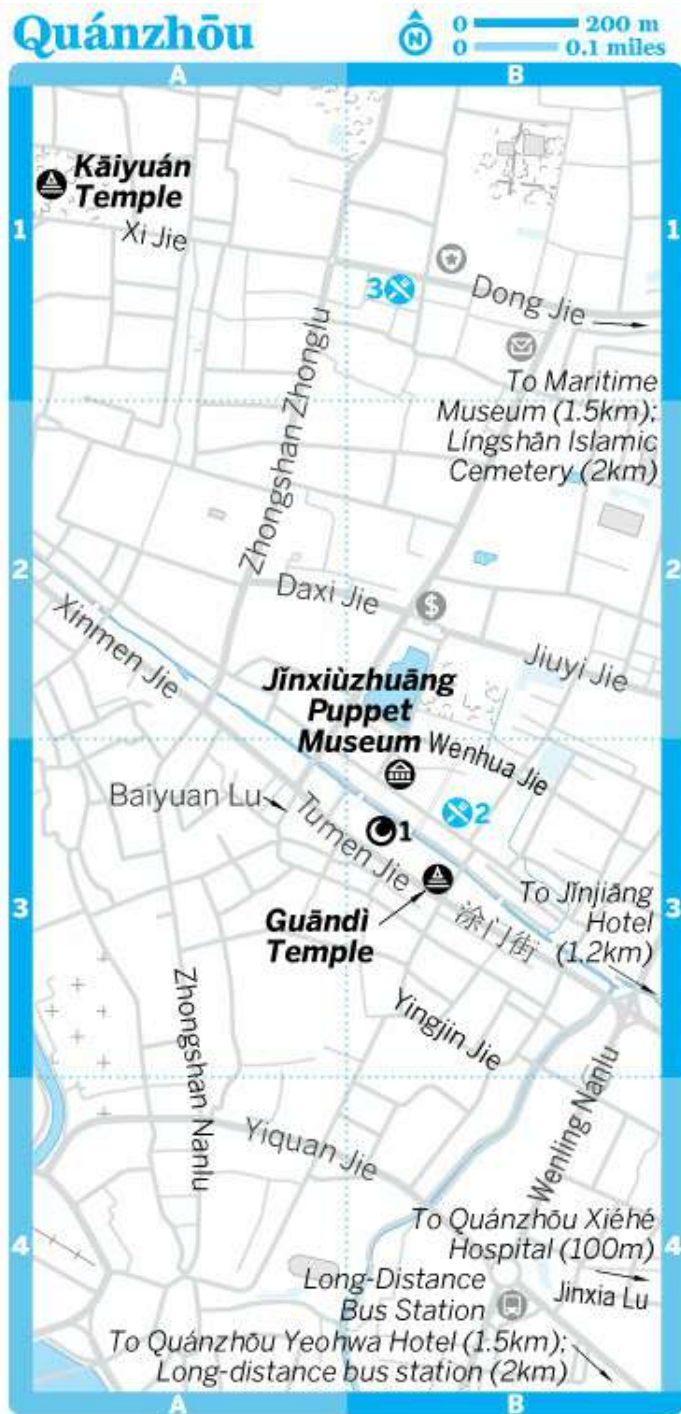
 0595 / POP 648,000

While Gulang Yu and the *tulou* get all the limelight in Fujian, the underrated small town of Quanzhou is actually an enchanting place to delve into for China's maritime past. The city was once a great trading port and an important stop on the maritime silk route. Back in the 13th century, Marco Polo informed his readers that 'it is one of the two ports in the world with the biggest flow of merchandise'. The city reached its zenith as an international port during the Song and Yuan dynasties, drawing merchants from all over the world to its shores. By

the Qing, however, it was starting to decline and droves of residents began fleeing to Southeast Asia to escape the constant political turmoil.

Though its heyday is long gone, much of Quanzhou's impressive heritage has been preserved, and evidence of its multiculturalism, especially some fine lingering traces of Islamic presence, can still be detected among the city's residents and buildings.





# Quanzhou

## Top Sights

[Guandi Temple](#) B3

[Jinxiuzhuang Puppet Museum](#) B3

[Kaiyuan Temple](#) A1

## Sights

1 [Qingjing Mosque](#) B3

## Eating

2 [Gucuo Chafang](#) B3

3 [Lanshi Zhonglou](#) B1

## Sights

The centre of town lies between Zhongshan Nanlu, Zhongshan Zhonglu and Wenling Nanlu. This is where you'll find most of the tourist sights. The oldest part of town is to the west, where many narrow alleys and lanes that still retain their traditional charm are waiting to be explored.

### [Kaiyuan Temple](#) BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Kaiyuan Si*; 176 Xi Jie; admission ¥10; 🕒 7.30am-7pm) In the northwest of the city is one of the oldest temples in Quanzhou, dating back to AD 686. Surrounded by trees, Kaiyuan Temple is famed for its pair of rust-coloured five-storey stone pagodas, stained with age and carved with figures, which date from the 13th century. Behind the eastern pagoda is a **museum** containing the enormous hull of a Song dynasty seagoing junk, which was excavated near Quanzhou in 1974. The temple's **Great Treasure Hall** (Daxiong Baodian) and the hall behind are decorated with marvellous overhead beams and brackets. The main courtyard is flanked by a row of wizened banyan trees; one is 800 years old! Take bus 2 (¥2) from Wenling Nanlu.

## **FREE** Maritime Museum *MUSEUM*

( *Quanzhou Haiwai Jiaotongshi Bowuguan; Donghu Lu; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm Tue-Sun*) On the northeast side of town, this fabulous museum explains Quanzhou's trading history, the development of Chinese shipbuilding, and the kaleidoscope of religions in the port's heyday. There are wonderfully detailed models of Chinese ships, from junks to pleasure boats. The brand-new Religious Stone Hall and the Islamic Culture Hall are highlights, which boast a beautiful collection of gravestones and reliefs of different religions dated from the Yuan dynasty. Take bus 7 or 203 and alight at Qiaoxiang Tiyuguan ().

## **Qingjing Mosque** *MOSQUE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Qingjing Si; 108 Tumen Jie; admission ¥3; ☺ 8am-5.30pm*) Built by the Arabs in 1009 and restored in 1309, this stone edifice is one of China's only surviving mosques from the Song dynasty. Only a few sections (mainly walls) of the original building survive, largely in ruins. The adjacent brand-new mosque is a donation from the government of Saudi Arabia.

## **Lingshan Islamic Cemetery** *CEMETERY*

( *Lingshan Yisilan Shengmu; cnr Donghu Lu & Lingshan Lu*) Set at the foot of the mountain of Lingshan, this leafy 'oasis' is truly a hidden gem in Quanzhou and is one of the most intact historic cemeteries in China. Two of Mohammed's disciples are said to be buried here, and you'll also find some granite stelea dated from the Ming dynasty. Take bus 7 or 203 and hop off at Shengmuzhan ().

## **Guandi Temple** *TAOIST TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guandi Miao; Tumen Jie*) This smoky and magnificently carved temple is southeast of the mosque. It's dedicated to Guan Yu, a Three Kingdoms hero and the God of War, and inside the temple are statues of the god and wall panels that detail his life.

## **FREE** Jinxiuzhuang Puppet Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jinxiuzhuang Mu'ou Yishuguan; 10-12 Houcheng; ☎ 9am-9pm*) Has displays of 3000 puppet heads, intricate 30-string marionettes and comical hand puppets.

## **Sleeping**

Quanzhou can be visited as a day trip from Xiamen. If you want to stay here, there are plenty of nondescript midrange Chinese hotels along Wenling Nanlu heading north, in addition to the following options.

### **Tiho Cafe & Hostel** *HOSTEL \$*

(*Tihou Kafei Kezhan; 📞 2239 0800, 1865 9009 055; caimj@126.com; 114 Tihou Lu; 114 dm ¥50, s & d ¥98-158; 📶@*) A cheery new hostel-cum-cafe and the best budget option in town. The six-bed mixed dorm is small but clean, the rooms have no attached bathrooms but are cosy and relaxing. Catch bus 29 (westbound) from the long-distance bus station and alight at Shucaigongsi (). A taxi from the centre of town is around ¥20.

### **Jinjiang Hotel** *HOTEL \$*

(*Jinjiang Zhixing Luguan; 📞 2815 6355; 359 Wenling Beilu; 359 tw/d ¥169/179; 📶@*) Located right across a park, this midrange chain has decently sized rooms and clean bathrooms. It's a notch above similar Chinese hotel chains in the midrange category.

### **Quanzhou Yeohwa Hotel** *HOTEL \$\$\$*

(*📞 2801 9999; [www.yeohwahotels.com](http://www.yeohwahotels.com); 129 Citong Xilu; 129 d ¥1650-2200, discount 40%; 📶@*) This 378-room giant is arguably the best hotel in Quanzhou and is a favourite of many business travellers.

## **Eating & Drinking**

You can find the usual noodle and rice dishes served in the back lanes around Kaiyuan Temple and also along the food street close to Wenling Nanlu.

## Lanshi Zhonglou *HAKKA* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 19-21 Dong Jie; meals from ¥20; ☺ 11am-9.30pm) Be prepared to sit elbow to elbow with the next table for the famous glutinous rice dumplings in this unpretentious joint. No English menu but there are pictures of the dishes on the wall. The signature black rice dumplings (; *heimizong*) and rice dumpling with yolk (; *danhuangzong*) are recommended.

## Gucuo Chafang *TEA* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 44 Houcheng Xiang; tea ¥46-480, snacks from ¥20; ☺ 9am-1am; 📍) This quaint teahouse in the alley behind the Guandi Temple has a refreshing old-time courtyard ambience, paved with flagstones and laid out with traditional wooden halls and bamboo chairs.

## **i** Information

You'll find internet cafes near the PSB on Dong Jie and in the small lanes behind Guandi Temple. Most charge ¥4 to ¥5 an hour.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 9-13 Jiuyi Jie; ☺ 9am-5pm) Has a 24-hour ATM.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; cnr Dong Jie & Nanjun Lu; ☺ 8.30am-6pm)

**Public Security Bureau (PSB)** ( *Gong'anju*; 📞 2218 0323; 62 Dong Jie; ☺ visa section 8-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm)

**Quanzhou Xiehe Hospital** ( *Quanzhou Xiehe Yiyuan*; Tian'an Nanlu) In the southern part of town.

## **i** Getting There & Around

## Bus

Both **Quanzhou bus station** (*Quanzhou qichezhan; cnr Wenling Nanlu & Quanxiu Jie*) and the **long-distance bus station** (*Quanzhou keyun zhongxinzhan; cnr Quanxiu Jie & Pingshan Lu*) further east along Quanxiu Jie have buses to the following destinations:

**Guangzhou** ¥250, nine hours, five daily

**Shenzhen** ¥250, eight hours, four daily

Regular deluxe buses:

**Fuzhou** ¥70, 3½ hours

**Xiamen** ¥37, 1½ hours

Local bus 15 links both bus stations. Bus 2 goes from the bus station to Kaiyuan Temple. Taxi flag fall is ¥6, then ¥1.60 per kilometre.

## Train

The Quanzhou East Train Station (; Quanzhou Dongzhan) is in the northeast of town for Wuyi Shan (hard sleeper ¥149, 14 hours, 3.38pm). Bus 19 runs from here to Quanzhou bus station and Guandi Temple. D trains depart from the high-speed rail station (; Gaotie Quanzhou huochezhan), 15km from the town centre:

**Fuzhou** ¥55, one hour, every 30 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥240, 8½ hours, six daily

**Xiamen** ¥30, 45 minutes, every 30 minutes

Buses 17 and K1 run from the high-speed rail station to Quanzhou bus station and the long-distance bus station respectively. Bus 203 links both train stations, with stops at the Maritime Museum and Islamic Cemetery. A taxi from the centre of town to this station is ¥40. In town, train tickets can be bought at the Wenling Nanlu **ticket office** (*tielu huochepiao daishoudian; 166 Wenling Nanlu; ☺ 9am-6pm*) or from the **ticket office** (*huoche shoupiating; 675 Quanxiu Jie; ☺ 7am-6pm*) just east of the long-distance bus station. There's a ¥5 booking fee.

---

# Around Quanzhou

Not far from Quanzhou there are a few oft-overlooked sights worth exploring.

## CHONGWU

One of the best-preserved city walls in China can be found in the ancient 'stone city' of **Chongwu** (*admission free*), about 50km east of Quanzhou. The granite walls date back to 1387, stretch over 2.5km and average 7m in height. Scattered around the walls are 1304 battlements and four gates into the city.

The town wall was built by the Ming government as a frontline defence against marauding Japanese pirates, and it must be said that it has survived the past 600 years remarkably well. Meander and peruse the old halls and courtyard residences, where you'll find the warren of lanes and cul-de-sacs are maddeningly unique. You can also walk along the top of the wall at some points.

Next to the stone city is **Chongwu Stone Arts Expo Park** (*Chongwu shidiao Gongyi Bolanyuan; admission ¥45*), which boasts a large park filled with 500 stone sculptures made by local crafts-people, a small beach, a lighthouse and some seafood restaurants. You won't miss much if you skip it.

Frequent minibuses depart Quanzhou's long-distance bus station (¥12, 1½ hours), taking you past arrays of stone statues (the area is famed for its stone-carving workshop) before ending up in Chongwu.

Motorbikes (¥3 to ¥5) will take you from the bus drop-off to the Chongwu Stone Arts Expo Park. From here, walk along the stone wall away from this entrance to find access to the stone city via a city gate.

## XUNPU VILLAGE

The fishing village of Xunpu at the estuary of Jinjiang River, some 10km southeast of the city centre of Quanzhou, was on the old trade route of the maritime silk road and was perhaps the Arabs' first port of call when they set foot in Quanzhou during the Song dynasty. The village, now under encroaching urbanisation, is still fascinating and you'll find some old houses built with oyster shells, while the grannies are still wearing the flamboyant traditional head ornaments that they love to brag about.

The descendents in this village are said to have traces of Arab blood, but they certainly observe more Chinese than Islamic customs these days. The **Mazu Temple** (; Mazu Miao) in the village, dedicated to the goddess of seafarers, turns very lively on the 29th day of the first lunar calendar month, the birthday of the protector. All the women in the village will turn out in traditional costumes to join in the annual Mazu procession.

Take bus 1 or 8 from the long-distance bus station, and alight at Gelin Gongsi (). Then it's a 1km walk to the south. A taxi ride from the bus station is about ¥20.

### **CǎO'AN MANICAEAN TEMPLE**

Perched on the hill of Huabiao, 19km south of Quanzhou, this quirky **temple** (*Cao'an Monijiao Miao; Suneicun, Shedian, Jinjiang; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-6pm*) is dedicated to Manichaeism, a religion originating in Persia in the third century, combining elements of Zoroastrian, Christian and Gnostic thought, that reached China in the seventh century.

The original temple was a straw hut, and the well-restored stone complex you see today was a rebuild dating to the Yuan dynasty (14th century). The most remarkable relic in the temple is the 'Buddha of Light', a sitting stone statue in the main hall, which is actually the prophet Mani, founder of Manichaeism, in a Buddhist disguise. Manichaeism was considered an illegal religion during the Song period and the religion had to operate in the guise of an esoteric Buddhist group. Take a closer look at the statue, and you'll find its hairstyle (straight instead of curly), hand gestures and colour combinations are distinctly different from most representations of the Buddha.

From the long-distance bus station in Quanzhou, board bus to Anhai (; ¥10) and tell the driver to drop you off at Cao'an Lukoo (). Then look for the English signage saying Grass Temple and it's a 2km walk uphill. The road is not well-marked so taking a taxi is a recommended alternative. A taxi from Quanzhou is around ¥40.



---

# Fuzhou

TRANSPORT HUB / 📞 0591

Fuzhou, capital of Fujian, is one of the major transport hubs in southern China. You'll find flights, inter-city/province trains and buses to most of the destinations you're likely to go to, especially the coastal provinces.

## Sleeping

Fuzhou accommodation falls mainly in the midrange and top-end categories. Many hotels offer discounts. If you're stranded in the city, the following are decent options near the train or bus stations.

### Shangri-La Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

(*Xianggelila Dajjudian*; 📞 8798 8888; [www.shangri-la.com](http://www.shangri-la.com); 9 Xinquan Nanlu; 9 d ¥1250; 🚗🌐📧📺) Top-notch service is expected in every Shangri-La, and this classy tower at the heart of town overlooking Wuyi Sq is no exception. A cab from the south long-distance bus station is around ¥15.

### Jinhui Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

(*Jinhui Dajjudian*; 📞 8759 9999; [www.hoteljh.com](http://www.hoteljh.com); 492 Hualin Lu; 492 d ¥395-520; 🌐) Good discounts that take prices down to around ¥250 (including breakfast) make this a good-value option, though the rooms are a bit tired. Directly opposite the train station, north of town. The airport bus also leaves from here.

### 7 Days Inn *HOTEL* \$

(*7 Qitian*; 📞 8803 8377; [www.7daysinn.cn](http://www.7daysinn.cn); 98 Wuyi Nanlu; 98 d & tw ¥147-247; 🌐📧) This budget chain was opened in 2011, so all rooms are sparkling clean. The cheapest rooms are windowless. It's 500m south of the south long-distance bus station.

## Eating

The pedestrianised **Sanfang Qixian** ( ) is a popular dining and shopping area lined with Ming-style houses and lanterns. You'll find small eateries on both sides of **Nanhou Jie** ( ), the main street of the area. Take a cab and ask to be dropped off at the intersection of Yangqiao Donglu and Nanhou Jie. The fare is around ¥15 from the south long-distance bus station.

The area north of town around the train station is home to many fast-food restaurants and local noodle joints.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

The **Civil Aviation Administration China** (CAAC; *Zhongguo Minhang*; ☎ 8334 5988; 18 Wuyi Zhonglu) sells tickets for daily flights to Beijing (¥1500, 2½ hours), Guangzhou (¥1000, one hour), Shanghai (¥1200, 70 minutes), Hong Kong (¥2000, 80 minutes), and Xiamen (¥900, 35 minutes).

Airport buses leave from two locations in town: the Apollo Hotel (Aboluo Dajiudian; ¥25) on Wuyi Zhonglu, 400m north of the south long-distance bus station, has departures every 20 minutes between 5.30am and 10pm; Jinhui Hotel (¥30) near the North Rail Station has departures every hour between 6am and 8pm. The 50km trip takes about an hour.

### Bus

The **north long-distance bus station** ( *changtu qiche beizhan*; 317 Hualin Lu) is 400m south of the North Rail Station. Services include the following:

**Guangzhou** ¥258, 12 hours, 14 daily

**Quanzhou** ¥63, two hours, regular

**Shanghai** ¥398, 10 hours, three daily

**Wenzhou** ¥125, four hours, seven daily

**Wuyi Shan** ¥86 to ¥90, eight hours, night bus

**Xiamen** ¥75, 3½ hours, every 15 minutes

The **south long-distance bus station** ( *changtu qiche nanzhan*; cnr

*Guohuo Xilu & Wuyi Zhonglu*) services the following destinations:

**Guangzhou** ¥180 to ¥258, 13 to 15 hours, 10 daily

**Hong Kong** ¥358, 15 hours, four daily (6.30pm, 6.50pm, 7pm and 8pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥260, 12 hours, six daily

**Xiamen** ¥85, 3½ hours, every 15 minutes

## Train

Fuzhou has a good network of trains to most many major cities. D trains leave from either the more centrally located North Rail Station (; Fuzhou Beizhan) or the new South Rail Station (; Fuzhou Nanzhan) 17km southeast of the centre of town:

**Quanzhou** ¥55, one hour, every 30 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥264, 6½ hours, 16 daily

**Xiamen** ¥81, 1½ hours, every 15 minutes

The North Rail Station also has regular trains to Wuyi Shan (¥47 to ¥141, 4½ to 6½ hours, eight daily) and one direct D366 express to Beijing (soft sleeper ¥1165, 15 hours, 7am).

The **train ticket booking office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*huochepiao shoupiao*chu; 🕒 8am-5pm) is on the west side of the Xinhua Baihuo () at the corner of Baiyiqi Lu and Dong Jie.

---

## Wuyi Shan

📞 0599 / POP 22,000

With crisp climes and unspoilt scenery, Wuyi Shan is a popular mountain retreat in the northwest corner of Fujian where many a Chinese from the plains goes to beat the heat. The rivers, waterfalls, mountains and protected forests combine to make it a great place for day hikes and short treks. Try to come midweek or in low season (November, March and April) and you might have the area to yourself. Avoid the area during heavy rain (especially during summer months) even if the hotels and tour organisers advise otherwise.

The scenic part lies on the west bank of Chongyang Stream

(Chongyang Xi), and some accommodation is located along its shore. Most of the hotels are concentrated in the *du jia qu* (resort district) on the east side of the river. The main settlement is Wuyi Shan city, about 10km to the northeast, with the train station and airport roughly halfway between.

## Sights & Activities

### **Wuyi Shan Scenic Area** MOUNTAIN PARK

( 1-/2-/3-day access ¥140/150/160; 🕒 6am-8pm) The entrance to the area is at **Wuyi Gong**, about 200m south of the Wuyi Mountain Villa, near the confluence of the Chongyang Stream and the Nine Twists River. Trails within the scenic area connect all the major sites. Good walks include the 530m **Great King Peak** (; Dawang Feng), accessed through the main entrance, and the 410m **Heavenly Tour Peak** (; Tianyou Feng), where an entrance is reached by road up the Nine Twists River. It's a moderate two-hour walk to Great King Peak among bamboo groves and steep-cut rock walls. The trail can be slippery and wet, so bring suitable shoes.

The walk to Heavenly Tour Peak is more scenic, with better views of the river and mountain peaks. But the path is also the most popular with tour groups. At the northern end of the scenic area, the **Water Curtain Cave** (; Shuilian Dong) is a cleft in the rock about one-third of the way up a 100m cliff face. In winter and autumn, water plunges over the top of the cliff, creating a curtain of spray.

### **Nine Twists River** RIVER

( *Jiuqu Xi*; boat rides ¥100; 🕒 7am-5pm) One of the highlights for visitors is floating down the river on **bamboo rafts** (*zhupai*) fitted with rattan chairs. Departing from Xingcun (), a short bus ride west of the resort area, the trip down the river takes over an hour and brings you through some magnificent gorge scenery, with sheer rock cliffs and lush green vegetation.

One of the mysteries of Wuyi Shan is the cavities, carved out of the rock faces at great heights, which once held boat-shaped coffins.

Scientists have dated some of these artefacts back 4000 years. If you're taking a raft down the river, it's possible to see some remnants of these coffins on the west cliff face of the fourth meander, also known as **Small Storing Place Peak** (; Xiaozangshan Feng).

### **Xiamei** *ANCIENT VILLAGE*

( *admission* ¥26) This village dates to the Northern Song dynasty and boasts some spectacular Qing dynasty architecture from its heyday as a wealthy tea-trading centre. To reach Xiamei, hop on a minibus (¥4) from Wuyi Shan city for the 12km journey. Minibuses also run to Xiamei (¥3) from the Wuyi Shan Scenic Area.

### **Wufu** *ANCIENT VILLAGE*

( *admission* ¥60) Sixty kilometres southeast of Wuyi Shan Scenic Area, this 1700-year-old village got its fame as the hometown of Zhu Xi, a Confucian scholar in the Song dynasty. It's best visited when the lotus in the giant ponds, which are backdropped by some quaint Ming-era architecture, are in full bloom. Minibuses to Wufu (¥13, two hours) leave from the small bus station next to the long-distance bus station.

## **Sleeping**

Most of the accommodation in Wuyi Shan is in the midrange category and most is overpriced unless you come here during low season. Hotels are mostly on the east side of the river. On the quieter west side, family-run guesthouses are mushrooming in the village of Sangu (700m north of Wuyi Mountain Villa).

### **Wuyi Mountain Yeohwa Resort** *HOTEL \$\$\$*

( 📞 523 8999; [www.yeohwahotels.com](http://www.yeohwahotels.com); Dawangfeng Lu; s/d ¥748/848; 📧) This high-end Chinese chain in the resort district features 204 spacious, luxurious rooms with wickerwork furniture, good beds and great views of the Great King Peak. The F&B outlets here are recommended.

## Wuyishan Shanchahua Youth Hostel *HOSTEL \$*

( *Wuyishan Shanchahua qingnian lushe*; 📞 523 2345, 1890 5093 345; [wulifang21@yahoo.com.cn](mailto:wulifang21@yahoo.com.cn); 27 Sangu Lantangcun; 27 8-/4-bed dm ¥35/50, d ¥118-190; @) The 'Camellia' hostel is located in the village of Sangu Lantang on the west bank. The dorms are passable and the rooms have a cosy feeling without being claustrophobic. The laidback courtyard invites a quiet, lazy afternoon. To get there, take bus 5, or pay about ¥30 to ¥40 for a taxi ride from the train station.

## Wuyi Mountain Villa *HOTEL \$\$\$*

( *Wuyi Shanzhuang*; 📞 525 1888; [www.513villa.com](http://www.513villa.com); Wuyi Gong; d ¥888-988, ste ¥1388-2888; 🚗) Located at the foot of Great King Peak, the villa is considered by the Chinese to be the most prestigious place to stay in Wuyi Shan. Buildings are chalet-style and surrounded by peaceful gardens, a swimming pool and a waterfall. Some rooms are dated, but the views are fine. Discounts of 40% available.

## Eating

Frogs, mushrooms, bamboo rice and bamboo shoots are the specialities of Wuyi Shan's cuisine. In town, there are food stalls along the streets in the evening. As to be expected, restaurants are overpriced.

## Information

Chinese maps of the Wuyi Shan area are available in bookshops and hotels in the resort district. There are some grubby internet cafes in the back alleys south of Wangfeng Lu ( ), charging ¥2 to ¥4 an hour.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; Wujiu Lu; 🕒 9am-5pm) In Wuyi Shan city, this branch has an ATM.

**China International Travel Service** ( *CITS*; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; 📞 5134 666; Guolu Dalou, Sangu Jie; 🕒 9am-4pm Mon-Sat) The staff can arrange train tickets and tours.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

Wuyi Shan has air links to several cities.

**Beijing** ¥1350, two hours

**Guangzhou** ¥890, 2½ hours

**Hong Kong** ¥1300, two hours

**Shanghai** ¥660, one hour

**Xiamen** ¥720, 50 minutes

### **Bus**

Buses run from the long-distance bus station in Wuyi Shan city.

**Fuzhou** ¥86 to ¥90, eight hours

**Nanping** ¥44, three hours

**Shangrao** ¥30, two hours

**Shaowu** ¥22, 1½ hours

**Xiamen** regular/deluxe ¥159, nine hours

### **Train**

Direct trains go to Wuyi Shan from Quanzhou (¥145 to ¥232, 13 hours) and Xiamen (¥149 to ¥232, 12 hours).

## **i** Getting Around

Bus 6 runs between the long-distance bus station, the train station, the airport, the resort area and Wuyi Mountain Villa. Bus 5 links the train station, the airport and Sangu village. The resort area is small enough for you to walk everywhere.

Expect to pay about ¥15 for a motorised trishaw from the resort district to most of the scenic area entrances. A ride from the train station or airport to the resort district will cost ¥15 to ¥25.



# Liaoning

POP 43.1 MILLION

## Includes »

[Shenyang](#)

[Dalian](#)

[Around Dalian](#)

[Dandong](#)

[Xingcheng](#)

---

## Why Go?

History and hedonism run side by side in Liaoning (. Walled Ming-dynasty cities rub up against booming beach resorts, while imperial palaces sit in the centre of bustling modern cities. Nothing quite captures the fun and distinction, however, as much as seaside Dalian with its golden coastline and summer beer festival (or is that bacchanalia?), and former battlegrounds where Russian and Japanese armies wrestled for control of the region in the early 20th century.

Outside of the major cities, Liaoning is largely an expanse of farmland, forest and smokestack towns. The North Korean border

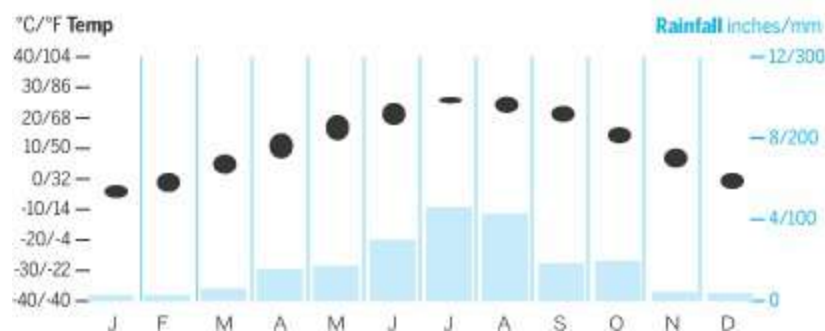


runs alongside the province and is an intriguing area, not simply because it's as close as you can get to the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK) without actually going there. The large Korean population and easy mix of cultures provide a ready example that China is only a land of stereotypes if you never venture far into it.

---

## When to Go

### Dàlián



**May & Jun** Catch deals on a seaside hotel.

**Jun & Jul** Enjoy fresh cherries, mulberries and blueberries at roadside stands everywhere.

**Jul & Aug** Have fun at the Dalian International Beer Festival.

---

## Best Walks

- » Dalian's southwest coastline ([Click here](#))
  - » Expo Garden Shenyang ([Click here](#))
  - » North Korean Border ([Click here](#))
  - » Xingcheng beaches ([Click here](#))
- 

## Best Historical Sites

- » Imperial Palace ([Click here](#))
- » North Tomb ([Click here](#))

- » Tiger Mountain Great Wall ([Click here](#))
- » Xingcheng Old City ([Click here](#))
- » Soviet Martyrs Cemetery ([Click here](#))



## Liaoning Highlights

- 1 Kick back in **Dalian** ([Click here](#)) and enjoy the beaches, coastal walkways and beer festival
- 2 Climb the easternmost stretch of the Great Wall at **Tiger Mountain Great Wall** ([Click here](#)), near Dandong
- 3 Cruise the Yalu River close to North Korea and experience the mix of Korean and Chinese culture in **Dandong** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Explore the tomb of Huang Taiji, founder of the Qing dynasty, in **Shenyang** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Lose yourself in nature at the enormous **Expo Garden Shenyang** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Wander the old battlefields and graves of **Lushun** ([Click here](#)), fought over by rival Japanese and Russian Empires
- 7 Laze on the beach and stroll the old walled city of historic, little-visited **Xingcheng** ([Click here](#))

## History

The region formerly known as Manchuria, including the provinces of Liaoning, Jilin and Heilongjiang, plus parts of Inner Mongolia, is now called Dongbei, which means 'the northeast'.

The Manchurian warlords of this northern territory established the Qing dynasty, which ruled China from 1644 to 1911. From the late 1800s to the end of WWII, when Western powers were busy carving up pieces of China for themselves, Manchuria was occupied alternately by the Russians and the Japanese.

## Climate

Liaoning's weather is cold and dry in the long winter, with temperatures dipping to -15°C. It's warm (tending to hot) and wet in summer. Heavy afternoon showers are frequent.

## Language

Nearly everyone in Liaoning speaks standard Mandarin, albeit with a

distinct accent. In Dandong and areas close to the North Korean border, it's quite common to hear Korean spoken.

### Getting There & Around

Getting around Liaoning is easy. Shenyang is the province's transport hub.

**Air** Shenyang and Dalian have busy domestic and international airports.

**Boat** Boats connect Dalian with Shandong province and South Korea.

**Bus** Buses are a speedy alternative to trains.

**Car** There's a network of highways between the major cities.

**Train** Rail lines criss-cross the region; connections (including fast D trains) link Shenyang with cities south and north.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

---

# Shenyang

 024 / POP 5.7 MILLION

The capital of Liaoning province has made enormous strides in overcoming its reputation as an industrial city that could have been the model for William Blake's vision of 'dark satanic mills'. True, Shenyang

is still a sprawling metropolis, but the new subway lines are easing traffic, the urban landscape is fast improving, and there's a buzz on the streets these days that suggests this city's people are growing confident, secure, positive and even a touch urbane.

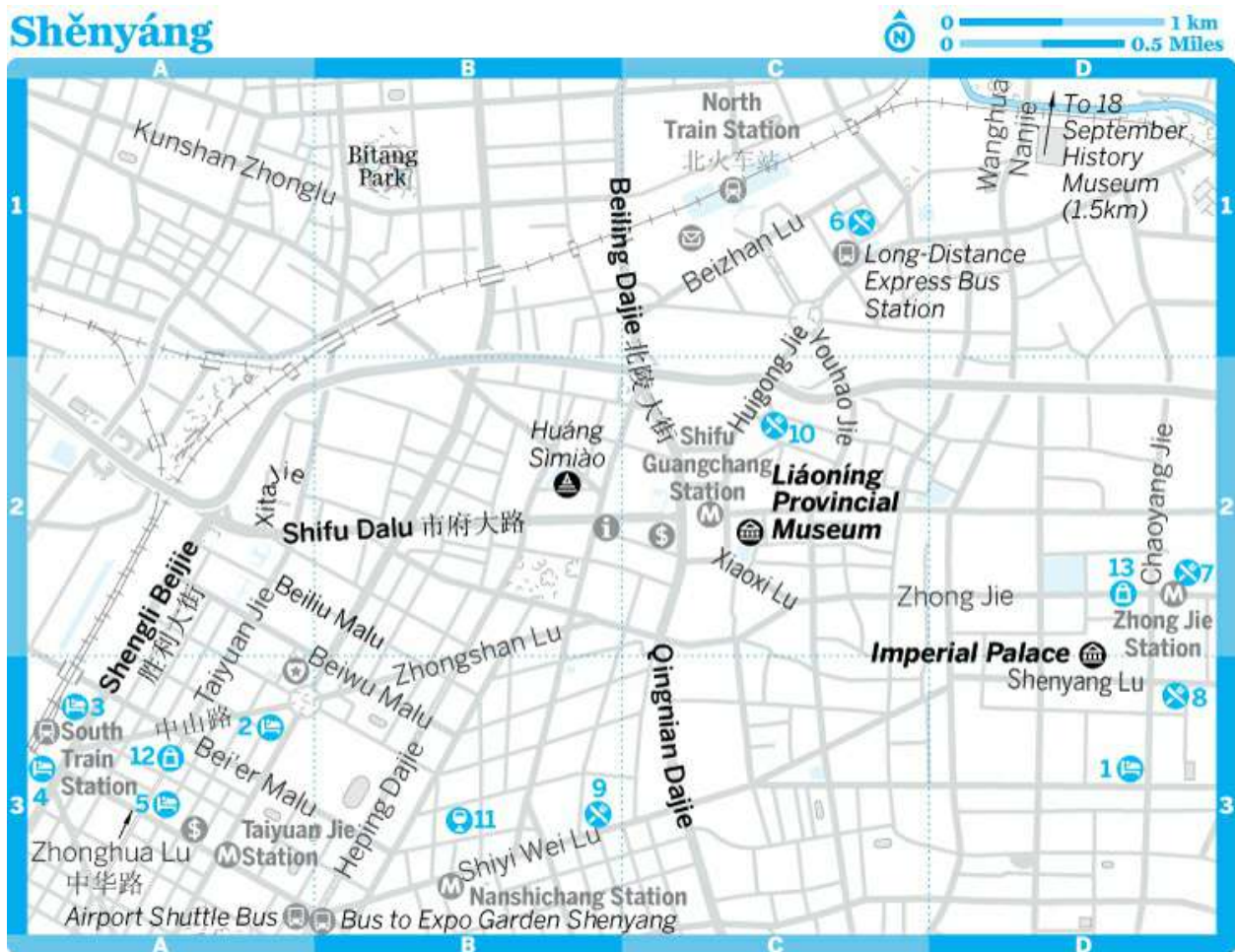
For the traveller, Shenyang boasts its very own Imperial Palace, a tomb complex and two decent museums, as well as several fine parks, including an expansive botanical garden on the outskirts of town. Given its strategic location as a transport hub for the north of China, Shenyang is well worth a couple of days' stopover on your journey further north or south.

## History

Shenyang's roots go back to 300 BC, when it was known as Hou City. By the 11th century it was a Mongol trading centre, before reaching its historical high point in the 17th century when it was the capital of the Manchu empire. With the Manchu conquest of Beijing in 1644, Shenyang became a secondary capital under the Manchu name of Mukden, and a centre of the ginseng trade.

Throughout its history Shenyang has rapidly changed hands, dominated by warlords, the Japanese (1931), the Russians (1945), the Kuomintang (1946) and finally the Chinese Communist Party (CP; 1948).

# Shěnyáng



## Shenyang

### Top Sights

[Imperial Palace](#) D2

[Liaoning Provincial Museum](#) C2

### Sleeping

1 [Home Inn](#) D3

2 [Liaoning Binquan](#) A3

3 [Peace Hotel](#) A3

4 [Shentie Shenzhan Binquan](#) A3

5 [Traders Hotel](#) A3

## Eating

- 6 [Carrefour Supermarket](#) C1

---

- 7 [Laobian Dumplings](#) D2

---

- 8 [Qinzi Shangmian](#) D3

---

- 9 [View & World Vegetarian Restaurant](#) B3

---

- 10 [Yufu Matou Shaokao](#) C2

---

## Drinking

- 11 [Stroller's](#) B3

---

## Shopping

- 12 [Taiyuan Jie](#) A3

---

- 13 [Zhong Jie](#) D2

---

## Sights & Activities

### **Imperial Palace** *HISTORIC SITE*

Offline map

(*Gugong*; 171 *Shenyang Lu*; admission ¥60; 🕒 8.30am-6pm, last entry 5.15pm) Shenyang's main attraction is an impressive palace complex resembling a small-scale Forbidden City. Constructed between 1625 and 1636 by Manchu emperor Nurhachi (1559–1626) and his son, Huang Taiji, the palace served as the residence of the Qing-dynasty rulers until 1644.

The central courtyard buildings include ornate ceremonial halls and imperial living quarters, including a royal baby cradle. In all, there are 114 buildings, not all of which are open to the public.

Don't miss the double-eaved octagonal **Dazheng Hall** (at the rear of the complex), which has two gold dragons curled around the pillars at the entrance, a deep interior plafond ceiling and an elaborate throne, where Nurhachi's grandson, Emperor Shunzhi, was crowned. At **Chongzheng Hall**, the first large building as you enter, the beams over the entrance portico are all carved in the shape of five-fingered

dragons.

The palace is in the oldest section of the city. Zhong Jie metro station (exit B) drops you off a few minutes north.

### **North Tomb** *HISTORIC SITE*

(*Bei Ling; 12 Taishan Lu; park/tombs ¥6/50; ☺ 7am-6pm*) Another Shenyang highlight is this extensive tomb complex, the burial place of Huang Taiji (1592–1643), founder of the Qing dynasty. The tomb's animal statues lead up to the central mound known as the Luminous Tomb (Zhao Ling).

In many ways a better-preserved complex than the Imperial Palace, the tomb site is worth a few hours examining the dozens of buildings with their traditional architecture and ornamentation. **Long'en Hall** is a particularly fine structure, and as you circumambulate the base observe the richness of traditional symbols (peonies, vases, lucky clouds) carved in relief.

The North Tomb sits a few kilometres north of town inside expansive **Bei Ling Park**. With its pine trees and large lake, the park is an excellent place to escape Shenyang's hubbub. Locals come here to promenade, sing or just kick back. Beiling Gongyuan metro station is directly outside the park.

### **Expo Garden Shenyang** *GARDENS*

(*Shenyang Shibo Yuan; admission ¥50; ☺ 9am-5pm, last entry 3.30pm*) These vast gardens on the eastern outskirts of Shenyang have dozens of elaborate exhibition gardens featuring plants and flowers from almost every region of China, as well as some from overseas. Trains to the Expo ground were no longer running at the time of research but bus 168 (¥5, frequent) ran from the **Shenyang bus station** just across from the wide intersection of Zhonghua Lu and Heping Dajie. A taxi to the grounds costs ¥50 to ¥70.

### **FREE** **Liaoning Provincial Museum** *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Liaoning Sheng Bowuguan; SE cnr Government Sq; ☺ 9am-noon &*



1-5pm, last entry 3.30pm, closed Mon & public holidays) Three floors of exhibits highlight the region's art and history, from prehistoric times through the late Qing dynasty. The 3rd floor is the most interesting, with a rich collection of antiquities. English explanations accompany most displays.

## THE 'MUKDEN INCIDENT'

By 1931 Japan was looking for a pretext to occupy Manchuria. The Japanese army took matters into its own hands by staging an explosion on the night of 18 September at a tiny section of a Japanese-owned railway outside Mukden, the present-day city of Shenyang. Almost immediately, the Japanese attacked a nearby Chinese army garrison and then occupied Shenyang the following night. Within five months, they controlled all of Manchuria and ruled the region until the end of WWII.

### **18 September History Museum** MUSEUM

(*Jiu Yi Ba Lishi Bowuguan*; 46 Wanghua Nanjie; ☹️ 9am-5pm, last entry 4pm) There's an obvious propagandic purpose to this museum, but the hundreds of photographs, sculptures, paintings and dioramas are informative on this notorious part of China's modern history. English captions are limited. Bus 325 from the North Train Station stops across the street. The museum is about 2km northeast from the town centre.

## **Sleeping**

The main train station area is modern and vibrant, and near overloaded with glossy shopping malls, to say nothing of restaurants and cafes of all stripes. With several metro stations nearby it's also convenient for getting around town.

The Imperial Palace area has more of a neighbourhood feel, but accommodation is limited for foreign travellers.

### **Liaoning Binguan** HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

(*Liaoning Hotel*; 📍 2383 9104; 97 Zhongshan Lu; 97 r incl breakfast from ¥458; 🍷@) This grand old Japanese-built hotel dates back to 1927. Recently refurbished, it retains many of its period details – the marbled lobby is particularly impressive – but also offers comfortable modern rooms, as well as a restaurant and outdoor patio for when the sun deigns to shine. Discounts usually available.

## Home Inn HOTEL \$\$

Offline map

Google map

(*Rujia Kuaijie Jiudian*; 📍 2401 7777; 7 Donghua Nan Lane, Shenyang Lu; 7 r ¥149-229; 🚗🍷@📶) While the hallways are getting a little bit scuffed, the rooms at this chain are still bright and spotless, and include free broadband (wi-fi in the lobby), and quiet nights facing a back alley. The location's just a stone's throw from the Imperial Palace, rows of good small restaurants and lively shopping on Zhong Jie.

## Traders Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

Google map

(*Shangmao Fandian*; 📍 2341 2288; [www.tradershotel.com](http://www.tradershotel.com); 68 Zhonghua Lu; 68 r from ¥698; 🚗🍷@📶) Owned by the Shangri-La chain, this is one of Shenyang's best luxury hotels, with big rooms and efficient, English-speaking staff delivering top-notch service. Room rates vary depending on the season. Book online for good deals. Add a 15% service charge to room rates.

## Sanpi Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

(*Sanpi Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 2251 1133; [www.gjqnls.com](http://www.gjqnls.com); 21 Yalu Jiang Jie; 21 dm/tw with shared bathroom ¥45/100; 🍷@📶) To the east of the North Tomb is this laid-back hostel which may remind you of a best friend's basement suite in the suburbs. Which is a bit odd as it's on the 5th floor of an otherwise unpromising-looking building next to a KTV. The location's not great, but there's laundry and internet and the rooms are organised and clean. From the South Train Station take

bus 162 to Jianyuanxiaoqu stop.

## Peace Hotel *HOTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Heping Binguan*; 📍 2349 8888; [www.hpbg.com.cn](http://www.hpbg.com.cn); 104 Shengli Beijie; 104 tw with shared bathroom ¥100, tw with bathroom ¥200-280; 🌿🍷) Rooms can be a bit smoky but this clean, friendly hotel tower just 200m north of the train station is a good budget option. There are discounts of 20%.

## Shentie Shenzhan Binguan *HOTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shenyang Railway Station Hotel*; 📍 2358 5888; 2 Shengli Dajie; 2 r without bathroom ¥120, tw with bathroom ¥168-188; 🌿🍷) A convenient if ageing place next to the South Train Station. Note that some of the cheaper rooms have no windows.

## Eating

Both the North and South Train Stations are cheap-restaurant zones. You'll also find lots of reasonably priced restaurants around the Imperial Palace. Most have picture menus.

## Laobian Dumplings *DUMPLINGS* \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( *Laobian Jiaoziguan*; 3f 208 Zhong Jie; dumplings ¥12-30; 🕒 10am-10pm; 📍) Shenyang's most famous restaurant has been packing in the locals since 1829, and they continue to flock here for the fine boiled, steamed and fried dumplings in an array of flavours: from staid cabbage to mandarin duck and even curry. The restaurant is on the 3rd floor of the Laobian Hotel which is just across from the B1 exit of Zhong Jie metro station.



## View & World Vegetarian Restaurant *VEGETARIAN* \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Kuan Xiangzi Sucaiguan; 202 Shiyi Wei Lu; dishes ¥8-36; ☺ 10am-10.30pm; 🍴📱*) Peking duck and meatballs are on the menu here, but there won't be any actual meat on your plate. Everything is meat-free at this classy nearly vegan paradise, which claims to be the only non-MSG restaurant in all of northeast China (an astonishing claim if true). The fruit and veggie drinks pair up nicely with the main courses.

View & World is on one of Shenyang's busy eating streets and you'll find much to sample nearby, including real Peking duck, if you so desire.

## **Yufu Matou Shaokao** SEAFOOD \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Fisherman's Harbour Barbecue; 75 Huigong Jie; dishes ¥15-36; ☺ 11.30am-midnight*) A friendly, fun, three-floor restaurant with a nautical theme. The seafood platter (¥118) arrives in a boat-shaped dish and satisfies two or three people easily. Plenty of meat is available, plus hotpot, meat skewers, and some very filling and cheap noodle and veggie dishes with an emphasis on spice.

## **Qinzi Shangmian** DONGBEI \$

[Offline map](#)

(*Shenyang Lu; dishes ¥8-18; ☺ 8.30am-midnight*) At the end of a short row of good restaurants is this family-run place serving simple cold noodle, meat and vegetable dishes. There's a picture menu.

## **Carrefour Supermarket** SUPERMARKET \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Jialefu; Beizhan Lu*) Near the long-distance bus station. You can pack a picnic for your travels here or grab a quick bite from the decent food court.



## **Drinking**

Liaoning Binguan has a pleasant patio bar facing Zhongshan Lu that's

open when the weather cooperates.

## Stroller's *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Liulangzhe; 36 Beiwu Jing Jie*) This long-running ground floor pub is popular with both locals and expats and has a decent imported beer selection. The pub's street is not signed but if you take Exit B of Nanshichang Station, just cross the road and head north up the side street one block and you'll hit it.

## Shopping

Near the South Train Station is **Taiyuan Jie** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), one of Shenyang's major shopping streets, with high-end department stores and an extensive underground shopping street (mostly small clothing boutiques) that's the perfect place to feel the energy of modern Shenyang.

**Zhong Jie** [Offline map](#), near the Imperial Palace, is another popular pedestrianised shopping zone that hopefully will one day get the resurfaced ground it deserves.

## Information

ATMs can be found all over the city.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*) Government Sq (253 Shifu Dalu); South Train Station area (96 Zhonghua Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5pm Mon-Fri) South station area branch has 24-hour ATM. Government Sq branch has ATM and changes travellers cheques.

**Internet cafe** (*wangba; main level, South Train Station; per hr ¥4; 🕒 24hr*) May let you use computers without a Chinese ID, but there is no guarantee of this.

**Public Security Bureau** (*PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 2253 4850; Zhongshan Sq*)

## **i** Getting There & Away

Large hotels can book airline and train tickets, as can **China Travel Service of Shenyang** ( *Shenyang Shi Zhongguo Luxingshe*; 📞 137 0000 0681; 1 Shifu Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5pm).

### **Air**

Shenyang Taoxian International Airport has flights to South Korea and Russia as well as the following domestic cities:

**Beijing** ¥700

**Ha'erbin** ¥510

**Shanghai** ¥1380

### **Bus**

The **long-distance express bus station** ( *changtu qiche kuaisu keyunzhan*; 120 Huigong Jie) is south of Beizhan Lu, about a five-minute walk from the North Train Station and close to the Carrefour Supermarket. Current schedules are available at the information counter as you walk in. Buses service the following destinations:

**Beijing** ¥149-166, 7½ hours, eight daily (from 8am to 9pm)

**Changchun** ¥85, 4½ hours, seven per day (8.30am to 5pm)

**Dandong** ¥82, 3½ hours, every 30 minutes (6am to 7pm)

**Ha'erbin** ¥122, 6½ hours, two daily (11am and 2.30pm)

**Xingcheng** ¥83, 4½ hours, two daily (8.50am and 3.40pm)

### **Train**

Shenyang's major train stations are the North and South Stations. Many trains arrive at one station, stop briefly, then travel to the next; it may be different when departing – always confirm which station you need. Buy sleeper or D train tickets (to Beijing or Shanghai) as far in advance as possible. Bus 262 runs between the North and South Train Stations, or take the metro.

### **SOUTH STATION TRAINS**

**Baihe** (for Changbaishan) hard/soft sleeper ¥100/156, three daily (departs 9.13am, 7.28pm and 8.18pm), 13 hours

**Dalian** hard/soft seat ¥55/87, four to seven hours

**Dandong** hard/soft seat ¥42/64, five hours

**Ha'erbin** hard/soft seat ¥44/72, seven hours

**Xingcheng** hard/soft seat ¥54/84, four to six hours

### **NORTH STATION TRAINS**

**Beijing** (D train) ¥207, five hours, frequent

**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥99/172, 10 hours

**Ha'erbin** (D train) ¥161, four hours, five daily

**Changchun** (D train) ¥88, 2½ hours, four morning trains

## **i Getting Around**

**TO/FROM THE AIRPORT** The airport is 25km south of the city. Shuttle buses (¥15, hourly) leave from an alley just before the intersection of Zhonghua Lu and Heping Dajie. Taxis cost ¥80.

**BUS** Buses are cheap, frequent and cover the city but the subway covers most areas travellers want to visit. Maps of the routes (¥5) are sold at train stations.

**SUBWAY** With only two lines (Line 1 running east–west and Line 2 running north–south) and one connecting station, Shenyang's clean and relaxed subway system is easy to figure out. There are stops along both the North and South Train Stations as well as the North Tomb and Zhong Jie (for the Imperial Palace). The average ride costs ¥2 to ¥4. Stations have public toilets.

**TAXI** Taxis cost ¥8 for the first 3km, and ¥9 if air-conditioned.

---

## **Dalian**

 0411 / POP 3.6 MILLION

Perched on the Liaodong Peninsula and bordering the Yellow Sea, Dalian is one of the most relaxed and liveable cities in the northeast, if not all of China. Tree-lined hilly streets with manageable traffic and fresh air, a surfeit of early-20th-century architecture, and an impressive coastline, complete with swimming beaches, just begins

the list of its charms. Toss in a decent restaurant and bar scene, some serious shopping, and the buzz of a town growing more and more prosperous by the year, and that frequent Dalian epithet, the 'Hong Kong of the North', looks like more than just bluster.

Dalian is a fine place to unwind for a few days. But after lazing on the beaches, and strolling along the southwest coastline (on one of the world's longest continuous boardwalks), do pay a visit to the historic port town of Lushun. The old battlefields and cemeteries offer a rare first-hand glimpse into some of the north's most turbulent days.

## THE DALIAN OIL DISASTER

It's still regarded as the worst oil spill in Chinese history. On 16 July 2010, two pipelines in the Xingang oil terminal burst as high-sulphur crude was being unloaded from an oil tanker. Within days, overwhelmed officials had acknowledged that over 400 sq km of ocean had been affected. They called on volunteers to help, and offered US\$44 for every barrel of oil they recovered from the sea. That was all that was needed to unleash the entrepreneurial valour of the Chinese. Within three weeks 8000 workers on 800 fishing boats (with the help of a few specialist clean-up vessels) had removed almost all traces of the spill. Small fortunes were made, but volunteers were lucky if they had rubber gloves to work with. Some became seriously ill even before the clean-up was over.

Officially the government is sticking to its story that 1500 tonnes (about 11,000 barrels) were released into the Yellow Sea. Rick Steiner, a respected marine conservationist who has spent years working on oil spills around the world, visited the affected area not long after the spill and reported that several hundred thousand barrels of leaked oil is a more likely figure. This would place the Dalian spill on a comparable scale with the Exxon Valdez disaster (which Steiner studied) off Alaska in 1989.

Two years later, the Dalian coastline shows no signs of the spill, and swimmers have long gone back to enjoying the gold-sand beaches and warm waters. The long-term effects on the coastal environment, the fisheries and the locals, who suffered both from direct contact with the oil and from the toxic air that hung over the city for days, remains uncertain. No official studies were ever undertaken or released.

## Sights & Activities



**Southwest Coastline** OUTDOORS

Dalian's southwest coastline is the city's most alluring natural



destination. Dramatic headlands, deep bays and sandy beaches are the obvious attraction, but there are also parks, lighthouses and quaint villages, and the longest continuous boardwalk (reportedly at 20.9km) in the world joining them all.

Start your exploration either by taking the tram from downtown to **Xinghai Sq**, or a bus to **Fujiazhuang Beach** (*Fujiazhuang Haitan*). The square, which is sporting some heady architecture these days, is the site of Dalian's popular beer festival, and is a good place to people watch, fly a kite, or just stroll about. Nearby is a small beach and amusement park.

Fujiazhuang is a popular beach set in a deep bay. Junks float just offshore, small broken islands dot the horizon, and loads of families come here for no other reason than to have fun. Bus 5 leaves from Jiefang Lu (¥1, 20 to 30 minutes) and drops you off across from the beach.

A very pleasant boardwalk joins Fujia-zhuang and Xinghai Sq. From the beach you can continue on this same walkway another 8km to **Laohutan Ocean Park** (*Laohu Tan Haiyang Gongyuan*; [www.laohutan.com.cn](http://www.laohutan.com.cn); admission ¥210; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm), a family-friendly theme park with a **Polar Aquarium** [Offline map](#). At Laohutan you can catch bus 30 (¥1) to Sanba or Zhongshan Square in central Dalian.

But more spectacular coastline awaits along yet another stretch of the boardwalk. In a few kilometres you reach **Fisherman's Wharf** [Offline map](#) (*Yuren Matou*), which is actually a seaside community built in the style of an early-20th-century American east coast village. The village makes a great backdrop for photos, has a pleasant square to enjoy a coffee, and features rather oddly a perfect replica of the 1853 German **Bremen Port Lighthouse**, built with bricks from razed local villages.

The boardwalk continues east along the coast past Fisherman's Wharf, but public transport is sparse so remember you will likely have to retrace your steps to Laohutan for a bus or taxi back to the city.

## **Golden Stone Beach** *BEACH*

The coast around Golden Stone Beach (*Jinshitan*), 60km north of the city, is in the process of being turned into a domestic tourism mecca with a number of theme parks, and rock formations commanding inflated entrance fees. The long pebbly beach itself is free and quite pretty, set in a wide bay with distant headlands.

To get here take the light rail, known by the locals as Line 3 (Qinggui Sanhaoxian), from the depot on the east side of Triumph Plaza, behind the Dalian Train station (¥8, 50 minutes). From the beach station it's a 10-minute walk to the beach, or catch a tourist shuttle bus (¥20, 30 minutes), which winds round the coast first before dropping you off at the beach. There's a **visitor centre** to the right of the train station as you exit, with English-speaking staff if you need help.

## Zhongshan Sq *HISTORIC BUILDINGS*

Offline map

Google map

(; *Zhongshan Guangchang*) This is Dalian's hub, a 223m wide square with 10 lanes radiating out from a centre first designed by the Russians in 1889. With the exception of the Dalian Financial Building, all the other grand structures hail from the early 20th century when Dalian was under the control of the Japanese. Styles range from art deco to French Renaissance. The **Dalian Binguan**, a dignified hotel built in 1914 and called then the Dalian Yamato Hotel, appeared in the movie *The Last Emperor*.

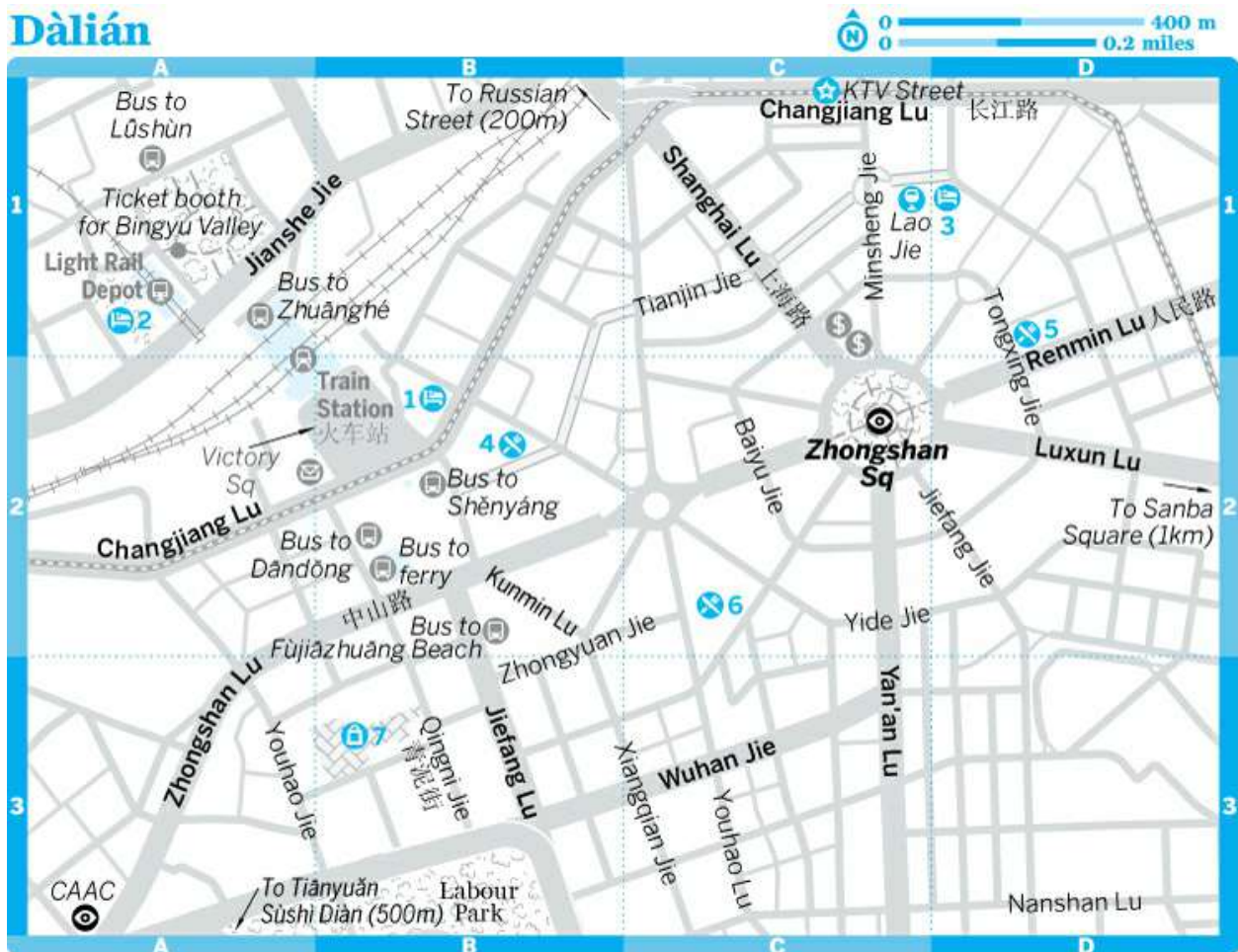
## BEER MANIA

For 12 days every July and spilling over into August, Dalian stages the **Dalian International Beer Festival**, its very own version of Munich's Oktoberfest. Beer companies from across China and around the world set up tents at the vast Xinghai Sq, near the coast, and locals and visitors flock (more than two million in 2012) to sample the brews, gorge on barbecue and snacks from around China, listen to live music and generally make whoopee. Entrance tickets are a low ¥10 and in 2012 there were 30 beer vendors offering more than 400 brands for sampling. See the festivals page on the China Highlights ([www.chinahighlights.com](http://www.chinahighlights.com)) website for the dates each year.

## Sleeping

Reservations are highly recommended in the summer months, when prices may be 50% more than listed below. The train station area has a number of budget hotels but it's best to sleep elsewhere as it's a noisy, frenetic place. Touts will find you if you do need a room: rates are around ¥140 to ¥180 a night (add another ¥100 in high summer season).

## Dàlián



## Dalian

### Top Sights

[Zhongshan Sq](#) C2

### Sleeping

- 1 [Bohai Pearl Hotel](#) B2
- 2 [Hanting Express](#) A1
- 3 [Home Inn](#) D1

### Eating

- 4 [Night Market](#) B2
- 5 [Tiantian Yugang](#) D1
- 6 [Xiao Yaogu Shanxi Mian Zhuang](#) C2

### Shopping

- 7 [New Mart Shopping Mall](#) B3

## Dalian South Mountain Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; *Dalian Nanshan Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 114 Minze St; 114 📍 8263 1189; [froh@163.com](mailto:froh@163.com); dm ¥60-70, d/tw 178/188; 🌐📶📶) Tucked away in a quiet hillside neighbourhood is this friendly little hostel with clean comfortable dorms and private rooms. Facilities include self-service laundry and kitchen, as well as computer use and wi-fi. The southwest coastline is a 15-minute bus ride away, numerous parks are within walking distance, and even the train station can be reached quickly by taxi (¥10). If you want to catch a bus here contact the hostel for directions.

## Ibis Dalian Sanba Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; *Dalian Sanba Yibisi Jiudian*; 📍 3986 5555; [www.ibishotel.com.cn](http://www.ibishotel.com.cn); 49 Wuwu Rd; 49 d & tw ¥219; 🌐📶) This European-style business hotel is in an ideal location surrounded by restaurants and markets, but is also a five-minute walk to parks and quiet tree-lined streets. Rooms are slick and modern and the English-speaking staff are fairly attentive. For best rates book online.

## Tian Tong Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; *Tian Tong Da Jiudian*; 58 Luxun Lu; 58 d/tw ¥518/497; 🌐📞) The off-season rates (up to 60% off) for this behemoth near Sanba Sq make it a solid choice, as does the location across from shops and restaurants, barbecue stalls and fruit stands. The southwest coast is just 10 minutes away by taxi, and you can walk the 1km to Zhongshan Sq in no time. Single travellers should ask for the Japanese-style rooms, which go for ¥168 during the off season.

## Home Inn HOTEL \$\$

(; *Rujia Kuaijie Jiudian*; 📞 8263 9977; [www.homeinns.com](http://www.homeinns.com); 102 Tianjin Jie; 102 d/tw ¥189/209; 🌐📞) With its brightly coloured and tidy little rooms, free broadband and in-house restaurant serving cheap but tasty dishes, this is a good choice for the city centre. Recently the square around the hotel has seen some impressive urban regeneration, with a fake but good 'old street' opening just 100m away with a number of high-end cafes and bars. There's also a continuous pedestrian-only street/night market extending all the way to the train station.

## Bohai Pearl Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; *Bohai Mingzhu Jiudian*; 📞 8812 8888; [www.bohaipearl.com](http://www.bohaipearl.com); 8 Victory Sq; 8 r from ¥867; 🌐📞🚗) This 30-storey tower with a kitschy revolving restaurant faces the train station, but the large lobby area means you are spared the madness of the outside world. Rooms are in need of an update, but with discounts of 40% they're good value, especially in summer. A few unexpected facilities include a spa and pool.

## Hanting Express HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; *Hanting kuaijie Jiudian*; 📞 6666 2888; 32 Yunyang Jie; 32 r from ¥209; 🌐📞📶) Just behind the train station, overlooking the light-rail

square, is this tidy business hotel. There's broadband internet in every room and wi-fi in the lobby. The hotel entrance is to the back of the building away from the light-rail square.

## Dalian Binhai Hotel *HOTEL \$\$\$*

Offline map

(; *Dalian Binhai Dasha*; 📍 8240 6666; fax 8240 6668; 2 *Binhai Xilu*; 2 *r/ste* ¥460/620; 📞📧) A favourite with visiting Russians, this high-rise hotel could be better maintained, but it's got a great location literally across the road from Fujiazhuang Beach. Discounts of 30% in the off season.

## Eating

There are plenty of small restaurants on the roads leading off Zhongshan Sq and Friendship Sq. The upscale New Mart Shopping Mall has a spiffy food court (dishes from ¥8 to ¥38) on the 5th floor with a huge range of eating and drinking options. It's a good choice for a single traveller in a city where most restaurants are set up for groups. There's also a well-provisioned supermarket on the lower level. Note that Friendship Sq has numerous buildings and malls on it, so look for the big mall directly across from Starbucks. The food court in the nearby underground mall in Victory Sq is a bit cheaper but not as nice in atmosphere.

Both sides of the plaza outside the train station are lined with fruit vendors and shops selling cheap *baozi* (; steamed dumplings). Zhongyuan Jie and Kunmin Jie are loaded with restaurants serving stir-fries and stews with the heavy flavours of the north.

## Xunca Lamian *DUMPLINGS \$*

Offline map

Google map

(; *Chaoyang Jie*; dishes ¥12-20; 🕒 8am-8.30pm) If you're staying in the Sanba Sq area this popular little eatery one block southeast of the square is a great venue for starting your day or for a light meal any time. In addition to its delicious *xiaolongbao* (; steamed dumplings) look for wonton soup and smoked chicken leg. There's a picture menu

on the wall.

## **Xiao Yaogu Shanxi Mian Zhuang** SHAANXI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; dishes ¥5-22; 🕒 8am-9pm) At the end of Zhongyuan Jie is this Shaanxi restaurant that serves great dishes such as *jiāmo* (; lamb in pita bread) or *paomo* (; bread stew) at a ridiculously low price. A light meal will set you back under ¥15. Look for the red lanterns outside and place your order at the front desk beside the picture menu.

## **Tiantian Yugang** SEAFOOD \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; 10 Renmin Lu; dishes ¥12-88; 🕒 11am-10pm) Choose your meal from the near museum-level variety of aquatic creatures at this upscale seafood restaurant. Most dishes are set out in refrigerated displays, making this a rare easy seafood-eating experience in China.

## **Tianyuan Sushi Dian** VEGETARIAN \$

( Tangshan Jie; dishes ¥12-38; 🕒 8.30am-8pm) Close to Labour Park is this tiny Buddhist vegetarian place popular with worshippers at the nearby temple. To find the entrance head up Tangshan Jie about 30m past the intersection with Tongshan Jie.

## **Night market** MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

Stretching from the train station to the Home Inn off Tianjin Jie, this outdoor market (), open during the evenings, offers near endless outdoor venues to eat barbecued seafood with a beer. There's also a smaller market around Sanba Sq with outdoor barbecue stalls and seating, in addition to an abundance of fruit stands.

## **Drinking & Entertainment**

Dalian has the most happening bar and club scene of any city in the northeast. Check out *Focus on Dalian* magazine for the latest.

Changjiang Lu is home to a host of upscale KTVs, clubs and bars. A fake, but still very pleasant **Lao Jie** (; *Old Street*) sits off the plaza near the Tianjin Jie Home Inn and has several upscale cafes and bars with indoor and outdoor seating.

### **I-55 Coffee Stop & Bakery** CAFE

[Offline map](#)

(; *Aiwuwu Meishi Kafeizhan; 67 Gao'erji Lu; ☎ 8.30am-midnight; 📶📶*) For coffee, cakes and sandwiches, try the I-55. There's a cosy upscale atmosphere here with throw-cushion-decked lounges, jazzy music and a nice leafy outdoor patio.

### **Lenbach Beer House** PUB

[Offline map](#)

(; & *Lan Bahe Xican & Pijiu Fang; 49 Gao'erji Lu*) This two-storey, upscale Bavarian beer pub serves a fantastic range of German beers, including several darks and whites on tap (¥35 for 0.5l). There is outdoor seating so you can enjoy the quiet neighbourhood atmosphere on Gao'erji Lu, and there's a selection of sausage dishes if quenching your thirst builds up a hunger.

### **Noah's Ark** BAR

[Offline map](#)

(; *Nuoya Fangzhou; 32 Wusi Lu; ☎ 12.30pm-2am; 📶*) A laid-back, long-standing place to catch local musicians and grab a beer. There's indoor and outdoor seating and a good mix of locals and expats in the crowd.

## **Shopping**

There are malls all over Dalian. The **New Mart Shopping Mall** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) , which is south of Victory Sq, is a pedestrian plaza lined with upscale department stores. Across from the train station there's an enormous underground shopping centre below Victory Sq. Dalian's **Russian Street**, a pedestrianised street with



some of the city's oldest buildings, is a good spot for souvenir hunting.

## **i** Information

There are ATMs all around town. Zhongshan Sq has a number of large bank branches including **Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*; 9 *Zhongshan Sq*), where you can change currency and travellers cheques.

**Dalian Xpat** ([www.dalianxpat.com](http://www.dalianxpat.com)) An excellent source of English-language information about restaurants, bars and clubs in Dalian.

**Focus on Dalian** ([www.focusondalian.com](http://www.focusondalian.com)) Bilingual magazine with good articles and restaurant and bar recommendations.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

Dalian International Airport is 12km from the city centre and well connected to most cities in China and the region. Tickets can be purchased at the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; *Zhongguo Minhang*; ☎ 8361 2888; [www.tickets.dlairport.com](http://www.tickets.dlairport.com); *Zhongshan Lu*) or any of the travel offices nearby. In addition to the domestic destinations below, there are also flights to Khabarovsk, Vladivostok and Tokyo.

**Beijing** ¥710, one hour

**Ha'erbin** ¥840, 1½ hours

**Hong Kong** ¥2640, 3½ hours

### Boat

There are several daily boats to Yantai (¥160 to ¥600, five to eight hours) and Weihai (¥170 to ¥600, seven to eight hours). Buy tickets at the passenger ferry terminal in the northeast of Dalian or from one of the many counters in front of the train station. To the ferry terminal, take bus 13 (¥1) from the southeast corner of Shengli Guangchang and Zhongshan Lu near the train station.

## Bus

Long-distance buses leave from various points around the train station. It can be tricky to find the correct ticket booths, and they do occasionally move.

**Dandong** ¥100, four hours, seven daily, 6.20am to 2.30pm. Buses leave from stand No 2 on Shengli Guangchang just south of Changjiang Lu.

**Lushun** ; ¥8, one hour, every 10 minutes. Buses leave from the back of the train station, across the square.

**Shenyang** ; ¥128, five hours, every 30 minutes. Buses depart from the northeast corner of Victory Sq.

**Zhuanghe** ; ¥47, 2½ hours, frequent. Buses leave from in front of the ticket booth on Jiangshe Jie, the first street behind the train station.

## Train

Buy your ticket as early as possible for long-distance trains.


**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥140/240, 10 to 12 hours

**Changchun** hard seat/sleeper ¥83/164, nine to 10 hours

**Ha'erbin** hard seat/sleeper ¥110/201, nine to 13 hours

**Shenyang** seat ¥28 to ¥55, five to six hours

## BORDER CROSSING: DALIAN TO SOUTH KOREA

The Korean-run **Da-in Ferry** ( *Dalian 8270 5082, Incheon 032-891 7100, Seoul 822-3218 6500*; [www.dainferry.co.kr](http://www.dainferry.co.kr)) to Incheon in South Korea departs from Dalian on Monday, Wednesday and Friday at 4.30pm (¥920 to ¥1848, 16 hours).

## Getting Around

Dalian's central district is not large and can be covered on foot.

**TO/FROM THE AIRPORT** A taxi from the city centre costs ¥30 to ¥60 depending on the time of day. No shuttle buses.

**BUS** Buses are plentiful and stops have English signboards explaining the route.

**TAXI** Fares start at ¥8; most trips are less than ¥15.

**TRAM** Dalian has a very slow but stylish tram, with two lines – the 201 and the 202 (¥1 to ¥2 each). No 201 runs past the train station on Changjiang Lu, while 202 runs out to the ocean and Xinghai Sq (you must take 201 first and transfer).

---

## Around Dalian

### LŪSHUN

With its excellent port, and strategic location on the northeast coast, Lushun (formerly Port Arthur) was the focal point of both Russian and Japanese expansion in the late 19th and early 20th centuries. The bloody 1904–05 Russo-Japanese War finally saw the area fall under Japanese colonial rule, which would continue for the next 40 years.

Lushun is a must-see during any visit to Dalian. It's a relaxed town built on the hills and, while most sites are related to military history, there's an excellent museum on Liaoning, as well as a number of scenic lookouts and parks.

As soon as you exit the bus station at Lushun, taxis will cry out for your business. A few hours touring the sights will cost ¥150 to ¥200. Pick up a bilingual English–Chinese map at the station newsstand to help you negotiate.

## Greater Dàlián



## Greater Dalian

### 📍 Top Sights

Xinghai Square A2

### 📍 Sights

1 Fisherman's Wharf D3

2 Polar Aquarium C3

### 🏠 Sleeping

3 Dalian Binhai Hotel B3

4 [Dalian South Mountain Youth Hostel](#) C2

5 [Ibis Dalian Sanba Hotel](#) C1

6 [Tian Tong Hotel](#) C1

## Eating

7 [Xunca Lamian](#) C1

## Drinking

8 [I-55 Coffee Stop & Bakery](#) B2

9 [Lenbach Beer House](#) B2

10 [Noah's Ark](#) B2

## Sights



### **Soviet Martyrs Cemetery** CEMETERY

( *Sujun Lieshi Lingyuan*; 🕒 8.30-4.30pm) The largest cemetery in China for foreign-born nationals honours Soviet soldiers who died in the liberation of northeast China at the end of WWII, as well as pilots killed during the Korean War (known as the War Against US Aggression). Designed by Soviet advisers, the cemetery is heavy with communist-era iconography. A giant rifle-holding soldier guards the front, while inside are memorials to the sacrifice of Soviet soldiers and rows of neatly tended gravestones.

### **Lushun Museum** MUSEUM

( *Lushun Bowuguan*; admission ¥20; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun) The history of Liaoning province is covered in this stylish old museum in a building erected in 1917. Among the thousands of artefacts on display are ancient bronzes, coins and paintings, as well as several mummies. The area around the museum has a number of other old buildings from the Japanese colonial era and is a great spot for photographs.

### **Hill 203** WAR MEMORIAL

(*Er Ling San Jingqu*; admission ¥30) During the 1904–05 Russo-Japanese War, troops fought like wildcats for control of this strategic hill (when you get to the top you'll see why). More than 5000 Russian and 10,000 Japanese soldiers lost their lives in the battle, which eventually went to the Japanese. Afterwards the victors erected a 10m-high bullet-shaped memorial (constructed from shell casings) and, remarkably, it still stands to this day.

## **Lushun Railway Station** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

(*Lushun Huochezhan*) Built in 1903 during Russia's brief control of the area, the handsome station was rebuilt in 2005 following the original design. It's worth a pop by on your way to other sights.

## **i Getting There & Away**

Buses to Lushun (¥8, one hour) leave every 10 minutes from a stop across the square at the back of the Dalian Train Station (see [Click here](#)). Buy your ticket from the booth before lining up. Buses run from early morning to evening.

## **BINGYU VALLEY**

If you can't travel south to Guilin ([Click here](#)), Bingyu Valley (Bingyu Gou) offers a taste of what you're missing. About 250km northeast of Dalian, the valley has tree-covered limestone cliffs set alongside a river; it's similar to Guilin, if not nearly as dramatic. From the entrance a boat takes you along a brief stretch of the river, where rock formations rise steeply along the banks, before depositing you at a dock. From there, you can hire your own little boat and paddle around the shallow waters, or follow some short trails along the river and up to some lookouts.

The park is increasingly popular with big tour groups, who come for the zip lines, tame amusement-park rides, and even jet-skiing. Given the rather small area that you can explore, it can be tough to find any tranquility in this otherwise lovely environment.

In summer, day trips run from the train station area, leaving at 7.30am and returning around 7pm. Buy your ticket (¥238) the day

before from the tourism vans across from the light-rail depot in the back train station area. It's not really worth coming out here on your own.

## FREE TRADE AMONG COMMUNIST ALLIES

It's no exaggeration to say that, without China, the North Korean regime would not survive. China has been trading with the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK) since the 1950s and is now the country's largest trading partner. Almost half of all the DPRK imports come directly from China, and the Hermit Kingdom is the direct beneficiary of more than half of all Chinese foreign aid. That China supports its neighbour for its own geopolitical reasons is no surprise – that it does so for economic reasons probably is. However, put simply, Chinese leaders in the northern provinces insist they need market reforms across the border if they are to see their own long-term development plans fully realised.

Dandong is the hub of Sino–North Korean trade, and the site of a possible free-trade zone between the two countries. Yes, you read that right. In early June 2011, China and the DPRK announced plans to establish a joint manufacturing, tourism and IT zone on North Korea's Hwanggumpyong and Wihwa Islands. As with Dandong not so many years ago, these islands are currently little more than farmland, and turning the area into what Pyongyang has called the 'Hong Kong of North Korea' is going to take some doing. While Dandong's economic zones have seen impressive development these past five years, satellite images show that so far the only changes to the North Korean side are piles of dumped construction waste – from China.

But one area where the two nations have made progress is in expanding working visas. In 2012 some 40,000 North Korean seamstresses, construction workers, technicians and miners were granted industrial training visas for employment in China. (Some analysts believe the program, which has not officially been announced, could see numbers go higher than 100,000.) While most of the workers' wages will be remitted directly back to the near-bankrupt DPRK government, North Koreans are still rushing to take advantage of the program.

---

## Dandong

 0415 / POP 780,400

The principal gateway to North Korea (Chaoxian) from China, Dandong has a buzz that's unusual for a Chinese city of its size. Separated from the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (DPRK) by the Yalu River (Yalu Jiang), Dandong thrives on trade, both illegal and legal, with North Korea.

For most visitors to Dandong, this is as close as they will get to the DPRK. While you can't see much, the contrast between Dandong's lively, built-up riverfront and the desolate stretch of land on the other side of the Yalu River speaks volumes about the dire state of the North Korean economy and the restrictions under which its people live.

Although China International Travel Service (CITS) runs tours to the DPRK, they are aimed at Chinese nationals. If you want to visit, you'd do better to travel with the reputable Beijing-based **Koryo Tours** (☎ 010-6416 7544; [www.koryogroup.com](http://www.koryogroup.com); 27 Beisanlitun Nan, Beijing), which can help you organise visas and offers trips designed for Westerners. At the time of writing, US citizens could fly into North Korea but could not take the train from Dandong to North Korea.

Dandong is relatively compact and easy to walk around. The river is about 800m southeast of the train station while the main shopping district is just east of the station.





# Dandong

## Sights

- 1 [Broken Bridge](#) B2
- 2 [Yalujiang Park](#) B2

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 3 [Tour-Boat Piers](#) B2
- 4 [Tour-Boat Piers](#) B1

## Sleeping

- 5 [Hua Xia Cun Binguan](#) B1
- 6 [Luyuan Binguan](#) B1
- 7 [Zhong Lian Hotel](#) B2

## Eating

- 8 [Pingrang Songdaoyuan Fandian](#) B2
- 9 [Tesco's](#) B1

## Drinking

- 10 [Peter's Coffee House](#) B1

## Sights & Activities

### **North Korean Border** *BORDER, PARK*

(*Bei Chaoxian Bianjie*) For views of the border, stroll along the riverfront [Yalujiang Park](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) that faces the North Korean city of Sinuiju.

The area's most intriguing sight is the shrapnel-pockmarked **Broken Bridge** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Yalujiang Duanqiao*; admission ¥30; 🕒 7am-6.30pm). In 1950, during the Korean War, American troops 'accidentally' bombed the original steel-span bridge between the two countries. The North Koreans dismantled the bridge less than halfway

across the river, leaving a row of support columns. You can wander along the remaining section and get within the distance of a good toss of a baseball to the North Korean shoreline. The Sino–Korean Friendship Bridge, the official border crossing between China and North Korea, is next to the old one, and trains and trucks rumble across it on a regular basis.

To get closer to North Korea, take a 30- to 40-minute **boat cruise** (*guanguang chuan*; ☺ 7am-6pm) from the tour-boat piers on either side of the bridges. The large boats (¥60) are cheaper than the smaller speedboats (¥80), but you have to wait for the former to fill up with passengers (on average 30 minutes). In the summer you can sometimes see kids splashing about in the river, as well as fishermen and the crews of the boats moored on the other side.

## **Jinjiang Pagoda** PAGODA

(*Jinjiang Ta*) The highest point around for miles, this pagoda sits atop Jinjiang Shan in a park of the same name. The views across to North Korea are unparalleled and the park itself (a former military zone) is a well-tended expanse of forested slopes. You can take a taxi to the entrance or easily walk there in 20 minutes from the train station, though it's another steep kilometre uphill to the pagoda.

## **FREE** **Museum to Commemorate US Aggression** MUSEUM

(*Kangmei Yuanchao Jinian-guan*; ☺ 9am-4pm Tue-Sun) With everything from statistics to shells, this comprehensive museum offers Chinese and North Korean perspectives – they won it! – on the war with the US-led UN forces (1950–53). There are good English captions here. The adjacent North Korean War Memorial Column was built 53m high, symbolising the year the Korean War ended.

A taxi to the museum will cost ¥8 from downtown, or you can walk as part of a trip to the Jinjiang Pagoda. From the entrance to the park on Shanshang Jie, it's about 1.5km to the entrance of the memorial.

## **Tiger Mountain Great Wall** GREAT WALL

(*Hushan Changcheng*; admission ¥60; ☺ 8am-dusk) About 12km

northeast of Dandong, this steep, restored stretch of the wall, known as Tiger Mountain Great Wall, was built during the Ming dynasty and runs parallel to the North Korean border. Unlike other sections of the wall, this one sees comparatively few tourists.

The wall ends at a small **museum** (*admission ¥10, buy ticket at main entrance booth*) with a few weapons, vases and wartime dioramas. From here two routes loop back to the entrance. Heading straight ahead on the road is the easy way back. But there's nothing to see. Better is to climb back up the stairs a short way and look for a path on the right that drops and then literally runs along the cliff face. There are some good scrambles and in 20 minutes or so you'll get to a point called Yibukua – 'one step across' – marking an extremely narrow part of the river between the two countries. Not far past this you'll reach an area where you can walk back to the entrance gate in a minute or take a short boat ride along the river.

Buses to the wall (¥6.50, 40 minutes) run about every hour from the Dandong's long-distance bus station.

## **Sleeping**

There are many hotels in Dandong, most for around ¥200 a night. High-summer rates may be 30% to 50% more than the prices given below.

### **Hua Xia Cun Binguan** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 212 1999; 11 Bajing Jie; 11 d incl breakfast from ¥200; 📶📺) This is a good budget option, with rooms sporting comfort far above their price level, broadband internet, and a location smack in the middle of town. The restaurant on the ground floor serves a range of tasty northern dishes (¥15 to ¥60) and has a picture menu wall. Portions are large. The hotel is on the corner of Bajing Jie and Qiwei Lu. Discounts of 25% are usual.

### **Zhong Lian Hotel** HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhong Lian Da Jiudian; 📍 233 3333; [www.zlhotel.com](http://www.zlhotel.com); 62 Binjiang Zhong Lu; 62 d/tw incl breakfast ¥478/578; 📶@📶 ) Directly across from the Broken Bridge is this solid midrange option with large rooms, an even larger marble lobby (with wi-fi) and English-speaking staff. Discounts available.

## Luyuan Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 212 7777; fax 210 9888; cnr Shiwei Lu & Sanjing Jie; dm with shared bathroom ¥50-60, s with shared bathroom ¥128, d & tw with bathroom from ¥168; 📶@ ) There are reasonable singles and three- and four-bed dorms at this long-running guesthouse on busy Shiwei Lu. The more expensive doubles and twins (which include internet) are a bit overpriced.

## 🍴 Eating & Drinking

On summer nights, the smoke from hundreds of barbecues drifts over Dandong as street corners become impromptu restaurants serving up fresh seafood and bottles of Yalu River beer, the refreshing local brew. One of the best places for barbecue is in the tents on the corner of Bawei Lu and Qijing Jie. More conventional restaurants, including a range of Korean, hotpot and DIY barbecue, as well as comfortable cafes where you can sip coffee and watch how the other half lives, line the riverfront on either side of the bridges. There's also a big **Tesco's**

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Legou; cnr Liuwei Lu & Sanjing Jie)

supermarket in the east part of town.

## Pingrang Songdaoyuan Fandian NORTH KOREAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Lu; dishes ¥10-48; 🕒 dinner ) A big part of the experience for many travellers to this region is eating at a North Korean restaurant with reputedly real North Korean waitresses. This locally recommended place sits appropriately enough just a few hundred metres from the Broken Bridge (directly beside SPR Coffee) and has a range of traditional dishes, from pickled vegies to hotpot to fish stews

that can cost hundreds of yuan. There's a full picture menu to help you decide.

## Peter's Coffee House CAFE, WESTERN \$\$

Offline map

Google map

( *Bide Kafei Shi*; [www.peterscoffeehouse.com](http://www.peterscoffeehouse.com); *Binjiang Lu*; ☎ 9am-9pm; 📶) Down by the riverfront is this friendly cafe run by a long-term Canadian expat family. In addition to its excellent coffees, Peter's serves milkshakes and sodas (¥25), authentic Western baked goods, a fine all-day breakfast (¥30; great hash browns), burgers and sandwiches. This is also the place to go for local information and recommendations on the latest North Korean eatery in town.

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 60 *Jinshan Dajie*) Has ATM and will change travellers checks. Also an ATM closer to the river at 77-1 *Binjiang Zhong Lu*.

**China International Travel Service** (*CITS*; *Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; 📞 213 2196; 20 *Shiwei Lu*, at *Jiangcheng Dajie*; ☎ 8am-5.30pm) Can arrange DPRK visits with Chinese tours. Email English-speaking Jackie Zhang ([jacky790117@hotmail.com](mailto:jacky790117@hotmail.com)) for details.

**Public Security Bureau** (*PSB*; *Gong'anju*; 15 *Jiangcheng Dajie*)

## **i** Getting There & Away

Dandong airport has infrequent flights to a few cities in China, but most travellers arrive by bus or train.

### Bus

The **long-distance bus station** (98 *Shiwei Lu*) is near the train station.

**Dalian** ¥100, 3½ hours, seven daily (7.50am to 2.50pm)

**Ji'an** ¥80, seven hours, one daily (8.30am)

**Shenyang** ¥82, three hours, every 30 minutes (5.10am to 6.30pm)

**Tonghua** ¥82, seven hours, two daily (6.30am and 8.50am)

### Train

The train station is in the centre of town, north of the river. A lofty Mao statue greets arriving passengers.

**Shenyang** seat ¥24 to ¥ 44, four hours

## BORDER CROSSING: DANDONG TO SOUTH KOREA

**Dandong International Ferry Co** ( [www.dandongferry.co.kr](http://www.dandongferry.co.kr); cnr Xingwu Lu & Gangwan Lu; ☺ 8am-5pm) runs a boat to Incheon in South Korea, with a boarding time of 2.20pm (4pm departure) on Tuesday, Thursday and Sunday (¥1010 to ¥1710, 16 hours). Buy tickets at the company's office on Xingwu Lu. A bus to the ferry terminal leaves at 1.50pm (¥20) on the respective departure days from the train station.

---

## Xingcheng

📍 0429 / POP 140,000

Despite being one of only four Ming-dynasty cities to retain their complete outer walls and boasting the oldest surviving temple in all of northeastern China, as well as an up-and-coming beach resort, Xingcheng has stayed well off the radar of most travellers. In truth it's still a bit dusty and rough round the edges, and the old city is as notable for its rows of jeans shops as Ming gates, but conditions are improving and historians and aficionados will have a field day here.

Xingcheng's main drag is Xinghai Lu Er duan ( ), where you'll find hotels, a **Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*) with a 24-hour ATM, and restaurants. From the train station head right, take the first left, and then a quick right to get onto Xinghai Lu Yi Duan. This merges into Er Duan (Section 2) in a kilometre.

 **Sights**

## Old City *HISTORIC SITE*

(*Lao Cheng*) The walled city, dating back to 1430, is the principal reason to visit Xingcheng. Modern Xingcheng has grown up around it, but it's still home to around 3000 people. You can enter by any of the four gates, but the easiest one to find is the **south gate** (*nanmen*), which is just off Xinghai Lu Er Duan. There are signs in English and Chinese pointing the way.

In addition to the **City Walls** (*Chengqiang*; admission ¥25; ☺ 8am-5pm), the **Drum Tower** (*Gulou*; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-5pm), which sits slap in the middle of the Old City, and the watchtower on the southeastern corner of the city are all intact. You can do a complete circuit of the walls in around an hour.

Also inside the Old City is the **Gao House** (*Jiangjun Fu*; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-5pm), the former residence of General Gao Rulian, who was one of Xingcheng's most famous sons. The impressive and well-maintained **Confucius Temple** (*Wenmiao*; admission ¥35; ☺ 8am-5pm), built in 1430, is reputedly the oldest temple in northeastern China. Don't miss the incredibly incongruous **dinosaur museum** at the back of the grounds.

If you plan on seeing all the above, buy the ¥80 pass that grants admission to every paid site within the walled town.

## BEACHES

Xingcheng's imaginatively named **Beach 1** (), **Beach 2** () and **Beach 3** () are pretty enough, with groomed golden sands and calm waters, but are not particularly special.

At Beach 1 look for a statue honouring **Juhua Nu** (the Chrysanthemum Woman). According to local legend, she changed herself into an island to protect Xingcheng from a sea dragon. This island, **Juhua Dao**, lies 9km off the coast and is home to a fishing community, a small beach and a couple of temples. Daily **ferries** (round trip ¥175; ☺ depart 8.30am & 10am, return noon, 2pm & 5.30pm) leave from the northern end of Beach 1.

Bus 1 (¥1) travels from Xinghai Lu to Beach 1 (9km from the city centre) in about 30 minutes, and then further north to Beach 2 and Beach 3. A taxi to the area costs ¥15 to ¥20.

## Sleeping

Cheap hotels around the train station won't accept foreigners. Small hotels line the street across from Beach 1, but again, the budget places won't accept foreigners. Rooms in ordinary beach hotels go for hundreds a night even in the off season.

### **Jin Zhong Zi Da Sha** HOTEL \$\$

(📍 352 1111; 9 Xinghai Lu Yi Duan; 9 r from ¥398; 🍷@) Right in the heart of the city on a busy intersection, this hotel offers comfortable rooms, free broadband internet and a good attached restaurant (dishes from ¥16 to ¥36). With the standard discount a double goes for around ¥200.

### **Ya Yi Xuan Binguan** HOTEL \$

(Xinghai Lu Yi Duan; 📍 513 4488; d ¥158-188, tw ¥228; 🍷@) Rooms are spacious though somewhat cheaply furnished in this new hotel, a five-minute walk from the train station heading into town. The pricier doubles and twins come with computers and broadband internet.

## Eating

Unsurprisingly, seafood is big here. Restaurants line the beachfront at Beach 1, where you can pick your crustacean or fish from the tanks in which they await their death.

The restaurant in the **Jin Zhong Zi Da Sha** (dishes ¥16-36; ☺ breakfast, lunch & dinner) serves an excellent range of seafood, meat and vegetable dishes. There's a picture menu and also display items you can point to. Around the hotel you'll find other seafood and stir-fry places, many also with picture menus.

In the evenings, head to the tents outside the South Gate for barbecued meats and vegetables served with plenty of beer.

## Getting There & Away

Xingcheng is a stop for many trains between Beijing and Ha'erbin (and



all cities in between). It can be easier to get a bus out than a train, but head to **Jinzhou South Station** for comfortable D trains to major cities. Note that buses and trains from Xingcheng go to the main station in Jinzhou first; there are buses (¥5, 30 minutes) out the front of the South Station.

### **Bus**

Xingcheng's bus station (; Xingcheng shi keyun zhan) is just to the left of the train station.

**Beijing** ¥131, one daily (8.10am)

**Jinzhou** ¥18, two hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am-3.30pm)

**Shanhaiguan** ¥20.50, two hours, two daily (6.50am and 7.40am)

**Shenyang** ¥81, 3½ hours, five daily

### **Train**

**Beijing** hard/soft seat ¥63/110, six to seven hours, six daily

**Jinzhou** seat ¥13, one hour, several morning trains then again late afternoon

**Shanhaiguan** hard/soft seat ¥17/27, 1½ hours

**Shenyang** hard/soft seat ¥47/72, four hours



# Jilin

POP 27.1 MILLION

## Includes »

[Changbai Shan](#)

[Yanji](#)

[Ji'an](#)

[Beidahu Ski Resort](#)

[Changchun](#)

---

## Why Go?

A flirty province, Jilin ( teases with the ancient and the modern, the artificial and the supernatural. Travellers tired of great walls and imperial facades can explore Western-influenced palaces and the ruins of an ancient Korean kingdom. In fact much of the far-eastern region comprises the little-known Korean Autonomous Prefecture, home to more than one million ethnic Koreans. Kimchi and cold noodles dominate the menu here and there's an easy acceptance of

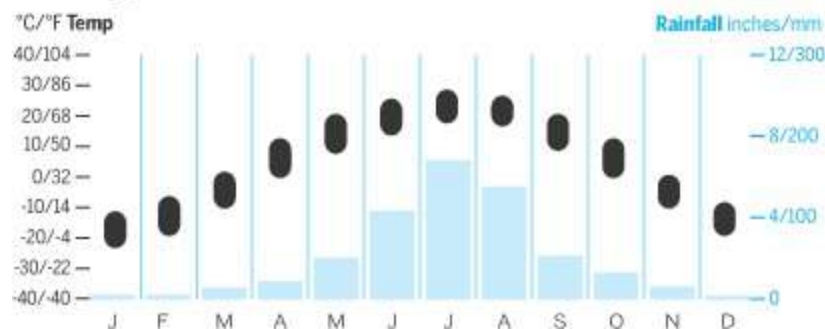
outsiders.

Known for its motor cities and smokestack towns, Jilin is also a popular ski destination and boasts China's largest nature reserve. So go for the contrasts? No, go for the superlatives. Heaven Lake, a stunning, deep-blue volcanic crater lake within the country's largest reserve, is one of China's most mesmerising natural wonders. Jilin can be a little rough around the edges at times, but its rewards are pure polished jewels.

---

## When to Go

### Chángchūn



**Jun–Sep** Best months to visit Changbai Shan.

**Jul–Aug** Country-side around the Korean Autonomous Prefecture at its most bucolic.

**Nov–Mar** Ski season at Beidahu Ski Resort.

---

## Best Landscapes

- » Heaven Lake ([Click here](#))
- » Yanji to Baihe ([Click here](#))
- » Wandu Mountain City ([Click here](#))

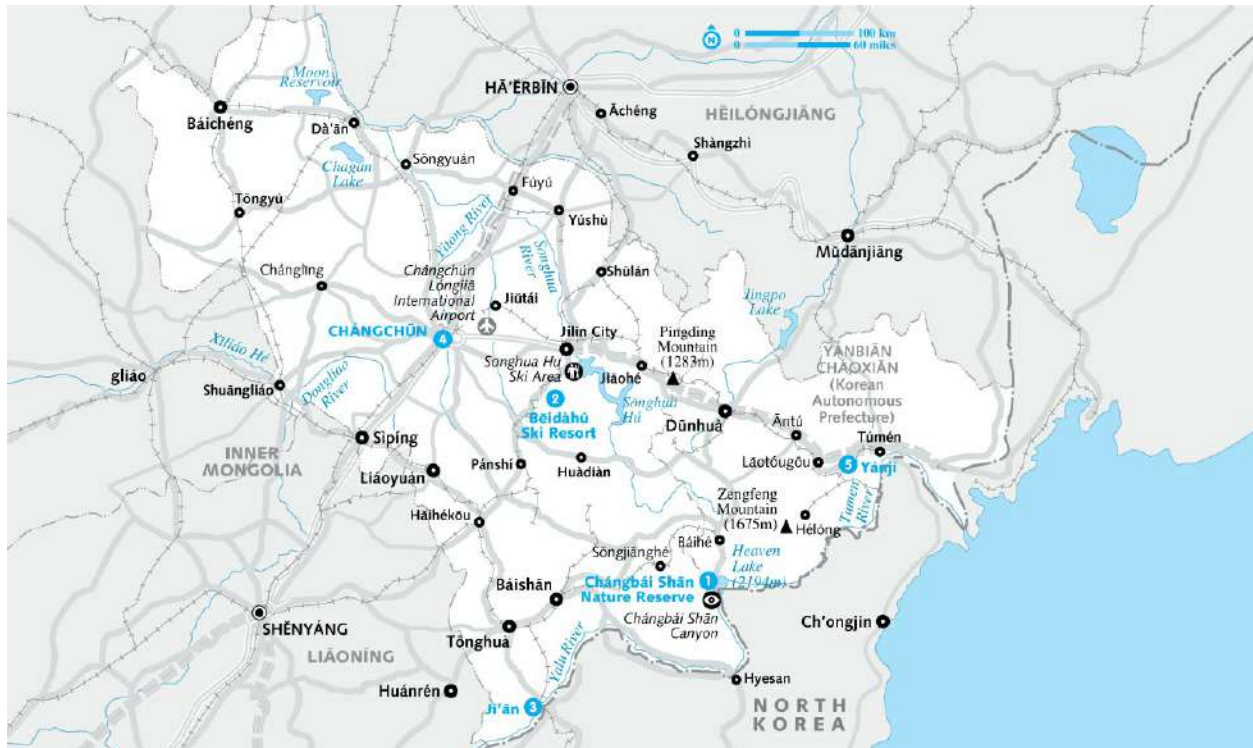
---

## Best Historical Sights

- » Puppet Emperor's Palace ([Click here](#))

» Koguryo Kingdom ([Click here](#))

» Banruo Temple ([Click here](#))



## Jilin Highlights

- 1 Visit China's largest nature reserve, **Changbai Shan** ([Click here](#)), with its waterfalls, birch forests and aptly named **Heaven Lake** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Hit the slopes at the **Beidahu Ski Resort** ([Click here](#)), one of China's premier skiing spots
- 3 Explore the mysterious remains of the ancient Koguryo kingdom in **Ji'an** ([Click here](#)), just across the Yalu River from North Korea
- 4 Go on the trail of Puyi, the last emperor of China, at the Imperial Palace of Manchu State in **Changchun** ([Click here](#))
- 5 See China's ethnic Korean culture in **Yanji** ([Click here](#))

## History

Korean kings once ruled parts of Jilin and the discovery of important relics from the ancient Koguryo kingdom (37 BC–AD 668) in the small southeastern city of Ji'an has resulted in the area being designated a World Heritage Site by Unesco.

The Japanese occupation of Manchuria in the early 1930s pushed Jilin to the world's centre stage. Changchun became the capital of what the Japanese called Manchukuo, with Puyi (the last emperor of the Qing dynasty) given the role of figurehead of the puppet government. In 1944 the Russians wrested control of Jilin from the Japanese and, after stripping the area of its industrial base, handed the region back to Chinese control. For the next several years Jilin would pay a heavy price as one of the frontlines in the civil war between the Kuomintang and the Chinese Communist Party (CCP).

Jilin's border with North Korea has dominated the region's more recent history. Since the mid-1990s, thousands of North Koreans have fled into China to escape extreme food shortages. The Chinese government has not looked favourably on these migrants, refusing to grant them protected refugee status.

## Climate

Jilin is bitterly cold during its long winter, with heavy snow, freezing winds and temperatures as low as  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ . In contrast, summer is pleasantly warm, especially along the coastal east, but short. Rainfall is moderate.

## Language

Mandarin is the standard language across Jilin. Korean is widely spoken in the Korean Autonomous Prefecture in the east of the province.

### Getting There & Around

The rail and bus network connects all major cities and towns, but not many daily trains head east. The new airport connects Changbai Shan with Changchun and other major Chinese cities.

---

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

---

## Changbai Shan

[BAIHE/NORTHERN SLOPE](#) 📍 0433

[SONGJIANGHE/WESTERN SLOPE](#) 📍 0439

Changbai Shan (Ever-White Mountains), China's largest nature reserve, covers 2100 sq km (densely forested) on the eastern edge of Jilin. By far the region's top attraction, the park's greenery and open space offers a very welcome contrast to Jilin's industrial cities.

The centrepiece of Changbai Shan is the spellbinding Heaven Lake, whose blue waters stretch across an outsized volcanic crater straddling the China–North Korea border. Heaven Lake's beauty and mystical reputation, including its Loch Ness–style monster (*guaiwu*), lures visitors from all over China, as well as many South Koreans. For the latter, the area is known as Mt Paekdu, or Paekdusan. North Korea claims that Kim Jung-il was born here (although he's believed to have entered the world in Khabarovsk, Russia).

At lower elevations, the park's forests are filled with white birch, Korean pines and hundreds of varieties of plants, including the much-prized Changbai Shan ginseng. Above 2000m the landscape changes dramatically into a subalpine zone of short grasses and herbs. Giant patches of ice cover parts of the jagged peaks even in mid-June, and

mountain streams rush down the treeless, rocky slopes. With the lake at an altitude of nearly 2200m, visitors should be prepared for lower temperatures. It might be sunny and hot when you enter the reserve, but at higher altitudes strong winds, rain and snow are possible.

Changbai Shan has two main recreation areas: the northern slope (Bei Po) and the western slope (Xi Po), and the entrance areas are separated by 100km of road. Visitors to either area are limited to a few sights and a few short walks. Changbai Shan is unfortunately geared towards Chinese tour groups rather than independent travellers, and a multibillion-yuan project is under way to turn the park into a luxury sightseeing zone – a Banff of sorts, with hot springs resorts, skiing and golf courses but little hiking or camping. In late 2012 a new ski resort area was about to open west of Changbai Shan, and with 20 runs over two mountains this area might offer some decent hiking in summer. Certainly the skiing should be superlative in the winter. Ask around when you arrive.

Though you can visit most of the year, unless you are coming to ski the best time to see the crater (and be assured the roads are open) is from June to early September. Accommodation is widely available, including within the park, but most travellers stay in the respective gateway towns of Baihe and scruffy Songjianghe.

## NORTHERN SLOPE

The views of Heaven Lake from the **northern slope** (*Bei Po*; admission ¥125, transport fee ¥85; ☺ 7am-6pm) are the best. The gateway town for this area, where most travellers spend the night, is **Baihe** ().

You can see all the sights below in half a day.

## Sights & Activities

### Heaven Lake CRATER LAKE

(; Tian Chi) This two-million-year-old crater lake, 13km in circumference, sits at an altitude of 2194m and is surrounded by rock outcrops and 16 mountainous peaks. The highest, **White Rock Peak** (Baiyan Feng), soars to 2749m and can be climbed if you have

permits and are with a Chinese tour group. Legend has it that the lake is home to a large, but shy, beastie that has the magical power to blur any photo taken of him.

Hiking to the lakeside area is prohibited but you can enjoy panoramic views from the crater lip. To get here take a 4WD vehicle from the park's main transport junction. Note that the ride costs an extra ¥80 over the regular park transport and admission fee.

## **Changbai Waterfall** *WATERFALL*

(; Changbai Pubu) The first park bus you take will drop you off at a junction/ parking lot (*lukou*). From here you can either catch a 4WD vehicle to Heaven Lake, or a shuttle up to Yuehua Plaza (; Yuehua Guangchang), in essence another big parking lot. On the edge of the lot is a small area of **hot springs** where you can soak your feet, or boil an egg, and past that a short trail leads quickly to the viewpoint for the magnificent 68m Changbai Waterfall. In the past you could follow the dramatic-looking caged trail beside the falls up the back canyon, but that route is now officially sealed. And don't bother trying to sneak in; park staff will quickly call you back.

If you want to get in a short hike, follow the road 1.5km up from the junction, and at the Green Deep Pool area join the 3.5km-long boardwalk running through birch forests to the falls.

## **Green Deep Pool** *POOL*

(; Lu Yuan Tan) At the beginning (or end) of the boardwalk from Changbai Water- fall, cross the lot and head up the stairs to this aptly named river pool. Buses run from here down to the junction and the Underground Forest.

## **Underground Forest** *FOREST PARK*

(; Dixia Senlin) Lying between the park entrance and junction, this verdant woodland area, also known as the Dell Forest (; Gudi Senlin), has a few trails with an hour's worth of hiking. Buses run from here back to the junction and north gate. If the trail is opened you can also hike here from the junction. The path is just over 3km and starts



across the parking lot past the bathrooms.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There are overpriced hotels and restaurants inside the park, but most people stay in Erdao Baihe, generally called Baihe, about 20km north of the reserve. The town is divided into three rather distinct sections: the train station area, the dusty main drag (Baishan Jie) a few kilometres away, and the pleasant riverside strip (Baihe Dajie) which is gradually being turned into a modern luxury village. There's lodging and small restaurants in all areas. Baishan Jie has a fruit street just around the corner from the Xinda Hotel. In the evenings the second half of the street hosts a row of barbecue stalls.

A taxi from the train station into town costs ¥10.

## **BAIHE**

On your arrival at the train or bus station, touts for cheap guesthouses will likely approach. Many of these guesthouses can be found in the small lane just past the Woodland Youth Hostel. Private rooms without bathroom go for ¥30 to ¥80. The more expensive rooms sometimes have their own computer.



### **Woodland Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

( Wangsong Guoji Qingnian Lushu; ☎ 571 0800; [www.cbshan.net](http://www.cbshan.net); dm/tw ¥45/190; \*@📶) This friendly hostel offers male and female separated dorms, as well as basic, clean twins, and the usual hostel amenities such as restaurant (which faces a wooded park), laundry, wi-fi and travel information. The hostel runs its own shuttle to the North and Western slopes (¥30 and ¥70 respectively) and also offers overnight **camping trips** (¥350–1800) in the park.

To get here from the train station, exit and turn right, then left and walk to the main road. Turn right here, walk about 150m and look for the hostel sign.

### **Yajuge Shishang Binguan** GUESTHOUSE \$

( ☎ 139 4475 7965; d/tw ¥80/100) Set inside its own courtyard is this quaint guesthouse with a few small but tidy rooms. The guesthouse is

about 600m up the main road from the bus station as you head towards town. Look for a massive modern log-cabin-style restaurant; Yajuge Shishang is just to the right of that.

### **Zou Xian Ju Shishang Binguan** HOTEL \$\$

(📍 574 9555; *Baihe Dajie*; d/tw ¥398/498; 🌐📶) In the most modern district of town, and facing the pretty Baihe River, is this spotless hotel with bright stylish rooms and friendly management. The hotel is currently at the end of a strip of shops and small hotels, though by the time you read this the row may have been extended. Expect discounts of 30% to 40%.

### **Xinda Binguan** HOTEL \$\$

(📍 572 0444; *Baishan Jie*; d/tw incl breakfast ¥480/360; 🌐) On Baihe's main drag, at the north end of town across from the woods, this hotel offers a pleasant environment, cosy rooms as well as an attached restaurant. Small discounts are sometimes available.

### **Heshengyuan Yesheng Xiaoyuguan** SEAFOOD \$\$

(*dishes ¥18-48*) Next to the Woodland Hostel in Baihe is this primarily seafood restaurant matching flashy lights and good food. Staff are friendly but speak no English.

## **NORTHERN SLOPE**

### **Lanjing Spa Holiday Inn** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

(*Lanjing Wenquan Dujia Jiudian*; 📍 505 2222, 574 5555; r from ¥1702; 🌐📶) The top accommodation in the area, this 200-room European-style lodge (with obligatory touches of Chinese kitsch) is just 300m from the north gate entrance but quiet enough in its wooded setting off the main road. In addition to multiple food and beverage outlets, the inn features a high-end hot spring spa with indoor and outdoor facilities.

## **i Information**

The **Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; Baishan Jie*) is on the main street in Baihe towards the end of town and has an ATM.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Public transport only goes as far as Baihe.

**BUS** Buses leave from the **long-distance bus station** (*keyunzhan*). From the train station head to the main road; the station is across and to the left.

**Mudanjiang** ¥96, eight hours, one daily (6.55am)

**Yanji** ¥47, 3½ hours, five daily

**TRAIN** Trains from Baihe:

**Ji'an** hard/soft sleeper ¥64/98, eight hours, one daily at 10.25am

**Shenyang** hard/soft sleeper ¥100/156, 14 hours, three daily (6.47am, 5.35pm and 7.10pm)

**Songjianghe** seat ¥8, two hours, seven daily

**Tonghua** hard seat/sleeper ¥24/58, six to seven hours, six daily (6.40am to 7pm)

### **i** Getting Around

Hotels and hostels in Baihe can organise cheap, shared transport to the reserve (¥20 to ¥30), which usually leaves early morning and returns around 4pm. Taxis charge ¥60 to ¥70 (per car) for the one-way trip. Returning, it's usually easy to share a taxi back (per person ¥20).

Once you've entered the reserve's north gate, a park bus will take you to a junction/parking lot (*l u kou*) where you can board a 4WD for the final 16km trek to Heaven Lake or take other park buses to the waterfall, the Green Deep Pool and Underground Forest. The park bus rides are all included in your ticket, but the 4WD is another ¥80.

## THE WESTERN SLOPE

Changbai Shan's **western slope** (*Xi Po*; admission ¥125, transport fee ¥85; ☀ 7am-6pm) offers much the same experience as the northern. The setup is a little fancier, but as in the

north you have little chance of getting away from the crowds here. Once again the view from the crater is the main attraction, though the **Changbai Shan Canyon** (; Changbai Shan Daxiagu), a 200m wide and 100m deep gorge filled with dramatic rock formations, is also worth a look.

The **Woodland Youth Hostel** (📞 571 0800; [www.cbshan.net](http://www.cbshan.net)) in Baihe has a shuttle to the western slope for ¥70 per person return. Taxis also run the route for ¥200 one way.

The gateway town for the western slope is the dusty traffic-snarled town of **Songjianghe** 40km to the northwest, from where there are buses and trains to Tonghua and Shenyang. **Changbaishan Airport**, halfway between the park and Songjianghe, has flights to/from Shanghai (¥1830, 3½ hours), Changchun (¥850, 40 minutes) and Beijing (¥1130, two hours).

Songjianghe offers midrange accommodation similar to Baihe, while closer to the park a number of new resorts have popped up in recent years including **Days Hotel Landscape Resort** (*Lanjingdaisi Dujia Jiudian*; 📞 0433-633 7999; *r from ¥850*), a stylish lodge with a lobby fireplace, high-end eating and drinking venues, and wood, glass and stone decor that wouldn't look out of place at Lake Louise in Canada.

---

## Yanji

📞 0433 / POP 375,000

The relaxed and attractive capital of China's Korean Autonomous Prefecture has one foot across the nearby border with North Korea. About a third of the population is ethnic Korean and it's common to hear people speaking Korean rather than Mandarin, and to see Korean written on official road signs. The Bu'erhatong River (Bu'erhatong He) bisects the city and has pleasant parks and walkways running alongside. ATMS are all over the city including a 24-hour ATM at the Industrial & Commercial Bank of China (ICBC; ; Zhonguo Gongshang Yinhang) three blocks up from the train station at the corner of Changbaishan Xilu and Zhanqian Jie.

### Sleeping & Eating

There are a few budget hotels around the train station but it's a sleazy area and male travellers may find themselves directly solicited for sex.

### **Dianli Dasha** HOTEL \$

(📞 291 1881; 399 Guangming Lu; 399 tw ¥148-188, tr ¥225; 🌐📶)

Even the cheaper rooms here are spacious, clean and cosy, and that goes for the bathrooms too. With a great restaurant on the ground floor, wireless internet, and a good location near restaurants, shopping malls and the river, this hotel is an ideal spot to hang out in if you need a bit of time to unwind after a long haul on the road.

The hotel's **restaurant** (dishes ¥18-48; ☺ 6am-9pm) is packed every meal with outside guests devouring a range of excellent Korean dishes. There's a big picture-menu wall and plenty of side dishes (¥4 to ¥8) you can point to.

## **i** Getting There & Away

The train and bus stations are south of the river, while the commercial district is north. Taxi fares start at ¥5, and most rides cost less than ¥10.

Buses to Changchun or Jilin leave from in front of the train station. Yanji's long-distance **bus station** ( *keyun zhan*; 2319 Changbaishan Xilu) services:

**Erdao Baihe** ¥45, four hours, six daily (6.40am to 2.40pm)

**Hunchun** ¥28, two hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 3.30pm)

**Mudanjiang** ¥71, five hours, four daily (6.30am, 9.50am, 12.10pm and 4.30pm)

Train services:

**Changchun** hard seat/sleeper ¥70/124, eight to nine hours

**Jilin** hard seat/sleeper ¥52/98, six to eight hours

## **THE LITTLE-KNOWN KOREAN AUTONOMOUS PREFECTURE**

Ask people to list some of China's ethnic minorities and you will hear talk of Tibetans, Uighur, Mongolians, Hui and perhaps the Li or Dai. Mention that China also has almost two million ethnic Koreans, and that the majority live in their own autonomous prefecture along the North Korean border, and you'll likely get some astonished looks.

The **Yanbian Korean Autonomous Prefecture** (; Yanbian Chaoxianzu Zizhizhou) is the only minority prefecture in the north of China. While established in 1955, in part as a

reward for Koreans who fought on the side of the communists in the Civil War, the region has in fact been settled by Koreans since the 1880s. These days, street signs are officially bilingual; much of the population is also bilingual thanks to state-sponsored Korean-language schools; TV shows and newspapers are in Korean; and ethnic food is ubiquitous.

Over the past decades, however, the percentage of ethnic Koreans has dropped steadily: from 60% in the 1950s to 38% today. In part this reflects the Chinese government's desire to stamp out any potential for irredentism (many Koreans refer to Yanbian as the 'third Korea', after the South and North) by encouraging Han migrants. More positively, it seems to indicate that the well-educated ethnic population experiences little to no discrimination in seeking employment or advancement outside the prefecture. Yanbian may occupy a quarter of all Jilin province (it's about half the size of South Korea), but the population is little more than two million, and opportunities are limited.

Major tourist attractions are also surprisingly scarce. The most famous sight in fact may be the sliver of land at the very eastern edge of the prefecture. Here, from a platform vantage point, you can see Russia to the north, North Korea to the south, China to the west, and sometimes the Sea of Japan to the east. If this sounds appealing, catch a bus from Yanji east to Hunchun (; ¥23, two hours, every 30 minutes), and then grab a taxi to Fangchuan () about 70km away. Tell the driver (if he hasn't already guessed) you want to go to [Yi Yan Wang San Guo](#) ( admission \$20), the name of the platform where you can see the three countries.

For those doing an extensive tour of northern China, consider looping up through Yanbian as you go from Dandong or Changbaishan to Ha'erbin. The regional capital, Yanji, is an attractive laid-back place, loaded with excellent Korean food, and the routes in and out run hour after hour through a bucolic landscape of corn fields, rolling forested hills and little brick villages.

---

## Ji'an

 0435 / POP 240,000

This small city, just across the Yalu River from North Korea, was once part of the Koguryo (; Gaogouli) kingdom, a Korean dynasty that ruled areas of northern China and the Korean peninsula from 37 BC to AD 668. Ji'an's extensive Koguryo pyramids, ruins and tombs resulted in Unesco designating it a World Heritage Site in 2004. Archaeologists have unearthed remains of three cities plus some 40 tombs around Ji'an and the town of Huanren (in Liaoning province).

With a drive to capitalise on its Korean heritage's tourism potential, modern-day Ji'an has transformed itself into one of northern China's more pleasant towns, with well-tended parks, leafy streets and a beautiful new riverfront area where you can gaze across to North

Korea. Add in the town's 360-degree mountain backdrop, excellent Korean food, friendly locals and scenic train or bus rides getting here, and it's a great little stopover on a loop through Dongbei.

Shengli Lu runs east–west through town, with the long-distance bus station at the west end. The main north–south road is Li Ming Jie, which ends at the river park. It's easy to walk around town and you can pick up a good English-language map (¥5) of Ji'an and the surrounding area at any hotel. There's a **Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; Shengli Lu*) just east of the junction of Shengli Lu and Li Ming Jie with a 24-hour ATM.

Summer evenings are lively in Ji'an, both at the riverside and the park across from the Cuiyuan Binguan (hotel) where live amateur performances of traditional song and dance are held most nights.

## Sights

The main sights other than the river park are scattered on the outskirts of the city. You could cover them on foot in a long day, but most people hire a taxi. Expect to pay at least ¥100 for a three- to four-hour tour.

The **Koguryo sites** (🕒 *8am-5pm*) are spread around the very lovely green hills surrounding Ji'an. Despite their historical significance, most sites don't have a terrible amount of detail to examine. Many of the tombs are cairns – essentially heaps of stones piled above burial sites – while others are stone pyramids. But there is something magical about the open fields and high terraces they were constructed on that makes you want to linger. The most impressive site, Wandu Mountain City, needs a couple of hours to cover its expansive grounds. It's best to get your taxi to drop you off here at the end (negotiate a lower rate if you do). You can easily walk back to Ji'an on Shancheng Rd in less than an hour, following the river down the valley.

A ¥100 ticket gets you into the four most important sites; you can also buy separate tickets for each sight for ¥30.

### **Jiangjunfen (General 's Tomb)** TOMB

( ) One of the largest pyramid-like structures in the region, the 12m-tall

Jiangjunfen was built during the 4th century for a Koguryo ruler. The nearby smaller tomb is the resting place of a family member. The site is set among the hills 4km northeast of town.

### **Haotaiwang Stele** *STELE*

(; Haotaiwang Bei) Inscribed with 1775 Chinese characters, the Haotaiwang Stele, a 6m-tall stone slab that dates to AD 415, records the accomplishments of Koguryo king Tan De (374–412), known as Haotaiwang. Tan De's tomb (labelled 'Taiwang Tomb') is on the same site, and you can enter and see the stone burial slabs.

### **Cemetery of Noblemen at Yushan** *TOMBS*

(; Yushan Guizu Mudi) Scattered about a small gated park lie the stone crypts of various Koguryo-kingdom noblemen. You can enter and explore Tomb No 5 (wait for the guide) via a creepy descent underground. As your eyes adjust to the light in the chilly stone chamber look, for paintings of dragons, white tigers, black tortoises and lotus flowers on the walls and ceilings.



### **Wandu Mountain City** *RUIN*

(; Wandu Shancheng) First built in AD 3, the city became capital of the Koguryo kingdom in 209, after the fall of the first capital, Guonei city (on the site of present-day Ji'an). There's little left of the original buildings, but the layout has been cleared and it's still immensely enjoyable scrambling about the terraces and taking in the views that surely must have been a deciding factor in establishing the capital here.

Down on the plains below the city, on a large shelf above the river, sits Ji'an's largest collection of giant stone **cairns**. Erected after the destruction of Wandu, this vast cemetery for the city's noblemen is so far unaffected by many tourists or tourism infrastructure. The sight of the massive rock piles in fields of Spanish needle (*Bidens pilosa*) is probably the most photogenic in all Ji'an.

### **Riverside Plaza** *WATERFRONT*



This lively modern waterfront park features stone fountains, landscaped gardens, cobbled walkways, carp pools, lotus ponds, statues and riverside decks where you can view North Korea across the Yalu River. The centrepiece, the very sleek **Ji'an Museum** (; Ji'an Bowuguan), sports a brown stone base and glass top with sails that open up like leaves. The museum has existed in a state of limbo for several years now, but locals believe it will finally open in 2013. Naturally, it will display artefacts from the Koguryo era.

To get to the park, walk east on Shengli Lu to the corner of Jian She Jie.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Luming Binguan** HOTEL \$

( 📞 625 6988; 653 Shengli Lu; 653 s/tw without bathroom ¥40/60, d with bathroom & incl breakfast ¥138-158; 📧📍) Friendly staff and well-kept rooms make this Ji'an's best budget option. It's three blocks east of the bus station on the north side of Shengli Lu just before you reach Liming Jie. Look for the English sign reading 'Guesthouse' above the entrance. Some rooms have their own computer.

### **Cuiyuan Binguan** HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 622 2123; [www.jiancy.com](http://www.jiancy.com); 888 Shengli Lu; 888 d/tw ¥488/344) Two blocks east of the bus station, and across from a cute park with a cobbled stream running through it, Cuiyuan Binguan offers good midrange comfort. Rooms usually go for around ¥200 after discounts.

### **Pu Jia Gourou Lengmian Cheng** KOREAN \$\$

( cnr Shengli Lu & Dongsheng Lu; dishes ¥6-38) The speciality here, as in many restaurants around town, is dog meat, but it also serves great *lengmian* (; cold noodles) and *shuijiao* (; dumplings). The characters for dog meat are in case you want to ensure that you don't eat any.

Head to the markets east and west of Liming Jie for fruit, dumplings, bread and barbecue. Dongsheng Lu has dumpling and barbecue

restaurants, Tuanjie Lu is home to cafes and Chinese fast-food joints, while Liming Jie offers a number of hotpot and barbecue spots.

## **i** Getting There & Away

The main routes to Ji'an are via Tonghua and Baihe (gateway to Changbai Shan) to the north, or Shenyang and Dandong in Liaoning province to the west and south. If you're travelling to Baihe by bus, you need to change in Tonghua. If travelling up to Changchun it's probably faster to take a bus, as by train you'll need to change at Tonghua.

The **long-distance bus station** (*keyun zhan; Shengli Lu*) is in the west part of town.

**Changchun** ¥109, 5½ hours, two daily (5.30am and 2.50pm)

**Dandong** ¥73, six hours, two daily (7.30am and 9.20am)

**Shenyang** ¥97, six hours, three daily (6.20am, 11.20am and 2.55pm)

**Tonghua** ¥28, two hours, every two hours (5am to 5pm)

The **train station** (*Yanjiang Lu*) is in the northeast part of town. There's one slow but scenic train ride a day to Baihe (hard/soft sleeper ¥64/98, eight hours) departing at 9am.

---

## Beidahu Ski Resort

Since it hosted the 2007 Asian Winter Games, **Beidahu** (*Beidahu Huaxuechang; [www.beidahuski.com](http://www.beidahuski.com)*) has established itself as one of China's premier ski resorts. Located in a tiny village 53km south of Jilin, the resort has runs on two mountains ranging from beginner to advanced. Though it hasn't turned a profit since 2009, Beidahu is seeing renewed investment resulting in an additional 10km of runs being added each year. For more on skiing here, including tour, transport and accommodation information, see the **China Ski Tours** (*[www.chinaskitours.com/home.html](http://www.chinaskitours.com/home.html)*) website and the box text [Click here](#).

---

# Changchun

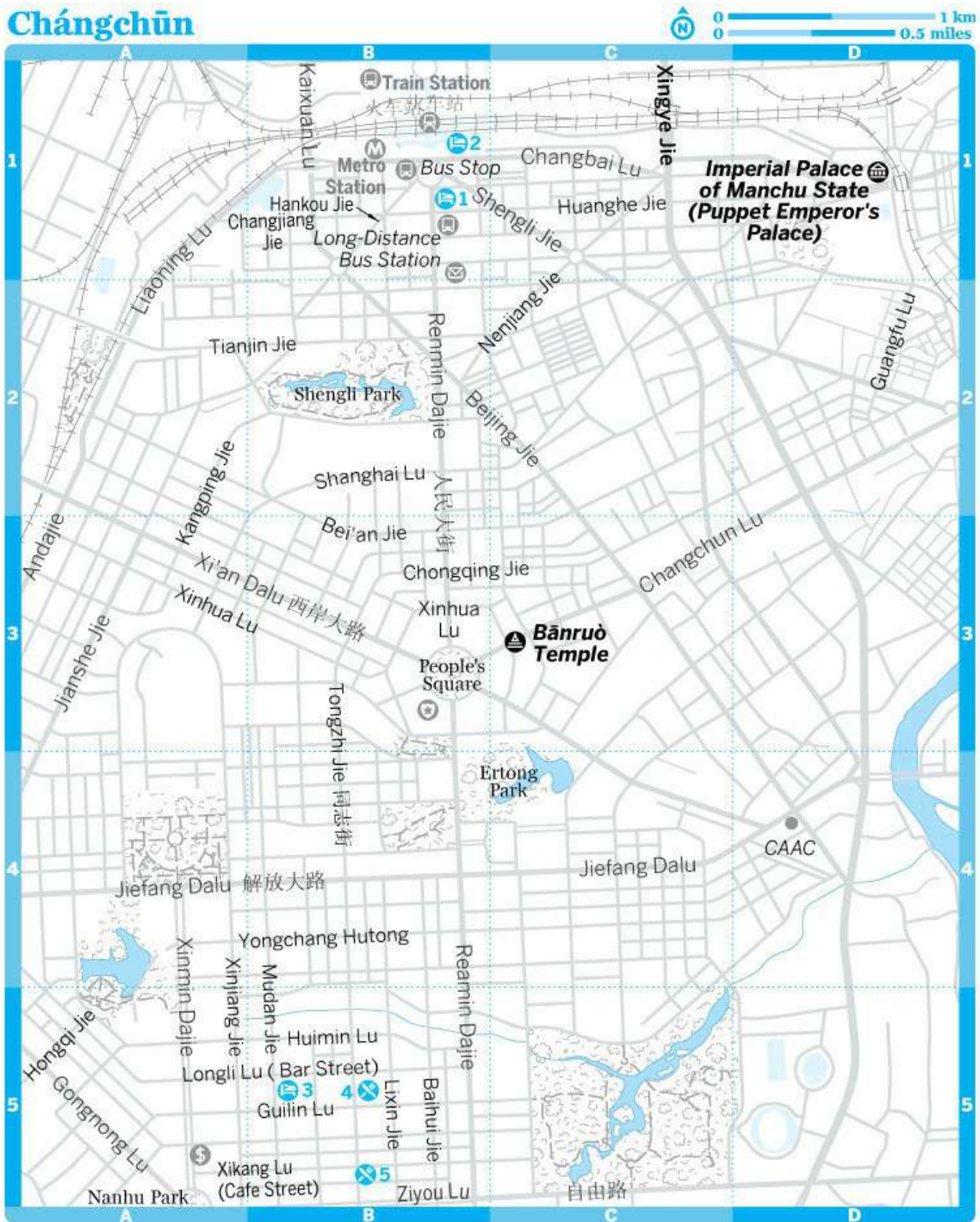
 0431 / POP 2.93 MILLION

The Japanese capital of Manchukuo between 1933 and 1945, Changchun was also the centre of the Chinese film industry in the 1950s and '60s. Visitors expecting a Hollywood-like backdrop of palm trees and beautiful people will be disappointed, though. Changchun is now better known as China's motor city, the largest automobile-manufacturing base in the country.

But for people on the trail of Puyi, China's last emperor, it's an essential stop. There are also a fair few historic buildings dating back to the early days of the 20th century, mostly along and off Renmin Dajie.

Changchun sprawls from north to south. The long-distance bus station and the train station are in the north end of the city and surrounded by budget hotels. If you plan on more than an overnight in Changchun, however, the southern end is by far a more pleasant neighbourhood to stay.

# Chángchūn



# Changchun

## Top Sights

[Banruo Temple](#) C3

[Imperial Palace of Manchu State \(Puppet Emperor's Palace\)](#) D1

## Sleeping

1 [Chunyi Binguan](#) B1

2 [Home Inn](#) B1

3 [Star Moon Fashion Inn](#) B5

## Eating

4 [French Bakery](#) B5

5 [Shinza Restaurant](#) B5

## Sights



### Imperial Palace of Manchu State (Puppet Emperor's Palace) MUSEUM

Offline map

Google map

( *Weiman Huanggong Bowuyuan*; 5 Guangfu Lu; admission ¥80; 🕒 8.30am-4.20pm, last entry 40min before closing) Changchun's main attraction is the former residence of Puyi, the Qing dynasty's final emperor. His story was the basis for the 1987 Bernardo Bertolucci film *The Last Emperor*.

In 1908, at age two, Puyi became the 10th Qing emperor. His reign lasted just over three years, but he was allowed to remain in the Forbidden City until 1924. Subsequently, he lived in Tianjin until 1932, when the Japanese installed him at this palace as the 'puppet emperor' of Manchukuo. After Japan's defeat in 1945, Puyi was captured by Russian troops. In 1950 he was returned to China, where he spent 10 years in a re-education camp before ending his days as a gardener in Beijing. Puyi died in 1967.

Puyi's study, bedroom and temple, as well as his wife's quarters (including her opium den) and his concubine's rooms, have all been

elaborately re-created. His American car is also on display, but it's the exhibition on his extraordinary life, told in part with a fantastic collection of photos, that is most enthralling. A taxi from the train station here costs ¥7.

## Banruo Temple *BUDDHIST*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Banruo Si; 137 Changchun Lu*) One of the largest Buddhist temples in the northeast, Banruo is a lively place of worship for locals and pilgrims alike. After touring the inner grounds, wander the back alleys to observe the merchants peddling all manner of charms, statues, shrines and incense to the faithful.

To get here take bus 281 or 256 from the train-station area bus station. You can also walk in about 30 minutes, passing by the attractive grounds of Shengli Park on the way.

## Jingyuetan *PARK*

(*Jingyuetan Luyouqu; admission ¥30; ☺ 24hr*) This massive lakeside park on the southeast outskirts of Changchun encompasses more than 90 sq km and is a most welcome break if you have to spend any time in the motor city. Established in 1934, it features well-tended gardens, pavilions, lookouts and a 20km round-the-lake bike path. Shuttle buses (¥10) take you to the dam, where you can take boat rides. At the front gate there are bike rentals (¥30 per hour) but note that shuttle buses, boats and bikes are only available from 9am to 6pm.

The easiest way to get here is to take the light rail from the station on Liaoning Lu (¥4, 55 minutes) to Jingyue Gongyuan Station.

## **Sleeping**

There are half a dozen budget hotels within walking distance of the train station, with rooms (most with broadband internet) going for between ¥140 and ¥180.

## Chunyi Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 8209 6888; [www.chunyahotel.com](http://www.chunyahotel.com); 80 Renmin Dajie; 80 r incl breakfast from ¥680; 🚭📶) The old-school charm has diminished a little since this place was built back in 1909; however, it retains a gorgeous marble staircase and foyer, and is arguably a more comfortable place to stay now. The rooms and bathrooms are huge, and as a sop to modern times feature broadband internet.

The hotel is opposite the train station. Discounts of 40% are available.

## Star Moon Fashion Inn HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xingyue Shishang Jiudian; 📍 8509 0555; [www.starmoon.inn.com.cn](http://www.starmoon.inn.com.cn); 1166 Longli Lu; 1166 d from ¥148; 🚭📶) For a grey industrial city, Changchun has its share of fashion inns. This modern hotel is in a great location near shops, restaurants and nightlife.

## Home Inn HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Rujia Kuaijie Jiudian; 📍 8986 3000; 20 Changbai Lu; 20 r ¥159-209; 🚭📶) If you need a nonsmoking option near the train station, this branch of the well-run, always spotlessly clean nationwide chain is a good choice. Rooms have broadband internet and there's also a computer in the lobby for guest use.

## Eating & Drinking

Tongzhi Jie (and all the radiating lanes) between Huimin Lu and Ziyou Lu is one of the most happening and pleasant parts of Changchun. The streets are packed with inexpensive restaurants, music and clothes shops, while tree-lined Xikang Lu (west of Tongzhi Jie) is now an unofficial **cafe street**. Most of the dozen or so cafes have wi-fi and some offer sandwiches and other simple meals.

## Shinza Restaurant KOREAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Yanbian Xinzi Fandian; 728 Xikang Lu; dishes ¥12-38; ☺ 9am-midnight*) This comfortable dining establishment offers Korean classics such as *shi guo ban fan* (rice, vegetables and eggs served in a clay pot) as well as dumplings and filling cold noodle dishes. Korean beers are also available and there's a picture menu to help you order.

## French Bakery BISTRO \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Hong Mofang; 745 Guilin Lu; dishes ¥10-25; ☺ 9am-10pm*) There are places nearby on Xikang Lu that are just as good for a coffee but this wood-panelled cafe also sells real Western-style bread loafs, sandwiches, quiche and desserts.

## **i** Information

There are 24-hour ATMs all over town. Most hotels have in-room broadband internet and you'll find wi-fi at the cafes on Xikang Lu.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; 1296 Xinmin Dajie*) Near Nanhu Park (Nanhu Gongyuan). Will change travellers cheques.

**CAAC** (*Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 8298 8888; 480 Jiefang Dalu*) In the CAAC Hotel. For air tickets and shuttle buses to airport.

## **i** Getting There & Away

**AIR** The **Changchun Longjia International Airport** has daily flights to major cities including Beijing (¥960, two hours), Dalian (¥580, 1½ hours), Shanghai (¥1600, three hours) and also Changbai Shan (¥850, 2½ hours).

**BUS** The **long-distance bus station** (*changtu qichezhan; 226 Renmin Dajie*) is two blocks south of the train station. Buses to Ha'erbin leave from the north bus station (*beizhan*) behind the train station. Facing the station, head left and take the underpass just past



the 24-hour KFC (not to be confused with the non-24-hour KFC to the right of the train station, or the two across the street).

**Dandong** ¥130, six hours, one daily at 9am

**Ha'erbin** ¥77, 3½ hours, hourly

**Jilin** ¥29, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Shenyang** ¥83, 4½ hours, every 30 minutes

**TRAIN** The following leave from Changchun:

**Beijing** (D train) seat ¥227, seven hours, seven daily

**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥130/224, nine to 14 hours

**Ha'erbin** (D train) seat ¥72, two hours, five daily

**Shenyang** (D train) seat ¥88, 2½ hours, 12 daily

## Getting Around

**TO/FROM THE AIRPORT** The airport is 20km east of the city centre, between Changchun and Jilin. Shuttle buses to the airport (¥20, 50 minutes, every 30 minutes from 6am to 7pm) leave from the **CAAC Hotel** (*Minhang Binguan; 480 Jiefang Dalu*) on the east side of town. Taxi fares to the airport are ¥80 to ¥100 for the 40-minute trip.

**BUS** Bus 6 follows Renmin Dajie from the train-area bus station all the way to the south part of town. Buses 62 and 362 travel between the train station and Nanhu Park via the Chongqing Lu and Tongzhi Jie shopping districts.

**LIGHT RAIL** The **Changchun Light Rail** (🚇 6.30am-9pm) service is only useful for getting to Jingyuetan park. The station is just west of the train station.

**TAXI** Fares start at ¥5.



# Heilongjiang

POP 37.3 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Ha'erbin](#)

[Mudanjiang](#)

[Around Mudanjiang](#)

[Wudalian Chi](#)

[Russian Borderlands](#)

---

## Why Go?

It's cold in China's northernmost province, sub-Arctic cold – but that frigid weather is put to good use. Winter is peak tourist season, and with a world-renowned ice sculpture festival and some of China's finest ski runs it's worth swaddling yourself in layers and joining the crowds.

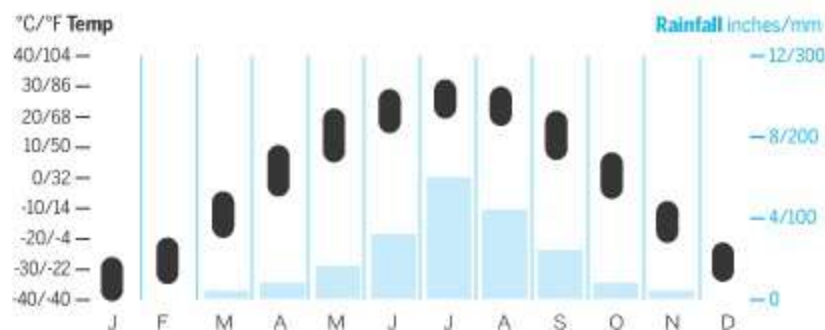
Heilongjiang (黑龍江) means Black Dragon River, and this particular coiling dragon is the separating line between China and Russia. Across the province a neighbourly influence is evident in architecture, food and even souvenirs. Ha'erbin's famed cobblestoned streets and European-style facades are just the beginning.

Outside the cities, Heilongjiang is a rugged, beautiful landscape of forests, lakes, mountains and dormant volcanoes. In Mohe, China's most northerly village, the meadows and marshes have a magnetic pull all their own, and the bragging rights to say you have stood at the very top of the Middle Kingdom may in fact be worth the 21-hour train ride to get there.

---

## When to Go

### Hā'ěrbīn



**Jan** Ha'erbin hosts the ice and snow festival.

**Jun** Mohe holds the northern lights festival.

**Dec–Mar** Ski season at Yabuli.

---

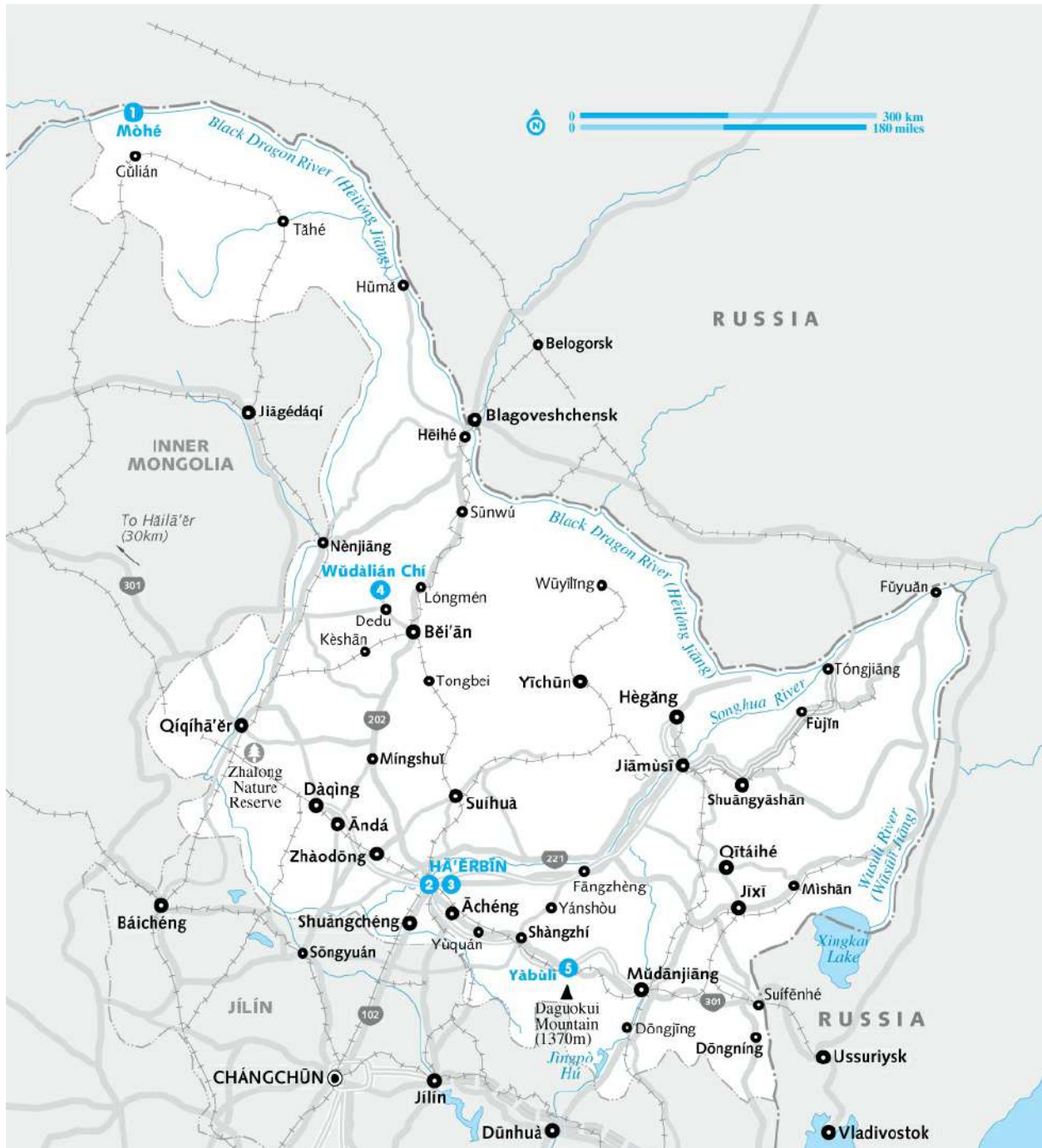
## Best Landscapes

- » Laohei Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Beijicun ([Click here](#))
- » Jingpo Hu ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Activities

- » Skiing ([Click here](#))
- » Watching the Northern Lights ([Click here](#))
- » Ice and Snow Festival ([Click here](#))



## Heilongjiang Highlights

- ❶ Visit China's 'North Pole Village' and see the spectacular **aurora borealis** ([Click here](#)) in Mohe
- ❷ Brave the cold and join the crowds who flock to Ha'erbin's world-famous **ice and snow festival** ([Click here](#))

- 3 Walk the brick-lined streets of the historic **Daoliqu district** ([Click here](#)) and explore Ha'erbin's Russian and Jewish past
- 4 Hike to the top of a dormant volcano and through the lava fields of **Wudalian Chi** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Ski and snowboard at **Yabuli** ([Click here](#)), one of China's finest ski resorts
- 6 Go on the search for **rare cranes** ([Click here](#)) in nature reserves all across the north.

## History

Heilongjiang forms the northernmost part of Dongbei, the region formerly known as Manchuria. Its proximity to Russia has long meant strong historical and trade links with its northern neighbour. In the mid-19th century, Russia annexed parts of Heilongjiang, while in 1897 Russian workers arrived to build a railway line linking Vladivostok with Ha'erbin. By the 1920s well over 100,000 Russians resided in Ha'erbin alone.

Like the rest of Manchuria, Heilongjiang was occupied by the Japanese between 1931 and 1945. After the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) took power in 1949, relations with Russia grew steadily frostier, culminating in a brief border war in 1969. Sino-Russian ties have improved much in recent years and the two sides finally settled on the border in July 2008, after 40-odd years of negotiation.

## Climate

The region experiences long, freezing winters, with temperatures dropping below -30°C. Short summers are warm and humid, especially in the south and east. Mid- to high 30s temperatures are possible and after-noon showers are common.

## Language

The vast majority of people in Heilongjiang speak northeast Mandarin, which is the same as standard Mandarin, apart from the accent. You're also likely to hear a lot of Russian. In the far northwest, tiny numbers of the Oroqen, Daur, Ewenki and Hezhen ethnic minorities still speak their own languages. A handful of people can speak Manchu, once the dominant tongue of the region.



### Getting There & Around

Ha'erbin is the logistical hub for the region and has extensive links with the rest of China. Buses are often a quicker way of getting around, rather than the slow local trains. If you're headed for Inner Mongolia, direct trains run from Ha'erbin to the cities of Haila'er and Manzhouli.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥150

\$\$ ¥150 to ¥300

\$\$\$ more than ¥300

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

## Ha'erbin

0451 / POP 3.72 MILLION

For a city of its size, Ha'erbin is surprisingly easygoing. Cars (and even bicycles) are barred from Zhongyang Dajie, the main drag of the historic Daoliqiu district, where most of Ha'erbin's old buildings can be found. The long riverfront also provides sanctuary for walkers, as does Sun Island on the other side.

The city's sights are as varied as the architectural styles on the old street. Temples, old churches and synagogues coexist, while deep in the southern suburbs a former Japanese germ-warfare base is a sobering reminder of less harmonious times. Ha'erbin's rich Russian and Jewish heritage makes it worth visiting at any time of year, but winter is tops with the world-class ice sculpture festival turning the

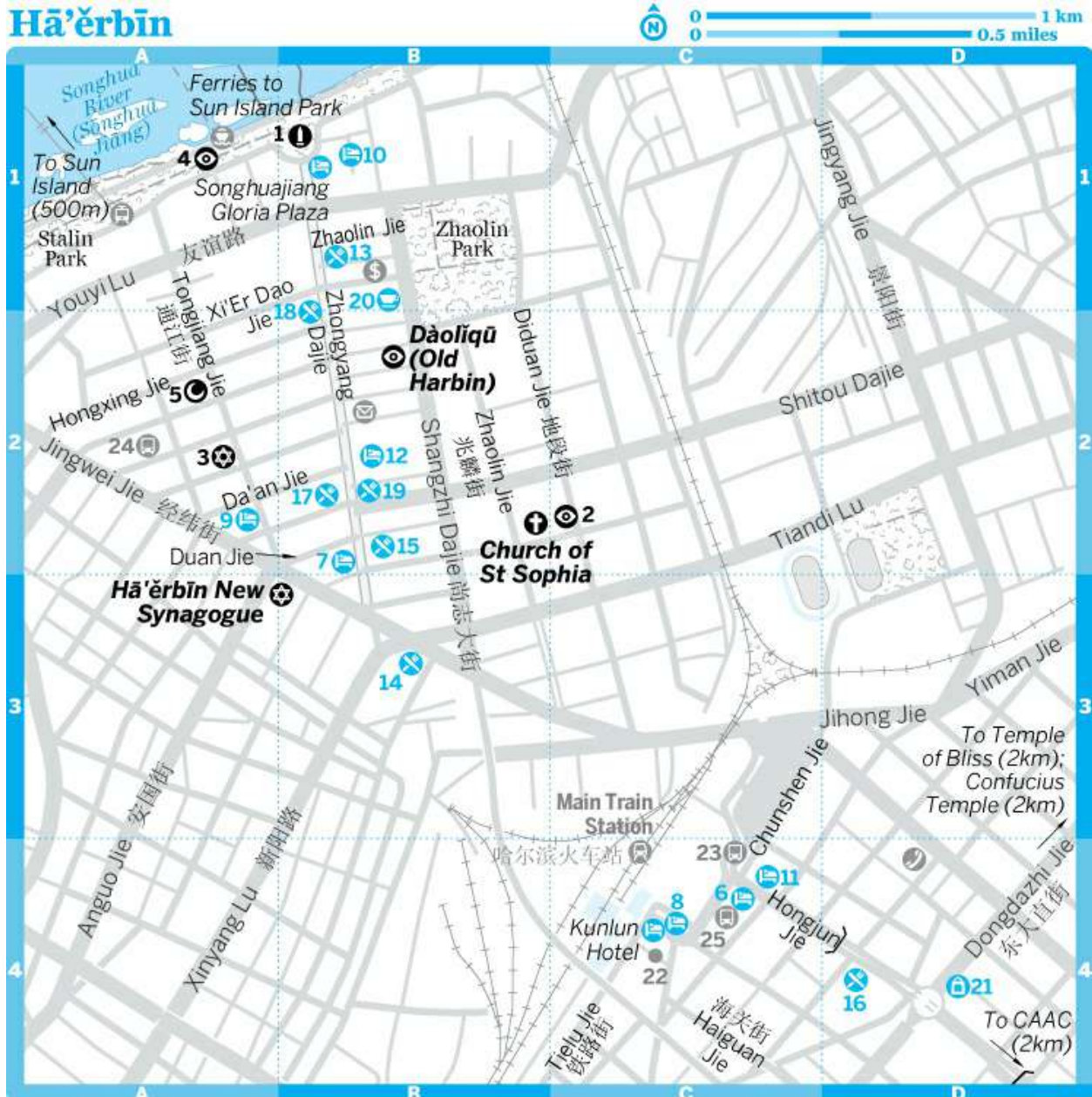
frosty riverfront, and other venues, into a multicoloured wonderland.

## **History**

In 1896 Russia negotiated a contract to build a railway line from Vladivostok to Ha'erbin, then a small fishing village, and Dalian (in Liaoning province). The subsequent influx of Russian workers was followed by Russian Jews and then by White Russians escaping after the 1917 Russian Revolution.

These days, Ha'erbin, whose name comes from a Manchu word meaning 'a place to dry fishing nets', is an ever-expanding, largely industrial city, and while Chinese are the majority, because Russia is so close foreign faces are still common on the streets.

# Ha'erbīn



## Ha'erbīn

 Top Sights

[Church of St Sophia](#) B2

[Daoliqū \(Old Harbin\)](#) B2

[Ha'erbīn New Synagogue](#) B3

 Sights

1 [Flood Control Monument](#) B1

2 [Ha'erbīn Architecture Arts Centre](#) C2

[Jewish Middle School](#) (see 3)



3 Old Main Synagogue A2

4 [Stalin Park](#) A1

5 [Turkish Mosque](#) A2

 Sleeping

6 [Beibei Hotel](#) C4

7 Central Old Street Hotel B2

8 [Hanting Express](#) C4

9 [Haolin Business Hotel](#) A2

10 [Jindi Binguan](#) B1

[Kazy International Youth Hostel](#) (see 3)

11 [Lungmen Grand Hotel](#) C4

12 [Modern Hotel](#) B2

 Eating

13 [Cafe Russia 1914](#) B1

14 [Ding Ding Xiang](#) B3

15 [Dongfang Jiaozi Wang](#) B2

16 [Dongfang Jiaozi Wang](#) D4

17 [Food Market](#) B2

18 [Lao Chang Chunbing](#) B2

19 [Xiaochi Jie](#) B2

 Drinking

[Aogu Yaba](#) (see 3)

20 [Ming Tien](#) B1

 Shopping

21 [Hongbo Century Square](#) D4

Information

22 [Ha'erbin Railway International Travel Service](#) C4

 Transport

23 Bus stop C4

24 Bus stop to Siberian Tiger Park A2

25 Long-Distance Bus Station C4

## Sights

Old Harbin HISTORIC BUILDINGS

The Daoliqu district, in particular the brick-lined street of Zhongyang

Dajie, is the most obvious legacy of Russia's involvement with Ha'erbin. Now a pedestrian-only zone, the street is lined with buildings that date back to the early 20th century. Some are imposing, others distinctly dilapidated, but the mix of architectural styles is fascinating. Other nearby streets lined with handsome old buildings include Shangzhi Dajie and Zhaolin Jie.

Elsewhere in the city, Hongjun Jie, heading south from the train station, and Dongdazhi Jie also feature rows of stately old buildings, including a few churches. The latter street, and some of its arteries, also have the dubious reputation of sporting some heady postmodern Russian-style architecture of questionable taste.

In all of these areas the city has erected plaques on the most worthy buildings giving short English and Chinese descriptions of the date of construction, the architect and the former usage.

#### Church of St Sophia RUSSIAN CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sheng Suofeiya Jiaotang; cnr Zhaolin Jie & Toulong Jie; admission ¥20; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) The red-brick Russian Orthodox Church of St Sophia, with its distinctive green 'onion' dome, is Ha'erbin's most famous landmark. Built in 1907, the church is now home to the Ha'erbin Architecture Arts Centre [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), which displays charming black and white photographs of Ha'erbin from the early 1900s. It's interesting to note that the captions display a very positive attitude towards the foreign influence on the city.

#### Stalin Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; Sidalin Gongyuan) Locals and visitors alike congregate year-round in Stalin Park. The tree-lined promenade, dotted with statues, playgrounds and cafes, runs along a 42km-long embankment built to curb the unruly Songhua River. The odd Flood Control Monument [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Fanghong Shengli Jinianta), from 1958, commemorates the thousands of people who died in years past when the river overflowed its banks.

#### Sun Island Park PARK

(; Taiyangdao Gongyuan) Across the river from Stalin Park is Sun Island Park, a 38-sq-km recreational zone with landscaped gardens,

miniforests, a 'water world', a 'Russian-style' town, and various small galleries and museums. It's a pleasant place to walk around, though as usual you need to pay extra to get into many areas.

You can boat across (¥10) from the dock directly north of the Flood Control Monument or catch the nearby cable car (one way/return ¥50/100; ☺ 8.30am-6.30pm).

### Siberian Tiger Park WILDLIFE RESERVE

( Dongbeihu Linyuan; 88 Songbei Jie; admission ¥90; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm, last tour 4pm) At the Siberian Tiger Park, visitors get the chance to see one of the world's rarest animals (and largest felines) close-up. This breeding centre and urban park is not the most edifying spectacle, however, with the tigers fenced in and visitors, who tour safari-style in buses, encouraged to buy (live!) chickens (¥60), ducks and even cows (¥2800) to throw to the animals. The feeding takes place during the ride around the park, so if you don't think you can handle the spectacle (of cheering locals as much as well-fed tigers indifferently mauling their prey), consider not taking the ride.

The park is located roughly 15km north of the city. Bus routes seem to change yearly so ask at your hotel or hostel for the latest. A taxi from the city centre is ¥30 to ¥40 one way.

## THE GREAT CATS

As with many of the world's powerful wild creatures, size did not give the amur (Siberian tiger), much of an advantage during the 20th century. The largest feline in the world, topping 300kg for males and capable of taking down a brown bear in a fair fight, was no match for poachers, wars, revolutions, railway construction and economic development in its traditional territory across Russia, China and Korea. These days fewer than 400 of the great cats are believed to still prowl the wilds of Russia, none in Korea, and perhaps 20 divided between Heilongjiang and Jilin provinces in China.

It's a dismal figure, and in 1986 the Chinese government set about boosting numbers by establishing the world's largest tiger breeding centre in Ha'erbin. Beginning with only eight tigers, the centre has been so successful that the worldwide number of Siberian tigers may now exceed 1000.

The majority of these are in captivity, which makes any wild sighting a cause for celebration. In April 2012 the figurative champagne flowed when a wild Siberian tiger was captured on film for the first time in Wangqing Nature Reserve in Jilin province. Speculation had it that the cat was one of several that appeared in March in Hunchun along the border

with Russia. If true it may be evidence the cats are expanding their range south – back into traditional Chinese territory.

## Jewish Ha'erbin HISTORIC BUILDINGS

The Jewish influence on Ha'erbin was surprisingly long lasting; the last Jewish resident of the city died in 1985. In the 1920s Ha'erbin was home to some 20,000 Jews, the largest Jewish community in the Far East at the time.

If you're on the trail of Ha'erbin's Jews, then the Ha'erbin New Synagogue [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Ha'erbin Youtai Xinhuitang; 162 Jingwei Jie; admission ¥25; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) is the place to start. The synagogue was built in 1921 by and for the community, the vast majority of which had emigrated from Russia. Restored and converted into a museum in 2004, the 1st floor is an art gallery with pictures and photos of old Ha'erbin. The 2nd and 3rd floors feature photos and exhibits that tell the story of the history and cultural life of Ha'erbin's Jews. From all accounts they had a splendid life centred on sports, music and business.

Tongjiang Jie was the centre of Jewish life in the city till the end of WWII, and many of the buildings on the street are from the early 20th century. The museum can clue you in to the former location of bakers, kosher butchers and furriers. The old Main Synagogue (Youtai Jiuheitang; 82 Tongjiang Jie), built in 1909, now houses a cafe, shops and an excellent little hostel. Close by is the former Jewish Middle School [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Youtai Zhongxue).

Further up Tongjiang Jie is the interesting Turkish Mosque [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Tu'erqi Qingzhen Si); built in 1906, it's no longer operating and is closed to visitors.

In the far eastern suburbs of Ha'erbin is the Huangshan Jewish Cemetery, the largest in the Far East. There are more than 600 graves here, all well maintained. A taxi here takes around 45 minutes and costs about ¥100.

**FREE** Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base MUSEUM  
( 731 Qinhua Rijun Di 731 Budui Yizhi; Xinjiang Dajie; 🕒 9-11am & 1-

3.30pm Tue-Sun) There are museums highlighting Japanese wartime atrocities all over Dongbei, but this one is actually set in the notorious Japanese Germ Warfare Experimental Base – 731 Division used to inflict some of those atrocities. Between 1939 and 1945, Chinese prisoners of war and civilians were frozen alive, subjected to vivisection or infected with bubonic plague, syphilis and other virulent diseases. Three to four thousand people died here in the most gruesome fashion, including Russians, Koreans, Mongolians and, it is believed, a few American airmen.

The main building of the base is now a museum complete with photos, sculptures and exhibits of the equipment used by the Japanese. There are extensive English captions and an audio guide is available for ¥15.

The base is in the far south of Ha'erbin and takes about an hour to get to by bus. In the alley beside China Post on Tielu Jie (just southwest of the train station), catch bus 343 (¥2). Get off at the stop called Xinjiang Dajie just after the bus turns the corner leaving Xinjiang Dajie itself. Walk back 500m along Xinjiang Dajie and look for the base on the left-hand side of the road. If you get lost, just ask the locals the way to 'Qi San Yi' or '731'.

## Temples

The following temples are within walking distance of each other. The first sits off a pedestrian-only street reachable by taxi from the Daoliqu district for ¥10. For the Confucius Temple, look for an arch down to the right at the start of the pedestrian street. Pass through this and then a second arch on the left. The temple is a 10-minute walk along Wen Miao Jie.

### Temple of Bliss BUDDHIST

( Ji Le Si; 9 Dongdazhi Jie; admission ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-4pm)

Heilongjiang's largest temple complex has an active Buddhist community in residence, giving it a genuine religious atmosphere despite the ticket sales. There are many large statues here including Milefo (Maitreya), the Buddha yet-to-come, and the Sakyamuni Buddha, and the Seven-Tiered Buddhist Pagoda (; Qiji Futu Ta), from 1924. The entrance to the temple is to the left at the start of the pedestrian street.



## Confucius Temple CONFUCIAN

( Wen Miao; 25 Wen Miao Jie; 🕒 9am-3.30pm) This peaceful temple complex was first built in 1929 and is said to be the largest Confucian temple in northeastern China. Most of what you see now, though, is from a recent restoration. You need a passport to enter.

## Other Sights

### Heilongjiang Science & Technology Museum MUSEUM

( Heilongjiangsheng Kejiguan; adult/child ¥24/12; 🕒 9am-4pm Tue-Sun, last ticket sale 3pm) This children's museum is west of Sun Island Park and features excellent hands-on displays highlighting the principles of aviation, acoustics, transportation, energy and aeronautics. The museum can be reached either by taxi or by following the road west about 4km after you get off the boat to the island. It makes for a pleasant walk.



## Festivals & Events

### Ice & Snow Festival ICE SCULPTURE

( Bingxue Jie; [www.chinahighlights.com/festivals/harbin-ice-and-snow-festival.htm](http://www.chinahighlights.com/festivals/harbin-ice-and-snow-festival.htm); 🕒 9.30am-9.30pm) Ha'erbin's main claim to fame these days is this festival. Every winter, from December to February (officially the festival opens 5 January), Zhaolin Park () and Sun Island Park become home to extraordinarily detailed, imaginative and downright wacky snow and ice sculptures. They range from huge recreations of iconic buildings, such as the Forbidden City and European cathedrals, to animals and interpretations of ancient legends. At night they're lit up with coloured lights to create a magical effect.

It might be mind-numbingly cold and the sun disappears mid-afternoon, but the festival, which also features figure-skating shows and a variety of winter sports, is Ha'erbin's main tourist attraction – and prices jump accordingly.

The festival takes place in multiple locations. The main venue, Harbin Ice and Snow World (admission ¥300) and the Snow Sculpture Art Exhibition (admission ¥240) are both held on Sun Island. The Ice

and Snow World exhibits are held in the west end of the island on the north bank of the Songhua River. They are best seen at night, so note that a daytime ticket (good from 9.30am to 1.30pm) does not grant admission to the venue at night.

The Ice Lantern Venue is held in Zhaolin Park (admission ¥200) and many consider it the least interesting venue. If you do go, again, get along at night when the lanterns are lit.

Taxis are expensive and often hard to flag down during the festival times but you can ride horse carriages, or even use your own feet: the Sun Island venues are actually reachable by crossing the frozen Songhua River (plan on one to two hours). Note that prices for the festival have been skyrocketing recently so don't be surprised if they are even higher than quoted above.

## **Sleeping**

The most convenient places to stay are along Zhongyang Dajie in Daoliqu district or in one of the many hotels that surround the train station. During the ice and snow festival expect hotel prices to go up by at least 20%.



Kazy International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kazi Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 8469 7113; kazyzcl@126.com; 82 Tongjiang Jie; 82 dm/s/tw with shared bathroom ¥40/60/80, d with bathroom ¥140; 📶) This hostel has taken over the lower floors of the old Main Synagogue, giving it the largest and highest ceiling lobby of any hostel we've seen. Dorm rooms are bright and clean, but the rooms in the garret with Star of David frame windows are a treat to stay in, even if (or maybe because) they lack air-con. Staff are friendly and a great source of travel information around the city and province. The hostel, with its laundry, cafe and ticket booking services, is popular with Chinese travellers, so book ahead.

Century Old Street Hotel HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$

( Bainian Laojie Jiudian; 📍 8463 8888; fax 8468 1157; 32 Zhongyang Dajie; 32-40 d & tw ¥198-298; 📶📧) With a prime location on Zhongyang Dajie, and comfortable rooms with dark panelling, this

heritage hotel is your best budget/midrange choice in Ha'erbin. Corners rooms are tops, their sweeping windows flooding the interior with light and offering views over Zhongyang Dajie. Windowless rooms go for around ¥130, a steal for this location. The hotel is about one block up from the start of Zhongyang Dajie. Discounts of 30% are usual.

Modern Hotel HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Madie'er Binguan; 📍 8488 4000; [www.hrbmodern.com](http://www.hrbmodern.com); 89 Zhongyang Dajie; 89 r from ¥680; 🌐@🌐) One of the more imposing buildings on Zhongyang Dajie, this 1906 construction still features some of its original marble, blond-wood accents and art nouveau touches. All rooms include free broadband, and a breakfast buffet in the classy dining hall. Note that the entrance to the hotel is around the back. Discounts available.

Lungmen Grand Hotel HISTORIC HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Longmen Guibin Lou Jiudian; 📍 8679 1999; 85 Hongjun Jie; 86 d/tw ¥480/680; 🌐@) With its turn of the century old-world styling almost entirely intact (including the marble staircase, dark wood-panelled hallways, and the copper revolving door), the Lungmen is one of the best top-end options in the city. Though technically across from the train station, the hotel lobby opens onto Hongjun Jie and its rows of heritage buildings. A quick walk up the street's wide pavements takes you into the shopping heart of Ha'erbin. Discounts available.

Jindi Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 8461 8013; 16 Dongfeng Jie; 16 s & d ¥150, tw ¥230-280; 🌐@) If you're looking for a river view on the cheap, then this is the place. Rooms are spacious, and there's broadband available in most, with computers in the more expensive twins. To get to the hotel, turn right at the very end of Zhongyang Dajie before the park. Jindi sits just past the Gloria Plaza Hotel.

Haolin Business Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Haolin Shangwu Liansuo Jiudian; 📍 400-060 6530; 26 Tongjiang Jie;



26 d/tw ¥218/268; 🌐📍) In the centre of Jewish Ha'erbin, a neighbourhood now loaded with restaurants and barbecue stalls at night, is this new business-style express hotel with surprisingly comfortable rooms sporting high ceilings, bright interiors and good modern bathrooms. It's a two-minute walk to Zhongyang Dajie from Haolin. Expect discounts of 30%.

Hanting Express HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hanting kuaijie Jiudian; 📞 5180 1177; [www.htinns.com](http://www.htinns.com); Huochezhan Guangchang Dian; d/tw ¥289/299; 🌐📍📶) This tidy, friendly business-style hotel is to the right of the train station square (as you exit the station) on the 23rd floor. The entrance is next to a KFC (one of many in the train station area). Rooms have broadband internet and there's wi-fi in the lobby.

Beibei Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Beibei Dajiudian; 📞 8257 0960; [www.bbbsjd.com](http://www.bbbsjd.com); 2 Chunshen Jie; 2 d/tw ¥198-228; 🌐📍) Just to the left of the bus station as you face the entrance, Beibei is a little worn with traffic but a good deal if you have an early bus or train to catch. Look for room deals each day that go for as low as ¥168.

## Eating

Ha'erbin dishes tends to be heavy, with thick stewlike concoctions commonly found on the picture menus of a thousand eateries. You'll also find delicious hotpot, barbecued meats and Russian dishes in the tourist areas. Zhongyang Dajie and its side alleys are full of small restaurants and bakeries. Tongjiang Jie has fruit stands, sit-down restaurants and an abundance of outdoor barbecue stalls (with ad hoc seating) set up in the evenings.

In summer, the streets off Zhongyang Dajie come alive with open-air food stalls and beer gardens, where you can sip a Hapi (the local beer), while chewing squid on a stick, or *yangrou chuan* (lamb kebabs) and all the usual street snacks.

The year-round indoor food market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( xiaochi cheng; 96 Zhongyang Dajie; 🕒 8.30am-8pm) has stalls selling

decent bread, smoked meats, sausages, wraps and fresh dishes, as well as nuts, cookies, fruits and sweets. It's a great place to grab a quick breakfast or to stock up on food for a long bus or train ride.

Just south of the market, on the opposite side of the street, look for the underground Xiaochi Jie [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Snack Street; dishes ¥8-15), a clean modern food court with a range of inexpensive noodle and rice dishes, as well as kebabs, curries and pasta dishes.

Dongfang Jiaozi Wang DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Orient King of Eastern Dumplings; dumpling plate ¥8-20; ☺  
10.30am-9.30pm; 📶📶) Daoliqū district (51 Zhongyang Dajie); train station area (72 Hongjun Jie) It's not just the cheap *jiaozi* (; stuffed dumplings) that are good at this always busy chain: there are plenty of tasty vegie dishes, too, and excellent fresh fruit drinks. The Hongjun Jie branch is a 10-minute walk southeast of the train station, next to the Overseas Chinese Hotel down the alley. Both branches have English menus. More surprisingly, all branches have good password-free wi-fi, which you can also usually access just outside the front door.

Cafe Russia 1914 RUSSIAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Luxiya kafei Xican Ting; 57 West 1st Rd; dishes ¥18-48; ☺ 10am-midnight) Step back in time at this tranquil, ivy-covered teahouse-cum-restaurant and cafe. Black and white photos illustrating Ha'erbin's Russian past line the walls, while the old school furniture and fireplace evoke a different era. The food is substantial Russian fare, such as borscht and *piroshki* (cabbage, potato and meat puffs). Russian vodka is available, too.

The restaurant is off Zhongyang Dajie in a little courtyard.

Ding Ding Xiang HOTPOT \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hotpot Paradise; 58 Jingwei Jie; hotpot starter from ¥20, dishes ¥12-68; ☺ 9.30am-9pm) In winter, Ha'erbin and hotpot go together like strawberries and cream, and in summer, well, what else are you going to do with a well-prepared broth, a stack of vegies and thinly sliced meat? This three-storey hotpot restaurant, which looks like a karaoke

TV palace, can get very pricey if you order some of the face-giving seafood and Japanese beef dishes, but you can also dine well on normal beef, lamb and seafood for a modest outlay. Just make sure you order the special sauces (from ¥10) to accompany your hotpot. There's a picture menu to make things easy.

Lao Chang Chunbing SPRING ROLLS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Old Chang's Spring Rolls; 180 Zhongyang Dajie; dishes ¥12-38; ☺ 10.30am-9pm; 📍) At this well-known basement spring roll shop, order a set of roll skins (per roll ¥1), a few plates of meat and vegetable dishes, and then wrap your way to one enjoyable repast.



## Drinking & Entertainment

Ha'erbin has the usual collection of karaoke TV (KTV) joints. If communal singing isn't your bag, there are a few bars on and off Zhongyang Dajie and Tiandi Lu. Zhongyang Dajie and Stalin Park also have beer gardens in the summer with cheap draft and plenty of snack food to enjoy as you watch sports on the big screens. Ask around for the latest nightclubs.

Aogu Yaba CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 82 Tongjiang Jie; drinks ¥18-35; ☺ 10am-midnight; 📶📍) Excellent coffee and a delightful old world design make this cafe in a side chamber of the old Jewish Main Synagogue one of the nicest places in Ha'erbin to enjoy a beverage. The food is rather mediocre, however.

Ming Tien CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Mingdian Xican; [www.hrbmingdian.com](http://www.hrbmingdian.com); 214 Shangzhi Dajie; drinks ¥35-60) For afternoon tea or coffee head to this slightly over-the-top cafe occupying two floors of a heritage building on Shangzhi Dajie. Enter via the subdued parlour, wind your way up the tree-enshrouding staircase and ease into a big brown leather booth with views of Zhaolin Park – and some very odd wallpaper. Ming Tien has an equally eclectic menu ranging from borscht to pizza if you get hungry.

## Shopping

There's a distinctly martial-arts bent to some of the shops along Zhongyang Dajie, with imitation Russian and Chinese camouflage uniforms on sale alongside the sort of fearsome-looking knives you shouldn't attempt to take on a plane. But there are also department stores, boutiques and many Western clothes chains here. Souvenir shops selling Russian knick-knacks, dolls, binoculars, and also vodka and other spirits can be found all over the city.

Locals head to Dongdazhi Jie for their shopping needs, as well as the Hongbo Century Square [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Hongbo Shiji Guangchang; ☀ 6.30am-5pm), a huge subterranean shopping complex for men's and women's clothing.

## Information

There are ATMs all over town. Most large hotels will also change money. Many midrange and top-end hotels have travel services that book tickets and arrange tours throughout the province.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Xi'Er Dao Jie) Has a 24-hour ATM and will cash travellers cheques. Easy to spot on a side road as you walk up Zhongyang Dajie.

**Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; 101 Zhongshan Lu) In the CAAC Hotel; for flight tickets and airport shuttle buses.

**Harbin Modern Travel Company** ( Ha'erbin Madie'er Luxingshe; <http://hotel.hrbmodern.com>; 89 Zhongyang Dajie) This travel agency on the 2nd floor of Modern Hotel offers one- and two-day ski trips to Yabuli and can handle flight tickets to Mohe and other regions.

## Getting There & Away

Air

**Harbin Taiping International Airport** has flights to Russia and South Korea as well as the following domestic routes:

**Beijing** ¥ 960, one hour and 50 minutes

**Dalian** ¥ 840, 1½ hours

**Mohe** ¥ 1610, 2½ hours, two flights daily (8.20am and 1pm)

Bus

The main long-distance bus station is directly opposite the train

station. Buy tickets on the 2nd floor.

**Changchun** ¥76, four hours, hourly from 8am to 5pm

**Mudanjiang** ¥96, 4½ hours, hourly from 8am to 5pm

**Wudalian Chi** ¥67 to ¥79, five to six hours, three daily (9am, 11.30am and 1.30pm). The 1.30pm bus is the most comfortable.

**Bei'an** ¥65 to ¥82.5, five hours, four daily (7.10am, 8.30am, 2.20pm and 4.30pm)

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO RUSSIA

As of May 2012, trains no longer depart from Ha'erbin East to Vladivostok. Trains do run as far as Suifenhe, however, from where you can make an onward connection to Vladivostok.

Travellers on the Trans-Siberian Railway to or from Moscow can start or finish in Ha'erbin (six days). Contact the Ha'erbin Railway International Travel Service [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Ha'erbin Tiedao Guoji Luxingshe; ☎ 5361 6717; [www.ancn.net](http://www.ancn.net); Kunlun Hotel, 7th fl, 8 Tielu Jie) for information on travelling through to Russia.

### Train

Ha'erbin is a major rail transport hub with routes throughout the northeast and beyond. If you don't want to brave the lines in the station, buy tickets at the nearby **train booking office** (Tielu Jie; 🕒 8am-5pm) to the left of the Kunlun Hotel.

**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥158/270, 10 to 16 hours

**Beijing** (D train) seat ¥267, nine hours

**Changchun** (D train) seat ¥72, two hours, six daily

**Mohe** hard/soft sleeper ¥246/400, 21 hours

**Mudanjiang** hard seat/sleeper ¥48/94, five to seven hours

**Shenyang** hard seat/sleeper ¥76/134, six to seven hours

**Shenyang** (D train) seat ¥161, four hours, five daily

### Getting Around

#### To/From the Airport

Ha'erbin's airport is 46km from the city centre. From the airport, shuttle buses (¥20) will drop you at the railway station or the CAAC

office. To the airport, shuttles leave every 30 minutes from the CAAC office from 5.30am to 7.30pm. A taxi (¥100 to ¥125) takes 45 minutes to an hour.

#### Public Transport

Buses 101 and 103 run from the train station to Shangzhi Dajie, dropping you off at the north end of Zhongyang Dajie (the old street). Buses leave from a stop across the road and to the left as you exit the train station (where Chunshen Jie and Hongjun Jie meet).

Ha'erbin's long-awaited metro began trial runs of its first line at the end of 2012.

#### Taxi

Taxis are fairly plentiful though they fill up quickly when it's raining. Taxi flag-fall is ¥8.

## SKIING IN CHINA

China's ski industry has all the appearance of a success story. From 20,000 visits to the slopes in 1996, numbers have grown to around 15 million in 2012. There are now over 20 large resorts across the country in areas as diverse as Jilin, Heilongjiang, Yunnan and Hebei provinces.

But industry insiders say that most resorts have been in the red for years because the average visitor tries the sport once and then never again. Building slopes and resorts has been easy: maintaining them while a ski culture develops has not been. In 2012 there was renewed hope, however, as another round of investment hit the industry. This time the focus would be on upping the luxury quotient, and also opening more runs and facilities for absolute beginners.

In China's north, the largest resorts are Jilin's Beidahu Ski Resort ([Click here](#)) and Heilongjiang's Yabuli Ski Resort ( Yabuli Huaxue Zhongxin; [www.yabuliski.com](http://www.yabuliski.com)), 200km southeast of Ha'erbin. Yabuli was China's first destination ski resort, and remains the training centre for the Chinese Olympic ski team. Since 2009 the resort has expanded to cover two mountains and now has a good division of advanced, intermediate and beginner runs, as well as a four-star lodge that can reasonably cater to Western guests.

The latest slopes to be developed in the region are at Changbai Shan on the China–North Korean border. In the winter of 2012–13 an as yet unnamed resort was set to open about 20km from the new airport. Expect to find 20 runs on two mountains as well as a luxury alpine village offering hotels, restaurants and private condos.

Lift tickets in the north average around ¥500 per day on weekends, and a little less on weekdays. Clothing and equipment rental comes to another ¥140. For up-to-date information on all the major ski areas of China, as well as transport and tour advice, see the excellent China Ski Tours ([www.chinaskitours.com/home.html](http://www.chinaskitours.com/home.html)) website.

---

## Mudanjiang

📍 0453 / POP 764,000

A pleasant and surprisingly modern small city surrounded by some lovely countryside, Mudanjiang is the jumping-off point for nearby Jingpo Hu (Mirror Lake) and the Underground Forest. Taiping Jie is the main drag in town and runs directly south of the train station. There's a **Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang) two blocks up where you can (very slowly) cash travellers cheques and access a 24-hour ATM.

### 🏠 Sleeping & Eating

The train station area has a number of good hotels and there is no reason to look further into town. For budget accommodation head right as you exit the station. Just past the station square on Guanghua Jie runs a row of guesthouses. There are at least half a dozen to choose from, all offering similar prices and surprisingly decent digs: dorm beds go for ¥20, rooms with shared bathroom for around ¥40 and rooms with their own bathroom (and sometimes even a computer) for ¥80.

There are plenty of cheap restaurants around as well, and also in the alleys off Qixing Jie, which intersects with Taiping Jie half a kilometre up from the train station. Dongyitiao Lu (off Qixing Jie) is a lively pedestrian-only street with a wide range of BBQ, noodle and snack venues open in the evening.

Home Inn HOTEL \$\$

( Rujia Kuaijie Jiudian; 📍 6911 1188; 651 Guanghua Jie; 651 r ¥129-179; 🚶📶📶📶) Probably the best-value rooms around the train station are in this well-managed chain just to the right as you exit. Top floors are nonsmoking and very quiet despite the location.

Shuanglong Jiaozi Wang DUMPLINGS \$

( cnr Qixing Jie & Taiping Jie; dumplings ¥12-25; 🕒 9am-9pm) There's a wide selection of *jiaozi* here, as well as the usual Dongbei classics. As you turn left off Taiping Jie, the restaurant is the big glass building on the right. There's an English sign out front and a partial picture

menu inside to help you order.

## Getting There & Away

### Bus

Long-distance buses usually drop you off near the train station and depart from a station ( *ke chezhan*) a few kilometres away. A taxi to the station costs ¥6.

**Dongjing Cheng** ¥15, 1¼ hours

**Ha'erbin** ¥70, 4½ hours, every 40 minutes (5am to 6pm)

**Yanji** ¥71, five hours, 6.30am and 11.30am

### Train

Mudanjiang has rail connections:

**Ha'erbin** hard seat/sleeper ¥54/100, five to seven hours, frequent services

**Suifenhe** seat ¥30 to ¥47, five hours

**Yanji** hard seat/sleeper ¥22/56, six hours, one daily (4.26pm)

## Around Mudanjiang

### JINGPO HU

Formed on the bend of the Mudan River 5000 years ago by the falling lava of five volcanic explosions, Jingpo Hu ( Mirror Lake; [www.jingpohu.com.cn](http://www.jingpohu.com.cn); admission ¥80), 110km south of Mudanjiang, gets its name from the unusually clear reflections of the surrounding lush green forest in its pristine blue water.

Hugely popular in summer with Chinese daytrippers who come to paddle or picnic by the lakeside, it's a pleasant spot if you hike along the lake to escape the crowds. Shuttle buses (¥12 per trip) run to various sights, and ferries (¥80) make leisurely tours of the lake.

## Sights

### Diaoshuilou Waterfall WATERFALL

One of the area's biggest attractions is this fall (; Diaoshuilou Pubu) with a 12m drop and 300m span. During the rainy season (from June to September), when Diaoshuilou is in full throttle, it's a spectacular raging beauty, but during spring and autumn it's little more than a



drizzle.

You can walk to the waterfall from the north gate entrance in about five minutes. Just stay on the main road and follow the English signs.

### Underground Forest FOREST

( Dixia Senlin; admission ¥40) Despite its name, the Underground Forest isn't below the earth; instead it has grown within volcano craters that erupted some 10,000 years ago. Hiking around the thick pine forest and several of the 10 craters takes about an hour.

The forest is 50km from Jingpo Hu. Some day tours include it in their itinerary. Otherwise, you have to take a bus from the north gate of Jingpo (one hour), which is not really viable if you only have a day at the lake.

## Sleeping & Eating

It's pleasant to spend the night in the park and enjoy the lake when the crowds return to their hotels in Mudanjiang.

Jingpo Hu Shanzhuang Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 627 0039, 139 0483 9459; r ¥200-300) This hotel sits just back from the water at the first lakeside drop-off point for the shuttle buses. Rooms are very basic but there's a small beach where you can swim, and the hotel's restaurant has decent food (if a little overpriced).



### Getting There & Away

The easiest way to get to Jingpo Hu is on the one-day tours (call 📞 139 4533 1797) that leave from the train station in Mudanjiang from 6.30am to 7.30am. Tours cost ¥235 and include transport, admission, a boat tour, and two shuttle bus tickets (to the ferry dock and back).

If you want to head out here under your own steam, first get to dusty Dongjing Cheng (). Buses to Dongjing Cheng (¥15, 1½ hours, frequent) leave from Mudanjiang's bus station ( ke chezhan); take a taxi here (¥6). Minibuses (¥10, 40 to 60 minutes) to the lake either leave from outside Dongjing Cheng's train station (about 0.5km down the road from where the bus from Mudanjiang drops you off) or directly across the street. In the late afternoon you can usually get a seat on one of the tour buses directly back to Mudanjiang from the lake (¥30).



### Getting Around

The ticket centre for the lake is at the North Gate (Beimen). From here walk about five minutes to a car park for shuttle buses to the lake and ferry dock (get a ticket to the stop 'Jingpo Shanzhuang'; ) and other sights (¥12 per ride). Diaoshuilou Waterfall is just behind this car park.

## CRANE COUNTRY

Northeastern China is home to several nature reserves established to protect endangered species of wild cranes. Zhalong Nature Reserve ( Zhalong Ziran Baohuqu) near Qiqiha'er is the most accessible and most visited of these sanctuaries. The reserve is home to some 260 bird species, including several types of rare cranes. Four of the species that migrate here are on the endangered list: the extremely rare red-crowned crane, the white-naped crane, the Siberian crane and the hooded crane.

The reserve comprises some 2100 sq km of wetlands that are on a bird migration path extending from the Russian Arctic down into Southeast Asia. Hundreds of birds arrive in April and May, rear their young from June to August and depart in September and October. Unfortunately, a significant percentage of the birds you can see live in zoolike cages and are released once a day so that visitors can take photos.

The best time to visit Zhalong is in spring. In summer the mosquitoes can be more plentiful than the birds – take repellent!

Xianghai National Nature Reserve ( Xianghai Guojia Ziran Baohuqu), 310km west of Changchun in Jilin province, is on the migration path for Siberian cranes, and the rare red-crowned, white-naped and demoiselle cranes breed here. More than 160 bird species, including several of these cranes, have been identified at the Horqin National Nature Reserve ( Ke'erqin Guojia Ziran Baohuqu), which borders Xianghai in Inner Mongolia. The Momoge National Nature Reserve ( Momoge Guojia Ziran Baohuqu) in northern Jilin province is also an important wetlands area and bird breeding site.

For more information about China's crane population and these nature reserves, contact the International Crane Foundation ([www.savingcranes.org](http://www.savingcranes.org)) or see the website of the Siberian Crane Wetland Project ([www.scwp.info](http://www.scwp.info)).

## Wudalian Chi

0456

Formed by a series of volcanic eruptions, the Wudalian Chi nature reserve boasts one of northern China's most mesmerising landscapes. It's a genuine Lost World with vast fields of hardened

lava, rivers of basalt, volcanic peaks, azure lakes and the odd little reed-lined pond. You could spend days exploring.

The last time the volcanoes erupted was in 1720, and the lava flow blocked the nearby North River (Bei He), forming the series of five interconnected lakes that give the area its name. Wudalian Chi is about 250km northwest of Ha'erbin, and in addition to the volcanic landscape is home to mineral springs that draw busloads of Chinese and Russian tourists to slurp the allegedly curative waters. So many Russians roll up that the town's street signs are in both Chinese and Russian.

There's no real town here, just a long, pleasant tree-lined street called Yaoquan Lu. Everything you want is on a section that runs west of the bus station. The intersection of Yaoquan Lu and Shilong Lu (about 3km from the bus stop) is the main crossroad and is smack in the middle of the hotel area. Taxis make the trip from the bus station to the hotel area for ¥5 to ¥10.

Recently, some travellers have also started to base themselves in Wudalian Chi Shi ( ), a real town about 20km away and where most buses drop you off from Ha'erbin

It's only really viable to visit Wudalian Chi between May and October.

## Sights & Activities

A bike is the perfect way to take in the sights in this flat landscape. You can rent cheap ones for pattering around town at Gongren Liaoyangyuan (per hour ¥20). For a half-day loop taking in the lakes, volcanoes and caves most people hire a taxi (¥150). Negotiate beforehand whether the fee covers parking at each sight (¥5 to ¥10). If your time is short, just visit Laohei Shan and you will get most of what the area has to offer.

### Laohei Shan VOLCANO

( admission ¥80 plus ¥25 shuttle fee; 🕒 7.30am-7pm May-Oct) It's a mostly uphill 1km stair climb to the summit of Laohei Shan, one of the area's 14 volcanoes. From the lip of the crater you will have panoramic views of the lakes and other volcanoes.

Taxis drop you at the ticket booth from where park shuttle buses take you to a large car park. To the left is the trail up the mountain; to the right is a boardwalk to the aptly named Shi Hai (; Stone Sea), a magnificent lava field.

Back in the car park smaller green shuttle buses take you to Huoshao Shan () and the end of the road at another collection of weirdly shaped lava stones. This stretch is one of Wudalian Chi's most enchanting, with lava rock rivers, birch forests, grassy fields, ponds and more wide stretches of lava fields. It's about 5km from the start to the end, meaning you could walk it back, but be careful as the shuttle drivers go fast.

### Longmen 'Stone Village' LAVA FIELD

( Longmen Housai Qiguan Guanguangqu; admission ¥50; ☺ 7am-6pm May-Oct) At this impressive lava field, walk through a forest of white and black birch trees on a network of boardwalks, with the lava rocks stretching away in the distance on both sides.

### Ice Caves CAVES

( Rongyan Bingdong; admission ¥30; ☺ 7.30am-6pm May-Oct) Families with small kids might enjoy the simple ice sculptures and chilly year-round -5°C environment in the Lava Ice Cavern and the nearby Lava Snow Cavern ( Rongyan Xuedong; admission ¥30; ☺ 7.30am-6pm). At both you can rent a warm coat (¥10) if you don't have your own.

## Sleeping & Eating

Yaoquan Lu, the main east-west drag in Wudalian Chi, has a dozen or more hotels operating from May to October. Book in advance to avoid getting stranded without a room.

The area caters to group tours – single travellers who aren't staying at a hotel with a restaurant will have to go for the local places just south of the main intersection at Yaoquan and Shilong Lu. There are two dozen greasy-spoon choices (dishes ¥5 to ¥48), largely serving the same five types of local fish the area is famous for. You can also get cheap *jiaozi* and BBQ. Several grocery stores sell fruit and imported snacks including real chocolate.

Staying in Wudalian Chi Shi is a decent alternative to Wudalian Chi.

The town is not as pleasant but there is steady work at building wide pavements and greening the streets. Within a short walk of the bus station there are half a dozen hotels and plenty of restaurants.

#### Gongren Liaoyangyuan HOTEL \$\$

( Workers Sanatorium; 📞 722 1569; [www.hljwdlc.com](http://www.hljwdlc.com); d/tw ¥180/360; 🌟) This cavernous complex in Wudalian Chi has long corridors reminiscent of *The Shining* and is popular with Russian tourists. The parklike grounds are pleasant and the restaurant, which serves both Chinese and Russian food, is decent value (but will only serve guests). You can rent bikes (per hour ¥20) at the shops off the path leading from the gate to the main building.

#### Keyun Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 261 6666; d/tw ¥100; 🌟) In Wudalian Chi Shi, directly beside the bus station, is this cheerful, reasonably clean hotel that's a good option if you're looking to do Wudalian Chi on the cheap. There's a row of inexpensive restaurants across the street, and taxis offering day trips to Wudalian Chi (¥150) line up outside the hotel in the morning.

#### Information

There's a visitor centre between the bus station and hotel area with good English maps (¥5) of the area. There are no banks or ATMs accepting foreign cards in Wudalian Chi.

#### Getting There & Away

##### Bus

Both Wudalian Chi and Wudalian Chi Shi have bus stations. Direct buses from Ha'erbin (¥67 to ¥79, six hours, three daily at 9am, 11.30am and 1.30pm) may drop you off at Wudalian Chi Shi despite assurances from the ticket office in Ha'erbin to the contrary. A taxi the rest of the way will cost ¥40.

Buses leave for Ha'erbin from Wudalian Chi (¥67 to ¥79, six hours, 5.40am and 8.10am) and Wudalian Chi Shi (6.50am and 8.20am). There are also buses to Heihe and Bei'an, the nearest train station, which has connections on to Ha'erbin.

## Russian Borderlands

Much of the remote northeastern border between China and Siberia follows the Black Dragon River (Heilong Jiang), known to the Russians as the Amur River. In this region it's possible to see Siberian forests and dwindling settlements of northern minorities, such as the Daur, Ewenki, Hezhen and Oroqen.

Major towns in the far north include Mohe and Heihe, the latter a popular shopping destination for people in the province. On the eastern border, Suifenhe is a gateway to Vladivostok.

## **MOHE & BEIJICUN (NORTH POLE VILLAGE)**

📍 0457

China's a big place, if you haven't noticed. And that vastness contains a multitude of landscapes, ecosystems and climates. China's northernmost town, Mohe, standing amid spindly pine forests and vast bogs, holds the record for the lowest plunge of the thermometer:  $-52.3^{\circ}\text{C}$ , recorded in 1956. That same day in the southern extreme at Sanya, a tropical beach paradise of azure waters and coconut palms, the temperature was likely in the high 20s.

Mohe is one of China's most intriguing outliers, sharing not just a border with Russia, but architecture as well. In 1985 the town burned to the ground in a raging forest fire and when it came time for rebuilding, a curious decision was made: given the town's proximity to Russia, and Heilongjiang's long close relations with that country, the main streets would be rebuilt in an imperial-era style with spired domes, pillared entrances and facades with rows of narrow windows.

These days, Mohe is best known for its midnight sun, visible for as long as 22 hours during the annual Festival of Aurora Borealis (; Beijiguang Jie), held in late June. Oddly, this is one of the few times you can see the lights, according to locals. Later in the summer, when there are more hours of darkness, the lights don't appear.

Even more northerly than Mohe is Beijicun (; North Pole Village) a sprawling village/recreation area on the very banks of the Heilong Jiang River separating China and Russia. There's nowhere to go but back south here and one house has even been labelled China No 1 (), ie China's first house. To visit this area you need to hire a taxi from Mohe. Expect to pay around ¥250 to ¥300 return.

Beijicun covers an area of forest, meadow-land and bog, with the occasional hamlet, log cabin or Russian-style structure dotting the pretty surroundings. If the mood strikes, you can stand at the top of a map of China that has been etched into a square. Step up on the podium and you are at the most northerly point one can be within 9,671,018 sq km of the earth's surface.

Between Beijicun and Mohe is the somber Prostitutes Graveyard (; Yanzhi Gou Jinu Fen), reachable by a 30-minute drive down a side road to the source of the Heilong Jiang River (; Heilongjiang Yuantou). The graveyard contains the burial mounds of dozens of destitute women who worked as prostitutes during Mohe's gold rush in the late 19th century.

There are a number of hotels and guesthouses in Mohe, including the comfortable and well-run Mohe Jia Xin Binguan ( ☎ 287 0666; r ¥180-220). Rooms go for ¥120 in the low season. There is also a number of cheap guesthouses and restaurants down the alleys off Fanrong Xiang. To get here from the North Pole Star Park (; Beiji Xing Gongyuan) at the top end of town, head down Zhenxing Jie (the main street) two blocks and turn right.

There are four flights a day from Ha'erbin to Mohe (¥1610, 2½ hours). Trains (hard/soft sleeper ¥256/400, 9.55pm) take 21 hours to reach the northern town. Heading back, a train leaves at 7.46pm.

Mohe's train station is about 2km from the centre of town and it costs ¥10 to get here by taxi. To/from the airport, taxis charge ¥20.



# Shanxi

POP 36.3 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Datong](#)

[Around Datong](#)

[Wutai Shan](#)

[Taiyuan](#)

[Pingyao](#)

[Around Pingyao](#)

[Qikou](#)

[Jincheng](#)

[Around Jincheng](#)

---

## Why Go?

Waist-deep in handsome history, Shanxi ( meets virtually all your China travel expectations – and throws in a few surprises. If you only visited Pingyao and jetted home, you might assume China was bursting with picture-perfect ancient walled settlements oozing



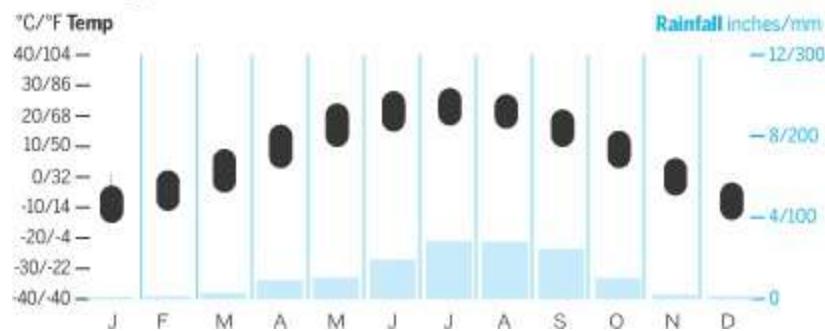
character and charm from each nook and adorable cranny. For sure, basing yourself here and jumping to Pingyao's surrounding sights is practically all you need, with time-worn temples, traditional Qing-dynasty courtyard architecture and some of the warmest people in the Middle Kingdom.

The mountain vastness of Wutai Shan, however, reveals Shanxi's other great source of magic, a Buddhist leaning that fashions magnificent monastic architecture, a disposition further concentrated in the astonishing Buddhist cave sculptures at Yungang. Add in the time-warp walled village of Guoyu and the still-inhabited cave dwellings of Lijiashan, and you'll find yourself spending more time here than you imagined.

---

## When to Go

### Dàtóng



**May** Get a jump on the sapping summer months.

**Late May–early Sep** For trips to cooler, mountainous Wutai Shan.

**Late Sep** Enjoy the comfortable start of the lovely Shanxi autumn.

---

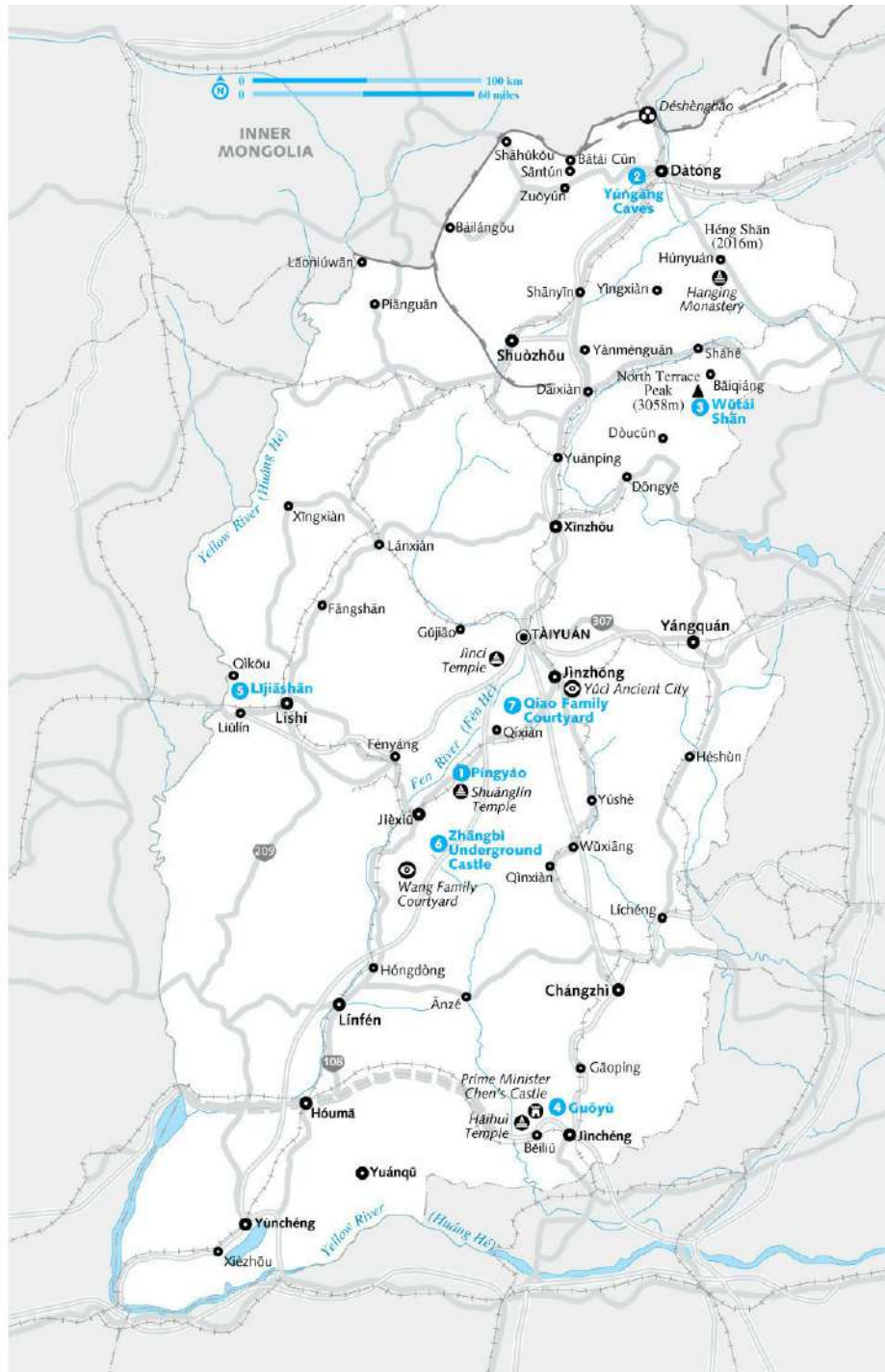
## Best Ancient Towns & Villages

- » Pingyao ([Click here](#))
- » Guoyu ([Click here](#))
- » Lijiashan ([Click here](#))
- » Qikou ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Temples

- » Xiantong Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Tayuan Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Huayan Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Shuanglin Temple ([Click here](#))



## Shanxi Highlights

- 1 Fall head over heels for time-warped **Pingyao** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Discover the indescribable beauty of the Buddhist statues at the **Yungang Caves** ([Click here](#))

- 3 Hang up your traveller's hat in the monastic enclave of **Wutai Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Journey to the still-inhabited historical walled village of **Guoyu** ([Click here](#)) in Shanxi's remote southeast
- 5 Head back in time with an overnight stay in the ancient cave village of **Lijiashan** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Go subterranean at the fascinating **Zhangbi Underground Castle** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Explore some of China's best-preserved courtyard architecture at the **Qiao Family Courtyard** ([Click here](#))

## History

Though home to the powerful state of Jin, which split into three in 403 BC, Shanxi really only rose to greatness with the Tuoba, a clan of the Xianbei people from Mongolia and Manchuria who made Datong their capital during the Northern Wei (AD 386–534). Eventually the Tuoba were assimilated, but as China weakened following the Tang collapse, the northern invaders returned; most notable were the Khitan (907–1125), whose western capital was also in Datong.

After the Ming regained control of northern China, Shanxi was developed as a defensive outpost, with an inner and outer Great Wall constructed along the northern boundaries. Local merchants took advantage of the increased stability to trade, eventually transforming the province into the country's financial centre with the creation of China's first banks in Pingyao.

Today Shanxi is best known for its many mines; the province contains one-third of all China's coal deposits and parts of it are heavily polluted.

## Climate

Dry as dust, with a mere 35cm of rain a year. It only really rains in July (just 12cm). In Taiyuan, lows of -10°C are not uncommon in January, while summer highs exceed 30°C.

## Language

Jin is spoken by most Shanxi people (45 million speakers). The main

difference from Mandarin is its final glottal stop, but it also features complex grammar-induced tone shifts. Most locals also speak Mandarin.



#### Getting There & Around

Modern railway lines and roads split Shanxi on a northeast–southwest axis, so getting from Beijing to Datong, Taiyuan and Pingyao, and on to Xi'an, is no problem. Beyond that, mountain roads and convoys of coal trucks make it slow going.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥50

\$\$ ¥50 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

## Datong

📍 0352 / POP 1.1 MILLION

Its coal-belt setting and socialist-era refashioning have robbed Datong of much of its charm. The city has, however, ploughed mountains of cash – an estimated ¥50 billion – into a colossal renovation program of its old quarter. But even without its pricey facelift, Datong still cuts it as a coal-dusted heavyweight in China's increasingly competitive tourist challenge. The city is the gateway to the awe-inspiring Yungang Caves, one of China's most outstanding Buddhist treasures, and close to the photogenic Hanging Monastery, the world's oldest wooden pagoda, and crumbling earthen sections of the Great Wall.



Datong

📍 Top Sights

[Huayan Temple](#) B4

📍 Sights

1 [Nine Dragon Screen](#) B3

2 [Old Town](#) B3

3 [Shanhua Temple](#) B4

 Sleeping

4 [Datong Youth Hostel](#) B4

5 [Garden Hotel](#) B4

6 [Jiahe Hotel](#) B1

 Eating

7 [Haoxuan Huoguo](#) B2

8 [Tonghe Dafandian](#) B1

## Sights

Much of Datong's old town [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*laochenggou*) has been levelled to restore what was there before. Illogical for sure, but this is China. The renovations were ongoing at the time of writing, with Red Flag Sq completely inaccessible and the area around the Drum Tower (; Gu Lou) re-emerging as a twee 'Ye Olde Qing Quarter'.

Buildings being rebuilt from the ground up include the mosque (; Qingzhen Si), a Taoist temple and many former courtyard houses, while Huayan Jie, Da Beijie and Da Nanjie have become pedestrian-only shopping streets. The vast cost of the old-town refit has been partially passed onto visitors, with admission prices to key sights doubling or more.

Huayan Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huayan Si; Huayan Jie; admission ¥80; 🕒 8am-6.30pm) This temple is divided into two separate complexes, one of which is an active monastery (upper temple), while the other is a museum (lower temple). Built by the Khitan during the Liao dynasty (AD 907–1125), the temple faces east, not south (it's said the Khitan were sun worshippers).

Dating to 1140, the impressive main hall of the Upper Temple (; Shang Huayan Si) is one of the largest Buddhist halls in China, with Ming statues and Qing murals within. The rear hall of the Lower Temple (; Xia Huayan Si) is the oldest building in Datong (1038), containing some remarkable Liao-dynasty wooden sculptures. Side

halls contain assorted relics from the Wei, Liao and Jin dynasties.

Take bus 4 (¥1) from the train station to get here.

Nine Dragon Screen WALL

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiulong Bi; Da Dongjie; admission ¥10; 🕒 8am-7pm) With its nine beautiful multicoloured coiling dragons, this 45.5m-long, 8m-high and 2m-thick Ming-dynasty spirit wall was built in 1392. It's the largest glazed-tile wall in China and an amazing sight; the palace it once protected burnt down years ago.

Shanhua Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shanhua Si; Nansi Jie; admission ¥50; 🕒 8.30am-6.30pm) Originally constructed in AD 713; Shanhua was rebuilt by the Jin. The grand wooden-bracketed rear hall contains five beautiful central Buddhas and expressive statues of celestial generals in the wings.

## Sleeping

Jiahe Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiahe Binguan; 📞 555 9555; 1 Zhanqian Jie; 1 d & tw ¥268; 🌐📶) By the train station, this place has reasonably sized, comfortable rooms (with double beds raised off the floor in an imitation of the traditional *kang* -style), modern showers and a strong broadband connection. The location is ideal for restaurants and transport to Datong's surrounding sites, and beyond. Discounts bring the room prices down well below ¥200.

Datong Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Datong Qingnian Lushe; 📞 242 7788/7766; [www.doyouhike.net](http://www.doyouhike.net); 2 Huayan Jie; 2 dm ¥50, d & tw ¥158; 🌐📶📶) The sole hostel in town is aimed at Chinese travellers, but foreigners will get a warm welcome (in broken English), too. The dorms and doubles are clean and fresh, and all come with bathrooms. Not much of a communal area, and there's no food here, but it makes a decent enough base if you avoid the rooms facing noisy Huayan Jie. The hostel is located above a tiny kids' clothes store; look for the English sign and then go through the



shop and climb the stairs to the 3rd floor.

Garden Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huayuan Dafandian; 📍 586 5888; [www.huayuanhotel.com.cn](http://www.huayuanhotel.com.cn); 59 Da Nanjie; 59 d & tw ¥1080-1380; 🚶📶📞📺📺) Impeccable rooms at this intimate hotel feature goose-down quilts, carved pear-wood bed frames, reproduction antique furnishings and lovely bathrooms. It has an attractive atrium, Latin American and Chinese restaurants, plus excellent staff and a Bank of China ATM. You can sometimes score very significant discounts here, even in high season.

## Eating



Tonghe Dafandian CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhanqian Jie; meals ¥16-40; ☺ 11am-2pm & 6-9pm; 📺) This very popular, bright and cheery spot next to the Hongqi Hotel may look a little intimidating with its big round tables, but solo diners can also pull up a chair. There's a huge range of tasty, well-presented dishes on the menu, suiting all budgets. Try the excellent beef rice noodles (¥16), or pick from a selection of dumplings, soups and veggie dishes, as well as the pricier fish and duck options.

Haoxuan Huoguo HOTPOT, BARBECUE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bldg 1, Xinghuayuan, Xima Lu; hotpot for 1 ¥25; ☺ 9.30am-11pm) A friendly place with a split personality. Inside, it's a clean and modern hotpot palace serving hotpot for individuals (; *shaguo*) and groups (; *huoguo*). Outside, it's a raucous joint for spicy *shaokao* (barbecue). It has big vats of beer for ¥55, handy if there's a few of you, but it also comes by the glass (¥6). No English or picture menu, but the waitresses will help you out.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Da Nanjie) ATM; for travellers cheques, you need the Yingbin Xilu branch (open 8am to noon and 2.30pm to 6pm Monday to Friday). There's another branch close to the train station on Xima Lu.

**China Construction Bank** ( Zhongguo Jianshe Yinhang; Xinjian Beilu) ATM near the train station.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Xinjian Beilu; ☺ 8am-6.30pm)  
Opposite the train station.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; Xinjian Beilu; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr) West of the Jiahe Hotel (Jiahe Binguan).

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju Churujing Jiedaichu; Weidu Dadao; ☺ 9am-noon & 3-5.30pm Mon-Fri)

### **Getting There & Away**

#### Air

Located 20km east of the city, Datong's small airport has flights to Beijing (¥400), Shanghai (¥1450) and Guangzhou (¥1630). Buy tickets at [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) or [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net). No public transport goes to the airport. A taxi costs around ¥50.

#### Bus

Note that minibuses run to many of the destinations listed below from outside the train station. Buses from the **south bus station** (; *xinnan zhan*) :

**Beijing** ¥125, four hours, hourly (7.10am to 4.10pm)

**Muta** ¥25, two hours, half-hourly (7.40am to 7pm)

**Taiyuan** ¥120, 3½ hours, every 20 minutes (6.50am to 7.30pm)

**Wutai Shan** ¥75, 3½ hours, two daily (8.30am and 2.10pm; summer only)

Buses from the **main bus station** ( Datong qichezhan; 20 Yantong Xilu) :

**Jining (for Deshengbao)** ¥15, one hour, hourly (7.30am to 5.30pm)

**Hanging Monastery** ¥30, two hours, half-hourly (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Hohhot** ¥80, 3½ hours, hourly (7.30am to 5.50pm)

#### Train

Train departures from Datong include the following:

**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥54/108, six hours, 12 daily

**Hohhot** hard seat ¥44, four hours, 11 daily

**Pingyao** hard seat/sleeper ¥62/123, seven to eight hours, four daily

**Taiyuan** hard seat ¥46, six hours, seven daily

**Xi'an** hard seat/sleeper ¥115/224, 16½ hours, one daily

## **i** Getting Around

Bus 4 (¥1) runs from the train station through the centre of town, down Da Beijie before turning west along Da Xijie. Bus 30 (¥1, 30 minutes) runs from the train station to the new south bus station. Buses 2 and 15 (¥1, 10 minutes) run from the train station to the main bus station. Taxi flagfall is ¥6.

## Around Datong

### YUNGANG CAVES

One of China's best examples of Buddhist cave art, these 5th-century caves (Yungang Shiku; admission ¥150; ☀ 8.30am-5.30pm summer) are ineffably sublime. With 51,000 ancient statues, they put virtually everything else in the Shanxi shade.

Carved by the Turkic-speaking Tuoba, the Yungang Caves draw their designs from Indian, Persian and even Greek influences that swept along the Silk Road. Work began in AD 460, continuing for 60 years before all 252 caves, the oldest collection of Buddhist carvings in China, had been completed.

At the time of writing, caves 9 to 13 were shut for restoration. That still leaves 40 showcasing some of the most precious and elegant Buddhist artwork in China. Despite weathering, many of the statues at Yungang still retain their gorgeous pigment, unlike the slightly more recent statues at Longmen ([Click here](#)). Note that worshippers still pray here, too. A number of the caves were once covered by wooden structures, but many of these are long gone, although Caves 5, 6, 7 and 8 are fronted by wooden temples.

Some caves contain intricately carved square-shaped pagodas, while others depict the inside of temples, carved and painted to look as though made of wood. Frescos are in abundance and there are graceful depictions of animals, birds and angels, some still brightly painted, and almost every cave contains the 1000-Buddha motif (tiny Buddhas seated in niches).

Eight of the caves contain enormous Buddha statues; the largest can be found in Cave 5, an outstanding 17m-high, seated effigy of

Sakyamuni with a gilded face. The frescos in this cave are badly scratched, but note the painted vaulted ceiling. Bursting with colour, Cave 6 is also stunning, resembling a set from an *Indiana Jones* epic with legions of Buddhist angels, Bodhisattvas and other figures. In the middle of the cave, a square block pagoda connects with the ceiling, with Buddhas on each side over two levels. Most foreign visitors are oblivious to the graffiti in bright red oil paint on the right-hand side of the main door frame within the cave, which reads (Datong Bazhong; Datong No 8 Middle School), courtesy of pupils probably during the Cultural Revolution. On the priceless fresco to the right is further graffiti in red paint, left by what appears to be a contingent from Pingyao.

Further damage is much in evidence. Chronic weathering has afflicted Cave 7 (carved between AD 470 and 493) and Cave 8, both scoured by the Shanxi winds. Atmospheric pollution has also taken its toll.

Caves 16 to 20 are the earliest caves at Yungang, carved under the supervision of monk Tanyao. Examine the exceptional quality of the carvings in Cave 18; some of the faces are perfectly presented. Cave 19 contains a vast 16.8m-high effigy of Sakyamuni. The Maitreya Buddha is a popular subject for Yungang's sculptors, for example in the vast seated forms in Cave 17 and Cave 13; the latter statue has been defaced with graffiti by workers from Hohhot and other miscreants.

Cave 20 is similar to the Ancestor Worshipping Cave at Longmen, originally depicting a trinity of Buddhas (the past, present and future Buddhas). The huge seated Buddha in the middle is the representative icon at Yungang, while the Buddha on the left has somehow vanished. Many caves in the western end of Yungang have Buddhas with their heads smashed off, as in Cave 39. Buddhist figures exposed to the elements, especially near doorways, have been almost totally weathered away.

Most of the caves come with good English captions, but there's also a free audio guide in English (¥100 deposit). Note that photography is permitted in some caves but not in others.



Take bus 4 (¥1, 30 minutes) from outside the post office opposite Datong's train station to its terminus (tell the driver you're headed for the caves). Then cross the road and catch bus 3 (¥1, 30 minutes), which goes to the main gate. Buses run every 10 to 15 minutes. A taxi is ¥40 each way.

## **GREAT WALL**

The Great Wall (Changcheng) is far less spectacular here than the restored sections found near Beijing. Its Ming bricks – too useful for local farmers to leave alone – have all but disappeared, so just picture rammed earthen mounds, parts of which have crumbled away into nothing.

A good place to see some raw wall is little-visited Deshengbao (), a 16th-century walled fort almost on the border with Inner Mongolia that is now a small farming village. The fort's north and south gates are still standing, as are parts of its walls. Walk through the village (many of its houses are built out of Great Wall bricks) to the north gate and beyond it you'll see wild wall; 10m-high sections of it.

To get here, buy a ticket to Fengzhen (; ¥15, one hour) on any bus to Jining () from Datong's main bus station. The bus will drop you at the turn-off for Deshengbao, from where it's a 1km walk to the south gate. Heading back, return to the highway and flag down any Datong-bound bus.

## **HANGING MONASTERY**

Built precariously into the side of a cliff, the Buddhist Hanging Monastery (Xuankong Si; admission ¥130; 🕒 8am-7pm summer) is made all the more stunning by its long support stilts. The halls have been built along the contours of the cliff face, connected by rickety catwalks and narrow corridors, which can get very crowded in summer.

Buses travel here from Datong's main bus station (¥30, two hours). Most will transfer passengers to the monastery into a free taxi for the last 5km from Hunyuan (). Heading back, you'll be stung for ¥20 for a taxi (per person) to Hunyuan. If you want to go on to Muta, there are frequent buses from Hunyuan (¥14, one hour), or shared taxis make the run from the monastery car park for ¥50 per person.

## MUTĀ

Built in 1056, this charming five-storey tower (admission ¥60; ☺ 7.30am-7pm summer, 8am-5.30pm winter) is the world's oldest and tallest (67m) wooden pagoda. The clay Buddhist carvings it houses, including an 11m-high Sakyamuni on the 1st floor, are as old as the pagoda itself. Due to its fragile state, visitors can no longer climb the pagoda, but there are photos of the higher floors to the side of the pagoda.

Muta is located in unlovely Yingxian (). Buses from Datong's south bus station (¥25, two hours) run to its west bus station (; *xizhan*). Hourly buses return to Datong until 6pm, or you can travel onto Taiyuan (¥85, 3½ hours, last bus 3.30pm). From the east bus station (; *dongzhan*), which is really just a crossroads, there are two buses a day to Wutai Shan (¥55, 2½ hours, 10.30am and 3.30pm).

## Wutai Shan

☞ 0350

The gorgeous mountainous, monastic enclave of Wutai Shan (Five Terrace Mountains) is Buddhism's sacred northern range and the earthly abode of Manjusri (; Wenshu), the Bodhisattva of Wisdom. Chinese students sitting the ferociously competitive *gaokao* (university entrance) exams troop here for a nod from the learned Bodhisattva, proffering incense alongside saffron-robed monks and octogenarian pilgrims. A powerful sense of the divine holds sway in Wutai Shan, emanating from the port-walled monasteries – the principal sources of spiritual power – and finding further amplification in the sublime mountain scenery.

The forested slopes overlooking the town eventually give way to alpine meadows where you'll find more temples and great hiking possibilities. Wutai Shan is also famed for its mysterious rainbows, which can appear without rain and are said to contain shimmering mirages of Buddhist beings, creatures and temple halls.

There's a steep ¥218 entrance fee for the area – including a mandatory ¥50 'sightseeing bus' ticket (; *luyou guanguang chepiao*) for transport within the area, which is valid for three days. Some of the

more popular temples charge an additional small entrance fee.

Avoid Wutai Shan during the holiday periods and high-season weekends; temperatures are often below zero from October to March and roads can be impassable.

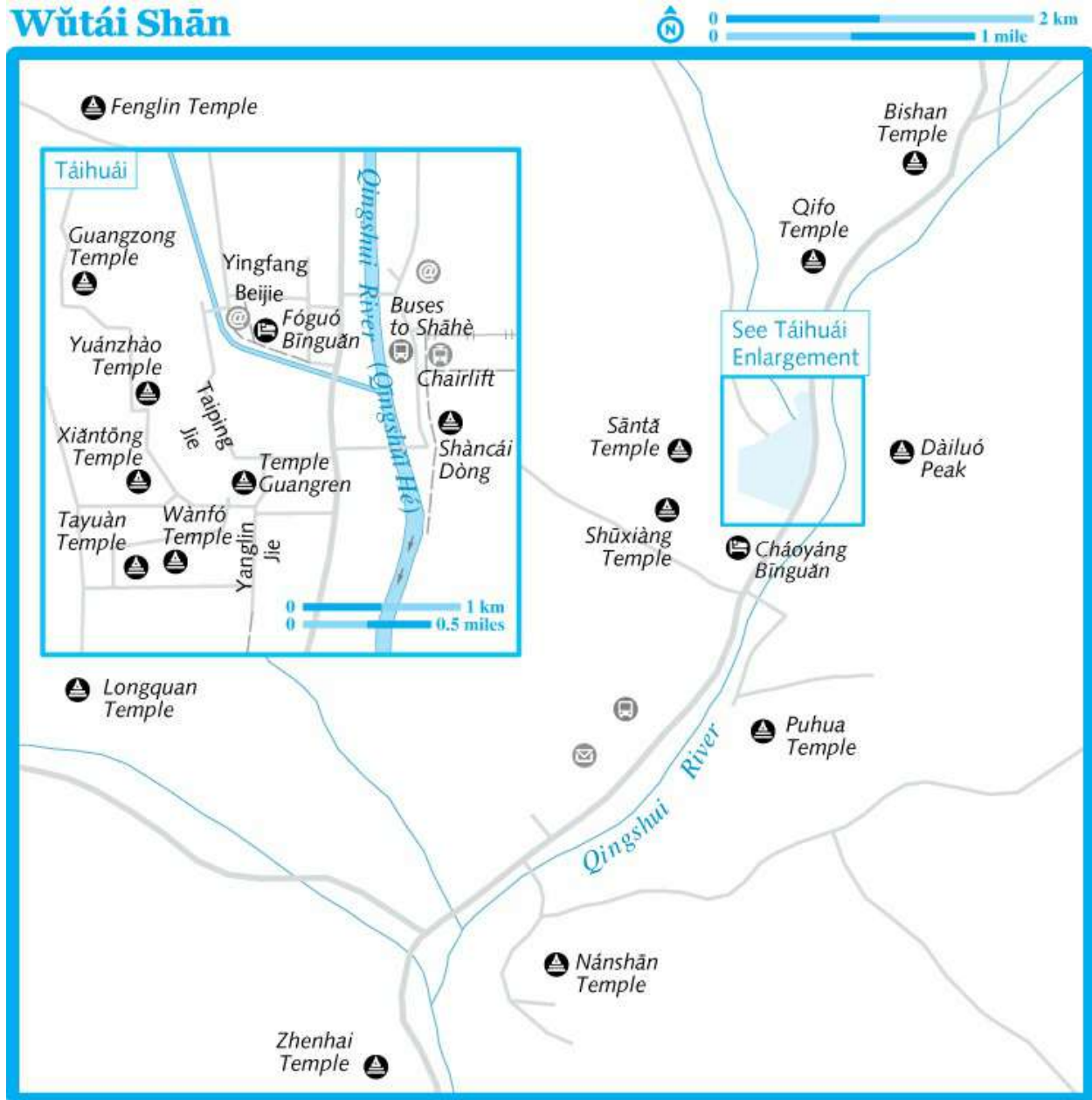
## **History**

It's believed that by the 6th century there were already 200 temples in the area, although all but two were destroyed during the official persecution of Buddhism in the 9th century. During the Ming dynasty, Wutai Shan began attracting large numbers of Tibetan Buddhists (principally from Mongolia) for whom Manjusri holds special significance.

## **Climate**

Wutai Shan is at high altitude and powerful blizzards can sweep in as late as May and as early as September. Winters are freezing and snowbound; the summer months are the most pleasant, but always pack a jacket, as well as suitable shoes or boots for rain, as temperatures fall at night. If you are climbing up the peaks to see the sunrise, warm coats can be hired.

## Wūtái Shān



### Sights

Enclosed within a lush valley between the five main peaks is an elongated, unashamedly touristy town, called Taihuai ( ) but which everyone simply calls Wutai Shan. It's here that you'll find the largest concentration of temples, as well as all the area's hotels and tourist facilities. The five main peaks are north (; *beitai ding*), east (; *dongtai ding*), south (; *nantai ding*), west (; *xitai ding*) and central (; *zhongtai ding*).



More than 50 temples lie scattered in town and across the surrounding countryside, so knowing where to start can be a daunting prospect. Most travellers limit themselves to what is called the Taihuai Temple Cluster (; Taihuai Simiaoqun), about 20 temples around Taihuai itself, among which Tayuan Temple and Xiantong Temple are considered the best. Many temples in Taihuai contain a statue of Manjusri, often depicted riding a lion and holding a sword used to cleave ignorance and illusion. You could spend weeks exploring the mountain area, investigating temple after temple.

#### Tayuan Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Tayuan Si; admission ¥10) At the base of Spirit Vulture Peak (; Lingjiu Feng), the distinctive white stupa rising above, Tayuan Temple is the most prominent landmark in Wutai Shan and virtually all pilgrims pass through here to spin the prayer wheels at its base or to prostrate themselves, even in the snow. Beyond the Devaraja Hall (Hall of Heavenly Kings), with its candlelit gilded statue of Avalokitesvara (instead of Milefo, who you usually find in this position), at the rear of the Daci Yanshou Hall is an altar where worshippers leave tins of instant coffee to Guanyin. Hung with small yellow bells chiming in the Wutai Shan winds, the marvellous Great White Stupa (; Dabai Ta) dates originally from 1301 and is one of 84,000 dagobas built by King Asoka, 19 of which are in China. The Great Sutra-Keeping Hall is a magnificent sight; its towering 9th-century revolving Sutra case originally held scriptures in Chinese, Mongolian and Tibetan.

#### Xiantong Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Xiantong Si; admission ¥10) Xiantong Temple – the largest and most captivating temple in town with around 150 monks in residence – embraces more than 100 halls and rooms. The Qianbo Wenshu Hall contains a 1000-armed, multifaced Wenshu, whose every palm supports a miniature Buddha. The astonishing brick Beamless Hall (; Wuliang Dian) holds a miniature Yuan-dynasty pagoda, remarkable statues of contemplative monks meditating in the alcoves and a vast seated effigy of Wenshu. Further on, up some steps is the blindingly beautiful Golden Hall, enveloped in a constellation of small Buddhas covering all the walls. Five-metres high and weighing 50 tonnes, the metal hall was cast in 1606 before being gilded; it houses an effigy of

Wenshu seated atop a lion.

## OTHER SIGHTS

You can continue exploring the cluster of temples north beyond Xiantong Temple. Yuanzhao Temple (; Yuanzhao Si) contains a smaller stupa than the one at Tayuan Temple. A 10-minute walk south down the road, Shuxiang Temple (; Shuxiang Si) can be reached up some steep steps beyond its spirit wall by the side of the road; the temple contains Wutai Shan's largest statue of Wenshu riding a lion. Before you go looking for Father Christmas at Santa Temple (; Santa Si) to the west of Taihuai, you should know the name actually means Three Pagoda Temple.

For great views of the town, you can trek, take a chairlift (one-way/return ¥50/85) or ride a horse (¥50) up to the temple on Dailuo Peak ( Dailuo Ding; admission ¥8), on the eastern side of Qingshui River (; Qingshui He). For even better views of the surrounding hills, walk 2.5km south to the isolated, fortress-like Nanshan Temple (; Nanshan Si), which sees far fewer tour groups than the other temples and has beautiful stone carvings. Wanfo Temple (; Wanfo Ge) is perfect for a pit stop. During summer there are fabulous, free performances of Shanxi opera on its outdoor stage that run all morning and from 3pm to 6pm.

## Activities

Opportunities for hiking are immense, but there are no good maps, no marked trails and no locals with any interest in hiking to show you the way. You're on your own here, so take food and plenty of water. A good place to start is Shuxiang Temple. Walk past the temple on the small road leading to the central and western peaks, and turn left immediately after the small bridge. You'll find a trail behind the houses that leads up the hillside before heading west on top of the hill. Another option is the hills behind Yuanzhao Temple, where a sign points the way to a path up to the surrounding hill and its pagoda. Roads lead to the summits of the five main peaks, so you could take a taxi up to one of them before hiking back into town using the road as a bearing.

You can find minibuses at the big car park by the chairlift to Dailuo

Peak, which run to all five peaks for ¥350.

## **Sleeping**

Most accommodation is fairly basic. You can find real cheapies without showers in the north of the village.

**Chaoyang Binguan HOTEL \$\$**

( 📞 180 3500 9567; Wayao Jie; tw/tr ¥388/528) There are bigger, more comfortable rooms here than at most other places on the mountain, even if the bathrooms are just as rundown. It's a sizeable place and standard discounts cut the prices in half or more. It's on the right-hand side of the road leading from Tayuan Temple to Shuxiang Temple, very close to Wuye Temple ( ).

**Foguo Binguan HOTEL \$**

( 📞 654 5962; Yingfang Jie; tw/tr without shower ¥60/100, tw/tr with shower ¥120/180) Set around a modern grey courtyard, the rooms here are simple but clean and adequate, while there's hot water and the staff are used to dealing with foreigners. Walk to the end of Yingfang Beijie alley, turn left and it's on your left (opposite the bridge).

## **Eating**

Loads of small family-run restaurants are tucked away behind hotels and down small alleys off the main strip. *Taimo* ( ), the much-revered Wutai Shan mushroom, is the local treat and you will be steered towards it. Try *taimodun jikuai* ( ; *taimo* stewed chicken) or *taimodun tuji* ( ; *taimo* stewed wild chicken). Also look out for *taimodun doufu* ( ; *taimo* stewed tofu). Bear in mind, though, that *taimo* dishes are pricey, and that there are plenty of other options available.

## **Information**

Bring cash, as there's nowhere to change money and ATMs only accept Chinese cards. There are no proper hiking maps available, but you can pick up an OK tourist map (¥5) from many shops.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 🕒 8am-7pm) By the bus station, a half-hour walk south, just north of a China Mobile shop.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥4; 🕒 24hr) Almost next door to the

Foguo Binguan.

## Getting There & Away

Bus

Buses to Shahe (¥25, 1½ hours, hourly, 8am to 6pm) leave from the car park by the chair lift to Dailuo Peak.

Buses from **Wutai Shan bus station** (; *qiche zhan*) :

**Beijing** ¥145, 6½ hours, four daily

**Datong** ¥75, four hours, four daily (7.30am to 2.30pm, summer only)

**Hanging Monastery** ¥65, three hours, one daily (8am)

**Taiyuan** ¥74, three to four hours, hourly (6am to 4pm)

To get here in winter, first go to Shahe from Datong (¥43, 3½ hours, two daily, 6.30am and 7am) and then take a minibus taxi (around ¥70).

Train

The station known as **Wutai Shan** is actually 50km away in the town of Shahe (). An example route and fare is for Beijing (¥63, five to seven hours, 10 daily).

## Taiyuan

 0351 / POP 2.85 MILLION

Most travellers pass through Shanxi's capital en route to Pingyao, but the city has enough to keep you occupied for a day with its excellent museum and a few handsome temples.

# Tàiyuán



## Taiyuan

### 📍 Top Sights

[Chongshan Temple](#) C1

[Confucius Temple](#) C1

### 🛏 Sleeping

1 [Jiaotong Dasha Business Hotel](#) C2

2 [Taiyuan Wanming Hotel](#) C2

### 🍴 Eating

3 Food St A1

4 [Taiyuan Noodle House](#) A2

## 👁 Sights

**FREE** Shanxi Museum MUSEUM

( Shanxi Bowuguan; Binhe Xilu Zhongduan; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun, last entrance 4pm) This top-class museum has three floors that walk you through all aspects of Shanxi culture, from prehistoric fossils to detailed local opera and architecture exhibits. All galleries are imaginatively displayed and most contain good English captions. Take bus 6 (¥1) from the train station, get off at Yifen Qiaoxi ( ) bus stop across the river and look for the inverted pyramid.

## Twin Pagoda Temple/ Yongzuo Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( / Shuangta Si/Yongzuo Si; admission ¥30; ☀ 8.30am-5.30pm) This gorgeous pair of namesake twin pagodas rises up south of the Nansha River in Taiyuan's southwest. Not much of the temple itself is left but the area is well tended with shrubs and greenery; with the wind in their tinkling bells, the highlight brick pagodas are lovely. The 13-storey Xuanwen Pagoda (; Xuanwen Ta) dates from the reign of Ming emperor Wanli and can be climbed. The adjacent pagoda dates from the same period but cannot be climbed. Take bus 820 or 812 from the train station.

## Chongshan Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

( Chongshan Si; Dilianggong Jie; admission ¥2; ☀ 8am-4.30pm) Lovely and cool in summer, the double-eaved wooden hall in this Ming temple contains three magnificent statues: Samantabhadra (the Bodhisattva of Truth), Guanyin (the Goddess of Mercy with 1000 arms) and Manjusri (the Bodhisattva of Wisdom with 1000 alms bowls). The other halls were being renovated at the time of writing. The entrance is down an alley off Dilianggong Jie behind the Confucius Temple ( Wen Miao; 3 Wen Miao Xiang; admission free; ☀ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun), which still has its spirit wall standing guard, as well as a calligraphy exhibition and posh tea house.

## Sleeping

There are very basic guesthouses offering rooms for around ¥40 on Wuyi Dongjie.

### World Trade Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Shanxi Guomao Dafandian; 📞 868 8888; [www.sxwtc.com](http://www.sxwtc.com); 69 Fuxi Jie; 69 d ¥1258-1578, ste ¥2478; 🚗🌐📶📶📶) Its marbled lobby a vast atrium-lit space slung between its two towers (named after and resembling New York's former World Trade Center), this dapper, efficient five-star hotel has the finest rooms and facilities in town, including a gym and spa. You need to pay extra for a view not looking straight into the neighbouring tower. Discounts of 25% available.

### Jiaotong Dasha Business Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Jiaotong Dasha; 📍 826 7008; 50 Yingze Dajie; 50 d & tw ¥428; 🌟🌟) Slightly weary rooms for the price at this big hotel south of the train station, but they're a reasonable size and the bathrooms are modern. The staff are helpful and the discounts of 40% decent.

Taiyuan Wanming Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Taiyuan Wanming Binguan; 📍 494 8888; 23 Wuyi Dongjie; 23 tw ¥158-198; 🌟🌟) A blast from the past with its old-school *fuwuyuan* (attendants) on each floor, the rooms here are battered and noisy but clean. There's a decent internet connection and an attached restaurant, while the location is fine for the train and main bus stations. Discounts of 10% available.

## Eating

Shanxi is famed for its noodles – including *daoxiao mian* (; knife-pared noodles) and *lamian* (; hand-pulled noodles) – and vinegar, both in abundance in Taiyuan. Mutton soup is lapped up by locals for breakfast.



Taiyuan Noodle House NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#)

( Taiyuan Mianshi Dian; 7 Jiefang Lu; noodles from ¥8; 🕒 11am-9.30pm) Great, bustling locals' joint and *the* place to try Shanxi's famous vinegar/noodle combo. Classic forms (named after their shape, not ingredients) include *mao'erduo* (; cat's ears; ¥10) and *cuoyu* (; rolled fish; ¥10). Garnishes include *rouzhajiang* (; pork) and *yangrou* (; mutton). It also does fine *shaomai* (; ¥12). No English menu, but there are pictures of the dishes on the wall.

Food Street CHINESE \$

( Shipin Jie; meals from ¥7; 🕒 11am-2am) For a change from noodles, head to this street lined with all manner of restaurants and outdoor *shaokao* (barbecue) places. You can get noodles here, of course, but also hotpot, dumplings and fried dishes. It gets lively late in the evening, when it's a good place for a beer and a bit of chat with the locals. The street runs north off Zhonglou Jie; look for the Qing-era arch and go through it.

## Information

There are internet cafes all around the train station, but many won't accept foreigners.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 169 Yingze Dajie; ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm) ATM accepts foreign cards. Can change travellers cheques (Monday to Friday).

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; ☎ 8am-7pm) Opposite the train station.

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang; Yingze Dajie) The 24-hour ATM accepts foreign cards.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; Wuyi Dajie; per hr ¥3; ☎ 24hr) Down an alley to the right of Taiyuan Wanming Hotel.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 895 5355; Wuyi Dongjie; ☎ 8-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri winter, 8-11.30am & 3-5.30pm summer) Can extend visas.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Shuttle buses to the airport (¥15, 40 minutes, hourly from 6am to 8.30pm) run from the side of the Sanjin International Hotel on Wuyi Guangchang. The airport is 15km southeast of downtown Taiyuan; a taxi costs around ¥50.

Destinations include Beijing (¥590), Hangzhou (¥580), Hong Kong (¥1400), Kunming (¥1640), Nanjing (¥700), Shanghai (¥920) and Shenzhen (¥1090).

Bus

Taiyuan's **long-distance bus station** (; *changtu qichezhan*) is 500m south of the train station on Yingze Dajie. Buses travel to the following destinations:

**Beijing** ¥146, seven hours, three daily (8.30am, 10.30am and 2.30pm)

**Datong** ¥117, 3½ hours, every 20 minutes (6.40am to 7pm)

**Shanghai** ¥409, 17 hours, one daily (2.30pm)

**Shijiazhuang** ¥65, 3½ hours, two daily (10.30am and 2.30pm)

**Xi'an** ¥180, eight hours, five daily (8am to 6pm)

**Zhengzhou** ¥156, seven hours, five daily (7am to 5pm)



Buses from the **Jiannan bus station** (; Jiannan zhan), 3km south of the train station:

**Jiexiu** ¥42, two hours, half-hourly (7.30am to 7pm)

**Jincheng** ¥114, four hours, every 40 minutes (6.50am to 7pm)

**Pingyao** ¥26, two hours, half-hourly (6am to 7.30pm)

**Qixian** ¥23, two hours, half-hourly (7.30am to 7pm)

The **east bus station** (; *dong kezhan*) has buses to Wutai Shan (¥74, three to four hours, every 50 minutes, 6.40am to 6.30pm).

The **west bus station** (; *keyun xizhan*) has the following services:

**Lishi** ¥70, two hours, frequent (7am to 7.30pm)

**Qikou** ¥79, four hours, one daily (10.30am)

Train

Direct routes from **Taiyuan Train Station** (; *huoche zhan*) :

**Beijing** D express train ¥149, three hours 40 minutes; normal train ¥73, five to six hours, 22 daily

**Datong** hard seat/sleeper ¥46/100, five to seven hours, seven daily

**Jincheng** hard seat/sleeper ¥48/108, seven hours, four daily

**Pingyao** ¥15, 1½ hours, frequent

**Wutai Shan** ¥54, five hours, one daily

**Xi'an** hard seat/sleeper ¥103/191, nine to 11 hours, nine daily

### **Getting Around**

Bus 1 (¥1) runs the length of Yingze Dajie. For the Jiannan bus station and the west bus station, take bus 611 (¥1.50) from the train station. For the east bus station take any bus (¥1.50) heading east from Wulongkou Jie.

Taxi flagfall is ¥8.

**DON'T MISS**

## **QIAO FAMILY COURTYARD**

This 18th-century complex of courtyards at the Qiao Family Courtyard ( Qiaojia Dayuan; admission ¥72; ☺ 8am-7pm) is one of the finest remaining examples of a traditional private residence in northern China. Once home to a celebrated merchant, it's an austere maze of doorways and courtyards that lead onto seemingly

endless rooms (there are over 300 of them).

The complex is famous in China for being where Zhang Yimou's lush fifth-generation tragedy *Raise the Red Lantern* was filmed. Appropriately, there are red lanterns hanging everywhere, but there are also many fascinating exhibits of Qing-era furniture and clothes, as well as Shanxi opera costumes and props.

Souvenir and food stalls surround the compound, which is extremely popular with domestic tour groups (get here as early as you can). But the residence is still big enough to escape the crowds; you can step through one of the many doorways and they magically disperse.

To get here, catch any bus going to Qixian (; ¥23, 1½ hours) from Taiyuan's Jiannan bus station. Tell the driver where you're headed and they'll drop you at the main gate. You can also visit from Pingyao.

## Pingyao

☞ 0354 / POP 450,000

China's best-preserved ancient walled town, Pingyao is fantastic. Anyone with any China mileage under their belt will be bewitched by the town's age-old charms; charms squandered away – or forever lost – elsewhere across the Middle Kingdom. While other 'ancient' cities in China will rustle together an unconvincing display of old city walls, sporadic temples or the occasional ragged alley thrust beneath an unsightly melange of white-tile architecture and greying apartment blocks, Pingyao has managed to keep its beguiling narrative largely intact. This is the China of your dreams: red-lantern–hung lanes set against night-time silhouettes of imposing town walls, elegant courtyard architecture, ancient towers poking into the north China sky, and an entire brood of creaking temples and old buildings.

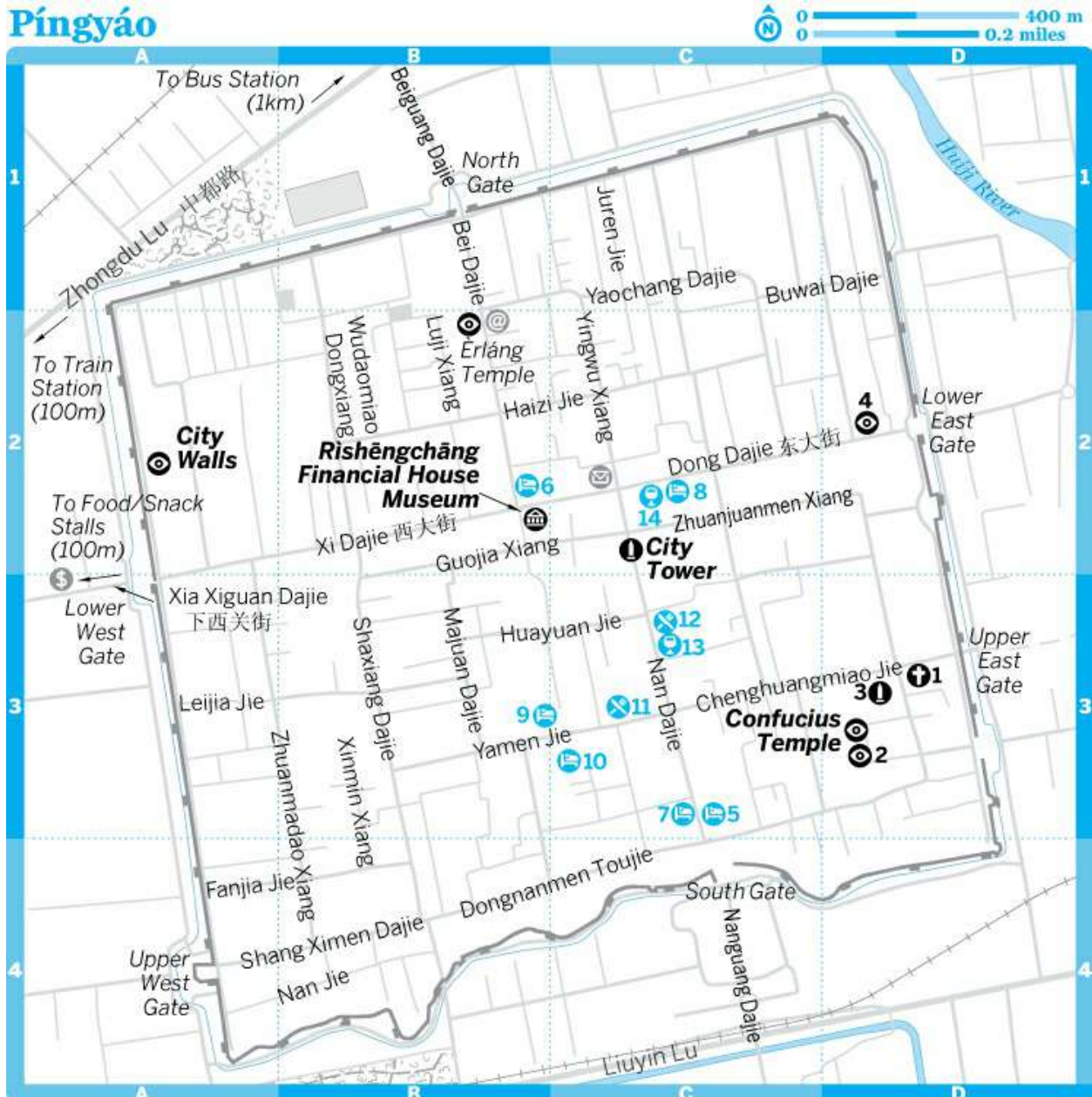
Pingyao is also a living and breathing community where the 30,000-odd locals who reside in the old town hang laundry in courtyards, career down alleyways on bicycles, sun themselves in doorways or chew the fat with neighbours. If you've been doing some hard travelling in the hinterlands, it's a great place to catch your breath and

kick back for a few days, while Pingyao is also a fine base for day trips to the Wang Family Courtyard and Zhangbi Cun and its 1400-year-old underground castle.

## **History**

Already a thriving merchant town during the Ming dynasty, Pingyao's ascendancy came in the Qing era when merchants created the country's first banks and cheques to facilitate the transfer of silver from one place to another. The city escaped the shocking reshaping much loved by communist town planners, and almost 4000 Ming- and Qing-dynasty residences remain within the city walls.

# Píngyáo



## Pingyao

⊙ Top Sights

[City Tower](#) C2

[City Walls](#) A2

[Confucius Temple](#) D3

[Rishengchang Financial House Museum](#) B2

⊙ Sights

1 [Catholic Church](#) D3

2 [Dacheng Hall](#) D3

3 [Nine Dragon Screen](#) D3

4 [Qingxu Guan](#) D2

 Sleeping

5 [Cui Chenghai Hotel](#) C3

6 [Dejuyuan Guesthouse](#) B2

7 [Harmony Guesthouse](#) C3

8 [Jing's Residence](#) C2

9 [Yamen Youth Hostel](#) B3

10 [Zhengjia Kezhan](#) C3

 Eating

11 [Beibaoke](#) C3

12 [Dejuyuan](#) C3

 Drinking

13 [Sakura Cafe](#) C3

14 [Sakura Cafe](#) C2

## Sights & Activities

Bounded by an intact city wall, gates access the old town at various points in the east, west, north and south. The main drag is Nan Dajie (), where you'll find guesthouses, restaurants, museums, temples and souvenir shops galore. If you have even the remotest interest in Chinese history, culture or architecture, you could easily spend a couple of days wandering the pinched lanes of Pingyao, stumbling across hidden gems while ticking off all the well-known sights. It's free to walk the streets, but you must pay ¥150 to climb the city walls or enter any of the 18 buildings deemed historically significant. Tickets are valid for three days; electronic audio tours are ¥40 (¥100 deposit). Opening hours for the sights are from 8am to 7pm in summer and 8am to 6pm in winter.

City Walls WALLS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

A good place to start is the magnificent city walls (; *cheng qiang*), which date from 1370. At 10m high and more than 6km in circumference, they are punctuated by 72 watchtowers, each containing a paragraph from Sunzi's *The Art of War*. Part of the

southern wall, which collapsed in 2004, has been rebuilt, but the rest is original. Pingyao's city gates (; *chengmen*) are fascinating and are some of the best preserved in China; the Lower West Gate (Fengyi Men; Phoenix Appearing Gate) has a section of the original road, deeply grooved with the troughs left by cartwheels (also visible at the South Gate).

#### Rishengchang Financial House Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Rishengchang; 38 Xi Dajie; 38 ) Not to be missed, this museum began life as a humble dye shop in the late 18th century before its tremendous success as a business saw it transform into China's first draft bank (1823), eventually expanding to 57 branches nationwide. The museum has nearly 100 rooms, including offices, living quarters and a kitchen, as well as several old cheques.

#### Confucius Temple CONFUCIAN

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; Wen Miao) Pingyao's oldest surviving building is Dacheng Hall ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Dacheng Dian), dating from 1163 and found in the Confucius Temple, a huge complex where bureaucrats-to-be came to take the imperial exams.

#### City Tower TOWER

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shi Lou; Nan Dajie; admission ¥5; 🕒 8am-7pm) Tallest building in the old town. Climb its smooth stone steps for fine views over Pingyao's magnificent rooftops and inspect its ragged and forlorn shrine to a severe-looking Guandi.

#### Qingxu Guan TAOIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dong Dajie) Shanxi dust has penetrated every crevice of the 10 halls that make up this impressive Taoist temple. But that only adds to its ancient aura; it dates back to the Tang dynasty.

#### Slogans HISTORIC SITE

Pop into 153 Xi Dajie for two red-blooded slogans from the Cultural Revolution that have survived on buildings within the courtyard. The one on the left intones: ('Industry should learn from Daqing'); the rarer

slogan on the right proclaims: ('Earnestly undertake struggle, criticism and reform').

### Nine Dragon Screen MONUMENT

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiulong Bi; Chenghuangmiao Jie) In front of the old Pingyao Theatre (; Daxitang).

### Catholic Church CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tianzhu Tang; 2 Anjia Jie) With a snow-white statue of the Virgin Mary outside, this historic, if dilapidated, church is the focal point for Pingyao's Catholics.

## Tours

Mr Deng, who runs the Harmony Guesthouse, gives reader-recommended day-long tours of the city for ¥150. He's a great source of local knowledge and can also point you towards some little-visited sites outside town.

## Sleeping

Most of the old-town hotels are conversions of old courtyard homes, and finding a bed for the night is not hard. Pingyao courtyards differ from their squarer Beijing equivalents; courtyards in Pingyao are , meaning 'shaped like the character ', and are more rectangular in shape. Pingyao hoteliers are increasingly tuned in to the needs of Western travellers, which means some English is spoken and they can make a passable Western breakfast. Most hotels and hostels will do pick-ups from the train or bus stations.



Harmony Guesthouse COURTYARD HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Heyichang Kezhan; 📍 568 4952; [www.py-harmony.com](http://www.py-harmony.com); 165 Nan Dajie; 165 dm ¥40-60, s ¥140, d & tr ¥180-210; 📶@📶) Justifiably popular, Harmony Guesthouse offers rooms off two beautifully preserved courtyards in a lovely 300-year-old Qing building, as well as in a smaller courtyard down a neighbouring alley. The unflagging English-speaking husband and wife team have created a hospitable

environment and most rooms come with traditional stone *kang* beds, wooden bed-top tea tables and delightful wooden inlaid windows. Dorm accommodation is in the original guesthouse, as well as in the bar just up the road. Also offers tours, ticketing, bike rental (¥10 per day), laundry, internet, wi-fi and pick-up.

Dejuyuan Guesthouse COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dejuyuan Kezhan; 📍 568 5266; [www.pydjy.net](http://www.pydjy.net); 43 Xi Dajie; 43 d ¥280, tw ¥368-580, ste ¥1480; 📶@📶) Very well-maintained rooms are set around two of the oldest courtyards in Pingyao (400 years old) at this efficient and friendly place. The cheapest rooms are excellent value, while the suites are luxurious and come with tip-top bathrooms. Its restaurant is a fine place to try high quality local dishes at reasonable prices. Staff can arrange train tickets and tours as well.



Jing's Residence COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jin Zhai; 📍 584 1000; [www.jingsresidence.com](http://www.jingsresidence.com); 16 Dong Dajie; 16 r ¥1438; 📶@📶) With the super-hushed atmosphere that's unique to the most exclusive (and expensive) hotels, Jing's is a soothing blend of old Pingyao and modern flair that's squarely aimed at upmarket Western travellers. At 260 years old the former home of a Qing-dynasty silk merchant is sleek and well finished: the themed courtyards are picture-perfect, rooms are elegant and stylish (the vast upstairs suites have views over Pingyao's rooftops), while the upstairs bar must be the most sophisticated in all of Shanxi. Its restaurant serves high-priced Western fusion cuisine. There are only 19 rooms here and it's essential to book ahead.

Yamen Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yamen Guanshe Qingnian Lushe; 📍 568 3539; 69 Yamen Jie; 69 7-/3-bed dm ¥40/60, d & tw ¥180-240; 📶@📶) Set around a series of courtyards, rooms are larger than many in Pingyao but rather done in; the bathrooms could do with an upgrade. Dorms under the eaves are clean, with OK showers and toilets downstairs. The staff are obliging and all the usual hostel favourites are here: DVD room, ticketing, laundry, free internet, wi-fi, bike hire, pool table and pick-up. Discounts



of 30% available.

Zhengjia Kezhan COURTYARD HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 568 4466; 68 Yamen Jie; 68 dm ¥35-40, d ¥168-218; 🌐@📶 ) With two locations virtually next door to each other, head to the one closest to the Listen to the Rain Pavilion for decent doubles with *kang* beds set around a very pleasant courtyard. The cramped but fresh and clean dorms are under the eaves at the neighbouring courtyard (which also has doubles). There's a good communal area and it sees more Chinese travellers than the other guesthouses, making it a good place to meet the locals.

Cui Chenghai Hotel COURTYARD HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Cui Chenghai Kezhan; 📍 577 7888; [www.pycch.com](http://www.pycch.com); 178 Nan Dajie; 178 d & tw ¥168; 🌐@📶 ) Rooms are spacious, with big *kang* beds, but rather stark. The restored Ming-dynasty courtyard setting, though, is lovely.

## Eating & Drinking

Most guesthouses can rustle up (Western or Chinese) breakfast, lunch and dinner. Pingyao's lanes are stuffed with *xiaochi* (; hole-in-the-wall restaurants), almost all offering the same dishes at similar prices. For something cheaper and less touristy, head to Xia Xiguan Jie () just outside the lower west gate, where food stalls offer different varieties of noodles for ¥4 and up, as well *roujjamo* (; fried pork or beef with green peppers in bread) and meat and veggie skewers.

Pingyao doesn't have many worthwhile bars, but courtyard hotels provide virtually all you need: bottles of chilled beer, a gorgeous courtyard to sit in, a chair and table, some grilled peanuts, the Shanxi night sky above your head, a book and some candlelight. Look out for heart-warming, soothing alcoholic infusions such as the pink *nu'er hong* () or the clear *meigui* (), which are available at most guesthouses and restaurants.

Dejuyuan SHANXI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 82 Nan Dajie; 🕒 8.30am-10pm; 📍 ) Traveller friendly, but no worse

for that, this welcoming and popular little restaurant has a simple and tasty menu of northern Chinese dishes, such as dumplings (¥15), as well as all the local faves. Try the famed Pingyao beef or the mountain noodles (¥12). Cold dishes start at ¥8.

Beibaoke SHANXI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 37 Yamen Jie; dishes from ¥12; 🕒 7am-10.30pm) Despite its name ('backpacker' in Mandarin), this cubbyhole restaurant sees fewer foreign faces than many places in Pingyao. It also has a rather more esoteric kitchen, with the likes of spicy mini-hotpot (*shaguo niurou*; ) and sweet and sour meatballs (¥28) available, as well as the inevitable noodle options. No English menu, but there are pictures on the wall.

Sakura Cafe BAR \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yinghuawu Xican Jiuba; 6 Dong Dajie; dishes from ¥35, beers from ¥10; 🕒 9.30am-midnight; 📶📺) Always busy, this lively, fun cafe-bar attracts both locals and foreigners with its daily food and drink specials. It does decent pizzas (¥55), as well as breakfasts, coffee, beers and cocktails. There's another equally popular branch at 86 Nan Dajie.

## Shopping

Part of Pingyao's charms lie in its peeling and weatherbeaten shopfronts, yet to be mercilessly restored. Nan Dajie is stuffed with wood-panelled shops selling ginger sweets (marvel at vendors pulling the golden sugary ginger mass into strips), moon cakes, Pingyao snacks, knick-knacks, Cultural Revolution memorabilia, jade, shoes and slippers, and loads more. Look out for red and black Shanxi paper cuts, which make excellent presents.

## Information

All guesthouses and hostels have internet and wi-fi access.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Xi Dajie; 🕒 8am-6pm)

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang; Xia Xiguan Dajie) Has an ATM that accepts Visa but, like all

other Pingyao banks, does not change money or travellers cheques.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) Down a scruffy alley opposite the Erlang Temple on Bei Dajie. Turn left into the first courtyard and go up to the 2nd floor.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 563 5010; Shuncheng Lu; ☺ 8am-12pm & 3-6pm Mon-Fri) Around 3km south of the train station, on the corner of the junction with Shuguang Lu. Cannot extend visas.

## Getting There & Away

### Bus

Pingyao's **bus station** (; *qichexinzhan*) has buses to Taiyuan (¥26, two hours, frequent, 6.30am to 7.40pm), Lishi (¥44, two hours, 8.30am to 12.30pm) and Changzhi (¥68, three hours, 7.50am and 1.40pm). Catch buses to local destinations such as Jiexiu (¥9, 40 minutes) from the train station.

### Train

Tickets for trains (especially to Xi'an) are tough to get in summer, so plan ahead. Your hotel/hostel should be able to help. Trains depart for the following destinations:

**Beijing** hard seat/sleeper ¥92/170, 11 to 14 hours, three daily

**Datong** hard seat/sleeper ¥62/123, seven to eight hours, four daily

**Taiyuan** ¥15, 1½ hours, frequent

**Xi'an** hard seat/sleeper ¥67/134, 8½ to 10½ hours, five daily

## Getting Around

Pingyao can be easily navigated on foot or bicycle (¥10 per day). Bike rental is all over the place; most guesthouses offer it and there are many spots along Nan Dajie and Xi Dajie. Rickshaws run to the train and bus stations for ¥10.

## Around Pingyao

Most hostels and guesthouses will arrange transport to the surrounding sights. Day tours including the Wang Family Courtyard and Zhangbi Underground Castle are typically ¥80 per person (excluding the admission price or food).

## ZHANGBI UNDERGROUND CASTLE

This 1400-year-old network of defence tunnels (Zhangbi Gubao; admission ¥60; 🕒 8am-6.30pm) are the oldest and longest series of such tunnels in all China. Built at the end of the Sui dynasty and stretching underground for 10km, they were never employed for their intended use against possible attack from Tang-dynasty invaders and subsequently fell into disrepair. Now, 1500m of tunnels on three levels have been restored. You descend as low as 26m in places and tour narrow and stooped subterranean passageways, which were once storage rooms, guardhouses and bedrooms. Holes cut into the side of shafts leading to the surface indicate escape routes and places where the soldiers stood sentry to spy on would-be attackers.

Guides are compulsory and essential; you don't want to get lost here. They are included in the ticket price and foreigners are normally assigned someone who can speak English.

The tour includes a visit to fascinating Zhangbi Cun (), a still-occupied Yuan-dynasty farming village above the tunnels. You can wander its cobblestoned streets and temples for free if you don't mind skipping the underground castle.

You can only get here on a tour or by taxi. To cut the cost, take a bus halfway to Jiexiu (; ¥9, 40 minutes). A return taxi from Jiexiu, including waiting time, is around ¥150.

## WANG FAMILY COURTYARD

More castle than cosy home, this Qing-dynasty former residence (Wangjia Dayuan; admission ¥66; 🕒 7.30am-7pm) is grand and has been very well maintained (note the wooden galleries still fronting many of the courtyard buildings). Its sheer size, though, means that the seemingly endless procession of courtyards (123 in all) becomes a little repetitive. Behind the castle walls are interesting and still-occupied cave dwellings (; *yaodong*), while in front of the complex is a Yuan-dynasty Confucius Temple ( Wen Miao; admission ¥10), with a beautiful three-tiered wooden pagoda.

Two direct buses (¥17, one hour, 8.50am and 1.10pm) leave from Pingyao's bus station, returning at 12.40pm and 4pm. Regular buses go to Jiexiu (; ¥9, 40 minutes), where you can change to bus 11 (¥5,

40 minutes), which terminates at the complex. The last bus back to Jiexiu leaves at 6pm.

## SHUANGLIN TEMPLE

Within easy reach of Pingyao, this Buddhist temple (Shuanglin Si; admission ¥40; 🕒 8.30am-6.30pm) surrounded by cornfields, houses a number of rare, intricately carved Song and Yuan painted statues. Rebuilt in 1571, it's an impressive complex of halls and rather more authentic than many restored temples. The interiors of the Sakyamuni Hall and flanking buildings are especially exquisite. A rickshaw or taxi from town will cost ¥40 to ¥50 return, or you could cycle the 7km here (although expect to swallow coal truck dust if you do).

## Qikou

📍 0358 / POP 32,000

Separated from neighbouring Shaanxi (Shanxi) province ([Click here](#)) by the fast-flowing and muddy Yellow River (; Huang He), this tiny Ming River port found prosperity during its Qing heyday when hundreds of merchants lived here, only to lose it when the Japanese army arrived in 1938. It's well worth visiting for its evocative stone courtyards and cobbled pathways. All wind their way, eventually, up to the Black Dragon Temple, which overlooks the town. Some of the houses have English captions revealing their former official roles, such as the pawnshop and chamber of commerce. The weekly market on Saturday is a good time to visit, when people from the surrounding villages arrive by tractor and electric cart for a day of shopping and revelry.

The main draw, though, is the nearby ancient village of Lijiashan, a seemingly long-forgotten settlement of hundreds of cave dwellings (; *yaodong*), some of which remain inhabited today.

## CAVE DWELLINGS

People have been living in cave houses (; *yaodong*) in Shanxi for almost 5000 years; it's believed that at one stage a quarter of the population lived underground. Shanxi's

countryside is still littered with *yaodong*, especially around the Yellow River area, and Lijiashan is a wonderful example. These days most lie abandoned, but almost three million people in Shanxi (and around 30 million in total in China) still live in caves. And who can blame them? Compared to modern houses, they're cheaper, far better insulated against freezing winters and scorching summers, much more soundproof, while they also afford better protection from natural disasters such as earthquakes or forest fires. Furthermore, with far fewer building materials needed to construct them, they're a lot more environmentally friendly. So why isn't everyone living in them? Well, although most are now connected to the national grid, the vast majority of cave communities have no running water or sewerage system, turning simple daily tasks like washing or going to the toilet into a mission and suddenly making even the ugliest tower block seem a whole lot more attractive.

## Sights

### Lijiashan CAVES

() An absolute dream for travellers wanting to experience Shanxi's cave houses (; *yaodong*), this remote, supremely peaceful 550-year-old village, hugging a hillside with terraces of crops running up it, has hundreds of cave dwellings scaling nine storeys. Once home to more than 600 families, most surnamed Li, today's population is around 45. Almost all inhabitants are elderly: the local school, with caves for classrooms, has just four pupils. People here speak Jin, although most understand Mandarin. Some of the stone paths and stairways that twist up the hill date from Ming times; note the rings on some walls that horses were tied to.

To get here, cross the bridge by Qikou's bus stop and follow the river for about 30 minutes until you see a blue sign indicating Lijiashan. Walk on for about 100m and then take the road up the hill for another 30 minutes and you'll reach the old village.

### Black Dragon Temple TAOIST

(; Heilong Miao) They say the acoustics of this Ming Taoist temple, with wonderful views of the Yellow River, were so excellent that performances held on its stage were audible on the other side of the river in Shaanxi (Shanxi) province. On Saturday afternoons, there are often fantastic, free Shanxi opera shows, which attract a crowd of knowledgeable senior citizens. From Qikou's bus stop, follow the road to the river, then take any number of old cobbled pathways up the hill,

via the odd courtyard or two.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Some locals offer functional beds for around ¥50. There are basic noodle joints on the 'main' street behind the bus stop.



### Qikou Kezhan GUESTHOUSE \$

( 📞 446 6188; d/tw/tr ¥188/218/388; @ ) Overlooking the river in Qikou, this historic (the Red Army used it as a base in WWII) and friendly place has comfortable and very large, *yaodong* -style rooms (all with internet connections) with *kang* beds set off two 300-year-old courtyards. Climb the stone stairs and there's a wonderful terrace that has great views over the Yellow River. It's a fine place to enjoy a beer, or the tasty meals cooked up here, under the starry sky. Discounts of 10% available.

### Siheyuan Ludian COURTYARD GUESTHOUSE \$

( 📞 138 3583 2614; r per person incl meals ¥50; @ ) This 180-year-old rustic courtyard has a handful of cave bedrooms burrowed into the hill behind it. Run by the genial Mr Li, and his welcoming wife, whose family have lived here for six generations, rooms come with huge, chunky, stone *kang* beds, traditional Chinese paper window panes and computers. There's electricity and running water (most of the time). Give Mr Li a call when you're on the way and he'll come and meet you. Otherwise, wander down the path through the village from the road and look for the big sign displaying

## **Getting There & Away**

One bus runs from Taiyuan to Qikou (¥79, four hours, 10.30am). If you miss it, or are coming from Pingyao, you will have to go through Lishi ( ).

Regular buses go from Taiyuan to Lishi (¥70, three hours, half-hourly from 7.35am to 7pm). There are five daily buses from Pingyao (¥44, two hours, 7.30am to 12.30pm). From Lishi's long-distance bus station ( ; *changtu qichezhan* ), take bus 1 (¥1, 15 minutes) to the crossroads where buses to Qikou (¥17, 1½ hours, 6.30am to 3.30pm) depart.

There's one daily bus from Qikou to Taiyuan, but it leaves at 5.30am. There are regular buses to Lishi from Qikou until around 3pm. From

Lishi, there are many buses back to Taiyuan (¥70, from 7am to 8pm), two to Pingyao (¥44, 7.30am and 11.40am) and three to Xi'an (¥180, eight hours, 7am, 11.30am and 2.30pm).

## Jincheng

☎ 0356 / POP 505,115

One snug, 470-year-old pagoda aside, Jincheng has few sights, but this small, little-visited city is the launch pad for a historical adventure into Shanxi's southeast. The surrounding countryside hides some very impressive ancient architecture, making this a rewarding stop, particularly if you are continuing south into Henan.

The only sight of note in town is Bifeng Temple ( Bifeng Si; 🕒 6am-6pm), which sits atop a hill close to the train station. The temple itself is newly built but the nine-storey pagoda dates back to the Ming dynasty. You can climb its dark and very narrow steps for views over Jincheng.

Most hotels in town are either overpriced or won't accept foreigners. The best option is the eccentric Venice Water City ( Weinisi Shuicheng; ☎ 888 3600; 978 Wenchang Dongjie; 978 tw/d ¥205/215; 📞), a spa-cum-hotel close to the People's Hospital (; Renmin Yiyuan). You take your shoes off in the lobby (and pad around in slippers), while the staff hover unnervingly, but the rooms are modern, clean and comfortable, and all come with computers.

On Wenchang Dongjie you can also find a branch of the Bank of China with an ATM (there are many more around town), plenty of restaurants and an internet cafe (¥2 per hour; open 24 hours), although foreigners were barred from using it at the time of writing.

Buses to Taiyuan (¥114, four hours, hourly, 6.30am to 6.30pm) and Changzhi (¥38, half-hourly, 6.30am to 6.30pm), where you can change for Pingyao, depart from the central bus station (; *keyun zongzhan*) close to the train station. If you're heading south to Henan, you need the long-distance bus station (; *changtu qichezhan*) on Jianshe Lu. There are buses to Zhengzhou (¥63, every 40 minutes, 5.40am to 6.20pm) and Luoyang (¥50, hourly, 7.20am to 6pm), as well as to Xi'an (¥176 to ¥196, three daily, 8.30am, 10am, 6.20pm) and



Beijing (¥261, 10 hours, 6.20pm).

The few trains that pass Jincheng shuttle between Taiyuan (hard seat/sleeper ¥54/108, seven hours, four daily) and Zhengzhou (¥30, 3½ hours, two daily).

Bus 2 (¥1) connects the train station with the central and long-distance bus stations. Taxi flagfall is ¥5.

## Around Jincheng

### GUOYU

This atmospheric walled village (Guoyu Gucheng) is the highlight of a trip to this part of Shanxi. There's no entrance fee and no tourist nonsense (amazingly, many of the domestic tour groups skip the village); just the genuine charm of a historic and still-inhabited Ming-dynasty settlement.

The crumbling remains of this one-time fort's south gate and some of its old walls still stand sentry at the entrance to the village close to the road. Walk 200m and it's as if you've stepped back in time. Narrow alleys and stone streets run past courtyard houses, where the locals sit and chatter in their native dialect.

It's best to wander Guoyu aimlessly. But don't miss Tangdi Miao (), a 600-year-old Taoist temple and the village's oldest building. Make sure to climb up to the stage, where there are two very rare Cultural Revolution-era paintings adorned with slogans exhorting the locals to work harder (the temple was a government building during that time). It's also worth looking inside the former courtyard residence of Minister Chen's grandfather at 1 Jingyang Beilu ( 1 ).

To get here, catch one of the frequent buses headed to Prime Minister Chen's Castle (¥15, 1½ hours, 6am to 6.30pm) from Jincheng's long-distance station. Guoyu is a 10-minute walk south of the castle. Return transport is scarce, so it's best to take a minibus to the small town of Beiliu (; ¥3, 15 minutes), then catch an ordinary bus back to Jincheng (¥12).

### PRIME MINISTER CHEN'S CASTLE

This beautifully preserved Ming-dynasty castle (Huangcheng Xiangfu;

admission ¥100; 🕒 8am-6.30pm) is the former residence of Chen Tingjing, prime minister under Emperor Kangxi in the late 17th century, and co-author of China's most famous dictionary. The Chen family rose to prominence as senior officials in the 16th century and the castle walls were originally constructed to keep revolting peasants out.

The castle now comes with all the tourist trappings – souvenir sellers, flag-waving guides with microphones – but it remains an attractive maze of battlements, courtyards, gardens and stone archways. It's also home to China's only dictionary museum.

Regular buses (¥15) run to the ticket office from Jincheng's long-distance bus station.

## FOR REFERENCE – PRIME MINISTER CHEN'S DICTIONARY

Prime Minister Chen Tingjing was undoubtedly a man of many talents. Outside his governmental responsibilities he also inspired as a teacher, poet and musician. His surviving legacy, however, was not one of China's great works of creativity, but a dictionary. Not just any dictionary, mind. China's most famous and most comprehensive, and the last one ever to be commissioned by an emperor. Named after that emperor, the *Kangxi Dictionary* was a mammoth undertaking put together by Chen and Zhang Yushu, both of whom died before its completion in 1716. Multi-volumed, and containing 49,030 characters, it was, until 1993, the largest Chinese dictionary ever compiled.

Appropriately enough, Chen's former residence now houses China's only dictionary museum. Among the exhibits are 39 versions of the *Kangxi Dictionary*, the oldest being a 42-volume, 47,035-character edition of 1827. Modern reprints can be bought in the small dictionary shop, although you might need a spare rucksack to get one back to the hotel!

## HĀIHUI TEMPLE

Closed at the time of writing, but normally open, this Buddhist temple (Haihui Si; admission ¥30), where Minister Chen used to study, is dominated by its two magnificent brick pagodas. The 20m-high Sheli Ta (舍利塔) is almost 1100 years old. Towering above it is the octagonal Rulai Ta (如来塔), built in 1558, which can be climbed for an extra ¥10. To get here, take the bus to Prime Minister Chen's Castle but tell the

driver you want to get off at Haihui. To continue to the castle or Guoyu, take a minibus from the main road (¥2) or walk (45 minutes).



# Shaanxi (Shanxi)

POP 37.3 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Xi'an](#)

[Around Xi'an](#)

[Hua Shan](#)

[Hancheng](#)

[Yan'an](#)

[Yulin](#)

[Mizhi](#)

---

## Why Go?

Shaanxi ( ) is where it all started for China. As the heartland of the Qin dynasty, whose warrior emperor united much of China for the first time, Shaanxi was the cradle of Chinese civilisation. Later on, Xi'an was the beginning and end of the Silk Road and a buzzing, cosmopolitan capital long before anyone had heard of Beijing.

Shaanxi's archaeological sites makes it an essential destination. Around Xi'an there's an excavated Neolithic village and numerous royal graves; chief among them the tomb of Qin Shi Huang and his private army of terracotta warriors. Shaanxi has its share of

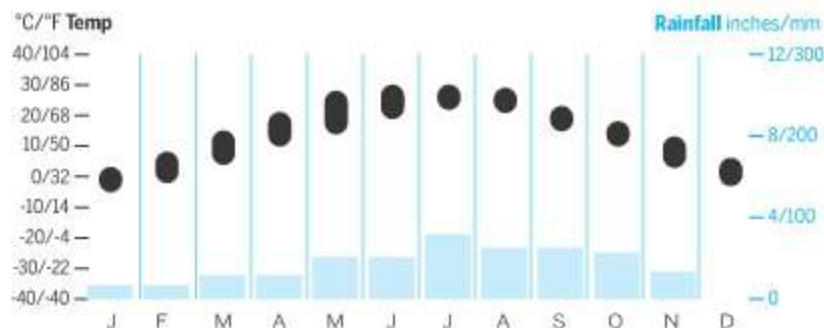
contemporary history too; the caves around Yan'an were the Chinese Communist Party's (CCP) base in the 1930s and '40s.

Xi'an is an emergent travellers hub, with good nightlife, museums, ancient pagodas and a fascinating Muslim Quarter. Set aside time to get into the rural areas, with its fascinating villages barely touched by modern life and mountains that were once home to hermits and sages.

---

## When to Go

### Xi'an



**Apr & May** Spring breezes and the ideal time to climb Hua Shan.

**Sep & Oct** The rain's stopped and it's still warm, so hit Xi'an's sights.

**Dec** Avoid the crowds and maybe get the Terracotta Warriors all to yourself.

---

## Best Historic Sites

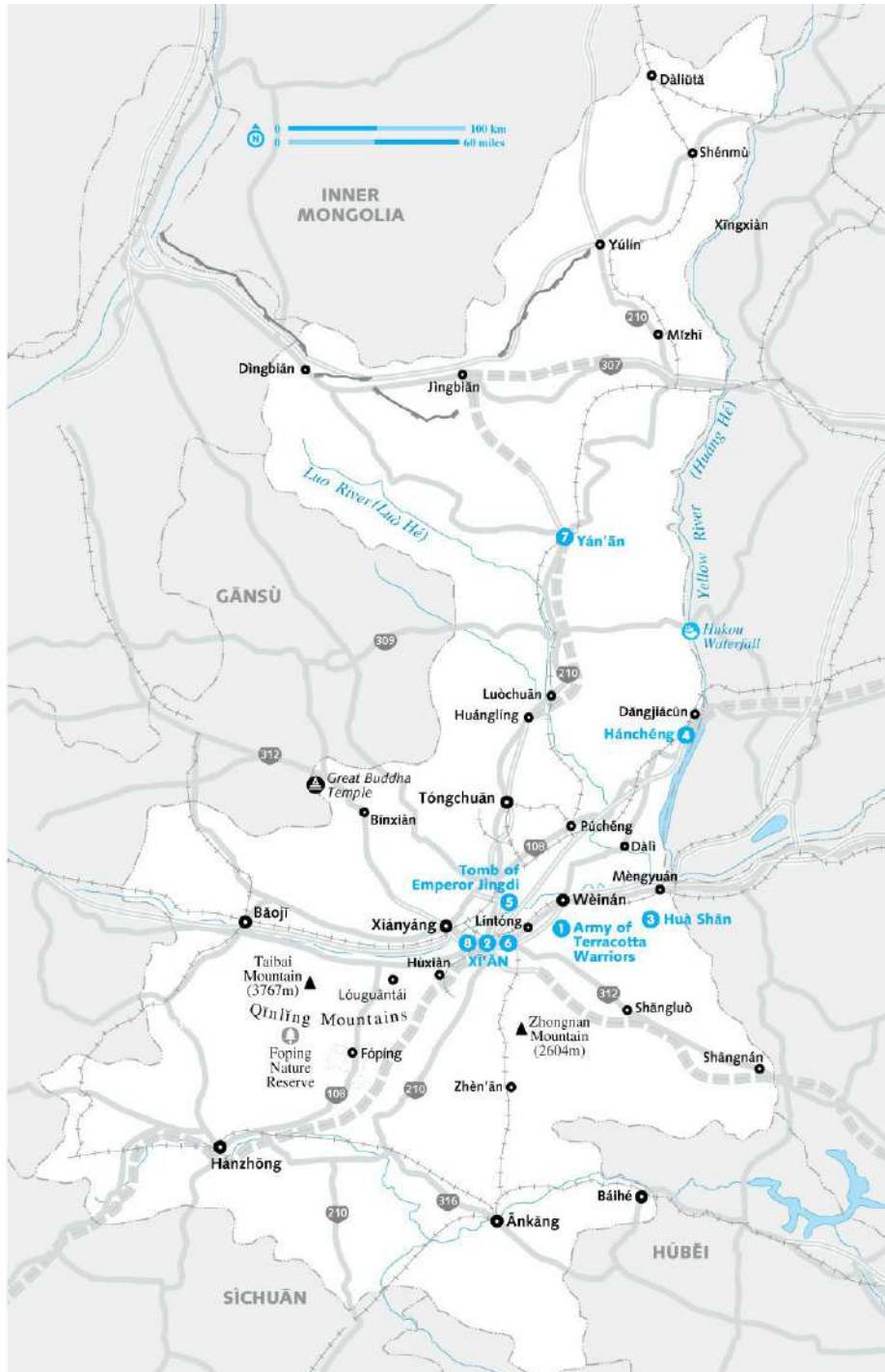
- » Army of Terracotta Warriors ([Click here](#))
- » Tomb of Emperor Jingdi ([Click here](#))
- » Big Goose Pagoda ([Click here](#))
- » Yangjialing Revolution Headquarters Site ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Museums

- » Forest of Stelae Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Shaanxi History Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Xianyang City Museum ([Click here](#))

» Yan'an Revolution Museum ([Click here](#))



## Shaanxi Highlights

① See what an emperor takes with him to the grave at the extraordinary **Army of Terracotta Warriors** ([Click here](#))

- 2 Admire Xi'an's distinctively named **Big Goose Pagoda** ([Click here](#)), the centrepiece for a stunning sound and light show
- 3 Watch the sun rise over the Qinling Mountains from atop Taoism's sacred western peak, **Hua Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Explore the old town of **Hancheng** ([Click here](#)), a quaint quarter of buildings that date from the Yuan, Ming and Qing eras
- 5 Take a different look at China's past by gazing down on the enthralling excavations at the **Tomb of Emperor Jingdi** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Get lost wandering the backstreets of Xi'an's ancient **Muslim Quarter** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Check out the **cave** ([Click here](#)) where Mao Zedong lived in Yan'an and the red tourists who flock to see it
- 8 Hop on a bike and ride atop Xi'an's glorious **city walls** ([Click here](#)), a pretty 14km loop of the city

## History

Around 3000 years ago, the Zhou people of the Bronze Age moved out of their Shaanxi homeland, conquered the Shang and became dominant in much of northern China. Later the state of Qin, ruling from its capital Xianyang (near modern-day Xi'an), became the first dynasty to unify much of China. Subsequent dynasties, including the Han, Sui and Tang, were based in Xi'an, then known as Chang'an, which was abandoned for the eastern capital of Luoyang (in Henan) whenever invaders threatened.

Shaanxi remained the political heart of China until the 10th century. However, when the imperial court shifted eastward, the province's fortunes began to decline. Rebellions and famine were followed in 1556 by the deadliest earthquake in history, when an estimated 830,000 people died (the unusually high death toll was attributed to the fact that millions were living in cave homes which easily collapsed in the quake). The extreme poverty of the region ensured that it was an early stronghold of the CCP.

## Language

Locals like to joke that Xi'an's dialect is the 'real' standard Mandarin – after all, the city was one of the ancient capitals of China. Those

pedantic linguists, however, prefer to classify the Shaanxi dialect as part of the central Zhongyuan Mandarin group. Jin is also spoken in some parts of the province.



#### Getting There & Around

Xi'an has one of China's best-connected airports. Xi'an is also a hub for road transport and mega-highways spread out in all directions. The nation's high-speed train is expected to connect Beijing and Xi'an by 2014. Note that getting overnight trains from Yulin to Xi'an is difficult so it may be necessary to make this journey by bus.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥190

\$\$ ¥190 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥60

\$\$\$ more than ¥60

## Xi'an

☞ 029 / POP 6.5 MILLION

Xi'an's fabled past is a double-edged sword. Primed with the knowledge that this legendary city was once the terminus of the Silk Road and a melting pot of cultures and religions, as well as home to emperors, courtesans, poets, monks, merchants and warriors, visitors can feel let down by the roaring, modern-day version. But even though Xi'an's glory days ended in the early 10th century, many elements of ancient Chang'an, the former Xi'an, are still present.

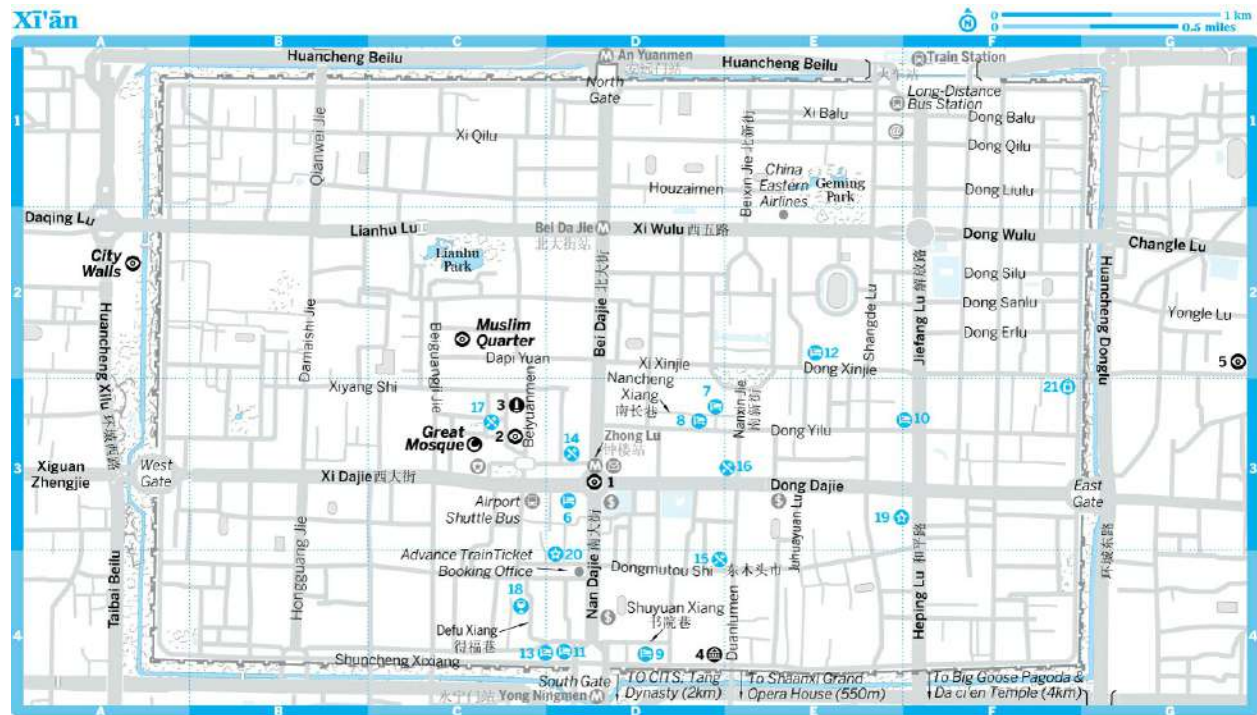
The Ming-era city walls remain intact, vendors of all descriptions still



crowd the narrow lanes of the warrenlike Muslim Quarter, and there are enough places of interest to keep even the most diligent amateur historian busy.

While Xi'an is no longer China's political capital, it's woken up to the potential value of its hallowed history. In the last few years, the city has been campaigning for the Silk Road to be added to the UN's World Heritage List, and there are continuing efforts to revitalise the Muslim Quarter.

Most people only spend two or three days in Xi'an; history buffs could easily stay busy for a week. Must-sees include the Terracotta Warriors, the Tomb of Emperor Jingdi and the Muslim Quarter, but try to set time aside for the city walls, pagodas and museums. Better still, arrange a side trip to nearby Hua Shan or Hancheng.



## Xi'an

📍 Top Sights

[City Walls](#) A2

[Great Mosque](#) C3

[Muslim Quarter](#) C2

📍 Sights

1 [Bell Tower](#) D3

- 2 [Drum Tower](#) C3
- 3 [Folk House](#) C3
- 4 [Forest of Stelae Museum](#) D4
- 5 [Temple of the Eight Immortals](#) G2

 Sleeping

- 6 [Bell Tower Hotel](#) D3
- 7 [Han Tang House](#) D3
- 8 [Han Tang Inn](#) D3
- 9 [Jano's Backpackers](#) D4
- 10 [Jinjiang Inn](#) F3
- 11 [Shuyuan Youth Hostel](#) D4
- 12 [Sofitel](#) E2
- 13 [Xiangzimen Youth Hostel](#) C4

 Eating

- 14 [Defachang Jiaoziguan](#) D3
- 15 [First Noodle Under the Sun](#) D4
- [Jamaica Blue](#) (see 7)
- 16 [Lao Sun Jia](#) E3
- 17 [Muslim Family Restaurant](#) C3

 Drinking

- 18 [Old Henry's Bar](#) C4
- [Park Qin](#) (see 11)
- [The Belgian](#) (see 9)

 Entertainment

- 19 [1+1](#) E3
- 20 [Song & Song](#) D4

 Shopping

- 21 [Northwest Antique Market](#) F3

## Sights

### INSIDE THE CITY WALLS

Muslim Quarter HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

() The backstreets leading north from the Drum Tower have been

home to the city's Hui community (Chinese Muslims) for centuries. Although Muslims have been here since at least the 7th century, some believe that today's community didn't take root until the Ming dynasty.

The narrow lanes are full of butcher shops, sesame-oil factories, smaller mosques hidden behind enormous wooden doors, men in white skullcaps and women with their heads covered in coloured scarves. It's a great place to wander and especially atmospheric at night. Good streets to stroll down are Xiyang Shi, Dapi Yuan and Damaishi Jie, which runs north off Xi Dajie through an interesting Islamic food market.

### Great Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qingzhen Dasi; Huajue Xiang; admission Mar-Nov ¥30, Dec-Feb ¥15, Muslims free; 🕒 8am-7.30pm Mar-Nov, to 5.30pm Dec-Feb) One of the largest mosques in China, the Great Mosque is a fascinating blend of Chinese and Islamic architecture. Facing west (towards Mecca) instead of the usual south, the mosque begins with a classic Chinese temple feature, the spirit wall, designed to keep demons at bay. The gardens, too, with their rocks, pagodas and archways are obviously Chinese, with the exception of the four palm trees at the entrance. Arab influence, meanwhile, extends from the central minaret (cleverly disguised as a pagoda) to the enormous turquoise-roofed Prayer Hall (not open to visitors) at the back of the complex, as well as the elegant calligraphy gracing most entryways. The present buildings are mostly Ming and Qing, though the mosque was founded in the 8th century.

To get here, follow Xiyang Shi several minutes west and look for a small alley leading south past a gauntlet of souvenir stands.

### Forest of Stelae Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Beilin Bowuguan; 15 Sanxue Jie; admission Mar-Nov ¥75, Dec-Feb ¥50; 🕒 8am-6.15pm Mar-Nov, to 5.15pm Dec-Feb) Housed in Xi'an's Confucius Temple, this museum holds more than 1000 stone stelae (inscribed tablets), including the nine Confucian classics and some exemplary calligraphy. The second gallery holds a Nestorian tablet (AD 781), the earliest recorded account of Christianity in China. (The

Nestorians professed that Christ was both human and divine, for which they were booted out of the Church in 431.) The fourth gallery holds a collection of ancient maps and portraits, and is where rubbings (copies) are made, an interesting process to watch.

The highlight, though, is the fantastic sculpture gallery (across from the gift shop), which contains animal guardians from the Tang dynasty, pictorial tomb stones and Buddhist statuary.

To get to the museum, follow Shuyuan Xiang east from the South Gate.

### Bell Tower & Drum Tower HISTORIC SITES

Now marooned on a traffic island, the Bell Tower [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhong Lou; admission ¥27, combined Drum Tower ticket ¥40; ☀ 8.30am-9.30pm Mar-Nov, to 6pm Dec-Feb) sits at the heart of Xi'an and originally held a large bell that was rung at dawn, while its alter ego, the Drum Tower [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Gu Lou; Beiyuanmen; admission ¥27, combined Bell Tower ticket ¥40; ☀ 8.30am-9.30pm Mar-Nov, to 6pm Dec-Feb), marked nightfall. Both date from the 14th century and were later rebuilt in the 1700s (the Bell Tower initially stood two blocks to the west). Musical performances, included in the ticket price, are held inside each at 9am, 10.30am, 11.30am, 2.30pm, 4pm and 5pm. Enter the Bell Tower through the underpass on the north side.

### Folk House HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Gaojia Dayuan; 144 Beiyuanmen; admission ¥15, with tea ¥20; ☀ 8.30am-11pm) This well-rounded historic residence also serves as an art gallery, entertainment centre and teahouse. Originally the home of the Qing bureaucrat Gao Yuesong, it's a fine example of a courtyard home and has been tastefully restored. There are reception rooms, bedrooms, servants' quarters, an ancestral temple and a study (now the teahouse).

Tours start with an optional marionette or shadow-puppet demonstration (¥10). As the complex currently belongs to the Shaanxi Artists Association, there's an art gallery here where you can pick up reasonably priced traditional Chinese art. Confusingly, despite the address, this place isn't at No 144, but is about 20m down the street.

DON'T MISS

## CITY WALLS

Xi'an is one of the few cities in China where the old city walls [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Chengqiang; admission ¥40; 🕒 8am-8.30pm Apr-Oct, to 7pm Nov-Mar) are still standing. Built in 1370 during the Ming dynasty, the 12m-high walls are surrounded by a dry moat and form a rectangle with a perimeter of 14km.

Most sections have been restored or rebuilt, and it is now possible to walk the entirety of the walls in a leisurely four hours. You can also cycle from the South Gate (bike hire ¥40 for 100 minutes, ¥200 deposit). Access ramps are located inside the major gates.

To get an idea of Xi'an's former grandeur, consider this: the Tang city walls originally enclosed 83 sq km, an area seven times larger than today's city centre.

## OUTSIDE THE CITY WALLS

FREE

Shaanxi History Museum MUSEUM

( Shanxi Lishi Bowuguan; 91 Xiaozhai Donglu; 🕒 8.30am-6pm Tue-Sun Apr-Oct, last admission 4.30pm, 9.30am-5pm Tue-Sun Nov-Mar, last admission 4pm) Shaanxi's museum is often touted as one of China's best, but if you come after visiting some of Xi'an's surrounding sights you may feel you're not seeing much that is new. Nevertheless, the museum makes for a comprehensive and illuminating stroll through ancient Chang'an, and most exhibits include labels and explanations in English.

Look out for the four original terracotta warrior statues on the ground floor. In the Sui and Tang section there are unique murals depicting a polo match; and a series of painted pottery figurines with elaborate hairstyles and dress, including several bearded foreigners, musicians and braying camels.

The number of visitors is limited to 4000 a day (2500 tickets are distributed in the morning starting at 8.30am and another 1500 in the afternoon starting at 1.30pm), so get here early and expect to queue for at least 30 minutes. Make sure you bring your passport to claim your free ticket. Take bus 610 from the Bell Tower or bus 701 from the

South Gate.

## Big Goose Pagoda BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Dayan Ta; Yanta Nanlu; admission to grounds ¥50, entry into pagoda ¥30; 🕒 8am-7pm Apr-Oct, to 6pm Nov-Mar) Xi'an's most famous landmark, this pagoda dominates the surrounding modern buildings. One of China's best examples of a Tang-style pagoda (squarish rather than round), it was completed in AD 652 to house the Buddhist sutras brought back from India by the monk Xuan Zang. Xuan spent the last 19 years of his life translating scriptures with a crack team of linguist monks; many of these translations are still used today. His travels also inspired one of the best-known works of Chinese literature, *Journey to the West*.

Surrounding the pagoda is Da Ci'en Temple (; Daci'en Si), one of the largest temples in Tang Chang'an. The buildings today date from the Qing dynasty. To the south of the pagoda is a newly developed open-air mall of shops, galleries, restaurants and public art; well-worth a wander. The area also includes a cinema and monorail.

Bus 610 from the Bell Tower and bus 609 from the South Gate drop you off at the pagoda square; the entrance is on the south side. An evening fountain show is held on the square.

## MONKEY BUSINESS

Buddhist monk Xuan Zang's epic 17-year trip to India, via Central Asia and Afghanistan, in search of Buddhist enlightenment was fictionalised in *Journey to the West*, one of Chinese literature's most enduring texts. The Ming-dynasty novel gives the monk Xuan three disciples to protect him along the way, the best-loved of which is the Monkey King.

The novel, attributed to the poet Wu Cheng'en, has inspired many films, plays and TV shows, including the cult '70s series *Monkey*. More recently, the Gorillaz team of Damon Albarn and Jamie Hewlett collaborated with opera director Chen Shi-Zheng on a popular 2007 stage version.

## Xi'an Museum MUSEUM

( Xi'an Bowuguan; 76 Youyi Xilu; 🕒 8.30am-7pm, closed Tue) Housed

in the pleasant grounds of the Jianfu Temple is this museum featuring relics unearthed in Xi'an over the years. There are some exquisite ceramics from the Han dynasty, as well as figurines, an exhibition of Ming-dynasty seals and jade artefacts. Don't miss the basement, where a large-scale model of ancient Xi'an gives a good sense of the place in its former pomp and glory.

Also in the grounds is the Little Goose Pagoda ( Xiaoyan Ta; 🕒 8.30am-7pm, closed Tue). The top of the pagoda was shaken off by an earthquake in the middle of the 16th century, but the rest of the 43m-high structure is intact. Jianfu Temple was originally built in AD 684 to bless the afterlife of the late Emperor Gaozong. The pagoda, a rather delicate building of 15 progressively smaller tiers, was built from AD 707 to 709 and housed Buddhist scriptures brought back from India by the pilgrim Yi Jing. Admission to the grounds is free but climbing up the pagoda requires a Y30 ticket.

Bus 610 runs here from the Bell Tower; from the South Gate take bus 203.

## Temple of the Eight Immortals TAOIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Baxian An; Yongle Lu; admission ¥5; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm Mar-Nov, 8am-5pm Dec-Feb) Xi'an's largest Taoist temple dates back to the Song dynasty and is still an active place of worship. Supposedly built on the site of an ancient wine shop, it was constructed to protect against subterranean divine thunder. Scenes from Taoist mythology are painted around the courtyard. Empress Cixi, the mother of the last emperor, stayed here in 1901 after fleeing Beijing during the Boxer Rebellion. The small antique market opposite is busiest on Sundays and Wednesdays. Bus 502 runs close by the temple (eastbound from Xi Xinjie).

## **Sleeping**

If you're arriving by air and have not yet booked accommodation, keep in mind that touts at the shuttle-bus drop-off (outside the Melody Hotel) can often get you discounted rooms at a wide selection of hotels.

All hostels in the city offer a similar range of services, including bike

hire, internet, laundry, restaurant and travel services. Ask about free pick-up from the train station and book ahead at the most popular places. In low season (January–March) you can usually get 20 percent off at the hostels.

Han Tang Inn HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hantang Yi; 📍 8728 7772, 8723 1126; [www.hostelxian@yahoo.com.cn](mailto:www.hostelxian@yahoo.com.cn); 7 Nanchang Xiang; 7 dm ¥30-50, s & d ¥160-200; 🚶🌐📶📶) This popular hostel has a friendly and helpful staff with loads of information and tours of Xi'an. The dorms here are compact but spotless and come with en suite bathrooms. There's a pleasant rooftop terrace, ping pong table and even a sauna! Activities are organised too, including an occasional free dumplings night. It's tucked down an alley off Nanxin Jie; look for the two terracotta warriors standing guard outside.



Han Tang House HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hantang Ju; 📍 8738 9765; [www.itisxian.com](http://www.itisxian.com); 32 Nanchang Xiang; 32 dm/s/d/tr ¥50/120/180/240; 🚶🌐📶📶) A hybrid of sorts, this place has dorms and the vibe of a youth hostel but the look and feel of a three-star hotel. The spotless rooms are decked out with high-quality dark-wood furnishings, slab floors and some of the most comfortable beds in China. It's a nice option for travellers looking for something upscale and also traveller friendly. There's a cafe on the ground floor where you can get good Western food. It's located down an alley off Nanxin Jie.

Xiangzimen Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xiangzimen Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 6286 7999/7888; [www.yhaxian.com](http://www.yhaxian.com); 16 Xiangzimiao Jie; 16 dm ¥40-50, r ¥180-240; 🌐📶📶) Set around a series of interconnected courtyards, this hostel is a big, sprawling place with an ever-busy pub known for its smoky and noisy atmosphere. Rooms are clean, modern and warm in winter but avoid the stuffy windowless basement rooms. Staff can organise tours but aren't great for independent travel info. Take bus 603 from opposite the train station to the South Gate and walk 100m west.



### Sofitel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Suofeite Renmin Dasha; 📍 8792 8888; [sofitel@renminsquare.com](mailto:sofitel@renminsquare.com); 319 Dong Xinjie; 319 d/ste ¥1150/3150; 🚗📶📶📶) Xi'an's self-proclaimed 'six-star' hotel is undoubtedly the most luxurious choice in the city and has a soothing, hushed atmosphere. The bathrooms are top-notch. Cantonese, Japanese and Moroccan restaurants are onsite, as well as a South American-themed bar. Reception is in the east wing and room rates change daily, so you can score a deal when business is slow.

### Shuyuan Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shuyuan Qingnian Lushe; 📍 8728 7721; [www.hostelxian.com](http://www.hostelxian.com); 2a Shuncheng Xixiang; 2 dm ¥30-50, s/d ¥160/180; 📶📶📶) The longest-running hostel in Xi'an and still one of the most amenable, the Shuyuan is located in a converted courtyard residence near the South Gate. The cafe serves excellent food and there's an atmospheric bar in the basement (guests get a free beer voucher). Rooms are simple but clean and the staff is switched onto the needs of travellers. The hostel is 20m west of the South Gate along the city walls and bus 603 runs close to it.

### Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Zhixing; 📍 8745 2288; [www.jj-inn.com](http://www.jj-inn.com); 110 Jiefang Lu; 110 d/tw/ste ¥179/199/219; 📶📶) By Xi'an's standards, the prices are close to budget, but the clean and bright modern rooms, all with ADSL internet connections, make this a better option than most three-star places in town. There's a cheap restaurant here, too.

### Bell Tower Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xi'an Zhonglou Fandian; 📍 8760 0000; [www.belltowerhtl.com](http://www.belltowerhtl.com); 110 Nan Dajie; 110 d ¥850-1080; 📶📶) Slap in the centre of downtown, this state-owned four-star place is comfortable and handy for the airport bus stop. Some rooms have a bird's-eye view of the Bell Tower and all are spacious and comfortable with cable TV and ADSL internet connections. Discounts of 15%.

Jano's Backpackers HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jienuo Tinyuan Beibao Lushe; 📍 8725 6656; [www.xian-backpackers.com](http://www.xian-backpackers.com); 69 Shuncheng Nanlu Zhongduan, South Gate; 69 dm ¥50-60, r without bathroom ¥120, with bathroom ¥200-260, ste ¥320-390; 🌐📶📶) Set in a little faux *hutong* located about 200m east of the South Gate, and with artist galleries, cafes and pubs nearby, this is a pleasant place to escape the bustling boulevards of Xi'an. Rooms are brand new and decorated in traditional style, including some with *kang* beds. Despite the name, it feels more like a small boutique hotel rather than a hangout for backpackers, and as a bonus, the staff speak English.

## Eating

Hit the Muslim Quarter for fine eating in Xi'an. Common dishes here are *majiang liangpi* (; cold noodles in sesame sauce), *fenzhengrou* (; chopped mutton fried in a wok with ground wheat), *roujiamo* (; fried pork or beef in pitta bread, sometimes with green peppers and cumin), *caijiamo* (; the vegetarian version of *roujiamo*) and the ubiquitous *rouchuan* (; kebabs).

Best of all is the delicious *yangrou paomo* (), a soup dish that involves crumbling a flat loaf of bread into a bowl and adding noodles, mutton and broth. You can also pick up mouth-watering desserts such as *huashenggao* (; peanut cakes) and *shibing* (; dried persimmons), which can be found at the market or in Muslim Quarter shops.

A good street to wander for a selection of more typically Chinese restaurants is Dongmutou Shi, east of Nan Dajie.

All the hostels serve up Western breakfasts and meals with varying degrees of success.

Muslim Family Restaurant CHINESE MUSLIM \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huiwen Renjia; Damaishi Jie; dishes ¥6-58; 🕒 9am-10.30pm; 📍) Deep in the heart of the Muslim Quarter, this fine establishment serves all the classic Muslim dishes and quick dishes for solo travellers like soups and dumplings. There's no English sign so look out for the noodle chef in the street-side open-air kitchen. Picture

menu.

### First Noodle Under the Sun NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tianxia Diyi Mian Jiulou; 19 Dongmutou Shi; dishes ¥16-58; ☺ 9am-10.30pm; 📍) This is a chain of restaurants with an unusual name and a nonsensical English-language menu. The speciality is *biang biang mian*, a giant, 3.8m strip of noodle that comes folded up in a big bowl with two soup side dishes (¥10). But all sorts of excellent noodle, meat and veggie dishes are available here.

### Lao Sun Jia SHAANXI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 5th fl, cnr Dong Dajie & Duanlumen; dishes ¥12-40; ☺ 8am-9pm; ☹) Xi'an's most famous restaurant (with more than a hundred years of history) is well known for its specialty dish – steaming bowls of *yangrou paomo*. The catch here is that the patron is responsible for ripping up the bread before the chefs add the soup. The soup is an acquired taste for most people but the experience is fun nonetheless. It's located on the 5th floor of a large black glass building.

### Jamaica Blue CAFE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lanse Yamaijia; 32 Nanchang Xiang; 32 dishes ¥32-49; @📶📍) This Australia-based cafe has washed up in a little alley in Xi'an, serving up excellent sandwiches, wraps, Western-style breakfast, pastas, desserts and reliable coffee. Has a friendly English-speaking staff, wi-fi, games and quasi-Irish pub atmosphere. Live music is played here nightly from 9pm to 11pm.

### Defachang Jiaoziguan DUMPLINGS \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bell & Drum Tower Sq; dishes ¥22-34; ☺ 10am-9pm) Dumpling fanatics will want to try this 100-year-old restaurant, famed for its dumplings stuffed with beef, pork, mushrooms and other fillings. It's double the price of other places but you are paying for the atmosphere and history of the place. Order from the counter on the 1st floor and avoid the pricey upstairs dining hall. It's tucked into a building behind the pyramid plaza, look for the gigantic golden dumpling in the entrance.

## **Drinking**

Xi'an's nightlife options range from bars and clubs to cheesy but popular tourist shows.

The main bar strip is Defu Xiang, close to the South Gate. The top end of the street has coffee shops and teahouses. The bars get more raucous the closer to the South Gate you get, but it's still fairly tame.

Old Henry's Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Laohengli Jiuba; 48 Defu Xiang; 🕒 8pm-3am) Always busy and has outside seating.

Park Qin BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qin Wenhua Jiuba; 2a Shuncheng Xixiang; beers ¥20-25; 🕒 7pm-3am) Andy Warhol meets Emperor Qin Shi Huang at this cosy bar, decorated with terracotta warriors artfully rendered with playful colour schemes. There's a mix of young Chinese patrons and Westerners who all come for the Belgian beers, low prices and live music.

Disregard the sign outside that says 'members only' as this only applies to local Chinese (tourists are welcome without membership).

The Belgian BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bilishi Kafei Jiuba; 🕒 7pm-3am) A laid-back Western-style bar stocked with around 40 types of imported Belgian beers and pub grub (burgers and fries). The little alley where it sits is developing as a pub street so its fun to hang out on the patio and people-watch.

## **Entertainment**

Clubs get going early in Xi'an, in part because they're as much places to drink as to dance. They are free to get into, but expect to pay at least ¥30 for a beer. Most are located along or off Nan Dajie.

Some travellers enjoy spending the evening at the fountain and music show (🕒 9pm Mar-Nov, 8pm Dec-Feb) on Big Goose Pagoda Sq; it's the largest such 'musical fountain' in Asia. Xi'an also has a number of dinner-dance shows, which are normally packed out with tour groups. They can be fun if you're in the mood for a bit of kitsch.

## Song & Song CLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shangshang Jiuba Lechaohui; 109 Ximutou Shi; 🕒 7pm-late) More of a big bar with DJs than a genuine club.

## 1+1 CLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yijiayi Julebu; 2nd fl, Heping Yinzuo Bldg, 118 Heping Lu; 🕒 7pm-late) The ever-popular 1+1 is a neon-lit maze of a place that pumps out party hip-hop tunes well into the early hours.

## Tang Dynasty DINNER SHOW

( Tangyue Gong; 📍 8782 2222; [www.xiantangdynasty.com](http://www.xiantangdynasty.com); 75 Chang'an Beilu; performance with/without dinner ¥500/220) The most famous dinner theatre in the city stages an over-the-top spectacle with Vegas-style costumes, traditional dance, live music and singing. It's dubbed into English.

## Shaanxi Grand Opera House DINNER SHOW

( Shange Dajuyuan; 📍 8785 3295; 165 Wenyi Lu; performance with/without dinner ¥298/198) Also known as the Tang Palace Dance Show, this is a cheaper, less flashy alternative to the Tang Dynasty show. Wenyi Lu starts south of the city walls. You can get a better price by buying your ticket through a reputable hostel or hotel.

## Shopping

Stay in Xi'an for a couple of days and you'll be offered enough sets of miniature terracotta warriors to form your own army. A good place to search out gifts is the Muslim Quarter, where prices are generally cheaper than elsewhere.

Xiyang Shi is a narrow, crowded alley running north of the Great Mosque where terracotta warriors, Huxian farmer paintings, shadow puppets, lanterns, tea ware, Mao memorabilia and T-shirts are on offer.

Near the South Gate is the Qing-style Shuyuan Xiang, the main street for art supplies, paintings, calligraphy, paper cuts, brushes and fake rubbings from the Forest of Stelae Museum. Serious shoppers should also visit the Northwest Antique Market [Offline map](#) [Google](#)

[map](#) ( Xibei Guwan Cheng; Dong Xinjie; ☎ 10am-5.30pm), by the Zhongshan Gate. This three-storey warren of shops selling jade, seals, antiques and Mao memorabilia sees far fewer foreign faces than the Muslim Quarter.

There's a much smaller antique market by the Temple of the Eight Immortals on Sunday and Wednesday mornings.

### **Information**

Pick up a copy of the widely available *Xi'an Traffic & Tourist Map* (¥12), a bilingual publication with listings and bus routes. It's available at the airport and some bookshops. Chinese-language maps with the bus routes are sold on the street for ¥5. The English-language magazine *Xianese* ([www.xianese.com](http://www.xianese.com)) is available in some hotels and restaurants that cater to tourists.

All hostels and most hotels offer internet access. You can burn digital photos onto CDs at the youth hostels (per disc ¥10).

In the event of an emergency, call ☎ 120.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang) Juhuayuan Lu (38 Juhuayuan Lu; ☎ 8am-8pm); Nan Dajie (29 Nan Dajie; ☎ 8am-6pm) You can exchange cash and travellers cheques and use the ATMs at both of these branches.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe) Branch office (2nd fl, Bell Tower Hotel, 110 Nan Dajie); Main office (48 Chang'an Beilu) The Bell Tower Hotel office is best for organising tours but the better deals are usually with the hostels.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Bei Dajie; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; 21 Xi Qilu; per hr ¥3; ☎ 24hr) Around the corner from the long-distance bus station. There are also other internet cafes in this area.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 2 Keji Lu; 2 ☎ 8.30am-noon & 2-6pm Mon-Fri) This is on the southeast corner of Xixie 7 Lu. Visa extensions take five working days. To get there from the Bell Tower, take bus K205 and get off at Xixie 7 Lu.

### **Getting There & Away**

Air

Xi'an's Xianyang Airport is one of China's best connected – you can

fly to almost any major Chinese destination from here, as well as several international ones. Most hostels and hotels and all travel agencies sell airline tickets.

**China Eastern Airlines** ( Zhongguo Dongfang Hangkong; 📞 8208 8707; 64 Xi Wulu; 🕒 8am-9pm) Operates most flights to and from Xi'an. Daily flights include Beijing (¥840), Chengdu (¥630), Guangzhou (¥890), Shanghai (¥1260) and Urumqi (¥2060). On the international front, China Eastern has flights from Xi'an to Hong Kong (¥1640), Seoul, Bangkok, Tokyo and Nagoya.

#### Bus

The long-distance **bus station** ( ; changtu qichezhan) is opposite Xi'an's train station. It's a chaotic place. Note that buses to Hua Shan (6am to 8pm) depart from in front of the train station.

Other bus stations around town where you may be dropped off include the **east bus station** ( chengdong keyunzhan; Changle Lu) and the **west bus station** ( chengxi keyunzhan; Zaoyuan Donglu). Both are located outside the Second Ring Rd. Bus K43 travels between the Bell Tower and the east bus station, and bus 103 travels between the train station and the west bus station. A taxi into the city from either bus station costs between ¥15 and ¥20.

Buses from Xi'an's long-distance bus station:

**Luoyang** ¥107.50, five hours (10am, noon, 1pm, 3pm)

**Pingyao** ¥160, six hours (8am, 9.30am, 10.30am, 12.30pm, 4.30pm)

**Zhengzhou** ¥133, six hours, hourly (7am to 4pm)

Buses from Xi'an's east bus station:

**Hancheng** ¥69, four hours, every 30 minutes (8am to 6.30pm)

**Hua Shan** one way ¥40.50, two hours, hourly (7.30am to 7pm)

**Yan'an** ¥92.50, five hours, every 40 minutes (8.30am to 5.35pm)

#### Train

Xi'an's main train station (*huoche zhan*) is just outside the northern city walls. It's always busy. Buy your onward tickets as soon as you arrive. Xi'an's North Train Station (*bei huoche zhan*) is used by D and G class high-speed trains. High-speed trains from Beijing, Shanghai, Lanzhou and other destinations are expected to start running in the next several years but for now the only destination is Luoyang (1st class/2nd class ¥280/175).

Most hotels and hostels can get you tickets (¥40 commission); there's also an **advance train ticket booking office** ( daishou huochepiao; Nan Dajie; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2-5pm) in the ICBC Bank's south entrance. Or brave the crowds in the main ticket hall.

Xi'an is well connected to the rest of the country. Deluxe Z trains run to/from Beijing west (soft sleeper only ¥417, 11½ hours), leaving Xi'an at 7.23pm and Beijing at 9.24pm. Several express trains also make the journey (¥265, 12½ hours); departures begin late afternoon. The Z94 to Shanghai departs 5.12pm and arrives 7.42am (hard/soft sleeper ¥333/511, 14½ hours).

All prices listed below are for hard/soft sleeper tickets.

**Chengdu** ¥209/316, 16½ hours

**Chongqing** ¥191/286, 14 hours

**Guilin** ¥399/613, 27 hours

**Lanzhou** ¥175/264, 7½ to nine hours

**Luoyang** ¥109/162, five hours

**Pingyao** ¥134/206, nine hours

**Shanghai** ¥333/511, 15 to 22 hours

**Taiyuan** ¥191/286, 10 to 12 hours

**Urumqi** ¥287/467, 27 to 39 hours

**Zhengzhou** ¥137/205 six to eight hours

Within Shaanxi, there are five trains (including two night trains) to Yulin (hard/soft sleeper ¥155/232, 12 to 14 hours) via Yan'an (hard/soft sleeper ¥102/128, five to nine hours). Buy tickets in advance. There is also an early morning train to Hancheng (¥33, 4½ hours).

### **Getting Around**

Xi'an's Xianyang Airport is about 40km northwest of Xi'an. Shuttle buses run every 20 to 30 minutes from 5.40am to 8pm between the airport and the Melody Hotel (¥26, one hour). Taxis into the city charge over ¥100 on the meter.

If you're itching to try out the public buses, they go to all the major sights in and around the city. Bus 610 is a useful one: it passes the train station, then onto the Bell Tower, Little Goose Pagoda, Shaanxi



History Museum and Big Goose Pagoda. Remember that packed buses are a pickpocket's paradise, so watch your wallet.

Taxi flagfall is ¥6. It can be very difficult to get a taxi in the late afternoon, when the drivers change shifts. If you can cope with the congested roads, bikes are a good alternative and can be hired at the youth hostels.

The new Xi'an metro system ( ; *Xi'an ditie*) went into action in 2011 with the completion of Line 2. Line 1 is expected to open in September 2013 and Line 3 is planned for 2015. Rides cost ¥2 to ¥4 depending on distance. Useful stations on Line 2 include Beihuoche Zhan (North Train Station) and Xiaozhai (near the Shaanxi History Museum). Line 1 has a stop at the Banpo Neolithic Village.

## **Around Xi'an**

The plains surrounding Xi'an are strewn with early imperial tombs, many of which have not yet been excavated. But unless you have a particular fascination for burial sites, you can probably come away satisfied after visiting a couple of them.

The Army of Terracotta Warriors is obviously the most famous site, but it's really worth the effort to get to the Tomb of Emperor Jingdi as well.

Tourist buses run to almost all of the sites from in front of Xi'an Train Station, with the notable exception of the Tomb of Emperor Jingdi.

## Around Xī'ān



## Sights

### EAST OF XI'AN

#### Army of Terracotta Warriors MUSEUM

( Bingmayong; [www.bmy.com.cn](http://www.bmy.com.cn); admission Mar-Nov ¥150, students ¥75, Dec-Feb ¥120, students ¥60; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm Mar-Nov, to 5pm Dec-Feb) The Terracotta Army isn't just Xi'an's premier site, but one of the most famous archaeological finds in the world. This subterranean life-size army of thousands has silently stood guard over the soul of China's first unifier for more than two millennia. Either Qin Shi Huang was terrified of the vanquished spirits awaiting him in the afterlife, or, as most archaeologists believe, he expected his rule to continue in death as it had in life – whatever the case, the guardians of his tomb today offer some of the greatest insights we have into the world of ancient China.

The discovery of the army of warriors was entirely fortuitous. In 1974, peasants drilling a well uncovered an underground vault that eventually yielded thousands of terracotta soldiers and horses in battle formation. Throughout the years the site became so famous that many of its unusual attributes are now well known, in particular the fact that no two soldier's faces are alike.

The on-site theatre gives a useful primer on how the figures were sculpted. You could also employ a guide (¥150) or try the audio-guide (¥40, plus ¥200 deposit), although the latter is somewhat useless, being difficult to understand and not very compelling. Then visit the site in reverse, which enables you to build up to the most impressive pit for a fitting finale.

Start with the smallest pit, Pit 3, containing 72 warriors and horses, which is believed to be the army headquarters due to the number of high-ranking officers unearthed here. It's interesting to note that the northern room would have been used to make sacrificial offerings before battle. In the next pit, Pit 2, containing around 1300 warriors and horses, you get to examine five of the soldiers up close: a kneeling archer, a standing archer, a cavalryman and his horse, a mid-ranking officer and a general. The level of detail is extraordinary: the expressions, hairstyles, armour and even the tread on the footwear are all unique.

The largest pit, Pit 1, is the most imposing. Housed in a building the size of an aircraft hangar, it is believed to contain 6000 warriors (only 2000 are on display) and horses, all facing east and ready for battle. The vanguard of three rows of archers (both crossbow and longbow) is followed by the main force of soldiers, who originally held spears, swords, dagger-axes and other long-shaft weapons. The infantry were accompanied by 35 chariots, though these, made of wood, have long since disintegrated.

Almost as extraordinary as the soldiers is a pair of bronze chariots and horses unearthed just 20m west of the Tomb of Qin Shi Huang. These are now on display, together with some of the original weaponry, in a small museum to the right of the main entrance.

The Army of Terracotta Warriors is easily reached by public bus. From Xi'an Train Station's carpark, take one of the green Terracotta Warriors minibuses (¥8, one hour) or bus 306 (¥8, one hour), both of which travel via Huaqing Hot Springs and the Tomb of Qin Shi Huang. The carpark for all vehicles is a 15-minute walk from the Terracotta Warriors site, with the ticket kiosk near the parking lot. Electric carts do the run for ¥5. If you want to eat here, go for the restaurants across from the car park. To get back to Xi'an, buses leave from the parking

lot.

### Huaqing Hot Springs HISTORIC SITE

( Huaqing Chi; admission Mar-Nov ¥110, Dec-Feb ¥50; ☺ 7am-7pm Mar-Nov, 7.30am-6.30pm Dec-Feb) The natural hot springs in this park were once the favoured retreat of emperors and concubines during the Tang dynasty.

An obligatory stop for Chinese tour groups, who pose for photos in front of the elaborately restored pavilions and by the ornamental ponds, it's a pretty place but not really worth the high admission price. You can, though, hike up to the Taoist temple on Black Horse Mountain (Li Shan). The temple is dedicated to Nuwa, who created the human race from clay and also patched up cracks in the sky. There's also a cable car (one way/return ¥45/70) to the temple, but note that the stop is outside the park, so you won't be able to get back in unless you buy another ticket.

### Tomb of Qin Shi Huang HISTORIC SITE

( Qin Shihuang Ling; admission free with Terracotta Warrior ticket; ☺ 8am-6pm Mar-Nov, to 5pm Dec-Feb) In its time, this tomb must have been one of the grandest mausoleums the world had ever seen.

Historical accounts describe it as containing palaces filled with precious stones, underground rivers of flowing mercury and ingenious defences against intruders. The tomb reputedly took 38 years to complete, and required a workforce of 700,000 people. It is said that the artisans who built it were buried alive within, taking its secrets with them.

Archaeologists have yet to enter the tomb but probes and sensors have been sent inside. Levels of mercury inside exceed 100 times the normal occurring rate, which seems to substantiate some of the legends. Since little has been excavated there isn't much to see but you can climb the steps to the top of the mound for a fine view of the surrounding countryside. The tomb is about 2km west of the Army of Terracotta Warriors. Take bus 306 from Xi'an Train Station.

### Banpo Neolithic Village ANCIENT VILLAGE

( Banpo Bowuguan; admission Mar-Nov ¥65, Dec-Feb ¥45; ☺ 8am-6pm) This village is of enormous importance for Chinese archaeological studies, but unless you're desperately interested in the

subject it can be an underwhelming visitor experience.

Banpo is the earliest example of the Neolithic Yangshao culture, which is believed to have been matriarchal. It appears to have been occupied from 4500 BC until around 3750 BC. The excavated area is divided into three parts: a pottery manufacturing area, a residential area complete with moat, and a cemetery. There are also two exhibition halls that feature some of the pottery, including strange shaped amphorae, discovered at the site.

The village is in the eastern suburbs of Xi'an. Bus 105 (¥1) from the train station runs past (ask where to get off); it's also often included on tours.

WORTH A TRIP

## TOMB OF EMPEROR JINGDI

This tomb ( Han Yangling; admission Mar-Nov ¥90, Dec-Feb ¥65; 🕒 8.30am-7pm Mar-Nov, to 6pm Dec-Feb), which is also referred to as the Han Jing Mausoleum, Liu Qi Mausoleum and Yangling Mausoleum, is easily Xi'an's most underrated highlight. If you only have time for two sights, then it should be the Army of Terracotta Warriors and this impressive museum and tomb. Unlike the warriors, though, there are relatively few visitors here so you have the space to appreciate what you're seeing.

A Han-dynasty emperor influenced by Taoism, Jingdi (188–141 BC) based his rule upon the concept of *wuwei* (nonaction or noninterference) and did much to improve the life of his subjects: he lowered taxes greatly, used diplomacy to cut back on unnecessary military expeditions and even reduced the punishment meted out to criminals. The contents of his tomb are particularly interesting, as they reveal more about daily life than martial preoccupations – a total contrast with the Terracotta Army.

The site has been divided into two sections: the museum and the excavation area. The museum holds a large display of expressive terracotta figurines (more than 50,000 were buried here), including eunuchs, servants, domesticated animals and even female cavalry on horseback. The figurines originally had movable wooden arms (now gone) and were dressed in colourful silk robes.

Inside the tomb are 21 narrow pits, some of which have been covered by a glass floor, allowing you to walk over the top of ongoing excavations and get a great view of the relics. In all, there are believed to be 81 burial pits here.

Unfortunately, getting here by public transport isn't easy. First, take bus 4 (¥1) from Xi'an's North Gate. After 30 minutes, it reaches the end of its line at the Zhang Jiabu roundabout. Get off and walk 100m right of the roundabout, where another bus, also numbered 4 (¥2), leaves for the tomb. The catch is that while there are many buses to the roundabout, only a few do the second leg to the tomb. At the time of writing, they were leaving at 8.30am, 10.50am, 2.50pm and 4.30pm, returning to Xi'an at 9.10am, 12.10pm, 3.10pm and 5.20pm.

Alternatively, you can take a tour (around ¥160), usually arranged by the guesthouses. The tomb is close to the airport, so you can stop here on your way to or from there.

## **NORTH & WEST OF XI'IN**

### **Famen Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE**

( Famen Si; admission Mar-Nov ¥120, Dec-Feb ¥90; ☺ 8am-6pm)

This temple dating back to the 2nd century AD was built to house parts of a sacred finger bone of the Buddha, presented to China by India's King Asoka. In 1981, after torrential rains had weakened the temple's ancient brick structure, the entire western side of its 12-storey pagoda collapsed. The subsequent restoration of the temple produced a sensational discovery. Below the pagoda in a sealed crypt were over 1000 sacrificial objects and royal offerings – all forgotten for over a millennium.

Sensing a cash cow, the local authorities began enlarging the temple complex and it now includes a sprawling modern section featuring a 1.6km long walkway lined with 10 golden Buddhas, eccentric modern sculptures and outsized gates. Shuttle buses (¥20) are on hand to whisk the pious to the main temple, which is topped with an enormous replica of the box in which the finger bone was kept.

Although it may feel like a Cecil B DeMille Hollywood movie set, the older section is still worth a visit and you can join the queue of pilgrims

who shuffle past the finger bone. The real reason to make the trip out here is the superb museum and its collection of Tang-dynasty treasures. There are elaborate gold and silver boxes (stacked on top of one another to form pagodas) and tiny crystal and jade coffins that originally contained the four separated sections of the holy finger.

Other notable exhibits are ornate incense burners, glass cups and vases from the Roman Empire, statues, gold and silver offerings, and an excellent reproduced cross-section of the four-chamber crypt, which symbolised a tantric mandala (a geometric representation of the universe).

Famen Temple is 115km northwest of Xi'an. Tour bus 2 (¥25, 8am) from Xi'an Train Station runs to the temple and returns to Xi'an at 5pm. The temple is also generally included on Western Tours.

### **FREE** Xianyang City Museum MUSEUM

( Xianyang Shi Bowuguan; Zhongshan Jie; ☺ 9am-5.30pm) More than 2000 years ago, Xianyang was the capital of the Qin dynasty. These days, it's just a dusty satellite of Xi'an. Its chief attraction is this museum, which houses a remarkable collection of 3000 50cm-tall terracotta soldiers and horses, excavated from the tomb of Liu Bang, the first Han emperor, in 1965. Set in an attractive courtyard, the museum also has bronze and jade exhibits and good English captions.

Buses run every 15 minutes to Xianyang (¥8.50, one hour) from Xi'an's long-distance bus station. Ask to be dropped off at the museum. To get back to Xi'an, just flag down buses going in the opposite direction.

### Imperial Tombs HISTORIC SITES

A large number of imperial tombs (; *huang ling*) dot the Guanzhong plain around Xi'an. They are sometimes included on tours from Xi'an, but most aren't so remarkable as to be destinations in themselves. By far the most impressive is the Qian Tomb ( Qian Ling; admission Mar-Nov ¥45, Dec-Feb ¥25; ☺ 8am-6pm), where China's only female emperor, Wu Zetian (AD 625–705), is buried together with her husband Emperor Gaozong, whom she succeeded. The long Spirit Way (Yu Dao) here is lined with enormous, lichen-encrusted

sculptures of animals and officers of the imperial guard, culminating with 61 (now headless) statues of Chinese ethnic group leaders who attended the emperor's funeral. The mausoleum is 85km northwest of Xi'an. Tour bus 2 (¥25, 8am) runs close to here from Xi'an Train Station and returns in the late afternoon.

Nearby are the tomb of Princess Yong Tai (; Yong Tai Mu) and the tomb of Princess Zhang Huai (; Zhang Huai Mu), both of whom fell foul of Empress Wu, before being posthumously rehabilitated. Other notable tombs are the Zhao Tomb (; Zhao Ling), where the second Tang emperor Taizhong is buried, and the Mao Tomb (; Mao Ling), the resting place of Wudi (156–87 BC), the most powerful of the Han emperors.

## Tours

One-day tours allow you to see all the sights around Xi'an more quickly and conveniently than if you arranged one yourself. Itineraries differ somewhat, but there are two basic tours: an Eastern Tour and a Western Tour.

Most hostels run their own tours, but make sure you find out what is included (admission fees, lunch, English-speaking guide) and try to get an exact itinerary, or you could end up being herded through the Terracotta Warriors before you have a chance to get your camera out.

### **Eastern Tour**

The Eastern Tour (Dongbu Zhilu – ) is the most popular as it includes the Army of Terracotta Warriors, as well as the Tomb of Qin Shi Huang, Banpo Neolithic Village, Huaqing Hot Springs and possibly the Big Goose Pagoda. Most travel agencies and hostels charge around ¥300 for an all-day, all-in excursion, including admission fees, lunch and guide, although sometimes the hostel tours skip Banpo. Tours to the Terracotta Warriors only are also available for around ¥160.

It's perfectly possible to do a shortened version of the Eastern Tour by using the tourist buses or bus 306, all of which pass by Huaqing Hot Springs, the Terracotta Warriors and the Tomb of Qin Shi Huang. If you decide to do this, start at the hot springs, then travel to Qin Shi Huang's tomb and end at the Terracotta Warriors.



## **Western Tour**

The longer Western Tour (Xibu Zhilu – ) includes the Xianyang City Museum, some of the imperial tombs, and possibly also Famen Temple and (if you insist) the Tomb of Emperor Jingdi. It's far less popular than the Eastern Tour and consequently you may have to wait a couple of days for your hostel or agency to organise enough people. It's also more expensive; expect to pay ¥600.

A tour of the Tomb of Emperor Jingdi, usually done by itself without any other sights, will cost around ¥160.

## **Hua Shan**

One of Taoism's five sacred mountains, the granite domes of Hua Shan used to be home to hermits and sages. These days, though, the trails that wind their way up to the five peaks are populated by droves of day-trippers drawn by the dreamy scenery. And it is spectacular. There are knife-blade ridges and twisted pine trees clinging to ledges as you ascend, while the summits offer transcendent panoramas of green mountains and countryside stretching away to the horizon. Taoists hoping to find a quiet spot to contemplate life and the universe will be disappointed, but everyone else seems to revel in the tough climb and they're suitably elated once they reach the top. So forget all that spiritual malarkey and get walking.



## Hua Shan

 Sleeping

- 1 [Dongfeng Binguan](#) B5
- 2 [Huayue Kuai Jie Jiudian](#) A1
- 3 [Mingzhu Jiudian](#) A1
- 4 [North Peak Hotel](#) B3

5 [West Peak Hostel](#) A4

6 [Wuyunfeng Fandian](#) A3

## Sights & Activities

There are three ways up the mountain to the North Peak (; Bei Feng), the first of five summit peaks. Two of these options start from the eastern base of the mountain, at the cable-car terminus. The first option is handy if you don't fancy the climb: an Austrian-built cable car (one way/return ¥80/150; 🕒 7am-7pm) will lift you to the North Peak in eight scenic minutes.

The second option is to work your way to the North Peak under the cable-car route. This takes a sweaty two hours, and two sections of 50m or so are quite literally vertical, with nothing but a steel chain to grab onto and tiny chinks cut into the rock for footing. Not for nothing is this route called the 'Soldiers Path'.

The third option is the most popular, but it's still hard work. A 6km path leads to the North Peak from the village of Hua Shan, at the base of the mountain (the other side of the mountain from the cable car). It usually takes between three and five hours to reach the North Peak via this route. The first 4km up are pretty easy going, but after that it's all steep stairs.

The village at the trailhead is a good place to stock up on water and snacks, these are also available at shops on the trail but prices double and triple the further you head up the mountain. Curiously, you'll also see old ladies selling cotton gloves, the purpose of which becomes obvious at the steepest sections where you need to grab onto rusty chains for support.

If you want to carry on to the other peaks, then count on a minimum of eight hours in total from the base of Hua Shan. If you want to spare your knees, then another option is to take the cable car to the North Peak and then climb to the other peaks, before ending up back where you started. It takes about four hours to complete the circuit in this fashion and it's still fairly strenuous. In places, it can be a little nerve-racking, too. Hua Shan has a reputation for being dangerous, especially when the trails are crowded, or if it's wet or icy, so exercise caution.

But the scenery is sublime. Along Blue Dragon Ridge (; Canglong Ling), which connects the North Peak with the East Peak (; Dong Feng), South Peak (; Nan Feng) and West Peak (; Xi Feng), the way has been cut along a narrow rock ridge with impressive sheer cliffs on either side.

The South Peak is the highest at 2160m and the most crowded. The East Peak is less busy, but all three rear peaks afford great views when the weather cooperates. If possible, avoid weekends when foot traffic is heaviest.

At the South Peak thrillseekers can try the Plank Walk (admission ¥30), which consists of a metal ladder that leads down to a path made from wooden boards that hover above a 2000m vertical drop. Thankfully, the admission fee includes a harness and carabineers that you lock onto cables, but even with these safety features it's scary as hell.

There is accommodation on the mountain, most of it basic and overpriced, but it does allow you to start climbing in the afternoon, watch the sunset and then spend the night, before catching the sunrise from either the East Peak or South Peak. Some locals make the climb at night, using torches (flashlights). The idea is to start around 11pm and be at the East Peak for sunrise; you get to see the scenery on the way down.

Admission is ¥180 (students ¥90). To get to the cable car (*suodao*), take a taxi from the village to the ticket office (¥10) and then a shuttle bus (one way/return ¥20/40) the rest of the way.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

You can either spend the night in Hua Shan village or on one of the peaks. Take your own food or eat well before ascending, unless you like to feast on instant noodles and processed meat – proper meals are very pricey on the mountain. Don't forget a torch and warm clothes. Bear in mind that prices for a bed triple during public holidays. The hotels on the mountain are basic; there are no showers and only shared bathrooms.

In the village, there are a number of dingy, shabby hotels along Yuquan Lu, the road leading up to the trailhead, that offer beds from

¥50 upwards. Pretty much every shop has rooms and the owners will find you. There are smarter places on Yuquan Donglu.

In Hua Shan village:

Mingzhu Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 0913-436 9899; Yuquan Donglu; s & d ¥238-281; 📶📶) Located in Hua Shan village at the main intersection, this Chinese two-star hotel has clean and modern rooms with wi-fi. Discounts of 30% available outside peak holiday travel times.

Huayue Kuai Jie Jiudian HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 0913-436 8555; Yuquan Donglu; s & d ¥120; 📶) Clean and simple rooms with OK bathrooms make this an obvious option for budget travellers. It's on Yuquan Lu at the bottom of the hill near the main intersection.

On the mountain:

Wuyunfeng Fandian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( dm ¥100-180, tr/d ¥220/300) If you're planning on doing a circuit of the rear peaks the next day, or want to catch the sunrise at the East or South Peak, this is a good choice.

Dongfeng Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( dm ¥150-220, tr/d ¥280/340) The top location for watching the sun come up and the best restaurant.

West Peak Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Xifeng Lushe; dm ¥100) Rustic and basic, but also the friendliest place on the mountain. It shares its premises with an old Taoist temple.

North Peak Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Beifeng Fandian; 📞 157 1913 6466; dm ¥95, d ¥240-260) The busiest of the peak hotels.

## **i** Getting There & Away

From Xi'an to Hua Shan, catch one of the private buses (¥36, two hours, 6am to 8pm) that depart when full from in front of Xi'an Train Station. You'll be dropped off on Yuquan Lu, which is also where buses back to Xi'an leave from 7.30am to 7pm. Coming from the east, try to talk your driver into dropping you at the Hua Shan highway exit if you can't find a direct bus. Don't pay more than ¥10 for a taxi into Hua Shan village. There are few buses (if any) going east from Hua Shan; pretty much everyone catches a taxi to the highway and then flags down buses headed for Yuncheng, Taiyuan or Luoyang. If you can't read Chinese, try to find someone to help you out.

## **THE MAN BEHIND THE ARMY**

History is written by the winners. But in China, it was penned by Confucian bureaucrats and for Qin Shi Huang that was a problem, because his disdain for Confucianism was such that he outlawed it, ordered almost all its written texts to be burnt and, according to legend, buried 460 of its top scholars alive. As a result, the first emperor went down in history as the sort of tyrant who gives tyrants a bad name.

At the same time, though, it's hard to overstate the magnitude of his accomplishments during his 36 years of rule (which began when he was just 13). A classic overachiever, he created an efficient, centralised government that became the model for later dynasties; he standardised measurements, currency and, most importantly, writing. He built over 6400km of new roads and canals and, of course, he conquered six major kingdoms before turning 40.

The fact that Qin Shi Huang did all this by enslaving hundreds of thousands of people helped ensure that his subsequent reputation would be as dark as the black he made the official colour of his court. But in recent years, there have been efforts by the China Communist Party (CCP) to rehabilitate him, by emphasising both his efforts to unify China and the far-sighted nature of his policies.

Nevertheless, he remains a hugely controversial figure in Chinese history, but also one whose presence permeates popular culture. The first emperor pops up in video games, in literature and on TV shows. He's also been the subject of films by both Chen Kaige and Zhang Yimou (*The Emperor and the Assassin* and *Hero*), while Jet Li played a thinly disguised version of him in the 2008 Hollywood blockbuster *The Mummy: Tomb of the Dragon Emperor*. See the Army of Terracotta Warriors on [Click here](#) for info on his famous tomb.

# Hancheng

📍 0913 / POP 59,000

Hancheng is best known for being the hometown of Sima Qian (145–90 BC), China's legendary historian and author of the *Shiji* (Records of the Grand Historian). Sima Qian chronicled different aspects of life in the Han dynasty and set about arranging the country's already distant past in its proper (Confucian) order. He was eventually castrated and imprisoned by Emperor Wudi, after having defended an unsuccessful general.

Hancheng makes for a good side trip from Xi'an. Built upon a hill, the new town (; *xincheng*) located at the top is dusty and unremarkable and is where you'll find hotels, banks and transport. But the more atmospheric old town (; *gucheng*) at the bottom of the hill boasts a handful of historic sights. The unique Ming-dynasty village of Dangjiacun is 9km further east.

## Sights

### Confucius & Chenghuang Temples CONFUCIAN TEMPLES

In the heart of the old town, the tranquil Confucius Temple ( Wen Miao; admission ¥15; 🕒 8am-5.30pm) is the pick of the sights in Hancheng itself. The dilapidated Yuan, Ming and Qing buildings could do with a fresh coat of paint, but there's a half-moon pool, towering cypress trees and glazed dragon screens. The city museum holds peripheral exhibits in the wings.

At the back of the Confucius Temple is the Chenghuang Temple ( Chenghuang Miao; admission ¥15; 🕒 8am-5.30pm), in a lane lined with Ming-dynasty courtyard houses. There has been a temple here since the Zhou dynasty, but the whole site has undergone extensive renovation in recent years. The main attraction is the Sacrificing Hall, with its intricate roof detail, where gifts were offered to the gods to protect the city.

Buying a ticket to either temple gets you into the other as well. Bus 102 (¥1) runs here from the southwest corner of Huanghe Dajie, close to the bus station. A taxi is ¥10.

### Yuanjue Pagoda MONUMENT

( Yuanjue Sita; ☺ 6am-6pm) Looming over the old town and dating back to the Tang dynasty, but rebuilt in 1958, this pagoda also acts as a memorial to Red Army soldiers killed fighting the KMT. It's impossible to climb the pagoda itself, but the steep ascent to it offers panoramic views over the old town. To get here, turn sharp right when leaving the Chenghuang Temple and take the first major right you come to. The walk takes you through the most evocative part of the old town; exit the pagoda through the park on the other side and you're back in the new town.

### Dangjiacun ANCIENT VILLAGE

( admission ¥40; ☺ 7.30am-6.30pm) This perfectly preserved, 14th-century village nestles in a sheltered location in a loess valley. Once the home of the Dang clan, successful merchants who ferried timber and other goods across the Yellow River (; Huang He), it's since evolved into a quintessential farming community. The village is home to 125 grey-brick courtyard houses, which are notable for their carvings and mix of different architectural styles. The elegant six-storey tower is a Confucian pagoda (Wenxing ge). Unfortunately, many of the families have moved out and their homes are now exhibition showrooms, so the village feels a little lifeless. Still, it's worth a wander to explore the old alleys and admire the architecture.

Dangjiacun is 9km northeast of Hancheng. To get here, take a minibus (¥3, 20 minutes) from the bus station to the entrance road, from where it's a pleasant 2km walk through fields to the village. Otherwise, you can take a taxi from Hancheng (¥30).

### **Sleeping**

For something completely different, spend the night in Dangjiacun, where basic dorm beds in some of the courtyard houses are available for ¥30. If a local doesn't approach you, just ask and you'll be pointed in the right direction. They also offer simple and cheap home cooking.

If you'd prefer to spend the night in town, try one of the following options.

#### Tianyuan Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 529 9388; Longmen Dajie Beiduan; s & d ¥120-130; 🌐📧) A few doors down from the main bus station, this place has simple but



perfectly functional rooms.

Yinhe Dajjudian HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 529 2555; Longmen Dajie Nanduan; r ¥398; 🌐📍) This is an upmarket option. From the bus station turn left and walk on the main road for about 10 minutes. Discounts of 30% available.

### **i** Information

There's a branch of the **Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Huanghe Dajie & Jinta Zhonglu; 🕒 8am-6pm) close to the bus station that has a 24-hour ATM and will change cash.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Buses leave Xi'an's east bus station for Hancheng (¥68, three hours, seven daily) from 7am onwards. Buses back to Xi'an run until 6.30pm. There are two buses per day to Hua Shan (¥40.50, two hours) at 7am and 12.30pm. There are also two daily buses to Yan'an (¥79.50, eight hours) at 6.50am and 8am.

A middle-of-the-night train runs from Xi'an to Hancheng (¥33, 4½ hours) at 2.50am. From Hancheng, the daily local train No 1164 rumbles towards Beijing (hard sleeper ¥224, 18 hours) via Pingyao (¥96, five hours) and Taiyuan (¥115, seven hours), departing at 4.10pm.

## Yan'an

📞 0911 / POP 107,000

When the diminished communist armies pitched up here at the end of the Long March, it signalled the beginning of Yan'an's brief period in the sun. For 12 years, from 1935 to 1947, this backwater town was the CCP headquarters, and it was in the surrounding caves that the party established much of the ideology that was put into practice during the Chinese revolution.

These days, Yan'an's residents seem to be more interested in consumerism than communism; for a small place, there are a surprising number of shopping malls. But its livelihood is still tied to the CCP; endless tour groups of mostly middle-aged 'red tourists' pass through each year on the trail of Mao and his cohorts. Few

foreigners make it here, so expect some attention.

## Sights

### Yan'an Revolution Museum MUSEUM

( Yan'an Geming Jianshi Chenlieguan; Shengdi Lu; ☺ 8.30am-5pm)  
By far the most flash building in town is the Yan'an Revolutionary Memorial Hall (; Yan'an Geming Jinianguan), fronted by a statue of Mao and housing this museum. It offers an excellent, if obviously one-sided, account of the CCP's time in Yan'an and the Sino-Japanese War. More English captions would be nice, but there are plenty of photos of the good old days and other exhibits that are self-explanatory. Bus 1 (¥1) runs here.

### Wangjiaping Revolution Headquarters Site HISTORIC SITE

( Wangjiaping Geming Jiuzhi; Wangjiaping Lu; ☺ 8am-5.30pm Mar-Nov, 8.30am-5pm Dec-Feb) During an extended stay, the communist leadership moved around Yan'an, resulting in numerous former headquarters sites. Adjacent to the Revolution Museum is the last site occupied by the communist leadership in Yan'an. The improved living conditions at the site, houses rather than dugouts, indicate the way the CCP's fortunes were rising by the time it moved here.

### Yangjialing Revolution Headquarters Site HISTORIC SITE

( Yangjialing Geming Jiuzhi; Yangjialing Lu; ☺ 8am-6pm Mar-Nov, 8.30am-5pm Dec-Feb) Perhaps the most interesting site, this is located 3km northwest of the town centre. Here you can see the assembly hall where the first central committee meetings were held, including the seventh national plenum, which formally confirmed Mao as the leader of the party and the revolution. It's fun watching the red tourists pose in old CCP uniforms in front of the podium.

Nearby are simple dugouts built into the loess earth where Mao, Zhu De, Zhou Enlai and other senior communist leaders lived, worked and wrote.

### Zaoyuan Revolution Headquarters Site HISTORIC SITE

( Zaoyuan Geming Jiuzhi; Yangjialing Lu; ☺ 8am-6pm Mar-Nov,

8.30am-5pm Dec-Feb) The Communist leadership took refuge here between 1943 and 1947, on land allocated by a wealthy merchant. The leafy grounds are perhaps the most attractive of the revolutionary sites. It is located 4km past the Yangjialing site.



### Fenghuangshan Revolution Headquarters Site HISTORIC SITE

( Fenghuangshan Geming Jiuzhi; ☺ 8am-5pm Mar-Nov) More accessible from town, this Revolution Headquarters Site is about 100m west of China Post. This was the first site occupied by the communists after their move to Yan'an, before being abandoned because it was too exposed to enemy aircraft fire. There's a photo exhibit about Norman Bethune, the Canadian doctor who became a hero in China for treating CCP casualties in the late 1930s.

### Treasure Pagoda MONUMENT

( Bao Ta; admission ¥65; ☺ 6.30am-9pm Mar-Nov, to 8pm Dec-Feb) Yan'an's most prominent landmark, Treasure Pagoda dates back to the Song dynasty. For an extra ¥10, you can climb the very narrow steps and ladders of the pagoda for an unrestricted view of the city.

### Qingliang Mountain PARK

( Qingliang Shan; admission ¥31; ☺ 8am-7pm Mar-Nov, to 5.30pm Dec-Feb) This was the birthplace of the CCP propaganda machine; *Xinhua News Agency* and the *Liberation Daily* started life here when the place was known as 'Information Mountain'. Now, it's a pleasant hillside park with some nice trails and a few sights, including Ten Thousand Buddha Cave (; Wanfo Dong) dug into the sandstone cliff beside the river. The cave has relatively intact Buddhist statues.

## Sleeping & Eating

There are few budget options in Yan'an. Most hotels, though, offer discounts. It's also not a gourmet's paradise, though the night market, just off the small square in the centre of town, is a fine spot for eating al fresco and meeting the locals. Try the very tasty handmade noodles.

### Haisheng Jiudian HOTEL \$\$\$

( 📍 821 3333; Daqiaojie; s/d ¥438/698; \*@) This midrange hotel has excellent rooms with computers and the price includes breakfast. In a

town of overpriced hotels this is not a bad option, with rooms usually going for around ¥268. Discounts of 50% available outside peak travel times.

Yasheng Dajiudian HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 266 6000; Erdaojie Zhongduan; tw ¥328-368; 📞 ) Located in the centre of town, the rooms here are clean and comfortable, if a bit gloomy. There's a decent restaurant (dishes ¥14 to ¥40) on the top floor. Discounts of 40%.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Daqiao Jie; 🕒 8am-5pm) On the corner of Daqiao Jie and Erdao Jie, this branch has a 24-hour ATM. There are other ATMs around town, too.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Yan'an'shi Dajie) Post and telephone office.

**Internet cafe** (wangba; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr) On the 2nd floor, down an alley just to the left of the Yasheng Dajiudian.

### **i** Getting There & Away

#### Bus

From Xi'an's east bus station, there are buses to Yan'an (¥92.50, four hours) every 40 minutes from 8.30am to 5.35pm. The schedule back to Xi'an is essentially the same. Buses arrive and depart from the south bus station ( ; *qiche nanzhan* ).

At Yan'an's east bus station (*qiche dongzhan* ), there are buses to Yulin (¥80, five hours) every 50 minutes from 7.25am to 5.30pm. Local buses to Mizhi (¥53.50, four hours) depart at 9.15am, 1.10pm and 2.20pm.

Heading west, there are departures to Yinchuan in Ningxia (¥127, eight hours); buses leave at 8am, 9.30am and 10.30am, while sleepers leave at 4pm and 5.30pm. You can also get into Shanxi and Henan from here.

#### Train

An overnight train back to Xi'an leaves at 10.28pm (hard/soft sleeper ¥102/128, eight hours). Advance tickets in Yan'an can be hard to come by – consider taking the bus instead. A taxi from the train station into town costs ¥10.

## Getting Around

The Revolution Headquarters sites can be reached by taking bus 1, which runs along the road east of the river and then heads up Shengdi Lu. This bus starts at the train station. Bus 8 also passes by these places and can be caught from Da Bridge (大). The taxi flag fall is ¥5.

## Yulin

 0912 / POP 92,000

Thanks to extensive coal mining and the discovery of natural gas fields nearby, this one-time garrison town on the fringes of Inner Mongolia's Mu Us Desert is booming. Despite all the construction, there's still enough of interest to make this a good place to break a trip if you're following the Great Wall or heading north on the trail of Genghis Khan.

Parts of the earthen city walls are still intact, while the main north-south pedestrian street in the elongated old town (divided into Beidajie and Nandajie) has several restored buildings, including a Bell Tower (钟楼; Zhong Lou) first erected in 1472 and destroyed several times (the current tower dates to the early 20th century). With several restaurants and antique shops, it's a nice street to wander at night, when it's lit by lanterns.

Seven kilometres north of the Yulin bus station, on the outskirts of town, are some badly eroded sections of the Great Wall and a Ming-era four-storey beacon tower (真beitai; admission ¥20; ☎ 7.30am-7.30pm) that dates to 1607. Bus 11 (¥1) runs here from Changcheng Nanlu, about 200m west of the main bus station.

## Sleeping

Jinyu Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Jinyu Dajiudian;  233 3333; 6 Xinjian Nanlu; 6 tw/d ¥238/298;   )

This midrange place has large comfortable rooms and cable internet access. It's across the street from the main train station. Discounts of 30% available.

Jiayuan Shangwu Binguan HOTEL \$

(  326 8958; 2nd fl, 5 Yuyang Zhonglu; 5 r with shared bathroom

¥60) Five minutes' walk west from the main bus station, this cheapie has a filthy staircase but the rooms are OK. A massive internet cafe is located on the 2nd floor.

### **i Getting There & Around**

There are several daily flights from Yulin to Xi'an (¥850).

Yulin has two bus stations. If you get off the bus inside the town walls (near the south gate), you are at the main (south) bus station (; qiche zhan); the regional (north) bus station (; keyun zhan) is located 3.5km northwest on Yingbin Dadao.

The main bus station has regular buses to Xi'an (¥170 to ¥181, seven to eight hours) from 7.25am to 7.30pm. You can also get frequent buses to Yan'an (¥80, five hours, 7.25am to 5pm every 30 minutes), and buses to Taiyuan (¥136, eight hours, 6.50am and 12.50pm) and Yinchuan (¥142, five to six hours, eight daily).

The regional bus station has hourly buses to Baotou in Inner Mongolia (¥94, four hours) and half-hourly buses to Daliuta (¥49, two hours), from where you can travel on to Dongsheng. Note that the buses to Dongsheng pass by Genghis Khan's Mausoleum.

The train station is 4km west of the main bus station. There are two trains a day to Xi'an (hard/soft sleeper ¥155/232, 12 to 14 hours) via Yan'an, but sleeper tickets are pretty much impossible to grab on short notice.

Bus 1 (¥1) runs between the two bus stations. Taxis around town and to the train station will cost you ¥6.

## **FROM FARM BOY TO EMPEROR**

Li Zicheng enjoyed a remarkable rise from shepherd to sitting on the imperial throne and led the most successful of the many peasant rebellions that took place in the dying days of the Ming dynasty. Born in 1606, Li drew tens of thousands of followers in famine-racked, 1630s Shaanxi by advocating equal shares of land for all and no taxes. Having taken over large parts of Shaanxi, Shanxi and Henan, Li and his army sacked Beijing and, after the suicide of the last Ming emperor, Li proclaimed himself Emperor of the Shun dynasty in April 1644.

His reign was short-lived. Less than two months later, the invading Manchu forces defeated his army and Li retreated back to Shaanxi and subsequently to Hubei, where he

either committed suicide or was killed in 1645. Four centuries later, Li's impeccable socialist credentials made him an ideal role model for the CCP, who continue to laud his exploits as an early revolutionary.

## Mizhi

📍 0912

About 70km south of Yulin, Mizhi is best known as the hometown of Li Zicheng, protocommunist and would-be emperor, as well as for the alleged beauty of its female residents.

Despite those twin draws, it's a sleepy place with a small Hui presence and way off the tourist circuit; you will be the sole foreigner in town and likely the only visitor of any description. Some of the local population still live in caves and homes carved out of the surrounding hillsides, while the small old quarter, with its narrow alleys and dilapidated courtyard homes, is a fascinating place to wander.

The principal sight, though, is the Li Zicheng Palace ( Li Zicheng Xinggong; Xinggong Lu; admission ¥20; 🕒 8am-5pm). This well-preserved and compact palace was built in 1643 at the height of Li's power. Set against a hillside, there's a statue of the man himself, as well as pavilions, which house exhibits about Li and notable Mizhi women, and a pagoda. There's also a fine theatre, where music performances and plays were held, sometimes for three days at a time, to celebrate Li's victories. To reach the palace, walk east on Xinggong Lu. It's a 10- to 15-minute walk from the bus station.

Turn left immediately after leaving the palace and you are in the heart of the old quarter of Mizhi. Many of the original, late-Ming-dynasty courtyard homes survive, albeit in a rundown condition.

Mizhi makes an easy day trip from Yulin or you could stop here to/from Yan'an. Frequent buses (¥20, two hours) run from Yulin's main, or south, bus station. Ask to get off at Jiulong Qiao (which is a little closer to the palace). From Mizhi to Yan'an (¥53.50, 3½ hours) there are three daily buses at 7.40am, 8.20am and 1.30pm.



# Anhui

POP 64.1 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Tunxi](#)

[Around Tunxi](#)

[Huizhou Villages](#)

[Huangshan](#)

[Jiuhua Shan](#)

[Hefei](#)

---

## Why Go?

Well-preserved villages and fantastical mountain scapes are the principal draw for visitors to Anhui (). The main attraction of this southern Huizhou region is unquestionably Huangshan, a jumble of sheer granite cliffs wrapped in cottony clouds that inspired an entire school of ink painting during the 17th and 18th centuries. But the often- overlooked peaks of nearby Jiuhua Shan, where Buddhists bless the souls of the recently departed, are much quieter, with a hallowed aura that offers a strong contrast to Huangshan's stunning natural scenery.

At the foot of these ranges are strewn the ancient villages of

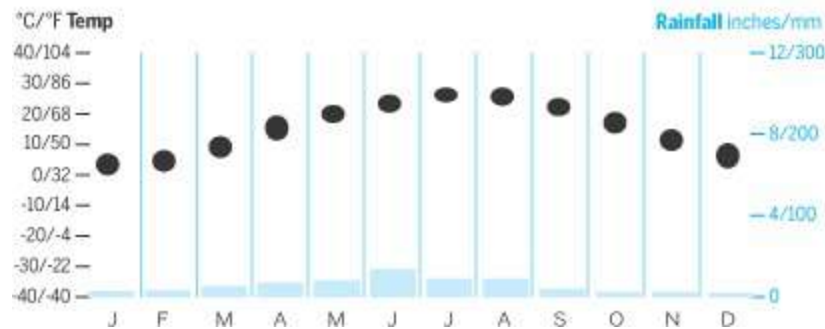


Huizhou; their distinctive whitewashed walls and black-tiled roofs stand out against a verdant backdrop of green hills and terraced tea gardens. Anhui's lush mountains and slower pace of life are the perfect antidote to the brashness of China's larger cities.

---

## When to Go

### Túnxī



**Mar** Summer days are best for climbing ethereal Huangshan.

**Oct** The terrain is awash with autumn colours – Tachuan is particularly pretty.

**Dec** The snowcapped rooftops of Xidi's Hui houses make the bitter winter worthwhile.

---

## Best Mountains

- » Huangshan ([Click here](#))
  - » Jiuhua Shan ([Click here](#))
  - » Qiyun Shan ([Click here](#))
- 

## Best Villages

- » Xidi ([Click here](#))
- » Hongcun ([Click here](#))
- » Chengkan ([Click here](#))



## Anhui Highlights

- 1 Climb and stay on the iconic Chinese mountain, **Huangshan** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Explore the grottoes and dilapidated temples at Taoist **Qiyun Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Soak up the Ming-dynasty vibe along Tunxi's **Old Street** ([Click here](#))

- 4 Join the Buddhist pilgrims at fog-shrouded **Jiuhua Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Don't miss the World Heritage village of **Hongcun** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Eschew crowds and enjoy authentic village life at **Chengkana** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Soar across heavy plumes of feathery bamboo in Mukeng...on a **zipline** ([Click here](#))
- 8 Seek out the unmarked **Pig's Heaven Inn** ([Click here](#)) in Xidi for a fantastic meal
- 9 Make a movie pilgrimage to where Ang Lee and Zhang Yimou shot films, in **Guanlu** ([Click here](#))

## History

The provincial borders of Anhui were defined by the Qing government, bringing together two disparate geographic regions and cultures: the arid, densely populated North China Plain and the mountainous terrain south of the Yangzi River (Chang Jiang), which wasn't settled until the late Tang dynasty.

Traditionally impoverished, Anhui's fortunes have begun to reverse. Some say the massive infrastructure improvements in the hitherto remote areas are partly due to president Hu Jintao, whose ancestral clan hails from Jixi County. Hu comes from a long line of Huizhou merchants, who for centuries left home to do business or fill official posts elsewhere, but would never fail to complete their filial duty and send their profits back home (much of it by way of large homes and ceremonial structures).

These days, locals often leave the region to seek work and fortune elsewhere (no different from their ancestors). However, they are never ashamed to declare their origins. And rightly so.

## Climate

Anhui has a warm-temperate climate, with heavy rain in spring and summer that brings plenty of flooding. Winters are damp and very cold. When travelling through Anhui at any time of year, bring rain gear and a warm jacket for the mountain areas.



The historical and tourist sights of Anhui are concentrated in the south around the town of Tunxi and are easily accessible by bus, train or plane from Hangzhou, Shanghai and Nanjing.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥550

\$\$\$ more than ¥550

### Eating

\$ less than ¥25

\$\$ ¥26 to ¥60

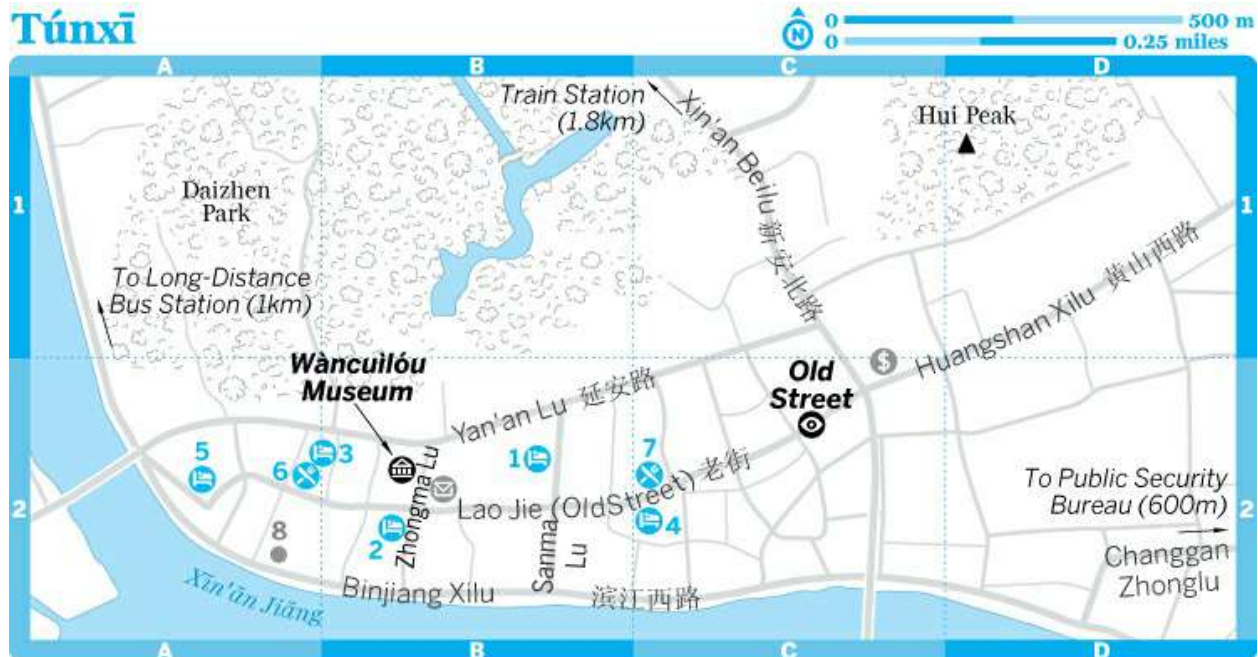
\$\$\$ more than ¥60

## Tunxi

 0559 / POP 77,000

Ringed by low-lying hills, the old trading town of Tunxi (also called Huangshan Shi) is the main springboard for trips to Huangshan and the surrounding Huizhou villages. If you stay in the old town, it's an agreeable place with good transport connections to the Yangzi River delta area. Compared with the region's capital, Hefei, Tunxi makes for a better base from which to explore southern Anhui.

## Túnxī



### Tunxi

#### Top Sights

[Old Street](#) C2

[Wancuilou Museum](#) B2

#### Sleeping

1 [Ancient Town Youth Hostel](#) B2

2 [Harbour Inn & Bar](#) B2

3 [Hui Boutique Hotel](#) B2

4 [Old Street Hostel](#) C2

5 Tunxi Lodge A2

#### Eating

6 [Gaotang Hundun](#) A2

7 [Meishi Renjia](#) C2

#### Transport

8 Huangshan Air Travel Agency A2

### Sights

The oldest and most interesting part of town is in the southwest, along Old St (Lao Jie). The newer part of town is in the northeast, near the train station.

Old Street STREET

### [Offline map](#)

(; Lao Jie) Running a block in from the river, Old St is a souvenir street lined with wooden shops and restored Ming-style Huizhou buildings open till late. Duck into the side alleys for a glimpse at the local life and to find small eateries.

Wancuilou Museum MUSEUM

### [Offline map](#)

( Wancuilou Bowuguan; 143 Lao Jie; admission ¥50; ☎ 8.30am-9.30pm) On Lao Jie, Wancuilou Museum displays a private antiques collection, offering an introduction to Huizhou architecture and furniture over four floors.

## Tours

Youth hostels offer a day-long village tour to Xidi and Hongcun (¥210 including transport, admission fees and lunch) and a direct bus to Huangshan (¥18, one hour, 6.15am).

Huangshan Tourist Distribution Center BUS TOURS

( Luyou Jisan Zhongxin; ☎ 255 8358; ☎ 7.30am-6pm) Huangshan Tourist Distribution Center – located in a connecting building beside the long-distance bus station – offer tours and discounted tickets.

## Sleeping

Ancient Town Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Xiaozhen Guoji Qingnian Lushe; ☎ 252 2088; [www.yhahs.com](http://www.yhahs.com); 11 Sanma Lu; 11 dm ¥40-45, d & tw ¥145-198; \*@@☎) Started by some former tour guides, this hostel ticks all the right boxes, with a well-stocked bar, movie room, good lounging areas, friendly English-speaking staff, bike rental, organised tours and so on. Dorm beds are huge and comfy, while the cheaper twin rooms are clean, though lacking in natural light. The more expensive doubles are hotel quality.

Old Street Hostel HOSTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Laojie Guoji Qingnian Lushe; ☎ 254 0386; [www.hiourhostel.com](http://www.hiourhostel.com); 266 Lao Jie; 266 dm ¥35-45, tw ¥159-169, d/tr/f ¥139/199/219; \*@@☎) With its convenient location and decent rooms – the four-person

dorms come with proper mattresses and private bathrooms, while the private rooms sport wood-lattice decor and flat-screen TVs – this place clearly has an appeal that extends beyond the backpacking crowd. The 2nd floor houses a cafe overlooking Lao Jie with couches, pricey beer and a balcony. Staff speak English, though they tend to be efficient rather than warm.



Hui Boutique Hotel BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Huangshan Huishepin Jiu- dian; 📍 235 2003; [www.huistylehotel.com](http://www.huistylehotel.com); 3 Lihong Xiang; 3 r incl breakfast ¥588-1080; 📶📶) Tucked down an alley off Old St, this hotel, housed in a restored Qing-dynasty building, is boutique chic meets traditional style. Dark rooms are decked out with antique furnishings and modern toilets. There are 40% discounts online.

Harbour Inn & Bar HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Yebo Kezhan; 📍 252 2179; 29 Zhongma Lu; 29 d & tw ¥200; 📶📶📶) We're not sure where to set sail from, but the rooms in this renovated traditional building in Tunxi's old town are a notch above the typical midrange options. Get a twin that overlooks the street or splash out for the deluxe room for a chance to sleep in a traditional wooden Chinese canopy bed. A bar is located downstairs, for when you get bored looking at the floral wallpaper and matching bed sheets in the rooms.

Tunxi Lodge HOTEL \$\$

( Tunxi Kezhan; 📍 258 0388; 15 Lao Jie; 15 r incl breakfast ¥368-680; 📶) At the western end of Lao Jie, this stylish hotel gets guests in the right mood with its Huizhou interior. The traditionally styled rooms have lovely wooden beds and clean, bright showers. There's a decent attached restaurant serving Chinese and Western cuisine. Discounts knock a double down to ¥200.

## Eating & Drinking

There are cheap street eats and a variety of local restaurants in the area just east of the eastern end of Old St. There are restaurants galore on Old St and the streets abutting it. Zhongma Lu off Old St

has a string of cute coffee shops and bars, all with free wi-fi, ¥12 to ¥20 coffees and ¥10 to ¥25 beers.



Meishi Renjia CHINESE HUI \$

[Offline map](#)

( Lao Jie; dishes ¥7-56; ☺ lunch & dinner) At the official entrance to Lao Jie, this bustling restaurant – spread over two floors and hung with traditional Chinese *madeng* lanterns – seethes with satisfied customers. Peruse the counter for the range of dishes on display – *hundun* (wontons; dumpling soup), *jiaozi* (stuffed dumplings), *baozi* (steamed buns stuffed with meat or vegetables), noodles, claypot and more – then have them cooked fresh to order. If you want to linger over a meal, a more expensive version is located next door.

Gaotang Hundun WONTON \$

[Offline map](#)

( 1 Haidi Xiang; hundun ¥8-12; ☺ 10am-late) Duck down a little alley opposite 120 Lao Jie to enjoy a warming bowl of *hundun* (wonton) made by a 12th-generation seller. The secret is in the superthin *hundun* skins, meat minced from whole lean pork, and the tasty soup. No room on the skinny benches outside? Grab a seat in the owner's living room: it's set in an atmospheric Qing-era Hui home. Also sells *da hundun* (larger, vegie-filled dumplings).



### Information

The hostels have PCs for internet (¥4 per hour).

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Xin'an Beilu & Huangshan Xilu; ☺ 8am-5.30pm) Changes travellers cheques and major currencies; 24-hour ATM.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youqu; 183 Lao Jie)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 232 3093; 1st fl, 108 Changgan Zhonglu; ☺ 8am-noon & 2.30-5pm)



### Getting There & Away

Air

Daily flights from Huangshan City Airport (; Huangshanshi Feijichang):

**Beijing** ¥990, 2½ hours, one daily

**Guangzhou** ¥800, 1½ hours, two daily



**Hong Kong** ¥2250, 1¾ hours, three times a week

**Shanghai** ¥500, one hour, one daily

You can buy tickets at the **Huangshan Air Travel Agency** ( Huangshan Hangkong Luyou Gongsi; ☎ 251 7373; 1-1 Binjiang Xilu, 🕒 8am-5.30pm).

#### Bus

The **long-distance bus station** ( keyun zongzhan; Qiyun Dadao) is roughly 2km west of the train station on the outskirts of town.

Destinations include the following:

**Hangzhou** ¥89, three hours, hourly (6.50am to 5.50pm)

**Jingdezhen** ¥61, 3½ hours, three daily (9.15am, noon and 2.10pm)

**Nanjing** ¥120, 5½ hours, three daily (7.25am, 12.10pm and 4.20pm)

**Shanghai** ¥135, five hours, five daily (last bus 5pm)

**Suzhou** ¥132, six hours, two daily (6am and 6.50am)

**Wuyuan** ¥40, two hours, two daily (8.30am and 12.30pm)

Within Anhui, buses go to these destinations:

**Hefei** ¥144, four hours, hourly

**Jiuhua Shan** ¥59, 3½ hours, one daily (1.30pm)

**Shexian** ¥6, 45 minutes, frequent services

**Yixian** ¥12.50, one hour, frequent services (6am to 5pm)

Buses to Huangshan go to the main base at Tangkou (¥13, one hour, frequent, 6am to 5pm) and on to the north entrance, Taiping (¥20, two hours). There are also minibuses to Tangkou (¥15) from in front of the train station.

Inside the bus station (to the right as you enter) is the separate **Huangshan Tourist Distribution Centre** ( Luyou Jisan Zhongxin; ☎ 255 8358; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) with special tourist buses to popular destinations. Return buses operate hourly from 8am to 4pm, with a break from noon to 1pm. Destinations include the following:

**Hongcun** ¥14.50, 1½ hours

**Qiyun Shan** ¥8.50, 40 minutes

**Xidi** ¥12.50, one hour

#### Train

Train connections are abysmal. Trains from Beijing (¥195 to ¥500, 20

hours, 9.21am), Shanghai (¥110 to ¥265, 13 hours, 8.45pm and 10.06pm) and Nanjing (¥70 to ¥159, six to 7½ hours, nine daily) stop at Tunxi (generally called Huangshan). There is also service to Jingdezhen (¥25 to ¥115, three to five hours, 11 daily). For better connections to southern destinations, first go to Yingtan (¥55 to ¥153, five to eight hours, nine daily) in Jiangxi and change trains there.

### **i Getting Around**

Taxis are ¥5 at flag fall, with the 5km taxi ride to the airport costing about ¥30. Competition among pedicab drivers is fierce, so they are the cheapest way of getting around, costing approximately ¥4 for a trip to Old St from the train station area. Short rides start at ¥2. Bus 9 (¥1) runs between the bus station and train station; otherwise, a taxi should cost ¥7 to ¥10.

## **Around Tunxi**

### **QIYUN SHAN**

A 40-minute bus trip west of Tunxi brings you to the lush mountain panoramas of Qiyun Shan (admission 1 Mar-30 Nov ¥75, 1 Dec-28 Feb ¥55; 🕒 8am-5pm Mon-Fri, 7.30am-5.30pm Sat & Sun). Long venerated by Taoists, the reddish sandstone rock provides a mountain home to the temples and the monks who tend to them, while mountain trails lead hikers through some stupendous scenery.

From the bus drop-off, cross the Deng-feng Bridge (; Dengfeng Qiao) – dwelling on the luxuriant river views – and turn right through the village at the foot of the mountain for a 75-minute clamber up stone steps to the ticket office. Or ask the driver to drop you at the cable car (; Suodao; up ¥26, down ¥14) station ahead and do the circuit in reverse.

Beyond the ticket office, the Zhenxian Cave (; Zhenxian Dongfu) houses a complex of Taoist shrines in grottoes and niches gouged from the sandstone cliffs. Seated within the smoky interior of the vast and dilapidated Xuan Tian Taisu Gong () further on is an effigy of Zhengwu Dadi, a Taoist deity. A further temple hall, the Yuxu Gong (), is erected beneath the huge brow of a 200m-long sandstone cliff, enclosed around effigies of Zhengwu Dadi and Laotzu.

There's a completely charming village, Qiyun Village (Qiyun Cun), seemingly plonked in the middle of the mountain range. Its whitewashed buildings are home to a variety of restaurants, souvenir stalls and friendly residents.



#### Getting There & Away

Tourist buses run directly to Qiyun Shan (¥8.50, 45 minutes) from the Tunxi long-distance bus station tourist centre, leaving hourly from 8am to 4pm. This bus can drop you at the Dengfeng Bridge or the cable-car station. Otherwise, take any Yixian-bound bus from Tunxi and ask the driver to stop at Qiyun Shan. Returning to Tunxi, wait at the side of the road for buses coming from Yixian, but note that the last bus from Yixian to Tunxi departs at 5pm. The last tourist bus departs at 4pm.

## Huizhou Villages

0559

The home of highly successful merchants who dealt in lumber, tea and salt – in addition to running a string of lucrative pawnshops throughout the empire – Huizhou was a double-edged sword: the inhabitants were often quite wealthy, but they were also mostly absent. At age 13, many young men were shunted out the door for the remainder of their lives to do business elsewhere, sometimes returning home only once per year. Rather than uproot their families and disrespect their ancestral clans, these merchants remained attached to the home towns they rarely saw, funnelling their profits into the construction of lavish residences and some of China's largest ancestral halls.

Consequently, the villages scattered throughout southern Anhui (also known as Wannan; ) and northern Jiangxi are some of the country's loveliest, augmented by the fact that they are often set in the lush surroundings of buckling earth and bamboo and pine forest, the silhouettes of stratified hills stacked away into the distance.

### WESTERN VILLAGES (YIXIAN)

Yixian is home to the two most picturesque communities in Anhui: Xidi and Hongcun. Even with soaring ticket prices and when spilling over

with crowds (most of the time), these are, hands down, the most impressive sights in the Huizhou area.

## Sights & Activities

### Xidi HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥104) Dating to AD 1047, the village of Xidi has for centuries been a stronghold of the Hu ( ) clan, descended from the eldest son of the last Tang emperor who fled here in the twilight years of the Tang dynasty. Typical of the elegant Huizhou style (see boxed text, [Click here](#)), Xidi's 124 surviving buildings reflect the wealth and prestige of the prosperous merchants who settled here.

Xidi's Unesco World Heritage status means it enjoys a lucrative tourist economy. The village nevertheless remains a picturesque tableau of slender lanes, cream- coloured walls topped with horse-head gables, roofs capped with dark tiles, and doorways ornately decorated with carved lintels.

Wander around the maze of flagstone lanes, examining lintel carvings above doorways decorated with vases, urns, animals, flowers and ornamental motifs, and try to avoid tripping over hordes of high-school artists consigning scenes of stone bridges spanning small streams to canvas.

Xidi's magnificent three-tiered Ming-dynasty decorative arch, the Huwenguang Paifang ( ), at the entrance to the village, is an ostentatious symbol of Xidi's former standing. Numerous other notable structures are open to inspection, including the Diji Hall ( ; Diji Tang) and the Zhuimu Hall ( ; Zhuimu Tang), both on Dalu Jie ( ). Jing'ai Hall ( ; Jing'ai Tang), is the town's largest building and was used for meetings, weddings and, of course, meting out punishment. Back in the day, women weren't allowed in the hall; oh, how things have changed. Xiyuan ( ) is a small house known for its exquisite stone carvings on the windows. Unlike regular carvings, these are carved on both sides. The owner is said to have previously rejected offers of US\$10,000 (each!) for them.

When you're done with the village, pop out on paths leading out to nearby hills where there are suitable spots for your picture-postcard panoramas of the village (though a mobile-phone tower now blights

the landscape). If you want to avoid the crowds, you'll have to start early or hang out late: tour groups start roaming around at 7am and only trickle out at 5pm or so.

### Hongcun HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥104) Dating to the southern Song dynasty, the delightful village and Unesco World Heritage site of Hongcun, 11km northeast of Yixian, has at its heart the crescent-shaped Moon Pond (; Yue Zhao) and is encapsulated by South Lake (; Nan Hu), West Stream (; Xi Xi) and Leigang Mountain (; Leigang Shan). Founding village elders of the Wang () clan consulted a feng shui guru and the village was remodelled to resemble an ox, with its still-functioning waterway system representing the entrails. Wealth soon followed, though the descendants of the Wang clan now trade in tourism rather than goods.

Today, the village is a charming and unhurried portrait of bridges, lakeside views, narrow alleys and traditional halls. Alleyway channels flush water through the village from West Stream to Moon Pond and from there on to South Lake, while signs guide visitors on a tour of the principal buildings. Lost? Just follow the waterflow.

If the bridge at the entrance to the village looks familiar, it's because it featured in the opening scene from Ang Lee's *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*. The picturesque Moon Lake also features in the film. The Chengzhi Hall ( Chengzhi Tang; Shangshuizhen Lu; ) dates from 1855 and was built by a salt merchant. It has 28 rooms, adorned with fabulous woodcarvings, 2nd-floor balconies and light wells. Peepholes on top-floor railings are for girls to peek at boy visitors and the little alcove in the mahjong room was used to hide the concubine. The now-faded gold-brushed carvings are said to have required 100 taels of the expensive stuff and took over four years to be completed.

Other notable buildings include the Hall of the Peach Garden (; Taoyuan Ju), with its elaborate carved wood panels, and the South Lake Academy (; Nanhu Shuyuan), which enjoys an enviable setting beside tranquil South Lake. Overlooking Moon Pond is a gathering of further halls, chief among which is the dignified Lexu Hall (; Lexu Tang), a hoary Ming antique from the first years of the 15th century. Turn up bamboo carvings, trinkets and a large selection of tea at the market west of Moon Pond. The busy square by Hongji Bridge (;

Hongji Qiao) on the West Stream is shaded by two ancient trees (the 'horns' of the ox), a red poplar and a ginkgo.

Admission to the village includes a guide with limited English-speaking skills – you'll have to engage one at the main entrance in case you enter by the side gate.

#### Tachuana HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥20) Located 3km northwest of Hongcun is the tiny little village of Tachuana. It's set at the base of a valley and noted for its stunning autumn scenery. Each year, the leaves on old-growth trees in and around the village change colours for anywhere between 10 to 30 days. The entire valley comes ablaze in shades of orange, green and brown, much to the delight of photographers. On other days, the villagers eke out their living by planting rice and tea. From afar, the village looks like a pagoda as it's built across the steps of foothills. New management was not providing guides or house visits when we called, but in case the service is reinstated, house 18 has some of the most exquisite wooden carvings in the region. Otherwise, you could look out for dilapidated house 25 where you'll find empty antique furnishing and other bits and pieces strewn across a traditional Hui house.

#### Nanping HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥43) With a history of more than 1100 years, this intriguing and labyrinthine village, 5km to the west of Yixian town, is famed as the setting of Zhang Yimou's 1989 tragedy *Judou* and, of course, scenes from *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*. Numerous ancient ancestral halls, clan shrines and merchant residences survive within Nanping's mazelike alleys, including the Chengshi Zongci () and the Yeshe Zongci (). The Lao Yang Jia Ranfang () residence that served as the principal household of dyer Gongli and her rapacious husband in *Judou* remains cluttered with props, and faded stills from the film hang from the walls. Admission includes a guide with limited English-speaking skills.

#### Guanlu HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥35) Around 8km west of Yixian and further along the road beyond Nanping, this small village's drawcard sights are the fabulous households – Badajia () – of eight rich brothers. Each Qing-

dynasty residence shares similar elegant Huizhou features, with light wells, interior courtyards, halls, carved wood panels and small gardens. Each an independent entity, the households are interconnected by doors and linked together into a systemic whole. A distinctive aspect of the residences is their elegantly painted ceilings, the patterns and details of which survive. The houses have now been subdivided among the descendants' families, and many wings are in disrepair as many of the younger villagers have left for more modern abodes. Admission includes a guide with limited English-speaking skills.

### Mukeng Zhuhai FOREST

( admission ¥30) A hike through Mukeng's bamboo forest is an excellent way to escape the megaphones and roving packs of art students in the nearby towns. Remember *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon's* breathtaking bamboo-top fight scenes? Yep, they were filmed here. The two-hour circuit along a ridgeline leads past the top-heavy plumes of feathery bamboo, trickling streams and hillside tea gardens, past a small village where you can get a filling meal and a clean room with bathroom for ¥60 to ¥120, and eventually to a small hamlet where you can break for a cup of *cha* (tea). Perhaps inspired by the movie, a zipline (¥40) has been built near the highest point in the trail; it's a 40-second zip to the bottom from more than 75m above the ground! The forest is 5km northeast of Hongcun.

### Sleeping & Eating

Due to local regulations, it's not possible to just turn up and find simple homestay-style accommodation (; *zhu nongjia*) in Xidi and Hongcun. Each of the villages has 'approved' accommodation for foreigners, most listed below. You can visit local homes to sample some excellent cooking (meals are generally around ¥20, unless you have a chicken slaughtered, which will cost ¥50 to ¥100). Restaurants abound; in spring, succulent bamboo shoots (; *zhusun*) figure prominently in many dishes.

### XIDI

Pig's Heaven Inn BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

( Zhulan Jiuba; ☎ 515 4555; <http://blog.sina.com.cn/zhulanjiuba>;

Renrang Li; d incl breakfast ¥360, ste ¥460-880; 📶📶) This is a 400-year-old house in Xidi that has been restored, with a study, two terraces and five distinctive rooms. Reservations are essential (the entrance is unmarked); gourmet sleuths can seek it out for a fantastic lunch (dishes from ¥20) in the courtyard. The owners have developed a larger, pricier property in Bishan ( ), several kilometres away. This is a great place to just unwind for a day or three; grab one of their bicycles and explore the surrounding area. Transfers to both properties are available. Limited English.

Xidi Travel Lodge HOTEL \$\$

( Xidi Xingguan; 📍 515 6999; [www.xidilodge.com](http://www.xidilodge.com); d incl breakfast ¥368-488, ste ¥608-1288; 📶📶) This can't-miss-it property just behind the main gate to the Xidi village, is a sprawling, multibuilding affair complete with comfortable rooms and its own restaurant and alfresco cafe. All rooms have modern showers, flat-screen TVs and faux antique furnishing, while some have balconies. Get a room facing the small tea garden. The restaurant serves local fare (dishes ¥18 to ¥108) and there's cheap ¥10 beer at the cafe. Discounts of 30% available.

## HONGCUN



Long Lane Inn BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

( Hongcun Yipin Geng Lou; 📍 554 2001; [www.hcno-1.com](http://www.hcno-1.com); 1 Shangshui Quan; 1 r incl breakfast ¥380-1280; 📶📶) Sitting in a quiet corner of Hongcun, this 10-room Taiwanese-run boutique hotel is a welcome addition to the village. Visitors have a choice of rooms: traditionally styled with rosewood Chinese four-posted beds (or splash out for the suite with a cute garden and sunken bath) or simple tatami rooms, each one comfortable and immaculate. In-house meals are great too. Iris, the owner, speaks good English and can help with travel plans and private-vehicle hire.

Hongda Tingyuan HOMESTAY \$

( 📍 554 1262; 5 Shangshui Zhen; 5 r ¥100) The draw of this Hongcun home is the verdant courtyard filled with potted daphne, heavenly bamboo and other flowering shrubs, all set around a small pool and pavilion. Its rooms are unadorned, but the peaceful location in the



upper part of the village is ideal. You can stop by for lunch (dishes from ¥20), space permitting. No English spoken.



#### Getting There & Around

**Bus** Tourist buses run directly to Xidi (¥12.50, one hour) and then to Hongcun (¥14.50, 1½ hours) from the Tunxi long-distance bus station's tourist centre, leaving hourly from 8am to 4pm, with a break at noon. Otherwise, catch a local bus from the long-distance bus station to Yixian (¥13, one hour, frequent, 6am to 5pm), the transport hub for public transport to the surrounding villages.

From Yixian there are green minibuses (¥2, half-hourly, 7am to 5pm) to Xidi (15 minutes), Nanping (15 minutes), Guanlu (20 minutes) and Hongcun (20 minutes). You will need to return to Yixian to get between the different villages, with the exception of Nanping and Guanlu, which are both in the same direction. From Yixian, it's possible to travel on to Tangkou (¥15, one hour, four daily) and Qingyang (¥38, 2½ hours, three daily).

**Bicycle** A great way to explore the surrounding countryside is on **bikes** ( chuzu zixingche; per 4hr ¥5-15), found on the modern street opposite Hongcun's Hongji Bridge (; Hongji Qiao).

**Taxi** Taxis and pedicabs go to Xidi (¥10), Hongcun (¥15), Nanping (¥20) and Guanlu (¥25) from Yixian. Booking a pedicab to take you to all four villages from Yixian can cost as little as ¥150 for the day, depending on your bargaining skills. A minivan for the day will cost ¥300 to ¥400. Most accommodation places can help with transport bookings. From Hongcun, get a pedicab to Tachuan (¥10) and Mukeng Zhuhai (¥15). You'll need to negotiate for the driver to wait for you as returning pedicabs are rare.

## HUIZHOU STYLE

Huizhou architecture is the most distinctive ingredient of the regional personality, representative of the merchant class that held sway in this region during the Ming and Qing dynasties. The residences of Yixian and Shexian are the most typical examples of Huizhou architecture, their whitewashed walls topped on each flank by horse-head gables, originally designed to prevent fire from travelling along a line of houses, and later evolving into decorative motifs. Strikingly capped with dark tiles, walls are often punctured by high,

narrow windows, designed to protect the residence from thieves (and lonely wives from illicit temptations).

Exterior doorways, often overhung with decorative eaves and carved brick or stone lintels, are sometimes flanked by drum stones (*gushi*) or mirror stones (*jingshi*) and lead onto interior courtyards delightfully illuminated by light wells (*tianjing*), rectangular openings in the roof. The doors are a talking point in themselves. It's said that an owner would spend 1000 taels of silver on the decorative archway and carvings but only four taels on the actual door!

Many Huizhou houses are furnished with intricately carved wood panels and extend to two floors, the upper floor supported on wooden columns. Even the furnishing holds much meaning. The main hall for taking visitors has several elements worth keeping an eye out for. You might notice semicircle half-tables against the walls: if the master of the house is in, the tables would be combined; if they are split, it's a subtle hint for male visitors to not intrude upon the wife. There might also be a mantelpiece where you will see a clock, vase and mirror. This symbolises peace and harmony in the house. The Chinese words for these items translate as: *zhong sheng* (; hourly chiming on clock), *ping* (; harmony) and *jing* (; peace).

Another characteristic element of regional architecture is the obsession with decorative archways (*paifang* or *pailou*), which were constructed by imperial decree to honour an individual's outstanding achievement. Examples include becoming a high official (for men; *paifang*) or leading a chaste life (for women; *pailou*). Archways are common throughout China and don't always carry symbolic meaning, but in Huizhou they were of great importance because they gave the merchants – who occupied the bottom rung of the Confucian social ladder (under artisans, peasants and scholars) – much-desired social prestige. Roads were built to pass under a *paifang* but around a *pailou*, so that a man would never feel that his status was beneath that of a woman's.

## NORTHERN VILLAGES

Rarely visited by individual travellers, the villages north of Tunxi can serve as a quieter antidote to the much-hyped and crowded towns to the west.

### Sights

#### Chengkan HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥80; 🕒 8am-5pm) A real working community, Chengkan presents a very different picture from its more affluent cousins in Shexian – farmers walk through town with hoes slung over their shoulders, tea traders dump baskets of freshly picked leaves straight out onto the street, quacking ducks run amok in streams and there's the unmistakable smell of pig manure in the air: a bona fide slice of life

in rural China. Most visitors come to see southern China's largest ancestral temple (; Luo Dongshu Ci), a massive wooden complex several courtyards deep that took 71 years (1539–1610) to build. It has a mixed bag of architectural styles: from Greco-Roman columns to Persian patterns on overhead beams. There are other venerable structures in town, such as the three-storey Yanyi Tang (), which is nearly 600 years old; however, many residences are in poor condition. Look out for a house where the owner still gives haircuts (¥2) on his 100-year-old-plus chair. The mirror is just as old. Another big appeal lies in the lush panoramas of the surrounding Anhui countryside.

### Tangmo HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥80, incl electronic guide deposit ¥300; ☺ 8am-5pm) A narrow village that extends 1km along a central canal, Tangmo was originally established during the late Tang dynasty. A pathway follows the waterway from the entrance at the east gate (; *dong men*) into the village, leading past the large Tan'gan Garden (; Tan'gan Yuan), which was modelled after Hangzhou's West Lake. Here you'll enter the village proper, passing canalside Qing residences along Shui Jie () before coming to the covered Gaoyang Bridge (; Gaoyang Qiao), built in 1733 and now home to a small teahouse. At the end of town is the Shangyi Ancestor Hall (; Shangyi Tang), with 199 peony blossoms carved into the entrance beam. A hotel complex is being developed nearby. There's a string of traditional workshops and stalls near the east gate. Sample homemade *doujiang* (; soya bean milk; ¥1.50) and pick up a traditional Anhui ink stone (; *yantai*) and brushes.

Note that the public bus will probably drop you off at the west gate (meaning you'll see the sights listed above in reverse), but there should be onward transport of some kind to the east gate, or just backtrack.



#### Getting There & Around

There's a tourist bus from the Tunxi long-distance bus station that stops at Tangmo (¥14, 1½ hours, every two hours). It runs from 8am to 4pm with a break from noon to 1pm.

Getting to Chengkan is slightly complicated. Start by taking a bus to Yansi (; ¥4.50, 30 minutes, frequent) from the Tunxi long-distance bus station. From the Yansi bus terminus, you'll need to proceed to the

town's north bus station (; *bei zhan*) by public bus (¥1) or a pedicab (¥4). From the north bus station, you can take another bus to Chengkan (¥3.50, 20 minutes, hourly). You can also get to Tangmo (¥2.50, 20 minutes, hourly).

It's also possible to hire a pedicab from the Yansi bus terminus to Chengkan (¥30) or Tangmo (¥20). Decent bargainers can get one for a day for ¥80 to ¥100. To get between the villages on public transport, you'll need to return to Yansi. Note that the last buses are at 5pm, and transport stops for an hour around noon.

## EASTERN VILLAGES

The appeal of the eastern villages is also in their less-touristy vibe. Shexian is a decent-sized provincial town that hides some interesting historic sights, while the neighbouring port of Yuliang presents an architectural heritage entirely different from the other Huizhou villages.

### Sights

#### Shexian HISTORIC VILLAGE

Historic seat of the Huizhou prefecture, Shexian () is 25km east of Tunxi and can be visited as a day trip. The town was formerly the grand centre of the Huizhou culture, serving as its capital. Today, the Ancient City ( Huizhou Gucheng; admission incl entry to Yuliang & Chinese-speaking guide ¥80, without entry to Yuliang ¥60) serves as the town's main sight.

From the Shexian bus station, cross the bridge over the river, hang right and go through a gate tower and along to Yanghe Men (), a double-eaved gate tower constructed of wood. Get your admission ticket and climb the gate to examine a Ming-dynasty stone *xiezh* (; a legendary beast) and elevated views of the magnificent Xuguo Archway (; Xuguo Shifang) below. Fabulously decorated, this is China's sole surviving four-sided decorative archway, with 12 lions (18 in total if you count the cubs) seated on pedestals around it and a profusion of bas-relief carvings of other mythical creatures.

Continue in the same direction to reach the alleyway (on left) to the old residential area of Doushan Jie (; Doushanjie Guminju), a street of Huizhou houses, with several courtyard residences open to visitors

and decorated with exquisitely carved lintels, beautiful interiors and occasional pairs of leaping-on blocks for mounting horses. Look out for the *paifang* (decorative archway) that has been filled in and incorporated into a wall.

At the time of research, massive construction in the Ancient City was under way. When complete (expected to be 2013), a replica of the original capital city complex will be open to the public.

### Yuliang HISTORIC VILLAGE

( admission ¥30) Little-visited Yuliang is a historic riverine port village on the Lian River (Lian Jiang). Cobbled Yuliang Jie ( ) is a picturesque alley of buildings and former transfer stations for the wood, salt and tea that plied the Lian River and was shipped to north China; the teashop at No 87 is an example. Note the firewalls separating the houses along the road. Examine the traditional Huizhou arrangement of the Baweizu Museum ( ; Baweizu Jinianguan), also on Yuliang Jie.

The Lion Bridge ( ; Shizǐ Qiao) dates to the Tang dynasty, a time when the 138m-long granite Yuliang Dam ( ; Yuliang Ba) across the river was first constructed. Boats can ferry you from the dam for short 20-minute return river trips (¥10 to ¥20).

Tranquil Yuliang is a good place to recharge your batteries. There are rooms with lovely views at a small inn (☎ 0559-653 9731; 147 Yuliang Jie; 147 d with bathroom ¥50-60; ✨). There's another similar inn (☎ 0559-653 8024; 145 Yuliang Jie; 145 d with bathroom ¥80-100; ✨) two doors along. Both serve meals with dishes starting at ¥15. The innkeepers will take you into the village if you book ahead.



#### Getting There & Away

Buses from Tunxi's long-distance bus station run regularly to Shexian (¥6.50, 45 minutes, frequent). To reach Yuliang, take a pedicab (¥5) from Shexian's bus station (by the bridge), or hop on bus 1, which runs to Yuliang (¥1) from outside the bus station and also along the road opposite Shexian Ancient City. The last bus back to Tunxi departs at 6pm.

## Huangshan

☎ 0559

When its archetypal granite peaks and twisted pines are wreathed in spectral folds of mist, Huangshan's idyllic views easily nudge it into the select company of China's top 10, nay, top five, sights. Legions of poets and painters have drawn inspiration from Huangshan's iconic beauty. Yesterday's artists seeking an escape from the hustle and bustle of the temporal world may have been replaced by crowds of tourists, who bring the hustle and bustle with them, but Huangshan still rewards visitors with moments of tranquility, and the unearthly views can be simply breathtaking.

## **Climate**

Locals claim that it rains more than 200 days a year up on the mountain. Allow yourself several days and head to the mountain when the forecast is best. Spring (April to June) generally tends to be misty, which means you may be treated to some stunning scenery, but you're just as likely to encounter a thick fog that obscures everything except for a line of yellow ponchos extending up the trail. Summer (July to August) is the rainy season, though storms can blow through fairly quickly. Autumn (September to October) is generally considered to be the best travel period. Even at the height of summer, average temperatures rarely rise above 20°C at the summit, so come prepared.



## Huangshan

📍 Sights

1 [Banshan Temple](#) A2

2 [Front Gate](#) B4

3 [Hot Springs](#) A3

4 [Mercy Light Temple](#) A3

[Mt Huangshan Visitors Centre](#) (see 4)

5 [Refreshing Terrace](#) A1

6 West Sea Canyon (Ring Road 1) A1

7 West Sea Canyon (Ring Road 2) A1

 Sleeping

8 [Baiyun Hotel](#) A2

9 Běihǎi Hotel A1

Běihǎi Hotel (three-star wing) (see 9)

10 [Paiyunlou Hotel](#) A1

11 [Shilin Hotel](#) A1

12 Xihǎi Hotel A1

13 Yungǔ Hotel B2

14 [Yupinglou Hotel](#) A2

Information

Bank of China (see 9)

[Police Station](#) (see 9)

 Transport

15 East Long-Distance Bus Station B4

16 Mercy Light Temple Station A3

17 Taiping Cable Car Station A1

18 Yungu Station B2

## Sights & Activities

Buses from Tunxi (Huangshan Shi) drop you off in Tangkou, the sprawling town at the foot of Huangshan. A base for climbers, this is the place to stock up on supplies (maps, raincoats, food, money), store your excess luggage and arrange onward transport. It's possible to spend time in Tangkou, but unless you're on a tight budget, you might as well stay on the mountain.

The town consists of two main streets, the larger Feicui Lu – a strip of restaurants, supermarkets and hotels – and the more pleasant Yanxi Jie, which runs along the river perpendicular to Feicui Lu and is accessed by stairs leading down from the bridge.

## **ASCENDING & DESCENDING THE MOUNTAIN**

Regardless of how you ascend Huangshan (admission 1 Mar-30 Nov



¥230, 1 Dec-29 Feb ¥130, seniors year-round ¥60, child 1.1-1.3m ¥60), you will be stung by the dizzying entrance fee. You can pay at the eastern steps near the Yungu Station (; Yungu Zhan) or at the Mercy Light Temple Station (; Ciguang Ge Zhan), where the western steps begin. Shuttle buses (¥13) run to both places from Tangkou.

Three basic routes will get you up to the summit: the short, hard way (eastern steps); the longer, harder way (western steps); and the very short, easy way (cable car). The eastern steps lead up from the Yungu Station; the western steps lead up from the parking lot near Mercy Light Temple. It's possible to do a 10-hour circuit going up the eastern steps and then down the western steps in one day, but you'll have to be slightly insane, in good shape and you'll definitely miss out on some of the more spectacular, hard-to-get-to areas.

A basic itinerary would be to take an early-morning bus from Tunxi, climb the eastern steps, hike around the summit area, spend the night at the top, catch the sunrise and then hike back down the western steps the next day, giving you time to catch an afternoon bus back to Tunxi. Most travellers do opt to spend more than one night on the summit to explore all the various trails. Don't underestimate the hardship involved; the steep gradients and granite steps can wreak havoc on your knees, both going up and down.

Most sightseers are packed (and we mean *packed*) into the summit area above the upper cable car stations, consisting of a network of trails running between various peaks. The highlight of the climb for many independent travellers is the lesser-known West Sea Canyon hike ([Click here](#)), a more rugged, exposed section where most tour groups do not venture.

Make sure to bring enough water, food, warm clothing and rain gear before climbing. Bottled water and food prices increase the higher you go. As mountain paths are easy to follow and English signs plentiful, guides are unnecessary.

Hot Springs HOT SPRINGS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huangshan Wenquan; admission ¥238; ☺ 10.30am-10.30pm) The hot springs area, with renovations complete, is the place to soak after the strenuous climb. It offers a mind-boggling variety of themed

springs. Soak in a coffee-infused pool or get heady in the wine- or alcohol-infused spring. There's also a pool with fish that nibble away dead skin on your feet. Follow it all up with a foot massage. Entry includes complimentary snacks and tea.

The best way to get to the springs is to arrange for a free transfer and pick-up via your hotel. Shuttle buses (¥7) run to the Yungu Station, from where it's a short walk downhill to the hot springs.

### Eastern Steps TRAIL

A medium-fast climb of the 7.5km eastern steps from Yungu Station (890m) to White Goose Ridge (; Bai'e Feng; 1770m) can be done in 2½ hours. The route is pleasant, but lacks the awesome geological scenery of the western steps. In spring wild azalea and weigela add gorgeous splashes of colour to the wooded slopes of the mountain.

Much of the climb is comfortably shaded and although it can be tiring, it's a doddle compared with the western steps. Slow-moving porters use the eastern steps for ferrying up their massive, swaying loads of food, drink and building materials, so considerable traffic plies the route. While clambering up, note the more ancient flight of steps that makes an occasional appearance alongside the newer set.

Purists can extend the eastern steps climb by several hours by starting at the Front Gate [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Huangshan Damen), where a stepped path crosses the road at several points before linking with the main eastern steps trail.

### Western Steps TRAIL

The 15km western steps route has some stellar scenery, but it's twice as long and strenuous as the eastern steps, and much easier to enjoy if you're clambering down rather than gasping your way up. If you take the cable car up, just do this in reverse.

The western steps descent begins at the Flying Rock (; Feilai Shi), a boulder perched on an outcrop half an hour from Beihai Hotel, and goes over Bright Summit Peak (; Guangming Ding; 1841m). Look out from Bright Summit Peak to Aoyu Peak (; Aoyu Feng; 1780m): you'll notice that it looks like two turtles!

South of Aoyu Peak en route to Lotus Flower Peak, the descent funnels you down through a Gleam of Sky (; Yixian Tian), a remarkably narrow chasm – a vertical split in the granite – pinching a

huge rock suspended above the heads of climbers. Further on, Lotus Flower Peak (; Lianhua Feng; 1873m) marks the highest point, but is occasionally sealed off, preventing ascents. Lianrui Peak (; Lianrui Feng; 1776m) is decorated with rocks whimsically named after animals, but save some energy for the much-coveted and staggering climb – 1321 steps in all – up Heavenly Capital Peak (; Tiandu Feng; 1810m) and the stunning views that unfold below. As elsewhere on the mountain, young lovers bring padlocks engraved with their names up here and lash them for eternity to the chain railings. Successful ascents can be commemorated with a gold medal engraved with your name (¥15). Access to Heavenly Capital Peak (and other peaks) is sometimes restricted for maintenance and repair, so keep those fingers crossed when you go!

Further below, the steps lead to Banshan Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Banshan Si) and below that the Mercy Light Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Ciguang Ge), where you can pick up a minibus back to Tangkou (¥13) or continue walking to the hot springs area.

Huangshan is not one of China's sacred mountains, so little religious activity is evident. The Ciguang Temple at the bottom of the western steps is one of the few temples on the mountain whose temple halls survive, although they have been converted to more secular uses. The first hall now serves as the Mt Huangshan Visitors Centre [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Huangshan Youren Zhongxin), where you can pore over a diorama of the mountain ranges. Now head to Tangkou to find yourself some beer as a reward.

#### Yungu Cable Car CABLE CAR

( Yungu Suodao; one way 1 Mar-20 Nov ¥80, 1 Dec-29 Feb ¥65; ☺ 7am-4.30pm) Shuttle buses (¥13) ferry visitors from Tangkou to the cable car. Either arrive very early or late (if you're staying overnight) as long queues are the norm. Thankfully, a new cable-car station has shortened the three-hour queues to nothing more than 45 minutes.

Shuttle buses (¥13) also run from Tangkou to Mercy Light Temple, which is linked by the Yuping Cable Car ( Yuping Suodao; one way 1 Mar-20 Nov ¥80, 1 Dec-29 Feb ¥65; ☺ 7am-4.30pm) to the area just below the Yupinglou Hotel.

## ON THE SUMMIT

The summit is essentially one huge network of connecting trails and walks that meander up, down and across several different peaks. More than a few visitors spend several nights on the peak, and the North Sea (; Beihai) sunrise is a highlight for those staying overnight. Refreshing Terrace [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Qingliang Tai) is five minutes' walk from Beihai Hotel and attracts sunrise crowds. Lucky visitors are rewarded with the luminous spectacle of *yunhai* (literally 'sea of clouds'): idyllic pools of mist that settle over the mountain, filling its chasms and valleys with fog.

The staggering and otherworldly views from the summit reach out over huge valleys of granite and enormous formations of rock, topped by gravity-defying slivers of stone and the gnarled forms of ubiquitous Huangshan pine trees (*Pinus taiwanensis*). Many rocks have been christened with fanciful names by the Chinese, alluding to figures from religion and myth. Beginning to Believe Peak (; Shixin Feng; 1683m), with its jaw-dropping views, is a major bottleneck for photographers. En route to the North Sea, pause at the Flower Blooming on a Brush Tip (; Mengbi Shenghua; 1640m), a granite formation topped by a pine tree. Clamber up to Purple Cloud Peak (; Danxia Feng; 1700m) for a long survey over the landscape and try to catch the sun as it descends in the west. Aficionados of rock formations should keep an eye out for the poetically named Mobile Phone Rock (; Shouji Shi), located near the top of the western steps. Continue on to sights en route to the Western Steps ([Click here](#)).

## WEST SEA CANYON

A strenuous and awe-inspiring 8.5km hike, this route descends into a gorge (Xihai Daxiagu) and has some impressively exposed stretches (it's not for those afraid of heights), taking a minimum four hours to complete. You can access the canyon at either the northern entrance (near the Paiyunlou Hotel) or the southern entrance (near the Baiyun Hotel aka White Clouds Hotel).

A good option to start would be at the northern entrance. From there, you'll pass through some rock tunnels and exit onto the best bits of the gorge. Here, stone steps have been attached to the sheer side of the mountain! Peer over the side for some serious butt-

clenching views down. Don't worry, there are handrails. If you're pressed for time or don't have the energy to stomach a long hike, do a figure-eight loop of Ring Road 1 () and Ring Road 2 (), and head back to the northern entrance. Sure, you'll miss some stunning views across lonely, mist-encased peaks, but you'll also miss the knee-killing dip into the valley and the subsequent thigh-killing climb out to the southern entrance.

At the time of research, construction of a new cable car up to this area was in full swing so you may be restricted to Ring Rds 1 and 2. When complete, expect the area to get a lot busier. Avoid the area in bad weather.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Huangshan has various locations where hotels can be found. Prices and availability vary according to season; it's a good idea to book ahead for summit accommodation, especially so for dorms. Prices for hotels tend to cost at least double what you'd pay in a nonmountain setting. If you're on a tight budget, make sure to take plenty of food to the summit. You won't be able to get a hot meal there for under ¥50. Summit hotels usually offer warm jackets for sunrise watchers.

## **TANGKOU**

Mediocre midrange hotels line Tangkou's main strip, Feicui Lu; remember to look at rooms first and ask for discounts before committing. There are also a host of budget choices along Tiandu Lu. Restaurants cluster along Yanxi Jie, which runs along the river perpendicular to Feicui Lu.

Pine Ridge Lodge HOTEL \$

( Huangshan Tianke Shanzhuang; ☎ 1377-761 8111; [www.hstksz.com](http://www.hstksz.com); Scenic Area South Gate; r incl breakfast ¥120-150; 🌟) Wayne, the friendly English-speaking owner likens it to a lodge in Aspen...in reality, the place isn't so much a ski lodge but a very decent midrange hotel. Book a cosy room in the charming outhouse for privacy. The inhouse restaurant serves great local food. Rooms include return transfers to/from the Tangkou bus station.

Huayi Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 556 6888; South Gate; tw ¥480-680; 🌟 ) A large white edifice on the west side of the river on the Huangshan access road, this four-star hotel offers the priciest and nicest (the word being relative in this context) accommodation in Tangkou. Prices in the three-star building are lower. Staff can help with bus and flight bookings.

## YUNGU STATION

Yungu Hotel **HOTEL** \$\$

( Yungu Shanzhuang; 📍 558 6444; s & d ¥580; 🌟 ) With a lovely but inconveniently located setting looking out onto bamboo and forest, this traditionally styled hotel has fine, clean rooms, with 35% discounts frequently given. Walk down from the car park in front of the cable-car station.

## WESTERN STEPS

Yupinglou Hotel **HOTEL** \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yupinglou Binguang; 📍 558 2288; [www.hsypplhotel.com](http://www.hsypplhotel.com); d/q/tr ¥1480/1600/1680; 🌟@ ) A 10-minute walk from the Yuping cable car (go to your right), this four-star hotel is perched on a spectacular 1660m-high lookout just above the Welcoming Guest Pine Tree. Aim for the doubles with the good views at the back, as some rooms have small windows with no views. Discounted doubles are ¥880.

Baiyun Hotel **HOTEL** \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Baiyun Binguang; 📍 558 2708; [www.baiyunhotel.com](http://www.baiyunhotel.com); dm ¥280-360, d/tr ¥1480/1680; 🌟@ ) Dorms come with TV and shower, but are a bit old and worn; doubles (with private bathroom) pass muster but the hotel is sorely lacking compared with its competition. No English sign, but well signposted in English as White Clouds Hotel. Discounts knock dorms to ¥200 and doubles to ¥980.

## THE SUMMIT

Ideally, Huangshan visits include nights on the summit. Note that room prices rise on Saturday and Sunday, and are astronomical during major holiday periods. Most hotel restaurants offer buffets (breakfast ¥60, lunch and dinner ¥100 to ¥140) plus a selection of standard

dishes (fried rice ¥40), though it can be difficult to get service outside meal times. Hotels in Tangkou can arrange tents (; *zhangpeng*; ¥180) for camping at selected points on the summit.

Shilin Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shilin Fandian; 📍 558 4040; [www.shilin.com](http://www.shilin.com); dm with bathroom ¥300, d & tw ¥1680-1980; @) Cheaper rooms are devoid of views, but the pricier doubles are bright and clean and have flat-screen TVs. Cramped nine-bed dorms are also well kept, with bunk beds and shared bathroom; the block up the steps from the hotel has good views, as do some of the newer rooms in the main block and the villa behind. Discounted doubles are ¥1280.

Beihai Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Beihai Binguan; 📍 558 2555; [www.hsbeihaihotel.com](http://www.hsbeihaihotel.com); dm ¥180, s & d ¥1880; @📶) The four-star Beihai comes with professional service, money exchange, a mobile-phone charging point, cafe and 30% discounts during the week. Larger doubles with private bathroom have older fittings than the smaller, better-fitted-out doubles (same price). There are ¥1000 doubles in the three-star compound on a hill across the main square. Although it's the best-located hotel, it's also the busiest and lacks charm.

Paiyunlou Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Paiyunlou Binguan; 📍 558 1558; [www.paiyunlou.com](http://www.paiyunlou.com); dm/d/tr ¥300/1480/1680; @) With an excellent location near Tianhai Lake (Tianhai Hu) and the entrance to the West Sea Canyon, plus three-star comfort, this place is recommended for those who prefer a slightly more tranquil setting. None of the regular rooms has any views, but the newer dorms are unobstructed and come with attached showers and TVs. Discounted dorms are ¥160 and doubles ¥780.

Xihai Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Xihai Fandian; 📍 558 8888; [www.hsxihaihotel.cn](http://www.hsxihaihotel.cn); dm/d ¥380/1680; \*@) Regular rooms are tired but clean with heating and hot water, but take a look at the doubles first, as some face inwards. Discounts knock dorms to ¥280 and doubles to ¥1280. A new five-star block was under construction at the time of research. It will be completed in

2013.

## Information

Tangkou

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; ☎ 8am-5pm) Southern end of Yanxi Jie.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; ☎ 8am-midnight) On the west side of the river, 2nd floor.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📠 556 2311) Western end of the bridge.

On the Mountain

Most hotels on the mountain have internet access areas for guests and nonguests, with hourly rates of ¥15 to ¥20. Some have free wi-fi.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; ☎ 8-11am & 2.30-5pm)

Opposite Beihai Hotel. Changes money. ATM that accepts international cards.

**Police station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( paichusuo; 📠 558 1388)

Beside the bank.

## Getting There & Away

Buses from Tunxi (aka Huangshan Shi) take around one hour to reach Tangkou from either the long-distance bus station (¥18, one hour, frequent, 6am to 5pm) or the train station (¥18, departures when full, 6.30am to 5pm, may leave as late as 8pm in summer). Buses back to Tunxi from Tangkou are plentiful, and can be flagged down on the road to Tunxi (¥18). The last bus back leaves at 5.30pm.

Tangkou has two bus stations. When getting into Tangkou, you will be dropped at the south long-distance station (; *nandamen huancheng fenzhongxin*). When coming down the mountain, you may be dropped at the east long-distance bus station (; *dongling huancheng fenzhongxin*) east of the town centre and within walking distance from Feicui Lu. Your hotel should be able to help with bookings and pick-up or transfers. Major destinations include:

**Hangzhou** ¥100, 3½ hours, seven daily

**Hefei** ¥91, four hours, seven daily

**Jiuhua Shan** ¥47, 2½ hours, two daily (6.30am and 2.20pm)

**Nanjing** ¥93, five hours, three daily



**Shanghai** ¥140, 6½ hours, five daily

**Wuhan** ¥235, nine hours, two daily (8.40am and 5.30pm)

**Yixian** ¥15, one hour, four daily (stops at Hongcun and Xidi)

### **Getting Around**

Official tourist shuttles run between the two long-distance bus stations and the hot springs area (¥7), Yungu station (; Yungu zhan; eastern steps; ¥13) and Mercy Light Temple station (; Ciguangge zhan; western steps; ¥13), departing every 20 minutes from 6am to 5.30pm, though they usually wait until enough people are on board. A taxi to the eastern or western steps will cost ¥50; to the hot springs area ¥30.

## **Jiuhua Shan**

 0566

The Tang-dynasty Buddhists who determined Jiuhua Shan to be the earthly abode of the Bodhisattva Dizang (Ksitigarbha), Lord of the Underworld, chose well. Often shrouded in a fog that pours in through the windows of its cliff-side temples, Jiuhua Shan exudes an aura of otherworldliness, heightened by the devotion of those who come here to pray for the souls of the departed. At times, though, it seems that the commerce that drives the religion – religious trinkets, good-luck charms and overpriced joss sticks abound – detracts from the overall experience. However, true believers seem to be able to brush it all off with their fervency. With its yellow-walled monasteries, flickering candles and the steady drone of Buddhist chanting emanating from pilgrims' MP3 players, the mountain is an entirely different experience from neighbouring Huangshan.

### **History**

One of China's four Buddhist mountain ranges, Jiuhua Shan was made famous by the 8th-century Korean monk Kim Kiao Kak (Jin Qiaojue), who meditated here for 75 years and was posthumously proclaimed to be the reincarnation of Dizang. In temples, Dizang is generally depicted carrying a staff and a luminous jewel, used to guide souls through the darkness of hell.

## Sights & Activities

Buses will let you off at Jihuashan Xinquzhan (). It's the local bus terminus and main ticket office where you purchase your ticket for the mountain (admission 1 Mar-30 Nov ¥190, 1 Dec-29 Feb ¥140). You'll also then need to buy a return shuttle bus ticket (¥50, 20 minutes, every 30 minutes) from the counters on the left of the admission-ticket windows. The bus goes to Jiuhujie village, the main accommodation area that is about halfway up the mountain (or, as locals say, at roughly navel height in a giant Buddha's potbelly). The shuttle terminates at the bus station just before the gate (; *damen*) leading to the village, from where the main street (; Furong Lu) heads south past hotels and restaurants. The main square is on the right off Furong Lu as you proceed up the street.

### Zhiyuan Temple TEMPLE

( Zhiyuan Si; ☺ 6.30am-8.30pm) Just past the village's main entrance on your left, worshippers hold sticks of incense to their foreheads and face the four directions at this enticingly esoteric yellow temple. There are chanting sessions in the evening that pilgrims can join.

### Huacheng Si TEMPLE

( ☺ 6.30am-8.30pm) The largest, most elaborate temple in town. Ornatly carved dragons serve as handrails up the main steps. The eaves and beams of the buildings are painted in every colour imaginable and the icing on the cake is the three huge golden bodhisattvas that greet visitors: each one sits at least 25m tall and provides quite the setting come evening prayer time.

### Mountain Summit TRAIL

The real highlight is walking up the mountain alongside the pilgrims, following a trail () that passes waterfalls, streams and countless nunneries, temples and shrines. The summit is on a mountain range behind the village. The hike up takes a leisurely four hours; count on about two to three hours to get back down to the village.

You can begin just after the village's main entrance, where a 30-minute hike up the ridge behind Zhiyuan Temple leads you to Baisui Gong ( admission free; ☺ 6am-5.30pm), an active temple built into the

cliff in 1630 to consecrate the Buddhist monk Wu Xia, whose shrunken, embalmed body is coated in gold and sits shrivelled within an ornate glass cabinet in front of a row of pink lotus candles. If you don't feel like hiking, take the funicular (express/ordinary return ¥150/100, one way ¥55; 🕒 7am-5.30pm) to the ridge.

From the top, walk south along the ridge past the Dongya Temple (; Dongya Chansi) to the Huixiang Pavilion (; Huixiang Ge), above which towers the seven-storey 10,000 Buddha Pagoda ( admission ¥10; 🕒 6am-5.30pm), fashioned entirely from bronze and prettily lit at night. A western path leads to town, while the eastern one dips into a pleasant valley and continues past the Phoenix Pine (; Fenghuang Song) and the cable car station (one-way/return ¥75/140) to Tiantai Peak (; Tiantai Zheng Ding; 1304m). The two-hour walk to the summit is tough going, passing small temples and nunneries. The cable car ride takes 15 minutes each way. Note that there's still a 1km walk up flights of stairs even if you take the cable car!

The summit is slightly damp, with incense-like mist shrouding the area. Within the faded Tiantai Temple (; Tiantai Si) on Tiantai Peak, a statue of the Dizang Buddha is seated within the Dizang Hall (Dizang Dian), while from the magnificent 10,000 Buddha Hall (Wanfo Lou) above, a huge enthroned statue of the Dizang Buddha gazes at the breathless masses appearing at his feet. Note the beams above your head that glitter with rows of thousands of Buddhas.

There's another trail to your right before the main stairs to the Tiantai Temple. This one leads you to one of the highest and quietest points of the mountain, Shiwang Peak (; Shiwang Feng; 1344m), where you can stop and let the rolling fog sweep past you.

An easier route is to take a bus (return trip included with the ¥50 bus ticket) from Jiuhujie village up to the Phoenix Pine area (; Fenghuang Song) to take the cable car. You can also walk to the summit in two hours from here. The bus option does not pass Baisui Gong.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There are a large number of hotels in Jiuhujie village along Furong Lu. Outside of major holiday periods, most dorm beds go for ¥30,

while basic twins can be had from ¥80. Prices often double during weekends and public holidays. Cheap guesthouses can be found along Jiuhua Lao Jie.

There are numerous restaurants in the village around the main square and along Furong Lu and Huacheng Lu, which serve local dishes (from ¥10 to ¥100). The Zhiyuan Temple serves good ¥8 vegetarian meals (5.30am, 10.40am and 4.40pm). Food is plentiful on the way up; stop at one of the reasonable restaurants near the Phoenix Pine (about halfway up). Food costs rise the higher you climb.

#### Julong Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Julong Dajiudian; 📍 283 1368; Furong Lu; d & tw ¥1280-1480; 🌟🌟🌟)  
The long-standing Julong's recent facelift has resulted in quality rooms decked out with easy-on-the-eyes hues of brown and gold. Flat-screen TVs, good bathrooms and friendly staff round out the experience. Discounts knock rooms down to ¥680 on weekdays, ¥880 on weekends. It's opposite Zhiyuan Temple, off Furong Lu as you enter the main gate.

#### Longquan Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Longquan Fandian; 📍 328 8888; Furong Lu; d & tw incl breakfast ¥780-880; 🌟🌟) Located at the end of Furong Lu, this corner hotel has compact but smartly renovated rooms. Comfy beds, modern showers that don't choke, Chinese cable TV and terrible breakfast. Don't pay rack rate: weekend discounts are 50% and soar to 70% on weekdays. Walk to the end of Furong Lu and it's on the right as the road curves.

#### Shangketang Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Shangketang Binguan; 📍 283 3888; Furong Lu; d & tw ¥1280; 🌟🌟🌟)  
Keeping in tune with the mountain, this prime-located hotel has gone with a Buddhist theme. Rooms are splashed out in rosewood furniture, flat-screen TVs and plush carpets (some rooms have a wet carpet smell though). Weekday discounts knock rooms down to ¥580, ¥780 on weekends. The inhouse vegetarian restaurant (dishes from ¥22) is very good.

#### Baisuigong Xiayuan Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Baisuigong Xiayuan; 📍 283 3118; dm ¥30, d ¥200-240, tr ¥260-300; 🌟) Pleasantly arranged around an old temple, this hotel has the right

atmosphere and a good location. Standard rooms are just that – lino floors, small showers, but comfortable enough. The dorms (common shower) are appropriately priced. It's right beside Julong Hotel.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 65 Huacheng Lu; ☎ 9am-5pm)  
Foreign exchange and 24-hour international ATM. West of the main square.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 58 Huacheng Lu; ☎ 8am-5.30pm)  
Off the main square.

**Jiuhuashan Red Cross Hospital** ( Jiuhuashan Hongshizi Yiyuan; 📍  
283 1330) After the pond on Baima Xincun.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Buses from the Jiuhuashan xinquzhan () – the bus terminus and main Jiuhua Shan ticket office – run to/from the following destinations:

**Hefei** ¥75, 3½ hours, 10 daily

**Huangshan** ¥50, three hours, one daily (7am)

**Nanjing** ¥75, three hours, four daily (6.20am, 7.20am, 8.40am and 1pm)

**Qingyang** ¥7, 30 minutes, frequent services (6.30am to 5pm)

**Shanghai** ¥115, six hours, two daily (7am and 2pm)

**Tongling** ¥21, one hour, two daily (10am and 12.40pm)

**Tunxi** ¥60, 3½ hours, one daily (7am)

**Wuhan** ¥129, six hours, one daily (7am)

More frequent buses leave from nearby Qingyang:

**Hangzhou** ¥85, five hours, hourly

**Hefei** ¥70, two to three hours, hourly

**Huangshan** ¥55, three hours, three daily (7.30am, 9.30am and 2pm)

**Nanjing** ¥70, three hours, hourly

**Shanghai** ¥110, six hours, hourly

**Tunxi** ¥60, two hours, two daily (7.30am and 2pm)

**Yixian** ¥60, 2½ hours, two daily (8.30am and 1.30pm)

### **i** Getting Around

The ¥50 shuttle ticket includes four bus rides: from the main ticket

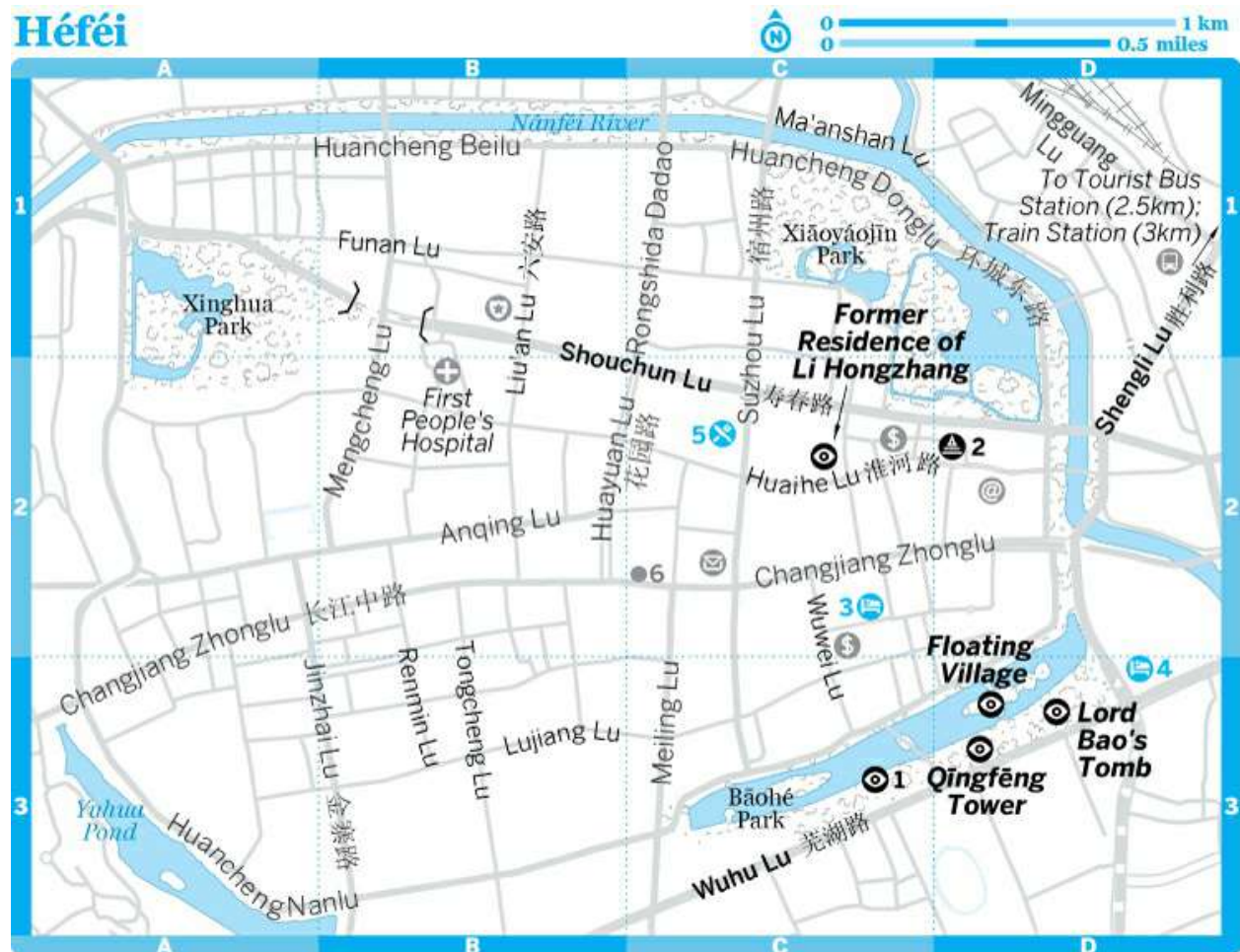
office to Jiuhuajie village (base for the mountain ascent), from the village to Phoenix Pine (cable car station) and back to the village, and from the village back to the main ticket office (first bus 6am, last bus 5pm).

To get to Phoenix Pine, catch the bus (every 30 minutes or when full) from the bus station north of the main gate (cross the bridge on the right after the Julong Hotel). On busy days, you may need to queue for more than two hours for the cable car to/from the peak.

## Hefei

📍 0551 / POP 1.37 MILLION

The provincial capital, Hefei is a pleasant and friendly city with lively markets, pleasant lakes and parks but few other attractions. It's better used as a transport hub to the rest of Anhui.



Hefei

## Top Sights

[Floating Village](#) D3

[Former Residence of Li Hongzhang](#) C2

[Lord Bao's Tomb](#) D3

[Qingfeng Tower](#) D3

## Sights

1 [Bao Gong Temple](#) C3

2 [Mingjiao Temple](#) D2

## Sleeping

3 [Green Tree Inn](#) C2

4 [Westin](#) D3

## Eating

5 [Luzhou Kaoya](#) C2

## Transport

6 [China Eastern Airlines](#) C2

## Sights

Shengli Lu leads from the train station down to the Nanfei River (Nanfei He) then meets up with Shouchun Lu. Changjiang Zhonglu is the main commercial street and cuts east–west through the city. Between Suzhou Lu and Huancheng Donglu is Huaihe Lu Buxing Jie, a busy pedestrian shopping street.

### Parks PARKS

Among Hefei's green spaces, Xiaoyaojin Park (Xiaoyaojin Gongyuan; Shouchun Lu; admission free; ☺ 6am-7pm) and Baohe Park (Baohe Gongyuan; admission free; ☺ 6am-10pm) are the most pleasant and great places to relax and people watch. Baohe Park contains various sights (see the boxed text, [Click here](#)) worth paying for.

### Former Residence of Li Hongzhang HOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Li Hongzhang Guju; Huaihe Lu; admission ¥20; ☺ 8.30am-6.30pm)  
Located along the Huaihe Lu Buxing Jie, this restored home of a local official from the late Qing dynasty sits stoically amid the hubbub of commercial activity all around.

## Mingjiao Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Mingjiao Si; Huaihe Lu; admission ¥10; 🕒 6am-6pm) Small, atmospheric and looking out of place, this temple sits 5m above ground on the pedestrianised section of Huaihe Lu.

## LORD BAO: FAIR & JUST

Lord Bao, aka Bao Zheng, was an official in the Northern Song dynasty (960–1279). Owing to his sense of filial piety, fairness in dealing with cases and his stance against corruption, Lord Bao has been immortalised in classical Chinese literature. He still continues to be the subject of movies, TV shows and stage plays. And like all good classical characters, the line between fiction and his real life has been blurred. The Ming-dynasty interpretation made him into a Sherlock Holmes–type detective with several martial-arts capable sidekicks. He even has his own video game.

Hefei is his birthplace and Baohe Park contains four sights (admission ¥50, incl English guide ¥200; 🕒 8am-6pm). The floating village [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Fuzhuang; 🕒 8am-5.45pm) is a pleasant cluster of Hui-style buildings, gardens and a teahouse built on an island in the middle of the park's river. The Bao Gong Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Baogong Ci; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) is a small memorial temple with a 3m-tall statue of Lord Bao, and the Qingfeng Tower [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Qingfeng Yuan; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) is a 42m pavilion built in 1999 to mark the 1000th anniversary of Lord Bao's birth.

The most interesting of these sights is undoubtedly Lord Bao's Tomb [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Baogong Muyuan; 🕒 8am-5.45pm). A sombre stone tunnel leads you under his burial mound and to a large brown coffin where his remains are interred. As you might imagine, not much is left and various bits of bone have been hermetically sealed and stored away for scientific purposes.

We're waiting for the Lord Bao amusement park...

## Sleeping & Eating

The city is awash with a range of hotels (but there are no hostels!). The area around the train station has Chinese budget- and midrange-category places (from ¥70; look for the characters ; *binguan*) and the main commercial street of Changjiang Zhonglu is where you'll find the midrange hotel chains such as 7 Days, Home Inn and Hanting. For food, head to the pedestrianised Huaihe Lu Buxing Jie. The side streets have cheap eats and there's everything from fast-food chains



to noodle shops. A night market sets up in the area too.

Westin HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hefei Wandaw e isiting Jiudian; 📞 298 9888;

[www.westin.com/hefeibaoh](http://www.westin.com/hefeibaoh); 150 Ma'anshan Lu; 150 d from ¥1500; 🌐

@ 📧) The nicest choice in the city, with a full range of modern facilities including a fitness centre, swimming pool, spa and good restaurants. Rooms have flat-screen TVs and soft bedding. There's a megamall across the street where you can shop at Gucci before watching an IMAX movie. Baohe Park is just round the corner. There's 35% discount online.

Green Tree Inn HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Geli'n Haotai; 📞 225 8188; [www.998.com](http://www.998.com); 34 Hogxing Lu; 34 tw

¥199, d ¥169-189; 🌐 📧) This reliable, modern midrange chain hotel

offers compact, cheap and clean accommodation in a 24-room branch along a quiet residential street. More expensive rooms have a PC.

There's food and shopping within walking distance.

Luzhou Kaoya ROAST DUCK \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 107 Suzhou Lu; dishes from ¥8) Sample some of Anhui's traditional roast duck (; ¥20 per 500g), plus plenty of other noodle and dumpling dishes (from ¥8) at this buzzy eatery. Order at the counter and show the slip to the server, then take a seat. Grab some of the savoury roasted biscuits (¥1.70; look for the queue outside) to go.



### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang) Wuwei Lu (Wuwei Lu);

Shouchun Lu (Shouchun Lu) Currency exchange and international ATMs.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Changjiang Zhonglu) There's also a branch beside the train station.

**First People's Hospital** ( Diyi Renmin Yiyuan; 📞 265 2893; 322 Huaihe Lu)

**Internet cafes** ( wangba; per hr ¥2; ☺ 8am-midnight) A cluster is located about 80m west of Motel 168, off Huaihe Lu Buxing Jie. You'll

need to show a passport.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju) On the northwest corner of the intersection of Shouchun Lu and Liu'an Lu.

### **Getting There & Away**

Air

Daily flights include the following:

**Beijing** ¥890, two hours

**Guangzhou** ¥750, two hours

**Shanghai** ¥550, one hour

**Xiamen** ¥600, 1½ hours

Bookings can be made at **China Eastern Airlines/Lanyu Travel** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( / Dongfang Hangkong Shoupiao chu; 📍 262 9955; 158 Changjiang Zhonglu), situated next to the Huadu Hotel, and at the train station's ticket booking office.

Bus

Hefei has numerous bus stations for its relatively small size, but the following are the most useful ones.

The **Hefei long-distance bus station** ( Hefei changtu qichezhan; 168 Mingguang Lu) has buses to numerous destinations in the surrounding provinces:

**Hangzhou** ¥140, 5½ hours, six daily

**Nanjing** ¥55, 2½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥180, seven hours, 12 daily (including sleeper)

**Wuhan** ¥185, 6½ hours, eight daily

The **east bus station** ( qiche dongzhan; Changjiang Donglu) runs buses to most destinations in Anhui:

**Huangshan** ¥115, four hours, four daily

**Tunxi** ¥115, four hours, hourly

Buses to Jiuhua Shan (¥88, 3½ hours, every 40 minutes) leave from the **tourist bus station** ( luyou qichezhan; Zhanqian Jie) 500m west of train station. The so-called **main bus station** ( keyun zongzhan; Zhanqian Jie), just outside the train station, is for local buses only.

Train

The train station is 4km northeast of the city centre. Express D trains:

**Nanjing** ¥61, one hour, 27 daily

**Shanghai Hongqiao** ¥151 to ¥218, 3½ hours, 15 daily

Regular service destinations:

**Beijing** ¥145 to ¥411, 10 to 16 hours, six daily

**Shanghai** ¥116 to ¥183, 6½ to 8½ hours, eight daily

**Tunxi** ¥66 to ¥162, six to seven hours, three daily

### **i** Getting Around

Metered taxis are cheap, starting at ¥6. Taking a taxi (¥35, 30 minutes) is the best way to the airport, 11km south of the city centre. Rides from the city to the train station should cost ¥10.



# Henan

POP 100 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Zhengzhou](#)

[Nanjiecun](#)

[Song Shan & Dengfeng](#)

[Luoyang](#)

[Around Luoyang](#)

[Guoliangcun](#)

[Kaifeng](#)

[Zhuxian Zhen](#)

---

## Why Go?

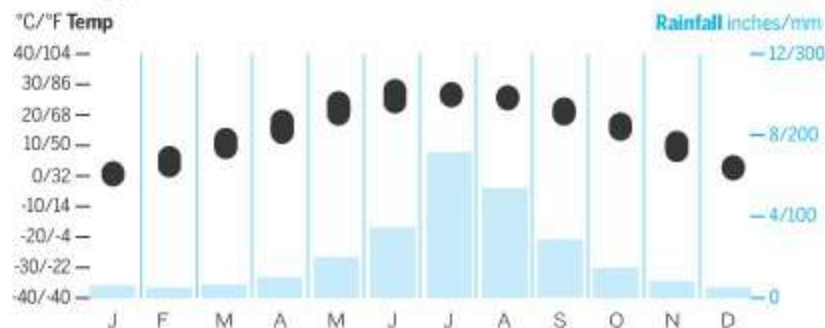
Affluent Chinese roll their eyes at the mention of impoverished and land-locked Henan (, yet the province's heritage takes us back to the earliest days of Chinese antiquity. Ancient capitals rose and fell in Henan's north, where the capricious Yellow River (Huang He) nourished the flowering of a great civilisation. Henan is home to China's oldest surviving Buddhist temple and one of the country's most astonishing collections of Buddhist carvings, the Longmen Caves. There is also the Shaolin Temple, that legendary institution

where the martial way and Buddhism found an unlikely but effective alliance. Henan's inability to catch up with the rest of the land perhaps helps explain why the unusual village of Nanjiecun still sees a future in Maoist collectivism. Henan is also home to the excellent walled town of Kaifeng and the 1000-year-old craft of woodblock printing in Zhuxian.

---

## When to Go

### Zhèngzhōu



**Apr** Wangcheng Park in Luoyang is a blaze of floral colour during the peony festival.

**Jun** Trips to cool Guoliangcun up in the Ten Thousand Immortals Mountains.

**Sep & Oct** Catch the lovely and fleeting north China autumn.

---

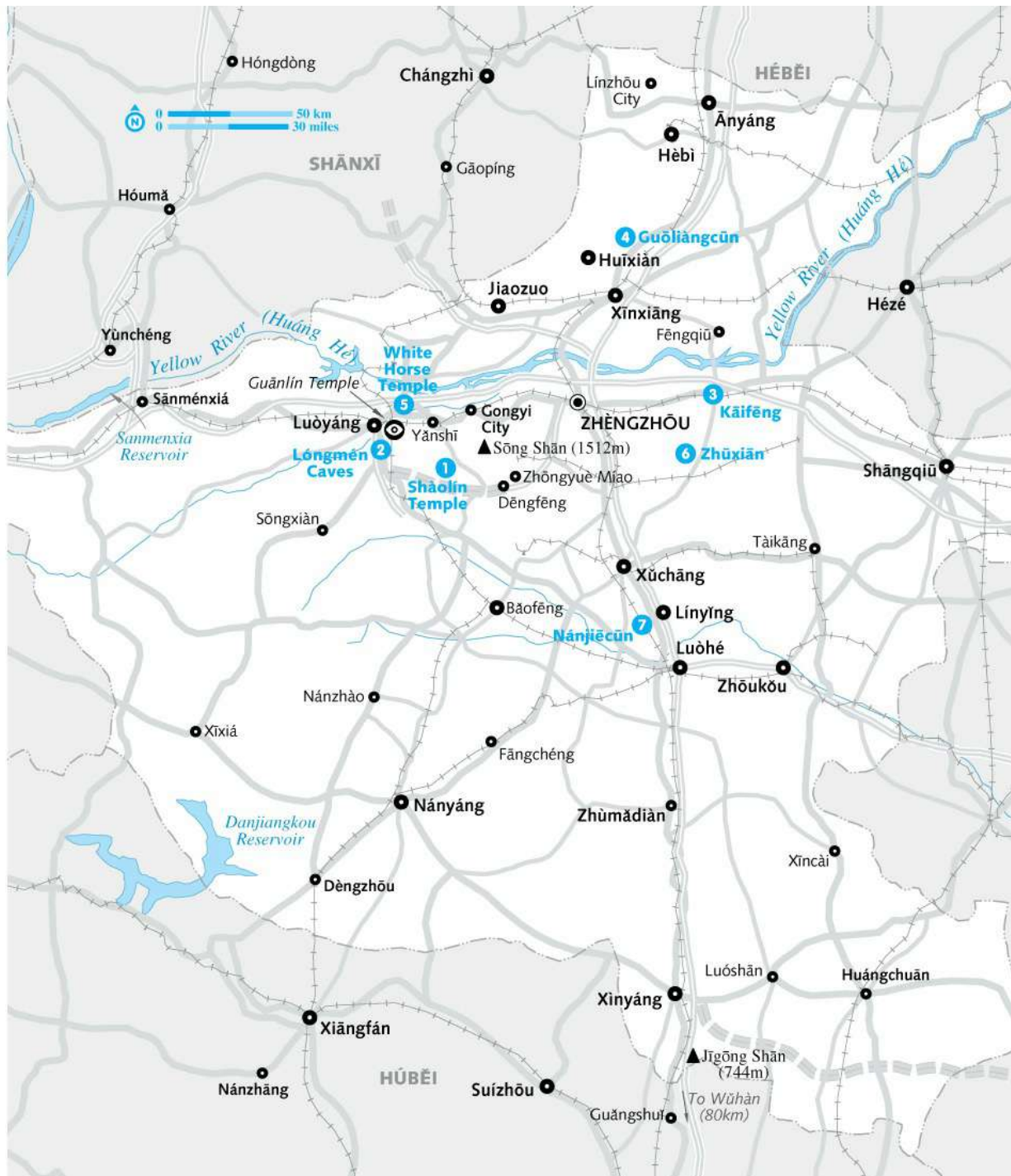
## Best Villages

- » Guoliangcun ([Click here](#))
- » Zhuxian ([Click here](#))
- » Nanjiecun ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Historic Sites

- » Shaolin Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Kaifeng ([Click here](#))
- » Luoyang ([Click here](#))



## Henan Highlights

- 1 Fathom the martial mysteries of Shaolin boxing at the **Shaolin Temple** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Seek enlightenment among the carved Bodhisattvas at the

## Longmen Caves ([Click here](#))

- 3 Take a trip back in time to **Kaifeng** ([Click here](#)) and engage in some adventurous snacking at the night market
- 4 Hide away in cliff-top **Guoliangcun** ([Click here](#)) – don't forget your sketchpad
- 5 Explore China's oldest Buddhist shrine: the **White Horse Temple** ([Click here](#)) outside Luoyang
- 6 Get acquainted with the ancient craft of Chinese woodblock printing in **Zhuxian** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Rediscover communism with Chinese characteristics at **Nanjiecun** ([Click here](#))

## History

It is believed that the first Shang capital, perhaps dating back 3800 years, was at Yanshi, west of modern-day Zhengzhou. Around the mid-14th century BC, the capital is thought to have moved to Zhengzhou, where its ancient city walls are still visible.

Henan again occupied centre stage during the Song dynasty (AD 960–1279), but political power deserted it when the government fled south from its capital at Kaifeng following the 12th-century Juchen invasion.

In 1975 Henan's Banqiao Dam collapsed after massive rainfall, leading to a string of other dam failures that resulted in the deaths of 230,000 people. In the 1990s a scandal involving the sale of HIV-tainted blood led to a high incidence of AIDS in a number of Henan villages.

## Climate

Henan has a warm-temperate climate: dry, windy and cold (average temperature -2°C in January) in winter, hot (average temperature 28°C) and humid in summer. Rainfall increases from north to south and ranges from 60cm to 120cm annually; most of it falls between July and September.

## Language

The lion's share of Henan's 93 million inhabitants speaks one of

nearly 20 sub-dialects of Zhongyuan Hua, itself a dialect of northern Mandarin. Two of 15 dialects of Jin, a distinct language or simply a dialect of Mandarin (linguists wrangle), are found in northern Henan.



#### Getting There & Around

Henan is that rarity in China: a province in which travellers can get in, out and around with ease. Zhengzhou is a major regional rail hub, and expressways laden with comfy express buses run parallel to rail lines and stretch into southern parts of the province.

Luoyang has a small airport but Zhengzhou is the main hub for flying to/from Henan.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥35

\$\$ ¥35 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

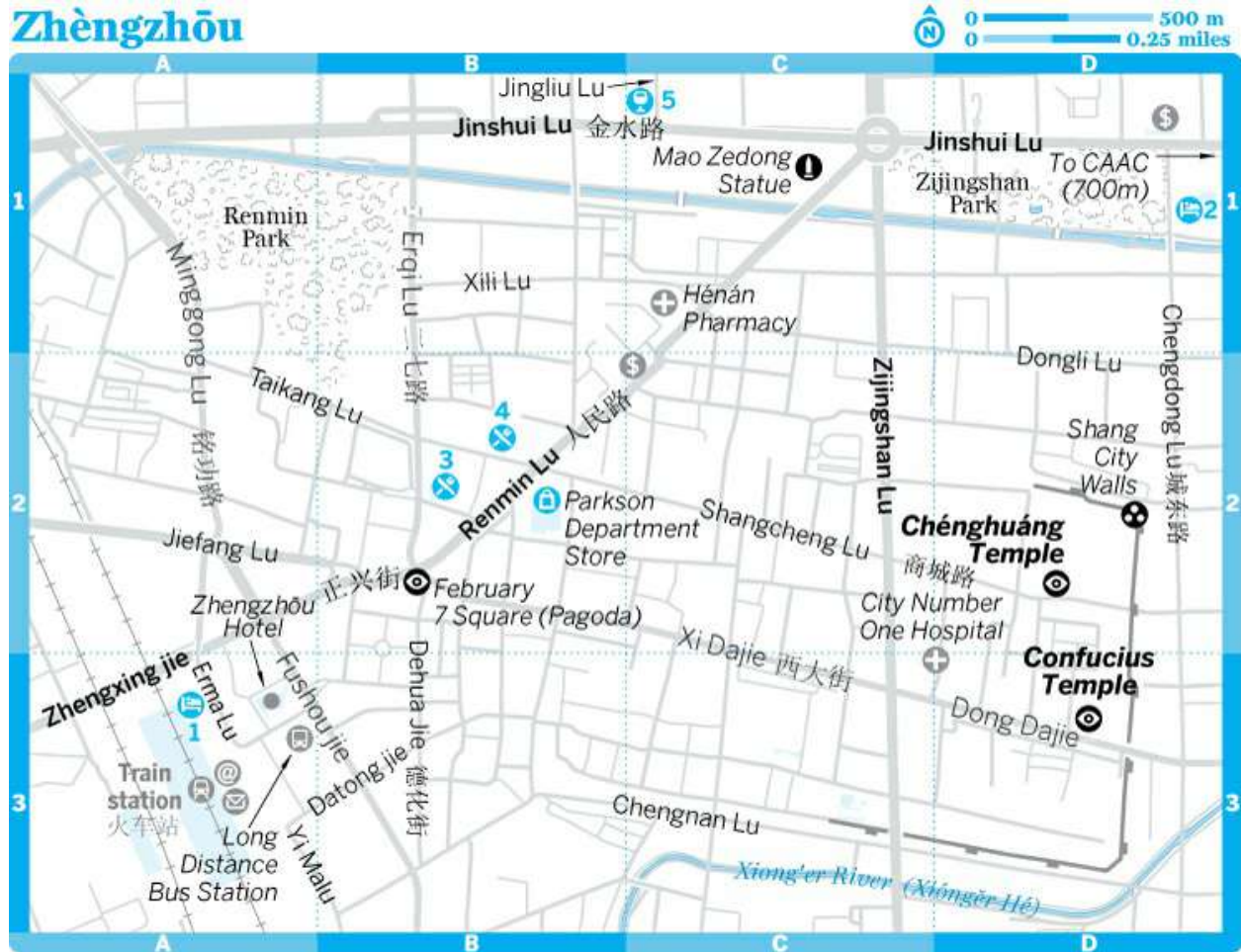
## Zhengzhou

📍 0371 / POP 2.03 MILLION

The provincial Henan capital of Zhengzhou is a rapidly modernising smog-filled metropolis with few relics from its ancient past (courtesy of the Japanese air force, which bombed the city flat). Zhengzhou largely serves as a major transport hub and access point for the Shaolin Temple and the offbeat Maoist collective of Nanjiecun.



# Zhèngzhōu



## Zhengzhou

📍 Top Sights

[Chéngguāng Temple](#) D2

[Confucius Temple](#) D3

🛏 Sleeping

1 [Jinjiang Inn](#) A3

2 [Sofitel](#) D1

🍴 Eating

3 [Guangcai Market](#) B2

4 [Henan Shifu](#) B2

🍷 Drinking

5 [Target Pub](#) C1

👁 Sights

Despite a history reaching back to the earliest chapters of Chinese history, the city now has little by way of sights to hold travellers.

**FREE** Henan Provincial Museum MUSEUM

( Henan Sheng Bowuguan; 8 Nongye Lu; English audio tour ¥20, deposit ¥200; ☺ 9am-5pm) The excellent collection here ranges from the artistry of Shang-dynasty bronzes, oracle bones made from turtle shells, relics from the Yin ruins in Anyang, to gorgeous Ming and Qing porcelain and pottery specimens. The dioramas of Song-dynasty Kaifeng and the magnificent, and now obliterated, Tang-dynasty imperial palace at Luoyang serve to underscore that the bulk of Henan's glorious past is at one with Nineveh and Tyre. English captions. Bus 105 from the train station comes past. A taxi here will cost ¥18.

**FREE** Chenghuang Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chenghuang Miao; Shangcheng Lu; ☺ 9am-6pm) This 600-year-old City God temple bustles with worshippers who leave its trees festooned with red ribbons and its entrances swirling with incense smoke. Take bus 2 from the train station.

**FREE** Confucius Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wen Miao; 24 Dong Dajie; ☺ 8.30am-5pm) Massively restored (at a cost of 30 million yuan!) into a pretty, photo-worthy temple replete with colourfully painted eaves and ornate carvings. Take bus 60 or 85 from the train station.

## **Sleeping**

Your best bet for a cheap bed (¥60 to ¥150) is at one of the numerous guesthouses (, *binguan*) around the train station. Better digs are northeast of the train station at Jinshui Lu where a cluster of chains such as Crowne Plaza and Holiday Inn reside.

Sofitel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Suofeite Guoji Fandian; ☎ 6595 0088; [www.sofitel.com](http://www.sofitel.com); 289

Chengdong Lu; d incl breakfast ¥2722; 🚶🌐📶📶📶) Rooms at the five-star Sofitel are excellent as expected. The funky atrium area bathes the cafe (with a popular afternoon-tea buffet), bar and restaurants below in natural light. Other facilities include a health club. Discounts of 40%.

Jinjiang Inn MOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Zhixing; 📍 6693 2000; 77 Erma Lu; s & d ¥189-219) Modern and swish looking, with crisp, sharp and well looked-after rooms (work desks, flat-screen TVs) in a block set back from the road.

## Eating & Drinking

Five hundred metres north of the train station is the busy February 7 Sq, aka Erqi Guang Chang (). Nearby are shops, restaurants and a night market. Look out for the large white pagoda. Bus 26 from the train station takes you past listed options.

Guangcai Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guangcai Shichang; snacks ¥1-5; 🕒 8am-9pm) Gritty, perhaps, but this crowded warren of food and clothes stalls in the block northeast of Erqi Ta is always packed. Try *m a l a t a n g* (; spicy soup with skewered vegies and meat), *chun juan* (; spring rolls), *roujiamo* (; spicy meat in a bun), *caijiabing* (; vegetables in a bun); *guotie* (; fried dumplings), *baokao xian youyu* (; fried squid kebabs), sweet *xingren cha* (; almond tea), *yangrou tang* (; lamb soup) and much more. Enter via Remin Lu or Erqi Lu.

Henan Shifuu chinese HENAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 6622 2108; 25 Renmin Lu; meals from ¥25; 🕒 10am-2pm & 5-9.30pm) Tucked away in a courtyard off Renmin Lu, this well-known restaurant's photo menu is full of exotic-looking dishes, but turn to the rear pages for cheap, tasty and wholesome fare. Try the *Shanghai xiaolongbao* (; Shanghai steamed dumplings; meat/vegie ¥12/10) or the tasty *yangrou huimian* (; lamb-braised noodles; small/large ¥8/12).

Target Pub PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Mubiao Jiuba; ☎ 138 0385 7056; 10 Jingliu Lu; ☎ 8pm-last customer) The triumphant Target Pub, a seasoned panorama of flags, old banknotes, rattan chairs and half a car pinned to the ceiling, hits the bullseye with excellent music, an outstanding selection of spirits and a laid-back vibe.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 8 Jinshui Lu; ☎ 9am-5pm)

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; ☎ 8am-8pm) South end of train station concourse.

**City Number One Hospital** ( Shi Yiyuan; Dong Dajie)

**Henan Pharmacy** ( Henan Dayaofang; ☎ 6623 4256; 19 Renmin Lu; ☎ 24hr)

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang; Renmin Lu) 24-hour ATM.

**Internet cafes** ( per hour ¥3 to ¥5) clustered near the train station.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju Churujing Guanlichu; ☎ 6962 0350; 90 Xihuanghe Donglu; ☎ 8.30am-noon & 3-6.30pm Jun-Aug, 2-5.30pm Mon-Fri Sep-May) For visa extensions; take bus 135 or 114.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Air

The **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 6599 1111; 3 Jinshui Lu, at Dongmin Lu), east of the city centre, sells flight tickets, as does the **ticket office** (shoupiaochu; ☎ 6677 7111) at the **Zhengzhou Hotel** ( Zhengzhou Dajudian; 8 Xinglong Jie). Look for the sign that reads Zhengzhou Airport ticket office. Flights include the following:

**Beijing** ¥790, eight daily

**Guangzhou** ¥1000, 11 daily

**Guilin** ¥1300, one daily

**Hong Kong** ¥2200, one daily

**Shanghai** ¥600, 12 daily

**Shenzhen** ¥1000, nine daily

Bus

The long-distance bus station (; changtu qichezhan) is opposite the

train station.

**Dengfeng** ¥27, one hour, every 30 minutes

**Kaifeng** ¥16, 1½ hours, hourly

**Linying** ¥40, two hours, hourly

**Luoyang** ¥38 to ¥50, two hours, every 15 minutes

**Shaolin Temple** ¥27, 1½ to 2½ hours, hourly (7.40am to 11.40pm)

**Xi'an** ¥135, 6½ hours, hourly

Train

There are trains, including the Beijing–Kowloon express, to virtually everywhere.

For a ¥5 commission, get tickets at the **advance booking office** (huoche yushoupiao chu; ☎ 6835 6666; cnr Zhengxing Jie & Fushou Jie; 🕒 8am-5pm).

**Anyang** D train, hard/soft seat ¥55/65, 1½ hours, five daily

**Beijing West** D train, hard/soft seat ¥202/243, 5½ hours, six daily

**Ji'nan** D train, hard/soft seat ¥194/273, 5½ hours, 12.28pm

**Kaifeng** D train, hard/soft seat ¥19/24, 30 minutes, three daily

**Luoyang** ¥17 to ¥20, 2½ hours, regular

**Luoyang Longmen** G train, hard/soft seat ¥60/90, 35 minutes, 10 daily

**Nanjing** D train, hard/soft seat ¥205/288, 5½ hours, three daily

**Shanghai** D train, hard/soft seat ¥238/381, 6½ hours, three daily

**Xi'an** G train, hard/soft seat ¥230/370, 2½ hours, regular

### **Getting Around**

Buses for the airport (¥15, one hour, from 6.30am to 7pm) leave every hour from the Zhengzhou Hotel. A taxi (40 minutes) costs around ¥100.

Bus 26 travels from the train station past 7 February Sq, along Renmin Lu and Jinshui Lu to the CAAC office. Local buses cost ¥1 to ¥2.

Metro Line 1 along Renmin Lu and the north–south Line 2 following Zijingshan Lu are under construction.

Taxi fares start at ¥6 (¥8 at night).

## Nanjiecun

South of Zhengzhou, Nanjiecun ([www.nanjiecun.cn](http://www.nanjiecun.cn); admission free) is China's very last Maoist collective (*gongshe*). There are no Buddhist temples or mist-wreathed mountain panoramas, but a trip to Nanjie is nonetheless one back in time: a journey to the puritanical and revolutionary China of the 1950s, when Chairman Mao was becoming a supreme being, money was yesterday's scene and the menace of karaoke had yet to be prophesied by even the most paranoid party faithful.

The first inkling you are stepping into an entirely different world appears when you notice the streets: perfectly clean willow tree-lined streets run in straight lines with a kind of austere socialist beauty, past noodle factories, schools and rows of identikit blocks of workers' flats emblazoned with vermilion communist slogans. Beatific portraits of Chairman Mao gaze down on all.

From the main entrance, continue along the main drag, Yingsong Dadao (). The oddity continues when you drop your bag off at the Nanjiecun Supermarket (; Nanjiecun Chaoshi), where smiling young girls in revolutionary greens accept no fee for bag storage. Wow.

Make your way along Yingsong Dadao to East is Red Square (; Dongfanghong Guangchang), where guards maintain a 24-hour vigil at the foot of a statue of Chairman Mao, and portraits of Marx, Engels, Stalin and Lenin (the original 'Gang of Four') rise up on all four sides. The square is deluged in shrill propaganda broadcast from speakers in true 1950s style. A short stroll to the left brings you to Chaoyang Gate Square (; Chaoyangmen Guangchang) and the rebuilt, traditional architecture of Chaoyang Gate (; Chaoyang Men).

However, once you look closer, you'll realise that all is not well. Stroll to the edges of the town and you'll see dilapidated buildings with broken windows. A strong whiff of sewage permeates the northeastern section. Walk into a public toilet and you'll find the taps locked. The Culture Garden where 'tourists can seek for the pioneering and developing history of people in Nanjiecun by watching video tapes, pictures and material objects', is closed. Still, it's a relief to find a hermetically sealed bubble of space, cleanliness and quietness against the messy backdrop of frenetic China.

## Eating

A clutch of restaurants can be found along the western end of Zhongyuan Lu (), to the south of and parallel with Yingsong Dadao. There's also a large workers' eating house on the right near the main entrance. Look for the sign . It shuts at 1.30pm. Alternatively, head through Chaoyang Gate to the boisterous market street in real China, which is peppered with restaurants.



### Information


Avoid the **Tourist Service Centre** ( Youke Jiedaichu; ☺ 7.30am-5.30pm) at the west end of Yingsong Dadao as they'll ask you to buy an admission ticket for ¥80. If you do take the offer up, it comes with a Chinese-speaking guide and a jaunt around town on an electric cart.



### Getting There & Away

From Zhengzhou bus station, buses (¥40, two hours) run south every hour between 6.20am and 6.20pm to the bus station at Linying (), from where it's a ¥3 *sanlunche* (pedicab) journey south to Nanjiecun.

## Song Shan & Dengfeng

 0371

In Taoism, Song Shan is regarded as the central mountain, symbolising earth (*tu*) among the five elements and occupying the axis directly beneath heaven. Despite this Taoist affiliation, the mountains are also home to one of China's most famous and legendary Zen (Chan) Buddhist temples, the Shaolin Temple. There are two main ranges in the area, the 1494m-high Taishi Shan () and the 1512m-high Shaoishi Shan () whose peaks compose Song Shan about 80km west of Zhengzhou. Both peaks can be ascended.

At the foot of Taishi Shan, 12km southeast of the Shaolin Temple and 74km from Zhengzhou, sits the squat little town of Dengfeng. Tatty in parts, it is used by travellers as a base for trips to surrounding sights or exploratory treks into the hills.

The main bus station is in the far east of town. Most hotels and restaurants are strung out on or near Zhongyue Dajie (), the main east-west street, and Shaolin Dadao (), parallel to the south. The

Shaolin Temple is a 15-minute bus ride northwest of town.

## Sights & Activities

### Shaolin Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Shaolin Si; 📍 6370 2503; admission ¥100; 🕒 8am-6.30pm) The largely rebuilt Shaolin Temple is a victim of its own success. A frequent target of war, the temple was last torched in 1928, and the surviving halls – many of recent construction – are today besieged by marauding tour groups. Accounts vary but the temple seems to have been founded in approximately AD 500. Its claim to fame, the *gongfu* (kung fu) based on varying animals and insects, was reputedly the result of a later monk Damo developing a set of exercises for monks to keep fit. The rest is (mainly celluloid) history.

A visit to Shaolin Temple requires a certain Zen mentality to manage the visiting hordes. You could spend an entire day or two as there are quite a few smaller temples to visit and peaks to hike up and around. Coming through the main entrance, you'll pass several *gongfu* schools. On the right about 500m in, is a square showcasing impressive daily 30-minute outdoor martial arts performances. Next door is the Wushu Training Centre also with shows featuring monks tumbling around and breaking sticks and metal bars over their heads.

The main temple itself is another 600m along. Many buildings such as the main Daxiong Hall (; Daxiong Baodian; reconstructed in 1985) – were levelled by fire in 1928. Some halls only date back as far as 2004. Among the oldest structures at the temple are the decorative arches and stone lions, both outside the main gate.

At the rear, the West Facing Hall (; Xifang Shengren Dian) contains the famous depressions in the floor, apocryphally the result of generations of monks practising their stance work, and huge colour frescos. Always be on the lookout for the ubiquitous Damo (Bodhidharma), whose bearded Indian visage gazes sagaciously from stelae or peeks out from temple halls.

Across from the temple entrance, the Arhat Hall within the Shifang Chanyuan () contains legions of crudely fashioned *luohan* (monks who have achieved enlightenment and passed to nirvana at death). The Pagoda Forest (; Shaolin Talin), a cemetery of 248 brick pagodas



including the ashes of an eminent monk, is well worth visiting if you get here ahead of the crowds. Sadly, where visitors were once allowed to wander amongst the pagodas, the area is now only viewable via a wooden fence circuit.

As you face the Shaolin Temple, paths on your left lead up Wuru Peak (; Wuru Feng). Flee the tourist din by heading towards the peak to see the cave (; Damo Dong) where Damo meditated for nine years; it's 4km uphill. From the base, you may spot the peak and the cave, marked by a large bodhisattva figure. En route to the cave, detour to the Chuzu Temple (; Chuzu An), a quiet and battered counterpoint to the main temple. Its main structure is the oldest wooden one in the province (c AD 1125).

At 1512m above sea level and reachable on the Songyang Cableway (Songyang Suodao; ¥40 return, 20 minutes), Shaoshi Shan () is the area's tallest peak. The area beyond the cable car is home to the peak and Erzu Nunnery (; Erzu An) with four wells where you can sample its various tasting waters (sour, sweet, peppery and bitter).

There's also a scenic trek to neighbouring Sanhuangzhai. The trek takes about six hours return, covers 15km and goes past craggy rock formations along a path that often hugs the cliff to the 782-step Rope Bridge (; Lian Tian Diao Qiao). To begin the hike, look for the small Chinese sign which leads to Sanhuangzhai (). It's a long and hard-going hike, so for safety reasons, monks recommend trekking with a friend.

If you'd prefer an easier hike, head to the newer Shaolin Cableway (Shaolin Suodao; ¥60 return, 40 minutes) which takes you to Sanhuangzhai. From there, it's a shorter hike to the bridge. Both cableways can be found just beyond the Pagoda Forest. Note that the bridge may be closed at times for repair or during inclement weather. Start hikes early, as you don't want to be caught out in the dark.

To reach the Shaolin Temple, take a bus (¥3, 15 minutes) from Dengfeng's west bus station (; *x i zh a n*) on Zhongyue Dajie to the drop-off point. The temple compound office is across the road. Within the compound, you can choose to take a buggy (¥10, from 8am to 6pm) to the main temple entrance, or walk (20 minutes). Alternatively, take a minibus from either Luoyang or Zhengzhou (¥19.50 to ¥27, 1½

to 2½ hours) to the drop-off. From the temple, return buses leave from the drop-off point (last bus at around 8pm). A taxi to the temple from Dengfeng will cost ¥30 (unofficial fare, no meter).

### Songyang Academy ACADEMY

( Songyang Shuyuan; admission ¥30; ☺ 7am-6pm) At the foot of Taishi Shan sits one of China's oldest academies, the lush and well-tended Songyang Academy, a building complex which dates to AD 484 and rises up the hill on a series of terraces. In the courtyard are two cypress trees believed to be around 4500 years old – and they're still alive!

Both bus 2 and bus 6 (¥1) from Dengfeng run to the Songyang Academy.

### Mt Taishi MOUNTAIN

( Taishi Shan; admission ¥50; ☺ 8am-6pm) A 2km walk from the Songyang Academy, the pretty Songyue Pagoda ( Songyue Ta), built in AD 509, is China's oldest brick pagoda. Nearby is the Fawang Temple (; Fawang Si), ringed by mountains and first established in AD 71. Most visitors however, come here to ascend Mt Taishi. To begin the climb, look for the large stone path just beyond the Songyang Academy. The Junji Peak is 1470m high and isn't much more than a viewing point (sorry, no temple here!). The challenging climb up stone steps takes three to four hours (one way).

### Zhongyue Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

( Zhongyue Miao; admission ¥30; ☺ 6.30am-6.30pm) A few kilometres east of Dengfeng, the ancient and hoary Zhongyue Miao is a colossal active Taoist monastery complex that originally dates back to the 2nd century BC. Less visited, the complex – set against a mountainous background and with its monks wearing traditional dress and top knots – exudes a more palpable air of reverence than its Buddhist sibling, the Shaolin Temple. Besides attending the main hall dedicated to the Mountain God, walk through the Huasan Gate (; Huasan Men) and expunge *pengju*, *pengzhi* and *pengjiao* – three pestilential insects that respectively inhabit the brain, tummy and feet. Drop by the four Iron Men of Song, rubbed by visitors to cure ailments and pay a visit to the Sixty Gods Hall, where visitors pay respects to the God corresponding to their birth year. From Dengfeng, take the green bus 2 along

Zhongyue Dajie.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

The stretch of Chonggao Lu ( ) around the Shaolin Travelers Hostel has eating options galore. You'll also find plenty of restaurants in town along Zhongyue Dajie ( ) between Jiming Jie ( ) and Songshan Lu ( ) – ¥5 to ¥7 taxi rides from most hotels. At night, look for barbecue stalls set up outside restaurants. Local specialities are thickly cut handmade noodles in broth ( ; *hui mian*; ¥6 to ¥8) and barbecue lamb skewers ( ; *yangrou chuan*; ¥2).

Shaolin Travelers Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Luxingjia Qingnian Lushe; 📞 159 8188 3801; [www.shaolintravelershostel.hostel.com](http://www.shaolintravelershostel.hostel.com); 308 Chonggao Luxi; 308 dm ¥30, d & tw with/without bathroom ¥160/100; 📶@📶) The 10-bed dorms are roomy, but basic with no lockers, while the private rooms are large with foam mattresses and an odd stone-slab decor. The owner Coco speaks English and can help with recommendations. The massage shop (¥60, one hour) next door can work out the kinks after a hard day's hike. It's a ¥7 taxi ride from the main bus station or take bus 1 (¥1) and stop along Shaosi Lu ( ).

Shaolin Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Shaolin Binguan; 📞 6016 1616; 66 Zhongyue Dajie; 66 d/tr ¥320/500 📶) Bright and cheery staff, good discounts and clean rooms make this neat and trim hotel on Zhongyue Dajie a good choice. There's no English sign, so look for the four-storey white building east of Dicos (a fast-food restaurant) with the yellow and red sign. Take bus 1 from the main bus station or a ¥7 taxi ride. Discounts of 50%.

Shaolin International Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Shaolin Guoji Dajiudian; 📞 6285 6868; [www.shaolinhotel.com](http://www.shaolinhotel.com); 20 Shaolin Dadao; 20 s/d/ste ¥680/780/1180; 📶) Calling itself a four-star hotel, this is more like a smartish three-star, with the obligatory scads of black Buicks parked outside. Jiang Zemin stayed here, leaving his photo in the lobby and making the hotel popular with visiting Chinese. A taxi from the main bus station will cost ¥7. Discounts of 40%.

## **Information**

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang) 52 Zhongyue Dajie (🕒 9am-5pm

Mon-Fri); 186 Shaolin Dadao (☎ 9am-noon & 2-5pm Mon-Fri) 24-hour ATM and forex.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; ☎ 6288 3442; Beihuan Lu Xiduan) Helpful, English-speaking staff.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Zhongyue Dajie & Wangji Lu)

**No 2 People's Hospital** ( Di'er Renmin Yiyuan; ☎ 6289 9999; 189 Shaolin Dadao) On the main road.

### **i** Getting There & Around

The **Dengfeng bus station** (; zong zhan) is in the east of town; jump on bus 1 (¥1) to reach Zhongyue Dajie and the town centre. There's also a **west bus station** (; xi zhan) which some buses head to after dropping people off at the main station. Buses to and from Zhengzhou (¥27, 1½ hours) and Luoyang (¥19.50, two hours) run every 30 minutes from the main station. To purchase tickets for trains departing from Zhengzhou, go to the **train ticket office** (☎ 8am-noon & 2-5pm) at the gate of the **Songyang Yingbin Hotel** (130 Shaolin Dadao). Taxis are a cheap and easy way to get around. Fares start at ¥5 but use those with meters.

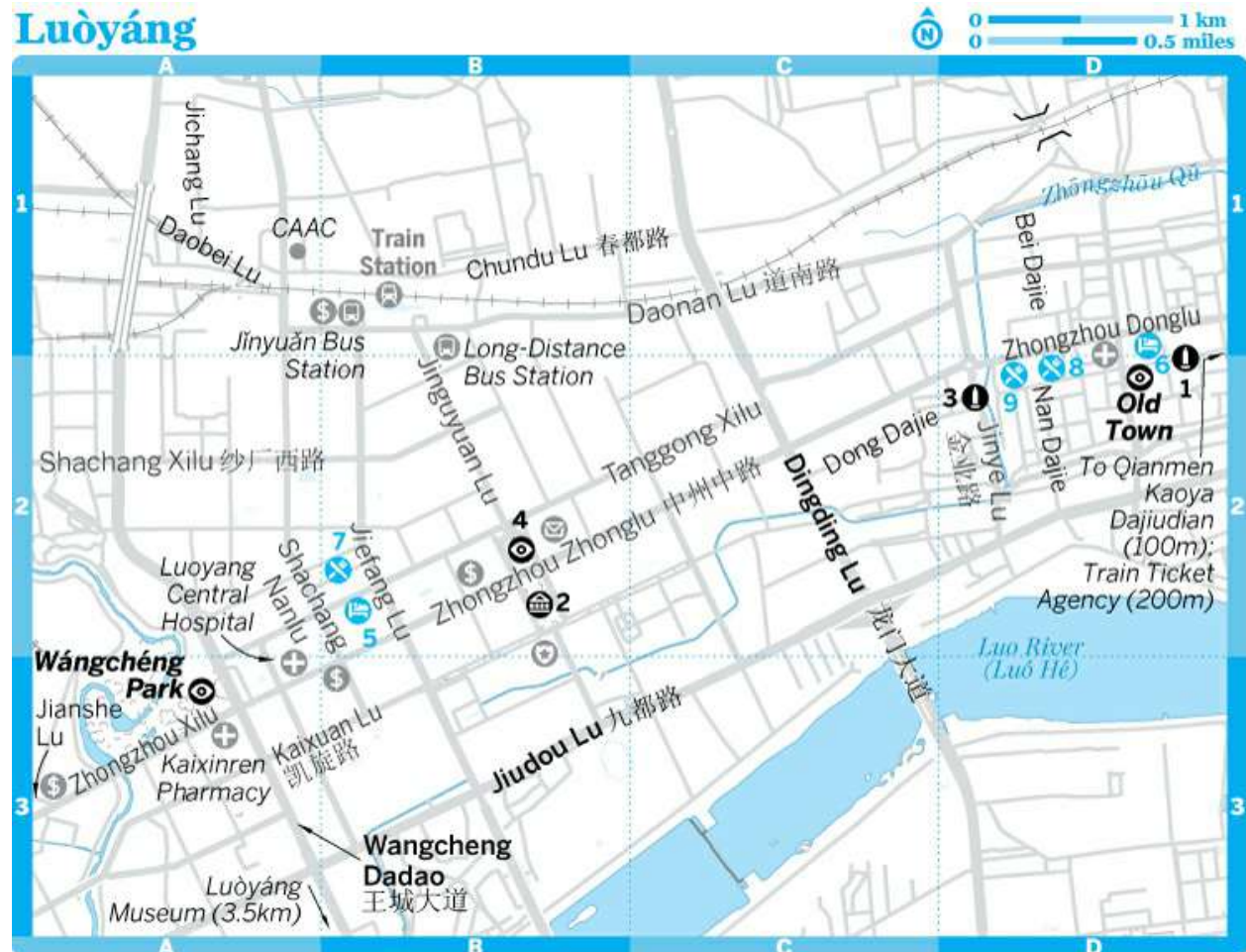
## Luoyang

☎ 0379 / POP 1.4 MILLION

The capital of 13 dynasties, until the Northern Song dynasty shifted its capital to Kaifeng in the 10th century instead, Luoyang was one of China's true dynastic citadels. Charted on maps of the town, the mighty Sui- and Tang-dynasty walls sat in an imposing rectangle north and south of the Luo River, while the city boasted 1300 Buddhist temples. It's hard today to conceive that Luoyang was once the very centre of the Chinese universe and the eastern capital of the great Tang dynasty. The heart of the magnificent Sui-dynasty palace complex was centred on the point where today's Zhongzhou Lu and Dingding Lu intersect in a frenzy of traffic.

On the surface, Luoyang may look like any fume-laden modern Chinese town, but spend some time here and you'll find the people more patient and the streets actually less frantic than Zhengzhou.

Nearby, the magnificently sculpted Longmen Caves by the banks of the Yi River remain one of China's most prized Buddhist treasures and the annual peony festival, centred on Wangcheng Park in April, is colourful fun. The buzzy old town, where the bulk of Luoyang's history survives, is in the east.



## Luoyang

📍 Top Sights

[Old Town](#) D2

[Wangcheng Park](#) A3

📍 Sights

1 [Drum Tower](#) D2

2 Eastern Zhou Royal Horse & Carriage Museum B2

3 [Lijing Gate](#) D2

4 [Wangcheng Square](#) B2

🛏 Sleeping

5 [Christian's Hotel](#) B2

[Lijingmen Hotel](#) (see 3)

6 [Luoyang Yijia International Youth Hostel](#) D1

 Eating

7 [Carrefour](#) B2

8 [Old Town Market](#) D2

9 [Zhen Bu Tong Fandian](#) D2

## Sights & Activities

 Luoyang Museum MUSEUM

( Luoyang Shi Bowuguan; Nietai Lu; 🕒 9am-4.30pm Tue to Sun) The location, in the south of town, is inconvenient, but where else in the city is there space to build such an imposing new building that stands toe to toe with both Shanghai and Beijing's best? The museum houses an exhausting number of displays across two huge floors and is one of the few places you can get your finger on the pulse of ancient Luoyang. It has an absorbing collection of Tang-dynasty three-colour *sanc* porcelain and traces the city's rise through the various dynasties' pottery, bronzeware and other resplendent objects. There's also an incongruently stark room with a massive collection of material on Mao Zedong – there are hundreds of books and magazines, each one carefully wrapped in cellophane. Take bus 77 from the train station. A taxi from town will cost ¥20.

Old Town HISTORIC AREA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

Any Chinese city with any sense of history has its old town (; *laochengqu*). Luoyang's old town lies east of the rebuilt Lijing Gate [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Lijing Men), where a maze of narrow and winding streets rewards exploration, and old courtyard houses survive amid modern outcrops. From the gate, stroll down Xi Dajie ( ) along a stone pathway. Look out for an indoor antique market (; Wenbocheng Guwan Zihuawan Zhongxin) on your left. There are three storeys of antique stalls stocking everything from Tang-era pottery, Mao busts, old bank notes, pipes, jades and other dusty trinkets. Further along and originally dating to 1555, the old Drum Tower [Offline map](#) [Google](#)

[map](#) (; Gu Lou) rises up at the east end of Dong Dajie (), itself lined with traditional rooftops. The rest of Dong Dajie is a hubbub of local life: hairdressers, noodle stalls and tradesmiths all cluster within crumbling old houses.

### Wangcheng Square & Around SQUARE, MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wangcheng Guangchang; Zhongzhou Zhonglu) This square is the meeting place for locals who come to play chess and cards under fluttering red country flags. At night, there's line dancing, and enterprising individuals set up makeshift massage beds along the stone seating ledges. Across Zhongzhou Zhonglu and marked with a huge statue of six rearing horses is the underground Eastern Zhou Royal Horse and Carriage Museum (admission ¥30; 9am-5pm winter, 8.30am-7pm summer). The principal draw is the unearthed remains of a former emperor's royal horses. These carriage-bearing horses were buried alive when the emperor passed on. The exhibition is filled out with dioramas of the former imperial city and with other archaeological finds.

### Wangcheng Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wangcheng Gongyuan; Zhongzhou Zhonglu; admission park & zoo ¥25, park, zoo & cable car ¥30, after 7pm ¥15, peony festival ¥50-55) One of Luoyang's indispensable green lungs, this park is the site of the annual peony festival; held in April, the festival sees the park flooded with colour, floral aficionados, photographers, girls with garlands on their heads and hawkers selling huge bouquets of flowers. Unfortunately, the park is home to a decrepit zoo for which you're forced to pay an admission charge. There's also an amusement park (rides ¥15 to ¥20). Artists ply their trade along the walls on the left as your turn into the park.

## **Sleeping**

Luoyang has a large range of hotels in every budget bracket dotted all over the city.



Christian's Hotel BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kelisiting Jiudian; 📍 6326 6666; [www.5xjd.com](http://www.5xjd.com); 56 Jiefang Lu; 56 d & tw ¥819-919; 📶📺) We have no idea who Christian is, but he sure knows how to deck out a hotel room. This boutique hotel scores points for its variety of rooms, each one with a kitchen and dining area, large plush beds, flat-screen TVs, and mini-bar. Do you go for the room with the dark rich tones or the one with the white walls and circular bed? Regardless, you'll be thanking Christian each time you step into the room. Efficient staff rounds out the experience.

Luoyang Yijia International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Luoyang Yijia Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 6526 0666; 329 Zhongzhou Donglu; 329 dm ¥40, d & tw ¥130; 📶📺📶) Located in the busy old town, this hostel hits its stride with its lively communal area, bar and excellent food (pizzas ¥32, burgers ¥26). Dorms are a little tight but private rooms are the equivalent of a two-star Chinese room. Rooms facing the main road are noisy and some have a funky smell, so check before you plonk your bags down. Transport to town and all the major sights are within walking distance of the hostel. Buses 5 and 41 from the train and bus stations come past.

Lijingmen Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lijingmen Binguan; 📍 6350 3381; Lijing Gate; s & d ¥240-320; 📶📺) With an enviable position within the restored Lijing Gate and facing a canal, one might overlook the compact rooms and showers. Decor is *de rigueur* Chinese two-star standard: hard beds, flat-screen TV, kettle and clean sheets. The more expensive rooms are larger, have windows facing the canal and are equipped with internet-enabled PCs. Discounts of 50%.

## Eating

Luoyang's famous 'water banquet' (; *shuixi*) resonates along China's culinary grapevine. The main dishes of this 24-course meal are soups and are served up with the speed of flowing water – hence the name.

A handy branch of the Carrefour [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Jialefu) supermarket can be found near the corner of Tanggong Xilu and Jiefang Lu in the Today mall (; Xindouhui) where you can also find a



wide variety of things to eat. The old town is also rife with everything from noodles to dumplings, hotpot and more.

Old Town Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Nandajie yeshi; cnr Xi Dajie & Dong Dajie & north to Zhongzhou Donglu; ☺ 5-10pm) Lively night market with a cornucopia of snacks from *yangrou chuan* (; lamb kebabs; ¥2) to super-sweet *zhi* (; juice; ¥3). Stalls on the left offer a wide range of cooked dishes (from ¥8 to ¥58) served at tables set up on the sidewalk behind. There are menus in Chinese with marked prices but you can just point and choose from a variety of seafood and vegetables, all served wok-fried. You can also ask for a pint of draft beer (; *shengpijiu*; ¥5).

Qianmen Kaoya Dajiudian ROAST DUCK \$\$

( Qianmenkaoya Dajiudian; 📞 636 0188; cnr Zhongzhou Donglu & Minzu Jie; duck from ¥60; ☺ 10am-2pm & 5-9pm) Efficient staff shepherd you to a stiff table where you'll be presented with a tome-like picture menu. Order a roast duck (; half duck ¥60, whole duck ¥110) served up four ways. An army of white-clad chefs then proceed to cook up a storm in the kitchen. There are other vegetable and meat dishes on the menu (from ¥20) but why bother?

Zhen Bu Tong Fandian chinese HENAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( One of a Kind Restaurant; 📞 6399 5080; 369 Zhongzhou Donglu; dishes ¥15-45, water banquet from ¥688; ☺ 10am-9pm) Huge place behind a colourful green, red, blue and gold traditional facade. If you can rustle up a large group, this is the place to come for a water-banquet experience; if 24 courses and ¥688 seems a little excessive, you can opt to pick individual dishes from the menu.

### Information

Internet cafes (per hour ¥3) are scattered around the train station and sprinkled along nearby Jingyuan Lu.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; ☺ 8am-4.30pm) The Zhongzhou Xilu office exchanges travellers cheques and has an ATM that accepts MasterCard and Visa. There's also a branch on the corner of Zhongzhou Lu and Shachang Nanlu. Another branch just west of the

train station has foreign-exchange services.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Zhongzhou Zhonglu)

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang yinhang; 228 Zhongzhou Zhonglu) Huge branch; forex and 24-hour ATM.

**Kaixinren Pharmacy** ( Kaixinren Dayaofang; ☎ 6392 8315; Zhongzhou Zhonglu; 🕒 24hr)

**Luoyang Central Hospital** ( Luoyang Shi Zhongxin Yiyuan; ☎ 6389 2222; 288 Zhongzhou Zhonglu) Works in cooperation with SOS International; also has a 24-hour pharmacy.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 6393 8397; cnr Kaixuan Lu & Tiyuchang Lu; 🕒 8am-noon & 2-5.30pm Mon-Fri) The exit-entry department (Churujing Dating) is in the south building.

## Getting There & Away

Air

You would do better to fly into or out of Zhengzhou. The **CAAC** ( Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 6231 0121, 24hr 6539 9366; 196 Chundu Lu) is in a white-tile building north of the railway line, but tickets can be obtained through hotels. Daily flights operate to Beijing (¥810, 1½ hours), Shanghai (¥990, 1½ hours) and other cities.

Bus

Regular departures from the **long-distance bus station** (; yiyuan qichezhan; Jingyuan Lu) diagonally across from the train station include the following:

**Dengfeng** ¥20, two hours, hourly

**Kaifeng** ¥55, three hours, hourly

**Shaolin Temple** ¥19.50, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes (5.20am to 4pm)

**Xi'an** ¥90, four hours, hourly

**Zhengzhou** ¥40, 1½ hours, hourly

Buses to similar destinations also depart from the friendly and less frantic **Jinyuan bus station** (; Jinyuan qichezhan), just west of the train station.

Train

Luoyang's new **Luoyang Longmen Station** (; Luoyang Longmen Zhan) over the river in the south of town has D and G trains to

Zhengzhou and Xi'an. The regular **train station** (; Luoyang Huoche Zhan) has regional and long-distance trains.

You can get tickets for a ¥5 commission from a **train ticket agency** (huochepiaodaishouchu; 249 Zhongzhou Donglu).

Regional destinations include Kaifeng (hard seat ¥35, three hours, regular) and Zhengzhou (hard seat ¥25, 1½ hours, regular).

Hard-sleeper destinations:

**Beijing West** seat/sleeper ¥110/197, seven to 10 hours, eight daily

**Nanjing** seat/sleeper ¥113/316, eight to 12 hours, six daily

**Shanghai** seat/sleeper ¥153/263, 12 to 17 hours, five daily

**Wuhan** seat/sleeper ¥90/170, nine hours, regular

From Luoyang Longmen Station:

**Xi'an** 2nd/1st class ¥120/190, two hours, eight daily

**Zhengzhou** 2nd/1st class ¥61/97, 40 minutes, 10 daily

### **Getting Around**

The airport is 12km north of the city. Bus 83 (¥1, 30 minutes) runs from the parking lot to the right as you exit the train station. A taxi from the train station costs about ¥35.

Buses 5 and 41 go to the Old Town from the train station, running via Wangcheng Sq. Buses 26, 28, 33, 65 and 66 run to Luoyang Longmen station. A taxi from town costs about ¥20.

Taxis are ¥5 at flag fall, making them good value and a more attractive option than taking motor-rickshaws, which will cost you around ¥4 from the train station to Wangcheng Sq.

## **Around Luoyang**

### **LONGMEN CAVES**

A Unesco World Heritage site, the ravaged grottoes at Longmen constitute one of China's handful of surviving masterpieces of Buddhist rock carving. A Sutra in stone, the epic achievement of the Longmen Caves (Dragon Gate Grottoes; Longmen Shiku; admission ¥120, English-speaking guide ¥150; ☀ day 7.30am-4.30pm summer, 8am-4pm winter, night 7-10.30pm) was first undertaken by chisellers

from the Northern Wei dynasty, after the capital was relocated here from Datong in AD 494. During the next 200 years or so, more than 100,000 images and statues of Buddha and his disciples emerged from over a kilometre of limestone cliff wall along the Yi River (Yi He).

A disheartening amount of decapitation disfigures the statuary. In the early 20th century, many effigies were beheaded by unscrupulous collectors or simply extracted whole, many ending up abroad in such institutions as the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York, the Atkinson Museum in Kansas City and the Tokyo National Museum. A noticeboard at the site lists significant statues that are missing and their current whereabouts. Some effigies are returning and severed heads are gradually being restored to their bodies, but many statues have clearly just had their faces crudely bludgeoned off, vandalism that dates to the Cultural Revolution and earlier episodes of anti-Buddhist fervour. Weather has also played its part, wearing smooth the faces of many other statues.

The caves are scattered in a line on the west and east sides of the river. Most of the significant Buddhist carvings are on the west side, but a notable crop can also be admired after traversing the bridge to the east side. Admission also includes entry to a temple and garden on the east side. English captions are rudimentary despite the caves being a major tourist drawcard. The caves are numbered and illuminated at night (aficionados and those seeking a different experience can opt for night tickets). Whether you visit in the day or night, allow your eyes to adjust to the light inside the cave and details will start to pop out. We list some of the major caves below.

The Longmen Caves are 13km south of Luoyang and can be reached by taxi (¥30) or bus 81 (¥1.50, 40 minutes) from the east side of Luoyang's train station. The last bus 81 returns to Luoyang at 8.50pm. Buses 53 and 60 also run to the caves.

From the west side, you can take a boat (¥20 to ¥25) back to the main entrance to get a riverside view of the grottoes. Note that you can't re-enter the west side once you leave. From the east side, there are electric carts (¥5 to ¥10) to take you back to the main entrance.

## **WEST SIDE**

### Three Binyang Caves CAVE

Work began on the Three Binyang Caves ( Binyang San Dong) during the Northern Wei dynasty. Despite the completion of two of the caves during the Sui and Tang dynasties, statues here all display the benevolent expressions that characterised Northern Wei style. Traces of pigment remain within the three large grottoes and other small niches honeycomb the cliff walls. Nearby is the Moya Three Buddha Niche (; Moya Sanfo Kan), with seven figures that date to the Tang dynasty.

### Ten Thousand Buddha Cave CAVE

South of Three Bin-yang Caves ( Wanfo Dong), the Tang-dynasty Ten Thousand Buddha Cave dates from 680. In addition to its namesake galaxy of tiny bas-relief Buddhas, there is a fine effigy of the Amitabha Buddha. Note the red pigment on the ceiling.

### Losana Buddha Statue Cave CAVE

The most physically imposing and magnificent of all the Longmen caves, this vast cave (; Lushe) was carved during the Tang dynasty between 672 and 675; it contains the best examples of sculpture, despite evident weathering and vandalism.

Nine principal figures dominate the Ancestor Worshipping Temple. Tang figures tend to be more three-dimensional than the Northern Wei figures, while their expressions and poses also seem more natural. In contrast to the other-worldly effigies of the Northern Wei, many Tang figures possess a more fearsome ferocity and muscularity, most noticeable in the huge guardian figure in the north wall.

The 17m-high seated central Buddha is said to be Losana, whose face is allegedly modelled on Tang empress and Buddhist patron Wu Zetian, who funded its carving.

The final stretch of caves scattered along a maze-like set of stone steps have suffered the most damage and many grottoes are empty, so much so that staff sometimes discourage visitors from checking them out. There are gems to be found if you take the time to wander around. From the base, look up to see six pagodas carved at the top of the rock face.

## **EAST SIDE**

When you have reached the last cave on the west side, cross the bridge and walk back north along the east side. The lovely Thousand Arm and Thousand Eye Guanyin (; Qianshou Qianyan Guanyin Kan) in Cave 2132 is a splendid bas-relief dating to the Tang dynasty, revealing the Goddess of Mercy framed in a huge fan of carved hands, each sporting an eye. Two Tang-dynasty guardian deities stand outside the sizeable Lord Gaoping Cave (; Gaoping Junwang Dong). Further is the large Reading Sutra Cave (; Kan Jing Sidong), with a carved lotus on its ceiling and 29 *luohan* around the base of the walls. There is also a large viewing terrace for sizing up the Ancestor Worshipping Temple on the far side of the river.

### Xiangshan Temple TEMPLE

(; Xiangshan Si) Past the caves on the eastern side and up a steep flight of steps is this restored temple nestled against the hill. First built in AD 516 and restored on various occasions, the temple is filled with bronze Buddhist images and a villa which once belonged to former president Jiang Jieshi, built in 1936 to celebrate his 50th birthday (what a present, what a view!). Look out for a stele with a poem written by Emperor Qianlong who visited and was moved by the temple's beauty.

### Bai Juyi's Graveyard GARDEN, TOMB

The final stop at the site is a lovely garden built around Tang-dynasty poet Bai Juyi's tomb ( Bai Juyi Mudi). It's a peaceful, leafy place to rest your tired feet. There's a cute alfresco teahouse inside where you can get tea (from ¥38), snacks and instant noodles.

## WHITE HORSE TEMPLE

Although its original structures have largely been replaced and it is likely older temples have vanished, this active monastery (Baima Si; admission ¥50; ☺ 7am-6pm) is regarded as the first surviving Buddhist temple erected on Chinese soil, originally dating from the 1st century AD.

When two Han-dynasty court emissaries went in search of Buddhist scriptures, they encountered two Indian monks in Afghanistan; the monks returned to Luoyang on two white horses carrying Buddhist Sutras and statues. The impressed emperor built the temple to house

the monks; it is also their resting place. Ironically, the tombs are now overgrown and neglected and set off on the sides of the compound.

In the Hall of the Heavenly Kings, Milefo laughs from within an intricately carved cabinet featuring more than 50 dragons writhing across the structure. Other buildings of note include the Hall of Great Heroes with its two-level carved wooden structure and the Pilu Hall at the very rear. Also look out for peony gardens in bloom come April/May. The standout Qiyun Pagoda (; Qiyun Ta), an ancient 12-tiered brick tower, is a pleasant five-minute walk through a garden and across a bridge.

The temple is 13km east of Luoyang, around 40 minutes away on bus 56 from the Xiguan () stop. Bus 58 runs from Zhongzhou Donglu in the old town also runs here.

## Guoliangcun

📍 0373 / POP 300

On its clifftop perch high up in the Wanxian (Ten Thousand Immortals) Mountains in north Henan, this delightful high-altitude stone hamlet was for centuries sheltered from the outside world by its combination of inaccessibility and anonymity. Guoliangcun shot to fame as the bucolic backdrop to a clutch of Chinese films, which firmly embedded the village in contemporary Chinese mythology.

Today, the village attracts legions of artists, who journey here to capture the unreal mountain scenery on paper and canvas. Joining them are weekend Chinese tourists who get disgorged by the busloads. For a true rustic mountaintop experience, come on a weekday when it's tranquil. New hotels have sprung up at the village's foot, but the original dwellings – climbing the mountain slope – retain their simple, rustic charms. Long treks through the lovely scenery more than compensate for the hard slog of journeying here.

Approximately 6°C colder than Zhengzhou, Guoliangcun is cool enough to be devoid of mosquitoes year-round (some locals say), but pack warm clothes for winter visits, which can be bone-numbing. Visiting in low season may seem odd advice, but come evening the village can be utterly tranquil, and moonlit nights are intoxicating. Pack

a small torch as lights beyond the hotels are scarce.

Several kilometres before the village, you will be made to get off the bus to purchase a ticket (¥80) to the Wanxian Mountains Scenic Area. There are no ATMs and nowhere to change money in Guoliangcun. A small medical clinic (☎ 671 0303) can be found in the village.

## Sights & Activities

All of the village dwellings, many hung with butter yellow *b a ngzi* (sweetcorn cobs), are hewn from the same local stone that paves the slender alleyways, sculpts the bridges and fashions the picturesque gates of Guoliangcun. Walnut-faced old women peek from doorways and children scamper about, but locals are well used to outsiders.

You will have passed by the Precipice Gallery (; Juebi Changlang), also referred to on some signs as 'Long Corridor in the Cliffs' en route to the village, but backtrack down for a closer perspective on these plunging cliffs, with dramatic views from the tunnel carved through the rock. Before this tunnel was built (between 1972 and 1978) by a local man called Shen Mingxin and others, the only way into the village was via the Sky Ladder (; Tian Ti), Ming-dynasty steps hewn from the local pink stone, with no guard rails but amazing views.

To get to the Sky Ladder, take the left fork of the road heading towards the tunnel and walk for 2.5km. Another 500m along the road takes you to the charming village of Huitao Zhai (), with its cliff-top cottages.

Over the bridge on the other side of the precipice from the village, walk past the small row of cottages almost on the edge of the cliff called Yashang Renjia () and you can step onto a platform atop a pillar of rock for astonishing views into the canyon.

Head through the strip of street stalls, past the hotels to get to the start of a bracing 5km circuit through the mountain valley. From the end of the street, you can walk or take an electric cart (¥15 return) 1.3km to the starting point of the loop. Sadly, the mood of the area has been spoilt with the addition of several man-made oddities; a cable ride and a drain-like slide from the top of the mountain. If you start on the left-hand set of steps, you'll first go past the awe-inspiring curtain of rock above the Shouting Spring (; Han Quan). According to local



lore, its flow responds to the loudness of your whoops (it doesn't). You'll also pass the peaceful Old Pool (; Lao Tan), whose banks are sadly littered with bottles and cake wrappers. Further along, you'll pass the Red Dragon Cave (; Honglong Dong), now closed, and after a few steep flights of stairs, the slide ride (¥30) and then the White Dragon Cave ( Bailong Dong; admission ¥20). The last sight is a set of steps which lead up Pearl Spring (; Zhenzhu Quan), a fissure in the mountain from which pours out cool, clear spring water. You can of course, do the loop in the opposite direction (it's easier).

Once you've seen the big sights, get off the beaten trail and onto one of the small paths heading into the hills (such as the boulder-strewn brookside trail along the flank of Guoliangcun that leads further up into the mountain), but take water.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There are hotels galore in Guoliangcun though they offer identical two-star quality with hot showers and TVs (no toiletries or towels though). There's a strip of hotels at the foot of the village and another strip on the precipice facing the tunnel. The latter has better views though you'll have to contend with roosters crowing at odd hours. Rooms cost ¥40 to ¥100 depending on the size and orientation. Prices are a bit higher during the summer but negotiable in the low season and on weekdays. There are no restaurants, but hoteliers have kitchens and Chinese menus offering a wide variety of veggie and meat-based dishes, rice and noodles. There are simple noodle stalls near the hotels at the foot of the village and at the start of the mountain circuit. A couple of shops sell snacks and essentials.

## **Getting There & Away**

Reach Guoliangcun from **Xinxiang** (), between Anyang and Zhengzhou. Fast trains run to Xinxiang from Zhengzhou (¥24, 45 minutes), as do regular buses (¥20, 1½ hours). Exit Xinxiang Train Station, head straight ahead and take the first left and cross the road onto Ziyou Lu () to flag down buses to **Huixian** (; ¥6.50, 50 minutes, regular). The bus also departs from the bus station.

Five buses (¥12, one hour 40 minutes, first/last bus 7am/4.30pm) from Huixian's bus station (; Huixian zhan) pass by the mountain road to

Guoliangcun. Buses may have the characters for Guoliang ( ) on the window, but may head straight to the final stop Nanping ( ), a village beyond the base of the road to Guoliangcun, depending on passenger numbers. If the bus isn't going up the mountain, you can either ask to be dropped at the bottom of the Guoliangcun road and ask a local to bring you up the 4km steep winding road for a wallet-gouging ¥50 or head on to Nanping where there are green buses (¥15) that do a circuit to Guoliangcun. The green buses run regularly on the weekends but on weekdays will only go when there are enough passengers. The last bus leaves at 5.30pm.

In the other direction, Huixian-bound minibuses (¥12) run from the bottom of the mountain road from Guoliangcun at 6.30am, 9am, noon, 1pm and 3pm. Guesthouse owners should be able to run you down to the drop-off point for around ¥40 if you spend the night in their lodgings. Otherwise, take the green bus to Nanping to catch a bus to Huixian.

## Kaifeng

☞ 0378 / POP 594,000

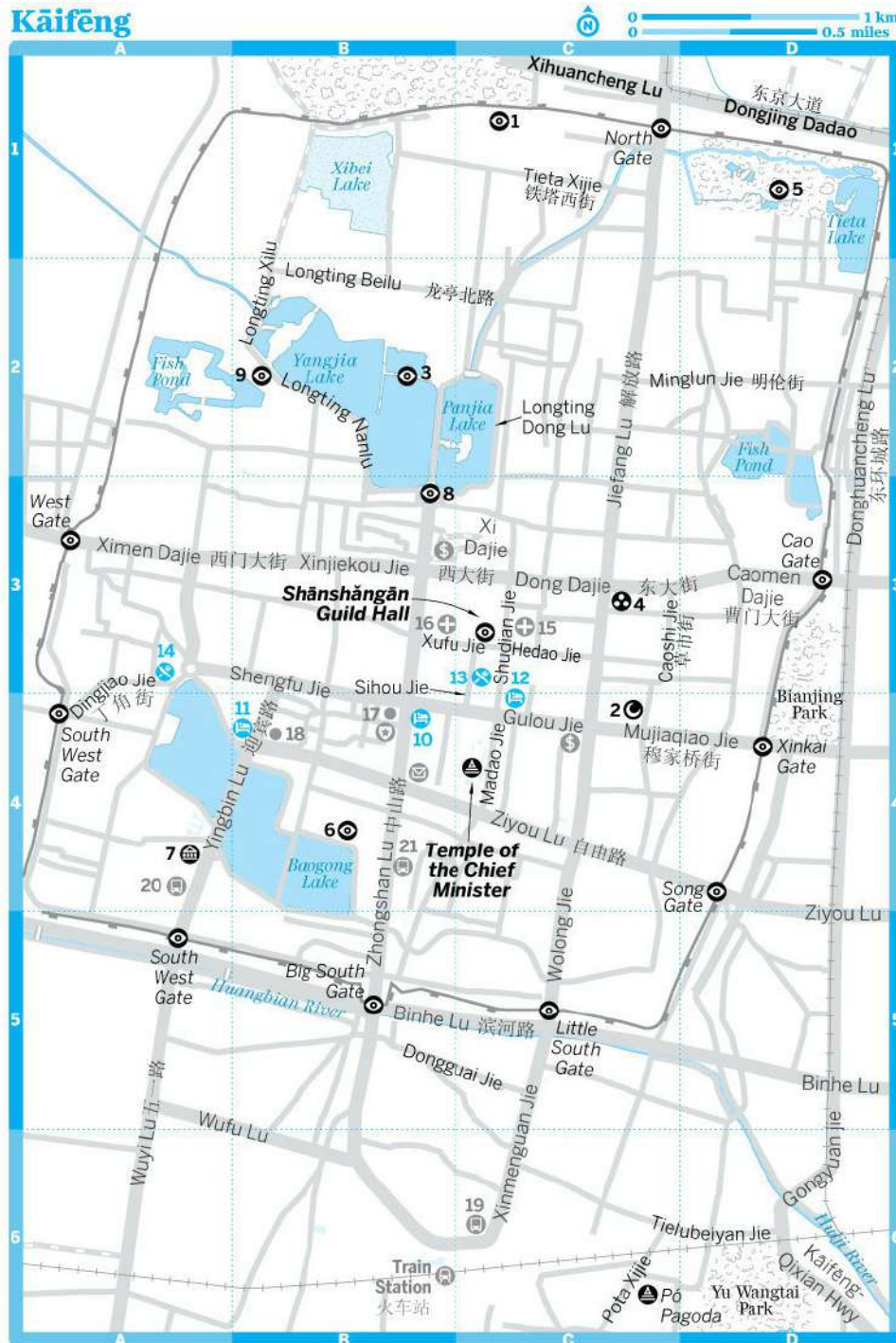
More than any other of Henan's ancient capitals, Kaifeng has preserved a semblance of its original grandeur. Kaifeng has character: you may have to squint a bit and learn to sift the fakes from the genuine historical fragments, but the city still offers up a riveting display of age-old charm, magnificent market food, relics from its long-vanished apogee and colourful chrysanthemums (the city flower; Kaifeng is also known as Jucheng, or 'Chrysanthemum Town'). One reason you won't see soaring skyscrapers here is because buildings requiring deep foundations are prohibited, for fear of destroying the ancient northern Song-dynasty city below.

### History

Once the prosperous capital of the Northern Song dynasty (960–1126), Kaifeng was established south of the Yellow River, but not far enough to escape the river's capricious wrath. After centuries of flooding, the city of the Northern Song largely lies buried 8m to 9m deep. Between 1194 and 1938 the city flooded 368 times, an average

of once every two years.

Kaifeng was also the first city in China where Jewish merchants settled when they arrived, along the Silk Road, during the Song dynasty. A small Christian and Catholic community also lives in Kaifeng alongside a much larger local Muslim Hui community.



Kaifeng

## Top Sights

Shanshāngan Guild Hall C3

[Temple of the Chief Minister](#) C4

## Sights

1 [City Walls](#) C1

2 [Dongda Mosque](#) C4

3 [Dragon Pavilion](#) B2

4 Former Site of Kaifeng Synagogue C3

5 [Iron Pagoda Park](#) D1

6 [Kaifeng Fu](#) B4

7 [Kaifeng Museum](#) A4

8 [Longting Park](#) B3

9 [Riverside Scenic Park Qingming Garden](#) B2

## Sleeping

10 [Jinjiang Inn](#) B4

11 [Kaifeng International Youth Hostel](#) B4

12 [Soluxe Hotel Kaifeng](#) C4

## Eating

13 [Gulou Night Market](#) C3

14 [Xisi Night Market](#) A3

## Information

15 Kaifeng No 1 People's Hospital C3

16 [Zhangzhongjing Pharmacy](#) B3

## Transport

17 [IATA Air Ticket Office](#) B4

18 [Railway Ticket office](#) B4

19 [South Long-Distance Bus Station](#) C6

20 West Long-Distance Bus Station A4

21 Xiangguosi Bus Station B4

## Sights

Most travellers should base themselves within the walls of the old town. For ancient Kaifeng architecture, wander along small streets off the main drag within the city walls, where you can find old, tumbledown, one-storey buildings with misshapen tiled roofs.

## Temple of the Chief Minister BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Da Xiangguo Si; Ziyou Lu; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-6pm) First founded in AD 555, this frequently rebuilt temple was destroyed along with the city in the early 1640s when rebels breached the Yellow River's dykes. During the Northern Song, the temple covered a massive 34 hectares and housed over 10,000 monks.

Within the Hall of the Revarajas (; Tianwang Dian), the mission of chubby Milefo (the Laughing Buddha) is proclaimed in the attendant Chinese characters: 'Big belly can endure all that is hard to endure in the world.' But the temple showstopper is the mesmerising Four-Faced Thousand Hand Thousand Eye Guanyin (), towering within the octagonal Arhat Hall (; Luohan Dian), beyond the Hall of Tathagata (; Daxiong Baodian). Fifty-eight years in the carving, the 7m-tall gold-gilded, four-sided statue bristles with giant fans of 1048 arms, an eye upon each hand; the arhats themselves are presented with considerably less artistry. On the left of the Hall of Tripitaka (Cangjing Lou) is a small hall (; Dashitang) where a master calligrapher works and plies his craft (works from ¥100). A huge pagoda and hall is under construction at the rear. Elsewhere in the temple you can divine your future by drawing straws (*ch o uqi a n*) or dine at the pleasant onsite vegetarian restaurant (; suzhaibu).

## Shanshangan Guild Hall GUILDHALL

( Shanshan'gan Huiguan; 85 Xufu Jie; admission ¥30; ☺ 8.30am-6.30pm summer, 8.20am-5pm winter) Here's proof that good things come in small packages. The tiny, elaborately styled guild hall was built as a lodging and meeting place during the Qing dynasty by an association of merchants from Shanxi, Shanxi (Shaanxi) and Gansu provinces. Note the ornate carvings on the roofs, and delve into the exhibition on historic Kaifeng. Check out the fascinating diorama of the old Song city – with its palace in the centre of town – and compare it with a model of modern Kaifeng. Look out for the scale-model recreation of Zhang Zeduan's famed Qingming painting.

## Kaifeng Fu HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 85 Xufu Jie; admission ¥50; ☺ 7am-7pm summer, 7.30am-5.30pm

winter) Local tour groups flock to this site by the Baogong Lake for a bit of a historical kick. The drama starts outside the gates at 9am daily – the doors get thrown open and out troops a bunch of costumed actors, playing a period scene complete with cracking whips and the sound of gongs. They then retreat inside to continue the play (in Chinese). Drama aside, the site, encased within tall walls, is a recreation of Song imperial life. There are a number of buildings from ye olde times including the armoury, distillery, a vinegar workshop, a pagoda and a ‘Building of Mental Cultivation’.

Iron Pagoda Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tie Ta Gongyuan; 210 Beimen Dajie; admission ¥50; ☺ 7am-7pm) Rising up within Iron Pagoda Park is a magnificent 55m, 11th-century pagoda, a gorgeous, slender brick edifice wrapped in glazed rust-coloured tiles (hence the name); it’s narrow stairs are climbable for ¥30. Take bus 1 from Zhongshan Lu.



Kaifeng Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kaifeng Bowuguan; 26 Yingbin Lu; ☺ 9am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm Tue-Sun) Houses a couple of rooms with archaeological finds, woodblock prints and odd historical bits and pieces. There are two notable Jewish stelae on the 4th floor, managed by the Kaifeng Institute for Research on the History of Chinese Jews (☎ 393 2178, ext 8010), but you will have to pay ¥50 to see them. Buses 1, 7, 9, 16, 20 and 23 all travel past here.

Riverside Scenic Park Qingming Garden PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Millennium City Park; Qingming Shangheyuan; Longting Nanlu; admission day/night ¥80/199; ☺ 9am-6pm) High on historical kitsch, this theme park is a recreation of Zeduan’s famous Qingming painting. It’s brought to life with roving staff in Song-era costumes, cultural performances, folk art and music demonstrations. If you can get over the number of souvenir stalls, there’s fun to be had (there’s a wedding ceremony and even a mock naval battle with pyrotechnics, out on the lake). The night ticket allows entry during the day and a seat for a colourful night performance (8.10pm) out on the lake.

## Longting Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Longting Gongyuan; 📍 566 0316; Zhongshan Lu; admission ¥35; 🕒 7am-6.30pm) Site of the former imperial palace, this park is largely covered by lakes, into which hardy swimmers dive in winter. Cross a bridge and climb the Dragon Pavilion [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Long Ting) for town views.

## City Walls HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

Kaifeng is ringed by a relatively intact, much-restored Qing-dynasty wall (). Encased with grey bricks, rear sections of the ramparts have been recently buttressed unattractively with concrete. Today's bastion was built on the foundations of the Song-dynasty Inner Wall (; Neicheng). Rising up beyond was the mighty, now buried Outer Wall (; Waicheng), a colossal construction containing 18 gates, which looped south of the Po Pagoda, while the Imperial Wall (; Huangcheng) protected the imperial palace.

## 'THAT' PAINTING: ZHANG ZEDUAN'S MASTERPIECE

These days, you'll see it most everywhere in Kaifeng. Museums and parks have it in carved wood and stone bas-relief, there are scale dioramas, souvenir posters, advertising (it's on the Kaifeng Hostel's poster) and even a historical theme park modelled on it. 'It' being a scroll painting from the Song dynasty. Now held in the Forbidden City and widely acknowledged as China's first *shen* (Godly) painting, *Along the River during the Qingming Festival* was completed by Zhang Zeduan () in the early 12th century.

The long 24.8cm x 528.7cm painting depicts life in a city which experts have attributed as Kaifeng. It's packed to the gills with details of the period: boats unloading goods at a harbour, an inn crowded with customers, children playing on the streets etc. As you would imagine, it offers valuable insight into the life and times of a large Song dynasty town. The piece has been likened in importance to the Mona Lisa and was toted by the last emperor Puyi to Manchuko. When the original gets displayed in Beijing, queues to see it last hours.

Several places in Kaifeng to see versions of it include the Riverside Scenic Park, the scale diorama in the Shanshangan Guild Hall, the replica version in the museum and the paper cutting in Zhuxian's Qingzhen Mosque ([Click here](#)). There's even a large-scale version on one of the train station walls!

## Kaifeng Synagogue RUINS

( Kaifeng Youtai Jiaotang Yizhi; 59 Beitu Jie) Sadly, nothing remains of the synagogue except a well with an iron lid in the boiler room of the Kaifeng Traditional Chinese Medicine Hospital. Under renovation at the time of research, visitors may need to check if the new hospital will allow visitors to the site. The spirit of it lingers, however, in the name of the brick alley immediately south of the hospital – Jiaojing Hutong (; Teaching the Torah Alley). In the house with the blue sign (yisrael-kaifeng@hotmail.com) lives a local English-speaking guide familiar with local Jewish history. Send an email prior to visiting if you intend to engage her guide services or want an extended chat.

## Dongda Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dongda Si; 39 Mujiaqiao Jie) South is Kaifeng's main Muslim district, whose landmark place of worship is this Chinese temple–styled mosque. Streets have colourful names, such as Shaoji Hutong (Roast Chicken Alley).

## Sleeping

### Kaifeng International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kaifeng Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 255 2888; 30 Yingbin Lu; 30 dm ¥50, s ¥120, d & tw ¥140; 📶📞📧) On the edge of Baogong Lake, the town's first and only hostel has helpful English-speaking staff and a location close to buses. Bunk-bed dorms have an ensuite shower while private rooms have flat-screen TVs, AC and an internet cable. Cold beer, an extensive Chinese and Western food menu, and a pool table help while the hours away. Bike rental cost ¥20 daily.

### Soluxe Hotel Kaifeng HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kaifeng Yangguang Jiudian; 📍 595 8888; 41 Gulou Jie; 41 s & d ¥518; 📶📞) The smart Soluxe Hotel offers compact but modern business-style rooms in shades of brown and white. Flat-screen TVs and PCs round out the features list. Discounts of 40%. On the ground floor is an attractive and plush-looking roast-duck restaurant.

### Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$



( Jinjiang Zhixing; 📞 399 6666; 88 Zhongshan Lu; 88 s & d ¥159-179; 🌟📍) In a star location on the intersection of Zhongshan Lu, this chain hotel's branch ticks the right boxes: efficient staff, clean rooms, modern furnishing, flat-screen TVs and good plumbing.

## Eating & Drinking

Xisi Night Market STREET MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xisi Yeshi; Dingjiao Jie; snacks from ¥2; 🕒 6.30pm-late) Join the scrum weaving between stalls busy with red-faced popcorn sellers and hollering Hui Muslim chefs cooking up kebabs and *nang* bread. There are loads of vendors from whom you can buy cured meats, hearty *jianbing guozi* (; pancake with chopped onions), sweet potatoes, roast rabbit, *xiaolongbao* (Shanghai-style dumplings) , peanut cake (; *huasheng gao*), and cups of sugarcane juice. Look for *yangrou kangmo* (; lamb in a parcel of bread), a local Kaifeng Muslim speciality. Or opt for *yangrou chuan* (; lamb kebabs). Look out for noodle vendors who pull and twist fresh *niu rou lamian* (; noodles in beef broth).

Among the flames and clouds of steam erupting from the ovens slave vocal vendors of *xingren cha* (; almond tea), a sugary paste made from boiling water thickened with powdered almond, red berries, peanuts, sesame seeds and crystallised cherries.

Gulou Night Market STREET MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Gulou Yeshi; off Sihou Jie; snacks from ¥2; 🕒 6.30pm-late) Kaifeng's steaming, bustling and bellowing night market has been sanitised and relocated. While the food stays the same, authenticity has been traded for faux antique tables and benches, and stalls are now housed in wooden huts. This hasn't stopped the locals from having a good time. Visit the Tsingtao stall serving jugs (; *hu*; ¥15 to ¥18) of draught lager (; *huang zha*), ale (; *hong zha*) and stout (; *hei zha*). East on Shudian Jie and around are more food stalls and others selling clothes, toys and books.

## Information

The area around Zhongshan Lu has internet cafes but at the time of

research, you need local ID for surfing though some shops may let you get online for an hour or so.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Xi Dajie & Zhongshan Lu)  
24-hour ATM (MasterCard and Visa).

**China Construction Bank** ( Zhongguo Jianshe Yinhang; Gulou Jie)  
24-hour ATM (Cirrus, Maestro, Visa and MasterCard).

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Ziyou Lu; ☺ 8am-5.30pm)

**Kaifeng No 1 People's Hospital** ( Kaifeng Diyi Renmin Yiyuan; 📍  
567 1288; 85 Hedao Jie)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📍 532 2242; 86  
Zhongshan Lu; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-6pm Mon-Fri) Visa renewals.

**Zhangzhongjing Pharmacy**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (  
Zhangzhongjing Dayaofang; ☺ 7.30am-10pm summer, 8am-9pm  
winter) Next to Shanshangan Guild Hall.



## Getting There & Away

Air

The nearest airport is at Zhengzhou. Tickets can be bought at the  
**IATA Air Ticket Office**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📍 595 5555;  
Hangkong Dasha) next to the PSB; two free daily buses (8am and  
2pm) run to Zhengzhou airport from here. There's also an **airport  
shuttle** from the corner of Gulou Jie and Jiefang Lu (¥40, 1½ hours,  
10 daily).

Bus

Buses run from the **west long-distance bus station** ( changtu qiche  
xizhan) :

**Dengfeng** ¥35, three hours, two daily (9.30am and 1.20pm)

**Luoyang** ¥57, three hours, two daily (9am and 2pm)

**Xinxiang** ¥26, two hours, six daily

**Zhengzhou** ¥8, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes (6.20am to 7.30pm)

Buses also leave from the **south long-distance bus station**[Offline  
map](#) [Google map](#) ( changtu qiche nanzhan), opposite the train station:

**Anyang** ¥54, four hours, regular services

**Luoyang** ¥57, three hours, hourly

**Xinxiang** ¥32, two hours, every 40 minutes

**Zhengzhou** ¥8, 1½ hours, every 15 minutes

#### Train

Buy tickets at the **railway ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (huochepiao daishou; Yingbin Lu; 🕒 8am-noon & 1.30-5.30pm) diagonally opposite the Kaifeng Hostel.

**Beijing West** seat/sleeper ¥99/185, 12 hours

**Luoyang** ¥40-80, 2½ hours, eight daily

**Shanghai** hard/soft seat ¥235/375, seven hours, 8.59am & 3.53pm

**Xi'an** seat/sleeper ¥85/155, eight hours, regular

**Zhengzhou** ¥25-30, 45 minutes

#### Getting Around

Zhongshan Lu is a good place to catch buses to most sights (¥1). Taxis (flag fall ¥5) are the best way to get about; a journey from the train station to Zhongshan Lu should cost ¥7. Avoid pedicabs as they frequently rip off tourists.

## Zhuxian Zhen

Twenty-three kilometres north of Kaifeng is Zhuxian (Vermillion Immortal). Some say it's one of China's four 'ancient' towns – the other three are Hanko (trade), Jingdezhen (porcelain) and Foshan (silk). Here, the 1000-year-old craft of woodblock printing (; *hankou*) is still practised.

Traditionally come spring festival, families plaster their door fronts and houses with these prints (though many now use commercially printed ones) to usher in luck and prosperity for the year ahead. Five or so families have continued the craft. Sets of wooden blocks are painstakingly carved and each print requires anywhere from five to seven blocks, one for the base black outline and one for each other colour. Pigments (generally red, blue, yellow, black and green), made from natural materials such as seeds and plants, are then applied via handmade brushes onto rice paper. The outline in black is first printed, the paper left to dry and the process is repeated for each colour required. The prints feature Chinese characters from folklore, gods and others related to luck and blessings. These luridly coloured prints are embarrassingly cheap (¥5 to ¥30 for an A4/letter-size prints to ¥100 for a print made from 150-year-old blocks).

Visit Tiancheng Nianhua Laodian (), 100m north of the Yuefei Temple. The artist and owner Mr Yin () is a 5th-generation artisan, and his family has been in business for more than 200 years, 'excluding a period of 30 years or so because of the Cultural Revolution'. His work has been represented at the 2008 Beijing Olympics and the 2010 Shanghai World Expo. You can pick up a beautifully bound book of prints with English explanations, housed in a wooden presentation box for ¥200 (if you're nice, he'll sell it for ¥180). There are several other workshops along the canal at the end of town.

Exploring the town further, you'll find two temples on the main drag: the Yuefei Temple ( Yuefei Miao; admission ¥20) and Guanyu Temple ( Guanyu Miao; admission ¥1). Heading 700m or so south off the main road along a wide stone path, you'll get to the Qingzhen Temple ( Qing Zhen Si; free admission). This is a mosque housed in a traditional Chinese temple compound with a pretty rose garden. Look for a stall featuring elaborate paper-cutting art by Mr Hu (). The artist is listed in the *Guinness World Records* for cutting 10,000 (!) paper butterflies. On the wall is a paper-cut version of Zeduan's famed Qingming painting.

Head to the Xiangguo Si bus station () on Zhongshan Lu where buses (¥6, 45 minutes, every 12 minutes) run all the way to Zhuxian. The last bus from Zhuxian leaves at 5.50pm. You'll pass through a busy thoroughfare where you should get off.



# Hubei

POP 61.8 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Wuhan](#)

[Jingzhou](#)

[Around Jingzhou](#)

[Wudang Shan](#)

[Shennongjia](#)

[Yichang](#)

---

## Why Go?

Vast hordes of travellers find themselves drifting into Hubei ( ) through the magnificent Three Gorges, the precipitous geological marvel that begins in neighbouring Chongqing and concludes here. It's a once-in-a-lifetime trip which perfectly introduces Hubei's dramatic natural beauty.

Sliced by rivers (including, of course, the mighty Yangzi) and dappled with lakes, Hubei is largely lush and fertile, but its western regions are dominated by stunning mountain scenery. National parks such as Shennongjia are jaw-droppingly spectacular, while the sacred

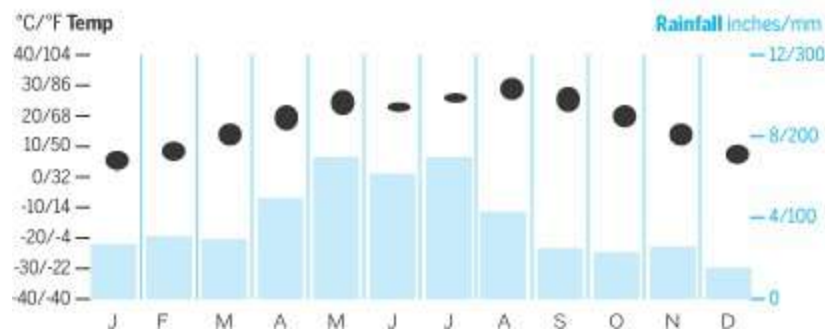
peaks of Wudang Shan add a strong cultural significance to the awe-inspiring landscape.

Hubei's central location ensured it played a key role in Chinese history, with plenty of evidence around the ancient city of Jingzhou of the great Chu kingdom that ruled this part of China more than 2000 years ago. China's modern history, meanwhile, is woven into the fabric of Wuhan, Hubei's monstrous, battle-scarred capital city.

---

## When to Go

### Wūhàn



**Mar & Apr** Get in ahead of the draining Yangzi summer, but bring an umbrella.

**Sep–Nov** The stupefying summer heat has finally lifted.

**Nov–Mar** Wudang Shan at its prettiest, snowiest best. Pack your thermals.

---

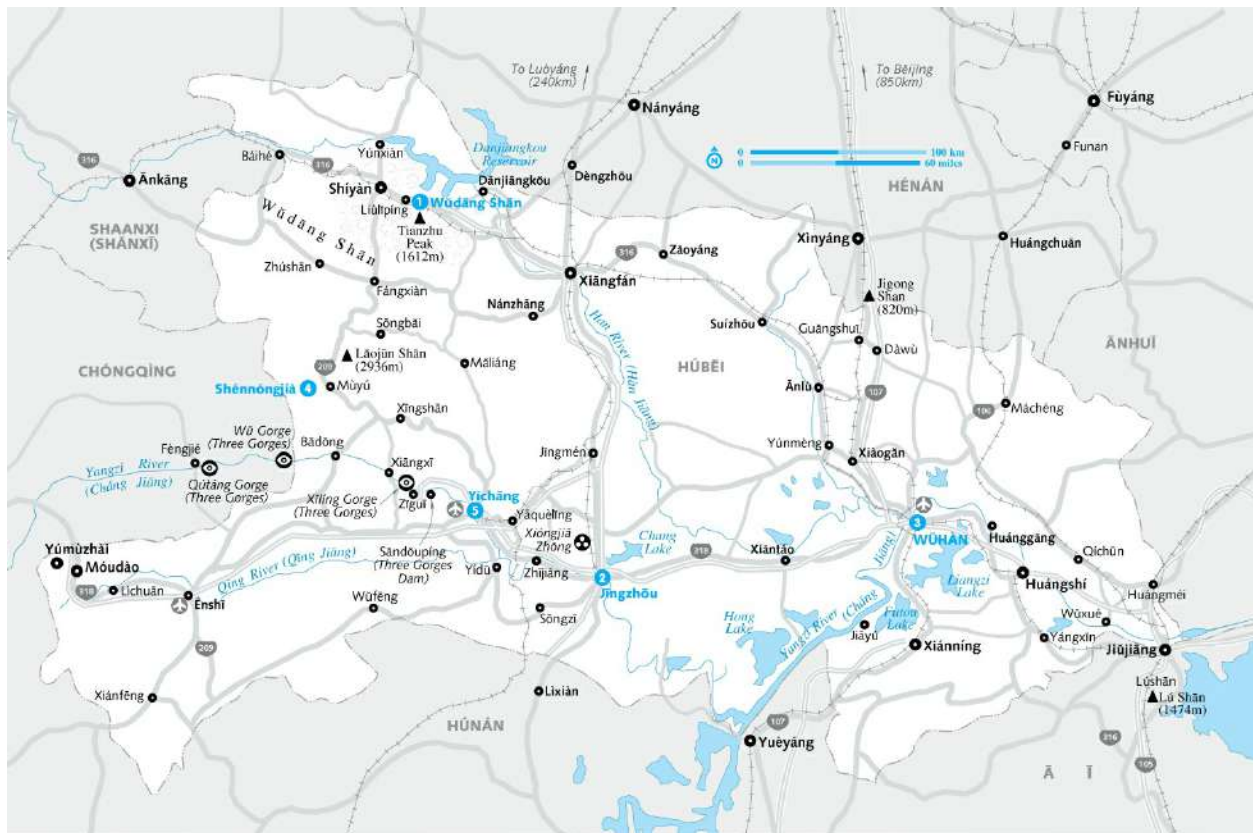
## Best for Scenery

- » Shennongjia ([Click here](#))
- » Wudang Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Three Gorges ([Click here](#))

---

## Best for History

- » Jingzhou ([Click here](#))
- » Wudang Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Wuhan ([Click here](#))



## Hubei Highlights

- 1 Study taichi where it all began, on the awe-inspiring mountain slopes of **Wudang Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Explore the historic gates, city walls and ruined temples of ancient **Jingzhou** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Find a bar and knock back a beer in the riverside concession district of mighty **Wuhan** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Flee China's urban sprawl and camp out in the wilds of stunning **Shennongjia** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Go against the tourist tide and start your Three Gorges cruise in **Yichang** ([Click here](#)) rather than Chongqing

## History

The Hubei area first came to prominence during the Eastern Zhou (700–221 BC), when the powerful Chu kingdom, based in present-day Jingzhou, was at its height. Hubei again became pivotal during the

Three Kingdoms (AD 220–280). The Chinese classic *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms* (*San Guo Yanyi*) makes much reference to Jingzhou. The mighty Yangzi River ensured prosperous trade in the centuries that followed, especially for Wuhan, China's largest inland port and stage of the 1911 uprising, which led to the fall of the Qing and the creation of the Republic of China.

## Climate

Even Hubei's 'furnace', Wuhan, is only seriously hot in July and August. Other months are much more pleasant, while the western mountains are more temperate, generally. Rainfall is heavy in the southeast but decreases north and west. Expect most of it from April to July.

## Language

Hubei has two dialects of northern Mandarin – southwest Mandarin and lower-mid Yangzi Mandarin – while in the southeast many people speak Gan, a Mandarin dialect from Jiangxi.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

## Wuhan

📍 027 / POP 4.26 MILLION



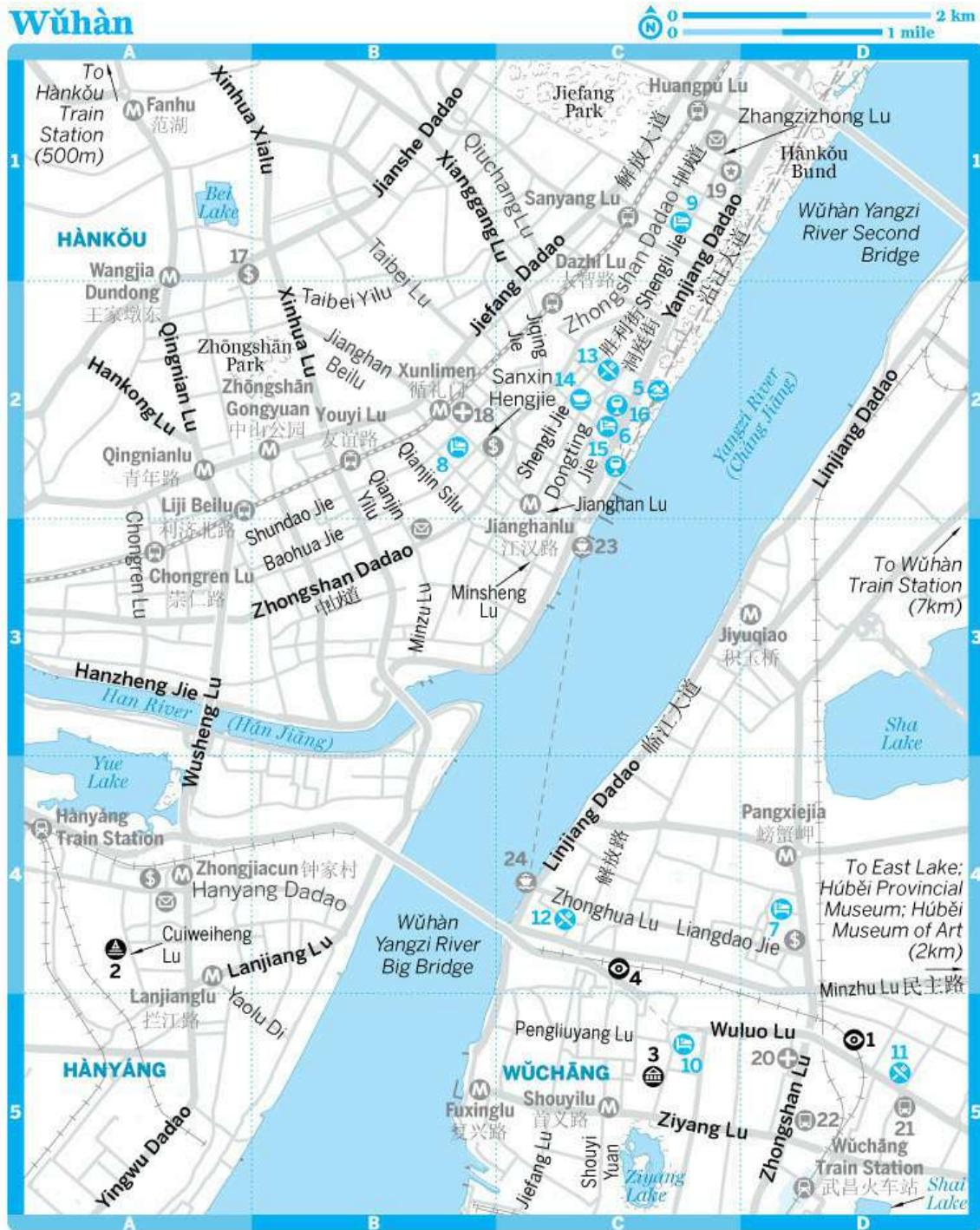
A gargantuan alloy of three formerly independent cities (Wuchang, Hankou and Hanyang), Wuhan is huge. But the Yangzi River thrusts its way through the centre, carving the city in two and allowing for some breathing space between towering buildings and gnarling traffic, while numerous lakes and a smattering of decent sights provide more welcome retreats.

## **History**

Although not actually named Wuhan until 1927, the city's three mighty chunks trace their influential status back to the Han dynasty, with Wuchang and Hankou vying for political and economic sway. The city was prised open to foreign trade in the 19th century by the Treaty of Nanking.

The 1911 uprising sparked the beginning of the end for the Qing dynasty. Much that wasn't destroyed then was flattened in 1944 when American forces fire-bombed the city after it had fallen under Japanese control.

# Wūhàn



## Wuhan

### Sights

- 1 [Changchun Temple](#) D5
- 2 [Guiyuan Temple](#) A4
- 3 [The Revolution of 1911 Museum](#) C5
- 4 [Yellow Crane Tower](#) C4

## Activities, Courses & Tours

5 Public Swimming Pool C2

## Sleeping

6 [Marco Polo](#) C2

7 [Pathfinder Youth Hostel](#) D4

8 [Tomolo](#) B2

9 [Wanke Binguan](#) C1

10 [Zhong Hui Hotel](#) C5

## Eating

[Changchun Temple Vegetarian Restaurant](#) (see 1)

11 [Crown Bakery](#) D5

12 [Hubu Xiang Snack Street](#) C4

13 [Xiao Beike](#) C2

## Drinking

14 Cafes C2

15 [Nightclubs](#) C2

16 [York Teahouse](#) C2

## Information

17 HSBC ATM A1

18 [Pu'an Pharmacy](#) B2

19 [Public Security Bureau](#) C1

20 [Zhonglian Pharmacy](#) D5

## Transport

21 Fujiapo Long-Distance Bus Station D5

22 Hongji Long-Distance Bus Station D5

23 Wuhan Guan Dock C3

24 Zhonghua Lu Dock C4

## Sights & Activities

In Hankou, the area west of Yanjiang Dadao remains a hodgepodge of concession-era architecture and old consulate buildings.

A stroll along Hankou Bund (; Hankou Haitan) is a popular way to spend the early evening. It's essentially an elongated park, running along the western bank of the Yangzi, and is where locals come to exercise, chat and fly kites.



## Hubei Provincial Museum MUSEUM

( Hubei Sheng Bowuguan; 156 Donghu Lu; 156 ☺ 9am-5pm, no admission after 3.30pm, closed Mon) The centrepiece of this fabulous museum is the exhibition of the tomb of Marquis Yi of Zeng, which includes one of the world's largest musical instruments, a remarkable five-tonne set of 64 double-tone bronze bells. Next door, the Hubei Museum of Art, also free, often holds worthwhile exhibitions. Both museums lie beside the enormous East Lake (; Dong Hu). Take bus 402 or 411.

## Guiyuan Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guiyuan Si; 20 Cuiweiheng Lu; 20 admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-5pm) Pass a large rectangular pond where turtles cling like shipwrecked survivors to two metal lotus flowers and examine the magnificently burnished cabinet housing Milefo in the first hall. Also seek out this 350-year-old Buddhist temple's collection of more than 500 statues of enlightened disciples in the **Hall of Arhats** (; Luohan Tang). Completed in 1890, after nine years in the making, they remain in pristine condition. In the **Mahasattva Pavilion** (; Dashi Ge), the 2m-high Tang-dynasty tablet carved with an image of Guanyin holding a willow branch is impressive, and a jade Buddha can be found in the **Cangjing Pavilion** (; Cangjing Ge). Buses 401 and 402 both go here.

## Yellow Crane Tower HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)


( Huanghe Lou; Wuluo Lu; admission ¥80; ☺ 7.30am-5.30pm, to 6.30pm summer) Wuhan's magical dancing crane, immortalised in the poetry of Cui Hao, has long flown but the city's pride and joy remains perched on top of Snake Hill. The tower has had its history rebuilt out of it since the original was constructed in AD 223, and today's beautiful five-storey, yellow-tiled version is a 1980s remake of the Qing tower that combusted in 1884. Buses 401, 402 and 411, and trolley buses 1 and 10, all go here.

## Changchun Temple TAOIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Changchun Guan; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-5pm) This charming

Taoist temple dates back to the Han dynasty, although much building restoration has gone on in the past couple of years. The **Hall of Supreme Purity** (Taiqing Dian), containing a white-bearded statue of Laotzu, is the centrepiece. Other halls lead up the steep steps behind it. There's a well-regarded vegetarian restaurant next door ([Click here](#)). Buses 411, 401 and 402 all go here.

 The Revolution of 1911 Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xinhai Geming Bowuguan; Shouyi Guangchang (Uprising Square); ☹ 9am-5pm, closed Mon) Chinese Communist Party propaganda machine in full tilt, but includes some interesting old photos. Housed in an eye-catching red rock-like building.

East Lake SWIMMING

( Donghu Youyongchi; entrance ¥10; ☹ 9am-10pm) In summer, escape the sweltering city and head to this section of East Lake, which has been cordoned off for swimming. Take bus 402 to Donghu Donglu Youyongchi ().

## Sleeping

 Pathfinder Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tanluzhe Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 8884 4092; yhawuhan@hotmail.com; 368 Zhongshan Lu; 368 dm/r from ¥40/138; 📶📶📶) Next to the Hubei Art Gallery (; Hubei Meishuguan), Wuhan's best budget option has an art-warehouse feel to it where guests add graffiti to the walls. Pinewood-decorated rooms are smart and clean; bathrooms are small with squat loos (communal bathrooms have sit-down versions), but the rest of the place oozes space. There's internet, travel advice, real coffee and very helpful, English-speaking staff. Walk south from exit A2 of Pangxiejia () metro station along Zhongshan Lu, and it's on your right.

Tomolo BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tianmeile Fandian; 📞 8275 7288; 56 Jiangnan Sanlu; 56 r ¥698, discounted to ¥348; 📶📶📶) Tucked away in a lane off a modern

pedestrianised shopping street, this excellent-value boutique hotel has a prime location and a natty finish throughout. Big rooms come with sofas, wide-screen TVs, internet access and lush carpets, while the bathrooms, complete with mosaic tiling and power showers, are in pristine condition; staff make a real effort. Excellent discounts.

Wanke Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 8271 9922; 315 Shengli Jie; 315 r from ¥178, discounted to ¥128; 🌳🍷📶) Wooden stairs and floorboards make this basic cheapie more stylish than most. Good location on the fringes of the pleasant former concession area, and close to the river. Internet connection for laptop users. No English sign; no English spoken.

Zhong Hui Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhonghui Binguan; 📍 8805 9288; 188 Shouyi Xincun; 188 d without/with window ¥118/208; 🌳🍷📶) This three-star hotel has well-kept rooms with clean bathrooms. The cheapies are smaller and have no windows, but are still comfortable, and you'll have fun getting to them in the exterior brass lift. Rates include breakfast. Some rooms have a computer. Others have internet connection. The ¥208 rooms usually go for ¥168.

Marco Polo HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Mage Boluo Jiudian; 📍 8277 8888; [www.marcopolohotels.com](http://www.marcopolohotels.com); 159 Yanjiang Dadao; 159 r from ¥850, with river view ¥1050; 🌳🍷📶🚰) The best-located five-star hotel in Wuhan, Marco Polo offers sweeping views of the Yangzi River and is backed by the tree-lined former concession area, which is dotted with bars, cafes and restaurants.

## Eating

In Hankou, the alleyways north of Zhongshan Dadao, between Qianjin Yilu and Qianjin Silu, are particularly lively. Jiqing Jie ( ) has numerous *dapaidang* (open-air food stalls or restaurants) selling seafood and duck, especially at the Dazhi Lu end. Cai'e Lu ( ), the road which Xiao Beike restaurant is on, is littered with *shaokao* ( ; barbecues).

In Wuchang, follow your nose to the hugely popular Hubu Xiang

Snack Street [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Hubu Xiang Xiaoichi).

Breakfast – called *guozao* () in Wuhan – is all about *regan mian* (; literally ‘hot-dry noodles’; ¥4).



Xiao Beike CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 129 Dongting Jie; 129 mains ¥20-50; ☺ 9.30am-10.30pm) This stylish restaurant, with lovely tree-shaded terrace seating, offers an excellent range of pan-Chinese cuisine, with dishes from Hubei, Sichuan and Chongqing featuring highly. Also does a number of fish dishes, including Yangzi River catfish and delicious scallops. No English sign – it’s in the yellow building on the corner of Dongting Jie and Cai’e Lu () – but has an English menu with photos.

Changchun Temple Vegetarian Restaurant VEGETARIAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Changchunguan Sucai Canting; 145 Wuluo Lu; 145 mains ¥20-50; ☺ 9.30am-9pm; 🗺) Housed next door to a Taoist temple, this place prides itself on bizarre mock-meat creations but also serves fish dishes. Photo menu.

Crown Bakery BAKERY \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huangguan Dangao; 345 Wuluo Lu; 345 ☺ 7am-9pm) Fabulously located in an old cruciform church built in 1907, with its original wood ceiling intact along with loads of portraits of Jesus, come here for the ambience, take a seat in the apse to break bread and order egg tarts (¥4), tea (¥5), instant coffee (¥5) or loads of cakes (¥2 to ¥5).



## Drinking & Entertainment

Hankou is the place to go for a night out; Yanjiang Dadao () and its surrounding lanes are the best place to start. There are neon-tastic nightclubs [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) towards the ferry port, while Lihuangpi Lu () is one of a number of lanes here with cutesy Western-style cafes.

York Teahouse BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yueke Yingshi Chaguan; 162 Yanjiang Dadao; ☺ 1pm-3am) Run by

'Mr Sugar' (Tang Xiansheng), this old-timer has been doing its thing on the riverfront since 2001. Inside is a warren of rooms, but there's plenty of outdoor seating. Beers and coffee from ¥20.

### **Information**

Most ATMs accept foreign cards. We've marked a few on our map, along with some handy branches of China Post. Internet cafes (; wangba) here may be reluctant to accept foreigners because they need to swipe a Chinese ID card to register their users. All hotels we list have internet access of some sort.

**Pu'an Pharmacy**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Pu'an Dayaofang; 148 Jiangnan Lu; 148 ☎ 24hr)

**Public Security Bureau**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 8539 5351; 7 Zhangzizhong Lu; 7 ☎ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm) Can extend visas.

**Zhonglian Pharmacy**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhonglian Dayaodian; 404 Zhongshan Lu; 404 ☎ 24hr)

### **Getting There & Away**

Air

**Tianhe International Airport** ( Tianhe Feijichang; ☎ 8581 8888) is 30km northwest of town and has direct flights to the likes of Beijing (¥800), Chengdu (¥600) and Hong Kong (¥1000). Use [elong.net](#) or [ctrip.com](#) to book flights.

Regular airport shuttle buses go to and from Hankou Train Station (¥15, 45 minutes) and Fujiapo long-distance bus station (¥30, one hour). A taxi is about ¥100.

Bus

There is a number of long-distance bus stations, all of which run very similar services. In Hankou, the main one is beside Hankou Train Station. In Wuchang, the main two are Fujiapo long-distance bus station (; Fujiapo qiche keyunzhan) and Hongji long-distance bus station (; Hongji changtu qichezhan).

You can get buses to most major cities, even as far away as Shanghai and Beijing. The following are sample services from Hongji long-distance bus station:

**Jingzhou** ¥75 to ¥89, three hours, every 45 minutes (7am to 8pm)

**Muyu** (for Shennongjia) ¥150, eight hours, one daily (8.50am)



**Shiyan** (for Wudang Shan) ¥145, six hours, three daily (8.40am, 11.40am and 1.30pm)

**Yichang** ¥115 to ¥142, four hours, every 30 minutes (6.50am to 6pm)

Train

Wuhan has three major train stations: Hankou Train Station (; Hankou Huochezhan), Wuchang Train Station (; Wuchang Huochezhan) and Wuhan Train Station (; Wuhan Huochezhan), all of which should be linked up to the metro system by the time you read this.

Services include:

**Beijing** D train 2nd-/1st-class seat ¥267/333, 10 hours, three daily (8.06am\*, 9.05am\* and 11.57am\*\*\*)

**Beijing** Z train hard/soft sleeper ¥263/411, 10 hours, four daily (8.24pm\*, 9.03pm\*\*, 9.09pm\*\* and 9.12pm\*)

\*\*\***Changsha** G train 2nd-/1st-class seat ¥165/265, 1½ hours, more than 40 daily (7am to 7.55pm)

\*\*\***Guangzhou** G train 2nd-/1st-class seat ¥465/740, four hours, more than 40 daily (7am to 7.55pm)

\*\***Kunming** hard/soft sleeper ¥380/600, 26 to 30 hours, three daily (5.07am, 10.55am and 10.46pm)

\***Shanghai** D train 2nd-/1st-class seat ¥264/317, five to six hours, 11 daily (7.05am to 5.23pm)

\***Wudang Shan** hard seat ¥70, six to seven hours, two daily (10.35am and 4pm)

\***Xi'an** D train 2nd-/1st-class seat ¥307/432, 7½ hours (9.15am)

\*\***Yichang** hard seat ¥54, five hours, four daily (7.36am, 11.26am, 12.10pm and 5.35pm)

(\**Hankou Station*; \*\**Wuchang Station*; \*\*\**Wuhan Station*)

## Getting Around

Bus

**Bus 10** (¥1.50) Connects Hankou and Wuchang Train Stations.

**Bus 401** (¥2) From Hanyang past Guiyuan Temple, Yellow Crane Tower and Changchun Temple to East Lake.

**Bus 402** (¥2) From Wuchang Train Station to Changchun Temple and Yellow Crane Tower, then via Hanyang to Yanjiang Dadao in Hankou before returning over the river for the provincial museum and half a

circuit of East Lake.

**Bus 411** (¥1.50) Travels a more direct route from the museum to Yellow Crane Tower and Changchun Temple before carrying on to Hankou Train Station.

#### Ferry

Ferries (¥1.50, 6.30am to 8pm) make swift daily crossings of the Yangzi between Zhonghua Lu Dock (; Zhonghua Lu Matou) and Wuhan Guan Dock (; Wuhan Guan Matou).

#### Metro

Wuhan's fledgling metro system (; *ditie*) includes Line 1, an aboveground light-rail line in Hankou, and Lines 2 and 4, which tunnel under the river, linking the main train stations. Other lines are on the way.

## Jingzhou

 0716 / POP 1.5 MILLION

Capital of the Chu kingdom during the Eastern Zhou, Jingzhou has an ancient history and a homely small-town feel. One of the few Chinese cities still ringed by an intact city wall, Jingzhou has also managed to cling on to some of its ancient temples, and boasts a noteworthy museum. The surrounding farmlands are home to several ancient burial sites, including Xiongjia Zhong, the largest collection of Chu kingdom tombs ever discovered.

### Sights

The walled section of Jingzhou is approximately 3.5km from east to west and 2.5km from north to south, with impressive city gates at each cardinal point, as well as several lesser gates. Passing through the wall at New East Gate (; *Xin Dongmen*), as you will if you're on the bus from the main stations, you'll have Jingzhou Nanlu () stretching out in front of you, and you'll see the older East Gate (; *Dongmen*) off to your right. Zhangjuzheng Jie () leads away from East Gate and runs parallel to Jingzhou Nanlu.

 Jingzhou Museum MUSEUM

( Jingzhou Bowuguan; Jingzhou Zhonglu; audio tour ¥20, English tour

guide ¥200; ☺ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) The highlight of this excellent museum, which showcases some wonderful artefacts unearthed from Chu tombs around the area, is the incredibly well-preserved 2000-year-old body of a man found in his tomb with ancient tools, clothing and even food; the airtight mud seal around his crypt helped preserve him. It's in one of the buildings around the large pond behind the main building. Take bus 12, 19 or 101 to West Gate (; *Ximen*), then backtrack 200m.

### City Wall HISTORIC SITE

Jingzhou's original city wall (; *chengqiang*) was a mud wall dating from the Eastern Han dynasty. The first stone version came during the Five Dynasties and Ten Kingdoms. Today, the oldest surviving sections, around South Gate (; *Nanmen*), are Song, but most of what you'll see is Ming and Qing. The South Gate, with its enceinte still attached, is best for flavours of medieval Jingzhou and swarms with Taoist soothsayers, outdoor hairdressers offering cutthroat shaves and vegetable sellers. A similar carnival feel accompanies East Gate (; *Lao Dongmen*), which also has an enceinte and a fairground feel with bouncing castles and costume hire. You can walk on parts of the wall, sometimes for a small fee (¥7 to ¥27), but the best way to see it is to rent a bike and cycle around the outside (1½ hours) between the wall and the city moat. This path also makes a lovely walk.

### Kaiyuan Temple TAOIST

( Kaiyuan Guan) Explore the fascinating empty remains attached to the Jingzhou Museum.

### Guandi Temple TAOIST

( Guandi Miao) Up the road from the South Gate.

### Tienu Temple BUDDHIST

( Tienu Si; off Jingbei Lu) The intriguingly named Iron Girl Temple.

### Xuanmiao Temple TAOIST

( Xuanmiao Guan; north of Jingbei Lu) This Taoist temple, just north of New North Gate (; *xinbeimen*), literally translates as the 'Temple of Mystery'.

### Confucian Temple CONFUCIAN

( Wen Miao) Now part of Shiyan Zhongxue (Experimental Middle

School), a short walk east of the museum. Smile sweetly to be let in.

## **Sleeping**

Jiuge Holiday Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Jiuge Jiari Jiudian; 📞 885 7777; 13 Jingzhou Nanlu; 13 r from ¥380, discounted to ¥198; 📶@📶) Good-quality, modern, midrange hotel offering large, comfortable, wi-fi-enabled rooms, a restaurant and a cafe. It's about 200m inside the New East Gate.

Bayi Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 152 7248 2879; 14-4 Zhangju Zhengjie; 14-4 r from ¥70; 📶) One of several cheap hotels on Zhangju Zhengjie. Was undergoing wholesale renovation when we last visited. Expect newly decorated rooms, wi-fi and slightly higher prices by the time you read this. It's 200m inside the older East Gate.

## **Eating**

Come evening, locals head to the East Gate end of Zhangju Zhengjie for *shaokao*. See [Click here](#) for more on *shaokao*.

Bayu Renjia CHINESE HUBEI \$\$

( New East Gate, Donghuan Lu; mains ¥20-50; 🕒 11am-9pm) Great location by the moat, outside New East Gate. Grab a table overlooking the city wall and moat and tuck into the restaurant speciality, *ganguo* (, an iron pot of spicy delights, kept bubbling hot with a small candle burner. Varieties include chicken (; *ganguo ziji*; ¥38), bullfrog (; *ganguo niuwa*; ¥48), tofu (; *ganguo qianye doufu*; ¥32) and pig intestine (; *ganguo feichang*; ¥38). One pot is enough for two or three people with rice (; *mifan*), which is free. Exit New East Gate, cross the moat and the restaurant is on your right.

## **Information**

There's a China Construction Bank (; Zhongguo Jianshe Yinhang) with a foreign-friendly ATM between New East Gate and Jiuge Holiday Hotel. There are 24-hour internet cafes opposite both hotels that we've reviewed. Look for the characters (*wangba*).

## **Getting There & Around**

Bicycle

The **bicycle rental place** (per hr/day ¥7/50) by East Gate is one of many around the walled section of the city.

#### Bus

You'll probably arrive at either Shashi long-distance bus station (; Shashi changtu qichezhan) or Shashi central bus station (; Shashi zhongxin keyunzhan). Turn right out of either, walk to the first bus stop and take bus 101 (¥2) to East Gate (; *dongmen*). Get off at the first stop after passing through the gate. For Jiuge Holiday Hotel, keep walking straight and the hotel will be on your left after 200m. For Bayi Binguan, walk back, take the first left, then left again down Zhangju Zhengjie and the hotel will be on your right.

Buses from Shashi long-distance bus station:

**Wudang Shan** ¥120, five hours (7.45am and 1pm)

**Wuhan** ¥80, four hours (6.30am to 8pm)

**Yichang** ¥44, two hours (7am to 6pm)

#### Train

Jingzhou should be linked up by rail to Wuhan and Yichang by the time you read this. Bus 49 (¥2) will connect the train station (; *huoche zhan*) with East Gate.

## Around Jingzhou

When we first visited the 2300-year-old tombs of Xiongjia Zhong ( admission ¥30; 🕒 9.30am-4.30pm) back in 2008, they had only just begun excavation here (see boxed text, [Click here](#)), and tourists were allowed a rare opportunity to witness archaeology in progress, as most of the tombs, including the main tomb itself, had yet to be opened. Artefacts that had already been excavated included a large collection of jade (now on display at the Jingzhou Museum) and the fascinating skeletal remains of two horses pulling a chariot, which had been left in their small, open tomb for visitors to see. When we revisited the site most recently it was closed to the public, but was due to re- open as part of a modern hangerlike museum (a la the Terracotta Warriors) towards the end of 2012. Expect a much more informative experience, but also a price hike.

The tombs are 40km north of Jingzhou. Buses (¥9, 70 minutes) leave hourly from the back of the bus station called Chudu Keyun

Zhan (). Bus 24 links this station with Jinfeng Guangchang () bus stop, just outside East Gate (over the moat and turn left). A taxi will be at least ¥100 return.

## WUHAN WORDS

Wuhan locals speak Hanqiang () or 'Wuhan speak', a local speciality. To locals, shoes are *haizi* (sounding like the word for 'child') rather than the more standard *xiezi*, so Wuhan's ubiquitous shoe cleaners shout '*ca haizi*' ('clean shoes') instead of '*ca xiezi*' (in this respect the word is similar to the Cantonese). Another lovely peculiarity you don't hear in many other parts of China is the word *fuzi* () for towel and *mamu* () for a pedicab, more prosaically called a *sanlunche* () elsewhere across the land. To show off is to *fapao* (create a froth) while 'inside' () is inexplicably '*douli*' (; literally 'inside the bean'). 'Clean' in Wuhan is not '*ganjing*' but '*linxin*' (). Wuhan folk end their sentences with a *sa* () particle, instead of the far more usual a () sound you hear elsewhere in China.

## Wudang Shan

📞 0719

Wudang Shan may not be one of China's five sacred Taoist mountains but it's paradoxically known as the No 1 Taoist Mountain in the Middle Kingdom. Sacrosanct in martial arts circles, it is acknowledged that 'in the north they esteem Shaolin, in the south they revere Wudang'. The Unesco World Heritage Site of Wudang Shan is the apocryphal birthplace of taichi, and possesses supernaturally good-looking vistas and an abundance of medicinal plants that naturally find their way into a panoply of Taoist medicinal potions. The mountain is also sadly overpriced and overcommercialised, with new developments afoot, so expect the magic of Taoist chanting to be occasionally perforated by the squeal of buzz saws.

### Sights & Activities

The town's main road, Taihe Lu () – which at various sections is also labelled Taihe Donglu (; Taihe East) and Taihe Zhonglu (; Taihe Central) – runs east–west on its way up towards the main gate of the mountain. Everything of interest in town is either on or near this road

and road numbers are clearly labelled. Buses often drop you at the junction by the main expressway, a 1km walk east of the town centre. From here, turn left to the mountain entrance (100m) or right into town.

You can buy Chinese (¥3) or English (¥8) maps at the main gate of the mountain or at Jinlongdian Hotel, which is between the two hotels we recommend here.

### **FREE** Wudang Museum of China MUSEUM

( Wudang Bowuguan; Culture Sq; audio tour ¥20, deposit ¥200; 🕒 9-11am & 2.30-5pm) This is a great opportunity to get to grips with Wudang Shan history, lore and architecture. There's a whole pantheon of gods, including the eminent Zhenwu (patriarch of the mountain) and a section on Taoist medicine including the fundamentals of *neidan Xue* (; internal alchemy). There are also some stunning bronze pieces. Turn right out of either of the hotels listed here, then right down Bowuguan Lu (), which leads to Culture Sq (; Wenhua Guangchang).

### Wudang Shan TAOIST MOUNTAIN

(admission ¥140, bus ¥100, audio guide ¥30) The mountain attracts a diverse array of climbers: Taoist nuns with knapsacks, workers shouldering paving slabs and sacks of rice, businessmen with laptops and bright-eyed octogenarians hopping along. Take bus 1 (¥1) or walk from Taihe Lu to the Main Gate (; Shan Menkou) and ticket office. The bus ticket you must buy with your admission gives you unlimited use of shuttle buses (from 6am to 6.30pm). Note that everything added together (including buses and temple tickets) will cost you ¥245; presumably this funded the construction of the expensive-looking ticket hall. The ticket-checking guards in black quasi-military outfits and red berets are curious in such a sacred place. Before buying your ticket you are funnelled mercilessly past shops selling Wudang swords and the like.

One bus – often only leaving when full – runs to the start of the cable car ( suodao; up/down ¥50/45). For those who don't mind steps, take the bus to South Cliff (; Nanyan), where the trail to 1612m Heavenly Pillar Peak (; Tianzhu Feng), the highest peak, begins. Consider disembarking early at the beautiful, turquoise-tiled Purple

Cloud Temple ( Zixiao Gong; admission ¥20), from where a small stone path leads up to South Cliff (45 minutes). From South Cliff it's an energy-sapping, two-hour, 4km climb to the top, but the scenery is worth every step and there are plenty of Taoist temples en route where you can take contemplative breathers. Note the occasional Taoist cairn and trees garlanded with scarlet ribbons weighed with small stones.

The enchanting red-walled Chaotian Temple (; Chaotian Gong) is about halfway up, housing a statue of the Jade Emperor and standing on an old, moss-hewn stone base with 4m-high tombstones guarding its entrance. From here you have a choice of two ascent routes, via the 1.4km Ming-dynasty route (the older, Back Way) or the 1.8km Qing-dynasty path (the 'Hundred Stairs'). The shorter but more gruelling Ming route ascends via the Three Heaven's Gates, including the stupefying climb to the Second Gate of Heaven (; Ertian Men). You can climb by one route and descend by the other. Temple ruins, fallen trees, shocking inclines and steep steps misshapen by centuries of footslogging await you, but the climb is hugely rewarding.

Near the top, beyond the cable-car exit, is the magnificent Forbidden City ( Zijin Cheng; admission ¥20) with its 2.5m-thick stone walls hugging the mountainside and balustrades festooned with lovers' locks. From here you can stagger to magnificent views from the Golden Hall ( Jin Dian; admission ¥20), constructed entirely from bronze, dating from 1416 and in dire need of some buffing up. A small statue of Zhenwu – Ming emperor and Wudang Shan's presiding Taoist deity – is enclosed within. On the way down, note how some pilgrims descend backwards!

## THE BIRTH OF TAICHI

Zhang San Feng (), a semi-legendary Wudang Shan monk from the 10th or 13th century (depending on what source you read), is reputed to be the founder of the martial art *taijiquan*, or taichi. Zhang had grown dissatisfied with the 'hard' techniques of Shaolin boxing and searched for something 'softer'. Sitting on his porch one day, he became inspired by a battle between a huge bird and a snake. The sinuous snake used flowing movements to evade the bird's attacks. The bird, exhausted, eventually gave up and flew away. Taichi is closely linked to Taoism, and many priests on Wudang Shan practise some



form of the art.

## Courses

Wudang Taoist Kungfu Academy TAICHI

( Wudang Daojiao Gongfu Xueyuan; 📞 568 9185; [www.wudang.org](http://www.wudang.org); fees per day classes/accommodation/meals ¥250/120/50) There are dozens of taichi schools (; *taijiquan*) in these parts, but this one stands out in terms of its location, its qualities as a school and its accessibility to foreigners. The setting is magical; in a large, secluded courtyard surrounded by pine trees halfway up the mountain. Classes, which follow a strict regime (including 5.30am starts!), are held either in and around the courtyard or at various scenic spots on the mountain. One member of the admin staff speaks excellent English and is very helpful. You can sign up for anything from a few days to one year; the longer you study, the cheaper the rates. You'll have to find, and fund, your own way here the first time (it's down the steps to your left, just past Purple Cloud Temple; no English sign). After that, the school will arrange a pass for you so you can come and go without having to pay the hefty entrance fees to the mountain each time. There are no classes on Thursdays.

## Sleeping

### IN TOWN

Xuan Yue Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Xuanyue Fandian; 📞 566 5111; 27 Yuxu Lu; 27 r from ¥428, discounted to ¥160; 📶📺) Very smart, recently refurbished midrange hotel, with carpeted rooms and spotless bathrooms. Some rooms have computers, some have internet connection for laptops. It's on the corner of Yuxu Lu and Taihe Zhonglu and is accessed through an entranceway to the right of the one with the English sign for the hotel (the one with the English sign leads to the restaurant).

Shengjingyuan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 566 2118; 7 Taihe Zhonglu; 7 r without/with bathroom ¥258/288,

discounted to ¥80/120; 🌟📶) Simple, bright, pleasant rooms come with firm mattresses and spacious bathrooms. Internet connection for laptop users. Next door but one to the hard-to-miss Bank of China.

## ON THE MOUNTAIN

There are about a dozen hotels and guesthouses by South Cliff. The cheapest rooms go for around ¥80.

Nanyan Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Nanyan Binguan; 📍 568 9182; r ¥380-486, discounted to ¥150-200; 🌟📶) This hotel right by the bus stop at South Cliff has large, clean, comfortable rooms and welcoming staff. Cheaper rooms have squat loo and no internet connection.

Taichi Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Taiji Huiguan; 📍 568 9888; r without/with window ¥288/498; 🌟📶) The best-quality hotel on the mountain, although discounts aren't as good as elsewhere. Rooms with windows go for ¥348, and have fabulous mountain views. Rooms without windows are identical (apart from the views) but are generally not discounted. Internet connection for laptops is in all rooms. It's 200m downhill from the bus stop at South Cliff.

## Eating

## IN TOWN

A few *shaokao* stalls set up every evening in an alley off Taihe Lu. Look for the neon-lit archway with the characters , beside No 14.

Taihe Xuanwu Dajiudian CHINESE \$\$

( 35 Taihe Zhonglu; 35 mains ¥20-50; 🕒 6.30am-11.30pm) Large bustling restaurant with half its menu helpfully translated into English. Various regional cuisines are represented, from Sichuanese to Cantonese; even Beijing roast duck! No English sign. Turn right out of either hotel we list here, and it's on your right.

## ON THE MOUNTAIN

There are plenty of food options by South Cliff, although not many English menus. Taste of Wudang ( Weidao Wudang; mains ¥15-32), a

fast-food-style restaurant right by the bus stop, does noodles and rice meals and has an English menu.

## ★ Entertainment

Wudang Grand Theatre THEATRE

( Wudang Dajuyuan; 📍 506 2366; Culture Sq) Modern theatre opposite the museum. Hosts the Wudang Taichi Show (tickets ¥200-280; 🕒 8-9pm) every Thursday, Friday and Saturday.

## 📍 Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 1 Taihe Zhonglu; 1 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) Foreign friendly ATM and money-exchange facility. Next door but one to Shengjingyuan Binguan.

**Jisu Internet** ( Jisu Wangba; 2nd fl, 20 Taihe Lu; 20 per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr) Through a round archway. No English sign.

## 📍 Getting There & Away

Bus

The new bus station (; keyun qichezhan), 200m downhill from the expressway, on the right of the road leading into town, was still being built when we were here, but buses were already running from it. Expect schedules to change once the bus station is completed.

**Jingzhou** ¥120, five hours (9am)

**Wuhan** ¥150, five hours (8.30am and 11am)

**Xi'an** ¥110, four hours (8.30am)

**Yichang** ¥110, five hours (9.30am)

A fleet of small green buses shuttles between the two nearest train stations – Wudangshan and Shiyan (; ¥8, one hour, 5.10am to 8pm) – via Liuliping (; ¥4, 20 minutes). They leave from outside Taihe Xuanwu Dajiudian restaurant.

Train

Wudang Shan no longer has a train station, although the train station at Liuliping is often referred to as Wudang Shan. You can buy train tickets from the **train ticket agency** ( tielu piaodaishou; 🕒 8.30am-6pm), beside Wudang Shan's old train station on Chezhan Lu (), a road opposite Xuanwu Dajiudian restaurant. For Yichang, you need to change trains at Xiangyang (), a train station in the city of Xiangfan (),

from where there are also regular trains to places such as Xi'an, Chengdu and Luoyang.

Liuliping trains:

**Wuhan (Wuchang)** hard seat ¥70, six to 6½ hours, three daily (12.56pm, 1.11pm and 4.21pm)

**Xianyang** hard seat ¥24, two hours, regular (6am to 11.30pm)

Shiyan trains:

**Wuhan (Wuchang)** hard seat ¥73, six to seven hours, regular (9am to 11.30pm)

Xiangyang trains:

**Yichang** hard seat ¥33 to ¥38, three hours, hourly (7am to noon, then 8.48pm and 8.55pm)

## LYING IN WAIT

Despite being discovered 30 years ago, when canal diggers dug up the remains of a horse and chariot, mystery still surrounds the potentially momentous tomb site at Xiongjia Zhong. Fears of insufficient preservation techniques meant excavation only began in 2006, and only a fraction of its more than 100 tombs have been opened. Finds already unearthed include one of China's finest collections of jade, but potentially there's a lot more to come. Work began in 2008 on excavating the huge, 130m-long horse and chariot tomb, while the main tomb itself, which is believed to contain the largest royal coffin ever discovered in China (248 sq metres, if estimates are accurate), still hasn't been touched. Exactly whose body is lying in it, waiting to be discovered, is unknown. The site is believed to be named after the surname of the person buried in it (Xiong; ). No accounts specify who that person is, but Xiong was a royal family name of the Chu kingdom (722–221 BC) so it's widely assumed the tomb belongs to one of the 20 Chu kings who used to rule the area. If so, it would be the first Chu king tomb ever discovered. Experts date the site at around 2300 years old, which points to the last Chu king, Chu Zhaowang ( ), also known as Xiong Zhen ( ). No documents link him with the site, but he was known to have been so popular that people were willing to die for him, which is perhaps why the main tomb comes with at least 92 accompanying tombs, all thought to contain human remains.

## Shennongjia

📍 0719

Famed for its medicinal plants and legendary ape-man ( ; *yeren*),

Shennongjia forms a significant chunk of the most spectacular region of Hubei province. Thickly forested peaks with part-exposed rock faces rise up dramatically from a small network of Yangzi River tributaries; the bus journey here alone will leave you gobsmacked. Foreigners are only allowed into one of the four sections of the national park, at Yazikou ( admission ¥140), but the area is big enough for good walking. You can also camp here. Once inside the park, you can board shuttle buses (¥90) to various points of interest. Worth checking out are Xiaolongtan (), about 10km from the entrance, and a good place to spot monkeys (Shennongjia is home to the rare golden snub-nosed monkey; ; *chuan jinsihou*), and Shennongding (), 20km from the entrance and the highest peak here (3105m). There's a camping area (¥30) at the base of Shennongding, called Shennongying (). Winter is bitterly cold and snow often blocks roads.

Yazikou is accessed from Muyu (), a small but well-developed tourist village about 14km down the mountain. All buses drop you in Muyu.

The modest Shuanglin Hotel ( Shuanglin Jiudian; ☎ 345 2803; 25 Muyu Lu; 25 r from ¥88, with computer ¥128; 📧), where buses drop you off, has tidy rooms and welcoming management, though there are flashier hotels, too. You can normally rent tents (; *zhangpeng*; ¥100 to ¥200) once inside the park, or buy them (¥700 to ¥800) from a couple of camping shops in Muyu.

The coolest place to eat in Muyu is Pian Qiao Wan ( 53 Muyu Lu; 53 mains ¥20-40; 🕒 10am-9pm), which is accessed via a wobbly bridge and which backs onto a small tea plantation (you can buy tea here). The menu is in Chinese only. Try the *huiguo niurou* (; spicy fried beef; ¥48), the *chashugu chaolarou* (; wild mushrooms and cured pork; ¥38) or the *xianggu rousi* (; shiitake mushrooms with pork shreds; ¥38). Don't forget to leave room for the *qiaomai bing* (; flatbread made with buckwheat and wild herbs and served with a honey dip).



#### Information

The ICBC Bank at the top of Muyu village has an ATM that accepts foreign cards. Internet cafes are simply marked with the characters (*wangba*; per hour ¥4).

Shared minibuses to Yazikou (per person ¥10) leave from the top end

of Muyu.



#### Getting There & Away

Buses leave from outside Shuanglin Hotel, where you can also buy tickets. Foreigners aren't allowed to continue north to Wudang Shan from Muyu.

**Badong** ¥55, three hours, one daily (9.30am)

**Yichang** ¥60, 2½ hours, five daily (7am to 3.30pm)

## Yichang

📞 0717 / POP 4 MILLION

A young vibrant city of four million souls, Yichang lacks tourist sights but is on the map as a gateway to the magnificent Three Gorges ([Click here](#)).



### Sights

Three Gorges Dam ARCHITECTURE

( Sanxia Daba; admission ¥105) The huge Three Gorges Dam hulks away upstream. The world's largest dam due to its length (2.3km) rather than its height (101m), it isn't the most spectacular dam, but is worth a peek. You can't walk on it, but there's a tourist viewing area to the north. The view from the south is much the same, and free. Take a bus from the long-distance station to Maoping (; ¥15, 8.30am to 3pm), but get off at Balu Chezhan (). Alternatively, bus 8 (¥20, one hour, 8am to 4pm) leaves from Yichang's East Train Station.

Day trips can also be taken by boat (¥280 including entrance fee and lunch) from the old ferry port (; *lao matou*). They leave at 7.30am and return around 5pm. Buy tickets from Yangtze River International Travel ([Click here](#)) at the port.



### Sleeping

Yichang Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Yichang Fandian; 📞 644 1616; 113 Dongshan Dadao; 113 r from ¥268, discounted to ¥198; 📧) This jolly place has an elegant foyer, and large and pleasant carpeted rooms (some with a computer; ¥20

extra). English is limited but it's all smiles. Diagonally opposite the long-distance bus station.

Yiling Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Yiling Fandian; 📞 886 7199; 41 Yunji Lu; 41 r from ¥528, discounted to ¥260; 📍📞) Large bright rooms with laminated wood flooring. Not as friendly as Yichang Hotel, but well located; close to the river and opposite a number of restaurants, bars and cafes. Bus 4 from the old dock; bus 6 from the long-distance bus station.

## Eating

Opposite Yiling Hotel there's a Korean restaurant and a Western-style cafe, which both have English menus.

For something more local, hop on bus 2 or 6 (¥1) or into a taxi (¥7) to Beimen ( ), where you can eat *xiao ye* (; literally 'midnight snacks') at a number of stalls and restaurants which spill out onto the streets each evening (5pm to 2am). You'll see skewers (; *chuan*), dumplings (; *jiaozi*) and noodles (; *mian*) as well as places doing barbecued fish (; *kaoyu*). Look out for the pancake stall making *fei bing* (; 'flying pancakes'; ¥12 to ¥15); the banana ones (; *xiangjiao*) are delicious.

Xiao Hu Niu CHINESE HUBEI \$

( Beimen; ingredients ¥8-20; 🕒 5pm-2am) Our favourite restaurant in Beimen, this one specialises in a local beef hot-plate called *xiao hu niu*; order that first, stipulating how spicy you want your beef; mild (; *wei la*), medium (; *zhong la*) or hot (; *ma la*), before ordering other raw ingredients to fry with it on your hot plate. Choices include *qingjiao* (; green peppers), *xianggu* (; shiitake mushrooms), *tudou pian* (; potato slices) and *ou pian* (; lotus root slices).

## Information

There are 24-hour **internet cafes** (per hr ¥3) opposite both hotels that we have reviewed. Look for the characters (*wangba*). Foreign-friendly ATMs are also everywhere. For information on booking Three Gorges cruises, [Click here](#).

## Getting There & Around

Local buses cost ¥1.

**Bus 4** Old ferry port (; *san matou*) –Yiling Hotel (; Yiling Fandian)–old

train station ( ; *huoche zhan*; for Yichang Hotel or long-distance bus station).

**Bus 6** Long-distance bus station ( ; *changtu qichezhan*; for Yichang Hotel) to Beimen ( ).

**Bus 9** East Train Station ( ; *huoche dongzhan*) to the long-distance bus station ( ; *changtu qichezhan*).

#### Air

Daily flights from Three Gorges Airport ( ; Sanxia Jichang) include Beijing (¥1300), Chengdu (¥740), Shanghai (¥1080) and Xi'an (¥880).

Airport shuttle buses (¥20, 50 minutes) run to and from the Qingjiang building ( ; Qingjiang dasha). They leave two hours before outward bound flights and meet all incoming flights. Flight tickets can be bought from the Air China office inside the Qingjiang building. Turn right out of Yichang Hotel and it's on your right after about 1km.

#### Boat

For Three Gorges details, [Click here](#).

#### Bus

There are three main long-distance bus stations – Yichang long-distance bus station ( ; *changtu qichezhan*), plus ones at the East Train Station and the old ferry port. All are modern and well run, and offer very similar bus services. Services from the Yichang long-distance bus station include:

**Jingzhou** ¥40, two hours, every 30 minutes (6.40am to 6.30pm)

**Laoying** (for Wudang Shan) ¥130, six hours, regular (8am to 1pm)

**Muyu** (for Shennongjia) ¥70, five hours, seven daily (7.45am to 3.30pm)

**Wudang Shan** ¥135, six hours, one daily (either 7.45am or 1.45pm)

**Wuhan (Wuchang)** ¥110 to ¥157, 4½ hours, every hour (7am to 8pm)

#### Train

Yichang's East Train Station ( ; *huoche dongzhan*) is the one almost all trains use now. Train tickets (¥5 service charge) can also be bought at window 1 of Yichang long-distance bus station. Trains include:

**Beijing** hard sleeper ¥300, 21 hours, two daily (12.34am and 6.12pm)

**Chengdu** hard sleeper ¥239, 13 to 16 hours, seven daily

**Chongqing** hard sleeper ¥179, 10 to 12 hours, six daily

**Shanghai** hard sleeper ¥290 and ¥365, 18 and 23 hours, two daily



(1.17am and 1.54pm)

**Wuhan** hard seat ¥55, four to six hours, regular

**Xi'an** hard sleeper ¥224, 15 hours, one daily (3.50pm)

**Xiangyang** (for Wudang Shan) hard seat ¥22 to ¥38, three hours, eight daily (8.23am to 8.20pm)



# Jiangxi

POP 45.2 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Nanchang](#)

[Around Nanchang](#)

[Wuyuan](#)

[Around Wuyuan](#)

[Sanqing Shan](#)

[Longhu Shan](#)

[Lushan](#)

---

## Why Go?

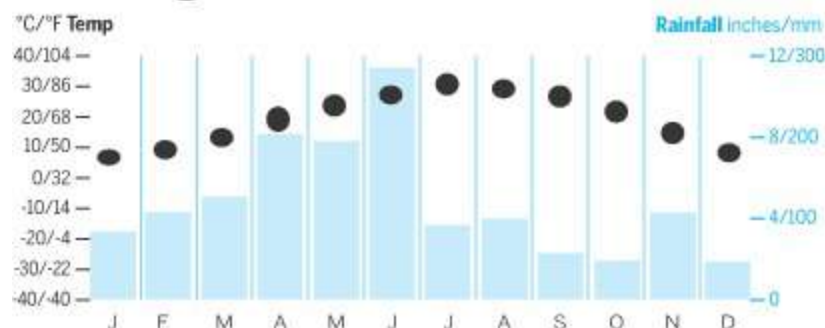
An interconnected web of rivers, lakes and shimmering rice paddies, Jiangxi () is defined by its water. Farmers in ponchos and heavy boots till the fields in drizzling rain as snow-white herons whirl overhead, and off at the edges of the province, low-lying hills of pencil-thin pines give way to more substantial mountain ranges, seemingly shrouded in perpetual mist. At the northern border is Poyang Lake, a wetlands area that swells to become the country's largest freshwater lake in summer.

While it certainly doesn't wind up on many people's must-see list, the province has its surprises, and it can be just the spot if you're after a more remote corner of the country. Hikers should lace up their boots immediately; almost all of the major attractions are off in the mountains or verdant rolling countryside. And with several high-speed train connections from Shanghai and Hangzhou, getting here has never been easier.

---

## When to Go

### Nánchāng



**Mid-Mar** Terraced rapeseed fields bloom in Wuyuan, drawing amateur photographers from across China.

**Late May–early Jun** Rhododendrons add splashes of pink to the Sanqing Shan canopy.

**Sep–Nov** Less rainfall and moderate temperatures; best time to visit Jiangxi.

---

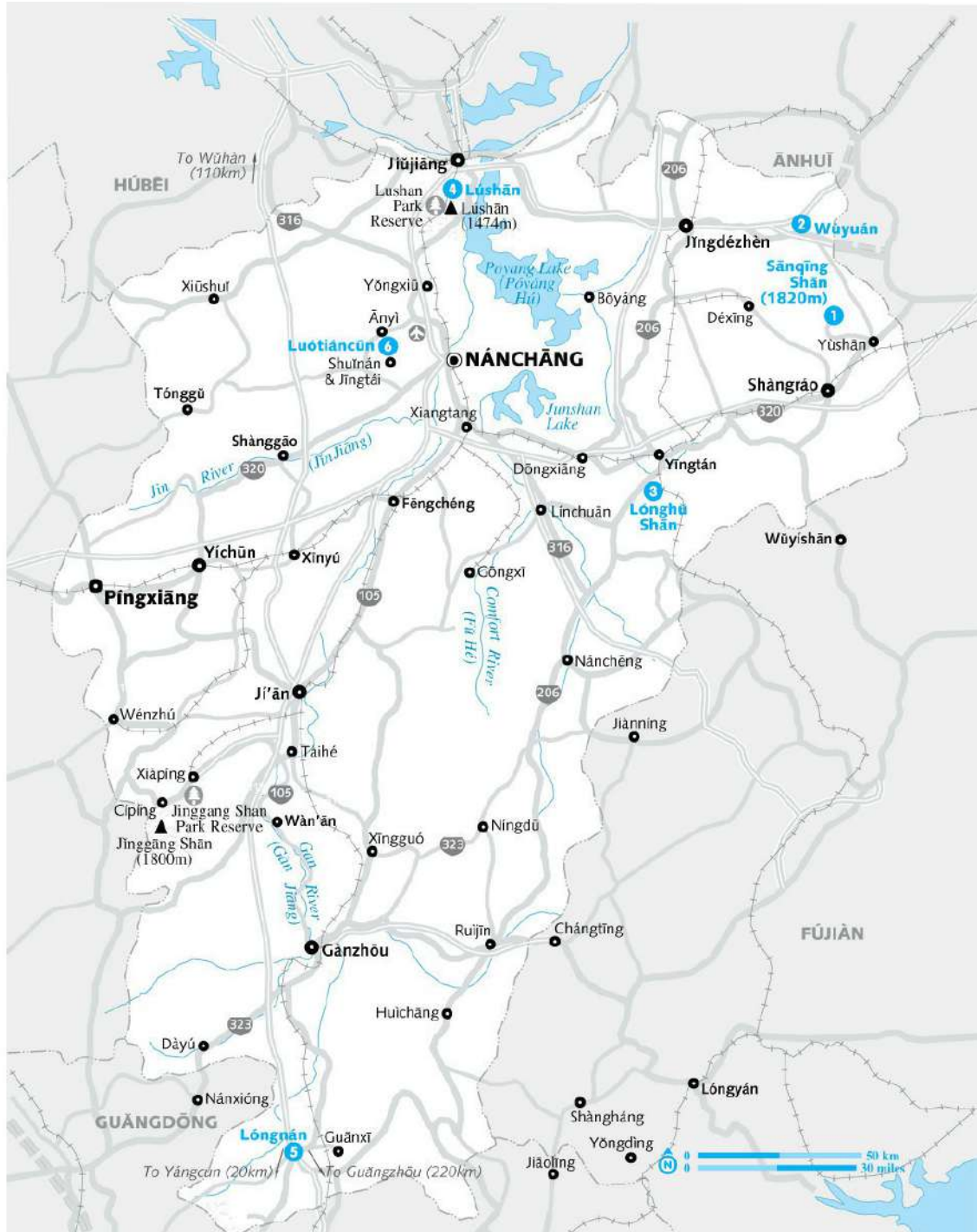
## Best Hikes

- » Sanqing Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Wuyuan ([Click here](#))
- » Lushan ([Click here](#))
- » Wudang Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Longhu Shan ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Villages

- » Little Likeng ([Click here](#))
- » Sixi ([Click here](#))
- » Luotiancun ([Click here](#))



## Jiangxi Highlights

- 1 Look out over a forest of granite spires in **Sanqing Shan** ([Click here](#)), one of eastern China's most underrated national parks
- 2 Walk the ancient postal roads linking the Huizhou-style villages around **Wuyuan** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Discover a forgotten Taoist cultural centre at **Longhu Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Seek out China's literary muse, unravel political scandals or wait for the ethereal mists to clear on **Lushan** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Explore Hakka country around **Longnan** ([Click here](#)), where fortified villages and subtropical forest await
- 6 Escape the urban greys of Nanchang in the traditional alleyways of **Luotiancun** ([Click here](#))

## History

Jiangxi's Gan River Valley was the principal trade route that linked Guangdong with the rest of the country in imperial times. Its strategic location, natural resources and long growing season ensured that the province has always been relatively well off. Jiangxi is most famous for its imperial porcelain (from Jingdezhen), although its contributions to philosophy and literature are perhaps more significant, particularly during the Tang and Song dynasties. Lushan was an important Buddhist centre, and also served as the home to the famous White Deer Grotto Academy, re-established by the founder of neo-Confucianism, Zhu Xi (1130–1200), as the pre-eminent intellectual centre of the time. Taoism also played a role in Jiangxi's development after Longhu Shan became the centre of the powerful Zhengyi sect in the Song dynasty (960–1279).

Peasant unrest arose during the 16th century and again in the 19th century when the Taiping rebels swept through the Yangzi River Valley. Rebellion continued into the 20th century, and Jiangxi became one of the earliest bases for the Chinese communists.

## Climate

Central Jiangxi lies in the Gan River plain (formerly the main trade route linking Guangdong with the rest of China) and experiences a four-season, subtropical climate. Mountains encircle the plain and

locals flock here to escape the summer heat, which averages more than 30°C in July. Rainfall averages 120cm to 190cm annually and is usually heaviest in the northeast; half falls between April and June.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥100

\$\$ ¥100 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥60

\$\$\$ more than ¥60

## Language

Most Jiangxi natives speak one of innumerable local variants of Gan (), a dialect whose name is also used as a shorthand for the province. Gan is similar (some say related) to the Hakka language, spoken in southern Jiangxi.



### Getting There & Around

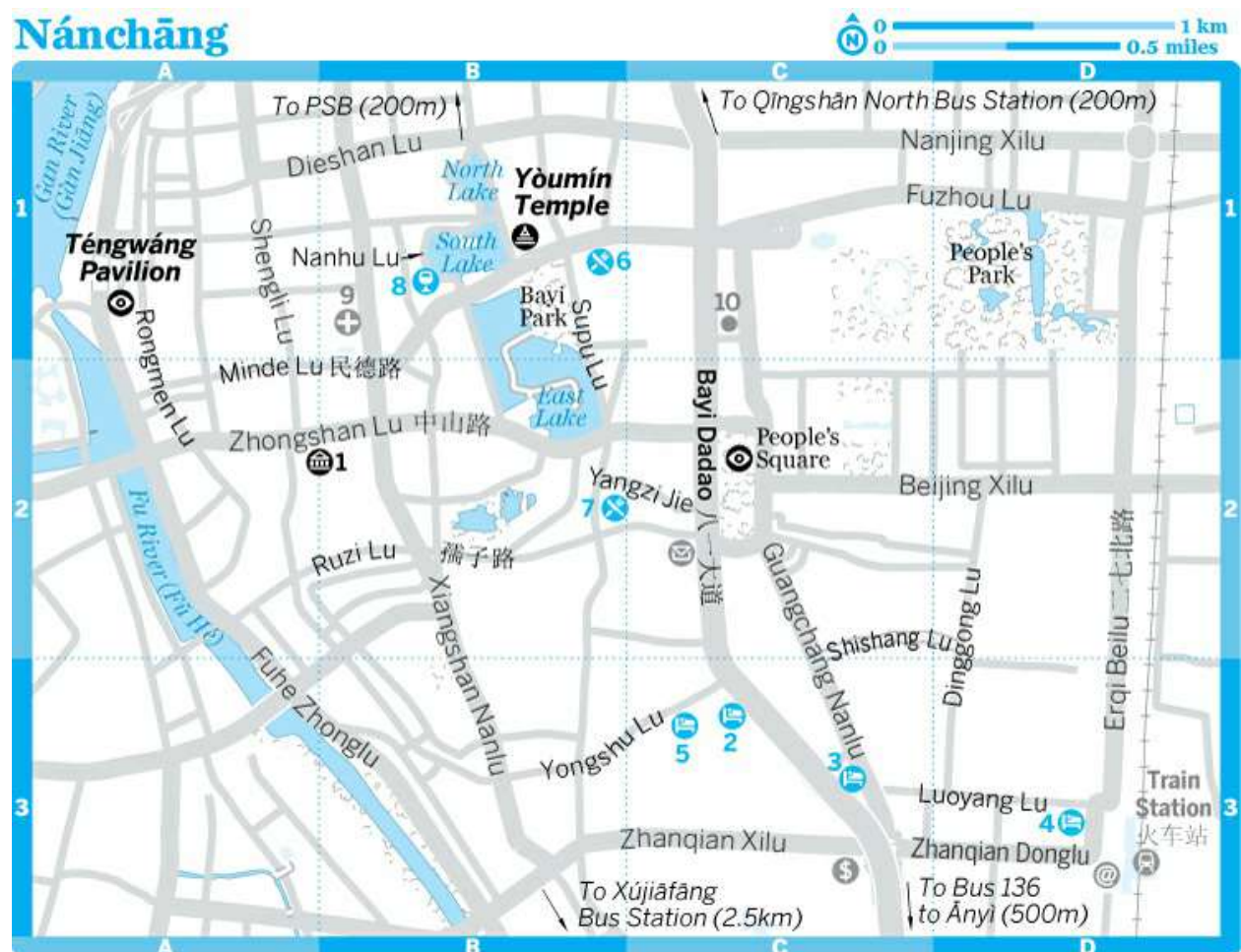
Nanchang is connected by air to most major cities in China. The capital has several express trains linking it with Beijing to the north, Changsha to the west, and Hangzhou and Shanghai to the east. A sleeper train connects the capital with Guangzhou to the south. Getting around the province and on to neighbouring provinces by bus is generally fast and reliable.

## Nanchang

☞ 0791 / POP 2.5 MILLION

A bustling, busy and booming town, Nanchang is branded on Chinese consciousness as a revolutionary torchbearer and applauded in China's history books for its role in consolidating the power of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP). It may come as little surprise, therefore, that most travellers, unless otherwise detained, should jump on the first connection out of town to the bucolic charms of Luotiancun, stupendous Wuyuan or Sanqing Shan.

The most pleasant part of town is the area around Bayi Park; pedestrian Shengli Lu and Zhongshan Lu are the main shopping streets.



Nanchang

📍 Top Sights

[Tengwang Pavilion](#) A1

[Youmin Temple](#) B1

📍 Sights

1

1 [Former Headquarters of the Nanchang Uprising](#) B2

 Sleeping

2 [7 Days Inn](#) C3

3 [Galactic Peace Hotel](#) C3


4 [Hanting Inn](#) D3

5 [Hanting Inn](#) C3

 Eating

6 [Xianheng Jiudian](#) B1

7 Yangzi Jie B2

 Drinking

8 [Bossa Nova](#) B1

Information

9 [Nanchang No 1 People's Hospital](#) B1

 Transport

10 [Advance Rail Ticket Office](#) C1

[Nanchang Railway International Ticket Office](#) (see 10)

## Sights

Tengwang Pavilion MONUMENT


[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tengwang Ge; Rongmen Lu; admission ¥50; 🕒 7.30am-6.15pm summer, 8am-4.50pm winter) This nine-storey pagoda is the city's drawcard monument, first erected during Tang times.

Youmin Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Youmin Si; 181 Minde Lu; 181 admission ¥2; 🕒 9am-5pm) This huge temple was heavily damaged during the Cultural Revolution, but contains some notable statuary.

 Former Headquarters of the Nanchang Uprising MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bayi Nanchang Qiyi Jinianguan; 380 Zhongshan Lu; 380 🕒 9-11.30am & 1-4pm) Wartime paraphernalia for rainy days and enthusiasts of the CCP. Admission free with passport.



## Sleeping

7 Days Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qitian Liansuo Jiudian; 📍 8885 7688; [www.7daysinn.cn](http://www.7daysinn.cn); 142 Bayi Dadao; 142 r ¥162-218; 📞📧) This popular hotel, done up in pastel orange and yellow, is one of the most reliable of Nanchang's midrange chains. Some of the rooms could use a fresh coat of paint, but it's still both comfortable and convenient. Wi-fi in the lobby and ¥7 Chinese breakfasts.

Hanting Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hanting Liansuo Jiudian; 📍 8885 5556; [www.htinns.com](http://www.htinns.com); 8 Yongshu Lu; 8 d ¥199-239; 📞) The Hanting is a reasonably classy, midrange option, with hardwood floors, flat-screen TVs and newer rooms. There's wi-fi in the lobby, but breakfast is for members only.

There's another branch (📍 8622 1000; Train Station Sq; d ¥199-229; 📞) across from the train station. Book ahead.

Galactic Peace Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jialaite Heping Guoji Jiudian; 📍 8611 1118; [www.glthp.com](http://www.glthp.com); 10 Guangchang Nanlu; 0 d incl breakfast ¥1080-1580; 📞📧📺📶) Though there's no particular charm here, this is as comfortable as it gets in Jiangxi. The facilities are top-notch and the refurbished rooms spacious (the best are in Block B). Discounts of 35% available.

## Eating & Drinking

The western end of Yangzi Jie ( ) is lined with tiny inexpensive restaurants.

Xianheng Jiudian SOUTHERN CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 48 Minde Lu; 48 dishes ¥16-58; 📞) Contemporary restaurant, with a mix of southern cuisines (Jiangxi, Cantonese and Zhejiang); try the spicy, peanut-laden 'alcoholic beef' (; *jiugui niurou*).

Bossa Nova BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(5 Nanhu Lu; 5 ☹ 6pm-1am) One of Nanchang's best foreigner-friendly bars.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Zhanqian Xilu; ) The main branch has foreign exchange and an ATM (open office hours only). ATMs throughout Nanchang accept all major cards.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Bayi Dadao & Ruzi Lu)

<http://verynanchang.com> Useful listings website.

**Nanchang No 1 People's Hospital**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Nanchang Shi Diyi Renmin Yiyuan; 128 Xiangshan Beilu; 128 )

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 8728 8493; 131 Yangming Lu; 131 ☹ 8am-noon & 2.30-6pm)

**Xintie Wangcheng** ( Train Station Sq; per hr ¥3; ☹ 24hr) One of several internet cafes on the Train Station Sq.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Air

Changbei airport is 28km north of the city, with flights to the following destinations:

**Beijing** ¥1490, two hours

**Guangzhou** ¥850, 1½ hours

**Shanghai** ¥830, one hour

**Xi'an** ¥1200, 1½ hours

Air tickets can be purchased from the **Nanchang railway international ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Nantie Guolu; 393 Bayi Dadao; ☹ 8.30am-6pm), next to the advance rail ticket office.

Bus

Nanchang has a number of long-distance bus stations scattered about town, but in most cases you're better off taking the train, which is faster and more convenient.

**Qingshan north bus station** (; Qingshan beizhan) serves the following:

**Lushan** ¥50, 2½ hours, 9.30am

**Wuyuan** ¥95, 3½ hours, four daily

The **Xujiafang bus station** (; Xujiafang keyunzhan) serves the following destinations:

**Ganzhou** ¥102, 5½ hours, hourly

**Jiujiang** ¥30, two hours, every 40 minutes

**Shangrao** ¥58, 3½ hours, hourly

**Yingtian** ¥50, 2½ hours, hourly

**Yushan** ¥70 to ¥95, four hours, three daily

Train

Buy train tickets at the **advance rail ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( huoche shoupiao chu; 393 Bayi Dadao; ☎ 8am-noon & 12.30-5pm) or brave the crowds at the main train station. The following destinations have rail connections with Nanchang:

**Beijing West** Z series train, hard/soft sleeper ¥298/466, 11½ hours, three daily

**Guangzhou East** hard/soft sleeper ¥260/404, 12 to 14 hours, four daily

**Hangzhou** D series train, hard/soft seat ¥185/222, five hours, four daily

**Hangzhou** hard/soft sleeper ¥153/234, nine hours, five daily

**Jiujiang** from ¥40, one to two hours, frequent

**Shanghai (Hongqiao)** D series train, hard/soft seat ¥239/287, 6½ hours, three daily

**Shanghai South** K series train, hard/soft sleeper ¥185/286, nine to 13 hours, four daily

### **Getting Around**

Airport buses (¥10, 45 minutes, half-hourly from 6am to 8pm) leave from in front of the train station. A taxi to the airport costs around ¥100.

Nanchang is in the process of constructing five new (and urgently needed) metro lines. There's no definite completion date, but some lines may be running as early as 2014 or 2015. The most useful for travellers will be Line 2, which passes the train station and follows Bayi Dadao north. Line 3 should pass by the Qingshan north and Xujiafang bus stations, while Line 1 will run east-west, following

Beijing Xilu and Zhongshan Lu.

From the train station, bus 2 goes up Bayi Dadao past People's Sq. Taxis are ¥6 to ¥8 at flag fall; some levy a ¥1 fuel surcharge.

## Around Nanchang

Northwest of town and faced on all sides by imposing ornamental gateways (*menlou*), the 1120-year-old village of Luotiancun (admission ¥30), its uneven stone-flagged alleys etched with centuries of wear, makes an ideal day out and rural escape from urban Nanchang. A disorientating labyrinth of tight, higgledy-piggledy lanes, disused halls and ancient homesteads assembled from dark stone, Luotiancun is set among a picturesque landscape of fields and hills that maximise its pastoral charms.

A self-guided tour (beginning at the square with the pond) will take you through a tight maze of lanes, past hand-worked pumps, ancient wells, stone steps, scattering chickens, lazy water buffaloes and conical haystacks. There are some lovely buildings here, including the former residence Dashifudi ( ) on Hengjie ( ; Cross St). On the fringes of the village is a fat old camphor tree dating from Tang days; also hunt down the old well ( ; *gujing*), which locals swear is 1000 years old.

From the waterwheel at the foot of Qianjie, a flagstone path links Luotiancun with its sibling village, Shuinan ( ). In Shuinan, follow the signs to the Shuinan Folk Museum ( ; Shuinan Minsuguan), another old residence consisting of bedchambers and threadbare exhibits. Towards the edge of the village, the Guixiu Lou ( ) is another notable building.

A further 500m down the stone path (and across the road) is forlorn Jingtai ( ), whose gap-toothed and largely non-Mandarin-speaking denizens are all surnamed either Liu ( ) or Li ( ).

Simple, peasant-family ( ; *nongjia*) accommodation (bed ¥50) is available in Luotiancun, but all three villages can be done as a day trip from Nanchang. Avoid eating on the main square – seek out one of the two family-run restaurants within Luotiancun itself.

Getting here is somewhat complicated. You'll need to take bus 136 to Anyi ( ; ¥10, one hour, frequent from 6am to 6pm) from the north

*tanzikou* bus stop (; *tanzikoubei*) in Nanchang; a taxi here should be about ¥10 to ¥20, depending on where you're coming from. Try to double-check the location first, however, as the Anyi service has changed in recent years. At the Anyi bus station, transfer to a bus to Shibi (; ¥4, 30 minutes, frequent), from where *sanlunche* (a pedicab) muster for bone-jarring trips to Luotiancun (¥8, 15 minutes). Alternatively, you can take a cab direct to Luotiancun from Anyi for about ¥50.

## Wuyuan


 0793 / POP 81,200

The countryside around Wuyuan is home to some of southeastern China's most immaculate views. Parcelled away in this hilly pocket is a scattered cluster of picturesque Huizhou villages, where old China remains preserved in enticing panoramas of ancient bridges, glittering rivers and stone-flagged alleyways.

Despite lending its name to the entire area, Wuyuan itself is a far-from-graceful town and most travellers will need no excuses before immersing themselves in the region's tantalising bucolic charms way out beyond the shabby suburbs.

Wengong Lu () is the main north–south drag.




### Tours

Hire an English-speaking guide (¥200 per day) and driver at the CITS office ( Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe;  0798-862 9999) in nearby Jingdezhen.

### Sleeping

It's preferable to stay in one of the villages, but if you arrive in the middle of the night there are several hotels along Wengong Lu.

Yingdu Binguan HOTEL \$

(  734 8620; 13 Wengong Nanlu; 13 s & tw ¥100;  ) Centrally located hotel in reasonable condition. More expensive rooms come with a computer.

Tianma Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Tianma Dajiudian; 📍 736 7123; [www.wytm.cn](http://www.wytm.cn); 119 Wengong Beilu; 119 d week/weekend ¥188/228; 📶📶) This smart hotel is the most comfortable option in the area; room rates can jump up to ¥688 during high season (March, April and major holidays).

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 1 Dongxi Lu) The 24-hour ATM accepts international cards.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Tianyou Donglu & Lianxi Lu)

**People's Hospital** ( Renmin Yiyuan; Wengong Nanlu)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 2 Huancheng Beilu; 🕒 8-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm)

**Qihang Wangba** ( Wengong Nanlu; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr) Internet cafe; located next to the People's Hospital.

### **i** Getting There & Away

The Wuyuan **main bus station** (; Wuyuan qichezhan) is located west of town. A motorbike or taxi here should cost you ¥5; public buses are ¥1. Note that buses that arrive at night (such as the Shanghai one) will drop you off at the north end of town, not at the station. Buses depart for the following destinations:

**Hangzhou** ¥130, 3½ hours, four daily

**Jiujiang** ¥90, 2½ hours, three daily

**Nanchang (Qingshan north bus station)** ¥105, 3½ hours, four daily

**Shanghai south** ¥194, six hours, two daily

**Shangrao** ¥58, four hours, frequent

**Tunxi** ¥45, 2½ hours, three daily

**Yushan (Sanqing Shan)** ¥47, 2½ hours, two daily

## **Around Wuyuan**

Wuyuan has become a massively popular destination with domestic tourists in the past few years, but as it's such a large area, it's possible to escape the tour buses with a little bit of determination. However, do not underestimate the number of visitors that can squeeze into these villages during high season (particularly when the rapeseed flowers

are in bloom). If you visit during a holiday, expect mega crowds and book your hotel as far as possible in advance.

There are two main ticketing options: either a five-day pass (adult/student ¥180/126), which grants you admission to 12 sights, or single tickets (per ticket ¥60) at each village. The pass covers a number of villages (only the most interesting are listed here), including Sixi/Yancun, Little Likeng (Xiao Likeng) and Xiaoqi, plus various other sights such as Wolong Valley.

Big Likeng (Da Likeng) has a separate admission fee. The lesser-known outer villages – including Guankeng, Lingjiao, Qingyuan and Changxi – were free at the time of writing. They are best visited in two days.

## Around Wùyuan



### **i** Getting Around

Transport throughout the region can be frustrating as villages are spaced apart and are not always linked by reliable bus connections. Hiring a motorbike ( ; *modi*), taxi or minivan in either Wuyuan or Qinghua is easier than getting a bus. Motorbikes can go as low as ¥120 (plus lunch for your driver) for a full day, which should give you enough time to get to four or five villages. Taxis and minivans generally start out asking around ¥300 for a full day, but they may go as low as ¥200 when business is slow. Drivers may balk if you ask them to visit a mix of the eastern and northern villages; shop around if

necessary.

If you're spending the night in a village, you can also haggle for one-way trips. Individual trips by motorbike from Wuyuan include Qinghua (¥20), Little Likeng (¥15) or outer villages (¥60).

If you take the bus, be aware there are three possible departure points, depending on where you want to go. From Wuyuan's main bus station you can get to the northern villages:

**Big Likeng** ¥16, one hour, two daily

**Guankeng** ¥23, 50 minutes, two daily

**Lingjiao** ¥19, two hours, two daily

From in front of Wuyuan's old north bus station (; lao beizhan), at the northern end of Wengong Beilu, frequent buses run to Qinghua and various eastern villages:

**Little Likeng** ¥5, 20 minutes, frequent (6.40am to 4.20pm)

**Qinghua** ¥10, 30 minutes, frequent (6.30am to 5.30pm)

**Xiaoqi** ¥15, one hour, frequent (6.40am to 4.20pm)

To catch transport to Qingyuan, you need to go to the fruit market (; *shuiguo shichang*) and ask around – it should cost about ¥30. Before you actually go to any of these places, make sure to confirm first, as departure points change.

## EASTERN VILLAGES

### LITTLE LIKENG

The most picturesque village in the area, Little Likeng (Xiao Likeng) enjoys a stupendous riverside setting, hung with lanterns, threaded by tight alleys and tightly bound together by quaint bridges. Come nighttime, Little Likeng is even more serene, its riverside lanes glowing softly under red lanterns and old-fashioned street lamps.

Little Likeng's highly photogenic focal point hinges on the confluence of its two streams, traversed by the bump of the 300-year-old Tongji Bridge (; Tongji Qiao) and signposted by the Shenming Pavilion (; Shenming Ting), one of the village's signature sights, its wooden benches polished smooth with age.

Among the *baicai* (Chinese cabbage) draped from bamboo poles



and chunks of cured meat hanging out in the air from crumbling, mildewed buildings, notable structures include the Patina House (; Tonglu Fang), erected during Qing times by a copper merchant, the rebuilt old stage (; *guxitai*), where Chinese opera and performances are still held during festivals, and spirit walls erected on the riverbank to shield residents from the sound of cascading water.

Cross one of the bridges just beyond the old stage and take the stone-flagged path up the hill, past an old camphor tree and terraced fields, through bamboo and firs, and down to the river and the Li Zhicheng Residence (; Li Zhicheng Guju), the residence of a military scholar from the Southern Song. Walk in any direction and you will hit the countryside.

Accommodation is easy to find; try the helpful Brook Hotel (Xiaoqiao Yizhan; 📞 138 7934 9519; d ¥100; 🌐📶📶) near the Tongji Bridge, where at least one person speaks English, or the teahouse Guangming Chalou ( 📞 0793-737 0999; d ¥80; 🌐📶), overlooking the river and just past Shenming Pavilion.

Buses drop you off at the village turn-off, from where it's a five-minute walk to the ticket office.

## XIAOQI

About 36km from Wuyuan, Xiaoqi dates back to 787. There are actually two villages here: the tacky and overcrowded lower Xiaoqi () and the more pleasant upper Xiaoqi (), where you'll find a fascinating old tea factory (; *chuantong shengtai cha zuofang*).

## QINGYUAN

If you've had enough of the jostling tour groups, the isolated village of Qingyuan is a good place to escape to. It doesn't have the architectural beauty of the other villages in the Huizhou area; it's quite poor and looks like it always has been. But unlike most of the surrounding villages, it is entirely undeveloped and has never been repackaged for the tour bus crowd. Infinitely more peaceful, a trip here will nonetheless help you to appreciate the benefits of organised tourism – namely the economic ones for local villagers – in China. A popular destination for independent Chinese travellers, you can easily

find accommodation (homestay per person ¥20) here; otherwise hire a driver and visit as a day trip.

## NORTHERN VILLAGES

### QINGHUA

Qinghua is the largest and least-captivating place in Wuyuan, but because of its central location, it can make a good base. The main sight is the 800-year-old southern Song-dynasty Rainbow Bridge (; Caihong Qiao), which is somewhat underwhelming, but you can also wander along the old street Qinghua Laojie (), a dilapidated portrait of time-worn stone architecture with carved wood shopfronts, lintels, decorative architraves and old folk stripping bamboo. The hospitable Laojie Kezhan ( 📞 0793-724 2359; 355 Qinghua Laojie; 355 s/d ¥50/60, 🌳 ) has basic, clean rooms.

Buses here depart for Sikou (¥3, 10 minutes), Wuyuan (¥6, 30 minutes) and Jingdezhen (¥22, two hours, two daily), among other places.

### SIXI & YANCUN

The village of Sixi is a delightful little place favoured by film crews, with the prow-shaped, covered wooden Tongji Bridge (; Tongji Qiao) at its entrance, dating back to the 15th century and adorned with a large *bagua* (eight trigrams) symbol. Follow the self-guided tour past the numerous Qing residences, many of which are open to the public, and make sure not to miss the large Jingxu Hall (; Jingxu Tang) upstream. A 15-minute walk downstream (back towards Sikou) brings you to Yancun, Sixi's more homely sibling. To get here, take any Wuyuan–Qinghua bus (¥3) and get off at Sikou (). Motorbikes (if you can find one) will take you the rest of the way for ¥5.

## WALKING WUYUAN

Many of Wuyuan's villages are linked by timeworn postal roads (; *yidao*) that today provide hikers with the perfect excuse to explore the area's gorgeous backcountry: imagine wild azalea, wisteria and iris blooms dotting steep hills cut by cascading streams and you're off

to the right start. You'll have to find a villager willing to guide you, and be forewarned that it can be quite difficult – but not impossible – to arrange without Chinese-language skills. For a half-/full-day hike, figure on spending about ¥60/120, including meal(s) for your guide, and ¥20 for accommodation (if you strand him). Note: do not hike from one village to another without a guide; you will get lost.

You can start by asking around for a guide in the village you're staying in. ( X. ?/ *Wo yao buxing qu X. Zheli you meiyou yi ge ren keyi dai wo qu ?/I want to hike to X. Can someone here guide me?*)

Recommended hikes:

» **Guankeng to Lingjiao** ( - ; 8km, minimum three hours) A straightforward hike over a high ridge, from one remote village to another. You'll need at least two days. A 9am bus leaves Wuyuan for Guankeng (¥20, two hours). That night you can arrange a simple homestay ( ; *zhu nongjia*; about ¥20) in either Lingjiao or Hongguan, 30 minutes' walk down the road. Buses leave the next morning for Wuyuan (¥16, two hours).

» **Qingyuan to Xiaoqi** ( - ; 12km, minimum four hours) This walk follows a river valley and passes a mixture of terraced fields and secluded backcountry. It can be done either way, though public transport to Xiaoqi is easiest.

If all this sounds too complicated for your tastes, remember that you can simply walk into the tea terraces or rapeseed fields outside any of the villages for a much shorter and equally beautiful day hike.

## WOLONG VALLEY

A 1½-hour hiking trail through Wolong Valley (Wolong Gu) follows a boulder-strewn stream up into the hills past waterfalls and pretty scenery until you reach the main sight: two giant waterfalls (White Dragon and Big Dragon), cascading down sheer cliff faces. Although it can quickly get crowded, it's a nice spot for an easy hike. Two to four buses run here daily from Wuyuan (¥16, one hour), but it's easiest to reach with your own driver.

## BIG LIKENG

This riverside hamlet of around 300 homesteads is popularly called Da Likeng (admission ¥60), not to be confused with Little Likeng to the east. Perhaps the most splendid aspect of a visit here is traversing the hilly countryside from Qinghua, a beautiful landscape of fields and valleys cut by shimmering streams.

The village itself is only of moderate interest and is a private enterprise that exists outside the official Wuyuan network; however,

because of this, it is less crowded. As in Qingyuan, several local households have opened their doors to travellers, with simple beds available from around ¥30 per night.

## Sanqing Shan

📍 0793

Imagine a hiking trail built into a sheer rock face, looking out onto a forest of fantastical granite spires and a gorgeous canopy sprinkled with white rhododendron blooms. This is one of the many walks you can do at Sanqing Shan ([www.sanqingshan.com.cn](http://www.sanqingshan.com.cn); adult/student ¥150/80), one of the most underrated national parks in eastern China. It's underrated not just because of the unique scenery, but also because it's relatively unknown and less crowded than other Chinese mountains.

Unlike its more famous neighbour to the north, Huangshan, Sanqing Shan has a spiritual legacy and has been a place of retreat for Taoist adepts for centuries. The name Sanqing means 'The Three Pure Ones', in reference to the three main peaks, which are believed to resemble Taoism's three most important deities. Views are spectacular in any season, reaching a climax when the rhododendrons start to bloom in late May.

There are enough trails that you could easily spend two days up here, though a long day hike (roughly 13km) is definitely doable. There are two main access points: the southern route (; *nan bu*) and the eastern route (; *dong bu*). Yujing Peak is the highest point in the area, with an altitude of 1820m. Maps (¥5) are easy to find in the summit area.

### Sights & Activities

Nanqing Garden HIKING

(; Nanqing Yuan) The main summit area is known as the Nanqing Garden, a looping trail that wends beneath strange pinnacles and connects the southern and eastern routes.

West Coast Trail HIKING

(; Xi Hai'an) From the Nanqing Garden loop you can take the

spectacularly exposed West Coast Trail, which was built into the cliff face at an average altitude of 1600m. This trail eventually leads to the secluded Taoist Sanqing Temple (; Sanqing Gong), established during the Ming dynasty. It's one of the few Taoist temples in Jiangxi to have survived the Cultural Revolution.

### Sunshine Coast Trail HIKING

(; Yangguang An) Returning from the temple, the Sunshine Coast Trail winds through a forest of ancient rhododendrons, sweet chestnut, bamboo, magnolia and pine, and even features a glass-floored observation platform. There are lots of steps here; make sure you take it on the way back from the temple.

### Sleeping

You can sleep in three areas: on the summit, at the trailheads (south or east) or in the town of Yushan. Prices rise on weekends; reserve if you want to sleep at the trailheads or on the summit.

## YUSHAN

 angfang Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 255 5909; off Renmin Dadao; s/d ¥60/88; 🌟📞 ) The best of the simple family-run guesthouses near the bus station; some rooms even come with computers. Signs outside advertise prices as low as ¥30; however, you'll first get quotes closer to ¥90. It's on a side street on the left if you're coming from the bus station.

Pengfa Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Pengfa Binguan; 📍 220 6666; Xiufeng Lu; tw from ¥130; 🌟📞 ) Dependable midrange rooms, though you may need to haggle on the rate. Make two lefts after you exit the Yushan bus station; it's about a five-minute walk.

## AT THE TRAILHEADS

Sanqingshan International Resort HOTEL \$\$\$

( Sanqingshan Guoji Dujia Jiudian; 📍 223 3333; [www.sqshotel.com](http://www.sqshotel.com); tw from ¥2000; 🌟 ) Located at the southern trailhead, this is by far the nicest hotel in the Sanqing Shan area, with satellite TV and modern decor. Wi-fi in the lobby. Discounts of up to 50%.

Diwang Shanzhuang HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 213 7999; d from ¥280) Convenient rooms at the eastern trailhead.

## ON THE SUMMIT

If you have your own equipment, you can pitch tents near Sanqing Temple (a minimum 3km walk from the southern chairlift).

Rishang Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

( 📍 218 9377; r from ¥480) One of several summit hotels; a 10-minute walk past the top of the southern chairlift.

Nushen Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Nushen Jiudian; 📍 218 9366; r from ¥480) One of several summit hotels; a 20-minute walk past the top of the eastern chairlift.

### **i** Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Nongye Yinhang; Renmin Dadao) Twenty-four hour ATM about a 10-minute walk from the Yushan bus station.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Sanqing Shan is accessed via the town of Yushan ( ), accessible by both bus and train. If you can't get to Yushan directly, go to the nearby city of Shangrao ( ) instead and then take a connecting train or bus (note that buses to Yushan do not leave from Shangrao's long-distance bus station – you'll need to catch a cab or motorcycle to the drop-off point).

#### Bus

Yushan bus station ( ; qichezhan) connections:

**Hangzhou** ¥90, four hours, four daily

**Nanchang** ¥72, four to five hours, two daily

**Shangrao** ¥14, one hour, frequent

**Wuyuan** ¥45, 2½ hours, two daily

#### Train

Yushan is on the Shanghai–Nanchang line. A taxi to the train station ( ; huochezhan) costs ¥10. Destinations from Sanqing Shan include the following:

**Hangzhou South** from ¥45, 4½ hours, six daily

**Nanchang** ¥22 to ¥44, 4½ hours, four daily

**Shanghai South** hard seat/sleeper ¥76/134, seven hours, five daily

**Shangrao** ¥3.50 to ¥10, 20 minutes, seven daily

**Yingtan** ¥12 to ¥24, two hours, seven daily

### **i** Getting Around


Minibuses (¥15, 80 minutes, 6.30am to 5.20pm) run from the Yushan bus station to the start of both the eastern route ( ) and southern route ( ) – make sure you specify your destination. A **chairlift** ( one way/ return ¥70/125) leaves from both places. Otherwise, the porter's trail – a sweaty 1½-hour walk (2.5km) that snakes under the chairlift – ascends the southern route.

The eastern route has a more spectacular chairlift but is further from the West Coast Trail; if you're walking, the southern route is a much shorter hike.

## **JINGDEZHEN: CHINA'S CHINA**

Jingdezhen ( ) is a name known to many: it's where China's much-coveted porcelain is fired up, although the imperial kilns that manufactured ceramics for the occupants of the Forbidden City were long ago extinguished. With more china here than the rest of China put together, travellers can rapidly feel glazed: Jingdezhen is hardly an oil painting and is strictly for those in the business. If you're a porcelain buff, visit Shanghai instead: the collection at the Shanghai Museum is China's best, and shops such as Spin and Yu sell standout pieces in all styles.

## **Longhu Shan**

 0701

From powerful Taoist priests to the opening scenes of the martial-arts novel *Outlaws of the Marsh*, Longhu Shan (Dragon and Tiger Mountain) left a distinct mark on traditional Chinese culture in its heyday during the Song, Yuan and Ming dynasties. The Cultural Revolution may have wiped clean the physical traces of this past, but with a setting reminiscent of a landscape painting – a winding river, cluster of red sandstone peaks, grazing water buffaloes and solitary

herons – this is as good a place as any to discover the lush Jiangxi countryside.

During the Song dynasty (960–1279), Longhu Shan became the centre of the emergent Zhengyi sect, which claimed to represent the teachings of religious Taoism's founder, Zhang Daoling (34–156). Together with the Quanzhen sect, Zhengyi Taoism was one of the most prominent schools of Taoism in late imperial China, and there were once over 100 temples and monasteries here. Zhengyi Taoists were active in society, selling protective talismans (still for sale) and performing religious services for the general populace. The head of the Zhengyi sect was known as the Celestial Master, a lineage that was traced back to Zhang Daoling.

## Sights & Activities

The Longhu Shan scenic area encompasses 200 sq km, most of which is located along the eastern bank of the Luxi River. A ticket ([www.longhushan.com.cn](http://www.longhushan.com.cn); without/with raft trip ¥175/225) includes admission to seven sites and a raft ride, as well as transport on miniature trains (main entrance to Zhengyi Temple) and shuttle buses (from Zhengyi Temple to the Residence of the Celestial Masters). To get the most out of your visit, narrow your sightseeing options to two main areas: the Residence of the Celestial Masters and Elephant's Trunk Hill.

At the main entrance are two small museums, the Taoist Museum (🕒 8am-5pm), with information in Chinese only, and the Geology Museum (🕒 8am-5pm), with detailed explanations of Longhu Shan's formation.

### Residence of the Celestial Masters TAOIST TEMPLE

(; Tianshi Fu) About 28km from Longhu Shan's main entrance, this is the largest and best-preserved temple in the area. It was originally built in the Song dynasty as Zhengyi's main temple complex, thoroughly renovated in the Qing dynasty and then again in the 1990s. The oldest building still standing is the Sanctuary of Triple Introspection (; San Xing Tang), which dates to 1865. To get here, walk 15 minutes through old Shangqing village from the shuttle drop-off. Another 500m along Fuqian Jie () is an abandoned Catholic



church (; Tianzhujiào Táng), a wonderfully bizarre building and strange relic of colonial missionary days.

### Shangqing Palace TAOIST TEMPLE

(; Da Shangqing Gong) Five hundred metres past the Catholic church, this temple complex was almost entirely destroyed by fire; only the entrance gate, first courtyard (with the drum and bell tower) and a few side halls remain. A mythic spot, Shangqing Palace is both the alleged site of the residence of the first Celestial Master (Zhang Daoling) as well as the place from which the 108 spirits were accidentally released in *Outlaws of the Marsh*.

### Elephant's Trunk Hill SCENIC AREA

(; Xiangbi Shan) Close to Longhu Shan's main entrance, this is the first stop you'll reach on the miniature train. Here you can hike a loop past rock formations and rebuilt temples, then descend to the river from where you'll be able to spy Longhu Shan's hanging coffins (; *xuan guan*) on the opposite side of the bank. About 2500 years ago, the original inhabitants of the area, the Guyue, buried their dead in grottoes located high up on the cliff face. A hanging coffin performance (it's a liberal reinterpretation) is staged four times a day here at 10am, noon, 2pm and 4pm; a ferry also crosses the river for free.

## Sleeping & Eating

Hotels and restaurants are conveniently based near the main entrance. There are smaller restaurants in Shangqing village, at the opposite end of the scenic area.

### Rongsheng Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( Rongsheng Binguan; 📍 665 7666; tw week/weekend ¥130/160; 🌿🍷) Tasteful and surprisingly sophisticated, the Rongsheng has hardwood floors, flat-screen TVs and traditional Chinese-style sinks in the bathrooms. It's opposite the park entrance.

### Longhu Shan Nongjiale HOTEL \$

( 📍 665 9506; 39 Xianrencheng Lu; 39 d/tw ¥60/80; 🌿) Down a side street, this clean and friendly place is more a homestay than a hotel.

## Information

There are **internet cafes** (; wangba) and a 24-hour ATM across from the train station in Yingtan.

### **i** Getting There & Around

Longhu Shan is near the city of Yingtan (), which is on the Shanghai–Nanchang railway line. To get to Longhu Shan from Yingtan, take bus K2, which runs from in front of the train station, past the bus station and on to the main entrance (¥3, 25 minutes, 6.15am to 6.30pm).

Services from Yingtan Train Station (; huoche zhan) include the following:

**Hangzhou** D series train, hard/soft seat ¥142/171, 3½ to four hours, five daily

**Hangzhou** hard seat ¥70, five to seven hours, frequent

**Nanchang** ¥12 to ¥43, one to two hours, frequent

**Shanghai Hongqiao** D series train, hard/soft seat ¥197/236, 5½ hours, four daily

**Shanghai South** ¥94 to ¥164, 7½ to 9½ hours, frequent

**Shangrao** ¥19 to ¥34, one to two hours, frequent

Services from the bus station (; keyun zhan) are less practical:

**Nanchang (Xujiafang bus station)** ¥50, two hours, hourly

**Shangrao** ¥36, two hours, hourly

**Wuyuan** ¥73, 3½ hours, four daily

## Lushan

☞ 0792

One of the great early cultural centres of Chinese civilisation, the dramatic fog-enshrouded cliffs of Lushan (adult/student ¥180/135) attracted large numbers of monastics and thinkers for some 1500 years. The monk Hui Yuan, one of the first Chinese teachers to emphasise the importance of meditation, founded Pure Land Buddhism here in the 4th century AD. His contemporary and acquaintance, Tao Yuanming, who lived at the foot of the mountain, is generally regarded as China's first landscape poet.

Numerous other writers resided on Lushan's slopes in the centuries

that followed – notably Bai Juyi, Zhu Xi and Su Dongpo – but unfortunately the Taiping Rebellion destroyed almost everything of note in the mid-19th century. Western colonialists and missionaries followed in the rebels' wake and built the retreat town of Guling (Kuling; altitude 1167m), where Nobel Prize–winner Pearl S Buck spent her childhood summers and Mervyn Peake (author of the *Gormenghast* novels) was born.

Following the CCP's rise to power, the European-style villas of Guling were subsequently transformed into an infamous political conference centre, which, together with the stunning scenery, is what most visitors today come to see.

## Sights & Activities

The main attraction here is exploring the mountain roads and paths on your own – generally, any place you have to walk to will be significantly less crowded. The Xinhua Bookshop ( Xinhua Shudian; 11 Guling Zhengjie) sells detailed maps showing roads and walking paths.

Lushan's old places of worship include the Protestant Church ( Jidujiao Tang; 23 Hexi Lu) and Catholic Church ( Tianzhujiao Tang; 12 Xiangshan Lu).

### Meilu Villa HISTORIC BUILDING

( Meilu Bieshu; 180 Hedong Lu; admission ¥25, incl with Zhou Enlai Residence; 🕒 8am-6pm) Built by Chiang Kaishek in the 1930s and named after his wife, Song Meiling.

### Zhou Enlai Residence HISTORIC BUILDING

( Zhou Enlai Jinian Shi; admission incl with Meilu Villa) The former premier's residence stands defiantly across the stream from the Meilu Villa.

### Site of the Lushan Conference MUSEUM

( Lushan Huiyi Jiuzhi; 504 Hexi Lu; admission ¥50; 🕒 8am-5pm) Also called the People's Hall, this was the venue for the CCP's historic confabs in 1959 and 1970.

 Lushan Museum MUSEUM

( Lushan Bowuguan; 1 Lulin Lu; ☎ 8am-5.30pm) Mao's former residence, littered with paraphernalia detailing the Lushan communist connection.

## Hiking

One excellent destination for hikers is Wu Lao Feng (; Five Old Men Peak; 1358m). A bit less remote but a favourite with photographers is the Three Step Waterfall (; Sandie Quan).

At Lushan's northwestern rim, the land falls away abruptly to spectacular views across Jiangxi's densely settled plains. A long walking track south (about one hour from Guling) around these precipitous slopes leads to Dragon Head Cliff (; Longshou Ya), a natural rock platform tilted above an eye-popping vertical drop.

## Sleeping

July and August is the Lushan peak season, and if you are coming then – particularly on a weekend – you should book in advance. Outside of this time period, it's quite possible to just show up and find a room.

Lushan Yuntian Villa HOTEL \$\$

( Lushan Yuntian Bieshu; 📞 829 3555; [www.lsyts.com](http://www.lsyts.com); Guling Zhengjie; d Jul & Aug ¥760, rest of year ¥240; 📶📶) A move away from Lushan's typically musty and worn lodging options, this place offers old-villa atmosphere with roomy, fresh accommodation and a crisp finish.

Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Daziran Qingnian Lushe; 📞 829 6327; [www.yhalushan.com](http://www.yhalushan.com); 1 Hubei Lu; 1 dm/d ¥35/120; 📶📶📶) The only decoration here is the graffiti on the walls, but the secluded hillside location is ideal. It's about a 1km walk from the bus station; from Guling Zhengjie turn left onto Henan Lu and continue for about 600m.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 13 Hemian Jie) Change money or use the 24-hour ATM here.

**Internet cafe** ( Jisu Wangba; Guling Zhengjie; per hr ¥3; ☎ 8am-midnight) Near the intersection with Dalin Lu, at the far end of Guling

Zhengjie.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 20 Guling Zhengjie)

### **i** Getting There & Around

Travellers generally arrive in Lushan from the city of Jiujiang (). Buses (¥15, one hour, 6.50am to 4.30pm) run hourly to Lushan from Jiujiang's long-distance bus station, dropping off passengers in front of a small ticket office on Guling Jie. In summer it's a good idea to book your return seat upon arrival.

There is also one bus to Nanchang's Qingshan north bus station (¥50, 2½ hours, 2.30pm) that leaves from the Lushan bus station on Hexi Lu; sometimes there are more in summer.

Jiujiang is easily accessible from Nanchang by both bus and train. Jiujiang's long-distance bus station (; changtu qiche zhan) has connections to the following cities:

**Nanchang** ¥30, two hours, half-hourly

**Nanjing** ¥149, 6½ hours, hourly

**Shanghai** ¥218, 10 hours, three daily

**Wuhan** ¥90, four hours, hourly

**Wuyuan** ¥90, three hours, six daily

WORTH A TRIP

## **LONGNAN**

In the deep south of Jiangxi lies the rarely visited Hakka country, a region of lush hills peppered with fortified villages, unusually built in rectangular shapes, unlike the mostly circular *tulou* (roundhouse) of Fujian. Although there are estimates of some 370 such dwellings in Longnan ( County, travellers can safely narrow down the choices to two main areas, both of which can be visited from the busy town of Longnan.

Built by a lumber merchant in the early 19th century, Guanxi New Fort ( Guanxi Xin Wei; admission ¥10) is the largest and most ornate fortified village in the county. Nearby is the Hakka Wine Castle ( Kejia Jiubao; admission ¥15), built at the same time by a rich wine producer. A bus from Binjiang Sq in Longnan runs to Guanxi (¥5, 40 minutes, hourly), passing by the Hakka Wine Castle

(¥3).

A number of crumbling old fortified villages lie in the vicinity of Yangcun ( ) town, including the 350-year-old Yanyi Wei ( admission ¥10), the tallest such residence in the county (four storeys).

However, more striking is nearby Wudang Shan ( admission ¥15; ☺ 8am-6pm), a group of weathered sandstone domes poking above subtropical forest (not to be confused with Hubei's Wudang Shan).

To get to Yangcun, take a bus (¥11, 1¼ hours, frequent) from 99 Longding Dadao ( 99 ) in Longnan. Buses in both directions pass Wudang Shan on the way; drivers will let you off at the entrance.

Trains to Longnan run from Nanchang (¥134, 7½ hours) and Guangzhou (seat/hard sleeper ¥87/177, 5½ to 6½ hours); otherwise take a bus from Nanchang to Ganzhou (¥120, 4½ hours), where you can transfer to a Longnan-bound bus (¥49, two hours). Two daily buses run to Guangzhou (¥90, five hours). Bus 1 (¥1.5) runs from the train station past the bus station to the centre of town. If you're interested in getting to/from the *tulou* in Fujian, it won't be easy. You can transfer to a Fujian-bound bus in Ganzhou (eg heading to Yong'an), but after a minimum five-hour trip across the border, you'll need to transfer again to get to Yongding.

In Longnan, you can stay at the Xinxing Binguan ( 📞 353 6288; Binjiang Sq; r ¥70-138; 🌐📧).

Lushan's myriad footpaths and bus-bound tour groups make explorations on foot the most enjoyable way to go. However, there is also a hop-on, hop-off **shuttle service** ( luyou guanguang che; 7-day pass ¥80) that goes to most sights and can be convenient – the main drawback is that you won't escape the crowds. Buy the pass at the bus station that serves Nanchang. Taxi service is of no use here as private vehicles are barred from entering most roads. Lushan has several cable cars (return ¥80).



# Hunan

POP 66 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Changsha](#)

[Shaoshan](#)

[Heng Shan](#)

[Wulingyuan & Zhangjiajie](#)

[Dehang](#)

[Fenghuang](#)

[Hongjiang Old Town](#)

---

## Why Go?

Communist Party cadres might wax lyrical about the sacred standing of Hunan (湖南) in the annals of Chinese history, being as it is the birthplace of Mao Zedong, but it is Hunan's dramatic scenery that is the real draw.

An astonishing landscape of massive, isolated mountain ranges and jagged, karst peaks covers more than 80% of the province. These geological spectacles rise up from the impossibly green vales fed by the tributaries in the fertile Yangzi River basin. People have long made a home amid these natural wonders, taming the rocky slopes into

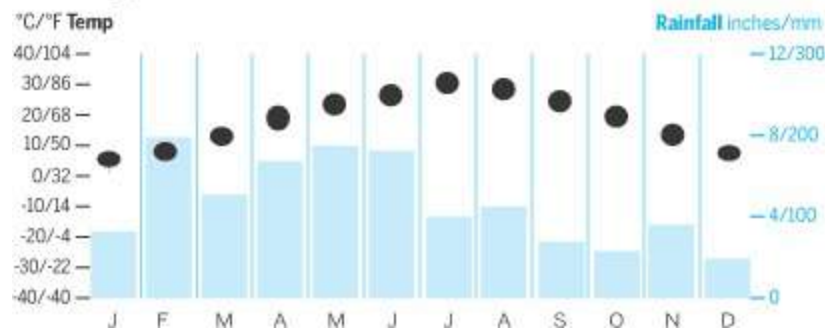
terraces of lush fields. Their distinctive cultures live on in charming hillside villages and lively riverside towns.

Native sons and scenery aside, let's not forget the food. Hunan's fiery cuisine has mouths (and eyes) watering all over the world, and it tastes even better on its home turf.

---

## When to Go

### Chángshā



**Apr–May** Spring awakens in Wulingyuan's subtropical forest and karst peaks.

**Sep & Oct** The waters flow from Heng Shan's stunning vistas.

**Nov–Dec** Tour groups thin out on Fenghuang's ancient streets.

---

## Best Walks

- » Golden Whip Stream Scenic Route ([Click here](#))
- » Tianzi Shan Nature Reserve ([Click here](#))
- » Nine Dragon Stream Scenic Area ([Click here](#))
- » Fanyin Valley ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Architecture

- » Fenghuang's *diaojiatou* (stilt houses) ([Click here](#))
- » Hongjiang Old Town ([Click here](#))
- » Mao's childhood house ([Click here](#))
- » Tianxin Ge ([Click here](#))





## Hunan Highlights

- 1 Enter another geological dimension in **Wulingyuan** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Absorb the crumbling charms of ancient **Fenghuang** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Hike into the extraordinary karst scenery surrounding the Miao village of **Dehang** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Ascend sacred slopes through forests and waterfalls to **Heng**

## **Shan** ([Click here](#))

- 5 Dance like nobody's watching in Changsha's **bars** and **clubs** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Wander the age-old merchant streets in **Hongjiang Old Town** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Join the masses paying homage to Mao in **Shaoshan** ([Click here](#))

## **History**

During the Ming and Qing dynasties, Hunan was one of the empire's granaries, transporting vast quantities of rice to the embattled north. By the 19th century, land shortages and feudalism caused widespread unrest among farmers and hill-dwelling minorities. These economic disparities galvanised the Taiping Rebellion in the 1850s, ensuring widespread support by the 1920s for the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) and Hunan's Mao Zedong.

## **Climate**

Subtropical Hunan's mostly temperate climate averages 28°C in summer, and 6°C in its brief winter season. Monsoon rains fall from April to June, followed by high temperatures and humidity in July and August. The province's northern region sees more fickle weather and even winter snow.

## **Language**

Xiang (; Hunanese) is a northern Mandarin dialect with six to eight sub-dialects of its own commonly spoken in central and southwest Hunan. Gan (; Jiangxinese), another northern Mandarin dialect, is used in the east and south. In the border regions, you will hear a mosaic of other dialects and minority languages, such as Xiangyu and Ganyu.



### **Getting There & Around**

A high-speed rail line connecting Hunan to its provincial neighbours Hubei and Guangdong now runs along Hunan's eastern length through Yueyang, Changsha, Hengshan and Chenzhou. (Urban planners must be anticipating major sprawl judging by the often remote stations.) A network of convenient, older rail lines and

expressways spans the entire province. Airports at Changsha, Zhangjiajie and Huaihua bring every major city within a two-hour flight of the sights.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥550

\$\$\$ more than ¥550

### Eating

\$ less than ¥75

\$\$ ¥75 to ¥200

\$\$\$ more than ¥200

## Changsha

📍 0731 / POP 2.5 MILLION

For 3000 years, this city flourished steadily on the Xiang River's banks as a centre of agriculture and intellect. In the 1920s, it was still so much as it always had been that British philosopher Bertrand Russell compared it to 'a mediaeval town', but not long after, the Sino–Japanese War and a massive fire in 1938 consumed virtually all of old Changsha, leaving little of its early history. Changsha today is known mainly for sights relating to a revolutionary by the name of Mao.

# Chángshā



## Changsha

### Top Sights

[Changsha Municipal Museum](#) B1

### Sights

1 [Orange Isle](#) A1

2 [Tianxin Ge](#) B2

### Sleeping

3 [Guangsheng Fengjing Hotel](#) D1

4 [Jinjiang Inn](#) B1

5 [Lotus Huatian Hotel](#) C1

6 [Sheraton Changsha Hotel](#) B1

### Eating

7 [Carrefour](#) B1

8 [Huogongdian](#) C2

9 [Huogongdian](#) A2

10 [Sunriver Dumpling Restaurant](#) C1

11 [Xinhua Lou](#) D2

### Drinking

12 [Hualongchi Xiang](#) B2

13 [Jiefang Xilu](#) A2

14 [Taiping Jie](#) A2

## Transport

15 [Enjoy Going](#) B1

Gump's Teahouse (see 14)

## Sights

Most of Changsha's sights lie east of the river and close a half-hour early from late August through April.



Changsha Municipal Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shi Bowuguan; 📍 8224 2209; 538 Bayi Lu; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚗 1, 501) A colossal statue of Mao Zedong cast out of aluminium-magnesium alloy in Heilongjiang in 1968 affably greets you at the entrance. (Compare his carriage – arm aloft, heralding a new dawn – with more subdued statues erected post-reform.) It's the first clue that despite the paintings, ceramics and jade on display, this museum is really a shrine. Check out the huge portrait of a young Mao with shafts of light emanating from his head above the entrance.

The museum also houses the former site of the Hunan CCP Committee ( Zhong Gong Xiangqu Weiyuanhui Jiuzhi), where Mao lived from 1921 to 1923 with his first wife and mother-in-law while secretly running the local CCP. Bring a picture ID.

Hunan County No 1 Teachers' Training School HISTORIC SITE

( Diyi Shifan Xuexiao Jiuzhi; 📍 8515 7430; 356 Shuyuan Lu; admission ¥15; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm; 🚗 1, 122) Between 1913 and 1918, Mao studied here and returned to teach classics from 1920 to 1922. It's still a working college, and sometimes students keen to practise English will show you around Mao's dormitory and classrooms, the halls where he held his first political meetings, and the well where he drew water for his cold baths. Otherwise, there are a few English captions.

Tianxin Ge HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Heart of Heaven Pavilion; 📍 8489 1389; 3 Tianxin Lu; park admission free, pavilion ¥16; 🕒 8am-6pm, pavilion 7.30am-6pm; 🚗 202) The old city walls were built of rammed earth in 202 BC,

reinforced with stone in AD 1372, and finally demolished in 1928 save for this section. It's a popular place to escape the summer heat.

### Yuelu Academy HISTORIC SITE

( Yuelu Shuyuan; 📍 8882 3764; Lushan Nanlu; admission ¥30; 🕒 7.30am-6pm; 🚪 202) Students have been cramming for exams at the base of Yuelu Mountain west of the river since AD 976, when the academy was established as one of China's four institutions of higher learning. The Song-era grounds are now part of Hunan University. By the entrance is Hexi Pavilion (Hexi Tai), once on Yuelu's summit, which assembles the writings of some of China's great minds, including a poem of conversing sonnets collaboratively composed by the Confucian scholars Zhu Xi and Zhang Shi.

### Orange Isle PARK

#### [Offline map](#)

( Juzi Zhou; 📍 8861 4640; 🕒 24hr; 🚪 3) The most famous of the city's parks is a 5km-long sliver in the Xiang River. A reflective 32-year-old Mao immortalised it in 'Changsha', probably his best regarded poem, after standing at its southern tip and looking west towards Yuelu Mountain one autumn day. A towering granite bust of a youthful Chairman with flowing locks now stands at the spot – but faces in a new direction. Catch a sightseeing trolley (guanguang diandong che; ticket ¥20; 🕒 7.30am-8.30pm) at the entrance and skip the run up of manicured lawns before the main attraction.



### Hunan Provincial Museum MUSEUM

( Hunan Sheng Bowuguan; 📍 8451 4630; [www.hnmuseums.com](http://www.hnmuseums.com); 50 Dongfeng Lu; admission free; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚪 113, 136) This first-rate, not-to-be-missed museum is closed for renovations through the end of 2015. Until then, select pieces, including some from the astounding collection of relics uncovered from the 2100-year-old Western Han tombs of Mawangdui, will tour national museums.

## Sleeping

Changsha is short on decent budget options. You can find basic rooms clustered around the train station, but you get what you pay for.

Changsha – Hunan International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Changsha Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 8299 0202; [www.hnhostel.com](http://www.hnhostel.com); 61 Gongshang Xiang; 61 dm ¥35-45, s/d/tr ¥108/138/168; 🚶🌳🏠)

Tucked away down a quiet, tree-lined street, the only centrally located hostel in town has clean, airy dorm rooms and doubles. There's a nice garden area and knowledgeable staff. The main downside is the limited hours for hot showers. Take bus 136 from the train station to the Xiadalong ( ) stop on Dongfeng Lu and follow the YHA signs. Similarly priced but much more compact rooms can be found at the hostel's new branch west of the river, Yuelu Mountain International Youth Hostel (📞 8536 8418; 50 Xinmin Lushan Huaqiao Cun; 50 ).

Lotus Huatian Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Furong Huatian Dajiudian; 📞 8440 1888; fax 8440 1889; 176 Wuyi Dadao; s/d ¥398/498, ste ¥988 plus 10% service charge; 📞🌳🏠) The ageing concrete and glass exterior fails to impress but inside is a spick-and-span, well-run hotel. Discounts of 25% make this a comfortable midrange option, especially if you get a room on the newly fixed up 7th or 8th floors.

Sheraton Changsha Hotel LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xilaideng Jiudian; 📞 8488 8888; 478 Furong Zhonglu; 478 s & d ¥1238 plus 15% service charge; 🚶🌳🏠📶) The finest hotel in Changsha offers top-notch service and stylish rooms with plush beds. There's also a spa, gym, pool, and Cantonese, Hunan and Italian restaurants. Rates change daily, so you might catch a deal in slack periods.

Guangsheng Fengjing Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guangsheng Fengjing Jiudian; 📞 8217 9999; 309 Chezhan Zhonglu; s & d ¥288-348, tr ¥388; 🌳🏠) A standard Chinese cheapie popular with domestic tour groups. The tiny bathrooms have seen better days but the rooms are clean and the location opposite the train station handy. Discounts up to 50%.

Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Zhixing Binguan; 📞 8828 1888; 1 Dongfeng Lu; 1 s/d

¥169/209; 🌸@) Generic but in a good way. Near the centre of town with leafy Lieshi Park steps away.

## MAO: THE GREAT HELMSMAN

---

Mao Zedong was born in the village of Shaoshan in 1893, the son of 'wealthy' peasants. Mao worked beside his father on the 8-hectare family farm from age six and was married by 14.

His life appeared settled. He later credited a pamphlet a teacher gave him describing the colonisation of Asia as awakening his political consciousness. At 16, he convinced his father to let him attend middle school in Changsha. In the city, Mao discovered Sun Yatsen's revolutionary secret society. When the Qing dynasty collapsed that year, Mao joined the republican army but soon quit, thinking the revolution was over.

At the Hunan County No 1 Teachers' Training School ([Click here](#)), Mao began following the Soviet socialism movement. He put an ad in a Changsha newspaper 'inviting young men interested in patriotic work to contact me', and among those who responded were Liu Shaoqi, who would become president of the People's Republic of China (PRC), and Xiao Chen, who would be a founding member of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP).

Mao graduated in 1918 and went to work as an assistant librarian at Peking University, where he befriended more future major CCP figures. By the time he returned to teach in Changsha, Mao was active in communist politics. Unlike orthodox Marxists, Mao saw peasants as the lifeblood of the revolution. The CCP formed in 1921, and soon included unions of peasants, workers and students. Vengeful warlords compelled Mao to flee to Guangzhou.

In April 1927, following Kuomintang leader Chiang Kaishek's attack on communists, Mao was dispatched to Changsha to organise what became the 'Autumn Harvest Uprising'. Mao's army scaled Jinggang Shan to embark on a guerrilla war. The campaign continued until the Long March in October 1934, a 9600km retreat from which Mao emerged the CCP leader.

Mao forged a fragile alliance with the Kuomintang to expel the Japanese, and from 1936 to 1948 the two sides engaged in betrayals, conducting a civil war simultaneously with WWII. Mao's troops eventually won, and the PRC was established 1 October 1949.

As chairman of the PRC, Mao embarked on radical campaigns to repair his war-ravaged country. In the mid-1950s he began to implement peasant-based and decentralised socialist developments. The outcome was the ill-fated Great Leap Forward and later the chaos of the Cultural Revolution (for details, [Click here](#)).

China saw significant gains in education, women's rights, and average life expectancy under Mao's rule; however, by most estimates between 40 and 70 million people died during that era of change. Five years after Mao's death, Deng Xiaoping famously announced Mao had been 70% right and 30% wrong in an effort, some say, to tear down Mao's cult of personality. Yet today, Mao remains revered as the man who united the country, and he is still commonly referred to as the 'Great Leader', 'Great Teacher' and 'supremely beloved Chairman'. His image hangs everywhere – in schools, taxis and living



rooms – but as a symbol of exactly what is the question with which China now grapples.

## Eating

Zhaoyang Lu and the lanes off the major shopping zone Huangxing Zhonglu are good places for street food. Carrefour [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jialefu; 238 Furong Zhonglu; ☎ 8am-10.30pm) is a lifesaver for those in search of Western provisions. Stick to sit-down restaurants for a taste of Hunan's regional cuisine, Xiangcai.



Huogongdian CHINESE HUNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 8581 4228; 127 Pozi Jie; dishes ¥5-78; ☎ 6am-2am) There's a great buzz at this landmark eatery, established in 1747. In 1958, Mao tried the housemade *chou doufu* (; stinky tofu; ¥58), and praised it as both 'stinky and delicious'. A huge selection of small dishes are wheeled around, but there are menu items too, including *Maoshi hongshaorou* (; Mao-style braised pork; ¥78). A less atmospheric branch is near the train station at 93 Wuyi Dadao ( 📍 8412 0580).

Xi Hu Lou Jiu Jia CHINESE \$\$

( Xi Hu Lou Jiu Jia; 📍 8425 8188; Jinma Food City; vegetable dishes from ¥58, clay pots from ¥78; ☎ 11am-2pm & 5-9pm; 📠 158) About 9km northeast of the city centre, the world's biggest Chinese restaurant, according to the *Guinness Book of World Records* and a plaque on the wall, is a village of five kitchens, staff of 1000, and banquet halls, stages, courtyards and gardens to entertain 5000 guests. The picture menu is a textbook on regional cuisines, plus there's an alley of street food. Escape the pomp in a private room. Book in advance.

Sunriver Dumpling Restaurant DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Songhuajiang Jiaoziguan; [www.songhuajiang.net](http://www.songhuajiang.net); 102 Wuyi Dadao; dumplings from ¥4; ☎ 9am-1.20am; 📠) If you need a break from chillies, this bustling eatery specialises in the deliciously mellow cuisine of northern China. Dumplings (*jiaozi*) are the speciality and come in many varieties, including veggie.

Xinhua Lou CHINESE HUNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 35 Wuyi Dadao; dishes ¥4-25; ☺ 6.30am-2am) The harried ladies at this longtime favourite for *xiang* cuisine push trolleys of cold and hot dishes from which to pick and choose. They also have great noodles (from ¥7). Two other branches at 54 Sudong Zhonglu (📞 8552 1000) and Pozi Jie (📞 8599 6705).



## Drinking & Entertainment

Changsha comes alive after dark. The following is just a guide; places open and shut quicker than you can down a green tea-whisky. Check the online entertainment guide *Changshahua* ([www.changshahua.com](http://www.changshahua.com)) for the latest.

A good place to start the night is Tai-ping Jie, a cobbled walking street between Wuyi Dadao and Jiefang Xilu, west of the shopping district on Huangxing Zhonglu. One of Changsha's oldest surviving streets, it has a mix of bars, boutiques and souvenir shops. From there, it's a short walk around the corner to Jiefang Xilu [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), Changsha's club central with all manner of KTV (karaoke) joints and discos. There are no covers but drinks are expensive.

There's another a busy enclave of bars down an ancient alley off Huangxing Zhonglu. Turn down the alley marked Dagudao Xiang ( ) and walk 100m to Hualongchi Xiang [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( ).



## Information

ATMs all over town take foreign cards. The train station area is densely populated with internet cafes.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 43 Wuyi Dadao) Next door to the Civil Aviation Hotel with an exchange and 24-hour ATM.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; 📞 8446 8929; <http://hnguolv.com>; 160 Wuyi Dadao; ☺ 8am-8pm) On the corner of Changdao Lu, east of Lotus Huatian Hotel. Smaller branch at 54 Wuyi Dadao (📞 8229 0512).

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 460 Chezhan Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm) To the right exiting the train station.

**HSBC** ( Huifeng Yinhang; 159 Shaoshan Lu) Inside the Dolton Hotel with a 24-hour ATM.

**Lianying Internet Cafe** ( Lianying Wangba; 446 Chezhan Lu; per hr ¥4-5; ☎ 8am-8pm) To the right exiting the train station concourse.

**Provincial People's Hospital** ( Sheng Renmin Yiyuan; ☎ 8227 8071; 61 Jiefang Xilu)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 8589 5023; 1 Dianli Lu) Entry-exit visas are handled here, 20km south of the city centre. Take bus 705 and get off at the Youyishe ( ) stop on Furong Nanjie.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Changsha's **Huanghua International Airport** ( Huanghua Guoji Jichang; ☎ 8479 8777; [www.hncaac.com](http://www.hncaac.com)) has multiple daily flights to major cities including Beijing (¥1210, two hours), Chengdu (¥910, two hours), Kunming (¥950, two hours), Qingdao (¥1040, two hours), Shanghai (¥890, two hours), Xiamen (¥860, 1½ hours) and Xi'an (¥890, two hours). One daily flight to Huaihua (¥810, one hour) and Zhangjiajie (¥850, 50 minutes).

Book tickets at the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang Shoupiaochu; ☎ 8411 2222; 49 Wuyi Dadao; ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm), a five-minute walk west of the train station in the Civil Aviation Hotel. International Desk speaks English.

Bus

As a major transport hub, Changsha has multiple bus stations connecting to many of the same destinations. Most travellers will find what they need at the **south bus station** ( qiche nanzhan; ☎ 8280 5051; Zhong Yilu). To get there, take bus 107 or bus 7 (¥2) from the train station; a taxi is about ¥40. Buses clustered in the train station square are mostly for guided tours.

Buy bus tickets at the stations or the bus ticket office in the train station square. Below are only some of the south bus station's regular routes.

**Changning** ¥68, four hours, 10 daily

**Guangzhou** ¥162 to ¥182, seven hours, two daily (10am and 8.30pm)

**Guilin** ¥190, six hours, two daily (8.30am and 4pm)

**Heng Shan** ¥19 to ¥38, three hours, seven daily

**Hengyang** ¥51, two hours, frequently

**Huaihua** ¥132, six hours, eight daily

**Shanghai** ¥282, 16 hours, one daily (5pm)

**Zhangjiajie** ¥109, four hours, four daily (8.40am, 9.40am, 10.40am and 12.10pm)

#### Train

The central **Changsha Train Station** ( huochezhan; 📍 9510 5105; Chezhan Zhonglu) has two trains daily to Beijing (from ¥506, 13 hours), and one daily to Guangzhou (from ¥99, 8½ hours), Jishou (¥76, 6½ hours), Shanghai (from ¥260, 9½ hours) and Zhangjiajie (¥99, 11 hours). If you're heading to Hong Kong, you can take the overnight, air-conditioned train to Shenzhen (¥147, 11 hours).

Counter 7 in the train station booking hall is staffed with English speakers, or buy tickets from any of the ticket booking offices (; *huoche shoupiaochu*) populating the train station square. In town, **Enjoy Going**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Qinheli Luyou; 📍 8222 7222; 25 Yingpan Donglu; 🕒 8am-9pm) or **Gump's Teahouse** ( Agan Chaguan; 📍 8258 9999; 133 Taiping Lu; 🕒 9am-11pm) are reliable and charge ¥5 commission per ticket.

Express trains depart daily from the **South Rail Station** ( nan huochezhan; 📍 280505; Huaqiao Lu), about 8km southeast of the city centre, for Wuhan (D train, hard/soft seat ¥112/134, two hours; G train, hard/soft seat ¥165/281, 1½ hours) and Guangzhou (D train, hard/soft seat ¥204/244, 4½ hours; G train, hard/soft seat ¥322/516, 2½ hours).

### **Getting Around**

#### To/From the Airport

Changsha's Huanghua International Airport is 26km from the city centre. **Shuttle buses** ( - 📍 8479 8076; ¥20) depart from the Civil Aviation Hotel, next to the CAAC on Wuyi Dadao, every 15 minutes between 5.30am and 10pm; the west bus station every 40 minutes between 9am and 5pm; the south bus station every 30 minutes from 9am to 6.10pm; and Helong Stadium on Furong Zhonglu hourly from 7am to 8pm. Buses take about an hour. A taxi from the city centre will cost about ¥60.


#### Public Transport

Changsha public buses reach every inch of the city. You can plan trips with the **online bus network** (<http://changsha.8684.cn>, in Chinese). Tourist bus 1 ( 1 ; ¥1) runs east–west along Wuyi Dadao, connecting the train station and Yuelu Mountain.

Taxi

Flag fall is ¥6 for the first 2km and then ¥1.80 (slightly more at night) per kilometre thereafter.

## Shaoshan

 0732

More than three million make the pilgrimage each year to Mao Zedong's hometown, a pretty hamlet frozen in time 130km southwest of Changsha. The swarms of young and old drop something to the tune of ¥1.8 billion annually. Mao statues alone are such big business that each must pass inspection by no fewer than five experts checking for features, expression, hairstyle, costume and posture. The 6m-high bronze statue of Mao erected in 1993 in Mao Zedong Square is considered a model example.

An overall resurgence in queuing at revolutionary sights is due in part to a government-sponsored Red Tourism campaign, which encourages young Chinese to reconnect with China's past. Some arrive sceptical, but others whisper prayers, asking the founder of New China for health, prosperity and help with exams.

### Sights & Activities

Shaoshan has two parts: the modern town with the train and bus stations, and the original village about 5km away, where all the sights are clustered. Only a handful of the designated sights have a genuine connection to the man.

 Mao's Childhood House HISTORIC SITE

( Mao Zedong Guju; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) Surrounded by lotus ponds and rice paddies, this modest mud-brick house is like millions of other country homes except that Mao was born here in 1893. By most accounts, his childhood was relatively normal though he tried to run away at age 10. He returned briefly in 1921 as a young revolutionary.

On view are some original furnishings, photos of Mao's parents and a small barn. No photography inside.

**FREE** Nan'an School HISTORIC SITE

( Nan'an Sishu; ☺ 8.30am-5pm) Mao began his education in this simple country school, just steps from his childhood home. Its interior is illuminated by *tian j i ng* (), light wells, about which a precocious Mao wrote a poem. It's on display along with Mao's classroom and the teacher's quarters. Some English captions.

**FREE** Museum of Comrade Mao MUSEUM

( Mao Zedong Tongzhi Jinianguan; ☺ 9am-4.30pm) The life of Mao (minus some of the controversial years) in photos, clothing and life-sized figures. To the right as you face the museum and opposite the bronze statue of Mao Zedong (decorated with calligraphy by Jiang Zemin) is the Mao Family Ancestral Hall where you can trace the family's genealogy.

Dripping Water Cave PARK

( Di Shui Dong; admission ¥50; ☺ 8am-5.30pm) Mao secluded himself for 11 days in June 1966 here, 3km outside of Shaoshan village, to contemplate the start of the Cultural Revolution. His retreat was actually a low-slung, cement and steel bunker (not the cave, which was a few kilometres away). Members of the Mao clan are entombed nearby.

Shao Peak MOUNTAIN

( Shao Feng; admission ¥80, cable car included; ☺ 8.30am-5pm) This cone-shaped mountain is visible from the village. The summit has a lookout pavilion, and on the lower slopes, the forest of stelaes has stone tablets engraved with Mao's poems. Hiking to the top takes about an hour.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Shaoshan can be easily done as a day trip from Changsha, so there's little reason to spend the night here. Close to the bus station in the new town are nondescript hotels with rooms for ¥140 after discounts. In the village itself, touts can lead you to a *nongjiale* (), a local family's guesthouse.

Restaurants are all over the village, all serving Mao's favourite dish, *Mao jia hongshaorou* (Mao family red-braised pork) for ¥45 and up.

Shaoshan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

(☎ 5568 5262; 16 Guyuan Lu; 16 s/d ¥368/398 plus 10% service charge; 🌐) The rooms are clean and bright – four-star standard issue. You're paying for location and the fact that Mao and various CCP bigwigs slept in the building next door in June 1959. (It's ¥20 more to glimpse the actual rooms where they stayed – not worth it.)

### **i Getting There & Away**

Daily buses (¥26) depart every 30 minutes from 8am to 5.30pm for the 1½-hour drive from Changsha's south bus station to Shaoshan. Buses return to Changsha from Shaoshan's **long-distance bus station** (changtu qichezhan; Yingbin Lu), just north of the train station, until about 5.30pm. Guided tour buses also depart from the Changsha train station square (day tour ¥150).

A daily train (hard/soft seat ¥11/17, 2½ hours) from Changsha to Shaoshan departs at 6.40am; the return from Shaoshan departs at 4.38pm.

### **i Getting Around**

A tourist minibus (; ¥10) lets you hop on and off at the key sights with one ticket from 7am to 6pm. Pick it up in front of sights and the Shaoshan Binguan. Local minibuses (¥2.50) also circle the sights starting from the train station. Expect to pay ¥100 for a taxi to take you around.

## **Heng Shan**

☎ 0734

About 127km south of Changsha rises the southernmost of China's five sacred Taoist mountains, to which emperors came to make sacrifices to heaven and earth. The ancients called it Nanyue (; Southern Mountain), a name it now shares with the town at its base. The imperial visits left a legacy of sublime scenery of Taoist temples and ancient inscriptions scattered amid gushing waterfalls, dense pine forests and terraced fields cut from lush canyons. Bring extra layers, as the weather can turn quickly and the summit is often cold and wet.

## Sights & Activities

### Heng Shan MOUNTAIN

Seventy-two peaks spanning 400km comprise Heng Shan, but most visitors focus on Zhurong Peak ( Zhurong Feng; admission ¥100), rising 1290m above sea level. The challenging, continuous 13km ascent up winding paths, busy roads and steep staircases can fill a day. A bus and then a cable car can take you two-thirds of the way.

If you want a lift, buy the combined ticket on the 2nd floor of the Tourist Centre (Luke fuwu zhongxin; Yanshou Lu; admission & one way/return ¥40/70; 🕒 7am-5.30pm). Buses depart directly from there and stop at various sights up to the mountain's halfway point, Banshan Ting (). From there, it's a short ride on the cable car (every 30min; 🕒 7am-6pm) to Nantianmen (). It's an 18km bus ride (7am to 6pm) back down from Nantianmen to the Tourist Centre.

If you decide to hike, start up the tree-lined road 300m east of the Tourist Centre marked by the stone Shengli Archway (). The road leads to the entrance (jinshan menpiaochu; 📞 567 3377; 🕒 24hr), where you can pay admission, and then to a tranquil path that winds 5km past lakes, waterfalls and streams in Fanyin Valley (Fanyin Gu) to almost the cable car departure point at Banshan Ting. Along the way, you can stop to see the colourful figures of Taoist and Buddhist scripture on display in Shenzhou Temple (Shenzhou Zumiao), the grand and dignified Nanyue Martyrs Memorial Hall (Nanyue Zhonglieci), dedicated to the anti-Japanese resistance, and a stele inscribed with a dedication from Kuomintang leader Chiang Kaishek celebrating the pine forest. Before you jump on the cable car, take a break and reconsider at Xuandou Guan (), an active Taoist temple. The couplet carved at the entry reminds weary climbers that the path of righteousness is long, so don't give up halfway through!

The next 4.5km up to Nantianmen frequently takes the busy road and scattered staircases, but there are more inspiring temples along the way. Once you reach Nantianmen, it's a chilly (outside of July and August) 3km ascent to the peak. You can rent coats (¥20) before heading up to Zhu Rong Palace (Zhu Rong Dian), an iron-tiled temple built for Zhu Rong, an ancient official who devised a method of striking



stones to create sparks. After his death, he became revered as the god of fire.

### Nanyue Temple TEMPLE

( Nanyue Damiao; 📍 567 3658; admission ¥50; 🕒 7am-6pm) This sprawling Taoist and Buddhist temple was moved from Heng Shan summit to its foot in the Sui dynasty and then rebuilt many times, most recently in the Qing dynasty. Each carved panel in the main pavilion's balustrade tells a legend of one of Heng Shan's peaks.

### Zhusheng Temple TEMPLE

( Zhusheng Si; 67 Dong Jie; admission ¥5; 🕒 5am-6pm) A 10-minute walk east of Nanyue Temple, this Zen Buddhist temple dates back to the Tang dynasty.

### Dashan Chan Temple MONASTERY

( Dashan Chansi; Zhurong Beilu; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) This active Taoist nunnery is on the west side of Nanyue.

## Sleeping & Eating

The cheapest rooms are ¥70 (¥90 with air-con and shower) in Nanyue's small family-run inns (; *kezhan*). Ask at the bus station; many restaurants also offer rooms. Otherwise, look along Zhurong Beilu (). It's best to stay on the mountain to catch the sunrise. Many basic hotels are clustered at Banshan Ting and Nantianmen.

Nanyue has more than its share of restaurants though they're pricey and mostly similar. Food on the mountain is even costlier; take snacks and water with you.

### Vegetarian Meal and Tea HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 568 7222; 1 Jiyang Jie; 1 s/d ¥260, ste ¥360, ¥50 surcharge on weekends; main courses from ¥25; 📞\*@📧) The nine, elegant rooms in this boutique hotel next to Nanyue Temple are beautifully decorated with Chinese wood furniture and Buddhist antiques, though everything else is decidedly modern. Saffron-hued walls give the whole place a peaceful temple feel. The rooms are above a delicious vegetarian restaurant and traditional teahouse.

### Zushi Dian GUESTHOUSE \$\$

( Zushi Dian; 📍 568 7181; inside Nantianmen Temple; d ¥460; 📞) The spartan rooms in this Taoist temple are the nicest this high on the mountain. It's a convenient launching pad for early morning hikes. Prices rocket during holiday periods, otherwise discounts of 20% are available. Vegetarian meals for ¥20 per plate.

Cohere Hotel LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

( 📍 539 8888; 8 Jinsha Lu; 8 s/d/ste ¥688/888/1088; 📞\*📞📞📞) The nicest hotel in Nanyue is a health resort that doesn't serve soda in the lobby bar. It has everything else – foot massages, gym, pool, roof garden, ping-pong room, three restaurants and an ATM. Rooms discounted by 40% in slow periods.

Nanyue Telecom Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 567 8888; 173 Zhurong Lu; 173 s/d/tr ¥328/438/488; 📞\*📞) A standard three-star with clean enough bathrooms. Close to the bus station. A good deal when discounted by 40%.

### **i** Information

Near the bus station, there's a branch of the **Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 270 Hengshan Lu) with currency exchange and a 24-hour ATM. There is a PSB (; Gong'anju) on Xijie () at Furong Jie.

### **i** Getting There & Around

The long-distance bus station is a few minutes north of the archway (; *paifang*) at the intersection of Zhurong Beilu and Hengshan Lu. There are seven daily buses to Changsha (¥45) departing every 40 minutes between 7.20am and 3.40pm for the three-hour journey.

The express train from Changsha (¥42) takes half an hour, departing every 30 minutes from 7.27am and 9.20pm and arriving 10km from town at Heng Shan west station (). Buy tickets in town next to the bus station at the **Nanyue Heng Shan ticket centre** ( 167 Zhurong Lu; 167 ¥5 commission; 🕒 8am-9pm).

Free minibuses () pass all the sights between the bus station to Nanyue Temple and the Heng Shan entrance between 7am and 7pm. Taxis usually charge ¥10 to each sight.

## **Wulingyuan & Zhangjiajie**

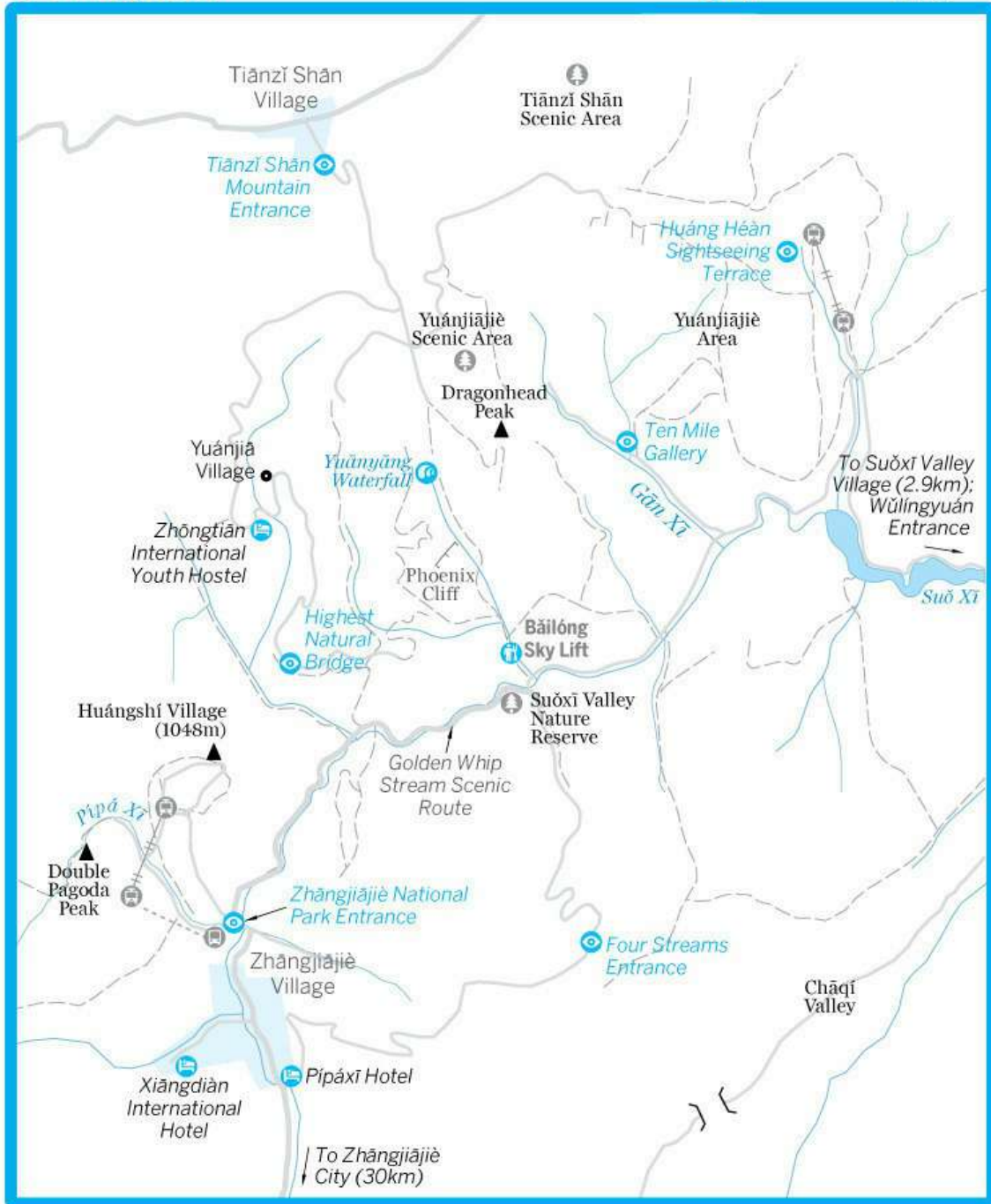
## 📌 0744

Rising from the misty subtropical and temperate forests of northwest Hunan is a concentration of quartzite-sandstone formations found nowhere else in the world. Some 243 peaks and more than 3000 karst pinnacles and spires dominate the landscape of this designated Unesco World Heritage Site. For thousands of years, this was a remote landscape known mainly to three minority peoples: Tujia, Miao and Bai. Today more than 20 million visitors annually come to the Wulingyuan Scenic and Historic Interest Area. The park is also home to more than 3000 distinct plant species as well as diverse fauna. Macaques gambol and dangle along paths, while endangered species like the Chinese giant salamander, Chinese water deer and the elusive clouded leopard (only their tracks have been seen) lurk deep in the park.

Tourist season peaks from July to September but each season presents a unique beauty. Avoid the national holidays. Your ticket is valid for three consecutive days, a good estimate of the time it will take to enjoy the main sections of the park. Expect to pay additional fees for cable cars and some sights within the park.

# Wǔlíngyuán

0 2 km  
0 1 mile



## Wulingyuan

**i** Transport

Tram Stop

Tram Stop

## Sights & Activities

### **WULINGYUAN SCENIC & HISTORIC INTEREST AREA**

The park ( Wulingyuan Fengjingqu; adult/student ¥245/168) is divided into the Zhangjiajie, Tianzi Shan, Yuanjiajie and Suoxi Valley scenic areas covering a vast 264 sq km.

There are access points on all sides of the park, but most enter from the south, passing through Zhangjiajie village to the Zhangjiajie National Park entrance (; Zhangjiajie Gongyuan menpiao zhan). Otherwise, many enter from the east through Wulingyuan entrance (; Wulingyuan menpiao zhan), which sits on Suoxi Lake (; Suoxi Hu).

Locals often refer to the collective area as Zhangjiajie, though this is also the name of the city (; Zhangjiajie *shi*) 30km south of the park with useful transport links and shopping, and the village (; Zhangjiajie *cun*).

#### Zhangjiajie National Forest Park & Suoxi Valley Nature Reserve SCENIC AREA

() From the south entrance, this is the first opportunity for a birds'-eye view of the spires from Huangshi Village (), a 3km loop on a plateau 1048m up. It's a two-hour slog up 3878 stone steps, or a half hour by bus (one way/return ¥96/50; 6.30am to 6pm) and then cable car (one way ¥50).

Back on the canyon floor, the Golden Whip Stream Scenic Route () is a flat path meandering 7.5km east along its namesake stream and past its namesake crag to the Suoxi Valley Nature Reserve (). From there, it's less than 1km to the Bailong Sky Lift ( each way ¥56), a cliff-side elevator rising 335m in under two minutes to the Yuanjiajie Scenic Area in the heart of the park.

#### Yuanjiajie Scenic Area SCENIC AREA

() Touring here means manoeuvring around particularly large crowds, but the vistas, including the Highest Natural Bridge (), a wind- and water-carved structure spanning two peaks 357m above the canyon floor, are worth it. The path also passes the newly renamed 'Avatar Hallelujah Mountain', a tie in to the record-breaking film *Avatar*. Though director James Cameron mentioned only Huangshan, the

ethereal mountains in Anhui province, on promotional tours, park officials are convinced Wulingyuan's karst peaks inspired Pandora's Hallelujah Mountains. You'll have to wait until 2014 to see whether Yuanjiajie gets a cameo in the sequels.

A short walk from the west entrance of the scenic area is Yuanjia Village ( admission ¥85, performance ¥25), a once remote Tujia community that now offers a packaged but still interesting glimpse into marriage, farming and cooking traditions. Look for the wooden archway hung with ox skulls.

### Tianzi Shan Nature Reserve SCENIC AREA

About 20km northwest of the Wulingyuan Entrance rises Tianzi Shan (), including the West Sea (), Emperor Pavilion (), the Gathering of the Invincible Army () and many other landscapes of angular spires often featured on postcards. A cable car (one way ¥52; 6.50am to 5.10pm) can take you up to the Huang He'an Sightseeing Terrace () for the sky-high paths overlooking the range. The routes here are more challenging than in other parts of the park. (At one point, an optional foray crosses chain bridges and ladders pinned precariously to the cliffs.) For mellower views, take the sightseeing tram (each way ¥40) along the Ten Mile Gallery () on the canyon floor.

### Caves & Rafting OUTDOORS

With more than 40 limestone caves hidden along the banks of the Suoxi River and the southeast side of Tianzi Shan, the region offers ample opportunities to raft (; *piaoliu*) and tour caves.

Just inside the Wulingyuan Entrance, Jiliu Huixuan ( 📞 150 7441 9596; [www.jiliuhuixuan.com](http://www.jiliuhuixuan.com), in Chinese; trips ¥168; 🕒 8am-7pm) offers a 3km, one-hour rafting trip down a section of the Suoxi River used for Olympic training events. After that, check out Yellow Dragon Cave ( Huanglong Dong; admission ¥80), the longest in Asia, 10km east of the Wulingyuan Entrance.

Tour companies offer combination cave and rafting trips further afield. Tour Jiutian Cave ( Jiutian Dong; admission ¥76; 🕒 8am-6pm) about 160km northwest of the park, and then ride the currents 20km down the Maoyan River ( Maoyan He; from ¥188; 🕒 8am-6pm). The Maoyan's pretty tame, but the scenery is fantastic. The actual rafting lasts about three hours.

Day trips down the Mengdong River ( Mengdong He; [www.mdh.cn](http://www.mdh.cn), in Chinese; from ¥200) are also possible. The best white water is near the Hubei border, but you'll have to make special arrangements for equipment and transport.

## ZHANGJIAJIE CITY

### Tianmen Shan SCENIC AREA

( admission ¥258; ☎ 8am-5pm) Visible from anywhere in Zhangjiajie city, this distinctive range features Tianmen Dong (), a prominent keyhole cut through the mountainside. The 7km-long cable car (return ¥52) presents scenes of the verdant mountainside. A riveting 60m, glass plank road a short walk from the upper cable station will test your belief in human engineering.

### Tours

You can join tours of the park and rafting trips, or arrange your own, through hotels and travel agencies in Zhangjiajie city. A typical three-day park tour costs ¥798 (be sure to clarify what sights and transportation are not included). Both the Zhongtian International Youth Hostel and CITS ( Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; ☎ 820 0885; 631 Ziwu Lu; ☎ 8am-6pm) arrange tours.

### Sleeping & Eating

Staying near the park's south entrance in Zhangjiajie village keeps you in the middle of the Wuling foothills, but the gorgeous setting will cost you. You can find cheap inns (; *kezhan*) by the eastern entrance of the park. The widest selection of hotels is in Zhangjiajie city. You'll find cheapies starting at ¥80 around the bus station and on Bei Zhengjie ().

As for eats, small restaurants are scattered around Zhangjiajie village cooking up Tujia dishes; servers may try to steer you towards expensive *tuji* (; free-range chicken; from ¥180). In Zhangjiajie city, there are many choices in the shopping area along Renmin Lu. In the park, snack stalls are everywhere but expensive.

## ZHANGJIAJIE VILLAGE

Staying cheaply in the park overnight is tricky as most options are

family-run inns. Some only house tour groups, and others only Chinese nationals. If you can find a bed, expect to pay ¥80 to ¥120. The locals manning the food, drink and souvenir stalls can offer good tips.

There are standard hotels along the popular trail routes, including a Yuanjiajie outpost of the Zhongtian International Youth Hostel (📍 590 3315; dm ¥40-50, s & d ¥150). Tianzi Shan and Suoxi Valley have a bewildering choice of hotels and hostels. All of the following are on the main road, Jinbian Lu ( ), which has many other options.



Xiangdian International Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Xiangdian Guoji Jiudian; 📍 571 2999; s & d ¥1080-1280, ste ¥3380, plus 10% service charge; 🚗🍷🍷🍷) This serene four-star mountain lodge has courtyard gardens almost pretty enough to distract you from the incredible surroundings. Most rooms have balconies and at least partial mountain views. Discounts of 40% to 60% make this a great deal.

Pipaxi Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Pipaxi Binguan; 📍 571 8888; s & d ¥580-680, ste ¥2680; 🚗🍷🍷🍷) This quiet hotel set in Tujia-style buildings is beautifully maintained and surrounded by longan trees and the mountains. The rooms are surprisingly luxurious. Request a balcony and the 20% discount.

## ZHANGJIAJIE CITY

Zhongtian International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Zhongtian Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 832 1678; [www.zjjzthostel.com](http://www.zjjzthostel.com); Room 4 A1, Zhongtian Bldg, Ziwu Lu; 4 A1 dm ¥35-40, dm with private bathroom ¥45-50, d ¥138-148; 🍷🍷) Despite the location in an anonymous office block, this pleasant hostel has a rooftop garden, small bar and restaurant, and cosy rooms. The four tatami rooms are a bargain but hard to snag (¥110 with private bathroom). Helpful staff speak some English. There's a more basic branch in the Yuanjiajie area of the park.

Dacheng Shanshui Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Dacheng Shanshui Guoji Jiudian; 📍 888 9999; cnr Dayong Xilu & Airport Rd; s & d ¥1688-2688, ste ¥3288 incl breakfast; 🍷🍷) One of a



few five-star choices, this one overdoes it with the gold decor but distinguishes itself with spacious rooms and particularly attentive staff. There's 24-hour room service and a travel office in the lobby.

Discounts of 50% to 75%.

**Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$**

( Jinjiang Zhixing; ☎ 839 8777; 51 Ziwu Lu; 51 d/tw ¥269/229; 📶📶📶)

The Jinjiang shows some grey hairs, but it has the usual setup and dependable internet access.

### **i Information**

Maps (some English) of the scenic area and Zhangjiajie city are available at ticket offices and major hotels for ¥5.

**2 in 1 Internet Cafe** ( Erheyi Wangba; per hr ¥2; 🕒 24hr) On the corner of Bei Zhengjie and Ziwu Lu in Zhangjiajie city.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Ziwu Lu, Zhangjiajie city) Close to the Zhongtian International Youth Hostel, with a currency exchange and 24-hour ATM. There's also a 24-hour ATM at the park's south entrance.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 🕒 8am-5.30pm) On Guyong Lu and Daqiao Lu in Zhangjiajie city.

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang; Huilong Lu, Zhangjiajie city) It's 250m east of the bus station.

**People's Hospital** ( Shi Renmin Yiyuan; ☎ 822 7836; 208 Guyong Lu) In Zhangjiajie city.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 571 2329; Jinbian Lu, Zhangjiajie village)

For visa questions go to Nanzhuang Lu, Zhangjiajie city (☎ 824 8129).

### **i Getting There & Away**

**Air**

Zhangjiajie Hehua Airport is 6km southwest of Zhangjiajie city and about 40km from the Zhangjiajie National Park entrance; a taxi costs about ¥100 to the park. Flights connect Zhangjiajie city with Beijing (¥1340, 2½ hours), Changsha (¥850, one hour), Chongqing (¥580, one hour), Guangzhou (¥860, 1½ hours), Shanghai (¥1100, 1½ hours) and Xi'an (¥690, 1½ hours).

**Bus**

Buses leave from the **long-distance bus station** (☎ 822 2417) on Huilong Lu in Zhangjiajie city.

**Changsha** ¥83/96, four hours, every half hour

**Fenghuang** ¥42/45, four hours, four daily (two at 8.30am, 2pm and 2.30pm)

**Jishou** ¥35, two hours, hourly

**Shanghai** ¥309, 20 hours, two daily (6.30am and 9.30am)

**Wuhan** ¥135/155, 12 hours, three daily (8.30am, 5.30pm and 6.30pm)

**Xi'an** ¥292, 20 hours, one daily (1.30pm)

#### Train

The **station** (☎ 214 5182) is 8km southeast of the city; buy tickets well in advance. There are five morning trains from Changsha between 2.39am to 8.29am (hard/soft seat ¥65/87, 4½ to six hours). In the other direction, there are six trains during the day (hard/soft seat ¥32/81) from 1.16pm to 6.18pm and one overnight one (hard/soft sleeper ¥183/276, 11 hours) at 7pm. Some other services include:

**Beijing** hard/soft sleeper ¥307/353, 25 hours, two daily (12.47pm and 6.18pm)

**Guangzhou** hard/soft sleeper ¥164/383, 14 to 21 hours, three daily (6.40am, 3.27pm and 4.52pm)

**Huaihua** hard/soft seat ¥19/31, 3½ to six hours, frequent

**Jishou** hard/soft seat ¥11/17, two to four hours, frequent

**Yichang** hard/soft seat ¥25 to ¥62, five hours, three daily (4.53am, 9.23am and 6.36pm)

#### Getting Around

Minibuses travel between Zhangjiajie village (¥10, 50 minutes) – also called Forest Park (; Senlin Gongyuan) – and the long-distance bus station every 15 minutes from 6am to 7pm. Make sure to get on the right bus, as some go east to the Wulingyuan entrance and others to Tianzi Shan (¥13, every hour). Buses run between the park entrances and are free with a ticket.

Taxi flag fall in Zhangjiajie city is ¥5. A taxi from the city to the village costs around ¥120.

---

## MINORITIES & MISSILES

In southwest Hunan near the Guangxi and Guizhou borders is the Tongdao Dong Minority Autonomous County (; Tongdao Dongzu Zizhiqu), the heartland of the Dong tribe. In the hills surrounding nondescript Tongdao city are picturesque villages famed for their distinctive wood architectural tradition – as well as a sizeable proportion of China's intercontinental ballistic missiles. While you won't see the missile silos, as they're buried or semi-camouflaged as wind and rain bridges, the area is officially closed to foreigners at the time of writing. Visiting status may have changed by the time you read this, so check with the Tongdao PSB (☎ 0745-5862 2322).

## Dehang

☎ 0743

The Miao hamlet of Dehang (admission ¥60; 🕒 7am-10pm, performances at 10am, 3pm & 7.30pm), northwest of Jishou in western Hunan, offers a rare chance to step into astonishing countryside landscapes of terraced valleys and waterfalls framed by towering columns of stone.

Pleasant, affordable inns make Dehang an attainable getaway. The village is dolled up for tourists, but in the narrow lanes along the river beyond the arched Jielong Bridge (; Jielong Qiao), the Miao culture still flourishes.

### Sights & Activities

Dehang is located within a huge 164 sq km geological park threaded with delightful treks. Look for signs posted by Jielong Bridge for the trailheads.

#### Nine Dragon Stream Scenic Area HIKING

( Jiulongxi Jingqu) This beautiful riverside hike cuts through the village, past Miao peasants tilling their fields, and into a landscape of peaks and vales carpeted in green. The main path leads to Liusha Waterfall ( Liusha Pubu) China's longest, where sprays of water drop a dramatic 216m. You can climb behind the waterfall for views through the curtain of water. Backtrack to the bend in the path. The turnoff there leads to a 1.5km clamber up gullies and falls to the Nine Dragon

Waterfall ( Jiulong Pubu; admission ¥15). The walk to the Liusha Waterfall takes about an hour from Jielong Bridge. The sights are particularly beautiful after a rainfall, though this makes the journey slippery.

### Yuquanxi Scenic Area HIKING

( Yuquanxi Jingqu) The 2.6km-long path along Yuquan Stream stretches along the valley, passing haystacks and terraced fields, before ducking into a small gorge and crisscrossing the river and finally entering a thick profusion of green. Cross the Jade Fountain Gate (; Yuquan Men) and follow the path to the sinuous waterfall. Then climb the steps up to the Tianwen Platform (; Tianwen Tai) for fabulous views of the gorge and Miao homesteads.

### Jielong Bridge VIEWPOINT

This short walk leads from Jielong Bridge up flagstone steps and through the bamboo to lovely views of the village.

## Sleeping & Eating

Simple inns (; *kezhan*) are around the square and suspended over the river. Travellers wanting midrange comfort can find it in nearby (soulless) Jishou.

Restaurants are clustered around the square and main road. The inns also have restaurants, though their meals are more expensive than their rooms. Hawkers in the alleys proffer small bites, including skewers of grilled fish (*taohuayu*; ¥3) and tiny crabs (*xiao pangxie*; ¥5).

### Jielongqiao Inn INN \$

( Jielongqiao Kedian; 📞 135 1743 0915; s/d ¥40/50) This small varnished wood inn by Jielong Bridge has the best-kept rooms, with fan and TV, in the village. The downside is the shared bathroom, two flights down in the dank basement.

### Fengyuqiao Inn INN \$

( Fengyuqiao Kezhan; 📞 135 1743 0915; dm/d ¥30/60) This newly done-up inn is across the river from the square by the Yuquanxi Scenic Area trailhead.

### Jielong Inn INN \$

( Jielong Kezhan; 📞 135 7432 0948; s/d ¥40/60; 🌟) Next to Jielong Bridge, this popular spot has rooms with shared bathroom and a restaurant overlooking the river.

MiaojieCanguan CHINESE \$

( 📞 152 7435 8239; dishes from ¥40; 🕒 6am-9pm) Perch on a low stool at a table on the balcony overlooking the square, and wash down the tasty local dishes with the village firewater.

### **i Getting There & Away**

You can reach Dehang via Jishou, a rail town to the southeast. Buses (¥7, 50 minutes) depart when full from Jishou Train Station for Dehang's square from 6am to 6.30pm. Keep your eye on the scenery for the last third of the journey. The driver will wait while you pay admission at the park entrance.

## **Fenghuang**

📞 0743

Fenghuang was once a frontier town, marking the boundary between the Han civilisations of the central plains and the Miao (), Tujia () and Dong () minorities of the southwest mountains. Protective walls went up in the Ming dynasty, but despite the implications Fenghuang prospered as a centre of trade and cultural exchange. Its diverse residents built a breathtaking riverside settlement of winding alleys, temples and rickety stilt houses. Today, tourist development is taking precedence over careful preservation efforts, so see it before it crumbles away.

# Fèngguāng



## Fenghuang

### Top Sights

[City Wall](#) B2

[East Gate Tower](#) C2

[Hong Bridge](#) C2

[Yang Family Ancestral Hall](#) C2

### Sights

1 [Chaoyang Temple](#) A2

2 [Chongde Hall](#) C2

3 [Confucian Temple](#) B2

4 [Former Home of Shen Congwen](#) B3

5 [Gucheng Museum](#) B2

6 [Jiangxin Buddhist Temple](#) C3

7 [North Gate Tower](#) B2

8 [Stepping Stones](#) B2

- 9 [Three Kings Temple](#) C3
- 10 Tianhou Temple C3
- 11 Wanming Pagoda D3
- 12 [Wanshou Temple](#) D2
- 13 Wooden Footbridge B2
- 14 [Xiong Xi Ling Former Residence](#) B2
- 15 [Yingxi Gate](#) D2

#### Sleeping

- 16 [Border Town International Youth Hostel](#) C3
- 17 [Fenghuang International Youth Hostel](#) D2
- 18 [Koolaa's Small Room – A Good Year](#) D3
- 19 [Phoenix Jiangtian Holiday Village](#) C2
- 20 [Tuoshui Renjia Kezhan](#) C2

#### Eating

- 21 [Night Market](#) C2
- 22 [Soul Cafe](#) C2
- 23 [Wanmu Zhai](#) B3

#### Drinking

- 24 Laoying Shao B1

#### Information

- 25 [Ticket office](#) C3
- 26 [Tourism Administrative Bureau of Fenghuang](#) B3

#### Transport

- 27 North Gate Boat Dock B2
- 28 Train Ticket Booking Office C3

## Sights & Activities

Wandering aimlessly is the best way to experience the charms of old town Fenghuang (; Fenghuang Gucheng). The back alleys are a trove of shops, temples, ancestral halls and courtyard homes.

Much of Fenghuang can be seen for free, but the through ticket (tongpiao; 📞 322 3315; ¥148) allows two days' access to major sights and a half-hour boat ride from the North Gate Tower down the Tuo River (Tuo Jiang). Ticket offices are scattered around town, including south of Hong Bridge, south of North Gate Tower, and on the east

side of Wenhua Sq. Sights are generally open 8am to 6pm. Come nightfall, much of old town is dazzlingly illuminated.

## **INSIDE THE CITY WALL**

City Wall HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#)

( chengqiang) Restored fragments of the city wall lie along the south bank of the Tuo River. Carvings of fish and mythical beasts adorn the eaves of the North Gate Tower [Offline map](#) (; Beimen Chenglou), one of four original main gates. Another, the East Gate Tower [Offline map](#) ( Dongmen Chenglou; through ticket), is a twin-eaved tower of sandstone and fired brick.

Hong Bridge BRIDGE

[Offline map](#)

( Hong Qiao; through ticket for upstairs galleries) In the style of the Dong minority's wind and rain bridges.

Yang Family Ancestral Hall HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#)

( Yangjia Citang; through ticket) West of East Gate Tower, built in 1836. Its exterior is covered with slogans from the Cultural Revolution.

Xiong Xi Ling Former Residence HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#)

( Xiong Xi Ling Guju; through ticket) The home of a former Premier and Finance Minister.

Jiangxin Buddhist Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#)

( Jiangxin Chansi) On Huilong Ge, a narrow alley.

Three Kings Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#)

( Sanhuang Miao) Great views of town await up the temple's steps off Jianshe Lu.

Tianhou Temple TEMPLE

( Tianhou Gong) Off Dongzheng Jie, dedicated to the patron of seafarers.

Former Home of Shen Congwen HISTORIC SITE



### [Offline map](#)

( Shen Congwen Guju; through ticket) The famous modern novelist was born here in 1902. (His tomb is east of town.)

Chongde Hall HISTORIC SITE

### [Offline map](#)

( Chongde Tang; through ticket) The town's wealthiest resident Pei Shoulu's personal collection of antiques is on display in his former residence on Shijialong.

Confucian Temple TEMPLE

### [Offline map](#)

( Wen Miao; Wenxing Jie) This 18th-century walled temple is now a middle school.

Chaoyang Temple TEMPLE

### [Offline map](#)

( Chaoyang Gong; 41 Wenxing Jie; admission ¥10) Features an ancient theatrical stage and hall.

Gucheng Museum MUSEUM

### [Offline map](#)

( Gucheng Bowuguan; Dengying Jie; ☹ 6.30am-6pm; through ticket) A survey of the old town's history.

## **OUTSIDE THE CITY WALL**

The north bank of the river offers lovely views of Fenghuang's *diaojiatou* (; stilt houses). Cross by stepping stones (; *tiaoyan*), best navigated when sober, or wooden footbridge (; *mutou qiao*).

Wanshou Temple HISTORIC SITE

### [Offline map](#)

( Wanshou Gong; through ticket) Built in 1755 by Jiangxi arrivals, this assembly hall north of Wanming Pagoda houses a minority culture museum.

Yingxi Gate GATE

### [Offline map](#)

( Yingxi Men) Dates from 1807.

Southern Great Wall ARCHITECTURE

( Nan Changcheng; admission ¥45) The Ming-dynasty defensive wall,

13km from town, once stretched to Guizhou.

### Huangsi Bridge Old Town VILLAGE

( Huangsi Qiao Gucheng; admission ¥20) A Tang-dynasty military outpost 5km outside town. Motorcycles will take you for ¥4.

### Qiliang Dong CAVE

( Qiliang Dong; admission ¥60) A cave of underground rivers and waterfalls 7km north of town. Take the Liwan tourist bus.

## Sleeping

Inns (; *kezhan*) are easy to find in Fenghuang. The river's east bend is good for digs with river views away from the noisy bars. Prepare for rudimentary dwellings with squat toilets. Some rooms can be damp, so check first. In July and August, rates triple and rooms go quickly, so book ahead. Signs with ' ' mean vacancy.



Koolaa's Small Room – A Good Year INN \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Kaola Xiaowu de Yi Nian Hao Shiguang; 📍 322 2026; 89 Huilong Ge; 89 d ¥120; 📶📶) There are just 10 rooms in this sweet, wood-framed inn on the river; all have balconies, showers and TVs but six have fantastic river views. Air-con is ¥20 extra. The kindly staff of aunties live on the premises, just past Zhicheng Gate (). Book ahead.

Border Town International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Biancheng Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 322 8698; 45 Hongqiao Zhonglu; dm/s ¥30/80, d ¥100-130, tr ¥188; 📶📶) Named for a novel by Fenghuang's famous son Shen Congwen, this hostel is a five-minute walk south of the Hong Bridge. The pricier doubles are especially spacious, and those on the top floor have great views of the old town. Squat toilets.

Phoenix Jiangtian Holiday Village HOTEL \$\$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Fenghuang Jiangtian Luyou Dujiacun; 📍 326 1998; Jiangtian Sq; s & d ¥588, tr ¥668; 📶📶) The aging Phoenix is ready for a rebirth, but for now these are good-sized rooms with so-so bathrooms. There are 40% discounts outside of peak periods, but no river views. Turn right

at the arch on Laoying Shao.

Fenghuang International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Fenghuang Guoji Qingnian Luguan; 📞 326 0546; yhapoenix@163.com; 11 Shawan; 11 dm ¥35-50, s & d ¥148-238; 🌐) Situated on the river's northeast bank next to Dongguan Men ( ) are these quaint rooms. Shared bathrooms have squat toilets.

Tuoshui Renjia Kezhan INN \$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 350 1690; 12 Beibian Jie; dm ¥100-120, s/d ¥200/300, discounts of 50%; 🌐) The wood-finished rooms, four of which have balconies with river views and computers, are quite nice until the neighbourhood bars open up. Bring earplugs.

## Eating & Drinking

Fenghuang's restaurants can be pricey; the ones west of the North Gate Tower are less touristy and sometimes cheaper. Fortunately, there is plenty of cheap, tasty street food – everything from kebabs to spicy *doufu* (tofu) and cooling bowls of *liangfen* (jellies made from grasses or starchy roots).

There are few mellow watering holes. Bars wake up with a shout at nightfall along Laoying Shao (; Laoying Shao) on the river's north bank, and opposite along Beibian Jie and the north end of Huilong Ge. Tip back local Miao spirits (*Miao jiu*), 53-proof, mind-warping alcohol at ¥12 per glass.



Night Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#)

( Hongqiao Yeshi; Hongqiao Donglu; 🕒 5pm-1am) Lively vendors set up shop in the late afternoon just north of the Hong Bridge, ready to grill all manner of meat and vegies or slice up ripe fruits. Everything is on display, so just pick what you want, grab a beer from the shops across the way, and take a seat at the covered tables.

Wanmu Zhai CHINESE HUNAN \$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 322 1589; Hongqiao Beilu; dishes from ¥25; 🕒 10am-9pm) The

Yang family serves up generous portions of Tujia dishes as well as regional *xiang* cuisine at this popular local spot. The waiters make good suggestions such as loquat duck and sweet rice (; ¥68).

Soul Cafe WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Yisu Kafei; 📍 326 0396; 18 Laoying Shao; 🕒 8am-midnight) This upmarket north bank cafe serves proper coffee (from ¥29), pizza (from ¥48) and chocolate cake (¥20). It's not cheap, but then again how many places have an extensive list of foreign wines and Cuban cigars?

### Information

The main bank branches are on Nanhua Lu. China Construction Bank (; Zhongguo Jianshe Yinhang) has a currency exchange and 24-hour ATM.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Sanwangge Lu & Hongqiao Zhonglu; 🕒 8am-5.30pm)

**Kaiming Pharmacy** ( Kaiming Dayaofang; 📍 322 8578; Hongqiao Xilu; 🕒 7.30am-10.30pm) Near intersection with Sanwangge Lu.

**Menghuan Internet Cafe** ( Menghuan Wang Cheng; Hongqiao Donglu; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr)

**New People's Hospital** ( Xin Renmin Yiyuan; 📍 322 1199; Hongqiao Xilu) Southwest of town at the Jiensu Lu intersection.

**Tourism Administrative Bureau of Fenghuang**[Offline map](#) ( Fenghuang Luyou Zhongxin; 📍 322 8365; 🕒 6.30am-6pm) Off Wenhua Sq.

**Xindongli Internet Cafe** ( Xindongli Wangba; 2nd fl, Jianshe Lu; per hr ¥2-3; 🕒 24hr)

### Getting There & Around

Long-distance buses to/from Jishou Train Station (¥20, 1½ hours) frequently stop outside the old town from 6am to 8pm. Motorcycles (¥5) will ferry you in.

Buses come from:

**Changsha** ¥130, five hours, eight daily

**Huaihua** ¥35, three hours, every 20 minutes

**Wuhan** ¥200, eight hours, one daily (4.30pm)

**Zhangjiajie** ¥70, 4½ hours, four daily (8.30am, 9.30am, 2.30am and 4.30pm)

There's no train station in Fenghuang, but you can book tickets at the **train ticket booking office** (huoche daipiaochu; 📞 322 2410; Hongqiao Zhonglu; 🕒 8am-10pm) south of Hong Bridge.

The interior of the old town is closed to traffic. A minibus makes the circuit to the Southern Great Wall and Qiliang Dong from the Liwan bus stop (; ¥30, every 10 minutes, 8am to 10pm) at Fenghuang Bridge and Jiang Beixilu. Taxis start at ¥3 but try going off-meter.

## Hongjiang Old Town

📞 0745 / POP 60,783

This little-known town 55km south of Huaihua boasts an extraordinary history as a Qing-dynasty financial and trading centre, due to its fortuitous location at the confluence of the Yuan (; Yuan Jiang) and Wu (; Wu Shui) Rivers. At one time, it was the main opium-distribution hub in southwest China. Dating as far back as the Northern Song dynasty, the surrounding city is mostly modern now, but the past lives on in the remarkable old town (Hongjiang Gushangcheng), which is still home to a few thousand people.

### Sights

The old town is the principal reason to come here and can be visited in half a day. The city's main roads, Xinmin Lu (), Yuanjiang Lu () and Xiongxi Lu (), which turns into Xingfu Lu (), mark its borders.

There's an official ticket office [Offline map](#) (📞 763 2579; admission ¥120; 🕒 8am-5pm) marked with red lanterns in an alley off Yuanjiang Lu. Admission includes guided two-hour tours in Chinese featuring entertaining re-enactments of merchants' daily life. You need not pay admission if you enter via any of the other alleys connecting to the main roads. You won't be allowed into the buildings without a ticket.

The old town undulates in a delightful, higgledy-piggledy, often steep, maze of narrow stone-flagged alleys and lanes. English and Chinese signposts point the way to the notable buildings, some of

which have been fully restored, including the tax office, opium shop, brothel, newspaper office, ancestral halls, and courtyard homes of prominent merchants. Most are of the *yinziwu* ( ) style, characterised by a series of adjoining courtyards, high exterior walls and concave roofs with *tian jing* (light wells). Make sure to check out the ruins of Taiping Temple ( ; Taiping Gong), built in 1723 as part of an assembly hall for Shaoyang traders and destroyed during the Cultural Revolution. Getting lost is inevitable, but neighbours living in and among the 380 historic structures can point the way.

## Sleeping & Eating

Hotels are along the roads bordering the old town. For restaurants, food stalls cook up the catch of the day on the riverbank by Hong Bridge. Sit-down restaurants are along Xinmin Lu and Yuanjiang Lu.

Wulingcheng Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Wulingcheng Jiudian; 📞 766 6677; Xinmin Lu; s/d ¥238/288, ste ¥438; 🍷🍷) Less than 1km from Hong Bridge, this high-rise has the polished decor and buttoned-up staff you'd expect in a big city. Out front, Wuling plaza is the town community centre. There's a travel office in the lobby. Discounts of 20%.

Hongjiang Hotel HOTEL \$

( Hongjiang Dajiudian; 📞 766 2999; 50 Xinmin Lu; 50 s/d ¥138/158, ste ¥248; 🍷🍷) Despite the decrepit lobby, this hotel is well maintained and comfortable. It's just across the road from the old town and the steps from Hong Bridge. Discounts of 20%.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Xinmin Lu) Has a 24-hour ATM and changes currency. Next to Hongjiang Hotel.

## Getting There & Away

Don't confuse Hongjiang old town with Hongjiang city ( ; Hongjiang shi), the town on the railway 30km west. The old town is most easily reached via Huaihua ( ). Buses leave Huaihua's south bus station (¥25, 1½ hours, every 40 minutes) between 6.40am and 6.20pm for the **bus station** (Yuanjiang Lu), opposite the main entrance to the old town. Taxis charge a flat fee of ¥140 to/from Huaihua.

**Hongjiang train ticket booking office** ( Huochepiao daishouchu; 📍  
266 3111; 81 Xinmin Lu; 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm) Across from  
Wulingcheng Hotel.



# Hong Kong

📍 852 / POP 7 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Sights](#)

[Activities](#)

[Tours](#)

[Festivals & Events](#)

[Sleeping](#)

[Eating](#)

[Drinking](#)

[Entertainment](#)

[Shopping](#)

[Getting There & Away](#)

[Getting Around](#)

---

## Why Go?

Like a shot of adrenalin, Hong Kong quickens the pulse. Skyscrapers march up jungle-clad slopes by day and blaze neon by night across a harbour crisscrossed by freighters and motor junks. Above streets teeming with traffic, five-star hotels stand next to ageing tenement blocks.



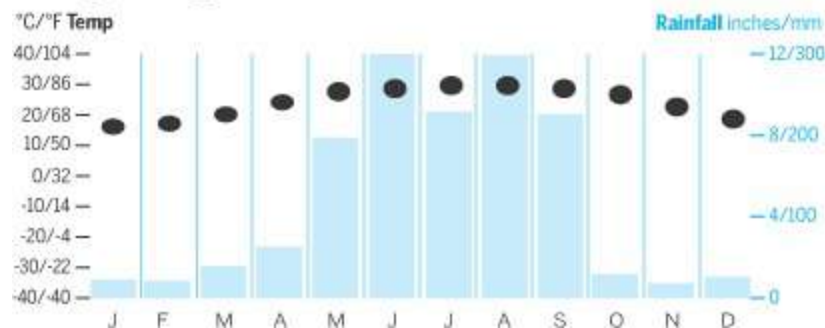
The very acme of luxury can be yours, though enjoying the city need not cost the earth. The HK\$2 ride across the harbour must be one of the world's best-value cruises. A meander through a market offers similarly cheap thrills. You can also escape the crowds – just head for one of the city's many country parks.

It's also a city that lives to eat, offering diners the very best of China and beyond. Hong Kong, above all, rewards those who grab experience by the scruff of the neck, who'll try that jellyfish, explore half-deserted villages or stroll beaches far from neon and steel.

---

## When to Go

### Hong Kong



**Mar–May** Asia's top film festival, rugby and deities' birthdays beckon beyond a sea of umbrellas.

**Jun–Sep** Get hot (beach, new wardrobe), get wet (dragon boat, beer): antidotes to sultry summers.

**Nov–Feb** Hills by day, arts festival by night, celebrate Chinese New Year under Christmas lights.

---

## Best Places to Eat

- » Dong Lai Shun ([Click here](#))
- » Kowloon Tang ([Click here](#))
- » Luk Yu Teahouse ([Click here](#))
- » Yin Yang ([Click here](#))
- » Pure Veggie House ([Click here](#))

## Best Places to Stay

- » Peninsula Hong Kong ([Click here](#))
- » Espace Elastique ([Click here](#))
- » Hotel Icon ([Click here](#))
- » Helena May ([Click here](#))
- » Upper House ([Click here](#))



## Hong Kong Highlights

- 1 Cross Victoria Harbour on the legendary **Star Ferry** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Take the steep ascent to Victoria Peak on the **Peak Tram** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Yum cha under whirling fans at **Luk Yu Teahouse** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Soak up the incensed air at **Man Mo Temple** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Feel the chug of the world's last **double-decker trams**
- 6 Indulge in the visual feast of **Tsim Sha Tsui East Promenade**

([Click here](#))

7 Lose yourself in a walled village on the **Ping Shan Heritage Trail**

([Click here](#))

8 Get some context for it all at the **Museum of History** ([Click here](#))

9 The indigenous sights, sounds and smells of **Temple Street Night Market** ([Click here](#))

a Pay your respects to the magnificent **Tian Tan Buddha** ([Click here](#))

## History

Until European traders started importing opium into the country, Hong Kong was an obscure backwater in the Chinese empire. The British developed the trade aggressively and by the start of the 19th century traded this 'foreign mud' for Chinese tea, silk and porcelain.

China's attempts to stamp out the opium trade gave the British the pretext they needed for military action. Gunboats were sent in. In 1841, the Union flag was hoisted on Hong Kong Island and the Treaty of Nanking, which brought an end to the so-called First Opium War, ceded the island to the British crown 'in perpetuity'.

At the end of the Second Opium War in 1860, Britain took possession of Kowloon Peninsula, and in 1898 a 99-year lease was granted for the New Territories.

Through the 20th century Hong Kong grew in fits and starts. Waves of refugees fled China for Hong Kong during times of turmoil. Trade flourished as did British expat social life, until the Japanese army crashed the party in 1941.

By the end of the war Hong Kong's population had fallen from 1.6 million to 610,000. But trouble in China soon swelled the numbers again as refugees (including industrialists) from the communist victory in 1949 increased the population beyond two million. This, together with a UN trade embargo on China during the Korean War and China's isolation in the next three decades, enabled Hong Kong to reinvent itself as one of the world's most dynamic ports and manufacturing and financial service centres.

In 1984 Britain agreed to return what would become the Special Administrative Region (SAR) of Hong Kong to China in 1997, on the

condition it would retain its free-market economy and its social and legal systems for 50 years. China called it 'One country, two systems'. On 1 July 1997, in pouring rain, outside the Hong Kong Convention & Exhibition Centre, the British era ended.

In the years that followed, Hong Kong weathered major storms – an economic downturn, the outbreak of the SARS virus and a nagging mistrust of the government.

In March 2012, Leung Chun-ying, a former property surveyor, became Hong Kong's fourth chief executive. Though a seemingly more decisive man than his predecessors, Leung's unsubstantiated 'red' connections have many Hong Kongers worried, something not helped by spiralling living costs and China's treatment of its dissidents.

## **Climate**

Hong Kong rarely gets especially cold, but it's worth packing something at least a little bit warm between November and March. Between May and mid-September temperatures in the mid-30s combined with stifling humidity can turn you into a walking sweat machine. This time is also the wettest, accounting for about 80% of annual rainfall, partly due to typhoons.

The best time to visit Hong Kong is between mid-September and February. At any time of the year pollution can be diabolical, most of it pouring across the border from the coal-powered factories of Guangdong, many of which are Hong Kong owned.

## **Language**

Almost 95% of Hong Kongers are Cantonese-speaking Chinese, though Putonghua (Mandarin) is increasingly used. Visitors should have few problems, however, because English is widely spoken and the street signs are bilingual, as are most restaurant menus. Written Chinese in Hong Kong uses traditional Chinese characters, which tend to be more complicated than the simplified Chinese used on the mainland.

Partly owing to its British colonial past, Hong Kong's political and economic systems are still significantly different from those of mainland China. See [Click here](#) for information on money and [Click here](#) for visas. Prices in this chapter are quoted in Hong Kong dollars (HK\$).

## Sights

Hong Kong comprises four main areas: Hong Kong Island, Kowloon, the New Territories and the Outlying Islands. Most sights are distributed in the northwestern part of Hong Kong Island, southern Kowloon Peninsula and throughout the New Territories.

More than 70% of Hong Kong is mountains and forests, most of it in the New Territories (NT). The area has seen plenty of urbanisation, but there remain traditional villages, mountain walks and beaches, all within an hour or so of the urban area by public transport. The suburbs in the NT are connected by the MTR, which links Kowloon to Lo Wu (East Rail) in the north and Kowloon to Tuen Mun (West Rail) in the west.

Of Hong Kong's 234 islands, only Lantau, Cheung Chau, Lamma and Peng Chau have easy access by ferry.

Admission charges for children and seniors at many sights are roughly half the regular price.

## EXCHANGE RATES

<b>Australia</b>	A\$1	HK\$8.04
<b>Canada</b>	C\$1	HK\$7.76
<b>China</b>	¥1	HK\$1.24
<b>Euro zone</b>	€1	HK\$10.04
<b>Japan</b>	¥1	HK\$0.097
<b>Macau</b>	MOP\$1	HK\$1.03
<b>New Zealand</b>	NZ\$1	HK\$6.36

UK UK£1 HK\$12.47

USA US\$1 HK\$7.75

For current exchange rates see [www.xe.com](http://www.xe.com).

## HONG KONG ISLAND

Central is where high finance meets haute couture, and mega deals are closed in towering skyscrapers. To the west is historically rich Sheung Wan, while Admiralty with its few but excellent offerings lies to the east. The 800m-long Central–Mid-Levels Escalator (🕒 down 6-10am, up 10.30am-midnight), which begins on Queen’s Rd Central and finishes at Conduit Rd, is useful for negotiating the slopes of Sheung Wan.

East of Admiralty is Wan Chai which features skyscrapers in the north and old neighbourhoods in the south. Neon-clad Causeway Bay lies to the east.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter. Note that prices for eating are per meal.

### Sleeping

\$ less than HK\$900

\$\$ HK\$900 to HK\$1500

\$\$\$ more than HK\$1500

### Eating

\$ less than HK\$200

\$\$ HK\$200 to HK\$400

\$\$\$ more than HK\$400

([www.thepeak.com.hk](http://www.thepeak.com.hk); one-way/return HK\$28/40; 🕒 7am-midnight; 🚇 Central, exit J2) The gravity-defying Peak Tram was the first funicular railway in Asia and is also one of Hong Kong's most memorable attractions. Rising steeply above skyscrapers, the funicular runs every 10 minutes from the lower terminus up the side of 552m Victoria Peak. On clear days and at night, the view from the top is spectacular.

#### HSBC Building BUILDING

([Offline map](#); 1 Queen's Rd, Central; 🚇 Central, exit K) The stunning headquarters of the HSBC, designed by British architect Sir Norman Foster, is a masterpiece of precision, sophistication and innovation. And so it should be. On completion in 1985 it was the world's most expensive building (it cost upward of US\$1 billion). The ground floor is public space; from there, escalators rise to the main banking hall. It's worth taking the escalator (🕒 9am-4.30pm Mon-Fri, 9am-12.30pm Sat) to the cathedral-like atrium on the 3rd floor.



#### Man Mo Temple TEMPLE

([Offline map](#); 124-126 Hollywood Rd, Sheung Wan; 🕒 8am-6pm; 🚌 bus 26) The temple was the centre of civil life on the island in the 19th century. It was built between 1847 and 1862 by Chinese merchants and dedicated to the gods of literature (*'man'*) and of war (*'mo'*). Besides a place of worship, it was a court of arbitration for local disputes. Back in the early colonial days, the government only accepted oaths taken here, rather than in a court of law.

## Sheung Wan, Central & Admiralty



## Sheung Wan, Central & Admiralty

### Sights

- 1 [Asia Society Hong Kong Centre](#) H7
- 2 [Bank of China Building](#) G5
- 3 [Cenotaph](#) F4
- 4 [Central Police Station Compound](#) D4
- 5 [Dr Sun Yatsen Museum](#) C4
- 6 [Former Legislative Council Building](#) F5
- 7 [Hong Kong Catholic Cathedral of the Immaculate Conception](#) D5
- 8 [Hong Kong Park](#) F6
- 9 [Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens](#) E6
- 10 [Jamia Mosque](#) C5
- 11 [Kwun Yam Temple](#) B3



- 12 [Man Mo Temple](#) C3
- 13 [Museum of Tea Ware](#) G5
- 14 [Ohel Leah Synagogue](#) B4
- 15 [Pak Sing Ancestral Hall](#) B3
- 16 Peak Tram Lower Terminus F6
- 17 [St John's Cathedral](#) F5
- 18 [Statue Square](#) F4
- 19 [Tai Sui Temple](#) B3

 Activities, Courses & Tours

- 20 [Wan Kei Ho International Martial Arts Association](#) C2

 Sleeping

- 21 [Bishop Lei International House](#) D5
- 22 [Four Seasons](#) E2
- 23 [Garden View](#) E6
- 24 [Helena May](#) F6
- 25 [Hotel LKF](#) D5
- 26 [Ibis](#) B2
- 27 [Mandarin Oriental](#) C2
- 28 [Upper House](#) H6

 Eating

- 29 [AMMO](#) H7
- [city'super](#) (see 56)
- 30 [L'Atelier de Joël Robuchon](#) E5
- 31 [Life Cafe](#) D4
- 32 [Lin Heung Kui](#) B2
- 33 Luk Yu Tea House E4
- [Lung King Heen](#) (see 22)
- 34 [Posto Pubblico](#) C4
- 35 [Pure Veggie House](#) E6
- [San Xi Lou](#) (see 35)
- 36 [Sing Kee](#) D3
- 37 [Teakha](#) B3
- 38 [ThreeSixty](#) E4
- 39 [Yardbird](#) C3
- 40 [Yung Kee](#) E4

 Drinking

[Amo Eno](#) (see 56)

41 [Club 71](#) D4

[Gecko Lounge](#) (see 47)

42 [Sevva](#) F4

[T:me](#) (see 41)

43 [The Globe](#) D4

★ Entertainment

44 [Grappa's Cellar](#) F4

45 Makumba D4

46 [Peel Fresco](#) D4

47 [Propaganda](#) D4

48 [Sheung Wan Civic Centre](#) B2

49 [TakeOut Comedy Club](#) D4

50 [Tivo](#) D4

51 Works D5

🏠 Shopping

52 [Arch Angel Antiques](#) D4

53 [Cat Street](#) B3

[Fook Ming Tong Tea Shop](#) (see 56)

54 [Hollywood Road](#) B3

55 [Hong Kong Book Centre](#) E4

56 [IFC Mall](#) F3

57 [Mountain Folkcraft](#) E4

58 [Pacific Place](#) H6

59 [Photo Scientific](#) E4

60 [Shanghai Tang](#) E4

Information

61 British Consulate H6

62 Canadian Consulate F3

63 Dutch Consulate F5

64 French Consulate H5

65 German Consulate H6

Japanese Consulate (see 62)

66 Lao Consulate B2

67 US Consulate F6

Not far from Man Mo Temple, Pak Sing Ancestral Hall [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 42 Tai Ping Shan St; ☺ 8am-6pm) was a clinic for Chinese patients refusing treatment by Western medicine and a storeroom for bodies awaiting burial in China. Kwun Yam Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 34 Tai Ping Shan St) honours the Goddess of Mercy. Tai Sui Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 9 Tai Ping Shan St; ☺ 8am-6pm) houses statues of animals of the Chinese zodiac.

Bank of China Building BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 1 Garden Rd; 🚇 Central, exit K) The awe-inspiring Bank of China Tower designed by IM Pei rises from the ground like a cube, and is successively reduced until the south-facing side is left to rise upward on its own. The public viewing gallery (☺ 8am–6pm Mon–Fri) on the 43rd floor offers panoramic views of Hong Kong.

## THE STAR FERRY

You can't say you've 'done' Hong Kong until you've taken a ride on a Star Ferry ( [Offline map](#); [www.starferry.com.hk](http://www.starferry.com.hk); ☺ Central–Tsim Sha Tsui every 6-12min, 6.30am-11.30pm, Wan Chai–Tsim Sha Tsui every 8-20 min, 7.20am-11pm), that legendary fleet of electric-diesel vessels with names like *Morning Star* and *Twinkling Star*. At any time of the day, the HK\$2.50 ride with its riveting views of skyscrapers and jungle-clad hills, must be one of the world's best-value cruises. At the end of the 10-minute journey, a hemp rope is cast and caught with a billhook, the way it was in 1888 when the first boat docked.

The Star Ferry was founded by Dorabjee Nowrojee, a Parsee from Bombay. Parsees believe in Zoroastrianism, and the five-pointed star on the Star Ferry logo is an ancient Zoroastrian symbol – in fact the same as the one followed by the Three Magi (who may have been Zoroastrian pilgrims) to Bethlehem in the Christmas tale.

Zoroastrians consider fire a medium through which spiritual wisdom is gained, and water is considered the source of that wisdom. No wonder that on an overcast day, the only stars you'll see over Victoria Harbour are those of the Star Ferry.



Happy Valley Racecourse RACECOURSE

( [Offline map](#); [www.hkjc.com/home/english/index.asp](http://www.hkjc.com/home/english/index.asp); 2 Sports Rd, Happy Valley; admission HK\$10; ☺ 7-10.30pm Wed Sep-Jun; 🚗 Happy Valley) An evening at the races here is one of the

quintessential Hong Kong things to do, if you happen to be around during one of the weekly Wednesday evening races. The punters pack into the stands and trackside, cheering and drinking, and the atmosphere is electric. Check the website for details on betting and tourist packages.

#### Asia Society Hong Kong Centre BUILDING, GALLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); The Hong Kong Jockey Club Former Explosives Magazine; 📍 2103 9511; <http://asiasociety.org/hong-kong>; 9 Justice Dr, Admiralty; 🕒 gallery 11am-5pm Tue–Sun, to 8pm last Thu of the month; 🚇 Admiralty, exit F) This magnificent site integrates 19th-century British military buildings, including two explosives magazines, and transforms them into a sublime-looking complex comprising an exhibition gallery, a theatre and a restaurant ([Click here](#)). The centre is an easy walk from the hotels in Admiralty.

#### Dr Sun Yatsen Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 7 Castle Rd, Mid- Levels, Central; admission HK\$10; 🕒 10am-6pm Mon-Wed, Fri & Sat, to 7pm Sun; 🚏 buses 3B, 12) Housed in a marvellous Edwardian-style building, the museum is dedicated to the father of modern China and his time in Hong Kong. The mansion was built in 1914 as the residence of a tycoon from an influential Eurasian family. It was converted into a Mormon Church in 1960, and became the museum that it is today in 2006.

Dr Sun Yatsen was a key figure in modern Chinese history. Unfortunately, the dull exhibition here does not really do justice to his legendary life, though the architecture of the repurposed building is a delight.


#### Central Police Station Compound HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 10 Hollywood Rd; 🚇 Central, exit D1) This enormous disused colonial compound, together with the adjacent former magistracy and Victoria Prison, were built between 1841 and 1919. There are plans to revitalise the buildings as an art gallery, cinema, museum and boutique shopping mall. The whole renovation is expected to be completed in 2014.

## Hong Kong Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 19 Cotton Tree Dr, Admiralty; ☺ park 6am-11pm;  Admiralty, exit C1) The artificial waterfalls and swan-graced ponds in this 8-hectare park may be a tad too picture-perfect unless you're a bride (or groom), but the dramatic views of skyscrapers facing off mountains should lure anyone to snap away. Highlights here are the Edward Youde Aviary ( ☺ 9am–5pm), which has a wooden bridge suspended at eye level with tree branches where 600 birds reside, and the Museum of Tea Ware [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); [www.lcsd.gov.hk/ce/Museum/Arts/en/tea/tea01.html](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/ce/Museum/Arts/en/tea/tea01.html); 10 Cotton Tree Dr, Admiralty; admission free; ☺ 10am-5pm Wed-Mon).

## HONG KONG IN...

### One Day


Catch a tram up to **Victoria Peak** for great views of the city, stopping in **Central** for lunch on the way down. Head to **Man Mo Temple** for a taste of history before boarding the **Star Ferry** to Kowloon. Enjoy the views along **Tsim Sha Tsui East Promenade** as you stroll over to the **Museum of History**. After dinner in Tsim Sha Tsui, take the MTR to **Soho** for drinks.

### Two Days

In addition to the above, you could go to **Aberdeen** for a boat ride, then seafood and shopping in **Ap Lei Chau**. Alternatively, go hiking and swimming in **Sai Kung** followed by seafood on the waterfront. After dark, head to the **Temple Street Night Market** for sightseeing, shopping and street food. If you're still game, check out the **Yau Ma Tei Wholesale Fruit Market**.

## Hong Kong Zoological & Botanical Gardens PARK


[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Albany Rd, Central; ☺ terrace gardens 6am-10pm, zoo & aviaries to 7pm, greenhouse 9am-4.30pm;  buses 3B, 12) Built more than a century ago in the style of an English park, the gardens feature a pleasant collection of arbour'd paths, fountains, aviaries and a zoo. It's ideal for a walk, if you can ignore the smell of flamingo





droppings.

## Statue Square MONUMENT, HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)



( [Offline map](#); Edinburgh Pl, Central;  Central, exit K) This leisurely square used to house effigies of British royalty. Now it pays tribute to a single sovereign – the founder of HSBC, the banking giant that owns the square. To the east is the Former Legislative Council Building [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 8 Jackson Rd), a neoclassical edifice. To the north is the Cenotaph [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); Chater Rd), a memorial to Hong Kong residents killed during the two world wars.

## Old Wan Chai NEIGHBOURHOOD

( Wan Chai, exit A3,  6 or 6A) The area around Queen's Rd E is filled with pockets of local culture that are best explored on foot. The mini-museum Hong Kong House of Stories [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#);  enquiries 2117 5850, tour enrolment (Suki Chau) 2835 4376; wctour@gmail.com; <http://houseofstories.sjs.org.hk>; 74 Stone Nullah Lane, Wan Chai;  11am-5pm) occupies the historic Blue House ( ) a pre-war building with cast-iron Spanish balconies reminiscent of New Orleans, and no toilet flushing facilities. It runs tours of Wan Chai in English (HK\$600, two hours). Email a month in advance to arrange.

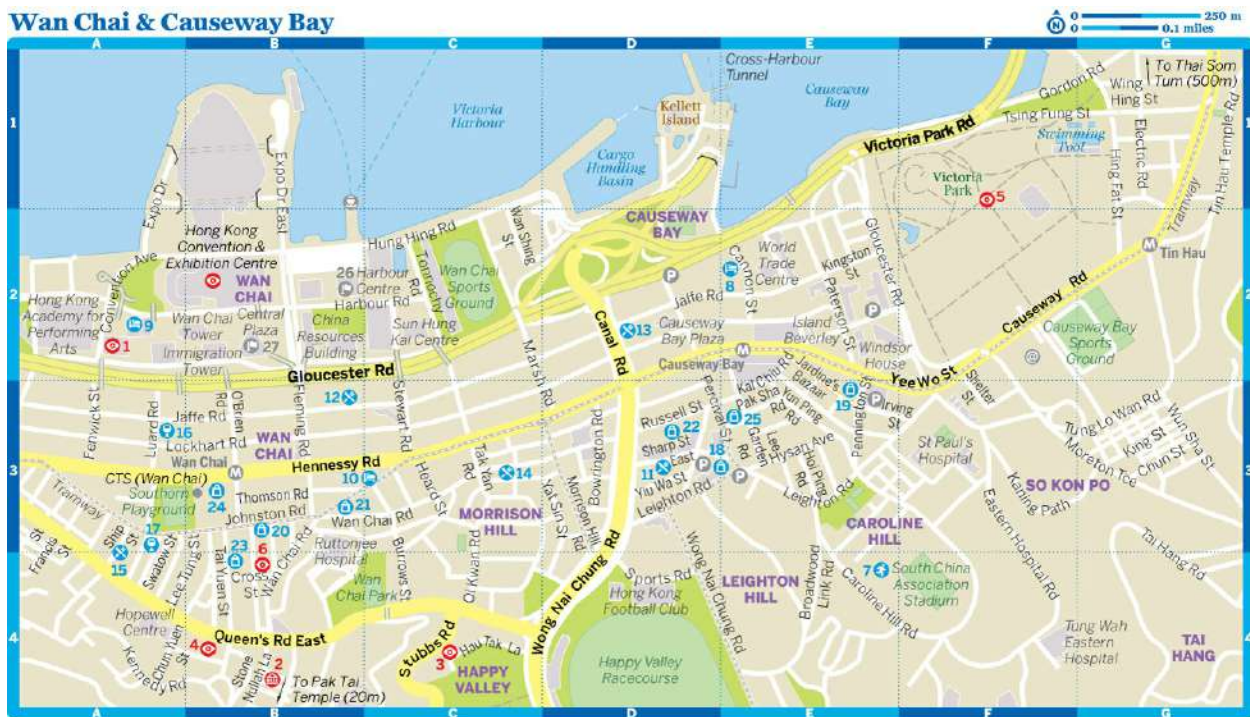
The Old Wan Chai Post Office [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 221 Queen's Rd E;  10am-5pm Wed-Mon) is Hong Kong's oldest post-office building. The area sandwiched by Queen's Rd E and Johnston Rd is a lively outdoor bazaar. Wan Chai market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 7.30am-7pm) vendors flaunt their wares on Cross St and Stone Nullah Lane. Tai Yuen Street has goldfish, plastic flowers and granny underwear for sale but is best known for its toy shops (14-19 Tai Yuen St;  10am-8.30pm) selling collectibles such as clockwork tin.

## Pak Tai Temple TEMPLE

( [Offline map](#); 2 Lung On St, Wan Chai;  8am-5pm;  Wan Chai, exit A3) A short stroll up Stone Nullah Lane takes you to a majestic Taoist temple built in 1863 to honour a god of the sea, Pak Tai. The temple – the largest on Hong Kong Island – is quite impressive and

contains a 3m-tall copper likeness of Pak Tai cast in the Ming dynasty in its main hall.

### Wan Chai & Causeway Bay



### Wan Chai & Causeway Bay

#### Sights

- 1 [Hong Kong Arts Centre](#) A2
- 2 [Hong Kong House of Stories \(Blue House\)](#) B4
- 3 [Khalsa Diwan Sikh Temple](#) C4
- 4 [Old Wan Chai Post Office](#) B4
- 5 [Victoria Park](#) F1
- 6 [Wan Chai Market](#) B4

#### Activities, Courses & Tours

- 7 [South China Athletic Association](#) E4

#### Sleeping

- 8 [Alisan Guest House](#) E2
- 9 [Harbour View](#) A2
- 10 [Regal iClub Hotel](#) C3

#### Eating

- 11 [Irori](#) D3
- 12 [Joon Ko Restaurant](#) B3
- 13 [Manor Seafood Restaurant](#) D2

14 [Old Bazaar Kitchen](#) C3

15 [Yin Yang](#) A4

☞ Drinking

16 [Delaney's](#) A3

[Executive Bar](#) (see 11)

17 [Pawn](#) A3

☞ Shopping

[Daydream Nation](#) (see 1)

18 [G.O.D.](#) E3

19 Jardine's Bazaar E3

20 Johnston Road B3

21 [Kung Fu Supplies](#) B3

22 [Page One](#) D3

23 Tai Yuen Toy Shops B4

24 [Wan Chai Computer Centre](#) B3

25 [Yiu Fung Store](#) E3

Information

26 Australian Consulate B2

27 New Zealand Consulate B2

Victoria Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Causeway Rd, Causeway Bay; admission free; ☎ 6am or 7am-11pm; 🚇 Tin Hau, exit B) Hong Kong's largest patch of public greenery is best visited on weekday mornings, when it becomes a slow-motion forest of taichi practitioners, and during the mid-autumn festival, when people turn out en masse carrying lanterns.

Hong Kong Film Archive FILM ARCHIVE

( 📞 2739 2139, bookings 2734 9009, 2119 7383; [www.filmarchive.gov.hk](http://www.filmarchive.gov.hk); 50 Lei King Rd, Sai Wan Ho; ☎ box office noon-8pm, closed Thu, resource centre 10am-7pm Mon-Wed & Fri, to 5pm Sat, 1-5pm Sun; 🚇 Sai Wan Ho, exit A) With more than 6300 reels in the vaults and 30,000 pieces of related materials, this excellent archive dedicated to Hong Kong cinema is well worth a visit for film buffs.

St John's Cathedral CHURCH



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.stjohnscathedral.org.hk](http://www.stjohnscathedral.org.hk); 4-8 Garden Rd, Central; ☎ 7am-6pm; 🚇 Central, exit J2) Services have been held at this elegant Anglican cathedral since it opened in 1849, except in 1944, when the Japanese army used it as a social club.

Khalsa Diwan Sikh Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 2572 4459; [www.khalsadiwan.com](http://www.khalsadiwan.com); 371 Queen's Rd E, Wan Chai; ☎ 4am-9pm; 🚗) Hong Kong's largest Sikh temple welcomes people of any creed, caste or colour to partake of their prayer services (4 to 8am and 6 to 8pm Monday to Saturday, 9am to 1pm Sunday) and free vegetarian meals (11.30am to 8.30pm).

Hong Kong Catholic Cathedral of the Immaculate Conception  
CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); <http://cathedral.catholic.org.hk>; 16 Caine Rd, Central; ☎ 7am-7pm) Hong Kong's most important Catholic building, built in 1888.

Jamia Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); ☎ 2523 7743; 30 Shelley St, Central) Erected in 1849, this oldest mosque in Hong Kong is not open to non-Muslims, but you can admire the facade from the terrace out front.

Ohel Leah Synagogue SYNAGOGUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📞 2589 2621; [www.ohelleah.org](http://www.ohelleah.org); 70 Robinson Rd, Mid-Levels; ☎ 10.30am-7pm Mon-Thu) This Moorish-looking temple is the territory's earliest synagogue. Bring ID if you want to visit the interior. Visit by appointment only.

Stanley Beach & Market MARKET, BEACH

This crowd pleaser is best visited on weekdays. The Stanley Market (; Stanley Village Rd; ☎ 10am-6pm) is a maze of alleyways which has bargain clothing (haggling a must!). Stanley Main Beach is for beach-bumming and windsurfing. With graves dating back to 1841, Stanley Military Cemetery, 500m south of Stanley Market, is worth a visit.

## Aberdeen HARBOUR

() Aberdeen's main attraction is the typhoon shelter it shares with sleepy Ap Lei Chau, where the sampans of the boat-dwelling fisherfolk used to moor. A half-hour tour of the typhoon shelter by sampan costs about HK\$68 per person. You can also hop on the commuter boats plying the waters between Aberdeen Promenade and Ap Lei Chau (HK\$1.80, five minutes).

## Repulse Bay BEACH

() At the southeastern end of Hong Kong's most popular beach stand the eccentric Kwun Yam shrine () and a garish gallery of deities – from goldfish and a monkey god to the more familiar Tin Hau. Crossing Longevity Bridge () is supposed to add three days to your life.

## Ocean Park AMUSEMENT PARK

( [Offline map](#); [www.oceanpark.com.hk](http://www.oceanpark.com.hk); Ocean Park Rd; admission HK\$250; ☺ 10am-6pm) Ocean Park, the worthy nemesis of Hong Kong Disneyland, is a massive marine-themed amusement park complete with white-knuckle rides, giant pandas and the very rare red pandas, an atoll reef and an amazing aquarium. Kidults will have a blast at the park's annual Halloween Bash (☺ 5.30pm-midnight late Sep-Oct). Bus 629 from Admiralty MTR Station or Central Pier No 7 takes you there.

## Shek O BEACH

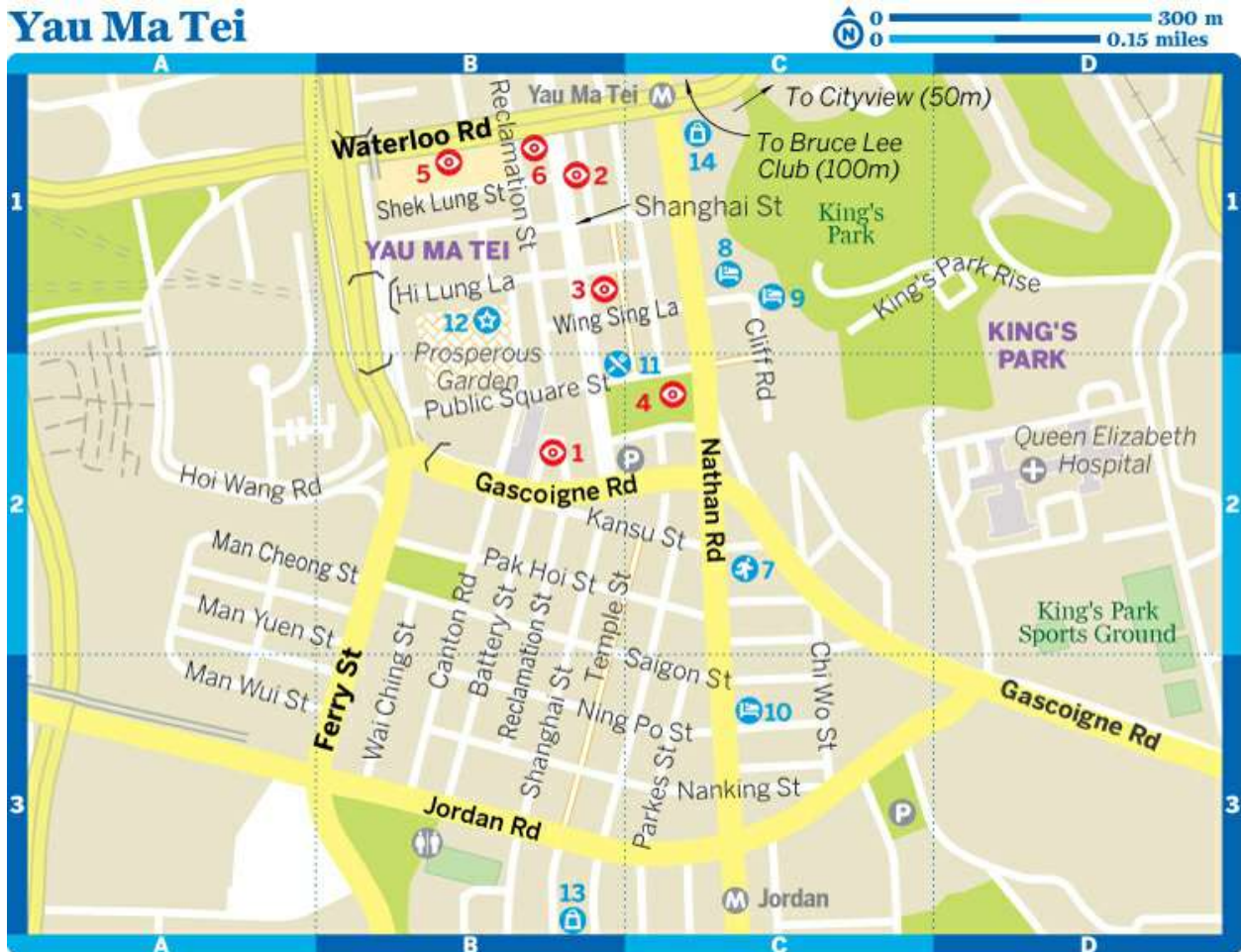
() Shek O is the kind of place where villagers drying algae on clotheslines live alongside Vespa-riding 'bourgeois bohemians'. Ragged cliffs and a laid-back vibe complete the picture.

## KOWLOON

Tsim Sha Tsui, known for its variety of dining and shopping options, is Hong Kong's most eclectic district, with the glamorous only a stone's throw from the pedestrian, and a population comprising Chinese, South Asians, Africans, Filipinos and Europeans.

To the north, buzzing with local life, is down-at-heel Yau Ma Tei. Traffic- and pedestrian-choked Mong Kok is the world's most densely populated place.

## Yau Ma Tei



### Yau Ma Tei

#### Sights

- 1 [Jade Market](#) B2
- 2 [Red Brick House](#) B1
- 3 [Temple Street Night Market](#) B1
- 4 [Tin Hau Temple](#) C2
- 5 [Wholesale Fruit Market](#) B1
- 6 [Yau Ma Tei Theatre](#) B1

#### Activities, Courses & Tours

- 7 [Map Publications Centre](#) C2

#### Sleeping

- 8 [Booth Lodge](#) C1
- 9 [Caritas Bianchi Lodge](#) C1
- 10 [Madera Hong Kong](#) C3

#### Eating

11 [Mido Cafe](#) B2

★ Entertainment

12 [Broadway Cinematheque](#) B1

🔒 Shopping

13 [Chan Wah Kee Cutlery Store](#) B3

14 [Protrek](#) C1



Tsim Sha Tsui East Promenade HARBOUR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Salisbury Rd; Tsim Sha Tsui, exit E) The resplendent views of Victoria Harbour make this walkway one of the best strolls in Hong Kong. Begin your journey at the old Kowloon–Canton Railway clock tower, a landmark of the Age of Steam, near the Star Ferry concourse. To your left is the windowless Hong Kong Cultural Centre [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), passing which you'll arrive at the Avenue of the Stars [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), Hong Kong's unoriginal tribute to its brilliant film industry. It's the vantage point for watching the Symphony of Lights (🕒 8-8.20pm), a laser-light show projected from atop skyscrapers.

## HONG KONG MUSEUMS

The Hong Kong Museum Pass (seven days HK\$30), which allows multiple entries to all museums mentioned in this chapter, is available from the participating museums – see [www.discoverhongkong.com/eng/attractions/museum-major.html](http://www.discoverhongkong.com/eng/attractions/museum-major.html).

Museums are free on Wednesday.



Hong Kong Museum of History MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 100 Chatham Rd South; admission HK\$10; 🕒 10am-6pm Mon & Wed-Sat, to 7pm Sun; Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B2) If you only have time for one museum, do make it this one. It will take you on a fascinating journey through Hong Kong's past, from prehistoric times

to 1997. The 'Hong Kong Story' has interesting artefacts showing the customs of the territory's earliest inhabitants and the development of its urban culture.

Former Marine Police Headquarters HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.1881heritage.com](http://www.1881heritage.com); 2A Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; admission free; ☺ exhibition hall 10am-10pm; 🚢 Star Ferry) Built in 1884, this gorgeous Victorian-style complex is one of Hong Kong's four oldest government buildings. Much to some Hong Kongers' chagrin, it was converted into a nakedly commercial property featuring shops, restaurants and a hotel in 2009. The developer felt the number '4' in the founding date was unlucky as it has a similar pronunciation to 'death' in Chinese, so the site was named 'Heritage 1881'.



St Andrew's Anglican Church CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.standrews.org.hk](http://www.standrews.org.hk); 138 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; ☺ 7.30am-10.30pm; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B1) Hidden on a knoll behind the Former Kowloon British School is Kowloon's oldest Protestant church. The charming complex was built in 1905 in red brick and granite in an English Gothic style, and served briefly as a Shinto shrine during the Japanese occupation.

Former Kowloon British School HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.amo.gov.hk](http://www.amo.gov.hk); 136 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B1) The oldest surviving school building for the children of Hong Kong's expat community is a listed Victorian-style building that now houses the Antiquities and Monuments Office (). Constructed in 1902, it was subsequently modified to incorporate breezy verandas and high ceilings, prompted possibly by the fainting spells suffered by its young occupants.

Hong Kong Museum of Art MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.lcsd.gov.hk](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk); 10 Salisbury Rd, Kowloon; admission HK\$10, free Wed; ☺ 10am-6pm Fri-Wed, to 8pm Sat; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit J) The museum's six floors of Chinese antiquities, paintings,

calligraphy and contemporary Hong Kong art are a must if you're remotely interested in art. Thematic exhibitions featuring modern works by local and overseas artists are also inspiring. Free English-language tours at 11am.

**TOP CHOICE** Temple Street Night Market MARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 🕒 6pm-midnight; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit C) Extending from Man Ming Lane to Nanking St, this famous bazaar hawks everything under the moon from pirated designer bags to sex toys. Remember to bargain. There are also Cantonese opera performances, and fortune-tellers, many of whom are English-speaking. Night owls should saunter over to the historic wholesale fruit market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (cnr Shek Lung & Reclamation Sts; 🕒 midnight-dawn; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit B2) nearby with its spectacle of trucks off-loading fresh fruit and workers manoeuvring boxes in front of century-old stalls.



## Kowloon

### 📍 Sights

- 1 [Avenue of the Stars D4](#)
- 2 [Fook Tak Ancient Temple C3](#)
- 3 [Former Kowloon British School \(Antiquities and Monuments](#)

[Office](#)) C1

4 [Former Marine Police Headquarters \(Heritage 1881\)](#) C4

5 [Hong Kong Cultural Centre](#) C4

6 [Hong Kong Museum of Art](#) C4

7 [Hong Kong Museum of History](#) E1

8 Kowloon Mosque and Islamic Centre C2

9 [Kowloon Park](#) C2

10 Kowloon-Canton Railway Clock Tower C4

11 [Middle Road Children's Playground](#) D3

12 [Signal Hill Garden & Blackhead Point Tower](#) D3

13 [St Andrew's Anglican Church](#) D1

14 [Tsim Sha Tsui East Promenade](#) E4

15 [Tsim Sha Tsui East Waterfront Podium Garden](#) E3

 Sleeping

16 [BP International Hotel](#) C1

17 [Chungking Mansions](#) D3

18 [Hop Inn](#) C3

19 [Hop Inn on Carnarvon](#) D2

20 [Hotel Icon](#) F2

21 [Hyatt Regency Tsim Sha Tsui](#) D3

22 [Mirador Mansion](#) D3

23 [Peninsula Hong Kong](#) C3

24 [Salisbury](#) C4

 Eating

25 [city'super](#) B2

26 [Din Tai Fung](#) C3

27 [Dong Lai Shun](#) E2

28 [Kimberley Chinese Restaurant](#) D2

29 [Spring Deer](#) D3

[Stables Grill](#) (see 4)

30 [Typhoon Shelter Hing Kee Restaurant](#) C1

31 [Woodlands](#) E3

32 [Ye Shanghai](#) B3

33 [Ziafat](#) C3

 Drinking

34 [Butler](#) D3

35 [Ned Kelly's Last Stand](#) C3

36 [Tapas Bar](#) E3

 Shopping

37 [Harbour City](#) B4

38 [Initial](#) D2

39 [Premier Jewellery](#) D3

40 [Rise Shopping Arcade](#) D2

41 [Swindon Books](#) C3


42 [Yue Hwa Chinese Products Emporium](#) C1

Information

43 [Phoenix Services Agency](#) D1


Jade Market & Shanghai Street MARKET, STREET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)


( [Offline map](#); cnr Kansu & Battery Sts, Yau Ma Tei; ☺ 10am-5pm;  Yau Ma Tei, exit C) Some 450 stalls sell all varieties and grades of jade, but unless you know your nephrite from your jadeite, it's wise not to buy expensive pieces here. Walking down Shanghai Street ( ) on the other side of Kansu St, however, is free. Once Kowloon's main drag, it's lined with stores selling embroidered Chinese wedding gowns, sandalwood incense, kitchenware and Buddhist provisions; there's a pawn shop at the junction with Saigon St, and mahjong parlours (you can go in, but refrain from taking photos).

Tin Hau Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); cnr Temple & Public Square Sts; ☺ 8am-5pm;  Yau Ma Tei, exit C) This large, incense-filled sanctuary built in the 19th century is one of Hong Kong's most famous Tin Hau temples. The square in front is Yau Ma Tei's communal heart, where fishermen once laid out their hemp ropes to sun next to banyans that today shade chess players, retirees and gangsters.

Chi Lin Nunnery TEMPLE

( [Offline map](#); [www.chilin.org](http://www.chilin.org); 5 Chin Lin Dr, Diamond Hill; ☺ 9am-4.30pm;  Diamond Hill, exit C2) This beautiful replica of a Tang dynasty monastery comes complete with temples, lotus ponds, Buddhist relics and timber structures assembled without the use of a single iron nail. It's the world's largest cluster of handcrafted timber



buildings. Connected to the nunnery is Nan Lian Garden ([www.nanliangarden.org](http://www.nanliangarden.org); ☺ 10am-6pm), a Tang-style garden featuring a pagoda, a tea pavilion, a koi pond and a bizarre collection of petrified wood.

#### Sik Sik Yuen Wong Tai Sin Temple TEMPLE

( [www.siksikyuen.org.hk](http://www.siksikyuen.org.hk); Lung Cheung Rd, Wong Tai Sin; admission by donation HK\$2; ☺ 7am-5.30pm; 🚇 Wong Tai Sin, exit B3) This Taoist temple is dedicated to Wong Tai Sin, who was said to have transformed boulders into sheep. In fact, the whole area, an MTR station and a residential property near the temple are all named after this poor immortal who was supposed to have been a hermit.

#### Middle Road Children's Playground PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Middle Rd; ☺ 7am-11pm; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui) On weekends, this hidden gem with play facilities, shaded seating, abundant greenery and views of the waterfront attracts children and picnickers of as many ethnicities as there are ways to go down a slide (if you're 12). The park sits on the podium of the MTR Tsim Sha Tsui East station. Its eastern exit is connected to the handsome Tsim Sha Tsui East Waterfront Podium Garden [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#)).

#### Signal Hill Garden & Blackhead Point Tower PARK, TOWER

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Minden Row; ☺ tower 9-11am & 4-6pm) The views at the top of this knoll are quite spectacular, though if this were the 1900s all the ships in the harbour could be returning your gaze – a copper ball in the handsome Edwardian-style tower here was dropped at 1pm daily so seafarers could adjust their chronometers. Enter from Minden Row (off Mody Rd).

#### Kowloon Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 22 Austin Rd; ☺ 6am- midnight; 🚇 Jordan, exit E) This green oasis is great for people-watching, particularly on Sunday when it's packed with migrant domestic workers enjoying their day off, singing, dancing and socialising. Sunday is also the day for Kung Fu Corner, a display of martial arts.

## FRED YEUNG: ROCK CLIMBER, GRAFFITI ARTIST

### Best Rock Climbing

On Tung Lung Chau, where there's a technical wall, a sea gully and a big wall. Follow the path to the fort on the island and you'll see Holiday Store. The folks there will show you. A ferry (☎ 2560 9929) leaves Sai Wan Ho typhoon shelter for the island four to six times a day on weekends. On weekdays you can just show up at the typhoon shelter and haggle with sampan operators. Tai Tau Chau, near Shek O beach, also has excellent granite, some with bolted routes.

### Best Graffiti

Hong Kong's graffiti hall of fame is a lane close to a school and one of the exits of Mong Kok East MTR station. You'll see throw-ups, stencils, pieces and wildstyle. There's also a pavilion at Hong Kong's most popular surf spot, Big Wave Bay (🚇 Shau Kei Wan station, exit A3, Shek O-bound minibus) featuring works that change every year. The Jockey Club Creative Arts Centre has graffiti on the 5th and 6th levels.

### Yau Ma Tei Theatre HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)


( [Offline map](#); ☎ enquiries 2264 8108, tickets 2374 2598; [www.lcsd.gov.hk/ymtt](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/ymtt); 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit B2) Two historic buildings have been converted into a centre for Cantonese opera. For decades, the art deco interiors of the YMT Theatre kept many a coolie and rickshaw driver entertained, but losing business to modern cinemas in the '80s, it began showing porn to stay afloat. The neoclassical Red Brick House [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)) was the Engineer's Office of the former Pumping Station ( 8 Waterloo Rd) built in 1895.

### Jockey Club Creative Arts Centre ARTS CENTRE

( [www.jccac.org.hk](http://www.jccac.org.hk); 30 Pak Tin St, Shek Kip Mei; 🕒 10am-10pm; 🚇 Shek Kip Mei, exit C) More than 150 artists have moved into these factory premises that used to churn out shoes and watches. Many


studios are closed on weekdays, but you can visit the breezy communal areas and G.O.D. Street Culture Museum & Store (Unit L2-09; ☺ 12.30-6.30pm, closed Mon & Tue), which has an attractive 'old Hong Kong' display and regular opening hours.

#### Yuen Po St Bird Garden GARDENS


( Flower Market Rd, Mong Kok; ☺ 7am-8pm;  Prince Edward, exit B1) To the east of the Prince Edward MTR station is this delightful place where birds are preened, bought, sold and fed bugs with chopsticks by their fussy owners (usually men). Nearby is the flower market, which keeps the same hours but is busiest after 10am.

#### Fook Tak Ancient Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 30 Haiphong Rd; ☺ 6am-8pm;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit A1) Built in 1900, Tsim Sha Tsui's only temple is a smoky hole-in-the-hall with a hot tin roof. Most incense offerers are white-haired octogenarians – Fook Tak specialises in longevity.

#### Kowloon Mosque & Islamic Centre MOSQUE

( [Offline map](#); 105 Nathan Rd; ☺ 5am-10pm;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit A1) This edifice with its gleaming dome accommodates up to 2000 worshippers. Non-Muslims should ask for permission to enter.

## SIGHTS WEBSITES

Handy websites for sights listed in this chapter are:

Antiquities & Monuments Office (<http://amo.gov.hk>) All villages, heritage trails and some historic structures.

Chinese Temple Committee ([www.ctc.org.hk](http://www.ctc.org.hk)) Most temples.

Leisure & Cultural Services Department ([www.lcsd.gov.hk](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk)) All public parks, beaches and museums.

## NEW TERRITORIES

Occupying 747 sq km of Hong Kong's land mass, the New Territories is a combination of housing estates and some unspoiled rural areas.

The New Towns of Tsuen Wan, Tuen Mun, Fanling, Sheung Shui, Tai Po and Sha Tin are all worth visiting for their temples and museums. They are accessible via their eponymous MTR stations, and Tuen Mun is served by the Light Rail network.

Yuen Long boasts Hong Kong's most historical walled villages and a world-class nature reserve. It's on both the West Rail and the Light Rail Transit networks.

The Sai Kung Peninsula is great for hiking, sailing and seafood. The New Territories' best beaches are here.



### Mai Po Marsh Nature Reserve WILDLIFE RESERVE

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2471 3480; [www.wwf.org.hk](http://www.wwf.org.hk); San Tin, Yuen Long; 🕒 9am-5pm Mon-Fri) This 380-hectare area in Deep Bay is home to a plethora of flora and fauna, including 380 species of migratory and resident birds. Three-hour English tours (\$70) leave the visitor centre at 9.30am, 10am, 2pm and 2.30pm on weekends and public holidays. Online registration is now available. Remember to bring your binoculars, or you can rent some at the visitor centre for HK\$20. Take bus 76K from Fanling or Sheung Shui MTR East Rail stations.



### Ping Shan Heritage Trail OUTDOORS


( [Offline map](#); 📍 West Rail Tin Shui Wai, exit E) The 1km trail through three partially walled villages will lead you down the memory lane of pre-colonial Hong Kong. The trail boasts 12 well-restored historic buildings, including two magnificent ancestral halls (🕒 9am-1pm & 2-5pm), a study hall, the territory's oldest pagoda (🕒 9am-1pm & 2-5pm, closed Tue) and a museum about the powerful Tang clan, among the first immigrants to settle in Hong Kong in the 11th century. Cross Tsui Sing Rd from the ground floor of the West Rail MTR station and you'll see the pagoda.

### Tai Fu Tai Mansion HISTORIC BUILDING

( [Offline map](#); 🕒 9am-1pm & 2-5pm Wed-Mon; 📍 San Tin, Yuen Long; 🚌 76K) This splendid Mandarin-style building complex from 1865 used to be the dwelling of the Man clan, another powerful family in the New Territories, until they moved out in 1980. The courtyard is encircled by stone walls with a formerly guarded checkpoint. Inside, auspicious Chinese symbols are found in the woodcarvings along with

art-nouveau glass panels. Board bus 76K in Sheung Shui and get off at the San Tin stop.


#### Lung Yeuk Tau Heritage Trail OUTDOORS

( [Offline map](#);  East Rail Fanling, then bus 54K or 56K) This 4.5km-long trail northeast of Fanling meanders through five walled villages. The most attractive of the lot is the oldest (800 years) but most intact Lo Wai, identifiable by its 1m-thick fortified wall. Other attractions here include the Tang Chung Ling Ancestral Hall (🕒 9am-5pm Wed-Mon) and the stone mansion of Shek Lo.

#### Kat Hing Wai VILLAGE

( [Offline map](#)) This tiny (100m by 90m), once-moated hamlet on Kam Tin Rd is another domicile of the Tang clan, though some Hakka villagers also live here. Visitors are asked to make a donation as they enter the walled village. For HK\$10, you can take pictures of the old Hakka ladies near the entrance. If you don't pay, they'll hide their faces.


#### Tai Po Market & Man Mo Temple MARKET, TEMPLE

( & [Offline map](#); Fu Shin St; 🕒 6am-8pm;  East Rail Tai Wo) This busy outdoor wet market is one of the most interesting markets in the New Territories. Towards the northern end of the same street, the double-hall Man Mo Temple [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 🕒 8am-6pm) from the late 19th century is a centre of worship for the Tai Po area.

#### Hong Kong Wetland Park PARK

( [Offline map](#); [www.wetlandpark.com](http://www.wetlandpark.com); Wetland Park Rd, Tin Shui Wai; admission HK\$30; 🕒 10am-5pm) The natural trails, bird hides and viewing platforms make this 60-hectare ecological park an excellent spot for bird-watching. Take the West Rail line to Tin Shui Wai and board MTR Light Rail line 705 or 706.

#### Fung Ying Seen Temple TEMPLE

( 66 Pak Wo Rd, Fanling; 🕒 8am-6pm;  East Rail Fan Ling) For all its cheerful colours, this Taoist temple is a little morbid. It contains a dozen columbaria for cremated ancestral remains. If you venture into the hills behind the complex, you'll see graves flung all over the slopes, Tim Burton style.



Hong Kong Heritage Museum MUSEUM

( 1 Man Lam Rd; admission HK\$10; ☎ 10am-6pm Mon & Wed-Sat, to 7pm Sun; 🚇 East Rail Sha Tin) There are impressive displays on Cantonese opera and New Territories heritage here, which feature replicas of traditional villages and bamboo theatres, and stunning costumes once worn by opera artists. Kids will love the large Children's Discovery Gallery on the ground floor. There are free Cantonese opera performances every Saturday from 3pm to 5.30pm.

#### Tsing Shan Monastery BUDDHIST

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2461 8050; Tsing Shan Monastery Path; ☎ 24hr; 🚇 line 610, 615, 615P) Founded 1500 years ago, the oldest temple in Hong Kong you see today was rebuilt in 1926. There are a cluster of quirky shrines for different saints and bodhisattvas. The temple was one of the shooting locations for the Bruce Lee classic *Enter the Dragon*. Alight at Tsing Shan Tsuen Light Rail station. The steep path to the entrance of the monastery is a 30-minute walk.

#### Ten Thousand Buddhas Monastery MONASTERY

( 221 Pai Tau Village; ☎ 9am-5pm; 🚇 Sha Tin, exit B) Some 12,800 miniature statues line the walls of the main temple and dozens of life-sized golden statues of Buddha's followers flank the steep steps leading to the monastery complex. There are several temples and pavilions split over two levels, as well as a nine-storey pagoda. From the MTR exit, walk down the ramp, turning left onto Pai Tau St. After a short distance, turn right onto Sheung Wo Che St, walk to the end and follow the signs up the 400 steps.

#### Dragon Garden GARDENS

( <http://dragongarden.hk>; Sham Tseng) Hong Kong's largest remaining private garden has gorgeous faux-ancient architecture inspired by period styles of the Song, Ming and Qing dynasties. A philanthropist's weekend villa, it appeared in the Bond classic *Man with the Golden Gun* (1974) and the mini-series *Noble House* starring Pierce Brosnan (1988).

#### Hoi Ha Wan Marine Park OUTDOORS, BEACH

( [Offline map](#); 📞 hotline 1823; Hoi Ha, Sai Kung; 🚗 green minibus 7) The marine park is a 260-hectare protected area and is one of the few places in Hong Kong waters where coral still grows in abundance. Snorkels, masks and kayaks can be rented from the store on the

beach. The 1½-hour tours of the marine park are available at 10.30am and 2.15pm on Sunday and public holidays. You must register with the Agriculture, Fisheries & Conservation Department (AFCD; ☎ 1823) in advance.

## RENT-A-CURSE GRANNIES

Under the Canal Rd Flyover between Wan Chai and Causeway Bay, you can hire little old ladies to beat up your enemy. From their perch on plastic stools, these rent-a-curse grannies will pound paper cut-outs of your romantic rival, office bully or a whiny celeb with a shoe (their orthopaedic flat or your stilettos) while rapping curses. All for only HK\$50.

Villain hitting (; *da siu yan*) is a practice related to folk sorcery. It's performed throughout the year but the most popular date for it is on the Day of the Awakening of Insects when the sun is at an exact celestial longitude of 345 degrees (usually between 5 and 20 March on the Gregorian calendar).

It's believed to bring reconciliation or resolution, though that too could be symbolic.

## OUTLYING ISLANDS

Lantau is the largest island in Hong Kong and is ideal for a multiday excursion to explore its trails, villages and to enjoy the beaches. Mui Wo is the arrival point for ferries from Central, and Tung Chung is connected by MTR.

Laid-back Lamma has decent beaches, excellent walks and a cluster of restaurants in Yung Shue Wan and Sok Kwu Wan. A fun day involves taking the ferry to Yung Shue Wan, walking the easy 90-minute trail to Sok Kwu Wan and settling in for lunch at one of the seafood restaurants beside the water.

Dumbbell-shaped Cheung Chau, with a harbour filled with fishing boats, a windsurfing centre, several temples and some waterfront restaurants, also makes a fun day out. Not far away is Peng Chau, the smallest and most traditional of the easily accessible islands.



### Po Lin Monastery MONASTERY

( [Offline map](#); Lantau; 🕒 9am-6pm) Lording over Ngong Ping plateau, 500m above sea level, this enormous temple complex contains the

26m-tall Tian Tan Buddha statue (🕒 10am-5.30pm), the world's tallest seated bronze Buddha statue. From Mui Wo, board bus 2 to Ngong Ping; alternatively, a cable-car system called Ngong Ping 360 (360 [www.np360.com.hk](http://www.np360.com.hk); adult/child/concession one way HK\$86/44/70, return HK\$125/62/98; 🕒 10am-6pm Mon-Fri, 9am-6.30pm Sat, Sun & public holidays) links Ngong Ping with Tung Chung, and whizzes you past breathtaking views to the monastery. The lower terminal in Tung Chung is next to Tung Chung MTR station.

## Tai O VILLAGE

([Offline map](#); Lantau) For a fascinating glimpse of the life of a traditional fishing village, head to this far-flung part of Lantau. The stilt houses, the canals and temples dedicated to water deities and the God of War are still there, as well as the recently repurposed colonial-era police station. Tai O is reachable by bus 1 from Mui Wo, bus 11 from Tung Chung or bus 21 from Ngong Ping.

## Activities

The Hong Kong Tourism Board (HKTB) offers a range of fun and free activities, from feng shui classes through sunset cruises to taichi sessions. For a list of what's on, visit [www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com). The Map Publications Centre [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)) sells excellent maps detailing hiking and cycling trails; buy online ([www.landsd.gov.hk/mapping/en/pro&ser/products.htm](http://www.landsd.gov.hk/mapping/en/pro&ser/products.htm)) or at major post offices ([www.landsd.gov.hk/mapping/en/pro&ser/outlet.htm](http://www.landsd.gov.hk/mapping/en/pro&ser/outlet.htm)). Sporting buffs should contact the South China Athletic Association [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 📞 2577 6932; [www.scaa.org.hk](http://www.scaa.org.hk); 5th fl, South China Sports Complex, 88 Caroline Hill Rd, Causeway Bay; visitor membership HK\$50), which has facilities for any number of sports. Another handy website is [www.hkoutdoors.com](http://www.hkoutdoors.com).

## Martial Arts

Wan Kei Ho International Martial Arts Association MARTIAL ARTS SCHOOL

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 2544 1368; [www.kungfuwan.com](http://www.kungfuwan.com); 3rd fl, Yue's House, 304 Des Voeux Rd Central, Sheung Wan; 📍 Sheung Wan, exit A) This place is



popular with locals and foreigners alike.

## Hiking

Hong Kong is an excellent place to hike and the numerous trails on offer are all very attractive. The four main ones are MacLehose Trail, Wilson Trail, Lantau Trail and Hong Kong Trail. The famous Dragon's Back Trail is scenic and relatively easy.

For more information check out [www.hkwalkers.net](http://www.hkwalkers.net).

## Cycling

Cycle tracks in Hong Kong are located predominantly in the New Territories, running from Sha Tin through Tai Po to Tai Mei Tuk.

Bikes can be rented from Wong Kei (📞 2662 5200; Ting Kok Rd, Tai Mei Tuk) and Friendly Bike Shop (📞 2984 2278; Shop B, 13 Mui Wo Ferry Pier Rd, Lantau; per day HK\$30; 🕒 10am-7pm Mon-Fri, to 8pm Sat & Sun).

Online resources include the Agriculture, Fisheries and Conservation Department ([www.afcd.gov.hk](http://www.afcd.gov.hk)) and Crazy Guy on a Bike ([www.crazyguyonabike.com/doc/Hongkong](http://www.crazyguyonabike.com/doc/Hongkong)).

## Golf

The Hong Kong Golf Club ([www.hkgolfclub.org](http://www.hkgolfclub.org)) welcomes nonmembers on weekdays at its Fanling (📞 2670 1211; Lot No 1, Fan Kam Rd, Sheung Shui; 🚇 Fanling) and Deep Water Bay (📞 2812 7070; 19 Island Rd, Deep Water Bay; 🚌 bus 6, 6A) venues. The scenic 36-hole Jockey Club Kau Sai Chau Public Golf Course (📞 2791 3388; [www.kscgolf.org.hk/index-e.asp](http://www.kscgolf.org.hk/index-e.asp); Kau Sai Chau, Sai Kung) is the territory's only public golf course. A ferry departs for Kau Sai Chau (every 20 minutes from 6.40am to 7pm weekdays, 6.40am to 9pm Friday to Sunday) from the pier near the Wai Man Rd car park.

## Tours

Star Ferry (📞 2118 6201; [www.starferry.com.hk](http://www.starferry.com.hk)) runs a 60-minute Harbour Tour (HK\$80-200; 🕒 11.55am-8.55pm) covering calling points at Tsim Sha Tsui, Central and Wan Chai. Get tickets at the piers.

Tours run by the HKTB (📞 2508 1234;

[www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com); ☎ 9am-6pm) :

#### Island Tour BUS TOUR

(half-/full day HK\$350/490) Includes Man Mo Temple, the Peak, Aberdeen, Repulse Bay and Stanley Market.

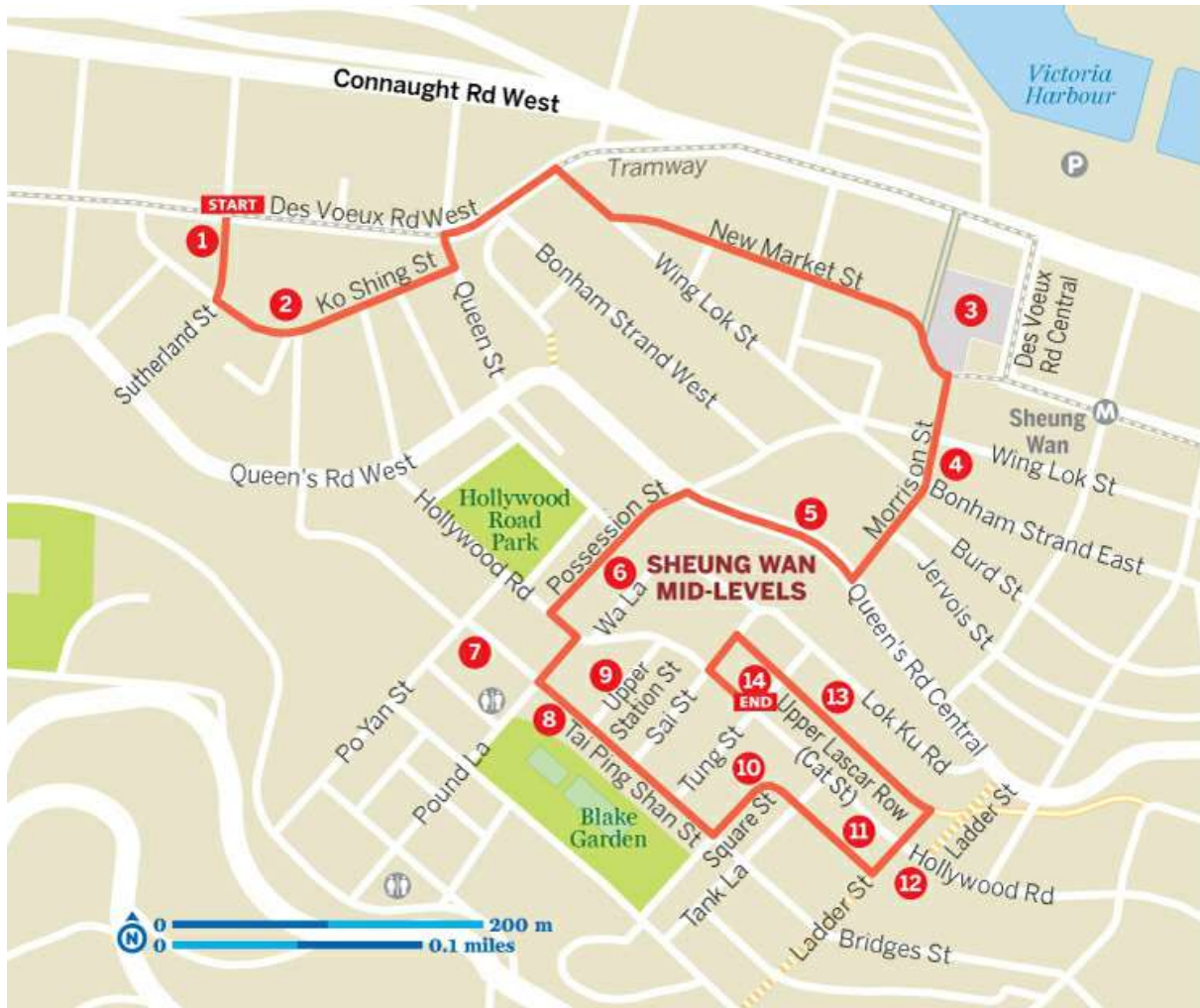
#### Hong Kong Dolphinwatch DOLPHIN CRUISE

(☎ 2984 1414; [www.hkdolphinwatch.com](http://www.hkdolphinwatch.com)) Offers 2½-hour cruises to see the native Chinese pink dolphins every Wednesday, Friday and Sunday year-round.

### **Water Sports**

Hong Kong's government-run water-sports centres

([www.lcsd.gov.hk/watersport/en/index.php](http://www.lcsd.gov.hk/watersport/en/index.php)) have canoes, windsurfing boards and other equipment for hire by certificate-holders. For wakeboarding, try Tai Tam Wakeboarding Centre (☎ 3120 4102; [www.wakeboard.com.hk](http://www.wakeboard.com.hk)).



**START** SUTHERLAND ST STOP OF KENNEDY TOWN TRAM  
**FINISH** HOLLYWOOD RD

**DISTANCE** 2.5KM

**DURATION** ONE HOUR

### **Walking Tour: Sheung Wan**

A one-hour walk through Sheung Wan will lead you down the memory lane of Hong Kong's past. Begin the tour at the Sutherland St stop of the Kennedy Town-bound tram. Have a look at Des Voeux Rd West's **1 dried seafood shops**, then turn up Ko Shing St, where there are **2 herbal medicine wholesalers**. At the end of the street, walk northwest along Des Voeux Rd West and turn right onto New Market St, where you'll find **3 Western Market**. Walk south along this street past Bonham Strand, which is lined with **4 ginseng root sellers**, and turn right on Queen's Rd Central. To the

right you'll pass 5 **traditional shops** selling bird's nests (for soup) and paper funeral offerings (for the dead).

Cross Queen's Rd Central and turn left onto 6 **Possession St**, where the British flag was first planted in 1841.

Climbing Pound Lane to where it meets Tai Ping Shan St, look right to see 7 **Pak Sing Ancestral Hall**, then turn left to find 8 **Kwun Yam Temple** and 9 **Tai Sui Temple**.

A bit further on, turn left into Square St, where you'll pass 10 **Cloth Haven** (43-45 Square St), a weaving workshop, and 11 **funeral shops**. Turn left into Ladder St and you'll see 12 **Man Mo Temple**. Descend Ladder St to Upper Lascar Row, home of the 13 **Cat Street bazaar** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#). Go down the length of Cat St, then turn left into Lok Ku Rd. Another left takes you to 14 **Hollywood Road** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), with its antique shops and art galleries.

## **Festivals & Events**

Western and Chinese culture combine to create an interesting mix of cultural events and about 20 public holidays. However, determining the exact times can be tricky: some follow the Chinese lunar calendar, so the dates change each year. For a full schedule with exact dates see [www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com).

Hong Kong Arts Festival ARTS

([www.hk.artsfestival.org](http://www.hk.artsfestival.org)) February to March.

Man Hong Kong International Literary Festival LITERARY

([www.festival.org.hk](http://www.festival.org.hk)) March.

Hong Kong Sevens SPORTS

([www.hksevens.com](http://www.hksevens.com)) Late March or early April.

Hong Kong International Film Festival FILM

([www.hkiff.org.hk](http://www.hkiff.org.hk)) March to April.

Le French May Arts Festival ARTS

April to May.

Tin Hau Festival & Buddha's Birthday TRADITIONAL

April or May.

Art Basel Hong Kong ART

([hongkong.artbasel.com](http://hongkong.artbasel.com)) May.

International Dragon Boat Races SPORTS

([www.hkdba.com.hk](http://www.hkdba.com.hk)) June or July.

Summer International Film Festival FILM

([www.hkiff.org.hk](http://www.hkiff.org.hk)) August to September.

Hong Kong International Jazz Festival MUSIC

(<http://hkja.org/blog>) November.

Hong Kong Photo Festival ART

([www.hkphotofest.org](http://www.hkphotofest.org)) Biennial. Dates change; check the website.

Clockenflap Outdoor Music Festival MUSIC

([www.clockenflap.com](http://www.clockenflap.com)) December.

## **Sleeping**

Hong Kong offers the full gamut of accommodation, from cell-like spaces to palatial suites in some of the world's finest hotels.

Compared with those in other cities in China, rooms are relatively expensive, though they can still be cheaper than their US or European counterparts. The rates listed here are the rack rates.

Most hotels are on Hong Kong Island between Central and Causeway Bay, and either side of Nathan Rd in Kowloon, where you'll also find the largest range of budget places. All hotels and some budget places add 13% in taxes to the listed rates.

Prices fall sharply outside the peak seasons, particularly in the midrange and top-end categories, when you can get discounts of up to 50% if you book online, or through an agency such as the Hong Kong Hotels Association (HKHA; ☎ 2383 8380; [www.hkha.org](http://www.hkha.org)).

High seasons are March to early May, October to November, and Chinese New Year (late January or February). Check the exact dates on [www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com).

Unless specified otherwise, all rooms listed here have private bathrooms and air-conditioning. Almost all places offer broadband and/or wi-fi access, as well as computers for guests' use. All hotels that are midrange and above and some budget places have

nonsmoking floors, or are nonsmoking.

## HONG KONG ISLAND

Most of Hong Kong Island's top-end hotels are in Central and Admiralty, while Wan Chai and Sheung Wan cater to the midrange market. Causeway Bay has quite a few budget guesthouses that are a step up (in both price and quality) from their Tsim Sha Tsui counterparts.



Helena May HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📞 2522 6766; [www.helenamay.com](http://www.helenamay.com); 35 Garden Rd, Central; s/d HK\$400/580, monthly HK\$9900/13,100, studios HK\$13,860-18,060, minimum 1 month; 🚏 12A from 🚇 Admiralty) If you like the Peninsula's colonial setting but not its price tag, this dowager might just be your cup of tea. Opened in 1916 by a governor's wife as a club for single European women for whom the colony had little to offer by way of respectable pastimes such as tea parties and ballet lessons, HM is now a private club and a hostel with 43 smallish but decent rooms. Those in the main building are women-only with shared bathrooms, while the studio flats in an adjacent building welcome both genders. You have to be 18 or above to live here.

If you just want to visit, there are 20-minute tours in English once every two months (10am to noon Saturday). Reservations – compulsory – are accepted a month in advance. The website has dates.



Upper House BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 2918 1838; [www.upperhouse.com](http://www.upperhouse.com); 88 Queensway, Pacific Place, Admiralty; r from HK\$4000, ste from HK\$9000; 🚇 Admiralty, exit F; 📶) Every corner of this boutique hotel oozes zenlike serenity – the understated lobby, the sleek eco-minded rooms, the elegant sculptures, the warm and discreet service, and the manicured lawn where guests can join free yoga classes. Other pluses include a free minibar, and easy access to the Admiralty MTR station.

Hotel LKF HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 3518 9688; [www.hotel-lkf.com.hk](http://www.hotel-lkf.com.hk); 33 Wyndham St, Central; r from HK\$3500, low-season discounts up to 50%; 🚇 Central, exit D2; @) Hotel LKF is arguably the best gateway to the Lan Kwai Fong action, but is far enough above it so you get your peace and quiet when you need it. It has high-tech rooms in muted tones, and they brim with all the trimmings you'll need: fluffy bathrobes, espresso machines and free bedtime milk and cookies.



Y-Loft Youth Square Hostel HOSTEL \$\$

(📍 3721 8989; <http://youthsquare.hk>; 238 Chai Wan Rd, Chai Wan; tw/tr low season HK\$600/900, high season HK\$1200/1800, ste HK\$3000; 🚇 Chai Wan, exit A; @📶) If you don't mind trading off 20 extra minutes on the MTR for an excellent budget option, you'll be rewarded with large, clean and cheerful rooms in Chai Wan (not Wan Chai!). Stanley market is only 15 minutes away by bus from the 16X bus stop opposite the MTR station. To reach the hostel from exit A, go straight through the mall to the footbridge and take the first exit on your right. Reception's on the 12th floor.

Garden View HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2877 3737; <http://the-garden-view-ywca.hotel-rn.com>; 1 MacDonnell Rd, Central; r HK\$880-1760, ste HK\$2500-2900, weekly per day from HK\$1500, per month from HK\$19,500; 🚏 green minibus 1A; @📶🚶) Straddling the border of Central and the Mid-Levels, the YWCA-run Garden View has 133 plain, quiet and functional rooms overlooking the Zoological & Botanical Gardens. The outdoor swimming pool is a delight. Daily rates drop substantially in the low season.

Bishop Lei International House HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2868 0828; [www.bishopleihtl.com.hk](http://www.bishopleihtl.com.hk); 4 Robinson Rd, Mid-Levels; s/d/ste from HK\$650/700/1250; 🚏 23 or 40; @📶) This 203-room hotel provides a lot of bang for the buck: good service, a swimming pool and a gym, and proximity to the Zoological & Botanical

Gardens. Rooms are small and it's worth paying a little more for the larger, harbour-facing rooms.

Harbour View HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2802 0111; [www.theharbourview.com.hk](http://www.theharbourview.com.hk); 4 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai; r HK\$2000, fortnightly/monthly packages from HK\$10,500/21,000, 📞 18, 🚇 Wan Chai, exit A5; @📶) Right next door to the Hong Kong Arts Centre and a mere stroll to the Hong Kong Convention & Exhibition Centre and Wan Chai ferry terminal, this 320-room, YMCA-run hotel is excellent value. It offers simply furnished but adequate rooms, and friendly staff. Rooms drop by 45% in the low season.



Mandarin Oriental LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 2522 0111; [www.mandarinoriental.com/hongkong](http://www.mandarinoriental.com/hongkong); 5 Connaught Rd, Central; r HK\$3800-6000, ste HK\$6500-45,000, Landmark Oriental d from HK\$5200, ste HK\$9300; 🚇 Central, exit J3; @📶) The venerable Mandarin has historically set the standard in Asia and continues to be a contender for the top spot, despite the competition from the likes of the Four Seasons. The styling, service, food and atmosphere are stellar throughout and there's a sense of gracious, old-world charm.

Four Seasons LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 3196 8888; [www.fourseasons.com/hongkong](http://www.fourseasons.com/hongkong); 8 Finance St, Central; r HK\$4500-6500, ste HK\$9300-63000; 🚇 Hong Kong, exit F; @📶🚶) The Four Seasons arguably edges into top place on the island for its amazing views, its location close to the Star Ferry, Hong Kong station, the inland and Sheung Wan, its palatial rooms, glorious pool and spa complex, and its stellar restaurants Lung King Heen and Caprice. Service is pristine and personable.

The T Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 3717 7388; [www.vtc.edu.hk/thotel](http://www.vtc.edu.hk/thotel); 6/F, VTC Pokfulam Complex, 145 Pokfulam Rd, Pok Fu Lam; r HK\$1030, ste HK\$1880; 📞 7 or 91 from Central, 973 from Tsim Sha Tsui; @📶) The 30-room T Hotel on



the island's southwest shore is entirely run by students of the local hospitality training school. Expect cheerful and attentive services. Rooms are sparkling new and spacious, and offer either ocean or mountain views. The culinary school in the complex provides excellent Chinese and Western meals.

Courtyard by Marriott Hong Kong BUSINESS HOTEL \$\$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📍 3717 8888; [www.marriott.com/hotel-search/china](http://www.marriott.com/hotel-search/china); 167 Connaught Rd W; r HK\$1560-2440, ste HK\$3450; 🚏 5 or 5B from Central; @📶) This hotel juggles luxury with limited space and it works. Most rooms offer harbour views and are smartly done up with modern furnishings. The plump beds and high thread-count sheets guarantee you a good night's sleep. There's an Airbus stop across the street.

Regal iClub Hotel BUSINESS HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 3669 8668; [www.regalhotel.com](http://www.regalhotel.com); 211 Johnston Rd, Wan Chai; d HK\$800-1100, ste HK\$1900; 🚏 Wan Chai, exit A3; @📶) This modern 99-room hotel in the heart of Wan Chai is a good choice if you don't mind small rooms and sometimes cavalier service.

Ibis HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2252 2929; [www.ibishotel.com](http://www.ibishotel.com); 18-30 Des Voeux Rd W; r HK\$1500-1800; 🚏 5B from Central; @) Opened in 2012, this 550-room Ibis has small but spanking-clean rooms and is a more affordable option in this expensive part of town.

Alisan Guest House GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2838 0762; <http://home.hkstar.com/~alisangh>; Flat A, 5th fl, Hoito Ct, 23 Cannon St, Causeway Bay; s/d/tr HK\$320/440/660; 🚏 Causeway Bay, exit D1; 📶) This spotless place has 21 rooms with air-con, bathrooms and free internet. The multilingual owners can organise China visas. There's a computer, and a communal fridge and microwave oven in the tiny kitchen. Enter from 23 Cannon St. Prices increase by 10% during the peak season.

## KOWLOON

Kowloon has an incredible array of accommodation: from the

Peninsula, the 'grand dame' of hotels, to its infamous neighbour, Chungking Mansions, plus plenty in between.



Peninsula Hong Kong LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2920 2888; [www.peninsula.com](http://www.peninsula.com); Salisbury Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; r HK\$5000-7000, ste from HK\$8200; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit E; @📶🚰🚰) Lording it over the southern tip of Kowloon, Hong Kong's finest hotel evokes colonial elegance. Your main dilemma will be how to get here: landing on the rooftop helipad or arriving in one of the hotel's 14-strong fleet of Rolls Royce Phantoms. Some 300 classic European-style rooms boast wi-fi, CD and DVD players, as well as marble bathrooms. Many rooms in the Pen's 20-storey annexe offer spectacular harbour views; in the original building you'll have to make do with the glorious interiors. There's a top-notch spa and swimming pool.

Hyatt Regency Tsim Sha Tsui LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2311 1234; <http://hongkong.tsimshatsui.hyatt.com>; 18 Hanoi Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; r HK\$1800-2900, ste from HK\$3500; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit D2; @📶🚰🚰) Top marks to this Tsim Sha Tsui classic which exudes understated elegance and composure. Staff are warm and knowledgeable. The well-appointed rooms are relatively spacious with those on the upper floors commanding views over the city. The photos of Tsim Sha Tsui add a thoughtful touch to the decor.

Salisbury HOSTEL, HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2268 7888; [www.ymcahk.org.hk](http://www.ymcahk.org.hk); 41 Salisbury Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; dm HK\$260, s/d/ste from HK\$850/950/1600; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit E; @📶🚰🚰) If you can manage to book a room here, you'll be rewarded with professional service and excellent exercise facilities, including a swimming pool and a climbing wall. The rooms are comfortable but simple, so keep your eyes on the harbour: that view would cost you five times as much at the Peninsula next door. The four-bed dormitory rooms are a bonus, but restrictions apply: check-in is at 2pm, no one can stay more than seven consecutive nights, and walk-in guests aren't accepted if they've been in Hong

Kong for more than seven days.



Hotel Icon LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 3400 1000; [www.hotel-icon.com](http://www.hotel-icon.com); 17 Science Museum Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; r HK\$2200-4100, ste HK\$3000-5100; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui, exit P1; 📶 🚰 🚿 ) The rooms at this teaching hotel are clean, modern and spacious, and the staff are attentive. Though not all rooms have harbour views and children are not allowed into the terrace lounge, it still offers solid value for money. Icon is a 10-minute walk to the MTR station and the History Museum, and a shuttle service takes guests to the more central parts of Tsim Sha Tsui.

Hop Inn HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 2881 7331; [www.hopinn.hk](http://www.hopinn.hk); Flat A, 2nd fl, Hanyee Bldg, 19-21 Hankow Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; s HK\$410-510, d & tw HK\$520-740, tr HK\$650-930; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit A1; 📶 📶 ) This nonsmoking guesthouse has a youthful vibe and nine spotless but tiny rooms, each featuring illustrations by a different Hong Kong artist. Some rooms have no windows, but they're quieter than the ones that do. The new Hop Inn on Carnarvon [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (9th fl, James S Lee Mansion, 33-35 Carnarvon Rd) has spanking-new rooms, including our favourite one designed by Sim Chan. Both branches have free in-room wi-fi and help to organise China visas.

Madera Hong Kong HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 2121 9888; [www.hotelmadera.com.hk](http://www.hotelmadera.com.hk); 1-9 Cheong Lok St, Yau Ma Tei; d & tw HK\$1400-\$1800, ste HK\$2800; 🚇 Jordan, exit B1) A spirited addition to Kowloon's midrange options, Madera is close to the Temple Street Night Market and a brisk 20-minute walk from the Star Ferry. The decent-sized rooms come in neutral tones with bright accents. There's also a women-only floor and a tiny workout room.

Ritz-Carlton Hong Kong LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2263 2263; [www.ritzcarlton.com](http://www.ritzcarlton.com); 1 Austin Rd West, Jordan; r HK\$6000-7800, ste from HK\$8000; 📶 🚰 🚿 ) Sitting atop the Airport Express Kowloon Station, this off-the-way luxury address was

the tallest hotel on earth at the time of writing (the lobby's on the 103rd floor). The only thing taller is the over-the-top decor featuring heavy furniture and a superfluity of shiny services. That said, the service is pristine, Tin Lung Heen is an excellent restaurant and the views on clear days are stunning.

BP International Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2376 1111; [www.bpih.com.hk](http://www.bpih.com.hk); 8 Austin Rd; r from HK\$1450, ste from HK\$5200; 🚇 Jordan, exit C; @📶🚰) This enormous hotel overlooking Kowloon Park has rooms of a reasonable standard with the more expensive ones commanding views of the harbour. There are also family rooms with bunk beds available. Depending on the season and day of the week, prices are often reduced by 50%.

Cityview HOTEL \$\$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2771 9111; [www.thecityview.com.hk](http://www.thecityview.com.hk); 23 Waterloo Rd, Yau Ma Tei; r HK\$1880, tr HK\$2400, ste from HK\$3080; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit A2; @📶🚰) All 413 rooms at this YMCA-affiliated hotel are clean, smart and come in mellow tones. The service is also excellent. The hotel is a short stroll away from the Yau Ma Tei Theatre.

Caritas Bianchi Lodge GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2388 1111; [www.caritas-chs.org.hk/eng/bianchi\\_lodge.asp](http://www.caritas-chs.org.hk/eng/bianchi_lodge.asp); 4 Cliff Rd; s from HK\$750, d & tw from HK\$870, f from HK\$1080; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit D) This 90-room hotel-cum-guesthouse just off Nathan Rd (and a goalie's throw from Yau Ma Tei MTR station) has clean rooms with private bathrooms. The rear ones are quiet and some have views of King's Park. Breakfast is included in the rates.

## MECCA OF CHEAP SLEEPS

Chungking Mansions [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)) has been synonymous with budget accommodation in Hong Kong for decades. The crumbling block on Nathan Rd is stacked with the city's cheapest hostels and guesthouses. Rooms are usually minuscule and service rudimentary. But standards have risen in recent years and several

guesthouses positively sparkle with new fittings. Even the lifts have been upgraded, though they're still painfully slow.

Mirador Mansion [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)), its neighbour just up the street, also has a fair number of cheap sleeps.

### Booth Lodge GUESTHOUSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2771 9266; <http://boothlodge.salvation.org.hk>; 11 Wing Sing La, Yau Ma Tei; r HK\$620-1500; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit D; @ 📶) Run by the Salvation Army, this 53-room place is spartan but clean and comfortable. Promotional rates for rooms can drop to HK\$500. Rates include breakfast.

### Nic & Trig's GUESTHOUSE \$

(📍 6333 5352; [rooms@nostalgic.org](mailto:rooms@nostalgic.org); 705 Shanghai St, Mong Kok; r with shared bathroom from HK\$400; 🚇 Prince Edward, exit C1; @ 📶) This place inside a 'walk-up' tenement building has three rooms inspired respectively by Hong Kong of the '60s, the '70s (with Bruce Lee posters) and the '80s. The English-speaking owners are friendly and helpful. Email and they'll tell you how to get there.

## NEW TERRITORIES

Good-value accommodation in the New Territories is sparse, but there are both official and independent hostels, usually in remote areas. The Country & Marine Parks Authority (📍 1823) maintains 40 no-frills campsites in the New Territories. Go to [www.afcd.gov.hk](http://www.afcd.gov.hk) and click on 'Country & Marine Parks'.

### Tao Fong Shan Pilgrim's Hall HOSTEL \$

(📍 2691 2739; [www.tfssu.org/pilgrim.html](http://www.tfssu.org/pilgrim.html); 33 Tao Fong Shan Rd, Sha Tin; s/d with shared bathroom HK\$260/400; 🚇 East Rail Sha Tin station, exit B) Peacefully perched on a hillside, this Lutheran Church-affiliated hostel has 18 basic but clean rooms. Getting there is a pain, though. Follow the directions from the website carefully or take a cab (about HK\$30) from Sha Tin MTR station.

### Hyatt Regency Hong Kong LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$


(📍 3723 1234; [www.hongkong.shatin.hyatt.com](http://www.hongkong.shatin.hyatt.com); r HK\$2500-3100, ste

HK\$3700-12700;  East Rail University station, exit B;   ) The Hyatt lives up to its name of being the poshest hotel in the New Territories. Rooms are nicely appointed, with most commanding views of the harbour or the hills. The Chinese restaurant Sha Tin 18 ([Click here](#)) is excellent.

Bradbury Jockey Club Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$





( 2662 5123; [www.yha.org.hk](http://www.yha.org.hk); 66 Tai Mei Tuk Rd; dm members under/over 18yr HK\$65/95, d/q members HK\$290/420;  75K) This HKYHA's flagship hostel is open daily year-round. Take bus 75K (or 275R on Sundays and public holidays) from Tai Po Market East Rail station to the Tai Mei Tuk bus terminus. The hostel is on the road leading to the reservoir.

## OUTLYING ISLANDS



Lantau, Lamma and Cheung Chau all have decent accommodation with a holiday vibe. For campers, the Country & Marine Parks Authority ( 1823) maintains 11 sites on Lantau. Camping is prohibited on Hong Kong beaches.



Espace Elastique B&B \$\$

( 2985 7002; [www.espaceelastique.com.hk](http://www.espaceelastique.com.hk); 57 Kat Hing St, Tai O; r Sun-Thu HK\$600-1400, Fri & Sat HK\$800-2230;  Lantau;  ) This cosy B&B has four tastefully decorated rooms, two with balcony overlooking the main Tai O waterway. The polyglot owner Veronica provides useful travel advice and hearty breakfasts in the downstairs cafe.

Bali Holiday Resort STUDIOS, APARTMENTS \$

( 2982 4580; 8 Main St, Lamma; r HK\$280-380, apt HK\$560-760; ) An agency rather than a resort as such, Bali has about 30 studios and apartments sprinkled around the island. All have TVs, fridges and air-con, and some have sea views. Prices double on weekends. Only the apartments get wi-fi.

## Eating

One of the world's greatest food cities, Hong Kong offers culinary excitement whether you're spending HK\$20 on a bowl of noodles or

megabucks on haute cuisine.

The best of China is well represented, be it Cantonese, Shanghainese, Northern or Sichuanese. What's more, the international fare on offer – French, Italian, Spanish, Japanese, Thai, Indian, fusion – is the finest and most diverse in all of China.

Hong Kong is an expensive place to dine by regional Chinese standards, but cheaper than Sydney, London or New York, and with more consistent quality of food and service than most eateries in mainland China.

At most of the eateries listed here, reservations are strongly advised, especially for dinner.

## HONG KONG ISLAND

The island's best range of cuisines is in Central, Sheung Wan and Wan Chai.



Manor Seafood Restaurant CANTONESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2836 9999; Shop F-G, 440 Jaffe Rd, Causeway Bay; meals from HK\$300-2000; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 Causeway Bay, exit B) Upscale Manor does most Cantonese dishes well, but is best known for a now-rare classic. *Gum chin gai* (; literally 'gold coin chicken', although it has no chicken meat) is a succulent 'cholesterol sandwich' of chicken liver, barbecued pork and lard – all marinated in Chinese wine, roasted to perfection and eaten between pancakes. It's guilt-laden, melt-in-your-mouth goodness.

Old Bazaar Kitchen SINGAPOREAN MALAYSIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2893 3998; 207 Wan Chai Rd, Wan Chai; lunch from HK\$50, dinner from HK\$150; 🕒 lunch & dinner Mon-Sat; 🚇 Wan Chai, exit A2) The tasty Singaporean, Malaysian and Chinese dishes at this unpretentious eatery are executed with more flair than authenticity, but they're convincing. The chef's knack for working magic with culinary influences has won him a following among foodies.



AMMO EUROPEAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2537 9888; Asia Society Hong Kong Centre, 9 Justice Dr, Admiralty; lunch set from HK\$188, dinner from HK\$400; 🕒 11.30am-11.30pm Sun-Thu, to 12.30pm Fri & Sat; 🚇 Admiralty) Awash in light the colour of bullets, this sleek cafe at the Asia Society Centre has chandeliers and metallic panels evoking the site's past as an explosives magazine. The pricey menu is well thought out, with a selection of mostly Italian mains, and tapas available at cocktail hour (from HK\$58). Bookings essential.



Luk Yu Teahouse CANTONESE \$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2523 5464; 24-26 Stanley St, Central; mains HK\$100-350; 🕒 7am-10pm; 🚇 Central, exit D2; 🚻) This elegant establishment is arguably the most famous teahouse in Hong Kong. With Eastern art deco interiors featuring ceiling fans and stained-glass windows, it could almost be the setting of a mystery novel. Dim sum is available till 5.30pm.

Sing Kee DAI PAI DONG \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2541 5678; 9-10 Stanley St, Central; dishes from HK\$50; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 Central, exit D2) This is one of the few surviving *dai pai dongs* (open-air food stalls) on the island that has withstood the tide of gentrification and still retains a working-class character. There's no English signage; look for the crammed tables and steam billowing out from the cooking station at the end of Stanley St.

Lin Heung Kui CANTONESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2156 9328; 2-3/F, 46-50 Des Voeux Rd West; meals HK\$120-250; 🕒 6am-11pm, dim sum to 3.30pm; 🚌 bus 5B from Des Voeux Rd Central) This old-school dim sum restaurant is where you can pick dim sum from the strolling carts or the cooking stations. The grandfatherlike waiters still wear their traditional white tunics and serve you tea from huge brass kettles. The place is no-frills, so service charge isn't expected.



Life Cafe VEGETARIAN, WESTERN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)



([www.lifecafe.com.hk](http://www.lifecafe.com.hk); 10 Shelley St, Central; salads HK\$80-90, mains HK\$80-105; ☺ 9am-10pm; 🍴🍴) Life is a vegetarian's dream, serving organic vegan food and dishes free of gluten, wheat, onion and garlic. Housed in a three-storey, pre-war building, it is filled with intimate seatings; the ground-floor deli has guilt-free goodies for takeaway.

Lung King Heen CANTONESE, DIM SUM \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 3196 8888; [www.fourseasons.com/hongkong](http://www.fourseasons.com/hongkong); Four Seasons Hotel, 8 Finance St; lunch set HK\$450, dinner set HK\$1280; ☺ lunch & dinner; 🚇 Hong Kong, exit E1) The world's first Chinese restaurant to receive three stars from the Michelin people still keeps them. The Cantonese food here is excellently prepared, and when combined with the harbour views and the smooth service, it makes for a truly stellar dining experience.

Posto Pubblico ITALIAN, ORGANIC \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2577 7160; 28 Elgin St, Soho; set lunch from HK\$130, meals from HK\$150, cocktails from HK\$75; ☺ breakfast, lunch & dinner; 🚇 26) A New York-style Italian bistro, the 'Public Place' serves delicious and sustainable seafood, all-natural meats, and handpicked vegetables from local organic farms. No service charge.



Yin Yang CHINESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2866 0868; [www.yinyang.hk](http://www.yinyang.hk); 18 Ship St; lunch HK\$180-280, dinner from HK\$680; ☺ lunch & dinner Mon-Sat; 🚇 Wan Chai, exit B2) Margaret Xu, the chef of Yin Yang, grows organic vegetables and uses old-fashioned tools such as stone-grinds and terracotta ovens to create Hong Kong classics with a contemporary twist. Yin Yang is housed in a gorgeous heritage building (c 1930s). Dinner is a tasting menu, and you need to book at least five days in advance. The website mentions a deposit but that's negotiable.

San Xi Lou SICHUANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2838 8811; 7th fl Coda Plaza, 51 Garden Rd, Admiralty; meals HK\$200-450; ☺ 11am-10.30pm; 🚇 12A from 🚇

Admiralty) If the fresh ingredients and the complexity of the spices don't tell you this is Hong Kong's finest Sichuanese kitchen, the large number of Sichuanese expats among its repeat customers should.



Pure Veggie House VEGETARIAN, CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2525 0556; 3rd fl, Coda Plaza, 51 Garden Rd, Admiralty; meals HK\$200-400; 🕒 11am-10pm; 🚌 bus 12A from 🚇 Admiralty; 📍) This Buddhist place cooks up some of the best vegetarian fare around. Tasty MSG-free dim sum and an assortment of creative Chinese dishes are served by well-mannered staff in a setting resembling a rustic inn.

Joon Ko Restaurant KOREAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 209 Jaffe Rd, Wan Chai; lunch from HK\$11, dinner from HK\$200; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 Wan Chai, exit A1; 📍) This small family-run shop comes recommended by Korean friends. Carnivores must try the beef ribs and ox tongue, while vegetarians shouldn't miss the cold noodles.

L'Atelier de Joël Robuchon MODERN FRENCH \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2166 9000; [www.joel-robuchon.com](http://www.joel-robuchon.com); Shop 401, Landmark, Queen's Rd Central, Central; lunch set from HK\$398, dinner set from HK\$980; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 Central, exit G) This red and black workshop of the celebrity chef's three-part wonder in Hong Kong has a tantalising list of tapas. For the haute version, visit Le Jardin next door, which also serves breakfast (7.30am to 10am Monday to Saturday). Le Salon de The (🕒 8am-8pm), one floor down, has some of the best sandwiches, pastries and cakes in town for dine-in or takeaway.

Yung Kee CANTONESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.yungkee.com.hk](http://www.yungkee.com.hk); 32-40 Wellington St, Central; meals HK\$300-600; 🕒 11am-11.30pm; 🚇 Central, exit D2) The goose roasting in the coal-fired ovens here has been the talk of the town since 1942. During lunch hours, it's a popular dim sum place for the

Central workforce.

Yardbird JAPANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2547 9273; 33-35 Bridges St; meals from HK\$300; 🕒 6pm-late Mon-Sat; 🚏 26) This Japanese bistro with a New York touch is the place to see and to be seen. The bar table at centre stage ignites a festive, social space. The yakitori and sake are first-rate. No reservations are accepted.

Piccolo Pizzeria & Bar ITALIAN \$\$

(📍 2824 3000; Shop 1E, Davis St, Kennedy Town; meals from HK\$150; 🕒 dinner Mon, lunch & dinner Tue-Sat; 🚏 5B or 5X from Central) Located at the west end of the island, Piccolo serves arguably the best pizzas in town. The open kitchen design allows diners to view the giant gas oven through a glass wall at the back.



Irori JAPANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2838 5939; 2nd fl, Bartlock Centre, Yiu Wa St, Causeway Bay; lunch from HK\$150, dinner from HK\$300; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚏 Causeway Bay, exit A) Irori's versatile kitchen turns out raw and cooked delicacies of an equally impressive standard. Seasonal fish flown in from Japan is carefully crafted into sushi. To warm the stomach, there's a creative selection of tasty tidbits, such as fried beef roll and yakitori.

Thai Som Tum THAI \$

([Offline map](#); 📍 3622 1795; Shop C1, 2/F, Electric Road Municipal Services Bldg, 229 Electric Rd, North Point; meals HK\$50-100; 🕒 lunch Mon-Fri, dinner Mon-Sun; 🚏 Fortress Hill, exit B; 📍) Feisty food stall that has perfected the demonic art of frying and grilling. The 'neck of pork', sliced into luscious slivers, is grilled a la minute; down a Singha while you wait. The tasty Thai-style fried fish, presented like a tribal headdress, is a wonder to behold.

Teakha TEAHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2858 9185; Shop B, 18 Tai Ping Shan St, Sheung Wan; 🕒 11am-6pm Wed-Fri, noon-7pm Sat & Sun; 🚏 26) Organic

milk teas, be it the Indian chai or Hojicha latte, are best enjoyed with a homemade scone in this oasis just off the main street. The tea wares are so cute that you can't help buying them as souvenirs.

## SELF-CATERING

Hong Kong's two main supermarket chains Park'nShop ([www.parknshop.com](http://www.parknshop.com)) and Wellcome ([www.wellcome.com.hk](http://www.wellcome.com.hk)) have so many outlets you're bound to run into a few. ThreeSixty [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.threesixtyhk.com](http://www.threesixtyhk.com); Landmark, Central; 🕒 8am-7.30pm Mon-Sat) has more organic choices but is on the pricey side. The gourmet city'super [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.citysuper.com.hk](http://www.citysuper.com.hk); Shop 3001, Gateway Arcade, 25-27 Canton Rd, Harbour City, Tsim Sha Tsui; 🕒 10am-10.30pm) has attractive but expensive produce. Branches include one in the IFC Mall [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.citysuper.com.hk](http://www.citysuper.com.hk); Shop 1041-1049, IFC Mall, 8 Finance St, Central; 🕒 10.30am-9.30pm).

## KOWLOON

There's plenty of choice in both cuisine and budget, especially in Tsim Sha Tsui. More local places can be found further north.



Dong Lai Shun NORTHERN CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📞 2733 2020; [www.rghk.com.hk](http://www.rghk.com.hk); B2, The Royal Garden, 69 Mody Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; lunch set HK\$200-400, dinner set HK\$300-450; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui, exit P2; 📍)

While the mainland outlets of this Beijing chain are of varying quality, this Hong Kong branch is outstanding. Besides Northern Chinese dishes, which are superbly executed, its phonebook of a menu also features Cantonese, Sichuanese and Shanghainese favourites, served in an elegant setting.

Tin Lung Heen CANTONESE \$\$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📞 2263 2270; [www.ritzcarlton.com/hongkong](http://www.ritzcarlton.com/hongkong); 102nd fl, Ritz-Carlton Hong Kong, International Commerce Centre, 1 Austin Rd W, West Kowloon; meals HK\$300-1800; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇

Kowloon, exit U3) The atmosphere here is imposing – you'd expect Hu Jintao to walk in any minute for his fried rice. But the service is

personable, and we were floored by the sweeping views of West Kowloon. The famous *char siu* (barbecued meat) , at HK\$218, is the costliest plate of barbecued swine in town, but it's made from Spanish Iberico pork, and you can taste the difference.



### Kowloon Tang CHINESE \$\$\$

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2811 9398; [www.kowloontang.com](http://www.kowloontang.com); Shop R002-003, Civic Square, 3rd fl, Elements Mall, 1 Austin Rd, West Kowloon; meals HK\$300-2000; ☺ noon-10.30pm; 🚇 Kowloon, exit U3) Located atop the Elements Mall, Kowloon Tang serves excellent Cantonese classics, a mean Peking duck (order 24 hours in advance) and sumptuous European-style desserts in a fashionably retro setting. They have great cocktails too!

### Ziafat ARABIC, INDIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2312 1015; 6th fl, Harilela Mansion, 81 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals HK\$120-200; ☺ 11am-midnight; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit R; 📍) This halal restaurant serves up tasty Arabic and Indian dishes. It's located in an old building along with budget hostels, but the restaurant itself is clean and humbly furnished with Arabic art. Tables near the entrance are reserved for hookah smokers.

### Typhoon Shelter Hing Kee Restaurant CANTONESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2722 0022; 1st fl Bowa House, 180 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals HK\$300-1000; ☺ 6pm-5am; 🚇 Jordan, exit D) This celebrity haunt is run by a feisty fisherman's daughter who's known for her brilliant dishes prepared the way they were on sampans. Service can be a little edgy though. Be sure you know the prices of all 'seasonal' items you order.

### Ye Shanghai SHANGHAINESE, DIM SUM \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2376 3322; [www.elite-concepts.com](http://www.elite-concepts.com); 6th fl, Marco Polo Hotel, Harbour City, Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals HK\$300-600; ☺ lunch & dinner; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui, exit L4) The name means 'Shanghai Nights'. Dark woods and subtle lighting inspired by 1920s Shanghai fill the air with romance. The modern Shanghainese

dishes are also exquisite. The only exception to this Jiangnan harmony is the Cantonese dim sum being served at lunch (though that too is wonderful).

Woodlands INDIAN, VEGETARIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2369 3718; Upper ground fl, 16 & 17 Wing On Plaza, 62 Mody Rd; meals HK\$55-130; 🕒 noon-3.30pm & 6.30-10.30pm; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui, exit P1; 📍) Located above a department store, good old Woodlands offers excellent-value Indian vegetarian food to compatriots and the odd local. Dithering gluttons should order the *thali* meals, which are served on a round metal plate with 10 dishes, dessert and bread.

Kimberley Chinese Restaurant CANTONESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2369 8212; M fl, Kimberley Hotel, 28 Kimberley St, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals from HK\$400; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B1) This restaurant is famous for the Kimberley Pig – a 30-day-old piglet stuffed with sticky rice cooked with shallots and garlic, then roasted whole. Each piglet (HK\$900) will feed at least five hungry people. You need to order it two days in advance, and pay a (negotiable) deposit of HK\$200.

Wo Mei Restaurant CANTONESE \$\$

( 📍 2748 0002; ground fl, 29-33 Shun Ning Rd, Cheung Sha Wan; meals HK\$100-400; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚇 Cheung Sha Wan, exit A2; 📍) Ingredients here are carefully sourced and served piping hot. But there's another reason Wo Mei is popular with food critics but not vegetarians – it's famous for creepy- crawlies such as bamboo worms and honeybee pupae, which are fried and sprinkled with salt and pepper.

Stables Grill EUROPEAN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 3988 0104; [www.hulletthouse.com](http://www.hulletthouse.com); 1881 Heritage, Hullett House, 2A Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals from HK\$400; 🕒 noon-10.30pm; 🚇 Star Ferry; 📍) The home of horses of the Former Marine Police Headquarters is now an atmospheric restaurant with tables spilling out on to a beautiful garden. The menu features grilled foods and a variety

of tapas and pastas. Service can be so-so, but the setting makes that easy to overlook.

Din Tai Fung TAIWANESE, NOODLES \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.dintaifung.com.tw](http://www.dintaifung.com.tw); Shop 130, 3rd fl, 30 Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals HK\$120-300; ☎ 11.30am-10.30pm; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit C1; 📍) Whether it's comfort food or a carb fix you're craving, the dumplings and noodles at this Michelin-starred Taiwanese chain will do the trick. Expect to queue; they don't take reservations.

Spring Deer NORTHERN CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2366 4012; 1st fl, 42 Mody Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; meals HK\$80-550; ☎ lunch & dinner; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit N2) Hong Kong's most authentic Northern-style roasted lamb is served here, and the Peking duck is decent, but the service can be about as welcoming as a Beijing winter c 1967. Booking essential.

Mido Cafe TEA CAFE, CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 63 Temple St; meals HK\$25-80; ☎ 9am-10pm; 🚇 Yau Ma Tei, exit B2) Opened in 1950, this vintage *cha chaan tang* (local 'tea cafe') with its mosaic tiles and metal latticework stands astride a street corner that comes to life at sundown. Ascend to the upper floor and take a seat next to a wall of iron-framed windows overlooking Tin Hau Temple.

## NEW TERRITORIES

Cuisines are less diverse in the New Territories than Kowloon and Hong Kong but this area has an abundance of seafood and local eateries.



Loaf On CANTONESE, SEAFOOD \$\$

( 📍 2792 9966; 49 Market St; meals from\$200; ☎ lunch & dinner) This Michelin-star restaurant is where fish freshly caught from the Sai Kung waters in the morning lands on customer plates by midday. There is no English signage, but it's identifiable by a lone dining table marooned outside. Reservations recommended.

### Dah Wing Wah CANTONESE, DIM SUM \$

( 📞 2476 9888; 2nd fl, Koon Wong Mansion, 2-6 On Ning Rd; dim sum HK\$14, meals from HK\$150; 🕒 6am-midnight; 🚉 Tai Tong Rd Light Rail Station) This Michelin-recommended oldie is *the* place to go for the walled-village cuisine of the New Territories. Cantonese dim sum is served throughout the day.

### Ho To Tai Noodle Shop CANTONESE \$

( 📞 2476 2495; 67 Fau Tsoi St; meals from HK\$30; 🕒 8am-8pm; 🚉 Tai Tong Rd Light Rail Station) One of the world's cheapest Michelin restaurants, this 60-year-old Yuen Long institution is best known for the fresh Cantonese egg noodles and shrimp roe noodles.

### Sha Tin 18 NORTHERN CHINESE \$\$\$

( 18; 📞 3723 1234; [www.hongkong.shatin.hyatt.com](http://www.hongkong.shatin.hyatt.com); Hyatt Regency Hong Kong, 18 Chak Cheung St, Sha Tin; meals HK\$280-800; 🕒 11.30am-3pm & 5.30-10.30pm; 🚉 East Rail University station; 🚶🏻🦽) The Peking duck here has put this hotel restaurant in the gastronomic spotlight since its opening in 2009. Book your prized fowl 24 hours in advance.



### Honeymoon Dessert DESSERTS \$

( [www.honeymoon-dessert.com](http://www.honeymoon-dessert.com); 9-10A, B&C Po Tung Rd, Sai Kung; dishes HK\$30; 🕒 1pm-2.45am; 🚉 East Rail Sha Tin station, then bus 299; 📞) This shop specialising in Chinese desserts such as sweet walnut soup and durian pudding is so successful that it's got branches all over China and in Indonesia, not to mention some 20 locations in Hong Kong.

## OUTLYING ISLANDS

Lamma boasts the biggest choices in Yung Shue Wan and Sok Kwu Wan. There are also some decent choices on Lantau and fewer on Cheung Chau.

### Bookworm Cafe CAFE, VEGETARIAN \$

( 📞 2982 4838; [bookwormcafe.com.hk](http://bookwormcafe.com.hk); 79 Main St, Yung Shue Wan; 🕒 10am-9pm Mon-Fri, 9am-10pm Sat, 9am-9pm Sun; 📧; 📞) Veggie foodies are in heaven in Bookworm, the granddaddy of healthy and eco-conscious eating in the Hong Kong dining scene. The cafe



doubles as a secondhand bookshop.

Solo CAFE \$

(☎ 9153 7453; 86 Kat Hing St, Tai O; meals from HK\$40; 🕒 11am-6pm Mon-Sat; 📍 1 from Mui Wo) Framed by a backdrop of stilt houses and lush mountains, this sun-kissed terrace right on the water invites lazy afternoons spent enjoying coffee. The cakes and pies are as tempting as its fresh roasted coffee.

## Drinking

Lan Kwai Fong (LKF) in Central is synonymous with nightlife in Hong Kong, attracting everyone from expat and Chinese suits to travellers. In general, watering holes in Wan Chai are cheaper and more relaxed (some say seedier), though sleek new spots have been fast emerging around Star St. Drinking places in Kowloon tend to attract more locals. Most places offer discounts on drinks during happy hour, usually from late afternoon to early evening – 4pm to 8pm, say – but times vary from place to place.

## STUBBED OUT

In Hong Kong, smoking is banned in all restaurants, bars, shopping malls and museums – even at beaches and public parks – but you can light up in ‘alfresco’ areas. Some bars, however, risk getting fined to attract more customers during nonpeak hours. You’ll know which ones they are by the ashtray they nonchalantly place on your table.

## HONG KONG ISLAND



### The Globe BAR

Offline map

Google map

(45-53 Graham St, Soho; ☺ happy hour 9am-8pm; 🚇 Central, exit D1)

In addition to the impressive imported wine and beer list, gastropub Globe is one of the few bars in town that serves Typhoon, the first cask-conditioned ale brewed in Hong Kong. Occupying an enviable space, the bar has a huge dining area with long wooden tables and comfy banquettes, where comfort food is served.

### Club 71 BAR

Offline map

Google map

([Offline map](#); Basement, 67 Hollywood Rd, Central; ☺ 3pm-2am Mon-Sat, 6pm-1am Sun; 🚇 bus 26) Named after a huge protest march held on 1 July 2003, this friendly bar is a haven for artists, bohemians and the socially conscious. Find it by taking a sharp right down a narrow alley off Hollywood Rd or via a small footpath running west off Peel St.

### Gecko Lounge LOUNGE, WINE BAR

Offline map

Google map

(📍 2537 4680; lower ground fl, 15-19 Hollywood Rd; ☺ 4pm-2am Mon-Thu, 4pm-4am Fri & Sat, happy hour 6-9pm; 🚇 Central, exit D1)


Entered from narrow Ezra's Lane off Cochrane or Pottinger Sts, Gecko is an intimate lounge and wine bar run by a friendly French sommelier with a penchant for absinthe. The well-hidden DJ mixes good sounds with kooky Parisian tunes.

### 8th Estate Winery WINE BAR \$

(📍 2518 0922; [www.the8estatewinery.com](http://www.the8estatewinery.com); Room 306, 3rd fl, Harbour Industrial Centre, 10 Lee Hing St, Ap Lei Chau; admission HK\$100; ☺ 2-5pm Sat, by appointment Mon-Fri; 🚇 90 from Exchange Square in Central) This winery has no chateaux or vineyards, but you can enjoy


'Made in Hong Kong' wines out on the terrace, which affords sweeping ocean views, or in the rustic barrel rooms. To get there from Ap Lei Chau bus terminus, take a taxi (UK\$20).

### **Amo Eno** Offline map Google map WINE BAR

(Shop 3027, Podium Level 3, IFC Mall, 1 Harbour View St;  Hong Kong, exit E) 'Love wine' delivers a sophisticated wine experience, whether you're a debutant or a connoisseur. You can browse by colour, grape and price on a table with a touch-screen top, then pick your poison, and the size of pour from 72 bottles kept in enomatic machines.


### **Sevva** COCKTAIL BAR

Offline map Google map

(📞 2537 1388; [www.sevva.hk](http://www.sevva.hk); 25th fl, Prince's Bldg, 10 Chater Rd, Central; 🕒 noon- midnight Mon-Thu, to 2am Fri & Sat;  Central, exit H) If there was a million-dollar view in Hong Kong, it'd be the one from the balcony of stylish Sevva – skyscrapers so close you see their arteries of steel, with the harbour and Kowloon in the distance. At night, it takes your breath away, and Sevva's cocktails are a wonderful excuse to let it.

### **Executive Bar** LOUNGE BAR

Offline map Google map

(📞 2893 2080; 7th fl, Bartlock Centre, 3 Yiu Wa St, Causeway Bay; 🕒 5pm-1am Mon-Sat;  Causeway Bay, exit A) You won't be served if you just turn up at this clubby, masculine bar high above Causeway Bay – it's by appointment only. Odd perhaps, but worth the trip if you are serious about whisky and bourbon. Several dozen varieties are served here, in large brandy balloons with large orbs of ice hand-chipped by the Japanese bartender.

### **Delaney's** BAR, PUB

Offline map Google map

(Ground & 1st fl, One Capital Place, 18 Luard Rd, Wan Chai; ☺ happy hour noon-9pm; 🚇 Wan Chai, exit C) At this popular Irish watering hole you can choose between the black and white tiled pub on the ground floor and a sports bar and restaurant on the 1st floor. The food is good and plentiful.

### **Pawn** BAR, PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.thepawn.com.hk](http://www.thepawn.com.hk); 62 Johnston Rd, Wan Chai; 🚇 Wan Chai, exit A3) This handsome three-storey gastropub used to house tenement houses and a century-old pawn shop. Now it contains a restaurant and a bar. The slouchy sofas, shabby-chic interiors, and terrace spaces overlooking the tram tracks, make it a pleasant location to sample the great selection of lagers, bitters and wine.

## **KOWLOON**

### **Butler** BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(5th fl, Mody House, 30 Mody Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; cover charge HK\$200; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui (exit N2) A cocktail and whisky heaven hidden in the residential part of TST. You can flip the whisky magazines as you watch the bartender, Uchida, create his magical concoctions with the flair and precision of a master mixologist in Ginza.

### **Ozone** BAR

(📍 2263 2263; 118th fl, ICC, 1 Austin Rd, West Kowloon; ☺ 5pm-2am; 🚇 Kowloon, exit U3) Asia's highest bar is imaginatively decorated with pillars resembling chocolate fountains in a hurricane, myriads of refracted glass and colour-changing illumination. Equally dizzying is the superfluous wine list, with the most expensive bottle selling for HK\$150,000. A once-in-a-lifetime experience, in more ways than one.

## Ned Kelly's Last Stand PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2376 0562; 11A Ashley Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; ☺ happy hour 11.30am-9pm; 🚇 Tsim Sha Tsui, exit L5) Named after an Australian bushranger, Ned's is one of Hong Kong's oldest pubs. Many customers who come here are attracted by the laid-back vibe and the Dixieland jazz band that cracks jokes between sets. The bar is filled with old posters and other Oz-related paraphernalia.

## Tapas Bar TAPAS BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.shangri-la.com](http://www.shangri-la.com); Lobby, Kowloon Shangri-La, 64 Mody Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui East; ☺ 3.30pm-1am; 🚇 East Tsim Sha Tsui, exit P1) An intimate vibe and bistro-style decor make this a good place to unwind over champagne and tapas after a day of sightseeing.

## ★ Entertainment

Hong Kongers work hard and play harder. To find out what's on, pick up a copy of *HK Magazine* (<http://hk-magazine.com>), an entertainment listings magazine. It's free, appears on Friday and can be found in restaurants, bars and hotels. For more comprehensive listings buy the fortnightly *Time Out* ([www.timeout.com.hk](http://www.timeout.com.hk)) from newsstands. Also worth checking out is the free *bic bc magazine* ([www.bcmagazine.net](http://www.bcmagazine.net)).

The main ticket providers, **Urbtix** (📍 2734 9009; [www.urbtix.hk](http://www.urbtix.hk); ☺ 10am-8pm), **Cityline** (📍 2317 6666; [www.cityline.com.hk](http://www.cityline.com.hk)) and **Hong Kong Ticketing** (📍 3128 8288; [www.hkticketing.com](http://www.hkticketing.com); ☺ 10am-8pm), have among them tickets to every major event in Hong Kong. Book online or by phone.

## Cinema

Tickets can be bought through Cityline (for mainstream films) and Urbtix (for alternative screenings). If you're into arthouse films, don't miss **Broadway Cinematheque** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📍 2338 3188; [www.cinema.com.hk](http://www.cinema.com.hk) (click 'Cinematheque'); Prosperous Garden, 3

Public Square St, Yau Ma Tei; 🕒 11.30am-10.30pm).

## Cantonese Opera

Hong Kong is one of the best places to watch Cantonese opera. **Sunbeam Theatre** ([www.ua-sunbeam.com](http://www.ua-sunbeam.com); 423 King's Rd, North Point) and Yau Ma Tei Theatre ([Click here](#)) are dedicated to the art form. You can book through Urbtix or Cityline.

## Live Music



### Street Music Series *LIVE MUSIC*

(📞 2582 0280; [www.hkac.org.hk](http://www.hkac.org.hk); 🕒 6.30-9pm 1 Fri a month) One Friday a month, musician Kung Chi-sing throws a free outdoor concert outside the **Hong Kong Arts Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (2 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai; 🚇 Admiralty, exit E2). The colourful line-ups have included anything from indie rock and jazz to Cantonese opera and Mozart. Followers of this excellent, professional-quality music (Kung trained in classical music) performed in an electrifying atmosphere have included the Venezuelan and Canadian consuls-general in Hong Kong. Check the website's calendar for dates.



### Peel Fresco *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.peelfresco.com](http://www.peelfresco.com); 49 Peel St, Central; 🕒 5pm-late Mon-Sat) A classy jazz venue with massive paintings taking centre stage. It's also famed for the pop stars who come in and out. Soul and reggae are also played here.

### Grappa's Cellar *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 2521 2322; [www.elgrande.com.hk/outlets/HongKong/GrappasCellar](http://www.elgrande.com.hk/outlets/HongKong/GrappasCellar); 1 Connaught Pl, Central; 🚇 Hong Kong, exit B2) For at least two weekends a month, this underground Italian restaurant morphs into a jazz or rock music venue. Call or check website for event and ticketing details.

## Sheung Wan Civic Centre *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 *booking 2853 2678, enquiries 2853 2689; 5th fl, Sheung Wan Municipal Services Bld, 345 Queen's Rd Central, Sheung Wan; 🕒 9am-11pm, box office 10am-6.30pm; 🚇 Sheung Wan, exit A2*) This government-run performance venue, which shares a building with a wet market and cooked food centre, has programmes all year round that lean towards drama by local theatre troupes, some engagingly experimental, and concerts by independent musicians and bands.

## Makumba Africa Lounge *LIVE MUSIC*

(📞 2522 0544; <http://makumbahk.com>; 2nd fl, Ho Lee Commercial Bldg, 38-44 D'Aguilar St, Lan Kwai Fong, Central; 🕒 5pm-late) This is the premier club for African and reggae music.

## Gay & Lesbian Venues

For the latest, try **Utopia Asia** ([www.utopia-asia.com/hkbars.htm](http://www.utopia-asia.com/hkbars.htm)), **Gay HK** ([www.gayhk.com](http://www.gayhk.com)) or the free, monthly magazine **Dim Sum** (<http://dimsum-hk.com>).

Hong Kong's premier lesbian organisation, **Les Peches** (📞 9101 8001; [lespechesinfo@yahoo.com](mailto:lespechesinfo@yahoo.com)) has monthly events for lesbians, bisexual women and their friends.

## Propaganda *CLUB*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*lower ground fl, 1 Hollywood Rd, Central; weekend cover HK\$160; 🕒 9pm-late Tue-Sat*) Hong Kong's premier gay dance club. The weekend cover charge gets you into Works below on Friday. Enter from Ezra's Lane.

## T:me *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 2332 6565; [www.time-bar.com](http://www.time-bar.com); 🕒 6pm-2am Mon-Sat) A small and chic gay bar located in a back alley off Hollywood Rd, close to Club 71; drinks are a bit on the pricey side but they have happy hour

throughout the week.

## Comedy Venues

### TakeOut Comedy Club COMEDY

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(☎ 6220 4436; [www.takeoutcomedy.com](http://www.takeoutcomedy.com); Basement, 34 Elgin St, Soho; 🚇 26) Hong Kong's first comedy club will blow your socks off with consistently good stand-up and improvised acts in English, Cantonese and Mandarin.

## DANCE, DANCE!

Opportunities to kick up your heels abound in town.

### Tango

Hong Kong has a zealous community of tango dancers. [Tango Tang](#) ([www.tangotang.com](http://www.tangotang.com)), the most prominent of all the schools, has all tango events, including those by other organisers, posted on its website. You can join any of the *milongas* (dance parties) held every week all over town. The [Hong Kong Tango Festival](#) ([www.hktangofest.com](http://www.hktangofest.com)), held at the end of the year, features classes, workshops and more parties. The website has details.

### Salsa

Hong Kong's vibrant salsa community has weekly club nights that are open to anyone in need of a good time. See [www.dancetrinity.com](http://www.dancetrinity.com) or [www.hongkong-salsa.com](http://www.hongkong-salsa.com). The annual [Hong Kong Salsa Festival](#) (<http://hksalsafestival.com>), held around February, features participants from the world over.

### Swing

If you like swing, there are socials with live jazz bands (and free beginners' classes) at least six times a month. See the calendar on [www.hongkongswings.com](http://www.hongkongswings.com).

### Queer Tea Dance

Party with lovely drag hostesses every first and third Sunday of the month at gay-friendly bar [Tivo](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Offline map](#); 43-55 Wyndham St, Central; 🕒 closed Sun; 🚇 Central, exit D2). The frolicking starts at 7pm.

## Shopping



It's not the bargain destination it was, but Hong Kong is crammed with retail space, making it a delight for shoppers. If you prefer everything under one roof, some of the sleeker options are: **IFC Mall** ([Offline map](#); [www.ifc.com.hk](http://www.ifc.com.hk); 1 Harbour View St, Central; Hong Kong), **Pacific Place** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Offline map](#)); 88 Queensway, Admiralty; Admiralty), **Elements** ([Offline map](#); [www.elementshk.com](http://www.elementshk.com); 1 Austin Rd W, West Kowloon; Kowloon, exit U3) and **Harbour City** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Offline map](#)); Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; Star Ferry). This last is an enormous complex.

If you're looking for antiques and curios, Central's Hollywood Road should be your first stop, while cheaper Cat Street, also in Central, specialises in younger (ie retro) items such as Mao paraphernalia.

For cheap attire, browse at Jardine's Bazaar (; [Offline map](#)) in Causeway Bay, Johnston Road in Wan Chai or the **Ladies Market** (*Tung Choi St, Fa Yuen St & Sai Yeung Choi St, Mong Kok*; ☺ noon-10.30pm; MTR Mong Kok, exit B2) in Mong Kok, Kowloon.

Hong Kong is one of the best places in Asia to buy English-language books and the city's computer malls have some of the lowest prices on earth. Similarly, there are some fantastic camera stores, though most are *not* on Nathan Rd in Tsim Sha Tsui.

## HONG KONG ISLAND

Central and Causeway Bay are the main shopping districts on Hong Kong Island.



### **Horizon Plaza** FURNITURE

(2 Lee Wing St, Ap Lei Chau, Aberdeen; ☺ 10am-7pm) This industrial citadel now boasts more than 150 shops and outlets over 28 storeys, selling furniture and designer clothing at knock-down prices. Most shops will pack and ship too. Bus 90 from Central's Exchange Sq terminus takes you to Ap Lei Chau Estate bus terminus; from there take a cab.

### **Arch Angel Antiques** ANTIQUES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(53-55 Hollywood Rd, Central; ☎ 9.30am- 6.30pm; 🚌 bus 26) This well-respected shop has knowledgeable staff and a wide selection of antiques and curios, including many at affordable prices. Everything is authenticated.



### **G.O.D.** HOMEWARES, GIFTS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.god.com.hk](http://www.god.com.hk); Leighton Centre, Sharp St E, Causeway Bay; 🚇 Causeway Bay, exit A) If you only have time for one souvenir place, make it G.O.D. This cheeky lifestyle store sells retro-with-a-twist home and office accessories, and clothing designed in-house. It's fun, chic and very Hong Kong. G.O.D. has five branches, including one at JCCAC ([Click here](#)).

### **Photo Scientific** CAMERAS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 6 Stanley St, Central; ☎ 9am-7pm Mon-Sat; 🚇 Central) Photo Scientific has a rock-solid reputation among professional photographers, with labelled prices, no bargaining, no arguing and no cheating.

### **Mountain Folkcraft** CRAFTS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 12 Wo On Lane, Central; ☎ 9.30am-6.30pm Mon-Sat; 🚇 Central, exit D1) This place sells bolts of batik, clothing, wood carvings and paper cuts made by ethnic minorities in Asia.



### **Shanghai Tang** CLOTHING, ACCESSORIES


[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📞 2525 7333; [www.shanghaitang.com](http://www.shanghaitang.com); Shanghai Tang Mansion, 1 Duddell St; 🚇 Central, exit D1) If you fancy a cheongsam (a body-hugging Chinese dress) with a modern twist, a Chinese-style

clutch or a lime-green mandarin jacket, this is the place to go. Shanghai Tang also stocks a range of lifestyle products – everything from cushions to picture frames, teapots, even mahjong-tile sets – designed in a modern *chinoiserie* style.


## **Fook Ming Tong Tea Shop** *FOOD, DRINK*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); ☎ 2295 0368; Shop 3006, IFC Mall, 8 Finance St;  Central, exit A) Tea-making accoutrements and carefully chosen teas of various ages and grades, from gunpowder to Nanyan Ti Guan Yin Crown Grade – costing anything from HK\$10 to HK\$9000 per 100g.

## **Hong Kong Book Centre** *BOOKS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(☎ 2522 7046; [www.hongkongbookcentre.com](http://www.hongkongbookcentre.com); Basement, On Lok Yuen Bldg, 25 Des Voeux Rd, Central; 🕒 9am-6.30pm Mon-Fri, to 5.30pm Sat;  Central) Basement shop with a vast selection of English-language books and magazines, particularly business titles.

## **Wan Chai Computer Centre** *ELECTRONICS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 1st fl, Southorn Centre, 130-138 Hennessy Rd, Wan Chai; 🕒 10am-8pm Mon-Sat;  Wan Chai, exit B2) A reliable mall for computers, peripherals and most things electronic and digital.



## **Daydream Nation** *CLOTHING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(☎ 3741 0758; [www.daydream-nation.com](http://www.daydream-nation.com); 2nd fl, Hong Kong Arts Centre, 2 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai;  ) A 'Vogue Talent 2010' brand founded by two of the most creative local designers around – Kay Wong and her brother Jing who's also a musician. DN is known for its highly wearable fashion and accessories that come with a touch of theatricality. Check the website for the latest opening hours.

## Kung Fu Supplies *SPORTS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2891 1912; Room 6A, 6th fl, Chuen Fung House, 188-192 Johnston Rd, Wan Chai; 🕒 Mon-Sat; 🚏 6, 6A or 6X) If you need to stock up on martial-arts accessories, including uniforms, nunchakus and safety weapons for practice, or just want to thumb through a decent collection of books and DVDs, this is the place to go.

## Yiu Fung Store *FOOD*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 3 Foo Ming St, Causeway Bay; 🚇 Causeway Bay, exit A; 📍) Hong Kong's most famous store (c 1960s) for Chinese pickles and preserved fruit features sour plum, liquorice-flavoured lemon, tangerine peel, pickled papaya and dried longnan.

WORTH A TRIP

## HONG KONG'S HIDDEN AGENDA

Founded in a clandestine band room in the gritty industrial hub of Kwun Tong, [Hidden Agenda](#) (📞 9170 6073; [www.hiddenagendahk.com](http://www.hiddenagendahk.com); 2A, Wing Fu Industrial Bldg, 15-17 Tai Yip St, Kwun Tong; 🚇 Ngau Tau Kok, exit B6) has become synonymous with underground music in Hong Kong. It now occupies a warehouse-turned-venue that accommodates 300 people. While the music started out with a raucous, head-banging focus, the mix of genres now include post-rock, reggae, jazz, folk, techno and punk.





Bands both local (Chochukmo, Hungry Ghosts) and foreign (Tahiti 80, The Chariot, Anti-Flag, Two Gallants, Alcest, Pitchtuner) have performed here. There are shows every week. Check the website for the latest.

## KOWLOON

Shopping in Kowloon is a mix of the down-at-heel and the glamorous; you can find just about anything – especially in Tsim Sha Tsui.




## Page One *BOOKS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Shop LG1 30, lower ground fl, Festival Walk, 80-88 Tat Chee Ave, Kowloon Tong;  Kowloon Tong, exit C2) A chain, yes, but a good one. Page One has Hong Kong's best selection of art and design magazines and books; it's also strong on photography, literature, film and children's books. There's another branch in **Causeway Bay** ( 2506 0381; Shop 922, Time's Square, 1 Matheson St, Causeway Bay;  10.30am-10pm;  Causeway Bay, exit A).



## **Premier Jewellery** JEWELLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#);  2368 0003; Shop G14-15, ground fl, Holiday Inn Golden Mile Shopping Mall, 50 Nathan Rd;  10am-7.30pm Mon-Sat, 10.30am-4pm Sun;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit G) This family firm directed by a qualified gemologist has a small but attractive range of jewellery. If you're looking for something particular, give them a day's notice and a selection will be ready in time for your arrival.



## **Initial** CLOTHING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.initialfashion.com](http://www.initialfashion.com); Shop 2, 48 Cameron Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui;  11.30am-11.30pm;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B2) This attractive shop carries stylish, multifunctional urban wear with European and Japanese influences. The clothes, created by inhouse designers, are complemented by imported shoes, bags and costume jewellery.




## **Ap Liu St Flea Market** ELECTRONICS

(Ap Liu St, Sham Shui Po;  noon-midnight;  Sham Shui Po, exit A2) Shops and stalls selling every electronic/electrical appliance you can imagine, including exotic batteries and satellite dishes. It's very local.


## **Swindon Books** BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.swindonbooks.com](http://www.swindonbooks.com); 13-15 Lock Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit A1) This is one of the best 'real' (as opposed to 'supermarket') bookshops. An excellent range and knowledgeable staff. Strong on local books and history in particular.

## Rise Shopping Arcade *CLOTHING*



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); [www.rise-hk.com](http://www.rise-hk.com); 5-11 Granville Circuit, Tsim Sha Tsui;  Tsim Sha Tsui, exit B2) Bursting at the seams of this mini-mall is cheap streetwear from Korea and Japan, with a few knock-offs chucked in for good measure. Patience and a good eye could land you purchases fit for a *Vogue* photo shoot. Best visited between 4pm and 8.30pm when most of the shops are open.

## Yue Hwa Chinese Products Emporium

*DEPARTMENT STORE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)




([Offline map](#);  2384 0084; 301-309 Nathan Rd;  Yau Ma Tei, exit D) An enormous place with seven floors of ceramics, furniture, souvenirs and clothing for the old-school souvenir-hunting tourist.

## Bruce Lee Club *SPORTS*

([Offline map](#); [www.bruceleeclub.com](http://www.bruceleeclub.com); Shop 160-161, In's Point, 530 Nathan Rd;  1-9pm;  Yau Ma Tei, exit A1) A small martial-arts museum and souvenir shop dedicated to Bruce Lee.

## Chan Wah Kee Cutlery Store *HOMEWARES*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#);  2730 4091; 278D, Temple St, close to Bowring St, Yau Ma Tei;  11am-6pm, closed Wed;  Jordan, exit C2) Kitchen weaponry sharpened the ancient way by an 80-year-old guru. Need a chopper that can julienne tofu? Here's the place to go.

## Protrek *OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT*

Offline map

Google map

([www.protrek.com.hk](http://www.protrek.com.hk); 522 Nathan Rd, Yau Ma Tei; ☎ noon-8pm Mon-Sat, 11.30am-9.30pm Sun; 🚉 Yau Ma Tei, exit C) Arguably your best bet for outdoor gear that will see you through from sea to summit.

## WANT MORE?

For in-depth information, reviews and recommendations at your fingertips, head to the Apple App Store to purchase Lonely Planet's *Hong Kong City Guide* iPhone app.

Alternatively, head to **Lonely Planet** ([www.lonelyplanet.com/china/hong-kong](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/china/hong-kong)) for planning advice, author recommendations, traveller reviews and insider tips.

## Information

### Emergency

**Fire, police & ambulance** (☎ 999)

### Internet Access

Internet cafes are hard to come by, but wi-fi is widely available. It's free at Hong Kong International Airport, and at parks, public libraries, sports centres, museums, cooked-food markets, community halls and government premises listed at [www.gov.hk/en/theme/wifi/location](http://www.gov.hk/en/theme/wifi/location).

**McDonald's** ([www.mcdonalds.com.hk](http://www.mcdonalds.com.hk)), **Pacific Coffee** ([www.pacificcoffee.com](http://www.pacificcoffee.com)) and **Starbucks** ([www.starbucks.com.hk](http://www.starbucks.com.hk)) outlets have free wi-fi with purchase.

A 60-minute PCCW wi-fi pass is available at HKTB visitor centres. A 3G rechargeable SIM card (from HK\$48) will connect your phone to the internet and these are available at PCCW and SmarTone shops, PCCW provides some 10,000 wi-fi hot spots. Check service plans at [www.pccwwifi.com](http://www.pccwwifi.com).

### Media

Local and Asian editions of printed newspapers and journals locally

include *South China Morning Post*, *The Standard*, *HK Magazine*, *BC Magazine*, *Time Out*, *USA Today*, *International Herald Tribune*, *Financial Times* and *Wall Street Journal Asia*.

English-language TV (terrestrial) and radio include TVB Pearl, ATV World; BBC World Service, RTHK 3 and 4.

## Medical Services

Medical care is of a high standard in Hong Kong, though private hospital care is costly.

**Ambulance** (☎ 999)

**General inquiry number for hospitals** (☎ 2300 6555)

Hospitals with 24-hour emergency services:

**Matilda International** (☎ 2849 0111; 41 Mt Kellett Rd, Peak) Pricey private hospital atop Victoria Peak.

**Prince of Wales** (☎ 2632 2211; 30-32 Ngan Shing St, Sha Tin)

Public hospital in the New Territories.

**Queen Elizabeth** (☎ 2958 8888; 30 Gascoigne Rd, Yau Ma Tei)

Public hospital in Kowloon.

## HSBC'S GEOMANCY

The 52-storey HSBC building is supposedly full of examples of good feng shui (Chinese geomancy). Care is taken to ensure nothing blocks its view of Victoria Harbour, because water is associated with wealth and prosperity. The escalators are believed to symbolise the whiskers of a dragon sucking wealth into its belly; and they are built at an angle to the entrance, which supposedly disorients evil spirits which can only travel in a straight line. Care was also taken not to locate the banking hall on the ground floor, because doing so would block off the flow of the 'dragon's vein' from Victoria Harbour to the mountains at the back, creating bad *feng shui*.

## Money

ATMs are available throughout Hong Kong, including at the airport. Most are available 24 hours. Banks have the best exchange rates, but some levy commissions of HK\$50 or more per transaction. Opening hours are 9am to 4.30pm or 5.30pm Monday to Friday, 9am to



12.30pm Saturday.

Licensed moneychangers are abundant in tourist districts, the ground floor of Chungking Mansions and at **Wing Hoi Money Exchange** (*ground fl, Shop No 9b, Mirador Mansion, 58 Nathan Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui*; ☎ 8.30am-8.30pm Mon-Sat, to 7pm Sun). Rates at the airport are poor.

## Post

**Hong Kong Post** ([www.hongkongpost.com](http://www.hongkongpost.com)) offices:

**General post office** ( 2 Connaught Pl, Central; ☎ 8am-6pm Mon-Sat, 9am-5pm Sun)

**Tsim Sha Tsui post office** ( ground & 1st fl, Hermes House, 10 Middle Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui; ☎ 9am-6pm Mon-Sat, to 2pm Sun)

## Telephone

All phone numbers have eight digits (except ☎ 800 toll-free numbers) and no area codes. Local calls are free on private phones and cost HK\$1 for five minutes on pay phones.

A phonecard, available at convenience stores, will let you make international direct-dial calls. A SIM card (from HK\$50) with prepaid call time will connect you to the local mobile phone network.

## Tourist Information

**HKTB** ( ☎ visitor hotline 2508 1234; [www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com); ☎ hotline 9am-6pm) runs a website, visitor hotline and several visitor information and service centres:

**Hong Kong International Airport** (*Halls A & B, Arrivals Level, Terminal 1*; ☎ 7am-11pm)

**Hong Kong Island** (*The Peak Piazza*; ☎ 9am-9pm)

**Kowloon** (*Star Ferry Concourse, Tsim Sha Tsui*; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**Lo Wu border** (*2nd fl, Arrival Hall, Lo Wu Terminal Bldg*; ☎ 8am-6pm)

## Travel Agencies

**China Travel Service** ( CTS; ☎ 2522 0450; [www.ctshk.com](http://www.ctshk.com); ground fl, China Travel Bldg, 77 Queen's Rd, Central; ☎ 9am-7.30pm Mon-Fri, to 5pm Sat, 9.30am-5pm Sun)

**Phoenix Services Agency** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ); 📞 2722 7378; [info@phoenixtrvl.com](mailto:info@phoenixtrvl.com); Room 1404-5, 14th fl, Austin Tower, 22-26A Austin Ave, Tsim Sha Tsui; 🕒 9am-6pm Mon-Fri, to 4pm Sat)

## Websites

**Lonely Planet** ([www.lonelyplanet.com/hong-kong](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/hong-kong)) Destination information, bookings, traveller forum and more.

**Discover Hong Kong** ([www.discoverhongkong.com](http://www.discoverhongkong.com)) Official tourist board website.

**Time Out Hong Kong** ([www.timeout.com.hk](http://www.timeout.com.hk)) Live entertainment listings and more.

## HKIA TO CHINA THE FAST WAY

You can head straight from Hong Kong International Airport (HKIA) to Macau and airports in Shenzhen and Guangzhou. The following companies (all with counters at HKIA Terminal 2) have buses going to points in southern China (Foshan HK\$230, Guangzhou HK\$250 and Shenzhen airport HK\$180):

**CTS Express Coach** (📞 2261 2147, 3559 1474)

**Eternal East Cross Border Coach** (📞 2261 0176)

**Trans-Island Limousine Service** (📞 3193 9333)

A fast ferry service, **Skypier** (📞 2215 3232) links HKIA with Macau and six Pearl River delta destinations. Travellers can board ferries without clearing Hong Kong customs and immigration. Book a ticket prior to boarding from ticketing desks located in the transfer area at Arrivals (Level 5, close to immigration counters).

**Chu Kong Passenger Transportation Co** (📞 2858 3876; [www.cksp.com.hk](http://www.cksp.com.hk)) Has ferries from HKIA to Shenzhen airport (HK\$295, 40 minutes, eight daily, 10.15am to 6.30pm) and to Macau, Shekou, Dongguan, Zhuhai and Zhongshan.

**TurboJet** (📞 2859 3333; [www.turbojet.com.hk](http://www.turbojet.com.hk)) Has services to Macau (HK\$233, one hour, eight daily, 10am to 10pm).

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Over 100 airlines operate between **Hong Kong International Airport** (HKG; ☎ 2181 8888; [www.hkairport.com](http://www.hkairport.com)) and some 160 destinations around the world. Fares are relatively low and you can find quite a number of discounted tickets.

That said, bargain airfares between Hong Kong and mainland China are few, as the government regulates the prices. The volume of business travellers and Chinese tourists is enormous, so book well in advance. If you're prepared to travel to Guangzhou or Shenzhen, in Guangdong province, you can find much cheaper flights. Shenzhen airport ([Click here](#)) has flights to just about everywhere in China (see [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net)).

See [Click here](#) for international airlines flying to/from Hong Kong.

Airline offices in Hong Kong:

**Air China** ([www.airchina.hk](http://www.airchina.hk))

**Cathay Pacific** ([www.cathaypacific.com](http://www.cathaypacific.com))

**China Airlines** ([www.china-airlines.com](http://www.china-airlines.com))

**China Southern** ([www.cs-air.com](http://www.cs-air.com))

**Dragonair** ([www.dragonair.com](http://www.dragonair.com))

**Hong Kong Airlines** ([www.hongkongairlines.com](http://www.hongkongairlines.com))

## Boat

Regular ferries link the **China Ferry Terminal** (*China Hong Kong City, 33 Canton Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui*) in Kowloon and the **Hong Kong–Macau Ferry Terminal** (*Shun Tak Centre, 200 Connaught Rd, Sheung Wan*) on Hong Kong Island with towns and cities on the Pearl River delta – but not central Guangzhou or Shenzhen. For sea transport to/from Macau, [Click here](#). You'll find left-luggage lockers (HK\$20 to HK\$30 per hour) in both terminals.

**Chu Kong Passenger Transportation Co** (☎ 2858 3876; [www.cksp.com.hk](http://www.cksp.com.hk)) provides regularly scheduled ferries to Zhuhai (HK\$190, 70 minutes), Zhongshan (HK\$210, 1½ hours), Shunde (HK\$228, two hours), Zhaoqing (HK\$220, four hours), Kaiping (HK\$180, four hours) and Shekou (HK\$110, one hour).

## Bus

For information on buses from the airport to mainland China, see the boxed text. You can reach virtually any major destination in Guangdong province by bus (HK\$100 to HK\$220):

**CTS Express Coach** (☎ 2764 9803; <http://ctsbus.hkcts.com>) The most extensive cross-border bus services to Guangdong.

**Trans-Island Limousine Service** (☎ 3193 9333; [www.trans-island.com.hk](http://www.trans-island.com.hk)) Buses to a dozen destinations in the province.

## Train

For schedules and ticket prices, see [www.mtr.com.hk](http://www.mtr.com.hk).

Immigration formalities at Hung Hom must be completed before boarding, including checking your visa for China; arrive at the station 45 minutes before departure.

Tickets can be booked at CTS, East Rail stations in Hung Hom, Mong Kok, Kowloon Tong and Sha Tin, and MTR Travel at Admiralty Station; tickets booked with credit card by phone (☎ 2947 7888) must be collected at least one hour before departure.

**Trains to Guangzhou, Shanghai, Beijing and Zhaoqing** Daily from Hung Hom station (HK\$230 to HK\$1191).

**Trains to Shenzhen** The East Rail train takes you to Lo Wu or Lok Ma Chau; from Shenzhen you can take a local train or bus to Guangzhou and beyond.

## BEWARE: FAKE MONKS

Real monks in Hong Kong never solicit money. However, you may be approached in temples and even bars and shops by con artists in monks' habits who try to make you part with your money. The more aggressive may offer fake Buddhist amulets for sale, or force 'blessings' on you and then pester you for a donation. When accosted, just say 'no' and ignore them.

For more on scams, [Click here](#).

## Getting Around

Hong Kong's public transport system is fast, convenient, relatively inexpensive and easy to use with the Octopus card payment system.

### To/From the Airport

The **Airport Express** ([www.mtr.com.hk](http://www.mtr.com.hk); HK\$100/90/60 per 24/21/13min from Central/Kowloon/Tsing Yi; 🕒 every 12min from Hong Kong station, Central) Fastest and costliest public route to the airport; most airlines allow Airport Express passengers to check in at Central or Kowloon stations between 5.30am and 12.30am one day to 90 minutes before departure; at Hong Kong International Airport there is a **left-luggage office** (☎ 2261 0110; HK10/120 per hr/day; 🕒 5.30am-1.30am) on Level 3 of Terminal 2.

Bus fares to the airport are HK\$21 to HK\$45. See 'Transport' on the [www.hkairport.com](http://www.hkairport.com) website for details.

A taxi to Central is about HK\$300 plus luggage charge of HK\$5 per item.

For details on the ferry to Shenzhen airport, see the boxed text.

### Bicycle

In quiet areas of the Outlying Islands or New Territories, a bike can be a lovely way of getting around. For rental info, [Click here](#).

### Car & Motorcycle

Driving in Hong Kong isn't for the faint-hearted. But if you are determined to see Hong Kong under your own steam try **Avis** (☎ 2890 6988; [www.avis.com.hk](http://www.avis.com.hk); per day/week HK\$970/3700, with chauffeur per hr HK\$350, minimum 3hr) which has Honda Civics with unlimited kilometres.

### Public Transport

No more rummaging in your purse for small change:

**Airport Express Travel Pass** (\$220/300) Three consecutive days of unlimited travel on the MTR and one/two trips on the Airport Express.

**MTR Tourist Day Pass** (HK\$55) Unlimited travel on the MTR for 24 hours.

**Octopus card** ([www.octopuscards.com](http://www.octopuscards.com); HK\$150, plus refundable

*deposit HK\$50*) Reusable ‘smart cards’ that are accepted on most forms of public transport, available at convenience stores, supermarkets and fast-food chains. You can add money on your card at MTR stations and 7-Eleven stores.

**BUS** Hong Kong’s **bus system** (*fares HK\$2.50-52; ☺ 5.30/6am-midnight/12.30am*) will get you almost anywhere. Exact change or an Octopus card is required. The HKTB has leaflets on major bus routes. Bus companies:

**City Bus and First Bus** ([www.nwstbus.com.hk](http://www.nwstbus.com.hk))

**Kowloon Motor Bus** ([www.kmb.hk](http://www.kmb.hk))

**New Lantau Bus** ([www.newlantaobus.com](http://www.newlantaobus.com))

Major bus stops and stations:

**Central Bus Terminus** (*Exchange Sq*) Gets you to southern side of the island; buses 6, 6A and 260 leave for Stanley and Repulse Bay; buses 70 and 70P for Aberdeen.

**Admiralty** Above Admiralty MTR station; gets you to the southern side of the island.

**Star Ferry Pier** Has buses to Hung Hom station and points in eastern and western Kowloon.

**PUBLIC LIGHT BUS** Better known as ‘minibuses’, these 16-seaters come in two varieties:

**With red roof/stripe** Fares HK\$2 to HK\$22; supplement bus services. Get on or off almost anywhere – just yell ‘*ni do, m goi*’ (here, please); Octopus card accepted on certain routes.

**With green roof/stripe** Operate on more than 350 set routes and make designated stops; Octopus card accepted on all routes.

**CROSS-HARBOUR FERRY** The **Star Ferry** ([www.starferry.com.hk](http://www.starferry.com.hk); *from HK\$2*) operates on two routes: Central–Tsim Sha Tsui and Wan Chai–Tsim Sha Tsui.

**OUTLYING ISLANDS FERRIES** See schedules at ferry piers and ferry company websites, or ask for a pocket-sized timetable. Most ferries depart from the Outlying Islands Piers close to the IFC building in Central. The main companies are:

**Hong Kong & Kowloon Ferry Co** ([www.hkkf.com.hk](http://www.hkkf.com.hk)) Serves Lamma.

**New World First Ferry** (*NWFF*; [www.nwff.com.hk](http://www.nwff.com.hk)) Services to Cheung Chau, Peng Chau and Lantau; an inter-island service connects the three.

**TRAIN** The **Mass Transit Railway** (*MTR*; [www.mtr.com.hk](http://www.mtr.com.hk); fares HK\$4-25) runs 10 lines; buy tickets or use the Octopus card (slightly cheaper). Once past the turnstile, you must complete the journey within 150 minutes.

The MTR also runs overland services on two main lines and two smaller lines, offering transport to the New Territories:

**East Rail** From Hung Hom station in Kowloon to Lo Wu (HK\$35) and Lok Ma Chau (HK\$35), gateway to Shenzhen; a spur runs from Tai Wai to Wu Kai Sha.

**Light Rail** Fares HK\$4 to HK\$5.50; routes in western New Territories between Tuen Mun and Yuen Long, and feeds the West Rail.

**West Rail** From Hung Hom station to Tuen Mun (HK\$20) via Yuen Long.

There are left-luggage lockers in major MTR train stations, including Hung Hom station.

**TRAM** Hong Kong's century-old **trams** ([www.hktramways.com](http://www.hktramways.com); fares HK\$2.50) represent the only all double-decker wooden-sided tram fleet in the world. They operate on six overlapping routes running east– west along the northern side of Hong Kong Island.

## Taxi

Hong Kong is served by taxis of three colours:

**Blue** Serving Lantau; HK\$15 flag fall, then HK\$1.30 for every 200m.

**Green** Serving the New Territories; HK\$16.50 flag fall, then HK\$1.30 for every 200m.

**Red** Serving Hong Kong Island and Kowloon; HK\$20 flag fall for the first 2km, then HK\$1.50 for every additional 200m.

# Essential China

**Cuisine »**  
**The Great Wall »**  
**Temples »**  
**Hiking »**  
**Festivals »**

Cormorant fisherman on the Li River near Xingping



© SHUTTERSTOCK / GETTY IMAGES



# Cuisine

To the Chinese, food is life. Dining is the cherished high point of the daily social calendar and often the one occasion to stop work and fully relax. The only problem is knowing where to begin: the sheer variety on offer can have your head spinning and your tummy quivering.

## Noodles

**1** Marco Polo may have nicked the recipe to make spaghetti (so they say), but he didn't quite get the flavouring right. Noodles range across an exciting spectrum of taste, from the wincingly spicy *dandan miàn* (spicy noodles) through to the supersalty *shājiàng miàn* (fried sauce noodles).

## Dim Sum

**2** Dim sum is steamed up across China, but like the Cantonese dialect, it's best left to the masters of the south to get it right. Hong Kong, Macau and Guǎngzhōu should be your first stops – they set the dim sum benchmark.

## Dumplings

**3** Set your compass north and northeast for the best *jiǎozi* (dumplings) – leek, pork, lamb, crabmeat wrapped in an envelope of dough. If you like them crispy, get them *guōtiē* (fried). Shànghǎi's interpretation is *xiǎolóngbāo* – scrummy and steamed.

## Peking Duck

**4** Purists insist you must be in Běijīng for true Peking duck roasted to an amber hue over fruit tree wood. You might as well take their advice as that's where you'll find the best Peking duck restaurants.

## Hotpot

**5** An all-weather meal, hotpot is ideal for banishing the bitter cold of a northern winter, while in steaming Chóngqīng old folk devour the spiciest variety in the height of summer.



© GETTY IMAGES



© GETTY IMAGES

### Clockwise from top left

- 1 Rice noodles 2 Dim sum 3 Steamed dumplings  
4 Peking duck



2

LORELY PHANH / GETTY IMAGES ©



3

ORION KIM / GETTY IMAGES ©

# The Great Wall

China's elongated bastion ranges in fragments from the North Korean border, vaulting rivers, down to the sea, snaking over mountains around Běijīng, disappearing here and reappearing there before being ground down by the remorseless desert winds of the northwest.

## Jinshānlǐng

**1** The hike from Jinshānlǐng towards Simátái is ideal in late autumn, when Běijīng's weather is at its best; in the hammering heat of summer you'll need a lot of water and an effective sunhat.

## Jiāyùguān Fort

**2** Jiāyùguān Fort in Qānsù offers the unique image of a wind-blasted desert fort set against snowcapped mountains. China's Wild West kicks off here and you can explore vestiges of the wall running between ancient watchtowers.

## Jiànkòu

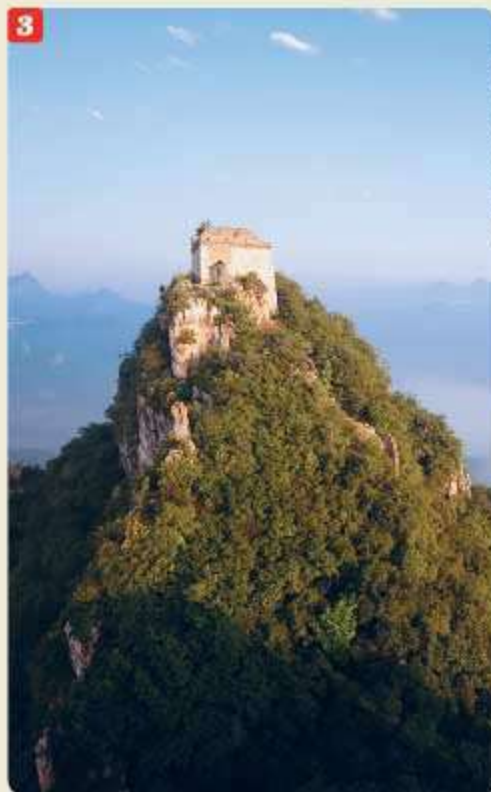
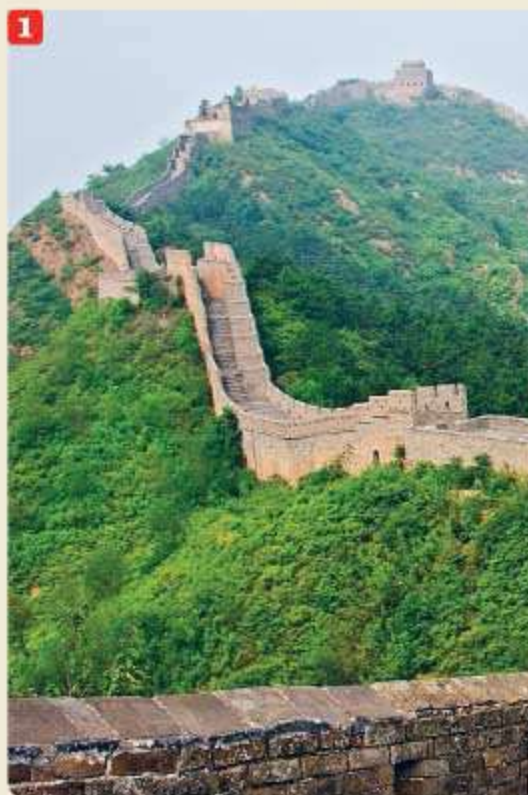
**3** Běijīng's most authentic part of the wall is not the easiest to reach, but it's worth the effort: Jiànkòu provides the best experience, the finest photos, an excellent workout and almost certainly unforgettable memories.

## Huánghuā Chéng

**4** A much-needed alternative to overdone and over-commercialised sections of wall, Huánghuā Chéng is an authentic rendition of the Great Wall. Excellent hiking awaits if you have time, shoes with a good grip and a sense of exploration.

## Zhuàngdàokǒu

**5** Great Wall purists will swoon at the unrestored brickwork at Zhuàngdàokǒu, where images of the wall in varying stages of distress, dilapidation and restoration meet supreme views.



EVA TEJENTOU / GETTY IMAGES ©

### Clockwise from top left

1 Jinshānlǐng 2 Jiāyùguān Fort  
3 Jiànkòu unrestored section



THE HISTORY / GETTY IMAGES & ©



2

THE HISTORY / GETTY IMAGES & ©

# Temples

Divided between Buddhist, Taoist and Confucian faiths, China's temples are places of introspection, peace and absolution. Find them on mountain peaks, in caves, on side streets, hanging from cliffsides or occupying the epicentre of town, from Tibet to Běijīng and beyond.

## Temple of Heaven, Běijīng

**1** Not really a temple, but let's not quibble. Běijīng's Temple of Heaven was China's graceful place of worship for the Ming and Qing emperors, encapsulating the Confucian desire for symmetry and order, and harmony between heaven and earth.

## Pūnīng Temple, Chéngdé

**2** On a clear day this temple stands out against the hills around Chéngdé, while in the Mahayana Hall is the Guanyin statue, a 22m-high, multiarmed embodiment of Buddhist benevolence – this is perhaps China's most astonishing statue.

## Confucius Temple, Qūfū

**3** This is China's largest and most important Confucius Temple. The Shāndōng sage has had an immeasurable influence on the Chinese persona through the millennia – visit the town where it began and try to put his teachings in perspective.

## Labrang Monastery, Xiàhé

**4** If it's a hassle to rustle up a Tibet travel permit, pop down to this gargantuan Tibetan monastery in the scenic southwest corner of Gānsù. Its aura of devotion is amplified by the nonstop influx of Tibetan pilgrims and worshippers.

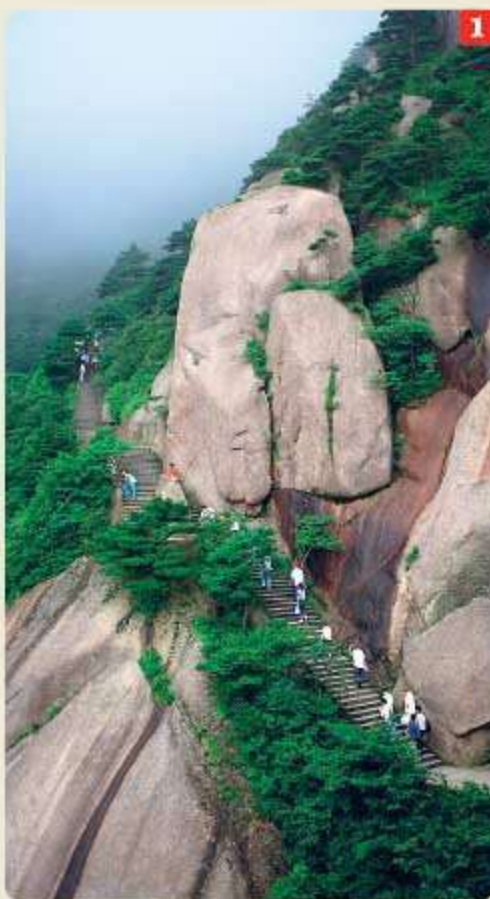
## Jokhang Temple, Lhasa

**5** Tibet's holiest place of worship, the Jokhang Temple in Lhasa is a place of pilgrimage for every Tibetan Buddhist at least once in their lifetime.

### Right

1 Hall of Prayer for Good Harvests, Temple of Heaven Park, Běijīng 2 Pūnīng Temple, Chéngdé





© JIMMY / GETTY IMAGES

## Hiking

If you're keen to escape the cities into the great outdoors, China's dramatic variety of landscapes is the perfect backdrop for bracing walks – whether island-hopping in Hong Kong, exploring the foothills of the Himalayas or trekking through gorges in Yúnnán province.

### Huángshān, Ānhuī

**1** Sooner or later you'll have to hike uphill, and where better than up China's most beautiful mountain. The steps may be punishing, but just focus on the scenery: even if the fabled mists are nowhere to be seen, the views are incredible.

### Hong Kong's Outlying Islands & New Territories

**2** A whopping 70% of Hong Kong is hiking territory, so fling off your Gucci loafers, lace up your hiking boots and go from island to island or make a break for the New Territories, where fantastic hiking trails await.

### Ganden to Samye, Tibet

**3** You'll need four to five days for this glorious high-altitude hike connecting two of Tibet's most splendid monasteries. The landscape is beautiful, but the trek requires preparation both physically and mentally, plus a Tibet travel permit.

### Tiger Leaping Gorge, Yúnnán

**4** The mother of all southwest China's treks, this magnificently named Yúnnán hike is at its most picturesque in early summer. It's not a walk in the park, so plan ahead and give yourself enough time.

### Yángshuò, Guǎngxī

**5** Yángshuò's karst topography is truly astonishing. Base yourself in town, give yourself three or four days, and walk your socks off (or hire a bike). Adventurous types can even try rock climbing.



© ART THOMAS / GETTY IMAGES

#### Left

- 1 The archetypal Chinese mountain, Huángshān
- 2 Hiking the trails crossing Hong Kong Island

# Festivals

China is a nation of hard workers and entrepreneurs, but considerable energy is reserved for its festivals and celebrations. Festivals can be religious, fun-filled, commemorative or seasonal. Locals don their best clothes and get seriously sociable. Join in and be part of the party.

## Dragon Boat Festival

**1** Commemorating the death of Qu Yuan, the celebrated third century BC poet and statesman, dramatic dragon boat races can be seen in May or June churning up the waterways across China, including in Shànghái, Hong Kong and Tiānjīn.



## Ice and Snow Festival, Hā'ěrbīn

**2** The arctic temperatures may knock the wind from your lungs, but in January the frost-bitten capital of Hēilóngjiāng province twinkles with an iridescent collection of carved ice sculptures.



## Third Moon Fair, Dàlǐ

**3** One of China's many ethnic minority festivals, and usually held in April, this Bai festival commemorates the appearance of Guanyin, the Bodhisattva of Mercy, to the people of the Nanzhao kingdom.

## Spring Festival

**4** China's most commercially driven and full-on celebration takes the entire nation by storm at midnight on the first day of the first lunar month. The fuse is lit on a nationwide arsenal of fireworks.

## Monlam (Great Prayer) Festival, Xiàhé

**5** Celebrated across Tibet, the highlight of this Buddhist festival (in February or March) is easiest to witness in the monastic town of Xiàhé, where a host of celebrations include the unfurling of a huge *thangka* (sacred painting) on the hillside.

### Right

**1** Dragon boat racing during the dragon boat festival, Hong Kong Island **2** Ice and snow festival, Hā'ěrbīn



# Macau

 853 / POP 549,500

## Includes »

[Sights](#)

[Activities](#)

[Festivals & Events](#)

[Sleeping](#)

[Eating](#)

[Drinking](#)

[Entertainment](#)

[Shopping](#)

[Getting There & Away](#)

[Getting Around](#)

---

## Why Go?

The Chinese people have stood up and they're off to Macau.



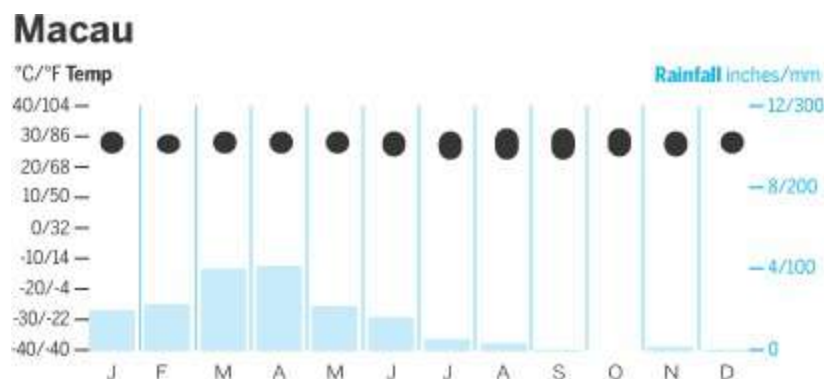
Chairman Mao (who coined the first half of that sentence) must be spinning in his glass coffin. Mainlanders can't get enough of this once Portuguese-administered backwater-turned-gambling-megaresort.

Such has been its explosive growth since 2002 that it is commonplace to refer to Macau as the Vegas of the East. It might be more appropriate to put that the other way round, since Macau has eclipsed its American rival in gambling income. And there are many other things that Macau does better. Beyond the gaming halls, it offers cobblestoned streets punctuated with Chinese temples and baroque churches, pockets of (natural) greenery, a historic centre of Unesco World Heritage status and balmy beaches.

Macau's history has also created a one-of-a-kind cuisine that celebrates the marriage of European, Latin American, African and Asian flavours.

---

## When to Go



**Mar–May** Celebrate the arts, a sea goddess and a dragon as mist hangs over the harbour.

**Jun–Sep** Days in the shade of temples and dragon boats; nights aglow with fireworks.

**Oct–Feb** Music and Grand Prix in a high-octane run-up to Christmas and New Year.

---

## Best Places to Eat

- » Antonio ([Click here](#))
- » Robuchon Au Dôme ([Click here](#))
- » Tim's Kitchen ([Click here](#))
- » Alfonso III ([Click here](#))
- » Lung Wah Tea House ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Sights

- » Ruins of the Church of St Paul ([Click here](#))
- » Guia Fort ([Click here](#))
- » Mandarin's House ([Click here](#))
- » St Lazarus District ([Click here](#))



## Macau Highlights

- 1 Get context for your impressions at the **Macau Museum** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Explore the ethereal ruins of the very symbol of Macau at the

## Church of St Paul ([Click here](#))

- 3 Take a stroll in the old quarter around **Rua dos Ervanarios** and **Rua de Nossa Senhora do Amparo** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Sample Macau's unique cuisine at **Alfonso III** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Lose yourself in mazelike spaces at **Lou Lim Ioc Garden** ([Click here](#)) and the **Mandarin's House** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Take the cable car to handsome **Guia Fort** ([Click here](#)) and its gorgeous chapel
- 7 Mingle with artists on the cobbled paths of the charming **St Lazarus district** ([Click here](#))

## History

Portuguese galleons first visited southern China to trade in the early 16th century, and in 1557, as a reward for clearing out pirates endemic to the area, they obtained a leasehold for Macau and were allowed to establish a tiny enclave here. The first Portuguese Governor of Macau was appointed in 1680, and as trade with China grew, so did Macau, which became the principal centre for Portuguese trade with China, Japan and Southeast Asia. However, after the Opium Wars between the Chinese and the British, and the subsequent establishment of Hong Kong, Macau went into a long decline.

China's Cultural Revolution spilled over into the territory as riots broke out in 1966. The Portuguese government tried to hand Macau back to China, but the latter, fearing the economic shock that would have on Hong Kong, refused the offer.

In 1999, under the Sino–Portuguese Joint Declaration, Macau was returned to China and designated a Special Administrative Region (SAR). Like Hong Kong, the pact ensures Macau a 'high degree of autonomy' in all matters (except defence and foreign affairs) for 50 years. The handover, however, did not change Macau as much as the termination of gambling monopoly in 2001 (see [Click here](#)). Casinos mushroomed, transforming the skyline of the city, and tourists from mainland China surged.

## Language

Cantonese and Portuguese are the official languages of Macau, though few people speak Portuguese. English is harder to find here than in Hong Kong, but in most midrange and top-end hotels, casinos, restaurants and tourist zones you should be able to get by. Mandarin is reasonably well understood, though note that most written Chinese is in traditional characters, not the simplified forms used on the mainland.

### EXCHANGE RATES

---

<b>Australia</b>	A\$1	MOP\$ 8.27
------------------	------	------------

---

<b>Canada</b>	C\$1	MOP\$ 8.02
---------------	------	------------

---

<b>China</b>	¥1	MOP\$
		1.28

---

<b>Euro zone</b>	€1	MOP\$
		10.24

---

<b>Hong Kong</b>	HK\$1	MOP\$1.03
------------------	-------	-----------

---

<b>Japan</b>	¥1	MOP\$
		0.099

---

<b>New Zealand</b>	NZ\$1	MOP\$
		6.59

---

<b>UK</b>	UK£1	MOP\$
		12.795

---

<b>USA</b>	US\$1	MOP\$
		7.98

For current exchange rates see [www.xe.com](http://www.xe.com).

## Sights

For a small place (just 29 sq km), Macau is packed with important cultural and historical sights, including eight squares and 22 historic buildings, which have collectively been named the Historic Centre of Macau World Heritage site by Unesco. Most of the sights are on the peninsula. At many of these sites, seniors aged over 60 years and children 11 years or under are admitted free. The **Macau Museums Pass** (MOP\$25) allows entry to a half-dozen museums over a five-day period.

### **CENTRAL MACAU PENINSULA**

Running from Avenida da Praia Grande to the Inner Harbour, Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro – or San Ma Lo (; New Thoroughfare) in Cantonese – is the peninsula’s main thoroughfare and home to the charming **Largo do Senado**, a black and white tiled square close to major sights.

# Macau Peninsula



# Macau Peninsula

## Sights

1 [AFA \(Art for All Society\)](#) E2

2 [Almirante Lacerda \(Red Market\)](#) D2

3 [A-Ma Temple](#) A7

Bishop's Palace (see 21)

4 [Cable Car Terminus](#) F4

[Chapel of Our Lady of Guia](#) (see 9)

Chapel of Our Lady of Penha (see 21)

5 [Church of St Lawrence](#) B6

6 [Flora Garden](#) F3

7 [Government House](#) C6

8 [Guia Cable Car](#) E3

9 [Guia Fort & Lighthouse](#) E4

10 [Kun Iam Temple](#) E2

11 [Lou Lim Ioc Garden](#) E3

12 [Luis de Camões Garden & Grotto](#) C3

13 [Macau Museum of Art](#) F6

14 [Mandarin's House](#) B6

15 [Maritime Museum](#) A7

16 [Moorish Barracks](#) B6

17 [Museu do Oriente](#) C3

[Museum of Sacred Art](#) (see 24)

18 [Na Tcha Temple](#) C4

19 [Old Protestant Cemetery](#) C3

20 [Ox Warehouse](#) D2

21 [Penha Hill](#) B7

22 [Residence of the Portuguese Consul General](#) B7

23 [Rotunda de Caros da Maia](#) D3

24 [Ruins of the Church of St Paul](#) C4

25 [Santa Sancha Palace](#) B7

[Sr Wong Ieng Kuan Library](#) (see 12)

26 [Sun Yatsen Memorial House](#) E3

27 [Tap Seac Square](#) E4

## Activities, Courses & Tours

Gray Line Tours (see 50)

28 [Macau Tower](#) C8

## Sleeping

29 [Hotel Sintra](#) C6

30 [Mandarin Oriental](#) F5



- [31 MGM Grand Macau](#) E7
- [32 Pousada de Mong Ha](#) E2
- [33 Pousada de São Tiago](#) A8
- [34 Rocks Hotel](#) G6

## Eating

- [35 Henri's Galley](#) B7
- [36 Litoral](#) A6
- [37 Lung Wah Tea House](#) C2
- [38 O Porto](#) E2
- [Robuchon Au Dôme](#) (see 43)
- [Tim's Kitchen](#) (see 42)
- [39 Toung King](#) D3
- [40 Xina Cafe](#) D4

## Entertainment

- [41 Canidrome](#) D1
- [42 Casino Lisboa](#) D6
- [43 Grand Lisboa Casino](#) D6
- [44 Wynn Macau](#) D6

## Information

- [45 Centro Hospitalar Conde São Januario](#) E5
- [46 China Travel Service](#) E5
- MGTO (Ferry Terminal) (see 50)
- MGTO (Guia Lighthouse) (see 9)

## Transport

- [47 Air Macau](#) E6
- [Avis Rent A Car](#) (see 50)
- [48 Burgeon Rent A Car](#) G1
- [49 Heliport](#) G4
- [50 Macau Ferry Terminal](#) G4



## Ruins of the Church of St Paul *RUINS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#) ; *Ruínas de Igreja de São Paulo; Rua de São Paulo; 📍 8A,*

17) A gateway to nowhere in the middle of the city is all that remains of the Church of St Paul, considered by some to be the greatest monument to Christianity in Asia. The church was designed by an Italian Jesuit and built in 1602 by Japanese Christian exiles and Chinese craftsmen. In 1835 a fire destroyed everything except the facade. Like much of Macau's colonial architecture, its European appearance belies the fascinating mix of influences (in this case, Chinese, Japanese, Indochinese) that contributed to its aesthetics. Behind the ruins, there's a small **Museum of Sacred Art** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); *Museu de Arte Sacra; Rua de São Paulo*; 🕒 9am-6pm), and a crypt and ossuary.



## Monte Fort & Macau Museum FORT, MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Fortaleza do Monte*; [Offline map](#); *admission free*; 🕒 7am-7pm Mon-Sun; 📍 7, 8) Built by the Jesuits between 1617 and 1626, Monte Fort's barracks and storehouses were designed to allow the fort to survive a long siege, but the cannons were fired only once: during an aborted invasion by the Dutch in 1622. Now the ones on the south side are trained at Grand Lisboa Casino.

On the outside of the southeastern wall, under a cannon about 6m from the ground, is a (sealed) rectangular opening. This was a former door used by soldiers patrolling the old city wall, which was connected to the fort at a right angle. Housed in the fort is the remarkable **Macau Museum** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Museu de Macau*; [Offline map](#); 📍 2835 7911; [www.macaumuseum.gov.mo](http://www.macaumuseum.gov.mo); *admission MOP\$15*; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun), with exhibits on the history and traditions of Macau.



## Mandarin's House HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Caso do Mandarim*; [Offline map](#); [www.wh.mo/mandarinhouse](http://www.wh.mo/mandarinhouse); 10 *Travessa de Antonio da Silva*; *admission free*; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Fri-Tue; 📍 28B, 16) Built in 1869, this sprawling complex with more than 60 rooms was the ancestral home of Zheng Guanying, an author-

merchant whose readers included emperors, Dr Sun Yatsen and Chairman Mao. The stunning compound features a moon gate, courtyards and halls, in a labyrinthine arrangement.



## **St Lazarus Church District** NEIGHBOURHOOD

( *Calçada da Igreja de Sao Lazaro*; [Offline map](#); 📍 7, 8) A lovely neighbourhood with quiet houses and cobbled streets. Artists, designers and independents have been setting up shop here during the past few years.

The **St Lazarus Church District Creative Industries Promotion Association** ( [www.cipa.org.mo](http://www.cipa.org.mo)) lines up tenants and organises the weekly **Sun Never Left – Public Art Performance** ([Click here](#)). Check the website for updates. Following are some of the neighbourhood's highlights.

The **Old Ladies' House** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); [www.albcreativelab.com](http://www.albcreativelab.com); 8 *Calçada da Igreja de Sao Lazaro*; 🕒 noon-7pm Wed-Mon) sheltered Portuguese refugees from Shanghai in WWII and later housed homeless, elderly women. It is now run by a group of avant-garde designers. Out front, there's a poetic courtyard with old trees. Fashion boutique **Lines Lab** ([Click here](#)) and Portuguese grocery shop **Mercearia Portuguesa** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Click here](#)) are also here.

**G32** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📍 2834 6626; 32 *Rua de Sao Miguel*; free guided tours 3-5pm Sat & Sun) is a restored tenement building that's been refurbished as a Macanese home from the 1960s and '70s. The three-storey structure with a narrow staircase features wooden floorboards and retro furniture.

**Tai Fung Tong Art House** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 📍 2835 3537; 7 *Calçada da Igreja de Sao Lazaro*; 🕒 2-6pm, closed Mon) is a gorgeous historical building featuring a mix of Chinese and European architectural styles. Built almost a century ago by a philanthropist, it's now occupied by a group that promotes Chinese heritage. The house has displays of traditional Chinese artefacts and calligrapher Carlos Choi is sometimes seen demonstrating his art.

**G17** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Click here](#)) is a new exhibition space for pottery artists and **Jabber Cafe** ([Click here](#)), run by a fashion designer, is also here.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter and are quoted in patacas (MOP\$) unless otherwise stated. Note that prices for eating are per meal:

### Sleeping

\$ less than MOP\$700

\$\$ MOP\$700 to MOP\$2000

\$\$\$ more than MOP\$2000

### Eating

\$ less than MOP\$200

\$\$ MOP\$200 to MOP\$400

\$\$\$ more than MOP\$400

## Church of St Dominic *CHURCH*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Igreja de São Domingos*; [Offline map](#); *Largo de São Domingos*; ☺  
10am-6pm; 🚗 3, 6) This lovely 17th-century baroque church occupies the site of a convent built by the Spanish Dominicans in 1587. It contains the **Treasury of Sacred Art** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Tesouro de Arte Sacra*; [Offline map](#); admission free; ☺ 10am-6pm), an Aladdin's cave of ecclesiastical art, including dismembered relics and a skull.

## **FREE** Lou Kau Mansion *HISTORIC BUILDING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Casa de Lou Kau*; [Offline map](#); 7 Travessa da Se; ☺ 9am-7pm Tue-Sun; 🚗 2, 3) Built in 1889, this elegant Cantonese-style mansion with southern European elements belonged to a merchant. Behind the grey

facade, a maze of open and semi-enclosed spaces mesmerise with stained-glass windows.

## St Joseph's Seminary Church *CHURCH*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Capela do Seminario São Jose*; [Offline map](#); *Rua do Seminario*; ☺  
10am-5pm; 📍 9, 16) One of Macau's most beautiful buildings and the best example of tropicalised baroque, the church was consecrated in 1758 as part of the Jesuit seminary. It has a lemon-meringue facade and the first dome to be built in all of China.

## Leal Senado *NOTABLE BUILDING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); *163 Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro*; 📍 3, 6) The 'Loyal Senate' is home to Macau's main municipal administrative body. If you walk through, there's a peaceful courtyard and the stately **Senate Library** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (☺ 1-7pm) out the back. Inside, the **IACM Gallery** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (☺ 9am-9pm Tue-Sun) holds well-curated exhibitions.

## Na Tcha Temple *TEMPLE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Templo de Na Tcha*; [Offline map](#); *Rua de São Paulo*; ☺ 8am-5pm; 📍 8A, 17) There's no better symbol of Macau's cultural diversity than this Chinese temple (c 1888), sitting quietly in the compound of the Ruins of the Church of St Paul. It's dedicated to the child god of war to halt the plague that was occurring at the time. Incidentally, the wall outside the temple, often said to be a section of the old city walls, is in fact the wall of the former St Paul's College.

## Ox Warehouse *CULTURAL BUILDING*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); <http://oxwarehouse.blogspot.com>; *cnr Avenida do Coronel Mesquita & Almirante Lacerda*; ☺ noon-7pm Wed-Mon; 📍 1A, 12)

This atmospheric former slaughterhouse is a happening art space featuring engagingly experiential exhibitions and performances.

## MACAU PRIMER

Like Hong Kong's, Macau's political and economic systems are still significantly different from those of mainland China. See [Click here](#) for information on money, and [Click here](#) for details on visas. The term 'Macanese' refers specifically to people of Portuguese descent who were born in Macau, or their traditions.

### Pawnshop Museum *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Espaço Patrimonial – Uma Casa de Penhores Tradicional*; [Offline map](#) ; 396 Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro; admission MOP\$5; ☎ 10.30am-7pm, closed 1st Mon of month; 📍 3, 6) Occupying the premises of a former pawnshop (c 1917), this quaint museum shows how this once-thriving business was run in Macau.

### **FREE** AFA (Art for All Society) *GALLERY*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#) ; 📞 2836 6064; [www.afamacau.com](http://www.afamacau.com); 10th fl Edifício da Fabrica de Baterias NE National, 52 Estrada da Areia Preta; ☎ noon-7pm Mon-Sat) Macau's very best contemporary art can be seen at this nonprofit gallery founded in 2007 by a local artist. There are monthly exhibitions by Macau's artists. The gallery is located near the Mong Ha Multi-sport Pavilion (). Take bus 8, 8A or 7 and get off at Rua Da Barca or Rua De Francisco Xavier Pereira. Alternatively, it's a 20-minute walk from Largo do Senado.

## MACAU'S INNER BEAUTIES

**Lovely Libraries**

Macau's libraries show how tiny proportions can be beautiful.

**Sir Robert Ho Tung Library** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ; 📞 2837 7117; 3 Largo de St Agostinho; 🕒 10am-7pm Mon-Sat, 11am-7am Sun; @ ) is a stunner comprising a 19th-century villa and a glass and steel extension rising above a back garden, with Piranesi-like bridges shooting out between the two.

**Chinese Reading Room** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ; Rua de Santa Clara; 🕒 9am-noon & 7pm-midnight ) is a former drinks booth, known as 'Octagonal Pavilion' (c 1926) in Chinese.

**Sr Wong Ieng Kuan Library** ( [Offline map](#) ; 📞 2895 3075; Praça de Luis de Camões; 🕒 8am-8pm, closed Mon; @ ) is an oasis of calm between a boulder (which juts into its interior) and a banyan tree (which frames its entrance) in the Luis de Camões Garden.

**Coloane Library** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ; 📞 2888 2254; Av de Cinco de Outubro, Coloane; 🕒 1-7pm Mon-Sat; @ ), a mini Grecian temple c 1917, has a pediment and too-fat columns.

### Modernist Marvels

**Pier 8** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 8 [Offline map](#) ; Rua do Dr Lourenco Pereira Marquez ) is a fine example of Chinese modernism in grey, 50 paces south from Macau Masters Hotel; best views are from the **South Sampan Pier** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Cais de Sampanas Sul; [Offline map](#) ) next door.

**East Asia Hotel** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#) ; cnr Rua do Guimares & Rua da Madeira ) has Chinese art deco in mint green; it's a little shabby, very chic; and

**Almirante Lacerda** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Mercado Almirante Lacerda; [Offline map](#) ; cnr Avs do Almirante Lacerda & Horta e Costa; 🕒 7.30am-7.30pm ) is an art deco 'Red Market' that houses a wet market.

## SOUTHERN MACAU PENINSULA

The southern Macau Peninsula features a number of old colonial houses and baroque churches that are best visited on foot.

### Colonial Macau HISTORIC NEIGHBOURHOOD

From Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro, follow Calçada do Tronco Velho to the **Church of St Augustine** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Igreja de Santo Agostinho; [Offline map](#) ; Largo de Santo Agostinho; 🕒 10am-6pm; 🚗 3,6), dating from 1814. Facing the church is China's first Western

theatre, the **Dom Pedro V Theatre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Teatro Dom Pedro*; [Offline map](#); *Calçada do Teatro*; 📍 9, 16). This 19th-century pastel-green building is not open to the public.

Next up is the **Church of St Lawrence** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Igreja de São Lourenço*; [Offline map](#); *Rua da Imprensa Nacional*; 🕒 10am-6pm Tue-Sun, 1-2pm Mon; 📍 3, 6) with its magnificent painted ceiling. Walk down Travessa do Padre Narciso to the pink **Government House** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Sede do Governo*; [Offline map](#); *cnr Avenida da Praia Grande & Travessa do Padre Narciso*), the headquarters of the Macau SAR government.

The oldest section of Macau is a short distance southwest of here, via the waterfront promenade **Avenida da Republica**. Along this stretch you'll see several colonial villas and civic buildings. These include the **residence of the Portuguese consul-general** (*Consulado-Geral de Portugal em Macau*; [Offline map](#); *Rua do Boa Vista*), which was once the Hotel Bela Vista, one of the most storied hotels in Asia. Nearby is the ornate **Santa Sancha Palace** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Palacete de Santa Sancha*; [Offline map](#); *Estrada de Santa Sancha*), once the residence of Macau's Portuguese governors.

## MACAU IN ONE DAY

Start in the **Largo do Senado** and wander up to the **Ruins of the Church of St Paul**. Spend an hour or so in the **Macau Museum** to give it all some context, before getting a feel for Macau's living history as you wander back through the tiny streets towards the Inner Harbour port and lunch at **Litoral**. After lunch take a look around the **A-Ma Temple** before jumping on a bus to sleepy **Coloane Village**. Take an easy stroll around here and bus it back via the **Cotai Strip** for an awe-inspiring look at the megaresorts. Have dinner at unpretentious **Alfonso III**, then, for contrast, head for the gaudy magnificence of the **Grand Lisboa casino**, before enjoying rooftop drinks at **Corner's Wine Bar & Tapas Cafe**. If you've still got the energy, saunter over to **Macau Soul** for live jazz.



**Macau Museum of Art** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)



( *Museu de Arte de Macau*; [Offline map](#); [www.mam.gov.mo](http://www.mam.gov.mo); *Macau Cultural Centre, Avenida Xian Xing Hai*; admission MOP\$5, 🕒 10am-6.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚏 1A, 8) This vast, excellent museum houses rotating exhibits as well as permanent collections of works by established Chinese and Western artists such as George Chinnery (1774–1852), who spent most of his adult life in Macau painting.

## **A-Ma Temple** TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Templo de A-Ma*; [Offline map](#); *Rue de São Tiago da Barra*; 🕒 7am-6pm; 🚏 1, 5) The A-Ma Temple is dedicated to A-Ma (better known as Tin Hau, the goddess of the sea), from which the name Macau is derived. Many believe that when the Portuguese asked the name of the place, they were told ‘A-Ma Gau’ (bay of A-Ma). In modern Cantonese, ‘Macau’ is Ou Mun ( ), meaning ‘gateway of the bay’.

## **Penha Hill** SCENIC AREA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Colina da Penha*; [Offline map](#); 🚏 6, 9) The views here are excellent, as are buildings such as Bishop’s Palace, the Chapel of Our Lady of Penha (Capela de Nostra Senhora da Penha) and modernist villas.

## **Moorish Barracks** HISTORIC BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Capitania dos Portos*; [Offline map](#); *Barra Hill*; 🚏 2, 5) Italian-designed, this lovely neoclassical building with Moorish influences is now the headquarters of the Macau Maritime Administration. Turn right as you leave A-Ma Temple; a 10-minute walk uphill will take you to the barracks.

## **Maritime Museum** MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Museu Marítimo*; [Offline map](#); [www.museumaritimo.gov.mo](http://www.museumaritimo.gov.mo); 1 Largo do Pagode da Barra; admission MOP\$10, Sun MOP\$5; 🕒 10am-

5.30pm Wed-Mon; 🚏 2, 5) The Maritime Museum has interesting artefacts from Macau's seafaring past, a mock-up of a Hakka fishing village, and displays of dragon boats.

## NORTHERN MACAU PENINSULA

The northern peninsula is quite a good area to just wander around in. The historic **Three Lamps** (; *saam jaan dang*) district is known for its Southeast Asian – particularly Burmese – influences. It begins at Rotunda de Caros da Maia, with the street lamps that give it its name, and sprawls over several square blocks.



### Guia Fort FORT

( *Fortaleza de Guia*; [Offline map](#); 🕒 9am-5.30pm; 🚏 2, 17) As the highest point on the Macau Peninsula, this fort affords panoramic views of the city and, on a clear day, across to the islands and China. At the top you'll find a **lighthouse**, built in 1865 and the oldest on the China coast, and the lovely **Chapel of Our Lady of Guia** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Capela de Nossa Senhora da Guia*; [Offline map](#); 🕒 10am-5pm Tue-Sun), built in 1622 and retaining almost 100% of its original features, including one of the most valuable mural paintings in East Asia. Walk up or take the **Guia Cable Car** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Teleferico da Guia*; [Offline map](#); one way/return MOP\$3/5; 🕒 8am-6pm Tue-Sun) that runs from the entrance to **Flora Garden** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Jardim da Flora*; [Offline map](#); *Travessa do Tunel*; 🕒 7.30am-8.30pm), Macau's largest public park.

### Lou Lim Ioc Garden GARDEN

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Jardim Lou Lim Ioc*; [Offline map](#); 🕒 10 Estrada de Adolfo Loureiro; 🕒 6am-9pm; 🚏 12, 16) A cool and shady Suzhou-style garden with pavilions, lotus ponds, bamboo groves, grottoes and a bridge with nine turns (to escape from evil spirits, who can only move in straight lines). You'll see locals practising taichi or playing Chinese musical instruments here.

## Luis de Camões Garden & Grotto GARDEN

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

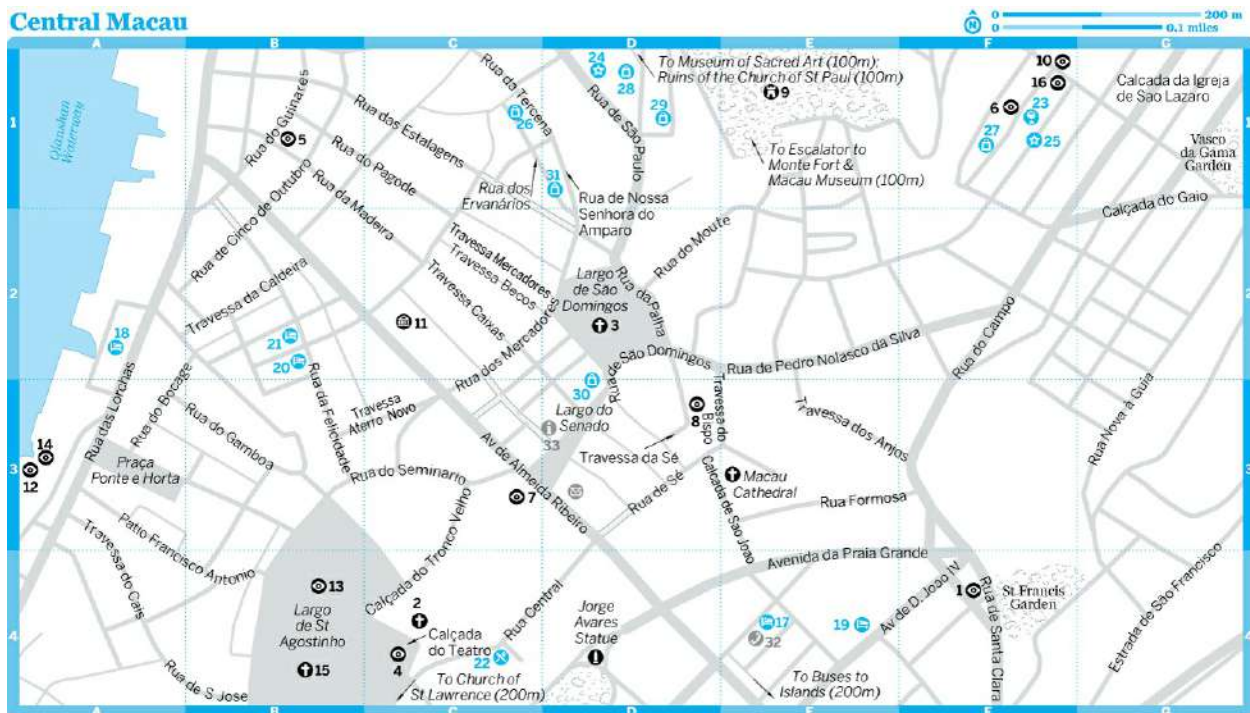
( (*Jardim e Gruta de Luis de Camões*; [Offline map](#); *free admission*; 🕒 *6am-10pm*; 🚏 *8A, 17*) This relaxing park is dedicated to the one-eyed poet Luis de Camões (1524–80), who is said to have written part of his epic *Os Lusíadas* in Macau, though there is little evidence that he ever reached the city. [Sr Wong Leng Kuan Library](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) is inside the garden.

## TOP CHOICE Kun lam Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Templo de Kun lam*; [Offline map](#); *Avenida do Coronel Mesquita*; 🕒 *10am-6pm*) Dating back four centuries, Kun lam Temple is Macau's oldest and most interesting temple. The likeness of Kun lam, the Goddess of Mercy, is in the main hall; to the left of the altar and behind glass is a statue of a bearded arhat rumoured to represent Marco Polo. The first treaty of trade and friendship between the USA and China was signed in the temple's terraced gardens in 1844.

### Central Macau



# Central Macau

## Sights

- 1 [Chinese Reading Room](#) F4
- 2 [Church of St Augustine](#) C4
- 3 [Church of St Dominic](#) D2
- 4 [Dom Pedro V Theatre](#) C4
- 5 [East Asia Hotel](#) B1
- 6 [G32](#) F1
- [IACM Gallery](#) (see 7)
- 7 [Leal Senado](#) C3
- 8 [Lou Kau Mansion](#) D3
- [Macau Museum](#) (see 9)
- 9 [Monte Fort](#) E1
- 10 [Old Ladies' House](#) F1
- 11 [Pawnshop Museum](#) C2
- 12 [Pier 8](#) A3
- [Senate Library](#) (see 7)
- 13 [Sir Robert Ho Tung Library](#) B4
- 14 [South Sampan Pier](#) A3
- 15 [St Joseph's Seminary Church](#) B4
- 16 [Tai Fung Tong Art House](#) F1
- [Treasury of Sacred Art](#) (see 3)

## Sleeping

- 17 [Augusters Lodge](#) E4
- 18 [Macau Masters Hotel](#) A2
- 19 [New Nam Pan Hotel](#) E4
- 20 [San Va Hospedaria](#) B2
- 21 [Vila Universal](#) B2

## Eating

- 22 [Alfonso III](#) C4

## Drinking

- 23 [Jabber](#) F1

## ★ Entertainment

[24 Macau Soul](#) D1

[25 Sun Never Left - Public Art Performance](#) F1

## 🔒 Shopping

[26 Flea Market](#) C1

[27 G17](#) F1

[Lines Lab](#) (see 10)

[28 Macau Creations](#) D1

[Mercearia Portuguesa](#) (see 10)

[29 MOD Design Store](#) D1

[30 Pinto Livros](#) D3

[31 Traditional Shops](#) D1

## Information

[32 Companhia de Telecomunicações de Macau \(CTM\)](#) E4

[33 MGTO \(Largo do Senado\)](#) D3

## Tap Seac Square *SQUARE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 🚶 7, 8) Bold and beautiful, this square lined with important historic architecture was designed by Macanese architect Carlos Marreiros, who also created Tap Seac Health Centre (adjacent to Cultural Affairs Bureau), a contemporary interpretation of Macau's neoclassical buildings featuring wavy glass suggestive of windblown *cheongsams* (Chinese dress for women).

## **FREE** Sun Yatsen Memorial House *MUSEUM*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Casa Memorativa de Doutor Sun Yat Sen*; [Offline map](#); 📞 2857 4064; 1 Rua de Silva Mendes; 🕒 10am-5pm Wed-Mon; 🚶 2, 9) This neo-Moorish house commemorates Dr Sun Yatsen (1866–1925), founder of the Chinese republic, though he never lived in it.

## Museu do Oriente GALLERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.oriente.pt](http://www.oriente.pt); 13 Praça de Luis de Camões; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, 10am-7pm daily during exhibitions) Housed in Casa Garden, the former headquarters of the British East India Company, this gallery mounts some of the best exhibitions of contemporary and ancient art in Macau.

## Old Protestant Cemetery CEMETERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Antigo Cemiterio Protestante; [Offline map](#); 15 Praça de Luis de Camões; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm; 📍 8A, 17) This cemetery was established in 1821 as the last resting place of (mostly Anglophone) Protestants. Among those interred here is Irish-born artist George Chinnery.

## THE ISLANDS


Connected to the Macau mainland by three bridges and joined together by an ever-growing area of reclaimed land called Cotai, Coloane and, to a lesser extent, Taipa are oases of calm and greenery. By contrast, the Cotai Strip is development central, with megacasinos sprouting up.




## Taipa ISLAND

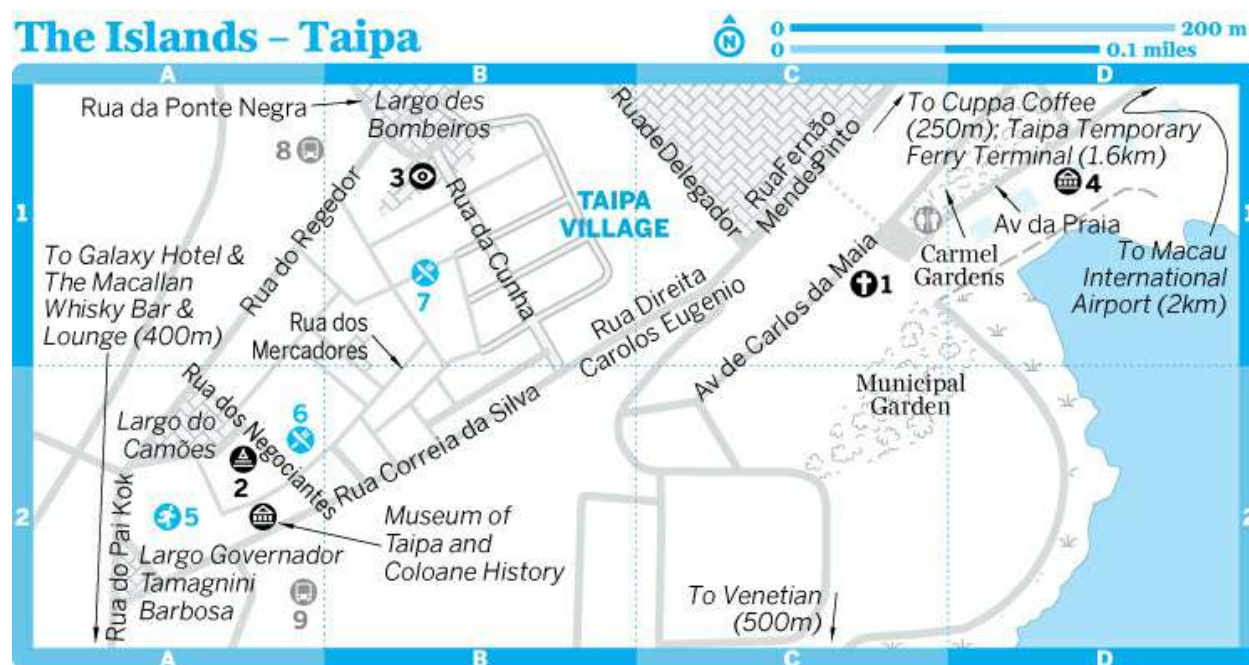
( *Tam Chai* in Cantonese; [Offline map](#) ) Traditionally an island of duck farms and boat yards, Taipa is rapidly becoming urbanised and now houses hotels, a university, a racecourse, a stadium and an airport. But a parade of baroque churches, temples, overgrown esplanades and lethargic settlements mean it's still possible to experience the traditional charms of the island.

Taipa Village, in the north-central part of the island, is a window to the island's past. Here you'll find the [Taipa House Museum](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Casa Museum da Taipa*; [Offline map](#); Avenida da Praia; admission MOP\$5; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun; 📍 22, 26), housed in

five waterfront villas that give a sense of how the Macanese middle-class lived in the early 20th century. Also in the village is the **Church of Our Lady of Carmel** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Igreja de Nossa Senhora de Carmo*; [Offline map](#)); *Avenida de Carlos da Maia*;  22, 26) and temples including **Pak Tai Temple** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Templo Pak Tai*; [Offline map](#)); *Largo do Camões*).

The small **Taipa Flea Market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.iacm.gov.mo](http://www.iacm.gov.mo); *Bombeiros Square, Rua do Regedor & Rua das Gaivotas*; 🕒 11am-8pm Sun), organised for most parts of the year, is a good place to shop for souvenirs.

You can rent bicycles in Taipa Village from **Aluguer de Bicicletas** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 2882 7975; 36 *Largo Governador Tamagnini Barbosa*); there's no English sign but it's next to the Don Quixote restaurant.



## The Islands – Taipa

## Sights

- 1 [Church of Our Lady of Carmel](#) C1
- 2 [Pak Tai Temple](#) A2
- 3 [Taipa Flea Market](#) B1
- 4 [Taipa House Museum](#) D1

## Activities, Courses & Tours

- 5 [Aluquer de Bicicletas](#) A2

## Eating

- 6 [Antonio](#) A2
- 7 [O Santos](#) B1

## Transport

- Bicycle Rental (see 9)
- 8 [Bus Stop](#) A1
  - 9 [Main Bus Stop](#) A2



## Coloane ISLAND

(*Lo Wan in Cantonese*; [Offline map](#)) A haven for pirates until the start of the 20th century, Coloane, considerably larger than Taipa, is the only part of Macau that doesn't seem to be changing at a head-spinning rate, which is a relief.

All buses stop at the roundabout in Coloane Village, which overlooks mainland China across the water. The main attractions here are the [Chapel of St Francis Xavier](#) ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#)) (*Capela de São Francisco Xavier*; [Offline map](#)); *Avenida de Cinco de Outubro*; ☹️ 10am-8pm; 🚏 21, 25), built in 1928 and which contains a relic of the saint's arm bone, and [Tam Kong Temple](#) ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#)) (*Templo Tam Kong*; [Offline map](#)); *Largo Tam Kong Miu*; ☹️ 8.30am-6pm; 🚏 21A, 25), which has a dragon boat made of whale bone.

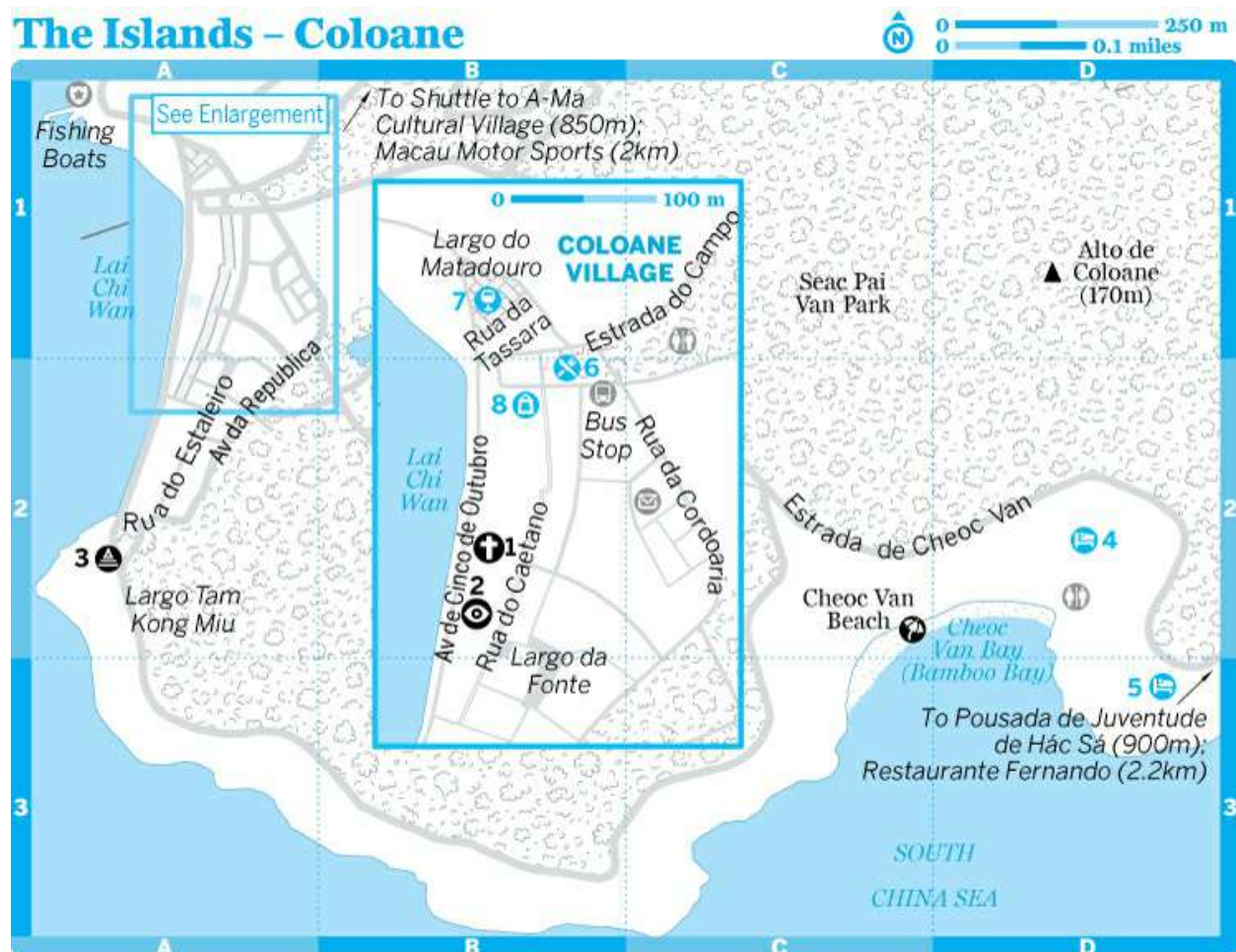
About 1.5km southeast of Coloane Village is [Cheoc Van Beach](#) (; *Bamboo Bay*; 🚏 21A, 25), while larger and more popular [Hac Sa](#)



**Beach** lies to the northeast.

Atop **Alto de Coloane** (170m), the 20m-high **A-Ma Statue** (*Estatua da Deusa A-Ma*; *Estrada do Alto de Coloane*) represents the goddess who gave Macau its name. Hewn from white jade, it stands beside the enormous **Tian Hou Temple** (🕒 8am-6pm), which forms the core of the touristy **A-Ma Cultural Village** ( ). A free shuttle runs every 30 minutes (9am to 6pm) from the ornamental gate on Estrada de Seac Pai Van.

## The Islands – Coloane



## The Islands – Coloane

🕒 Sights

1 [Chapel of St Francis Xavier](#) B2

2 [Coloane Library](#) B2

3 [Tam Kong Temple](#) A2

### **Sleeping**

4 [Pousada de Coloane](#) D2

5 [Pousada de Juventude de Cheoc Van](#) D3

### **Eating**

6 [Cafe Nga Tim](#) B2

### **Drinking**

7 [Lord Stow's Cafe](#) B1

### **Shopping**

8 [Asian Artefacts](#) B2

## **Activities**

While Macau is no adventure paradise, it offers a taste of everything from spectator sport to extreme sport. For more ways to get those endorphins flowing, visit [www.iacm.gov.mo](http://www.iacm.gov.mo) (click 'facilities').

### **AJ Hackett** ADVENTURE CLIMBS

(☎ 8988 8875; <http://macau.ajhackett.com>) New Zealand-based AJ Hackett organises all kinds of adventure climbs up and around the Macau Tower.

### **Macau Motor Sports Club** GO-KARTING

(☎ 2888 2126; Estrada de Seac Pai Van, Coloane; per 10/20min MOP\$100/180; 🕒 11:30am-7pm Mon-Fri, 11am-8pm Sat & Sun; 📍 21A, 25) This club has a picturesque 1.2km professional go-karting circuit at the southern end of the Cotai Strip.

### **Macau Formula 3 Grand Prix** CAR RACING

(📞 2855 5555; [www.macao.grandprix.gov.mo](http://www.macao.grandprix.gov.mo)) Macau's biggest sporting event of the year is the Macau Formula 3 Grand Prix, held in the third week of November. The 6.2km Guia circuit starts near the Lisboa Hotel and follows the shoreline along Avenida da Amizade, going around the reservoir and back through the city.

## Cycling

There are two cycling trails in Taipa. The longer **Taipa Grande trail** (📍 21A, 26) can be accessed via a paved road off the Estrada Colonel Nicolau de Mesquita, near the United Chinese Cemetery; whereas the **Taipa Pequena Trail** (📍 21A, 33) is reachable by way of Estrada Lou Lim Ioc, behind the Regency Hotel. Bicycles can be rented from a kiosk near the bus stop adjacent to the Museum of Taipa and Coloane History in Taipa Village.

## Hiking

Macau's hiking trails are not difficult and you can quickly get to a road to flag down a taxi if necessary. The longest one is the 8100m **Coloane Trail**, which begins in the mid-section of Estrada do Alto de Coloane and winds around the island.

You can also make a detour to **Alto de Coloane** (170m) to see the A-Ma Statue. **Guia Hill** on the peninsula has a popular pedestrian trail. As you leave the fort, turn right on Estrada do Engenheiro Trigo.

## Tours

**Quality Tours**, coach trips organised by the MGTO (Macau Government Tourist Office) and tendered to such agents as **Gray Line** ( [Offline map](#); 📞 2833 6611; *Room 1015, ground fl, Macau Ferry Terminal; adult MOP\$880-1800, child MOP\$810-1470*), take about 10 hours.

## Festivals & Events

The mixing of two very different cultures for more than 400 years has left Macau with a unique collection of festivals and cultural events. For exact dates, check [www.macao.tourism.gov.mo](http://www.macao.tourism.gov.mo) or the individual

event's website.

**Lunar new year** is in late January or early February; **Procession of the Passion of Our Lord** takes place in February; and both the **Macau Arts Festival** ([www.icm.gov.mo/fam](http://www.icm.gov.mo/fam)), which sees local and overseas music ensembles and dance and theatre troupes performing in Macau, and the **A-Ma Festival**, which honours the Goddess of the Sea, are held in May.

A **feast of the drunken dragon**, arguably the most unique festival and featuring a dragon dance performed by intoxicated men through markets and lanes, is in May or June.

The **dragon boat festival** takes place in June; an **international fireworks display contest** is held in September; and an **international music festival** ([www.icm.gov.mo/fimm](http://www.icm.gov.mo/fimm)) is in October and November.

The end of the year is greeted by the **Macau Formula 3 Grand Prix** ([www.macau.grandprix.gov.mo](http://www.macau.grandprix.gov.mo)) during the third weekend in November; and the **Macau International Marathon** ([www.sport.gov.mo](http://www.sport.gov.mo)) takes place on the first Sunday of December.

## **Sleeping**

Most of Macau's hotels are aimed at moneyed visitors rather than budget travellers.

For those with the cash, there are some world-class options. Rates shoot up on Friday or Saturday, while during the week you can find some incredible deals at travel agencies, hotel websites and specialist sites such as [www.macau.com](http://www.macau.com), and booths at Hong Kong's **Shun Tak Centre** (200 Connaught Rd, Sheung Wan) from where the Macau ferries depart, and the arrivals hall of the Macau Ferry Terminal.

All rooms listed here have air-conditioning and bathroom unless otherwise stated. Most midrange and top-end hotels have shuttle buses from the ferry terminal.

## **MACAU PENINSULA**

Cheap guesthouses occupy central Macau, on and around Rua das Lorchas and Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro, with options aplenty on Rua

da Felicidade, the hub of the former red-light district, while the top-end casino-hotels generally occupy the southeast and centre of town.



### **Mandarin Oriental** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 8805 8888; [www.mandarinoriental.com/macau](http://www.mandarinoriental.com/macau); Avenida Dr Sun Yat Sen; r MOP\$3500-4500, ste from MOP\$6200; 🚗 @📶🚰) A great high-end option, the Mandarin has everything associated with the brand – understated elegance, super-lative service, comfortable rooms and excellent facilities. A refreshing contrast to the glossy casino-hotels.

### **San Va Hospedaria** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2857 3701; [www.sanvahotel.com](http://www.sanvahotel.com); 65-67 Rua da Felicidade; r MOP\$150-270; 🚗 3, 6) Built in 1873, San Va is about the cheapest and most atmospheric lodging in town (Wong Kar-wai filmed parts of the classic 2004 film, *2046* here). It is, however, very basic, with tiny rooms and shared bathrooms.



### **Pousada de Mong Ha** INN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2851 5222; [www.ift.edu.mo](http://www.ift.edu.mo); Colina de Mong Ha; r MOP\$600-1200, ste from MOP\$1200; 🚗@📶; 🚗 5, 22, 25) This attractive Portuguese-style inn atop Mong Ha Hill is an old barracks and is now run by tourism students. The rooms are simple, homely and squeaky clean. The rates are among the best in the city.

### **Pousada de São Tiago** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2837 8111; [www.saotiago.com.mo](http://www.saotiago.com.mo); Fortaleza de São Tiago da Barra, Avenida de Republica; ste MOP\$3000-4200); 🚗@📶; 🚗 6, 9, 28B) The ‘St James Inn’, built into the ruins of a 17th-century

fort, has 12 balconied suites with splendid views of the harbour. It's romantic, old-fashioned and expensive.

## **MGM Grand Macau** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 8802 1888; [www.mgmgrandmacau.com](http://www.mgmgrandmacau.com); Avenida Dr Sun Yat Sen, NAPE; r from MOP\$3200, ste from MOP\$7800; 🚗@📶📺; 🚏 8, 3A, 12) This casino-hotel has a youthful vibe and contemporary architecture featuring a baroque-inspired wave motif that's repeated inside the stylish rooms.

## **Hotel Sintra** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2871 0111; [www.hotelsintra.com](http://www.hotelsintra.com); Avenida de Do João IV; r MOP\$1250-1900, ste from MOP\$2360; 🚏 3, 11, 22) This centrally located three-star hotel is great value. The rooms are spotless and the staff polite. Our only complaint was the slow lift.

## **Rocks Hotel** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2295 6528; [www.rockshotel.com.mo](http://www.rockshotel.com.mo); Macau Fisherman's Wharf; r MOP\$1880-2980, ste from MOP\$4080; 🚗📶; 🚏 3A, 5, 23) This elegant Victorian-style boutique hotel is set amid a tribal-hut African restaurant and casino. The rooms are decent and most have a view of the waterfront.

## **New Nam Pan Hotel** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2848 2842; [www.cnmacauhotel.com](http://www.cnmacauhotel.com); 2nd fl, 8 Avenida de D. Joao IV; s/d/tr/q MOP\$380/580/780/880, with increases of MOP\$100-200 on weekends; 📶; 🚏 3, 5, 10) Central location, a rustic vibe and eight spotless rooms make New Nam Pan a good budget option.

## Vila Universal GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2857 3247/5602; *Cheng Peng Bldg, 73 Rua Felicidade; s/d from MOP\$280/350*; 📶; 🚏 3, 6, 26) Fish tanks, seashell displays and yellow sofas in the lobby impart a homely atmosphere, but the 32 rooms, though clean and decent, are more impersonal.

## Augusters Lodge GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2871 3242, 6664 5026; [www.augusters.de](http://www.augusters.de); *Flat 3J, Block 4, Kam Loi Bldg, 24 Rua do Dr Pedro Jose Lobo; dm per person from MOP\$130*; 📶; 🚏 6, 11, 19;) Something of a backpackers' hub, this tiny, friendly guesthouse has basic but clean rooms with shared bathrooms and a kitchen. It's located above the CTM shop.

## Macau Masters Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2893 7572; [www.mastershotel-macau.com](http://www.mastershotel-macau.com); *162 Rua das Lorchas; s/d from MOP\$680/980*; 📶; 🚏 1, 2, 10) A shabby exterior hides a smartly maintained hotel with small, well-equipped, if somewhat outmoded, rooms. Electricity supply is sometimes unstable.

## THE ISLANDS

Taipa is changing fast, with several high-end international hotel chains opening up along the Cotai Strip. Coloane offers some great budget options, including two HI-affiliated hostels.

## Pousada de Coloane HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2882 2143; [www.hotelpcoloane.com.mo](http://www.hotelpcoloane.com.mo); *Estrada de Cheoc Van, Coloane; r from MOP\$750*; 📶; 🚏 21A, 25) This 30-room hotel with its Portuguese-style rooms (all with balconies and sea views) is excellent value. And the location above Cheoc Van Beach is about as chilled as you'll find. Discounts of 20% to 40% available in

the low season.

## **Grand Hyatt Macau** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

(📞 8868 1234; <http://macau.grand.hyatt.com>; City of Dreams, Estrada do Istmo, Cotai; r MOP\$1300-3200, ste from MOP\$2300; 🚗@📶🚰; 📺 35, 50) The most tasteful of the casino-hotels on the Cotai Strip, the Grand Hyatt is part of the City of Dreams casino-shopping-performance complex. The massive rooms come with glass and marble showering areas and a full battery of technology.

## **Banyan Tree Luxury** HOTEL \$\$\$

(📞 8883 8833; [www.banyantree.com/en/macau](http://www.banyantree.com/en/macau); Galaxy, Avenida Marginal Flor de Lotus, Cotai; ste MOP\$2880-63800, villas MOP\$23,600-35,100; 📺 25, 25X) This extravagant resort recreates tropical-style luxury in Macau. All 10 villas come with private gardens and swimming pools, while the suites have huge baths set by the window. If you need more pampering, there's a spa with state-of-the-art facilities. The other hotel at the Galaxy, **Okura** ([www.hotelokuramacau.com](http://www.hotelokuramacau.com); r MOP\$2200-5600, ste MOP\$3000-20,000) offers luxury with a Japanese twist.

## **Hostels**

### **Beachside Youth Hostels** HOSTEL \$

(📞 2855 5533; [www.dsej.gov.mo/~webdsej](http://www.dsej.gov.mo/~webdsej); dm/tw/q from MOP\$100/160/120; 📺 21A, 25, 26A) These two beachside hostels under the government's Education and Youth Affairs Bureau are excellent value, but you need to book three months in advance and show an International Youth Card or International Youth Hostel Card upon check-in. Men and women are separated. Other conditions apply – please check the website. Other hostels include **Pousada de Juventude de Cheoc Van** (Offline map Google map 📞 2888 2024; Estrada de Cheoc Van, Coloane) and **Pousada de Juventude de Hac Sa** (📞 2888 2701; Rua de Hac Sa Long Chao Kok, Coloane).



## Eating

Browse a typically Macanese menu and you'll find an enticing stew of influences from Chinese and Asian cuisines, as well as from those of former Portuguese colonies in Africa, India and Latin America.

Coconut, tamarind, chilli, jaggery (palm sugar) and shrimp paste can all feature. A famous Macanese speciality is *galinha africana* (African chicken), made with coconut, garlic and chillies. Other Macanese favourites include *casquinha* (stuffed crab), *minchi* (minced meat cooked with potatoes, onions and spices) and *serradura*, a milk pudding.

You'll find Portuguese dishes here too; popular ones include *salada de bacalhau* (dried salted cod salad), *arroz de pato* (rice with duck confit) and *leitão assado no forno* (roast suckling pig). While Macau's Chinese cuisine is excellent, most people come here to sample Macanese or Portuguese food.

### Alfonso III MACANESE \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2858 6272; 11a Rua Central; MOP\$70-200; 🕒 lunch & dinner Mon-Sat; 🚗 3, 6) With a diverse menu featuring liver and tripe dishes in addition to popular classics, all fabulously executed, it's clear this unpretentious eatery doesn't just cater for the weekend crowds. It's always packed with Macanese families, so book ahead.



### Antonio PORTUGUESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 2899 9998; [www.antonimacau.com](http://www.antonimacau.com); 3 Rua dos Negociantes, Taipa; MOP\$250-1200; 🕒 lunch & dinner Mon-Fri, noon-10.30pm Sat & Sun; 🚗 22, 26) Dark mahogany set off by blue and white *azulejo* tiles prepare you for an authentic Portuguese meal at this Michelin-recommended restaurant known for whipping up a mean goat's cheese with honey and a lavish seafood stew.



### Tim's Kitchen CHINESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 8803 3682; Shop F25, East Wing, Hotel Lisboa, Avenida de Lisboa, Praia Grande; lunch from MOP\$200, dinner from MOP \$400; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚏 3, 6, 26A) Tim's, with one Michelin star, captures some of the best of Cantonese cooking. Fresh ingredients are meticulously prepared using methods that highlight their original flavours, resulting in dishes that look simple but taste divine – a giant 'glass' prawn shares a plate with a sliver of Chinese ham; a crab claw lounges on a cushion of winter melon in a sea of broth.

## **Robuchon Au Dôme** MODERN FRENCH \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 8803 7878; 43rd fl, Grand Lisboa, Avenida de Lisboa; lunch/dinner set from MOP\$400/1588; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚏 3, 10)

Macau's only restaurant with three Michelin stars has everything you'd associate with the Robuchon name: elegant decor, fine Gallic creations, and impeccable service. The wine cellar with 8000 bottles is one of Asia's best.

## **O Santos** MACANESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2882 7508; 20 Rua da Cunha, Taipa; MOP\$150-250; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚏 22, 26) Despite its location on the touristy Rua da Cunha, charming O Santos keeps its standards up. Patrons have been coming back for the chicken and rice in blood (*arroz de cabidela*) and friendly banter with the owner, a former naval chef, for 20 years.

## **Litoral** MACANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2896 7878; <http://restaurante-litoral.com>; 261A Rua do Almirante Sergio; from MOP\$250; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🚏 1, 5, 7) This famous joint serves solid Macanese and Portuguese fare, including delicious stews and baked rice dishes – many spun from the heirloom

recipes of the matron Manuela, who runs the place.

## Henri's Galley *MACANESE* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2855 6251; [www.henrisgalley.com.mo](http://www.henrisgalley.com.mo); 4G-H Avenida da Republica; MOP\$130-350; 🕒 11am-10pm; 🚗 6,9,16) Macanese chef Henri Wong is the soul of this 34-year-old institution. Mr Wong expertly prepares Macanese specialities like African chicken and Macau sole with unique recipes containing secret ingredients. The Sai Van Lake setting, though a little out of the way, is superb.

## Xina Cafe *MEDITERRANEAN* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 2835 0489; 72b Rua Tomas Vieira; lunch from MOP\$35, dinner MOP\$250; 🕒 11.30am-6.30pm Tue-Sun; 📍; 🚗 7, 8) 'China' serves simple salads and tapas during the day. In the evening, owner Pedro cooks superb, Mediterranean-style dinners for the lucky few who manage to land a seat at his table (bookings of at least six people, two days in advance). Family friendly.

## O Porto *MACANESE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 2859 4643; 17 Travessa da Praia; MOP\$110; 🕒 lunch & dinner, closed Wed; 🚗 2, 10, 12) Not to be confused with O Porto Interior on Rua do Almirante Sergio, this modest place near the steps leading to Mong Ha Hill serves reasonably priced Macanese dishes, with a few luxuries: chequered tablecloth, football paraphernalia and homely service.

## Lung Wah Tea House *CANTONESE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); <http://lungwahteahouse.com>; Avenida do Almirante Lacerda; MOP\$70; 🕒 breakfast & lunch; 🚗 23, 32) There's grace in the retro furniture and the casual way it's thrown together in this airy

Cantonese teahouse (c 1963) with a Michelin Bib Gourmand. Take a booth by windows overlooking the Almirante Lacerda, where the teahouse buys its produce. There's no English menu; let your fingers do the talking.

## Restaurante Fernando MACANESE \$

( [Offline map](#); [www.fernandorestaurant.com](http://www.fernandorestaurant.com); 9 Praia de Hac Sa, Coloane; MOP\$120; ☺ noon-9.30pm) A Macau institution famed for seafood and the perfect place for a protracted, boozy lunch by the sea. Take bus 25, 26A or 21A and get off at the Hac Sa beach stop. Walk in the direction of the bus for one minute and the restaurant is on your right.

## Cafe Nga Tim MACANESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 8 Rua do Caetano, Coloane; MOP\$100; ☺ noon-1am; 🚏 21A, 25) We love the Chinese-Portuguese food, the small-town atmosphere, the prices and the owner – a guitar- and erhu-strumming ex-cop named Feeling Wong.

## Toung King BURMESE, CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 1c Rotunda da Carlos Da Maia, Santo Antonio; MOP\$15-40; ☺ 10am-10pm; 🚏 23, 32) The Burmese-style snacks here are much raved about by foodies, many of whom make a trip from Hong Kong just for the noodles with pig's brain (tastes just like tofu, the owner assures). If that's too heady, you might like the dry tossed egg noodles with dried shrimp, chilli and peanuts.

## Drinking

Macau's unique and atmospheric drinking places are far removed from the glitz of the Outer Harbour.



## The Macallan Whisky Bar & Lounge WHISKY BAR

(203, 2nd fl, Galaxy Hotel; 📍 25, 25X) Arguably the best whisky bar in Macau (and Hong Kong), this handsome establishment features lots of oak panels, Jacobean rugs and a real fireplace. The 400-plus whisky labels include representatives from Ireland, France, Sweden and India, and a 1963 bottle of Glemorangie, besides the usual suspects. It opens at 5pm.

## Club Cubic CLUB

([www.cubic-cod.com](http://www.cubic-cod.com); 2105-02, City of Dreams, Estrada do Istmo, Cotai; 📍 50, 35) Spanning some 30,000 sq ft, the flashy, two-level Club Cubic, located at the Hard Rock Hotel, features themed rooms, a champagne bar, and a large 'disco' ball that can hold up to four people. There are DJs mixing a variety of tunes including hip hop, techno, and Korean pop. The City of Dreams () is a massive, hard-to-miss casino-hotel complex on the Cotai Strip, between Coloane and Taipa.

## Lord Stow's Cafe CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); [www.lordstow.com](http://www.lordstow.com); Largo do Matadouro, Coloane Village; 🕒 10am-6pm) This cosy cafe serves baked goodies from the famous bakery around the corner, including the deservedly popular *pasteis de nata* (scrumptious egg-custard tarts with a flaky crust).

## McSorley's Ale House PUB

( Shop 1038, Venetian Macao Resort Hotel, Estrada da Baia de Nossa Senhora da Esperança, Taipa; 📍 25, 25X) This cosy tavern-style watering hole in the Venetian is a genial spot that attracts rugby and soccer fanatics with its live-satellite broadcasts of European matches. Its extensive selection of imported beers is reasonably priced. Take bus 25 or 26A and get off at the City of Dreams stop. Walk in the direction of the bus for five minutes and the Venetian is on the right.

## Jabber CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(34-38 *Rua de São Roque*; ☺ *noon-7pm Tue-Fri, 3-7pm Sat & Sun*; 📍 7, 8) Located in the St Lazarus district, this sexy subterranean cafe with hot-pink walls belongs to Venessa Cheah, a fashion designer, who also lends her talent to the tasty and creative menu.

## Cuppa Coffee CAFE

(104 *Rua Fernão Mendes Pinto, Taipa*; ☺ *8am-8pm*; 📶; 📍 25, 26) Expect freshly baked bread, yummy sandwiches, great smoothies and decent coffees at this nifty cafe. The cafe is right next to a zebra crossing, at the junction with Avenida Olimpica ().

## ★ Entertainment

Macau's nightlife may be dominated by the ever-expanding casino scene, but a number of interesting live-music venues have also sprung up about town. For entertainment/cultural events listings, check out the bimonthly CCM+ and monthly Destination Macau available for free at MGTO outlets and larger hotels.

## Canidrome SPECTATOR SPORT

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; [Offline map](#); [www.macauyydog.com](http://www.macauyydog.com); *Avenida do General Castelo Branco*; *admission MOP\$10*; 📍 1, 3) Asia's only facility for greyhound racing, the Canidrome has races every Monday, Thursday, Saturday and Sunday at 7.30pm.

## Sun Never Left – Public Art Performance FAIR

(📞 2834 6626; [www.cipa.org.mo](http://www.cipa.org.mo); *Rua de São Roque, St Lazarus District*; *admission free*; ☺ *3-6pm Sat & Sun*; 📍 7, 8) Every Saturday and Sunday afternoon, this fair in the lovely St Lazarus District features stalls selling art and crafts, live music, food and drinks. Participants are mostly artists in the neighbourhood.

## Macau Soul *BAR, LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📞 2836 5182; [www.macausoul.com](http://www.macausoul.com); 31a Rua de São Paulo; 🕒 9.30am-8.30pm Mon-Thu, 9.30am-midnight Fri-Sun; 🚶 8A, 17) Huddled in the shadows of the Ruins of St Paul, Macau Soul is elegantly decked out in woods and stained-glass windows, with a basement where blues bands perform to packed audiences. Opening hours vary, so phone ahead.

## BRIGHT LIGHTS, SIN CITY

Macau's seafront has turned into King Kong's playground, a space occupied by gargantuan monuments whose size makes it easy to imagine their downfall. Casinos are no stranger to a city known as 'the Vegas of the East', but while previously there was only one landmark house of cards, now the sky's the limit. The change began when casino mogul Stanley Ho's monopoly ended in 2002 and Las Vegas operators set up shop in competition. There are at present some 30 casinos in Macau.

More than 80% of gamblers and 95% of high rollers come from mainland China. The latter play in members-only rooms where the total amount wagered on any given day can exceed a country's GDP, and where money allows you to do wonderful things like smash a chandelier with an ashtray and not pay for it.

For recreational players, your closest brush with a casino's seedy side will probably be harassment by tip hustlers – scam artists who hang around tables acting like your new best friend. They can steal your chips, nag you for a cut or try to lure you to a casino that'll tip them for bringing clients.

All casinos operate 24 hours a day. Punters must be at least 18 years old and properly dressed (no shorts or flipflops).

## Wynn Macao *CASINO*

( [Offline map](#); [www.wynnmacau.com](http://www.wynnmacau.com); Rua Cidade de Sintra; 🚶 8, 10A)

A gentlemen's club for punters, Wynn features interiors in solid browns interrupted impatiently by reds and golds. Presumably feng shui had a say too – the hotel sports a chip on its shoulder that's pointed at Grand Lisboa.

## Grand Lisboa Casino CASINO

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); [www.grandlisboa.com](http://www.grandlisboa.com); Avenida de Lisboa; 📍 3, 10) This flaming torch-shaped megastructure has become the landmark you navigate the streets by, outshining its sister next door, **Casino Lisboa** ([Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( [Offline map](#); 2-4 Avenida de Lisboa), once the best-known casino in Asia for its faded '60s glamour.

## FREELoading IN MACAU

So you've lost the shirt off your back but you still want to travel. Well, you probably can, if you're in Macau.

All big-name casinos have free shuttle service to and from the Macau Ferry Terminal, Taipa Ferry Terminal, the Border Gate, even the airport, with Venetian boasting an enormous fleet. Anyone can use these buses – no questions asked. What's more, some casinos have buses to each other. Combine that with walking and you're pretty much set.

Operating hours of these services fall between 9.30am and 11pm, and buses depart every three to 15 minutes. Check the casino websites or at the front desk.

If you're on a casino-bound route, don't forget to pick up your complimentary chip. A free spin may be just what's needed to land you a bed for the night. If it doesn't, don't lose heart. You can leave your bags at any casino-hotel for free even if your real pad is the pavement.

You know what they say: you find out who your real friends are when you're down and out.

## Shopping

Browsing through the shops in the old city, specifically on crumbly **Rua dos Ervanarios** and **Rua de Nossa Senhora do Amparo** near the Ruins of St Paul, can be a great experience. There are shops selling stamps, jade, incense and goldfish. In the afternoon, flea-market vendors spread their wares on the ground.

You can also look for antiques or replicas at shops on or near **Rua de São Paulo**, **Rua das Estalagens** and **Rua de São Antonio**. **Rua de Madeira** and **Rua dos Mercadores**, which lead up to **Rua da**



**Tercena** and its **flea market** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), have stores selling mah jong tiles and bird cages. With their humble, one- or two-storey houses dating from agricultural times, these are lovely streets to walk along, even if you don't buy anything.



### **Mercearia Portuguesa** FOOD, JEWELLERY

([📍](#) 2856 2708; [www.merceariaportuguesa.com](http://www.merceariaportuguesa.com); 8 *Calçada da Igreja de São Lazaro*; 🕒 noon-8pm; 🚏 7, 8) The charming Portuguese shop opened by a film director and actress has a small but well-curated selection of provisions, such as jams and honeys, soaps and chinaware, gold jewellery, wooden toys and bath products from Portugal, all gorgeously packaged and reasonably priced.



### **Macau Creations** LIFESTYLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([📍](#) [Offline map](#); [📞](#) 2835 2954; [www.macaucollections.com](http://www.macaucollections.com); 5a *Rua da Ressurreicao*; 🕒 10am-10pm; 🚏 3, 6) Excellent Macau-themed clothes, stationery and memorabilia designed by 30 artists living in the city, including Russian Konstantin Bessmertny and Macanese Carlos Marreiros.

### **G17 Gallery** CERAMICS

([📍](#) [Offline map](#); [📞](#) 2834 6626; 17a *Rua de São Miguel*; 🕒 10am-7pm *Mon-Sat*, 2-6pm *Sun*; 🚏 7, 8) A small, new gallery that displays and sells ceramics and pottery produced by Macau's artists.

### **MOD Design Store** CLOTHING, ACCESSORIES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.mod-store.com](http://www.mod-store.com); B1, *Macau Tourism & Cultural Activity Centre, Ruins of St Paul & Companhia de Jesus Square*; 🕒 9am-7pm; 🚏 3, 6, 26) The new Mod shop next to the Ruins of the Church of St Paul sells souvenirs from Portugal and T-shirts created by Macau's designers.

## Pinto Livros BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); <http://blog.roodo.com/pintolivros>; 1a Veng Heng Bldg, 31 Largo do Senado; ☹️ 11.30am-11pm; 🚏 3, 6, 26A) This upstairs reading room overlooking Largo do Senado has a decent selection of books on art and culture, esoteric CDs and two resident cats.

## Lines Lab CLOTHING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.lineslab.com](http://www.lineslab.com); Shop A3, 8 Calçada da Igreja de São Lazaro; ☹️ 1-8pm, closed Mon; 🚏 7, 8) Edgy Macau-inspired clothes and accessories by two designers from Lisbon.

## Asian Artefacts ANTIQUES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(9 Rua dos Negociantes, Coloane; ☹️ 10am-7pm) If you're serious about antiques, this shop in Coloane Village, with its before and after photos of restored pieces, is recommended.

## MACAU'S SWORD MASTER

Want a really special memento of your trip? One of Macau's most respected artists Antonio Conceição Junior custom designs swords ([www.arscives.com/bladesign](http://www.arscives.com/bladesign)) inspired by Macau, ancient mythology and the modern world.

The charismatic artist has designed Eastern blades such as katana, tanto and dhakris, Western sabres, hand-and-a-halves, and cutlasses, as well as hybrids featuring, say, a Western-style blade with a sword guard inspired by the Harley Davidson wheel. Sleek, precise and original, they're works of contemporary art, rather than imitations of 'real' weaponry.

After he finishes the design, Antonio will recommend bladesmiths in North America who will deal directly with the customers and ship them the finished products.

Interested parties should start by emailing him ([antonio.cejunior@gmail.com](mailto:antonio.cejunior@gmail.com)). Expect about one to two weeks for the design and a design fee of about US\$3000.

Formerly director of the Museum of Macau, Antonio is a versatile artist with a mile-long repertoire spanning fashion, stamps, jewellery, medallions and book covers.

His website ([www.arscives.com](http://www.arscives.com)) includes a section called 'How to Work with a Designer'. Yes, Antonio is a meticulous man.

## Information

The Macau Government Tourist Office (MGTO) distributes the excellent (and free) *Macau Tourist Map*, with tourist sights and streets labelled in Portuguese and Chinese. Small inset maps highlight the Taipa and Coloane areas and show bus routes.

### Emergency

**24-hour Tourists' Emergency Hotline** ( 112) English-speaking staff.


**Police, Fire & Ambulance** ( 999)



### Internet Access

Macau's few internet cafes come and go quickly. The good news is that wi-fi coverage is expanding. Most libraries, museums, touristy and busy areas have free wi-fi daily from 8am to 1am the following day. User name and password are 'wifigo'. Each session lasts 45 minutes but you can reconnect again. See the website [www.wifi.gov.mo/en/index.php](http://www.wifi.gov.mo/en/index.php) for an updated list.

To enjoy mobile wi-fi, you can buy a prepaid phonecard (MOP\$50 to MOP\$130) or a mobile wireless broadband pass (MOP\$120/220 for one/five days) from CTM.

### Medical Services

**Centro Hospitalar Conde São Januario** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (  
2831 3731; *Estrada do Visconde de São Januario*) Southwest of Guia Fort; 24-hour emergency service.

**University Hospital** ( 2882 1838; [www.uh.org.mo](http://www.uh.org.mo); *Block H, Macau University of Science & Technology, Avenida Wai Long, Taipa*;   
9am-9pm Mon-Sat, to 5pm Sun) Western and Chinese medical services available.

## Money

ATMs are everywhere, with half a dozen just outside the Hotel Lisboa. Most allow you to choose between patacas and Hong Kong dollars.

You can change cash and travellers cheques at the **banks** (🕒 9am-5pm Mon-Fri, to 1pm Sat) lining Avenida da Praia Grande and Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro.

Hong Kong bills and coins (except the \$10 coins) are accepted everywhere in Macau, but your change will be returned in patacas.

## Post

**Macau Post** ( [www.macaupost.gov.mo](http://www.macaupost.gov.mo)) ferry terminal branch (📍 2872 8079; 🕒 10am-7pm Mon-Sat); main post office (📍 2832 3666; 126 Avenida de Almeida Ribeiro; 🕒 9am-6pm Mon-Fri, to 1pm Sat) Little red vending machines dispense stamps throughout Macau. Poste restante service is available at counters 1 and 2 of the main post office.

## Telephone

**Local calls** Free from private phones and most hotel telephones; calls from public payphones cost MOP\$1 for five minutes.

**Prepaid IDD/local cards** (from MOP\$50) Can be used in most mobile phones; purchase from CTM stores or the ferry terminal.

**International directory assistance** (📍 101)

**Local directory assistance** (📍 181)

## Tourist Information

**Macau Government Tourist Office** (MGTO; [Offline map](#); 📍 2831 5566; [www.macaotourism.gov.mo](http://www.macaotourism.gov.mo)) has themed leaflets on Macau's sights and bilingual maps at its outlets:

**Guia Lighthouse** (📍 2856 9808; 🕒 9am-1pm & 2.15-5.30pm)

**Hong Kong** (📍 2857 2287; Room 336-337, Shun Tak Centre, 200 Connaught Rd, Sheung Wan; 🕒 9am-10pm)

**Largo do Senado** (📍 8397 1120; 🕒 9am-6pm)

**Macau Ferry Terminal** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📍 2872 6416; 🕒 9am-10pm)

## Travel Agencies

**China Travel Service** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (CTS; [Offline map](#)); Zhongguo Luxingshe; 📞 2870 0888; [cts@cts.com.mo](mailto:cts@cts.com.mo); Avenida do Dr Rodrigo 207, Edificio Nam Kuong; 🕒 9am-5pm) China visas (MOP\$285 plus photos) are available to most passport holders in one day.

## Websites

**Cityguide** ([www.cityguide.gov.mo](http://www.cityguide.gov.mo)) Practical information (eg transport).

**Macau Cultural Institute** ([www.icm.gov.mo](http://www.icm.gov.mo)) Macau's cultural offerings month by month.

**Macau Government Tourist Office** ([www.macautourism.gov.mo](http://www.macautourism.gov.mo)) The best source of information for visiting Macau.

## Getting There & Away

Macau International Airport is connected to limited destinations in Asia. If you are coming from outside Asia, your best option is to fly to Hong Kong International Airport and take a ferry to Macau without going through Hong Kong customs.

### Air

**MACAU INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT** (📞 2886 1111; [www.macau-airport.com](http://www.macau-airport.com)) Located on Taipa Island, 20 minutes from the city centre.

**FREQUENT SERVICES** To destinations including Bangkok, Chiang Mai, Kaohsiung, Kuala Lumpur, Manila, Osaka, Seoul, Singapore, Taipei and Tokyo.

**REGULAR FLIGHTS** Between Macau and Beijing, Hangzhou, Nanjing, Ningbo, Shanghai and Xiamen and less frequent flights to Chengdu, Chongqing, Fuzhou and Wuhan). Check [www.macau-airport.com](http://www.macau-airport.com) for timetable and airlines.

**LEFT LUGGAGE COUNTER** Departures level of the **Macau International Airport** (per hr/day MOP\$10/80; 🕒 24hr).

**HELICOPTER Sky Shuttle** ([www.skyshuttlehk.com](http://www.skyshuttlehk.com); HK\$3700; 🕒)

9am-11pm) Runs a 15-minute helicopter shuttle between Macau and Hong Kong up to 27 times daily.

## Boat

**TO CHINA TurboJet** (☎ 3628 3628; [www.turbojet.com.hk](http://www.turbojet.com.hk)) has departures daily to Shekou, in Shenzhen (MOP\$210, one hour, 10 between 9.45am and 8.45pm) It also has departures to Shenzhen airport (MOP\$210, one hour, five from 11.30am to 7.30pm), and to Nansha, near Guangzhou (MOP\$180, two between 10.45am and 4.15pm).

**Yuet Tung Shipping Co** (☎ 2893 9944; [www.ytmacau.com](http://www.ytmacau.com)) has ferries connecting Macau's Taipa temporary ferry terminal (MOP\$155, 1½ hours, 11am, 2pm, 7pm) with Shekou. Ferries also leave from Macau maritime ferry terminal (MOP\$12, every half-hour, 8am to 4.15pm) for Wanzai of Zhuhai.

**TO HONG KONG** Two ferry companies operate services to/from Hong Kong virtually 24 hours a day.

**CotaiJet** (☎ 2885 0595; [www.cotaijet.com.mo](http://www.cotaijet.com.mo)) Runs between Taipa temporary ferry terminal and Hong Kong's Hong Kong–Macau ferry terminal (economy/first class Monday to Friday HK\$151/201, 10% more for weekends, 20% more after 6pm; every half hour, 6.30am to midnight). A feeder shuttle bus service drops off at destinations on the Cotai Strip. See website for services to Hong Kong International Airport.

**TurboJet** (☎ 3628 3628; [www.turbojet.com.hk](http://www.turbojet.com.hk)) has the most frequent sailings, departing for Macau from the Hong Kong–Macau ferry terminal (economy/superclass Monday to Friday HK\$151/291, 10% more for weekends and 20% more from 6.15pm to 6.30am; every 15 minutes, 7am-midnight); and China ferry terminal (every 30 minutes, 7am to midnight, less frequent after midnight). See website for services to Hong Kong International Airport.

Lockers (MOP\$20/25 for first two hours, MOP\$25/30 for each additional 12 hour period) are on both arrival and departure levels of the Macau ferry terminal.

## Bus

Macau is an easy gateway into China.

**Border gate** (*Portas de Cerco*; ☺ 7am- midnight) Take bus 3, 5, 9 and walk across.

**Cotai frontier post** (☺ 9am-8pm) On the causeway linking Taipa and Coloane; allows visitors to cross Lotus Bridge by shuttle bus (MOP\$4) to Zhuhai; buses 15, 21 and 26 drop you off at the crossing.

**Macau International Airport** (*info* 📞 2888 1228) Buses to Guangzhou and Dongguan (both MOP\$155, four hours).

**Underground bus terminal near border gate** (📞 2893 3888) Kee Kwan Motor Rd Co has buses to Guangzhou (MOP\$80, 2½ hours, every 15 minutes from 8am to 9.40pm) and to Zhongshan (MOP\$23, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes from 8am to 6.30pm).

## **i** Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

**Airport bus AP1** Airport to Macau Ferry Terminal and Border Gate (MOP\$4.20, every five to 12 minutes, 6.30am-midnight); stops at major hotels en route. Extra charge of MOP\$3 for each large piece of luggage.

**Airport buses MT1 and MT2** Airport to Praça de Ferreira do Amaral near Casino Lisboa (MOP\$4.20, every 12 to 20 minutes, 7am-10.30pm).

**Buses 21 and 26** Airport to Coloane.

**Bus 21** Airport to A-Ma Temple.

**Taxi** Airport to town centre about MOP\$40.

### Bicycle

Bikes can be rented in Taipa Village. You are not allowed to cross the Macau–Taipa bridges on a bicycle.

### Car

**Avis Rent A Car** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.avis.com.mo](http://www.avis.com.mo); Room 1022, ground fl, Macau Ferry Terminal) hires out cars (MOP\$700 to 1400 per day; with chauffeur from MOP\$300 per hour, 20% more on

weekends).

### **Burgeon Rent A Car** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.burgeonrentacar.com](http://www.burgeonrentacar.com); Shop O,P & Q, Block 2, La Baie Du Noble, Avenida Do Nordeste) hires out Kia cars (from MOP\$190/270/390 for 6/11/24 hours; with chauffeur from MOP\$160 per hour, minimum two hours)

### **Public Transport**

**ROUTES** Macau has about 50 public bus and minibus routes running from 6am to midnight.

**FARES** MOP\$3.20 on the peninsula, MOP\$4.20 to Taipa, MOP\$5 to Coloane Village, MOP\$6.40 to Hac Sa Beach

**DESTINATIONS** Displayed in Portuguese and Chinese.

**INFORMATION** Macau Transmac Bus Co ([www.transmac.com.mo](http://www.transmac.com.mo)), Macau TCM Bus Co ([www.tcm.com.mo](http://www.tcm.com.mo)) and **REOLIAN**

([www.reolian.com.mo](http://www.reolian.com.mo)) have info on routes and fares. The *Macau Tourist Map*, available at MGTO outlets, has a list of both bus routes and a pamphlet listing all bus routes.

**USEFUL SERVICES** Buses 3 and 3A (between ferry terminal and city centre); buses 3 and 5 (to the Border Gate); and bus 12 (from ferry terminal, past Hotel Lisboa to Lou Lim Ioc Garden and Kun Iam Temple). Buses 21, 21A, 25 and 26A go to Taipa and Coloane.

### **Taxi**

**LANGUAGE** Not many taxi drivers speak English, so it can help to have your destination written in Chinese.

**COST** Flag fall is MOP\$13 (first 1.6km); then it's MOP\$1.50 for each additional 230m.

**SURCHARGE** MOP\$5/2 surcharge to Coloane from Macau peninsula/Taipa; MOP\$5 surcharge for journeys from the airport; large bags cost an extra MOP\$3.

**HANDY NUMBERS** Call ☎ 2851 9519 or ☎ 2893 9939 for yellow radio taxis.





# Guangdong

POP 93 MILLION

## Includes »

[Guangzhou](#)

[Foshan](#)

[Kaiping](#)

[Yangjiang](#)

[Zhaoqing](#)

[Qingyuan](#)

[Nanling National Forest Park](#)

[Shenzhen](#)

[Zhuhai](#)

[Chaozhou](#)

[Shantou](#)

[Meizhou](#)

---

## Why Go?

Sometimes hiding under the traveller's radar, Guangdong's unique culture and natural beauty have yet to be discovered by most visitors, so you may have a plethora of sublime sights (not to mention great dim sum) all to yourself.

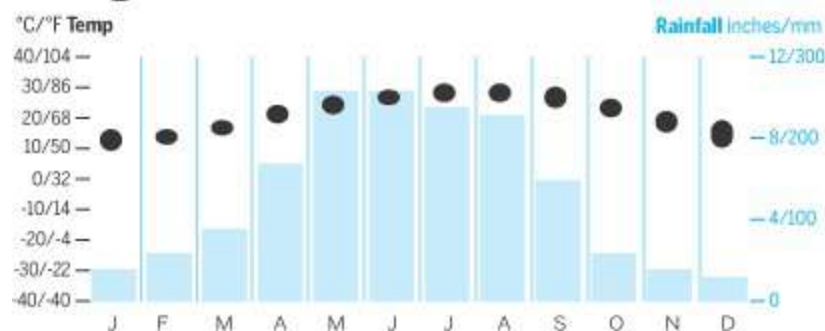
Northern Guangdong () is home to some wild and wondrous landscapes. In the blue pine forests of Nanling, the music of waterfalls and windswept trees boomerangs in your direction. Or if it's Unesco-crowned heritage you're after, Kaiping's flamboyant watchtowers, Chaozhou's intricate woodcarvings and the stylised poses of Cantonese opera will leave you riveted.

Historically Guangdong was the starting point of the Maritime Silk Road and the birthplace of revolution. On the scenic byways of the Pearl River Delta, you'll uncover the glory of China's revolutionary past. While on the surf-beaten beaches of Hailing Island, an ancient shipwreck and its treasures await.

---

## When to Go

### Guǎngzhōu



**Apr–Jun** Verdant paddy fields against the manmade wonders of Kaiping and Meizhou.

**Jul–Sep** Blue pines and stained-glass windows offer respite from summer.

**Oct–Dec** The typhoons and heat are gone; this is the best time to visit.

## Best Views

- » Nanling National Forest Park ([Click here](#))
- » White Cloud Hills ([Click here](#))
- » Feixia ([Click here](#))
- » Jīnjiānglǐ ([Click here](#))

## Best Walks

- » Dongshan ([Click here](#))
- » West Lake ([Click here](#))
- » Chikǎn ([Click here](#))
- » Shamian Island ([Click here](#))



## Guangdong Highlights

- 1 Experience the vestiges of rich and vibrant **Lingnan culture** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Climb dramatic Unesco-listed watchtowers at **Kaiping** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Cross the **Guangji Bridge** ([Click here](#)) in **Chaozhou** with its 18 boats and 24 piers
- 4 Town-hop in **Meizhou** ([Click here](#)) to see earthen roundhouses and old mansions
- 5 After a day's hike, fall asleep to the whispered symphony of an ancient forest in **Nanling National Forest Park** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Visit silken beaches and an 800-year-old shipwreck in **Yangjiang** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Lunch in a garden-restaurant in **Guangzhou** ([Click here](#)) while listening to an operatic aria
- 8 Join the pilgrims at the **Memorial Museum of Generalissimo Sun Yatsen's Mansion** ([Click here](#)) in Guangzhou
- 9 Food, glorious (Cantonese) food!

## History

Guangdong has had contact with the outside world for nearly two millennia. Among the first outsiders to arrive were the Romans, who appeared in the 2nd century AD. By the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907), a sizeable trade with the Middle East and Southeast Asia had developed.

The first Europeans to settle here were the Portuguese in 1557, followed by the Jesuits who established themselves in Zhaoqing. The British came along in the 17th century and by 1685 merchant ships from the East India Company were calling at Guangzhou. In 1757 an imperial edict gave the *cohong*, a local merchants' guild, a monopoly on China's trade with foreigners, who were restricted to Shamian Island. Trade remained in China's favour until 1773, when the British shifted the balance by unloading 1000 chests of Bengal opium in Guangzhou. Addiction spread in China like wildfire, eventually leading

to the Opium Wars.

In the 19th century Guangdong was a hotbed of reform and revolt. Among the political elites who sowed revolutionary ideas here was Sun Yatsen, who later became the first president of the Republic of China.

The 20th century saw Guangdong serving as the headquarters of both the Nationalist and Communist parties, and enduring great suffering during the Cultural Revolution. After the implementation of the 'open door' policy in 1978, it became the first province to embrace capitalism. The province's continued economic success has made it a leading export centre for consumer goods.

## Language

The vast majority of the people of Guangdong speak Cantonese, a dialect distinct from Mandarin. Though it enjoys a less exalted status than the national dialect, Cantonese is older and far better suited than Mandarin for the reading of classical poetry.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥250

\$\$ ¥250 to ¥600

\$\$\$ more than ¥600

### Eating

\$ less than ¥70

\$\$ ¥70 to ¥150

\$\$\$ more than ¥150

---

# Guangzhou

 020 / POP 12 MILLION

Guangzhou, known to many in the West as Canton, is China's busiest transport and trade hub. You are likely to pass through it at least once to get to other parts of the country. Avoid visiting during Chinese New Year, which sees the largest annual human migration in the world.

## History

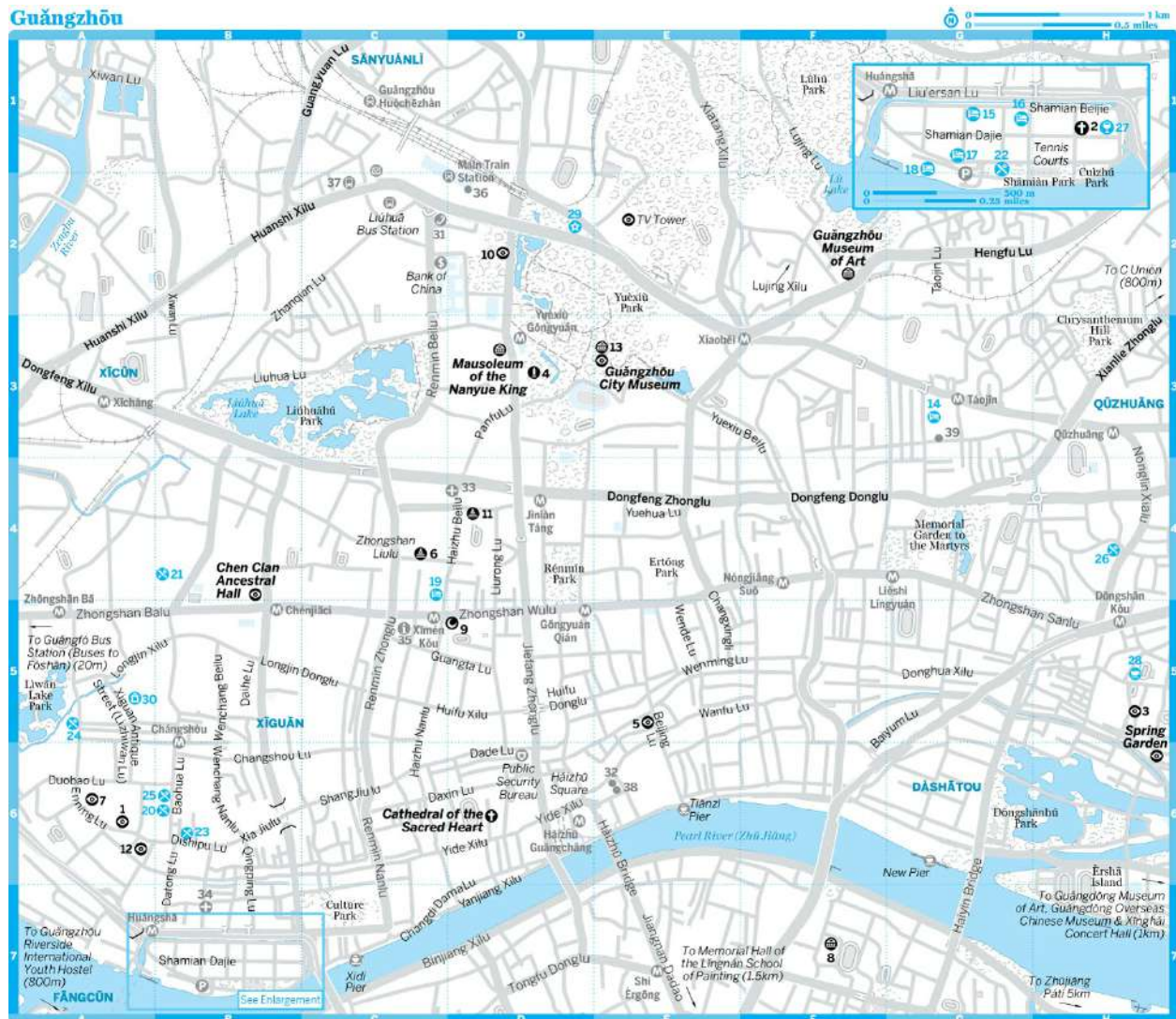
Guangzhou's history is one dominated by trade and revolution. Since the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907), it had been China's most important southern port and the starting point for the Maritime Silk Road, a trade route to the West. It became a trading post for the Portuguese in the 16th century, and later the British.

After the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911, the city was a stronghold of the republican forces led by Sun Yatsen and, subsequently, a centre of activity also of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) led by Mao Zedong.

During the post-1949 years of China's self-imposed isolation, the Canton Trade Fair was the only platform on which China did business with the West.

In 2010 Guangzhou held the Asian Games, resulting in major expansion of the city's transport network.

## Guǎngzhōu



# Guangzhou

## 📍 Top Sight

[Cathedral of the Sacred Heart](#) D6

[Chen Clan Ancestral Hall](#) B4

[Guangzhou City Museum](#) E3

[Guangzhou Museum of Art](#) F2

[Mausoleum of the Nanyue King](#) D3

[Spring Garden](#) H6

## Sights

[Ancestral home of Bruce Lee](#) (see 7)

1 [Bahe Academy](#) A6

2 [Church of Our Lady of Lourdes](#) H1

3 [Dongshan Area](#) H5

4 [Five Rams Statue](#) D3

5 [Goelia Concept 225](#) E5

6 [Guangxiao Temple](#) C4

[Kui Garden](#) (see 3)

7 [Luanyu Tang](#) A6

8 [Memorial Museum of Generalissimo Sun Yatsen's Mansion](#) F7

9 [Mosque Dedicated to the Prophet](#) D5

[Old Muslim Grave](#) (see 10)

10 [Orchid Garden](#) D2

11 [Temple of the Six Banyan Trees](#) D4

12 [Zhantianyou House](#) A6

13 [Zhenhai Tower](#) E3

## Sleeping

14 [Garden Hotel](#) G3

15 [Guangdong Victory Hotel](#) G1

16 [Guangdong Victory Hotel \(New Annexe\)](#) G1

17 [Guangzhou Youth Hostel](#) G1

[Old Canton Youth Hostel](#) (see 3)

18 [White Swan Hotel](#) G1

19 [Zhuhai Special Economic Zone Hotel](#) C4

## Eating

20 [Chen Tianji](#) B6

21 [Fo You Yuan](#) B4

22 [Lucy's](#) G1

23 [Nanxin](#) B6

24 [Panxi Restaurant](#) A5

25 [Shunji Bingshi](#) B6

26 [Wilber's](#) H4

## Drinking

[Kui Garden](#) (see 3)

27 [Shamian Clubhouse](#) H1

28 [Ten Cafe](#) H5



## ★ Entertainment

29 [Guangzhou Tekkuan Live House](#) D2

## 🔒 Shopping

[Benshop](#) (see 5)

30 [Xiquan Antique Street](#) A5

## Information

31 [China Telecom](#) C2

32 [China Travel Service](#) E6

33 Guangzhou First Municipal People's Hospital D4

34 Guangzhou Hospital of Traditional Chinese Medicine B7

35 Tourist Information Centre C5

## 📍 Transport

36 [China Southern Airlines](#) D2

37 [Guangdong Long-Distance Bus Station](#) C2

38 Hotel Landmark Canton—buses to Hong Kong & Macau E6

39 Malaysia, Thai International, United and Vietnam Airlines G3

## 👁 Sights & Activities

### ZHUJIANG XINCHENG (ZHUJIANG NEW TOWN)

**FREE** [New Guangdong Museum](#) MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Guangdongsheng Bowuguan Xinguan](#); [Offline map](#); ☎ 3804 6886;

[www.gdmuseum.com](http://www.gdmuseum.com); 2 Zhujiang Donglu; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇

Line 3, Zhujiang Xincheng, exit B1) This ultramodern museum resembling a Chinese lacquer box occupies almost the entire block by the waterfront. The highlights are exhibits on Cantonese art, in particular ancient Chaozhou woodcarvings. Displays on the human and natural history of Guangdong seem to have fallen short of the museum's ambitions.

## Guangzhou Opera House CULTURAL BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangzhou da ju yuan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 3839 2888 2666; [www.chgoh.org](http://www.chgoh.org); 1 Zhujiang Xilu; 🕒 9am-4.30pm, closed Mon; 🚇 Line 3, Zhujiang Xincheng, exit B1) Designed by Zaha Hadid, the biggest performance venue in southern China has transformed the area with its other-worldly appearance. But equally surreal was the speed with which the ¥1300-million structure was built – five years. Composed of glass panels knitted together to form subtle curves, the complex has been described as pebbles on the bed of the Pearl River. Erosion has apparently come too soon – panels have been falling off the roof.

To enter the opera house, you have to join one of five 45-minute daily **tours** (per person ¥30; 🕒 10am, 11am, 2pm, 3pm and 4pm). Tours in English require advance booking and a ¥200 deposit paid the day before. Inside, you'll see the ethereally beautiful opera hall with 4200 LED lights and floor planks from Russia, as well as state-of-the-art rehearsal halls.

## HÀIZHU DISTRICT

### **FREE** Memorial Hall of the Lingnan School of Painting

MUSEUM

( *Lingnan Huapai Jinianguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8401 7167; [www.lingnans.org](http://www.lingnans.org); 257 Changgang Donglu; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Xiao gang, exit A) This small but excellent museum on the leafy campus of the Guangzhou Academy of Fine Arts (; Guangzhou Meishu Xueyuan) pays tribute to the founders of the Lingnan school of painting such as Gao Jianfu, and shows the colourful ink and brush works of contemporary artists versed in the Lingnan style.

## Memorial Museum of Generalissimo Sun Yatsen's Mansion HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Sun Zhongshan Dayuanshuai Fu*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8901 2366;

[www.dyshf.com](http://www.dyshf.com); 18 Dongsha Jie, Fangzhi Lu; admission ¥10; ☎ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Line 2, Shi Ergong) This Victorian mansion was where Sun Yatsen lived when he established governments in then Canton in 1917 and 1923. After exiting the metro, take a cab (¥10) or walk for 20 minutes.

## Canton Tower TOWER

( Guangzhou Dianshi Guan- guang Ta; [Offline map](#); 📞 8933 8222; 222 Yuejiang Xilu; admission ¥50-150; ☎ 9am-10pm; 🚇 Line 3, Chigangta, exit D) The ¥150 admission gets you all the way to the top of the world's second-tallest TV tower (610m) and the views are riveting.

## LIWAN DISTRICT

### Chen Clan Ancestral Hall HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chenjia Ci; [Offline map](#); 📞 8181 4559; 34 Enlong Li, Zhongshan Qilu; admission ¥10; ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm; 🚇 Line 1, Chenjiaci) This enormous compound is an ancestral shrine, a Confucian school and a 'chamber of commerce' for the Chen clan, built in 1894 by the residents of 72 villages in Guangdong, where the Chen lineage is predominant. The complex encompasses 19 buildings in the traditional Lingnan style. All feature exquisite carvings, statues and paintings, and are decorated with ornate scrollwork throughout.

### Enning Road STREET

( Enning Lu; [Offline map](#); 🚇 Changshou Lu) No trip to Guangzhou is complete without a stroll down century-old Enning Rd. Located in the area known traditionally as Xiguan (西关), the western gate and commercial hub of old Canton, it still retains a few cultural relics, despite earnest urban renewal efforts.

The highlight is [Bahe Academy](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Bahe Hui Guan; [Offline map](#); 📞 8170 1877; 117 Enning Lu; admission free; ☎ 9am-noon), a guild hall for Cantonese opera practitioners. The original academy opened in 1889 to provide lodging, schooling, medical and

funeral services to Cantonese opera troupes. There are Bahe Academies in some 20 countries worldwide, but this one is the mother house. It's now a gathering place for retired artists, and you'll likely meet a couple during your visit.

Don't miss the original 3m-tall wooden door from 1889. The only item that survived a bombing by the Japanese in 1937, it was used during the Great Leap Forward as a parking plank for 4-tonne vehicles, and clearly survived that as well. Gracing the grey walls are photos of well-known artists and librettists, and at the far end of the hall, incense glows on a shrine dedicated to the Fire God.

Turn right as you leave the academy and walk for about a block before making another right into a lane called Yongqing Erxiang (). The second-last unit in the lane is [Luanyu Tang](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Offline map](#); ☺ 10am-3pm), a 200-year-old union for actors playing martial and acrobatic roles in Cantonese opera. The union still gives free training in martial arts for the stage to children on weekends. Every Monday, Wednesday and Friday, after 2pm, members come here for an opera 'jamming' session on the 2nd floor. Visitors may be let in at their discretion.

Interestingly, the last unit in this lane used to be the [ancestral home of Bruce Lee](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), the kung fu (*gongfu*) icon, whose father Li Haiquan () was – you guessed it – a Cantonese opera actor and a member of that union. There's now a wall in its place, but if you retrace your steps out of the alley, turn right and head up Enning Rd, you'll pass the gates of a school. In the right corner, just past the entrance, you can see that shuttered house.

Other highlights on Enning Rd include [Zhantianyou House](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([Zhantianyou Guju](#); [Offline map](#); 43 Yacai Xiang; 43 admission free; ☺ 10am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm Tue-Sun), a modest Xiguan house with a humble exhibition on the life of the Father of Chinese Railroad.

LOCAL KNOWLEDGE

**KONG XIANZHU (), VETERAN CANTONESE**

## OPERA ACTOR, 87

### How did you get into Cantonese opera?

In the 1930s after the Japanese had seized Guangzhou, I was a kid living in the country. I followed an opera troupe around. They were performing for the Japanese army so they could have food to eat. They let me in as a sidekick; eventually I came to play comedic characters.

### Why do Cantonese opera people worship the Fire God?


According to legend, the Fire God (; Huaguang Shifu) was sent by the emperor of the heavens to burn down an opera house that was making too much noise. But the god was so moved by the performance that he asked the audience to burn incense instead to fool the emperor. He protects us from fire, poverty, tricky negotiations and other mishaps. Many actors came from the grassroots, you see.

### Are there special festivals?

Every year on the birthday of the Fire God (the 28th day of the ninth month of the lunar calendar usually around November, Bahe throws a banquet for those in the industry. From early morning, you'll hear gongs and drums and ceremonies are performed at Luanyu Tang. More than 500 people will show up for the feasting that takes place both indoors and on the sidewalk.

## ISLANDS

### Shamian Island *HISTORIC AREA*

( *Shamian Dao*; [Offline map](#);  *Line 1, Huangsha*) This leafy oasis, acquired as a foreign concession in 1859, offers a peaceful respite from the city. In the 19th century, the British and French were granted permission to set up their warehouses here. Major renovation has restored some of the buildings to their original splendour. Shamian Dajie is a tranquil stretch of gardens and trees. The **Church of Our Lady of Lourdes** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Tianzhujiao Lude Shengmu Tang*; [Offline map](#); *14 Shamian Dajie*; 🕒 *8am-6pm*) was built by the French in 1892.

### **Whampoa Military Academy** *MUSEUM*

( *Huangpu Junxiao*; 📍 *8820 1082*; 🕒 *9am-5pm Tue-Sun*) Located on Changzhou Island (; Changzhou Dao), the academy, established in 1924 by the Kuomintang (KMT), trained military elites for both the

KMT and the CCP. It was destroyed by the Japanese in 1938 and the present structure was restored in 1965. The complex has a museum dedicated to the military history of modern China.

Take metro Line 2 to Chigang station, then exit C1. Board bus 262 on Xingang Zhonglu to Xinzhou pier (; Xinzhou Matou). Ferries (¥1.50) to the academy depart every hour from 7.40am to 7.40pm, and every 20 minutes from 7.50am to 9.30am. Private boats will also make the 10-minute trip there for about ¥15.

### **FREE** Xinhai Revolution Museum *MUSEUM*

( *Xinhaigeming Jinianguan*; 📍 8252 5897; *Junxiao Lu, Huangpu Qu*; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) Also on Changzhou Island is this handsome 18,000 sq m museum that was opened to commemorate the centenary of the Xinhai Revolution in 1911.

Costing some ¥320 million to build, it tells the story of the revolution, its important players, and the literary trends that emerged around that time. Though the narrative tends towards propaganda, the exhibits are interesting and well put together.

Take bus 383 or 430 and disembark at Changzhoujie, or take Line 4 of the metro and get off at Daxuecheng Bei, then take bus 383 to Changzhoujie, and walk for five minutes.

### **Guangdong Museum of Art** *MUSEUM*

( *Guangdong Meishuguan*; 🗺️ [Offline map](#); 📍 8735 1468; [www.gdmoa.org](http://www.gdmoa.org); 38 Yanyu Lu; admission ¥15; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun; 🚏 89, 194, 131A) At the southern end of Ersha Island (Ersha Dao), this worthy museum showcases the works of important Cantonese artists and has been the site of the Guangzhou Triennale, first held in 2003.

### **Guangdong Overseas Chinese Museum** *MUSEUM*

( *Guangdong Huaqiao Bowuguan*; 🗺️ [Offline map](#); 📍 8735 3707; 32 Yanyu Lu; 🕒 9.30am-noon & 1.30-4.30pm Tue, Thu and Sat; 🚏 89, 194, 131A) This museum opposite the Guangdong Museum of Art toots the horn of overseas Chinese of Cantonese descent with its tiny collection

on the history and contributions of this group of people.



## East Guǎngzhou

### Top Sights

[Guangzhou Opera House](#) A6

[New Guangdong Museum](#) B6

### Eating

1 [Bingsheng Restaurant](#) B6

### Drinking

2 [Brew](#) A6

3 [McCawley's](#) A5

4 [Rebel Rebel](#) B4

5 [Tavern](#) A6

### Entertainment

6 [Guangzhou Opera House](#) A6

### Transport

7 [Guangzhou Dongzhan Coach Station](#) A1

8 [Singapore Airlines](#) A2

## YUEXIU DISTRICT

### Mausoleum of the Nanyue King MAUSOLEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Nanyuewang Mu*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 3618 2475;

[www.gznywmuseum.org/nanyuewang/index.html](http://www.gznywmuseum.org/nanyuewang/index.html); 867 Jiefang Beilu; admission ¥15; 🕒 9am-5.30pm; 🚇 Line 2, Yuexiu Gongyuan) This superb mausoleum from the 2000-year-old Nanyue kingdom is one of China's best museums. It houses the tomb of Zhao Mo, second king of Nanyue, who was sent south by the emperor in 214 BC to quell



unrest and established a sovereign state with Guangzhou as its capital. Don't miss Zhao Mo's jade burial suit – jade was thought to preserve the body.

## Dongshan Area *HISTORIC AREA*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dongshan Qu*; [Offline map](#)) Tree-lined Xinhepu Lu (), Xuguyuan Lu () and Peizheng Lu () and the vicinity in the historic Dongshan area offer a welcome respite from the city. You'll see schools and churches raised by American missionaries in the 1900s, and exquisite villas built by overseas Chinese and military bigwigs of the Kuomintang. To get here, take metro Line 1 to Dongshan Kou station, exit A. Walk along Shuqian Lu to the south and follow the signs.

The most beautifully restored building is the three-storey **Kui Garden** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Kui Yuan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8765 9746; 9 Xuguyuan Lu; admission free; 🕒 10am-midnight), built in 1922 by an overseas Chinese in America. Surrounded by a lush garden, it features a reddish facade, portico, colonnaded verandahs and the original fireplace. It now houses an art gallery and a cafe, both lovely.

**Spring Garden** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Chunyuan*; [Offline map](#); 22-26 Xinhepu Lu; admission free; 🕒 9am-5pm, closed Mon) was the former headquarters of the central committee of the CCP in 1923, and Mao Zedong lived here during the party's third national congress.

## Yuexiu Park *PARK*

(*Yuexiu Gongyuan*; [Offline map](#); 988 Jiefang Beilu; admission ¥5; 🕒 6am-9pm; 🚇 Line 2, Yuexiu Gongyuan) You'll find gardens, shaded paths, historical monuments and museums in this vast urban park.

**Zhenhai Tower** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (Zhenhai Lou; [Offline map](#)), built in 1380, was used as a watchtower to keep out the pirates who once pillaged China's coastal cities. It contains **Guangzhou City Museum**

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Guangzhoushi Bowuguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.guangzhomuseum.cn/en/main.asp](http://www.guangzhomuseum.cn/en/main.asp); admission ¥10; 🕒 9am-5.30pm), which has an excellent collection tracing the history of Guangzhou from the Neolithic period, and sweeping views from the

top storey.

## Orchid Garden GARDENS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lan Pu*; [Offline map](#); 901 Jiefang Beilu; admission ¥5, with tea tasting ¥20; ☀ 8am-6pm; 🚉 Line 2, Yuexiu Gongyuan) Across from Yuexiu Park is this charming orchid garden. On the western edge of the park is an **old Muslim grave** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Qingzhen Xianxian Gumu*; [Offline map](#); admission ¥5; ☀ 8am-6pm) that's supposedly the burial site of Abu Waqas, who is credited with bringing Islam to China.

## Guangzhou Museum of Art MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guangzhou Yishu Bowuyuan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8350 6255; 13 Luhu Lu; admission ¥20; ☀ 9am-5pm Tue-Fri, 9.30am-4.30pm Sat & Sun; 🚉 10, 63) The museum has an extensive collection of works, ranging from ancient to contemporary Chinese art and sculpture, and a collection of rare Tibetan tapestries on the top floor.

## Temple of the Six Banyan Trees BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Liurong Si*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8339 2843; 87 Liurong Lu; admission ¥5, pagoda ¥10; ☀ 8am-5pm; 🚉 56) This Buddhist temple was built in AD 537 to enshrine Buddhist relics brought over from India. They were placed in the octagonal **Decorated Pagoda** (Hua Ta). The temple was given its current name by the exiled poet Su Dongpo in 1099, who waxed lyrical over the banyans in the courtyard. The trees are long gone but you can see the characters (*liurong*) he wrote above the temple gates.

## Guangxiao Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Guangxiao Si*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8108 7421; 109 Guangxiao Lu; admission ¥5; ☀ 6am-5.30pm; 🚉 Line 1, Ximen Kou) The 'Bright Filial

Piety Temple' is the oldest temple in Guangzhou, dating back to the 4th century. By the Tang dynasty it was well established as a centre of Buddhist learning in southern China. Bodhidharma, the founder of Zen Buddhism, taught here. Most of the current buildings date from the 19th century, including a main hall with double eaves and a 10m-tall Buddha statue.

## Mosque Dedicated to the Prophet MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Huasheng Si*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8333 3593; 56 *Guangta Lu*; 🚇 *Line 1, Ximen Kou*) The original building is believed to have been founded here in 627 by Abu Waqas, an uncle of the Prophet Mohammed, making it the first of its kind in China. The present mosque dates from the Qing dynasty.

## Cathedral of the Sacred Heart CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shishi Jiaotang*; [Offline map](#); 368 *Yide Lu*; 🚇 *Line 2, Haizhu Guangchang*) The French were granted permission to build this cathedral after the second Opium War. The twin-spired Roman Catholic cathedral was designed in the neo-Gothic style and built entirely of granite, with massive towers reaching a height of 48m.

## **FREE** Goelia Concept 225 BUILDING

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 225 *Geliya Ererwu Gainian Huisuo*; [Offline map](#); 📍 8336 0050; 225 *Beijing Lu*; 🕒 11am-11pm *Tue-Sun*; 🚇 106, 544) Behind the orange facade of this charming restored building (c 1949) are five floors of narrow, mazelike spaces containing an indoor garden, a flower shop and exhibition galleries. On the top floor is cafe and store Benshop ([Click here](#)).

## Pearl River Cruises BOAT TRIP

The [Guangzhou Star Cruises Company](#) (📍 8333 2222) has eight

evening cruises on the Pearl River (¥48 to ¥88, two hours) between 6pm and 11pm. Boats leave from the [Tianzi Pier](#) (*Tianzi Matou*; [Offline map](#); *Beijing Lu*), just east of Haizhu Bridge (Haizhu Qiao; catch metro Line 2 from Haizhu Guangchang station), and head down the river as far as Ersha Island (Ersha Dao) before turning back.

## LINGNAN CULTURE

Lingnan (岭南), literally, South of the Ranges, refers to that region to the south of the five mountain ranges ([Click here](#)) that separate the Yangzi River (central China) from the Pearl River (southern China). Traditionally Lingnan encompassed several provinces, but today, it's become almost synonymous with Guangdong.

The term Lingnan was traditionally used by men of letters on the Yangzi side as a polite reference to the boonies, where 'mountains were tall and emperors out of sight'. These northerners regarded their southern cousins as less robust (physically and morally), more romantic and less civilised. But being far-flung had its benefits. Lingnan offered refuge to people not tolerated by the Middle Kingdom (see Hanwen Temple, [Click here](#)); and played host in various diasporas in Chinese history to migrants from the north, such as the Hakkas in Meizhou. This also explains why some Cantonese words are closer in pronunciation to the ancient speech of the Chinese.

Culturally Lingnan was a hybrid and a late bloomer that often went on to reverse-influence the rest of the country. Its development was also fuelled by the ideas of the revolution to end feudalism. Boundaries between refined and pedestrian are relaxed and there's an open-mindedness towards modernity. For a long time in the Qing dynasty, Guangzhou was the only legal port for trade between China and the world. Interactions with the outside world infused the local culture with the foreign and the modern. Some of the most important political thinkers in modern China came from Lingnan, such as Kang Youwei and, of course, Sun Yatsen.

Lingnan culture is an important part of Cantonese culture and it manifests itself most notably in food, art and architecture, and Cantonese opera.

### Lingnan School of Painting (1900–50)

The Lingnan painters were an influential lot who ushered in a national movement in art in the first half of the 20th century.

Traditionally, Chinese painters were literati well-versed in calligraphy, poetry and Confucian classics. These scholar-artists would later become imperial bureaucrats, and as they were often stationed somewhere far away from home, they expressed their nostalgia by recreating the landscapes of their childhood villages from memory.

The founding masters of the Lingnan School of Painting, however, studied abroad where they were exposed to Japanese and European art. China, during the Qing dynasty, was being carved up by Western powers. Sharing the ideals of the revolutionaries, these artists devoted themselves to a revolution in art by combining traditional techniques with elements

of Western and Japanese realist painting.

The New National Painting, as it came to be called, featured a bolder use of colours, more realism and a stronger sense of perspective – a style that was more accessible to the citizenry of China's new republic than the literati painting of the past.

You can see Lingnan paintings at the Guangdong Museum of Art ([Click here](#)) and Memorial Hall of the Lingnan School of Painting ([Click here](#)).

## Lingnan Architecture

The Lingnan school of architecture is one of three major schools of modern Chinese architecture, alongside the Beijing and Shanghai schools. It was founded in the 1950s, though earlier structures exhibiting a distinctive local style had existed since the late Ming dynasty (1600s). The features of the Lingnan school are lucidity, openness and an organic incorporation of nature into built environments.

### Ancient

Examples of this style of architecture include schools, ancestral halls and temples of the Ming and Qing dynasties. The Chen Clan Academy ([Click here](#)) in Guangzhou and Zumiao in Foshan are prime illustrations of this style.

Vernacular Lingnan-style houses are more decorative than their austere northern cousins. The 'wok-handle' houses () in Licha Cun ([Click here](#)) near Zhaoqing have distinctive wok-handle-shaped roofs that also serve to prevent the spread of fire. You'll also see in Licha Cun bas-relief sculpting and paintings (), intricate and colourful, above windows or doors, portraying classical tales, birds, flowers and landscapes.

### Modern

Appearing in the late Qing dynasty an excellent example of of this style of architecture are the Xiguan houses on Enning Road ([Click here](#)) in Guangzhou, with their grey bricks and stained-glass windows. These windows were products of the marriage between Manchurian windows (simple contraptions consisting of paper overlaid with wood) and coloured glass introduced to Guangzhou by Westerners. It's said that when a foreign merchant presented the Empress Dowager with a bead of coloured glass, she was so dazzled by its beauty that she reciprocated with a pearl. Panxi Restaurant ([Click here](#)) in Guangzhou has Manchurian windows embedded with coloured glass.

Another example of modern Lingnan architecture are shophouses with arcades or *qilou* () on the ground floor, a style which evolved from the arcades of southern Europe. You see them on Enning Rd and in Chikan ([Click here](#)) in Kaiping.

### Contemporary

The garden-restaurants and garden-hotels that proliferated between the 1950s and 1990s are examples of contemporary architecture. Guangzhou's Garden Hotel ([Click here](#)), White Swan Hotel ([Click here](#)) and Panxi Restaurant all contain elaborate indoor gardens complete with trees and waterfalls, and make use of glass to blur the boundary between built and natural environments.

These indoor Edens were fashioned after the private Lingnan-style gardens of wealthy families, such as Liang Garden ([Click here](#)) in Foshan, which together with the imperial gardens of Peking and the scholars' gardens of Jiangnan, constituted the three main types of Chinese gardens. Thanks to these architects, the privilege of having gardens in the interior was now available to all.

## Cantonese Opera

Cantonese opera is a regional form of Chinese opera that evolved from theatrical forms of the north and neighbouring regions. Like Peking opera, it involves music, singing, martial arts, acrobatics and acting. There's elaborate face painting, glamorous period costumes and, for some of the roles, high-pitched falsetto singing. But compared to its northern cousin, it tends to feature more scholars than warriors in its tales of courtship and romance.

You don't have to understand or even like Cantonese opera to appreciate it as an important aspect of Cantonese culture – there's no shortage of related attractions, such as Bahe Academy ([Click here](#)) and Luanyu Tang ([Click here](#)) in Guangzhou, a festival (see boxed text, [Click here](#)), and a props speciality shop in Chaozhou ([Click here](#)).

If you do decide to catch a show at Culture Park in Guangzhou, those exotic strains could years later become the key that unlocks your memory of your travels in China.

## Cantonese Cuisine

There's a saying 'Good food is in Guangzhou' ( ). Regional chauvinism aside, Cantonese food is very good. The most influential of the eight major regional cuisines of China, it's known for complex cooking methods, an obsession with freshness and the use of a wide range of ingredients.

Many Cantonese dishes depend on quick cooking over high heat – these require skills (versus patience over a stew) that are less common in other regional cuisines. Cantonese chefs are also masters at making new techniques sizzle in their language. Dishes like sweet and sour pork, crab shell au gratin and tempura-style prawns show an open-mindedness to foreign ideas.

When it comes to haute cuisine, even northern cooks would acknowledge the superiority of their Cantonese colleagues in making the best of expensive items like abalone. Also, many of the costliest marine life to grace the Cantonese table, such as deep-sea fish and large prawns, simply don't grow in inland rivers.

## TIANHE DISTRICT

### Redtory VILLAGE

( Hongzhuan Chang; ☎ 8557 8470;

[www.redtory.com.cn/english/redtory.php](http://www.redtory.com.cn/english/redtory.php); 128 Yuancun Sihenglu; 128

🕒 10.30am-9pm; 🚇 Line 3, Yuncun, exit B) Occupying the former premises of Guangdong Canned Food Factory (c 1958) is this pleasant artist village featuring galleries, bookstores and cafes.

**Cultural** ( Youwenhua; <http://travelideas.taobao.com>; 🕒 11am-8pm) sells attractive souvenirs created by designers in Guangdong. Redtory is about 600m from the metro exit.

## Festivals & Events

### **Canton Trade Fair** *TRADE FAIR*

(*Zhongguo Chukou Shangpin Jiaoyi Hui*; 📞 2608 8888; [www.cantonfair.org.cn](http://www.cantonfair.org.cn)) The 15-day Canton Trade Fair is held twice yearly, usually in April and October, on Pazhou Island (Pazhou) south of the river.

## Sleeping

Guangzhou's choices in the budget and lower midrange are dreary. For those who want to splurge, there are plenty of excellent top-end and upper-midrange hotels. They're expensive, especially during the Canton Trade Fair (usually in April and October). All hotels offer in-room broadband internet access.

## HÀIZHU, YUEXIU & TIANHE DISTRICTS



### **Garden Hotel** *HOTEL \$\$\$*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Huayuan Jiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 8333 8989; [www.thegardenhotel.com.cn](http://www.thegardenhotel.com.cn); 368 Huanshi Donglu; 368 r/ste from ¥3200/5200; 🚇 Line 5, Taojin; 📶@📶) One of the most popular upmarket hotels in Guangzhou with waterfalls and lovely gardens at the back and on the 4th floor. Rooms are as classy as its lobby. Bookings essential.

### **Zhuhai Special Economic Zone Hotel** *HOTEL \$\$*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

(*Zhuhai Tequ Dajiudian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 61276888; fax 8108 3542; 11-15 Haizhu Beilu; 11-15 d/ste from ¥580/828; 🚇 Line 1, Ximen Kou, exit C; 📶@📶) This designated hotel for the reception of government officials has 170 clean and spacious rooms, and very good service. There's a nonsmoking floor and wi-fi in the lobby. It's next to a large seafood restaurant owned by the same group.

## Old Canton Youth Hostel *HOSTEL \$*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guang zhou Guyue Dongshan Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8730 4485; 22 Xuguyuan Lu; 22 dm ¥50, s with bathroom ¥120-150, d without bathroom ¥150; 📶@📶) Located close to Kui Garden in the leafy Dongshan area ( ) of Yuexiu ( ) district, this new hostel is a good budget option. Rooms are clean and come with free wi-fi.

## SHAMIAN ISLAND & FANGCUN DISTRICTS

Shamian Island is by far the quietest and most attractive area to stay in Guangzhou.

## Guangdong Victory Hotel *HOTEL \$\$\$*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shengli Binguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8121 6688; [www.vhotel.com](http://www.vhotel.com); 53 & 54 Shamian Beijie; 53 54 r from ¥800, tr ¥1180, ste from ¥1380; 📶@) There are two branches of the Victory Hotel on Shamian Island: an older one at 54 Shamian Beijie (enter from 10 Shamian Sijie) and a newer wing ( ); [Offline map](#) ) at 52 Shamian Nanjie. Both offer decent value for money.

## White Swan Hotel *HOTEL \$\$\$*




[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Baitian'e Binguan*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8188 6968; [www.whiteswanhotel.com](http://www.whiteswanhotel.com); 1 Shamian Nanjie; r ¥1600-1800, ste from ¥4100; 📶@) One of the city's most prestigious hotels, it has a waterfall and fish pond in the lobby and an excellent range of rooms and outlets. It's was renovated in September 2012.

## Guangzhou Riverside International Youth Hostel *HOSTEL \$*

( *Guangzhou Jiangpan Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 2239 2500; [www.yhachina.com](http://www.yhachina.com); 15 Changdi Jie; 15 dm ¥50, s ¥108-138, d





¥148-198, ste ¥268;  Line 1, Fangcun, exit B1;  ) Located in Fangcun next to a bar street, this YHA-affiliated hostel has spotless rooms and a welcoming vibe.

As you exit the metro station, turn right and walk through the back lane next to the hospital and you'll reach tree-lined Luju Lu (). Turn left and walk until you see the river. Then make a right and it's another five minutes' walk. Ferries depart frequently from Huangsha pier on Shamian Island to Fangcun pier right in front of the hostel.

## Guangzhou Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangdong Etan Binguan*; [Offline map](#);  8121 8298; [www1.gzyhostel.com](http://www1.gzyhostel.com); 2 Shamian Sijie; 2 dm/s ¥60/240, d ¥260-320, tr ¥390; ) For the cheapest beds on Shamian Island, head to this nondescript hostel. Backpacker ambience is nonexistent, but rooms are moderately clean.

## Eating

Guangzhou is home to some excellent Cantonese restaurants. Dim sum (; *dianxin*), or yum cha (; *yincha*; tea-drinking), may be the best-known form of Cantonese cuisine to foreigners, but in fact, noodles, congee and desserts are equally popular locally.

## Panxi Restaurant *DIM SUM* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Panxi Jiujiu*; [Offline map](#);  8172 1328; 151 Longjin Xilu; dishes from ¥40;  7.30am-midnight;  Changshou Lu; ) Set in a majestic garden and embracing another one within its walls, Panxi is the most representative of Guangzhou 's garden-restaurants. Corridors, courtyards, ponds, bridges and bushes have been brought together to give the effect of 'every step, a vista' (). Seniors come for the solid dim sum and to sing an operatic aria or two when the mood is right. It's impossible to get a table after 8.30am.

## Bingsheng Restaurant CANTONESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Bingsheng Haixian Jiuja*; [Offline map](#); 📍 3803 5888; 2 Xiancun Lu; dishes from ¥48; 🕒 11am-midnight; 📞 293, 886) One of the top restaurants in town in terms of food quality, this flagship of the Bingsheng chain in Zhujiang New Town has classy decor to boot. Its signature dish is the crispy barbecued pork (; *cuipi chashao*).

## Tang Li Yuan CANTONESE \$\$

( *Tang Li Yuan*; 📍 8181 8002; mains ¥18-200; 🕒 7.30am-3pm & 5pm-3am; 🚇 Line 1, Huangsha) This garden-restaurant, known for its roast pigeon (; *jinpai ruge*), is located inside Liwan Lake Park (; Liwan Hu Gongyuan; [Offline map](#)). A highlight are the tables on boats that you can reserve for dinner. They're inspired by Zidong Chuan (), aka 'drinking boats' or 'whore boats' used in the Qing dynasty by Xiguan merchants to entertain with banquets, opera and women.

Each boat here seats six. There's a cover charge and a 'seat fee' of respectively ¥150 and ¥20 per person. The restaurant sits at the junction of Huangsha Dadao () and Ruyi Fang ().

## Wilber's EUROPEAN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 3761 1101; [www.wilber.com.cn](http://www.wilber.com.cn); 62 Zhusigang Ermalu; mains ¥30-180; 🕒 11am-4pm & 5-9pm; 🚇 Dongshan Kou; 📶📶) Hidden on the edge of Yuexiu district, gay-friendly Wilber's gets top marks for drinks and atmosphere, and the food is not far behind. It's housed in a restored colonial villa with whitewashed walls and a leafy patio.

## Chen Tianji CANTONESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 8182 8774; 59 Baohua Lu; dishes ¥7-32; 🕒 9.30am-10.30pm; 🚇 Changshou Lu) This famous old hole-in-the-wall serves three things – crunchy blanched fish skin (; *yupi*) tossed with peanuts and parsley, sampan congee (; *tingzai zhou*) and rice-flour rolls (;

*changfen*). At 59 Baohua Lu, turn into an alley, and it's the second eatery.

## Shunji Bingshi CANTONESE, DESSERTS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 8181 4287; 85 Baohua Lu; dishes ¥6-20; 🕒 7am-1am; 🚇 Changshou Lu; 🍴) Steamed rice-flour rolls come in many varieties here, including vegetarian such as plain (; *zhengzhai chang*), with crullers (; *zhamian chang*), monk's way (; *luohan suzhai chang*) or with eggs (; *jidai chang*). There's also a selection of desserts.

## Nanxin [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) DESSERTS \$

([Offline map](#); 47 Dishipu Lu; desserts ¥7-15; 🕒 10am-midnight; 🚇 Changshou Lu) Popular stop for Cantonese desserts, including steamed egg white with milk (; *shuangpinai*).

## Fo You Yuan VEGETARIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 1 Fu'er Rd, Liwan district; dishes from ¥18; 🕒 7am-3pm & 5-10pm; 🚇 Chenjiaci) An unpretentious vegetarian restaurant hidden in the Xingfu Xincun () residential quarter.

## Lucy's WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Lusi Jiuba Canting*; [Offline map](#); 3 Shamian Nanjie; mains ¥23-118; 🕒 11am-2am; 🚇 Huangsha; 📶📍📄) This Tex Mex place is popular with expats seeking comfort food. It's located in a park on Shamian.

## Drinking

Guangzhou's next party hub is looking to be Zhujiang Pati (), a strip of land by the river that houses the massive Zhujiang Brewery. The brewery, however, has been slowly evacuating from the premises and should finish relocating by 2015. Abandoned facilities have been taken

over by trendy bars and clubs. With the brewery still visibly in operation, it's the city's most surreal (and boozy) party place.

As well as the entries listed below, you can try the upmarket Yanjiang Lu Bar Street.

## Shamian Clubhouse *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shamian Dajie*; [Offline map](#); ☎ 11am-11pm; 🚇 *Huangsha*; 📶) The 'Red Mansion' (c 1907) houses a hotel reserved for customs officials and a clubby bar with long teak flooring that's open to the public. Once known as 'Shamian's grandest mansion', the building fuses features of British colonial architecture such as conical pinnacles, colonnades and louvre windows, with the Lingnan fondness for skylight.

## **Kui Garden** *CAFE*

(*Kui Yuan*; [Offline map](#); 📞 8765 9746; 9 *Xuguyuan Lu*; ☎ 10am-midnight; 🚇 *Line 1, Dongshan Kou*; 📶) Housed in the gorgeous Kui Garden, in the Dongshan () area, this cafe serves decent coffees and teas, as well as canapes and alcoholic beverages. The rooms and verandah of the original house have been turned into stylish, warm-toned seating areas.

## Ten Cafe *CAFE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shihao Kafeidian*; [Offline map](#); 📞 8766 9918; 105 *Yandun Lu*; ☎ 8pm-2am; 🚇 *Line 1, Dongshan Kou*; 📶) With large hanging mirrors, marble-topped tables and leather couches, this upmarket lounge in the Dongshan area resembles a cosy living room, with hints of a 19th-century French salon. It has a good selection of imported beer and wine, and decent cocktails.

## Rebel Rebel *BAR*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📞 8520 1579; [www.rebelrebelgz.com](http://www.rebelrebelgz.com); 42 *Tiyu Donglu*; ☎ 10am-2am,

*happy hour 3-9pm*; 🚇 *Shipaiqiao*) Located in the Tianhe District, this new bar with open frontage is easy to spot with its rows of coloured bottles stacked up against a white wall. It has a nice urban vibe, good wines, and beer on tap. See the website for special events. Exiting the metro station, walk down Tiyu Donglu on the One Link Plaza side of the road. After about 300m turn left down a side road. You'll see a light box showing directions.

## Sun's LOUNGE

(☎ 8977 9056; [www.sunsgz.com](http://www.sunsgz.com); B25-26 Yuejiang Xilu; 🚌 779, 765) The best of the lot in Zhujiang Pati Sun's is packed with trendy expats and moneyed locals. You can choose to sip cocktails on couches by the river or dance to electronic music inside the design-oriented bar. Take bus 779 or 765 and disembark at the final stop, Zhujiang Beer Brewery ().

There are a number of exuberant pubs in Zhujiang New Town (🚇 Zhujiang Xincheng) offering live sports broadcasts, free wi-fi and beer on tap that have recently sprung up, all within five minutes' walk of each other.

## Tavern PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(☎ 8550 3038; [www.taverngz.com](http://www.taverngz.com); Poly 108, 6 Huajiu Lu; 🕒 11am-2am, *happy hour 4-8pm, all day Mon*; 📶) English sports bar Tavern offers a selection of premium beers including Paulaner and Strongbow, and a pool table.

## Brew PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(☎ 3804 9549; [www.thebrew-china.com](http://www.thebrew-china.com); 105, 106 Huaxun Jie; 🕒 *happy hour 4-8pm, all day Mon*; 📶) Canadian-American bar that has table taps that let you pour your own beer and pay with a 'VIP' card; it holds beer-pong contests.

## McCawley's PUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 3801 7000; [www.mccawleys.com](http://www.mccawleys.com); Shop 101, 16 Huacheng Dadao; 🕒 10am-2am, happy hour 10am-10pm; 📶) Spacious McCawley's has more than 50 Irish whiskies on offer, in addition to Irish cider, Irish beer and a Filipino band.

## ★ Entertainment

Your best resource for entertainment in Guangzhou is [www.gzstuff.com](http://www.gzstuff.com).



### Guangzhou Tekkuan Live House *LIVE MUSIC*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangzhou Tiguan*; [Offline map](#); [www.gztekkwun.com](http://www.gztekkwun.com); 201 Huan Shi Zhonglu; 🚇 Xiaobei, exit B) The most professional live house venue in Guangzhou, Tekkuan only opens three or four nights a week when there are gigs on (check its website for exact times). Professional bands from Russia, the Netherlands, France and Hong Kong have performed there, playing jazz, rock, fusion and pop.

Tell the cab driver to go to Xisheng Jie ( ) on Huaguo Shan ( ), which is 150m away from Guangzhou TV Station ( ; Guangzhou Dianshi Tai). Walk to the end of Xisheng Jie and you'll see it. Alternatively, take Line 5 of the metro to Xiaobei ( ), leaving by exit B. Go down Tongxin Lu ( ) and turn left at the first traffic lights into Xisheng Jie.

### C Union *LIVE MUSIC*

( ( ); Xiwo; [Offline map](#); 📍 3584 0144; 115 Shuiyin Lu; 🕒 7pm-2am) An unpretentious and busy boozier, C Union attracts a good mix of college students and expats with its live R&B and reggae. It's behind the Chengshihui ( ) building, in the Yuexiu District. Only accessible by taxi.

### Guangzhou Opera House *THEATRE*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guangzhou dajuyuan*; [Offline map](#); 📍 3839 2888-2666;

[www.chgoh.org](http://www.chgoh.org); 1 Zhujiang Xilu; ☎ 9am-4.30pm, closed Mon; 🚇 Line 3, Zhujiang Xincheng, exit B1) This new opera house in Zhujiang New Town is Guangdong's premier performance venue.

## Xinghai Concert Hall *THEATRE*

(Xinghai Yinyue Ting; [Offline map](#); 📞 8735 2766; 33 Qingbo Lu; 📍 89, 194, 131A) Home to the Guangzhou Symphony Orchestra, the city's venue for classical music is on Ersha Island.

## Shopping

### Xiguan Antique Street *ANTIQUES*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Xiguan Guwan Cheng; [Offline map](#); Lizhiwan Lu; 🚇 Line 5, Zhongshan Balu) This street, in the Xiguan area, has shops which sell everything from ceramic teapots to Tibetan rugs. Even if you're not in the market for loading up your pack with ceramic vases, it's still a wonderful place in which to wander and browse.

### Fangcun Tea Market *TEA*

(Fangcun Chaye Shichang; Fangcun Dadao; 🚇 Fangcun, exit C) A sprawling market with block after block of tea shops, along with malls selling tea and teaware. Most target wholesale traders but retail is often possible.

### Fang Suo Commune *BOOKS*

(Fangsuo; 📞 3868 2327; MU35, Tai Koo Hui, 383 Tianhe Lu; ☎ 10am-10pm; 🚇 Line 1, Shipaiqiao) Occupying some 2000 sq m in a classy mall, this elegant bookstore also sells clothes, homewares and coffee. There are more than 90,000 titles, mostly Chinese, including many on art, literature and culture, as well as books from Taiwan. The fashion and lifestyle items on sale have a clean, minimalist feel, but they're pricey.

## Benshop SOUVENIRS

Offline map Google map

([www.benshop.net](http://www.benshop.net)) A trendy souvenir store and cafe on the top floor of Goelia Concept 225.

## Information

Good maps of Guangzhou in both English and Chinese can be found at newsstands and bookshops.

### Emergency

**Ambulance** ( 120)


**Fire** ( 119)

**Police** ( 110)

### Internet Access

Most hotels provide free broadband internet access. Free wi-fi is available at all Guangdong branches of Starbucks, Fairwood (; *dakuaihuo*) and Cafe de Coral (; *dajiale*).

### Medical Services


**Can-Am International Medical Centre** (*Jiamei Guoji Yiliao Zhongxin*;  8386 6988; [www.canamhealthcare.com](http://www.canamhealthcare.com); 5th fl, Garden Tower, Garden Hotel, 368 Huanshi Donglu) Has English-speaking doctors, but you'll need to call ahead.

**Guangzhou First Municipal People's Hospital** (*Guangzhou Diyi Renmin Yiyuan*;  8104 8888; 1 Panfu Lu) Medical clinic for foreigners on 1st floor.

**Guangzhou Hospital of Traditional Chinese Medicine** (*Guangzhou shi Zhongyi Yiyuan*;  8122 6288; 16 Zhuji Lu) Acupuncture, herbal medicine and other traditional Chinese remedies.

### Money

ATMs are available – most 24 hours – throughout Guangzhou.

**American Express Guangzhou** (*Meiguo Yuntong Guangzhou*; 



8331 1611; fax 8331 1616; Room 1004, Main Tower, Guangdong International Hotel, 339 Huanshi Donglu; ☎ 9am-5.30pm Mon-Fri) Cashes/sells Amex travellers cheques.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 📍 8334 0998; 686 Renmin Beilu; ☎ 9am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, to 4pm Sat & Sun) Most branches change travellers cheques.

## Post

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 151 Huanshi Xilu; ☎ 8am-8pm) Located next to the train station.

## Telephone

**China Telecom** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Zhongguo Dianxin*; 📍 10000; 196 Huanshi Xilu; ☎ 9am-6pm) Main branch is opposite the train station (eastern side of Renmin Beilu).

## Tourist Information

**Tourism Administration of Guangzhou** ([www.visitgz.com](http://www.visitgz.com)) has 19 tourist information centres, including the airport, train station and at 325 Zhongshan Liu Rd (open 9am to 6pm).

**Tourist Complaint Hotline** (📞 8666 6666)

## Travel Agencies

Most hotels offer travel services that, for a small charge, can help you book tickets and tours.

**China Travel Service** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (CTS; *Zhongguo Luxingshe*; 📍 8333 6888; 8 Qiaoguang Lu; ☎ 8.30am-6pm Mon-Fri, 9am-5pm Sat & Sun) Located next to Hotel Landmark Canton (; Huaxia Dajiudian).

## Websites

**Delta Bridges Guangzhou** ([www.deltabridges.com/users/guangzhou](http://www.deltabridges.com/users/guangzhou)) Listings of events around town.

**Guangzhou Stuff** ([www.gzstuff.com](http://www.gzstuff.com)) Entertainment listings, forums and classifieds.

**Life of Guangzhou** ([www.lifeofguangzhou.com](http://www.lifeofguangzhou.com)) Yellow pages for

visitors and expats.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

**China Southern Airlines** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Zhongguo Nanfang Hangkong*; 📞 95539; [www.cs-air.com](http://www.cs-air.com); 181 Huanshi Xilu; 🕒 24hr) The office of the major airline serving Guangzhou is southeast of the main train station. Frequent flights to major cities in China include Guilin (¥660), Shanghai (¥1280) and Beijing (¥1700); also numerous international destinations.

### Bus

Guangzhou has many long-distance bus stations with services to destinations in Guangdong, southern Fujian, eastern Guangxi and further afield. The following have frequent buses to Foshan (¥18, 45 minutes), Kaiping (¥62, two hours), Shenzhen (¥65, two hours) and Zhuhai (¥85, two hours). Some useful stations:

**Tianhe passenger station** (*Tianhe keyunzhan; Huadi Dadao*; 🚇 *Tianhe*) Most frequent departures to destinations in Guangdong; accessible by metro (Tianhe Keyunzhan station).

**Fangcun passenger station** (*Fangcun keyunzhan; Huadi Dadao*) Accessible by metro (Kengkou station).

**Guangzhou dongzhan coach station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Guangzhou dongzhan keyunzhan; Linhe Xilu*) Behind Guangzhou East Train Station. Good for destinations within Guangdong; departures aren't as frequent as from other stations.

**Guangdong long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Guangdong sheng qiche keyunzhan; Huanshi Xilu*) Right of train station. There's a smaller long-distance bus station (Guangzhou shiqichezhan) over the footbridge.

**Liuhua bus station** (; Liuhua chezhan) Across Huanshi Xilu in front of train station.

Destinations include:

**Chaozhou** ¥160 to ¥180, six hours, hourly from Tianhe station

**Guilin** ¥170, 10 hours, five daily from Guangdong long-distance bus station (9.10am, 11.30am, 8.30pm, 9.30pm and 10.30pm)

**Haikou** ¥250 to ¥280, 13 hours, seven daily from Guangdong long-distance bus station

**Nanning** ¥180, 10 hours, nine daily from Guangdong long-distance bus station

**Qingyuan** ¥20 to ¥40, two hours, hourly from Liuhua bus station

**Shantou** ¥180, five hours, every 30 minutes from Tianhe station

**Shaoguan** ¥70 to ¥80, four hours, every 45 minutes from Guangdong long-distance bus station

**Xiamen** ¥220, nine hours, every 45 minutes from Tianhe station

**Zhaoqing** ¥45, 1½ hours, every 15 minutes from Fangcun station

To Hong Kong deluxe buses ply the Guangzhou–Shenzhen freeway and this is the easiest way. Buses (¥100 to ¥110) to Hong Kong and its airport leave from Hotel Landmark Canton near Haizhu Square station every 30 minutes.

Buses through Zhuhai to Macau (¥75, 2½ hours) leave frequently from Tianhe station (7.40am to 8pm).

## Train

Guangzhou's three major train stations serve destinations all over China. CTS, next to Hotel Landmark Canton, books train tickets up to five days in advance for ¥20.

From **Guangzhou Main Train Station** (*Guangzhou Zhan; Huanshi Xilu; 𠄎 Line 2, Guangzhou Huochezhan*) :

**Lhasa** ¥818, 54 hours, one daily (12.19pm)

**Shaoguan** ¥57, 2½ hours, frequent services

**Zhaoqing** ¥29, two hours, 14 daily

High-speed trains leave from **Guangzhou South Station** (*Guangzhou Nanzhan; Shibi, Panyu*) in Panyu:

**Changsha** ¥322, 2½ hours, frequent

**Qingyuan** ¥38, 30 minutes, 12 daily (7.40am to 8.30pm)


**Shaoguan** ¥104, 50 minutes, frequent

**Shenzhen North Station** ¥47, 50 minutes

**Wuhan** ¥330 to ¥490, four hours, frequent  
Light rail goes to Zhuhai (¥34, one hour).


To get to Guangzhou South Station, take metro Line 2 from the Main Train Station (45 minutes) or one of the express buses (¥15, 50 minutes) from the South Station (; *Nanzhan Kuaixian*) that leave from Lihua bus station, Garden Hotel and Hotel Landmark Canton.

Tickets for trains leaving from the south station can be bought in other stations, but not vice versa.

From **Guangzhou East** (*Guangzhou Dongzhan*;  Line 1, *Guangzhou Dongzhan*) :

**Beijing** ¥443, 21½ hours, two daily (3.08pm and 6.05pm)

**Shanghai** ¥367, 17 hours, one daily (6.11pm)

The station is used more for bullet trains to Shenzhen (¥45, 1½ hours, 6.07am to 10.40pm) and a dozen direct trains to Hong Kong (¥186, HK\$190, 1¾ hours, 8.19am to 9.32pm). The **ticketing booths** () (7.30am-9pm) for trains to Hong Kong are on the 2nd floor.

## Getting Around

Greater Guangzhou extends some 20km east to west and north to south. The metro is the speediest way to get around.

### To/From the Airport

**Baiyun International Airport** (*Baiyun Guoji Jichang*; [www.baiyunairport.com](http://www.baiyunairport.com)) is 28km north of the city. Airport shuttle buses (¥17 to ¥28, one hour, every 15 to 30 minutes, 5am to 11pm) leave from a half-dozen locations, including the China Southern Airlines office near the Main Train Station; Tianhe passenger station; and Fangcun bus station. A taxi to/from the airport will cost about ¥150.

Metro Line 3 links the airport's south terminal (Airport South station; Jichang Nan) and Guangzhou east station. The ride takes 45 minutes (¥7).

### Bus

Guangzhou has a large network of motor buses and bus rapid transport (BRT) (¥2 to ¥5).

### Metro

Guangzhou has eight metro lines in full service, all with free maps available. Operating hours are approximately 6.20am to 11pm and fares are ¥2 to ¥14.

**Transit passes** (*yang cheng tong*; from ¥50, deposit ¥30) are available at metro stations. The deposit is refundable in designated stations, including Dongshan Kou and Gongyuan Qian. The pass can be used on all public transport, including yellow taxis.

### Taxi

Taxis are abundant but demand is high. Peak hours are 8am to 9am, also around lunch and dinner. Yellow or red cabs are driven by local drivers; others by migrant drivers who may not know the city well. Flag fall is ¥10 for the first 2.3km; ¥2.6 for every additional kilometre, with a ¥1 fuel surcharge.

---

## Around Guangzhou

### WHITE CLOUD HILLS

**White Cloud Hills** (*Baiyun Shan*; admission ¥5), in the northern suburbs of Guangzhou, are an adjunct of **Dayu Range** (; Dayu Ling). There are more than 30 peaks that were once dotted with temples and monasteries. It's a good hike up to the top. **Star Touching Peak** (; Moxing Ling), at 382m, is the highest point in the hills.

Take bus 24 from Zhongshan Wulu, just south of Renmin Gongyuan, and alight at the terminal. The trip takes between 30 to 60 minutes.

---

## Foshan

 0757 / POP 5.9 MILLION

An hour-long bus ride will take day-trippers from Guangzhou to this city. Foshan (literally ‘Buddha Hill’) was famous for its ceramics in the Ming dynasty. Today, it’s better known as the birthplace of two kung fu icons.

## Sights

### Zu Miao TAOIST TEMPLE

( 21 Zumiao Lu; admission ¥20; ☺ 8.30am-6pm; 📍 101, 105, 106)

Founded in the 11th century, this complex is the premier temple in Guangdong dedicated to Běidi ( ) or God of the North – his imposing likeness graces the main hall. The temple is also believed to be the place where Cantonese opera flourished, and it’s still performed on Saturday and Sunday (1.50pm to 3.30pm), and during festivals to entertain the gods (and the tourists). There are also daily performances of kung fu (10.15am and 3pm) and lion dance (10.30am, 1.30pm and 3.30pm).

Besides these, the complex has two exhibition halls dedicated to Foshan-born kung fu icons, Ip Man and Wong Fei Hung.

## THE MAKING OF A NATIONAL LEGEND

Foshan-born Wong Fei Hung (1847–1924) is one of China’s best-known folk heroes. Although a consummate kung fu (*gongfu*) master in his lifetime, he didn’t become widely known until his story was combined with fiction in countless movies made since 1949, most by Hong Kong directors. These, including Jet Li’s *Once Upon a Time in China*, portray him as a hero who fought villains in defence of justice and national pride. Sadly, Wong spent his later years in desolation, after his son was murdered and his martial-arts school was destroyed by fire. Regardless, an astonishing 106 movies (and counting!) have celebrated this son of Foshan, resulting in the world’s longest movie series and a national legend.

Another Foshan hero is Ip Man (1893–1972), who rose to fame as a Wing Chun master at the outset of WWII (see also [Click here](#)). He fled to Hong Kong in 1949 where he founded the first-ever Wing Chun school. His most famous student was Bruce Lee. Ip Man was recently immortalised by a series of semibiographical movies starring Donnie Yen.

## Liang Garden *GARDENS*

(Liang Yuan; 📍 8224 1279; Songfeng Lu; admission ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) This gorgeous residence of a wealthy family that produced painters and calligraphers was built during the Qing dynasty. Designed in a Lingnan style (see also boxed text, [Click here](#)), it delights with tranquil ponds, willow-lined pathways and, in the summer, trees heavy with wax apple, mangoes and jackfruit. From Renshou Temple, walk north until you see a branch of the Bank of China across the road. Liang Garden is another 300m north of the bank.

## Nanfeng Ancient Kiln *CERAMICS*

(Nanfeng Guzao; 📍 8271 1798; 6 Gaomiao Lu, Shiwan; admission ¥25; 🕒 9am-5.30pm) Shiwan (), 2km from downtown Foshan, was once China's most important ceramics production centre – much of the Ming-dynasty pottery you see at museums come from this place (those sold in shops near the kiln, however, are mass-produced copies). Two ancient 'dragon kilns' of more than 30m long are set in this lovely complex with meandering stone-paved paths and the air of an ancient town. It's 17 stops from Zu Miao on bus 137.

## **FREE** Renshou Temple *BUDDHIST*

(Renshou Si; 📍 8225 3053; 9 Zumiao Lu; 🕒 8am-5pm; 🚏 1, 2B, 5, 11) A short walk north of Zu Miao Temple is this former Ming monastery, which remains an active place of worship today. Inside, you'll find a pagoda built in 1656, and the **Foshan Folk Arts Studio**, featuring pretty papercut art.

## Foshan Lingnan Tiandi *HISTORIC BUILDINGS*

(Tiandi Lu, Chancheng Qu; 🕒 11am-9pm; 🚏 101, 105) Photogenic and gentrified, Foshan's latest attraction is this collection of restored medicinal shops, Chinese liquor stores and old villas, that have been turned into upmarket boutiques and imported restaurants. The brand-new **Foshan Marco Polo** (Mage Boluo Jiudian; 📍 757 8250 1888; [www.marcopolohotels.com](http://www.marcopolohotels.com); 97 Renmin Lu, Chancheng Qu; r/ste from

¥2380/3080; @📶🚰), under the same project, has spacious rooms, excellent service, and gives up to 50% discount off-season.

## Eating

### **Yingji Noodle Shop** NOODLES \$

(*Yingji Mianjia*; 116 Lianhua Lu; 116 noodles ¥5-10; 🕒 7am-11pm)

This excellent noodle shop opposite Lianhua Supermarket (; Lianhua Chaoshi) is the go-to place in Foshan for noodles with shrimp wonton (; *xianxia yuntunmian*).

### **Healthy Buddha Vegetarian** CANTONESE, VEGETARIAN \$

(*Jiankang Puti Sushi*; 📍 8230 2836; mains ¥18-35; 🚗 1, 2b, 5, 10, 11; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🍴📺) This vegetarian restaurant on the property of Renshou Temple offers great value for money.

## Entertainment

### **AD Livehouse** LIVE MUSIC

(*Livehouse*; *Xiyuan Livehouse*; 📍 139 2991 1129; Bldg 5, Xijie, Poly Canal Plaza, Denghu Xilu, Nanhai District; , , , 5 1 🕒 8.30am-2am; 📶)

This large and out-of-the-way bar with a wonderful sound system has live music on offer from 10pm every night. Performances are usually by a local band, but every month or so there are overseas acts in pop, hip hop, jazz, indie or rock who come and play. A cab here from Foshan Lingnan Tiandi costs under ¥30.

## Getting There & Around

From **Zumiao bus station** (*Zumiao chezhan*; *Jianxin Lu*) there are buses (¥15, every 20 minutes, 6.45am to 11pm) to Guangzhou's long-distance bus station, Guangfo bus station (*Guangfo qichezhan*; Zhongshan Balu) and Fangcun bus station in Kengkou.



Services from the **long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#) (*foshan sheng qichezhan; Fenjiang Beilu*), 400m south of the train station:

**Shenzhen** ¥90 to ¥100, 2½ hours, every 20 to 60 minutes

**Zhuhai** ¥60 to ¥70, three hours, every 15 to 40 minutes

Trains go to Guangzhou Main Train Station (¥8 to ¥27, 30 minutes, 19 daily).

The metro runs between Guangzhou and Foshan's Zumiao station (¥5, 30 minutes). There's a direct express train to Hong Kong (¥210, three hours; 4.13pm) and at 10.42pm from Kowloon.

Buses 101 and 109 (¥2) link the train station to Zu Miao and Shiwan. Taxis start at ¥7.

---

## Kaiping

 0750 / POP 680,000

Kaiping, 140km southwest of Guangzhou, is home to one of the most arresting man-made attractions in Guangdong – the Unesco-crowned *diaolou* (), eccentric watchtowers featuring a fusion of Eastern and Western architectural styles. Out of the approximately 3000 original *diaolou*, only 1833 remain.

Downtown Kaiping is pleasant, especially the section near the Tanjiang River (), where you'll see people fishing next to mango and wampee trees.

Kaiping is also the home of many overseas Chinese. Currently, 720,000 people from the country are living overseas – 40,000 more than its local population.

### Sights

A combo ticket to Li Garden and the villages of Majianglong and Zili costs ¥180; if you just visit Li Garden and one of the villages, it's ¥150. Jinjiangli Village alone is ¥50.

**Zili** HISTORIC VILLAGE

( *Zili Cun*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) The pretty village of Zili, 11km west of Kaiping, has the largest collection of *diaolou*. Fifteen towers rise beautifully amid the paddy fields but only a few are open to the public. The most stunning is **Mingshi Lou** () which has a verandah with Ionic columns and baroque embellishments, and a hexagonal pavilion supported by European columns on its roof. It appeared in the 2010 film *Let the Bullets Fly*. **Yunhuan Lou** () has four towers known as 'swallow nests', each with embrasures, cobblestones and a water cannon.

Next to the village is **Fang Clan's Deng Lou** ( *admission free*), aka Light Tower, because of its powerful searchlight.

## KAIPING'S BIZARRE TOWERS

Scattered across Kaiping's 20km periphery are *diaolou* – multistorey watchtowers and fortified residences displaying a flamboyant mix of European, Chinese and Moorish architectural styles. The majority were built in the early 20th century by villagers who had made a fortune working as coolies overseas. They brought home fanciful architectural ideas they'd seen in real life and on postcards, and built the towers as fortresses to protect their families from bandits, flooding and Japanese troops.

The oldest *diaolou* were communal watchtowers built by several families in a village. Each family was allocated a room within the citadel, where all its male members would go to spend the night to prevent kidnapping by bandits. These narrow towers had sturdy walls, iron gates and ports for defence and observation. The youngest *diaolou* were also watchtowers, but equipped with searchlight and alarm, and located at entrances to villages.

More than 60% of *diaolou*, however, combined residential functions with defence. Constructed by a single family, they were spacious and featured a mix of decorative motifs. As the builders had no exposure to European architectural traditions, they took liberties with proportions, resulting in outlandish buildings that seem to have leapt out of an American folk art painting or a Miyazaki cartoon.

These structures would retain a towerlike form for the first few floors, then like stoic men who have not forgotten to dream, let loose a riot of arches and balustrades, Egyptian columns, domes, cupolas, corner turrets, Chinese gables and Grecian urns.

## Jinjiangli HISTORIC VILLAGE

( *Jinjiangli Cun*; ☺ 9am-5pm) The highlights in this village, 20km south of Kaiping, are the privately run **Ruishi Lou** ( *admission ¥20*) and

**Shengfeng Lou** (). The former (c 1923) is Kaiping's tallest *diaolou* and comprises nine storeys, topped off with a Byzantine-style roof and Roman dome. The latter was one of the few *diaolou* that had a European architect.

In nearby Nanxing Village, **Nanxing Xie Lou** (*Leaning Tower*; admission free) tilts severely to one side, with its central axis over 2m off-centre.

### **Li Garden** HISTORIC SITE

(*Li Yuan*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) About 15 minutes by taxi from Kaiping, Li Garden has a fortified mansion constructed in 1936 by a wealthy Chinese-American born in Chicago. The interiors featuring Italianate motifs and the gardens with their manmade canals, footbridges and dappled pathways are delightful.

Other *diaolou* include the oldest tower, **Yinglong Lou** () which is found in Sanmenli Village () and the fortified villas of **Majianglong Village** (; Majianglong).

### **Chikan** HISTORIC VILLAGE

The charming old town of Chikan (), 10km southwest of Kaiping, has streets of shophouses with an arcade on the ground floor flanking the Tanjiang River (). These distinctive *qilou* () buildings were built by overseas Cantonese merchants in the 1920s. Bus 6 from Yici bus station takes you to Chikan.

### **Fengcai Hall** HISTORIC SITE

(*Fengcai Tang*; admission ¥5; ☺ 9am-4.30pm) Not a typical ancestral hall, this compound built in 1906 retains an exquisite southern Chinese architectural style, but with Western elements eccentrically blended. The complex is hidden inside a school 1.5km south of Changsha bus station. Bus 2 from either bus station takes you to Fengcai Zhongxue ().

## PIGLETS FOR SALE

The mid-19th century saw Guangdong in a state of despair, stalked by famine and revolt. Meanwhile, slavery was outlawed in most Western countries, creating a need to recruit cheap manpower for the exploitation of the New World. Conditions were ripe for many unskilled workers from Taishan (where Kaiping was located) to seek opportunities for a better life overseas.

Disingenuous recruiters promised good pay and working conditions, but in reality the workers were made to work as coolies under deplorable conditions on the sugarcane fields of South America, on farms in Southeast Asia, and in goldmining and rail construction in North America. The coolie trade was known in Cantonese as *maai ju jai* – ‘selling piglets’.

Of the nine million Chinese workers who left home in the mid-19th to early 20th centuries, many died, but a handful made a fortune, becoming wealthy ‘overseas Chinese’, a powerful community that often brought home wealth and exotic ideas that were assimilated into the local culture.

## Sleeping & Eating

Staying overnight in Kaiping would allow you to give its unique sights the attention they deserve.

### **Tribe of Diaomin** HOTEL \$

(*Diaomin Buluo*; 📍 0750 261 6222; 126 Henan Lu, Chikan; 126 dm per person ¥40-50, r without bathroom ¥80, q/f with bathroom ¥200-300; 📶) A historic building right by Tanjiang River in Chikan has been turned into this pleasant hostel with a backpackers’ vibe by a bicycle club. There are more than 100 bikes for hire. You can rent one for a full day of sightseeing for ¥80.

### **Pan Tower Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

(*Tanjiang Bandao Jiudian*; 📍 233 3333; [www.pantower.com](http://www.pantower.com); 2 Zhongyin Lu; 2 r ¥800; 📶📞) The place to stay in Kaiping. It’s on an islet on the Tanjiang River and only accessible by taxi (¥12 from Changsha bus station, five minutes). Offers discounts of 50% to 60%.

### **Kaiping Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

(📍 223 3333; [Kaipinghotel@126.com](mailto:Kaipinghotel@126.com); 19-21 Changsha Wenxin Rd; 19-21 r ¥588-688, ste ¥688-1688; @📶) This refurbished hotel has clean rooms, some overlooking the lovely Tanjiang River. Take bus 2 or 3 from Yici bus station. From Changsha bus station, it's a five-minute walk.

### Home Restaurant CHINESE \$

(*Nongjia Fan*) Many villagers in Zili Village serve rustic dishes cooked with home-grown ingredients in their homes. Popular items include free-range chicken (; *zoudiji*) ¥25 a catty (; *jin*), and rice cooked with baby eel (; *huangshan fan*; ¥60).

### Chaojiangchun Restaurant CHINESE \$

(*Chaojiangchun Jiulou*; 📍 0750 2219963; mains ¥25-60; 🕒 11am-10.30pm) This excellent restaurant serves the local speciality – braised wild-grown goose (; *gouzai e*). The steamed tofu with shredded taro and ground pork (; *rousui yusi zheng doufu*) and salt-baked chicken (; *shousiji*) are also delicious.

## 📍 Getting There & Around

Kaiping has two bus stations that are linked by local buses 7 and 13: **Yici bus station** (*Yici zongzhan*; 📍 221 3126; *Mucun Lu*) and **Changsha bus station** (*Changsha qichezhan*; 📍 233 3442; *Musha Lu*). Both run frequent services to:

**Guangzhou** ¥60, two hours, every 40 minutes (7am to 7.30pm)

**Hong Kong** (from Yici station only) HK\$150, four hours, four times daily

**Shenzhen** ¥90, 2½ hours, every 45 minutes (7.30am to 9pm)

**Zhuhai** ¥50 to ¥72, 2½ hours, every 30 to 40 minutes (7am to 7.40pm)

Opposite Changsha station, local buses (¥4 to ¥5) go to Chikan and some of the *diaolou*. But as these are scattered over several counties, your best bet would be to hire a taxi for the day. A full day will cost around ¥600, but you can negotiate.

---

# Yangjiang


 0662 / POP 2.3 MILLION

Yangjiang is a city on the southwestern coast of Guangdong. While downtown Yangjiang has little to jump up about, picturesque Hailing Island (; Hailing Dao), located 50km or an hour's drive away, is home to the Maritime Silk Road Museum and some of the finest beaches in the province.

If money is not an issue, stay on Hailing Island – in the up-and-coming resort area near the museum, or the livelier Zhapo () resort town. Downtown Yangjiang has the cheapest sleeping options.

## Sights

### **Maritime Silk Road Museum of Guangdong** MUSEUM

( Guangdong Haishang Sichou Zhilu Bowuguan;  368 1111; admission ¥80, free English audioguide; ☺ 9.30am-5.30pm, closed 1st & 2nd Mar & Nov) Sitting right on Shili Yintan () beach is this museum, purpose-built to house an 800-year-old Song-dynasty shipwreck that was wholly salvaged near the island. The remains of the 30m-long merchant vessel (Nanhai No. 1; ), and much of the 70,000 pieces of merchandise on board, now rest in a sealed glass tank. The ship is believed to have been headed for the Middle East or Africa when it sank.

The wreckage has significant archaeological value, though only 200 pieces of the porcelain, gold and copper treasures have been put on display. That said, full excavation has been planned starting in early 2013.

### **Beaches** BEACHES

The most beautiful with the longest stretch of coastline is **Shili Yintan** (; literally, 10 'miles' of silver beach) where the museum is, and it's free of charge. More centrally located, however, is **Dajiaowan** () beach in the lively Zhapo () area, 10 minutes away from Shili Yintan

by pedicab or a balmy 45-minute walk. It's attractive and close to restaurants and a water world. A ¥50 ticket gives you two days' unlimited entry to the beach and water world from 8am to 7pm. Tickets sold at water world are good for only a day.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Days Hotel & Suites** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

(☎ 369 8888; [www.haiyundayshotel.com](http://www.haiyundayshotel.com); Hailing Island National Resort District; s ¥1688-2688, d ¥1388-2388, ste ¥3288-4688; @📶🚰) Yangjiang's best hotel has 368 bright and spacious rooms with plush bedding, stylish lamps and, for sea-facing units, balconies. It's right by the museum.

### **Sunshine Peninsula International Hotel** LUXURY HOTEL \$\$\$

(Yangguang Bandao Guoji Jiudian; ☎ 389 7777; [www.sunshine369.com](http://www.sunshine369.com); Zhapo Luyou Dadao Nan; r ¥1380-1880, ste ¥2280-2580, villas ¥2880-8880; 📶) A family-friendly upmarket option right by the beach in Zhapo.

### **Jinhaili Hotel** HOTEL \$

(Jinhaili Dajiudian; ☎ 389 6688; fax 389 5599; 23 Haibin Lu, Zhapo Town; 23 r ¥220-280) This affordable option in the upmarket Zhapo area has a gloomy lobby and big decent rooms. In July and August, prices go up by 30% on Friday, and double on Saturday.

### **7 Days Inn** HOTEL \$

(☎ 321 7888; [www.7daysinn.cn](http://www.7daysinn.cn); 37 Dongfeng Erlu, Yangjiang; , 37 r ¥140-195; 📶) If you want to stay in Yangjiang, this place has cheerful rooms, and wi-fi in the lobby.

### **Seafood Restaurants** SEAFOOD \$\$

In Zhapo, there are seafood restaurants galore. Pick out what you

want from the tanks full of swimming marine life, agree on the price, and they'll cook it for you. Generally, seafood items cost ¥28 to ¥200 per 500g/1 catty (; *jin*). Nonseafood dishes fall between ¥18 and ¥90.

## **i** Getting There & Away

Yangjiang has two bus stations. The **main bus station** (*Yangjiang qiche keyun zongzhan*; ☎ 316 6593; cnr Xiping Belu & Jinshan Gonglu) has direct services to:

**Foshan** ¥55, four daily (9.10am to 4pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥65 to ¥88, 30 daily (8am to 9pm)

**Hong Kong** ¥220 to ¥230, two daily (9am and 2.30pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥90 to ¥100, five daily (8.30am to 3.30pm)

**Zhuhai** ¥60, nine daily (8am to 5pm)

**No. 2 bus station** (*Yangjiang eryun chezhan*; ☎ 365 0888; 666 Shiwan Beilu) has daily direct services to:

**Guangzhou** 17 daily (6.30am to 4.40pm)

**Kaiping** one daily (3pm)

**Shenzhen** nine daily (7.30am to 11pm)

Kaiping's Yici bus station has two buses daily (12.55pm and 5.15pm) to Yangjiang's main bus station and six (8.45am to 4.10pm) to its No 2 station (¥36).

## **i** Getting Around

Local buses run every 10 to 20 minutes to Zhapo from No 2 station (¥13, one hour, 6.30am to 9pm) and the main station (6am to 7.30pm).

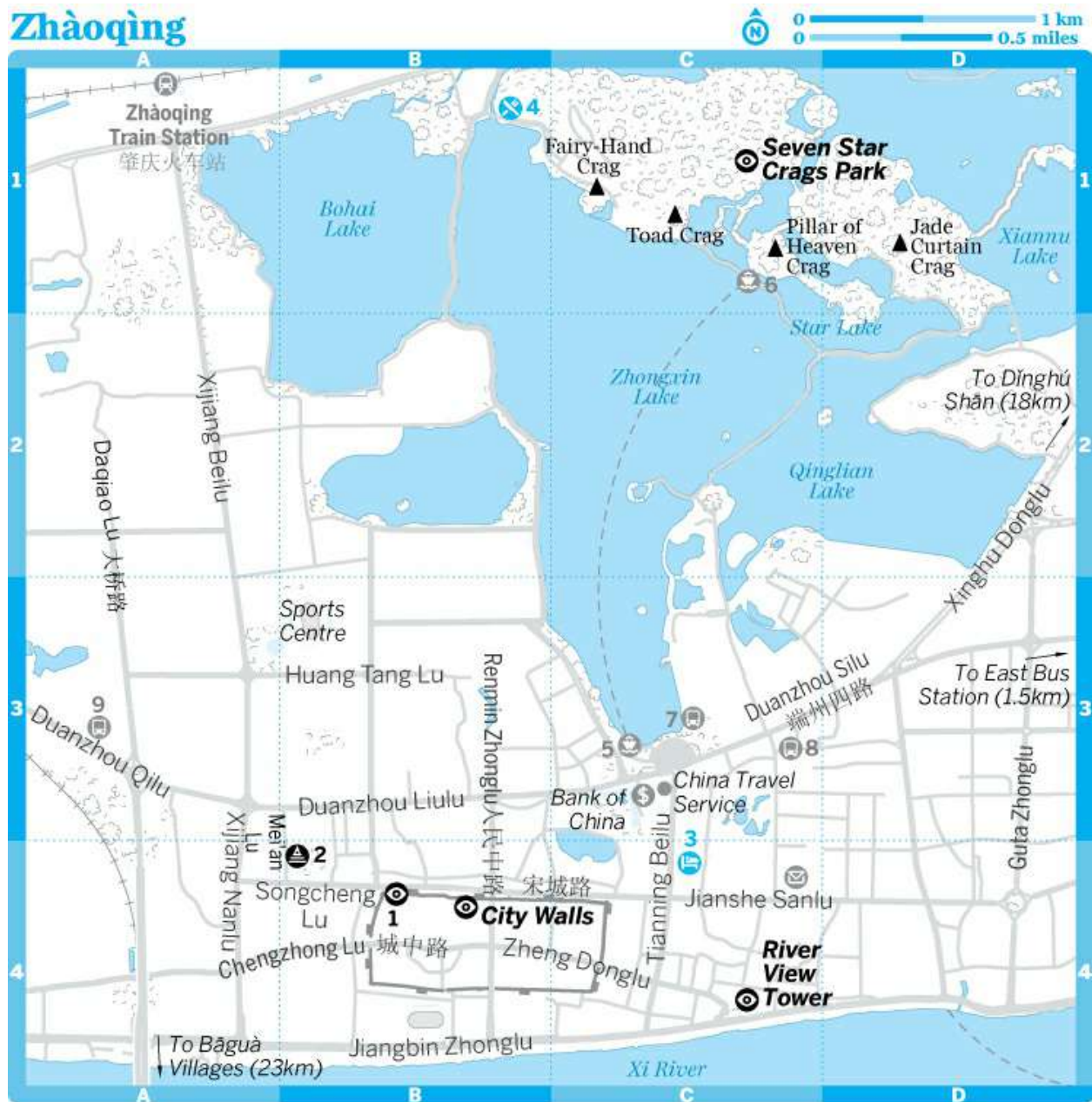
Zhapo and the museum area are connected by pedicabs (¥15, 10 minutes). A taxi from downtown Yangjiang to the museum costs ¥100 (one hour).



# Zhaoqing

📍 0758 / POP 3.9 MILLION

Bordered by lakes and limestone formations, the leisurely town of Zhaoqing in western Guangdong province was where Jesuit Mateo Ricci first set foot in China in 1583.



# Zhaoqing

## Top Sights

[City Walls](#) B4

[River View Tower](#) C4

[Seven Star Crag Park](#) C1

## Sights

1 [Cloud-Draped Tower](#) B4

2 [Plum Monastery](#) B4

## Sleeping

3 [Blue Palace Hotel](#) C4

## Eating

4 [Bohailou](#) B1

## Transport

5 Boats to Seven Star Crag Park C3

6 Ferry C1

7 Local Bus Station (Buses to Dinghu Shan) C3

8 [Long-Distance Bus Station](#) C3

9 [Qiaoxi Bus Station](#) A3

## Sights

### [Seven Star Crag Park](#) PARK

Offline map

(*Qixing Yan Gongyuan*; ☎ 230 2838; admission ¥60; 🕒 8am-5.30pm)

The landscape of limestone hills, grottoes and willow-graced lakes in this massive park is beautiful, so it's a pity the authorities try so hard – limestone caves are illuminated like nightclubs and boat rides cost extra (¥10 to ¥60). The easiest way to navigate between sights is to

use the battery-operated carts (¥10 to ¥25 per person).

## Plum Monastery BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#)

(*Meian*; 📍 283 3284; *Mei'an Lu, Duanzhou Qu*; 🕒 8.30am-4pm) This dignified, state-protected temple is dedicated to the Father of Chinese Zen Buddhism – Master Huineng (一). Born in Zhaoqing during the Tang dynasty, Master Huineng was said to be fond of plum blossoms, and during a sojourn here, he planted plum trees all over the hillside. This temple was built by a disciple to commemorate his teacher.

Don't miss the ancient well, with petals carved into its parapet, that's said to have been dug by Master Huineng to irrigate his trees. The temple's plum trees bloom between winter and spring. A pedicab from downtown Zhaoqing costs ¥15.

## City Walls HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#)

Zhaoqing's city walls (; *gu cheng*) were built during several periods – the lowest part with large mud bricks are Song dynasty; above that is Ming; then a Qing extension featuring smaller bricks. Anything above that was built yesterday. **River View Tower** and **Cloud-Draped Tower** were closed for repairs at the time of writing.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Blue Palace Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

(*Nangong Binguan*; 📍 227 8020; fax 227 2085; 76 *Tianning Beilu*; 76 | ¥438-468, ste ¥888; @) This centrally located hotel has 106 refurbished rooms that are clean, smart and comfortable. Walls are thick too, so it's very quiet at night even if your neighbours are partying.

### Bohailou CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#)

([📍](#) 230 2708; *Xinghu Xilu*; dim sum ¥4-22; ☺ lunch & dinner) This restaurant with lake views serves Zhaoqing delicacies including sticky rice dumplings (; *guozhengzong*), containing beans, pork, chestnuts and egg yolk, and fox nuts buns (; *cishi bao*). It's a 10-minute walk from the western entrance of Seven Star Crags Park. Bus 19 (¥2) from the entrance passes here (; Bohailou).

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; *Duanzhou Wulu*; ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Sat)

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; *Jianshe Sanlu*; ☺ 9am-8pm)

**China Travel Service** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (CTS; *Zhaoqing Zhongguo Luxingshe*; [📍](#) 226 8090; *Duanzhou Wulu*; ☺ 8am-9pm)

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Bus

The **long-distance bus station** ( *qiche keyun zongzhan*; *Duanzhou Silu*) runs frequent services to:

**Guangzhou** ¥46, 1½ hours

**Shenzhen** ¥100, three hours

**Zhuhai** ¥75, four hours

The **east bus station** ( *chengdong keyunzhan*; *Duanzhou Sanlu*), 1.5km east of the long-distance bus station, has services to Kaiping (¥42, 2½ hours).

### Train

The fastest train to Guangzhou (¥17 to ¥36) takes two hours. The direct express train to Hong Kong (HK\$235, 4½ hours) departs at 3.10pm.

## **i** Getting Around

Bus 12 links the train and long-distance bus stations with the ferry pier. A taxi to the train station from the centre costs about ¥15.

---

## Around Zhaoqing

### DINGHU SHAN

This 11.3 sq km **reserve** (*Mt Dingu*; 📍 0758-262 2510; 21 Paifang Lu; admission ¥60), 18km northeast of Zhaoqing, offers great walks among lush vegetation, rare trees and roaring waterfalls, among other attractions.

A boat (¥30) will ferry you to the tiny wooded island in **Ding Lake** (Ding Hu), where there's a butterfly preserve. You can do an hour-long hike through a scenic forest with ponds and waterfalls, to emerge near **Baoding Garden** ( ) which contains the world's largest *ding*, a three-legged cauldron.

**Qingyun Temple** (; Qingyun Si) is a gaudy complex, but it's where you'll find a good upmarket **vegetarian restaurant** (📍 0758-262 1585; mains ¥38-118; 🕒 breakfast, lunch & dinner) that serves the famous monk invention Dinghu vegetarian dish (; Dinghu Shangsu).

Bus 21 (¥2) goes to Dinghu Shan from the **local bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Duanzhou Silu*) in Zhaoqing. Battery-operated carts (¥20) are useful for navigating the reserve.

### BAGUA VILLAGES

Two villages, exceptional for their shape and feng shui, make great excursions from Zhaoqing.

Known as Bagua Cun ( ), **Licha Cun** ( admission ¥20; 🕒 8.15am-5.30pm), 21km east of Zhaoqing, is a 700-year-old octagonal village, built according to *bagua*, a Taoist symbol in an octagonal shape that has eight trigrams representing different phases in life.

Houses, many with wok-handle roofs, radiate from a *taichi* (a symbol of yin and yang) on a central terrace, turning the village into a maze. Most villagers have emigrated to Australia and only the elders remain. Bus 315 (¥9, 40 minutes) leaves for Licha behind **Qiaoxi bus**

**station** [Offline map](#) (*Qiaoxi keyunzhan; Duanzhou Qilu*) in Zhaoqing every 15 minutes.

To the southeast of Zhaoqing, **Xiangang Cun** ( ) is another Ming-dynasty Bagua village. It's larger and livelier than Licha, and has a market at its entrance. Its 16 ancestral halls, some opulent, only open on the first and 15th day of the lunar month. Board bus 308 (¥9, one hour) at Qiaoxi station to get here.

---

## Qingyuan

 0763 / POP 3.9 MILLION

The industrial town of Qingyuan is where to set off for a scenic jaunt down the Běijiang River ( ). The secluded temple in Feilai and the monastery in Feixia are the main attractions. Boats (¥380, four hours) leave from Qingyuan's **Wuyi dock** ( ; Wuyi Matou).

The first part of the trip takes you past ancient pagodas to the Buddhist complex of **Feilai** ( *admission ¥15*). Though it has been around for more than 1400 years, the whole complex was destroyed by a landslide in 1997 and subsequently rebuilt. The mountaintop pavilion offers terrific views of the river gorge below.

The admission fee to the monastery at **Feixia** ( *admission ¥50*), 4km upstream, also includes an eight-minute van ride up to the Taoist relics. **Cangxia Ancient Cave** ( ; c 1863) is a maze of whispering shadows, abandoned courtyards and crumbling alleys connected by arboured paths.

You can buy seafood from the floating market at Feixia and your boatman will cook it for you at no extra charge.

### Getting There & Around

To visit Feilai and Feixia on a day trip from Guangzhou, catch one of the 10 high-speed trains from Guangzhou South Station that stop in Qingyuan (¥40, 22 minutes). On arrival, it's a 15-minute walk to Wuyi dock. Turn right as you leave the station.

Buses run every 15 minutes from Guangzhou's long-distance bus



stations near the train station (¥35, two hours, 6.30am to 9pm).

---

## Nanling National Forest Park

 0751 / POP 2000

Lying 285km north of Guangzhou, the Nanling (Southern Mountains) ranges stretch from Guangxi to Jiangxi provinces, separating the Pearl River from the Yangzi River.

The range in Guangdong, home to the only ancient forests in the province, is a **reserve** (*Nanling Guojia Senlin Gongyuan*;  523 2038; [www.eco-nanling.com](http://www.eco-nanling.com); admission ¥60;  6am-6pm) for old-growth blue pines, a species unique to this part of Guangdong.

### Sights & Activities

Come here with your walking boots. There are four trails, most of which can be completed within two to three hours. The easiest, 6km trail follows a stream and leads you through the steep-sided gorges and crystalline pools of **Water Valley** (; Qinshuigu). The shorter but more interesting 3.5km trail takes you past roaring **waterfalls** (; Pubu Changlang).

The 12km-long trail to **Little Yellow Mountain** (; Xiao Huangshan) is a more challenging hike through a forest of blue pines. The view of rolling mountain ranges from the crest (1608m) is spectacular.

The longest (28km) and most difficult is the No 4 Trail (; Sihao Lindao) to **Shikengkong** (). At 1902m, Shikengkong is the highest peak in Guangdong and straddles the boundary between Guangdong and Hunan.

The park entrance is at the southern end of the village of **Wuzhishan** (), which is small enough to cover on foot. Farmers nearby do their weekly shopping and stock clearance at Wuzhishan's lively Sunday market. Staying in Orange House here will give you access to the park the next day. Just get your ticket and receipt stamped at the hotel.

From Wuzhishan it's 6km to the start of the trails to the waterfalls

and Water Valley, and another 6km to Little Yellow Mountain. The best way is to hire a taxi from Wuzhishan. For between ¥180 and ¥250 you can hire one for the whole day. The driver can drop you at one end of the trail and wait for you at the other. A one-way trip to the lower entrance of the trail to Little Yellow Mountain is ¥90.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

As camping inside the park is prohibited, the only option is to stay in Wuzhishan. There are a couple of *zhaodaisuo* (; basic lodgings) where you can get a room from ¥80.

### **Orange House** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

( Chengwu; 📍 523 2929; d ¥398-489, high season ¥500-600; 🌟📞 )  
Orange House is a cheery boutique hotel with 32 comfortable rooms, though those on the 1st floor have a musty smell. Bookings essential. The hotel also manages an air-con-free **Ranger House** ( *Liñshe*; tr ¥198), equipped with eight spotless triple rooms right behind Orange House. Discounts of 30% to 40% via [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com).

### **Feng's Kitchen** CANTONESE \$

( Fengjiacai; 📍 523 2107; mains ¥8-14) Mr Feng serves delectable meals in his courtyard. Reservations necessary.

## **Getting There & Away**

### **Bus**

Shaoguan ( ) is your gateway to Nanling. Buses (¥70, four hours) leave Guangzhou's long-distance bus stations for Shaoguan's Xihe bus station every 40 minutes (6.50am to 8.30pm).

If you miss the bus to Wuzhishan, catch a bus to Ruyuan (; ¥10, one hour, every 15 minutes). From Ruyuan, three buses to Wuzhishan (¥10) leave at 9.05am, 12.45pm and 4.30pm, or you can hire a taxi (¥80).

In Wuzhishan, buses to Shaoguan leave at 7.30am, 12.30pm and



3.30pm.

### Train

High-speed trains (¥105, one hour) leave from Guangzhou South Station for Shaoguan Train Station (; Shaoguan Gaotiezhan). From there, board bus 22 or 26 and get off at **Xihe bus station** (*Xihe qichezhan; Gongye Donglu*). Buses to Wuzhishan (¥20, two hours) depart at 8am, 11.45am and 3.30pm.

Guangzhou's Main Train Station has trains that stop over at **Shaoguan East Station** (; Shaoguan Dongzhan; ¥38, 2½ hours). Buses to Wuzhishan leave at 7.45am, 11.15am and 3.15pm.

---

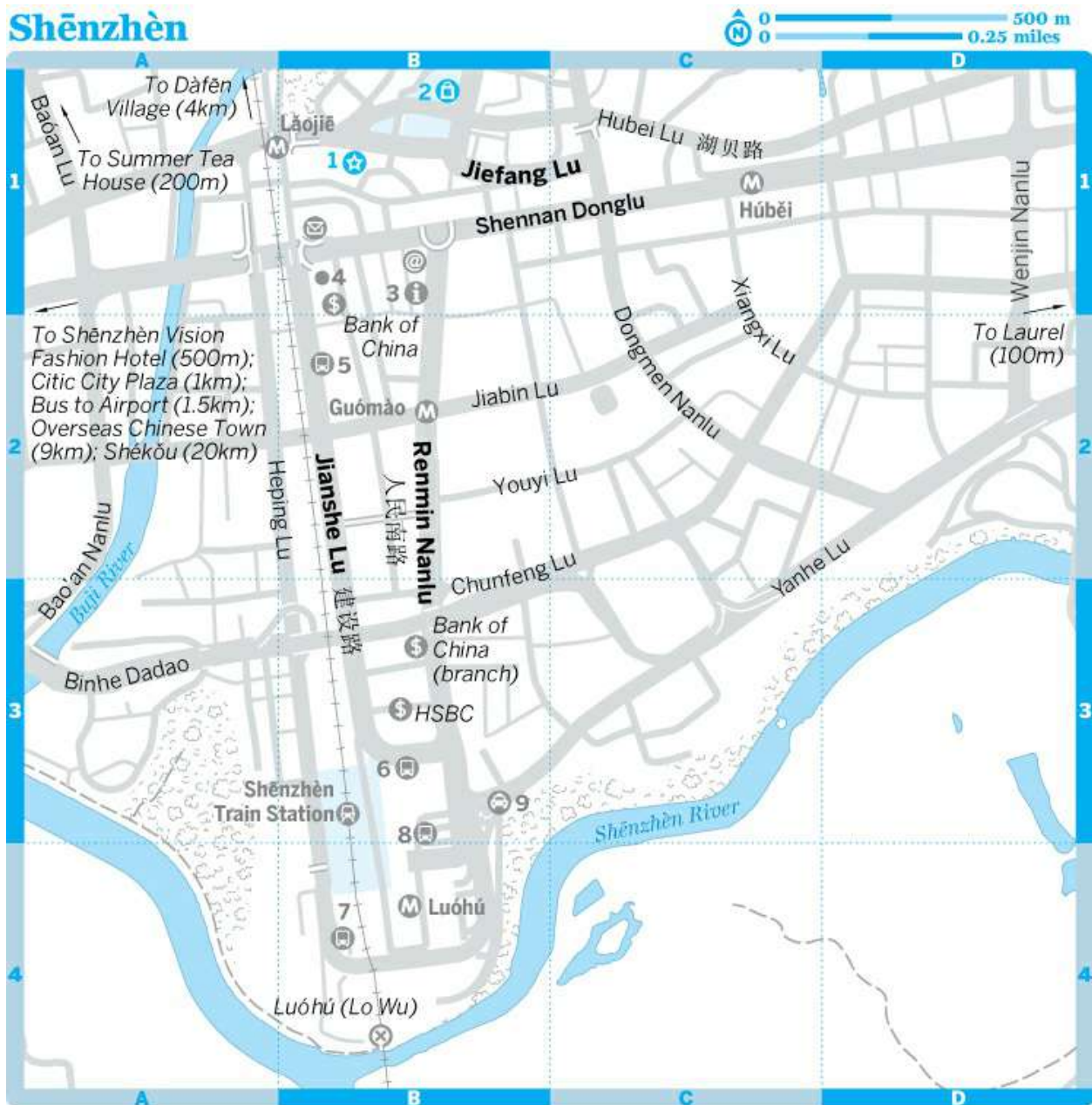
## Shenzhen

 0755 / POP 14 MILLION

One of China's wealthiest cities and a Special Economic Zone (SEZ), Shenzhen draws a mix of businessmen, investors and migrant workers to its golden gates. It's also a useful transport hub to other parts of China.

You can buy a five-day, Shenzhen-only visa (¥160 for most nationalities, ¥469 for Brits; cash only) at the **Luohu border** (*Lo Wu*; ☺ 9am-10.30pm), **Huangang** (☺ 9am-1pm & 2.30-5pm) and **Shekou** (☺ 8.45am-12.30pm & 2.30-5.30pm). US citizens must buy a visa in advance in Macau or Hong Kong.

# Shēnzhèn



## Shenzhen

### ★ Entertainment

1 [True Color](#) B1

## Shopping

2 [Dongmen Market](#) B1

---

## Information

3 [China Travel Service](#) B1

---

4 Great Land International Travel Service B1

---

## Transport

5 Buses to Shekou B2

---

6 [Local Bus Station](#) B3

---

7 Local Minibuses B4

---

8 [Luohu Bus Station](#) B3

---

9 Taxi Stands B3

---

## Sights

### **Shenzhen Museum** MUSEUM

( *Shenzhen Bowuguan Xinguan*; 📍 8201 3036; [www.shenzhenmuseum.com.cn](http://www.shenzhenmuseum.com.cn); East Gate, Citizens' Centre, Fuzhong Sanlu, Futian district; 🕒 10am-6pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Line 4, Shimin Zhongxin, exit B) With life-sized dioramas and interactive multimedia presentations, the museum showcases the city's short but dynamic history of social transformation.

### **OCT Contemporary Art Terminal** MUSEUM

( *Huaqiaocheng Dangdai Yishu Zhongxin*; 📍 2691 1976; *Enping Jie, Overseas Chinese Town*; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Line 1, *Qiaocheng Dong station, exit A*) This is an excellent museum with exhibits of international and local contemporary Chinese artists.

## **Art Galleries** GALLERIES

Just one metro stop from the OCT Art Terminal are two galleries worth a visit. **He Xiangning Art Gallery** ( *Hexiangning Meishuguan*; 📍 2660

4540; [www.hxnart.com](http://www.hxnart.com); 9013 Shennan Lu; admission ¥20, Fri free; ☺ 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun; 🚇 Huaqiaocheng, exit C) has an esoteric collection of hybrid Japanese/Chinese water paintings by the late master, He Xiangning. Adjacent to it is the **OCT Art & Design Gallery** (Hua Meishuguan; 📞 3399 3111; [www.oct-and.com](http://www.oct-and.com); 9009 Shennan Lu; admission ¥18; ☺ 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun) featuring works by China's avant-garde designers.

## Sleeping

Hotels in Shenzhen regularly slash up to 50% off the regular rack rates on weekdays, though you should always ask for a discount. This is also partially offset by the 10% or 15% tax/service charge levied by many places. All hotels provide in-room broadband.

### **Shenzhen Loft Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

(Shenzhen Qiaocheng Luyou Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 8609 5773; [www.yhachina.com](http://www.yhachina.com); 3 Enping Jie, Huaqiaocheng; 3 dm ¥60, d from ¥158; 🚇 Qiaochengdong, exit A; 📶📶) The hostel by which all hostels in China should be judged. It's located in the OCT Contemporary Art Terminal.

### **Shenzhen Vision Fashion Hotel** BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

(Shenzhen Shijie Fengshang Jiudian; 📞 2558 2888; [www.visionfashionhotel.com](http://www.visionfashionhotel.com); 5018 Shennan Donglu; 5018 d ¥486-1880, discounts of 50-70%; 🚇 Dajuyuan, exit B; 📶📶) Its prime location and quiet environment make this boutique hotel inside a theatre complex very good value.

## Eating

### **Laurel** CANTONESE \$\$

(Dangui Xuan; 📞 8232 1888; 2nd fl, Century Plaza Hotel, 1 Chunfeng Lu; meals ¥50-180; ☺ 7am-11pm) Located in the Century Plaza Hotel and serving some of the best dim sum in town. A hit with day-trippers

from Hong Kong.

## Summer Tea House VEGETARIAN, DIM SUM \$

( *Jingyi Chaguan*; 📍 2557 4555; 7th & 8th fl, Jintang Daxia, 3038 Bao'an Nanlu; dishes ¥50-80; 🕒 10am-1am; 🚶🚶) Tucked away in an office building is this vegies' favourite with healthy dim sum (available all day) and a relaxing tea-tasting area.

## Drinking & Entertainment

**Citic City Plaza** ( *Zhongxin Chengshi Guangchang*; 🚇 Kexue Guan) and **COCO Park** (🚇 Gouwu Gongyuan) are happening areas. The free *That's PRD* (<http://shenzhen.urbanatomy.com>) has monthly events listings.

## Yidu Tang LIVE MUSIC

( 📍 8610 6046; Block F3, OCT-LOFT Art Terminal, Enping Lu, Huaqiaocheng; 🕒 10am-2am; 🚇 Qiaochengdong, exit A) A warehouse turned bohemian den where local bands jam every night after 10pm.

## True Color CLUB

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Bense*; 📍 8230 1833; 4th fl, Golden World, 2001 Jiefang Lu; 🕒 9am-1am; 🚇 Laojie, exit A) A longtime local favourite that attracts city slickers and trendy young adults alike with its watering-hole-plus-dance-floor formula.

## Shopping

Die-hard shoppers won't leave Shenzhen empty-handed, though the quality may vary. Remember to bargain!

## Dafen Village PAINTINGS

( *Dafencun*; 📍 8473 2633; [www.dafenvillageonline.com](http://www.dafenvillageonline.com); Dafen, Buji,

*Longgang District*) This eye-opener has 600 studios-cum-stores, churning out thousands of Rembrandt and Renoir copies every week, with prices starting from ¥300. There are original works too, and art supplies costing about half of what they'd cost downtown. Bus 306 from Luohu station takes you here in an hour. A taxi ride costs around ¥70.

## Century Furnishings Central Mall *HOMEWARES*

( *Shijizhongxin jiajuguang chang*; [www.sz-sjzx.com](http://www.sz-sjzx.com); Shennan Dadao, west of Xiangmi Hu Water Park, Futian District; ☎ 9.30am-8pm Mon-Fri, to 8.30pm Sat & Sun; 🚇 Chegongmiao, exit A) This mall has a whopping 30,000 sq m of retail space for homewares. Zones A and B sell tiles, sinks, showers and mirrors C specialises in lamps and furniture. A cab from Luohu station costs ¥30.

## Dongmen Market *MARKET*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Dongmen Shichang*; ☎ 10am-10pm; 🚇 Laojie, exit A) This chaotic market is popular for tailored suits, skirts, curtains and beddings. Same-day pick-up is possible if you place your order early. Be careful of pickpockets.

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; 2022 Jianshe Lu; ☎ 9am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, to 4pm Sat & Sun)

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 3040 Shennan Donglu; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**China Travel Service** (CTS; *Zhongguo Luxingshe*; 📞 8228 7644; 3023 Renmin Nanlu; ☎ 9am-6pm)

**Great Land International Travel Service** ( *Jubang Guoji Luxingshe*; 📞 2515 5555; 3rd fl, Junting Hotel, 3085 Shennan Donglu; ☎ 10am-6pm) Good for air tickets.

**HSBC** ( *Huifeng Yinhang*; Ground fl, Shangri-La Hotel; Xianggelila Dajjudian; 1002 Jianshe Lu; ☎ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri, 10am-6pm Sat)

**Internet cafe** ( 3023 Renmin Nanlu; per hr ¥5) Adjacent to CTS.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 2446 3999; 4018 Jiefang Lu)

**SZ Party** ([www.shenzhenparty.com](http://www.shenzhenparty.com)) For current events in Shenzhen.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

**Shenzhen airport** (Shenzhen Jichang; ☎ 2345 6789; [eng.szairport.com](http://eng.szairport.com)) has flights to most major destinations around China.

### **Boat**

**Shekou port** (☎ 2669 1213) has services to Hong Kong:

**Hong Kong International Airport** ¥260, 30 minutes, 14 daily (7.45am to 9pm)

**Macau ferry pier, Central** ¥110, one hour, six daily (7.45am, 10.15am, 11.45am, 2pm, 4.30pm and 7.15pm)

To Macau:

**Macau ferry terminal** ¥180, one hour, 10 daily (8.15am to 7.30pm)

**Taipa** ¥180, one hour, four daily (9.30am, 11am, 12.15pm and 5.30pm)

To Zhuhai:

**Jiuzhou Port** ¥100, one hour, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 8.30pm)

**Fuyong ferry terminal** (*Fuyong keyunzhan*; ☎ 2345 5107) in Shenzhen airport runs ferries to Hong Kong and Macau:

**Macau ferry terminal** ¥210, 70 minutes, six daily (9.30am to 6pm)

**Skypier, Hong Kong International Airport** ¥298, 40 minutes, four daily (8.30am, 11.30am, 3.30pm and 6.30pm)

### **Bus**

Regular intercity buses leave from **Luohu bus station** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) (; Luohu qichezhan):

**Chaozhou** ¥150, 5½ hours, three daily (8.30am, 1.40pm and 8pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥60, two hours, every 10 minutes (6am to 10pm)

**Shantou** ¥170, five hours, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 9.30pm)

**Xiamen** ¥240 to ¥303, eight hours, six daily (9.30am, 11am, 7.30pm, 8.30pm, 9.30pm and 9.50pm)



## Train

Services to Guangzhou and Hong Kong leave from Luohu Train Station to Guangzhou East Station (Y45, 1½ hours); and from Shenzhen North Station (; Shenzhen Beizhan) in Longhua to Guangzhou South Station (¥47, 40 minutes).

The Mass Transit Railway (MTR) links Shenzhen with Hong Kong ([Click here](#)).

## Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

Shenzhen's airport, 36km west of the city, is connected to Longhua by the metro Line 1 (¥9, one hour). A taxi costs ¥140 to ¥160. Airport bus departures are from **Hualian Hotel** (*Hualian Dasha; Shennan Zhonglu*;  *Kexue Guan, exit B2*,  101), costing ¥20 (35 minutes, every 15 minutes, 5.30am to 9pm), and Shenzhen Train Station in Luohu (¥20, one hour, every 15 minutes, 6.30am to 10pm). Buses leave from the local bus station east of the train station.

### Public Transport

Shenzhen has a good public transport network, with five metro lines (¥2 to ¥11). Transit passes (Shenzhen Tong; ) can be bought in metro stations and are good for all except taxis. Bus and minibus fares cost ¥2 to ¥4.

### Taxi

Flag fall is ¥10 (¥16 from 11pm to 6am), ¥4 fuel surcharge and ¥2.40 every additional kilometre.



---

## Around Shenzhen

**Dapeng Fortress** (*Dapeng Su o cheng*; 📞 0755-8431 5618; Dapeng Town, Longgang District; adult/student & senior ¥20/10; 🕒 10am-6pm), a fortified town to the east of Shenzhen, was a key battle site in the Opium Wars of the 19th century. Today it's a lively home to locals and migrants.

From Shenzhen, board bus 360 at Yinhu bus terminal (). After about 90 minutes, alight at Dapeng bus station () and change to minibus 966. A taxi from Luohu costs ¥170.

---

## Zhuhai

📞 0756 / POP 1.5 MILLION

Zhuhai, Shenzhen's little SEZ sister, is close enough to Macau for a day trip. It's laid-back and has the fewest maniacal drivers in China.

Gongbei in the south is the main tourist district. Ferries connecting to Hong Kong, Shenzhen and Guangdong stop at Jidain in the northeast.

Visas (¥160 for most nationalities, ¥469 for Brits) valid for three days are available at the border (8.30am to 12.15pm, 1pm to 6.15pm, and 7pm to 10.30pm). US citizens must buy a visa in advance in Macau or Hong Kong.

# Zhūhǎi



## Zhuhai

### Sleeping

1 [Yindo Hotel](#) A1

---

### Eating

2 [Jin Yue Xuan](#) B1

3 [Rosa Chinensia](#) B1

---

### Information

[Bank of China](#) (see 1)

4 [China Travel Service](#) A1

---

### Transport

5 [Airport Shuttle Bus](#) A2

---

## Sights

### **Zhuhai City Museum** MUSEUM

(*Zhuhai* *Bowuguan*; 📞 332 4708; 191 *Jingshan Lu*; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) The City Museum in Jida has 13 exhibition halls showing old photos of Zhuhai, as well as cannon batteries and stelae excavated around the city. From Gongbei take bus 2 on Yingbin Nanlu.

### **Tangjia Public Garden** GARDENS

(*Tangjia Gongleyuan*; 📞 338 8896; *Eling, Tangjiawan*; adult/student ¥10/5; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) Thirteen kilometres north of Zhuhai is the labyrinthine town of Tangjiawan ( ), where you'll find the former estate of the first premier of the Republic of China, Tong Shaoyi, now a garden with old-growth and rare trees. From Zhuhai take the K3, 3A, 69 or 3 bus (40 minutes) at the bus stop near the junction of Fenghuang Nanlu and Dongfeng Lu, and exit at Tangjia Shichǎngzhan ( ; Tangjia Market station).

### **Tangjia Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

(*Tangjia Sanmiao*; *cnr Datong Lu & Xindizhi Jie, Tangjiawan*; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) On your way to Tangjia Public Garden, detour to this 300-year-old temple with a grim-looking Buddha statue brought from India. Board bus 10 on Yingbin Nanlu and alight at Tangjia Market (Tangjiashichang).

## Sleeping

There's little demand for budget accommodation as very few travellers stay in Zhuhai.

### **Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

( Guoji Qingnian Xuesheng Luguan; 📞 7711 7712; [www.zhuhai-holitel.com](http://www.zhuhai-holitel.com); 9 Shihua Donglu; 9 dm ¥60; 🚗 99) Hidden away inside the Zhuhai Holiday Resort (; Zhuhai Dujiacun) in Jida, this hostel has two eight-bed dorms.

## Yindo Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yindu Jiudian; 📞 888 3388; fax 888 3311; cnr Yingbin Nanlu & Yuehai Donglu; s & d ¥780-1440, discounts of 40-50%; 📞📧) A good-value midrange option close to the border.

## Eating & Drinking

Gongbei near the Macau border has restaurants, bars and street hawkers.

## Jin Yue Xuan DIM SUM \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📞 813 3133; 1st-3rd fl, Block B, 265 Rihua Commercial Sq, Qinglu Nanlu; meals ¥100-130; 🕒 9am-10pm) For the best dim sum and Cantonese cuisine in Zhuhai, head to this elegant restaurant before 11am to land a table.

## Rosa Chinensia DIM SUM \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yuegui Xuan; 📞 818 3382; 2nd fl, 305 Qinglu Nanlu; dim sum ¥8-28, dishes ¥48-188; 🕒 8am-5pm) A good, affordable alternative to Jin Yue Xuan.

## Information

**Bank of China** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhongguo Yinhang) Gongbei (cnr Yingbin Nanlu & Yuehai Donglu; 🕒 9am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, to 4pm Sat & Sun); Lianhua Lu (🕒 9am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, to 4pm Sat & Sun)

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; 1041-1043 Yuehai Donglu; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**China Travel Service** (CTS; *Zhongguo Luxingshe*; 📞 889 9228; 2nd fl, Overseas Chinese Hotel, 2016 Yingbin Nanlu; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**Internet cafe** (*E E-bar*; 1155 Yingbin Nanlu; per hr ¥5)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; *Gong'anju*; 📞 888 5277; 1038 Yingbin Nanlu)

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

Zhuhai's airport serves various destinations in China, including Beijing (¥1400), Shanghai (¥700) and Chengdu (¥1460).

### **Boat**

Hong Kong-bound jetcats from **Jiuzhou Harbour** ( *Jiuzhou Gang Matou*; 📞 333 3359 ) :

**China ferry terminal, Kowloon** ¥175, 70 minutes, six times daily (8am to 5pm)

**Hong Kong International Airport** ¥280, one hour (9.30am, 12.40pm, 3.30pm and 6.30pm)

**Macau ferry pier, Central** nine times daily (9am to 9.30pm)

Ferries leave Jiuzhou Harbour for Shenzhen's port of Shekou (¥100, one hour, every half-hour, 8am to 9.30pm); they leave Shekou for Jiuzhou Harbour every half-hour (7.30am to 9.30pm).

Local buses 3, 23, 25 and 26 go to Jiuzhou Harbour.

### **Bus**

**Gongbei long-distance bus station** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *Gongbei changtu qichezhan*; 📞 888 5218; *Youyi Lu*) at Gongbei Port runs regular buses between 6am and 10pm:

**Foshan** ¥55, three hours

**Guangzhou** ¥55, 2½ hours

**Kaiping** ¥40, three hours

**Shantou** ¥180, five hours

**Shenzhen** ¥75, three hours

**Zhaoqing** ¥65, 4½ hours

### Light Rail

Light-rail trains serve Zhuhai North Station ( ) and Guangzhou South Station (¥34, one hour). The light-rail station can be reached by buses K1, 3A and 65.

## Getting Around

Zhuhai's airport, 43km southwest of the centre, runs a shuttle service (¥25) to the city centre (every hour, 6.30am to 9.30pm) from outside the **Zhongzhu Building** (*Zhongzhu Dasha; cnr Yuehua Lu & Yingbin Nanlu*). A taxi to the centre costs about ¥150.

Flag fall for taxis is ¥10 for the first 3km, then ¥0.60 for each additional 250m.

# Chaozhou

📍 0768 / POP 2.5 MILLION

Charming Chaozhou was once a thriving trading and cultural hub in southern China, rivalling Guangzhou. Today, it still preserves its distinct dialect, cuisine and opera. Chaozhou is best appreciated at a leisurely pace, so do consider spending a night here.

Paifang Jie (; Street of Memorial Arches), running 1948m from north to south in the old quarter, has signage to the main sights and is a good place to orient yourself. It's made up of Taiping Lu (; 1742m) and Dongmen Jie (; 206m).



Chaozhou

## Top Sights

[Guangji Bridge](#) B2

---

## Sights

1 [Chaozhou Opera Costumes & Props](#) B2

---

2 Emperor Xu's Son-in-Law's Mansion B1

---

3 [Hanbi Building](#) A1

---

4 [Jao Tsung I Petite Ecole](#) B2

---

5 [Jilue Huang Temple](#) B1

---

6 [Kaiyuan Temple](#) B2

---

7 Paifang Jie B2

---

8 [Phoenix Building](#) A1

---

Siwang Lou (see 8)

---

## Sleeping

9 [Chaozhou Hotel](#) A2

---

10 [Chengfu Inn](#) B2

---

11 [Zaiyang Inn](#) B2

---

## Eating

12 [Hu Rong Quan](#) B1

---

13 [Lianhua Vegetarian](#) B2

---

14 [Ruya Ju](#) B2

---

## Transport

15 West Bus Station A1

---

## Sights

Sights abound in Chaozhou but admission charges can add up. Before you go sightseeing, buy a combo ticket (¥80) from **Jinlong Travel Service** (*Jinlong Luxingshe*; ☎ 222 8900; 39 Huangcheng Nanlu; 🕒 9am-9pm) located across Huangcheng Nanlu from the southern entrance of Street of Memorial Arches.

There are two types of combo tickets, both good for two days: one with 10 sights, and one with 11.





## Guangji Bridge BRIDGE

( *Guangji Qiao*; 📍 222 2683; admission ¥50; 🕒 10am-5.30pm)

Originally a 12th-century pontoon bridge with 86 boats straddling the Han River, Guangji Bridge suffered repeated destruction over the centuries. The current version, opened in 2007, is a brilliant, faux-ancient passageway with 18 wooden boats hooked up afresh every morning and 24 stone piers with pagodas.

A ticket allows you one crossing. If you want to come back, tell the staff ‘I want to come back’ (; ‘woyao huilai’) before leaving the bridge and they’ll make a note of it.

## Jilue Huang Temple TEMPLE

Offline map

( *Jilue Huanggongci*; 📍 225 1318; 2 Tie Xiang, Yian Lu; admission ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) The highlights here are the ancient Chaozhou woodcarvings decorating the walls and thresholds. The Unesco-crowned art form is famous for its rich and subtle details, intricate designs and exquisite craftsmanship. Born 1000 years ago, it was in the Qing dynasty when this temple (1887) was built that the art flourished. The temple is about ¥8 by pedicab from Paifang Jie.



## West Lake PARK

( *Xihu*; 📍 222 0731; Huancheng Xilu; admission ¥8; 🕒 8am-11pm)

The moat of ancient Chaozhou is a tranquil lake inside a park that marks the boundary between the old city and the new. Well-loved by locals, the leafy park is blessed with a mixed but harmonious collection of buildings. **Hanbi Building** [Offline map](#) (; Hanbi Lou), which served as a military office during antiwarlord expeditions in 1925, has a free exhibition showcasing weaponry and the achievements of Zhou Enlai.

**Phoenix Building** [Offline map](#) ( *fenglou*; admission ¥4; 🕒 6am-6pm) is a fantastical rendition of the symbol of Chaozhou that sits on a knoll a five-minute walk uphill. Inside the bird, stairs take you past an iron moongate and gourd-shaped ceiling openings, to quirky spaces

shaped by the fowl's anatomy – abdomen tapering into tail, chest sweeping up into neck, openings patterned like wings...you get the idea. It's attached to a shuttered building (; Siwang Lou) in a period style reminiscent of '70s kung fu movies.

West Lake is about ¥10 by pedicab from Paifang Jie.

## **Kaiyuan Temple** *BUDDHIST TEMPLE*

Offline map

( *Kaiyuan Si*; admission ¥5; ☺ 6am-5.30pm) Built in AD 738, Chaozhou's most famous temple has old bodhi trees and an embarrassment of statues, including one of a 1000-arm Guanyin.

## **Chaozhou Opera Costumes & Props** *OPERA*

Offline map

( 📍 222 6041; 12 *Kaiyuan Lu*; ☺ 9am-10.30pm) Diagonally across the road from Kaiyuan Temple is this tiny shop that makes gowns, headdresses, swords, sedans and shoes for the Chaozhou operatic stage.

## **Hanwen Temple** *TEMPLE*

( *Hanwengong Ci*; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-5.30pm) On the east bank of the Han, this is the oldest and best-preserved temple dedicated to the Tang-dynasty philosopher Han Yu, who was banished to 'far-flung' Guangdong for his anti-Buddhist views.

## **Emperor Xu's Son-in-Law's Mansion** *HISTORIC BUILDING*

( *Xufuma Fu*; 📍 225 0021; 4 *Dongfucheng*, *Putao Xiang*, *Zhongshan Lu*, *Xiangqiao District*; admission ¥20; ☺ 9am-5.30pm) This breezy mansion originally built in 1064 retains some of the ancient stonework and wall coverings. The high door saddles, unique to southern China, were used to protect doors from humidity.

## **Confucian Academy** *TEMPLE, GARDENS*

( *Haiyangxian Ruxue Gong*; cnr of *Changli Lu* & *Wenxing Lu*,

*Xiangqiao District; admission ¥10; ☀ 8am-5pm*) This 4000-sq-m compound has lily ponds teeming with koi and a main temple dedicated to Confucius that is supported by 48 pillars.

## Jao Tsung I Petite Ecole MUSEUM

Offline map

( *Raozongyi Xueshuguan; 📍 222 8966; admission ¥10; ☀ 9am-5pm*) Located near the eastern gate of the old city wall is this museum and exquisite Chaozhou-style garden dedicated to the sinologist Jao Tsung I.

## 🛏 Sleeping

Zaiyang Inn and Chengfu Inn are in alleys off Paifang Jie, ¥10 by pedicab from the main bus station ( ).

## Zaiyang Inn HOTEL \$

Offline map

( *Zaiyang Kezhan; 📍 223 1272; [www.czdafudi.com](http://www.czdafudi.com); 15 Zaiyang Xiang, Taiping Lu; , 15 r ¥100-250; 📶*) This classy Qing-style inn with graceful courtyards and antique wood carvings (that were smothered in lime during the Cultural Revolution to prevent looting) is *the* place to stay in Chaozhou. Rooms are small, but clean and very quiet. Prices more than double during holidays.

## Chengfu Inn HOTEL \$

Offline map

( *Chengfu Kezhan; 📍 222 8585; 9 Fensi Houxiang, Taiping Lu; , 9 r ¥98-158*) Also located in an old building, but a few notches down from Zaiyang Inn in terms of atmosphere and service.

## Chaozhou Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

Offline map

( *Chaozhou Binguan; 📍 233 3333; [www.chaozhouhotel.com](http://www.chaozhouhotel.com); cnr Chaofeng Lu & Yonghu Lu; r ¥618-758, discounts of 50%; 📶📧*) A

solid option if you want to stay in the new part of town. The excellent restaurant has an English menu.

## Eating & Drinking

Food is generally good in Chaozhou. On Paifang Jie, there are eateries serving local specialities like beef balls with noodles (; *niuwan fen*) and oyster omelette (; *haolao*). **Hu Rong Quan** [Offline map](#) (🕒 8am-late), with three branches close to each other, sells pastries and sweet soups. There are also a number of bars and cafes here, all offering free wi-fi.

### **Ruya Ju** CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#)

(📍 225 9326; *Xingning Xiang, Taiping Lu*; , meals per person ¥80-100; 🕒 lunch & dinner) If there are at least five of you, book a table (at least a day in advance) with Mr Wong to enjoy an authentic multicourse Chaozhou meal in the sunset splendour of a private kitchen in a once-regal mansion.

### **Lianhua Vegetarian** CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#)

(*Lianhua Sushifu*; 📍 223 8033; 9 *Kaiyuan Sq*; mains ¥15-30; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 🍴) An excellent vegetarian restaurant opposite Kaiyuan Temple. The menu includes some Chaozhou specialities, such as the desserts on the last page.

## Getting There & Away

### Bus

Services from Chaozhou's **main bus station** (2 *Chaofeng Lu*) :

**Guangzhou** ¥110 to ¥170, 5½ hours, nine daily (8am to 11.55pm)

**Meizhou** ¥60, two hours, two daily (8.30am and 3pm)

**Raoping** ¥20, one hour, 32 daily (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Shanghai** ¥380, 15 hours, one daily, (3.15pm)

**Shantou** ¥17, one hour, 48 daily (7am to 6.40pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥120 to ¥140, 4½ hours, seven daily (8am to 11pm)

**Xiamen** ¥80 to ¥120, 3½ hours, four daily (7am to 2pm)

**Zhuhai** ¥140, two daily (8.30am and 9.10pm)

### Train

Services from Chaozhou's Train Station, 8km west of the centre:

**Guangzhou** ¥137 to ¥167, seven hours, two daily (9.23am and 1.13pm)

**Shantou** ¥8, 30 minutes, four daily (8.50am, 4.28pm, 9.15pm and 10.50pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥76, seven hours, one daily (7.15pm)

---

## Around Chaozhou

Located in Raoping (), 53km from downtown Chaozhou, is China's largest octagonal Hakka earthen house, **Daoyunlou** ( *admission* ¥20; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm). Six hundred villagers once resided in this stunning complex built in 1587; now only 100 remain. Ascend to the upper floors from unit 18 to admire the views and frescoes.

Buses to Raoping (¥20, one hour) leave from the main bus station. Change to a bus to the village of Sanrao (; ¥11), another 50km away. From there, motor-rickshaws will take you to Daoyunlou (¥5, 10 minutes).

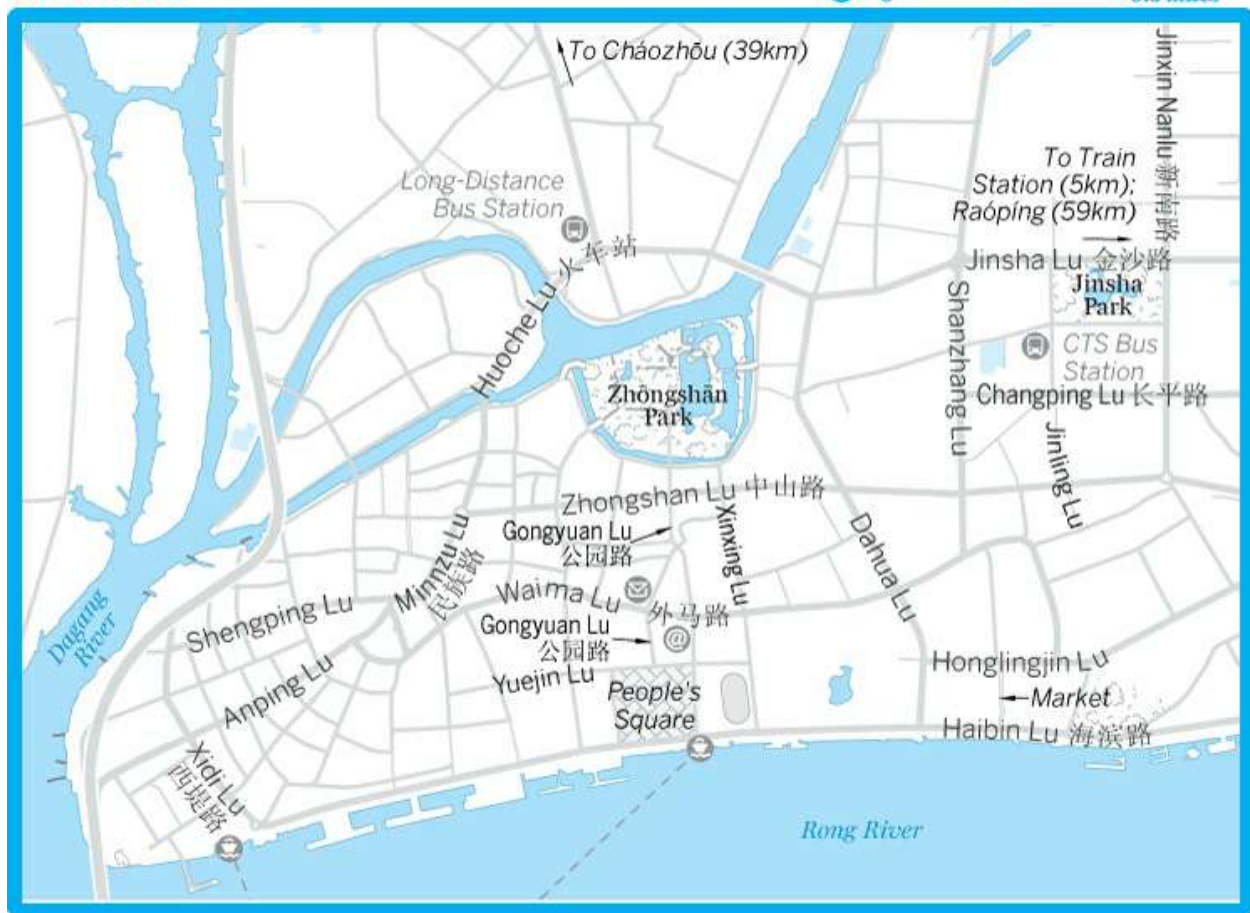
---

## Shantou

📞 0754 / POP 4.9 MILLION

Polluted Shantou has a couple of interesting sights on its outskirts that can be covered on a day trip from Chaozhou.

## Shàntóu



## Sights

### **Cultural Revolution Museum** MUSEUM

( *Wenge Bowuguan*; admission ¥10; 🕒 9.30am-5.30pm) The only museum in China that honours the victims of the revolution sits atop Tashan Park (; Tashanfengjingqu), 25km north of the city centre. Names and inscriptions are engraved on the walls.

Take eastbound bus 18 on Jinsha Lu (¥6) to Tucheng Tashan (), or bus 102 outside the long-distance bus station to Tashan Lukou (). After the 45-minute ride, cross the road and walk 800m to the entrance, then another 3.5km uphill (take the path on the left).

## Chen Cihong Memorial Home *BUILDING*

(*Chen Cihong Guju*; admission ¥25; 🕒 8am-5.30pm) This attractive complex was built by a businessman who made his fortune in Thailand in the 19th century. He famously had the region's best raw materials shipped here and assembled in imaginative ways that incorporated Asian, Western and Moorish motifs. The ground-floor souvenir shops are worth checking out. Board bus 103 from People's Sq (eastern edge) in Shantou.

## Eating & Sleeping

The streets behind the hotel are teeming with stalls and hawkers selling noodles, congee and local dishes.

## Jinguan Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

(*Jinguan Jiudian*; 📞 8989 8882; fax 8989 8989; 6 Rongjiang Lu; 6 r ¥488; @📶) Reasonably priced with spacious rooms and helpful, English-speaking staff who can recommend reliable taxi drivers.

## LA Music Cafe *WESTERN* \$\$

(5 Rongjiang Lu; mains ¥35-158; 🕒 11am-2am; 📶) Just across the road from Jinguan Hotel is this gay-friendly bar with nice decor and a decent Western menu.

## Getting There & Away

### Bus

Shantou's **central bus station** (*Shantou zhongxingzhan*; Taishan Lu), **long-distance bus station** (*Shantou qiche zongzhan*; Huoche Lu) and **CTS bus station** (*Zhonglu Chezhan*; cnr Shangzhang Lu & Changping Lu) run regular services:

**Chaozhou** ¥17, one hour, every hour (8am to 6.10pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥150, six hours, around every hour (8am to 6.40pm)

**Meizhou** ¥35 to ¥98, 2½ hours, two daily (6.25am and 8.45pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥140, five hours, four daily (9.20am, 1pm, 2pm, 5pm)

### Minibus

Minibuses leave from a small office south of CTS station for:

**Chaozhou** ¥12, one hour, every hour (7am to 8pm)

**Meizhou** ¥45, three hours, every hour (8am to 5pm)

### Train

The station is 5km east of the city centre. **Chaozhou** ¥10 to ¥31, 30 minutes, three daily (8.50am, 12.40pm and 5.20pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥92 to ¥168, seven hours, two daily (8.50am and 12.40pm)

**Meizhou** ¥29, two hours, three daily (7.15am, 10.22am and 6.26pm)

---

## Meizhou

 0753 / POP 5 MILLION

Meizhou, populated by the Hakka (Kejia in Mandarin; 客家) people, is home to China's largest cluster of 'coiled dragon houses' or *weilongwu* (围龙屋). Specific to the Hakka, these are dwellings arranged in a horseshoe shape evocative of a dragon napping at the foot of a mountain. You'll also see *tulou* (roundhouses) dotting the fields like mysterious flying saucers, in addition to a jumble of architectural wonders.

## Sights

 **Hakka Museum** MUSEUM

(*Kejia Bowuguan*; *Dongshan Dadao*; ☀ 9am-5pm; 🚶 1, 6) This museum in Hakka Park (客家公园; Kejia Gongyuan) on the north bank of the Meijiang River is a good warm-up to the culture of Hakkaland. The park itself with its pebbled paths and willow-fringed ponds is a delight to stroll in.



## Tai'an Lou *HISTORIC SITE*

( *admission* ¥20) Further afield in Dapu County ( ), 70km east, is this three-storey square citadel, a cousin of the roundhouse. Built in 1764, it comprises four square brick and stone structures with 220 rooms, sitting northeast to southeast. Only eight families live here now.

## Chayang Old Town *TOWN*

( *Chayang Guzhen*) People still take long siestas in lazy Chayang, 27km from Dapu County. Its old streets ( ; *laojie*) with pillared arcades are nice to lose yourself in for a couple of hours. **Memorial Arch of the Father and Son Graduates** ( *Fuzi Jinshi Paifang; Dapu High School, Xueqian Jie*; , ), a granite edifice from 1610, stands, aptly, before a school. Ageing gracefully, **Xuan Villa** ( *Xuanlu; 115 Dahua Lu; 115* ), c 1936, was built by a Malaysian-Chinese who was a member of a secret society tied to Sun Yatsen. Parts of the building used to double up as air-raid shelters. If the owners let you in, you'll see tea fields from the roomy balconies.

## Nankou *HISTORIC SITES*

The quiet village of Nankou ( ), about 16km west of Meizhou, is where you'll see *weilongwu* ( ) dwellings nestled between paddy fields and the hills like dragons in repose. It's derelict, but interesting to wander around in, and there are a few formerly glorious dwellings that you can request to enter, if they're open.

Bus 9 from the **local bus terminal** ( *Shi Gonggong Qichezhan; cnr Meijiang Dadao & Xinzhong Lu*) and buses to Xingning ( ; ¥10, every 20 minutes) from the main bus station go to Nankou. Once you get off, walk 1km to the village entrance. The last bus back leaves at 4.30pm. A taxi ride costs around ¥35.

## Lianfang Lou *HISTORIC SITE*

( ) Hidden in a village near the town of Baigong ( ), 14km east of Meizhou, this magnificent three-storey mansion (c 1930s) owned by an Indonesian Hakka family has 100 rooms arranged around indoor courtyards lush with tropical greenery. Domes crown the roof garden;

balconies are guarded by mythical creatures of mixed pedigree. Following a recent theft, the family is wary of visitors, so ask politely to enter.

### **Hua'e Lou** HISTORIC SITE

( admission ¥10) The 400-year-old 'house of calyx', 33km east of Lianfang Lou and 20km south of Meizhou, is the largest circular earthen castle in Guangdong. It comes complete with three rings and stone walls more than 1m thick.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Ramada** HOTEL \$\$

( Huameida Jiudian; ☎ 611 3828; fax 611 3800; cnr Meiyuan Lu & Binfang Dadao; r ¥238-710, ste ¥810-2180; @📶) A solid hotel with large, comfortable rooms and helpful staff. The 8th floor is nonsmoking.

### **Chengde Lou** CHINESE HAKKA \$

( ☎ 233 1315; Fuqi Lu; mains ¥28-68) This restaurant inside a polished 19th-century Hakka house close to the airport excels in Hakka classics like salt-baked chicken (; *yanju ji*) and pork braised with preserved vegetables (; *meicai kourou*). The manager speaks English. A taxi here from the centre costs ¥12.

## **Getting There & Away**

### **Air**

Meizhou's airport, 9km south of town, has flights to Guangzhou (¥800, daily) and Hong Kong (¥1200, Monday and Friday). A taxi ride to town costs about ¥15.

### **Bus**

There are two bus stations: the **main bus station** ( *qiche zongzhan*;

*Meizhou Dadao*), north of the river, and **Jiangnan bus station** (*Jiangnan qichezhan; Binfang Dadao*) to the south. Most buses to Meizhou drop you off at the former.

**Chaozhou** ¥30, three hours, two daily (10.50am and 3.30pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥130, seven hours, 20 daily (6.50am to 11pm)

**Hong Kong** ¥90, six hours, three daily (7.40am, 10.05am and 2.40pm)

**Shantou** ¥60, three hours, 13 daily (8am to 5.20pm)

**Shenzhen** ¥26, two hours, three daily (7.15am, 10.22am and 6.26pm)

**Yongding** ¥40, three hours, two daily (6.30am and 4pm)

### Train

The train station, south of town, has three daily trains to Guangzhou (¥120, 12.56am, 1.12am and 12.38pm) and Yongding (¥18, 12.43am, 1.04am and 3.01am).

## **i** Getting Around

Bus 6 links the train station to both bus stations. Anywhere within the city by taxi should cost no more than ¥15.

Meizhou's main bus station has five buses daily to Chayang (¥21, 6.40am, 8.15am, 11.10am, 12.45pm and 2.10pm).

Apart from Nankou and Chayang, the sights listed here are scattered in different villages, and almost inaccessible by public transport. It makes more sense to hire a taxi for a day. Expect to pay about ¥400.



# Hainan

POP 8.8 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Haikou](#)

[Around Haikou](#)

[Central Highlands](#)

[Around Wuzhishan](#)

[The East Coast](#)

[Sanya](#)

---

## Why Go?

China's largest tropical island boasts all the balmy weather, coconut palms and gold-sand beaches you could ask for. Down at Sanya it's see-and-be-seen on the boardwalks or escape altogether at some of Asia's top luxury resorts. Thatched huts and banana pancakes haven't popped up anywhere yet, but there's a whiff of funkiness coming from the east coast beachside towns, and the budding surf scene is helping to spread the gospel of chill-out.

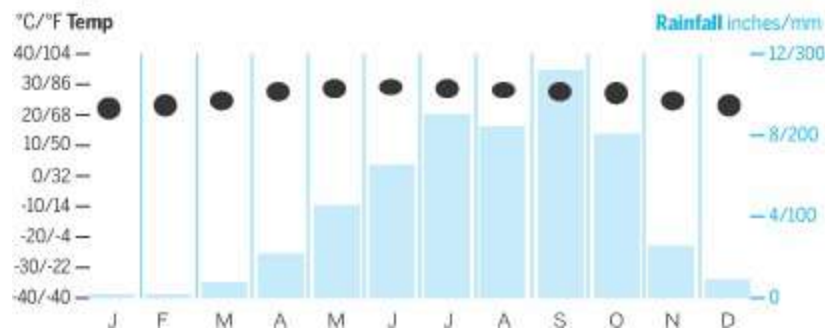
Money is pouring into Hainan ( ) these days to ramp up the luxury

quotient. You can cruise on the new high-speed rail, but cycling is still the better way to get around. When you've had enough of a lathering on the coast, the cool central highlands are an ideal place to be on two wheels. The good roads, knockout mountain views, and concentration of Li and Miao, the island's first settlers, give the region an appealing distinction from the lowlands.

---

## When to Go

### Sānyà



**Apr–Oct** The best months to grab a hotel bargain.

**Nov–Mar** The best time of the year for cycling.

**Nov–Jan** This is the prime surfing season.

---

## Best Beaches

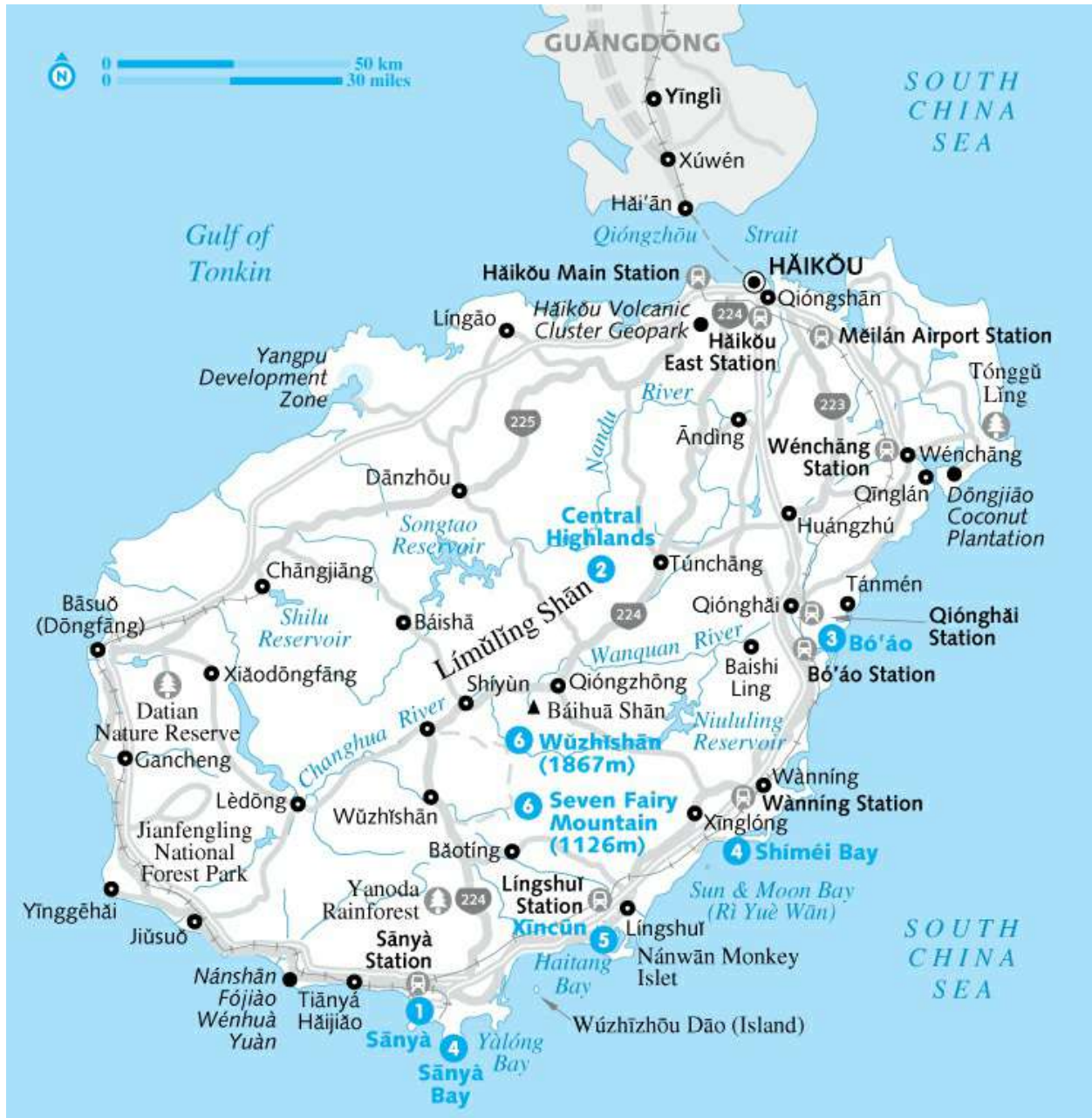
- » Sanya Bay ([Click here](#))
- » Yalong Bay ([Click here](#))
- » Bo'ao ([Click here](#))
- » Yue Liang Wan ([Click here](#))
- » Houhai ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Activities

- » Climb Wuzhishan & Seven Fairy Mountain ([Click here](#))
- » Cycle the Central Highlands ([Click here](#))
- » Explore Xincun fishing harbour ([Click here](#))

- » Wander through Hainan Museum ([Click here](#))
- » Visit Haikou Volcanic Cluster Geopark ([Click here](#))



## Hainan Highlights

- 1 Soak up the sun, sand and cocktails at **Sanya** ([Click here](#)), China's top beach resort
- 2 Cycle the **Central Highlands** ([Click here](#)), home of the Li and

Miao

- 3 Explore the traditional villages and empty beaches around **Bo'ao** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Surf China's best waves at **Sanya Bay** ([Click here](#)) and **Shimei Bay** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Wander a classic south seas fishing port at **Xincun** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Climb **Wuzhishan** ([Click here](#)) and **Seven Fairy Mountain** ([Click here](#)), the most famous peaks on Hainan
- 7 Enjoy **fresh seafood** at markets all over the island

## History

Until the economic boom of the last 30 years, Hainan had been a backwater of the Chinese empire since the first Han settlements appeared on the coast almost 2000 years ago. Largely ignored by a series of dynasties, Hainan was known as the 'tail of the dragon', 'the gate of hell', and a place best used as a repository for occasional high-profile exiles such as the poet Su Dongpo and the official Hai Rui.

More recently, China's first communist cell was formed here in the 1920s, and the island was heavily bombarded and then occupied by the Japanese during WWII. Li and Han Chinese guerrillas waged an effective campaign to harass the Japanese forces but the retaliation was brutal – the Japanese executed a third of the island's male population. Even today resentment over Japanese atrocities lingers among the younger generation.

In 1988 Hainan was taken away from Guangdong and established as its own province and Special Economic Zone (SEZ). After years of fits and starts, development is now focused on turning tropical Hainan into an 'international tourism island' by 2020. What this really means, besides developing every beach, and building more golf courses and mega-transport projects (such as a high-speed rail service round the island, a cruise ship terminal and even a space station), is not entirely clear.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

## Climate

The weather on Hainan is largely warm in autumn and winter, and hot and humid in spring and summer. The mountains are always cooler than the coast, and the north is cooler than the south. Hainan is hit by at least one typhoon a year, usually between May and October.

## Language

Hainanese is a broad term for the baker's dozen local dialects of Hainan Min (it's known by many other names), most of which are also spoken in Guangdong. While the Li and Miao can usually speak Mandarin, they prefer to use their own languages.



### Getting Around

Getting around most of Hainan is both cheap and easy. Haikou and Sanya are linked by three main highways: the eastern expressway along the coast (only 3½ hours by bus); the central and much slower highway via Wuzhishan; and the less popular western expressway. The main roads are great, bus services comfortable and departures regular.

A high-speed rail system runs from Haikou to Sanya along the east coast. Tickets cost only slightly more than buses, but most stations are not centrally located.



For cycling around Hainan, see the boxed text, [Click here](#).

## CYCLING HAINAN

Hainan is a great destination for recreational touring. You're rarely more than an hour from a village with food and water, and never more than a few hours from a town with a decent hotel. At the same time, you'll find most of your riding is out in nature or through pretty farming valleys, not urban sprawl. Preparation time for a tour can be minimal.

Some popular routes include the following:

**Haidian Island** – plenty of fishing villages and rural landscapes and so close to Haikou.

**North Coast** – ride alongside kilometre after kilometre of sand beaches and down side routes into the interior.

**Wenchang County** – ride 100km out to Dongjiao Coconut Plantation and spend the night at a quiet beachside cabin. The next day head to Tonggu Ling, one of Hainan's best undeveloped beaches.

The most popular multiday ride is the 250km journey from Haikou to Wuzhishan and on to Sanya. The highway has a good shoulder most of the way, and allows for endless side trips up small country roads and stops in tiny villages. After a day riding through the lush Tunchang County valley, the route climbs into some fine hill country around Shiyun (). The village, 32km southwest of Qiongzong (), sits on a grassy shelf above a river and is worth a look around. Local cyclists recommend the 42km side trip from here up a wooded canyon to Baisha (). The major towns in this area are Tunchang () and Qiongzong, the latter a major settlement for the Miao.

After Shiyun you can look forward to a long climb (at least 10km), followed by a long fast descent into Wuzhishan. If you are continuing on to Sanya, the road is one long, steep downhill after the turn-off to Baoting.

If you're not bringing your own wheels, you can rent decent-quality mountain bikes at the Haikou Banana Youth Hostel ([www.haikouhostel.com](http://www.haikouhostel.com)) for ¥50 a day. Check out the hostel's websites for detailed information on cycling Hainan. There's also a Giant Bicycles (☎ 6865 5598; [www.hncycling.com](http://www.hncycling.com); 26 Jinmao Xilu; 26 ) shop in Haikou that does rentals. It's worth noting that people in Hainan call bikes *danche*.

## Haikou

☎ 0898 / POP 724,000

Haikou means 'Mouth of the Sea', and while sea trade remains relatively important, the buzzing provincial capital at the northern tip of Hainan is most notable for its booming construction. New and

restarted projects are everywhere.

While poor in sights, Haikou makes a good base for exploring the north of the island. There are some decent beaches a short bike or bus ride away, the air is fresh and clean (though worsening yearly because of traffic), and some visitors find themselves quite satisfied just hanging out here for a few days.

Travellers tend to stay around Haikou Park or north of the river on Haidian Island ( Haidian Dao). These are both older, slightly run-down neighbourhoods (especially compared with the western sections of the city), but all your life-support systems, including banks, food and travel agents, can be found here.

To the northwest are the main railway station, port area and the city's beach zone. The main bus station and high-speed rail terminal are in the southeast of town. The airport is about 25km to the east.



## Haikou

 Sleeping

1 [Haikou Banana Youth Hostel](#) A1

2 [Hainan Minhang Binguan](#) A3

 Eating

3 [Carrefour](#) B3

4 [Haikou Qilou Snack Street](#) A2

 Drinking

5 [Red's Pub](#) B1

 Transport

## 6 [China Southern Airlines](#) A3

### **Sights & Activities**

A few kilometres west of the city centre is a long stretch of sandy beaches. Take bus 37 (¥2) from Ertong Park and get off anywhere; alternatively, rent a bike in town. Cycling Haidian Island is also rewarding; look for news of the completion of a network of routes out to reservoirs and the Haikou Volcanic Cluster Geopark.

## HAINAN FARE

There is a huge variety of Chinese cuisine available in Hainan. Fresh fruit and vegies are available everywhere, and, unlike much of China, they are grown under blue skies and in red soil mostly free from industrial contamination. There are myriad seafood dishes available, but most of them use imported or locally farmed fish and crustaceans.

Don't forget to try Hainan's own famous four dishes.

- » **Dongshan mutton** (; *dongshan yang*) A black-wool mountain goat fed came- llias and orchids, and stewed, roasted or cooked in coconut milk, or used in soups.
- » **Hele crab** (; *hele xie*) Juicy crab, usually steamed but also roasted, from Hele near Wanning; it's best eaten in autumn.
- » **Jiaji duck** (; *jiayi ya*) To-die-for roast duck from Jiaji (the alternative name for Qionghai).
- » **Wenchang chicken** (; *wenchang ji*) Most famous of all and originally cooked up in coastal Wenchang, this is succulent chicken raised on a diet of rice and peanuts.

### Hainan Museum MUSEUM

( Hainan Sheng Bowuguan; 68 Guoxing Dadao; 🕒 9am-5pm, closed Mon) This large complex of exhibition rooms should be your first stop when you arrive in Hainan. The displays on ethnic minorities, as well as Hainan's 20th-century history, which included fierce resistance against the Japanese and later Nationalists, are particularly informative (and in English, too!). Buses 43 and 48 from downtown stop outside the museum. A taxi will cost around ¥30.

### Five Officials Memorial Temple TEMPLE

( Wugong Ci; 169 Haifu Dadao; admission ¥20; 🕒 8am-6pm) This

Ming temple and surrounding gardens are dedicated to five officials who were banished to Hainan in earlier times. Famous Song dynasty poet, Su Dongpo, also banished to Hainan, is commemorated here as well.

## **Sleeping**

Unlike in the more seasonal Sanya, prices in Haikou tend to be greatly discounted from the published rates pretty much year-round. Only during major holidays might you get a rude shock.

Haikou Banana Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Haikou Banana Qingnian Lushe; 📍 6628 6780;

[www.haikouhostel.com](http://www.haikouhostel.com); 3 Dong, 6 Bieshu Liyuan Xiaoqu, 21 Renmin Dadao; 21 6 3 dm/s/tw/tr ¥45/80/120/150; 📶@📶)

The Banana's back. Back as one Hainan's best hostels that is, with good dorms, bright and spiffy en suite rooms (including a family room for ¥160), and a new menu at its patio restaurant (dishes ¥35-60; 🕒 8am-1pm & 6-9pm) that includes excellent pizza and other backpacker favourites. Hostel amenities include laundry, internet and common areas, as well as a super-informative bulletin board and website. Bicycle rentals range from day-trip beaters (per day ¥20) to solid Giant mountain bikes for multiday trips (per day ¥50; book in advance).

Golden Sea View Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Huangjin Haijing Da Jiudian; 📍 6851 9988;

[www.goldenhotel.com.cn](http://www.goldenhotel.com.cn); 67 Binhai Dajie; r from ¥825) With discounts of 40% to 50%, rooms in this well-run three-star hotel are priced similarly to those stuck deep in the city. The Sea View, however, sits across from a large park at the start of the beaches to the west of town. The hotel's revolving restaurant has excellent views over Haikou and the ocean, and is well regarded for its breakfast buffet.

Redbud Flower International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Zijing Hua Shu Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 3661 1352;

[zjhsyha@163.com](mailto:zjhsyha@163.com); 13 Bilin Ge, Ye Hai Shanzhuang, Jinmao Xilu; 13 dm/d ¥45/110; 📶@📶) Popular with Chinese backpackers, this hostel moved in the summer of 2012 from the south part of town to a more central location near the Xiuying Battery. There are dorms and ensuite

private rooms available (which include free breakfast and coffee), a restaurant and bar, rooftop terrace, laundry, help with bike rentals and tour routes, and a decent amount of English information on transport and things to do.

Hainan Minhang Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hainan Civil Aviation Hotel; 📍 6650 6888; [www.mhbghotel.com](http://www.mhbghotel.com); 9 Haixiu Donglu; r from ¥190; 📞📧) The hotel isn't setting any trends, but the inoffensive modern decor offers a cosy environment to unwind. There's an attached restaurant and coffee shop and the surrounding zone is loaded with cheap eateries and good hotel restaurants. As a bonus, the airport shuttle bus (¥15) starts and ends here.

## Eating

A lot of evening eating is done in the refreshingly cool outdoors on practically every major street. Haixiu Donglu between the Haikou Binguan and Hainan Minhang Binguan is chock-a-block full of cheap food stalls and fast-food joints. For a proper sit-down meal try the hotel restaurants around the park. The Banana Youth Hostel is the place for good Western favourites like pizza and breakfast.

On the corner of Haidian 3 Donglu and Renmin Dadao you'll find a stack of cafes, fruit stalls, supermarkets and restaurants with picture menus. Haidian 2 Donglu is one long row of barbecue stalls at night with tables set up from Renmin Dadao to Heping Dadao.

There's a Carrefour [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jialefu) on Haifu Dadao with a large selection of prepared and fresh goods; a second branch is across the road from the Milli Cafe.

Banqiao Road Seafood Market SEAFOOD MARKET \$\$

( Ban Qiao Lu Haixian Shi Chang; Banqiao Lu) For a fresh seafood dinner with lots of noise, smoke and toasting head to the hectare of tables at the Banqiao Road Seafood Market, known island-wide. It's best to go with a group; prices average ¥50 per person (not including beer). A taxi to the market from downtown costs ¥15.

Haikou Qilou Snack Street MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Haikou Qilou Xiao Jie; cnr Datong Lu & Jiefang Lu) The Haikou Qilou

is a veritable coliseum-sized food court with two floors, a large open interior and a stage where opera and other traditional performances are sometimes shown in the evening. Almost next door to the left is a more typical snack street winding down a covered lane. There are all manner of inexpensive things to munch on here: from shaved ice fruit plates to dumplings to corn on the cob to barbecued everything. The snack street ends oddly at a popular Buddhist shrine that fills the air with sweet incense.

## Drinking

Small stands selling lemon drinks and teas are plentiful. *Liangcha* (cool tea) is a little medicinal in taste but locals swear it helps cool the body's fires on a hot day. Heping Dadao, north of Haidian 2 Donglu, hosts a number of friendly bars, including Red's Pub [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), home of the Haikou Hash House Harriers.

Milli Cafe CAFE

( Mili Kafei; <http://millicafe.niwota.com>; 8 Jinlong Lu; 8 101 drinks ¥16-36; ☺ 10am-midnight; 📶📱) This stylish hang-out offers good coffee, free wireless internet and great desserts. The cafe is off Jinlong Lu just east of Yu Sha Lu and accessed by going through the central opening in the Jiahua Plaza. The only downside is that smoking is allowed indoors and it can get pretty thick at times.

## Information

The annually published *Hainan Island Guide Map* (¥6) has a good city map of Haikou, which includes a map of all of Hainan Island on the back in addition to smaller maps of Sanya and Bo'ao. **Xinhua Bookstore** ( |; Xinhua Shudian; 10 Jiefang Xilu; ☺ 9am-10pm) has good maps if you are biking.

Many cafes around Guomao and Jinlong Lu have wireless internet access. The **Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Datong Lu) changes money and travellers cheques. ATM outlets are plentiful around town.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Haikou's **Meilan Airport** ([www.mlairport.com](http://www.mlairport.com)) is well connected to most of China's major cities, including Hong Kong and Macau, with

international flights to Bangkok, Singapore, Kuala Lumpur and Taipei. Low-season one-way domestic fares are cheap. Destinations include Beijing (¥2250), Guangzhou (¥700) and Shanghai (¥1660).

#### Bus

Buses from Xiuying Harbour Station (; Haikou Xiuxinggang Keyun Zhan) run to Guangzhou (¥280, 10 hours, hourly) and Guilin (¥280, 15 hours, hourly).

The station is far to the west of town. Catch bus 37 from Ertong Park. A taxi costs about ¥25 from downtown.

Buses from the **south bus station** ( 32 Nanhai Dadao) go to:

**Qiongzong** ¥33, three hours, hourly buses via the central highway

**Sanya** ¥73, 3½ hours

**Wuzhishan** ¥75, four hours via the east highway, hourly

Buses from the **east bus station** ( 148 Haifu Lu) go to:

**Qionghai** ¥26, 1½ hours, frequent

**Wenchang** ¥19, 1½ hours, frequent services

**Sanya** ¥75, 3½ hours

#### Train

The main train station is far west of the city. Bus 37 (¥2) connects the train station and Ertong Park. Bus 40 (¥2) connects the southern part of the city with the train station.

Trains to/from Guangzhou (hard/soft sleeper ¥197/298, 12 hours, two daily at 8.42pm and 10.53pm) are shunted onto a ferry to cross the Qiongzhou Strait. Buy tickets (¥5 service fee) at the train station or from the dedicated counter in the **China Southern Airlines**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhongguo Nanfang Hangkong; 9 Haixiu Donglu) office.

#### High-speed train

Running from Haikou to Sanya via the east coast, the new high-speed rail stops in Haikou at the main train station (Haikou Railway Station) to the west of the city, the east train station (Haikou East Railway Station), and Meilan Airport. Note that many trains do not go all the way to Haikou Railway Station. Services:

**Qionghai** ¥41, one hour, irregular schedule

**Sanya** ¥90, two hours, frequent



## Getting Around

To/From the Airport

Meilan Airport is 25km southeast of the city centre. A shuttle bus (¥15, every 30 minutes) runs to/from Hainan Minhang Binyuan. A taxi costs around ¥80 (negotiated price) to downtown. The high-speed rail also has a stop at the airport.

Public Transport

Haikou's centre is easy to walk around. The bus system (¥1 to ¥2) is decent, though it often takes transfers to get around.

Taxi

Taxis charge ¥10 for the first 3km. They're easy to spot, but difficult to catch on large roads because of barriers.

## START YOUR DAY THE HAINAN WAY

Getting started in the morning with a decent and cheap breakfast is often a challenge in China. On Hainan, in nearly every city, town and hovel, look for a local institution called *laoba cha* where you can get fresh coffee (¥4 a pot), meat-filled buns (; *baozi*) and a host of sweet snacks. OK, healthwise it's not exactly muesli and yoghurt, but you can always supplement it with some fresh fruit picked up from the stall down the street.

*Laoba cha* are easily recognised by their large bare interiors, or in smaller towns by their outdoor seating (usually under shady trees). If you can't find one, just ask a local.

## Around Haikou

### HĀIKOU VOLCANIC CLUSTER GEOPARK

The geopark (Haikou Huoshanqun Shijie Dizhi Gongyuan) encompasses about 108 sq km of rural countryside in Shishan township and features dozens of extinct volcanoes, lava tunnels and even an abandoned village made of lava stones. Minibuses from Haikou will drop you off outside a spiffy tourist park (admission ¥60; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) that's worth a visit if you want to walk into a volcanic crater overgrown with lush vegetation.

From the park, catch a motorcycle taxi 2km to the Seventy-Two Cave Lava Tunnel Protected Area (), which is more commonly known

as Huoshan Dong (Volcanic Cave). The tunnel is several hundred metres long, about 20m wide and 15m high. While there isn't an official ticket booth outside, the local elders will ask you to pay ¥10, plus another ¥2 for a torch that will burn out long before you reach the end.

Just a few metres away from the trailhead to the tunnel entrance is Huoshan Cun (; Volcanic Village). The abandoned village is made entirely out of lava stones and is very photogenic. You may also be asked to pay to enter here.



#### Getting There & Away

The geopark is about 15km from Haikou. To get here, first take a taxi to the T-intersection of Xiuying Xiaojie and Xiuying Dadao () and then catch one of the frequent minibuses (¥4, 30 minutes) to Shishan County (; Shishan Zhen) from the bus stop on the far side of Xiuying Dadao.

A taxi to the park costs ¥60. Given the size of the area, and its proximity to Haikou, exploring by bicycle is best.

## DONGJIAO COCONUT PLANTATION

The coconut plantation (Dongjiao Yelin) takes up a big chunk of Wenchang County on the northeast coast. It's more like a large farming community than a single plantation, and the cool palm-lined lanes and traditional villages give the region a lot of character. Add in kilometres of long sandy beaches and you have a great place to hang out for a few days, exploring or relaxing. In the low season you'll have the beaches virtually to yourself unless a student group has shown up to conquer the land.

Accommodation is provided by a couple of resorts. The Hainan Prima Resort ( 📞 0898-6353 8222; [www.hainanprimaresort.com](http://www.hainanprimaresort.com); r/cabins from ¥289/498) has bare rooms, and comfortable one- and two-storey wood chalets priced by size and proximity to the beach. All signs, menus and instruction boards are in English, though the staff speak little English. If the Prima isn't your bag, wander into the nearby village, where locals offer homestays.



#### Getting There & Away

From Haikou's east station catch a high-speed train to Wenchang

(¥27, 30 minutes, hourly). Then catch bus 6 (¥2) to the Xinhua Chu Dian stop (about five minutes' ride), cross the street and catch a bus on to Jianhuashan (; ¥8.50), the last stop. The beach is just ahead through the gate of the Hainan Prima Resort.

## **TONGGU LING & YUE LIANG WAN**

Tonggu Ling is the name of a small mountain and nature reserve on the northeast coast just north of the Dongjiao Coconut Plantation. There are great views up and down the coast from the top, and to the north is the long gorgeous stretch of Yue Liang Wan's beach. There's no public transportation to the area but motorcycle rentals might be available in the village around the Hainan Prima Resort. If you cycle from the coconut plantation, expect to take around two hours. It's a pleasant ride through the rural backwaters of Hainan.

## **Central Highlands**

📍 0898

Hainan's reputation rests on its tropical beaches, but for many travellers it's in this region of dark green mountains and terraced rice-growing valleys that they make genuine contact with the island's culture.

Until recently, Han Chinese had left almost no footprint here, and even today visible signs of Chinese culture, such as temples or shrines, are very rarely seen. Instead, the region is predominantly Li and Miao – minority ethnic groups who have lived a relatively primitive subsistence existence for most of their time on the island. Indeed, groups of Li living as hunter-gatherers were found in the mountainous interior of Hainan as recently as the 1930s. Today, they are by far the poorest people on Hainan.

Travelling in the region is easy, as a decent bus system links major and minor towns. Most buses from Haikou reach Wuzhishan in a few hours via the east coast highway. If you want to ply the central highway, head first to Qiongzong and from there catch a bus onward to Wuzhishan.

Cycling is also a great way to get around this region – see boxed text, [Click here](#).

## WUZHISHAN CITY (TONGSHI)

Once called Tongzha or Tongshi, Wuzhishan Shi was renamed after the famous nearby mountain, the highest point on the island and a symbol of Hainan. Though the size of a large town, Wuzhishan is actually China's smallest city, having been given such status when it became the capital of the short-lived Li and Miao Autonomous Prefecture back in the 1980s.

Most travellers here are heading out to climb the mountain, or using the town as a base for exploring the region. Note that there's nowhere to change or withdraw money in Wuzhishan, so bring what you need. There's an internet cafe (per hr ¥2.50; 🕒 24hr) on the 2nd floor of the Jinyuan Dajjudian but you'll need Chinese ID to use it.

## THE LI & MIAO

Four main ethnic groups live on Hainan (though the government lists 39 in total). These include the first settlers of the island, the Li and Miao (H'mong), who today are found mostly in the forested areas covering the Limuling Shan (Mother of the Li Mountain) range that stretches down the centre of the island. The Li probably migrated to Hainan from Fujian 3000 years ago and today they number more than one million.

Despite a long history of rebellion against the Chinese, the Li aided communist guerrillas on the island during the war with the Japanese. Perhaps for this reason the island's centre was made an 'autonomous' region after the communist takeover. The region hereafter would be self-governing, giving the marginalised Li and Miao communities a degree of control. That situation, however, proved short-lived after newly empowered local politicians were done in for corruption and money-wasting.

Like the Li, the Miao spread from southern China and now can be found across northern Vietnam, Laos and Thailand. Today there are some 60,000 Miao living on Hainan, occupying some of the most rugged terrain on the island.

## Sleeping & Eating

There are cheap restaurants all around the bus station area, as well as countless fruit stalls, bakeries and cafes. Barbecue stalls are set up in the evenings all around town and, if you have a group, these are an excellent dining option. Off Buxing Jie, the wide riverside promenade with more than one kilometre of old spreading banyan trees, sit rows

of *laoba cha* (places selling coffee and snacks), teahouses and barbecue joints.

Holiday Inn of Jadeite Mountain City HOTEL \$\$

( Wuzhishan Feicui Shancheng Jiari Jiudian; 📍 8663 08888; 1 Shanzhuang Lu; s/d ¥298/368; 📶📶) The clean, bright upper-floor rooms command wide views over the town and nearby mountains. The spacious mezzanine-level restaurant (average dish ¥28-58, set meals ¥18-25; 🕒 7am-midnight) serves excellent Chinese food including a reasonably priced dim sum breakfast. To get here from the bus station, turn left as you exit and follow the road as it bends right with the river. The hotel is about 500m further down. Expect discounts of up to 40%.

Tong Shi Guo Ji Hotel HOTEL \$

( Tongshi Guoji Dajiudian; 📍 8663 3158; Haiyu Lu; d/tw ¥180/258) The larger 2nd-floor twins are cheap in the off season and offer more light and more open views than the doubles. The hotel is a few blocks down from Jinyuan Dajiudian, on the corner just as the road starts to swing to the right to follow the river. There are discounts of up to 60%.

Zhengzong Lanzhou Lamian NOODLES \$

( Authentic Lanzhou Noodles; Haiyu Lu; dishes ¥7-15; 🕒 6.30am-10pm) Just a few doors down from the Jinyuan Dajiudian, this Hui Muslim restaurant sells a wide range of cheap but excellent noodle and lamb dishes. Try the *ganbanmian* (; ¥8), a kind of stir-fried spaghetti bolognaise with hand-pulled noodles.



#### Getting There & Away

Buses from Wuzhishan include the following:

**Baoting** ¥9, 40 minutes, hourly

**Haikou** ¥86, four hours, seven daily

**Qiongzong** ¥28, two hours, hourly

**Sanya** ¥23, 1½ hours, frequent

**Shuiman** ¥8, one hour, hourly

## Around Wuzhishan

## **WUZHISHAN (FIVE FINGER MOUNTAIN)**

The mountain (admission ¥50; ☺ 24hr) after which Wuzhishan is named rises 1867m out of the centre of Hainan in a reserve 30km northeast of the city. As the highest peak in the land, it's naturally steeped in local lore: the five peaks, for example, are said to represent the Li people's five most powerful gods. Despite the name, however, from most angles the summit looks like a single volcanic peak or a cleft hoof.

The reserve is the source of the Wanquan ( ) and Changhua ( ) rivers and protects a mixed forest containing 6.5% of all vascular plant species in China. It's a rich (though threatened) ecosystem and receives the highest rainfall in Hainan. A *verage* humidity is more than 90% and the mountaintop is often shrouded in fog and mist.

It's pretty much an all-day event to get out here and climb the mountain, so leave as early as possible if you hope to enjoy clear views from the peak. Most people can reach the top of the first finger (the second is highest) in three hours. The path is clear but very steep and includes a number of ladder climbs further up. Coming down is not much faster than going up, so give yourself six to eight hours.

Wuzhishan sits about 4km from the village of Shuiman ( ). There is no fixed schedule to Shuiman but buses (¥8, one hour, 35km) run about every hour. In Wuzhishan, buy your ticket on the bus, which leaves across the street from the station front. Make sure to get a bus going to Shuiman via Nansheng.

In Shuiman, motorcycle taxis will take you the remaining 4km for ¥15. The last bus back to Wuzhishan leaves Shuiman around 6pm.

## **QIXIAN LING (SEVEN FAIRY MOUNTAIN)**

About 39km southeast of Wuzhishan lies the small and conspicuously orderly Li town of Baoting ( ). While that orderliness may strike you as noteworthy after a few weeks spent travelling in China, the main reason to come here is to climb the 1126m Seven Fairy Mountain (Qi Xian Ling), comprising an eye-catching ridge of jagged spearlike crags. The area is perhaps more famous among Chinese, however, for the hot-spring resorts popping up in the tropical forest.

The mountain entrance and hot springs area are 9km off the main

road from Baoting in what is ostensibly now a national hot springs and forest park ( Qi Xian Ling Wenquan Guojia Senlin Gongyuan; admission ¥48). Tickets to climb the Seven Fairy Mountain can be purchased at the new national park office at the start of the 2.4km long trail. It's three hours to the top and back along a stepped path through a dense, healthy rainforest buzzing with bird and insect life. The final 100m climb to the peak runs up a pitted slope with chains and railings in place to aid your near-vertical climb. The views from the top are worth the effort.

There are frequent buses to Baoting from Wuzhishan (¥9, 40 minutes) and also Sanya (¥22, 1½ hours). From Baoting's bus station, catch a motorcycle to the national park entrance (¥30). Make sure not to catch a motorcycle with a side car as they lack the power to make it the last 4km from the hot springs area up to the trailhead.

If you want to spend the night in Baoting, Jin Zhou Du Jia Xiuxian Binguan ( 📞 0898-8366 3888; tw from ¥130) has surprisingly comfortable modern rooms with great extras like wide-screen TVs and computers with broadband internet. The hotel is literally to the right of the bus station as you exit.

## The East Coast

📞 0898

Hainan's east coast is a series of spectacular palm-lined beaches, long bays and headlands most of which are, unfortunately, not usually visible from the main roads, not even at bicycle level. With the best beaches developed or being developed, there is little reason to make a special trip out here (to Bo'ao being the exception) unless you are surfing or wish to stay at a resort. Biking or motorcycling is another story, however, as there are endless small villages and rural roads to explore and even a few near-deserted bays.

In the past, the east coast was the centre of Han settlement. If you are coming from the highlands you will start to notice temples, gravesites, shrines and other signs of Chinese culture dotting the landscape.

### BO'AO

This attractive little coastal town at the confluence of three rivers is famous as the site of the Bo'ao Forum for Asia (BFA), a yearly meet-up of top-level officials, academics and economists exclusively from the Asia region. For cyclists, Bo'ao is a natural stop along the coast, offering good accommodation and food. For all travellers, it's an unpretentious little beach town (with a usually deserted beach), surrounded by some of the prettiest countryside on Hainan.

Like much of Hainan or China for that matter, during the past few years Bo'ao has been under the spell of the construction fairy, and in the north of town luxury villas and resorts continue to pop up. Officially Bo'ao is starting to cover a large area, but the 'downtown' blocks, where most travellers both stay and eat are tiny, in essence being two streets that intersect at a T-junction: Haibin Lu ( ) runs north–south and Zhaobo Lu ( ) runs east–west. The beach is a five-minute walk from here.

Avoid planning a trip to Bo'ao either during the forum or the week before as the town is pretty much closed off under the scrutiny of high-level security (there are even warships in the harbour).

## Sights & Activities

Despite hosting the BFA every year, and despite over-construction giving parts of town the look of a small Dubai, Bo'ao is still a rather rural place. Even a few blocks from the main junction are small villages of stone and brick buildings where locals dry rice in the middle of the lanes, and burn incense in small shrines to their local folk deities. Some good examples are Da Lu Po Village ( ; Da Lu Po Cun) and Nanqiang Village ( ; Nanqiang Cun) off the main road about 2km west of the downtown junction. About 20km northeast of Bo'ao look for the little fishing village of Tanmen ( ), where the local multicoloured wooden junks are made and repaired.

### Beaches BEACHES

Bo'ao's beach is a few hundred metres east of the main road. Head south down Haibin Lu, turn left at the Jinjiang Hot Spring Hotel and follow the road as it swings right to drop you off at a Matsu Temple. The river hits the sea here and a long thin sandbar at the mouth is for very dubious reasons (go ahead and ask the locals) a popular place to



boat out to.

If you plan to swim, head at least 500m north to avoid dangerous currents.

### Cai Family Former Residence HISTORIC SITE

( Caijia Zhai) For a rewarding half-day trip, grab a bike, or rent a motorcycle taxi (¥60), and head to this sprawling old mansion built in 1934 by several brothers who made their fortune in the Indonesian rubber industry. The building was abandoned in 1937 after the Japanese invaded Hainan, and later became a guerrilla outpost for resistance fighters. In 2006 it was declared a heritage site and these days you can wander around inside for a look if the caretaker is about.

To reach the house, head west out of town and when the road ends at a junction turn left (south) and cross two long bridges. Head right after crossing the second bridge at the English sign. In a couple of blocks stay left and enjoy a sumptuous ride through green fields and collections of handsome old and new houses alongside the road.

### Courtyard of Eastern Culture MONASTERY

( Dongfang Wenhuyuan) This modern Buddhist temple complex is not being maintained well, and the excellent Lotus Museum seems permanently closed, but it's still worth a visit to see the enormous statue of the many-armed and many-headed Guanyin, the stunning pagoda, and the views over the delta which show just how pretty and rural Bo'ao can still be.

A motorcycle taxi costs ¥10 from the centre of Bo'ao. You can easily walk back and take in some of the traditional villages along the way.

## Sleeping



Bo'ao Inn B&B \$\$

( Bo'ao Kezhan; 📞 138 7627 1007; [www.hainan-letsgo.com](http://www.hainan-letsgo.com); r incl breakfast from ¥395; 🌐📶) The owner of this great little inn, an American expat, started it in part just to meet more travellers. So expect to be treated like family during your stay and to be doted on and plied with homemade meals and fresh-baked goodies (her banana bread is fantastic and becoming the stuff of backpacker legend). The inn offers tours to Miao villages and bicycle rentals for

local rides (with an accompanying map), and has arrangements with a local motorcycle taxi driver to take you to the sights around town at fixed rates. Reservations must be made in advance.

### Hai Jing Wan Hotel HOTEL \$

( Haijing Wan Bilingual; 📞 6277 9558; r ¥90-130) Just 150m west of the main junction in town is this friendly family-run hotel with large rooms facing towards the sea and river, and more boxy offerings with little to no natural light. Staff tend to steer foreigners to the large topmost room, the priciest but also the best of the lot.

## Eating

Because of its international status as the site of the BFA, the town has a good range of Chinese restaurants dedicated to regional cuisine (Hui Muslim, Hunan and Sichuan are just the start; dishes ¥8 to ¥60) as well as plenty of barbecue stalls that set up in the evenings. You'll see English signs out the front and even some English or picture menus within. On the main streets there are grocery stores, and abundant fruit stands.

Around 4pm each day head north about 150m from the main intersection on Haibin Lu and look for stalls on either side of the road near the Hainan Bank selling succulent Jiaji duck (¥10 for a leg), a Hainan speciality. Don't be tardy as it sells out quickly.

### Colourful Noodles VEGETARIAN \$

( Qicai Mianguan; Zhaobo Lu; dishes ¥13-15; 🕒 8am-late; 📞📍)

Though a few meat dishes are on offer at this warm family-run place, it's otherwise a true vegetarian set-up serving veggie-flavoured noodle dishes, as well as dumplings, fresh fruit and juices. To get here head west along Zhaobo Lu almost to the end of the two-storey row of whitewashed buildings.



### Sea Story SEAFOOD, CAFE \$\$

( Haide Gushi; dishes ¥18-38; 🕒 9.30am-1am; 📞📍) The ocean-facing Sea Story has an open driftwood frame with a funky beachcomber design: an old wood fishing junk even sits as the centrepiece inside the lobby. Outside, the breezy deck is an ideal spot for cocktails or an extended lunch or dinner. Loud music, karaoke and other intrusive

noises or activities are banned. Sea Story is about 1km north from the Matsu Temple along the seaside lane.

Aozhuang Haixian Cheng SEAFOOD \$\$

() For seafood, head north out of town to this collection of seaside cafes, which are famous across the island. Just choose and then point to what you want cooked up but make sure to ask the price before sitting down. Restaurants open around 9.30am and close when the last customers leave. You can walk here on the main road, or better yet along the seaside lane starting at the Matsu Temple, in about 30 minutes.

### Drinking

Lao Wood Coffee Rest Area CAFE

( Lao Fangzi; 61 Haibin Lu; drinks from ¥18, ☺ 9am-2am; 📶) The owner of this cafe, a local dancer and art administrator, literally had an old traditional stone house taken apart and reassembled on Bo'ao's main street to make his dream of opening a stylish cafe come true. The inside is chock-full of antiques and *objets d'art*, while out the back is a small leafy garden.

### Information

You can buy high-speed train tickets from Yuantong International Travel Agency (64 Haibin Lu; ☺ 8am-10pm) about 200m north of the main intersection across from an ABC Bank. In the same area is a Bank of China (; Zhongguo Yinhang) with an ATM. A decent map of the Bo'ao area can be found at the bottom of the general Hainan Tourism Guide Map.

WORTH A TRIP

## THE COLOURFUL FISHING PORT OF XINCUN

This classic south seas fishing port (; Xincun) is one of the most authentic, and authentically picturesque, destinations on Hainan. Among the hubbub, the clutter, the filth and the flotsam of a typical fishing port float hundreds of painted wooden ships in a deep blue tropical bay ringed with emerald green hills. Fish dry on the docks, women weave nets, men weld old scraps of metal together, and a whole community thrives, including the hundreds of families who

live on permanent floating houseboats across the bay.

Most people come to this area simply to see the rather dull Nanwan Monkey Islet (; Nanwan Houdao) across the bay and reached by China's longest gondola (¥163; ☺ 8am-4.50pm, last gondola 4.20pm). Some 1000 macaque monkeys (*Macaca mulatta*) live on the hilly islet, and while most of the area is now off limits to tourists, monkeys are still made to perform for visitors, are said to be beaten by staff and show clear signs of stress.

If you just want to see the monkeys and ride the gondola the best way is to go on a tour from Sanya. Otherwise, to visit the fishing port, catch a bus from Sanya to Lingshui (; ¥18, 1½ hours, 79km, hourly). In Lingshui, after leaving the station's main exit, cross the road and head right. Walk a few blocks and catch a minibus in front of the Bank of China to Xincun (¥3, 40 minutes). In Xincun, catch a motorcycle taxi or walk the 1km to the harbour.



Getting There & Away

## HIGH-SPEED TRAIN

The nearest station to Bo'ao is actually Qionghai and from there you'll need to catch a taxi (¥40) the rest of the way. Alternatively, catch bus 6 or 7 outside the rail station to Qionghai East Station () and then follow the directions below.

**Sanya** ¥49, one hour, hourly

**Haikou** ¥41, one hour, hourly

## BUS

From Haikou's east bus station catch a bus to the main station in Qionghai (; ¥26, 1½ hours, 102km) then cross the street to the Kentucky Fried Chicken side, and look for the bus stop just down the road to the left. Catch minibus 2 to Bo'ao (¥4, 30 minutes, frequent). Passengers get dropped off at the main junction in Bo'ao.

## SHIMEI BAY & SUN & MOON BAY

Shimei Bay (Shimei Wan) and Sun and Moon Bay (Ri Yue Wan) are among the most stunning stretches of coastline on Hainan.

Development of major resorts is proceeding apace but the beaches

are still open to the public and offer some of China's best surfing waves, especially from November to January (see boxed text, [Click here](#)). Some hostels and hotels in Sanya offer day trips to the bays and you can ride out to them if you are biking the east coast.

## Sanya

📍 0898 / POP 685,400

China's premier beach community is a modern construction in every way – which makes the claim that it is the Hawaii of China a little suspect. Certainly, if you are hoping to be charmed by an indigenous culture closely tied to the sea – in addition to enjoying your beer, golden sand beaches and clear tropical blue waters, of course – you will be a bit disappointed. Sanya is built just for fun.

While the full 40km or so of coastline dedicated to tourism is usually referred to as Sanya, the region is actually made up of three distinct zones. Sanya Bay is home to the bustling city centre and a long stretch of beach and hotels aimed at locals and mainland holidaymakers. Dadonghai Bay, about 3km southeast, beyond the Luhuitou Peninsula, is where most Western travellers stay. In fact, it receives such a steady influx of Russian vacationers these days that almost all signs are in Cyrillic as well as Chinese. A further 15km east, at exclusive Yalong Bay, the beach is first-rate, as is the line of plush international resorts.

You'll find the bus station in the Sanya Bay area on Jiefang Lu, the main drag. This road morphs into Yuya Lu as it heads into Dadonghai Bay and Yalong Bay. The *Sanya Tour Guide* map (¥6) is worth buying from hostels and hotels to get an overview of the area. Also check out the What's On Sanya website ([www.whatsonsanya.com](http://www.whatsonsanya.com)) for events, as well as eating and drinking recommendations.

## Sānyà



### Sanya

#### Sleeping

- 1 [Blue Sky International Youth Hostel](#) B1
- 2 [Golden Beach Villa](#) C2
- 3 [Resort Intime](#) B2
- 4 [Sanya Backpackers](#) B1
- 5 [Sanya Luxiang Shangwu Zhongxin](#) B1

#### Eating

- 6 [Casa Mia Italian Restaurant](#) B1

#### Transport

- 7 [Air Ticket Office](#) D1

## Sights & Activities

Unsurprisingly for a beach resort, the vast majority of things to see and do revolve around sand, sea, shopping and after-hours entertainment. Strolling along the riverfronts is pleasant in the cool evenings. Banyan trees shade the boulevards, healthy looking mangroves line the shore, and a modern glitzy skyline dominates the background.

If you want to scuba or snorkel, May to August, before typhoon season, is the best time though locals will tell you honestly that there

is not that much to see in the water. Surfing is possible all year round if you alternate between Dadonghai, Houhai and nearby Sun and Moon Bay.

## Beaches BEACHES

The long sandy strip off the city centre at Sanya Bay (; Sanya Wan) is the most relaxed of the three main beaches, and the one place you will really see people kicking back, laughing, playing and having a beachy old time. In little covered areas you'll find locals playing music, singing, engaged in conspiracy, writing characters in the sand, and so on. There's a long pathway for strolling in the cool evenings, and if the tide is out a little you can walk on the sand for many kilometres. In the evenings it's fun to watch the lights on Phoenix Island (the awesome cruise ship terminal) turn on.

Dadonghai Bay (; Dadonghai Wan) sports a wider beach than Sanya and has a shaded boardwalk running along most of its length. The setting, in a deep blue bay with rocky headlands, is simply gorgeous but it does get busy here, and sometimes people do seem to be trying just a little too hard to enjoy themselves.

Some consider Yalong Bay ( Yalong Wan; Asian Dragon Bay) to have the best beach but it can seem the least relaxing of all with a lot of frenetic activity.

Both Dadonghai and Yalong Bays offer a wide range of activities, including jet-skiing, snorkelling and parasailing, but instruction is usually substandard and lifeguards on duty are not properly trained and may be of little use in an emergency. See Sanya Backpackers for scuba lessons and rentals and also surfing.

Houhai (), a crescent-shaped sandy beach about 45 minutes northeast out of Dadonghai, is popular with those looking to get away from the crowds (though ironically it lies in the southern reach of Haitang Bay where the scale of development must be seen to be believed). Sanya-based hostels take people here to surf and scuba while Chinese tourists are shuttled to the pier for a boat ride out to Wuzhizhou Dao (Island). Bus 28 from the main road in Dadonghai (¥11) takes you to the beach. There's a small village here with plenty of small restaurants and fruit stands.

## HITTING THE WAVES ON HAINAN

Surfing is slowly gaining a following in China, and Hainan is without question the centre of that budding scene. While the majority of people out on the waters are still Westerners, the number of Chinese trying the sport grows each year. Conditions are never going to make this the next Indonesia, as surf shop owner Brendon Sheradon says, but every level, from beginner to advanced, can find suitable waves. In recognition of the growing interest, two annual competitions are now held each year in the Shimei Bay and Sun and Moon Bay area ([Click here](#)): the Hainan Surf Open, in November, organised by Sheradon's Surfing Hainan (Chonglang Hainan; [www.surfinghainan.com](http://www.surfinghainan.com)); and the Hainan Classic, in January, sponsored by ASP (the Association of Surfing Professionals).

If you want to try your hand at the sport, Dadonghai and Houhai get decent waves from May to September and are suitable for absolute novices (especially quiet Houhai). Shimei Bay/Sun and Moon Bay are prime from November to January but it's possible to surf all year. With up to five breaks, the area is suitable for all levels; advanced surfers can try their luck on the Ghost Hotel waves. Unlike further south, Shimei Bay and Sun and Moon Bay get a bit chilly and overcast in the winter months, so light wetsuits are recommended.

You can find rentals and basic lessons in Sanya at Sanya Backpackers [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ([www.sanyabackpackers.com](http://www.sanyabackpackers.com)), but if you want professional instructions contact Surfing Hainan, which offers two-hour lessons for ¥400 and rentals for ¥100 per day. It also has wetsuits for rent at ¥50 per day.

## Sleeping

Dadonghai Bay is the place to head for midrange and budget lodgings. The top-end resorts are off the beach at Yalong Bay in a private area of palm-lined roads and landscaped grounds. Outside peak periods 30% to 60% discounts are common everywhere and even hostel bed prices fluctuate with the season and the midweek/weekend divide.

## DADONGHĀI



Sanya Backpackers HOSTEL \$

( Sanya Beibao Dujia Wu; 📞 8821 3963; [www.sanyabackpackers.com](http://www.sanyabackpackers.com); No 1 Type 1 Villa, Lu Ming Community, Haihua Lu, Dadonghai Bay; dm ¥75, d/tw ¥280/220; 📶@📶) Run by a Singaporean diving instructor and his charming wife, this spick-and-span hostel is a more intimate and friendly place than others in town. Set in a whitewashed building in a quiet residential compound it's also



an oasis. Simple backpacker dishes are available, and there's a new bar for hanging out in the evenings. In addition to open water certification and refresher courses (per day ¥500 including lunch and transport), the hostel offers surfing lessons and rentals (per day ¥380) and some customised trips out to waterfalls and jungle hiking trails.

Resort Intime RESORT \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xiangtou Yintai Dujia Jiudian; 📞 8821 0888; [www.resortintime.com](http://www.resortintime.com); Dadonghai Bay; r from ¥1688; 🚗🌐📶📺) It feels a bit like you are entering a busy bus terminal when you walk in the lobby and head up the elevator to reception, but that's about the only thing pedestrian about this great little resort that's right by the beach. The hotel grounds are surprisingly large and leafy, and feature a barbecue area near the pool. The rooms aren't the most spacious but those with sea views are set at a perfect angle to take in the bay. Nonsmoking floors are available.

Blue Sky International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lantian Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 133 2209 8659; [www.sanyahostel.com](http://www.sanyahostel.com); 1 Lanhai Alley, Haiyun Lu, Dadonghai Bay; dm ¥60-70, tw/d ¥190/220; 📶) This long-running backpacker hang-out in Dadonghai is a bit impersonal but well set up for foreign travellers. There's wi-fi, bike rentals, laundry and an informative bulletin board, as well as a decent restaurant (when it's open). The hostel is in a lane running off to the left just past the fruit stands as you head down Haiyun Lu.

Golden Beach Villa HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jin Shatan Haijing Dujia Bieshu; 📞 8821 2220; [www.jinshatan888.com](http://www.jinshatan888.com); 21 Haihua Lu; r from ¥1088; 🌐) Despite the address, the front office and the suites are actually on Donghai Lu facing the beach. Rooms, which are enclosed in a walled-off garden, face the sea, and the upper floors have excellent views. Despite being so close to the seaside action this is a fairly quiet part of Dadonghai.

Sanya Luxiang Shangwu Zhongxin GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 8822 4771; 17 Lulin Lu; r ¥100; 📶📶 ) There are many grubby guesthouses in the high-rises around Dadonghai, which makes this place, with its clean modern rooms set in a bright garden villa, such a great deal. There's no English name but look for the English sign at the front gate announcing there are rooms inside.

## LOVER'S BAY

With prices rising in Dadonghai, hostels are starting to pop up outside the busy areas. Most are too far out to be recommended, but on the west side of Luhuitou Cape sits Lover's Bay ( Qingren Wan), a quiet fishing village with a row of low-rise hostels, open-air restaurants and guesthouses, literally spilling back from the edge of the sand. You can swim in the bay here but you need to wear sandals in the water because of shells.

Lover Bay Beach Cafe Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Qingren Wan Shatan Dujia Wu; 📍 8883 8855; <http://loverbayhostel.taobao.com>; 175 Luhuitou Village; 175 , dm/tw ¥60/220; 📶📶 ) Run by a friendly English-speaking former Shanghainese, this beachfront hostel has clean basic dorms and private rooms. Simple hostel foods are available or you can prepare your own in the kitchen. A stone's throw away are a number of outdoor seafood and Chinese restaurants. Contact the owner about getting to the hostel the first time as it's a bit tricky.

## Eating

The entire beachfront at Dadonghai is one long strip of restaurants, bars and cafes, most of which are overpriced and not terribly good, even if the overall atmosphere is cool, shady and scenic.

Haihua Lu is lined with restaurants featuring outdoor seating for barbecue and seafood at night, while in the alley leading to the Blue Sky hostel look for inexpensive dumpling shops and barbecue, also at night.

Hong Shao Ma Tou SEAFOOD \$\$\$

( ) The floating seafood restaurants at Hong Shao Ma Tou won't be to everyone's taste, but if you enjoy a rustic, loud, convivial atmosphere when you eat then take bus 17 (¥1) from Yuya Lu in Dadonghai to the

last stop. Around the corner you'll find a row of wooden junks ready to take you out to the floating restaurant base just a few hundred metres offshore. Make sure you agree on the fixed price for your set of seafood dishes (usually under ¥100 per person) before you start eating.

### Li Guo Canting HAINAN \$\$

( Wenming Lu, Sanya; ☎ 8825 9099; dishes ¥20-40; 🕒 11am-8.30pm) This well-established local restaurant serves excellent Hainan fare such as Wenchang chicken (; *Wenchang ji*; per *jin* ¥40, good for one or two people). Also try its *tieban niurou* (; beef on a hot plate). It's best to take a taxi here as it's hard to find on your own.

### Casa Mia Italian Restaurant ITALIAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kasa Miya Yidali Canting; 15 Lulin Lu; mains ¥48-78; 📶📺) This branch of a long-running Sanya Bay restaurant serves top-of-the-line Italian dishes such as pastas, raviolis, pizzas and appetisers. There's a decent wine list to help make a visit here a long lunch or evening out.

## Drinking

Most of the after-hours fun is in Sanya and Dadonghai Bay. There's a bar and karaoke TV (KTV) street on Yuya Lu near the river.

 Bud CAFE, BAR

( Zaomiao Yanshao; [www.syzaomiao.com](http://www.syzaomiao.com); 11f Shengshixindi Bldg, cnr Sanyawan Lu & Jixiang Lu, Sanya; drinks from ¥25; 🕒 1pm-1am) Overlooking Sanya Bay from its inimitable rooftop location, Bud serves fruit drinks, teas, coffees and alcoholic drinks (also light meals). Enter to the left of the shop with the sign 'Mu Wu Health Preservation Center'.

## Information

There is the full gamut of internet cafes (Chinese ID needed), banks, travel agencies etc in Sanya city as well as Dadonghai Bay. Wi-fi is widely available in restaurants and cafes. The **Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Yuya Lu) in Dadonghai changes travellers cheques and has an ATM.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Sanya's **Phoenix Airport** ([www.sanyaairport.com](http://www.sanyaairport.com)) has international flights to Singapore, Hong Kong, Malaysia, Thailand, Taiwan and Japan, as well as to Beijing (¥2310), Guangzhou (¥800) and Shanghai (¥1890).

### Bus

Frequent buses and minibuses to most parts of Hainan depart from the **long-distance bus station** (Sanya qichezhan; Jiefang Lu, Sanya).

**Baoting** ¥22, 1½ hours, hourly

**Haikou** ¥75, 3½ hours, regular services

**Lingshui** ¥18, 1½ hours, hourly

**Wanning** ¥30, two hours, hourly

**Wuzhishan** ¥23, two hours, regular services

### High-Speed train

Tickets can be purchased in Dadonghai from the **air ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Yuya Lu) two bus stops east of Summer Mall (the stop is called Bayi Zhongxue). You can also order tickets online (at least a week in advance) from **Apple Travel** ([www.appletravel.cn/china-trains](http://www.appletravel.cn/china-trains)).

**Haikou** ¥90, two hours, frequent

**Qionghai** ¥49 one hour, hourly

## Getting Around

Phoenix Airport is 25km from Dadonghai Bay. Shuttle bus 8 (¥5, one hour) leaves for the airport from Yuya Lu. A taxi costs ¥60 to ¥70. The high-speed train station is far out of town. Bus 4 (¥1) runs there from Dadonghai but takes over an hour. A taxi will cost ¥40 for a 20-minute ride.

Buses 2 and 8 (¥1, frequent) travel from Sanya bus station to Dadonghai Bay.

From Dadonghai Bay to Yalong Bay, catch bus 15 (¥5).

Taxis charge ¥8 for the first 2km. A taxi from Sanya to Dadonghai Bay costs ¥10 to ¥15, and from Dadonghai Bay to Yalong Bay it's ¥60.



# Guangxi

POP 50 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Guilin](#)

[Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces](#)

[Sanjiang](#)

[Yangshuo](#)

[Huangyao](#)

[Nanning](#)

[Yangmei](#)

[Beihai](#)

[Weizhou](#)

[Zuo River Scenic Area](#)

[Pingxiang](#)

[Detian Waterfall](#)

[Mingshi Tianyuan](#)

[Leye](#)

---

## Why Go?

Tell someone you're heading to Guangxi ( ) and they'll seethe with envy. The star attraction is the karst scenery in Guilin and Yangshuo, where travellers can venture by bicycle or hike through lush valleys. It's hard not to fall for this achingly beautiful province, which offers endless rewards for those with an outdoors temperament.

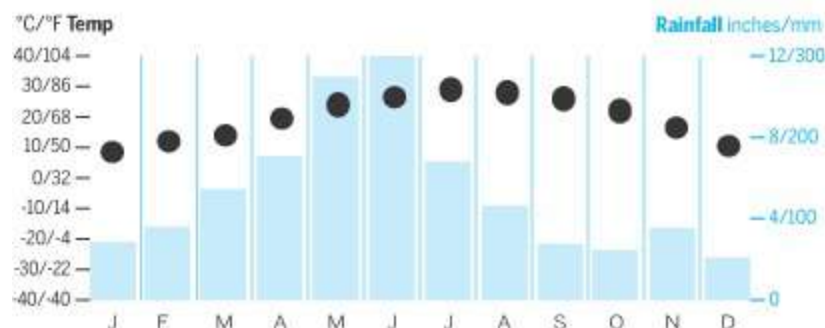
Expect the mighty rush of the Detian Waterfall, and the marvellous Chengyang Wind and Rain Bridge, to dazzle you. A trek through the villages of the lofty Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces gives you a glimpse into the distinct traditions of diverse minority groups like the Zhuang, Yao and Dong.

Less-active travellers can discover the 2000-year-old Huashan cliff murals in a peaceful boat journey on the Zuo River; or simply wander along the quaint old settlements in Beihai and savour their wonderful human landscape.

---

## When to Go

### Guilin



**Apr & May** The karst scenery in Guilin and Yangshuo turns lushly green.

**Jun–Sep** Summer rains give the fields on Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces full sparkle.

**Sep & Oct** The cool gulf breeze caresses as you stroll on Weizhou Island.

---

## Best Non-Karst Sights

- » Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces ([Click here](#))
- » Huangyao ([Click here](#))

- » Detian Waterfall ([Click here](#))
- » Chengyang Wind and Rain Bridge ([Click here](#))

## Best Mountain Scenery

- » Yangshuo ([Click here](#))
- » Xingping ([Click here](#))
- » Mingshi Tianyuan ([Click here](#))
- » Leye ([Click here](#))



## Guangxi Highlights

- 1 Lose yourself among the dramatic limestone scenery when cycling alongside the Yulong River in **Yangshuo** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Trek through China's most spectacular highland vistas at **Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Hike, bike or climb around **Xingping** ([Click here](#)), and enjoy a taste of Yangshuo circa 15 years ago

- 4 Admire the striking **Chengyang Wind and Rain Bridge** ([Click here](#)) near Sanjiang and experience the rural pleasure around nearby paddies
- 5 Feel the spray of the **Detian Waterfall** ([Click here](#)) before village-hopping to rustic **Mingshi Tianyuan** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Enjoy the boat journey from Panlong to the 2000-year-old **Huashan cliff murals** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Gawp at the mist-covered, yawning chasm of the sky pits at **Leye** ([Click here](#))

## History

In 214 BC a Qin-dynasty army attempted to assimilate the Zhuang people, living in what is now called Guangxi, into their newly formed Chinese empire. But while the eastern and southern parts submitted, the western extremes remained largely controlled by hill-tribe chieftains.

Major tribal uprisings occurred in the 19th century, the most significant being the Taiping Rebellion (1850–64), which began in Guiping and became one of the bloodiest civil wars in human history.

Communist bases were set up in Guangxi following the 1929 Baise Uprising led by Deng Xiaoping, although they were eventually destroyed by Kuomintang forces. And much of Guangxi fell briefly under Japanese rule following highly destructive WWII invasions.

Today the Zhuang, China's largest minority group, make up 32% of Guangxi's population, which led to the province being reconstituted in 1955 as the Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region. As well as Zhuang, Miao and Yao, Guangxi is home to significant numbers of Dong people.

## Language

Travellers with a grasp of Mandarin (Putonghua) will have few problems navigating Guangxi's vast sea of languages. Cantonese (Guangdonghua), known as *Baihua* in these parts, is the language of choice in Nanning, Pingxiang and Daxin, but most people also understand Mandarin. Visitors will also hear a number of minority languages being spoken, such as Zhuang, Dong, Xiang, Hmong, Sui,



Hakka, Jing (Vietnamese) and Yi.

The Zhuang romanisation system, looking like badly spelled Pinyin, is prominently displayed, while bilingual Chinese/Vietnamese signs can be seen in areas nearing Vietnam.

In Guilin and Yangshuo, you'll come across locals with an excellent knowledge of English.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥150

\$\$ ¥150 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100

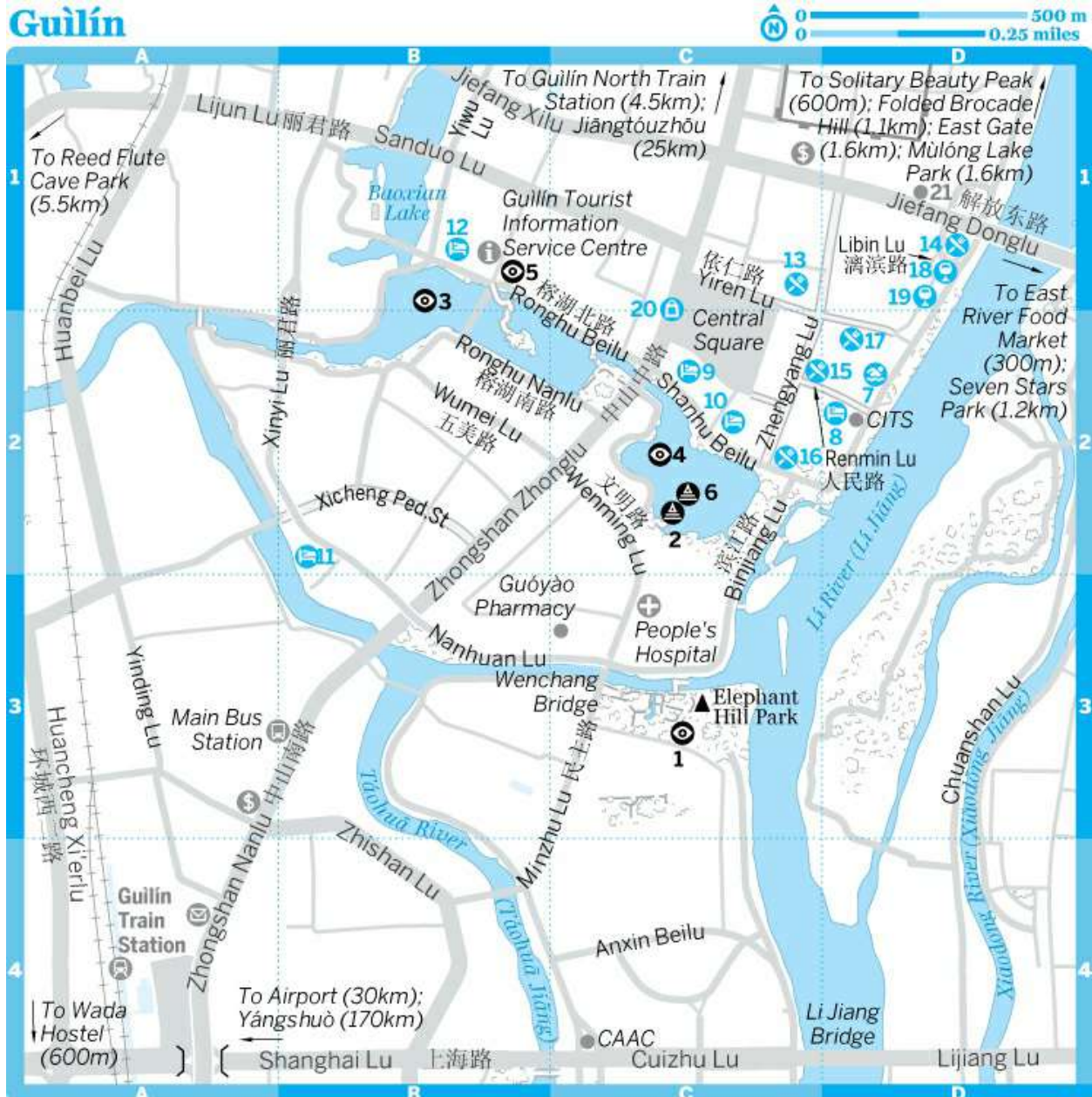
## Guilin

 0773 / POP 826,640

Whether you're going north to the highlands, or south to Yangshuo and beyond, Guilin is a place you're likely to spend a night or two. Set off alongside the tranquil Li River (; Li Jiang) it is a good introduction to Guangxi's dreamlike scenery, with its otherworldly karst topography as a backdrop.

The city's complete reliance on tourism means that it's well managed and clean, but you'll have to share it with the crowds, and there are touts and high admission fees to sights. With modern facilities and a high percentage of English-speaking locals, Guilin is a convenient base to plan trips to the rest of the province.

# Guilin



## Guilin

### Sights

- 1 [Elephant Trunk Hill](#) C3
- 2 [Moon Pagoda](#) C2
- 3 [Rong Lake](#) B1
- 4 [Shan Lake](#) C2
- 5 [South Gate](#) B1
- 6 [Sun Pagoda](#) C2

### Activities, Courses & Tours

7 [Sheraton](#) D2

 Sleeping

8 [Backstreet Youth Hostel](#) D2

9 [Lakeside Inn](#) C2

10 [Lijiang Waterfall Hotel](#) C2

11 [Riverside Hostel](#) B2

12 [This Old Place Hostel](#) B1

 Eating

13 [Amani](#) C1

14 [Amani](#) D1

[Chongshan Mifen Dian](#) (see 17)

15 [Lao Chen Ji](#) C2

16 [Tasty Castle](#) C2

17 [Zhengzong Youzhawang](#) D2

 Drinking

18 [G+ Cafe & Wine Bar](#) D1

19 [Little Italian](#) D1

[Steam Coffee](#) (see 19)

 Shopping

20 [Night Market](#) C1

 Transport

21 [Ride Giant](#) D1

## Sights

Guilin's sights are built around scraggly karst peaks dotted around the bustling city, and owing to recent price hikes can be easily skipped. You'll save 10% to 20% by buying a combined ticket. A stroll along the Rong and Shan Lakes and along the Li River offers a wallet-friendly alternative to the pricey sights.

Lakes & City Wall LAKES, RUIN

On the northern shore of Rong Lake [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Rong Hu), and strikingly illuminated at night, the South Gate [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Nan Men) is the only surviving section of the original Song-dynasty city wall (; *cheng qiang*). The area is a buzzing hub of activity and a good place to watch locals practising taichi, calligraphy

and dancing.

About 1km north of Folded Brocade Hill is the East Gate (; Dongzhen Men), a part-reconstructed gateway flanked by crumbling sections of the original wall. Take bus 1 or 2 and get off at the Dongzhen Lu stop, then turn right down the road of the same name. Alternatively, it's a short walk or cycle north along the riverbank, just east of the entrance to Folded Brocade Hill.

The gate lies on the northeast edge of Mulong Lake Park ( Mulong Hu; admission ¥90; ☺ 9am-10pm), which houses a reconstruction of a Song-dynasty pagoda (; Mulong Ta) and is a picturesque setting for Chinese classical music performances, held at 8pm every evening.

#### Sun & Moon Twin Pagodas PAGODAS

( Riyue Shuang Ta; admission ¥30; ☺ 8.30am-10.30pm) Elegantly embellishing the scenery of Shan Lake [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Shan Hu), the Sun and Moon Twin Pagodas, beautifully illuminated at night, are the highlight of a stroll around Guilin's two central lakes. The octagonal, seven-storey Moon Pagoda [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yue Ta) is connected by an underwater tunnel to the 41m-high Sun Pagoda [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Ri Ta), the world's tallest copper pagoda and one of the few pagodas anywhere in the world with a lift.

#### Solitary Beauty Peak PARK

( Duxiu Feng; 1 Wangcheng; 1 admission ¥88; ☺ 7.30am-6pm) A peaceful, leafy retreat from the city centre, the entrance fee for this famous lone pinnacle includes admission to a 14th-century Ming prince's mansion (oversold as a 'palace'), and a recreation of a Qing-dynasty examination hall. The 152m peak is a steep climb, but affords fine views of Guilin. Buses 1 and 2 both stop nearby.

#### Seven Stars Park PARK

( Qixing Gongyuan; admission ¥55, Seven Star Caves ¥60; ☺ park 6am-9.30pm, caves 8am-5.30pm) One of China's original tourist attractions, first opening to sightseers during the Sui dynasty, the 137-hectare Seven Stars Park makes for some pleasant strolls. There are peaks to climb, caves to explore, lawns to picnic on and even wild monkeys to see; early evening on Moon Tooth Hill (; Yueya Shan) is your best bet.

To get here, walk, cycle or catch bus 10 or 11 from the train station.

From the park, free bus 58 runs to Wave-Subduing Hill, Folded Brocade Hill and Reed Flute Cave.

### Other Hills HILLS

Just west of Solitary Beauty Peak is Wave-Subduing Hill ( Fubo Shan; admission ¥25; ☺ 7am-6pm), which offers more great views as well as the chance to see Song- and Tang-dynasty Buddhist carvings etched into the walls of Returned Pearl Cave (; Huanzhu Dong). A short walk further north is Folded Brocade Hill ( Diecai Shan; admission ¥35; ☺ 7am-6pm), where you can find arguably the best views of the city, some restored Ming-dynasty pavilions and, inside Wind Cave (; Fengdong), another fine collection of Buddhist sculptures. Just south of the city centre is Elephant Trunk Hill [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Xiangbi Shan; admission ¥75; ☺ 7am-6.30pm), perhaps best viewed from one of the bamboo rafts (about ¥15) that float down the Li River.

### Activities

Swimming in the Li River is very popular in summer. If that's not clean enough for you, the Sheraton [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Xilaideng Jiudian; 📞 282 5588; 15 Binjiang Lu; 15 ) has an outdoor pool (admission ¥30).

### Tours

The popular Li River trip from Guilin to Yangshuo lasts about 4½ hours and includes a wonderfully scenic boat trip to Yangshuo, lunch and a bus ride back to Guilin. Expect to pay ¥350 to ¥450 for a boat with an English-speaking guide or ¥245 for the Chinese version. There's also the 'Two Rivers Four Lakes' () boat ride around Guilin that does a loop of the Li River and the city's lakes. Prices vary from ¥80 to ¥180 depending on time of day (it costs more at night). China International Travel Service ([Click here](#)), can arrange these two tours, as can pretty much every Guilin hotel and tourist information service centre.

### Sleeping

Wada Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Wadang Lushe; 📞 215 4888; [www.wadahostel.com](http://www.wadahostel.com); 212

Huanchengxi Yilu; 212 dm ¥25-35, d ¥110; 📶@📶) This hostel is a bit out of the city centre but the useful bus 10 will connect you to most of the attractions. All buses to Yangshuo stop at its main entrance (ask the driver). It has a comfortable bar and cafe, and dorms with huge bunk beds. To get there from the train station, take the first right on Shanghai Lu. Go under the bridge and turn left at the intersection onto Huanchengxi Yilu. From there it's a 10-minute walk (600m) and the hostel is on the left.

This Old Place Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Laodifang Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 281 3598; [www.topxingping.com](http://www.topxingping.com); 2 Yiwu Lu; 2 dm ¥35, d ¥120-130, tr ¥150; 📶@📶) Run by the owners of This Old Place in Xingping, this hostel has an enviable position facing Rong Lake and is a 10-minute walk to eating and shopping areas. Three-bed dorms are single beds with an ensuite while regular rooms are similar, albeit less cramped. The communal area has a movie corner and pool table. You can also dine on a mix of Western and Chinese dishes. A taxi here from the train/bus station costs ¥8 to ¥10.

Backstreet Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Houjie Qingnian Lushe; 📍 281 9936; [www.guilinhostel.com](http://www.guilinhostel.com); 3 Renmin Lu, Xiufeng district; 3 dm ¥30-40, d ¥120; 📶@📶) Run by the same owner as the Wada Hostel, rooms here are big (even the dorms) and are decorated tastefully with wood furnishings. The location is superb, with bars, restaurants and shops just a stone's throw away. Staff are friendly, the communal area is roomy and cafe fare is available.

Shangri-La Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Xianggelila Dajiudian; 📍 269 8888; [www.shangrila.com/guilin](http://www.shangrila.com/guilin); 111 Huancheng Bei Erlu; 111 d from ¥950; 🚗📶@📶) If you're tired of Chinese-style hotels, splash out on the money-no-object, local branch of the Shang. Sure, it's location is slightly out of town but the views of the karst scenery along the Li River and classy service make it a winner.

Riverside Hostel INN \$\$

### [Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiulong Shangwu Luyou Jiudian; 📍 258 0215; [www.guilin-hostel.com](http://www.guilin-hostel.com); 6 Zhumu Xiang, Nanmen Qiao; 6 s & d ¥100-220; 📶@📶)

This cosy inn by the Taohua River ( ) comes highly recommended by travellers (especially couples). Staff are attentive and rooms are comfy. Its centrally located three-room branch, Lakeside Inn [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Beibao Yizhan; 📍 280 6806; 1-1-2 Shanhu Beilu; 1-1-2; d & tw ¥180-200, ste ¥260; 📶@📶) by Shan Lake is equally good. Advance bookings by phone or via the website are essential.

Lijiang Waterfall Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

### [Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lijiang Dapubu Fandian; 📍 282 2881; [www.waterfallguilin.com](http://www.waterfallguilin.com); 1 Shanhu Beilu; 1 d without/with river view ¥1320/1480; 📶@📶) This hotel has first-class facilities, accommodating staff and a general feeling of grandeur. Splash out for a room with stunning views of the river, lakes and Elephant Trunk Hill. It's also the proud owner of the world's tallest man-made waterfall (45m high), turned on daily from 8.30pm to 8.45pm and best viewed from Central Sq. It has become something of a tourist attraction! Discounts of 10% to 40%.

## Eating

Local specialities include Guilin rice noodles (; Guilin *mifen*), beer duck (; *pijiu ya*) and Guilin snails (; Guilin *tianluo*), while the ubiquitous *chaoguo fan* (; claypot rice dishes; from ¥6) make a great snack.

Cantonese and Western food are not uncommon in the city. The pedestrianised Zhengyang Lu and its surrounding lanes are the busiest dining area, while there's a cluster of fish restaurants on Nanhuan Lu, just east of Wenchang Bridge.

Chongshan Mifen Dian NOODLES \$

### [Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yiren Lu; dishes from ¥3-8; 🕒 6pm-midnight) Wildly popular Guilin rice noodle store with a cheap and delish array of noodle and rice dishes. Order at the front, and take your docket to the cook. Soup for your noodles is in a DIY dispenser on the side. It's right next to Zhengzong Youzhawang, which is next to KFC.

Zhengzong Youzhawang SNACKS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yiren Lu; skewers from ¥1.50; ☺ 10.30am-2am) For late-night spicy, and we mean spicy, *ma la chuan* (; spicy kebabs), you could do worse than this busy hole-in-the-wall near the corner of Zhengyang Lu and Yiren Lu. No menu. No need. Just point, pay and eat. It's next to KFC.

Tasty Castle INTERNATIONAL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Binjiang Lu; dishes from ¥20; ☺ 10am-midnight) There's nothing aristocratic about this place but the food here sure is tasty. Grab a seat on the breezy alfresco deck and order from a thick picture menu chock-a-block with everything from sashimi to pizza to a range of local favourites. Located at the start of Zhengyang Lu next to Shanhu Beilu.

Amani PIZZA \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Amani; 📍 210 6351; Binjiang Lu; pizzas from ¥38; ☺ 10am-1am) Customers flock here for the tasty thin-crust pizza. The laid-back setting makes this an easy place to while away the hours. It has a more hectic branch (📍 280 9351; 159 Zhengyang Lu; ☺ 10am-2am) on the pedestrianised street.

Lao Chen Ji NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhengyang Lu; dishes ¥5-10; ☺ 10am-midnight) Here's a twist on the local noodles...they are served with horse meat (; *maroumifen*). If you like your meat conventional, there's also beef (; *niurou*) and pork (; *zhurou*).



## Drinking & Entertainment

Guilin's streets are dotted with trendy little cafes, while Zhengyang Lu has a short stretch of bars with outdoor seating. Binjiang Lu has a slew of cute cafes and bars, most with free wi-fi.

G+ Cafe & Wine Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(18 Binjiang Lu; drinks from ¥20; ☺ 4pm-1.30am; 📶) Small, cosy bar serving up a neat list of wine, beer and coffee. Next to Amani pizza.

Little Italian CAFE



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zheli; 18 Binjiang Lu; drinks from ¥20; ☹️ 10am-midnight; 📶 ) A pleasant, studenty place that offers great coffee and breakfast goodies.

Steam Coffee CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Aishang Kafei; 10 Binjiang Lu; drinks from ¥20; ☹️ 10am-midnight; 📶 ) One of several trendy cafes on this stretch of street that serve equally good coffee.

## Shopping

Night Market MARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yeshi; Zhongshan Zhonglu; ☹️ from 7pm ) For souvenirs, check out Guilin's night market, which runs along Zhongshan Zhonglu from Ronghu Beilu to Sanduo Lu.

Bird Flower Market MARKET

( Huaniao Shichang; ☹️ 8am-5pm Sat & Sun ) This local flea market is awash with everything from electronics to vintage magazines, calligraphy brushes, dogs and, of course, birds and flowers. Bus 51 comes here.

East River Food Market MARKET

( Dongjiang Shichang; ☹️ 6am-8pm ) On the way to Seven Stars Park, this bustling undercover market sells everything from fresh fruit and vegetables to live eels.

## Information

Buy a map of Guilin ( ; *Guilin ditu* ) from bookshops or kiosks (¥6).

**Bank of China** ( ; Zhongguo Yinhang ) Branches on Zhongshan Nanlu (near the main bus station) and Jiefang Donglu change money, give credit-card advances and have 24-hour ATMs.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; [www.guilintrav.com](http://www.guilintrav.com); Binjiang Lu) Helpful staff.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Zhongshan Beilu; ☹️ 8am-7pm ) Just 500m north of the roundabout of Jiefang Donglu. Another branch by the train station.

**Guilin Tourist Information Service Centre** ( Guilin Luyou Zixun Fuwu Zhongxin; ☎ 280 0318; South Gate, Ronghu Beilu; 🕒 8am-10pm) These helpful centres dot the city. There's a good one by the South Gate on Rong Lake.

**Guoyao Pharmacy** ( Guoyao Dayaofang; 19 Nanhuan Lu; 🕒 8am-8pm) Around the corner from the People's Hospital.

**People's Hospital** ( Renmin Yiyuan; Wenming Lu)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 582 3492; 16 Shijiayan Lu; 🕒 8.30am-noon & 3-6pm Mon-Fri) Visa extensions. Located by Xiaodong River and 500m south of the Seven Stars Park. A taxi from downtown will cost around ¥18.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Air tickets can be bought from the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 384 7252; cnr Shanghai Lu & Anxin Beilu; 🕒 7.30am-8.30pm). Direct flights include Beijing (¥1470), Chengdu (¥980), Chongqing (¥790), Haikou (¥850), Guangzhou (¥890), Hong Kong (Xianggang; ¥1575), Kunming (¥840), Shanghai (¥1200) and Xi'an (¥970).

International destinations include Seoul, Korea (Hancheng; ¥2200), and Osaka, Japan (Daban; ¥3200).

### Bus

Guilin's **main bus station** ( Guilin keyun zongzhan; ☎ 382 2666; Zhongshan Nanlu) is north of the train station. There are regular buses to the following destinations:

**Beihai** ¥172, seven hours, three daily (8.30am, 9.20am and 9pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥169, 9½ hours, six daily

**Huangyao** ¥60, five hours, three daily (9.10am, 1.10pm and 2.20pm)

**Longsheng** ¥30, two hours, every 40 minutes

**Nanning** ¥100 to ¥120, five hours, every 15 minutes

**Sanjiang** ¥33, four hours, hourly

**Shenzhen** ¥210, 12 hours, two daily (6pm and 9.20pm)

**Yangshuo** ¥18, 1½ hours, every 15 minutes

### Train

Few trains start in Guilin, so it's often tough to find tickets, especially

for sleepers. Get tickets a few days in advance. Most trains leave from Guilin Station (; Guilin Zhan), but some may leave from Guilin North Train Station (; Guilin Beizhan), 9km north of the city centre.

Direct services include:

**Beijing** ¥416, 23 hours, four daily (1.57am, 1.05pm, 3.40pm and 6.55pm)

**Chongqing** ¥272, 19 hours, two daily (12.38pm and 12.58pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥207, 12 hours, two daily (6.28pm and 9.18pm)

**Kunming** ¥298, 18½–24 hours, three daily (9.50am, 10.09am and 3.23pm)

**Nanning** ¥116, six hours, regular

**Shanghai** ¥330, 22 hours, four daily (11.58am, 3pm, 5.13pm and 7.11pm)

**Xi'an** ¥375, 27 hours, one daily (5.49pm)

## Getting Around

To/From the Airport

Guilin's Liangjiang International Airport (; Liangjiang Guoji Jichang) is 30km west of the city. Half-hourly shuttle buses (¥20) run from the CAAC office between 6.30am and 9pm. From the airport, shuttle buses meet every arrival. A taxi costs about ¥80 (40 minutes).

Bicycle

Guilin's sights are all within cycling distance. Many hostels rent bicycles (about ¥20 per day). For decent bikes, head to **Ride Giant**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jie'ante Zixingche; 📍 286 1286; 16 Jiefang Donglu; 16 🕒 9am-8.30pm). Rental is ¥30 per day, with a ¥500 deposit.

Bus

Buses numbered 51 to 58 are all free but run very infrequently. Regular buses cost ¥1. The following are the most useful:

**Bus 2** Runs past Elephant Trunk Hill and Folded Brocade Hill.

**Bus 10** Goes from Wada Hostel to the train and bus stations, and Seven Stars Park.

**Bus 51** Starts at the train station and heads north along the length of Zhongshan Lu, the Bird Flower Market and beyond.

**Bus 58** Goes to Elephant Trunk Hill, Seven Stars Park, Wave-

Subduing Hill, Folded Brocade Hill and Reed Flute Cave.

## GREAT GUANGXI BIKE RIDES

### Ancient Village Pursuit

**Guilin to Jiangtouzhou (25km, three hours)** Leave the city behind and take this relaxing, countryside spin to the 1000-year-old village of Jiangtouzhou. From the west gate of Solitary Beauty Peak, head north along Zhongshan Beilu for 1km, then turn left onto Huancheng Beiyilu ( ) before taking the first right. Keep cycling north until you leave the suburb town of Dingjiang Zhen ( ), then continue along the country lane for about 15km. When the road forks, bear right towards Tanxia Zhen ( ). At the Tanxia Zhen junction, turn left then follow signs to Jiuwu ( ). Jiangtouzhou is down a track on the right, just past Jiuwu.

### Yulong River Loop

**Yangshuo to Dragon Bridge & back (20km round trip, four hours)** Soak up rural charm as you follow the beautiful Yulong River past rice paddies, fish farms and water buffalo to the 600-year-old Dragon Bridge ( ; Yulong Qiao; [Click here](#)). From Yangshuo, cycle along Pantao Lu and take the first main road on the left after the Farmers Trading Market. Continue straight, past the hospital on your right, and through the village of Jima ( ), before following the road round to the right to reach the start of a bumpy track. Follow this all the way to Dragon Bridge. Note: the last few hundred metres are on a main road. Cross the bridge and follow another track south for 20 minutes (around 8km) until it becomes a small, paved road, which eventually stops at the river's edge. Take a bamboo raft across the river (¥5), then turn left off a small paved road down a tiny pathway, which leads you back to the Jima village road.

## Around Guilin

The fascinating 1000-year-old village of Jiangtouzhou ( ), whose 800 inhabitants are all surnamed Zhou ( ), is tucked away among farmland about 25km north of Guilin. There's an unmistakable rustic charm, with dogs and chickens running freely through narrow, cobblestone alleyways, which in turn house weathered, grey-brick courtyard homes fronted by huge wooden gates. As you approach the village, you'll notice the ancient and misshapen arched Hulong Bridge ( ; Hulong Qiao), opposite which are a cluster of old buildings. Duck along an alleyway and just keep wandering.

You can also visit the nearby Jinshan Miao ( ), roughly 1km on the left off the main road leading to Jiangtouzhou. The temple itself is new

and impressively perched on top of a large hill. The main attraction here is renting a rowboat (¥30 a day) and paddling out along the river and under an atmospheric gaping hole in a karst mountain.

The only place to stay is the basic Laishanli Fanzhuang ( 📍 0773-633 1676; tw without/with air-con ¥50/70; 🌃) on the corner of the main road from Jiuwu, about 500m back from the village. You can also eat here.

Jiangtouzhou is a two- to three-hour bike ride from Guilin (see boxed text). Alternatively, take an orange minibus on the stretch of Zhongshan Beilu near Guilin north train station to Lingchuan (; ¥3, 30 minutes), then change to a bus to Jiuwu (; ¥4, 35 minutes), from where it's a 15-minute walk to the village. Buses stop running around 5.30pm.

## Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces

📍 0773

This part of Guangxi boasts stunning views of terraced paddy fields, and the clear standout is Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces (Longji Titian; adult ¥80). The rice fields rise up to 1000m high and are an amazing feat of farm engineering on hills dotted with minority villages.

The best time to visit is after the summer rains in May, which leave the fields glistening with reflections. The fields turn golden just before harvesting (October), and become snow-white in winter (December). Avoid early spring (March), when the mountains are shrouded in mist.

There are several villages to visit. Ping'an (), a sprawling 600-year-old Zhuang village, is the biggest settlement and the most popular among tourists. It has the best facilities, but expect to share your experience with Chinese tour groups.

Further along is Dazhai (), a laid-back Yao village that has an idyllic rural allure with a bubbling stream. Continue uphill to the village of Tiantouzhai () atop the mountain. It's a sublime place to marvel at the panoramic views of the terraces, the sunrise or the starry night sky. Tourism is picking up here and new hotels are mushrooming, each trying to outdo the other in height and views (including a concrete five-star at the peak). Construction for a cable car up the mountain was

under way at the time of research. This will save you the challenging but inspiring two-hour hike up to the viewing points.

Most locals here are Zhuang or Yao, but you'll also find Dong and Miao people in the area. Many wear ethnic clothing and will sell you postcards and handmade souvenirs.

As all of the villages are perched on hills, bring a daypack and leave your luggage at the hotel in Guilin or at left luggage in the main ticket office. Otherwise porters can help lug your luggage up for ¥40. There's nowhere in this area to change money.

## Activities

You can take a number of short walks from each village to fabulous viewing points with Chinglish names such as 'Music from Paradise'. These are clearly marked by signs. To really get among the terraces there are great hiking opportunities, taking anywhere from 30 minutes to several hours. The four- to five-hour trek between the villages of Dazhai and Ping'an, passing through the villages of Tiantouzhai and Zhongliu (), is highly recommended. The route is clearly signposted, but if you want a local to guide you, there will be plenty of offers. Expect to pay ¥40.

## Sleeping & Eating

You can stay in traditional wooden homes in minority villages (¥30 to ¥40 for a simple bed), but three in particular – Dazhai, Tiantouzhai and Ping'an – are set up for tourists.

Nearly all guesthouses offer food, and many guesthouses and restaurants have English menus. Look out for *zhutong fan* (; ¥15), a rice meal barbecued inside bamboo sticks.

## PING'AN



Longji One Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Longji Yimulou; ☎ 758 3597; [www.zljyl.com](http://www.zljyl.com); r ¥168-228; 📶@📶) This guesthouse is filled with character, friendly staff and is a great pick among the ski-resort chalet lookalikes elsewhere in Ping'an. Corridors are adorned with framed photographs and rooms are comfortable with tasteful modern plumbing and beds with unobstructed views out to the

rice terraces.

### Longji International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Longji Guojiqingnian Lushe; 📍 758 3265; dm ¥30, tw ¥60-120, tr ¥99-160; 📶@📶) The location at the base of the village may not have views, but the private rooms are clean with flat-screen TVs. Four-bed dorms are compact but you'll find that the roomy terrace, facing a rushing stream, is a great place to nurse a beer.

## DAZHAI

### Minority Cafe & Inn GUESTHOUSE \$

( Longji Kafeidian; 📍 758 5605; r ¥80) Perched above the Dazhai village on the trail leading up to Tiantouzhai, this small guesthouse has a terrace and an English menu (dishes from ¥25). It's about a 20-minute walk (1km) uphill from the main gate.

## TIANTOUZHAI

### Dazhai Dragon's Den Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Dazhai Qingnian Lushe; 📍 758 5780; [www.dragonsdenhostel.com](http://www.dragonsdenhostel.com); dm ¥30-35, r ¥70-100) The first youth hostel in the village has a fabulous lounge area (good library, comfy couches, espresso and beer). Rooms are OK: wooden walls are paper-thin and the Western toilets are covered in vinyl sheeting. Dorms are good value as they're essentially spacious triples! The hostel is a tough 40-minute climb from Dazhai to Tiantouzhai via rice terraces. When you see another youth hostel (Mr Liao Cafe & Bar, in itself a decent place to stay), turn right and go another 150m.

### Meijinglou INN \$

( 📍 758 5678; [www.meijinglou.com](http://www.meijinglou.com), in Chinese; r ¥100-120; 📶@) This excellent guesthouse is located above Tiantouzhai. Rooms at the front have sweeping, unobstructed views to the fields. After you leave the village of Tiantouzhai, take the path up to the right (the left is to Ping'an). From there it's another 15-minute walk (about 800m) and the guesthouse is above the Wangjinglou Hotel. There's a set of concrete steps leading up to the entrance. It can arrange direct shuttle buses to/from Guilin.

## Getting There & Away

Hotels including **Meijinglou** (☎ 758 5678), **Dazhai Dragon's Den Hostel** (☎ 758 5780) and **Quanjing Lou** (☎ 758 5688) arrange direct shuttle service between Guilin and Dazhai for their guests. They also take other passengers if seats are available.

The bus (¥50, three hours) leaves Guilin train station at 9am. Reservations are a must. Buses return to Guilin at 11.30am.

All hotels in Ping'an provide a similar service. The bus (¥50) leaves Guilin train station at 1pm and returns at 10am. Again, reservations are necessary. Times may change so ring to check.

For public transport, head to Qintan bus station ( ) in the south of Guilin via public bus 1. From there, take a bus to Longsheng (; ¥24 to ¥31, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes) and ask to get off at Heping ( ). From the road junction (or the ticket office three minutes' walk away), minibuses trundle between Longsheng and the rice terraces, stopping to pick up passengers to Dazhai (¥8, 45 minutes, every 30 minutes, 7am to 6pm) and Ping'an (¥7, 30 minutes, every 30 minutes, 7.40am to 5pm).

Buses to Guilin (¥30, 1½ hours, 6.30am to 6pm) also stop over here. To continue to Sanjiang you have to catch a bus from Longsheng bus station.

## Sanjiang

☎ 0772 / POP 350,000

Sanjiang is notoriously humdrum, but it's a jumping-off point to get to the idyllic Dong villages and the exquisite, 78m-long Chengyang Wind and Rain Bridge ( Chengyang Qiao; admission ¥60). This is the grandest of more than 100 nail-less bridges in the area built by the Dong (they are renowned carpenters) at the turn of the last century from fir logs. It took 12 years to knock together and is a picture of poetic engineering.

Once you get a ticket, you'll be allowed access across the bridge into the village of Maan ( ). From here, there are signs pointing you to the surrounding network of villages. These paths make for great walks past rice fields, historic old wooden buildings and several other wind and rain bridges. Possible bike rides include the tough, three-hour climb to the remote hilltop village of Gaoyou (; see boxed text, [Click](#)



[here](#)).

There are a plenty of places to stay in, with many offering food, some with basic English menus. Just inside Maan, Yang's Guesthouse ( Chengyang Kezhan; ☎ 858 3126; r ¥60; @📶) has bikes (¥30 per day), friendly staff, food and free internet.

For its great location facing lush rice fields, the Chengyang Asi Hotel ( Chengyang Asi Binguan; ☎ 852 3311; r ¥100-120) is hard to beat. Get a room facing the fields. Walk past Yang's Guesthouse on the left path, head to the end and turn left. Continue another 150m to find the hotel on the right past the Helong Bridge.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Most buses go to/from Sanjiang's east bus station (; hedong chezhan), but buses to Chengyang bridge go from the west bus station (; hexi chezhan), a 10-minute walk (about 500m, or a ¥2 pedicab ride) across the river. To get to the west bus station, turn right from the east bus station, right again over the river and right once more after you cross the river. The ticket office is up a slope on the left.

For Chengyang bridge, take the half-hourly bus bound for Linxi () from Sanjiang west bus station (¥6, 30 minutes, 7.30am to 5.30pm). If you miss the last bus, private minivans to Linxi wait on the main road outside the west bus station. The fare is the same as the buses but they won't leave until they're full. If you're late or in a hurry, expect to pay ¥40 to ¥50 to get the bus going.

Buses depart regularly from Sanjiang east bus station for Longsheng (¥8, 1½ hours, 6.30am to 5.50pm) and Guilin (¥45, three to four hours, last bus at 4.15pm), and four daily depart for Tongdao in Hunan (¥25, 2½ hours, 7.20am, 8.30am, 12.35pm and 1.45pm).

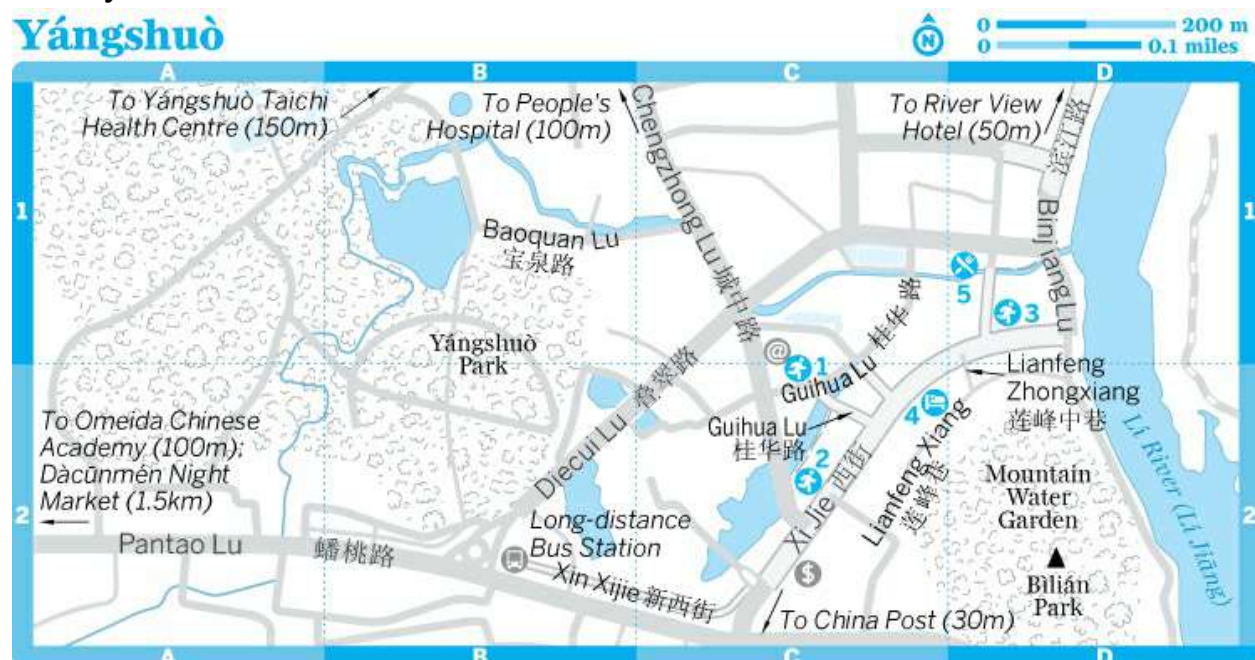
## Yangshuo

☎ 0773 / POP 310,000

Seasoned travellers to Guangxi spend little time in Guilin, preferring to make Yangshuo their base, though many of these veterans will gripe about Yangshuo's lack of authenticity – 'too many tourists', they complain. And they're right: the town, once peaceful, is now a messy,

smoggy collage of Chinese tour groups, bewildered Westerners, discos, pole-dancing bars, bad traffic and the glue that binds any tourist hot spot together – touts.

Outside of town however, Yangshuo's dramatic karst landscape is surreal and the stuff of Chinese landscape paintings. Take a bamboo-raft ride or cycle through the dreamy valleys and you'll see. There's a host of well-run courses and activities to keep you occupied far beyond your original intended length of stay. Travelling with kids is easy here. It's one of the more family-friendly Chinese destinations, with English-speaking locals, well set-up hostels and food for the finicky.



## Yangshuo

### 📍 Activities, Courses & Tours

- 1 [Bike Asia](#) C2
- 2 [Cloud 9 Restaurant](#) C2
- 3 [Insight Adventures Climb](#) D1

### 🛏 Sleeping

- 4 [Hongfu Palace Hotel](#) C2
- [Magnolia Hotel](#) (see 5)

### 🍴 Eating

- [Le Vôtre](#) (see 4)

## 5 [Pure Lotus Vegetarian Restaurant](#) D1

### **Sights**

#### Peaks & Hills HILLS

Yangshuo is surrounded by towering, leafy, limestone peaks. The most accessible is Bilian Peak ( Bilian Feng; admission ¥30), which overlooks Xijie (West St) and the Li River, and can be climbed in about half an hour for some excellent views. Look for the signboard that says . Yangshuo Park (; Yangshuo Gongyuan) is a short walk west of Xijie and where you'll find Man Hill (; Xilang Shan), which supposedly resembles a young man bowing to a shy young girl represented by Lady Hill (; Xiaogu Shan). Dragon Head Hill (; Longtou Shan) is a short walk north of the town centre.

### **Activities**

Yangshuo is one of the hottest climbing destinations in Asia. There are eight major peaks in regular use, already providing more than 250 bolted climbs (and climbing!).

#### Insight Adventures Climb ROCK CLIMBING

##### [Offline map](#)

(📍 881 1033; [www.insight-adventures.com](http://www.insight-adventures.com); 45 Xianqian Jie; 🕒 9am-9pm) Offers local advice for experienced climbers and fully guided, bolted climbs for beginners. Prices start at ¥300 per person for a half-day climb, with everything included. Kayaking and other activities (from ¥150) are also organised.

#### Bike Asia CYCLING

##### [Offline map](#)

(📍 882 6521; [www.bikeasia.com](http://www.bikeasia.com); 42 Guihua Lu; 42 🕒 9am-6pm) There's no shortage of places to rent bikes (from ¥15 per day), but for the best equipment and advice on possible trips, try Bike Asia. Bikes are ¥70 per day (deposit ¥300), including safety helmet and map. English-speaking guides (from ¥300) are available.

### **Courses**

Yangshuo is a premier place to expand your skills with a course or two.

## Yangshuo Taichi Health Centre TAICHI

( Yangshuo Taijiquan Jiankang Zhongxin; 📞 890 0125; [www.chinasouthtaichi.com](http://www.chinasouthtaichi.com); Baoquan Lu; classes per week/month ¥1500/4000; 🕒 office 8-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm) Runs classes for both the Yang and Chen styles of taichi. Cheap accommodation available for students.

## Omeida Chinese Academy CHINESE LANGUAGE

( Oumeida Shuyuan; 📞 881 2233; [www.omeida.com.cn](http://www.omeida.com.cn); Pantao Lu) Has reader-recommended Chinese-language classes. Offers all-inclusive two- to 24-week classes (15 hours per week) from ¥2920 and also hires English teachers.

## V.E.T Project VOLUNTEERING

(📞 881 1420; [www.vet-china.org](http://www.vet-china.org)) V.E.T China organises volunteers to teach English in and around Yangshuo.

## Cloud 9 Restaurant COOKING

### [Offline map](#)

( Jufulou Fandian; 📞 881 3686; cloud9restaurant03@yahoo.com; 1 Chengzhong Lu) Runs two three-hour cooking courses a day, for around ¥120 per person including a market tour and lunch. Would-be chefs receive printouts of the recipes they've just messed up.

## Yangshuo Cooking School COOKING

([www.yangshuocookingschool.com](http://www.yangshuocookingschool.com)) This is another classy cooking school worth checking out.

## **Sleeping**

Yangshuo is overrun with hotels run by English-speaking staff, and all provide internet access. While the Xijie neighbourhood has abundant options, some of the best lodgings are on the outskirts of Yangshuo.



### Secret Garden BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

( Jiuxian Cun Laofangzi Huayuanjiudian; 📞 877 1932; [www.yangshuosecretgarden.com](http://www.yangshuosecretgarden.com); Jiuxian Village; r ¥388 & ¥488; 📶📶📶) A Welsh architect nicknamed 'Crazy One' by the locals spent five months negotiating a lease on a cluster of Ming-dynasty houses in the village of Jiuxian. He then spent many more months renovating it into

a gorgeous boutique hotel...all in an attempt to preserve the architectural heritage of the village. He succeeded: where many neighbours are knocking down old houses and replacing them with concrete monstrosities, this cluster makes for a picturesque photograph from across the rice fields. A taxi from town costs ¥40.



Yangshuo Village Inn BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Tingyue Lou; 📞 159 7736 4111; [www.yangshuoguesthouse.com](http://www.yangshuoguesthouse.com); Moon Hill Village; Yueliang Shan Licun; d ¥380-390, ste ¥500; 📶@📶) Located opposite Moon Hill (9km south of Yangshuo centre), the Village Inn touts ecofriendly practices. Rooms with local handmade bamboo furniture provide rustic creature comforts. Choose the renovated mudbrick farmhouse out the back. Staff are attentive and speak excellent English. The rooftop houses an Italian restaurant, Luna. From Yangshuo bus station, take a minibus to Gaotian ( ) and tell the driver to drop you at Li Cun ( ; ¥5, every 15 minutes). A taxi from Xijie costs around ¥30.

Yangshuo Mountain Retreat BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Yangshuo Shengdi; 📞 877 7091; [www.yangshuomountainretreat.com](http://www.yangshuomountainretreat.com); Gaotian Zhen Fenglou Cunwei Wanggong Shanjiao; s ¥280, d & tw ¥350-550, ste ¥550-680; 📶@📶) Yangshuo Village Inn's sister hotel, facing the beautiful Yulong River ( ; Yulong He), is an affordable luxury and a better option for those who want a more relaxing stay. A taxi from town costs ¥30. Free twice-daily shuttle buses link the two properties to town.

Yangshuo Outside Inn HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Helan Fandian; 📞 881 7109; [www.yangshuo-outside.com](http://www.yangshuo-outside.com); Chaolong Village, Jima; dm/s ¥50/100, d ¥120-200, f ¥300-500; 📶@) Run by a friendly Dutchman, this fabulous farmhouse-turned-guesthouse surrounded by rural vistas is 4km southwest of Yangshuo. The adobe complex has a communal rustic charm – enjoy a glimpse of rural life in China (minus poor plumbing). The modern-furnished family suites sleep five. Staff speak English and guests can get help with activities including taichi lessons! It's close to the Yulong River; a taxi here will

cost ¥25, or it's 20 minutes by bike. Check the website for directions and bookings.

Magnolia Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Bai Jiudian; 📍 881 9288; magnoliahotel@hotmail.com; 7 Diecui Lu; 7 tw/d/tr ¥480/680/880; 📶@📶) The tastefully fitted out Magnolia Hotel, with flat-screen TVs, dark wooden Chinese aesthetics and comfy beds just manages to mask the hubbub of the surrounding streets. Rooms are regularly discounted by ¥200 to ¥300. Ask for rooms facing away from noisy Xijie. If you *have* to stay in town, this is a great choice.

Trippers Carpe Diem HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Shanjing Jiari Jiudian; 📍 882 2533; [www.guesthouseyangshuo.com](http://www.guesthouseyangshuo.com); 35 Shibanjaocun; 35 dm/s ¥40/160, d ¥180-300; 📶@📶) This hostel run by a Belgian–Chinese family is recommended by travellers. In addition to views of rice fields and karst peaks, excellent staff and clean pinewood rooms, the hostel has an MSG-free cafe with Western and Chinese favourites and Belgian beer. It's out of town but close enough to walk to. From Xijie, it's a 1.5km walk along the river (upstream) for 25 minutes to Shibanjiao Village. A taxi from the bus station costs no more than ¥20 or ring the hostel to arrange transport.

Yangshuo Culture House GUESTHOUSE \$

( Yangshuo Wenhua Xiaowu; 📍 882 7750; [www.yangshuo-study-travel.com](http://www.yangshuo-study-travel.com); 110 Beisan Xiang, Chengxi Lu; 110 d & tw ¥90; 📶@📶) The pinewood rooms are nothing to write home about but they are bright and spacious. Owner Mr Wei can help organise activities and classes, but best of all he throws in three meals a day for free. It's about a 10-minute walk west of the bus station, along Chengxi Lu. Look out for the yellow sign on the right. This place gets booked up, so it's well worth making an online reservation.

River View Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Wangjianglou Jiudian; 📍 882 2688; [www.riverview.com.cn](http://www.riverview.com.cn); 11 Binjiang Lu; 11 s ¥168, d & tw ¥268-388; 📶@) If you prefer staying in downtown but want to avoid the hubbub of Yangshuo's nightlife, this hotel around the corner from Xijie is good value for money. The balcony rooms overlooking the Li River are bright and spacious, and

they fill up fast. The restaurant-bar in the new wing is a good spot to watch the world go by.

Hongfu Palace Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Hongfu Fandian; 📍 137 3739 7888; [www.yangshuohongfuhotel.com](http://www.yangshuohongfuhotel.com); 79 Xijie; 79 d ¥380-480, tw/ste ¥660/880; 🌟) Cracking location, set back from Xijie in the historical Jiangxi Guild Hall and sharing its premises with Le Vôtre. Roomy doubles, regularly discounted to ¥250, overlook a Qing-style courtyard. Identical rooms without the courtyard view go for ¥200.

## Eating & Drinking

Local specialities include *pijiu yu* (; beer fish) and *tianluoniang* (; stuffed snails). From wood-fired pizza to that most famous of fast foods, you'll now find it in and around Xijie. Bars come and go like flowing water and the best place to bar hop is on Guihua Lu () just off Xijie where you might find German beer gardens sitting next to a generic Western-style cafe-bar.



Pure Lotus Vegetarian Restaurant CHINESE, VEGETARIAN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Anxiang Shuying Sucaiguan; Diecui Lu; dishes ¥22-48; 🕒 11am-10pm; 📍) Buddhist music tinkles across the antique furniture to create an enchanting atmosphere in which to delve into Lotus' sumptuous menu. The modern English menu has pictures of all the dishes and staff speak English. Though you don't have to be all goody two-shoes here: there's beer and wine in case you don't want your karma fully restored.

Luna ITALIAN \$\$

(📍 139 7836 9849; Moon Hill Village; Yueliang Shan Licun; dishes from ¥38; 🕒 7.30am-midnight) Sure, there's organic salad and a list of Italian staples from pasta to pizza, but what really seems to keep customers coming to Luna is the spectacular views of Moon Hill. The accompanying wine list will almost remind you of home. It's on the rooftop of Yangshuo Village Inn.

Le Vôtre FRENCH \$\$

## [Offline map](#)

( Lede Fashi Canting; 79 Xijie; dishes from ¥40; ☺ 8am-midnight) Pretenders may come and go but the town's first French restaurant remains standing. This one shares its historic premises with the Hongfu Palace Hotel and the interior, flanked by a creepy array of Christian and Buddhist statues and hung with portraits of Chairman Mao, oozes a certain eccentric charm. The huge outdoor seating area draws big crowds, as do the fine menu and home-brewed beer (from ¥20).

### Dacunmen Night Market MARKET \$

( Dacunmen Yeshe; Pantao Lu; ☺ 5pm-late) This night market is a culture-filled slice of nontourist Yangshuo life. Watch locals sniffing out the best spices or bartering for their snails, but be warned: it's not for the squeamish. Exotic tastes such as beer fish, dog hotpot, fish-head soup, frogs and snails can be found here. It's a 30-minute walk from Xijie. After you pass the gas station on Pantao Lu, look for the fire station on the left. Behind it is the night market.

## **Entertainment**

### Impressions Liu Sanjie PERFORMING ARTS \$\$

( Yinxiang Liu Sanjie; ☎ 881 7783; tickets ¥198-680; ☺ 7.30-8.30pm & 9.30-10.30pm) The busiest show in town is directed by moviemaker Zhang Yimou, the man who also directed the opening ceremony at the Beijing Olympics in 2008 and several acclaimed films such as *Hero*. Six hundred performers, including local fishermen, take to the Li River each night with 12 illuminated surrounding karst peaks serving as a backdrop. The cheapest tickets give you great front-row seats but be prepared for smoking Chinese tourists who sing and chatter during the performance.

Book at your hostel or hotel for slight discounts and transport to/from the venue (1.5km from town).

## **Shopping**

Souvenir shops run the length of Xijie, while stalls set up daily along Binjiang Lu. You'll find silk scarves, trinkets, knitted shoes and all manner of things here. Bargain your socks off.



## Information

Travel agencies are all over town, while backpacker-oriented cafes and bars, as well as most hotels, can often dispense good advice. Shop around for the best deals.

Touts are an almost constant nuisance in Yangshuo, but with perhaps a greater percentage of English speakers here than in any other place in China, there's little need for their services. Fend them off firmly but politely.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Xijie; ☎ 9am-5pm) Foreign exchange and 24-hour ATM.

**Cafe Too & Hostel** ( Ziyouren Ludian; 📞 882 8342; 7 Chengzhong Lu; ☎ 8am-midnight) Cafe, free internet and an impressive range of foreign-language books that you can swap.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Pantao Lu; ☎ 8am-5pm) English-speaking staff and long-distance phone services.

**People's Hospital** ( Renmin Yiyuan; 26 Chengzhong Lu) English-speaking doctors.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Chengbei Lu; ☎ 8am-noon & 3-6pm summer, 2.30-5.30pm winter) Has several English speakers. Doesn't issue visa extensions. It's 100m east of People's Hospital.

## Getting There & Away

Air

The closest airport is in Guilin; [Click here](#) for details of available flights. Your hotel should be able to organise taxi rides directly to the airport (about ¥240, one hour).

Bus

Direct bus links:

**Guilin** ¥20, one hour, every 10 to 20 minutes (6.45am to 8.30pm)

**Nanning** ¥166, 6½ hours, two daily (8am and 11.30am)

**Shenzhen** ¥236, 13 hours, four daily (5.30pm, 7pm, 7.30pm and 9pm)

**Xingping** ¥8, one hour, every 15 minutes (6.30am to 6pm)

**Yangdi** ¥11, 30 minutes, every 20 minutes (6.30am to 6pm)

The bus from Guilin to Huangyao only stops in Yangshuo (¥50, two hours, one daily) erratically, so check.

Train

Yangshuo has no train station, but train tickets for services from Guilin and Nanning can be bought from hotels and travel agencies around town. Expect to pay ¥50 commission.

### **i** Getting Around

The best way to get around is by bicycle; you can rent one at almost all hostels, and from streetside outlets for ¥15 per day. A deposit of ¥200 is standard, but don't hand over your passport. For better-quality bikes, and sound advice on bike trips, head to Bike Asia ([Click here](#)).

## MORE GREAT GUANGXI BIKE RIDES

### Li Valley Boat 'n' Bike Combo

**Yangshuo to Xingping & back (15km boat, 20km cycle, half-day)** Combine a river cruise from Yangshuo to Xingping with a bike ride back along this glorious valley. Put your bike on a bamboo raft (¥170 to ¥250, 1½ hours), then sit back and enjoy the view to the historic village of Xingping. From here, cycle south, following the trail past the villages of Gupi Zhai (), Qiaotou Pu () and Dongxin () before reaching Fuli (), 4km east of Yangshuo. Just past Fuli take your bike on a ferry (¥5) across the Li River, then continue past Dutou () and back to Yangshuo, crossing the river once more, this time over a bridge.

### Dong Village Lung Buster

**Chengyang Bridge to Gaoyou Village (16km, three hours)** This challenging trip starts at the elegant Chengyang Wind and Rain Bridge and ends with a muscle-stretching 6km climb to the hilltop village of Gaoyou (). From the bridge, follow the river along the 10km road to Linxi (), passing the villages of Pingzhai (), Dongzhai (), Dazhai (), Pingpu () and Guandong (). If you don't have the time or energy for the climb up to Gaoyou, lunch here and head back to Chengyang Bridge (two to three hours round trip). If your thighs are up to it, turn right in the village centre, soon leaving the paved road behind you, and after 1.5km, by a small wind and rain bridge, turn sharply right to begin the big ascent. The mountain views are stunning, but even without stopping for photos it will take about 1½ hours to reach Gaoyou, where, just before the drum tower, on your right, you'll find the family-run Gaoyou Guesthouse ( Gaoyou Kezhan; r ¥30). Meals (¥30) are available, but no English is spoken. The freewheel back to Chengyang takes about two hours.

## Around Yangshuo

The countryside of Yangshuo offers weeks of exploration by bike, boat, foot or any combination thereof. Cycle along the Li River () and you'll find a number of picturesque, ancient villages to visit. Classic

rural scenes of wallowing water buffalo and farmers tending to crops are dominated by a backdrop of prominent limestone peaks.

In addition, there are a myriad other activities to cater to those with a penchant for the outdoors – from rafting down the Li River to caving to rock climbing up karst peaks, you'll find it here. The villages in the vicinity of Yangshuo, especially Xingping, come alive on market days, which operate on a three-, six- and nine-day monthly cycle.

## Around Yángshuò



Around Yangshuo

 Sleeping

1 [Trippers Carpe Diem B2](#)

2 [Yangshuo Mountain Retreat A3](#)

3 [Yangshuo Outside Inn](#) A3

4 [Yangshuo Village Inn](#) A3

## XINGPING & AROUND

Xingping ( ), the location of the photo on the back of ¥20 banknotes, is more than 1000 years old and houses a number of historic residences. For years, it was on the cusp of being the 'next' Yangshuo but it doesn't really matter that this hasn't come true because there's still lots of charm, without the tourist hordes.

The town itself is compact, with the old town around Lao Jie particularly atmospheric. Most travellers base themselves here to explore the beautiful surrounding countryside and many end up staying longer than they originally intended.

The HI-affiliated This Old Place ( Lao Difang; ☎ 870 2887; [www.topxingping.com](http://www.topxingping.com); 5 Rongtan Lu; dm ¥30-40, s ¥60, d ¥80-190; 📶 @📶) is an excellent place to stay, with a cosy, large lounge area, helpful English-speaking staff and great wood-fired pizza. Stay in the new wing or ask for the balcony room 305 in the old wing. The hostel owners have explored the area in-depth and have plenty of suggested itineraries and activities for guests. It also has a cafe (Lao Jie) which serves yummy Chinese and Western dishes.

You can hike the mountain behind Xingping, past pomelo and orange groves, to the sleepy old Fish Village (; Yucun). This tiny village is awash with historic homes, friendly residents and was visited by Bill Clinton and family back in the '90s...something it still takes pride in today. Hike back or, better yet, organise to take a bamboo raft back to Xingping (¥100).

Another fun option in this area is the boat and bike trip from Yangshuo to Xingping and back (see boxed text, [Click here](#)).

The stunning 16km hiking trail between Xingping and Yangdi ( ) takes around four to five hours to complete, crossing the river three times. The admission fee is ¥16, which includes two ferry crossings. The last crossing is an extra ¥4.

You can take a bus (¥8) from Yangshuo to Yangdi, then walk the trail to Xingping before getting a raft (¥170) or bus (¥7, until 7pm) back.

A raft between Xingping and Yangdi is ¥120. A bus from Yangshuo to Xingping takes an hour (¥7, every 15 minutes).

## FULI

Also very popular, and much closer to Yangshuo (about 9km east), is the historic village of Fuli with its stone houses and cobbled lanes. Fuli is famous in these parts for its handmade fans. You'll see them everywhere. It takes about an hour to get here by bike. First cycle south from Yangshuo before turning east over the bridge that takes you on towards Dutou Village (; Dutou Cun). There, take your bike on the ferry (¥5) across the river to Fuli. There are also regular buses from Yangshuo to a drop-off point within walking distance of Fuli (¥3, 15 minutes).

## YULONG RIVER

The scenery along this smaller, quieter river, about 6km southwest of Yangshuo, is breathtaking. There are a number of great swimming spots and countless exploring possibilities. Just rent a bike and get out there.

One option is to aim for Dragon Bridge (; Yulong Qiao), about 10km upstream. This 600-year-old stone arched bridge is among Guangxi's largest and comes with higgledy-piggledy steps and sides that lean inwards with age. It's certainly a great spot for a swim. For details of how to get here by bike, see boxed text, [Click here](#). Alternatively, take a bus to Jinbao () and ask to get off at the bridge (¥5, 35 minutes), just after Baisha ().

Along the same route to the Dragon Bridge is the bucolic village of Jiuxian (; Jiuxian Cun), about 9km from Yangshuo. Have lunch at one of the many *nongjia* (; homestays) that pepper the paths between rice paddies. Most have English menus with prices, and dishes start from ¥12. If you're taken by the village's charm, stay the night at the Secret Garden ([Click here](#)).

## MOON HILL

For mind-blowing views of the surrounding countryside, head to the surreal limestone pinnacle Moon Hill (Yueliang Shan; admission ¥15), famed for its moon-shaped hole. To get here by bike, take the main

road south of Yangshuo towards the river and turn right onto the road about 200m before the bridge. Moon Hill is another 8km down the road on your right.

## SHITOUCHENG

A visit to this fascinating Qing-dynasty village, perched on top of a limestone peak, is an unusual foray into the countryside and makes a great day trip for those looking for an off-the-beaten-track adventure. The village was once a garrison town and the ancient gates and walls are mostly still intact. It's a steep 30- to 50-minute climb up the hill from the village's 'new town' to the 'old town' where the wall begins. Once at the top, it will take another four to five hours to walk around to all four of the main gates. Locals will show you around the stone ruins for about ¥30.

To get here from Yangshuo, take any Guilin-bound bus to Putao (¥5), from where a motorbike taxi (¥20) will take you the rest of the way to Shitoucheng. You should be able to arrange a motorbike ride back to Putao through one of the villagers. From there, you can flag down a southbound bus back to Yangshuo.

## Huangyao

📍 0774

Huangyao is one of China's most high-profile villages, with many movies and TV dramas filmed here; Edward Norton's *The Painted Veil* is possibly the most well known of the lot. The lovingly preserved 900-year-old village (admission ¥100) is dotted with two dozen temples, a number of pavilions and clan halls, and an old stage (; *gu xitai*). Bucolic charm permeates the place when you amble along the stone pathways: dogs and chickens roam the streets, villagers hang their laundry along the river...though roving tour groups take a little shine off. Two 500-year-old banyan trees wind their way up from the river's edge to the side of the village and make a lovely place to rest after wandering the streets.

Chance ( Ouranjan; 📍 672 2046; 33 Zhongxing Jie; 38 d ¥100; 🌐📶 ), on the other side of the river, has comfortable rooms, with the best facing the river. On the left past the banyan trees is the cute Yanimu (

Yinianyimeng; ☎ 672 2477; 66 Anle Jie; 8 d ¥100-120; 📶📶). Along the main cobblestone street is Happiness Inn ( Xingfuli; ☎ 672 2805; 8 Yingxiu Jie; 8 d ¥100-130; 📶📶), popular with young Chinese travellers. All these have wood furnishing, free wi-fi and a communal area though you'll need to bring your own towel.

Huangyao is famed for its *doufu* (; tofu). Dine in the courtyard of Guojia Dayuan ( 44 An Dongjie; 44 ), which does simply delicious *doufu niang* (; tofu slabs stuffed with minced pork and vegetables; ¥20). There are plenty of restaurants around town. Look for signs saying (*nongjjiale*).

There are two direct buses daily from Guilin (¥60, three hours, 8.30am and 1.30pm). The return buses from Huangyao leaves at 8.10am and 2.20pm though the service is erratic, meaning you may have to take a bus to Hezhou (; ¥18, two hours) and change to a Guilin service (¥60 to ¥80, 2½ to four hours, regular). The bus service from Yangshuo is erratic so ask at the ticket counter (¥50, two hours, one daily).

## Nanning

☎ 0771 / POP 7.1 MILLION

Like many provincial capitals in China, Nanning is a bog-standard city with few sights of note. But at heart it's a fairly relaxed place to recharge your batteries before leaving for, or coming back from, Vietnam. Travel agencies and hostels can arrange Vietnam visas in one to three days and there's just about enough to keep you occupied while you wait.



## Nanning

### Sleeping

- 1 [High-Class Hotel A1](#)
- 2 [Lotusland Hostel \(Train Station\) A2](#)
- 3 [Yongjiang Hotel B3](#)

### Eating

- 4 [Farmers Market B1](#)
- 5 [Xu Courtyard Restaurant B3](#)
- 6 Zhongshan Lu Food Stalls B3

## Sights & Activities





## Guangxi Provincial Museum MUSEUM

( Guangxi Sheng Bowuguan; [www.gxmuseum.com](http://www.gxmuseum.com); cnr Minzu Dadao & Gucheng Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) The Zhuang-romanised sign on the building says ‘Gvangsusaih Bouxcuengh Swcigih Bozvuzgvanj’. Thankfully, the exhibits inside actually have English signs that make sense, which is great because the collection of pottery, ceramics and bronze ware, some dating back more than 200 years, is superb.

The leafy back garden showcases minority culture, with daily dance performances, some full-size examples of Dong and Miao houses, and a nail-less wind and rain bridge, which now houses a restaurant, Amou Meishi ([Click here](#)).

## Guangxi Medicinal Herb Botanical Garden GARDEN

( Guangxi Yaoyong Zhiwuyuan; admission ¥10; ☺ dawn-dusk) The fascinating subtropical Guangxi Medicinal Herb Botanical Garden on the eastern side of the city is the largest medicinal botanical garden in China. More than 4000 medicinal plants from more than 20 countries can be found here. Buses 22 and 81 from Chaoyang Garden stop by the main gate. Buses 7 and 66 from the train station also go there. It’s a 20- to 30-minute bus ride.

## Alleyways ARCHITECTURE

East along Linjiang Lu look out for small networks of alleyways. Here you’ll find some of Nanning’s older, low-rise housing, a stark contrast from the shiny shopping centres of nearby Chaoyang Lu, and an interesting place for a quiet stroll. Rampant development means these houses might soon become a condominium complex.

## Yong River Bridge SWIMMING

( Yongjiang Qiao) The green river at the southwestern end of the modern Yong River Bridge is a very popular swimming spot, particularly on summer evenings. Amusingly, swimmers sometimes do their laundry post-swim...all to the roar of traffic from the bridge.

## Sleeping

There’s a cluster of budget hotels around the train station, displaying the price of their cheapest discounted rooms on signs in the windows. Prices are ¥60 upwards.

### Lotusland Hostel (Train Station) HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Heyi Ju; 📞 243 2592; lotuslandhostel @163.com; 64 Shanghai Lu; 64 d/tw ¥50/120; 📶@📶) Lotusland is a hostel pioneer in Nanning and its relative age shows. Rooms seem clean until you look closely (marked walls, dusty floors). Shared bathrooms only, but they are sparkling. It's a relatively easy 15-minute walk (about 900m) from the train station. A Vietnam visa application service is provided here with no additional costs. From Langdong bus station, take bus 6 or 213.

### Lotusland Hostel (Langdong Station) HOSTEL \$

( Heyi Ju Langdong keyun-zhan; 📞 677 3664; newlotuslandhostel@163.com; 155 Minzu Dadao; 155 d/tw ¥50/100; 📶@📶) Lotusland's new branch at the Langdong long-distance bus station. Spiffy fitout and cleaner because it's newer.

### Nanning City Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Nanningshi Qingniang Lushe; 📞 152 7771 7217; [www.nanningcityhostel.bravehost.com](http://www.nanningcityhostel.bravehost.com); Apartment 102, Block 12, Ou Jing Ting Yuan Community, 63-1 Minzu Dadao; 63-1 E 12 1102 dm fro ¥50, s without bathroom ¥80, d with bathroom per person ¥80; 📶@📶) This tidy hostel on the penthouse floor of an apartment block has the feel of a friendly boarding house. Dorms have large beds and one has an ensuite. Self-caterers will appreciate the communal kitchen but everyone will have to overlook the orange walls. It's hard to find, though. Look for the residential complex Sunshine 100 (; Yangguang Yibai), an orange building on Minzu Dadao. The complex of (Ou Jing Ting Yuan) is behind it on the right-hand side. Enter the gated area and head to block 12 near the end of the compound. You can download a map from the hostel's website. Bus 6 from Langdong bus station and the train station stop along Minzu Dadao.

### High-Class Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Haigelasi Dajiudian; 📞 579 6888; 76 Zhonghua Lu; 76 d & tw ¥388; 📶@📶) Spacious doubles with spotless wooden floors, smart furniture, supportive mattresses and accommodating staff make this well-presented hotel the best choice in the train station area. Discounts bring rooms down to ¥168 (¥178 with computer). All rooms have wi-fi.

Yongjiang Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yongjiang Binyuan; 📞 218 0888; [www.yongjianghotel.com](http://www.yongjianghotel.com); 1 Linjiang Lu; 1 standard/deluxe d ¥780/980; 🌟@🌟) If you get the discounted rate of 50%, this welcoming five-star hotel overlooking the river (and an unsightly traffic bridge) is worth the splurge. Decor is smart Chinese-hotel chic with lots of brown hues. There's a small, kidney-shaped outdoor pool.

## Eating

The place to eat is Zhongshan Lu, a bustling street jam-packed with food stalls and small restaurants selling all manner of tasty fare including squid kebabs, barbecued oysters topped with garlic, roasted pigeon, crocodile skewers, *chou doufu* (; stinky tofu) and *laoyoumian* (; literally 'old friend' noodles). Street food costs ¥5 to ¥10 and seafood at sit-down restaurants starts at ¥20.

You'll find simple restaurants around the train station selling breakfast *baozi* (; dumplings; ¥3) or Guilin *mifen* (; Guilin noodles; ¥3.50). For familiar Western fare and a sip of coffee or beer, there are a few cafes and bars in the Sunshine 100 complex on Minzu Dadao. The lane beside it, Shangye Jie (), has a bunch of cheap local eats.

Closer to the train station, on the north side of Chaoyang Stream, is the small Farmers Market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Nongmao Shichang; 🕒 5am-11pm), another excellent place for fresh fruit.



Amou Meishi CHINESE GUANGXI \$\$

( 21 Gucheng Lu; 🕒 9am-9pm) Housed on the picturesque wind and rain bridge behind Guangxi Provincial Museum, this restaurant has a beautiful, leafy garden as its backdrop. The ethnic-minority food it serves is as good as the stellar locale. Try the Miao *zhuxiang* fish (; *miaojia zhuxiangyu*; ¥78). Other mouth-watering dishes include roasted eggplant in Tai style (; *daijia qiezi*; ¥25) and shredded Li River duck (; *shousi lijiangya*; ¥38). Chinese picture menu.

Xu Courtyard Restaurant SOUTHERN CHINESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xu Yuan; Linjiang Lu; 🕒 10.30am-9.30pm) This friendly restaurant is

housed in a converted courtyard that dates back to 1892. It whips up some scrumptious dishes, including orange-peel-flavoured pork-rib wraps (; *chengpi zhibaogu*; ¥52), secret recipe roast duck (; *mizhi dingxiangya*; ¥42 per half duck) and plum marinated *huangfeng* fish (; *meizi huangfengyu*; ¥42). Chinese picture menu, but basic English is spoken.

### Information

The useful *Street Map of Nanning* (; Nanning Jiedao Tu; ¥4), in English and Chinese, can be found at bookshops and kiosks around town.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Chaoyang Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri) Changes travellers cheques and gives credit-card advances. Other Bank of China branches around town have 24-hour ATMs that accept international cards.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; 📞 232 3330; 76 Chaoyang Lu; ☺ 7am-11pm) Has some English-speaking staff, issues one-month Vietnam visas (¥420) and sells bus tickets (¥150) to Hanoi (Henei).

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Zhonghua Lu; ☺ 8am-6pm) Across from the train station.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 289 1260; 10 Xiuling Lu Xierli; 10 ☺ 9am-4.30pm Mon-Fri) Located 2km north of the train station, off Xiuling Lu ().

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO VIETNAM FROM NANNING

There are seven daily buses to Hanoi (Henei, Vietnam; ¥150, 7½ hours) via the Friendship Pass (; Youyi Guan). Two departures (8am and 8.20am) leave from the Nanning International Tourism Distribution Centre (; Nanning Guoji Luyou Jisan Zhongxin), and four departures (8.40am, 9am, 10am and 1.40pm) leave from Langdong bus station. One bus run by CITS (¥150, 7.30am) leaves from Nanfang Hotel (; Nanfang Jiudian). Note that you'll have to get off the bus and walk across the border at Friendship Pass before boarding another bus to Hanoi. There's a daily train from Nanning train station to Hanoi (1st/2nd class ¥248/160, 6.20pm, 11 hours).

The border is open from 8am to 8pm Chinese time; however, travellers have reported

that passports aren't always stamped after around 4.30pm. China is one hour ahead of Vietnam.

Local hostels are also great places to get information on Vietnamese visas and border crossings. All will help organise visas (free, pay for visa only) and transport (¥30 fee).

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Direct daily flights from Nanning include Beijing (¥1850), Shanghai (¥1550), Xi'an (¥1800), Kunming (¥730), Guangzhou (¥650) and Hong Kong (¥1850). You can also fly to a number of other countries in Asia, including Vietnam (Yuenan; ¥1950).

The **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; 📞 243 1459; 82 Chaoyang Lu; 🕒 24hr) sells tickets. The twice-hourly airport shuttle bus (¥20, 40 minutes, 5.30am to 10.30pm) leaves from outside this office. A taxi to the airport is about ¥120.

### Bus

All long-distance bus stations are inconveniently located on the outskirts of the city. The main **Langdong long-distance bus station** (Langdong keyunzhan; 📞 550 8333) is 5km east of the city centre. Buses to pretty much everywhere leave from there, although you may be dropped at one of the other bus stations when arriving. There's a ticketing office in town on Chaoyang Lu near CAAC.

There are frequent daily services:

**Beihai** ¥65, three hours, every 10 to 20 minutes (7am to 10.40pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥160 to ¥210, nine hours, 12 daily (9am to 10.40pm)

**Guilin** ¥75 to ¥128, 4½ hours, every 15 to 30 minutes (7.30am to 10pm)

**Pingxiang** ¥68, 2½ hours, 16 daily (7.30am to 8.30pm)

There is one direct bus daily to Detian Falls (Detian Pubu; ¥50, 3½ hours, 7.40am). Other daily routes include Chongqing, Chengdu, Hainan Dao, Shanghai and Hong Kong (Xianggang).

Local buses 6 and 213 (45 minutes) go from Chaoyang Lu and Minzu Dadao to Langdong bus station.

### Train

Some daily services:

**Beihai** ¥35 to ¥45, three hours, two daily (12.55pm and 1.40pm)

**Beijing West** ¥276, 27 hours, two daily (8am and 10.30am)

**Chengdu** ¥199, 36½ hours, one daily (7.38pm)

**Chongqing** ¥152, 27 hours, one daily (12.50pm)

**Guangzhou** ¥94 to ¥106, 11½ to 14 hours, three daily (12.27am, 5.12am and 6.50pm)

**Guilin** ¥57 to ¥1183, 4½ to 6½ hours, over 20 daily

**Shanghai** ¥199/231, 31/28 hours, two daily (6am and 9am)

**Xi'an** ¥223, 33 hours, one daily (11.20am)

Two daily trains go to Pingxiang (¥17/15, 3½/5½ hours, 7.40am/11.45am) near the Vietnam border. Both stop at Chongzuo (¥10/9, two/three hours) and Ningming (¥13/11, 2½ to four hours), but only the slow one stops at Pingxiang's north train station.

Booth 16 in the train station sells international tickets to Hanoi.

### **i Getting Around**

Buses 6 and 213 run the length of Chaoyang Lu and Minzu Dadao until around 11pm (¥2 per ride). A taxi ride from Langdong bus station to downtown is around ¥35. Taxis start at ¥7 and short pedicab rides cost ¥5.

## **Yangmei**

A rambling, barf-inducing bus ride 26km west of central Nanning takes you to this half-preserved 17th-century town (admission ¥10) on the Yong River (; Yong Jiang). Join curious city locals and spend a couple of hours wandering the cobbled streets and historic buildings. While many parts of the town have been subject to modern renovations, the pace is slow and you're free to peep into some of the crumbling and musty Ming- and Qing-dynasty homes. Have lunch on a river boat (dishes from ¥15) or buy some fried fish kebabs (¥5) or noodles (¥2) from street-side vendors.

Buses leave from behind Huatian Guoji (), an office-block building on Huaqiang Lu () just west of Nanning's train station, from around 8.30am to 4.30pm (¥13, 1½ hours, every 50 minutes) and return between the same times. The last bus gets packed so wait early for a

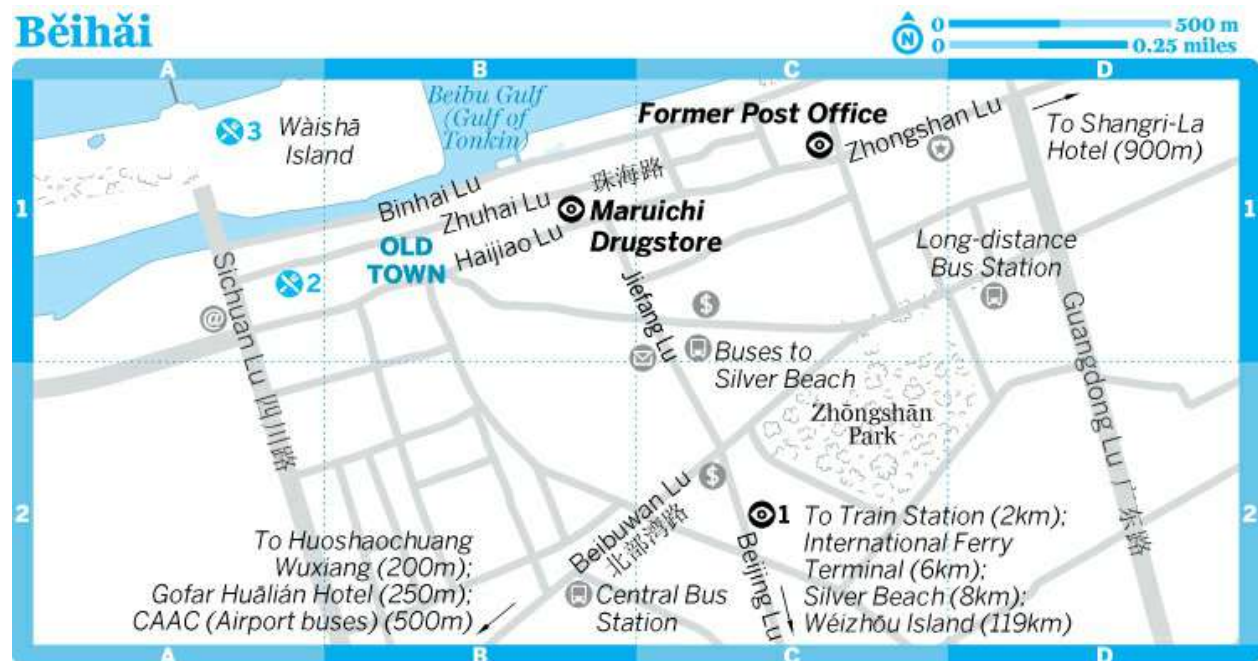
seat.

## Beihai

☎ 0779 / POP 427,000

Beihai (literally 'North Sea') is famed among Chinese tourists for its Silver Beach, dubbed 'the Number One beach on earth' in tourism brochures (it's not). Much more charming is Beihai's quaint old quarter of colonnaded streets, where crumbling colonial-era architectural heritage has escaped the demolition ball.

### Běihǎi



### Beihai

#### 📍 Top Sights

[Former Post Office](#) C1

[Maruichi Drugstore](#) B1

#### 📍 Sights

1 [Former British Consulate Building](#) C2

#### 🍴 Eating

2 [Old Town Coffee, Bar and Restaurant](#) A1

3 Seafood Restaurants A1

### 📍 Sights & Activities

## Old Town HISTORIC AREA

Beihai's old town (; *laocheng*) used to be a trading hub of old Beihai but is now a sleepy home of the city's older residents. It spreads east away from Sichuan Lu, with recently restored 19th-century *qilou* buildings (Chinese arcade houses) straddling the streets housing an alarming number of pearl shops.

The best place to start your stroll is at the western end of Zhuhai Lu (), off Sichuan Lu, just before the Waisha Island bridge. Look for the small white arch inscribed with the Chinese characters (Shengping Jie), the road's former name. This street has been paved over and offers visitors an atmospheric, slightly contrived, walk.

A few buildings of note include the attractive former post office [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Daqing Youzheng Beihai Fenju Jiuzhi; cnr Zhongshan Donglu & Haiguan Lu; admission ¥5), which now serves as a simple museum devoted to relics of the Qing-dynasty postal system; and the Maruichi Drugstore [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Wanyi Yaofang; 📍 203 9169; 104 Zhuhai Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm), a site in the disguise of a pharmacy that allowed the Japanese to carry on espionage activities in the 1930s, which now houses a tiny national security museum (no English captions).

The former British Consulate Building [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Yingguo Lingshiguan Jiuzhi), within the grounds of a high school, is a white-washed edifice built in 1885.

## Silver Beach BEACH

This is what most Chinese tourists come to Beihai for: Silver Beach (; *yintan*), a long stretch of silvery-yellow sand with so-so waters, about 8km south of the city centre. There's a host of midrange, doll's house–lookalike hotels and a number of places to eat, serving expensive but very fresh seafood. Take bus 3 (¥1.50) from the central bus station; it runs until 10pm.

## Sleeping

From the central bus station, cross Sichuan Lu (), which leads north to Waisha Island (; Waisha Dao), to reach Beihai's cheapest accommodation, on Huoshaochuang Wuxiang (), a small alley off Beibuwan Xilu, jam-packed with *zhoadaisuo* (), simple guesthouses



offering doubles and twins from ¥30.

Most budget and midrange options in town are of a low standard so look before you decide.

#### Beihai Seahouse Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Beihai Guojiqingnian Lushe; 📍 221 0555; Beibuwan Lu; dm ¥50-60, d ¥130-160; 🌐📶📶) This hostel may be inconveniently located several kilometres south of town but it doesn't stop Chinese backpackers from flocking here like seagulls to chips. Friendly staff can help with onward travel. Rooms are clean and unremarkable but it's sitting on the doorstep of a local beach. Take bus 5 from Beibuwan Lu opposite the central bus station to the last stop (20 minutes) and look for the red building.

#### Shangri-La Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Xianggelila Dafandian; 📍 206 2288; 33 Chating Lu; 33 d with city/sea view from ¥529/609; 🌐📶📶) Beihai's best hotel has top-class facilities, including a pool, tennis courts and several good restaurants. Rooms are large and luxurious, and staff can be very helpful. It's about 2km northeast of the central bus station.

#### Gofar Hualian Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Guofa Hualian Jiudian; 📍 308 7888; Beibuwan Xilu; d/tw ¥258/358; 🌐📶) A midrange hotel close to the central bus station and shopping action. Its brown-carpeted rooms are spacious with dark-wood furniture. Doubles and twins drop to ¥118 and ¥138, offering good value but blaring karaoke might make you wish to 'gofar'. Turn left from the bus station and walk 700m.

## Eating

Waisha Island, just northwest of the old town, is awash with fish restaurants. It's not cheap – expect to pay at least ¥70 per *jin* (600g) for fish – but the seafood is fresh and the seaside location is hard to beat. Walk along Sichuan Lu and cross the bridge onto the island.

A growing number of Western-style cafes and bars, housed in renovated 19th-century buildings, have sprung up in the heart of the old town. Most are at the western end of Zhuhai Lu, off Sichuan Lu.

You can also find street food (and shopping) at a night market (;

*yeshi*) on the left off Beibuwan Lu, about 700m southwest of the central bus station.

Old Town Coffee, Bar and Restaurant CAFE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Laodao Kafei; 📍 203 6652; 80 Zhuhai Lu; 80 dishes from ¥20; ☺ 2.30pm-1.30am; 📶) Serves Chinese and Western food including noodles, steaks and pasta, fresh coffee (¥18) and beer (¥6), and has free wi-fi and English-speaking staff.

### **i** Information

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; ☺ 8am-6pm)

**Donghang Internet** ( Donghang Wangba; Sichuan Lu; per hr ¥1.50; ☺ 24hr)

**ICBC** ( Zhongguo Gongshang Yinhang) Has a 24-hour ATM for international cards.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 213 Zhongshan Donglu; ☺ 8am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm, 3-6pm summer) At the eastern end of the old town; can extend visas.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Air

There are daily flights to Beijing (¥1950) and Shanghai (¥1650). The airport is 21km northeast of the centre of town.

Boat

The international ferry terminal (; guoji keyun matou) is on the road to Silver Beach (bus 3; ¥1.50). One ferry daily (¥120 to ¥280, 12 hours, 6pm) leaves for Haikou on Hainan Dao.

Three express ferries (¥120 to ¥180, one hour 10 minutes, 8.30am, 11.15am and 4pm) leave daily for the nearby volcanic island of Weizhou. Ferries return to Beihai at 9.40am, 2.30pm and 5.15pm. Services double on the weekend.

Bus

Direct bus routes include Nanning (¥65, three hours, regular) and Guilin (¥180, seven hours, seven daily).

Train

Two trains leave daily to Nanning from Beihai Train Station (¥40 to ¥60, three hours), at 9.24am and 11.50am. Tickets to onward destinations can be bought from the **train station ticket office** (☺)

8.10am-noon & 2-5pm) for a ¥5 fee.

## Getting Around

To/From the Airport

Airport shuttle buses (¥10, 30 minutes) leave from outside the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 303 3757; Beibuwan Xilu; 🕒 8am-10pm), a few hundred metres beyond Huoshaochuang Wuxiang, and connect with every flight. Flight tickets can also be bought here.

Bus

There are two main bus stations, a central long-distance (; keyun zongzhan) one on Beibuwan Lu () and a newer, inconveniently located one (; Beihai nanzhu qiche zhan). Most buses drop you at the latter station. You'll need to take public bus 15 (¥1.5) to Beibuwan Lu or a taxi (¥25)

From the central bus station, bus 2 (¥1.5) goes to the train station.

Pedicab & Motorcycle Taxi

There are three-wheeled pedicabs and motorcycle taxis. From the central long-distance station expect to pay ¥5 to Huoshaochuang Wuxiang, ¥8 to Waisha Island, Zhuhai Lu or the Shangri-La Hotel, and ¥10 to the train station.

## Weizhou Island

With its friendly fishing families, the island of Weizhou (admission ¥90) is not yet overwhelmed by throngs of tourists. The island is 124km from Beihai and is China's largest volcanic island. Make this 6.5km-long and 6km-wide island a day trip. Pick up a free map with your admission.

Boats from Beihai pull into the new ferry pier in the northwest of the island. The main settlement Nanwan Port (; Nanwan Gang) is 5km south of the pier. The waters around Weizhou contain some of the most diverse coral communities in the area; ask in Nanwan Port about motorboat rides and diving opportunities, though instructions will be in Chinese.

Beyond the island's beaches, caves, corals and dormant volcanic scenery, visitors will find a handful of historic sights awaiting exploration. Within Nanwan Port – the former volcanic nucleus of the

island – is the Three Old Women Temple (; Sanpo Miao), dedicated to the goddess Mazu. Of more interest are the two French-built churches on Weizhou. Built in 1853, the whitewashed Catholic Church (; Tianzhu Tang) in Shengtang () in the northeast of the island still attracts worshippers and has a nativity scene built out of corals.

The ticket also includes admission to the Crocodile Mountain Scenic Area (; Eyushan Jingqu) at the island's southwest point. Walk 1.8km from the entrance or take an electric cart (¥20 return) to trails leading to spots along the coast such as 'Listen to the Sea on the Platform' (a platform by the sea), 'Underwater Adventure' (a hole in the ground) and 'Old Fort' (a WWII gun).

The HI-affiliated Piggybar ( Zhuzai; 📞 601 3610; <http://weibo.com/piggybar>, in Chinese; Nanwan Port; dm ¥35-40, r ¥80-120) has basic rooms and facilities. Bike rental (¥20 per day) is available and there's an attached restaurant serving Chinese and Western food. You can also ask around to stay at local homestays (*nongjiale*; r ¥60-80).

You can find some east-meets-west cafes and bars at the eastern end of Nanwan Port and there's a fresh-food market behind the docks at the end of Nanwan Port. Vendors sell barbecue seafood and fried noodles on the colourful beach (; Caisetan) in the southeast portion of the island. Pedicabs will take you to overpriced seafood restaurants. The food is fresh, but ask for prices before committing.



#### Getting There & Around

To get from the ferry pier to Nanwan Port, it's ¥10 by pedicab. If you're planning a day trip, negotiate hire of a pedicab (roughly ¥100 for four to five hours). At the time of writing, the official electric carts (¥40 per person) that toured the island were not in use.

Tickets for boats to Weizhou Island can be purchased from the international ferry terminal in Beihai. For the schedule, see opposite;

## Zuo River Scenic Area

The chance of catching a glimpse of white-headed leaf monkeys in the wild, gazing at 170m-high ancient rock murals and puttering along a spectacular section of the Zuo River in a small wooden boat make this

area, on the train line between Nanning and Pingxiang, well worth checking out.

The village of Panlong ( ) is the launch pad. It's commonly referred to as Huashan Shanzhai ( ). Behind it, you'll find Longrui Nature Reserve ( ; Longrui Ziran Baohuqu), home to forest-covered karst peaks, elusive monkeys and hiking opportunities. But be sure to get a permit ( ; *xukezheng*) from the police in the village before you head off into the hills. You might not be allowed to wander off on your own unless you hire a local guide ( ; *xiangdao*) to accompany you as there's a danger of getting lost. Expect to pay ¥100 or so for a couple of hours.

Up the hill to the right of the ticket booth, you'll find a whitewashed hotel with decent accommodation for ¥180. The staff are very helpful (limited English) and there's a small restaurant on site with a basic English menu (dishes from ¥25).

The main reason to come here, though, is to take a one-hour (one-way) boat trip past stunning, karst-rock scenery to the Huashan cliff murals ( ; Huashan *yanhua*). These crudely drawn depictions of ancient people and animals, painted in red on sheer cliff faces up to 172m above the river, are almost 2000 years old. They are apparently the work of the Luoyue people, ancestors of the Zhuang, but why they were painted is still a mystery. For an idea of scale, the largest painted figure is 30m tall. Conservation works were ongoing at the time of research so there may be scaffolding covering portions of the cliff. The admission fee (¥80) includes the boat ride, which leaves at 10am and 2pm; outside these times, you'll have to pay an extra ¥400 to hire the boat.

### **i Getting There & Away**

To get to Panlong, first catch a train or bus to Ningming ( ). From the train station, take a pedicab (¥20 to ¥40, 30 minutes) to Huashan Shanzhai ( ). From Ningming bus station, take a pedicab (¥30 to ¥50, 40 minutes).

Regular buses leave Ningming for Pingxiang (¥12, one hour), Chongzuo (¥20, 1½ hours) and Nanning (¥65, three hours), the last buses leaving at 6.30pm, 6pm and 7.50pm, respectively.

Trains to Pingxiang leave at 10.57am (¥56, 55 minutes) and 4.44pm

(¥38, one hour 13 minutes). Trains to Chongzuo (¥38/46, 1½ hours/one hour) and Nanning (¥72/46, three hours/four hours 40 minutes) leave at 9.50am (slow train) and 1.07pm (fast train).

## Pingxiang

📍 0771 / POP 182,000

Guangxi's gateway to Vietnam (; Yuenan) is a neat and pleasant market town with a dusty, end-of-the-world feel. If you stay the night, wandering the streets at night offers an eye-popping (literally!) look at a town obsessed with flashing LED-lit buildings.

Turn right out of the bus station's front entrance onto Yingxing Lu () to find the Bank of China (; Zhongguo Yinhang), and a couple of internet cafes (; *wangba*). For a bite to eat, turn left from the bus station, where there are a handful of shops selling rice and noodle dishes. There's a local market with fresh produce two streets across from the bus station.

If you need accommodation, there are numerous hotels located behind the bus station on Beida Lu () with air-con and internet ranging from ¥50 to ¥148. Look out for the Chinese characters (*binguan*).

Trains leave for Ningming (¥56) and Nanning (¥72, 3½ hours) from the train station, Pingxiang Zhan () from 10.25am. The station is 3km south of the bus station and pedicabs (about ¥5) link the two.

From Pingxiang bus station there are regular buses to Ningming (¥12, one hour) until 7pm, to Chongzuo (¥33, one hour 20 minutes) until 6.40pm and to Nanning (¥77, three hours) until 8pm.

## Detian Waterfall

📍 0771

It's no Niagara Falls, but Detian Waterfall (Detian Pubu; [www.detian.com](http://www.detian.com); admission ¥80), Asia's largest and the world's second-largest transnational waterfall, is quite picturesque. There's the added buzz of being surrounded by karst peaks and being able to legally cross the Vietnamese border.

The falls drop in three stages to create casades and small pools.

Swimming is not allowed, but bamboo rafts (¥20) will take you up to the spray. Follow the signs past the falls to the '53rd mere stone'. After running the gauntlet of Chinese souvenir stalls, you'll hit a market of Vietnamese traders hawking snacks and smokes, and thronged with Chinese tourists getting their photo taken in front of the weathered stone as proof that they crossed into Vietnam without a passport.

Outside the entrance gates there are guesthouses offering doubles with air-con for around ¥70. Detian Kezhan (☎ 377 5201) is a decent option. There are a number of very similar restaurants with very similar menus (¥30 per dish) just outside the gates.

Unless you catch the one direct bus, which departs from Nanning's International Tourism Distribution Centre (one way/return ¥50/90, 3½ hours, 7.40am) and stops en route at Langdong bus station (8.30am), you will have to come via Daxin (☎) from Nanning. At Daxin, switch to a bus headed to Detian (; ¥20, two hours, hourly).

The last bus leaves for Daxin at around 5.30pm. There are regular buses from Daxin to Nanning (¥55, 2½ hours) until 8.30pm. The direct bus from the falls to Nanning leaves at 3.20pm. The road from Daxin to Detian was being upgraded at the time of research, while it should be completed by the time the book is printed, you might have to head to Mingshi Tianyuan and ask around to hire a private van to go to the waterfalls for ¥150.

## Mingshi Tianyuan

Mingshi Tianyuan, a succession of scenic Zhuang settlements 100km southwest of Nanning, is an unspoiled version of Yangshuo. Ming Shi Mountain Village ( Mingshi Shanzhuang; ☎ 0771 375 5028; gxmingshi@yahoo.cn; Kanxu Village; Kanxu Xiang; d from ¥1180) is a landmark and resort with rooms housed in faux Zhuang-style buildings. Discounts of 40% available.

The best way to explore the area is via bicycle (free for hotel guests, otherwise ¥40 for four hours). Bikes come with a touring route map but the best views are via the back roads which take you past flitting dragonflies and rice paddies nestled at the foot of soaring karst peaks. The resort has enclosed its own landscaped area and asks ¥80 (free if you stay) entry. There's nothing worth seeing except for a few replica

traditional Zhuang buildings.

There are some cheap *nongjiale* in the area with decent doubles (¥80) and fresh homemade meals (dishes from ¥30). One is located 100m before the resort's entrance. No English spoken. The resort also runs spick-and-span Ming Shi Express Business Hotel ( Mingshi Bianjie Jiudian; 📞 0771 375 5028; Kanxu Village; Kanxu Xiang; r ¥180) next to the *nongjiale*. A new hotel complex was being built opposite the road at the time of research.

To get there, take a bus to Daxin ( ) and switch to an hourly bus (¥10, one hour). The bus also continues to Detian Waterfall (¥20, two hours). To leave, flag down the same hourly bus from where you get dropped off.

## Leye

📞 0776

This tidy little town on the western edge of the province is keen to promote itself as a base for visiting underground caves, primeval forests hidden in collapsed mountains and cute little local villages. While many of the sights have been featured prominently in Chinese tourism and geographic magazines, its remote location keeps tourist numbers low – 30,000 a year!

### Sights & Activities

The city is compact though it's of little interest. Next to the Luomei Lotus Cave is a staircase that takes you up the mountain overlooking the town for great views of the area. Most of the sights listed below can be visited in a day or two. Public transport was patchy at the time of research and you'll have to hire a pedicab for the day (¥150 to ¥200) in order to get around. Ask the driver: *Baoche yitian yao duo shao ? ?*

#### Leye Geopark NATURE RESERVE

( Shijie Dizhi Gongyuan; 🕒 8am-5pm) The geopark encompasses a variety of sinkholes (; *tiankeng*; collapsed portions of karst mountains which are now home to primeval forests) but there are two which are must-visits. The former allows you access into the forest at a sinkhole



base and the latter, butt-clenching vistas over a 600m deep drop. Together, they give you a great overview of this peculiar regional topology.

The first, the Chuantong Tiankeng ( admission ¥60) is 8km southwest of town. From the top, turn left and do a two-hour circuit of the eerily lush forest. There's a large cave not far from the starting point: come noon on a sunny day, a beam of sunlight shines down from a hole through the darkness...very Indiana Jones-esque.

Another 4km along the same road is the region's most popular sinkhole, Dashiwei Tiankeng ( admission ¥98). From the ticket office, you'll be transferred to an electric cart for the final 25 minutes to the actual sinkhole. Follow the path to one of three viewing platforms at the top for stunning views of, yes, more karst ranges. The sinkhole looks like a deep crater carved out by a meteor. At the time of research, there were plans for building a large platform that would extend out across the top of the drop below. There was even talk of building an elevator to take visitors to the forest below.

#### Luomei Lotus Cave CAVE

( Luomei Lianhua Tong; Tongle Lu; admission ¥25; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) This otherworldly 970m-long cave, once an underground river, now boasts the largest collection of lotus-shaped limestone formations in the world. It also claims to have the largest, at 9.2m in diameter. As it's a Chinese obsession to attach real-life examples to rocks, the guide points out (in Chinese) formations that look like an elephant, parrot, a Buddha and more. The cave isn't entirely dry and there's still a portion near the end which links a dark underground cavern to a river flowing out of the exit. You'll need to arrange for transport to meet you at the exit or go back with the guide to the main entrance. The cave is 200m north of the bus station.

#### Huomai Village VILLAGE

Heading 8km southwest, you'll come to the local 'eco' village of Huomai (; Huomai Cun). Once teeming with rustic wooden houses, today it houses small restaurants and walking trails. There are plans to launch a boat ride into local water caves. While the 'eco' term is marketing guff, it's a real treat to lunch and wander around this unspoilt village.

## Sleeping & Eating

There are hotels along Xingle Lu ( ), a ¥5 pedicab ride from the train station. Rooms start at ¥70, are decent and come with air-con and ensuite bathrooms. You'll find several restaurants along the same street selling cheap noodles (; *fen*) though avoid any with unless you really want to eat Fido. From Xingle Lu, it's a ¥3 ride or a 10-minute walk west towards Tongle Zhonglu ( ). This is the city's old quarter where you'll find street vendors selling fruit and other snacks. Come night time, ask around for *shaokao* ( ) restaurants for barbecued kebabs.

## **BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO/FROM VIETNAM FROM PINGXIANG**

The Friendship Pass (; Youyi Guan) border is located about 10km south of Ping-xiang on the Chinese side, and a few kilometres from the obscure town of Dong Dang on the Vietnamese side; the nearest Vietnamese city (Liangshan; Lang Son in Vietnamese) is 18km from Friendship Pass. The border is open from 8am to 8pm Chinese time (China is one hour ahead of Vietnam), but some travellers have reported that passports aren't always stamped after around 4.30pm.

To get to the border crossing, take a pedicab or taxi (about ¥35) from Pingxiang. From there it's a 600m walk to the Vietnamese border post. Onward transport to Hanoi, located 164km southwest of the border, is by bus or train via Lang Son.

If you're heading into China from the Friendship Pass, catch a minibus to Pingxiang bus station, from where there are regular onward buses to Nanning and beyond. A word of caution: because train tickets to China are more expensive in Hanoi, some travellers buy a ticket to Dong Dang, walk across the border and then buy a train ticket on the Chinese side. This isn't the best way, because it's several kilometres from Dong Dang to Friendship Pass, and you'll need someone to take you by motorbike. If you're going by train, it's best to buy a ticket from Hanoi to Pingxiang, and then in Pingxiang buy a ticket to Nanning or beyond.

There are still reports of Lonely Planet's *China* being confiscated by border officials at Friendship Pass. We advise copying vital information and putting a cover over your guidebook just in case. Note that all bags are searched as you walk into the train station. Once you leave Pingxiang, you won't have a problem.

## Getting There & Around

Leye is far from everywhere else and buses are the only way to get here. There are four daily buses from Nanning (¥135, six hours). The main station is on the southern end of Tongle Lu ( ) and the town is 1km north. The best way to get around is via pedicab – short rides costs about ¥5. Regular daily buses depart for:

**Baise** (the regional hub where you can connect to southern destinations such as Daxin and Guangdong) ¥50, 4½ hours, regular

**Nanning** ¥135, six hours (9.10am, 10.50am, 6.30pm and 7pm)



# Guizhou

POP 36.7 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Guiyang](#)

[Qingyan](#)

[Kaili](#)

[Zhenyuan](#)

[Anshun](#)

[Weining](#)

[Chishui](#)

---

## Why Go?

Poor old Guizhou (, always the short-end-of-the-stick southwest China province. A much-quoted proverb describes it as a place ‘without three *li* of flat land, three days of fine weather, or three cents to rub together’. Ouch.

Certainly, pockets of Guizhou are desperately poor and you’ll see cloud cover more often than the sun. The upside is that there’s plenty of elbow room out in the simply stunning countryside, a sublime mix of undulating hills and carpets of forest, riven with rivers tumbling into

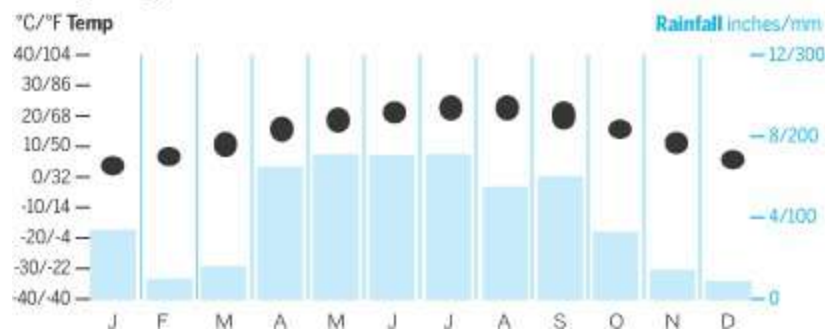
magnificent waterfalls and down into spooky-thrilling karst cave networks.

As big a draw as the landscapes is Guizhou's extraordinary human mosaic. Almost 35% of the province's population consists of more than 18 ethnic minorities. They all contribute to Guizhou's social-butterfly calendar, which enjoys more folk festivals than any other province in China, and the welcome you'll get from the people more than makes up for the weather.

---

## When to Go

### Guiyang



**Jan** Brave the chill for the wondrous sight of thousands of rare birds wintering at Caohai Lake.

**Jun** Hope for some summer sunshine as you village-hop around the southeast.

**Oct & Nov** See in the Miao New Year in Xijiang with gallons of rice wine.

---

## Best Views

- » Yunjiu Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Huangguoshu Falls ([Click here](#))
- » Shizhangdong Waterfall ([Click here](#))
- » Tiantaishan ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Historic Towns & Villages

- » Zhenyuan ([Click here](#))
- » Yunshan ([Click here](#))
- » Zhaoxing ([Click here](#))
- » Tianlong ([Click here](#))



## Guizhou Highlights

- ❶ Spend a week village-hopping around **Kaili** ([Click here](#))

- 2 Party with the locals at one of the thousand-odd **festivals** ([Click here](#)) held in Guizhou each year
- 3 Get way off the beaten track in the prehistoric fern forests around **Chishui** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Head underground at **Zhijin Cave** ([Click here](#)), the largest cavern in China
- 5 Soak yourself in the mists at the thundering **Huangguoshu Falls** ([Click here](#)), China's largest waterfall
- 6 Escape the madding crowds and get up close with rare black cranes at remote **Caohai Lake** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Amble in low gear around the charming old town of **Zhenyuan** ([Click here](#)), on either bank of the Wuyang River

## History

Chinese rulers set up an administration in this area as far back as the Han dynasty (206 BC–AD 220), but it was merely an attempt to maintain some measure of control over Guizhou's non-Han tribes.

It wasn't until the Sino-Japanese war, when the Kuomintang made Chongqing their wartime capital, that the development of Guizhou began. Most of this activity ceased at the end of WWII and industrialisation of the area wasn't revived until the Chinese Communist Party (CCP) began construction of the railways.

Despite an expanding mining industry, Guizhou's GDP per capita remains the lowest in all China.

## Climate

Guizhou has a temperate climate with an annual average temperature of 15°C. The coldest months are January and February, when temperatures dip to around 1°C. It usually feels damp, mists are heavy and the sun rarely shines.

## Language

Mandarin Chinese is spoken by the Han majority, although with a distinctive local accent. Thai and Lao are spoken by some, and Miao-Yao (Hmong-mien) dialects by the Miao and Yao.



**Air** You can fly to more than 40 destinations within China from Guiyang Longdongbao International Airport, including all major Chinese cities plus direct flights to Taipei in Taiwan.

**Bus** Guiyang and Chongqing are linked by an expressway. Another expressway links Guiyang with Kunming, via Huangguoshu Falls. Yunnan is also accessible – less comfortably – by bus via Weining in the west. Reach Guangxi through Congjiang in the southeastern part of the province from Guangxi.

Within the province, many of the major sites are accessible via OK roads. However, secondary roads in the northeast, west and southeast are uniformly poor.

**Train** Sleepers to Chengdu, Kunming and Guilin are popular. Guiyang is due to be linked by high-speed rail with Chengdu, Guilin, Leshan and Guangzhou by 2015. You can enter Guizhou by train from Hunan through the back door from Huaihua to Zhenyuan.



#### Getting Around

Buses are useful for much of Guizhou, but the train is very handy for Kaili, Zhenyuan, the east of the province and major cities. New expressways access the more remote western areas of the province. However, roads between smaller cities and villages remain a work in progress – and there are many mountains and hills out there to wind around – so bring bags of patience.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥160

\$\$ ¥160 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥50

\$\$ ¥50 to ¥100

\$\$\$ more than ¥100



---

## CENTRAL GUIZHOU

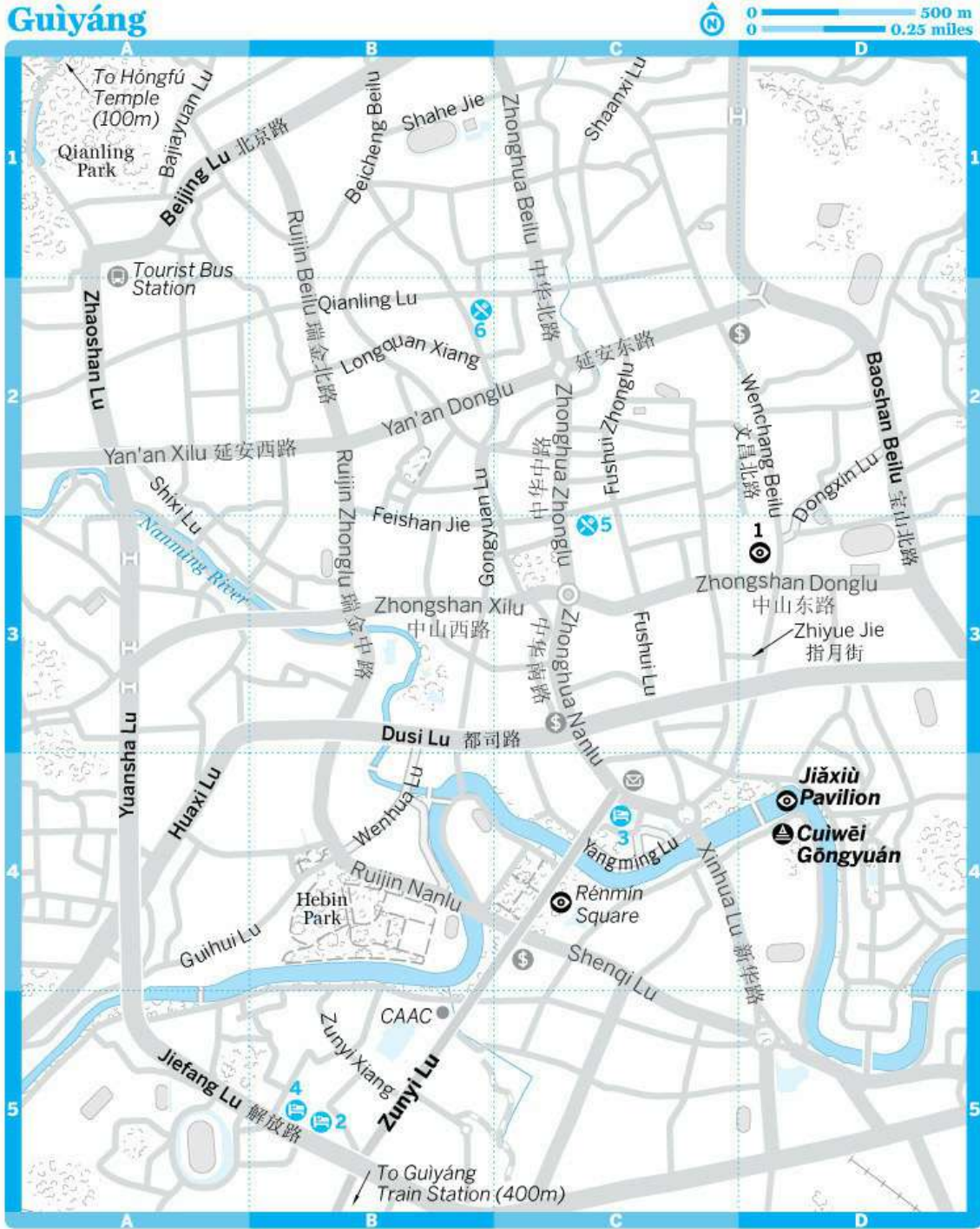
The capital city, Guiyang, dominates the central portion of the province.

### Guiyang

☞ 0851 / POP 1.2 MILLION

Guizhou's capital serves as a jumping-off point to Anshun and its surrounding sights, Huangguoshu Falls, Kaili, Zhenyuan and other destinations in the province.

# Guìyáng



Guiyang

📍 Top Sights

[Cuiwei Gongyuan](#) D4

[Jiäxiù Pavilion](#) D4

📍 Sights

1 [Wenchang Pavilion](#) D3

 Sleeping

2 [Hanting Express](#) B5

3 [Sheraton Hotel](#) C4

4 [Star Hotel](#) B5

 Eating

5 [Kaili Sour Fish Restaurant](#) C3

6 [Siheyuan](#) B2

## Sights

Hongfu Temple BUDDHIST

( Hongfu Si; admission ¥2; 🕒 7am-6pm) Located in Qianling Park ( Qianling Gongyuan; admission ¥5; 🕒 24hr) in the north of the city, Hongfu Temple is perched near the top of 1300m Qianling Shan and dates back to the 17th century. It's an easy 40-minute walk to the temple, or there's a cable car (up/down ¥15/20; 🕒 9am-5pm). The monastery has a vegetarian restaurant in the rear courtyard. From the train station area, take bus 2.

Other Sights HISTORIC SITES

Walk north across the river, turn right (east) onto Yangming Lu, cross a roundabout, descend to the river and follow it to the triple-roofed Jiaxiu Pavilion [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jiaxiu Lou; admission ¥2; 🕒 8.30am-11pm), Guiyang's most famous landmark.

Across the river stands Cuiwei Gongyuan [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( admission ¥2; 🕒 9am-11pm), an erstwhile Ming-dynasty temple which has picturesque pavilions and some pricey Miao souvenirs.

Backtrack across the bridge and walk north along Wenchang Beilu to another Ming-dynasty speciality: Wenchang Pavilion [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Wenchang Ge), restored along with the city walls. There are always plenty of locals lounging around, chatting and snacking here.

## Tours

Organised tours (in Chinese) to Huangguoshu Falls and Longgong Caves leave daily from a special tourist bus station (; *luyou*

*keyunzhan*) opposite Qianling Park. Many hotels also organise day tours, with fewer tours (if at all) in the low season.

## Sleeping

Hanting Express HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hanting Liansuo Jiudian; [www.htinns.com](http://www.htinns.com); ☎ 855 1888; 188 Jiefang Lu; 188 d/ste ¥219/259; 📶@📶 ) Very ably run and super-clean express hotel with excellent rooms and efficient service. Free coffee awaits guests in the lounge, there are three internet terminals and a lift. Walk north up Zunyi Lu and turn left along Jiefang Lu; it's on the far side of the road.

Sheraton Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xilaideng Guihang Jiudian; ☎ 588 8280; [www.sheraton.com/guiyang](http://www.sheraton.com/guiyang); 49 Zhonghua Nanlu; 49 d ¥1580; 📶📶@📶 ) Sitting astride a central intersection like a colossus, the rooms here are Guiyang's top digs. Huge, comfy beds, as well as a spa, gym, pool, and Western and Chinese restaurants. Discounts of up to 50% available.

Star Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xingyu Shangwu Binguan; ☎ 595 2588; 192 Jiefang Lu; 192 s & d ¥158; 📶@ ) This upstairs hotel a short walk north of the train station has so-so partially refurbished rooms just west of the Hanting Express.

## Eating

North of the train station and Jiefang Lu, Zunyi Xiang ( ) is a lively and busy food street of hotpot, Sichuan and Jiachangcai restaurants. It shuts around 10pm.



Kaili Sour Fish Restaurant ETHNIC MINORITY \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lao Kaili Suantangyu; ☎ 584 3665; 55 Shengfu Lu; mains from ¥38; 🕒 9.30am-midnight) Locals come here for the best *suantangyu* (; sour fish soup) in town. A Miao delicacy that's Guizhou's most famous dish,

fish are chopped up or dumped whole in a bubbling hotpot. Fling in vegies of your choice and you're all set.

Siheyuan GUIZHOU \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 682 5419; Qianling Xilu; mains from ¥15; 🕒 9am-10pm) Every Guiyang local (and expat) knows this place – a rowdy, riotous and labyrinthine spot with very tasty local dishes. It's tough to find – walk west along Qianling Xilu off Zhonghua Beilu and keep your eyes peeled for a Protestant church on the right; the restaurant is down a small alley opposite. No English menu.

### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; near cnr Dusi Lu & Zhonghua Nanlu) Has an ATM and offers all services you need. Other branches can be found on the corner of Wenchang Beilu and Yan'an Donglu, and on Zunyi Lu near Renmin Sq.

**Internet Access** At the time of writing, internet cafes in Guiyang were not accepting foreigners.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📍 590 4509; Daying Lu; 🕒 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5pm Mon-Fri)

### Getting There & Around

Air

The **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; 264 Zunyi Lu; 🕒 8.30am-8.30pm) is around 1km north of the train station, on the corner with Qingyun Lu.

Destinations include Beijing (¥1730), Shanghai (¥1280), Guangzhou (¥770), Chengdu (¥630), Xi'an (¥840), Kunming (¥440), Chongqing (¥620) and Hong Kong (¥1570).

Guiyang Longdongbao International Airport is around 10km east of the city. Airport buses depart from the CAAC office every 30 minutes (¥10, 20 minutes, 8.30am to 6.30pm). A taxi from the airport will cost around ¥60.

Bus

The **Jinyang long-distance bus station** (; Guiyang kechezhan) is in the western suburbs on Jinyang Nanlu, a long haul from central Guiyang. Take bus 219 (¥2, 6.30am to 10pm) from the train station; a taxi will cost ¥40. Destinations include the following:

**Anshun** ¥35, 1½ hours, hourly (7am to 10pm)

**Congjiang** ¥140, seven hours (9am and 11am)

**Huangguoshu**, ¥50, 2½ hours, eight daily (8am to 3pm)

**Kaili** ¥60, 2½ hours, hourly (7am to 8.30pm)

**Weining** ¥90, six hours, 9am and noon

**Zhenyuan** ¥100, five hours, 9.10am and 2.10pm

Taxi

Taxi flagfall is ¥10; late at night it increases to ¥12.

Train

Guiyang's train station in the south of town has been upgraded; trains are useful for reaching Kaili, Anshun and Zhenyuan. Destinations include the following:

**Anshun** seat/hard sleeper ¥16/70, 1½ hours, regular

**Chengdu** hard/soft sleeper ¥191/286, 11 to 20 hours, seven daily (12.38am, 4.10pm, 4.30pm, 4.59pm, 5.27pm, 6.08pm and 8.15pm)

**Chongqing** hard/soft sleeper ¥131/195, nine to 12 hours, 10 daily (12.38am to 10.47pm)

**Guangzhou** (K66, fastest train) hard/soft sleeper ¥345/588, 20 hours, one daily (3.21pm)

**Kaili** seat/hard sleeper ¥29/¥83, three hours, regular

**Kunming** hard/soft sleeper ¥162/245, 10 hours, 14 daily

**Zhenyuan** seat/hard sleeper ¥42/96, four hours, 16 daily

## Qingyan

With its winding, stone-flagged streets and restored city walls, Qingyan (admission ¥30) makes a pleasant diversion from modern Guiyang. A former Ming-era military outpost dating back to 1378, Qingyan was once a traffic hub between the southwest provinces, leaving the village with Taoist temples and Buddhist monasteries rubbing up against Christian churches and menacing watchtowers.

Some of the places of worship are still active; make sure to visit the tranquil Ying xiang Temple (; Yingxiang Si), on a side street populated by fortunetellers, and to compare the current, minimalist Catholic Church [Offline map](#) (; Tianzhu Jiaotang) with the now disused but

much more impressive 19th-century original. Opposite the church (; Jidu Jiaotang) north of Dingguang Gate (; Dingguangmen) and Baisui Fang () – an elaborately carved but recent gate – is the Gudao Kezhan ( 📞 139 8540 8581; d ¥128), with simple rooms.

Qingyan is about 30km south of Guiyang and makes an easy day trip. Take bus 207 from the Hebin Bus Depot to Huaxi (¥2, 45 minutes, every 20 minutes from 6.30am) and get off at the last stop. Then take bus 210 (¥2, 20 minutes), which will drop you outside the north gate and the ticket office.

## EASTERN GUIZHOU

More than a dozen minority groups live in the gorgeous misty hills and river valleys east of Kaili; this area is truly a rare window on atypical life in China. Sure, some villages have been discovered big time, but there are still endless places to lose yourself here. Booming country markets and festivals are held almost weekly.

China's largest Miao village, Xijiang, and the remote Dong village of Zhaoxing, in the southeast, are particularly popular. If you have time, consider visiting them as part of the back-door route into Guangxi. Outside Kaili there are no places to change money, so bring plenty of renminbi with you.

### Kaili

📞 0855 / POP 153,000

About 195km east of Guiyang, Kaili is a compact, friendly town but little more than a base for visiting minority villages or planning a back-door trip into Guangxi or Hunan.

### 👁️ Sights & Activities

If you have time, visit Dage Park [Offline map](#) ( Dage Gongyuan; Big Pagoda Park) or Jinquanhu Park ( Jinquahu Gongyuan; Big Pagoda Park), which has a Dong-minority drum tower (dating from – whoa! – two decades ago). Also check out the Minorities Museum [Offline map](#) ( Guizhou Minzu Bowuguan; Ningbo Lu; admission free; 🕒 9am-5pm) in the south of town, which has some displays of minority clothing and

artefacts.

Wu Min, also known as Louisa, a local Miao woman, runs treks to remote Miao and Dong villages that come highly recommended. She can also organise homestays, as well as arrange for visitors to study the Miao and Dong languages and learn local dances. She speaks good English. Contact her via email at [wuminlouisa@gmail.com](mailto:wuminlouisa@gmail.com).

## Festivals & Events



Markets and festivals are one of Guizhou's major attractions, and the profusion of them around Kaili makes this sleepy town the best place to base yourself for exploring them. For more festival details, see the boxed text, [Click here](#).

## Sleeping



The huge and ostentatious development of Kaili Century City (under construction at the time of writing) on Wenhua Beilu will comprise what is billed as a 'five-star hotel'.

Yingpanpo Minzu Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)




( 382 7779; 53 Yingpan Donglu; 53 s ¥288, tw ¥218-288, ste ¥688-1300; ) This pleasant place has very well-presented rooms and a secluded location up the hill, with a lovely garden decorated with *Magnolia grandiflora*. Discounts of around 50% are common.

Dali'an Hotel HOTEL \$

( Dali'an Binguan;  823 9688; 4 Yingpan Donglu; 4 s ¥128-138, tw ¥148; ) You can get a bright clean and uncluttered room in the grey block tucked away on your right up the hill just east of the Xinhua Bookstore and through the gates. Pricier singles and twins come with computer.

New Century Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Xinshiji Dajiudian;  826 0333; 1 Shaoshan Nanlu; 1 s ¥238-288, tw ¥348-398, tr ¥458;  ) With decent-sized rooms, this place in the middle of town is strong on flock wallpaper and purple reclining couches, but it's comfy. Avoid the noisy rooms at the front. Breakfast is included. Discounts of up to 60% are possible, so you could get a



room for ¥150 to ¥190.



## Kaili

 Top Sights

[Dage Park](#) B1

[Minorities Museum](#) B3

 Sleeping

1 [Dalian Hotel](#) B2

2 [New Century Hotel](#) A2

3 [Yingpanpo Minzu Binguan](#) B1

 Eating

4 [Lixiang Mianshidian](#) B2

## 5 [Night Market](#) B2

### **Eating**

Kaili's streets are lined with some fantastic snack stalls. Savoury crepes, potato patties, barbecues, tofu grills, noodles, hotpot, *shuijiao* (boiled dumplings) and wonton soup overflow at reasonable prices. Look out for *guotiedian* (; dumpling snack restaurants), which sell scrummy *guotie* (; fried dumplings) and Shanghai-style *xiaolongbao*; there are several on Wenhua Beilu, including a tasty outfit just north of the long-distance bus station. Also make tracks for the night market [Offline map](#) ( yeshi; off Beijing Donglu), very close to the Guotai Hotel (Guotai Dajiudian; 6 Beijing Donglu), which is usually packed with locals and open til the wee hours, though it was shut at the time of writing.

Lixiang Mianshidian NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#)

( Wenhua Nanlu; dishes from ¥5; ☺ 7.30am-7.30pm; 📍) T his friendly eatery, with blue plastic furniture, serves simple dishes such as spare ribs soup (¥7), and is handy for a morning meal or coffee prior to village-hopping. Try the *bingyiner tang* (; ¥5), a cooling and sweet dessert (containing a nutritious fungus).

### **Information**

Every other shop in Kaili is a chemist.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Shaoshan Nanlu) This main branch has all services and an ATM. A second branch on Beijing Donglu will also change cash. Many other ATMs around town accept foreign cards.

**Boyu Internet Cafe** ( wangba; Wenhua Beilu; per hr ¥2; ☺ 24hr)

There are loads of other internet cafes on Wenhua Beilu.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; 📞 822 2506; 53 Yingpan Donglu; ☺ 9am-5.30pm) Tucked just behind Yingpan Donglu and by the Yingpanpo Minzu Bilingual, this place has the most up-to-date information on minority villages, festivals, markets and organised tours. Staff here are helpful, with English, French and Japanese speakers among them.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Shaoshan Beilu & Beijing Donglu)

**Kaili People's Hospital** (Kailishi Diyi Renmin Yiyuan; 28 Yingpan Xilu)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 853 6113; Beijing Donglu; 🕒 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri) Deals with all passport and visa enquiries.

### **Getting There & Away**

#### Air

If arriving or leaving from Guiyang Longdongbao International Airport, airport buses (¥60, 2½ hours, 7am to 6pm) leave regularly from the **airport office** (☎ 836 3868; 73 Jinjing Lu), where you can also check-in before your flight. You can also buy air tickets here.

#### Bus

Kaili is served by five bus stations. The **long-distance bus station** (☎ 825 1025; Wenhua Beilu) has departures to most destinations.

**Congjiang** ¥83 to ¥98, five hours, six daily (7am to 2.30pm)

**Guiyang** ¥62 to ¥73, 2½ hours, every 20 minutes (7am to 8.30pm)

**Jinping** (; for Longli) ¥85, five hours, 10 daily (8am to 4pm)

**Leishan** ¥14, one hour, every 25 minutes (7am to 7pm)

**Liping** ¥99, five hours, eight daily (7.30am to 3.30pm)

**Majiang** ¥17.5

**Rongjiang** ¥62 to ¥3, 4½ hours, every 40 minutes (7.20am to 6.20pm)

**Xijiang** ¥13.5, 80 minutes, five daily (7.30am, 8.50am, 10.20am, 1.20pm, 2.30pm and 3pm)

**Zhenyuan** ¥33 to ¥39

If you can't find what you are looking for, try the **local bus station** (☎ 806 3925; Shiyi Lu), off Yingpan Lu, where several buses a day run to most surrounding villages, including Chong'an (¥13, one hour) and Huangping (¥17 to ¥25, one hour, 7am to 4pm). Buses also run to Guiyang (¥50, 2½ hours, 6am to 4.40pm) from here.

For Shiqiao (¥16, 1½ hours, several from 7am to 7pm), head to the **small local bus station** ( Wenhua Nanlu), south of the long-distance bus station.

Still another is located north of the first mentioned local bus station. This **local bus station** ( Huancheng Beilu) has departures for points north such as Matang (but also, inexplicably, south, such as Zhouxi).

#### Train

Kaili's train station is a couple of kilometres north of town but departures are infrequent and the service slow (but cheap), apart from regular trains to Guiyang (¥14 to ¥29, two to three hours), Zhenyuan (¥7 to ¥15, 1½ hours) and Huaihua (¥21 to ¥42, four hours). A handy **train ticket office** ( huochepiao daishouchu; ☎ 381 7920; 38 Wenhua Beilu; 🕒 8.30am-6.30pm) is in town; another **train ticket office** (🕒 8am-6pm) is next to the post office.

For longer distances, it's worth stopping in Guiyang to secure a reservation.

### **i** Getting Around

Bus fares cost ¥1 in Kaili and almost all of the buses departing from the train station follow the same route: up Qingjiang Lu, past the long-distance bus station, along Beijing Donglu and down Shaoshan Nanlu to the Minorities Museum. For the train station, take bus 2.

Taxi flagfall is ¥5. A taxi to the train station from the centre of town will cost around ¥10.

## Around Kaili

If you are village-hopping into Guangxi, which is lovely wherever you go, plan on spending about a week. Note that some of these villages charge entrance fees. An extraordinary number of markets are held in the villages surrounding Kaili. Check with the CITS in Kaili for the latest information.

## XIJIANG

Snugly ensconced in the pretty Leigong Hills, Xijiang (admission ¥100) is thought to be the largest Miao village (its full name in Chinese is ; Xijiang Qianhu Miaozaizhai – Xijiang 1000-Household Miao Village) and is famous for its embroidery and silver ornaments (the Miao believe that silver can dispel evil spirits). Now firmly embedded on the tourist trail, commercialisation has cheapened its allure but it still flings together a pastoral picture of paddies, wooden *diaojiailou* (traditional

handcrafted houses), water buffalo and mists.

After arriving at the bus stop by the ticket office it's another ¥5 to convey you to the main entrance. The tourist infrastructure runs to a performance square, English signposts, souvenir shops, an ATM taking foreign cards and a post office. But old men still squat on the streets smoking pipes, women do their washing in the river, pigs grunt and chickens scatter while the pace of life remains that of a traditional village. There are, furthermore, some charming places to overnight.

When the sun obliges, Xijiang is lovely and you can do yourself a favour by departing the main drag and climbing to the top of the village where the herringbone stone lanes are more tranquil. Head away from the village on paths that weave through rice paddies, sidestepping farmers and water buffalo, and recharge your soul in the surrounding hills. A lovely trek is the 50-minute hike past terraced fields and rice paddies over the hills to Kaijue Miao Village (; Kaijue Miaozhai) and Kaijue Waterfall (; Kaijue Pubu) a bit further beyond.

There's also a three-day trek from Xijiang to Paiyang (), a Miao village north of Xijiang. This trail winds its way through some remote minority villages and lush scenery. You will probably find accommodation with locals en route, but you shouldn't expect it so come prepared to sleep under the stars. Also ask about the largely uphill 27km trek from Xijiang to gorgeous Leigongping through a lushly green and forested landscape; you can continue on to Leishan from Leigongping.

Many families in Xijiang offer rooms with dinner for around ¥50. Quite a clamber up the hill just before the river in the south of Xijiang, 998 (☎ 0855-334 871; dm/r ¥25/40) has lavish views, attractive rooms, a boho air in a fantastic *diaojiolou* plus a friendly, guitar-playing owner. Quite a hefty walk to the top of the village is rewarded with further excellent views from the undisturbed Guzangtoujia (☎ 136 3809 5568; tw/d/tr/q ¥80/100/100/120), where clean and fresh wooden rooms occupy a traditional building opposite the historic Guzangtang. It's run by an old man who speaks nary a word of English.

From Kaili, buses depart on the hour from 8am to 5pm (¥13.5, 80 minutes). Returning to Kaili, buses leave at 8am, 9.30am, 11am,

1.30pm and 3.30pm. Alternatively, if you're heading south and east towards Guangxi, there are 12 buses a day to Leishan (¥10, 1½ hours, 6.30am to 5.40pm), from where you can head south towards Rongjiang (). A taxi to Kaili from Xijiang should cost in the region of ¥100.

## **LANGDE**

Superb extant Miao architecture and cobbled pathways naturally draw loads of tour buses for elaborate singing, dancing and reed flute performances in this village. But the commercialisation can't overcome the wondrousness of the locals. There's a terrific 15km trail along the Bala River that will take you through several Miao villages.

About 20km outside Kaili, buses pass by Langde (¥10) on the way to Leishan. The village is 2km from the main road. Getting away, get out on the street and flag down a bus back to Kaili.

## **LEISHAN**

This village is usually used as a transit point, but you can also head to Leigong Shan ( Leigong Mountain; admission ¥50), at 2178m, which offers some interesting hiking opportunities and some charming settlements, including the attractive Miao village of Wudongzhai. Other nearby Miao villages include Paika (Paika Miaozhai), around 3km south of Leishan, where *lusheng* bamboo and reed musical instruments have been handmade for centuries. Either walk or hop on a Datang-bound bus (¥3) from Leishan bus station. The road from Leishan continues towards Rongjiang. From Kaili, there are numerous buses to Leishan (¥14, one hour).

## **SHIQIAO**

Shiqiao means 'stone bridge' and you'll know why when you spy the lovely ones in this beautiful Miao town southwest of Kaili. The town was famed for its handmade paper, which, though not so apparent today, can still be seen. Even if you're not into paper, it's a great place to visit.

Shiqiao buses (¥16, two hours) depart from a local bus station on Wenhua Nanlu in Kaili, south of the long-distance bus station.

## **MATANG**

This village around 20km from Kaili is home to the Gejia. Officially classified as a subgroup of the Miao minority, the Gejia have different customs, dress and language, and are renowned batik artisans; their traditional dress often features batik and embroidery. Matang has been dolled up for tourism – the inevitable performance square has materialised – and the women hawkers can be persistent. A worthwhile 30-minute walk from Matang brings you to the village of Shilongzhai, populated by another sub-branch of the Miao called the Xijia.

Matang is 2km from the main road and buses regularly run past the drop-off point in the direction of Chong'an (¥6) and Kaili (¥8). Just stand on the side of the road and flag down anything that comes your way.

## **LONGLI**

Stranded in splendid isolation amid fields and rice paddies near the Hunan border, Longli (admission ¥15) is a former garrison town populated by the descendants of Han soldiers sent to protect the empire from the pesky Miao. One of the province's 'eco-museums' (read, real-live village), it's fascinating for its extant architecture.

Enter via the East Gate (Dongmen) and savour its warren of narrow cobblestone streets – you'll only need about an hour – and mostly wooden houses, lovely courtyards, pavilions, temples and town walls. The surrounding area looks prime for bike exploration, too.

Just outside the old town, Longli Gucheng Jiudian (☎ 0855-718 0018, 136 3855 4888; r with/without bathroom ¥60/40) offers basic rooms with Chinese-style toilets.

Coming from Kaili is rather arduous as there's no direct bus. First take a bus to Jinping (; ¥85, five hours, 10 buses daily, 8am to 4pm), then switch to another bus (¥15, 1½ hours, half-hourly or so from 7.30am to around 5pm) to Longli.

## **BASHA**

Wander up the hill from Congjiang () and you'd swear Basha (admission ¥12) is a movie set reproducing Tang or Song eras – the

local men wear period clothes with daggers secured to their belts, their heads shaved with a sickle, leaving only a stylish topknot. When not farming, they can be found hunting with antique rifles. Meanwhile, the women parade in full Miao rig with their hair twisted into a curl on the top of their heads.

Quite why Basha is stuck in a timewarp is a mystery, as it's only 7.5km from very modern Congjiang. Not even the locals can explain why they've retained their ancient customs so well. Nor is Basha undiscovered. A collection of six hamlets that sprawls across a beautiful valley, Chinese-English signs point the way to the various places of interest. It's best seen during a festival, even if that means more visitors, because most of the year the men are out in the fields during the day. But at any time, the surrounding countryside is superb. You might also be able to arrange a hunting trip with the men.

Some rudimentary inns in the village offer beds for ¥20 but water cuts are common. The Gufengzhai Qingnian Luguan ( 📞 138 8554 9720; s/d ¥80/120; @ ) on the main street has a pretty courtyard and pleasant enough rooms. Alternatively, you can spend the night in Congjiang. The Xingyue Binguan ( 📞 0855-641 8598; Jiangnan Lu; d ¥128; \*@@📶 ) has clean, spacious rooms and is just to the left of the bus station.

There's no bus to Basha and it's a very steep walk up to the village. Taxis in Congjiang will try and sting you for ¥40 for a one-way journey, but you should pay ¥50 for a round-trip. It's best to get the driver to wait for you, as very little transport hangs around the village.

## ZHAOXING

Perhaps the quintessential Dong village and packed with traditional wooden structures, several wind and rain bridges and five remarkable drum towers, Zhaoxing is no longer the little-known paradise it once was. Its sheer uniqueness makes for a powerful draw, and the locals are certainly not complaining about the increase in visitors.

But the essential, amazing nature of Zhaoxing hasn't changed. Yes, the restaurants on the main street have English menus, which is just as well as they eat rat ( ; *laoshu rou* ) in these parts, and there are now any number of quasi-inns and guesthouses offering rooms from ¥50. But Zhaoxing remains a working farming village, where most people



still speak only their native Dong language and are extremely welcoming. The tour groups might swoop in, but Zhaoxing remains a very easy place to while away a few days.

Nearby, too, are tourist-free Dong villages. Hike west out of Zhaoxing from the bus station for an hour, up a steep hill and past some splendid rice terraces, and you're in equally friendly Jitang (), which has its own drum tower. Head the other way out of Zhaoxing through the fields and two hours later you reach Tang'an (), a village so essentially Dong it's been named a living museum.

The Wangjiang Lou Hostel ( Wangjianglou Kezhan; ☎ 0855-613 0269; d/tr ¥60/80; 🌐) isn't a hostel, but is a family-run place by the river with nice wooden rooms featuring hot showers and sit-down toilets. The most modern digs in the village can be found at the Zhaoxing Binguan ( ☎ 0855-613 0899; s & d ¥228-398; 🌐), where rooms are spotless, with tiny gleaming bathrooms. It's a tour-group haunt, so it's often booked out.

Getting here from Kaili is still a slog. First you have to travel to Congjiang (¥87, five hours, six buses daily from 7.10am to 2pm) and then change for a bus to Zhaoxing (¥18, 2½ hours, 7.30am and 1pm). From Liping () there are five buses daily (¥18, 3½ hours, 8.20am to 2.50pm). Alternatively, take a bus from Kaili to Luoxiang (; four hours) followed by a bus (30 minutes) to Zhaoxing.

Heading out of Zhaoxing, there are two morning buses (¥18, 7.30am and noon) to Congjiang and two buses daily to Sanjiang () in Guangxi (¥35, four hours, 8.30am and 11.30am). From there you can catch an onward bus to Guilin. There are at least five buses daily to Liping.

## Zhenyuan

☎ 0855 / POP 60,000

Plunging into the far east of the province from Kaili to Zhenyuan, the train traverses an astonishing panorama of surging peaks and hills densely cloaked with trees. The delightful riverine town of Zhenyuan sits picturesquely astride the Wuyang River (Wuyang He), pinched between towering cliffs and peaks. Making its name as a garrison

outpost on the trade route from Yunnan to Hunan, Zhenyuan's trump card is its riverine old town, in contrast to its unattractive new-build district. Largely off the Western traveller radar, the old town is a delightful place for a few days temple hunting before framing the enchanting nighttime river scenes through your hotel window.



## Zhenyuan

### Sights

- 1 [Catholic Church](#) C2
  - 2 [City Walls](#) B2
  - 3 [Confucius Temple](#) C2
  - 4 [Fire God Temple](#) C2
  - 5 [Four Officials Temple](#) C1
  - 6 [Heping Cun](#) A2
  - 7 [Miaojiang Great Wall](#) C1
  - 8 Pavilion C2
  - 9 Qinglong Dong Entrance D1
  - 10 Qinglong Dong Exit D2
  - 11 Qinglong Dong Ticket Office D2
  - 12 [Tianhou Temple](#) B1
  - 13 [Zhenyuan Museum](#) C2
- [Zhusheng Bridge](#) (see 8)

### Sleeping

- 14 [Bohaiyi Zhan](#) B2
- 15 [Daheguan Hotel](#) C2
- 16 [Hejia Dayuan Kezhan](#) B2
- 17 [Lihulan Jiudian](#) C2
- [Yuantaichang Guminju](#) (see 3)
-  Eating
- 18 [Cola Cat](#) B2
- 19 [Gucheng Zhengjiao](#) C2

## Sights

### Qinglong Dong TEMPLE

The epic vertical warren of temples, grottoes, corridors and caves of Qinglong Dong ( Green Dragon Cave; admission ¥60; 🕒 8am-4.30pm) rises up against Zhongheshan ( ) on the far side of Zhusheng Bridge. It is flooded with lights at night to form a sublime backdrop to the town. Put aside a good hour to explore the grottoes: it's labyrinthine and there's a lot to see, including some choice panoramas.

The intriguing complex was commenced in the Ming dynasty, its temples dedicated to the three faiths of Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism. At the far entrance to Zhongyuan Dong ( ) is a stone table allegedly used by the eccentric founder of taichi, Zhang Sanfeng. The exterior of the splendid Wanshou Gong ( ) – once the Jiangxi Guildhall – is still bedecked with slogans, its interior a prime example of *jiangnan* -style architecture with delightful woodcarvings. The unruffled Jade Emperor presides over everything – and some fine views – from the Yuhuang Ge ( ; Jade Emperor Pavilion), his namesake pavilion at the top. Watch out when walking, as some of the stone steps are super slippery.

### Zhusheng Bridge BRIDGE

#### [Offline map](#)

Zhenyuan's old bridge ( ; Zhusheng Qiao), a gorgeous and robust span of arches topped with a three-storey pavilion, is an impressive sight, leading visitors across the water to Qinglong Dong. River views along the river from the bridge at night are serene, with Qinglong Dong splendidly lit up.

### Alleys ALLEYS

Four old and well-preserved alleys (; *guxiang*) lead north away from Xinglong Jie: Sifangjing Xiang, Fuxing Xiang, Renshou Xiang and Chongzikou Xiang. Wander along Sifangjing Xiang and peek at its namesake Sifangjing (Four Directions Well), with its three deities overlooking the water, capped with red cloths. Note the magnificently made stone steps of this alley and the gorgeous old residences. Look out for the Fushi Minzhai ( Fu Family Residence; admission ¥3), where the knowledgeable owner will give you a tour and show off his antiques. The alleyways are a picture at night, dressed with red lanterns.

### Miaojiang Great Wall WALL

[Offline map](#)

There's an energetic half-hour climb past the Four Officials Temple [Offline map](#) (; Siguan Dian) to the top of Shiping Shan () above town to the remains of this wall ( Miaojiang Changcheng; Miao Border Great Wall; admission ¥30). Get up really early or leave it late in the day and you could get a jump on ticket collectors. Undulating across peaks, the wall is quite substantial and glorious views range over town.

### Tan Gongguan HISTORIC BUILDING

Just north of Wuyanghe Bridge (Wuyanghe Daqiao), the splendid Tan Gongguan () is sadly shut, inaccessible and unrestored. Festooned with Mao-era slogans, the building is a remarkably solid piece of historic architecture and remains unconverted. Note the carvings on the door pillars.

## Other Sights

The small Fire God Temple [Offline map](#) (; Yandi Gong) backs onto the green cliffs, housing the fearsome deities Yandi and the fiery-faced Huoshen (Fire God). Now pretty much a block of flats from the 1960s, little remains of the Confucius Temple [Offline map](#) (; Wenmiao) on Shuncheng Jie save its main facade and the Li Men (Gate of Rites). The Zhenyuan Museum [Offline map](#) ( Zhenyuan Zhanlanguan; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) displays items relating to the history of the town. The old city walls [Offline map](#) on the south side of the Wuyang River have been restored and you can walk a considerable way along them towards the train station. The Tianhou Temple [Offline map](#) (; Tianhou

Gong) – a temple dedicated to the goddess Tianhou – can be found along Minzhu Jie to the west of the old town. It's worth hunting out the welcoming Catholic Church (; Tianzhu Jiaotang) south of the river. Further along the road from the church, the compound and watchtowers of Heping Cun [Offline map](#) ( 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) was Kuomintang HQ during the war against Japan.

## **Tours**

Buy tickets for the riverborne cruises (¥80 per hour) at the office next to Yumun Wharf (; Yumen Matou), identified by the decorative arch. Travel agents line Xinglong Jie; you should also be able to book tours through your hotel.

## **Festivals & Events**

On the fifth day of the fifth lunar month dragon boat festival races churn the waters of the Wuyang River. In the high season, dragon boat races take place most Saturdays at around 1pm from Xinda Bridge (; Xin Daqiao).

## **Sleeping**

There are rooms everywhere in the old town and even the old Tianhou Temple has accommodation overlooking its roof. Don't expect any spoken English. Rooms south of the river get the amplified sound of trains rumbling by. Ask for discounts.

Liuhulan Jiudian HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( 📍 572 0586; Shuncheng Jie; r ¥180-260; 🌐📞) This handy place has several rooms overlooking the river, including a pleasant ground-floor double with big sliding windows and an upstairs terrace. Note that locals pronounce this place 'Liufulan'.

Daheguan Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Daheguan Bilingual; 📍 571 0188; Shuncheng Jie; tw ¥150; 🌐) Clean and spacious place on the corner with river rooms, some with Western toilets, and a ping-pong table.

Hejia Dayuan Kezhan HOTEL \$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( 📍 572 3770; Chongzikou Xiang; 8 s/d ¥388/428; 🌐) For a measure of comfort, this traditional courtyard hotel has pleasant rooms in a lovely old property tucked away up an alley away from the river. Expect discounts of around 30%.

Bohaiyi Zhan HOTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( 📍 572 1636; 8 Chongzikou Xiang; 8 s/d ¥120/128; 🌐🌐) There's not much English (and no river views) at this friendly, small place tucked away opposite the Hejia Dayuan Kezhan on the left-hand side of historical Chongzikou (Chongzikou Xiang). Rooms are nothing special but come with showers (and squat toilets). It's quiet and you can talk room prices down.

Yuantaichang Guminju HOTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( 📍 573 4511; Shuncheng Jie; s/d/ste ¥188/298/298; 🌐) For a dose of historic charm and the aroma of *nanmu* wood, check into this hotel in an old converted courtyard house, once the residence of the Lu family. Expect discounts of around 30% or more.

## Eating & Drinking

The main drag is full of restaurants, many of them aimed at tourists. Look out for local men wielding hefty wooden mallets to pound *muchui xiangsu*, a kind of sweet, crispy and brittle biscuit made from walnut, sesame seeds, sugar and honey (it's delicious). A handful of places along Xinglong Jie sell cheap plates of fried *jiaozi* (stuffed dumplings). One or two rowdy bars dotted along Xinglong Jie see local bands step up on stage to an audience of largely empty tables.

Gucheng Zhengjiao DUMPLINGS \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Xinglong Jie; mains ¥7; 🕒 noon-2am) Right next to Yumun Wharf, this very simple restaurant does lovely *jianjiao* (fried dumplings) and is a cheap place for a beer.

Cola Cat ICE CREAM \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Kele Mao; Xinzhong Jie; milk shakes from ¥8; ☺ 9.30am-midnight)  
This ice-cream bar along Xinzhong Jie does fine milkshakes (*naixi*) and ice creams.

### **i** Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** ( Nongye Yinhang; Xinglong Jie; ☺ 24hr)  
ATM taking foreign cards; opposite Zhenyuan Museum.

**Industrial and Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang  
Yinhang; Xinglong Jie; ☺ 24hr) ATM taking foreign cards.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Xinglong Jie) Across from  
Yumun Pier.

**China Post** ( Xinglong Jie)

**Shenzhou internet cafe** ( Shenzhou wangba; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) On  
south side of the Xinda Bridge by the wall.

**Xinshikong internet cafe** ( Xinshikong wangba; Panlong Jie; per hr  
¥3; ☺ 24hr)

**Zhenyuan Tourist & Information Centre** ( Zhenyuan Luyou Zixun  
Fuwu Zhongxin; Xinzhong Jie; ☺ 8am-8pm) Good for maps of  
Zhenyuan. Short rickshaw rides around town (¥10).

### **i** Getting There & Around

The best way to reach Zhenyuan from Guiyang is by train (the tracks  
thunder south of the old town). The **train station** (*huochezhan*) is on  
the south of the river in the southwest of town, not far from Wuyanghe  
Bridge (Wuyanghe Daqiao). A taxi to the old town from the train  
station is ¥4. It's a good 15-minute walk to the old town from the train  
station, so either book your ticket out of Zhenyuan when you arrive or  
ask your hotel owner to book one for you (they will need to take your  
passport, however). You can book tickets more than three days in  
advance at the post office for a commission (¥15). Trains from  
Zhenyuan include the following:

**Anshun** ¥48 to ¥54, 5½ hours, five per day

**Guiyang** ¥37 to ¥42, 3¾ hours, regular

**Huaihua** ¥29, 2½ hours, regular

**Kaili** ¥15, 75 minutes, regular

**Yuping** ¥13, one hour, regular

The **bus station** (*changtu qichezhan*) is opposite the train station. There are no direct buses to Tongren (), first take a train to Yuping (; ¥13), then change for a bus to Tongren (¥26). Buses run to the following:

**Baojing** ¥13, four daily (8.30am, 12.50pm, 1pm and 3pm)

**Kaili** ¥33, five daily (8am, 9.30am, 11am, 1pm and 3pm)

## Around Zhenyuan

Tiexi

Once you have seen all the sights, this attractive gorge (admission ¥50) is a pleasant diversion from town. From the main entrance you can hike to Dragon Pool (; Longtan) and Jiguan Ling () along a scenic route. Reach the gorge by buggy (¥6, 20 minutes) from the western end of Zhusheng Bridge; vehicles depart when full.

Baojing

This well-preserved Dong minority village around 40km from Zhenyuan has some fine examples of *diaojiolou* architecture. The seed sowing festival (; *bozhongjie*) on the third day of the third lunar month is Baojing's best-known minority festival where dancing and courtship rituals meet in lively celebration. Four buses (¥13, 8.30am, 12.50pm, 1pm and 3pm) run to Baojing daily from the bus station in Zhenyuan.

WORTH A TRIP

## FANJINGSHAN

Accessed via the gateway town of Tongren in the northeast of Guizhou, the 2572m-high Buddhist-named mountain of Fanjingshan (; ¥120) is a must for fans of Buddhist culture, nature lovers or those en route to Hunan or Chongqing from Zhenyuan or Kaili. The reserve provides a home to more than half the province's protected plants and two-thirds of its animals, including the very rare (and even more rarely glimpsed) golden monkey (*jinsih o u*).

To reach the mountain, hop on a bus (¥29, hourly, first/last bus 7.30am/4.30pm, 90 minutes) to Jiangkou () from the north bus station (; *beizhan*) around the corner from the train station in



Tongren; ignore minivan taxis offering to take you for ¥500 return. It's possible to walk the extra 9.5km to the start of the climb proper from the drop-off but you will be bushwhacked upon arrival, so most travellers jump on a waiting minibuss (¥20 return) to then take the cable car (¥160 return), which takes 20 minutes to ascend the mountain from where you can climb to the summit (; *jinding*). As it is both pricey and a soft option, it's tempting to skip the cable car, but it is worth every penny; climbing the entire route is a marathon on the legs.

Spring and autumn are the best seasons to visit Fanjingshan, but check on the weather before you go as it can be fogged out; clear days are rewarded with spectacular views. In Tongren, the Folanbeisi Liansuo Jiudian ( 📍 0856 691 8001; Qingshui Dadao; r from ¥279; 🌐📧) is a handy and serviceable hotel very near the train station. Tongren itself is an unremarkable town, although it has an intriguing tumbledown Old Town (; Gucheng Qu) around Zhongshan Lu near the Jin River ( ) in the south of town.

To reach Tongren from Zhenyuan, first take a train (¥13) to Yuping and then jump on a bus (¥26). Other buses from Tongren bus station run to Huaihua (¥45, three daily), Kaili (¥80 to ¥90, six daily) and Guiyang (¥125, eight daily); bus 4 (¥1) links the bus station and the train station. Trains run southeast from Tongren to Huaihua and north to Chongqing and Chengdu.

## WESTERN GUIZHOU

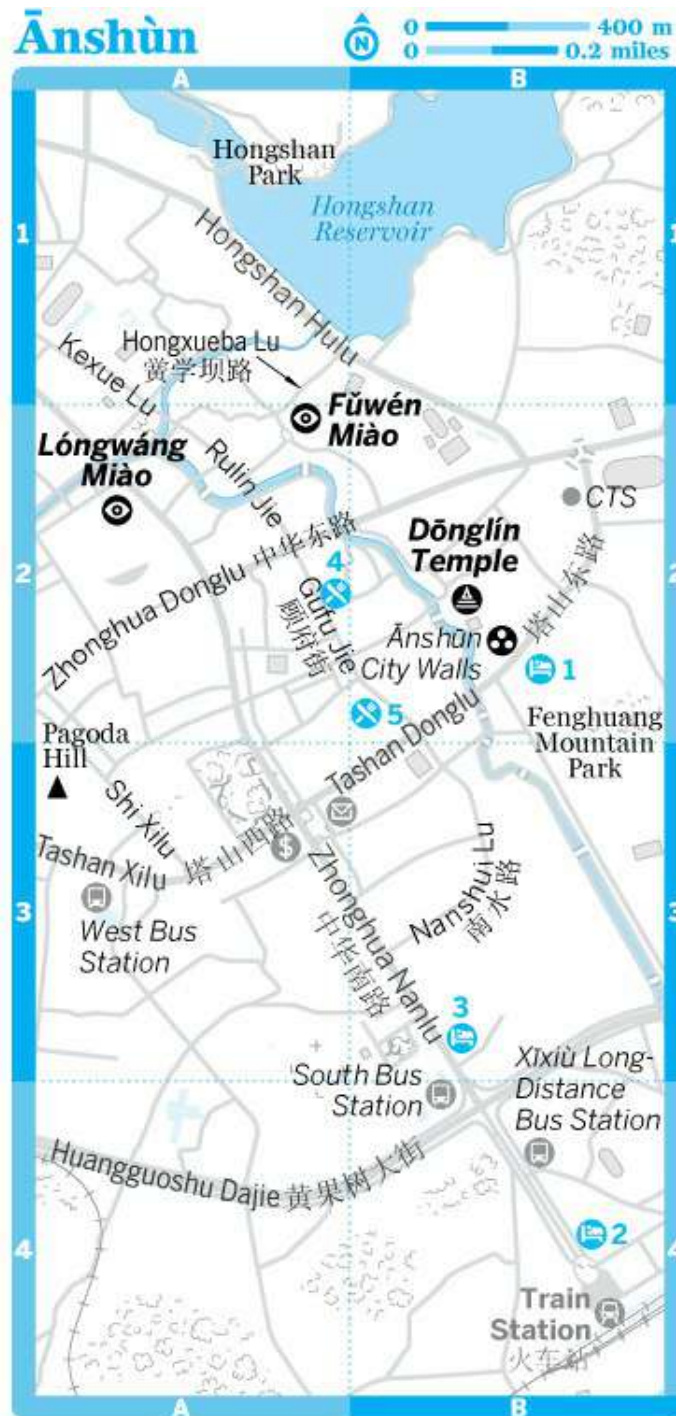
Birds, caves and waterfalls are the main attractions of this region. Outside Anshun, the thundering Huangguoshu Falls is Guizhou's premier tourist attraction, while Zhijin Cave is one of the largest in the world. Way out west, the town of Weining has one of China's top birdwatching locations in Caohai Lake, and also offers a backdoor route into Yunnan.

### Anshun

📍 0853 / POP 449,000

Once a centre for tea and opium trading, Anshun remains the

commercial hub of western Guizhou and is now most famous as a producer of batik, kitchen knives and the lethal Anjiu brand of alcohol. Once a marvellous historical city ringed by a town wall, the city's heritage has largely vanished and it's the surrounding sights that are the real draws.



Anshun

## Top Sights

[Donglin Temple](#) B2

[Fuwen Miao](#) A2

[Longwang Miao](#) A2

## Sleeping

1 [Fenghuangshan Dajudian](#) B2

2 [Jungong Ruiqi Jiudian](#) B4

3 [Xixiushan Binguan](#) B3

## Eating

4 [Liuyishou Kaoyu](#) A2

5 [Night Market](#) B2

## Sights

A modest chunk of the former Anshun city walls (; Anshun chengqiang yizhi) stands opposite the Fenghuangshan Dajudian on Tashan Donglu, where a revealing photo on the wall depicts Anshun during Republican days, before the advent of concrete, road widening and Socialist aesthetics.

Fuwen Miao CONFUCIAN

( admission ¥10; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) Check out this charming Confucian temple in the north of town with some stunningly intricate cloud-scrolling carvings on the twin stone pillars before the main hall.

Donglin Temple BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

( Donglin Si; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) The resident Buddhist monks welcome visitors warmly to this temple, built in AD 1405 (during the Ming dynasty) and restored in 1668.

Longwang Miao BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

( 🕒 7.30am-5.30pm) A working Buddhist temple, just off Zhonghua Beilu.

## Sleeping

If your Chinese is up to it, try one of the guesthouses (*luguang*) in the train station area for a cheap room.

Jungong Ruiqi Jiudian

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 333 0666; 121 Zhonghua Nanlu; 121 s & d ¥110-150; 🌐) On your right as you exit the train station, this affordable and convenient place has decent rooms and friendly staff. No English sign.

Xixiushan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 333 7888; fax 333 7668; 63 Zhonghua Nanlu; 63 s/d ¥288/328, ste ¥388; 🌐📧) Pleasantly different from the competition, set back from the road with a garden in the main courtyard at the rear. Rooms are very clean, considering the high occupancy. Singles are quite a lot smaller, with shower not bath. Discounts of up to 50% available.

Fenghuangshan Dajjudian HOTEL \$\$

( Golden Phoenix Mountain Hotel; 📞 322 5724; 58 Tashan Donglu; 58 d ¥228-398; 🌐📧) There's loads of brass and faded marble here, bathrooms are cramped and rooms have seen better days, but staff are pleasant enough. Look for a building that looks like a bank, with two lions standing guard outside. Big discounts of around 40% are normally available.

## Eating

Local speciality *qiaoliangfen* () is a spicy dish made from buckwheat noodles and preserved bean curd. A good on-the-run snack is *chongchong gao* (), a cake made from steamed sticky rice with sesame and walnut seeds and sliced wax gourd. Also look out for plates of fried potatoes, hawked at the roadside, which taste like chips; local call them *yangyi*. The teahouse at the rear of the Wumiao is a serene place for a cup of *cha* (from ¥28).

By far the best place to eat is the night market ( yeshi; Gufu Jie). It's the most happening spot in Anshun, with the locals crowding out the many food tents and stalls that set up here. The speciality is barbecued fish (*kaoyu*), while Uighur chefs, snails sizzling up in woks and proudly displayed pigs' trotters fill out the picture.

Liuyishou Kaoyu FISH \$

[Offline map](#)

( Hongqi Lu; fish per jin from ¥20; ☺ 6pm till late) Packed during night-market hours, when the restaurant fills its premises on Hongqi Lu and spills onto tables flung out on Gufu Jie, this heaving eatery specialises in tasty grilled fish. It's best to dine as a group, as fish weights start at around three *jin*.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Tashan Xilu & Zhonghua Nanlu) Offers all services and has an ATM. There are many other ATMs around town.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Zhonghua Nanlu & Tashan Donglu) Look for it tucked next to the China Telecom building.

**China Travel Service** (CTS; Zhongguo Luxingshe; ☎ 322 4537; Tashan Donglu; ☺ 9am-6pm Mon-Fri) Look for a blue sign with white Chinese characters.

### **i** Getting There & Around

The **north bus station** (; Anshun keyunzhan) has buses (¥30, four hours, every 45 minutes) to Zhijin town (for Zhijin Cave). The **west bus station** (; *keyun xizhan*) has some handy buses:

**Guiyang** ¥42, every 20 minutes (7am to 7pm)

**Longgong Caves** ¥10, every 25 minutes (7.30am to 6pm), via Shitouzhai (¥5).

**Yunfeng** ¥5, 40 minutes, every 25 minutes (7am to 6pm)

The **south bus station** ( keche nanzhan; ☎ 322 2169; cnr Huangguoshu Dajie & Zhonghua Nanlu) has a handful of useful destinations:

**Guiyang** ¥35, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes (6.50am to 7.10pm)

**Huangguoshu** ¥15, one hour, every 20 minutes (8am to 6pm)

**Kunming** sleeper ¥150, 11 hours, four daily (9am, 10.40am, 1pm and 4pm)

**Pingba** ¥13, 30 minutes, every 20 minutes (7.20am to 7pm)

**Shuicheng** ¥55, 3½ hours, every 50 minutes (8am to 5.30pm)

**Weining** ¥90, 10am

Buses from the **Xixiu long-distance bus station** (*Xixiu keyunzhan*) near the train station has buses for provinces in the southeast and

southwest of China and hourly buses to Shitouzhai (¥6).

Most trains from the **train station** (*huochezhan*) heading east stop in Guiyang (¥8 to 16, 1½ hours, regular). It is still hard to get sleeper reservations for trains from here; pick them up in Guiyang instead. A train ticket office can be found just north of the Jungong Ruiqi Jiudian. Destinations include the following:

**Guiyang** ¥8 to ¥16, 1½ hours, regular

**Kaili** ¥44, four hours, nine daily

**Kunming** ¥76 to ¥215, nine hours, regular

**Liupanshui** ¥24, 2½ hours, regular

Bus 1 zips around town from the train station and up Tashan Donglu. Bus 2 travels between the train station and the north bus station. Bus 6 runs from the train station to the south bus station. Buses cost ¥1. Taxi flagfall is ¥6.

## Around Anshun

### LONGGONG CAVES

The vast Longgong Cave (Longgong Dong; Dragon Palace; admission ¥120; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) network snakes through 20 hills. While some travellers enjoy drifting through the caves on rowboats with their subdued guides, others find the whole experience – coloured lights, cheesy music, tour groups – kitschy.

An easy day trip, Longgong is 27km south of Anshun. Local buses (¥8, 40 minutes, 5.30am to 6pm) – ask for the *longgong zhuanxianche* ( – depart hourly from Anshun’s west bus station from 7.30am. Returning, buses leave hourly until about 5pm.

### ZHIJIN CAVE

As the largest cave in China, and one of the biggest in the entire world at 10km long and up to 150m high, Zhijin Cave (Zhijin Dong; admission ¥135; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) gets tourist accolades. *Lord of the Rings* has been invoked to describe the abstract landscape of spectacular shapes and spirals, often cathedral-like, reaching from floor to ceiling.

Tickets to the cave, which is 15km outside Zhijin and 125km north of Anshun, include a compulsory 2½-hour Chinese-only tour (minimum 10 people). The tour covers some 6km of the cave, up steep, slippery steps at times, and there are English captions at the main points along the way. Solo travellers visiting outside peak summer months or Chinese holidays should be prepared for a possibly tedious wait for enough people to roll up to form a group.

A long day trip from Anshun is just possible, but you need to be on the 7.25am bus to Zhijin (¥30, 3½ hours), which leaves from Anshun's north bus station. Once there, hop in a taxi (¥4) to the local bus station on Yuping Jie and catch one of the minibuses that leave regularly for the cave entrance (¥7, 50 minutes). Returning from the caves, buses leave regularly. The last bus back to Anshun heads out of Zhijin at 5.30pm.

From Guiyang, regular buses (return ¥98, four hours) depart every 30 minutes to Zhijin from the long-distance bus station from 6.30am in the morning until 5.20pm.

## **HUANGGUOSHU FALLS**

Disgorging from endless buses, a friendly invasion of frenetic tourists from all over China come to see the 77.8m-tall, 81m-wide Huangguoshu Falls (Huangguoshu Dapubu; Yellow Fruit Tree Falls; admission Mar-Oct ¥180, Nov-Feb ¥160; 🕒 7.30am-6pm), making this Guizhou's number-one natural attraction. From May to October in particular, these falls really rock the local landscape with their cacophony, while rainbows from the mist dance about Rhinoceros Pool below and colourful peacocks show off their dazzling plumage.

The cascades are actually part of a 450 sq km cave and karst complex discovered when engineers explored the area in the 1980s to gauge the region's hydroelectric potential. Although there are paths around the falls, the entire area is vast and sights so spread out you'll really need to board one of the sightseeing cars (guanguangche; ¥50). They link the main areas, which include Doupotang Waterfall, Luositan Waterfall, Tianxing Qiao Scenic Zone and the Main Waterfall Scenic Zone. Hiring a cab from the entrance for a tour will cost around ¥100 or expect to pay around ¥20 for a single journey.

In the main waterfall area, don't miss groping your way through the dripping natural corridor in the rock face of the 134m-long Water Curtain Cave ( huilian Dong), behind the waterfall.

Going underground into the colossal caves within the geological Tianxing Qiao Scenic Zone (; Tianxing Qiao Jingqu) is a quite awe-inspiring sideshow, especially if you do not have time for the Longgong or Zhijin Caves.

The bus back to Anshun from Huang-guoshu Falls passes the drop-off for the riverside village of Shitouzhai (; admission ¥40), around 6km north of the falls, its stone houses and bridges picturesquely set next to a hill amid paddy fields. Famed for its batik, which you can see Buyi women making by hand, the village is a joy to explore. It's around a 2km walk from the main road to the village. The bus from Longgong Caves also passes by.

You can do Huangguoshu Falls in a day trip from Guiyang at a push, while it's an easy one from Anshun. There are accommodation options everywhere in Huangguoshu village, but there is little need to overnight.

From Anshun, buses (¥15, one hour, 8am to 6pm) run every 20 minutes from the south bus station. There are eight buses a day from Guiyang to Huangguoshu (¥50, 2½ hours, every 30 minutes from 8am) from the long-distance bus station on Jinyang Nanlu. The last bus returns to Guiyang at 4pm. Buses (¥35, two hours) also regularly leave from Guiyang train station to Huangguoshu.

## **TIANLONG & TIANTAISHAN**

You only need around an hour or so to explore this delightful village cut with a sparkling stream not far outside Anshun. Tianlong (admission ¥35) is a well-preserved Tunpu village (), its settlements erected by Ming-dynasty garrison troops posted here during the reign of Hongwu to help quell local uprisings and consolidate control. Coming from the middle and lower reaches of the Yangzi River, the soldiers brought their customs and language with them. Han descendants of these 14th-century soldiers live in Tianlong today, and the women are notable for their turquoise tops with embroidered hems. Gorgeous-looking embroideries are on sale everywhere



(bargain hard), while local women sit sewing small and exceptionally colourful embroidered shoes, in all sizes.

Complementing its dry stonewalls and narrow alleyways, the architectural highlight of the village is the Tianlong Xuetang (), an impressive and distinctive building. The Sanjiao Temple (; Sanjiao Si) is a creakingly dilapidated shrine dedicated to Taoism, Confucianism and Buddhism. Short performances of *dixi* – an ancient form of local drama – are regularly held in the Yanwutang () throughout the day.

Other local idiosyncrasies include distinct colloquialisms: the local expression for a thief is a *yemaozi* (night cat). Several *kezhan* (inns) in the village can put you up for the night for around ¥50, a delightful option for a bucolic evening. To reach Tianlong, hop on a bus for Pingba (; ¥13, 30 minutes, every 20 minutes, 7.20am to 7pm) from Anshun's south bus station and at the drop off take a minivan (¥10 to ¥15) to Tianlong.

Around a 20-minute walk from Tianlong, the astonishing temple of Wulong Si () emerges surreally from the summit of Tiantaishan (admission ¥25), a bit like Colditz Castle. A refreshing hike through the trees takes you to the summit, where you can explore the various rooms of the temple. In a hall at the rear, a figure of Guanyin lithely sits, illuminated by a guttering candle; a further hall displays exhibits relating to local *dixi* theatre. Afterwards, climb to the Dayuetai terrace to gaze out over the glorious countryside.

When descending from the temple keep an eye out for a small shrine along a narrow trail where a statue of one of the 18 *luohan* sits grumpily all alone. His skinny frame is the result of generosity in giving food to others; he also bestows good fortune on all. Further below rises a 21m-high and 500-year-old ginkgo tree, festooned with ribbons, while other trails disappear into the trees.

## **YUNFENG BAZHAI**

Yunfeng Bazhai is a scattering of traditional villages about 20km northeast of Anshun. Introduced by the mildly interesting Tunpu Culture Museum ( Tunpu Wenhua Bowuguan; through ticket ¥50; ☺ 8am-6pm), which serves as the point of entry, the village of Yunshan (), at the top of a steep set of steps from the road away from the museum, is a gem. Hung with bright yellow dried corncobs and red

lanterns, protected by a wall and a main gate and overlooked by the Yunjiu Shan (Cloud Vulture Mountain), the settlement is a charming and unruffled portrait of rural Guizhou. At the heart of the almost deserted village stands a rickety Money God Temple (Caishen Miao), opposite an ancient pavilion.

If you want to spend the night, a couple of *kezhan* can put you up. Whatever you do, don't miss the chance to walk up to Yunjiu Temple (; Yunjiu Si) at the top of Yunjiu Shan for some of the most extraordinary views in Guizhou. You can walk virtually all around the top of the temple for a sublime and unparalleled panorama of fields and peaks ranging off into the distance. In spring, flowering bright yellow rapeseed plants (*youcaihua*) add vibrant splashes of colour.

From Yunshan it's a 15-minute walk along the road to the village of Benzhai (), also at the foot of Yunjiu Shan. With its old pinched alleyways, high walls, carved wood lintels, stone lions and ancient courtyard residences, Benzhai is brim-full of history.

To reach Yunfeng Bazhai, take a bus (¥5, 40 minutes, every 25 minutes, 7am to 6pm) from Anshun's west bus station. The last bus from Yunfeng Bazhai to Anshun leaves at 6.20pm, passing through Benzhai. Coming from Tianlong, hop on a bus from the main road to Qiyangqiao (; ¥4, 20 minutes) and then hop on a motorbike (¥10) for the 10-minute journey to the museum and the villages.

## TRADITIONAL GARMENTS

The assortment of clothing among Guizhou's minorities provides travellers with a daily visual feast. Clothes are as much a social and ethnic denominator as pure decoration. They also indicate whether or not a woman is married, and provide clues to a woman's wealth and skills at weaving and embroidery.

Many women in remote areas still weave their own hemp and cotton cloth. Some families, especially in Dong areas, still ferment their own indigo paste as well, and you will see this for sale in traditional markets. Many women will not attend festivals in the rain for fear that the dyes in their fabrics will run. Methods of producing indigo are greatly treasured and kept secret, but are increasingly threatened by the introduction of artificial chemical dyes.

Embroidery is central to minority costume and is a tradition passed down from mother to daughter. Designs include many important symbols and references to myths and history. Birds, fish and a variety of dragon motifs are popular. The highest quality work is often

reserved for baby carriers, and many young girls work on these as they approach marrying age. Older women will often spend hundreds of hours embroidering their own funeral clothes.

Costumes move with the times. In larger towns, Miao women often substitute their embroidered smocks with a good woolly jumper (sweater) and their headdresses look suspiciously like mass-produced pink and yellow Chinese towels.

## Weining

 0857 / POP 57,000

A dusty, scrappy place with a manic energy epitomised by the orange motorised rickshaws that career around town, Weining is one of the top spots in the world for that most sedate of hobbies, birdwatching. The jewel-like Caohai Lake sits close to the city centre and draws twitchers to observe wintering migratory birds, especially the rare black-necked crane. Called 'Sun City' by Chinese for its abundant rays, and historically an important route linking north Yunnan and Sichuan, Weining is home to a large population of Hui (Muslim), Miao and Yi; a big market held every three or four days sees the town thronged with people from the surrounding minority villages.

### Sights & Activities

#### Caohai Lake LAKE

( Caohai Hu; Grass Sea Lake) Guizhou's largest highland lake and southwest China's most significant wetland, Caohai Lake has a fragile history, having been drained during both the Great Leap Forward and the Cultural Revolution in hopes of producing farmland. It didn't work and the lake was refilled in 1980. Government tinkering with water levels in ensuing years impacted the local environment and villagers' livelihoods; officials have since enlisted locals to help with the lake's protection in an effort to remedy both problems. The 20 sq km freshwater wetland has been a national nature reserve since 1992, but many environmental problems remain.

Black-necked cranes are the main attraction, but among the other 180 or so protected bird species are black and white storks, golden and imperial eagles, white-tailed sea eagles, Eurasian cranes and

white spoonbills. The prime time to see them is from November to March.

Lovely trails explore much of the lake, but the best way for a close-up of the birds is to cruise around the lake on a punt. Buy tickets at the ticket office (per boat 1/2/3hr ¥120/240/360; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) at the end of the path leading to the lake, rather than from the touts lurking nearby.

To get to the lake it's a 45-minute walk southwest of central Weining or a five-minute taxi ride (¥5).

## **Sleeping & Eating**

For budget rooms, try the *zhaodaisuo* (guesthouse) in the bus station area, where you should be able to net a room for around ¥50.

With a large population of Hui, Muslim *yangrou fen* (lamb rice noodles) and *niurou fen* (beef rice noodles) places are all over town, especially around the bus station area. A local delicacy is dragonfly lava, consumed fried.

Heijinghe Binguan HOTEL \$\$

(📞 623 6888; Jianshe Donglu; s & d ¥188-308; 🌙🍷) Cramped rooms and cold in the winter, this is the self-proclaimed top choice in town. Don't expect too much, especially in cheaper rooms. To get here, turn right out of the bus station; it's a block ahead on the left, set back from the road. Discounts of 30% available.

Caohai Jiari Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

(📞 623 1881; Caohai Lu; s, d & tr per person ¥358-388; 🌙) Right by the lake, rooms here are big and comfortably furnished, and service has improved markedly. It's still not worth the price, but discounts (of 50% to 60%) make things more tolerable.

## **Information**

There's no place to change money in Weining. An ICBC ATM on Jianshe Donglu, west of the Heijinghe Binguan, takes foreign cards, but bring extra cash just in case. Opposite the bus station, above the China Mobile shop, there's an **internet cafe** (per hr ¥2; 🕒 24hr).

## **Getting There & Away**

Weining is a seven-hour bus ride from Guiyang (¥90, 9am and noon).

You can also get here from Anshun's south bus station (¥90, 10am). First take a bus to Shuicheng (; ¥55, 3½ hours, every 50 minutes from 8.30am to 5.30pm), then transfer to a Weining-bound bus (¥30, two hours, hourly from 7.50am).

Leaving Weining, you can backtrack to Guiyang (¥90, 9am, noon, 6pm) or take a bus south to Xuanwei in Yunnan (¥50, five hours, seven daily from 7.30am to 3.30pm). From Weining, there is also a daily sleeper bus to Kunming (¥108, 11 hours, 5pm).

Alternatively, take a bus to Zhaotong (¥30, three hours, 8am, 1pm, 3.30pm), from where you can hop over to Xichang in southern Sichuan and connect with the Kunming–Chengdu train line.

## NORTHERN GUIZHOU

This is where things get a bit wild. Few foreigners venture north of Guiyang; those that do will find that already incomprehensible accents get broader, roads more rugged and that a stray *laowai* (foreigner) can stop the traffic. Way up on the Sichuan border, Chishui and its surrounding valleys, waterfalls and national parks are virgin territory for travellers, and utterly gorgeous. It's a good-looking and little-travelled route into southern Sichuan.

### CELEBRATING WITH THE LOCALS, GUIZHOU-STYLE

Minority celebrations are lively events that can last for days at a time, and often include singing, dancing, horse racing and buffalo fighting.

One of the biggest is the lusheng festival, held in either spring or autumn, depending on the village. The *lusheng* is a reed instrument used by the Miao people. Other important festivals include the dragon boat festival, hill-leaping festival and 'sharing the sister's meal festival' (equivalent to Valentine's Day in the West). The Miao new year is celebrated on the first four days of the 10th lunar month in Kaili, Guading, Zhouxi and other Miao areas. The fertility festival is celebrated only every 13 years (the next one's due in 2016).

All minority festivals follow the lunar calendar and so dates vary from year to year. They will also vary from village to village and shaman to shaman. CITS in Kaili can provide you with a list of local festivals.

# Chishui

 0852 / POP 50,000

Plonked on the border with Sichuan, Chishui was once a riverine node for the transport of salt. Some 230 million years before that this was all ocean and today it's the gateway to some of the least-seen natural delights in the southwest. Just outside town are deep gorges and valleys flanked by towering cliffs hewn out of red sandstone – a World Heritage-listed feature known as *danxia* – a profusion of waterfalls, as well as luxuriant bamboo and fern forests that date to the Jurassic Era.





While the locals are extremely friendly, there's nothing of intrinsic interest in Chishui itself, but it's the logical base for exploring the surrounding sights. The town sits on the east bank of the Chishui River (Chishui He). Cross the town's main bridge (Chishui Daqiao) to the other side and you're in Jiuzhi ( ) in Sichuan.

Note that you cannot change money in either Chishui or Jiuzhi, so bring extra cash with you.




## Sleeping

You can find basic rooms for ¥50 in places opposite the bus station on Renmin Donglu.




Chishui Yuan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

(  288 7798; 18 Renmin Beilu; 18 s & d ¥388-488;    ) A short walk from the bus station, this hotel is the town stalwart and remains popular with tour groups. Rooms are large and perfectly fine, if rather old-fashioned, with plain bathrooms. Expect discounts, if it's not booked out. Discounts of 30% to 50% are the norm.

Chishui Kaiyue Binguan HOTEL \$\$

(  288 9888; West Inner Huanlu; s & d ¥398-598;   ) This place has clean budget rooms, with ADSL connections. Not all have sit-down toilets, so check them first. Discounts of around 60%.

Zhongyue Dajudian HOTEL \$\$

(  282 3888; 22 Nanzheng Jie; 22 s & d ¥478-548;   ) The posh option with comfy rooms, proper showers and helpful staff, although they seem a little alarmed by foreigners, and discounts (30%) even in

summer.

## Eating

Popular restaurants are scattered in the area around Hebin Zhonglu, near the Chishui River. The main drag of Renmin Xilu has hole-in-the-wall eateries serving noodle and rice dishes, dumplings and the ever-present pigs' trotters. There are also streetfood stalls and supermarkets close to the bus station. A few hotpot places are scattered along Renmin Beilu.

## Information

A 24-hour ATM is on the corner of Renmin Xilu, close to the bus station, and takes foreign cards (but don't rely on it). There is an internet cafe or two on Renmin Xilu and Renmin Beilu. The post office is on Nanzheng Jie.

## Getting There & Around

Chishui has two bus stations. The qiche keyunzhan ( ) on Renmin Xilu handles most local destinations:

**Chengdu** ¥110, five hours, three daily (7.50am, 9.40am and 2.45pm)

**Chongqing** ¥100, five hours, seven daily (6am to 5pm)

**Shizhangdong** ¥10.50, 1½ hours, six daily (7.10am to 4.35pm)

**Sidonggou** ¥5.50, every 20 minutes (from 6.30am)

**Zunyi** ¥110, eight hours, two daily (6.35am and 10.10am)

For Guiyang (¥150, eight hours, 6.55am and 8.50am) and Jinshagou (¥11.50, 1½ hours, 9.30am and 3.55pm), you need the **Luyou**

**Chezhan** ( Nan Jiao Lu) by the river, a ¥5 cab ride from Renmin Xilu. There are also two buses a day to Zunyi (¥110, eight hours, 6.35am and 10.10am) from here.

Taxi flagfall is ¥3.

## Around Chishui

It's hard to imagine a more dramatic landscape. The locals claim the region has 4000 waterfalls, and some are spectacular, but everywhere you look they're gushing into the rivers that run red from the colour of the earth (Chishui means 'red water') and which cut through valleys

and gorges covered in lush foliage. If that wasn't enough, there are huge forests of bamboo and alsophila plants, giant ferns that date back 200 million years and were once the food of dinosaurs.

As sights are scattered, consider hiring a taxi or minibus to scoop them all up. Expect to pay ¥200 to ¥400 per day, depending on your bargaining skills. To see the waterfalls at their fullest and loudest, come during the rainy season (May to October).

## SHIZHANGDONG WATERFALL

A mere metre or so shorter than the much better-known, and visited, Huangguoshu Falls, the 76m-high, Shizhangdong Waterfall (Shizhangdong Pubu; admission ¥40; ☺ 8am-4pm) explodes in a sea of spray as it plunges. You can stand 100m away and still get drenched if the wind is right.

About 40km from Chishui, six buses a day (¥10.50, 1½ hours) run here from the bus station on Renmin Xilu starting at 7.10am. The bus will drop you in Shizhangdong village, from where it's a short walk to the ticket office. From there, it's a 30- to 40-minute walk up a hard road to the turn-off to the waterfall, or you can ride there on a buggy (single/return ¥10/20). Another, more pleasant walk, stretches to the falls on the other side of the river. Doing the complete circuit takes three to four hours. Try to visit before noon during the low season as a hydroelectric dam upriver slows the water after that time. The waterfall is also known as Chishui Waterfall (Chishui Dapubu).

Around 9km from the waterfall, Yanziyan National Forest Park (Yanziyan Guojia Senlin Gongyuan; admission ¥25; ☺ 8am-5pm) is famed for its *danxia* (red rock) formations. An attractive hike cuts through the trees to an imposing red *danxia* cliff face featuring an impressive cascade. The bus to Shizhangdong Waterfall from Chishui passes by the park.

## SIDONGGOU

This 4.5km long valley (admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-5pm) around 15km from Chishui is forested with ancient ferns, as well as being dotted with gushing cataracts. Paths follow both sides of a river, as minifalls gush down over them, and take you past four 'proper' waterfalls. The biggest and most impressive is the last one, the 60m-high White



Dragon Pond Waterfall (Bailongtan Pubu). The cool thing here is that you can get really close to the falls, including being able to walk behind one. It takes about three hours to do the circuit, although there are plenty of trails leading off the main paths that will provide fun and games for intrepid hikers.

Sidonggou is the most touristy of Chishui's sights, but still not overly crowded, even in summer. Minibuses run here from the bus station on Chishui's Renmin Xilu (¥5.50, 30 minutes) and return when they have at least seven people on board.

Buses to Sidonggou from Chishui pass by the town of Datong (), which has an attractive and historic old town (*guzhen*) quarter.

## **JINSHAGOU NATURE RESERVE**

By far the least-visited of the sights in the area, this reserve (Jinshagou Ziran Baohuqu) was established to protect the *alsophila* ferns that grow in abundance here. It's also the site of a bamboo forest, known as the Bamboo Sea ( Zhuhai; admission ¥25; ☺ 8am-5pm), where you can trek through the trees in almost total isolation. The paths get very slippery when wet and mosquitoes are everywhere, so come armed with repellent.

To get here, catch the buses heading to Jinshagou village from Chishui's Luyou Chezhan (¥11.50, 1½ hours). From there, you'll have to negotiate with the locals for a motorbike or minibus ride to the park entrance, which is another 20 minutes away. Expect to pay ¥30 to ¥40 each way. Make sure to arrange a pick-up for your return; very little transport hangs around the park.

## **RED ROCK GORGE**

Dotted with small waterfalls that make for a vivid contrast with the red sandstone *danxia* cliffs of the gorge (Hongshi Yegu; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-5pm), also known as Yangjiayan, there are impressive photo opportunities here, particularly if the sun is shining, when the red earth really stands out.

Minibuses run the 16km journey here from the bus station on Chishui's Renmin Xilu (¥6, 40 minutes, five daily from 8am to 4.30pm).



# Yunnan

POP 46 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Kunming](#)

[Around Kunming](#)

[Jianshui](#)

[Yuanyang Rice Terraces](#)

[Dali](#)

[Shaxi](#)

[Lijiang](#)

[Tiger Leaping Gorge](#)

[Shangri-la \(Zhongdian\)](#)

[Tengchong](#)

[Ruili](#)

[Xishuangbanna Region](#)

[Jinghong](#)

---

## Why Go?

Perhaps more than any other province in China, Yunnan (boasts the highest degrees of diversity, both in people and landscapes. Its

extraordinary sights and peoples have made it one of the trendiest destinations for China's exploding domestic tourist industry.

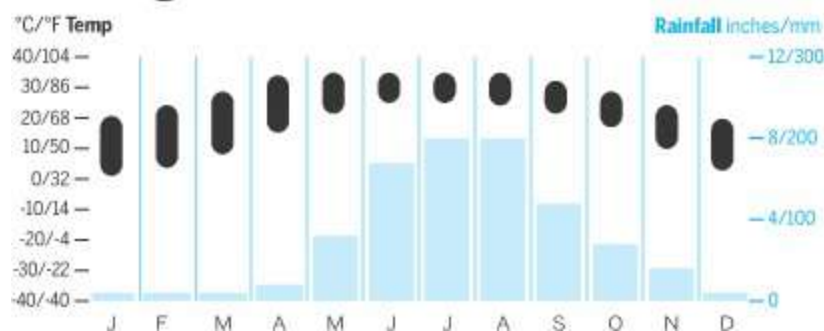
More than half of the country's ethnic minority groups reside here, providing an unexpected glimpse into China's mix of humanity. Then there's the hugely varied splendour of the land – dense jungle sliced by the Mekong River in the south, soul-recharging glimpses of the sun over rice terraces in the southeastern regions, and snow-capped mountains as you edge towards Tibet.

With everything from laid-back villages and spa resorts to multiday mountain treks and excellent cycling routes, Yunnan appeals to all tastes. Transportation links are good so getting around is a breeze but you'll need time to see it all – whatever time you've set aside for Yunnan, double it.

---

## When to Go

### Kūnmíng



**Apr** Prepare to get soaked in Xishuangbanna during the Dai water-splashing festival.

**Jul & Aug** Head for the mountains and glaciers around Deqin.

**Dec & Jan** Escape China's winter chill and head for Kunming, the city of eternal spring.

---

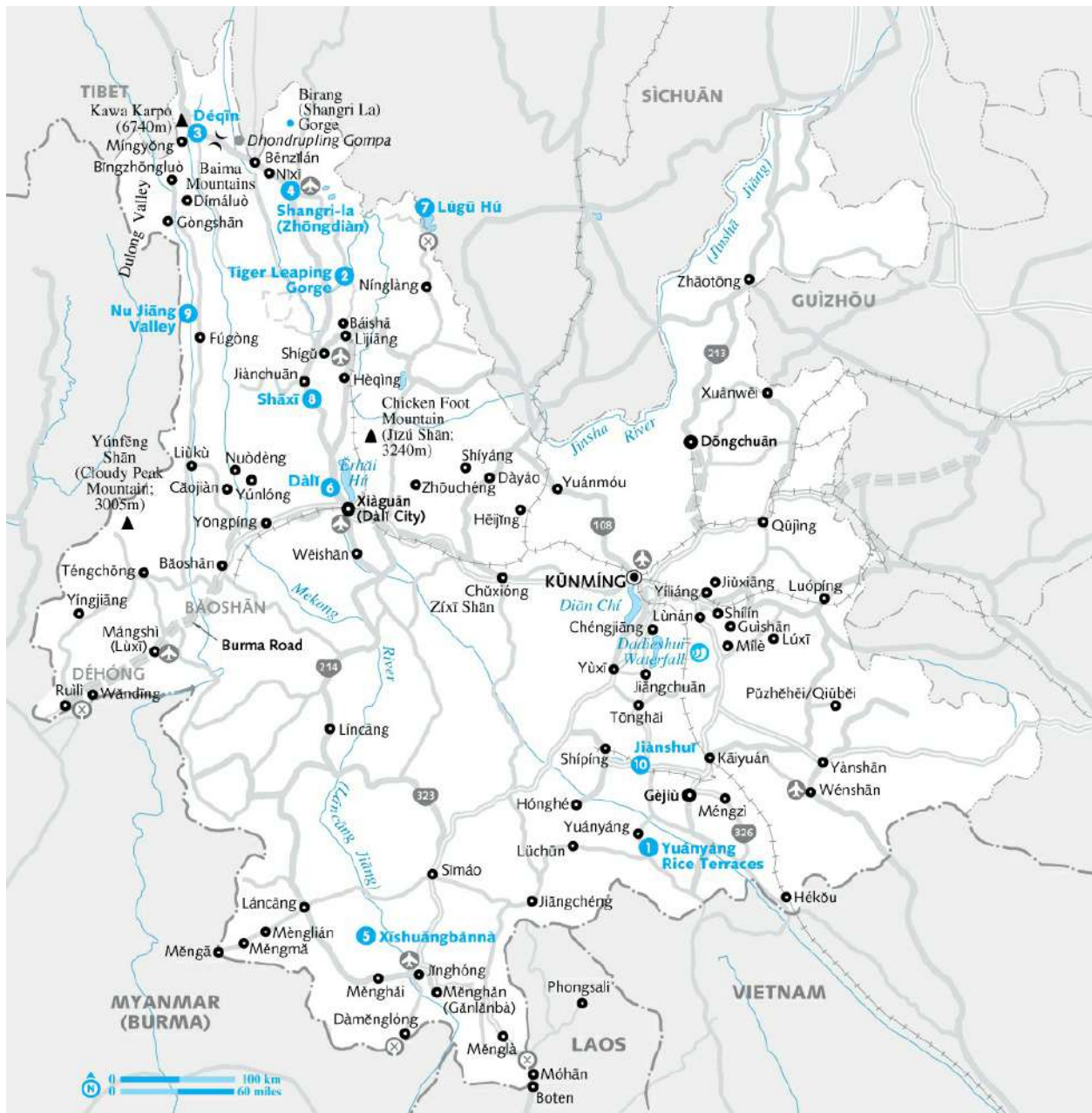
## Best Hikes

- » Tiger Leaping Gorge ([Click here](#))
- » Nu Jiang Valley ([Click here](#))
- » Xishuangbanna Minority Villages ([Click here](#))

- » Yubeng Village ([Click here](#))
  - » Cang Shan ([Click here](#))
- 

## **Best Natural Sights**

- » Lugu Lake ([Click here](#))
- » Baishuitai ([Click here](#))
- » Yulong Xueshan ([Click here](#))
- » Swallow's Cavern ([Click here](#))
- » Kawa Karpo ([Click here](#))



## Yunnan Highlights

- 1 Gaze out over the magical **Yuanyang Rice Terraces** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Test your legs and lungs trekking **Tiger Leaping Gorge** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Marvel at the peaks (and glacier) around **Deqin** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Steal a taste of Tibet in the narrow alleys and temples of **Shangri-la's old town** ([Click here](#))

- 5 Look for elephants and hike to minority villages in the jungle of **Xishuangbanna** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Kick back in the cafes and bars of **Dali** ([Click here](#))
- 7 Laze around the shores of stunning **Lugu Lake** ([Click here](#))
- 8 See how time has stood still in the former Tea-Horse Trail oasis of **Shaxi** ([Click here](#))
- 9 Get way off the map in the remote **Nu Jiang Valley** ([Click here](#))
- 10 Check out the classic architecture in **Jianshui** ([Click here](#))

## History

With its remote location, harsh terrain and diverse ethnic make-up, Yunnan was once considered a backward place populated by barbarians.

The early Han emperors held tentative imperial power over the southwest and forged southern Silk Road trade routes to Burma. From the 7th to mid-13th centuries, though, two independent kingdoms, the Nanzhao and Dali, ruled and dominated the trade routes from China to India and Burma. It wasn't until the Mongols swept through that the southwest was integrated into the Chinese empire as Yunnan. Even so, it remained an isolated frontier region, more closely aligned with Southeast Asia than China.

Today, Yunnan is still a strategic jumping-off point to China's neighbours. Despite its geographical isolation, much of the province has modernised rapidly in recent years.

## Climate

With its enormous range of geomorphology – 76.4m above sea level near Vietnam to 6740m in the Tibetan plateau (averaging around 2000m) – Yunnan's diverse climate is part of its appeal. In the frozen northwestern region around Deqin and Shangri-la, winters reach chilling lows of -12°C, but in the subtropical climate of Xishuangbanna you can still walk around in a T-shirt in January.

Dali has an ideal temperature year-round, never dipping below 4°C in winter or above 25°C in summer, while the capital Kunming has a pleasant climate where it can be downright springlike in the winter months and it's never too hot in the summer.

## Language

In addition to Mandarin, the other major languages spoken in Yunnan belong to the Tibeto-Burman family (eg the Naxi language) and the Sino-Tibetan family (eg the Lisu language).



### Getting There & Around

**Air** Kunming is served by all Chinese airlines and has daily flights to most cities. International destinations are increasing all the time; in 2012 Kunming opened a US\$3.6 billion airport, the fourth-largest in the country. Lijiang is also well-connected to a number of Chinese cities.

**Boat** In the past it was possible to travel by boat from Jinghong in the south to Thailand. However, recent security threats have stopped boat travel.

**Bus** Expressways link Kunming with Dali, east to Guizhou and Guangxi, southwest past Baoshan to Ruili and past Jinghong to the Laos border. An expressway is also being built from Kunming to Hekou on the Vietnam border and beyond to Hanoi.

**Train** Railways link Yunnan to Guizhou, Guangxi, Sichuan and beyond. In Yunnan itself, development of the railways has been slower than elsewhere, due mostly to topographical interference. A daily train links Dali and Lijiang and a link onward to Shangri-la is under construction.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥160

\$\$ ¥160 to ¥300

\$\$\$ more than ¥300

### Eating

\$ less than ¥20

\$\$ ¥20 to ¥50

\$\$\$ more than ¥50

# CENTRAL YUNNAN

## Kunming

☞ 0871 / POP 3 MILLION

Kunming, known as the 'Spring City' for its equable climate, is one of China's most laid-back and liveable cities, and it's very much an enjoyable place to spend a few days. Indeed, 'hurry up' doesn't seem to exist in the local vernacular. Sure, as with other cities, the face of Kunming is constantly changing and many old neighbourhoods have been torn down to make way for shopping malls. Yet the peaceful nature of the place hasn't gone away and it continues to attract large numbers of young Westerners who come to study Chinese.

For short-term visitors, Kunming has some intriguing temples and historic structures, while grand parks are nearby and the legendary Stone Forest is only a day trip away.

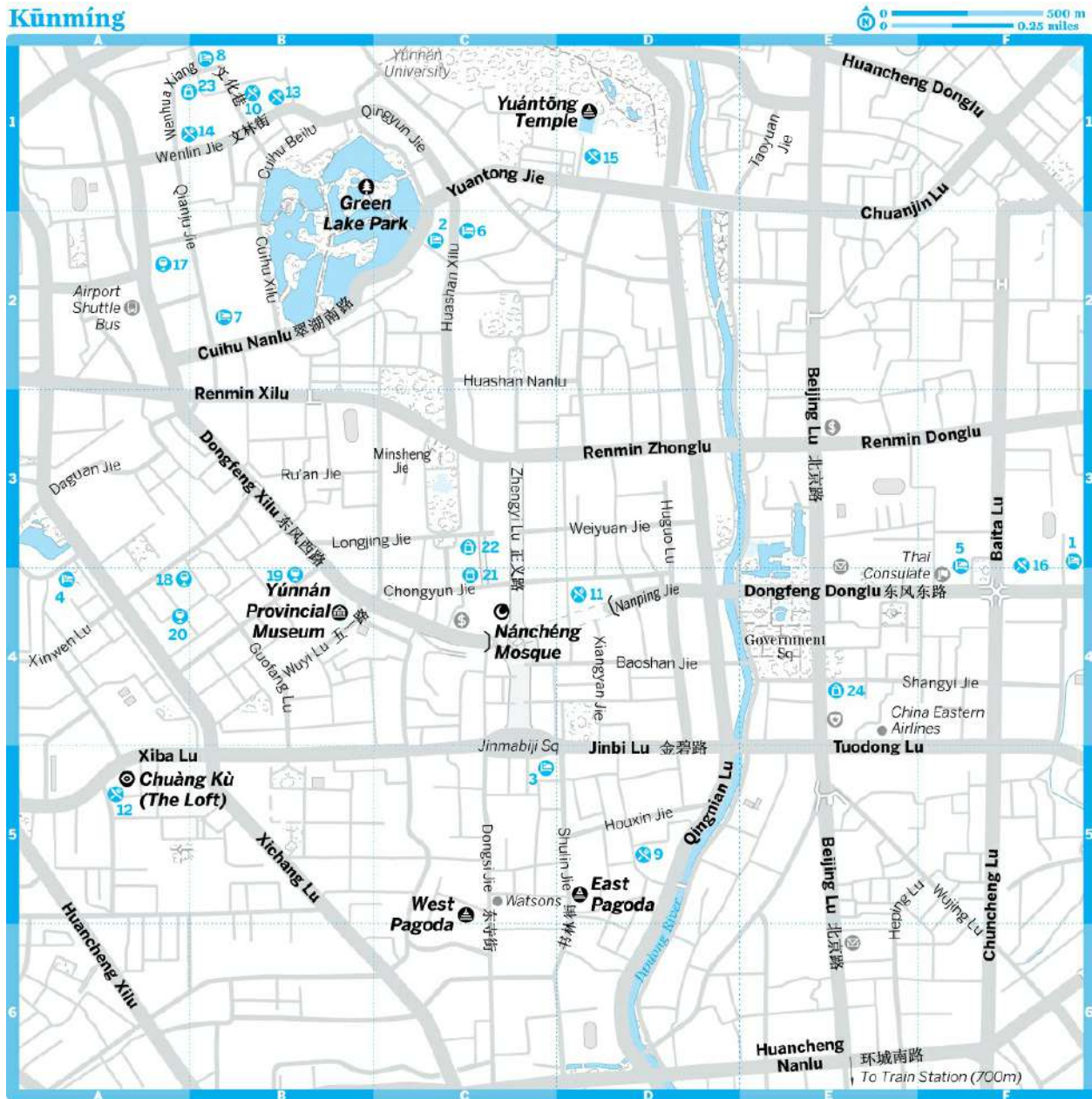
### History

The region of Kunming has been inhabited for 2000 years, but it wasn't until WWII that the city really began to expand, when factories were established and refugees, fleeing from the Japanese, started to pour in from eastern China. As the end point of the famous Burma Road, a 1000km-long haul from Lashio in Myanmar (Burma), the city played a key role in the Sino-Japanese war. Renmin Xilu marks the tail end of the road.

Following the war the city returned to being overlooked and isolated. When China opened to the West, however, tourists noticed the province, and Kunming used its gateway status to the rest of Yunnan to become one of the loveliest cities in southwest China.



# Kūnmíng



## Kunming

 Top Sights

[Chuang Ku \(The Loft\)](#) A5

[East Pagoda](#) D5

[Green Lake Park](#) B1

[Nancheng Mosque](#) C4

[West Pagoda](#) C5

[Yuantong Temple](#) D1

[Yunnan Provincial Museum](#) B4

## Sleeping

- 1 [Camellia Hotel](#) F3
- [Camellia Youth Hostel](#) (see 1)
- 2 [Green Lake Hotel](#) C2
- 3 [Hump Hostel](#) C5
- 4 [Kunming Cloudland Youth Hostel](#) A4
- 5 [Kunming Hotel](#) F3
- 6 [Kunming Upland Youth Hostel](#) C2
- 7 Kunming Youth Hostel B2
- [Lost Garden Guesthouse](#) (see 2)
- 8 [Yunda Binguan](#) B1

## Eating

- 9 [1910 La Gare du Sud](#) D5
- 10 [As You Like...](#) B1
- 11 [Carrefour Supermarket](#) D4
- 12 [Dehong Ruanjia Daiwei Yuan](#) A5
- 13 [Hong Dou Yuan](#) B1
- 14 [Salvador's](#) A1
- 15 [Yuquanzhai Vegetarian Restaurant](#) D1
- 16 [Zhenxing Fandian](#) F3

## Drinking

- 17 [Halfway House](#) A2
- 18 Kundu Night Market A4
- 19 [Moondog](#) B4
- 20 [The Mask](#) A4

## Shopping

- 21 [Flower & Bird Market](#) C4
- 22 [Fu Lin Tang](#) C3
- 23 [Mandarin Books & CDs](#) A1
- 24 [Tianfu Famous Teas](#) E4

## Sights & Activities

Yuantong Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Yuantong Si; Yuantong Jie; admission ¥6, surrounding park ¥10; 🕒)

8am-5.20pm) This temple is the largest Buddhist complex in Kunming and a draw for pilgrims. It's more than 1000 years old and has been refurbished many times; the latest renovations were going on at the time of writing. To the rear, a hall has been added, with a statue of Sakyamuni, a gift from Thailand's king. The good vegetarian restaurant ([Click here](#)) here is to the left of the temple entrance.

Green Lake Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Cuihu Gongyuan; Cuihu Nanlu; ☺ 6am-10pm) Come here to people-watch, practise taichi or just hang with the locals and stroll. The roads along the park are lined with wannabe trendy cafes, teahouses and shops. In November, everyone in the city awaits the return of the local favourites, red-beaked seagulls; it's a treat watching people, er, 'flock' to the park when the first one shows up.

**FREE** Yunnan Provincial Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yunnan Sheng Bowuguan; 118 Wuyi Lu; ☺ 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun) Set inside a 1950s era building, Yunnan's provincial museum has recently undergone renovations and its interior is sparkling throughout. The museum has reasonable exhibitions on Dian Chi (Lake Dian) prehistoric and early cultures but the highlight is the section on Yunnan's minorities, with excellent displays of ethnic costumes and musical instruments.

Chuang Ku (The Loft) ART GALLERIES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

West of downtown in a disused factory area known as Chuang Ku (The Loft) are a small number of galleries and cafes featuring modern Chinese artists and photographers. Yuansheng Art Space ( Yuanshengfang; 📍 419 5697; 101 Xiba Lu; ☺ 9am-1.30am) is a gallery-bar-restaurant-theatre focusing on the province's ethnic groups. The cornerstone of sorts is TCG Nordica ( Nuodika; 📍 411 4691; <http://en.tcg nordica.com>; 101 Xiba Lu; ☺ 5-11.30pm Mon, 11.30am-11pm Tue-Sat, noon-4pm Sun), best described as a gallery-exhibition hall-cultural centre – with, oddly, a restaurant serving Scandinavian and Chinese food. The English-speaking folks who run the exhibit have even started running trips to Miao minority villages.

Not many taxi drivers know this place as The Loft; ask to go to 101 Xiba Lu.

### Tang-Dynasty Pagodas HISTORIC SITES

These pagodas won't give you a 'wow!' moment, but there's a photogenic atmosphere around them, with old men getting haircuts, slurping tea and playing their endless mah jong games, south of Jinbi Lu. West Pagoda [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Xisi Ta; Dongsi Jie; admission free; ☎ 9am-5pm) has surroundings a tad livelier; and East Pagoda [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Dongsi Ta; 63 Shulin Jie; ☎ 9am-5pm) smacks of a new edifice – it was rebuilt in the 19th century after either a Muslim revolt or an earthquake (foreign and Chinese sources conflict).

### Nancheng Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Nancheng Qingzhen Gusi; 51 Zhengyi Lu) Originally built more than 400 years ago, this mosque was ripped down in 1997 in order to build a larger version, which looks vaguely like a bad Las Vegas casino. And sadly, that's now about it for the area's once-thriving Muslim neighbourhood (ripped down *in toto* in 2007).

## Sleeping

### Lost Garden Guesthouse BOUTIQUE GUESTHOUSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yiqiu Tianyuan Kezhan; 📞 511 1127; [www.lostgardenguesthouse.com](http://www.lostgardenguesthouse.com); 7 Yiqiu Tian; 7 dm ¥40-45, s ¥120-220, d ¥150-220; 📶) A relaxing garden oasis amid white-brick apartment blocks, this boutique guesthouse has nouveau Dali decor with wood furniture, antiques and a chi-chi lounge. A bonus is the cafe, which serves surprisingly good Western meals. On the downside, there is a noisy school across the road (ask for a room towards the back) and the wi-fi is unreliable. It's tricky to locate: start by walking up the little alley to the right of Green Lake Hotel, take the first left and look for the sign pointing left. Call ahead for instructions.

### Green Lake Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Cuihu Binguang; 📞 515 8888; [www.greenlakehotel.com](http://www.greenlakehotel.com); 6 Cuihu

Nanlu; 6 d from ¥1680; (☎✳️@☎) Proud but subdued, this gentle giant of Kunming *hôtellerie* history has a fabulous location, opposite Green Park, and has kept up with modernity, doing so tastefully and with top-notch service. The panorama from the top floors is worth the price alone. Discounts of 30% available.

Kunming Cloudland Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kunming Dajiaoshi Qingnian Lushe; 📍 410 3777; cloudland2005@126.com; 23 Zhuantang Lu; 23 dm ¥30-40, r without/with bathroom ¥110/150; @📶) This well-established Kunming hostel attracts a steady flow of Western and Chinese travellers, drawn primarily by the knowledgeable and friendly staff. Rooms are clean and tastefully furnished with big comfortable beds although the common areas could use a bit of maintenance. It's located on a hard to spot alley off Xichang Lu. To get here from the train or long-distance bus station, take city bus 64 and get off at the *Yunnan Daily News* stop ( ).

Kunming Upland Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kunming Qingcheng Qingnian Lushe; 📍 337 8910; uplandhostel@gmail.com; 92 Huashan Xilu; 92 8-bed dm ¥35, s/d ¥120/160; @📶) This brand new place aims to impress with its sharp red and black decor, dimly lit bar and multiple lounges. Rooms have wood furnishings and dorms come with big lockers and power outlets. It has a helpful English-speaking staff and good location near Green Lake. It's just off Huashan Xilu on a little ally called Da Mei Yuan Xiang, near the back entrance of the landmark Green Lake Hotel.

Hump Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tuofeng Kezhan; 📍 364 0359; [www.thehumphostel.com](http://www.thehumphostel.com); Jinmabiji Sq, Jinbi Lu; dm ¥35-40, r without/with bathroom ¥90/150; @📶) You'll hear about Kunming's most notorious hostel long before you arrive. Students, socialites and party animals love the place due to its close proximity to dozens of bars, karaoke joints and restaurants. Bring some earplugs as all this activity could keep you up at night. The hostel itself has a busy bar and terrace that's popular for late night

carousing.

Camellia Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chahua Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 837 4638; newcamellia@gmail.com; 96 Dongfeng Donglu; 96 dm ¥40, s & d ¥135; 🚶@📶) Part of the same complex as the Camellia Hotel, this sedate hostel has a small garden cafe and good access to transport booking agents in the compound. Rooms are simple but comfortable (dorms have ensuite bathrooms), although the bathrooms and plumbing are due for an upgrade. Internet is available in the lobby.

Camellia Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chahua Binguan; 📍 316 3000; [www.kmcamelliahotel.com](http://www.kmcamelliahotel.com); 96 Dongfeng Donglu; 96 s & d ¥388; 🚶@📶) This old travellers' hub has some faded 1970s decor, a musty lobby and a mix of old rooms and some newly renovated ones. The older Class C standard rooms sometimes go for as low at ¥160 while refurbished ones cost around ¥240. There are a number of travel agents onsite that can help organise trips around Yunnan and beyond. Discounts of 30% available.

Kunming Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kunming Fandian; 📍 316 2063; [www.kunminghotel.com.cn](http://www.kunminghotel.com.cn); 52 Dongfeng Donglu; 52 s & d ¥780, ste ¥1419; 🚶🚶@📶) In business since the 1950s, this city landmark has gone through extensive renovations and posits itself as a five-star hotel. It's not the Ritz but it does have a professional staff and comfortable rooms, which are a good deal with the 30% discounts sometimes given. It offers a free airport shuttle and wi-fi is available in the lobby.

Yunda Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yunnan University Hotel; 📍 503 4179; fax 503 4172; Wenhua Xiang; d & tw ¥298-468; 🚶@) Conveniently close to the restaurant-- bar hub of Wenhua Xiang and Wenlin Jie, the Yunda's rooms are not exciting but do the job. The hotel is divided into two, with the cheaper rooms in the wing across the road from the main entrance. Discounts of 40%

available.

## ACROSS-THE-BRIDGE NOODLES

Yunnan's best-known dish is 'across-the-bridge noodles' (; *guoqiao mixian*). You are provided with a bowl of very hot soup (stewed with chicken, duck and spare ribs) on which a thin layer of oil is floating, along with a side dish of raw pork slivers (in classier places this might be chicken or fish), vegetables and egg, and a bowl of rice noodles. Diners place all of the ingredients quickly into the soup bowl, where they are cooked by the steamy broth. Prices generally vary from ¥10 to ¥25, depending on the side dishes. It's usually worth getting these, because with only one or two condiments the soup lacks zest.

It is said the dish was created by a woman married to an imperial scholar. He decamped to an isolated island to study and she got creative with the hot meals she brought to him every day after crossing the bridge. This noodle dish was by far the most popular and christened 'across-the-bridge noodles' in honour of her daily commute.

### Eating

Kunming is home to all of Yunnan's fabulous foods. Regional specialities are *qiguoji* (; herb-infused chicken cooked in an earthenware steampot and imbued with medicinal properties depending on the spices used – *chongcao*; ; caterpillar fungus, or pseudo-ginseng is one); *xuanwei huotui* (; Yunnan ham); *guoqiao mixian* (; across-the-bridge noodles); *rubing* (; goat's cheese); and various Muslim beef and mutton dishes.

For all manner of foreign restaurants, including Korean, Japanese and Thai, head to Wenhua Xiang. For self-catering, try Carrefour Supermarket [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jialefu; Nanping Jie), a branch of the popular French chain.



1910 La Gare du Sud CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huoche Nanzhan; 📍 316 9486; dishes from ¥22; 🕒 11am-9pm; 📞)

Offering Yunnan specialities in a pleasant neo-colonial-style atmosphere, this place is now a fave with both expats – it's the kind of place foreign students take their parents when they come to visit – and cashed-up locals. It's hidden down an alley off Chongshan Lu,

south of Jinbi Lu.

Salvador's WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sa'erwaduwo kafeiguan; 76 Wenhua Xiang; sandwiches from ¥15, mains from ¥25; ☺ 8am-11pm; 📍) Always busy with travellers and foreign students, Salvador's is now a Kunming staple. With a Mexican/Mediterranean food theme, as well as solid breakfasts, good coffee and a decent range of teas, it caters for all hours of the day. In the evening you can hang around the bar and watch as Kunming's beautiful people parade along Wenhua Xiang.

As You Like ENGLISH BAKERY \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Youjia mianbao dian; 5 Tianjundian Xiang, off Wenlin Jie; pizzas from ¥30, salads from ¥15; ☺ 11am-10.30pm Tue-Sun; 📍) Cute cubbyhole bakery run by a British-Chinese couple. They make excellent pizza, salads and various artisan breads, all from local organic produce. It's an adventure to find – as you walk east on Wenlin Jie (coming from Wenhua Xiang) take the first left up the narrow alley after the Dune Cafe.

Hong Dou Yuan CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 142 Wenlin Jie; dishes from ¥10; ☺ 11am-9pm) An old-school Chinese eatery, with cigarette butts on the floor, a duck-your-head stairway and plastic-film-covered tables, this is a real locals' hang-out on cosmopolitan Wenlin Jie. The food is excellent and will draw you back. Try regional specialities like the *taoza rubing* (fried goat's cheese and Yunnan ham) and *liang bai rou* (peppery, tangy beef).  
Picture menu.

Dehong Ruanjia Daiwei Yuan CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 412 8519; 101 Xiba Lu; dishes from ¥12; ☺ 9am-9pm) Inside The Loft complex, this fine place serves up authentic, sour and spicy Dai cuisine in a laid-back atmosphere. Try the fantastic barbecued fish, and accompany it with a few glasses of the rice wine stored in giant vats awaiting your attention. There's a small outside area and a picture menu.



Yuquanzhai Vegetarian Restaurant VEGETARIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yuquanzhai Canting; 22 Yuantong Jie; dishes from ¥18; ☺ 10am-9pm) Popular with locals, monks and expats, head here for dishes that look and taste like meat but aren't. We like the Endless Buddha Force (assorted vegies and tofu), but all the dishes here are worth sampling.

Zhenxing Fandian CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yunnan Typical Local Food Restaurant; cnr Baita Lu & Dongfeng Donglu; dishes from ¥12; ☺ 24hr) A good introduction to Kunming fare, especially for *guoqiao mixian*, and handy for late-night eats. Pay upfront at the desk where the grumpy middle-aged ladies sit.



## Drinking

Foreigners congregate in the bars on and around Wenhua Xiang, while Jinmabiji Sq is home to many Chinese-style bars and karaoke joints. The Kundu Night Market area is also a club and bar zone.

The Mask BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Lianpu jiuba; 14 Kundu Night Market; ☺ 8pm-late) In the heart of the Kundu night area, this popular bar is run by a pair of expats from Australia and Italy. It's well-known for putting on great live acts and hosting top DJs.

Halfway House BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Banshan Kafei; Kunshi Lu; ☺ 10.30am-3am) This multilevel bar attracts a fair mix of Western students and local Chinese youth who come to mingle, play cards and roll some dice. There's live music here every week. Just off Dongfeng Xilu, it's hard to spot. The nearest landmark is the 'Bai Hui Shang Chang' bus stop across the road.

Moondog BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yueliang Gou; 138-5 Wacang Nanlu; ☺ 8pm-late) An expat-Chinese run dive bar with excellent fine art events that tends to gather hipsters, artists and travellers.

## ONE-STOP SHOPPING

The Flower & Bird Market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Huaniao Shichang; Tongdao Jie), also known as *lao jie* (old street), has shrunk dramatically in recent years and is now ominously hemmed in by encroaching modernity. Nor are flowers and birds the main draw here any more. Instead, strollers peruse stalls chock-full of jewellery, endless curios, knick-knacks and doo-das (the contents of someone's back hall often enough), some occasionally fine rugs and handmade clothing, and a hell of a lot of weird stuff.

One block west of the intersection of Guanghua Jie and the pedestrian-only Zhengyi Lu sits Fu Lin Tang [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), the city's oldest pharmacy, which has been dishing out the *sanqi* (the legendary Yunnanese cure-all root mixed into tea; about ¥20 to ¥100 per gram) since 1857.

### Shopping

Yunnan specialities are marble and batik from Dali, jade from Ruili, minority embroidery, musical instruments and spotted-brass utensils.

Some functional items that make good souvenirs include large bamboo water pipes for smoking angel-haired Yunnan tobacco; and local herbal medicines, such as Yunnan Baiyao (Yunnan White Medicine), which is a blend of more than 100 herbs and is highly prized by Chinese throughout the world.

Yunnanese tea is an excellent buy and comes in several varieties, from bowl-shaped bricks of smoked green tea called *tuocha*, which have been around since at least Marco Polo's time, to leafy black tea that rivals some of India's best.

#### Tianfu Famous Teas TEA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tianfu Mingcha; cnr Shangyi Jie & Beijing Lu; ☺ 8.30am-10.30pm)  
This place offers most types of teas grown in Yunnan, including the famed pu'er tea.

#### Mandarin Books & CDs BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wuhua Shuyuan; 52 Wenhua Xiang; ☺ 9.30am-9.30pm) For guidebooks, novels, magazines and a selection of travel writing in English and other languages, try Mandarin.

## Information

For any and all information on the city, check out [www.gokunming.com](http://www.gokunming.com) (it also covers parts of the rest of Yunnan).

Maps (¥8) are available from the train/bus station areas and in hotels, but they're not much use to non-Chinese speakers.

### Dangers & Annoyances

Kunming is one of the safest cities in China but, as always, take special precautions near the train and long-distance bus stations. Reports of pickpockets are not unheard of, and there have been a number of victims of druggings and robberies on overnight sleeper buses.

### Internet Access

Every hotel and cafe frequented by travellers offers internet ( ) or wi-fi, usually for free. The city has many internet cafes, charging ¥2 to ¥4 per hour.

### Medical Services

**Richland International Hospital** ( Ruiqide Guoji Yiyuan; ☎ 574 1988; Beijing Lu) Most of the doctors are Chinese but English is spoken here. Standards are generally good and prices are reasonable (consultations start from ¥30). It's on the bottom three floors of the Shangdu International building; Yanchang Xian extension near Jinxing Flyover. A taxi ride here from the city centre will cost under ¥20.

**Watsons** ( Qu Chen Shi; Dongsi Jie; 🕒 9am-10pm) Western cosmetics and basic medicines. Other branches around town.

**Yan'an Hospital** ( Yan'an Yiyuan; ☎ 317 7499, ext 311; 1st fl, block 6, Renmin Donglu) Has a foreigners' clinic.

### Money

Some banks other than Bank of China have ATMs which should accept international cards.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 448 Renmin Donglu; 🕒 9am-noon & 2-5pm) All necessary services and has an ATM. Branches are at Dongfeng Xilu and Huancheng Nanlu.

### Post

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 223 Beijing Lu) The main international office has poste restante and parcel service (per letter ¥3, ID required). It is also the city's Express Mail Service (EMS) and Western Union agent. Another branch on Dongfeng Donglu.

#### Tourist Information

Many of the popular backpacker hotels and some of the cafes can assist with travel queries. **Tourist Complaint & Consultative Telephone** (☎ 316 4961) Where you can complain about, or report, dodgy tourist operations.

#### Travel Agencies

**Wonders of Yunnan** (☎ 331 1690; [www.wondersofyunnan.com](http://www.wondersofyunnan.com); 488 Huangchang Dong Lu, rm 212) This small travel outfit runs tours around Yunnan. English- and Dutch-speaking guides are available.

#### Visa extensions

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 301 7878; 399 Beijing Lu; ☎ 9-11:30am & 1-5pm Mon-Fri) To visit the givers of visa extensions, head southeast off Government Sq to the corner of Shangyi Jie and Beijing Lu. Another **office** (☎ 571 7001; Jinxing Lu) is off Erhuan Beilu in northern Kunming; take bus 3, 25 or 57.

### Getting There & Away

#### Air

Kunming's new airport (completed in 2012) is the fourth largest in China and includes direct services to/from North America, Europe and Australia. International flights to Asian cities include Hong Kong (¥1550), Vientiane (¥1800), Yangon (¥2000) and Kuala Lumpur (¥3088).

**China Eastern Airlines/Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; 28 Tuodong Lu; ☎ 8.30am-7.30pm) issues tickets for any Chinese airline but the office only offers discounts on certain flights.

Daily flights from Kunming:

**Beijing** ¥1820

**Chengdu** ¥1010

**Chongqing** ¥730

**Guangzhou** ¥1260

**Lhasa** ¥1960

**Shanghai** ¥1900

**Xi'an** ¥1280

Destinations within Yunnan:

**Baoshan** ¥810

**Jinghong** ¥1150

**Lijiang** ¥940

**Mangshi/Deh ong** ¥1000

**Shangri-la** ¥1150

**Xiaguan/Dali** ¥760

Bus

Kunming's five bus stations are located on the outskirts of the city.

Buses departing the **south bus station** (; caiyun beilu nan keyunzhan):

**Jianshui** ¥81, 3½ hours, every 30 minutes (8am to 8.30pm)

**Jinghong** ¥220–253, nine to 10 hours, every 30 minutes (8.10am to 10.30pm); buses leaving after 12.30pm are sleeper style

**Yuanyang** ¥132–142, seven hours, three daily (10.20am, 7.30pm, 8.20pm)

Buses departing the **west bus station** (; majie xi keyunzhan):

**Baoshan** ¥175–213, nine hours, every hour (8.30am to 10.30pm)

**Chuxiong** ¥46–53, two to three hours, every 15 minutes (8.30am to 5.30pm)

**Dali** ¥138, four to five hours, every hour (8.50am to 7.20pm); plus two night buses ¥113, seven hours (9.10pm and 10.10pm)

**Lijiang** ¥170–190 (standard service), 10 hours, hourly (8am to 8.30pm); plus two night buses, ¥185, (10pm and 11pm); plus several 'super-express' buses with wide seats and lunch for ¥230.

**Ruili** ¥257–273, 12 hours, seven daily (8.30am to 9pm)

**Shangri-la** ¥214, 12 hours, one daily (9am); plus three night buses ¥204 (7pm, 8pm and 9pm).

**Tengchong** ¥241, 12 hours, one daily (9am); plus five night buses, ¥222 (7pm to 9pm)

Buses departing the **east bus station** (; baishahe dong keyunzhan):

**Hekou** ¥141, eight hours, four daily (9.40am to 12.40pm)

**Shilin** ¥35 to ¥40, two hours, every 30 minutes (7am to noon); usually departs when full.

Allow plenty of time to get to the bus stations (60 to 90 minutes). Bus 154 runs to the south bus station from the train station, as does bus

80 to the west bus station and bus 60 to the east bus station. A taxi will cost ¥35 to ¥45.

#### Train

You can buy train tickets up to 10 days in advance. The following prices are for hard- sleeper, middle berths on the fastest train:

**Beijing** ¥578

**Chengdu** ¥257

**Emei town** ¥234

**Guangzhou** ¥353

**Guiyang** ¥162

**Liupanshui** ¥109

**Shanghai** ¥509

**Xi'an** ¥399

Within Yunnan, four daily trains run to Dali (seat ¥50 to ¥65, hard sleeper ¥83 to ¥89, eight hours). The K9614 (8.28am), K9610 (10am), K9622 (11.10pm) and K9626 (11.39pm). Travel agents book these out well in advance, so it can be tough to get a berth at short notice.

For Lijiang (seat ¥90, hard sleeper ¥142 to ¥152, nine hours) there are two night trains, the K9606 (9.58pm) and the K9602 (10.28pm).

### **Getting Around**

A subway is under construction and the first line is scheduled to open in 2013.

#### To/From the Airport

The new airport is located 25km northeast of the city. An airport bus (¥25) runs there from Xiyi Binguan (), formerly called the Nanjiang Binguan. There are also airport buses travelling from the train station and the old airport. A subway is planned to start running in 2013. A taxi will average ¥100 to the dead centre of town.

#### Bicycle

Most hostels and a few hotels rent bikes for around ¥15 to ¥20 per day.

#### Bus

Bus 63 runs from the east bus station to the Camellia Hotel and on to the main train station. Bus 2 runs from the train station to Government Sq (Dongfeng Guangchang) and then past the west bus station. Fares range from ¥1 to ¥4. The main city buses have no conductors and

require exact change.

## **BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO LAOS & VIETNAM**

### **Getting to Laos**

A daily bus from Kunming to Vientiane (¥587) leaves from the south bus station, at 6pm, reaching its destination 30 hours later. Alternatively, take a bus to Mohan on the border with Laos, these depart at 8.30pm, cost ¥320 and take about 18 to 20 hours.

### **Getting to Vietnam**

Apart from getting on a plane, the only way to get to Vietnam from Kunming for now is by bus. Buses run from Kunming's east bus station to the border town of Hekou (¥143), departing at 9.40pm.

Official proceedings at this border crossing can be frustrating (and officials have been known to confiscate Lonely Planet guides because they show Taiwan as a different country to China). Just keep your cool.

On the Chinese side, the border checkpoint is technically open from 8am to 11pm but don't bank on anything after 6pm. Set your watch when you cross the border – the time in China is one hour later than in Vietnam. Visas are unobtainable at the border crossing.

## **Around Kunming**

There are some grand sights within a 15km radius of Kunming, but getting to most of them is time-consuming and you'll find most of them extremely crowded (weekdays are best to avoid the crowds).

If you don't have much time, the Bamboo Temple (Qiongzhu Si) and Xi Shan (Western Hills) are the most interesting. Both have decent transport connections. Dian Chi (Lake Dian) has terrific circular-tour possibilities of its own.

### **BAMBOO TEMPLE**

This serene temple (Qiongzhu Si; admission ¥10; 🕒 8am-7pm) is definitely one to be visited by sculptors as much as by those interested in temple collecting. Raised during the Tang dynasty, it was rebuilt in the 19th century by master Sichuanese sculptor Li Guangxiu and his apprentices, who fashioned 500 *luohan* (arhats - disciples of

the Buddha or noble ones).

Li and his mates pretty much went gonzo in their excruciating, eight-year attempt to represent human existence in statuary – a fascinating mix of superb realism and head-scratching exaggerated surrealism. How about the 70-odd surfing Buddhas riding the waves on a variety of mounts: blue dogs, giant crabs, shrimp, turtles and unicorns? And try this: count the arhats one by one to the right until you reach your age – that arhat is the one that best details your inner self. Note that photography is prohibited inside the temples.

So lifelike are the sculptures that they were considered in bad taste by Li Guangxiu's contemporaries (some of whom no doubt appeared in caricature), and upon the project's completion he disappeared into thin air.

The temple is about 12km northwest of Kunming. First take bus 2 from Renmin Rd to Huang tu po ( ) bus stop then change to the C61 bus (¥2, 40 minutes). A taxi to the temple will cost around ¥60.





## Around Kunming

### Sights

- 1 Bamboo Temple A1
- 2 [Dragon Gate](#) A2
- 3 [Huating Temple](#) A1
- 4 [Sanqing Ge](#) A1
- 5 [Taihua Temple](#) A1
- 6 [Yunnan Nationalities Museum](#) B1

### Transport

- 7 Gayao Bus Station A1

## DIAN CHI

The shoreline of Dian Chi (Lake Dian), located to the south of Kunming, is dotted with settlements, farms and fishing enterprises. The western side is hilly, while the eastern side is flat country. The southern end of the lake, particularly towards the southeast, is industrial.

The lake is elongated – about 40km from north to south – and covers an area of 300 sq km. Plying the waters are *fanchuan* (pirate-sized junks with bamboo-battened canvas sails). The area around the lake is mainly for scenic touring and hiking, and there are some fabulous aerial views from the ridges at Dragon Gate in Xi Shan.

## XI SHAN

This cool, forested mountain range on the western side of Dian Chi makes for a great day trip from Kunming. The range is full of walking trails (some very steep sections), quiet temples, gates and lovely forests. But avoid the weekends when Kunmingites come here in droves.

It's a steepish approach from the north side. The hike from the Gaoyao bus station, at the foot of the hills, to Dragon Gate takes 2½ hours, though most people take a connecting bus from Gaoyao to the top section.

Alternatively, it is possible to cycle to the hills from the city centre in about an hour – to vary the trip, consider doing the return route across the dikes of upper Dian Chi.

At the foot of the climb, about 15km from Kunming, is Huating Temple [Offline map](#) ( Huating Si; admission ¥6; ☺ 8am-6pm), a country temple of the Nanzhao kingdom believed to have been constructed in the 11th century. It's one of the largest in the province and its numerous halls are decorated with arhats.

The road from Huating Temple winds 2km from here up to the Ming-dynasty Taihua Temple [Offline map](#) ( Taihua Si; admission ¥6; ☺ 8am-6pm). The temple courtyard houses a fine collection of flowering trees, including magnolias and camellias.

Sanqing Ge [Offline map](#) (), near the top of the mountain, was a country villa of a Yuan-dynasty prince, and was later turned into a

temple dedicated to the three main Taoist deities (*sanqing* refers to the highest level of Taoist 'enlightenment').

From near here you can catch a chairlift (one way/return ¥25/40) if you want to skip the final ascent to the summit. Alternatively, a tourist tram takes passengers up to the Dragon Gate for ¥5.

Near the top of the mountain, is Dragon Gate [Offline map](#) ( Long Men; admission ¥40), a group of grottoes, sculptures, corridors and pavilions that were hacked from the cliff between 1781 and 1835 by a Taoist monk and coworkers, who must have been hanging up there by their fingertips.

To get here, take bus 5 (¥1) from the Kunming Hotel to the terminus at Liangjiahe, and then change to bus 6 (¥1), which will take you to Gaoyao bus station at the foot of the hills. Alternatively, minibuses (¥6) run from opposite Liangjiahe and drop passengers at spots along the way.

Returning, you could also take the cable car across to Haigeng Park for ¥40. From there, take the 94 bus or a taxi for the 3km or so to the Yunnan Nationalities Village, opposite the Yunnan Minorities Museum, where you can catch bus 44 (¥1, 40 minutes) to Kunming's main train station.

## YUNNAN NATIONALITIES MUSEUM

On the northeast corner of the lake, the Yunnan Nationalities Museum [Offline map](#) (Yunnan Minzu Bowuguan; [www.ynnmuseum.com](http://www.ynnmuseum.com); admission free; ☺ 9.30am-4.20pm Tue-Sun) is reputedly the largest minorities museum in China, even if it doesn't have a whole lot on display. But the ground floor exhibition of costumes is comprehensive and comes with proper English captions.

Across the road is the Yunnan Nationalities Village ( Yunnan Minzu Cun; admission ¥90; ☺ 8.30am-10pm). Here you can walk through a tacky re-creation of an old Kunming street to reach the 'village', where all-smiling, all-dancing minorities perform for mostly domestic tour groups. Skip it and head to Xishuangbanna for the real thing instead.

Buses 24 and 44 (¥1) run to both the museum and village from the main train station.

## Shilin

📍 0871

A conglomeration of utterly bizarre but stunning karst geology and a hell of a lot of tourists, Shilin (Stone Forest; admission ¥175), about 120km southeast of Kunming, is equal parts tourist trap and natural wonderland. A massive collection of grey limestone pillars split and eroded by wind and rainwater (the tallest reaches 30m high), the place was, according to legend, created by immortals who smashed a mountain into a labyrinth for lovers seeking privacy.

Yes, it's packed to the gills, every single rock is affixed with a cheesy poetic moniker, Sani women can be persistent in sales, and it's all pricey as hell. Yet, idyllic, secluded walks are within 2km of the centre and by sunset or moonlight Shilin becomes otherworldly. To avoid the crowds, arrive early and avoid weekends.

Shilin can easily be visited as a day trip from Kunming, and it doesn't have much in the way of budget accommodation. But if you want to stay the night, the rooms at Shilin Bishuyuan Binguan (📍 771 1088; d/tr ¥300/360) are quiet and have good views over Shilin, double rooms regularly get knocked down to around ¥160.


Near the main entrance is a cluster of restaurants and snack bars that are open from dawn to dusk. Check all prices before you order, as overcharging is not uncommon.

Sani song and dance evenings are organised when there are enough tourists. Shows normally start at around 8pm at a stage next to the minor stone forest but there are sometimes extra performances. There are also Sani performances at the same location during the day between 2pm and 3pm.

During the July/August torch festival, wrestling, bullfighting, singing and dancing are held at a natural outdoor amphitheatre by Hidden Lake south of Shilin.

Buses to Shilin (¥35, two hours, every 30 minutes, 7am to 7pm) leave from Kunming's east bus station.

## Heijing

 0878

Time-warped Heijing (admission ¥30) has for centuries been known for its production of salt and is still an important producer of the 'white gold'. Upscale restaurants in Kunming still come here to purchase salt, believing it to be of better quality than the mass-produced stuff. Heijing has retained much of its period architecture and is a great place to wander for a day or two, marvelling at the old gates, temples and shady narrow alleys.

A small tourist information office near the first bridge can point the way to the various sites.

## Sights


The admission fee at the main gate (a few kilometres before the village) includes admission to Dalong Ci (; the clan meeting hall) and Guyan Fang (; an old salt production facility). The latter offers brief descriptions of the history of salt production, you can find it by walking east from the village for about 15 minutes. A few old salt wells can also be inspected, look out for the Black Cow Well (; Heiniu Jing), just south of Dalong Ci.

Should you tire of salty attractions just take a stroll around some of the back alleys and admire the temples, gates and old homes. Weekends get packed out with day trippers from Kunming but the rest of the week its just the locals going about their business.

There's pleasant walking to be done in the hills behind the town too. An obvious path leads up to Feilai Temple (; Feilai Si), then along the ridge line past some tombs before descending to the village. Plan on two to three hours for this walk.

## Sleeping

Wu Family Courtyard INN \$\$

( Wujia Dayuan;  489 0358; s/d ¥150/220) The best-known place in town was once owned by local salt magnate Wu Weiyang, who was summarily executed by communist forces in 1949. It's got oodles of faded grandeur but for the price you'd expect a bit more renovation – little seems to have changed since Mr Wu was around.

Wang Family Courtyard INN \$

( Wangjia Dayuan; ☎ 489 0506; r ¥35) This is the cheapest place in town (if not all of Yunnan). It's a simple place and a little run down but there are fine views over the river.

### **Getting There & Away**

Getting to Heijing is tricky. The best option is local train No 6162 (¥15, five hours), departing Kunming at 7.43am and arriving at 1.35pm. The train stops a couple of kilometres from the village but horse-drawn buggies are available to take passengers to town. Going the other way the No 6161 departs at 11.20am and reaches Kunming at 6pm.

The alternative is to take the bus from Kunming (or Dali) to the county capital **Chuxiong** (). These buses stop at the main bus station from where you'll have to take a taxi (¥7) to the east bus station (), from where there are buses to Heijing (¥13) every hour between 9am and 3.50pm. Buses return on a similar schedule, the final departure at 2.30pm.

## **Jianshui**

☎ 0873 / POP 17,400

Jianshui is a charming town of old buildings, an enormous Confucian temple, a cave laden with swallows, and some of the best steampot cooking and barbecue you'll find in Yunnan. The architecture is constantly being 'facelifted', but still retains much of its distinct character, and the locals, who are a mix of Han, Hui and Yi, are extremely friendly.

Known in ancient times as Butou or Badian (), Jianshui's history dates back to the Western Jin period, when it was under the auspices of the Ningzhou kingdom. It was handed around to other authorities until its most important days as part of the Tonghai Military Command of the Nanzhao kingdom. The Yuan dynasty established what would eventually become the contemporary town.

### **Sights**

Classic architecture surrounds you in Jianshui, and not just in the old-style back alleys. Virtually every main street has a historically significant traditional structure. The architecture here is especially

intriguing because of the obvious mixture of central plains and local styles. Many old buildings, despite official decrees positing them as state treasures, have been co-opted for other purposes and the trick – and the great fun – is trying to find them.

Note that you can buy a ¥133 through ticket (; *tongpiao*) that gets you into the Confucian Temple, the Zhu Family Garden and Swallow's Cavern. It's on sale at any of those places.

### Confucian Temple CONFUCIAN

( Wenmiao; Linan Lu; admission ¥60; ☺ 8am-6.30pm) Jianshui's famous temple was modelled after the temple in Confucius' hometown of Qufu (Shandong province) and finished in 1285; it covers 7.5 hectares and is the third-largest Confucian temple in China. (Some locals employ a flurry of Byzantine mathematics to prove it's the largest; either way, Xue Lake, around which it sits, uses the Chinese word for 'sea' in its name!)

The temple has operated as a school for nearly 750 years and was so successful that more than half of all Yunnan's successful candidates in imperial examinations during this period came from Jianshui. Many of the names of buildings in Jianshui use the ideogram *wen*, or 'literacy'.

### Zhu Family Garden HISTORIC SITE

( Zhujia Huayuan; Hanlin Jie; admission ¥50; ☺ 8am-8pm) This spacious 20,000 sq m complex, a fascinating example of Qing-era one-upping-the-Joneses, comprises ancestral buildings, family homes, ponds and lovely gardens, and took 30 years to build (it's now partially converted into an atmospheric inn with Qing-style rooms for ¥480). The Zhu family made its name through its mill and tavern, and dabbled in everything from tin in Gejiu to opium in Hong Kong, eventually falling victim to the political chaos following the 1911 revolution.

### Chaoyang Gate HISTORIC SITE

(; Chaoyang Lou) Guarding the centre of town, Chaoyang Gate, an imposing Ming edifice, was modelled on the Yellow Crane Tower in Wuhan and the Yueyang Tower in Hunan, and bears more than a passing resemblance to the Gate of Heavenly Peace in Beijing. There's no charge to walk up into the gate and admire the building

and views; you'll find a wonderful traditional teahouse, often with local musicians playing.

## Zhilin Si BUDDHIST MONASTERY

() The largest preserved wooden structure in Yunnan, this monastery was built during the latter stages of the Yuan dynasty; its distinctive design feature is the brackets between columns and crossbeams.

## Sleeping

Huaqing Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 766 6166; 46 Hanlin Jie; 46 s & d ¥280-468; 🌐📧) Decorated in a neo-Qing-dynasty style, the rooms here are nicely set up and come with lovely, small terraces. Prices usually come down to around ¥170. The attached cafe-bar next door is an OK place for a coffee or evening drink.

Lin'an Inn INN \$

( Lin'an Kezhan; 📍 765 5866; 32 Hanlin Jie; 32 d & tw ¥198-218; 🌐📧📶) A prime location in the heart of the old town, but the biggest draw is the great communal outside area, which is very pleasant in the evening. Regular discounts make this a budget choice (usually down to ¥160), but the rooms are a big step up from the cheapies. They'll cook for you too.

Jianshui Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Jianshui Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 765 2451; yhjianshui@yahoo.com; 77 Yongning Jie; 77 dm ¥25, tw/tr ¥70/110; 📧📶) This reliable backpacker hangout has clean rooms around a courtyard and helpful English-speaking staff. It rents bikes for ¥15 per day. To find it from Lin'an Lu, walk south on Guan Di Miao Jie and after 75m look for the sign pointing left.

## Eating

Jianshui is legendary for its *qiguo* (), a stew made in the county's famed earthenware pots and often infused with medicinal herbs. The cook may make use of the local speciality, *caoya* ( grass sprouts), also known as elephant's tooth grass root, which tastes like bamboo. Only found in Jianshui County, it's often used in broth or fried with liver or pork. Vegetarians might find a place that will substitute tofu. You'll



also find places serving delicious *liang mian*, or cold rice noodles served with sesame paste and tofu balls cooked on a grill.

Then there's glorious Jianshui barbecue (; Jianshui *shaokao*). Cubbyhole restaurants are filled with braziers roasting meats, veggies, tofu and perhaps goat's cheese. A perfect night out is a roasted meal under the Jianshui stars with friends. Try the intersection of Hanlin Jie and Lin'an Lu for barbecue places.

### **i** Information

There are **internet cafes** ( wangba; per hr ¥2.50; ☹ 24hr) on Yongning Jie, just south of Lin'an Lu, and on Hanlin Jie next to the Huaqing Jiudian. There are a few ICBC ATMs around town that take foreign cards.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Jianshui has a couple of bus stations. The main one is 3km north of Chaoyang Gate. For very local destinations, you need to head to the second small (regional) bus station a few minutes' walk west at the corner of Chaoyang Beilu and Beizheng Jie.

From the main station, there are buses continually leaving for Yuanyang (¥30, 2½ hours), but these go to Nansha. For Xinjie and the rice terraces, there is one daily bus (¥41, four hours, 11.34am).

Frequent buses head to Kunming (¥78, every 25 minutes, three to four hours, 7am to 7.35pm). Hekou-bound travellers have three morning buses (¥63 to ¥75, five hours, 7.26am, 8.16am, 10.57am). Sleepers to Jinghong (¥177, 12 to 17 hours) depart at 1.30pm and 4.30pm.

## **Around Jianshui**

### **SWALLOW'S CAVERN**

This freak of nature and ornithology is halfway between Jianshui and Gejiu. The karst formations (the largest in Asia) are a lure, but what you'll want to see are the hundreds of thousands of swallows flying around in spring and summer. The cave (Yanzi Dong; admission ¥80; ☹ 9am-5pm) is split into two – one high and dry, the other low and wet. The higher cave is so large that a three-storey pavilion and a tree fit inside. Plank walkways link up; the Lu River runs through the lower

cave for about 8km and you can tour the caverns in 'dragon-boats'.

There's no direct bus, but the ones bound for Mengzi, Kaiyuan or Gejiu which don't take the expressway pass the cavern (¥10, one hour).

## TWIN DRAGON BRIDGE

This bridge (Shuanglong Qiao) across the confluence of the Lu and Tachong Rivers is 5km from the western edge of town. One of the 10 oldest in China, the bridge features 17 arches, so many that it took two periods of the Qing dynasty to complete the project. To get there, take minibus 4 from Jianshui's second bus station (¥2). Note that you have to ask the driver to tell you where to get off and then point you in the right direction. Bus 4 continues to Huanglong Si ( ), a small temple.

## Yuanyang Rice Terraces

📍 0873 / POP 22,700

Picture hilltop villages, the only things visible above rolling fog and cloud banks, an artist's palette of colours at sunrise and sunset, spirit-recharging treks through centuries-old rice-covered hills, with a few water buffalo eyeing you contentedly nearby. Yes, it's hard not to become indulgent when describing these *titian* (rice terraces), hewn from the rolling topography by the Hani throughout the centuries. They cover roughly 12,500 hectares and are one of Yunnan's most stunning sights.

Yuanyang is actually split into two: Nansha, the new town, and Xinjie, the old town an hour's bus ride up a nearby hill. Either can be labelled Yuanyang, depending what map you use. Xinjie is the one you want, so make sure you get off there.

## Yuányáng Rice Terraces



### XINJIE

Xinjie is a bit grubby, but it's a very friendly place and easy to use as a base of operations. The bus station is a minute's walk from Titian Sq, the town's hub.

### Sights & Activities

The terraces around dozens of outlying villages have their own special characteristics, often changing with the daylight. Bilingual maps are available at all hotels in town. Bear in mind that the *titian* are at their most extraordinary in winter when they are flooded with water which the light bounces off in spectacular fashion.

Duoyishu (), about 25km from Xinjie, has the most awesome sunrises and is the one you should not miss. Quanfuzhuang () is a less-crowded alternative and has easy access down to the terraces. For sunsets, Bada () and Mengpin (), also known as Laohuzui (), can be mesmerising.

Commercialisation has come to the *titian* and there are now charges for the most popular spots. A combined ¥60 ticket gets you to Duoyishu, Bada and Quanfuzhuang. For Mengpin/Laohuzui, the

entrance fee is ¥30.

Buses run to all the villages from the bus station, but you are much better off arranging your own transport, or hooking up with other travellers to split the cost of a sunrise-sunset drive. Minibuses and motor-rickshaws congregate around the Yunti Shunjie Dajiudian and on the street west of the bus station. Expect to pay ¥400 in peak season for a minibus. Less comfortable motor-rickshaws can be got for ¥150 to ¥200.

Several markets are worth visiting; check with Window of Yuanyang for up-to-the-minute schedules.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There are a number of places surrounding the bus station where rooms can be found for ¥30 to ¥100, depending on the level of comfort you desire. There are restaurants surrounding Titian Sq. Try Liu Jun Fandian ( dishes from ¥12; ☺ 8am-10pm), on the corner of the square closest to the bus station.

Yunti Shunjie Dajiudian HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 562 4858; Xinjie; s/tr ¥198/268) Just off Titian Sq and a few minutes from the bus station, this place has clean, compact rooms. Discounts bring the price down to ¥100; a good deal.

Sunny Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

( Duoyishu Yangguang Kezhan; 📞 159 8737 1311; sunny\_guesthouse@163.com; 10-/4-bed dm ¥30/40, d ¥80) This simple guesthouse has a collection of basic rooms with shared bathroom and shower. Dorm room walls are flimsy but some of the private rooms have excellent views. It has a good vibe and travellers eat together around a communal table. You'll need to wander through Duoyishu's Pugaolao village a bit to find it.

Jacky's Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

( Shui Yun Jian Kezhan; 📞 135 2973 2170; jackyguesthouse@gmail.com; d ¥160) Located in the heart of Duoyishu's Pugaolao village, this new guesthouse has eight double rooms all with private bathroom, most with excellent views of the terraces, but there are no dorms. Owner Jacky speaks English and runs daily walking tours for ¥300 to ¥400. Meals are ¥30.



#### Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Nongye Yinhang) Has an ATM that takes foreign cards. To find it, head down the stairs by the entrance to the Yunti Shunjie Dajudian and walk on for a couple of minutes; it's on the left-hand side.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥2.50-3; ☺ 24hr) There are places close to the bus station and on Titian Sq near the Yunti Shunjie Dajudian.

**Window of Yuanyang** (☎ 562 3627; [www.windowofyuanyang.com](http://www.windowofyuanyang.com); @ ) Do visit this place, down the steps from the main square (on the 2nd floor of a building on your right). Staff here work in sustainable economic development in local villages. Volunteers are very friendly and helpful. Great locally produced items are here, too (not to mention coffee!).



#### Getting There & Away

There are three buses daily from Kunming to Yuanyang (¥136, seven hours, three daily at 9am, 4.30pm and 6.30pm); these return at 10.20am, 7.30pm and 8.20pm. Other destinations include Hekou (¥64, four hours) at 7.30am and 10.10am.

You could forge on to Xishuangbanna by taking the 7.30am bus to Luchun (¥39, four hours), where you'll pray to get the Jiangcheng bus at noon (¥36, five hours). If you miss it, try for a Simao bus. By the time you arrive in Jiangcheng, there'll be no more buses for the day, but you can stay the night and buses to Jinghong (¥54, 8½ hours) start running at 6am.

Alternatively, backtrack to Jianshui (¥41, four hours, six daily from 10.20am to 4.30pm) and catch the twice-daily Jinghong sleepers (¥177, 12 to 17 hours, 1.30pm and 4.30pm) from there.

From Xinjie, local buses leave when full to Duoyishu's Pugaolao village for around ¥20.

## Xiaguan

☎ 0872 / POP 158,000

Xiaguan, an easy-going city on the southwest shore of Erhai Hu (Erhai

Lake), serves as a transport hub for travellers headed to Dali, a few kilometres further up the highway. Confusingly, Xiaguan is sometimes referred to as Dali ( ) on tickets, maps and buses.

There is no reason to stay in Xiaguan and you only need to come here in order to catch a bus or train.

### Information

**Bank of China** (Zhongguo Yinhang; Jianshe Donglu) Changes money and travellers cheques, and has an ATM that accepts all major credit cards.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 214 2149; Tai'an Lu; 🕒 8-11am & 2-5pm Mon-Fri) Handles all visa extensions for Xiaguan and Dali. Take bus 8 from Dali and ask to get off at the Shi Ji Middle School (; Shiji Zhongxue).

### Getting There & Away

**AIR** Xiaguan's airport is 15km from the town centre. Buy air tickets online or at an agency in Old Dali. No public buses run to the airport; taxis will cost ¥50 from Xiaguan or ¥100 from Dali. Three flights daily leave for Kunming (¥760) and one or two to Xishuangbanna (¥990).

**BUS** Xiaguan has five bus stations which can confuse things. The Dali express bus station (kuaisu keyunzhan) is on Nan Jian Lu. The second main station used by travellers is Xingsheng bus station (also called gao kuai keyunzhan), located down the road from the express bus station. To find it, walk out of the express bus station, turn right and walk downhill, cross the big intersection to Xingsheng Lu and walk for 100m. The third station of interest is the north bus station (bei keyunzhan) on Dali Lu, which is reached by bus 8 (¥2) or a ¥10 taxi ride.

Remember that when departing, the easiest way to Kunming or Lijiang is to get a bus from Old Dali ([Click here](#)). The following departures are from the Dali express bus station (kuaisu keyunzhan):

**Chuxiong** ¥67, 2½ hours, every 30 minutes (7am and 6.40pm)

**Kunming** ¥103–148, five hours, every 30 minutes (7.45am to 6pm)

**Liuku** ¥72–96, five hours, six buses (7.40am to 3pm)

**Ruili** ¥192, eight hours, two buses (8.30am and 8.30pm)

The following departures are from the Xingsheng bus station (gao kuai

keyunzhan):

**Baoshan** ¥65, 2½ hours, every 40 minutes (7.50am to 7.20pm)

**Jinghong** ¥200, 16 hours, two daily (9am and 11am)

**Kunming** ¥146–148, five hours, every 30 minutes (7.20am to 7.30pm)

**Lijiang** ¥53–79, three hours, five daily (9.20am, 10am, 1.30pm, 4.30pm and 7pm)

**Mangshi (Luxi)** ¥116, six to eight hours, one daily (8pm)

**Tengchong** ¥128, six hours, three daily (10am, 1pm and 8pm)

**Yunlong (Nuodeng)** ¥42, three hours, seven daily (7.30am to 11.30am)

Departures from the north bus station (bei keyunzhan) include:

**Jianchuan (for Shaxi)** ¥45, three hours, every 30 minutes (8am to 3.30pm)

**Shangri-la** ¥84, eight hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to noon)

If you want to head to Weishan, you must go to the southwest bus station (xi nan keyunzhan). For destinations on the east side of the lake such as Shuanglang and Wase, head to the east bus station next to the train station.

Buses to Old Dali (¥3, 35 minutes) leave from outside the Xingsheng bus station. Bus 8 (¥3, 35 minutes) runs from the train station to the centre of Xiaguan to Dali's West Gate. If you want to be sure, ask for Dali gucheng (Dali old city).

Tickets for nearly all destinations can be booked in Dali and this is often the easiest way to do it as it will save you a trip to Xiaguan (although you will pay a small service fee).

**Train** There are four trains from Kunming's main train station at 8.30am, 10am, 11.10pm and 11.40pm, arriving in Xiaguan about seven hours later. Returning to Kunming, trains leave Xiaguan (hard seat/sleeper, ¥65/89) at 8.46am, 10.42am, 9.22pm and 9.49pm. There are two trains daily to Lijiang (¥35, two hours) at 9.16am and 4.55pm.

## Weishan

☎ 0872 / POP 20,700

Some 55km or so south of Xiaguan, Weishan is the heart of a region

populated by Hui and Yi. It was once the nucleus of the powerful Nanzhao kingdom, and from here the Hui rebel Du Wenxiu led an army in revolt against the Qing in the 19th century. Today, it's an attractive small town of narrow streets lined with wooden houses, with drum towers at strategic points and a lovely backdrop of the surrounding hills.

The town's central point is the unmistakable Gongchang Lou (; Gongchang Tower). South from Gongchang Lou you'll come to Menghua Old Home ( Menghua Laojia; admission ¥8; ☺ 8am-9pm), the town's best-preserved slice of architecture.

Linye Binguan ( 📞 612 0761; 24 Xi Xin Jie; 24 s & d ¥60-80; 🌙) is a hop, skip and a jump from Gongchang Lou and has big, newly decorated rooms. It's a ¥5 ride from the bus station in a motor-rickshaw.

The only restaurants in the town are cubbyhole eateries. Head north or south of Gongchang Lou to find most of them. You may see people indulging in a local Yi speciality, baked tea.

Xiaguan's south bus station has buses (¥16, 1½ hours) to Weishan from 6am to 6pm.

## Weibao Shan

Eminently worthy Weibao Shan (Weibao Mountain; admission ¥60), about 10km south of Weishan, has a relatively easy hike to its peak at around 2500m. During the Ming and Qing dynasties it was the zenith of China's Taoism, and you'll find some superb Taoist murals; the most significant are at Wenchang Gong ( Wenchang Palace; No 3 on the entrance ticket) and Changchun Cave ( Changchun Dong; No 1 on the entrance ticket). Birders in particular love the mountain; the entire county is a node on an international birding flyway.

There are no buses here. Head to the street running east of Gongchang Lou in Weishan to pick up a microvan to the mountain. Expect to pay ¥60 for the round trip; you'll need the driver to wait for you.

## Dali



📍 0872 / POP 40,000

Dali, the original funky banana-pancake backpacker hang-out in Yunnan, was once *the* place to chill, with its stunning location sandwiched between mountains and Erhai Hu (Erhai Lake). Loafing here for a couple of weeks was an essential Yunnan experience.

During the past decade the Chinese tourist market discovered Dali and the scene changed accordingly. Today, Chinese-style snack shops now outnumber the places slinging banana pancakes. Still, Dali has not succumbed to the tourist mania that infected nearby Lijiang and remains a reasonably relaxed destination, with the local population still a part of daily life.

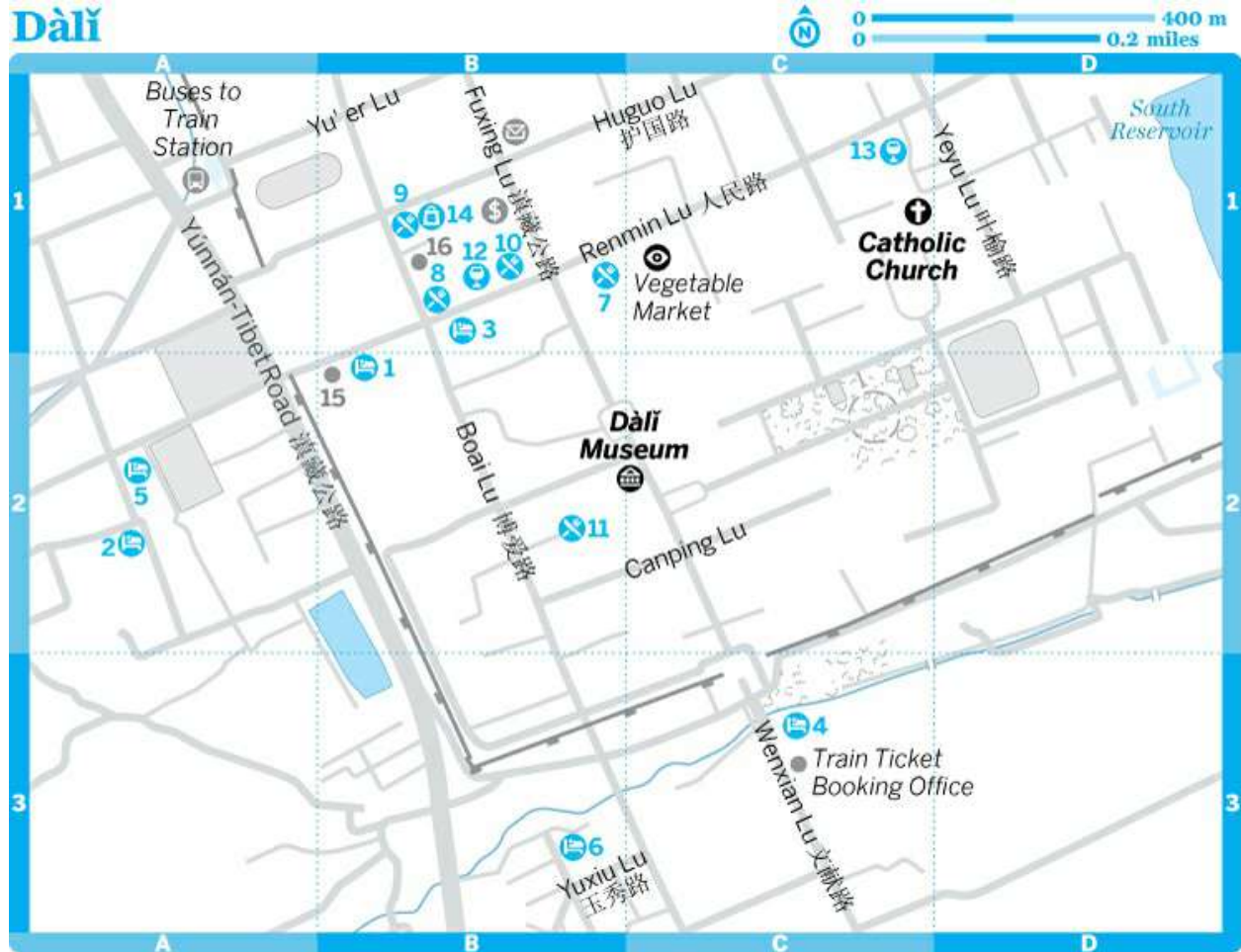
Surrounding Dali there are fascinating possibilities for exploring, especially by bicycle and in the mountains above the lake, or you can do what travellers have done for years – eat, drink and be merry.

## History

Dali lies on the western edge of Erhai Hu at an altitude of 1900m, with a backdrop of the imposing 4000m-tall Cang Shan (Green Mountains). For much of the five centuries in which Yunnan governed its own affairs, Dali was the centre of operations, and the old city retains a historical atmosphere that is hard to come by in other parts of China.

The main inhabitants of the region are the Bai, who number about 1.5 million and are thought to have settled the area some 3000 years ago. In the early 8th century they succeeded in defeating the Tang imperial army before establishing the Nanzhao kingdom, which lasted until the Mongol hordes arrived in the mid-13th century.

# Dali



## Dali

### Top Sights

[Catholic Church](#) C1

[Dali Museum](#) C2

### Sleeping

1 [Bird Bar & Nest](#) B2

2 [Five Elements](#) A2

3 [Four Seasons International Youth Hostel](#) B1

4 [Friends Guesthouse](#) C3

5 [Jade Emu](#) A2

6 [Jim's Tibetan Hotel](#) B3

### Eating

7 [Mei Zi Jing](#) B1

8 [Sweet Tooth](#) B1

9 [The Bakery No. 88](#) B1

10 [The Good Panda](#) B1

11 [Yi Ran Tang](#) B2

 Drinking

12 [Bad Monkey](#) B1

13 [Daliba Vodka](#) C1

 Shopping

14 [Mandarin Books & CDs](#) B1

Information

15 Climb Dali B2

16 Dali Bicycling Club B1

## Sights

Three Pagodas HISTORIC SITES

( San Ta Si; adult incl Chongsheng Temple ¥121; 🕒 7am-7pm)

Absolutely *the* symbol of the town/region, these pagodas 2km north of the north gate are among the oldest standing structures in southwestern China.

The tallest of the three, Qianxun Pagoda, has 16 tiers that reach a height of 70m. It was originally erected in the mid-9th century by engineers from Xi'an. It is flanked by two smaller 10-tiered pagodas, each of which are 42m high. While the price is cheeky considering you can't go inside the pagodas, Chongsheng Temple (Chongsheng Si) behind them has been restored and converted into a relatively worthy museum.

 Dali Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dali Shi Bowuguan; Fuxing Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) The museum houses a small collection of archaeological pieces relating to Bai history, including some fine figurines. English descriptions are lacking.

Catholic Church CHURCH

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(off Renmin Lu) Also worth checking is Dali's Catholic Church. It dates back to 1927 and is a unique mix of Bai-style architecture and classic European church design. Mass is held here at 9am every Sunday.

## Festivals & Events

### Third Moon Fair CULTURAL

Merrymaking – along with endless buying, selling and general horse-trading (but mostly merrymaking) – takes place during the third moon fair (*sanyue jie*), which begins on the 15th day of the third lunar month (usually April) and ends on the 21st day.

### Three Temples Festival CULTURAL

The three temples festival (*raosan ling*) is held between the 23rd and 25th days of the fourth lunar month (usually May). The first day involves a trip from Dali's south gate to Sacred Fountainhead Temple (Shengyuan Si) in Xizhou. Here travellers stay up until dawn, dancing and singing, before moving on to Jingui Temple (Jingui Si) and returning by way of Majiuyi Temple (Majiuyi) on the final day.

### Torch Festival CULTURAL

The torch festival (*huoba jie*) is held on the 24th day of the sixth lunar month (normally July) and is likely to be the best photo op in the province. Flaming torches are paraded at night through homes and fields. Locals throw pine resin at the torches causing minor explosions everywhere. According to one local guesthouse owner, 'it's total madness'.

## Sleeping

There's heaps of accommodation in Dali, but the popular places often fill up quickly during peak summer months.



Jade Emu HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinyuyuan Zhong'ao Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 267 7311; <http://jade-emu.com>; West Gate Village; dm without/with bathroom ¥25/30, s & d ¥130-160; @📶) This Aussie-owned and run venture smack in the shadow of Cang Shan (a five-minute walk from the old town) sets the standard for hostels in Dali. The staff here know what travellers want, the attention to detail is impressive and the rooms are clean and well-maintained. This is also a good place to arrange bus tickets and tours at fair prices. Around the corner, sister establishment Jade Roo copes with the overflow of travellers, with similar but slightly cheaper rooms.

### Five Elements HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wu Xing Guoji Kezhan; 📞 130 9985 0360;

[www.5elementschina.com](http://www.5elementschina.com); West Gate Village; dm ¥20-40, d without/with bathroom ¥80/100; @📶) This place has a popular following with budget Western backpackers, thanks to the low prices and friendly vibe. Rooms are clean, if somewhat bland, and there is a nice courtyard and garden where the manager grows organic vegies. All manner of tours and services are available.

### Four Seasons International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chun Xia Qiu Dong Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 138 8725 3949; yhafs@yahoo.cn; 46 Boai Lu; 46 dm ¥30-35, d ¥100-160; @📶)

Located in the heart of Dali, this hostel is just steps away from all kinds of facilities, cafes and restaurants. Rooms are clean and well-maintained but avoid the ones overlooking the street as they can get noisy. Wi-fi is in the lobby and ADSL in the rooms.

### Jim's Tibetan Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jimu Heping Jiudian; 📞 267 7824; [www.china-travel.nl](http://www.china-travel.nl); 13 Yuxiu Lu; 13 d ¥300, tr ¥400; @📶) The rooms here are the most distinctive in Dali, packed with antique Chinese-style furniture and managing to be both stylish and cosy. The bathrooms too are a cut above the competition. There's a garden, rooftop terrace, restaurant and bar. Travel services and tours can be booked.

### Bird Bar & Nest HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Niaoba Niaowo; 📞 266 1843; [www.birdbardali.com](http://www.birdbardali.com); 22 Renmin Lu; 22 s with shared bathroom ¥80, d ¥130-280; @📶) Set around an attractive tree- and plant-filled garden, the handful of rooms here attract a good mix of local and foreign travellers, as well as vacationing Kunming expats. Rooms are spacious and the English-speaking staff is helpful.

### Friends Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dali Gucheng Sanyou Kezhan; 📍 266 2888; [www.friendsdali.com](http://www.friendsdali.com); 2 Wenxian Lu; 2 dm ¥35, s & d ¥100; @📶) The choice for budget digs in the old town, this place has always been super busy (and friendly) and has clean and comfortable facilities.

## Eating

Bai food makes use of local flora and fauna – many of which are unrecognisable! Province wide, *er kuai* ( ) are flattened and toasted rice ‘cakes’ with an assortment of toppings (or plain). *Rushan* ( ‘milk fan’) may not sound appetising, but this ‘aired’ yogurt/milk mixture (it ends up as a long, thin sheet) is a local speciality and is often fried or melted atop other foods. This is distinct from *rubing* (goat’s cheese). Given Erhai Hu’s proximity, try *shaguo yu* ( ), a claypot fish casserole/stew made from salted Erhai Hu carp – and, as a Bai touch, magnolia petals. Local tastes also ensure that when ordering beef the fat-to-meat ratio is typically 50–50.



The Good Panda CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 81 Renmin Lu; dishes from ¥6; 🕒 9am-10.30pm; 📶) On a touristy street with mostly, Western-style restaurants, this small gem is a local favourite. It’s a great place for classic local dishes like Dali-style sizzling beef (*tieban niurou*) and crispy carp (*jianchuan ganshao yu*), plus Yunnan and Sichuan meals. There’s a limited English menu, but you can also point at the vegetables that look best. The patio is an excellent spot for people watching.



The Bakery No. 88 WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(88 Bashiba Hao Xidiandian; 52 Boai Lu; dishes from ¥20; 🕒 8am-10pm; 📶📶) A clean, well-lit, smoke-free haven of tranquility with excellent sandwiches, pastas and soups all prepared with local produce. It’s locally famous for its breads and cakes so don’t leave town without trying some.

Mei Zi Jing CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 130 Renmin Lu; dishes ¥15-40; 🕒 11am-9pm) This charmingly

authentic Bai restaurant is composed of three grey-brick courtyards each containing small seating nooks where locals cram together and feast on traditional local cuisine. The nonsensical menu includes a few mystery dishes ('Sewing kit fried lily', anyone?), but the 'braised chicken' or 'wild mushroom' dishes are both fine starting points. It's tucked off Renmin Lu opposite the vegetable market.

Sweet Tooth CAFE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tiandian Wu; 52 Boai Lu; dishes from ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-10.30pm; 📍📞) Owned and run by a culinary arts graduate, the homemade ice cream and desserts here are simply inspiring. There's also fine coffee and proper English tea. As an added bonus, profits from the cafe benefit the hearing impaired.

Yi Ran Tang VEGETARIAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 20 Honglong Alley; dishes ¥5; ☺ 11.30am-1pm & 5.30-7pm; 📍) An altruistic, Buddhist-inspired, all-vegetarian buffet where you pay ¥5 for a bowl of rice and whatever dishes the cooks have come up with on the day.



## Drinking

The Western-style restaurants double as bars.

Daliba Vodka BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dali Ba; 143 Renmin Lu; ☺ 5.30pm-late) Worth trying is this cool bar off the main strip, with a great selection of homemade flavoured vodkas, including Sichuan hotpot!

Bad Monkey BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huai Houzi; Renmin Lu; ☺ 9am-late) The eternally happening, Brit-run, Bad Monkey brews its own beers in the nearby mountains, has regular live music and endless drink specials. The Monkey also serves good pub grub (burgers and shepherd's pie) and expats swear by the Sunday roast (7.30pm) for ¥45 (including a glass of wine).

## Shopping

Dali is famous for its marble blue and white batik printed on cotton and silk.

The centre of town has a profusion of clothes shops. Most shopkeepers can also make clothes to your specifications – which will come as a relief when you see how small some of the items of ready-made clothing are.

A few more-or-less useful maps (¥12) can be picked up at hostels and restaurants around town. You can also find them at Mandarin Books & CDs ( Wuhua Shuyuan; Huguo Lu), along with guidebooks and novels in Chinese, English, French and German.

## Information

On hikes around Cang Shan there have been several reports of robbery of solo walkers. On the overnight sleeper bus from Kunming, a bag is often pinched or razored. Bags in the luggage hold are also not safe.

All hostels and many hotels offer travel advice, arrange tours and book tickets for onward travel. There are also numerous travel agencies and cafes that will book bus tickets and offer all manner of tours. They can be expensive unless you can get a group together. Internet cafes can be found along all the main streets (¥2 to ¥2.50 per hour), but all hostels and hotels also offer internet access.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Fuxing Lu) Changes cash and travellers cheques, and has an ATM that accepts all major credit cards.

**China Minority Travel** (china-travel.nl) Henriette, a Dutch expat, can offer a long list of trips, including tours to Muslim markets and Yi minority markets as well as through remote areas of Yunnan and overland travel to Lhasa from Shangri-la when it is allowed. Check her website for contact details.

**Climb Dali** (20 Renmin Lu; ☎ 131 5064 4701; info@climbdali.com) This outfit runs active adventures around Dali, including rock climbing, mountaineering, kayaking and rafting trips. It also has a bouldering wall, and a pizza/sandwich restaurant called Goodfellas. Contact Adam Kritzer.



**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Fuxing Lu & Huguo Lu; ☎ 8am-8pm)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 214 2149; Dali Rd, Xiaguan; ☎ 8-11am & 2-5pm Mon-Fri) Visas cannot be renewed in Dali, so you'll have to head to Xiaguan ([Click here](#) for Xiaguan PSB details).

**Tibet Motorcycle Adventures** (📞 151 8499 9452; <http://tibetmoto.com>) Motorbikes can be rented for ¥250 per day including gas. If you get stuck they will send a car to pick you up. Contact Hendrik Heyne.

### **i Getting There & Away**

The golden rule: most buses advertised to Dali actually go to Xiaguan. Coming from Lijiang, Xiaguan-bound buses stop at the eastern end of Dali to let passengers off before continuing on to the north bus station.

From Kunming's west bus station there are numerous buses to Dali (¥103 to ¥142, four to five hours, every 20 minutes from 7.30am to 7.30pm). Heading north, it's easiest to pick up a bus on the roads outside the west or east gates; buy your ticket in advance from your guesthouse or a travel agent and they'll make sure you get on the right one. (You could hail one yourself to save a surcharge but you're not guaranteed a seat.)

From the old town (near West Gate Village) you can catch a 30-seat bus to Kunming for ¥110, it runs three or four times a day, departing 9am, 10.30am, 11.30am, 1.30pm and 4.30pm.

Buses run regularly to Shaping (¥12), Xizhou (¥10) and other local destinations from outside the west gate.

An official train ticket booking office is located outside the south gate (close to Friends Guesthouse) at 12 Wenxian Lu.

### **i Getting Around**

From Dali, a taxi to Xiaguan airport takes 45 minutes and costs around ¥100; to Xiaguan's train station it costs ¥50.

Bikes are the best way to get around (¥20 to ¥40 per day). Try **Dali Bicycle Club** (41 Boai Lu; ☎ 7.30am-8pm), which has solid bikes and offers loads of other travel services.

Buses (¥2, 30 minutes, marked ) run between the old town and

Xiaguan from as early as 6.30am; wait along the highway and flag one down. Bus 8 runs between Dali and central Xiaguan (¥2, 30 minutes) on the way to the train station every 15 minutes from 6.30am.

## **Around Dali**

Travellers have a market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) to go to nearly every day of the week. Every Monday at Shaping (), about 30km north of Dali, there is a colourful Bai market (Shaping Ganji). From 10am to 2.30pm you can buy everything from food products and clothing to jewellery and local batik.

Regular buses to Shaping (¥12, one hour) leave from just outside the west gate. By bike, it will take about two hours at a good clip.

Markets also take place in Shuanglang (; Tuesday), Shaba (; Wednesday), Yousuo (; Friday morning, the largest in Yunnan) and Jiangwei (; Saturday). Xizhou () and Zhoucheng () have daily morning and afternoon markets, respectively. Wase () also has a popular market every five days with trading from 9am to 4.30pm. Thanks to the lack of boats, travellers now have to slog to Xiaguan's east bus station for buses to Wase.

Many cafes and hotels in Dali offer tours or can arrange transportation to these markets for around ¥150 for a half day.



## ERHAI HU

Erhai Hu (Ear-Shaped Lake) dominates the local psyche. The seventh-biggest freshwater lake in China, it sits at 1973m above sea level and covers 250 sq km; it's also dotted with trails perfect for bike rides and villages to visit. It's a 50-minute walk, a 15-minute bus ride

or a 10-minute downhill zip on a bike from Dali.

Caicun ( ), a pleasant little village east of Dali (¥1 on bus 2), is the nexus of lake transport. Sadly, putt-putt local ferries are a distant memory. All boat travel is now on 'official' vessels. Expect to pay ¥150 for a three-hour trip. That said, ask around at cafes and guesthouses – something may turn up.

On the east side of the lake the beautiful lakeside town of Shuanglang ( ) is an increasingly popular destination in its own right. The town is a labyrinth of winding old alleys and traditional homes sitting on a little peninsula that juts into the lake. Just offshore is Nanzhao Fengqing Dao ( ; Nanzhao Customs Island), which has gardens, parks a 17.5m tall marble statue of Avalokiteshvara (Chenresig) aka Guanyin, and a hotel. Boats to the island cost ¥50, the price includes admission.

There are several guesthouses in the town, including the Sky & Sea Lodge ( Haidi Shenghuo; ☎ 0872-246 1762; [www.skysealodge.org](http://www.skysealodge.org); dm ¥30-40, d ¥100-280; 📶), with excellent lake views. You can't take a taxi here so you'll have to walk about 10–15 minutes through the village, ask locals to point the way. There is also a basic guesthouse on the island with beds for ¥60.

The other east side highlight, close to Wase, is Putuo Dao ( ; Putuo Island) and Lesser Putuo Temple ( ; Xiaoputuo Si), set on an extremely photogenic rocky outcrop.

Roads now encircle the lake so it is possible to do a loop (or partial loop) of the lake by mountain bike. A new bike path goes from Caicun to Tao Yuan Port, which makes a great day trip (but most travellers turn around at Xizhou). Some hard-core cyclists continue right around the lake (the full loop is around 98km). The lack of boats means you're looking at an overnight stay or an extremely long ride in one day.

## **CANG SHAN**

This range of gorgeous peaks rises imposingly above Dali and offers the best legwork in the area. Most travellers head first for Zhonghe Temple ( ; Zhonghe Si), on the side of Zhonghe Shan ( Zhonghe Mountain; admission ¥30; 🕒 8am-6pm). At the temple, be careful of imposter monks passing out incense and then demanding ¥200 for a

blessing.

You can hike up the mountain, a sweaty two to three hours for those in moderately good shape (but note the warning that there have been several reports of robbery of solo walkers). Walk about 200m north of the old chairlift base (no longer working) to the riverbed (often dry). Follow the left bank for about 50m and walk through the cemetery, then follow the path zigzagging under the chairlift. When you reach some stone steps, you know you are near the top. This is but one of several paths to the temple.

Branching out from either side of Zhonghe Temple is a trail that winds along the face of the mountains, taking you in and out of steep, lush valleys and past streams and waterfalls. From the temple, it's a nice 11km walk south to Gantong Temple (; Gantong Si), Qingbi Stream (; Qingbi Xi) and/or Guanyin Pavilion (; Guanyin Tang), from where you can continue to the road and pick up a Dali-bound bus. The path, called Jade Belt Road (; Yudai Lu), is paved and easily walkable.

There's also a cable car (one way/ return ¥50/80) between Qingbi Stream and Gantong Temple.

Alternatively, take the new cable car (return ¥230) up to the Horse Washing Pond (; Xi Ma Tan), high in the mountain range, where Kublai Khan set up his base in the late 13th century.

You can loaf in basic luxury at 2950m near Zhonghe Temple at Higherland Inn ( Gaodi Luguan; ☎ 266 1599; [www.higherland.com](http://www.higherland.com); dm ¥30, d ¥80-120). If you want to get away from the crowds in Dali, this is the place to do it. The hostel has fabulous views, regular barbecues and only a handful of rooms, which means it's an incredibly relaxing place to stay.

## **XIZHOU**

A trip to the old town of Xizhou for a look at its well-preserved Bai architecture is lovely. You can catch a local bus from the west gate in Dali (¥10) or take a taxi (¥60) to make the 18km trip, but a bicycle trip with an overnight stop in Xizhou (there's accommodation in town) is also a good idea.

The best place to stay is the American-run Linden Centre ( Xi Lin Yuan; ☎ 0872-245 2988; [www.linden-centre.com](http://www.linden-centre.com); d/ste incl breakfast

¥980/1480; @📶), a traditional Chinese style home turned boutique hotel with 14 rooms, each decked out in antique furniture and modern bathrooms. There are fine views of the surrounding fields from the upper floors. The hotel runs walking tours (per person ¥150) of the village.

From here, the interesting town of Zhoucheng (周城) is 7km further north; it too has basic accommodation.

## Nuodeng

📞 0872

This anachronistic hamlet, oft-lauded as the ‘thousand-year-old’ village, has one of the highest concentrations of Bai in Yunnan and some of the best preserved buildings in the entire province. Off the main tourist routes, Nuodeng has managed to preserve traditional village life, with ponies and donkeys clomping up the steep flagstone streets past traditional mud-brick buildings with ornate gates, many of which date back to the Ming and Qing dynasties. Nuodeng’s economy was once based on the salt trade and was part of the old Tea Horse trail that stretched from Tibet to Burma.

### Sights

After crossing the bridge at the bottom of the village you’ll see one of the original salt wells, located inside a wooden shed. The town is built upon a steep hill and winding up through the alleys you’ll reach an impressive Confucian Temple (孔庙; Kong Miao), which today serves as the village primary school (check out the detailed frescoes still visible on the ceiling). Further uphill is the picturesque 16th-century Yuhuang Pavillion (玉皇阁; Yuhuang Ge).

Village life is centred on the small market square; a good place to catch some sun and gab with the local elders. Wandering around you’ll likely be invited into a few homes for tea, an opportunity you should not pass up.

On the way to Nuodeng village from Yunlong, the Bi River is forced by the surrounding hills into a serpentine roll that from above looks remarkably like a yin-yang symbol, or Taijitu (太极图). You won’t notice this

natural phenomenon from ground level; you need to go up to a viewing platform on the nearby hill. The road to the pavilion is 7km of endless switchbacks, a tedious and tiring hike, or you could hire a rickshaw to take you there for ¥20.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Fujia Liufangyuan INN \$

( 📍 552 5032; dm ¥15, d ¥50; @ ) A wonderful Bai courtyard guesthouse with a lush garden of bougainvillea. The pit toilets are a little basic but overall it's a friendly and comfortable place to stay. For an additional ¥5 the owners will show you around their personal museum of local artefacts. The guesthouse is your best bet for meals and you can eat dinner with the family for ¥15.

## **Getting There & Away**

Buses (¥42, three to four hours, six daily from 7.30am to 11.30am) leave from Xiaguan's long-distance bus station to the county seat Yunlong ( ), from where you can take a three-wheel rickshaw (¥15 to ¥20) the final 7km to Nuodeng. Buses back to Xiaguan leave on a similar schedule, the final departure is at 3pm. Heading north, there is a daily bus (¥33, five to six hours, 8am) to Jianchuan. For Liuku there are six buses (¥52, four to five hours) between 7am and 1pm. Minibuses assemble near the bus station in Yunlong, with occasional departures (when full) to these destinations.

## **Shaxi**

📍 0872

The tiny hamlet of Shaxi, 120km northwest of Dali, lies in a time warp, every step harkening back to the clippety-clop of horses' hooves and shouts of traders.

Shaxi was a crucial node on one of the old Tea-Horse Roads that stretched from Yunnan to India. Only three caravan oases remain, Shaxi being the best preserved and the only one with a surviving market (held on Fridays).

The village's wooden houses, courtyards and narrow, winding streets make it a popular location for period Chinese movies and TV

shows, but this is still a wonderfully sleepy place where nightlife means sitting out under the canopy of stars and listening to the frogs croaking in the rice paddies.

## Sights

Sideng Jie ( ) is the ancient town street leading off the main road. It's about 300m downhill to the multifrescoed Xingjiao Si ( ; Xingjiao Temple), the only Ming-dynasty Bai Buddhist temple. It's currently used as an exhibit hall for town restoration projects but the city hopes to restore it as a functioning temple. On the opposite side of the courtyard is the Three Terraced Pavilion ( ; Kuixingge), which has a prominent theatrical stage ( ; *guxitai*), something of a rarity in rural China. There is a small museum here, ask the guard at the temple for the key. The absolute highlight, however, is the Ouyang Courtyard ( ; Ouyang Dayuan), a superb example of three-in-one Bai folk architecture in which one wall protected three yards/residences. During the Ming-era, this was considered a 'five-star' hotel, it has exceptional wood carvings on the second floor. At the time of writing admission to sights in town were free (although this may change).

Exit the east gate and head south along the Hui River ( ; Hui Jiang) for five minutes, cross the ancient Yujin Qiao ( ; Yujin Bridge), and you're walking the same trail as the horse caravans. (If you look hard enough, you'll still be able to see hoofprints etched into the rock, or so the locals claim.)

Otherwise, the main activity around town is walking. The guesthouses in town have maps that can get you started and keep you busy for days.

## Sleeping & Eating

A number of old courtyard homes on and off Sideng Jie have been converted into upmarket inns; there are also places offering beds from ¥20.

Some of the inns on Sideng Jie operate as cafes and restaurants, or try the hole-in-the-wall places on the village's main road.

Horsepen 46 INN \$

( 46 Majuan Sishiliu Kezhan; 📞 472 2299; [www.horsepen46.com](http://www.horsepen46.com); 46



Sideng Jie; 46 dm ¥25, r ¥60-120; @📶) This popular YHA-guesthouse has cute rooms of different sizes and shapes surrounding a sunny little courtyard. There's a laid-back traveller vibe here with folks lounging around, reading books and then eating dinner together at a communal table (¥20). The helpful English-speaking staff can organise hikes in the area, as well as rock climbing and kayaking.

Tea and Horse Caravan Trail Inn INN \$

( Gudao Kezhan; 📍 472 1051; 83 Sideng Jie; 83 s & d without/with bathroom ¥50/120) The cheap rooms at this friendly place are basic and clean, but the more expensive ones are a significant step up and come with comfy beds and big bathrooms, as well as being set around a pleasant garden area. Discounts of 30% available.

Old Theatre Inn BOUTIQUE INN \$\$

( Xitai Huiguan; 📍 472 2296; reservations @shaxichina.com; Duanjiadeng Village; r incl breakfast ¥250; @📶) This quaint boutique guesthouse has been fashioned out of a 200-year-old Chinese theatre and inn. It has been lovingly restored with modern rooms and a cafe that has retained the original flavour of the place. It's located 3km north of Shaxi, you can rent a bike here for ¥20 to get you around.

Karma Cafe CAFE \$

( Ka Ma Ju; Sideng Jie; dishes from ¥12; ☺ 8am-10pm; 📺) With a dash of old Shaxi atmosphere, this is a relaxing place to unwind after a long day. The menu offers decent Western meals and a few expensive Chinese and Tibetan dishes. The Western-style breakfast with French toast, eggs and yogurt is recommended.

Orange CHINESE \$

( Juzi Fandian; Xin Cheng; ☺ 7am-10.30pm; 📺) Located in the new town, this local favorite serves traditional Bai and Chinese cuisine. It's good for noodles and dumpling soup, or you can point at the vegies in the fridge and get a stir-fry.

### **i Getting There & Away**

From Jianchuan, there are hourly buses (¥10, one hour) to/from Shaxi, or catch a shared minivan ride that also stops at Shibao Shan. Moving on you'll have to go back to Jianchuan. There are frequent buses to Dali (¥37) between 6.30am and 6pm. To Lijiang (¥21) there

are buses at 8am, 9.30am, 11.30am, 1.30pm and 3.30pm. To Kunming (¥157) they're at 9.30am and 6pm, and to Shangri-la (¥53) at 8.30am and 9.30am.

## Shibaoshan

Strewn with temples, old-growth cypress forest and waterfalls, Stone Treasure Mountain Grottoes ( Shibaoshan Shiku; admission ¥50; 🕒 8.30am-5pm), a few kilometres north of Shaxi, makes for an excellent half-day trip.

From Shaxi you can head for Stone Bell Temple ( Shizhong Si), which includes some of the best Bai stone carvings in southern China and offers insights into life at the Nanzhao court of the 9th century. (And some, er, rather racy sculptures of female genitalia.) It's possible to walk to Stone Bell Temple via Shadeng Village ( Shadeng Qing) in about three hours. To get there from Shaxi, walk 1.5km north, turn left at the sign (pointing to Shadeng Qing) and walk another 1km to the foot of the mountain. The path up the mountain is obvious, there are several temples, grottoes and stone carvings between the village and Stone Bell Temple.

On the far side of Shibao Shan (12km from Stone Bell) is the impressive Baoxiang Temple ( Baoxiang Si), a dramatic temple complex built into the side of a cliff constructed during the Song dynasty. Baoxiang Temple is best visited by car from Shaxi, a taxi will cost ¥150. The road to Baoxiang goes through the main gate of the Shibao Shan park, where you will have to buy a ticket. From the gate to the temple is 6km. Note that if you just walk to Stone Bell from Shaxi you won't go through the main gate but you can buy an 'unofficial' ticket for around ¥25 (you may need to bargain).

## THE TEA-HORSE ROAD

Less well-known than the Silk Road, but equally important in terms of trade and the movement of ideas, people and religions, the Tea-Horse Road (; Chamagudao) linked southwest China with India via Tibet. A series of caravan routes, rather than a single road, which also went through parts of Sichuan, Burma, Laos and Nepal, the trails started deep in the jungle of Xishuangbanna. They then headed north through Dali and Lijiang and into

the thin air of the Himalayan mountains on the way to the Tibetan capital Lhasa, before turning south to India and Burma.

Although archaeological finds indicate that stretches of the different routes were in use thousands of years ago, the road really began life in the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907). An increased appetite for tea in Tibet led to an arrangement with the Chinese imperial court to barter Yunnan tea for the prized horses ridden by Tibetan warriors. By the Song dynasty (AD 960–1279), 20,000 horses a year were coming down the road to China, while in 1661 alone some 1.5 million kilos of tea headed to Tibet.

Sugar and salt were also carried by the caravans of horses, mules and yaks. Buddhist monks, Christian missionaries and foreign armies utilised the trails as well to move between Burma, India and China. In the 18th century the Chinese stopped trading for Tibetan horses and the road went into a slow decline. Its final glory days came during WWII, when it was a vital conduit for supplies from India for the allied troops fighting the Japanese in China. The advent of peace and the communist takeover of 1949 put an end to the road.

## NORTHWEST YUNNAN

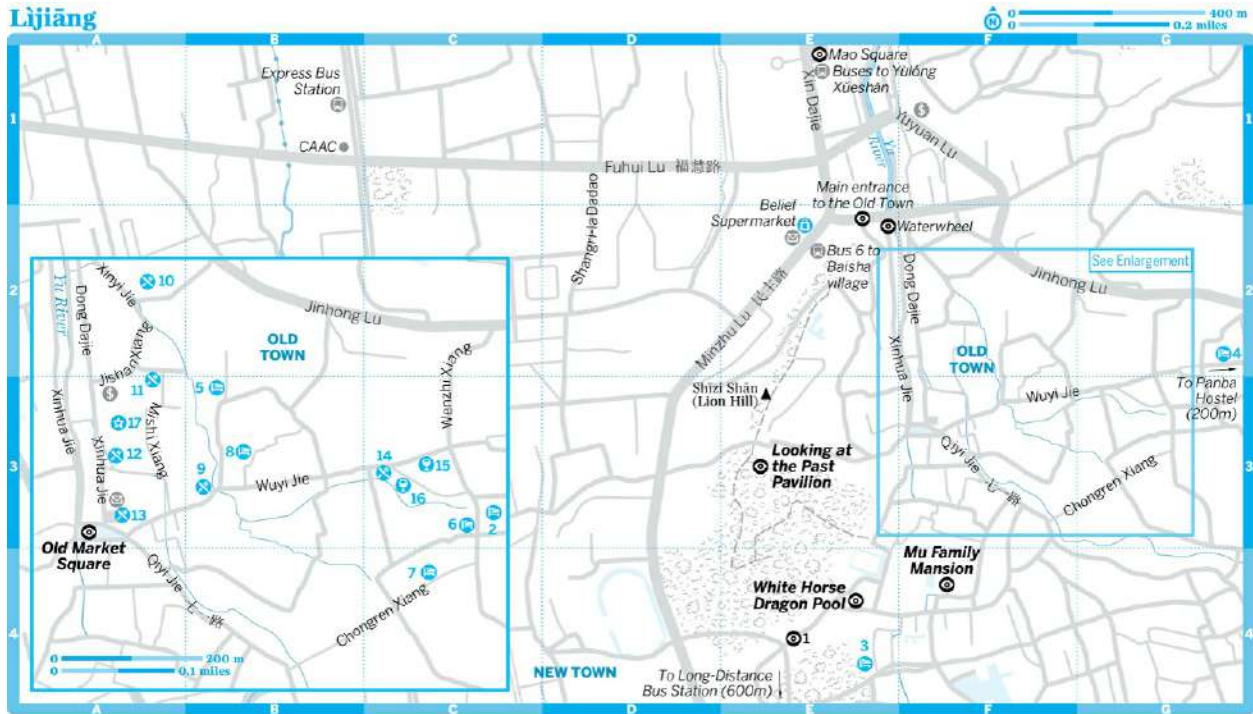
### Lijiang

📍 0888 / POP (OLD TOWN) 40,000

How popular is this timelocked, if tourist-ified, place? Lijiang's maze of cobbled streets, rickety (or rickety-looking, given gentrification) wooden buildings and gushing canals suck in around *five million* people a year. So thick are the crowds in the narrow alleys that most days it can feel like all five million have arrived at once.

But remember the 80/20 rule: 80% of the tourists will be in 20% of the places. Get up early enough and more often than not you'll avoid the crowds. And when they do appear, that's the cue to hop on a bike and cycle out to one of the nearby villages.

A Unesco World Heritage site since 1997, Lijiang is a city of two halves: the old town and the very different and modern new town. The old town is where you'll be spending your time and it's a jumble of lanes that twist and turn. If you get lost (and most do), head upstream and you'll make your way back to the main square.



## Lijiang

### 📍 Top Sights

Looking at the Past Pavilion E3

[Mu Family Mansion](#) F4

[Old Market Square](#) F3

[White Horse Dragon Pool](#) E4

### 📍 Sights

1 [Zhongyi Market](#) E4

### 🛏 Sleeping

2 [Blossom Hill](#) C3

3 [Crowne Plaza Lijiang](#) E4

4 [Garden Inn](#) G2

5 [Lijiang International Youth Hostel](#) B3

6 [Mama Naxi's Guesthouse 1](#) C3

7 [Mama Naxi's Guesthouse 3](#) C4

8 [Zen Garden Hotel](#) B3

### 🍴 Eating

9 [Ama Yi Naxi Snacks](#) B3

10 [Lamu's House of Tibet](#) A2

11 [N's Kitchen](#) A3

- 12 [Prague Coffee](#) A3
- 13 [Sakura Good Food Square](#) A3
- 14 [Tian He Canting](#) C3
- ☕ Drinking
- 15 [Freshnam](#) C3
- 16 [Stone The Crows](#) C3
- ★ Entertainment
- 17 [Naxi Orchestra](#) A3

## Sights

Note that a ¥80 'protection fee' is sold at most guesthouses and provides free entry to Black Dragon Pool. Proof of payment of this fee is required at some other sites, such as Jade Dragon Snow Mountain.

### Old Town HISTORIC AREA

The old town () is dissected by a web of arterylike canals that once brought the city's drinking water from Yuquan Spring, in what is now Black Dragon Pool Park. Several wells and pools are still in use around town (but hard to find). Where there are three pools, these were designated into pools for drinking, washing clothes and washing vegetables. A famous example of these is the White Horse Dragon Pool [Offline map](#) ( Baimalong Tan; ☺ 7am-10pm) in the deep south of the old town, where you can still see the odd local washing their vegies after buying them in the market.

The focus of the old town is the busy Old Market Square [Offline map](#) (; Sifang Jie). Once the haunt of Naxi traders, they've long since made way for tacky souvenir stalls. However, the view up the hill and the surrounding lanes are still extraordinary.

Now acting as sentinel of sorts for the town, the Looking at the Past Pavillion ( Wanggu Lou; admission ¥15; ☺ 7am-9pm) has a unique design using dozens of four-storey pillars – culled from northern Yunnan old-growth forests.

A must-see is Zhongyi Market [Offline map](#) ( Zhongyi Shichang; ☺ 6am-5pm) where locals sell produce, copper items and livestock. If you are craving a slice of old Lijiang this is where you'll find it.

### Black Dragon Pool Park SCENIC AREA

( Heilongtan Gongyuan; Xin Dajie; admission free with ¥80 town entrance ticket; ☺ 7am-8.30pm) On the northern edge of town is the Black Dragon Pool Park; its view of Yulong Xueshan (Jade Dragon Snow Mountain) is the most obligatory photo shoot in southwestern China. The Dongba Research Institute ( Dongba Wenhua Yanjiushi; ☺ 8am-5pm Mon-Fri) is part of a renovated complex on the hillside here. You can see Naxi cultural artefacts and scrolls featuring a unique pictograph script.

Trails lead up Xiang Shan (Elephant Hill) to a dilapidated gazebo and then across a spiny ridge past a communications centre and back down the other side, making a nice morning hike, but note the warning on [Click here](#).

The Museum of Naxi Dongba Culture ( Naxi Dongba Wenhua Bowuguan; admission free; ☺ 9am-5pm) is at the park's northern entrance and is a decent introduction to traditional Naxi lifestyle and religion, complete with good English captions.

Note that the pool has dried up in recent years and without water some visitors are disappointed with this site; ask at your guesthouse first if the pool has water before deciding whether or not to visit.

Mu Family Mansion HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#)

( Mushi Tusifu; admission ¥60; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) The former home of a Naxi chieftain, the Mu Family Mansion was heavily renovated (more like built from scratch) after the devastating earthquake that struck Lijiang in 1996. Mediocre captions do a poor job of introducing the Mu family but many travellers find the beautiful grounds reason enough to visit.

## Festivals & Events

Fertility Festival FERTILITY

The 13th day of the third moon (late March or early April) is the traditional day to hold this festival.

Torch Festival FIRE

July brings the torch festival (Huoba Jie), also celebrated by the Bai in the Dali region and the Yi all over the southwest. The origin of this

festival can be traced back to the intrigues of the Nanzhao kingdom, when the wife of a man burned to death by the king eluded the romantic entreaties of the monarch by leaping into a fire.

## Sleeping

Throw a stick and you'll hit a Naxi guesthouse in the old town. There are well over a thousand places to stay in the old city, with more appearing all the time. Most have less than 10 rooms. In peak seasons (especially holidays), prices double (or more).



Blossom Hill BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Huajian Tang Kezhan; 📍 516 9709; [www.blossomhillinn.com](http://www.blossomhillinn.com); 97 Wenzhi Xiang; 97 d ¥480-580, ste ¥800; @📶) A lovingly restored boutique inn with classic decor that befits this World Heritage city. Rooms come with handcrafted wood furnishings, antiques and artistic touches like flowers floating in water-filled brass bowls. The large, modern bathrooms with wooden tubs are superb and common areas include a little library and a movie room. A sophisticated Italian restaurant is attached to the inn.



Garden Inn GUESTHOUSE \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Ziteng Huayuan Kezhan; 📍 151 0887 3494; 7 Wenming Xiang, Wuyi Jie, Yishang; 7 dm ¥30, s & d ¥100-150; @📶) This popular backpacker hangout has a collection of bright and airy rooms, some with nice views of the city. There's a big lounge where you can try Western or Chinese meals, and a sunny outdoor area where travellers gather throughout the day. The inn has a friendly and knowledgeable English-speaking staff, DIY laundry and does tour bookings.

Panba Guesthouse HOSTEL \$

( Panba Jiayuan Qingnian Lushe; 📍 511 9077; [panba.hostel@gmail.com](mailto:panba.hostel@gmail.com); 63 Wenming Xiang, Wuyi Jie, Yishang; 63 dm ¥35-45, r ¥140; @📶) At the quiet eastern end of Wuyi Jie, this increasingly popular place is a 15-minute walk from the centre of the old town – a good distance from the tour group madness. The rooms are a decent size and come with shared balconies and modern

bathrooms, while the solicitous staff get rave reviews. Book ahead.

Zen Garden Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Ruihe Yuan Jiudian; 📍 518 9799; [www.zengardenhotel.com](http://www.zengardenhotel.com); 36 Xingren Lane, Wuyi Jie; 36 d/ste ¥500/1200; @) As befits its name, this is a serene, hushed establishment. Run by a Naxi teacher and decorated with help from her artist brother, the furniture and design in the communal areas is tremendous, even if the rooms themselves are a little more functional than their price suggests.

Mama Naxi's Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

( Gucheng Xianggeyun Kezhan; 📍 510 7713; 70 Wangjia Zhuang Lane, Wuyi Jie; 70 dm ¥25-30, s & d ¥60-150; @📶) The energetic Mama operates two guesthouses near each other, named '1' and '3' ('2' is in Dali). Head to '3' at 70 Wangjia Zhuang Lane for dorms, cramped but clean standard rooms, information-gathering, socialising and cheap eats. It's a bit loud when a Naxi wedding is taking place at the next-door wedding hall. '1', at 78 Wangjia Zhuang Lane (📍 510 0700), is dorm-free and more peaceful.

Crowne Plaza Lijiang HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Lijiang Hefu Jiari Jiudian; 📍 558 8888; [www.crowneplaza.cn](http://www.crowneplaza.cn); 276 Xianghe Lu; 276 d from ¥1438; @📶🚰) The best hotel Lijiang can offer, a magical space with lofty ceilings, little gardens and epic views of the Jade Dragon Mountain. Other amenities include two restaurants (including a Brazilian barbecue), a swimming pool, day spa and children's play room.

Lijiang International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Lijiang Laoxie Chemadian; 📍 518 0124; 44 Mishi Xiang, Xinyi Jie; 44 dm ¥25, s & d ¥50-120, tr ¥150-180; @📶) The dorms here are big (eight and 12 beds) and a bit run down, the rooms generic, but there's a great bar/communal area and the staff are helpful.

**KEEPING THE GOOD FORTUNE**



An interesting local historical tidbit has it that the original Naxi chieftain, whose former home is the Mu Family Mansion, would not allow the old town to be girdled by a city wall because drawing a box around the Chinese character of his family name would change the character from *mu* (wood) to *kun* (surrounded, or hard pressed).

## Eating

There are many, many eateries around the old town, and almost every menu will have both Chinese and Western dishes.

*Baba* is the Lijiang local speciality – thick flatbreads of wheat, served plain or stuffed with meat, vegetables or sweets. There are always several ‘Naxi’ items on menus, including the famous ‘Naxi omelette’ and ‘Naxi sandwich’ (goat’s cheese, tomato and fried egg between two pieces of local *baba*). Try locally produced *qing mei jiu*, a plum-based wine with a 500-year history – it tastes like a decent semisweet sherry.

Sakura Good Food Square [Offline map](#) CHINESE YUNNAN \$  
(Yinghua Meishi Guangchang; Qiyi Jie; ☺ 10am-late) Snackers should not miss the open-air food market where vendors sell appetising bite-size treats, some of which are native to Lijiang. Try the *Naxi kao qiezi* (Naxi grilled eggplant) served in a boat-shaped crust, *tu dou bing* (Naxi potato pancake), and *Naxi kaola chang* (Naxi grilled, salty sausage) made with pork, fat and pepper. For dessert, try the delightful *Naxi nuomi tuan* (a sticky rice ball stuffed with either *hongdousha* (red bean), *shuca* (vegetable) or *rou* (meat)).

Ama Yi Naxi Snacks CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

(Amayi Naxi Yinshi Yuan; Wuyi Jie; dishes from ¥22; ☺ 11am-9.30pm) The name doesn’t do justice to the small but very authentic selection of Naxi cuisine on offer at this calm courtyard restaurant. There’s fantastic mushroom dishes, as well as *zhutong fan*, rice that comes packed in bamboo. It’s down an alley off Wuyi Jie, close to the Stone Bridge.

Lamu’s House of Tibet TIBETAN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Xizangwu Xicanting; 56 Xinyi Jie; dishes from ¥20; ☺ 7am-midnight; 📶📶) Friendly Lamu has been serving up smiles and hearty Tibetan and international fare for more than a decade. Climb the little wooden staircase to the second floor dining area, a great spot for people watching, and try the excellent Naxiburger, a pasta or steak. There's also a good selection of paperback books to thumb through.

Prague Coffee WESTERN, CHINESE YUNNAN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Bulage Kafei; 80 Mishi Xiang; dishes from ¥20; ☺ 9am-11pm; 📶📶) Quaint Western-style cafe with a cosy upstairs nook, jazz music and a collection of English-language books and guidebooks for sale. The Western breakfasts, pastas and burgers are all good but they also do tasty Chinese, Japanese and even Naxi dishes (you can special order a Naxi goat cheese sandwich).

Tian He Canting CHINESE YUNNAN \$

[Offline map](#)

( 139 Wuyi Jie; dishes from ¥10; ☺ 7am-11pm) It's hard to find a neighbourhood-style restaurant in the old town, or one that doesn't also serve Western food, but this place hits the spot with a mix of Naxi dishes and Chinese staples like dumplings, hotpots and *gong bao ji ding*.

N's Kitchen WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Erlou Xiaochu; 17 Jishan Xiang, Xinyi Jie; dishes from ¥22; ☺ 9am-9pm; 📶📶📶) Clamber up the steep stairs for one of the best breakfasts in town, a monster burger and a cheery welcome, although prices are slightly higher than most Western restaurants. It's a good source of travel info too and can arrange bus tickets.

## Drinking

Xinhua Jie, just off Old Market Square, is packed out with Chinese-style drinking dens.

Freshnam BAR, CAFE

[Offline map](#)

(119 Wuyi Jie; ☺ 11am-late) Amenable to Western tastes is expat

hang-out, Freshnam, a Korean-run bar-cafe that has nightly live music.

Stone the Crows BAR

[Offline map](#)

(134-2 Wenzhi Xiang; 🕒 7pm-late) Worth checking is the Irish-owned Stone the Crows, an endearingly ramshackle bar with cheap beers and good company. If you are walking east on Wuyi Jie it's one alley before Freshnam.

## NAXI SCRIPT

The Naxi created a written language more than 1000 years ago using an extraordinary system of pictographs – the only hieroglyphic language still in use. The most famous Naxi text is the Dongba classic *Creation*, and ancient copies of it and other texts can still be found in Lijiang, as well as in the archives of some US universities. The Dongba were Naxi shamans who were caretakers of the written language and mediators between the Naxi and the spirit world. The Dongba religion, itself an offshoot of Tibet's pre-Buddhist Bon religion, eventually developed into an amalgam of Tibetan Buddhism, Islam and Taoism.

Useful phrases in the Naxi language are *nuar lala* (hello) and *jiu bai sai* (thank you).

## ★ Entertainment

Naxi Orchestra MUSIC

[Offline map](#)

(Naxi Guyue Hui; Naxi Music Academy; tickets ¥120-160; 🕒 performances 8pm) One of the few things you can do in the evening in Lijiang is attend performances of this orchestra inside a beautiful building in the old town. Not only are all two dozen or so members Naxi, but they play a type of Taoist temple music (known as *dongjing*) that has been lost elsewhere in China. The pieces they perform are said to be faithful renditions of music from the Han, Song and Tang dynasties, and are played on original instruments. Local historian of note Xuan Ke often speaks for the group at performances.

## 📍 Information

Crowded, narrow streets are a pickpocket's heaven. Solo women

travellers have been mugged when walking alone at night in isolated areas of historic Lijiang. Xiang Shan (Elephant Hill) in Black Dragon Pool Park (Heilongtan Gongyuan) has been the site of quite a few robberies.

Lijiang's cafes and backpacker inns are your best source of information on the area. There are no internet cafes in the old town, but all hostels and hotels have internet access and/or wi-fi, as do virtually all the cafes in town.

There are also dozens of tour operators in the old town, but these cater to tour groups and they often tack on high service fees for booking tickets. Your best bet is to book trips through a guesthouse such as Garden Inn. You could also get in touch with Lijiang-based guide **Keith Lyons** (☎ 137 6900 1439; keithalyons@gmail.com), who runs tours in the area.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Yuyuan Lu; ☎ 9am-5pm) This branch has an ATM and is convenient for the old town. There are other banks around town with ATMs too.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Minzhu Lu; ☎ 8am-8pm) Offers EMS (Express Mail Service). Another post office is in the old town just north of Old Market Sq.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 518 8437; 110 Taihe Jie, Xianghelicheng District; ☎ 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri) Reputedly very speedy with visa extensions. Located on the west side of the Government Building. A taxi here will cost ¥15 from the city centre.

## THE NAXI

Lijiang has been the base of the 286,000-strong Naxi (; also spelt Nakhi and Nahi) minority for about the last 1400 years. The Naxi descend from ethnically Tibetan Qiang tribes and lived until recently in matrilineal families. Since local rulers were always male it wasn't truly matriarchal, but women still seemed to run the show.

The Naxi matriarchs maintained their hold over the men with flexible arrangements for love affairs. The *azhu* (friend) system allowed a couple to become lovers without setting up joint residence. Both partners would continue to live in their respective homes; the boyfriend would spend the nights at his girlfriend's house but return to live and work at his mother's house during the day. Any children born to the couple belonged to the woman,

who was responsible for bringing them up. The man provided support, but once the relationship was over, so was the support. Children lived with their mothers and no special effort was made to recognise paternity. Women inherited all property and disputes were adjudicated by female elders.

There are strong matriarchal influences in the Naxi language. Nouns enlarge their meaning when the word for 'female' is added; conversely, the addition of the word for 'male' will decrease the meaning. For example, 'stone' plus 'female' conveys the idea of a boulder; 'stone' plus 'male' conveys the idea of a pebble.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Lijiang's airport is 28km east of town. Tickets can be booked at **CAAC** ( Zhongguo Minhang; cnr Fuhui Lu & Shangrila Dadao; ☎ 8.30am-9pm). Most hotels in the Old Town also offer an air-ticket booking service.

From Lijiang there are oodles of daily flights to Kunming (¥940), as well as daily flights to:

**Beijing** ¥2410

**Chengdu** ¥880

**Chongqing** ¥1000

**Guangzhou** ¥1790

**Shanghai** ¥2430

**Shenzhen** ¥1630

**Xishuangbanna** ¥1060

### Bus

The **main long-distance bus station** (; keyunzhan) is south of the old town; to get there, take bus 8 or 11 (¥1; the latter is faster) from along Minzhu Lu.

**Chengdu** ¥317, 24 hours, one daily (1pm)

**Jianchuan** ¥22, two to three hours, seven daily (8.20am to 5.15pm)

**Kunming** ¥170–190 (standard service), 10 hours, hourly (8am to 2.30pm); plus two night buses, ¥185, (both departing at 8.30pm).

There are also several 'super-express' buses, with wide seats and lunch included for ¥230.

**Lugu Hu** ¥77, seven hours, two daily (8.30am and 9am)

**Ninglang** ¥30, five hours, 14 daily (8am to 3.30pm)

**Panzhihua** ¥100, eight hours, eight daily (7.10am to 4pm), change here for Chengd u.

**Qiaotou** ¥30, two hours, one daily (7.50am); Lijiang to Shangri-la buses also stop here.

**Shangri-la** ¥63–69, five hours, hourly (7.30am to 5pm)

**Xiaguan** ¥53–79, three hours, every 30 minutes (7.10am to 6.30pm)

**Xishuangbanna** ¥276–333, 18 hours, one daily (7.30am)

In the north of town, the **express bus station** ( gao kuai keyunzhan; Shangrila Dadao) is where many of the above buses originate, but it's usually more convenient to catch your bus from the long-distance bus station.

#### Train

There are two trains daily to Dali at 8.30am and 3.40am (¥35, two hours) and three trains to Kunming (hard sleeper ¥142 to ¥152, soft sleeper ¥223 to ¥227, nine hours) at 8.30am, 8.50pm and 9.50pm. More trains are added in the high season.

### Getting Around

Buses to the airport (¥20) leave from outside the CAAC office 100 minutes before flight departures.

Taxis start at ¥7 in the new town and are not allowed into the old town. Bike hire is available at most hostels (¥30 per day).

## Around Lijiang

It is possible to see most of Lijiang's environs on your own, but a few agencies offer half- or full-day tours, starting from ¥200, plus fees.

There are a number of monasteries around Lijiang, all Tibetan in origin and belonging to the Karmapa (Red Hat) sect. Most were extensively damaged during the Cultural Revolution and there's not much monastic activity nowadays.

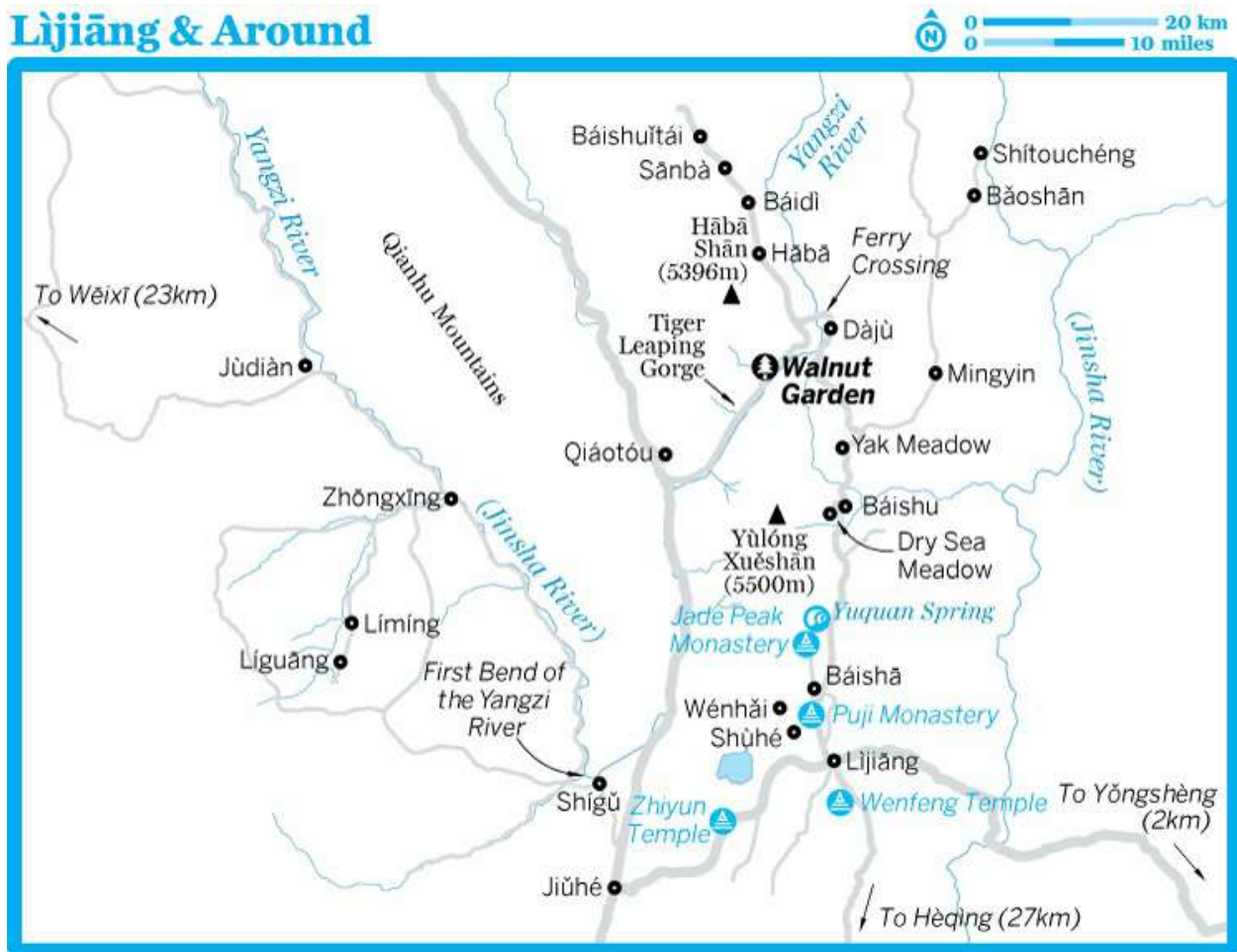
Jade Peak Monastery (; Yufeng Si; admission ¥30) is on a hillside about 5km past Baisha. The last 3km of the track requires a steep climb. The monastery sits at the foot of Yulong Xueshan (5500m) and was established in 1756. The monastery's main attraction nowadays

is the Camellia Tree of 10,000 Blossoms (Wanduo Shancha). Ten thousand might be something of an exaggeration, but locals claim that the tree produces at least 4000 blossoms between February and April. A monk on the grounds risked his life to keep the tree secretly watered during the Cultural Revolution.

Lijiang is also famed for its temple frescoes, most of which were painted during the 15th and 16th centuries by Tibetan, Naxi, Bai and Han artists; many were restored during the later Qing dynasty. They depict various Taoist, Chinese and Tibetan Buddhist themes and can be found on the interior walls of temples in the area. The Cultural Revolution did lots of ravaging here, keep in mind.

Frescoes can be found in Baisha and on the interior walls of Dajue Palace (Dajue Gong) in the village of Longquan.

### Lìjiāng & Around



### Lijiang & Around

📍 Top Sights

## [Walnut Garden](#)

### Baisha

Baisha is a small village on the plain north of Lijiang, near several old temples, and is one of the best day trips out of Lijiang, especially if you have a bike. Before Kublai Khan made it part of his Yuan empire (1271–1368), Baisha was the capital of the Naxi kingdom.

The ‘star’ attraction of Baisha is Dr Ho Shi Xiu, a legendary herbalist who was propelled to fame by the travel writer Bruce Chatwin when he mythologised him in a 1986 *New Yorker* story as the ‘Taoist physician in the Jade Dragon Mountains of Lijiang’.

A sprightly 89 at the time of writing and still treating the ill every day with herbs collected from the nearby mountains, Dr Ho is very chatty (he speaks English, German and Japanese) and is happy to regale visitors with the secrets of good health and longevity.

On the same street as Dr Ho you’ll find a number of small cafes and restaurants including Country Road Cafe (Xiang Cun Lu; dishes from ¥12; ☺ 7.30am-7.30pm; 📶), a rustic cafe that makes Western, Chinese and Naxi dishes. The English-speaking owner Rosey can offer travel information.

The only place to stay in the village is White Sand Inn ( Baisha tianjing sha; 📞 531 8950; 31 San Yuan Cun Yi She; 31 dm ¥35, r ¥140-180; 📶) a well- maintained little guesthouse with an English-speaking owner.

There are a couple of frescoes worth seeing in town and the surrounding area. The best can be found in Baisha’s Dabaoji Palace ( Dabaoji Gong; admission ¥15; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm), and at the neighbouring Liuli Temple (; Liuli Dian) and Dading Ge ().

Baisha is a one-hour bike ride from Lijiang. Otherwise, take the No. 6 bus (¥1) from Minzhu Lu, near the pedestrian bridge. It returns to Lijiang regularly.

**JOSEPH ROCK**



Yunnan has always been a hunting ground for famous, foreign plant-hunters such as Kingdon Ward and Joseph Rock (1884–1962). Rock lived in Lijiang between 1922 and 1949, becoming the world's leading expert on Naxi culture and local botany.

Born in Austria, the withdrawn autodidact taught himself eight languages, including Sanskrit. After becoming the world's foremost authority on Hawaiian flora, the US Department of Agriculture, Harvard University and later *National Geographic* (he was their famed 'man in China') sponsored Rock's trips to collect flora for medicinal research. He devoted much of his life to studying Naxi culture, which he feared was being extinguished by the dominant Han culture.

Rock sent more than 80,000 plant specimens from China – two were named after him – along with 1600 birds and 60 mammals. His caravans stretched for half a mile, and included dozens of servants, including a cook trained in Austrian cuisine, a portable darkroom, trains of pack horses, and hundreds of mercenaries for protection against bandits, not to mention the gold dinner service and collapsible bathtub.

Rock lived in Yuhu village (called Ngulukuo when he was there), outside Lijiang. Many of his possessions are now local family heirlooms.

The *Ancient Naxi Kingdom of Southwest China* (1947) is Joseph Rock's definitive work. Immediately prior to his death, his Naxi dictionary was finally prepared for publishing.

---

## Shuhe Old Town

More rustic and tranquil than Lijiang, Shuhe Old Town (Shuhe Gucheng) is attracting increasing numbers of travellers looking to escape the crowds. A former staging post on the Tea-Horse Road that's just 4km from Lijiang, Shuhe can be done as a day trip, or makes a tempting alternative base for exploring the region.

Although there's little in the way of sights, the cobblestoned alleys and streets south of its main square are very picturesque and much more peaceful at night than Lijiang. Head for the original section of town, which is sandwiched between the Jiuding and Qinglong Rivers and nestles beneath the foothills of Yulong Xueshan. The first part of town, identified by a large Chinese-style gate, is actually completely new (though it looks old), built for the purposes of tourism in the early 2000s (this section of town is actually owned by a private company).

The **K2 Hostel** (*K2 K2 Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; ☎ 513 0110; [www.k2yha.com](http://www.k2yha.com); 1 Guailiu Xiang, Kangpu Lu; 1 dm ¥25-30, s & d ¥108-138; @) has become the go-to place in town. The dorms are a bit cramped but there is a big communal area and a friendly English-speaking staff. To get there, don't enter the town's main gate, but take the road to the right, which leads on to Kangpu Lu after five minutes. There are many other guesthouses, cafes and restaurants on and off Renlin Jie, the heart of the 'old town', and around the main square. For meals, try **Nomad Cafe** (*Zhuo erba*; ☎ 513 6627; [nomad.lijiang@gmail.com](mailto:nomad.lijiang@gmail.com); 35 Long Quan Lu; 35 dishes from ¥20; 📶) an excellent vegetarian restaurant run by a Dutch cyclist. The cafe also has some reasonably plush rooms (¥85).

Getting to Shuhe is easy from Lijiang, with regular minibuses (¥2) running from the corner of Fuhui Lu and Shangri-la Dadao.

---

## Yulong Xueshan

Also known as Mt Satseto, **Yulong Xueshan** (*Jade Dragon Snow Mountain*; adult ¥105, protection fee ¥80) soars to some 5500m. Its

peak was first climbed in 1963 by a research team from Beijing and now, at some 35km from Lijiang, it is regularly mobbed by hordes of Chinese tour groups and travellers.

Buses from Lijiang arrive at a parking area where you can purchase tickets for the various cable cars and chairlifts that ascend the mountain. This is also where the **Impression Lijiang** (*admission ¥190-260; 🕒 daily 1pm*) show is held, a mega song-and-dance performance. Note that if you are going to the performance you will also have to pay the park admission fees. Close to the parking area is **Dry Sea Meadow** (; Ganhaizi), a good spot for photographing the mountain.

A cable car (¥172) ascends the mountain to an elevation of 4506m, from here you can walk up another 200m to a viewing point to see the glacier near the peak. It can often get chilly near the top so bring warm clothes. You will also have to pay ¥20 for the bus ticket to the base of the cable car.

Back down at the parking lot you can switch to a bus that goes to **Blue Moon Lake** (; Lanyue Gu) and **White Water River** (; Bai Shui He), where a walking trail leads along the river up to the lake (the round-trip walk takes about 90 minutes). The cable car bus ticket is also good for the bus to the lake.

A 10-minute drive past Blue Moon Lake is **Yak Meadow** (; Maoniuping), where a chairlift (¥60, plus ¥20 bus ticket) pulls visitors up to an altitude of 3500m.

In summer, when crowds for the cable car are long (up to two hours wait), most travellers just do the trip to the lake and Yak Meadow.

Minibuses (¥20) leave from near the intersection of Minzhu Lu and Fuhui Lu in Lijiang. Returning to Lijiang, buses leave fairly regularly but check with your driver to find out what time the last bus will depart.

---

## Tiger Leaping Gorge

📍 0887

Gingerly stepping along a trail swept with scree to allow an old fellow with a donkey to pass; resting atop a rock, exhausted, looking up to

see the fading sunlight dance between snow-shrouded peaks, then down to see the lingering rays dancing on the rippling waters a thousand metres away; feeling utterly exhilarated. That pretty much sums up **Tiger Leaping Gorge** (*Hutiao Xia*; admission ¥65), the unmissable trek of southwest China.

One of the deepest gorges in the world, it measures 16km long and is a giddy 3900m from the waters of the Jinsha River (Jinsha Jiang) to the snowcapped mountains of Haba Shan (Haba Mountain) to the west and Yulong Xueshan to the east, and, despite the odd danger, it's gorgeous almost every single step of the way.

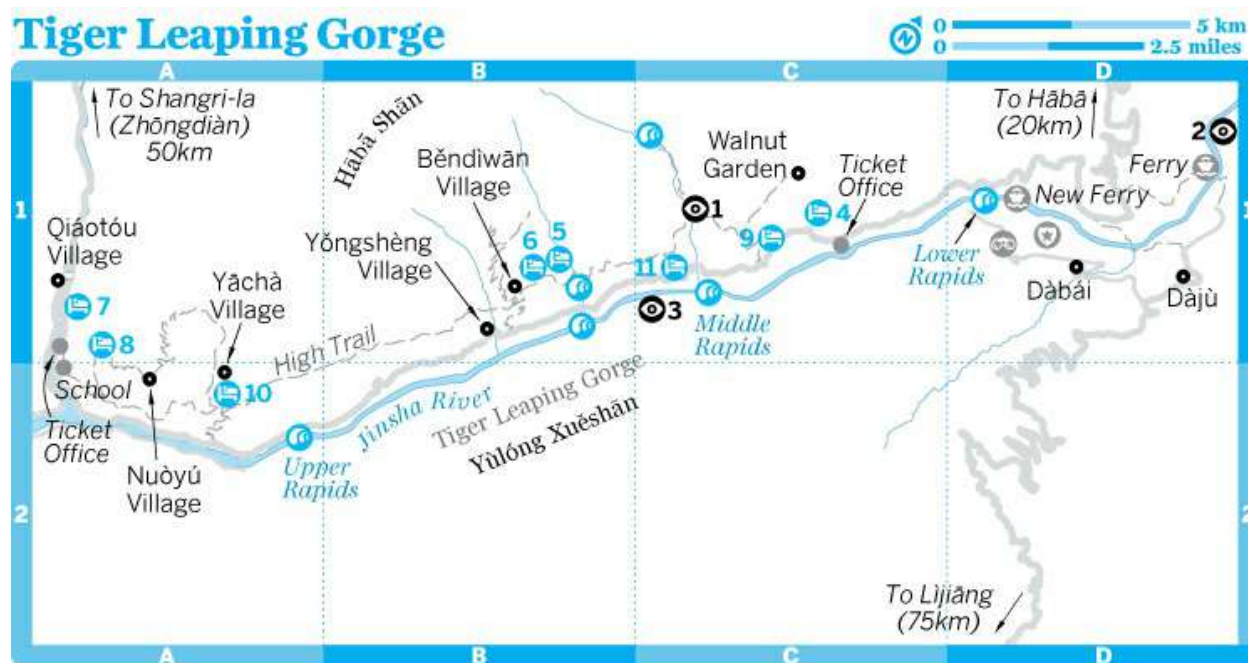
The gorge hike is not to be taken lightly. Even for those in good physical shape, it's a workout. The path constricts and crumbles; it certainly can wreck the knees. When it's raining (especially in July and August), landslides and swollen waterfalls can block the paths, in particular on the low road. (The best time to come is May and the start of June, when the hills are afire with plant and flower life.)

A few people – including a handful of foreign travellers – have died in the gorge. During the past decade, there have also been cases of travellers being assaulted on the trail. As always, it's safer in all ways not to do the hike alone.

Check with cafes and lodgings in Lijiang or Qiaotou for trail and weather updates. Most have fairly detailed gorge maps; just remember they're not to scale and are occasionally out of date.

Make sure you bring plenty of water on this hike – 2L to 3L is ideal – as well as plenty of sunscreen and lip balm.

## Tiger Leaping Gorge



## Tiger Leaping George

### Sights

- 1 Bamboo Forest C1
- 2 Pagoda D1
- 3 [Tiger Leaping Stone](#) C1

### Sleeping

- 4 [Chateau de Woody](#) C1
- 5 [Five Fingers Mountain Guesthouse](#) B1
- 6 [Halfway Guesthouse](#) B1
- 7 [Jane's Guesthouse](#) A1
- 8 [Naxi Family Guesthouse](#) A1
- 9 [Sean's Spring Guesthouse](#) C1
- 10 [Tea Horse Guesthouse](#) A2
- 11 [Tina's Guesthouse](#) C1

## Activities

There are two trails: the higher (the older route) and the lower, which follows the new road and is best avoided, unless you enjoy being enveloped in clouds of dust from passing tour buses and 4WDs. While the scenery is stunning wherever you are in the gorge, it's absolutely sublime from the high trail. Make sure you don't get too distracted by all that beauty, though, and so miss the arrows that help you avoid getting lost on the trail.

It's six hours to Bendiwan, eight hours to Middle Gorge (Tina's Guesthouse), or nine hours to Walnut Garden. It's much more fun, and a lot less exhausting, to do the trek over two days. By stopping overnight at one of the many guesthouses along the way, you'll have the time to appreciate the magnificent vistas on offer at almost every turn of the trail.

Ponies can be hired (their owners will find you) to take you to the gorge's highest point for between ¥100 and ¥150; it's not uncommon to see three generations of a family together, with the oldies on horseback and the young ones panting on foot behind them.

The following route starts at **Jane's Guesthouse**. Walk away from **Qiaotou** (), past the school, for five minutes or so, then head up the paved road branching to the left; there's an arrow to guide you. After about 2.5km on the road the gorge trail proper starts and the serious climbing begins. Note that locals may try and hit you up for an additional 'fee' at this point, which they will claim is reward for them keeping the trail litter-free.

The toughest section of the trek comes after **Nuoyu** () village, when the trail winds through the 28 agonising bends, or turns, that lead to the highest point of the gorge. Count on five hours at normal pace to get through here and to reach **Yacha** () village. It's a relatively straightforward walk on to **Bendiwan** (). About 1½ hours on from there, you begin the descent to the road on slippery, poor paths. Watch your step here; if you twist an ankle, it's a long hop down.

After the path meets the road at **Tina's Guesthouse**, there's a good detour that leads down 40 minutes to the middle rapids and **Tiger Leaping Stone** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), where a tiger is once said to

have leapt across the Yangzi, thus giving the gorge its name. Locals charge ¥10 to go down the path. At the bottom of this insanely steep trail locals charge another ¥10 for one viewpoint but another spot is free. From one of the lower rest points another trail (¥10) heads downstream for a one-hour walk to [Walnut Garden](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ().

Most hikers stop at Tina's, have lunch, and head back to Qiaotou. Those continuing to Walnut Garden can take the trail along the river or use an alternative trail that keeps high where the path descends to Tina's, crosses a stream and a 'bamboo forest' before descending into Walnut Garden. If you are deciding where to spend the night, Walnut Garden is more attractive than Tina's.

It's possible to continue to the village of [Daju](#) (), about two hours' walk, from where there are buses back to Lijiang. The walk includes crossing the river on a ferry (¥20). However, one must now pay an additional ¥105 to take the road from Daju to Lijiang, because the road passes through Yulong Xueshan (Jade Dragon Snow Mountain), so few bother to go this route nowadays.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **QIAOTOU**

#### **Jane's Guesthouse** *GUESTHOUSE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Xiagu Xing Kezhan*; 📍 880 6570; dm ¥25, s & d ¥60-100; @📶) This two-storey place with tidy, clean rooms is where many people start their trek. The breakfasts here make for good walking fuel and it has left-luggage facilities (¥5 a bag).

### **IN THE GORGE**

The following list of accommodation options along the way (listed in the order that you'll come to them) is not exhaustive. In the unlikely event that everywhere is full, basic rooms will be available with a local. We've never heard of anyone who had to sleep rough in the gorge.

All the guesthouses double as restaurants and shops, where you can pick up bottled water and snacks along the way.

### **Naxi Family Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Naxi Kezhan*; 📞 880 6928; *dm* ¥30, *s* & *d* ¥70-120) Taking your time to spend a night here instead of double-timing it to Walnut Garden isn't a bad idea. It's an incredibly friendly, well-run place (organic vegies and wines), set around a pleasant courtyard.

### **Tea Horse Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Chama Kezhan*; 📞 139 8871 7292; *dm* ¥30, *s* & *d* ¥120-200) Just after Yacha village, this bigger place has a great 'Naxi mama' running things, and even has a small spa and massage parlour where aching limbs can be eased.

### **Halfway Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Zhongtu Kezhan, Bendiwan*; 📞 139 8870 0522; *dm* ¥30, *s* & *d* ¥200) Once a simple home to a guy collecting medicinal herbs and his family, this is now a busy-busy operation. The vistas here are awe-inspiring and perhaps the best of any lodging in the gorge; the view from the communal toilets is worth the price of a bed alone.

### **Five Fingers Mountain Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Wuzhi Kezhan*; 📞 139 8877 6286; *dm* ¥30, *r* with share bathroom ¥60) An endearingly rustic place, where chickens run around and you're part of the family during your stay. The 200m climb up from the road to get here is a killer after five hours of walking, though.

### **Tina's Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)



( *Zhongxia Ludian*; 📍 820 2258; [tina999@live.cn](mailto:tina999@live.cn); dm ¥30, r ¥120-280) It's a bit concrete-blocky and lacks the charm and friendliness of other places on the mountain, but there are lots of beds and the location is perfect for those too knackered to make it to Walnut Garden. Pricier rooms have excellent views. Tina organises daily transport to Lijiang and Shangri-la.

### Sean's Spring Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanquan Kezhan*; 📍 820 2223, 158 9436 7846; [www.tigerleapinggorge.com](http://www.tigerleapinggorge.com); dm ¥30, r ¥60-360) One of the original guesthouses on the trail, and still the spot for lively evenings and socialising. It's run by the eponymous Sean, a true character. There's a variety of rooms, some recently refurbished, and the best have great views of Yulong Xueshan.

### Chateau de Woody GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Shanbailian Luguan*; 📍 139 8871 2705; dm ¥20, s & d ¥60-80) This old-school gorge guesthouse has rooms with good views and modern bathrooms that make for a good deal. Across the road, the less-attractive modern extension has rooms for the same price.

## **i** Getting There & Away

From the Lijiang long-distance bus station, buses run to Shangri-la every 40 minutes (7.30am to 5pm; 2¼ hours) and pass through Qiaotou (¥30). In peak seasons you may have to pay all the way to Shangri-la (¥70).

Most travellers get a minivan (¥35) to the start of the walking track, organised through their guesthouse in Lijiang. The minivan can deliver extra luggage to the guesthouse of your choice (usually Tina's or Jane's).

Returning to Lijiang from Qiaotou, buses start passing through from Shangri-la at around 10am. The last one rolls through at around

5.30pm. The last bus to Shangri-la passes through at around 7pm. Tina's Guesthouse also organises one or two buses a day to both Lijiang and Shangri-la.

At the time of writing, there were no buses to Baishuitai from Lijiang. There are two buses a day from Shangri-la to Baishuitai (¥24, three hours, 9.10am & 2pm).

---

## Tiger Leaping Gorge to Baishuitai

An adventurous add-on to the gorge trek is to continue north all the way to Haba ( ) village and the limestone terraces of **Baishuitai** ( *admission* ¥30; [Click here](#)). This turns it into a four-day trek from Qiaotou and from here you can travel on to Shangri-la. From Walnut Garden to **Haba**, via Jiangbian ( ), is a seven to eight hour walk. From here to the Yi village of **Sanba** ( ), close to Baishuitai, is about the same, following trails. You could just follow the road and hitch with the occasional truck or tractor, but it's longer and less scenic. The best way would be to hire a guide in Walnut Garden for ¥150–300 per day (English-speaking guides charge more). For ¥250 per day you should be able to get a horse and guide. The turn-off to Haba starts 6km down the road from Walnut Grove, up the hill where you see 'Welcome to Tibet Guesthouse' painted on the retaining wall.

In Haba most people stay at the **Haba Snow Mountain Inn** ( *Haba Xueshan Kezhan*; ☎ 0887 886 6596; *dm* ¥30, *d* ¥100; @ ), which has older dorms and new double rooms. The enthusiastic host can organise guides to lead you up **Haba Mountain** ( , Haba Shan), a two-day trek, or to **Black Lake** ( , Hei Hai), a nine-hour round trip hike.

If you are travelling by vehicle, from Tina's to Sanba (¥45, three hours) there is a daily 1pm bus but you have to book in advance. From Sanba to Shangri-la there is also a daily bus (¥50, three hours) at 1pm. Minivans frequently ply these routes so flagging down a ride isn't too tough.

If you plan to hike the route alone, assume you'll need all provisions and equipment for extremes of weather. Ask for local advice before setting out.

---

# Lugu Hu

 0888

Straddling the remote Yunnan–Sichuan border, this **lake** (*admission ¥100*) remains a laid-back, idyllic place that makes for a great getaway, even with a rise in domestic tourism. The ascent to the lake, which sits at 2690m, is via a spectacular switchback road and the first sight of the 50 sq km body of water, surrounded by lushly forested slopes, will take your breath away.

Villages are scattered around the outskirts of the lake, with **Luoshui** () the biggest and most developed, and the one where the bus will drop you. As well as guesthouses, and a few cafes with English menus and Western food, there are the inevitable souvenir shops. Nevertheless, it's hardly a boomtown, with the dominant night-time sound being the lapping of the lake.

Most travellers move quickly to **Lige** (), 9km further up the road, tucked into a bay on the northwestern shore of the lake. Although guesthouses make up most of the place, along with restaurants serving succulent, but pricey, barbecue, the sights and nights here are lovely. If you want a less touristy experience, then you need to keep village-hopping around the lake to the Sichuan side. At the moment, top votes for alternative locations are **Luowa** () and **Wuzhiluo** () .

The area is home to several Tibetan, Yi and Mosu (a Naxi subgroup) villages. The Mosu are the last practising matriarchal society in the world and many other Naxi customs lost in Lijiang are still in evidence here.

The best times to visit the lake are April to May, and September to October, when the weather is dry and mild. It's usually snowbound during the winter months.

## Sights & Activities

From Luoshui and Lige you can punt about with local Mosu by dugout canoe – known by the Mosu as ‘pig troughs’ (*zhucao*). Expect to head for **Liwubi Dao** (), the largest island (and throw a stone into Sichuan). The second-largest island is **Heiwae Dao** (). Boat-trip prices vary

wildly. If you're in a group of six to eight people, it's around ¥30 per person.

### **FREE** Mosu Folk Custom Museum *MUSEUM*

(*Mosu Minzu Bowuguan; Luoshui; ☎ 9am-8pm*) This museum in Luoshui is set within the traditional home of a wealthy Mosu family, and the obligatory guide will show you around and explain how the matriarchal society functions. There is also an interesting collection of photos taken by Joseph Rock in the 1920s.

### **Zhamei Temple** *MONASTERY*

(*Zhamei Si*) On the outskirts of Yongning, this is a Tibetan monastery with at least 20 lamas in residence. Admission is free, but a donation is expected. A private minivan costs ¥10 per person for the half-hour ride, or you could opt to walk the 20km or so through pleasant scenery.

## **🛏 Sleeping & Eating**

Hotels and guesthouses line the lakeside in Luoshui and Lige, with doubles from around ¥50. Most have attached restaurants that serve traditional Mosu foods, including preserved pig's fat and salted sour fish – the latter being somewhat tastier than the former. Of the two places, Lige is really the place to go for fantastic barbecue.

### **Yase Daba Luxingzhe Zhijia** *HOTEL* \$\$

(📞 588 1196; *Lige; d with shared bathroom ¥100, d with private bathroom ¥240-280; @📶*) All the rooms at this Lige retreat come with decent views, but the ones on the 2nd floor are tremendous. In the restaurant, try Lugu Hu fish (; *lugu hu yu*) or sausage (; *xiangchang*).

### **Husi Teahouse** *HOSTEL* \$

(*Husi Chawu; 📞 139 8886 1858; [www.husihostel.com](http://www.husihostel.com); Luoshui; dm ¥30, r ¥88-248; @📶*) The granddaddy of all Lugu Hu backpacker joints, this place in Luoshui is a multistorey complex of dorms and

private rooms, some with excellent lake views. There is a big lounge with computers, books and wi-fi and a restaurant serving Chinese food and mediocre Western meals. The English-speaking staff are helpful.

### **Lao Shay Youth Hostel** *HOSTEL* \$

(*Laoxie Chemadian*; 📍 588 1555; [www.laoshay.com](http://www.laoshay.com); Lige; dm ¥30, s, d & tr ¥50-198; @) This YHA has a friendly English-speaking staff and a prime location smack in the middle of Lige. The best rooms have lake views and you can rent a bike for ¥30 a day.

### **Zhaxi Canting** *BARBECUE* \$\$

(📍 588 1055; Lige; meals from ¥20) Owned by a burly Mosu chap named Zhaxi, this lively restaurant and barbecue joint is a great place to experience local cuisine. A Singapore-run teashop upstairs has good lake views and Hong, the English-speaking owner, is a fount of information.

## **i Getting There & Away**

Lijiang's express bus station has two direct buses a day to the lake (¥77, seven hours, 8.30am and 9am) but buy your ticket at least one day in advance as it's often sold out.

Alternatively, you can go to Ninglang (; ¥30, five hours, 13 buses daily, 8am to 3.30pm), from where there's a daily bus to the lake (¥40, three to four hours, 12.30pm), as well as numerous minivans that wait outside the bus station.

For Lige you'll have to change for a minibus in Luoshui (¥15). Hitching may be quicker or you could hire a bike.

Leaving Luoshui, the direct buses to Lijiang leave daily at 10am, noon and 3.30pm. Again, tickets should be bought at least a day in advance. Note that the 3.30pm bus comes from Sichuan so the departure time is not exact. There are also two buses to Ninglang at 10am and noon. From Ninglang, there are plenty of buses to Lijiang.

For Sichuan, there's a daily bus to Xichang (; ¥120, nine hours, 10.30am).

## SHANGRI-LA – FACT & FICTION

At first it seemed like a typically overstated tourist campaign: 'Shangri-la Found'. Only they weren't kidding. In November 1997 'experts' had established with 'certainty' that the fabled 'Shangri-la' of James Hilton's 1933 bestseller *Lost Horizon* was, indeed, in Deqin County.

Hilton's novel (later filmed by Frank Capra and starring Ronald Coleman and Jane Wyatt) tells the story of four travellers who are hijacked and crash-land in a mountain utopia ruled by a 163-year-old holy man. This 'Shangri-la' is in the Valley of the Blue Moon, a beautiful fertile valley backed by a perfect pyramid peak, Mt Karakul.

The claim is based primarily on the fact that Deqin's Kawa Karpo peak resembles the 'pyramid-shaped' landmark of Mt Karakul. Also, the county's blood-red valleys with three parallel rivers fit a valley from *Lost Horizon*.

One plausible theory is that Hilton, writing the novel in northwest London, based his descriptions of Shangri-la on articles by Joseph Rock that he had read in *National Geographic* magazine, detailing Rock's expeditions to remote parts of Lijiang and Deqin. Hilton's invented place name 'Shangri-la' may have been a corruption of the word *Shambhala*, a mystical Buddhist paradise.

After Deqin staked its claim to the name Shangri-la rival bids popped up around Yunnan. Cizhong in Wexi County pointed out that its Catholic churches and Tibetan monasteries live side by side in the valley. Meanwhile, Daocheng, just over the border in Sichuan, had a strong bid based around the pyramid peak of its mountain Channa Dorje and the fact that Rock wrote about the region in several articles.

Cynics have had a field day with this and the resulting hijacking of the concept, part of which was to establish tourism as an industry to replace logging, which had been banned.

Shangri-la is at its heart surely a metaphor. As a skinny-dipping Jane Wyatt says in the film version of the book: 'I'm sure there's a wish for Shangri-la in everyone's heart...'

---

## Shangri-la (Zhongdian)

 0887 / POP 120,000

Shangri-la, previously known as Zhongdian (also with the Tibetan name Gyalthang), is where you begin to breathe in the Tibetan world. That's if you can breathe at all, given its altitude (3200m).

Home to one of Yunnan's most rewarding monasteries, Shangri-la is also the last stop in Yunnan before a rough five- or six-day journey to Chengdu via the Tibetan townships and rugged terrain of western Sichuan.

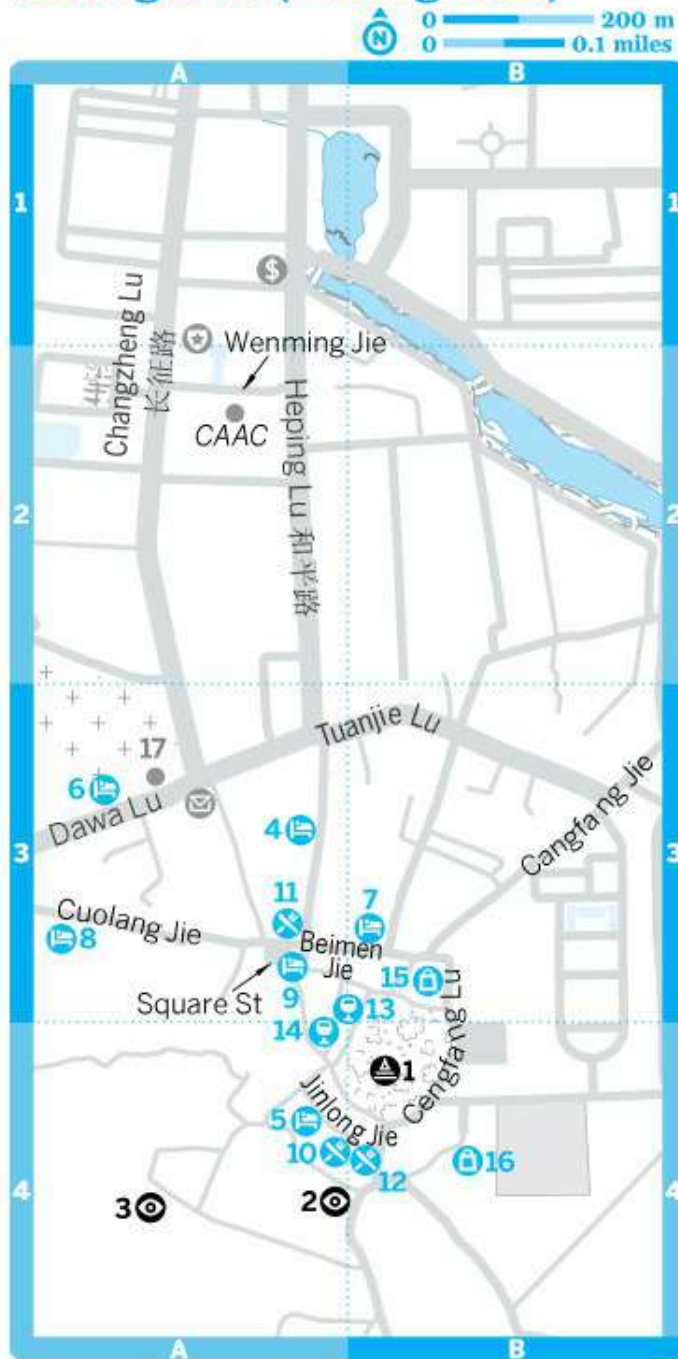
Arriving at the central bus station does not give the impression that

you have arrived in 'Shangri-la' as the modern part of town feels like a typically ugly, medium-sized Chinese city. It's only when you take a bus to the 'old town' that Shangri-la reveals its charms. Tourism is growing here but its still an easy place to kick back for a few days.

Plan your visit for between April and October. During winter the city practically shuts down and transportation is often halted completely by snowstorms.

In mid- to late June, the town hosts a horse-racing festival that sees several days of dancing, singing, eating and, of course, horse racing. Accommodation is tight at this time.

## Shangri-la (Zhōngdiàn)



Shangri-la (Zhongdian)



## Sights

- 1 [Guishan Si](#) B4
- 2 [Shangri-la Thangka Academy](#) A4
- 3 [Zhuangjin Tong](#) A4

## Sleeping

- 4 [Dragoncloud Guesthouse](#) A3
- 5 [Kersang Relay Station](#) A4
- 6 [Kevin's Trekker Inn](#) A3
- 7 [Olive Bistro & Inn](#) B3
- 8 [Tavern](#) A3
- 9 [The Compass](#) A3

## Eating

- 10 [Arro Khampa!](#) A4
- 11 [Somewhere Else](#) A3
- 12 [Tara Gallery Cafe & Bar](#) B4

## Drinking

- 13 [Namaste](#) B3
- 14 [Raven](#) A4

## Shopping

- 15 [Dropenling](#) B3
- 16 [Yunnan Mountain Handicraft Center](#) B4

## Information

- Haiwei Trails (see 14)
- 17 [Khampa Caravan](#) A3

## Sights

Shangri-la is a wonderful place for getting off the beaten track, with plenty of trekking and horse-riding opportunities, as well as little-visited monasteries and villages. However, the remote sights are difficult to do independently given the lack of public transport.

## Ganden Sumtseling Gompa MONASTERY

(*Songzanlin Si*; admission ¥115; ☹ 7am-7pm) About an hour's walk north of town is this 300-year-old Tibetan monastery complex with around 600 monks. Extensive rebuilding has robbed the monastery of some of its charm, but it remains the most important in southwest China and is definitely worth the visit. Bus 3 runs here from anywhere along Changzheng Lu (¥1). From the main gate where the tickets are sold you can catch a tourist bus to the monastery. If you don't mind hiking it's possible to visit for free by walking to the left side of the ticket office, up the hill parallel to the paved road and down to a lake with the monastery on the other side (a 30-minute walk).

## Old Town HISTORIC AREA

After checking out the monastery, everyone just wanders about the old town, specifically **Square Street** (Sifang Jie); from this branches a spider web of cobbled lanes and renovated buildings (some say tacky, others say cool). You'll also see white stupas everywhere. Lording over the old town is **Guishan Si** Offline map (; Guishan Temple), a reconstructed temple home to a few monks that conduct morning prayers. Next to the temple is **Zhuangjing Tong**, the world's biggest prayer wheel standing at 21m high and containing 100,000 small prayer wheels. At least six people are needed to give it a spin.

On the far side of Guishan Temple it's worth visiting the **Shangri-la Thangka Academy** Offline map (*Tangka Xuehui*; ☎ 888 1612; [www.thangkaacademy.com](http://www.thangkaacademy.com); 31 Jinlong Jie), where *thangka* master Lobsang Khudup trains young monks in painting and Buddhist philosophy. The academy also offers classes for tourists, costing around ¥180 per day; a real bargain considering the price includes room and board. You can also participate in a three-day village homestay for ¥240.

## Baiji Si BUDDHIST TEMPLE

For even better views, head to this delightfully named and little-visited temple (; 100 Chickens Temple). The temple has three monks inside and dozens of chickens wandering around outside. To get there, walk

along the narrow paths behind Kersang's Relay Station, past the deserted temple, continue uphill and you'll see it on the left.

## **Sleeping**

Despite Shangri-la's often glacial night temperatures, many guesthouses are neither heated nor have 24-hour hot water. Most dorms in town are fairly basic too.



### **Kersang's Relay Station** INN \$\$

(*Gesang Zang Yi*; 📍 822 3118; [www.kersangs.com](http://www.kersangs.com); 1 Yamenlang, Jinlong Jie; 1 dm ¥40; r without bathroom ¥100, r with bathroom ¥140-260; 📶) This friendly, Tibetan-run place, popular with Western travellers, has cosy rooms with modern bathrooms, Tibetan prayer flags fluttering in the courtyard and movie nights a couple times a week. The old wooden house keeps the rooms better insulated compared to other concrete hotels.

### **Dragoncloud Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

Offline map

(*Longxing Kezhan*; 📍 828 9250; [www.dragoncloud.cn](http://www.dragoncloud.cn); 94 Beimen Jie, Jiantang Zhen; 94 dm ¥40, d ¥100-160; @📶) Set around a courtyard, the dorms are spacious if rudimentary, while the standard rooms come with modern bathrooms. There are a few basic doubles that are cheaper. During bouts of chill, you'll love the fireplace in the common area, which also has a pool table.

### **Kevin's Trekker Inn** GUESTHOUSE \$

Offline map

(*Longmen Kezhan*; 📍 822 8178; [www.kevintrekkerinn.com](http://www.kevintrekkerinn.com); 138 Dawa Lu; 138 dm ¥30-50, r ¥120-150; @📶) Kevin, a Yunnanese Bai, and his wife are charming, and a good source of local knowledge. Their guesthouse has a cosy lounge but rooms are a little boxy and can get cold at night. It's located just off Dawa Lu behind the Long Xiang Inn.

## Olive Bistro & Inn INN \$

Offline map

( *Ganlanzhi kezhan*; 📍 888 1144; [www.theolive.asia](http://www.theolive.asia); 7 Chilang Shuo; 7 dm/d ¥40/120; @📶) This cosy, 12-room hotel is a touch warmer than others in the old town (rooms are inside, not around a courtyard) and they have wall heaters in the rooms. Rooms are clean and nicely decorated. It's in a small alley opposite the Olive Bistro.

## The Compass INN \$\$

Offline map

( *Shudeng kule*; 📍 822 3638; [www.thecompass.asia](http://www.thecompass.asia); 3 Chilang Gang; 3 s/d without bathroom ¥120/180, s/d with bathroom ¥320/380; 📶) This place has excellent two-storey suites with four-poster beds, a little kitchenette and lots of space to spread out. Unfortunately, the rooms with shared bathrooms are very loud at night (they are next to a nightclub), so avoid them. The cafe (Western and Asian dishes) has a warm fireplace and some of the best food in town.

## Tavern INN \$

Offline map

( *Renhe kezhan*; 📍 888 1147; [chris\\_tinhe@hotmail.com](mailto:chris_tinhe@hotmail.com); 47 Cuolang Jie; 47 dm ¥35, d without/with bathroom ¥80/150; @📶) Decorated with Mao and Che Guevara posters, lots of plastic plants and Buddha statues, this place has a creative and colourful atmosphere. Rooms are a bit small and ramshackle but showers are clean. It's a popular crashpad for budget backpackers.

## Eating & Drinking

There are dozens of places to eat offering Tibetan, Indian, Western and Chinese food.

## Tara Gallery Cafe & Bar TIBETAN \$\$

Offline map

(No 29 Old Town; dishes from ¥20-60; 🕒 10am-10pm; 📶📶) This

upmarket restaurant, bar and cafe (and art gallery) is a lovely, thoughtfully designed space, and includes a plant-filled 2nd-floor terrace. The menu is a tantalising mix of Tibetan, Indian and Yunnan dishes; the seven-course Tibetan set meal (¥80) is a feast. It's also a relaxing spot for a coffee or an evening drink. The owner Utara is very friendly.

## Somewhere Else WESTERN \$\$

Offline map

(*Taxiang Kafei Ting; Sifeng Jie; dishes from ¥16-34; ☺ 9am-6pm Mon-Sat; 📶📶📶*) A Canadian- and Dutch-run cafe serving filling Western breakfasts, smoothies and sandwiches. It's a nice open space with a fireplace for keeping warm and the location is just about perfect, with windows overlooking 'Dancing Square'. A good place to get some travel info and plan the direction of your plunge.

## Arro Khampa! TIBETAN \$\$

Offline map

(*Aruo Kangba; 27 Jinlong Jie; dishes from ¥35-58; ☺ 10am-10pm; 📶📶*) A French and Chinese couple own this cosy restaurant but the food is Tibetan. The yak is excellent, either baked or curried, and there are tasty momos. A special Tibetan hotpot costs ¥98.

## Raven BAR

Offline map

(*Wuya Jiuba; 19 Beimen Jie; ☺ 10.30am-late*) Owned by a Londoner, and with the comfy feel of a local boozier, this is the one place in Shangri-la where you'll find English beers (along with decent coffee and proper English tea). Lounge on the sofas downstairs, or hit the pool table on the 2nd floor.

## Namaste BAR

Offline map

(*Nanmasede; Yamenlang, Jinlong Jie; ☺ 7pm-late*) A fully local Tibetan nightclub, you'll turn a few heads upon entering. Come here to

see Tibetans getting there funk on, we even saw a Buddhist monk chilling out behind the bar. It can get a bit rough here, knife fights are not unheard of so don't let down your guard.

## Shopping

### **Dropenling** HANDICRAFTS

Offline map

( *Zhuo fang lin*; 📍 823 2292; [www.tibetcraft.com](http://www.tibetcraft.com); 18 Cengfang Lu; 18 )  
Excellent array of Tibetan handicrafts made with a Western taste, including bags, cushions, toys and ornaments.

### **Yunnan Mountain Handicraft Center** HANDICRAFTS

Offline map

( *Yunnan Shandi Shougong Yipin Zhongxin*; 📍 822 7742; [www.ymhshangrila.com](http://www.ymhshangrila.com); 1 Jinlong Jie; 1 ) Fairtrade handicraft shop that sells locally produced products including pottery, clothing, jewellery, carpets, Nixi black pottery and more.

## Information

Altitude sickness is a real problem here and most travellers need at least a couple of days to acclimatise. Brutal winter weather can bring the town to a complete standstill, so try to plan your visit for between March and October.

There are no internet cafes in the old town, but all hostels and hotels and most cafes have wi-fi or internet.

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; *Heping Lu* ) Has a 24-hour ATM and changes US dollars.

**Haiwei Trails** ([www.haiweitrails.com](http://www.haiweitrails.com); *Raven, Beimen Jie*) Foreign-run, it has a good philosophy towards local sustainable tourism, with over a decade of experience.

**Khampa Caravan** ( *Kangba Shangdao Tanxian Luxingshe*; 📍 828 8648; [www.khampacaravan.com](http://www.khampacaravan.com); 2nd flr, cnr Dawa Lu & Changzheng

Lu; ☺ 9am-noon & 2-5.30pm Mon-Fri, 9am-noon Sat) Tibetan-run, this well-established outfit organises some excellent short or longer adventures that get good feedback, and specialises in arranging travel into Tibet. The company also runs a lot of sustainable development programs within Tibetan communities. See [www.shangrilaassociation.org](http://www.shangrilaassociation.org) for more details.

## **i** Getting There & Away

Note that some air and bus tickets may refer to Shangri-la as Zhongdian.

### **Air**

There are up to four flights daily to Kunming (¥1150), a daily flight to Chengdu (¥1000), and a daily flight to Lhasa (¥2480) in peak season. Flights for other domestic destinations also leave from the airport but are completely irregular and destinations change from week to week. You can enquire about your destination or buy tickets at **CAAC** (*Zhongguo Minhang; Wenming Jie*). If booking on [www.elong.com](http://www.elong.com) you need to type in 'Diqing' for the city name.

### **Train**

A railway is being built from Lijiang to Shangri-la and is expected to be finished by 2014.

### **Bus**

Destinations from Shangri-la:

**Baishuitai** ¥24, three hours, two daily (9.10am and 2pm)

**Daocheng** ¥120, 11 hours, one daily (7.30am)

**Deqin** ¥53–65, six to seven hours, three daily (8.20am, 9.20am and noon)

**Dongwang** ¥50, seven to eight hours, one daily (7.30am)

**Kunming** ¥205–238, 12 hours, four daily (9am, 5pm, 7pm and 8pm)

**Lijiang** ¥63–69, five hours, hourly (8am to 6pm)

**Xiaguan** ¥79–90, seven hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 12.30pm,

then 7.30pm and 8pm)

**Xiangcheng** ¥85, eight hours, one daily (8am)

If you're up for the bus-hopping trek to Chengdu, in Sichuan, you're looking at a minimum of three to four days' travel at some very high altitudes – you'll need warm clothes. Note that for political reasons this road may be closed at any time of the year (if the ticket seller at the bus says 'come back tomorrow', it's closed indefinitely for sure).

If you can get on the road, the first stage of the trip is to Xiangcheng in Sichuan. From Xiangcheng, your next destination is Litang, though if roads are bad you may be forced to stay overnight in Daocheng. From Litang, it's on to Kangding, from where you can make your way west towards Chengdu.

Note that roads out of Shangri-la can be temporarily blocked by snow at any time from November to March. Bring a flexible itinerary.

## **i** Getting Around

### To/From the Airport

The airport is 5km from town and is sometimes referred to as Diqing or Deqen – there is currently no airport at Deqin. A taxi or minivan between the airport and Shangri-la will cost between ¥30 and ¥50. Otherwise, try to call your hotel to arrange a pick-up.

### To/From the Bus Station

From outside the bus station take local bus No 1 (¥1) to the old town (, gucheng). The bus station is 2km north of the old town, straight up Changzheng Lu.

---

## **Around Shangri-la**

The following is but a thumbnail sketch; many other sights – mountains, meadows, ponds, *chörtens* (Tibetan stupas) etc – await your exploration. Just note that virtually every- thing either has or will have a pricey admission fee (those pesky chairlifts, especially).

Some 7km northwest of town you'll find the seasonal **Napa Hai** (



*Napa Lake; unofficial admission ¥40*), surrounded by a large grassy meadow. Between September and March there's myriad rare species, including the black-necked crane. Outside of these months, the lake dries up and you can see large numbers of yaks and cattle grazing on the meadow. It makes a nice bike ride. Note that the unofficial admission fee is enforced by a small, rock wielding Tibetan villager, who is not afraid to pelt you with stones if you don't pay his bogus entry fee.

Approximately 15km southeast of Shangri-la is the **Tiansheng Bridge** (*Tiansheng Qiao; admission ¥20, hot springs ¥80; ☺ 9am-11pm*). Local Tibetans believe that the sulphur-rich water can cure any number of skin ailments and other health issues. There is a co-ed swimming pool and a natural sauna (inside a cave) that is divided into male and female sections. It's possible to cycle here in about two hours or you could take a taxi (¥100 round trip).

Another 10km past the hot spring is the **Great Treasure Temple** (*Dabao Si; admission ¥5*), one of the earliest Buddhist temples in Yunnan.

## **EMERALD PAGODA LAKE & SHUDU HAI**

Some 25km east of Shangri-la, the bus to Sanba can drop you along the highway for **Emerald Pagoda Lake** (*Bita Hai; admission ¥190*), which is also known as Pudacuo (), a Mandarinised-version of its Tibetan name. The lake is 8km down a trail (a half-hour by pony), and while the ticket price is laughably steep, there are other (free) trails to the lake. A bike is useful for finding them; taxis will drop you at the ticket office.

Pony trips can be arranged at the lake. An intriguing sight in summer is the comatose fish that float unconscious for several minutes in the lake after feasting on azalea petals.

The whopping entrance fee is also due to the inclusion of **Shudu Hu**, another lake approximately 10km to the north. The name means 'Place Where Milk is Found' in Tibetan because its pastures are reputedly the most fertile in northwestern Yunnan.

Getting to the lake(s) is tricky. You usually have to catch the bus to Sanba, get off at the turn-off and hitch. Getting back you can wait

(sometimes interminably) for a bus or hike to one of the entrances or main road and look out for taxis – but there may be none. A taxi will cost around ¥300 to ¥400 for the return trip, including Shudu Hu.

## BAISHUITAI

Baishuitai is a limestone deposit plateau 108km southeast of Shangri-la, with some breathtaking scenery and Tibetan villages en route. For good reason it has become probably the most popular backdoor route between Lijiang and Shangri-la. The **terraces** (admission ¥30) – think of those in Pamukkale in Turkey or Huanglong in Sichuan – are lovely, but can be tough to access if rainfall has made trails slippery.

A couple of guesthouses at the nearby towns of **Baidi** and **Sanba** have rooms with beds from ¥30 to ¥40.

From Shangri-la there is a daily bus to Baishuitai at 9.10am (¥25, three hours). One adventurous option is to hike or hitch all the way from Baishuitai to Tiger Leaping Gorge ([Click here](#)). A taxi from Shangri-la is ¥600.

## GETTING TO TIBET

At the time of writing, it was possible to enter Tibet overland from Shangri-la but only by joining a pricey guided tour. If you're tempted to bypass the tour group thing and try and sneak in, then think again. There were at least 11 checkpoints operating on the road between Shangri-la and Lhasa in 2012; you will be caught, fined, detained and escorted to Chengdu by a secret service officer.

It is possible to fly to Lhasa from Shangri-la, but flights are cheaper from elsewhere (Kunming and Chengdu), and you'll need to be part of an organised group with all the necessary permits. By far the best people to talk to about Tibet travel in Shangri-la are at **Khampa Caravan** [Offline map](#) ( *Kangba Shangdao Tanxian Luxingshe*; ☎ 828 8648; [www.khampacaravan.com](http://www.khampacaravan.com)).

In Kunming, **Mr Chen's Tour** ( *Chenxiansheng Luyou*; ☎ 316 6105; Room 105, *Camellia Hotel, 154 Dongfeng Lu*) has been organising Tibet travel for years, although some travellers report that his sales pitch is better than his trips.

## SHANGRI-LA TO DEQIN

The road to Deqin from Shangri-la takes around six hours with a hired jeep. This time will be cut down once the new road is complete (expected by 2014). The halfway point is **Benzilan** (), 80km past Shangri-la, a small city where bikers could spend the night in one of the simple hotels along the main road. About 22km past Benzilan is the picturesque **Dhondrupling Gompa** (; Dongzhulin Si), just off the main road. Past Benzilan the road climbs steeply into the mountains with endless hairpin turns until you reach Deqin.

If you are travelling in winter, remember you are crossing some serious ranges – three times above 5000m – and at any time from mid-October to late spring, heavy snows can close the roads. Pack sensibly and plan for a snowbound emergency.

---

## Deqin

 0887 / POP 60,100

Mellifluously named Deqin (that last syllable seems to ring, doesn't it?) lies in some of the most ruggedly gorgeous scenery in China. Snuggly cloud-high at an average altitude of 3550m, it rests in the near embrace of one of China's most magical mountains, **Kawa Karpo** (; often referred to as Meili Xueshan). At 6740m, it is Yunnan's highest peak and straddles the Yunnan–Tibet border.

A true border town, Deqin is one of Yunnan's last outposts before Tibet, but from here you could also practically hike east to Sichuan or southwest to Myanmar (Burma). Diqing Prefecture was so isolated that it was never really controlled by anyone until the PLA (People's Liberation Army) arrived in force in 1957.

More than 80% of locals are Tibetan, though a dozen other minorities also live here, including one of the few settlements of non-Hui Muslims in China. The town, though, is seriously unattractive and a little rough – the local police impose a midnight curfew. Confusingly, Deqin is the name of the city and county; both are incorporated by the Diqing Tibetan Autonomous Prefecture ().

Most people make immediate tracks for Feilai Si. All buses and minivans hang around the main street that runs through town and the

bus station is just a little office on the hairpin bend.

For Shangri-la, buses leave three times daily from Deqin (¥56 to ¥68, six to seven hours) at 8am, 9am and 12.30pm. There is also a daily bus to Lijiang (¥258, 10 to 11 hours) at 7.30am and to Kunming (¥258, 18 to 19 hours) at 11am.

---

## Around Deqin

The long ride to Deqin is really just the start of your journey. The main reason to come here is to spend time in the valleys below Kawa Karpo and most access is on foot, so you'll need to book at least three or four days to make the most of your journey.

Note that entry to the below sights requires buying a **Meili Snow Mountain National Park** (*Meili Xueshan Guo Jia Gong Yuan*; ¥228-230) entry ticket. There are three ticket options: one includes three observation points and the glacier (¥228), another ticket is the same three observation points and Yubeng village (¥230), and the third is just three observation points (¥150).

If you want to go to the glacier and Yubeng village you should buy the full ticket plus a ¥85 supplement for the village. A student card nets a 50% discount.

### FEILAI SI

Approximately 10km southwest of Deqin is the small but interesting Tibetan **Feilai Temple** (Feilai Si), or Naka Zhashi (or Trashi) Gompa in Tibetan, devoted to the spirit of Kawa Karpo. There's no charge but leave a donation. No photos are allowed inside the tiny hall.

Everyone comes here for the sublime views – particularly the sunrises – of the Meili Xueshan range, including 6740m-high Kawa Karpo (also known as Meili Xueshan or Taizi Shan) and the even more beautiful peak to the south, 6054m-high **Miacimu** (; Shennu in Chinese), whose spirit is the female counterpart of Kawa Karpo. Joseph Rock described Miacimu as 'the most glorious peak my eyes were ever privileged to see...like a castle of a dream, an ice palace of a fairy tale'. Locals come here to burn juniper incense to the wrathful

spirit of the mountain.

Sadly, weather often as not does not cooperate, shrouding the peaks in mist. Winter is your best shot at a sunrise photo op. A ticket office near the platform sells tickets (¥228) for Feilai Si and other sites.

The 'town' is actually just an ugly strip of concrete shops, hotels and restaurants along the main road. Across the road, the government has unsportingly set up a wall, blocking the view of the mountains (just walk downhill 200m for the same view).

Most backpackers stay at **Feeling Village Youth Hostel** (*Juese Dianxiang Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📞 0887-841 6133; dm ¥40, d without/with bathroom ¥100/¥120; @📶), which has simple but clean rooms and a cosy lounge. No English is spoken but it's a good place to meet up with other travellers to swap info or share a ride. It's set back from the main road; look for the sign turning right up the little alley at the bottom of the village.

Next door, the **Mingzhu Hotel** (*Mingzhu Jiudian*; 📞 841 4688; r ¥130-150; @📶) has better private rooms, some with good mountain views, but not all rooms have working electric blankets so check this before you settle in.

Lots of places on the main road serve Chinese and Western meals.

To get here from Deqin a taxi will cost you ¥30. Alternatively, head out onto the road and try to flag down any vehicle that's heading your way.

## YUBENG & KAWA KARPO HIKES

The best reason to visit Deqin is the chance to hike to the foot of Kawa Karpo. The main destination is **Yubeng** ( ) village from where you can make day hikes to mountain meadows, lakes and the fabulous **Yubeng Waterfall** ( ; Yubeng Shenpu).

The five-hour trek to Yubeng starts at the **Xidang** ( ) hot spring, about 3km past Xidang village. The drive from Feilai Si takes one hour and 40 minutes and a taxi will cost ¥150. You could also hike all the way here from Feilai Si using local roads and paths. Another possibility is a 3pm minibas from Deqin to Xidang (¥15) that returns the next morning at 8am, or one of the private minibuses that leave when full from near the bus stand. There is a ¥5 entrance fee for Yubeng but when you show your receipt at your guesthouse you'll get ¥5 discount off your bill.

Yubeng consists of two sections. You first arrive in 'Upper Yubeng', which contains most

guesthouses, then the trail continues another 1km to 'Lower Yubeng'. **Lobsang Trekker Lodge** ( Zangbale Zhijia; ☎ 139 8879 7053; <http://lobsangtrekkerlodge.webs.com>; dm/d ¥30/200), in Upper Yubeng, is a popular place that offers meals, comfortable rooms, modern bathrooms and good traveller info (English is spoke here). In Lower Yubeng, the **Mystic Waterfall Lodge** ( Shenpu Kezhan; ☎ 0887-841 1082; dm/d ¥25/100) is a friendly place with an English-speaking owner.

From Yubeng village, loads of treks lie out there. It's a three- to four-hour trip on foot or horseback to the waterfall. Or, you could head south to a picturesque lake (it's around 4350m high and not easy to find, so take a guide). Guides cost around ¥150 per day. Supplies (food and water) are pricey in Yubeng so stock up in Feilai Si.

Leaving the village, trekkers will often hike to **Ninong** () village by the Mekong River, a four- to five-hour hike that definitely requires a guide (and a good sense of balance as its very steep in some sections). If you are prone to vertigo, head back to Xidang instead. Arrange a pick-up in Ninong or ask around for a taxi, if you are stuck walk 6km to Xidang where there is more transport.

Then there's the legendary Kawa Karpo *kora*, a 12-day pilgrim circumambulation of Meili Xueshan. However, half of it is in the Tibetan Autonomous Region, so you'll need a permit to do it; and you'll definitely need a guide.

## MINGYONG GLACIER

Tumbling off the side of Kawa Karpo peak is the 12km-long **Mingyong Glacier** (Mingyong Bingchuan). At over 13 sq km, it is not only the lowest glacier in China (around 2200m high) but also an oddity – a monsoon marine glacier, which basically translates as having an ecosystem that couldn't possibly be more diverse: tundra, taiga, broadleaf forest and meadow.

The mountain has been a pilgrimage site for centuries and you'll still meet a few Tibetan pilgrims, some of whom circumambulate the mountain over seven days in autumn. Surrounding villages are known as 'heaven villages' because of the dense fog that hangs about in spring and summer.

The trail to the glacier leads up from Mingyong's central square. After 70 minutes of steady uphill walking you will reach the Tibetan **Taizi Miao** (), a small temple where there are snack and drink stalls. A further 30 minutes along the trail is **Lotus Temple** (; Lianhua Miao), which offers fantastic views of the glacier framed by prayer flags and *chörten*. Horses can also be hired to go up to the glacier (¥150).

If you're coming from Yubeng, you could also hike to Mingyong from

Xidang in around three hours if you hoof it.

Mingyong village consists of only a couple hotels, restaurants and shops. You can overnight in the simple **Renqin Hotel** (*Renqin Jiudian*; 📞 139 8871 4330; dm/d ¥20/80; @📶) which also serves meals.

From Deqin, one daily bus (¥15) departs at 3pm. In addition private minibuses to Mingyong leave regularly from the bridge near the market at the top end of town (¥16, one to two hours, 8am to 3pm or 4pm). You can also try to rent a car through your accommodation.

The road from Deqin descends into the dramatic Mekong Gorge. Six kilometres before Mingyong the road crosses the Mekong River and branches off to Xidang. Nearby is a small temple, the Baishulin Miao, and a *chörten*. There is a checkpoint here where you will need to show your national park ticket (or buy one for around ¥213).

## NU JIANG VALLEY

The 320km-long Nu Jiang Valley () is one of Yunnan's best-kept secrets. The Nu Jiang (known as the Salween in Myanmar; its name in Chinese means 'Raging River') is the second-longest river in Southeast Asia and one of only two undammed rivers in China. Sandwiched between the Gaoligong Shan and Myanmar to the west, Tibet to the north and the imposing Biluo Shan to the east, the gorge holds nearly a quarter of China's flora and fauna species, and half of China's endangered species. The valley also has an exotic mix of Han, Nu, Lisu, Drung and Tibetan nationalities, and even the odd Burmese trader. And it's simply stunning – all of it.

Getting there is a pain. On a map, it seems a stone's throw from Deqin in the province's northwest. Nope. All traffic enters via the Baoshan region. Once there, you trundle eight hours up the valley, marvelling at the scenery, and then head back the way you came. Plans have been announced to blast a road from Gongshan in the northern part of the valley to Deqin, and another from the village of Bingzhongluo even further north into Tibet. Given the immense topographical challenges, these plans are a long way off.

---

## THE NU JIANG DAM

In 2003 Unesco named the Nu Jiang Valley a World Heritage site, calling it one of the world's most precious ecosystems of its kind. Then, almost simultaneously, the Chinese government announced plans for a series of 13 dams along the Nu Jiang. The project would theoretically produce more electricity than even the Three Gorges Dam.

Opposition was immediate. Unesco warned that such a project could warrant the area's delisting; it was joined in its opposition to the project by more than 70 international environmental groups. Local opposition was also fierce; more than 50 prominent Chinese (from pop stars to business billionaires) spoke out against the dams. In a very rare example of people power succeeding in China, the government has since backed away from the plan, with Premier Wen Jiabao ordering more studies on the scheme's potential impact. Local politicians, though, remain keen for the project to go ahead and the area's future remains highly uncertain.

---

## Liuku

 0886 / POP 17, 800




Liuku is the lively, pleasant capital of the prefecture. Divided by the Nu Jiang River, it's the main transport hub of the region, although it's of little intrinsic interest. You may have to register with a police checkpoint about 5km before entering the town.

### Sleeping & Eating

There are many places on Chuancheng Lu in the centre of town starting from ¥80, although the cheapies tend to be a bit scruffy and geared towards travelling Chinese businessmen.

To eat, head to the riverbank, south of Renmin Lu, where loads of outdoor restaurants cook great barbecued fish.

### Nujiang Gerui Shangwu Jiudian *HOTEL* \$\$

( 388 8885; 123 Chuancheng Lu; 123 s & d ¥138-240;  ) One of the better options, this solid midrange place has ADSL internet and free breakfast. It can get a bit busy at night when a gaggle of scantily clad 'hostesses' stand by the door to welcome patrons to karaoke upstairs. After crossing the bridge it's one block uphill from Renmin



Lu.

## Lin Meng Binguan *HOTEL* \$

(☎ 326 6188; *Renmin Lu*; s & d ¥80) A cheap option with simple rooms and a friendly young staff. Cross the bridge, make the first left onto *Renmin Lu*, and look for the entrance through a mobile (cell) phone shop.

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang*) Located uphill from the bus station.

**Internet cafe** (*wangba*; per hr ¥3) There is an internet cafe near the main pedestrian bridge, in a little shopping mall, opposite the Sheng Bao Lu Hotel.

## **i** Getting There & Away

The bus station is inconveniently located south of downtown and across the river (a ¥15 taxi ride).

**Baoshan** ¥45–58, three to four hours, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 4pm)

**Bingzhongluo** ¥85, nine hours, one daily (7am)

**Fugong** ¥44, four hours, hourly (7.20am to 4.40pm)

**Gongshan** ¥75, eight hours, four daily (6.40am, 11.30am, 12.30pm and 1pm)

**Kunming** ¥205–255, 11 to 12 hours, six daily (8.30am, 11am, 6pm, 7pm, 8pm and 8.30pm)

**Tengchong** ¥70, six hours, four daily (7am, 8am, 10am and 11am)

**Xiaguan** ¥72–96, five hours, every 40 minutes (8am to 3pm and 9pm)

Hemmed in by steep cliffs on all sides, Fugong offers some of the best scenery in the valley, even if the town itself is somewhat scruffy and forgettable. Fugong is roughly halfway up the valley and a reasonable place to break up the journey if it's late.

There are decent rooms at the no-name hotel in the bus station for ¥100. Across the street is the slightly better **Fugong Binguan** ( 📞 349 2900; s & d ¥130), which has fancy flat panel TVs and ADSL internet (though we could not get it to work). An **internet cafe** (per hr ¥3; 🕒 10am-midnight) is next to the bus station.

## **i** Getting There & Away

There are twice-hourly buses to Liuku (¥40, four hours) between 7.20am and 4.20pm. To Bingzhongluo you'll have to wait for the bus from Liuku to pass by, which happens around 11am. Otherwise, you could take a bus to Gongshan (¥32, seven daily from 9am to 5pm), or ask around for a share taxi on the street outside the station. They commence around 8.30am.

---

## **Bingzhongluo**

📞 0886

The main reason to come to the Nu Jiang Valley is to visit this isolated, friendly **village** (admission ¥100, students ¥50), set in a beautiful, wide and fertile bowl. Just 35km south of Tibet and close to Myanmar, it's a great base for hikes into the surrounding mountains and valleys. The area is at its best in spring and early autumn. Don't even think about coming in the winter.

Potential short hops include heading south along the main road for 2km to the impressive 'first bend' of the Nu Jiang River, or north along a track more than 15km long that passes a 19th-century church and several villages (the road starts by heading downhill from Road to Tibet Guesthouse).

Longer three- or four-day treks include heading to the Tibetan village of **Dimaluo** () and then onto the village of **Yonzhi** (). From

Yonzhi it's another two hours walk to the main road from where you can hitch a ride to Deqin. It is a demanding trek that can really only be done from late May until September as the 3800m pass is too difficult to cross in heavy snow.

A guide is pretty much essential. Tibetan trek leader Alou comes highly recommended. He's based at his guesthouse, although he's often away on treks so email him first. Treks usually runs around ¥200 per day. Note that there are no villages en route to Yonzhi so you'll need to carry all your own food and sleep in basic huts along the way (porters can be hired for around ¥100 per day).

Another pricier option is Peter, a Lemao guide, who offers treks for ¥250 a day. You can find him at **Nu Jiang Baina Travel** (☎ 139 8853 9641; yangindali@yahoo.co.uk) on the main street. He speaks English and is a good source of local information, and he also rents mountain bikes for ¥50 a day.

Most hotels in town have wi-fi and Peter has internet access at his shop for ¥3 per hour.

## **Sleeping & Eating**



### **Road to Tibet Guesthouse** GUEST HOUSE \$

(☎ 358 1168, 189 0886 1168; dm ¥30, s & d ¥80; 📶) Most backpackers end up at this place, located on the street heading downhill from the main road. Beds are hard but it's a clean place with a helpful English-speaking owner and excellent communal dinners. The owner, Alou, also has a simple guesthouse in his home village of Dimaluo, a good destination for a day hike.

### **Yu Dong Binguan** HOTEL \$

(☎ 358 1285; s & d ¥80-180; 📶) A nice budget hotel option run by a friendly chain-smoking, pot-bellied chap. Rooms are clean and well-maintained and the ones in the back have good views of the valley.

## **Getting There & Away**

There is one direct bus a day from Liuku to Bingzhongluo (¥85, nine hours, 7am). It returns from opposite the Yu Dong Binguan at 8am. Otherwise, take a bus to Gongshan, where you can transfer to one of the regular buses that go back and forth to Bingzhongluo (¥10, 1½ hours) until 5pm or 6pm.

From Gongshan, there are 10 daily buses to Liuku from 6.10am to 1pm.

---

## Dulong Valley

Separated from the Nu Jiang Valley by the high Gaoligong Shan range and only reached by road in 1999, this is one of the remotest valleys in China and is home to the tiny Dulong ethnic group, whose women still tattoo their faces. The Dulong River actually flows out of China into Myanmar, where it eventually joins the Irrawaddy. There is a county guesthouse (*xian zhaodaisuo*) in the capital **Dulongjiang**.

No buses run into the valley. You'll have to hire a minivan from Gongshan for the rough 96km trip to Dulongjiang. At the time of writing the road was being upgraded which may improve access. However, there is a checkpoint en route so you'll need to ask in Bingzhongluo if foreigners are allowed into the area. Once you reach the valley, most travel is on foot. All travel is dicey in rainy weather and the road is closed if there's snow.

## BAOSHAN REGION

Scrunched up against Myanmar (Burma) and bisected by the wild Nu Jiang, the Baoshan region () is a varied landscape that includes thick forests, dormant volcanoes and hot springs.

The eponymous capital is unremarkable; lovely Tengchong (and its environs) is where it's at. The Tengchong area is peppered with minority groups whose villages lie in and around the ancient fire mountains.

As early as the 4th and 5th centuries BC (two centuries before the northern routes through central Asia were established), the Baoshan area was an important stop on the southern Silk Road – the Sichuan–

India route. The area did not come under Chinese control until the Han dynasty. In 1277 a huge battle was waged in the region between the 12,000 troops of Kublai Khan and 60,000 Burmese soldiers and their 2000 elephants. The Mongols won and went on to take Pagan.

## Tengchong

📍 0875

With 20 volcanoes in the vicinity, lots of hot springs and great trekking potential, there's plenty to explore in this neck of the woods. And the city itself is a bit of an oddity – one of the few places in China that, though much of the old architecture has been demolished, remains a pleasant place to hang out, with oodles of green space (you can actually smell the flowers!) and a friendly, low-key populace.



## Tengchong

📍 Top Sights

[Dieshui Waterfall](#) A1

[Jade Market](#) C1

## Sights

1 [Produce Market](#) B1

2 [Produce Market](#) C2

3 [Xianle Temple](#) A1

## Sleeping

4 [Xinghua Dajiudian](#) A1

## Eating

5 [Junge Lin Western Restaurant](#) C2

## Sights & Activities

Much of the old-time architecture is now gone, but some OK places for a random wander are still to be found.

### Markets MARKETS

The backstreets running off Yingjiang Xilu sport a couple of small markets with splashes of colour and activity in the mornings. Walking along Fengshan Lu from Feicui Lu, the first side street on the left has a small [produce market](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; *chanpin shichang*). Further down on the right is a large, covered [jade market](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; *zhubao yuqi jiaoyi zhongxin*), where you can sometimes see the carving process. Walk east along Yingjiang Xilu and you will come across a larger [produce market](#) on your right.

### Dieshui Waterfall WATERFALL

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Dieshui Pubu*; admission ¥30) In the western suburbs of town, beside the [Xianle Temple](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Xianle Si), this is a good place for a picnic. The area makes a nice destination for a bike

ride and you could easily combine it with a trip to **Heshun** (), a picturesque village 4km outside Tengchong.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

There's no shortage of places to stay: bargain hard at any hotel.

There are many hole-in-the-wall eateries and barbecue places along Feicui Lu and elsewhere around town. At night, food stalls set up in the centre of town off Fengshan Lu.



### **Tengchong International Youth Hostel** HOSTEL \$

( *Tengchong Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📞 519 8677; 44494841@qq.com; Yuquanyuan; dm ¥40, d ¥138-150; 🌐📶📶) Fronting a redone outdoor shopping plaza just off the main road, this airy hostel is a relaxed place with English-speaking staff and lots of space to lounge around. Private bedrooms are spotless but dorms are scruffy and unkempt – the staff expect guests to make their own beds and clean up the dorms (when we noted the dorm floors were dirty they handed us a mop!). It's a ¥13 taxi ride from the long-distance bus station. A YHA card nets you a small discount.

### **Xinghua Dajiudian** HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( 📞 513 2688; 7 Tuanpo Xiaoqu; s & d ¥200; 🌐) There are alarming, tiger-pattern carpets here, but the rooms themselves are comfortable, if generic. The location, northeast of Laifeng Shan National Forest Park, is handy in what is a spread-out town. No internet.

### **Junge Lin Western Restaurant** WESTERN, THAI \$\$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( *Junge Lin Xi Canting*; 188 Buxing Jie; mains from ¥20; 🕒 10am-11.30pm; 📍) A Chinese-run place that attempts Western dishes (steaks, salads, pasta) with varying degrees of success plus some Thai dishes and simple Chinese options.

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Fengshan Lu & Yingjiang Xilu*) Has a 24-hour ATM and will change cash and travellers cheques. There are other ATMs around town that take foreign cards too.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; Fengshan Lu*) Serves as post and telephone office.

**Internet cafe** (*wangba; 100m north of Xinghua Dajjudian; per hr ¥3*)

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; Yingjiang Xilu; ☎ 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri)** Can help with visa extensions.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### **Air**

Tengchong's airport 12km south of town has a daily flight to Kunming (¥1070).

### **Bus**

The city's long-distance bus station is in the south of town.

**Baoshan** ¥52, three hours, every 40 minutes (7.50am to 7pm)

**Kunming** (express) ¥234–248, 11 hours, 11 daily (9am–8.10pm)

**Lijiang** (sleeper) ¥180, 10 hours, one daily (8pm)

**Liuku** ¥70, six hours, four daily (8am, 9am, 10am, 11am)

**Xiaguan** ¥128, six hours, two daily (10.30am and noon); (sleeper) ¥154, six to seven hours, one daily (7.30pm)

Tengchong's local bus station (*keyun zhan*) has frequent departures to local destinations.

**Mangshi** ¥33, two to three hours, nine daily (7.30am to 4.30pm)

**Ruili** ¥84, four hours, nine daily (7am to 3.50pm)

Buses to local destinations north of Tengchong, such as Mazhan, Gudong, Ruidian, Diantan or Zizhi, either leave from, or pass through, Huoshan Lu in the northeast of town. There's also an old local bus station on Dongfang Lu.



## **i** Getting Around

Tengchong's environs make for some fine bike riding. You can hire a bike from a shop on Guanhua Lu or from the Tengchong International Youth Hostel (both ¥20 per day).

Bus 2 runs from the town centre to the long-distance bus station. Taxis charge ¥5 to hop around town.

---

## Around Tengchong

Getting out to the sights is a bit tricky. Catching buses part of the way and hiking is one possibility, while some of the closer attractions can be reached by bicycle.

Some highlights of the region are the traditional villages that are scattered between Tengchong and Yunfeng Shan (Cloudy Peak Mountain). The relatively plentiful public transport along this route means that you can jump on and off minibuses to go exploring as the whim takes you.

### **HESHUN**

Southwest of Tengchong, **Heshun** (admission ¥80; 🕒 8am-7pm) is well worth a visit. It has been set aside as a retirement village for overseas Chinese, but it's of more interest as a quiet, traditional Chinese village with cobbled streets. There are some great old buildings in the village, providing lots of photo opportunities. The village also has a small **museum** (; *bowuguan*) and a famous old **library** (; *tushuguan*). You can avoid buying a ticket by walking through the fields around the village (but you won't be able to go to the museum or library where the tickets are checked). Get off the bus at a gas station 1.2km before the village, cross the street and walk along the path near the base of the hill (on your left).

The newish **Heshun International Youth Hostel** ( *Tengchong Guoji Qingnian Lushe*; 📞 515 8398; *Cunjiawan*; *dm* ¥20, *d* ¥50-100; @ ) in the village (by the big banyan tree) is pleasant and set around a small courtyard.

Bus No 6 (which stops near the Tengchong Youth Hostel) goes to Heshun or you can take a minibus (¥3) from the corner of Feicui Lu and Laifeng Xiang. It's an easy bicycle ride out to the village but the ride back is an uphill slog.

## YUNFENG SHAN

A Taoist mountain dotted with 17th-century temples and monastic retreats, **Yunfeng Shan** (*Cloudy Peak Mountain*; admission ¥60) is 47km north of Tengchong. It's possible to take a **cable car** (*one way/return ¥90/160*), close to the top from where it's a 20-minute walk to **Daxiong Baodian** (), a temple at the summit. **Luzu Dian** (), the temple second from the top, serves up solid vegetarian food at lunchtime. It's possible to stay here the night in dirty dorm rooms (per person ¥20). It's a quick walk down but it can be hard on the knees. You can walk up the mountain in about 2½ hours.

To get to the mountain, go to Huoshan Lu in Tengchong and catch a bus to Gudong (¥15), and then a microbus from there to the turn-off (¥10). From the turn-off you have to hitch, or you could take the lovely walk past the village of Heping () to the pretty villages just before the mountain. From the parking lot a golf cart (¥5) takes you to the entrance. Hiring a vehicle from Tengchong to take you on a return trip will cost about ¥300.

## VOLCANOES

Tengchong County is renowned for its volcanoes, and although they have been behaving themselves for many centuries, the seismic and geothermal activity in the area indicates that they won't always continue to do so. The closest volcano to Tengchong is **Ma'an Shan** (; Saddle Mountain), around 5km to the northwest. It's just south of the main road to Yingjiang.

Around 22km to the north of town, near the village of **Mazhan**, is the most accessible cluster of **volcanoes** (*admission ¥45*). The main central volcano is known as **Dakong Shan** (; Big Empty Hill), which pretty much sums it up, and to the left of it is the black crater of **Heikong Shan** (; Black Empty Hill). You can haul yourself up the steps for views of the surrounding lava fields (long dormant).

Minibuses run frequently to Mazhan (¥5) from along Huoshan Lu, or take a Gudong-bound minibus. From Mazhan town it's a 10-minute walk or you can take a motor-tricycle (¥5) to the volcano area. Once you are in the area there is a fair bit of walking to get between the sights, or you can hitch rides.

## SEA OF HEAT

The intriguingly named **Sea of Heat** (*Rehai*; admission ¥60, pool access ¥268; ☺ 8am-11pm) is a steamy cluster of hot springs, geysers and streams (but no actual sea, per se). Located about 12km southwest of Tengchong, it's essentially an upmarket resort, with a few outdoor hot springs, a nice warm-water swimming pool along with indoor baths. Even if you don't pay the steep price to enter the pools it's possible to just wander along the stone paths admiring the geothermal activity. Some of the springs here reach temperatures of 102°C (don't swim in these ones!).

The rooms at the **Yang Sheng Ge** (☎ 586 9700; s & d ¥1600, ste ¥3600) all come with their very own mini-spa complete with water piped from the hot springs. It's close to the ticket office.

Microbuses leave for the Sea of Heat (¥6) when full from the Rehai Lu turn-off in the south of Tengchong.

## DEHONG PREFECTURE

Dehong Prefecture (; Dehong Zhou and Jingpo Autonomous Prefecture) juts into Myanmar in the far west of Yunnan. Once a backwater of backwaters, as trade grew, the region saw tourists flock in to experience its raucous border atmosphere.

That's dimmed quite a bit, but most Chinese tourists in Dehong are still here for the trade from Myanmar that comes through Ruili and Wanding; Burmese jade is a popular commodity and countless other items are spirited over the border.

The most obvious minority groups in Dehong are the Burmese (who are normally dressed in their traditional saronglike *longyi*), Dai and Jingpo – known in Myanmar as the Kachin – a minority group long engaged in armed struggle against the Myanmar government). For information on etiquette for visiting temples in the region [Click here](#).

# Ruili

📍 0692

Back in the 1980s this border town was a notorious haven for drug and gem smugglers, prostitution and various other iniquities. The government cleaned it up in the 1990s and today you're more likely to stumble into a shopping mall than a den of thieves. Still, Ruili has an edge to it, thanks to a thriving gem market operated largely by Burmese and Pakistani traders. And with its palm tree-lined streets, bicycle rickshaws and steamy climate, Ruili has a distinctly laid-back, Southeast Asian feel.

The minority villages nearby are also good reason to come and it's worth getting a bicycle and heading out to explore. Another draw for travellers is Myanmar, which lies only a few kilometres away. Though individual tourists are not allowed to cross freely, organising permits to take you through the sensitive border area is becoming easier.



# Ruili

## Top Sights

[Jade Market](#) B1

[Market](#) A2

## Sleeping

1 [Bashi Jiudian](#) A1

2 [Ruili Binquan](#) A1

3 [Zhongrui Binquan](#) A2

## Eating

4 [Huafeng Market](#) B2

## Drinking

5 [Bo Bo's Cold Drinks Shop](#) A2

## Sights

Think atmosphere rather than aesthetics. The huge **market** (; *shichang*) in the west of town is one of the most colourful and fun in Yunnan; a real swirl of ethnicities, including Dai, Jingpo, Han and Burmese, as well as the odd Bangladeshi and Pakistani trader. Get here in the morning, when the stalls are lined with Burmese smokes, tofu wrapped in banana leaves, dodgy pharmaceuticals from Thailand, clothes, you name it. It's also a good place to grab lunch at one of the many snack stalls.





Also great for people-watching is Ruili's ever-expanding **jade market** (; *zhubao jie*), the centre of town in all senses. Burmese jade sellers run most of the shops here and for a while you may even forget you are still in China.

## Sleeping

There are lots of hotels in Ruili, although prices here seem a little higher compared to other cities in Yunnan. Only top-end places will likely have internet access.



### Ruili Binguan *HOTEL* \$\$

Offline map

( 410 0899; 25 Jianshe Lu; 25 s & d ¥220;   ) This place, garishly painted orange and gold, is perhaps the best in town for comfort and facilities, although you'll need to bargain hard and smile a lot to get the price down. Rooms have ADSL internet and there is wi-fi in the lobby. The staff are friendly and can sell maps (¥10) of town and the surrounding area.



### Zhongrui Binguan *HOTEL* \$

Offline map

( 410 0556; cnr Renmin Lu & Nanmao Jie; s & d ¥320; ) A central location and decently kept rooms with only mildly stained walls make this a reasonable option in the budget category. Discounts regularly available; you can usually get a room for around ¥120.

### Bashi Jiudian *HOTEL* \$

Offline map

( 412 9088; cnr Renmin Lu & Nanmao Jie; s & d ¥160; ) The staff here have been struck down by the stultifying, steamy atmosphere of Ruili and slumber most of the time. You can normally grab one of the big rooms for ¥50 as long as you don't mind the threadbare carpets, rogue hairballs and overall neglected appearance.

## Eating & Drinking

Street stalls set up all over town come nightfall; just follow your nose.



**Bo Bo's Cold Drinks Shop** *CAFE* \$

Offline map

( *Bubu Lengyindian*; *Xi'nan Lu*; dishes from ¥5; ☺ 8am-1am; 📶📶)

Busy from early to late, the *longyi* -clad Burmese waiters at this Ruili institution hustle as they serve up fantastic fruit juices, Burmese-style milky tea, ice cream and cakes, as well as simple but tasty rice and noodle dishes. English is spoken here and wi-fi is available.

## Huafeng Market *STREET MARKET* \$

Offline map

( *Huafeng Shichang*; *off Jiegang Lu*; ☺ 6pm-late) An outdoor food court that thrives once darkness descends, come here for Burmese and Chinese food, including superb barbecue dishes, and the odd Thai delicacy. The food is all on display, so just pick and point.

## **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( *Zhongguo Yinhang*; *Nanmao Jie*) Provides all the usual services and will cash travellers cheques for US dollars if you're headed to Myanmar. There are other ATMs around town that take foreign cards. You can also change/find US dollars at the jade market.

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; *cnr Mengmao Lu & Renmin Lu*)

**Internet cafe** ( *wangba*; *cnr Nanmao Jie & Jiegang Lu*; *per hr ¥3*; ☺ 24hr) At the time of writing, foreigners weren't allowed to use Ruili's internet cafes. If you have a wi-fi enabled device try Bo Bo's Cold Drinks Shop.

**Public Security Bureau** ( *PSB*; *Gong'anju*; *Jianshe Jie*; ☺ 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm)

## **i** Getting There & Away

An expressway from Baoshan to Ruili was being built at the time of writing, which will link Ruili to Xiaguan and on to Kunming. The first five hours or so out of Ruili are still on older roads that pass through villages (and checkpoints), then you get on the highway for a speedy finish to Xiaguan.

## Air

Daily flights come from Kunming via Mangshi, a two-hour drive away. You can buy tickets at **China Eastern Airlines** (*Dongfang Hangkong Gongsì*; ☎ 411 1111; *Renmin Lu*; 🕒 8.30am-6pm). Shuttle buses leave daily from the office, three hours before scheduled flights (¥60). You can also use the ticket office to book and reconfirm return flights – do so early.

## Bus

Ruili has a long-distance bus station (; changtu keyun zhan) in the centre of town and a north bus station, really more of a forecourt, at the top of Jiegang Lu. Head to the north bus station (; qiche beizhan) if you're trying to get to Mangshi (¥35, last bus 6pm – they leave when full); for everything else, you're better off going to the long-distance station.

**Baoshan** ¥94, six to seven hours, every 30 to 40 minutes (7.30am to 4pm)

**Jinghong** ¥340, 24 to 26 hours, one daily (10am)

**Kunming** ¥300, 14 to 15 hours, four daily (9.30am, 3pm, 6pm and 8pm)

**Tengchong** ¥65, four to five hours, every 40 minutes (6.30am to 12.20pm)

**Xiaguan** ¥150–170, nine to 10 hours, two daily (9am and 8pm)

For local destinations, minibuses leave from opposite the main bus station, or you can just flag one down in the street. Destinations include Wanding (¥10), the border checkpoint at Jiegao (¥10) and the village of Nongdao (¥8). Buses to Zhangfeng (¥11, one hour) leave from Xinjian Lu.

## Getting Around

The most interesting day trips require a bicycle. Ask at your accommodation about the best place to rent one.

A flat rate for a taxi ride inside the city should be ¥5, and up for negotiation from there. There are also cheaper motor and cycle



rickshaws.

---

## Around Ruili

Most of the sights around Ruili can be explored by bicycle. It's worth making detours down the narrow paths leading off the main roads to visit minority villages. The people are friendly, and there are lots of photo opportunities. The *Tourism and Traffic Map of Ruili*, available from the Xinhua bookshop on Renmin Lu, shows major roads and villages.

The shortest ride is to turn left at the corner north of China Post and continue out of Ruili into the little village of **Mengmao**. There are half a dozen Shan temples scattered about; the fun is in finding them.

### GOLDEN DUCK PAGODA

In the outskirts of town to the southwest, on the main road, this pagoda (Nong'an Jinya Ta) is an attractive stupa set in a temple courtyard. It was established to mark the arrival of a pair of golden ducks that brought good fortune to what was previously an uninhabited marshy area.

### TEMPLES

Just past Golden Duck Pagoda is a crossroads and a small wooden temple. The road to the right (west) leads to the villages of **Jiexiang** () and **Nongdao** (), and on the way are a number of small temples, villages and stupas. None are spectacular but the village life is interesting and there are often small markets near the temples.

The first major Dai temple is **Hansha Zhuang Temple** (; Hansha Zhuang Si), a fine wooden structure with a few resident monks. It's set a little off the road and a green tourism sign marks the turn-off. The surrounding Dai village is interesting.

A few kilometres further on is **One Village Two Countries** ( *Yizhai Liangguo*; admission ¥20; 🕒 9am-6pm), a low-key tourist attraction where you can stand on the border between China and Myanmar. There are a few eating stalls and some unusual gimmicks – Kayan women show off their brass neck rings while nearby a daredevil

Burmese chap wrestlers alligators.

Another 20 minutes or so further down the road, look out for a blue and gold roofed traditional building on the right side of the road. Turn right here and follow the narrow paved road through the fields to [Leizhuangxiang](#) (), Ruili's oldest stupa, dating back to the middle of the Tang dynasty.

## **JIEGAO BORDER CHECKPOINT**

On land jutting into Myanmar, Jiegao is the main checkpoint for a steady stream of cross-border traffic. It's a bustling place, with plenty of traders doing last-minute shopping in the many shops and goods outlets. Tourists saunter right up to the border and snap photos in front of the large entry gate. While not a 'must-see' it is fun for border-holics to peek through the gates to Myanmar and dream of a day tourists can cross overland.

To get here, continue straight ahead from Golden Duck Pagoda, cross the Myanmar bridge over Ruili Jiang and you will come to Jiegao, about 7km from Ruili.

Shared red taxis (¥5) with signs for Jiegao () drive around the centre of Ruili from dawn until late at night. These are different from Ruili's typical maroon-coloured taxis.

## **GOLDEN PAGODA**

A few kilometres to the east of Ruili on the road to Wanding is the Golden Pagoda (Jiele Jinta), a fine structure that dates back 200 years.

## **BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO MYANMAR (BURMA)**

At the time of writing it was not possible for third country nationals to travel across the border at Jiegao. The only way to go is by air from Kunming. Visas are available at the embassy in Beijing ([Click here](#)) or in Kunming at the Myanmar consulate ([Click here](#)). In Kunming visas cost ¥185, take four days to process and are good for a maximum 28-day visit

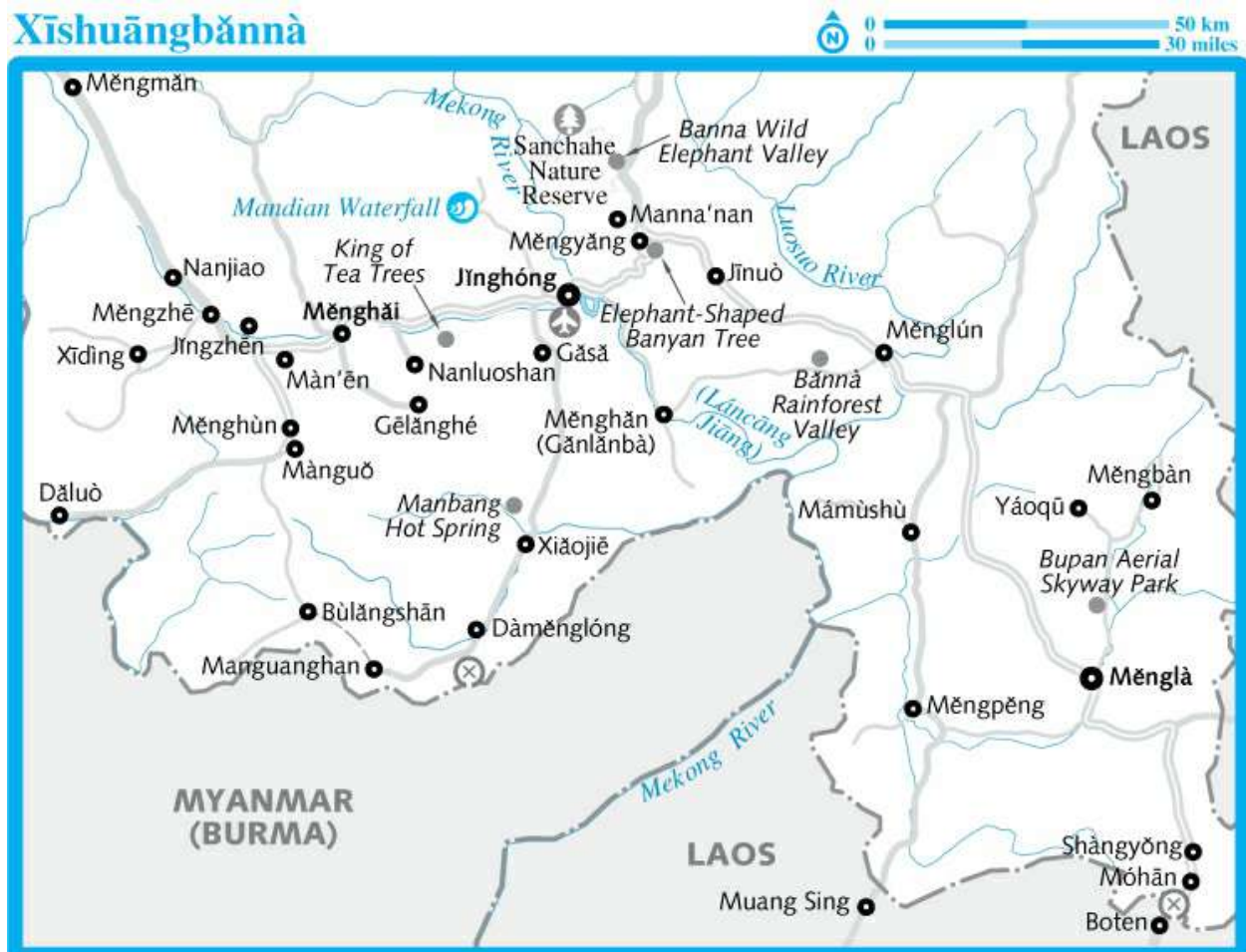
The situation remains fluid so it's worth asking Kunming-based travel agents if crossing

the border overland is possible. Several agents based at the [Camellia Hotel](#) ( *Chahua Binguan*; [www.kmcamelliahotel.com](http://www.kmcamelliahotel.com); 96 Dongfeng Donglu) specialise in trips to Myanmar. At the time of writing there were daily flights to Yangon on China Eastern Airlines for ¥2000 or to Mandalay for ¥2600.

## XISHUANGBANNA REGION

North of Myanmar and Laos, Xishuangbanna is the Chinese approximation of the original Thai name of Sip Sawng Panna (12 Rice-Growing Districts). The Xishuangbanna region (傣族聚居区), better known as Banna, has become China's mini-Thailand, attracting tourists looking for sunshine, water-splashing festivals and epic jungle treks.

Still, Xishuangbanna rarely feels overwhelmed by visitors – even the capital, Jinghong, is basically an overgrown town.



## Environment

Xishuangbanna has myriad plant and animal species, although recent scientific studies have shown the tropical rainforest areas of Banna are now acutely endangered. The jungle areas that remain contain a handful of tigers, leopards and golden-haired monkeys. The number of elephants has doubled to 250, up 100% from the early 1980s; the government now offers compensation to villagers whose crops have been destroyed by elephants, or who assist in wildlife conservation. In 1998 the government banned the hunting or processing of animals, but poaching is notoriously hard to control.

## People

About one-third of the million-strong population of this region are Dai; another third or so are Han Chinese and the rest are a conglomerate of minorities that include the Hani, Lisu and Yao, as well as lesser-known hill tribes such as the Aini (a subgroup of the Hani), Jinuo, Bulang, Lahu and Wa.

Xishuangbanna Dai Autonomous Prefecture, as it is known officially, is subdivided into the three counties of Jinghong, Menghai and Mengla.

## Climate

The region has two seasons: wet and dry. The wet season is between June and August, when it rains ferociously, although not every day. From September to February there is less rainfall, but thick fog descends during the late evening and doesn't lift until 10am or even later.

November to March sees temperatures average about 19°C. The hottest months of the year are from April to September, when you can expect an average of 25°C.

## HIKING IN XISHUANGBANNA

Hikes around Xishuangbanna used to be among the best in China – you'd be invited into a local's home to eat, sleep and drink *mijiu* (rice wine). Increasing numbers of visitors have changed this in places. Don't automatically expect a welcome mat and a free lunch just

because you're a foreigner, but remember that throwing your money around could change the local economy.

If you do get invited into someone's home, try to establish whether payment is expected. If it's not, leave an offering (ask at the backpacker cafes to find out what's considered appropriate) or leave modest gifts such as candles, matches, rice etc – even though the family may insist on nothing.

Also take care before heading off. It's a jungle out there, so go prepared, and make sure somebody knows where you are and when you should return. In the rainy season you'll need to be equipped with proper hiking shoes and waterproof gear. At any time you'll need water purification tablets, bottled water or a water bottle able to hold boiled water, as well as snacks and sunscreen.

Seriously consider taking a guide. You won't hear much Mandarin Chinese on the trail, let alone any English. Expect to pay around ¥250 to ¥300 per day.

**Forest Cafe** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (☎ 0691 898 5122; [www.forest-cafe.org](http://www.forest-cafe.org)) in Jinghong is a great place to start. Sarah, the owner, has years of experience leading treks and comes recommended. The **Mekong Cafe** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Meigong Kafe; Menglong Lu*) can also organise treks. Nearby, the **Meimei Cafe** (☎ 0691 216 1221; [www.meimei-cafe.com](http://www.meimei-cafe.com)) doesn't organise treks but does have lots of details in binders so you can find your own way.

## Festivals & Events

During festivals, booking same-day airline tickets to Jinghong can be extremely difficult. Hotels in Jinghong town are booked solid and prices usually triple. Most people end up commuting from a nearby Dai village. Festivities take place all over Xishuangbanna, so you might be lucky further away from Jinghong.

### **Tanpa Festival** *CULTURAL*

In February, young boys are sent to the local temple for initiation as novice monks.

### **Tan Jing Festival** *CULTURAL*

Held between February and March participants honour Buddhist texts housed in local temples.

### **Water-Splashing Festival** *CULTURAL*

Held in mid-April, the water-splashing festival washes away the dirt, sorrow and demons of the old year and brings in the happiness of the new. Jinghong celebrates it from 13 to 15 April but dates in the surrounding villages vary. Although the festival lasts three days, the actual splashing only occurs on 15 April. Foreigners earn special attention, so prepare to be drenched all day.

### **Closed-Door Festival** *CULTURAL*

The farming season, July to October, is the time for the closed-door festival (傣族关门节), when marriages or festivals are banned. Traditionally, this is also the time of year that men aged 20 or older are ordained as monks for a period of time. The season ends with the **Open-Door Festival**, when everyone lets their hair down again to celebrate the harvest.

### **Tan Ta Festival** *CULTURAL*

This festival is held during a 10-day period of October or November, with temple ceremonies, rocket launches from special towers and hot-air balloons. The rockets, which often contain lucky amulets, blast into the sky; those who find the amulets are assured of good luck.

## **MINORITY GROUPS OF XISHUANGBANNA**

The Dai (傣) are Hinayana Buddhists (as opposed to China's majority Mahayana Buddhists) who first appeared 2000 years ago in the Yangzi Valley and were subsequently driven south to here by the Mongol invasion of the 13th century. The common dress for Dai women is a straw hat or towel-wrap headdress, a tight, short blouse in a bright colour, and a printed sarong with a belt of silver links. Some Dai men tattoo their bodies with animal designs, and betel-nut chewing is popular. Many Dai youngsters get their teeth capped with gold. Dai language is quite similar to Lao and northern Thai dialects. Some Dai phrases include *douzao li* (hello), *yindi* (thank you) and *goihan* (goodbye).

The Jinuo people (傣), sometimes known as the Youle, were officially 'discovered' as a minority in 1979 and are among the smallest groups – numbering between 12,000 and 18,000. They call themselves 'those who respect the uncle' and are thought to possibly have descended from the Qiang. The women wear a white cowl, a cotton tunic with bright horizontal stripes and a tubular black skirt. Earlobe decoration is an elaborate custom – the larger the hole and the more flowers it can contain, the more beautiful the woman is considered. Teeth are sometimes painted black with the sap of the lacquer tree, for both beauty and to protect from teeth decay.

The Bulang people (佤) live mainly in the Bulang, Xiding and Bada mountains of Xishuangbanna. They keep to the hills farming cotton, sugarcane and pu'er tea, one of Yunnan's most famous exports. Men traditionally tattoo their arms, legs, chests and stomachs while women wear vibrant headdresses decorated with flowers. Avid betel-nut chewers, the women believe black teeth are beautiful.

The Hani (哈尼), also known in adjacent countries as the Akha) are closely related to the Yi as a part of the Tibeto-Burman group; the language is Sino-Tibetan but uses Han characters for the written form. They are mostly famed for their river valley rice terraces, especially in the Red River valley, between the Ailao and Wuliang Shan, where they cultivate rice, corn and the occasional poppy. Hani women (especially the Aini, a subgroup of the Hani) wear headdresses of beads, feathers, coins and silver rings, some of which are made with French (Vietnamese), Burmese and Indian coins from the turn of the century.

---

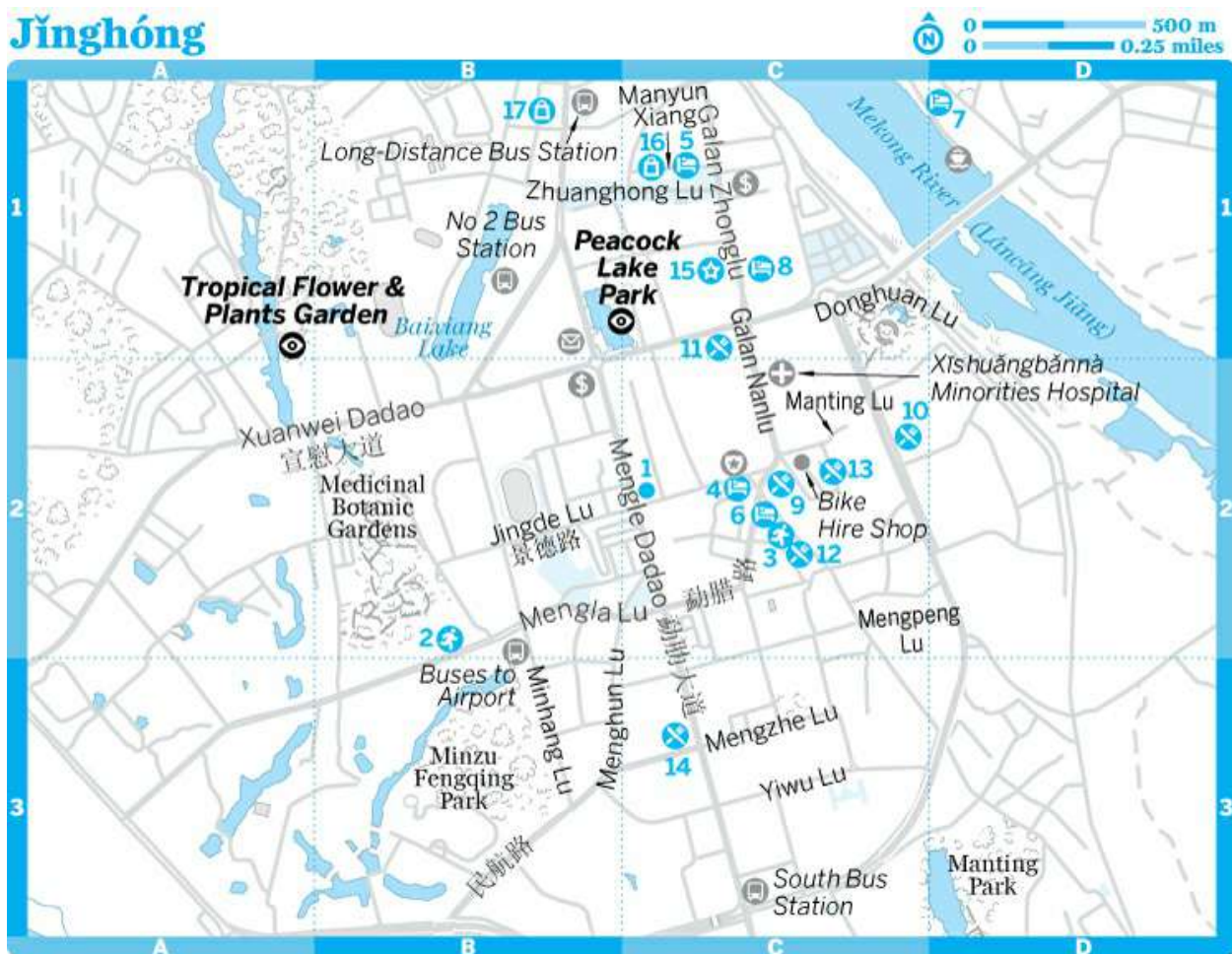
## Jinghong

 0691 / POP 520,000

Jinghong – the ‘City of Dawn’ in local Dai language – is the capital of Xishuangbanna Prefecture, but don't take that too seriously. It's a drowsy Mekong River jungle town as much as a city. Buildings are going up, neophyte tour groups run around in all directions (great people-watching fun, actually) but it's still a perfect representation of laid-back Banna.

In the summer, the low season, prepare yourself for searing heat and a sapping humidity that puts the entire city into an extended slow motion. If you've acclimatised to higher and nipier elevations in Yunnan, you'll probably find yourself needing lots of midday siestas. During the winter months, though, the temperature is just perfect.

# Jinghóng



## Jinghong

### Top Sights

[Peacock Lake Park](#) B1

[Tropical Flower & Plants Garden](#) A1

### Activities, Courses & Tours

[1 Blind Massage School](#) C2

[2 Forest Cafe](#) B2

[3 Mekong Cafe](#) C2



## Sleeping

- 4 [King Land Hotel](#) C2

---

- 5 [Many Trees International Youth Hostel](#) C1

---

- 6 [Mekong River International Youth Hostel](#) C2

---

- 7 [North Bank Youth Hostel](#) D1

---

- 8 [Popular Holiday Hotel](#) C1

---

## Eating

- 9 [Banna Cafe](#) C2

---

- 10 [Dai BBQ restaurants](#) C2

---

- 11 [Luo Luo Bing Wu](#) C1

---

- 12 [Meimei Cafe](#) C2

---

- 13 [Thai Restaurant](#) C2

---

- 14 [Wangtianshu Deli](#) C3

---

## Entertainment

- 15 [Mengbala Naxi Arts Theatre](#) C1

---

## Shopping

- 16 [Jade Market](#) C1

---

- 17 [Market](#) B1

---

## Sights & Activities

### Tropical Flower & Plants Garden *GARDENS*

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Redai Huahuiyuan*; 99 *Jinghong Xilu*; admission ¥40; 🕒 7.30am-6pm) This terrific botanic garden, west of the town centre, is one of Jinghong's better attractions. Admission gets you into a series of gardens where you can view over 1000 different types of plant life. Take the path on the left-hand side as you enter the gardens to head towards the lovely tropical rainforest area.

### Peacock Lake Park *PARK*

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

The artificial lake in the centre of town isn't much, but the small park (; Kongque Hu Gongyuan) next to it is pleasant. The English Language Corner takes place here every Sunday evening, so this is a great opportunity to exchange views or to engage with the locals practising their English.

## Blind Massage School MASSAGE

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( Mangren Anmo; cnr Mengle Dadao & Jingde Lu; ☺ 8am-midnight) Jinghong's oft-recommended Blind Massage School offers hour-long massages for ¥50. Staff are extremely kind and travellers give it terrific reports. Head down the lane off Mengle Dadao and climb the stairs on your left up to the 2nd floor.

## Sleeping

Manting Lu is lined with cheapies, where you can find bearable rooms from ¥50. Outside of festival season, big discounts are normally on offer all over town.

## Many Trees International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( Manlicui Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 212 6210; 5 Manyun Xiang; 5 dm ¥30-35, d ¥85-95; 🌐📶) Jinghong's first hostel offers smallish dorms that have ensuite bathrooms. The doubles are a good deal for the price. There's wi-fi throughout and a cosy communal area. It's down an alley off Galan Zhonglu.

## Mekong River International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

[Google map](#)

( Meigong He Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 229 8000; 6 Menglong Lu; 6 G dm ¥30, d ¥128; 🌐@📶) This centrally located hostel has a utilitarian feel and some big barren rooms. It's a little scruffy and the dorm beds are rock hard but otherwise it's a very convenient base. It's popular

with Chinese backpackers but some English is spoken.

## North Bank Youth Hostel *HOSTEL* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Bei An Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 221 9177; D9 Yijingwan, Jingliang Lu; D9; dm ¥35, s ¥80, d ¥90-130; 📶@📶) Located across the river on the north bank of the Mekong (hence the name), this hostel is a solid 25-minute walk from the centre of town. If you don't mind the walk to town, it's a peaceful spot located inside a residential compound, with a big airy lobby, clean rooms and reliable wi-fi. It's difficult to find the first time so have your taxi driver call the hostel for directions.

## Popular Holiday Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jiari Shishang Jiudian*; 📍 213 9001; 104 Galan Zhonglu; 104 d ¥358; 📶@) Standing out from the three-star pack by virtue of its sizeable, light, clean and modern rooms, many of which come with computers, the optimistic name of this place is well justified. Ignore the listed prices; you should be able to get a room for ¥100 to ¥120 outside of festival time.

## King Land Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Jinglan Jiudian*; 📍 216 6999; [www.newtgh.com](http://www.newtgh.com); 6 Jingde Lu; 6 d US\$160; 📶@📶) Sporting two enormous elephants at its entrance, this is one of Jinghong's unmistakable landmarks. It has a super central location, four-star standard rooms and a swimming pool. Amenities here include the Lao consulate and Lao airlines office. Discounts of 60% available.

## Eating

The Dai restaurants along Menghun Lu and the excellent Dai barbecue restaurants off Manting Lu are where you'll find the locals and the most authentic and tastiest food in town (as well as at the

night markets that pop up all over town).

Dai dishes include barbecued fish, eel or beef cooked with lemongrass or served with peanut and tomato sauce. Vegetarians can order roast bamboo shoots prepared in the same fashion. Other specialities include fried river moss (better than it sounds and excellent with beer), spicy bamboo-shoot soup and *shaokao* (skewers of meat wrapped in banana leaves and grilled over wood fires).

## Meimei Cafe WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Meimei Kafeiting; Menglong Lu; dishes from ¥15-35; ☺ 8.30am-1am; 📶* ) You'll find it and you'll eat here. This is the original of all the Western-style cafes in town and still the best, thanks to its menu of burgers and sandwiches, pizza and pasta, and foreigner-friendly Chinese and Thai dishes. The owner Orchid is a great source of local info.

## Luo Luo Bing Wu NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *96 Xuanwei Dadao; dishes from ¥5; ☺ 7.30am-10pm* ) A buzzing local spot, Jīnghongers flock here for the cheap and tasty rice noodle and fried rice dishes, as well as fruit juices, shakes and Taiwanese-style shaved ice desserts that are perfect for cooling off. There's also an open-air area out back.

## Thai Restaurant THAI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Taiguo Canting; Manting Lu; mains from ¥12; ☺ 8am-9.30pm* ) If you're not making the trek overland to Southeast Asia, get your Thai fix at this ever-reliable open-air restaurant. It's not the most upmarket Thai place in town, but it's certainly the most popular and there's a huge range of dishes to choose from.

## Banna Cafe WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Banna Kafei*; 1 Manting Lu; breakfast from ¥25; ☺ 7am-late; 📍) A good place for breakfast, this friendly, Akha-owned cafe also has a small terrace that is ideal for a sundowner or late-evening libation while watching the world go by.

## Wangtianshu Deli WESTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Wangtianshu Meishi*; 111 Mengzhe Lu; dishes ¥12-30; ☺ 8.30am-10.30pm; 📍) Swiss-owned deli with European bread, homemade ice cream and lots of other goodies, including French wine and cheese, you won't find anywhere else in the region. There's also a small but decent menu of salads and steaks.

## ★ Entertainment

### Mengbala Naxi Arts Theatre THEATRE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Mengbala Naxi Yishugong*; Galan Zhonglu; tickets ¥190; ☺ 8.10pm & 9.45pm) Wildly popular with tour groups, this theatre has nightly song and dance shows.

## 🛒 Shopping

Market groupies can head to the fabulous fish and produce **market** tucked behind some modern buildings across from the long-distance bus station. The nearby **Jade Market** ( *Yu Shizhang*; *Zhuanghong Lu*) features lots of Burmese and other South Asians hawking their goods alongside locals, and is fun for people-watching as well as shopping.

## 📍 Information

Every once in a while we get reports from travellers regarding drug and rob incidents on the Kunming–Jinghong bus trip. Be friendly but

aware, accept nothing, and never leave your stuff unattended when you hop off for a break.

**Bank of China** (*Zhongguo Yinhang; Xuanwei Dadao*) Changes travellers cheques and foreign currency, and has an ATM machine. There are other branches on Galan Zhonglu and Minhang Lu.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Mengle Dadao & Xuanwei Dadao; ☎ 8am-8.30pm*) You can make international calls from here.

**Internet cafes** (*wangba; Manting Lu; per hr ¥3*) There are many internet cafes along this street.

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; 13 Jingde Lu; ☎ 8-11.30am & 3-5.30pm Mon-Fri)** Has a fairly speedy visa-extension service.

**Xishuangbanna Minorities Hospital** (*Xishuangbanna Minzu Yiyuan; 📍 213 0123; Galan Nanlu*) The best bet for having an English speaker available.

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO THAILAND

Not that long ago travellers could travel by cargo boat or ferry to Thailand; the journey took anywhere from seven to 15 hours. However, river traffic was halted on the Mekong in October 2011 after 13 Chinese sailors were massacred on their cargo vessels, in drug-related violence. At the time of research the only way to reach Thailand directly was to fly (twice weekly to Bangkok, ¥1700–2100 one-way). However, you could ask about hitching a ride on a cargo boat, these leave from Guanlei ( ), about 75km southeast of Jinhong. Make enquiries at the cafes in Jinhong for the latest schedule. The only other way to go is to first head into Laos and then skip over the Thai border.

## **i** Getting There & Away

### Air

There are several flights a day to Kunming (¥1150) but in April (when the water-splashing festival is held) you'll need to book tickets several days in advance to get either in or out.

In peak seasons you can hop on one or two flights daily to Dali (¥990) and/or Lijiang (¥1060), along with semiregular flights to

Shanghai (¥2440, daily) and Chengdu (¥1400, three per week). There are travel agents all over town selling tickets.

## Bus

The **long-distance bus station** (*changtu keyunzhan; Minhang Lu*) is the most useful for long-distance destinations, and also has a daily bus to Luang Nam Tha in Laos (¥78, seven hours, 10.40am).

**Jianshui** ¥177, 12 to 17 hours, two daily (7pm and 8pm)

**Kunming** ¥220–253, nine to 10 hours, nine daily (8am to 10pm)

**Lijiang** ¥276–333, 18 hours, one daily (9.30pm)

**Ruili** ¥340, 24 to 26 hours, one daily (9am)

**Xiaguan** ¥200, 16 hours, two daily (8.30am and 10am)

If you want to explore Xishuangbanna, go to the No 2 bus station (; di'er keyunzhan), also known as the Banna bus station.

**Ganlanba** ¥8.50, 40 minutes, every 30 minutes (7am to 7pm)

**Menghai** ¥15, 45 minutes, every 20 minutes (7am to 7.20pm)

**Menghun** ¥16, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes (7am to 6.40pm)

**Mengla** ¥44, two hours 30 minutes, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 6.20pm)

**Menglun** ¥17, 1½ hours, every 20 minutes (7am to 6pm)

**Menyang** ¥10, 40 minutes, half-hourly (8am to 6pm)

**Sanchahe** ¥15, one hour, 10 daily (7.30am to 5pm)

**Simao** ¥55, two hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 7pm)

For buses to Damenglong, head to the south bus station (; keyun nanzhan), which also has departures to Kunming.

If you want to get to the Yuanyang Rice Terraces, first you'll have to take a bus to Jiangcheng (; ¥56, nine to 10 hours, 6.30am or 9.15am), stay there overnight and then hop on another bus to Luchun (; ¥34, five hours), a nice Hani town with a good market, before hopping on a bus to Yuanyang (¥34, four hours). You could also take a bus from the main station to Jianshui (18 hours) and catch a bus to Yuanyang, this route is longer but involves less changes.

## **i** Getting Around

The No 1 bus (¥2) runs to the airport, 5km south of the city, from a stop on Mengla Lu near the corner with Minhang Lu. A taxi will cost around ¥20 but expect to be hit up for up to three times that amount during festivals.

Jinghong is small enough that you can walk to most destinations, but a bike makes life easier and can be rented through most accommodation for ¥25 to ¥30 a day or from the **bike shop** (🚲) 8.30am-10pm) on Manting Lu.

A taxi anywhere in town costs ¥6.

---

## Around Jinghong

Trekking (or busing) to the endless minority villages is the draw. You can spend weeks, but even with limited time most destinations in Xishuangbanna are only two or three hours away by bus. Note that to get to the most isolated villages, you'll often first have to take the bus to a primary (and uninteresting) village and stay overnight there, since only one bus per day – if that – travels to the tinier villages.

Market addicts can rejoice – it's an artist's palette of colours in outlying villages. The most popular markets seem to be the Thursday market in Xiding, then Menghun, followed by Menghai.

Many villages can be reached by bike from Jinghong. The most famous trek has always been the two- to three-hour ride to Menghan (Ganlanba); the ride can be hairy with traffic and pollution, but the village surroundings are sublime.

Take note: it can feel like every second village begins with the prefix 'Meng' and it isn't unheard of for travellers to end up at the wrong village entirely because of communication problems. Have your destination written down in script before you head off.

### **SANCHAHE NATURE RESERVE**

This nature reserve (Sanchahe Ziran Baohuqu), 48km north of Jinghong, is one of five enormous forest reserves in southern Yunnan.



It has an area of nearly 1.5 million hectares; seriously, treat it with respect – you get off-trail here, you won't be found. The madding crowds head for **Banna Wild Elephant Valley** (*Banna Yexianggu*; admission ¥65), named after the 50 or so wild elephants that live in the valley. The elephants are very retiring and rare are the travellers who have actually seen any of them. You will see monkeys, though, and it's worth a visit if you want to see something of the local forest. A 2km-long **cable car** (*one way/return ¥50/70*) runs over the tree tops from the main entrance into the heart of the park, as does an elevated walkway.

There is no accommodation in the park; it's best to stay in Jinghong. There are 10 buses daily to Sanchahe (¥15, 1½ hours, 7.30am to 5pm).

## MENGYǍNG

The much photographed **Elephant-Shaped Banyan Tree** (; Xiangxing Rongshu) is the reason most people visit Mengyang, 34km northeast of Jinghong on the road to Simao. It's also a centre for the Hani, Floral-Belt Dai and Lahu, one of the poorest minorities in the region.

From Mengyang it's another 19km southeast to **Jinuo** (), which is home base for the Jinuo minority.

## MENGHǍN (GǍNLǍNBA) (

A few years ago, Menghan (or Ganlanba as it's sometimes referred to) was a grand destination – you'd bike here and chill. Sadly, much of the main attraction – the lovely, friendly, somnolent village itself – has basically been roped off as a quasi minority theme park (and a pricey one at that) with tour buses, cacophonous dancing – the usual. That said, the environs of the village are still wondrous.

## Sights

### **Dai Minority Park** ANCIENT VILLAGE

(*Daizuyuan*; ☎ 0691 250 4099; *Manting Lu*; admission ¥100) This was once the part of town that everyone in this region came to experience – especially for its classic temples and Dai families hosting

visitors in their traditional homes. (It's now the aforementioned 'theme park'.) Tourists can spend the night in villagers' homes and partake in water-splashing 'festivals' twice a day. To join the splash party you need to pay an additional ¥40. Despite the artificial nature of it all, some travellers have loved the experience.

For wonderful scenery along rivers and rice paddies, travellers recommend heading to the south of town, crossing the Mekong by ferry (¥2 with a bike), and then heading left (east). The last ferry returns at 7pm.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Beds in a Dai home within the park will cost between ¥40 and ¥60 per person. Food is extra. Beds are traditional Dai mats and are usually very comfortable. Most homes will also have showers for you. Restaurants inside the park are pricey and firmly aimed at tour groups.

## **Getting There & Away**

Buses to Menghan leave from Jinghong's No 2 bus station (¥8.50, every 20 minutes, 7.15am to 7pm). From Menghan's bus station, there are buses back to Jinghong (¥8.50) every 20 minutes and two buses a day to Menglun (¥9.50, one hour, 10am and 2pm).

It's possible to cycle from Jinghong to Menghan in a brisk two hours or a leisurely three hours, although the traffic can be heavy.

## **Getting Around**

You can rent a mountain bike from one of several bicycle shops along Manting Lu (¥20 per day).

## **ETIQUETTE IN DAI TEMPLES**

Around Dai temples the same rules apply as elsewhere: dress appropriately (no sleeveless tops or shorts); take off shoes before entering; don't take photos of monks or the inside of temples without permission; leave a donation if you do take any shots and consider leaving a token donation even if you don't – unlike in Thailand, these Buddhists receive no government assistance. It is polite to *wai* the monks as a greeting and remember to never rub anyone's head, raise yourself higher than a Buddha figure or point your feet at anyone.

(This last point applies to secular buildings too. If you stay the night in a Dai household, it is good form to sleep with your feet pointing towards the door.)

## MENGLUN

East of Menghan, Menglun sports the **Tropical Plant Gardens** (*Redai Zhiwuyuan*; admission ¥80; ☀ 7.30am-midnight). The gardens are gorgeous and get some high marks from visitors.

To get there, turn left out of the bus station and then take the first left. Follow the road downhill and bear right and you'll reach the ticket office, which is just before a footbridge across the Mekong.

Your best bet for a clean bed in town is the **Chunlin Binguan** (📞 0691 871 5681; d ¥60), which is close to the gardens' entrance.

From Jinghong's No 2 bus station there are buses to Menglun (¥16, 90 minutes, every 20 minutes, 6.30am to 6.20pm). Alternatively, Menglun can be combined with a day trip to Menghan.

From Menglun, there are buses to Mengla (¥24, 2½ hours, every 20 minutes, 8am to 6pm) and Jinghong (¥16, 75 minutes, every 20 minutes, 6.30am to 7pm).

## MENGLA

Mengla is the first (or last) main city for travellers headed to/from Laos. It has a few palm-tree-lined streets and some garish orange-coloured buildings designed with local architecture in mind, but little in the way of sights. Depending on bus condition/road traffic/arrival time, you may be stuck here for the night (the border is another 45km away). If you need a hotel, try the **Jinqiao Dajiudian** (📞 0691 812 4946; d ¥60-100, tr ¥90; 🌃), convenient for the north bus station just up the hill.

Mengla has two bus stations. The northern long-distance bus station has buses to Kunming (¥287, two or three buses daily, 8.30am to 11.30am). The No 2 bus station is in the southern part of town.

Buses from Mengla's No 2 station:

**Jinghong** ¥44, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Menglun** ¥20 to ¥25, every 20 minutes (6.40am to 7.30pm)

**Mohan** ¥15, every 20 minutes (8am to 6pm)

## **DAMENGLONG**

Damenglong (just the latter two characters, 'Menglong', are written on buses) is a scrappy place with drowsy folks lolling about the dusty streets. Sights include some decent pagodas, but mostly you're here to traipse or bike through endless villages (ask about bike hire at the Hua Jie Binguan).

About 55km south of Jinghong and a few kilometres from the Myanmar border, the border crossing point (not open for foreigners) with Myanmar has been designated as the entry point for a planned highway linking Thailand, Myanmar and China, which should really liven things up around here if it ever gets built.

### **Sights**

#### **White Bamboo Shoot Pagoda** *BUDDHIST PAGODA*

(*Manfeilong Ta*; admission ¥10) Surrounded by jungle (watch out for stray snakes!), this pagoda dates back to 1204 and is Damenglong's premier attraction. According to the legend, this pagoda's temple was built on the location of a hallowed footprint left behind by Sakyamuni Buddha, who is said to have visited Xishuangbanna. If you have an interest in ancient footprints you can look for it in a niche below one of the nine stupas. The temple has been extensively renovated in recent years.

If you're in the area late October or early November, check the precise dates of the **Tan Ta Festival**. At this time, White Bamboo Shoot Pagoda is host to hundreds of locals whose celebrations include dancing, rocket launchings, paper balloons and so on.

The pagoda is easy to get to: just walk back along the main road towards Jinghong for 2km until you reach a small village with a temple on your left. From here there's a path up the hill, it's about a 20-minute walk. There's often no one around to collect the entry fee. A motor-rickshaw from Damenglong is ¥10.

## **FREE** Black Pagoda *BUDDHIST PAGODA*

Just above the centre of town is a Dai monastery with a steep path beside it leading up to the Black Pagoda (; Hei Ta) – you’ll notice it when entering Damenglong. The pagoda itself is actually gold, not black. Take a stroll up and have a chat with the five young monks in residence. The views of Damenglong and surrounding countryside are more interesting than the temple itself.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Hua Jie Binguan** *HOTEL* \$

( 📞 0691 274 2588; d ¥60) Not very prepossessing, but the best option in town. To get here, turn right out of the bus station, then left up the hill and it’s on the left-hand side, set back from the road.

There are simple Dai barbecue places scattered around the village. Try the ones close to the Black Pagoda.

### **Getting There & Away**

Buses to Damenglong (¥17, 90 minutes, every 15 minutes, 6.30am to 6.30pm) leave from Jinghong’s south bus station. Remember, the ‘Da’ character is sometimes not displayed. Buses for the return trip run on the same schedule.

## **MENGHAI**

This modern town is another potential base for exploring the countryside, although it’s not as pleasant a place as Jinghong. Grab a bike and head north for the most interesting pagodas and villages.

If you’re passing through Menghai, it’s worth visiting the huge daily **produce market** that attracts members of the hill tribes. The best way to find it is to follow the early-morning crowds.

Buses run from Jinghong’s No 2 bus station to Menghai (¥15, 45 minutes, every 20 minutes, 7am to 7.20pm). They return every 20 minutes or so too.

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO LAOS

On-the-spot visas for Laos can be obtained at the border. The price will depend on your nationality (generally US\$35 to US\$40). You can also pick one up at the **Lao Consulate** (🕒 8.30am-11.30am & 1.30-4pm) located on the ground floor of the King Land Hotel Jinhong.

The **Chinese checkpoint** (📞 0691 812 2684; 🕒 8am-5.30pm) is generally not much of an ordeal. Don't forget that Laos is an hour behind China.

A daily bus runs to Luang Nam Tha in Laos from Jinhong (¥78, seven hours, 10.40am). Along with the bus to Vientiane from Kunming (which leaves Kunming at 5pm when there are enough passengers; ¥486), it stops at Mengla, but you're not guaranteed a seat.

No matter what anyone says, there should be no 'charge' to cross. Once your passport is stamped (double-check all stamps), you can jump on a tractor or truck to take you 3km into Laos for around ¥5. Whatever you do, go early, in case things wrap up early on either side. There are guesthouses on both the Chinese and Lao sides; people generally change money on the Lao side.

## MENGHUN

This quiet little village, about 26km southwest of Menghai, has a colourful **Sunday market**. The town begins buzzing around 7am and the action lingers on through to midday. The swirl of hill tribes-people alone, with the women sporting fancy leggings, headdresses, earrings and bracelets, makes the trip worthwhile. Some travellers love it, while others decry the 'foreignisation' of locals.

There are several guesthouses, though none are remarkable. For ¥50 you get a double with bathroom and TV, but no air-con.

Buses departing from Jinhong for Menghun (¥16, 90 minutes, every 20 minutes, 7am to 6.40pm) run from the No 2 bus station.

From Menghun, minibuses run regularly to Menghai (¥6, one hour), Xiding (¥12, 1½ hours, 7.10am and 4pm) and throughout the day to Jinhong.

## XIDING

This sleepy hillside hamlet comes alive every Thursday for its weekly **market**, one of the best in the region (7am to 11am). At other times you'll find Xiding almost deserted. If you want to see the market at its most interesting, you'll really have to get here the night before. There's

a small hostel located inside the newly built bus station, with four- or six-bed dorms with beds costing ¥50.

To get here by public transport you can catch one of the two direct buses from Menghai (¥15, 10.40am and 3.30pm); going the other way you can catch the bus back to Menghai at 8am and 12.10pm. There are also twice daily buses from Xiding to Menghun (¥11, 7.20am and 1pm). If you miss the bus you can always get a ride on a motorbike (¥30), a spectacular if hair-raising experience.

## **JINGZHEN**

In the village of Jingzhen, about 14km west of Menghai, is the **Octagonal Pavilion** (*Bajiao Ting*; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-6pm), first built in 1701. The original structure was severely damaged during the Cultural Revolution but renovated in 1978 and the ornate decoration is still impressive. The temple also operates as a monastic school. The paintings on the wall of the temple depict scenes from the Jataka , the life history of Buddha.

Frequent minibuses from the bus station in Menghai go via Jingzhen (¥6 to ¥8, 30 minutes).



# Sichuan

POP 84 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Chengdu](#)

[Emei Shan](#)

[Leshan](#)

[Langzhong](#)

[Zigong](#)

[Bamboo Sea](#)

[Kangding \(Dartsendo\)](#)

[Danba \(Rongtrak\)](#)

[Sichuan–Tibet Hwy](#)

[Songpan](#)

[Jiuzhaigou National Park](#)

---

## Why Go?

Like the theatre performances of *bianlian* (face-changing) that originated here, Sichuan ( is a land of many guises. Capital Chengdu is quick to show its modern China face, but you don't have to venture far to see a more traditional pose. The countryside is scattered with



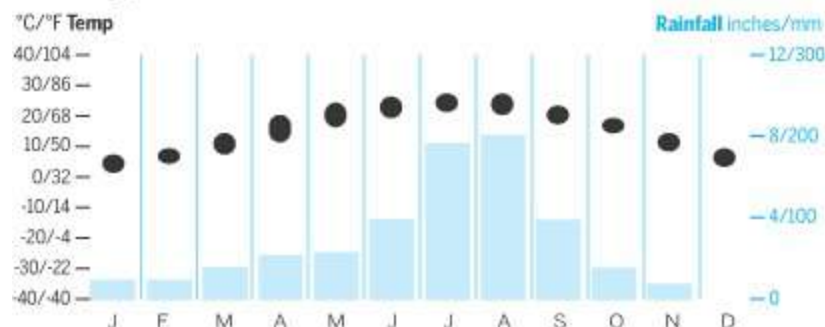
ancient villages and teahouses, while mist-shrouded mountains creak with wooden monasteries. Central Sichuan is also home to the giant panda, the most famous face in China.

Head north, though, and you find a Chinese province posing as a region of alpine valleys and forested hills dotted with blue-green lakes and wonderful hiking trails. The hiking becomes spectacularly good as you venture west to witness Sichuan's fabulous impression of Tibet. This is Kham, one of old Tibet's three traditional provinces: a vast landscape of high-plateau grasslands and glacial mountains where Tibetan culture still thrives and where you're almost certain to have your most challenging, yet most memorable, experiences.

---

## When to Go

### Chéngdū



**Mar–May** Prime time for Chengdu. Not too humid, no summer rains yet; peach blossoms.

**Jul & Aug** Good time to visit the Tibetan areas – weather's warm and horse festivals abound.

**Jun–Oct** Head north to turquoise lakes, warm camping and stunning autumn forests.

---

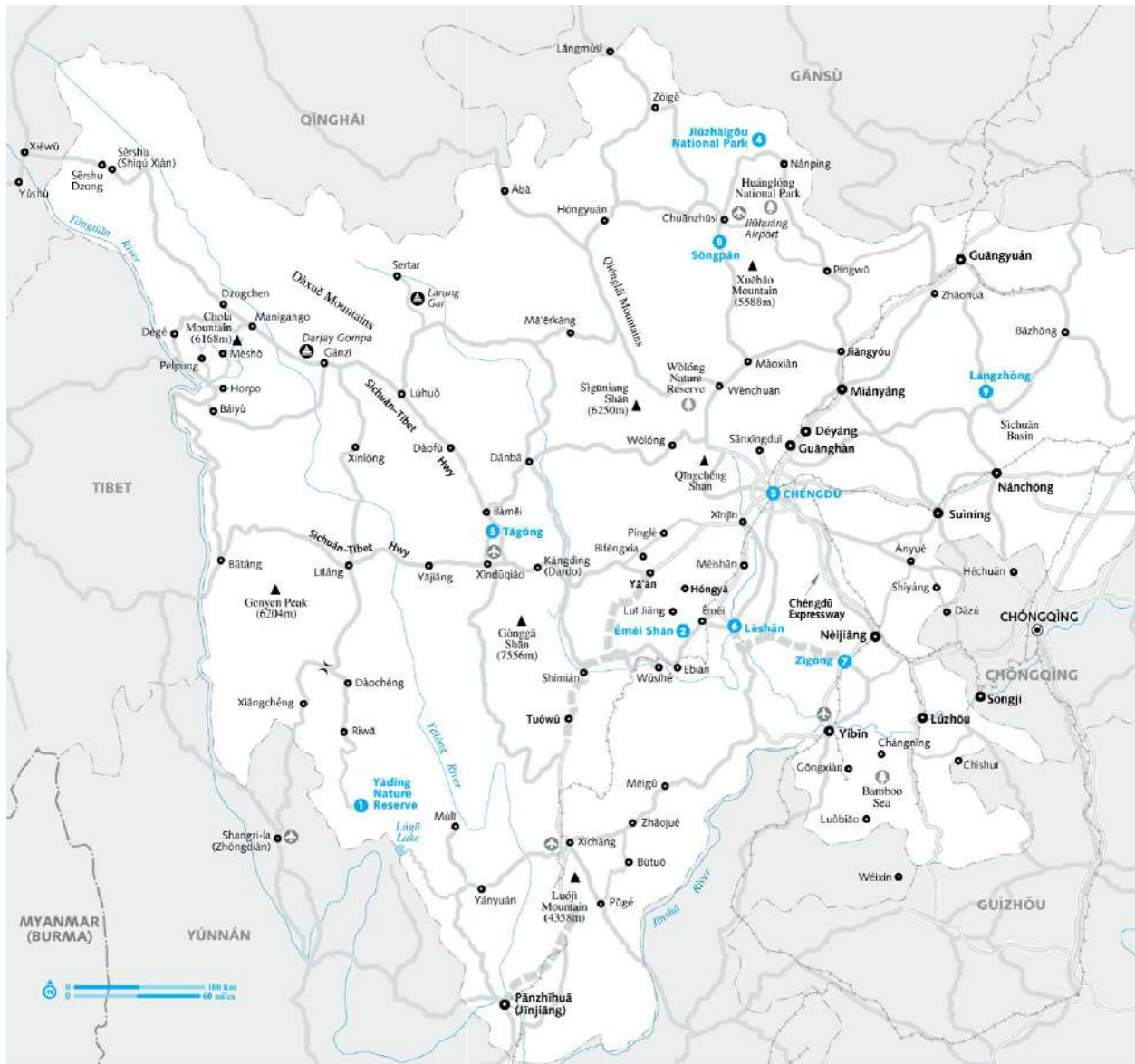
## Best Hiking

- » Yading Nature Reserve ([Click here](#))
- » Kangding ([Click here](#))
- » Tagong ([Click here](#))
- » Jiuzhaigou National Park ([Click here](#))

- » Emei Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Bamboo Sea ([Click here](#))

## Best History & Culture

- » Chengdu ([Click here](#))
- » Zigong ([Click here](#))
- » Langzhong ([Click here](#))
- » Ganzi ([Click here](#))
- » Danba ([Click here](#))



---

## Sichuan Highlights

- 1 Join Tibetans on a pilgrimage trek around the stunning holy mountain of **Yading Nature Reserve** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Sleep in a monastery on the beautiful forested slopes of **Emei Shan** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Get eye to eye with China's cuddliest national icon at Chengdu's **Giant Panda Breeding Research Base** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Go camping along alpine-esque valleys as part of the ecotourism program at **Jiuzhaigou National Park** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Stay with Tibetan nomads on the gorgeous high-plateau grasslands around **Tagong** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Feel Lilliputian at **Leshan** ([Click here](#)) as you stand beside the toenails of the world's largest Buddha statue
- 7 Visit ancient salt mines, dinosaur fossils and some of the best teahouses in China at the unusual riverside city of **Zigong** ([Click here](#))
- 8 Horse trek in the woods and mountains around the laid-back village of **Songpan** ([Click here](#))
- 9 Stay in a Qing-dynasty courtyard and wander the alleyways in the ancient town of **Langzhong** ([Click here](#))

## History

Sichuan's early history was turbulent. The region was the site of various breakaway kingdoms, ever skirmishing with central authority, but it was finally wrestled into control and established as the capital of the Qin empire in the 3rd century BC. It was here that the kingdom of Shu (a name by which the province is still known) ruled as an independent state during the Three Kingdoms period (AD 220–80).

During the Warring States period (475–221 BC), local governor and famed engineer Li Bing managed to harness the flood-prone Min River (; Min Jiang) on the Chuanxi plain with his revolutionary weir system; the Dujiangyan Irrigation Project ([Click here](#)) still supplies Chengdu with water, and still protects locals from floods, 2200 years after it was constructed! It's one reason why this part of China is known for being

so fertile.

Another more recent factor was the efforts of Zhao Ziyang, governor of Sichuan in 1975 and the province's first Communist Party secretary. After the tragic mistakes made during the Great Leap Forward, when an estimated one-tenth of Sichuan's population starved to death, Ziyang became the driving force behind agricultural and economic reforms that put Sichuan back on the map. His 'Responsibility System', whereby plots of land were let out to individual farmers on the proviso that a portion of the crops be sold back to the government, was so successful it became the national model. This fertile land continues to produce more than 10% of the nation's grain, soybeans, pork and other crops.

Tragedy struck the region on 12 May 2008, when an earthquake measuring 7.9 on the Richter scale hit the province's central region. According to some sources, it killed more than 88,000 people, many of them schoolchildren, and left millions more injured or homeless.

The rebuilding effort in such a remote, mountainous region has taken a number of years. The main road linking Chengdu with tourist Jiuzhaigou took four years to re-open, but bus passengers on that route will now see the region is dotted with a number of brand new towns and villages.

## Language

Sichuanese is a Mandarin dialect, but the pronunciation is different enough that it's often difficult for those who speak standard Chinese to understand. Two words visitors will often hear are *yaode* (pronounced 'yow-day', meaning 'yes' or 'ok') and *meide* (pronounced 'may-day', meaning 'no').

In addition to Mandarin, Sichuan's other major languages belong to the Tibeto-Burman family and are spoken by Tibetans and the Yi.



### Information

At the time of research, almost all internet cafes (; *wangba*) in Sichuan province were following a frustrating new rule, which insists they swipe a Chinese ID card before allowing customers to use the internet, effectively excluding all foreigners. We've still included some internet cafes in this chapter and on our maps in case the rule is lifted by the

time you get here. Try asking at a few: *neng shangwang ma?* (Can I use the internet?), but don't make any plans around being able to get online at any of them.

Note, most of the hotels and hostels we list in this chapter have some sort of internet facility.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥600

\$\$\$ more than ¥600

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥50

\$\$\$ more than ¥50



### Getting There & Around

**AIR** Chengdu's airport is the largest in southwest China. Other smaller airports in Sichuan that are useful for tourists include Jiuzhaigou, in the north, and Kangding, in the west.

**BUS** Speedy expressways in eastern and southern Sichuan make short trips of many destinations from Chengdu.

Heading north of Chengdu or anywhere west of Kangding is a different story altogether. Road and weather conditions deteriorate rapidly and landslides that block the way are common. The scenery, though, can be spectacular.

**TRAIN** Chengdu is the main railway hub in China's southwest, with trains to pretty much anywhere, including Lhasa.

## CENTRAL SICHUAN

The province's modern yet laid-back capital city, Chengdu, is where most travellers start their Sichuan explorations, and it makes a great base for trips out to the region's top sights. This area is dotted with quaint old towns and villages, while lush, forested mountains make for great hiking, especially at Emei Shan. Nearby Leshan houses the world's largest Buddha statue, and then, of course, there are the pandas; practically impossible to see in the wild, they are made accessible here by some excellent wildlife reserves.

## Chengdu

📍 028 / POP 4.1 MILLION

On the face of it, Chengdu has little appeal: it's flat, with no distinguishing natural features; the weather's grey and drizzly for much of the year; and the traffic's appalling. Yet somehow everyone comes away satisfied. Perhaps it's the wonderful teahouses found in the city's many parks and temples. Maybe it's the fabulous food, or the decent nightlife scene. It could simply be the pandas, of course. Who knows? Chances are, though, you'll be able to find out for yourself. Chengdu is the transport hub for the whole of the region, so most travellers pass through this modern, fast-growing, yet surprisingly relaxed city at least once during their forays into China's southwest.

### History

Chengdu has seen the rise and fall of nearly a dozen independent kingdoms or dynasties since its founding in 316 BC; agricultural potential and strategic geography were key to its political power. Yet throughout history it has been equally well known for culture – not by accident did the Tang-dynasty poet Du Fu brush his strokes here.

Two walls were constructed in the Qin dynasty (221–206 BC) to create two adjacent city sections, both lying north of Brocade River (; Jin Jiang). Sadly, nothing remains of either after they were levelled in 1644 by rebel Zhang Xianzhong, who occupied the city, razed it to the ground, murdered most of its residents and then founded his own kingdom.

There's also nothing left of the once vast imperial palace, built in the Ming dynasty (1368–1644) on the site where Tianfu Sq and the Mao

statue now stand. It covered 380,000 sq metres, more than half the size of Beijing's Forbidden City, and one-fifth of Chengdu's total area at the time, but was destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, the last of its magnificent gates finally disappearing in 1979.

These days the city is split by the Brocade River, a reminder of the city's silk brocade industry, which thrived during the Eastern Han dynasty (AD 25–220); from Chengdu, the southern Silk Road guided caravans to the known world.

By the time of the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907), the city had become a cornerstone of Chinese society. Three hundred years later, during the Song dynasty, Chengdu began to issue the world's first paper money.

## Sights

### Giant Panda Breeding Research Base WILDLIFE RESERVE

( Daxiongmao Fanyu Jidi; [www.panda.org.cn](http://www.panda.org.cn); adult/student ¥58/28; 🕒 8am-6pm) One of Chengdu's most popular tourist attractions, this reserve, 18km north of the city centre, is the easiest way to catch a glimpse of Sichuan's most famous residents outside of a zoo. The enclosures here are large and kept in good condition.

Home to nearly 50 giant and red pandas, the base focuses on getting these sexually reluctant creatures to breed; March to May is the 'falling in love period', wink wink. If you visit in autumn or winter, you may see tiny newborns in the nursery.

Try to visit the base in the morning, when the pandas are most active. Feeding takes place around 9.30am, although you'll see them eating in the late afternoon, too. During the middle of the day they spend most of their time sleeping, particularly during the height of midsummer, when they sometimes disappear into their (air-conditioned) living quarters.

Take bus 60 (¥2, one hour, frequent services 7am to 8pm), a little wooden tourist bus, from outside Traffic Inn to Shulong Lu Longqing Lukou ( ) bus stop, from where the panda base is a 400m walk (come back on yourself and turn right). Alternatively, from North Train Station, you can take bus 69 (¥2, 20 minutes, 6am to 8pm) to Zhaojue Si Bus Station ( ; Zhaojue Si Gongjiaozhan) from where bus 87 (¥2, 20

minutes, 6.30am to 8.30pm) runs to the gate of the panda base. All youth hostels run trips here, too.

Wenshu Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

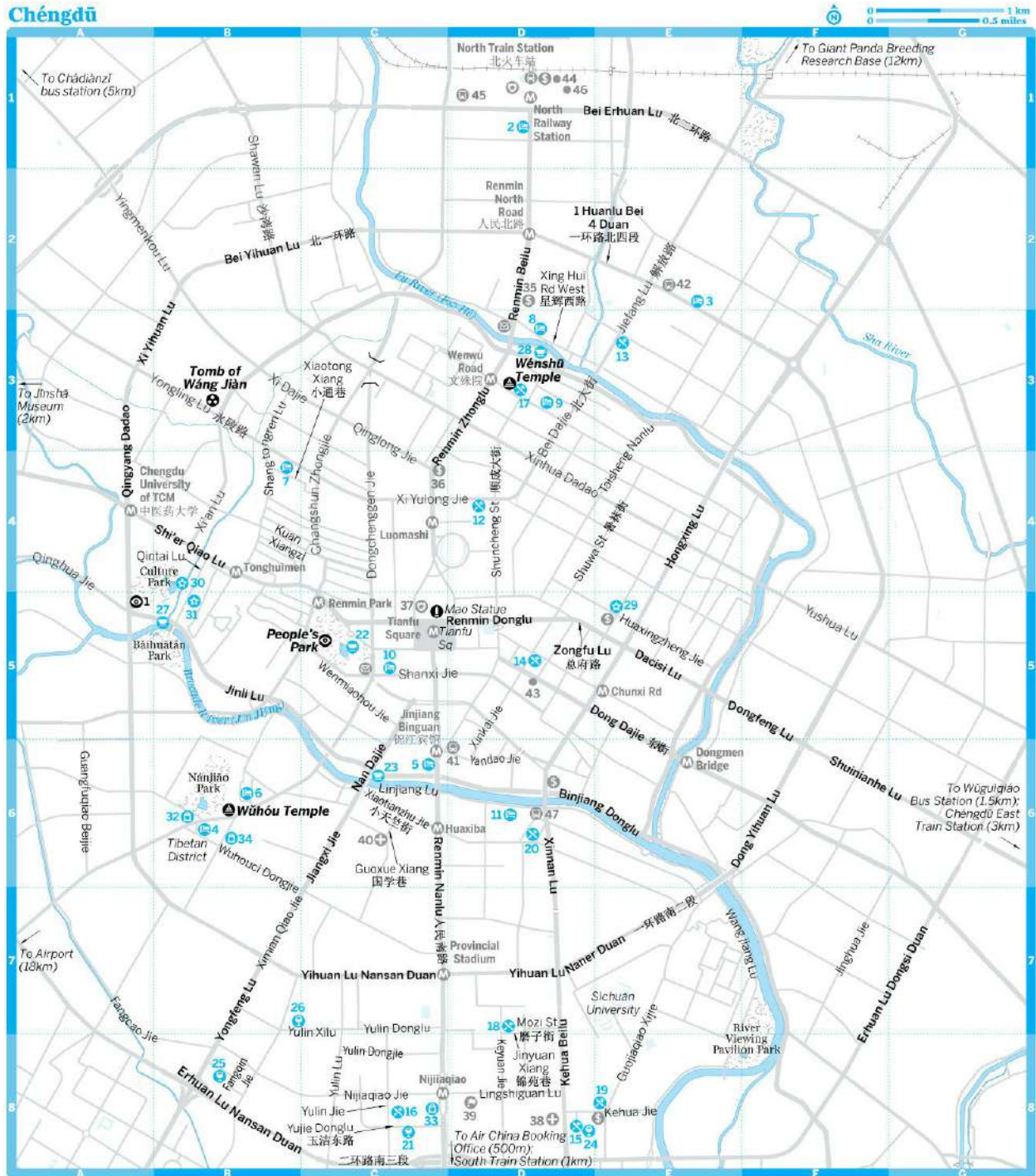
[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wenshu Yuan; Renmin Zhonglu; admission ¥5; 🕒 6am-9pm) This Tang-dynasty monastery is dedicated to Wenshu (Manjushri), the Bodhisattva of Wisdom, and is Chengdu's largest and best-preserved Buddhist temple. The air is redolent with incense, there's a low murmur of chanting, and despite frequent crowds of worshippers, there's still a sense of serenity and solitude. The temple's excellent vegetarian restaurant [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Wenshuyuan Suyan Ting; dishes ¥8-48; 🕒 10.30am-8.30pm) has an English menu, some garden seating and an atmospheric teahouse next door.

Outside the temple is one of Chengdu's three rebuilt '*old*' neighbourhoods, where the narrow streets are lined with teahouses, snack stalls and shops. Touristy, yes, but still fun for a quick wander.



# Chengdu



## Chengdu

 Top Sights

[People's Park](#) C5

[Tomb of Wang Jian](#) B3

[Wenshu Temple](#) D3

[Wuhou Temple](#) B6

 Sights

1 [Green Ram Temple](#) A5

 Sleeping

2 [Chengdu Grand Hotel](#) D1

3 [Hello Chengdu International Youth Hostel](#) E2

4 [Holly's Hostel](#) B6

5 [Jinjiang Hotel](#) C6

6 [Jinli Hotel](#) B6

7 [Loft](#) B4

8 [Mix Hostel](#) D3

9 [Old Chengdu Club](#) D3

10 [Sam's Guesthouse](#) C5

[Traffic Hotel](#) (see 11)

11 [Traffic Inn](#) D6

 Eating

12 [Chen Mapo Doufu](#) D4

13 [Chongqing Baye](#) E3

14 [Chuanchuanxiang Restaurants](#) D5

15 [Hui Zhi Feng](#) D8

[Kampa Tibetan Restaurant](#) (see 4)

16 [Sultan](#) C8

17 [Vegetarian Restaurant](#) D3

18 [Yangyang Canguan](#) D7

19 [Yulin Chuanchuan Xiang](#) E8

20 [Yulin Chuanchuan Xiang](#) D6

 Drinking

21 [Bookworm](#) C8

22 [He Ming Teahouse](#) C5

23 [Lao Nanmen Teahouse](#) C6

24 [Le Cafe Panam\(e\)](#) D8

25 [New Little Bar](#) B8

26 [Old Little Bar](#) B7

27 [Sanhua Lou](#) B5

28 [Tonghu Teahouse](#) D3

 Entertainment

- 29 [Jinjiang Theatre](#) E5
- 30 [Shufeng Yayun Teahouse](#) B4
- 31 [Shufeng Yayun Teahouse](#) B5

 Shopping

- 32 [Sanfo](#) B6
- 33 [Sanfo](#) C8
- 34 Tibetan shops B6

Information

- 35 Bank D2
- 36 [Bank of China](#) C4
- 37 [Chengdu Entry & Exit Service Centre](#) C5
- 38 [Global Doctor Chengdu Clinic](#) D8
- 39 US Consulate D8
- 40 [West China Hospital SCU](#) C6

 Transport

- 41 Airport Shuttle Bus D6
- 42 Beimen Bus Station E2
- 43 [China Southern Airlines](#) D5
- 44 [Intercity Trains Ticket Office](#) D1
- 45 North Train Station Bus Station D1
- 46 Train Ticket Office D1
- 47 Xinnanmen Bus Station D6

Jinsha Site Museum MUSEUM

( Jinsha Yizhi Bowuguan; [www.jinshasitemuseum.com](http://www.jinshasitemuseum.com); 227 Qingyang Dadao; 227 admission ¥80; 🕒 8am-6pm) In 2001 archaeologists made a historic discovery in Chengdu's western suburbs – they unearthed a major site containing ruins of the 3000-year-old Shu kingdom. The site is now home to the excellent Jinsha Site Museum.

This expansive complex includes one building showing the excavation site itself and another beautifully displaying many of the objects that were excavated from the area. Like the earlier discoveries at Sanxingdui, the 6000-plus relics found here, which date from 1200 to 600 BC, include both functional and decorative items, from pottery and tools to jade artefacts, stone carvings and ornate gold masks. There's also a large number of elephant tusks that were unearthed here.

Take bus 82 from near Xinnanmen bus station, passing Wuhou Temple and Green Ram Temple en route. Subway Line 2, once finished, will also go close.

### Tomb of Wang Jian MAUSOLEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wangjian Mu; 10 Yongling Lu; 10 admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-6pm) The only mausoleum excavated in China so far that features an aboveground tomb chamber, this slightly creepy vault honours Wang Jian (847–918), a general who came to power after the AD 907 collapse of the Tang dynasty and became emperor of the Shu kingdom. The tomb itself is decorated with carvings of 24 musicians all playing different instruments, considered to be the best surviving record of a Tang-dynasty musical troupe, while the statue of Wang Jian at the back of the tomb is thought to be the only existing lifelike sculpture of an ancient Chinese king. Take bus 54 from North Train Station bus station.

**FREE** People's Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Renmin Gongyuan; ☺ 6.30am-10pm) Particularly on weekends, People's Park is filled with locals dancing, singing, strolling and practising taichi. There's a small, willow tree-lined boating lake and a number of teahouses: He Ming Teahouse ([Click here](#)) is the most popular.

### Green Ram Temple TAOIST

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qingyang Gong; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-6pm) Located alongside Culture Park (Wenhua Gongyuan; ☺ 7am-10pm), this is Chengdu's oldest and most extensive Taoist temple. It dates from the Zhou dynasty, although most of what you see is Qing. A highlight is the unusually squat, eight-sided pagoda, built without bolts or pegs.

### Wuhou Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wuhou Ci; admission ¥60; ☺ 8am-6pm) Located in Nanjiao Park (Nanjiao Gongyuan; ☺ 6am-10pm) and surrounded by gardens with mossy cypresses draped over walkways, this temple honours several

figures from the Three Kingdoms period, including Emperor Liu Bei and legendary military strategist Zhuge Liang, who was immortalised in one of the classics of Chinese literature, *Romance of the Three Kingdoms* (*San Guo Yanyi*). Just east of the temple is Jinli Gujie (), one of Chengdu's three reconstructed *ye-olde* districts, crammed with souvenir junk stalls and local snacks.

## Sleeping



Hello Chengdu International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Laoshen Qingnian Lushe; 📍 8196 7573, 8335 5322; [www.gogosc.com](http://www.gogosc.com); 211 Huanlu Bei 4 Duan; 211 dm from ¥40, s without/with bathroom ¥90/135, d from ¥170; 🚶🗺️📶📶) Formerly Sim's Cozy Garden Hostel, this used to be one of the best hostels in China, never mind Chengdu, but it has lost some of its finesse since the legendary Sim and Maki sold up. It's still a fabulous space, though, sprawling its way around two garden courtyards, making it ideal if you have kids in tow. Rooms are simple but clean and the facilities are everything you'd expect from a top-class hostel; bike rental (¥10 to ¥15), wi-fi, a decent cafe, DVD hire and good travel advice. Take bus 28 from Xinnanmen bus station or bus 34 from North Train Station. The bus stop to get off at is called Yihuan Lu Beisidian ().



Mix Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Luyouji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 8322 2271; [www.mixhostel.com](http://www.mixhostel.com); 23 Xinghui Rd West; 23 dm/s/d from ¥35/88/98; 🗺️📶📶) More homely than other Chengdu hostels, Mix is tucked away behind a bamboo-guarded entranceway and exudes a lovely laid-back atmosphere, making it more of a peaceful retreat than a party-all-night hostel; a vibe which extends to the lazy teahouses that can be found on the riverside nearby. Not particularly central, but only a short walk from the metro, so it's easy to plug yourself into the city-centre action. It has a cafe, wi-fi (lobby area only), bike rental (¥10) and trustworthy travel advice.

Traffic Inn HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiaotong Qingnian Lushe; 📍 8545 0470; [www.trafficinnhostel.com](http://www.trafficinnhostel.com); 6 Linjiang Zhonglu; 6 dm ¥45, r without/with bathroom ¥110/180; 🌐@📶) Rooms without private bathrooms are best value here, with stripped-wood furniture, tiled flooring and loads of space. The mosaic-tiled shared shower rooms are spotless. Dorms and rooms with private bathrooms are housed in the adjoining Traffic Hotel [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Jiaotong Jiudian; 📍 8545 1017), a good-quality Chinese budget hotel, which has plenty of its own rooms – also spotless, although with less character – going for ¥120 (twins) or ¥50 (fan-cooled singles) after discounts. There’s good wi-fi connection in all rooms, staff members are helpful and the location, close to Xinnanmen bus station, is extremely convenient for day trips. Bike rental costs ¥30.

Jinli Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinli Kezhan; 📍 6631 1335; 11 Zhangwu Jie; 11 s/d ¥480/560; 🌐) If you don’t mind the touristy surroundings on the Jinli shopping street near Wuhou Temple, this upmarket inn, off Wuhouci Dajie and set in two courtyard-style buildings, is a fun place to stay. Rooms mix traditional Chinese wooden furnishings with modern touches such as puffy white duvets and wide-screen TVs. Discounts of around 40%.

Jinjiang Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Binguan; 📍 8550 6050; [www.jjhotel.com](http://www.jjhotel.com); 80 Renmin Nanlu; 80 r from ¥1700, discounted to ¥1119; 🌐@📶) Jinjiang was Sichuan’s first-ever five-star hotel and, up until the late ’70s, its nine-storey block was the tallest building in Chengdu. There are more luxurious hotels in the city these days, but this one retains a certain charm that the bigger international chains lack. Guests are greeted by a string quartet in the lobby and staff members are both courteous and well turned out; especially the red-uniformed bell hops.

Loft HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sihao Gongchang Qingnian Luguan; 📍 8626 5770; [www.lofthostel.com](http://www.lofthostel.com); 4 Shangtongren Lu, Xiaotong Xiang; 4 dm/s/d/tr ¥50/120/220/300; 🌐@📶) Chic boutique meets urban youth hostel at

this trendy converted printing factory. Loft is a hostel for grown-ups, with a delightful cafe and an arty vibe – exposed brickwork, black-tiled bathrooms, gritty central courtyard. There's also free internet, bike rental and solid travel advice.

Holly's Hostel HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiulongding Qingnian Kezhan; 📍 8554 8131; hollyhostelcn@yahoo.com; 246 Wuhouci Dajie; 246 dm ¥35-50, d ¥260 & ¥280, discounted to ¥120 & ¥160; 📶@📶) Prepare for your trip out west by first plugging yourself in to Chengdu's small Tibetan community, which centres on this district. Holly's is cute and friendly, has wi-fi throughout, bike rental (¥20) and a neat rooftop cafe.

Sam's Guesthouse HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shanmu Kezhan; 📍 8611 8322; [www.hostelchengdu.com](http://www.hostelchengdu.com); 130 Shanxi Jie; 130 dm/r ¥60/160; 📶@📶) The traveller vibe isn't as strong here as at other hostels, but the attraction, apart from the central location, is that rooms are housed inside the beautiful 300-year-old Shanxi Guild Hall ( Shanxi Huiguan), which also contains, within its courtyard, the pricey but delightful Shanxi Teahouse (tea from ¥40; 🕒 24hr). Rooms are old-fashioned but spacious, and come with free wi-fi. Reception is in an office on the main road. Bike rental costs ¥15.

Old Chengdu Club HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chengdu Huiguan; 📍 8695 6688; [www.oldchengduclub.com.cn](http://www.oldchengduclub.com.cn); 28 Wuyuegong Jie; 28 r from ¥1000; 📶@📶📶) Exclusive and luxurious, this members' club, on the doorstep of Wenshu Temple, also accepts guests in its dozen or so rooms, although it's largely aimed at domestic tourists so English-language skills are surprisingly poor. The complex comprises a number of Ming dynasty–style courtyard buildings (although it isn't genuinely old itself), and rooms are filled with attractive Chinese furnishings and artwork. Guests have access to all the club facilities, including four restaurants (Chinese, Japanese, Korean and Western), a wine bar and a lovely indoor swimming pool. Reservations are essential.

Chengdu Grand Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chengdu Dajjudian; 📍 8317 3888; 29 North Renmin; 29 d & tw ¥400-580, discounted to ¥240-280; 🌶️🍷 ) This 23- storey old-school Chinese hotel with decent, internet-enabled rooms makes a comfortable choice if you need to be near the train station.

## Eating

One popular Chengdu speciality is chuanchuan xiang , the skewers' version of the famous Chongqing hotpot (*huoguo*), and just as spicy. *Chuanchuotouan xiang* is a quintessential Chengdu eating experience and there are restaurants all over the city, including a bunch of pocket-sized ones on Shuwa Street (; Shuwa Jie).

Several monasteries, including Wenshu Temple and Green Ram Temple, have vegetarian restaurants (dishes ¥7 to ¥20) that are generally open only for lunch.

## TOP FIVE SICHUANESE DISHES

- » *Gongbao jiding* (; spicy chicken with peanuts)
- » *Ganbian sijidou* (; dry-fried green beans)
- » *Mapo doufu* (; pock-marked Mother Chen's bean curd)
- » *Shuizhu yu* (; boiled fish in a fiery sauce)
- » *Huiguo rou* (; boiled and stir-fried pork with salty and hot sauce)



Yulin Chuanchuan Xiang HOTPOT \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 2-3 Kehua Jie; 2-3 pots ¥20-25, skewers short/long ¥0.20/¥1.50; 🕒 10am-2am) *Chuanchuan xiang*, is Chengdu's version of the Chongqing hotpot, and this lively open-fronted branch of the popular Yulin chain is packed in the evenings with a hungry student crowd from nearby Sichuan University. First, choose the broth you want to cook your skewers in: either *hong guo* (; spicy ; ¥20) or *yuanyang guo*



(; half-spicy, half-clear split pot ; ¥25). Then grab whatever skewers you fancy from a side room before cooking them yourself at your table. Staff will count up how many skewers you've eaten at the end of your meal. The garlic and chilli dipping sauce is ¥3 extra. There's another, slightly smaller branch near youth hostel Traffic Inn, which is equally good.

Yangyang Canguan SICHUANESSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 32 Jinyuan Xiang; 32 mains ¥15-40; ☺ 11.30am-2pm & 5-9pm; 📍)

Clean, comfortable place to sample good-quality, inexpensive Sichuanese food. The Chinese menu (*zhongwen caidan*) has photos, but the English menu (*yinggwen caidan*) has neither prices nor photos, so you may want to use a combination of the two.

Chen Mapo Doufu SICHUANESSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 2nd fl, 197 Xi Yulong Jie; mains ¥20-50; ☺ 11.30am-2.30pm & 5.30-9pm) This plush branch of the famous chain is a great place to sample *mapo doufu* (small/large ¥12/20) – soft, fresh bean curd with a fiery sauce of garlic, minced beef, salted soybean, chilli oil and Sichuan pepper. It's one of Sichuan's most famous dishes and this restaurant's speciality. Photo menu.

Chongqing Baye CHINESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 2nd fl, cnr Jiefang Lu & Zhangjia Xiang; mains ¥12-25, pots ¥38-128; ☺ 9am-11pm) Specialises in *ganguo* (, literally 'dry pot'), a sizzling pot of spicy delights. Favourite concoctions include *chaoji huanla xia* (; shrimp), *zhusun jibao* (; chicken and bamboo shoots), *xiangla paigu* (; pork ribs) and *xiangla yachun* (; duck beak). Pots cost ¥78, ¥98 or ¥128. With rice (; mifan), a ¥78 pot is enough for two or three people. There are non-spicy versions (; *qingde*; ¥68), which come in a fragrant broth, and if you're eating solo, order the pot for one (; *danrende*; ¥38). The menu, which is Chinese only, also includes regular Sichuanese dishes. For dessert, don't miss the *mijiu tangyuan* (; sweet glutinous rice balls; ¥10). No English sign.

Kampa Tibetan Restaurant TIBETAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kangba Zangan; off 246 Wuhouci Dajie; 246 18; dishes ¥10-30; ☺ 8am-11pm; 📶) Small, friendly Tibetan-run restaurant next to Holly's Hostel serving authentic Tibetan favourites such as *tsampa* (roasted barley flour), *thukpa* (noodles in a soup), *momo* (Tibetan dumplings) and butter tea. English menu.

Sultan MIDDLE EASTERN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sutan; 1 Yulin Nanjie, Dushi Jin'an Bldg; 1 mains ¥30-70; ☺ 11am-11pm; 📶📶) Friendly, easygoing Middle Eastern restaurant with lamb kebabs, hummus, warm naan and homemade yoghurt. You could linger over dark Turkish coffee (¥30; there's free wi-fi), sit outside on the patio, or lounge in a private room piled with cushions and puff on a fruit-flavoured *sheesha* pipe (¥50). The entrance is on a side road just off Yulin Nanjie.

Tonghu Teahouse SICHUANESSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tonghu Chayuan; 5 Da'anxi Binhe Lu; mains ¥12-32; ☺ noon-2pm & 6pm-midnight) This delightful riverside teahouse also does food during lunch and dinner times. It's standard Sichuanese fare (including our top five Sichuanese dishes) plus *yuxiang qiezi* (; sweet and spicy aubergine; ¥12) and a tasty fish dish called *ruandu yu* (; ¥48).

Hui Zhi Feng BARBECUE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Blue Caribbean Plaza, cnr Kehua Beilu & Kehua Jie; 143 mains ¥10-30; ☺ 11am-midnight; 📶) Chengdu's answer to teppanyaki and a great place to fill up before drinks on Kehua Jie. There are tables outside, but it's also fun to sit inside around the giant horseshoe-shaped hotplate and watch the chef griddle the dishes you've just ordered. Part of the menu has been translated into English, although our favourite – the bacon-wrapped mushrooms (; *peigen juan*; ¥25) – isn't on the English version. Two dishes per person is usually enough.



## Drinking

Sichuan represents teahouse culture better than anywhere else in China. The art of tea-drinking dates back 3000 years, and Sichuan's teahouses have long been the centres of neighbourhood social life.

They were, and still are, where people gossiped, played cards, watched opera performances, had haircuts and even had their ear wax removed! Today you'll find crowded teahouses all over Chengdu, particularly in the city's parks and temple grounds. There are also some pleasant ones on the banks of the city's rivers. Tea is generally bought by the cup (¥10 to ¥20) and is topped up for free as often as you like. See our tea menu for help with ordering a brew.

There's a decent number of bars and cafes here, too. For the latest on Chengdu's nightlife scene, pick up one of the city's expat magazines: *Chengdoo* ([www.gochengdoo.com/en](http://www.gochengdoo.com/en)) or *More Chengdu* ([www.morechengdu.com](http://www.morechengdu.com)).

#### He Ming Teahouse TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Heming Chaguan; People's Park; tea ¥10-25; ☺ 7am-9pm) Always busy, but rarely overcrowded, this is one of Chengdu's most pleasant and popular spots to while away an afternoon over a bottomless cup of flower tea. The tea menu is in English. Having your ears cleaned (¥20) is optional.

#### Tonghu Teahouse TEAHOUSE

( Tonghu Chayuan; 5 Da'anxi Binhe Lu; tea per cup ¥10-15; ☺ 9am-midnight) Relaxing riverside teahouse with outdoor seating overlooking a rushing weir. See our tea menu for help with ordering a brew. Also does beer.

#### Old Little Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( ); Xiao Jiuguan (Yulin Dian); 55 Yulin Xilu; 55 beer from ¥10; ☺ 6pm-2am) Reportedly set up by China's rock legend Cui Jian, this is Chengdu's most established rock bar. It no longer has live performances – go to New Little Bar for that – but is still a cool place to hang out with music-loving locals.

#### New Little Bar LIVE MUSIC

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( ); Xiao Jiuguan (Fangqin Dian); 📞 8515 8790; Fangqin Jie, behind 47 Yongfeng Lu; 47 beer from ¥10; ☺ 6pm-2am) This small pub-like venue is *the* place in Chengdu to catch local bands performing live. Bands play every Friday and Saturday, and occasionally on

weekdays, usually from 8pm. Live music carries a cover charge of around ¥30, depending on who's playing. Check expat magazine *Chengdoo* for monthly line-ups.

#### Bookworm CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Lao Shuchong; ☎ 8552 0177; [www.chengdubookworm.com](http://www.chengdubookworm.com); 2-7 Yujie Donglu, 28 Renmin Nanlu; 28 2-7 🕒 9am-1am) This excellent bookstore-cafe, with branches in Beijing and Suzhou, is a peaceful spot for a drink or a coffee (from ¥20). It also does decent Western food (mains ¥30 to ¥70; open 9am to 11pm). You can buy or borrow books from its extensive library, and it often hosts author talks and other events. Check the website for a schedule.

#### Lao Nanmen Teahouse TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Lao Nanmen Chayuan; Binjiang Xi Lu; tea per cup ¥10 to ¥20; 🕒 9am-7pm) A small but popular riverside tea garden, which is open until 11pm in summer, this pleasant locals' favourite is located beside a rushing weir and serves all the usual teas. No English menu, so check our tea menu ([Click here](#)) for help with ordering a cuppa.

#### Sanhua Lou TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Binjiang Xi Lu; 1 Qingyang Zhengjie; 1 tea per cup ¥10 to ¥20; 🕒 7am-11pm) Housed in a reconstructed, but highly attractive, four-storey pagoda, this unusual teahouse overlooks the river and Baihuatan Park, where there are yet more teahouses.

#### Le Cafe Panam(e) BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Bali Jiuba; 2nd fl, Blue Caribbean Plaza, cnr Kehua Beilu & Kehua Jie; 143 2 beer from ¥10; 🕒 5pm-4am) Originally French-run and super chic, Panam(e) is now run by Chinese management and is more popular with local drinkers than Western expats these days. Still one of the coolest of a number of drinking venues in and around Blue Caribbean Plaza, though.

## TEA MENU

Name	Pronunciation	Translation	Type	Origin
<i>pu'er</i>	–		Green (post-fermented)	Yunnan (Pu'er county)
<i>tie guanyin</i>		Iron Buddha	Oolong	Fujian
<i>kuqiao cha</i>		Buckwheat	Herbal	Yunnan
<i>juhua</i>		Chrysanthemum	Flower	China-wide
<i>huamaofeng</i>		Jasmine	Flower	Sichuan
<i>zhuyeqing</i>		Bamboo-leaf	Green	Sichuan (Emei Shan)

## ★ Entertainment

Chengdu is the home of Sichuan opera, which dates back more than 250 years. It's nothing like Western opera; many performances feature slapstick, glass-shattering songs, men dressed as women, gymnastics and even fire breathing. An undoubted highlight is 'face-changing' (; *bianlian*) in which performers swap masks, seemingly by magic.

Shufeng Yayun Teahouse SICHUAN OPERA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shufeng Yayun; 📍 8776 4530; [www.shufengyayun.com](http://www.shufengyayun.com); Culture Park; tickets ¥150-260) This famous 100-year-old theatre-cum-teahouse now has two venues; the biggest, best and cheapest is located inside Culture Park, and puts on excellent shows that include music, puppetry, comedy, Sichuan opera and the province's famed face-changing performances. Shows run nightly from 8pm to 9.30pm. If you come at around 7.30pm you can watch performers putting on their make-up. Kids can even have their own faces painted (from ¥150). Very similar performances are held at the same times at the slightly smaller, newer venue (¥200 to ¥320), just outside the east gate of the park. Beware the ticket tout at the smaller venue who sometimes tells tourists the venue inside the park is closed.

## Jinjiang Theatre SICHUAN OPERA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Juchang; 📍 8666 6891; 54 Huaxingzheng Jie; 54 tickets ¥180-480; 🕒 8pm-9.10pm) There are similar mixed-performance shows held daily at this renowned opera theatre. The adjoining Yuelai Teahouse ( Yuelai Chalou; tea ¥8-20; 🕒 8.30am-6pm), a locals' favourite, holds wonderfully informal performances on its small stage every Saturday from 2pm to 4.30pm. Tickets for the teahouse shows cost ¥20 to ¥35.

## Shopping

There are fancy-pants shopping centres dotted around the city, but the highest concentration of them is found around the part-pedestrianised area east of Tianfu Sq, between Zongfu Lu and Dong Dajie.

Southeast of Wuhou Temple is a small Tibetan neighbourhood. While it's not evident in the architecture, it is in the prayer flags, colourful scarves, beads and brass goods for sale. It's an interesting area for wandering.

Outdoor clothing and equipment are a big buy in Chengdu, as many people head to Tibet or the western mountains. Quality varies and fakes abound.

### Sanfo OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sanfu Huwai; 243 Wuhouci Dajie; 243 🕒 10am-9.30pm) Good-quality trekking and camping equipment. There's another branch (32 Renmin Nanlu; 32 ) by Nijiaqiao metro station.

## Information

### Internet Access

All hotels and cafes we've reviewed here have internet access for laptop users. Most youth hostels and some top-end hotels also have computer terminals for guests. Internet cafes (; wangba) are plentiful, but most insist on swiping a Chinese ID card before use. The one on the 2nd floor of the Xinnanmen bus station building sometimes waives the rule.

### Medical Services

**Global Doctor Chengdu Clinic** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Huanqiu

Yisheng Chengdu Zhensuo; 📞 8528 3660, 24hr helpline 139 8225 6966; 2nd fl, 9-11 Lippo Tower Bldg, 62 Kehua Beilu; 62 2 9-11 🕒 8.30am-noon & 1.30-6pm Mon-Fri) English-speaking doctors and a 24-hour English-language helpline. Consultation is ¥600. Out-of-hours visit costs ¥1000.

**West China Hospital SCU**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Sichuan Daxue Huaxi Yiyuan; 📞 8542 2777; 37 Guoxue Xiang; 37 ) The Huaxi hospital complex is Chengdu's largest and gets good reports from expats. Foreigners should head for **Jinka Yiyuan** ( ), a department within **Inpatient Building No 4** ( ; disi zhuyuan dalou) – to your right as you enter the complex – where most doctors and some staff members speak English.

#### Money

Most ATMs now accept foreign cards. We've marked some convenient ones on the map.

**Bank of China**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 35 Renmin Zhonglu, 2nd Section; 35 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm Mon-Fri, to 5pm Sat & Sun) Changes money and travellers cheques, and offers cash advances on credit cards.

#### Visas

**Chengdu Entry & Exit Service Centre**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Chengdushi Churujing Jiedai Zhongxin; 📞 8640 7067; 2 Renmin Xilu; 2 🕒 9am-noon & 1.30-5pm Mon-Fri) Foreign affairs office on 3rd floor; extends visas in five working days. North of Tianfu Sq.

#### Travel Agencies

Skip the gazillion Chinese travel agencies around town and head straight to the travel desk at one of Chengdu's many excellent youth hostels. You can book anything from panda research centre visits to full-blown multiweek trips across Tibet.

## Getting There & Away

#### Air

You can fly from Chengdu to pretty much any other major Chinese city, while there are international flights to Bangkok, Kuala Lumpur, Singapore, Los Angeles, Vancouver, London, Amsterdam, Sydney, Melbourne, New Delhi, Bangalore and Seoul.

Many travellers choose to fly from here to Lhasa. Those without much time on their hands, but a bit of extra cash, might consider flying to

smaller destinations within Sichuan, such as Kangding or Jiuzhaigou. The best websites for cheap flights are [www.elong.com](http://www.elong.com), [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) and [www.travelzen.com](http://www.travelzen.com).

If for some reason you can't book online, you could try the following airline offices:

**Air China Chengdu Booking Office** ( Guohang Shijie Zhongxin; ☎ nationwide bookings 95583; 1 Hangkong Lu; 4 1 ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm) B; Tongzilin metro station, Line 1; off Renmin Nanlu.

**China Southern Airlines** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Zhongguo Nanfang Hangkong; ☎ 8666 3618; 278 Shangdong Dajie; ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm)

#### Bus

The main bus station for tourists is Xinnanmen (), officially called the tourism passenger transport centre. The other two most useful are Chadianzi () and Beimen (). However, be prepared to be dropped at other bus stations when arriving in Chengdu. If you're dropped at Shiyangchang bus station (; Shiyangchang gongjiaozhan), you can take local bus 28 (¥2) to Xinnanmen bus station, Beimen bus station (for Hello Chengdu International Youth Hostel) or North Train Station.

Destinations from Xinnanmen include the following:

**Bamboo Sea** ¥118, five hours, two daily (9.10am and 3.30pm)

**Danba** ¥133, nine hours, one daily (6.30am\*)

**Emei Shan** ¥43, 2½ hours, every 20 minutes (7.20am to 7.20pm)

**Hongya** (for Liu Jiang) ¥41, two hours, every 45 minutes (7.40am to 5pm)

**Jiuzhaigou** ¥145 to ¥222, 10 hours, two daily (7.43am & 8.30am\*\*)

**Kangding** ¥123 to ¥133, seven hours, hourly (7.10am to 2.10pm)

**Leshan** ¥47, two hours, every 20 minutes (7.30am to 4pm)

**Pingle** ¥30, two hours, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 4pm)

**Sanxingdui** ¥16, two hours, one daily (8.30am)

**Ya'an** (for Bifengxia) ¥50, two hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 7.30pm)

\* This is a Daofu-bound bus, via Danba and Bamei. You must buy a ticket to Bamei (¥153) and then ask the driver nicely for a ¥20 refund because you want to get off early at Danba.



\*\* Extra morning buses are laid on in July and August. Note, all Jiuzhaigou buses go via Songpan (eight hours), but you have to pay full fare even if you get off at Songpan.

Following are some of the destinations from Chadianzi:

**Jiuzhaigou** ¥120 to ¥170, nine hours, three daily (7.20am, 8am and 9am)

**Songpan** ¥95, seven hours, two daily (6.30am and 8.30am)

Destinations from Beimen include the following:

**Langzhong** ¥98, five hours, every 40 minutes (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Yibin** ¥94 to ¥107, four hours, hourly (7.20am to 6.30pm)

**Zigong** ¥81, three hours, hourly (7am to 8pm)

Train

Chengdu's two main train stations are **Chengdu North Train Station** (; huochē beizhàn) and the newer **Chengdu East Train Station** (; huochē dongzhàn), both of which have metro stations. The ticket office of the north station is in a separate building on your right as you approach the station. High-speed train tickets for Chongqing and Qingcheng Shan should be bought at the adjacent **intercity trains ticket office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; chengji lieche shoupiachū). The new high-speed rail link to Leshan may also be running by the time you read this.

Hotels and hostels can book tickets, for a small fee.

Destinations from East Station include Wuhan (¥313, 16 hours) and Guilin (¥194, 25 hours), with a high-speed link to Shanghai reported to be coming soon.

Sample destinations from North Station:

**Beijing West** sleeper ¥401/439/391/458, 29/27/31/30 hours, four daily (9.50am, 7.54pm, 10.30pm and 11.59pm)

**Chongqing** 2nd/1st class ¥98/117, two hours, hourly (8am to 9pm)

**Emei Shan** seat ¥24, 2½ hours, nine daily (10am to 8pm)

**Kunming** sleeper ¥240, 19 to 22 hours, six daily (8.40am to 7.20pm)

**Lhasa** sleeper ¥671, 44 hours, one daily (8.55pm)

**Xi'an** seat/sleeper ¥113/195, 13 to 17 hours, 10 daily (9.50am to 10.30pm)

**Xining West** sleeper ¥290, 24/20 hours, two daily (12.01pm and 8.55pm)

**Yibin** seat/sleeper ¥51/97, six to eight hours, seven daily (8.31am to 11.48pm)

**Zigong** seat/sleeper ¥41/87, 4½ to six hours, seven daily (8.31am to 11.48pm)

## **Getting Around**

### To/From the Airport

Shuangliu Airport is 18km west of the city. Bus 303 (¥10, 45 minutes, 6am to 10pm) is an airport shuttle (; Jichang Daba) that shadows flight times and travels from Yandao Jie ( ) to the airport. Bus 300 runs a slower service between the airport and the North Train Station, running the length of Renmin Lu, but it stops at every bus stop en route.

A taxi between the airport and the centre costs ¥50 to ¥70, depending on how bad the traffic is. Most guesthouses offer airport pick-up services for slightly more than the taxi fare.

### Bicycle

Chengdu is nice and flat, although the traffic can be a strain on cyclists. Youth hostels rent out bikes for around ¥15 to ¥30 per day. Make sure you use a lock.

### Bus

You can get almost anywhere in Chengdu by bus, as long as you can decipher the labyrinthine bus routings. Stops are marked in Chinese and English, and some have posted route maps for the buses that stop there. Fares within the city are usually ¥2.

Useful routes:

**Bus 16** North Train Station–Renmin Lu–South Train Station

**Bus 1** City centre–Wuhou Temple

**Bus 81** Mao statue–Green Ram Temple

**Bus 28** Shiyangchang bus station–Xinnanmen bus station–Beimen bus station–North Train Station

**Bus 82** Chadianzi bus station–Jinsha Museum–Wuhou Temple–Xinnanmen bus station

**Bus 69** North Train Station bus station–Zhaojue Si bus station

**Tourist Bus 87** Zhaojue Si bus station–Panda Breeding Base

**Tourist Bus 60** Traffic Inn–Panda Breeding Base

**Metro**

Line 1 links the North and South Train Stations and runs the length of Renmin Lu. The east–west running Line 2 links Chengdu East Train Station with the centre of the city, meeting Line 1 at Tianfu Sq before continuing west to Chadianzi bus station. Line 3, which will run to the Panda Breeding Base, and Line 4, for Chengdu West Train Station, are due to be completed by 2015. Journeys cost ¥2 to ¥4. Signs, maps and ticket machines are bilingual.

**Taxi**

Taxis are ¥8 or ¥9 for the first 2km, then ¥1.90 per kilometre after that.

## Around Chengdu

### SANXINGDUI MUSEUM

The striking exhibits at the Sanxingdui Museum (Sanxingdui Bowuguan; admission ¥82, audio guide ¥10; ☎ 8.30am-6pm, last entry 5pm) highlight archaeological finds that some Chinese archaeologists regard as even more important than Xi'an's Terracotta Warriors.

Throughout the 20th century, farmers around the town of Guanghan, 40km north of Chengdu, continually unearthed intriguing pottery shards and other dirt-encrusted detritus. However, war, the lack of funds and other challenges prevented anyone from taking these discoveries seriously. Finally, in 1986, archaeologists launched a full-scale excavation and made a startling discovery: they unearthed a major site dating from the Shu kingdom, considered the cradle of Chinese civilisation, in the upper reaches of the Yangzi River (Chang Jiang).

The museum houses two buildings' worth of artefacts from this period, but the stars of its collections are dozens and dozens of bronze masks – so sophisticated that they wouldn't look out of place in a modern art gallery, yet they were crafted more than 4000 years ago.

One morning bus runs here direct from Chengdu's Xinnanmen bus station. Alternatively, there are regular buses from Chengdu's Zhaojue

Si station to Guanghan (¥16, 45 minutes, 7am to 8pm), from where you can catch local bus 6 (¥1.50, 20 minutes) for the remaining 10km to the site. The direct bus back to Chengdu leaves at 4.10pm, but only goes as far as Zhaojue Si station.

## **QINGCHENG SHAN**

Covered in dripping-wet forests, the lush holy mountain of Qingcheng Shan (Azure City Mountain; admission ¥90) has been a Taoist retreat for more than 2000 years. Its beautiful trails are lined with ginkgo, plum and palm trees as well as caves, pavilions and gorgeous, centuries-old wooden temples, some of which you can stay overnight in.

The weather is generally better than at Emei Shan, so the views are less likely to be obscured by mist, and with a summit of only 1600m, it's also a far easier climb: four hours up and down. There's a detailed map of the trails on the back of your entrance ticket and signs are in English, too.

If you want to stay the night, two or three temples on the mountain welcome guests, including the fabulous Shangqing Temple (Shangqing Gong; d with bathroom ¥180- 280), a Qing-dynasty rebuild of the original Jin-dynasty temple set in the forest near the top of the mountain; it has a restaurant (dishes ¥15 to ¥25) and a teahouse (tea from ¥5). The cheapest rooms (¥40 to ¥100) are supposed to be reserved for pilgrims, but you may be able to land one if you ask sweetly.

Snack stands are scattered along the mountain trails.

The new high-speed rail link means the mountain is now even more popular with Chengdu day-trippers, who can crowd some trails, particularly those near the entry and exit to the cable car (one way/return ¥35/60). Some travellers prefer heading instead to Houshan (; Rear Mountain), a more peaceful, less touristy part of the range, 15km northwest of Qingcheng Shan proper. There are around 20km of pathways here – expect a hike to the summit, where you'll find Baiyun Temple (; Baiyun Si), to take around six hours; half that if you use the cable cars (¥30). Near the top is Baiyun Ancient Village (; Baiyun Guzhai), where you can find basic guesthouses (; kezhan). Youyi Village ( Youyi Cun), less than half way up the mountain, also

has a few guesthouses. There are loads of teahouses and restaurants by the main gate. Buses to Houshan (¥10, 25 minutes) leave from Qingcheng Shan Train Station when full. They pass Qingcheng Shan's main gate en route, but won't stop for passengers here if there are no spare seats.

To get to Qingcheng Shan take the high-speed rail link from Chengdu's North Train Station (¥15, 50 minutes, 7am to 8pm, last train back 8.30pm). Bus 101 (¥2, five minutes) links the train station to the mountain.

Consider getting off the train one stop before Qingcheng Shan to visit the Dujiangyan Irrigation Project ( Dujiangyan Shuili Gongcheng; admission ¥90; 🕒 8am-6pm); take bus 4 (¥2, 20 minutes, last stop). Constructed in the 3rd century BC to tame the fast-flowing Min River, the irrigation system is a Unesco World Heritage site located in a beautifully scenic area with forested hills, ancient temples, hilltop pagodas and, of course, rushing rivers. To the right of the entrance gate is a tourist centre, which has a map and a scale model of the area. Beside this, the decorative South Bridge (; Nan Qiao) has teahouses and restaurants on either side of it.

From here you can take Bus 101 to Qingcheng Shan (¥2.50, 40 minutes, last stop).

## **BIFENGXIA PANDA BASE**

It's always fun to see pandas, of course, but the highlight of a trip here is the fabulous two-hour walk along a deep, forested river gorge in order to get to the Bifengxia Panda Base (Bifengxia Daxiongmao Jidi; admission ¥118; 🕒 8.30-11.30am & 1.30-4.30pm).

Established in 2003 under the direction of the Giant Panda Research Centre at Wolong, this base originally focused more on research than on tourism. However, after the Wolong Nature Reserve was severely damaged in the 2008 earthquake, all of its surviving pandas were moved to Bifengxia, and this reserve began to receive an influx of tourists. It's now home to more than 80 pandas, the world's largest collection of captive pandas. At the time of research, the plan was to move some of the pandas back to Wolong once it had been rebuilt, sometime in 2014.

The Bifengxia area is very spread out and spans a deep gorge with rivers, waterfalls and generally stunning forest scenery. The panda centre (☎ 0835 231 8145) is on the opposite side of the park from the entrance (there's a zoo, too, which you can skip). The ticket office is inside the building marked 'Deep Ecological Paradise of Bifeng Gorge', in the main car park where the minibuses drop you. Pick up a free map from the tourist information office here, too. There's also free bag storage.

To get to the panda centre, 3km away from the ticket office, there's a free bus. But missing out on the hike would be a mistake. Turn left out of the ticket office then take the free lift (; *qingyunti*) down 50 storeys to the foot of the gorge. Carry straight on to meet up with the bus, or cross the bridge to start your two-hour hike along the gorge and up the other side to the panda base. It's perfect picnic territory, but there are enough noodle and snack stalls along the way for you to not need to bring supplies.

There's more walking to be done on trails inside the panda centre, where the pandas are kept in OK enclosures similar to those at Chengdu's Giant Panda Breeding Research Base. There's also an oh-so-cute 'panda kindergarten' enclosure.

You could see Bifengxia in a day trip from Chengdu, but there are plenty of sleeping options, too. The pick of the bunch, Xiaoxitian Minlucun (☎ 135 5155 6417; tw/tr/qu ¥80/100/120; 📶📶), is at the end of the two-hour walk, just before you reach the panda base, and has simple rooms set around a courtyard. A handful of other guesthouses, teahouses and restaurants are located by the entrance to the panda base.



#### Getting There & Away

You need to go via the town of Ya'an. Buses from Chengdu terminate at Ya'an's ximen bus station (; ximen chezhan), but you should get off just before, at the **tourist bus station** (; luyou chezhan), where you'll find minibuses (¥5) waiting to take you the final 18km to the panda base. The last bus back to Chengdu from the tourist bus station leaves at 6.30pm. From Ya'an you can get to various other destinations without having to go back to Chengdu.

Buses from Ya'an's ximen bus station:

**Emei Town** ¥50, 2½ hours, four daily (8.15am, 10am, 12.10pm, 2pm)

**Kangding** ¥73, 4½ hours, five daily (8am to 2.30pm)

**Leshan** ¥55, 2½ hours, six daily (8.35am to 4.30pm)

A pedicab between Ya'an's two bus stations costs ¥8.

## PINGLE

A popular subject of paintings for Chinese art students, this ancient riverside village was originally a way-station on the southern Silk Road more than 2000 years ago. Modern life is encroaching, as are sellers of tourist trinkets (and water pistols!), but enough old-town life remains for a pleasant day-long excursion from Chengdu, and there's plenty of fun to be had paddling in the river here.

Many of the wooden buildings in the old town (; *guzhen*) have been rebuilt recently, but some still date back to the Ming and Qing dynasties. Locals still live in a few of them, although more and more are being turned into small guesthouses and restaurants, as tourist numbers rise. The town's most venerable inhabitants are its banyan trees, a dozen of which are more than 1000 years old. Don't miss the cutest of old stone passageways, called Fuhui Street Water Gate (; *Fuhui Jie Shuimen*), which leads down to a river pathway where you can lounge on a bamboo chair and drink tea (¥15 to ¥30).

There are plenty of teahouses across the river, too, and on this side you can wander away from the water for a rural stroll in the decidedly untouristy surrounding farmland, which includes some small tea plantations.

There are several small inns on both sides of the river – look for signs saying (*kezhan*; guesthouse) or (*zhusu*; lodgings) – although for most visitors a day trip will be sufficient. Gubu Kezhan ( 📍 153 9764 0708; 32 Changqing Jie; 32 r ¥198 & ¥238, discounted to ¥80 & ¥100) has nice little rooms with river views; turn left when you reach the river. Noodle joints (look for the character ; *mian*) and small restaurants are everywhere. Some have photo menus.

Be aware that buses to Pingle usually stop first at the small town of Qionglai (), about 15 minutes before Pingle. Don't get off here by mistake. Once in Pingle, walk out of the bus station and turn right for the river. Buses returning from Pingle to Chengdu's Xinnanmen bus

station leave at 9.30am, noon, 1pm, 2pm, 3pm, 4pm, 4.30pm and 5.30pm.

## LIU JIANG

The lovely pastoral setting is the main attraction of this gorgeous village tucked away in the central Sichuan countryside. The old town (; guzhen), with its narrow alleyways, wooden courtyard buildings and ancient banyan trees, straddles both sides of the Yangcun River (; Yangcun He) in a picture-perfect setting. In fact, after recent renovations, it's almost too perfect (it's sometimes tough to pick out genuine old buildings here, although there are some), and at weekends it becomes overrun by tourists all craving a piece of rural charm. Nevertheless, this is still a lovely spot for a lazy lunch, an afternoon in a teahouse or a dip in the river. If you want to stay the night, the charming Wangjiang Kezhan ( 📞 139 0903 6203; 38 Liujiang Jie; 38 r ¥60-80) has creaky wooden floorboards, simple but clean rooms with shared bathrooms, and river views. There's a pleasant terrace overlooking the river, where you can have tea (¥10 to ¥20) or Sichuanese food (mains ¥12 to ¥40).

There's some excellent walking to be done in the surrounding countryside. Look for wooden signboards in the old town with maps of walking trails on them (Chinese only). One fine option is the 3.5km uphill hike to Houjia Shanzhai (). The start of the road here is over the other side of the river from where the bus normally drops passengers off, and at the far end of the old town, and it's marked by a wooden archway with the characters . Once you've found that, just follow the road and signs past mooing cows, ploughing farmers, rice terraces, bamboo clumps and small tea plantations. On the road near the top is Tiaowang Wawu ( 📞 130 8838 1221; r ¥80, dishes from ¥5), a large renovated wooden courtyard building with simple twin rooms, friendly owners and fabulous views. You can grab a bowl of noodles (; *mian*) here or whatever rice dishes (; *fan*) it happens to be cooking that day.

To reach Liu Jiang, take a bus from Xinnanmen bus station to Hongya () then change for Liu Jiang (¥9, one hour, every 15 minutes until 5.30pm). The last bus from Hongya to Chengdu is 5.30pm. There are also regular buses from Hongya to Emei Shan, Leshan and Ya'an.



# Emei Shan

📖 0833

A cool, misty retreat from the Sichuan basin's sweltering heat, stunning Emei Shan (adult/student ¥150/80) is one of China's four most famous Buddhist mountains (the others are Putuoshan, Wutai Shan and Jiuhua Shan). Here you'll find fabulous forested mountain scenery, ramshackle wooden temples and macaques demanding tribute for safe passage. There's also the wonderful opportunity to spend the night in one of the many monasteries that dot the mountain range.

Only a few remnants of Emei Shan's original templework remain. Glittering Jinding Temple (Jinding Si), for example, with its brass tiling engraved with Tibetan script, was completely gutted by fire. Other temples suffered the same fate, and all were looted to various degrees during the war with Japan and the Cultural Revolution. Some do still go back a few years, though, with Wannian Temple, the oldest, clocking in at a very respectable 1100 years old.

The waves of pilgrims, hawkers and, most of all, tourists during peak season eliminate much solitude, but the crowds hover largely around the areas closest to the cable cars and the major temples. Away from them, the pathways, lined with fir, pine and cedar trees, make for peaceful hiking. Lofty crags, cloud-kissing precipices, butterflies and azaleas together form a nature reserve, and the mountain joins Leshan, Jiuzhaigou and Dujiangyan Irrigation Project on Unesco's list of World Heritage Sites in Sichuan.

## When to Go

The best time to visit is May to October. Avoid the national holidays, when the number of visitors reaches epic proportions. July and August are also busy.

Snowfall generally begins around November on the upper slopes. In winter you can hire iron soles with spikes to deal with encrusted ice and snow.

Some average temperatures:

**jan apr Jul Oct**

Emei town 7°C 21°C 26°C 17°C

Summit 6°C 3°C 12°C -1°C

## Sights

### Baoguo Temple BUDDHIST MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Baoguo Si; Declare Nation Temple; admission ¥8) Constructed in the 16th century, this temple (550m) features beautiful gardens of rare plants, as well as a 3.5m-high porcelain Buddha dating back to 1415, which is housed near the Sutra Library. You don't need the Emei Shan entrance ticket to get here.

### Qingyin Pavilion BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#)

( Qingyin Ge) Named 'Pure Sound Pavilion' after the soothing sounds of the waters coursing around rock formations, this temple (710m) is built on an outcrop in the middle of a fast-flowing stream. Rest in one of the small pavilions here while you appreciate the natural 'music'.

### Ecological Monkey Zone WILDLIFE AREA

[Offline map](#)

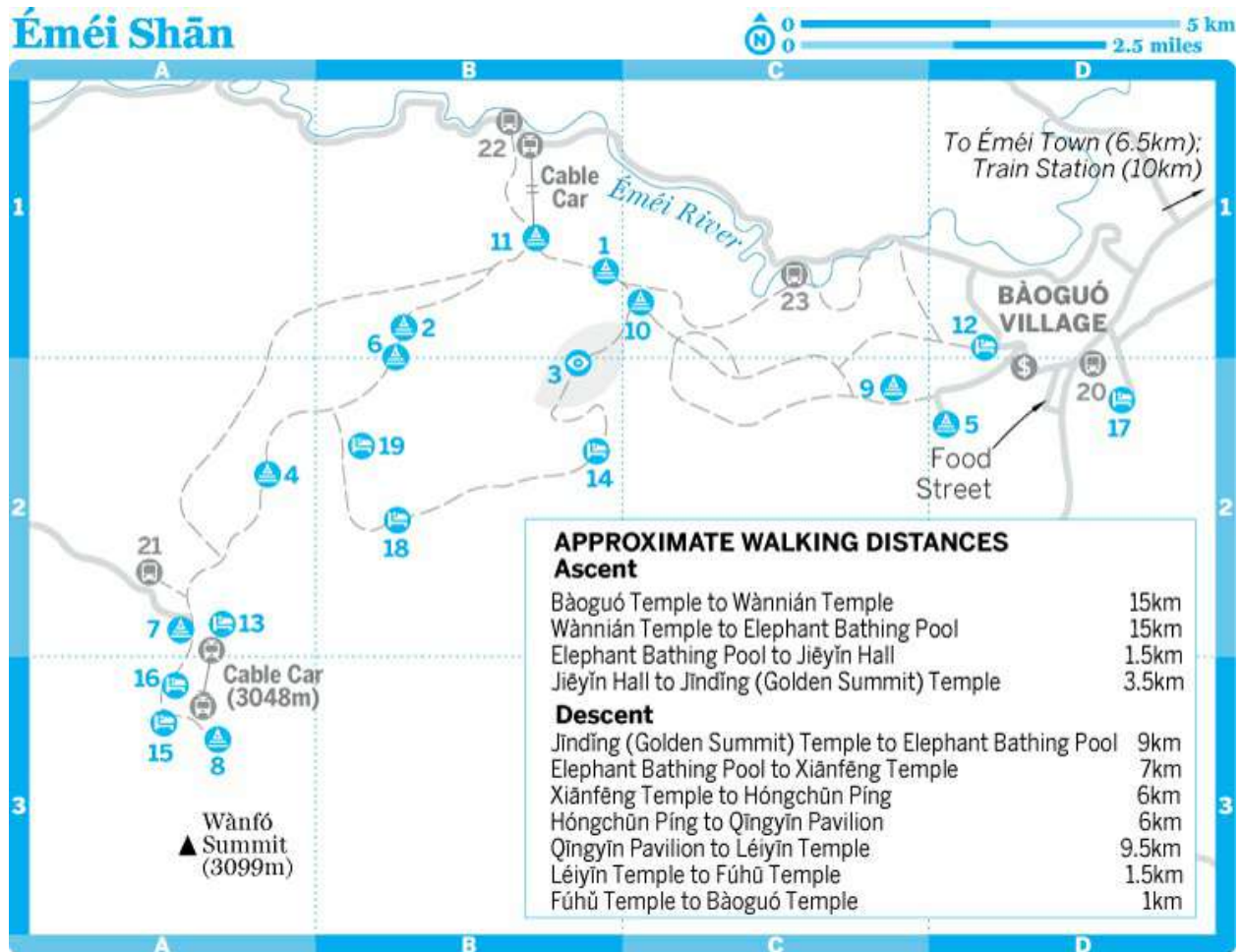
Between Qingyin Pavilion and Hongchun Ping (Venerable Trees Terrace) is the first place most hikers encounter the mountain's infamous monkeys. Despite the area's 'ecological' moniker, attendants here alternately feed the monkeys and, when they get too aggressive, chase them away with sticks and slingshots.

### Wannian Temple BUDDHIST MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Wannian Si; Long Life Monastery; admission ¥10) Reconstructed in the 9th century, Wannian Temple (1020m) is the oldest surviving Emei temple. It's dedicated to the man on the white elephant, the Bodhisattva Puxian (also known as Samantabhadra), the Buddhist Lord of Truth and protector of the mountain. This 8.5m-high statue cast in copper and bronze dates from AD 980 and weighs an estimated 62,000kg. If you can manage to rub the elephant's hind leg, good luck will be cast upon you. The statue is housed in Brick Hall, a domed building with small stupas on it and the only building left unharmed in a 1945 fire.

# Éméi Shān



## Emei Shan

### 📍 Sights

- 1 Bailongdong B1
- 2 Chu Temple B1
- 3 [Ecological Monkey Zone](#) B2
- 4 [Elephant Bathing Pool](#) A2
- 5 [Fuhu Temple](#) D2
- 6 Huayan Ding B1
- 7 Jieyin Monastery A2
- 8 [Jinding \(Golden Summit\) Temple](#) A3
- 9 Leiyin Temple C2
- 10 [Qingyin Pavilion](#) C1
- 11 [Wannian Temple](#) B1

### 🛏 Sleeping

- 12 [Baoguo Temple](#) D1

- 13 [Cableway Company Hotel](#) A2
- 14 Hongchun Ping (Venerable Trees Terrace) B2
- 15 [Jinding Dajjudian](#) A3
- 16 [Taizi Ping](#) A3
- 17 [Teddy Bear Hotel](#) D2
- 18 [Xianfeng Temple](#) B2
- 19 [Yuxian Temple](#) B2

 Transport

- 20 Baoguo Bus Station D2
- 21 Leidongping Bus Depot A2
- 22 Wannian Bus Depot B1
- 23 Wuxiangang Bus Depot C1

### Elephant Bathing Pool BUDDHIST MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Xixiang Chi) According to legend, Elephant Bathing Pool (2070m) is where Puxian flew his elephant in for a big scrub, but today there's not much of a pool to speak of. Being almost at the crossroads of both major trails, the temple here is sometimes crowded with pilgrims.

### Jinding Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#)

( Jinding Si; Golden Summit Temple) The magnificent Jinding Temple is at the Golden Summit (Jin Ding; 3077m), commonly referred to as the mountain's highest peak. Covered with glazed tiles and surrounded by white marble balustrades, it's a modern renovation, but is quite striking. In front of the temple, the unmissable 48m-tall golden statue multi-dimensional Samantabhadra (; Shifang Puxian) honours mountain protector Puxian and was added in 2006.

The mountain's highest point (3099m) is actually nearby Wanfo Ding (Ten Thousand Buddha Summit), but it has been closed to visitors for some years now.

### Fuhu Temple BUDDHIST MONASTERY

( Fuhu Si; Crouching Tiger Monastery; admission ¥6) Located about 1km from Baoguo Temple, Fuhu Temple (630m) is hidden deep within the forest. It houses a 7m-high copper pagoda inscribed with Buddhist images and texts.

## Xianfeng Temple BUDDHIST MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Xianfeng Si; Immortal Peak Monastery) Somewhat off the beaten track, this well-looked-after monastery (1752m) is backed by rugged cliffs and surrounded by fantastic scenery.

### **Sleeping**

## ON THE MOUNTAIN

Almost all the temples on the mountain (with the notable exception of Jinding Temple at the summit) offer cheap lodgings in dormitory-style accommodation with shared bathrooms but usually no showers. Some also have guesthouse-quality private rooms, sometimes with private bathrooms.

### Xianfeng Temple MONASTERY \$

( Xianfeng Si; dm & tw without bathroom ¥30-260, tw with bathroom ¥280) This remote temple, with a lovely forested location backed by rugged cliffs, is set around a large shaded front courtyard and has a peaceful atmosphere. There's a good range of rooms from dorms to pricier twins with showers. Approximate walking time from foot/summit is six/four hours.

### Yuxian Temple MONASTERY \$

[Offline map](#)

( Yuxian Si; dm/tw from ¥30/80) Scenery wise this is one of the most spectacular places to stay – at 1680m the views are stunning here. And considering how small the temple is, there's also a large choice of rooms, from basic dorms to private twins. It is very remote here, though, so could feel a little eerie if you're staying on your own. From foot/summit is seven/three hours.

### Hongchun Ping MONASTERY \$

( dm ¥30-40, tw ¥45-80) Arguably the smartest of the temples (1120m) with accommodation, this place is another with a nice courtyard, making it a comfortable choice to spend time in. Rooms are simple but decent. From foot/summit it is three/seven hours.

### Taizi Ping MONASTERY \$

[Offline map](#)

( dm ¥30-40) What this quiet, ramshackle wooden temple lacks in comfort, it gains in charm. Expect extremely basic three-bed dorms with a cold-water sink for washing. From foot/summit is nine hours/one hour.

There are also two bog-standard hotels on the mountain: Jinding Dajiudian [Offline map](#) ( 📍 509 8088/77; r from ¥480, discounted to ¥380) where foot/summit is 9½ hours/30 minutes away away; and Cableway Company Hotel [Offline map](#) ( Suodao Gongsì Zhaodaisuo; 📍 155 2030 0955; tr/tw ¥150/260) at 2540m, where foot/summit is 8½/11½ hours – it was being renovated at the time of research.

## IN BAOGUO VILLAGE

Teddy Bear Hotel HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Wanjuxiong Jiudian; 📍 559 0135, 138 9068 1961;

[www.teddybear.com.cn](http://www.teddybear.com.cn); 43 Baoguo Lu; dm ¥35, r ¥80-260; 🌐@📶)

This ‘backpacker central’ place has cute, well-maintained rooms and English-speaking staff. The left-luggage service is free, as are the walking sticks and maps of the mountain trails, and there are massages available when you make it back down the mountain.

There’s internet access via a cable in some rooms, wi-fi in others and computer terminals in the lobby cafe, which does decent coffee, plus Chinese and Western food. Call Andy, the manager, for a free pick-up from Emei town.

Baoguo Temple MONASTERY \$

( Baoguo Si; Declare Nation Temple; dm/r ¥40/120; 🌐) If you don’t have time to get up the mountain when you arrive, you can still stay in a monastery. Baoguo Temple, hidden among the trees, is one of the largest and most atmospheric here, and has simple but clean and spacious rooms with three single beds in each. There’s a large common shower area and a dining hall (meals ¥15). Accommodation is run by the friendly Patrick Yang ( 📍 137 0813 1210), who speaks English.

## Eating

On the mountain, most temples have small dining halls, but you’re

never very far from one of the many trailside food stalls that dot the mountain. Most serve simple noodle (; *mian*) or rice (; *fan*) dishes as well as instant noodles (; *fangbian mian*), tea and snacks.

In Baoguo Village, restaurants and supermarkets abound. Haochi Jie (; Food Street) is crammed with places to eat, many with outdoor seating. The menu contains various Sichuanese dishes (¥15 to ¥40) and has English translations.

## EMEI SHAN HIKING ROUTES

There are numerous options for tackling Emei Shan with various combinations of buses, cable cars, hiking trails and monastery stop-offs. Below are four popular ones. Note, these estimated walking times do not include breaks, which you will obviously need.

» **One day** Make use of buses and cable cars by taking a bus to Wannian Temple (45 minutes), then hiking to the top (four hours) with the help of both cable cars before walking down to Leidongping bus depot (1½ hours) and taking a bus back to Baoguo Village (90 minutes).

» **Two days** Take the bus to Wannian bus depot (45 minutes) then hike up via Chu Temple to the summit (five to six hours). On the way down, turn right a short distance past Elephant Bathing Pool and take the more scenic path, via Xianfeng Temple, back to Wannian bus depot (eight hours).

» **Two days** Take the bus to Leidongping (1½ hours) then walk to the top (one to two hours) before making your long descent to Baoguo Village (10 hours) via an overnight stay in a monastery.

» **Three days** Ditch the buses completely and simply hike up and down the whole mountain (about 20 hours in total). To mix things up, go via Wannian Temple on the way up and via Xianfeng Temple on the way down. While you're on the way down, start preparing yourself mentally for at least three to four days of jelly legs.

### Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** ( Nongye Yinhang; ☎ 9am-5pm) Has foreign exchange desk and foreign-friendly ATM. The ATM by Baoguo bus station also accepts foreign cards.

**Internet** Most accommodation in Baoguo Village has internet access for guests, but the nearest internet cafes (; *wangba*) are around 2km downhill towards Emei town.

## **i** Getting There & Away

The town of Emei (; Emei Shan Shi) lies 6.5km east of the mountain Emei Shan and is the transport hub for the mountain. Almost all buses to Emei Shan terminate here – at the Emei Shan passenger traffic centre (; Emei Shan keyun zhongxin), directly opposite Emei Train Station (; Emei Huochezhan). From here, it's a ¥20 cab to Baoguo Village. Alternatively, take local bus 1 (¥1) to Panshui Chi () bus stop, then take Bus 5 (¥1.50) from across the square to Baoguo ().

Note, while it's not possible to travel direct to Baoguo from most long-distance destinations, some long-distance buses do leave from Baoguo.

Buses from Baoguo bus station include:

**Chengdu** ¥50, 2½ hours, frequent services (8am to 6pm)

**Chongqing** ¥130, six hours, two daily (6.40am & 11am)

**Leshan** ¥11, 45 minutes, every 30 minutes (8am to 5.30pm)

**Yibin** ¥86, six hours, one daily (6.50am)

Buses from Emei Shan passenger traffic centre include:

**Kangding** ¥120, seven hours, one daily (9.50am)

**Ya'an** ¥51, three hours, four daily (7.45am, 9.30am, 12.30pm & 2.20pm)

**Zigong** ¥51, three hours, frequent (7.40am to 5.10pm)

Train

**Chengdu** seat ¥24, 2½ hours, five daily (6.01am to 10.31am, then 9.16pm)

**Kunming** sleeper ¥216, 17 hours, four daily (3.42pm, 4.57pm, 5.16pm and 9.47pm)

**Xi'an** sleeper ¥224, 19½ hours, one daily (10.31am)

## **i** Getting Around

Baoguo () Village is your gateway to the mountain. Buses from the village bus station travel to three bus depots on the mountain:

**Wuxiangang** (; 20 minutes), about a 20-minute walk below Qingyin Pavilion; **Wannian** ( one hour), below Wannian Temple; and

**Leidongping** (; two hours), a few minutes' walk from Jingding cable car.



There are two ticket types. Both are returns. The ¥40 ticket is for the lower two depots. The ¥90 ticket is for Leidongping. If you return via a different depot you may have to pay a small surcharge to make up the difference.

Buses run frequently from around 6am to 5pm (7am to 4pm in winter). The last buses back down the mountain leave at 6pm (5pm in winter).

## Leshan

📍 0833 / POP 156,000

With fingernails bigger than the average human, the world's tallest Buddha draws plenty of tourists to this relaxed riverside town. It's an easy day trip from Chengdu or a convenient stopover en route to or from Emei Shan.

### Sights

Grand Buddha BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

( Dafo; adult ¥90; 🕒 7.30am-6.30pm Apr-early Oct, 8am-5.30pm early Oct-Mar) Leshan's pride and joy is the serene, 1200-year-old Grand Buddha carved into a cliff face overlooking the confluence of the Dadu River (; Dadu He) and the Min River. And at 71m tall, he's definitely big. His ears stretch for 7m, his shoulders span 28m, and each of his big toes is 8.5m long.

A Buddhist monk called Haitong conceived the project in AD 713, hoping that the Buddha would calm the swift rivers and protect boatmen from lethal currents. The huge project wasn't completed until 90 years after Haitong's death but eventually, just as he had once wished, the river waters calmed. Locals say it was the Grand Buddha's calming effect. Sceptics say it was due to the lengthy construction process in which surplus rocks from the sculpting filled the river hollows.

Inside the body, hidden from view, is a water-drainage system to prevent weathering, although Dafo is showing his age and soil erosion is an ongoing problem.

To fully appreciate the Buddha's magnitude, get an up-close look at

his head, then descend the steep, winding stairway for the Lilliputian view. Avoid visiting on weekends or holidays, when traffic on the staircase can come to a complete standstill.

Admission to the Buddha includes access to a number of caves and temples on the grounds and to the Mahaoya Tombs Museum [Offline map](#) (; Mahaoyamu Bowuguan), which has a modest collection of tombs and burial artefacts dating from the Eastern Han dynasty (AD 25–220).

Also included in the ticket price is Wuyou Temple [Offline map](#) (; Wuyou Si), which, like the Grand Buddha, dates from the Tang dynasty, with Ming and Qing renovations. This monastery also contains calligraphy, painting and artefacts, but the highlight is the hall of 1000 terracotta arhat (Buddhist celestial beings, similar to angels) displaying an incredible variety of postures and facial expressions – no two are alike. Also inside the Luohan Hall, where the arhat are housed, is a fantastic statue of Avalokiteshvara, the Sanskrit name of the Goddess of Mercy (Guanyin in Chinese).

One sight on the grounds that requires a separate ticket is the recently constructed Oriental Buddhist Theme Park [Offline map](#) ( Dongfang Fodu; admission ¥70), housing 3000 Buddha statues and figurines from around Asia, including a 170m-long reclining Buddha, one of the world's longest.

Bus 13 (¥1) travels from Xiaoba bus station and loops through the town centre before crossing the river to reach the Grand Buddha Scenic Area and Wuyou Temple. You could walk across, too, up and down both sides of the river, passing numerous teahouses en route.



Leshan

📍 Top Sights

[Grand Buddha](#) B3

📍 Sights

1 [Mahaoya Tombs Museum](#) B4

2 [Oriental Buddhist Theme Park](#) B4

3 [Wuyou Temple](#) B4

 Sleeping

4 [Jiazhou Hotel](#) A2

5 [Jintaoyuan Dajiudian](#) B3

 Eating

6 [Xiaogongzui Baba](#) B3

7 [Yang's Restaurant](#) A2

 Drinking

8 [Teahouses](#) B2

Information

9 [People's Hospital](#) A2

 Transport

10 Leshan Dock B3

## Tours

Tour boats (youchuan; 30-min round trip ¥70; 🕒 7.30am to 6.30pm) leave regularly from Leshan dock (; Leshan gang), passing by the cliffs for panoramic views of the Grand Buddha (hovering in front for about 10 minutes), which reveal two guardians in the cliff side, not visible from land.

The affable Mr Yang (📞 159 8438 2528; richardyangmin@yahoo.com.cn; Yang's Restaurant, 2f 186 Baita Jie) has been guiding foreign tourists round Leshan since the 1970s. He arranges a village visit as a half-day trip that includes a calligraphy demonstration, an old-town tour and a visit to a villager's home. He charges ¥200 per person including transport, lunch and his services as an English-speaking guide.

## Sleeping

Jiazhou Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

(Jiazhou Binguan; 📞 213 9888; 85 Baita Jie; 85 r incl breakfast from ¥360; 🌟📧) Rooms aren't as grand as the lobby suggests, but this place is more upmarket than most and makes for a comfortable stay.

Third-floor rooms and above have internet connection for laptop users, and many rooms, even some of the cheapies, have river views. Standard twins often go for ¥220.

Jintaoyuan Dajiudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( 📍 210 7666; 136 Binjiang Lu; 136 d from ¥456, discounted to ¥160; 📶📶) Smart, clean and by the river. Has internet connection for laptops. No English sign, although the word 'Hotel' is written on the Chinese sign.

## Eating

Xiaogongzui Baba SICHUANESSE \$

[Offline map](#)

( Binhe Lu; mains from ¥25; 🕒 9am-midnight; 📶) One of a cluster of cafe-restaurants with terrace seating on the riverbank here (walk down the steps from the road). Perfect for tea (from ¥10) or fresh coffee (from ¥25) during the day, or a riverside beer (from ¥8) come evening. The restaurant opens from 11am to 2pm and from 6pm to 11pm and does barbecue skewers plus Sichuanese main courses.

Yang's Restaurant SICHUANESSE \$

[Offline map](#)

( Yangjia Canting; 2f 186 Baita Jie; 186 2 dishes ¥15-30; 🕒 6-9pm; 📶) Leshan veteran Mr Yang runs this small restaurant in the living room of his home. He serves simple but tasty local food and may regale you with tales of his life while you eat.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 16 Renmin Nanlu) Answers all your money-changing needs.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 62 Yutang Jie)

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥2; 🕒 24hr) Opposite Yang's Restaurant; 2nd floor.

**People's Hospital**[Offline map](#) ( Renmin Yiyuan; 📍 211 9310, after-hr emergencies 211 9328; 222 Baita Jie) Has some English-speaking doctors. Pharmacies cluster round the entrance.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📍 518 2555; 148

Fenghuang Lu Zhongduan; 148 ☺ 9am-noon & 1-5pm Mon-Fri) Visa extensions in five days. Take Bus 6 (¥1) from the centre.

## **i** Getting There & Around

### Bus

Leshan has three main bus stations. Buses from Chengdu's Xinnanmen station usually arrive at Xiaoba bus station (; Xiaoba chezhan), but central bus station (; Leshan keyun zhongxin chezhan) is bigger and has more frequent services to more destinations. You may also be dropped at Lianyun bus station (; Lianyun chezhan). Note, if you're heading to Emei Shan, it's better to use Xiaoba bus station as buses from there go all the way to Baoguo (¥11, 45 minutes, every 30 minutes, 7.30am to 5pm).

Services from central bus station include:

**Chengdu** ¥49 to ¥ 51, two hours, every 20 minutes (7.10am to 5.10pm)

**Chongqing** ¥110 to ¥132, six hours, hourly (7.10am to 5.10pm)

**Emei town** ¥ 8, 30 minutes, every 15 minutes (7am to 6.30pm)

**Kangding** ¥119, seven hours, one daily (9.30am)

**Ya'an** ¥54, 2½ hours, six daily (9am to 4.40pm)

**Zigong** ¥42, three hours, hourly (8.30am to 5.10pm)

Local buses cost ¥1. Some handy routes:

**Bus 1** Xiaoba bus station–Jiazhou Hotel–town centre–Lianyun bus station

**Bus 6** Xiaoba bus station–town centre–PSB

**Bus 13** Xiaoba bus station–town centre–Grand Buddha–Wuyou Temple

**Bus 9** Central bus station–town centre–Leshan dock

### Train

The new 37-minute high-speed rail link from Chengdu to Leshan may be ready by the time you read this.

## Langzhong

📞 0817 / POP 112,000

Seemingly endless black-tile roofs with swooping eaves overlooking

the narrowest of alleys; flagstone streets lined with tiny shops; temples atop misty hills above a river. If you're looking for fast disappearing 'old China', hop on a bus to the town of Langzhong, Sichuan's capital city for 17 years during the Qing dynasty and home to the province's largest grouping of extant traditional architecture.

## Sights

You'll want to base yourself in the old town (; guzhen) here. Most attractions have an English-language overview sign, however inside, English captions vary from some to none. Many people are happy just wandering the alleys and gazing at the architecture – a blend of North China quadrangle and South China garden styles.

There's some good exploring to be done across the river, south of the old town. At the foot of one hill, and among other Buddhist statuary and caves, sits the sedate-looking Grand Buddha (; Dafo Si). From the old town, walk down to the river, turn left and keep going past the second road bridge. Then cross the river on a small passenger boat (¥2).

For bird's-eye views of the town's rooftops and lanes, climb to the top of either of three towers: Huaguang Lou ( Dadong Jie; admission ¥15), just past the Feng Shui Museum and rebuilt in 1867, Zhongtian Lou ( Wumiao Jie; admission ¥10), a 2006 rebuild on the way to Zhang Fei Temple, or South Gate [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Nanmen Lou; admission free), a 2010 rebuild on Nan Jie, a street running parallel with Dadong Jie.

A ¥80 combination ticket admits you to the towers and the three attractions listed below.

### Zhang Fei Temple TEMPLE

( Zhangfei Miao; Xi Jie; admission ¥40) This temple is the tomb of and shrine to local boy Zhang Fei, a respected general during the kingdom of Shu, who administered the kingdom from here. It's on Xi Jie (), a continuation of Wumiao Jie ().

### Feng Shui Museum MUSEUM

( Fengshui Guan; Dadong Jie; admission ¥20) This museum includes a model of the town, illustrating its feng shui–inspired design. A helpful English-speaking guide is sometimes available here. It's next to Tianyi

Youth Hotel on Dadong Jie (), and is free for hotel guests.

### Gong Yuan HISTORIC BUILDING

( Xuedao Jie; admission ¥35) Among the best-preserved imperial examination halls in China. On Xuedao Jie (), which is parallel to Wumiao Jie, one block north.

## Sleeping

There are dozens of renovated courtyard guesthouses. Look out for signs saying (*kezhan*; guesthouse) or (*zhusu*; lodgings).



### Tianyi Youth Hotel GUESTHOUSE \$

( Tianyi Qingnian Lushe; 📍 622 5501; 100 Dadong Jie; 100 d/tw without bathroom ¥98-138, with bathroom ¥288; 📶@📶) If you want to improve your geomancy, settle into this great value courtyard inn beside the Feng Shui Museum. Each of the stylish doubles (typically discounted to ¥135) is inspired by a feng shui element: earth, wood, fire, metal or water. The shared-bathroom twins and doubles (which go for ¥80) are simpler but still crisp and clean, with lots of natural wood.

### Ancient Hotel COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$

( Dujia Kezhan; 📍 622 4436; 63 Xiaxin Jie; 63 r from ¥480, discounted to ¥160; 📶@) Large, multicourtyard wooden building next to the Museum of Water Culture. The nicest rooms are set around a back courtyard with an open-air stage (performances 8pm to 10pm), and go for ¥280. Turn right off Dadong Jie just before the Huaguang Lou tower.

### Li Family Courtyard COURTYARD HOTEL \$\$

( Lijia Dayuan; 📍 623 6500; 47 Wumiao Jie; 47 r from ¥368, discounted to ¥128) Previously a lovely place to stay, but closed for wholesale renovation when we were last here.

## Eating

Famed local fare includes *zhangfei niurou* (; preserved water-buffalo beef; from ¥20 per packet), which makes a great bus-journey snack.

### Mingzhou Yinshi NOODLES \$

( 6 Shanghua Jie; 6 noodles ¥5-7; 🕒 8.30am-10pm) Small, friendly



noodle joint run by Grace, a local English teacher, and her husband. No English menu, but Grace speaks good English. If she's teaching when you visit, just go for the *niurou mian* (; beef noodles; ¥5 to ¥7) and you won't leave disappointed. Shanghua Jie is a continuation of Dadong Jie, and this place is just up from the Huaguang Lou tower.

## ★ Entertainment

North Sichuan Shadow Puppetry THEATRE

( Chuanbei Piyong; ☎ 623 8668; 67-69 Wumiao Jie; 67 69 tickets ¥20; 🕒 8-10pm) Informal but fun 20-minute performances of north Sichuan shadow puppetry are held in the small open-air courtyard here. It's a couple of doors past Li Family Courtyard.

## 📍 Information

You can pick up **street maps** ( ditu; ¥5) at some shops in the old town or at some tourist sights. Multilingual signs and maps are posted throughout the old town's streets.

**Bank of China ATM** (cnr Dadong Jie & Neidong Jie) At the top end of Dadong Jie; is foreign-card friendly.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; 🕒 8am-midnight) On Maojia Xiang () off Bailishu Jie (), a lane just outside the old town running parallel to Dadong Jie.

## 📍 Getting There & Away

Buses from Chengdu's Beimen bus station arrive at keyun zhongxin qichezhan (), the main bus station here, which also serves Chongqing (¥105, five hours, 7.20am, 8.40am, 9.40am, 10.50am and 2pm).

Buses returning to Chengdu (¥98, four hours) leave regularly between 6.40am and 5.30pm.

Langzhong also has a smaller bus station, Bashijiu Dui (89 ), which serves Guangyuan (¥56, three hours, 8am, 9am, noon and 2.30pm), from where you can catch trains north to Xi'an or buses west to Jiuzhaigou (see the boxed text). A local bus, labelled simply 89 (Bashijiu Dui ; ¥2, 20 minutes), connects the two stations and goes via the old town (ask to get off at Huaguang Lou, then walk up towards the tower for Dadong Jie).

From the smaller bus station, it's easiest just to walk to the old town.

Turn left out of the station, then after a couple of blocks turn right onto Tianshangong Jie (天 Shang Gong Jie) and keep walking straight. Dadong Jie will be on your left. Wumiao Jie will be straight on.

## THE WAY TO XI'AN

For those on their way to Xi'an from Jiuzhaigou, the most direct way to get there overland is via the mid-sized town of Guangyuan (广元), which is on the main Chengdu–Xi'an train line.

China's only female emperor, Wu Zetian, was born in Guangyuan during the Tang dynasty, and she is feted among the temples, pavilions and 1000-odd statues lining the cliffs at Huangze Temple (黄泽寺; admission ¥50).

The train station and long-distance bus station are beside each other. If you need to stay the night, Tianzhao Hotel (天 Zhao Maruika Jiudian; ☎ 0839 366 8888; 212 Jinlun Nanlu; 212 r from ¥168 @) has extremely smart rooms. Turn right out of the train station and it's on your right. Huangze Temple is about a 750m walk beyond the hotel.

### Selected buses from Guangyuan

**Chengdu** ¥140, four hours, one daily (9am\*)

**Xi'an** ¥142, six hours, two daily (10am and 1.30pm)

**Langzhong** ¥56, three hours, every two hours (6am to 4.50pm)

**Jiuzhaigou** ¥88, 8½ hours, two daily (6am and 4.10pm)

\* more frequent buses for Chengdu leave from Guangyuan's South Hill bus station (南山站)

### Selected Trains from Guangyuan

**Chengdu** seat ¥47, five hours, 22 daily

**Xi'an** seat ¥76, 10 hours, 10 daily (2.41pm to 3.43am)

## SOUTHERN SICHUAN

Not often on the radar of foreign tourists, steamy southern Sichuan is for those who prefer things a little offbeat. Quirky sights here include dinosaur fossils, ancient cliff-face hanging coffins and a bamboo forest. It's also home to some of China's very best teahouses.

### Zigong

📍 0813 / POP 693,000

This intriguing, rarely visited riverside city has been an important centre of Chinese salt production for almost 2000 years. Remnants of that industry make up part of an unconventional list of sights that includes the world's deepest traditional salt well and Asia's first dinosaur museum. Zigong is also the undisputed king of Sichuan teahouses, so there's plenty of opportunity to while away the hours here if you fancy putting your feet up for a day.

## Sights

### Salt Industry History Museum MUSEUM

( Yanye Lishi Bowuguan; 89 Dongxing Si; 89 admission ¥22; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) This absorbing museum, housed in a beautiful 270-year-old guild hall, is devoted to the region's salt industry and does an excellent job of telling the story through old photographs, good English captions and a modest collection of exhibits. The building itself, though, built by Shaanxi salt merchants in 1736, threatens to steal the show with its cool stone courtyards, intricate woodcarvings and wonderful swooping eaves.

To get here from the hotels, walk down the hill and turn left onto Jiefang Lu (). The museum will be on your right after about 500m.

### Shenhai Salt Well SALT WELL

( Shenhai Jing; 289 Da'an Jie; 289 admission ¥22; 🕒 8.30am-5pm) This 1001m-deep artesian salt well was the world's deepest well when it was built in 1835 and it remains the deepest salt well ever drilled using the traditional mining technique of percussion drilling.

Many of the original parts, including a 20m-high wooden derrick that towers above the tiny 20cm-wide mouth of the well, are still intact, and the well still operates as a salt provider, although on a much smaller scale than before. Nine salt cauldrons are still in operation and visitors can see them bubbling away beside rows of the 2ft-high blocks of salt that came from them.

There are excellent English captions explaining how bamboo was once used for brine pipes, how buffaloes used to turn the heavy winch (an electric motor is used these days) and how tofu was added to the

brine to help separate impurities.

Take bus 5 or 35 (¥1, 10 minutes) from opposite the Rongguang Business Hotel. Bus 5 terminates here. Bus 35 continues to the Dinosaur Museum.

### Dinosaur Museum MUSEUM

( Konglong Guan; 238 Dashan Pu, Da'an District; 238 admission ¥42; 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm) Built on top of an excavation site, which has one of the world's largest concentrations of dinosaur fossils, this museum has a fine collection of reassembled skeletons as well as half-buried dinosaur bones left in situ for visitors to see.

Dinosaur fossils started being discovered here in 1972 and their high numbers baffled archaeologists at first. It is now believed the skeletons were dumped here en masse from other sites in the region by huge floods.

Take bus 35 (¥1, 25 minutes) from opposite Rongguang Business Hotel.

## Sleeping

### Rongguang Business Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Rongguang Shangwu Jiudian; 📍 211 9999; 25 Ziyou Lu; 25 r incl breakfast from ¥388, discounted to ¥120; 🌟🌟) Large, smart rooms with friendly staff, internet access for laptop users and free-to-use computers along with a free buffet breakfast, distinguish this hotel. Smaller doubles go for ¥100. Take bus 1 or 35 from the bus station, or 34 from the train station.

### Xiongfei Holiday Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Xiongfei Jiari Jiudian; 📍 211 8888; 193 Jiefang Lu; 193 r incl breakfast from ¥860, discounted to ¥389; 🌟🌟) For a bit more class, try this upmarket place a few doors down from Rongguang Business Hotel.

## Eating & Drinking

Evenings here are all about shaokao (; barbecue skewers), with stalls spilling onto the pavement around Rongguang Business Hotel as well as elsewhere around town. Our favourite sets up outside Bank of China from around 8pm (skewers ¥1 to ¥4). Zigong locals love their

rabbit meat (; *tuzi rou*) and the skewers on offer include rabbit.

If you fancy a break from fiery Sichuan cuisine, try the small dumplings restaurant, just up the hill from Rongguang Business Hotel, which does delicious Tianjin-style *xiaolong bao* (; steamed dumplings, per basket ¥6) and *xifan* (; rice porridge , ¥1) and is open from 6.30am to 8pm. Look for the stacks of bamboo baskets.



### Huanhou Palace TEAHOUSE \$

( Huanhou Gong; Zhonghua Lu; tea ¥4-8; ☺ 7am-9pm) This fabulous teahouse is located inside an 1868 butchers' guild hall. Its dramatic stone facade leads into an enchanting, tree-shaded, open courtyard which houses an old stone stage and is surrounded on all sides by the beautifully carved wooden structure of the former guild hall. It's up to your left as you walk towards the salt museum from the hotels.



### Wangye Temple TEAHOUSE \$

( Wangye Miao; Binjiang Lu; tea ¥5-15; ☺ 8.30am-11pm) Housed within the ochre-coloured walls of a 100-year-old temple, this is also one of the coolest teahouses you'll find anywhere in Sichuan. Perched above the Fuxi River (; Fuxi He), it sits opposite the still-active Fazang Temple (; Fazang Si). The pair was built to ensure safe passage for cargo boats transporting salt downstream. Now locals hang out here, drink tea, play cards and admire the river view. From the hotels, walk down to the river, turn left and follow the river for about 750m.



### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Ziyou Lu) Foreign-friendly ATM next to Rongguang Business Hotel.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥2; ☺ 24hr) Up an alley beside the bank.



### Getting There & Around

Bus

Destinations include:

**Chengdu** ¥79, 3½ hours, every 45 minutes (6.30am to 8.30pm)

**Chongqing** ¥75, 3½ hours, every 45 minutes (6.40am to 8.30pm)

**Dazu** ¥52, three hours, two daily (8.30am and 2.50pm)

**Emei Shan** ¥50, 3½ hours, hourly (6.10am to 2.30pm)

**Leshan** ¥43, three hours, hourly (6.30am to 5pm)

**Yibin** ¥27, one hour, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 7pm)

**Local Buses** To get to the hotels we list, walk out of the bus station, turn right and walk 200m to the first bus stop. Then take bus 1 or 35 (¥1) five or six stops to Shizi Kou ( ) bus stop. The hotels are down the hill a bit from the bus stop and across the road. From the train station, take bus 34 or 37 (¥1) to Binjiang Lu ( ) bus stop. From there, walk back 200m and turn left up Ziyou Lu.

Train

**Chengdu** seat ¥41, five hours, six daily (4.52am to 10am)

**Chongqing** seat ¥51/29, seven hours, two daily (9.11am/2.59pm)

**Kunming** sleeper ¥208, 16 to 18 hours, three daily (1.58am, 2.11pm & 7.55pm)

**Yibin** seat ¥7 to ¥13, 1½ to 2½hours, nine daily (8.42am to 9.43pm)

## Yibin

Overlooking the confluence of the Min and Jinsha rivers, which become the mighty Yangzi River once they merge, Yibin was throughout history a town of great strategic military importance. These days it's a relatively modern, mid-sized city, which acts as a travel hub for trips to the Bamboo Sea and the Hanging Coffins.

Turn right out of Jingmao Hotel, and right again to reach the river confluence, accessed through the reconstructed Shui Dong Men (; East Water Gate), which has a teahouse on top of it. Further down and off to the right is a genuinely old city-wall gateway, plus remnants of the original ancient city wall, leading towards a modern public square where locals dance come evening. Up from the square are more city-wall remains plus Guanying Jie ( ), a street of courtyard homes, dating from the Qing-dynasty.

Good value Jingmao Hotel ( Jingmao Binguan; ☎ 0831-513 7222; 108 Minzhu Lu; 108 tw ¥140-260; ✉) gives 10% to 20% discounts and has internet access for laptops or rooms with computers for an extra ¥20. On the 2nd floor of the building next to Jingmao Hotel is an internet cafe (per hr ¥2; 🕒 24hr). There are foreign-friendly ATMs by Xufu Shangcheng bus stop.

The lively night market ( Dong Jie) includes stalls serving *diandian maocai* (; skewers boiled in a spicy sauce). Turn left out of the hotel and Dong Jie is on your left. In the daytime, look for *ranmian* (), a delicious fried noodle dish and a local favourite.

## Getting There & Around

### Bus

Most travellers arrive at Gaoke bus station (; Gaoke zhan). Take bus 4 (¥1 to ¥2, 15 minutes) into town and get off at Xufu Shangcheng () bus stop on Renmin Lu (). Turn right at the lights ahead of you and Jingmao Hotel will be on your left.

Continue on bus 4 to get to Nanke bus station (; Nanke zhan) for buses to the Bamboo Sea (; Zhuhai; ¥22, 1½ hours, 9.30am, 10am and 4.30pm) and the Hanging Coffins in Luobiao (; ¥32, three hours, 2.05pm). If you miss the direct buses to the Bamboo Sea, go via Changning (; ¥16, one hour, every 15 minutes from 7am to 7.30pm). If the direct Luobiao bus isn't convenient, go via Gongxian (; ¥17, one hour, every 20 minutes from 6am to 7pm).

Consider visiting the Hanging Coffins from the Bamboo Sea, as buses from Changning go to Gongxian.

Buses from Gaoke bus station include:

**Chengdu** ¥107, four hours, frequent services (7.20am to 7pm)

**Chongqing** ¥110, four hours, frequent services (7.10am to 7pm)

**Emei Shan** ¥72, 4½ hours, two daily (12.10pm and 1.10pm)

**Leshan** ¥61, four hours, hourly (8.20am to 5.30pm)

**Zigong** ¥25, one hour, frequent services (7.30am to 7pm)

### Train

Bus 11 (¥1) links the train station with Gaoke bus station and passes by the end of Renmin Lu. Trains leaving from Yibin Train Station (; huoche zhan) include:

**Chengdu** seat ¥51, 6½ to 7½ hours, three daily (6.02am, 8.08am and 8.30am)

**Kunming** sleeper ¥195, 15 to 16 hours, three daily (4.02am, 4.09pm and 9.25pm)

**Zigong** seat ¥7 to ¥13, 1½ hours, seven daily (6.02am to 3.39pm)

## SICHUAN'S MYSTERIOUS HANGING COFFINS

Travellers looking to get off the beaten track might want to consider a trip to the remote corner of southeast Sichuan, home to one of the province's most unusual and most mysterious sights: the Hanging Coffins of the ancient Bo people. The origins and eventual disappearance of the Bo continue to baffle archaeologists. It is thought they may be distant relatives of the Tujia, who can still be found scattered around the Three Gorges area, particularly in southwestern Hubei and northwestern Hunan. However, almost everything we know about the Bo has been gleaned from the sites of their coffins, which can still be found resting on wooden stakes, hammered into the side of cliffs up to 1000 years ago.

We know, for instance, from crude paintings found on some of the cliff faces, that the Bo were keen horsemen with a sharp social divide. Adult skeletons that have been recovered have also shown that the Bo knocked out their own teeth while still alive, although exactly why they practised this custom is still unknown.

There are hanging coffins at a few sites in this part of China, but at Luobiao ( ) the hanging coffins ( xuanguan; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-6pm) are found in greater numbers than elsewhere and are reasonably accessible.

At one time there were more than 300 coffins here, although about one-third have fallen to the ground as their support stakes gradually rotted away.

There's a small, free-to-enter museum just inside the site entrance with old photos, burial artefacts and a coffin (with a skeleton still inside it!). About 100m on, you'll find a large collection of coffins with steps leading up to a better vantage point. You can also climb up into a huge cave here. About 2km further on is another impressive collection of coffins.

Locals say the area is at its most photogenic first thing in the morning as the sun rises opposite the cliffs, so you may want to consider arriving the evening before and staying the night. Boxianju Binguan ( 📞 0831-441 0169; r without/with computer ¥60/80; 🌃📧), two doors down from the bus station, is friendly and good value.



The coffins are Luobiao's only tourist sight but you could fill any spare time with walks around the fabulous surrounding countryside.

### **Getting There & Away**

One of the reasons this place is so rarely visited is that it's a pain in the neck to get to. First you need to get to the grim coal-mining town of Gongxian (), which you can reach on buses from either Yibin or from Changning (¥10.50, one hour, frequent services from 6.20am to 6.20pm) near the Bamboo Sea. At Gongxian, catch a bus to Luobiao (¥20, 2½ hours, every 20 minutes from 5.50am to 5.10pm), from where you can walk (40 minutes; take the right fork) or take a motorcycle taxi (¥5) to the entrance. The last bus back to Gongxian leaves at 5.20pm.

To continue into Guizhou province, there are regular buses from Gongxian to Luzhou (; ¥37.50, 6am to 4.40pm), where you can change for Chishui (). For Yunnan province, you can go from Gongxian to Weixin (; ¥50, 6.20am and 1.05pm), then on to Kunming.

Selected buses from Gongxian:

**Chengdu** ¥106, five hours, hourly (7am to 7pm)

**Chongqing** ¥110, five hours, hourly (7.30am to 2.30pm)

**Yibin** ¥17, one hour, every 15 minutes (6am to 6.15pm)

## **Bamboo Sea**

Swaths of swaying bamboo forest, well-marked walking trails and a handful of charming lakes and waterfalls make south Sichuan's Bamboo Sea, or Shunan Zhuhai (adult ¥112), a worthwhile detour for those heading south.

There are more than 30 types of bamboo across this 120 sq km national park and the scenery is gorgeous enough to have attracted many a TV and film director.

The villages of Wanling (), near the west gate, and Wanli (), near the east gate, are the main settlements inside the park and your best bet for a base. Both have walking options nearby, but one possibility is to hike between the two. It's about 11km if you follow the road the whole way, but various loops within scenic areas mean you'll probably

end up walking a lot further. Expect to take at least half a day. Two possible cable car (; *suodao*) rides can shorten the walking distances considerably, and are a great way to see the forest from another angle.

From Wanling it takes about 20 minutes to reach Guanguang cable car ( Guanguang Suodao; one way/return ¥30/40; 25 minutes; ☺ 8am-5pm), which takes you over some stunning bamboo forests. There's a pleasant, one-hour streamside walk (with plenty of paddling opportunities), which loops around the forest just beyond the entrance to the cable car. Once you've ridden the cable car, turn right as you exit to reach Daxiagu cable car ( Daxiagu Suodao; one way/return ¥20/30; 10 minutes; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm), which crosses a dramatic gorge and leads into another scenic area with a number of trails, some of which pass by two lakes. Leaving this area, head for Sanhe Jie (), a junction where you can find accommodation. Turn right here for the final 30-minute walk to Wanli village.

Two waterfalls near Wanli are worth a look. To get to Rainbow Falls (; Qicai Feipu), either follow the lake by the village or turn right before it and walk along the road for about 1km to the signposted main gate. You can continue down past these falls to Golden Dragon Falls (; Jinlong Pubu). This is off the tourist maps so is pretty quiet, although you sometimes have to pay ¥10 to an enterprising old man for right of passage. You can climb back up to the main road through a wonderfully peaceful bamboo forest.

If you're hiking you'll pass numerous guesthouses and hotels along the way. In Wanling, try Chengbinlou Jiudian ( 📞 0831-498 0104; s/tw ¥180/200, discounted to ¥100/120; 📶📶). A couple of rooms have wi-fi. Wanli is smaller, but has plenty of accommodation. For somewhere more tranquil walk 1km beyond Wanli to Zhuyun Shanzhuang ( 📞 497 9001, 138 9092 5673; r from ¥360), opposite the main gate to Rainbow Falls. Spotless rooms with private bathroom were going for ¥80 when we were here; ¥100 to ¥200 at weekends.

All guesthouses and hotels do food, too. It's generally pretty good, although more expensive than outside the park. Alternatively, look out for one of the cheap noodle restaurants in Wanling or Wanli. Yibin's speciality *ranmian* () is popular, as is *zhusun mian* (; noodles with a

type of mushroom that resembles bamboo).

### **i** Getting There & Around

There's a map on the back of your entrance ticket, and you can get hold of maps in the park, but the easiest to use and most detailed maps are the ones drawn on wooden boards throughout the park. Take a photo of one to guide you. All the main sights are signposted, too.

Motorbike taxis can take you between the two main villages (around ¥50, 45 minutes) if you decide not to walk.

#### **Bus**

Buses into the park stop at the west gate to allow you to get off and buy your entrance ticket, before passing through Wanling and then terminating at Wanli.

There are two direct buses from Wanli back to Yibin (¥22, two hours, 7am and 1pm). Both pass Wanling (30 minutes) and, if you ask, will drop you at the junction for Changning (one hour), where you can change for Gongxian to get to the Hanging Coffins. Smaller local buses shuttle regularly between Wanling and Changning (¥5, 6am to 7pm).

## **WESTERN SICHUAN**

West of Chengdu, green tea becomes butter tea, gumdrop hills morph into jagged snowy peaks and *ni hao!* steps aside for *tashi-delek!* Welcome to Tibet, in all but name.

This part of Sichuan makes up a large chunk of what Tibetans refer to as Kham (in Chinese ; Kangba), one of old Tibet's three traditional provinces, and home to the Khampas, a Tibetan ethnic group known for being fierce warriors.

Western Sichuan experiences up to 200 freezing days per year, but summers can be blistering by day and the high altitude invites particularly bad sunburn as well as the risk of altitude sickness.

### **Kangding (Dartsendo)**

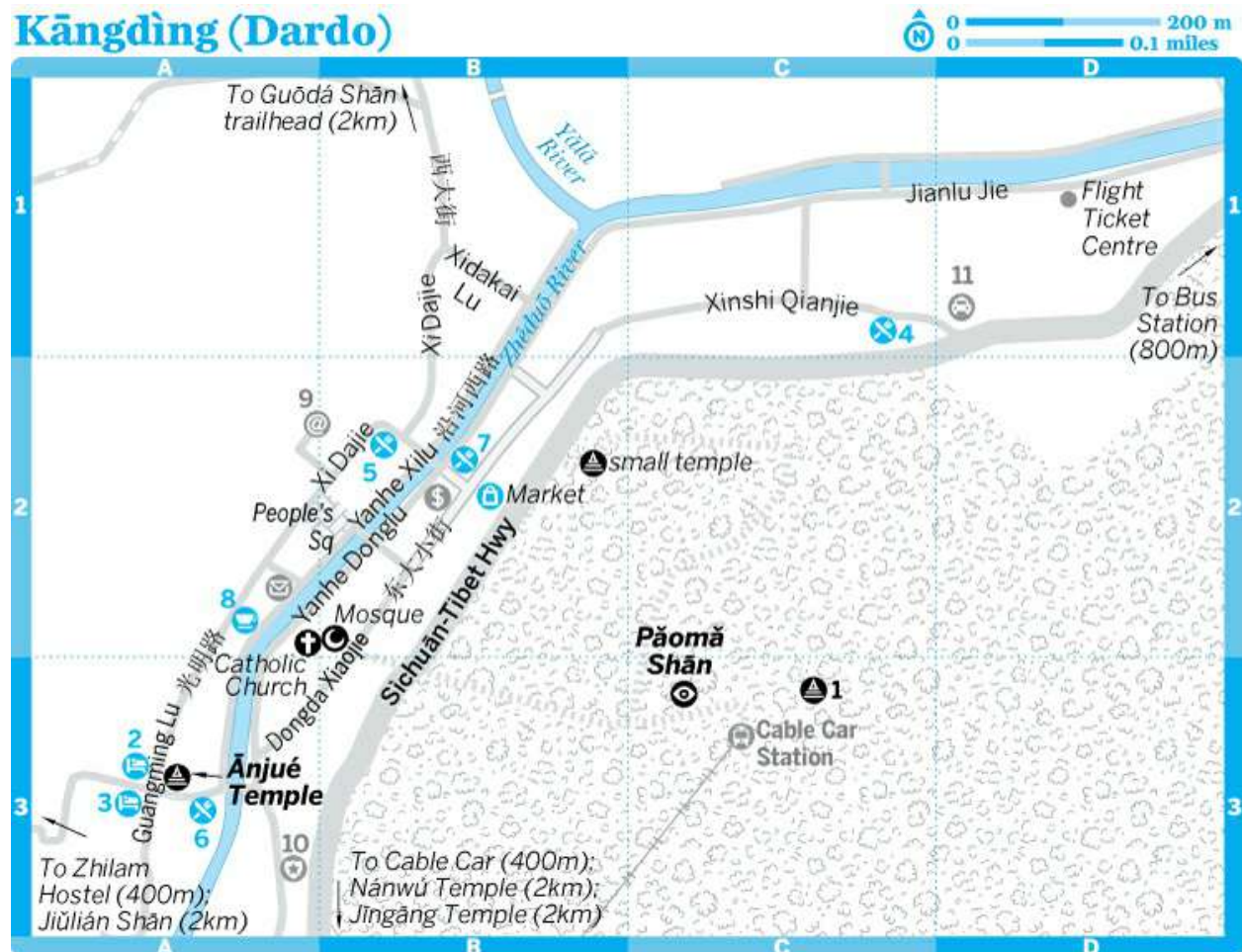
 0836 / POP 82,000

Coming from the Chengdu area, there are two main gateways into Tibetan Sichuan. One option is Danba, but by far the most popular is Kangding, and for many travellers this is the first taste of the Tibetan world.

The town has long been a trade centre between Chinese and Tibetan cultures and you'll find elements of both here.

Set in a steep river valley at the confluence of the raging Zheduo and Yala Rivers (known as the Dar and Tse in Tibetan), with the towering Gongga Shan (7556m) beyond, Kangding is famous throughout China for a popular love song inspired by the town's surrounding scenery.

### Kāngdìng (Dardo)



Kangding (Dardo)

⊙ Top Sights

[Anjué Temple](#) A3

Pǎomǎ Shān C3

## Sights

1 [Paoma Temple](#) C3

## Sleeping

2 [Kangding Hotel](#) A3

3 [Yongzhu Hotel](#) A3

## Eating

4 [A'Re Tibetan Restaurant](#) C1

5 [Barbecue Stalls](#) B2

6 [Mage Mian](#) A3

7 [Malaya Tibetan Restaurant](#) B2

## Drinking

8 [Tibetan Culture Dew](#) A2

## Information

9 Liaoliao internet cafe A2

10 PSB A3

## Transport

11 Minibuses to Tagong D1

## Sights & Activities

### Monasteries MONASTERIES

There are four main monasteries in Kangding. The central Anjue Temple [Offline map](#) (; Anjue Si; Ngachu Gompa in Tibetan) dates back to 1652 but was largely rebuilt recently.

Nanwu Temple (; Nanwu Si) belongs to the Gelugpa (Yellow Hat) sect of Tibetan Buddhism and is the most active monastery in the area. Walk south along the main road, cross the river and keep going for about 200m until you see a rusty old sign (in traditional Chinese characters: ) for the monastery on your right. Follow that track uphill, beside a stream, and the monastery will be on your right.

Nearby, about 100m further along the main road, is Jingang Temple (; Jingang Si), a 400-year-old Nyingma monastery set around a lawned courtyard. Turn right at the sign for Knapsack Inn.

The area's fourth monastery, Paoma Temple [Offline map](#) ( Paoma Si; entrance ¥50) is halfway up Paoma Shan.

## Hiking HIKING

Three small mountains loom over Kangding and make rewarding day hikes. The most famous, and easiest to ascend, is Paoma Shan (帕杓山), which you can climb or take a cable car (索道; one way/return ¥20/30) halfway up for excellent views of the town and the surrounding mountains and valleys. The stepped path takes you past oodles of prayer flags, en route to Paoma Temple. To go any further you have to pay ¥50, but you can loop north for free and descend on another path.

More natural (no concrete steps here!) and free of charge, is Jiulian Shan (九里山), the hill up behind Zhilam Guesthouse. A two-hour climb brings you to a small grassland plateau (perfect for picnics) where horses and yaks sometimes graze.

Guoda Shan (郭达山) looms large at the eastern end of town and takes a full day to climb up and down. From the top you can see the glacial peaks of Gongga Shan. Ask staff at Zhilam Hostel for details of how to find the trail.

The trailhead for the five- to seven-day pilgrims' circuit of holy Gongga Shan (贡嘎山) is only a half-hour drive from Kangding. Staff at Zhilam can advise you on how to do the trek independently, and can rent out any camping equipment you may need, but we recommend taking a guide for this trek. Zhilam can put you in touch with one of the best Tibetan guides in this area. He doesn't speak English, but is used to guiding foreign trekkers on the circuit. He charges ¥220 per day.

## Festivals & Events

Kangding's biggest annual festival, the Walking Around the Mountain Festival (转山节), takes place on Paoma Shan on the eighth day of the fourth lunar month (normally in May) to commemorate the birthday of the Historical Buddha, Sakyamuni. White and blue Tibetan tents cover the hillside and there's wrestling, horse racing and visitors from all over western Sichuan.

## Sleeping



Zhilam Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Huidao Kezhan; 📍 283 1100; [www.zhilamhostel.com](http://www.zhilamhostel.com); Bai Tukan Cun; dm/r from ¥35/160; @📶) Run by an accommodating American couple with two young children, this fabulous, family-friendly, hillside hostel makes an excellent base while you're in Kangding. Does decent Western food, dishes out reliable travel advice and rents out camping gear. It's a winding 10-minute walk up the hill beside Yongzhu Hotel.

Yongzhu Hotel GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#)

( Yongzhu Yizhan; 📍 283 2381, 159 8373 8188; dm/r ¥35/120; 📶) Hidden in a lane beside Kangding Hotel, this small, friendly guesthouse has comfortable, well-kept rooms, decorated with colourful Tibetan furnishings and built around an inner atrium. There are electric blankets in all rooms, and 24-hour hot water throughout.

Kangding Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Kangding Binguan; 📍 283 2077; 25 Guangming Lu; 25 r incl breakfast from ¥480; \*@📶) For something more comfortable, this decent midranger, right beside Anjue Temple, had standard twins going for ¥238 when we stayed.

## Eating & Drinking

On mild evenings, barbecue stalls [Offline map](#) set up around the northeast corner of People's Sq.



Malaya Tibetan Restaurant TIBETAN \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Malaya Zangan; Yanhe Donglu; dishes from ¥15; 🕒 9.30am-midnight; 📍) Friendly Tibetan-run restaurant-cum- teahouse serving authentic Tibetan dishes and lashings of butter tea. The menu is in English, but if you need inspiration, try the *yak meat burger* (which is a meat stew topped with flatbread) or the very filling *curry* (beef and potato on rice). Located on the 6th floor, above the hard-to-miss fast-food joint Dico's. You'll find similarly authentic food and a similar atmosphere at the slightly more expensive **A'Re Tibetan Restaurant**.

Mage Mian NOODLES \$

### [Offline map](#)

( noodles ¥5-10; 🕒 24hr) The best noodles in Kangding. Don't miss its speciality mage noodles (; *ma'ge mian*), topped with a spicy mincemeat sauce and served fresh in small (; *yiliang*; ¥5), medium (; *er liang*; ¥8) or large (; *sanliang*; ¥10) bowls.

Tibetan Culture Dew TEAHOUSE

### [Offline map](#)

( Xizang Yu; Yanhe Xilu; 🕒 11am-midnight; 📍) Hang out with the butter tea-sipping locals at this lovely teahouse with a rustic stone and wood interior decorated with colourful Tibetan prayer flags.

## ★ Entertainment

Come about 7pm, there's only one place to go. Every evening, dozens if not hundreds of locals descend on People's Sq for one of the biggest daily get-togethers of formation dancing we've ever seen.

## LOAD UP WITH CASH

At the time of research it was impossible to change money or travellers cheques, get advances on credit cards or use ATMs with foreign bank cards anywhere in western Sichuan apart from Kangding. Most other towns have a branch of the Agricultural Bank of China, but despite the VISA signs, the ATMs at these branches rarely accept foreign cards.

## Information

**ATM** ( Zidong Guiyuan Ji; Yanhe Donglu) China Construction Bank ATM. One of a few around town that takes foreign cards.

**Liaoliao internet cafe** ( Liaoliao wangba; per hr ¥5; 🕒 24hr) Staff will let you register with their Chinese ID cards if you smile sweetly.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 281 1415; Dongda Xiaojie; 🕒 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm) Visa-extension service in three working days. First-time extensions only.

## Getting There & Away

Air



Kangding Airport is 43km west of town and has daily flights to Chengdu (¥1180, 8.55am) and thrice-weekly flights to Chongqing (¥1550, 8.50am Tuesday, Thursday & Saturday). Buy tickets online or from the **flight ticket centre** ( Jichang Shoupiao Zhongxin; 📍 287 1111; 28 Jianlu Jie; 28 🕒 8.30am-5.30pm). Discounts bring prices down to around ¥850 and ¥1000. The airport shuttle bus (¥27) leaves from outside the ticket centre at 6.20am.

#### Bus

The bus station is a 10-minute walk from the centre (¥7 cab). Shared minibuses to all destinations listed here leave from outside the bus station. Buses to Tagong (¥50 to ¥80) and Ganzi (around ¥200) leave from Xinshi Qianjie. Remember: private hire – *baochē* (); shared vehicle – *pinche* ()).

**Batang** ¥144.50, 12 hours, one daily (6am)

**Chengdu** ¥120 to ¥140, eight hours, hourly (6am to 4pm)

**Danba** ¥44.50, three hours, two daily (7.30am and 3.30pm)

**Daochang** ¥135, 12 hours, one daily (6am)

**Dege** ¥180, 16 hours, one daily (6am)

**Emei Shan** ¥115, seven hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Ganzi** ¥113, 11 hours, one daily (6am)

**Leshan** ¥113, seven hours, one daily (7am)

**Litang** ¥90, eight hours, one daily (6am)

**Ya'an** ¥72, 4½ hours, every hour (6am to 4pm)

## Danba (Rongtrak)

📍 0836 / POP 58,200

This friendly town, set in a dramatic gorge overlooking the confluence of three rivers, makes a nice alternative to Kangding as a gateway into or out of Tibetan Sichuan.

The town itself is dusty and nondescript, but the hills surrounding Danba contain clusters of fascinating ancient watchtowers and a number of picturesque Tibetan villages, some offering homestays.

### Sights

## Qiang Watchtowers RUINS

These ancient stone towers (; Qiangzu diaolou), nestled incongruously among village homes on hillsides overlooking the Dadu River, were built by the Qiang people between 700 and 1200 years ago. The towers range from 20m to 60m in height and were used as places of worship and to store valuable goods as well as to signal warnings of would-be attackers. They were built with a number of inner wooden storeys, which have since disintegrated, and entrances that were some metres above ground. One enterprising family in Suopo (), the nearest village to Danba with watchtowers, has rebuilt the wooden levels of the tower next to their home and allows visitors to climb up the inside from their rooftop, for a small fee of course (¥15). Don't worry about finding them. They, or a 'friend' of theirs, will find you.

To get to Suopo, turn left out of Zhaxi Zhuokang Backpackers Hostel and walk along the river for about 30 minutes. Turn down the track beside the small police station, then cross the suspension bridge and keep walking up to the village. Look for stone steps under some large trees up to your left, just after you reach the village's first couple of buildings. These steps lead to the nearest towers.

## Tibetan Villages VILLAGES

There are a number of pretty Tibetan villages (; Zangzhai) in the hills round here but Danba's pride and joy is Jiaju ( admission ¥30), 7km northwest of town and perched on top of a multi-switchback track that winds its way up a steep river gorge. With its fruit trees, charming Tibetan stone houses and remote location, Jiaju often sucks in travellers for a day or two.

One of a number of stone houses that have been converted into a homestay is the excellent Liangke Shu ( ☎ 880 7199, 135 6868 5278; dm inc meals ¥60), with simple dormitories, traditional Tibetan furniture, a pleasant central courtyard and stunning views. The owner can arrange trips into the fabulous surrounding countryside. To get here, take a shared minivan (¥5) from the Bamei end of Danba. A private taxi costs ¥40 one way.

Another popular homestay village is Zhonglu ( admission ¥20), 13km from town (taxi ¥80).

## Sleeping

### Zhaxi Zhuokang Backpackers Hostel HOTEL \$

(Zhaxi Zhuokang Qingnian Lushe; 📞 352 1806; 35 Sanchahe Nanlu; 35 dm ¥25, tw without/with bathroom ¥60/80; @📶) Despite being more hotel than youth hostel, this place is still traveller central in Danba. Rooms are decidedly average, but you'll receive a friendly welcome and there are free internet terminals and wi-fi throughout. It's a 25-minute walk from the bus station (walk down to the river, turn right and keep going) or ¥5 in a cab.

## Eating & Drinking

Small restaurants by the bus station open early for breakfast noodles (; *mian*) or dumplings (; *xiaolong baozi*).

### Wanglao Wu SICHUANESE \$\$

(dishes ¥20-50; 🕒 noon-9pm) Across the street from Zhaxi Zhuokang Backpackers Hostel, this decent 2nd-floor Sichuanese restaurant rustles up all the usual Sichuan favourites ([Click here](#)) plus some tasty cured-pork dishes. Try the cured pork with green chillies (; *larou qingjiao*, ¥30). Photo menu.

### Base Camp of Photographer Cafe CAFE

(Dabengong Kafei; opposite bus station; 🕒 1-11pm; @📶) Fresh coffee (¥25), Chinese tea (from ¥10), internet, wi-fi and ceiling-to-floor windows offering the best river view of any town centre cafe we can remember. Turn right out of the bus station and look for the large painted English sign on the left.

## Getting There & Away

For Tagong, take a minibus (¥60, three hours) from the west end of town, via Bamei (¥40, two hours). Bus destinations include:

**Chengdu** ¥146.50, nine hours, three daily (6.15am, 6.20am and 6.30am)

**Ganzi** ¥100.50, nine hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Kangding** ¥46.50, five hours, two daily (6.30am and 3pm)

**Ma'erkang** ¥46, six hours, one daily (7.30am)

---

## Sichuan–Tibet Highway (Northern Route)

The famous Sichuan–Tibet Hwy splits in two just west of Kangding. The northern route is 300km longer than the southern route, and is generally less travelled. You'll pass awesome high-plateau grasslands and numerous traditional Tibetan communities, often attached to a local monastery.

Crossing Chola Mountain, the highest pass (5050m) this side of Lhasa, takes you to Dege and the border with the TAR (Tibetan Autonomous Region), or Tibet proper. You can also take this route to head north into Qinghai province via Sershu. And it's possible to travel between Ganzi and Litang via Xinlong.

You *must* come prepared with warm clothing; even in midsummer, it can be very cold at higher elevations. Remember that bus services can be erratic – this is no place to be in a hurry.

### TĀGONG (LHA GANG)

 0836 / POP 8000

The small Tibetan village of Tagong and its beautiful surrounding grasslands offer plenty of excuses to linger. As well as an important monastery and a fascinating nearby nunnery, there's also horse trekking, hiking and Tibetan homestays.

Take time to adjust to the altitude if you're coming from lower terrain to the east.

 **Sights**

## Tagong Monastery *BUDDHIST MONASTERY*

(*Tagong Si*; admission ¥20) The story goes that when Princess Wencheng, the Chinese bride-to-be of Tibetan king Songtsen Gampo, was on her way to Lhasa in the 7th century, a precious statue of Jowo Sakyamuni Buddha toppled off one of the carts in her entourage. A replica of the statue was carved on the spot where it landed and a temple then built around it. You'll find the statue in the right-hand hall here. The original, which is the most revered Buddha image in all of Tibet, is housed in Lhasa's Jokhang Temple.

Also note the beautiful 1000-armed Chenresig (Avalokiteshvara) in the hall to the left. And don't miss the impressive collection of over 100 *chörtens* (Tibetan stupas) behind the monastery.

### Activities

**Horse riding** (*per person per day 1/2/3 people ¥420/310/290*) and guided **grassland hikes** (*per person per day ¥200*) can be arranged through Khampa Cafe & Arts Centre. It's an extra ¥60 per person with meals and accommodation. They can also point you in the right direction if you want to hike out into the grasslands on your own. One popular option is the two-hour hike to **Heping Fahui** (), the largest nunnery in the area.

Khampa Cafe also rents out camping equipment (tent per day ¥30), mountain bikes (per day ¥40) and motorbikes (¥130).

### Festivals

Like many places in this part of Tibetan Sichuan, Tagong holds an annual **horse-racing festival** (*saimahui*) during the fifth lunar month (usually early July).

### Sleeping & Eating

The three most popular places to stay are each located along one side of the main square outside Tagong Monastery; to your left as you face the monastery. All transport drops passengers by this square.

Angela at Khampa Cafe & Arts Centre can arrange **Tibetan homestays** (*per person per night ¥60*) out in the grasslands.



## Khampa Cafe & Arts Centre GUESTHOUSE \$\$

(☎ 136 8449 3301; <http://definitelynomadic.com>; r ¥160) Run by Angela, a super-helpful American woman, and her Tibetan husband Djarga, this is the most comfortable place to stay in Tagong. There are no private bathrooms, but the bedrooms are large, bright and exceptionally clean. The top-floor **cafe** (dishes ¥10-30; ☎ 8.30am-11pm) is also the best hang-out in town and *the* place to come for info on hiking, camping and the like. Wi-fi (per hour ¥10, available 8.30am to 3.30pm) is available via a modem, which staff can lend to you.



## Jya Drolma and Gayla's Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE

\$

(☎ 286 6056; dm ¥25, tw without bathroom ¥50) Bedrooms here – even the dorms – are a riot of golds, reds and blues, with elaborately painted ceilings and walls. There are common toilets on each floor and one shower with 24-hour hot water. No English spoken, but a very friendly welcome.

## Snowland Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

(Xuecheng Lushe; ☎ 286 6098; [tagong\\_sally@yahoo.com](mailto:tagong_sally@yahoo.com); dm from ¥15, s/d ¥60/80) This long-standing backpacker hang-out offers a cheaper option for budget travellers. Rooms are much more basic than those at Khampa and have less character than Gayla's but this is still an OK choice. Sally, who runs the place, speaks a bit of English. The attached **Sally's Kham Restaurant** (mains ¥10-20; ☎ 8am-10pm) does a selection of simple, well-priced Tibetan, Chinese and Western dishes plus butter tea and beer.



### Getting There & Away

A bus from Ganzi to Kangding (¥40, two hours) passes Tagong Monastery at about 7.30am, but it's usually full. Alternatively, take a shared minivan (¥50 to ¥80). Note, you might struggle to find fellow passengers after about 10am.

To get to Litang, take the Kangding bus or a shared minivan to

Xinduqiao (; ¥20 to ¥40, one hour), from where you can flag down the Kangding–Litang bus (¥64, seven hours), which passes by at around 9am, or a minivan (¥80 to ¥100).

For Danba, take a shared minivan to Bamei (; ¥20, one hour), then switch minivans (¥30, two hours).

For Ganzi (¥80, eight hours) you can try to snag a seat on the bus from Kangding, which passes here between 9am and 10am, or try to arrange a shared minivan (¥100 to ¥150).

## GANZI (GARZÊ)

 0836 / POP 61,400

This dusty but lively market town in a picturesque valley surrounded by snowcapped mountains is the capital of the Ganzi Autonomous Prefecture and is populated mostly by Tibetans. It's easy to spend a couple of days here exploring the beautiful countryside, which is scattered with Tibetan villages and large monasteries. Photo opportunities abound.

### Sights & Activities

#### **Ganzi Temple** BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( *Ganzi Si; Garze Gumpa in Tibetan; admission ¥15*) North of the town's Tibetan quarter is the region's largest monastery, dating back more than 500 years and glimmering with blinding quantities of gold. Encased on the walls of the main hall are hundreds of small golden Sakyamunis. In a smaller hall just west of the main hall is an awe-inspiring statue of Jampa (Maitreya or Future Buddha), dressed in a giant silk robe. The views into the mountains from here are fantastic.

The monastery is about a 25- to 30-minute walk from the bus station. Turn left out of the station and just keep going.

#### **Hot Springs** HOT SPRINGS

( *wenquan; per room ¥10; ☺ 8am-midnight*) Perfect after a day of hiking in the surrounding hills, Ganzi's hot springs are a short walk past the turning for Hotel Himalaya. When you see the road Xinqu Lu

() on your left, turn right down the alley opposite and follow it downhill until the smell of sulphur overwhelms you. Each room has a hot tub. Towels (; yujin) can be provided.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Hotel Himalaya** HOTEL \$

(*Ximalaya Binguan*; 📍 752 1878; *Dongda Jie*; r ¥150) Run by a Ganzi local who studied medicine in Germany and who speaks English, this is the most comfortable and cleanest place in town. Rooms are large, bright and come with attached bathrooms featuring sit-down toilets and hot-water showers. Turn left out of the bus station, then first right up Chuanzang Lu. Dongda Jie is then on your left after a couple of hundred metres.

### **Hong Fu Guesthouse** GUESTHOUSE \$

(*Hongfu Luguan*; 📍 752 5330; *Chuanzang Lu*; r ¥40) Nowhere near as comfortable as Himalaya, but it's hard not to love this place. Tibetan-run, and housed in a traditional Tibetan wooden building, Hong Fu has very basic but neat and tidy twin rooms, which go for ¥20 per bed. Shared toilets only, and no showers, but, as the owners say, the hot springs are just up the road, and only cost ¥10. Turn left out of the bus station, take the first left and you'll soon see a sign on your right for Long Da Guesthouse (same prices; not as good). Walk towards that and you'll see Hong Fu just before it, on your left.

### **Jintaiyang Binguan** HOTEL \$

(📍 752 2444; *Chuanzang Lu*; r ¥150, discounted to ¥100; 📶) If you need wi-fi, this standard midrange hotel does the trick. Left out the bus station, first right and it's on your left through an archway. No English sign.



### **Tibetan Restaurant** TIBETAN \$

(*Yindu Zangcan*; 2nd fl, off *Chuanzang Lu*; dishes ¥10-35; 🕒 6am-11pm; 📍) Small, friendly Tibetan teahouse serving an excellent range



of Tibetan food. Has a well-translated English menu, including some photos. Turn left out of the bus station, take the first left and follow the sign under the archway into a small square. Then look for the steps in the far corner that lead up to the 2nd floor.

### **i** Information

Turn left out of the bus station and take the second road on your right; there's an **internet cafe** (*wangba*; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr) on the 2nd floor.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Minivans congregate outside the bus station. Destinations, and rough prices, include:

**Dege** ¥100, six to seven hours

**Litang** ¥100, six to seven hours

**Manigange** ¥50, two to three hours

**Xinlong** ¥30, two to three hours

Scheduled bus services run to the following destinations:

**Chengdu** ¥226, 18 hours, one daily (6am)

**Danba** ¥101, nine hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Kangding** ¥117 and ¥129, 11 hours, two daily (both at 6.30am)

**Sershu** ¥102, six hours, one daily (6.30am)

DON'T MISS

## TALAM KHANG GUESTHOUSE

Travellers who are sick of staying in dusty market towns, and only seeing this area's drop-dead-gorgeous scenery through the window of a bus, will adore **Talam Khang Guesthouse** (*Dajin Si Luguan*; camping/dm/d/tw ¥30/40/100/200).

A 10-minute walk from **Darjay Gompa** (pronounced *dah-jee gompa*), one of the area's largest and most revered monasteries, the small temple of Talam Khang is home to three friendly monks who welcome guests to share their mudbrick wood-beamed living quarters set among the prettiest scenery you can imagine – snowcapped mountains to one side, rolling grasslands and a river to the other. Climb up onto the roof for 360-degree views and to plot your next hike to one of the nearby villages, monasteries or mountains.

The dormitories are in the temple building itself, next to the rooms the monks live in. They are very basic, but full of character. Doubles and twins, with sinks for washing but no hot water, are housed in two small modern blocks at each side of the courtyard, which has room for pitching tents.

The lack of hot water needn't worry you as there are free-to-use, open-air **hot springs** (; *wenquan*) five minutes' walk away over the other side of the river. Locals use them to wash themselves, their children, their clothes and sometimes even their motorbikes, but there's plenty of room for everyone, so squeeze in.

For an extra ¥50 per person you get three simple meals a day at 8.30am, 1pm and 7pm. There's also a small **shop** (☺ 8am-9pm) on the main road outside the monastery, which sells drinks, snacks and instant noodles.

To get to the guesthouse from Darjay Gompa, walk for 10 minutes along the only track that leads away from the back entrance of the monastery.

Darjay Gompa is around 30km west of Ganzi, on the road to Derge. It'll cost around ¥30 to get to here in a shared minivan; at least ¥50 in a private taxi. Keen hikers could consider walking here but it will take a whole day. Walk to **Beri Gompa**, an attractive golden-roofed monastery 8km west of Ganzi, and just keep going. Hitching is another option.

## MĀNIGANGE (MANIGANGO)

📞 0836

There's not much going on in this dusty two-street town halfway between Ganzi and Dege. The surrounding hills offer wonderful hiking opportunities, though, and the stunning turquoise lake, Yilhun Lha-tso, is nearby. The large monastery, Dzogchen Gompa, is also within striking distance, on the road north to Yushu.

### **Sleeping & Eating**



#### **Fenglingdu Kezhan** GUESTHOUSE \$

( 📞 150 0248 8791; beds ¥20; 📶 ) Cosy, welcoming guesthouse run by Lorna, a friendly young woman from Liaoning province who speaks a bit of English. There are only a few rooms: a couple of dorms and a couple of private rooms, but the price is the same; ¥20 per person. No showers, although you can have a bucket of hot water if you wish, and toilets are communal, but clean. There's wi-fi in the evening, and a nice travellers' vibe on account of the young Chinese backpackers who tend to stay here. It's 200m down from Manigange Pani Hotel, on

the left. Look for the English 'guesthouse' sign.

### **Manigange Pani Hotel** HOTEL \$

( *Manigange Pani Jiudian*; dm ¥25, tw without/with bathroom ¥80/160)

This OK hotel is the town's centre of gravity, with its car park used as the unofficial bus station and its buffet-style restaurant the most popular lunch stop for passing motorists. Sleeping-wise there are rooms for everyone; from dirt-cheap five-bed dorms to decent twins with private bathrooms, and hot water (evenings only), that go for ¥130 when it's quiet. The **restaurant** (*vegetable/meat dishes ¥15/20*; ☺ 7am-11pm) has an easy-to-order, choose and point buffet with surprisingly good results.

### **Gaoyuan Jiyang Zangcan** TIBETAN TEAHOUSE \$

( *dishes from ¥10*; ☺ 8am-10pm) Tiny Tibetan teahouse run by a friendly woman who once walked to India to meet the Dalai Lama (25 days, in case you're wondering). She whips up warming pots of butter tea, as well as *tsampa*, *thukpa* and beef soup (; *niurou tang*). Opposite Fenglingdu Kezhan.

#### **i** Information

An **internet cafe** ( *wangba*; per hr ¥5; ☺ noon-11pm) is 100m along the lane opposite Manigange Pani Hotel.

#### **i** Getting There & Away

A daily bus to Dege (¥50, three to four hours) passes through Manigango at about 11am, but is often full. Going the other way, there are usually some empty seats on the Ganzi-bound bus (¥35, three to four hours), which passes by at 9am to 10am. Catch both from Manigange Pani Hotel. A bus from Ganzi, heading for Sershu (¥80, seven hours), passes by the main crossroads at around 8.30am.

Plenty of minibuses congregate outside Manigange Pani Hotel waiting to scoop up bus-less passengers.

## EATING TIBETAN

ENGLISH	TIBETAN PRONUNCIATION	TIBETAN SCRIPT	CHINESE PRONUNCIATION	CHINESE SCRIPT
Butter tea	<i>bo-cha</i>		<i>suyou cha</i>	
Noodles	<i>thuk-pa</i>		<i>zangmian</i>	
Rice, potato and yak- meat stew	<i>shemdre</i>		<i>gali niurou fan</i>	
Roasted barley flour	<i>tsampa</i>		<i>zanba</i>	
Tibetan yoghurt	<i>sho</i>		<i>suannai</i>	
Yak-meat dumplings	<i>sha-momo</i>		<i>niurou baozi</i>	
Vegetable dumplings	<i>tse-momo</i>		<i>sucai baozi</i>	

## XINLU HǎI (YILHUN LHA-TSO)

The fabulous turquoise-blue waters of this holy alpine **lake** (*admission* ¥20), 13km southwest of Manigango, are the main reason most travellers stop in this area.

The stunning lake is bordered by *chörten* and dozens of rock carvings, and is then framed by snowcapped mountains. You can walk an hour or two up the left (east) side of the lakeshore for views of the nearby glacier.

This is also a great place to camp – some travellers have even slept in caves here although you'll need to be totally self-sufficient. Monks from surrounding monasteries sometimes camp here during the summer in colourful Tibetan nomad tents.

To get here, either nab a seat in a Dege-bound minibus (¥20), hitch a ride or hike; turn right out of Manigange Pani Hotel and keep going. The lake is a five-minute walk from the main road, along a signposted track. Motorbikes (¥20) wait to take you back to Manigango.

## DEGE (DERGE)

 0836 / POP 58,600

Your bumpy bus rides just got bumpier. Dege is cut off from the rest of western Sichuan by the towering Chola Mountain (6168m), and to get here from the east you will probably have to endure a highly uncomfortable, slightly scary three-hour minibus ride along a dirt track that goes up and over the 5050m-high Tro La (Chola) Pass. Here, Tibetans on board will throw coloured prayer paper out the window and chant something that you can only hope will help carry you all to safety.

Unless you've managed to secure the correct permits to enter the rarely travelled Chamdo prefecture of Tibet proper, the main reason you'll have made the arduous trek out here is to see Dege's famous printing monastery, one of this region's stellar sights.

## Sights



### **Bakong Scripture Printing Press & Monastery**

*BUDDHIST MONASTERY*

(*Dege Yinjingyuan*; [www.degeparkhang.org](http://www.degeparkhang.org); admission ¥50; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2-6.30pm) This striking 18th-century monastery houses one of western Sichuan's star attractions: a fascinating printing press that still uses traditional woodblock printing methods and which houses an astonishing 70% of Tibet's literary heritage.

There are more than 217,000 engraved blocks of Tibetan scriptures here from all the Tibetan Buddhist orders, including Bön. These texts include ancient works about astronomy, geography, music, medicine and Buddhist classics, including two of the most important Tibetan sutras. A history of Indian Buddhism comprising 555 woodblock plates is the only surviving copy in the world (written in Hindi, Sanskrit and Tibetan).

Within the monastery, dozens of workers hand produce more than 2500 prints to order each day, as ink, paper and blocks fly through the workers' hands at lightning speed. In one side room you'll find an older crowd of printers who produce larger and more complex prints of Tibetan gods on paper or coloured cloth.

You can also examine storage chambers, paper-cutting rooms and

the main hall of the monastery itself, protected from fire and earthquakes by the guardian goddess Drölma (Tara). There are some nice murals in the two ground-floor chapels, so bring a torch.

You aren't allowed to take photos in the storerooms or the main hall, but the workers were happy for us to snap away while they worked frantically to meet their quota.

To get here, turn right out of the bus station, then left over the bridge and keep walking up the hill.

## **Other Monasteries** *BUDDHIST MONASTERIES*

If you continue following the road up the hill beyond the printing house, you'll reach the huge, recently renovated 1000-year-old **Gonchen Monastery**. High in the mountains to the south and east of Dege are several other monasteries, including **Pelpung Gompa**, **Dzongsar Gompa** and **Pewar Gompa**.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### **Hexie Hotel** *HOTEL \$*

(*Hexie Luguan*; 📞 822 6111; *Chamashang Jie*; dm/tw ¥40/80; 📶) A friendly Tibetan-run hotel with a homely feel to it. Spacious carpeted rooms come with coat stand, hot-water flask and pinewood table and chairs, while the comfy beds have clean sheets and warm puffy duvets. There's even wi-fi! Bathrooms are shared but have 24-hour hot-water showers. Turn left out of the bus station and it's on your left after a few hundred metres.

### **Golden Yak Hotel** *HOTEL \$*

(*Jinmaoniu Jiudian*; 📞 822 5188; *beside the bus station*; r ¥180, *discounted to ¥80*) Conveniently located right by the bus station, Golden Yak has large, comfortable twins and doubles with ensuite bathrooms. Note, showers are solar heated so if the weather's rubbish, the water's cold.

### **Kangba Zangcan** *TIBETAN \$*

( *Chamashang Jie*; dishes ¥10-20; ☺ noon-midnight) Tibetan teahouse serving authentic Tibetan food, plus tea and beer. There's no menu, but here's a sample of what's on offer: yak pie (; *niurou bing*; ¥20), yak-meat *momos* (¥1 per dumpling), *thukpa* (¥12), *tsampa* (¥5), butter tea (¥10) and Tibetan yoghurt (¥5). No English sign. No English spoken. Turn left out of the bus station and it's on your right; on the 2nd floor.

There are several small Chinese restaurants and **noodle shops** near the bus station.

### **i** Information

To get to the **internet cafe** ( *wangba*; per hr ¥3; ☺ 8.30am-midnight) turn right out of the bus station, left over the bridge and down steps to your right. The entrance is just past the pool hall.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Just one daily eastbound bus leaves from here, at 7am, heading for Kangding (¥183, next-day arrival) via Manigango (¥41, three hours), Ganzi (¥68, six hours) and Luhuo, where it stops for the night. Otherwise, there are minibuses.

Foreigners aren't allowed to take public transport west from here into Tibet proper.

## **SHIQU (SÊRSHU)**

📞 0836 / POP 60,000

There are two places commonly called Shiqu (in Tibetan; Sêrschu): the traditional monastery town of Sêrschu Dzong to the west and the modern(ish) county town of Sêrschu (Shiqu Xian), 30km to the east, which has more lodgings and transport connections.

While you'll probably stop in Shiqu Xian en route between Manigango and Yushu in Qinghai, the huge monastery of Sêrschu Dzong and its intensely Tibetan village is far more interesting.

It's home to hundreds of monks and has two assembly halls, a Maitreya chapel, several modern chapels and a *shedra*, with a *kora* (holy hike) encircling the lot. The road west from here towards Qinghai is classic yak and nomad country, passing several long *mani* (prayer)

walls and dozens of black yak-hair tents in summer.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

In Sêrshu Dzong you can stay at the basic **monastery guesthouse** (*sexu si gangjing fandian*; *dm* ¥10-20, *tw per bed* ¥40-50). There also are plenty of small restaurants – noodle joints as well as Tibetan teahouses – on and off the main road.

### **Gesa'er Jiudian** GUESTHOUSE \$

(*tw/tr per bed* ¥20, *d* ¥50) In Shiqu Xian, this Tibetan-run place has acceptable cheapies, although the shared bathroom is nothing more than a row of pit toilets. Coming from the direction of Manigango, take the first left after the post office and look for the big green building. Reception is on the 2nd floor along with a very popular Tibetan restaurant.

### **Shangdeenyma Hotel** HOTEL \$\$

(*Xiangdenima Dajiudian*; 📞 862 2888; *tw/d/tr* ¥242/246/288) In Shiqu Xian the only place we could find with showers is housed in an imposing Tibetan-style building set back from the main street. The cheaper triples and doubles have common bathrooms and go for ¥180. The standard twins with private bathrooms go for ¥200. Make sure the hot water is working before splashing out for a room.

### **Tibetan restaurant** TIBETAN \$

(*dishes* ¥8-35; 🕒 10am-11pm) The most comfortable place to get your fix of momo, *tsampa* and butter tea in Shiqu Xian is the Gesa'er Jiudian's colourful Tibetan restaurant.

## **Getting There & Away**

The small bus station at the far east end of Shiqu Xian has a 7am bus to Ganzi (¥99, eight hours), via Manigango (¥77, four hours).

The bus to Yushu (¥40, five hours, 8am) leaves from the even smaller bus station at the far west end of town.

The Yushu-bound buses will let you off at Sêrshu Dzong.



Alternatively, it's ¥20 in a shared minivan.

There are sometimes through buses that stop here, and at Sêrshu Dzong, en route between Ganzi and Yushu, but times are inconsistent, and they don't always run.

---

## Sichuan–Tibet Highway (Southern Route)

Travel here takes you through vast grasslands dotted with Tibetan block homes and contentedly grazing yaks, while majestic peaks tower beyond. Journeying along this 2140km route is slightly easier than taking the northern route, but it's still not for the faint-hearted; road conditions can be pretty poor, and high altitude is just as much a factor here as it is further north. However, Kangding–Litang–Xiangcheng–Shangri-la has become a popular route into Yunnan province.

As in the rest of western Sichuan, warm clothing is a must here, and be on the lookout for signs of altitude sickness.

### ROUGH ROADS

The roads in western Sichuan are notoriously bad, but at the time of research they were in the midst of a massive, three-year resurfacing project, which had reduced parts of them to a mud bath. Travel times were sometimes double what they should have been, and after heavy rain some stretches were impassable. The project is due to be completed in 2014 (so they say). Until then, try to get the latest travel time information from hostels in the area. The times we've listed are pre-resurfacing times.

### LITANG (LITHANG)

📍 0836 / POP 51,300

Litang claims to be the world's highest town. It isn't. That accolade is shared by Wenquan in Qinghai province and La Rinconada in Peru, both of which stand at a wheeze-inducing 5100m. Nevertheless, at a

dizzying altitude of 4014m, Litang is still exceptionally high.

The surrounding scenery will certainly leave you breathless, and there are great opportunities to get out and see it – whether by horse, motorbike or simply hiking – making this a decent place to spend a couple of days.

Litang is famed as the birthplace of the seventh and 10th Dalai Lamas, but the town's large monastery, Chöde Gompa, is the most absorbing sight.

## Sights & Activities

### Chöde Gompa *MONASTERY*

( *Changqingchun Ke'er Si*) At the northern end of town, the large Chöde Gompa is a Tibetan monastery built for the third Dalai Lama. Inside is a statue of Sakyamuni that is believed to have been carried from Lhasa by foot. Don't miss climbing onto the roof of the furthest right of the three main halls for great views of the Tibetan homes leading up to the monastery and the grasslands and mountains beyond. Monks climb up here every day to sound the temple's long horns. To get here, walk past the post office, turn left at the end of the road, then take the first right.

### Baita Gongyuan *CHÖRTEN*

Worshippers seem to be perpetually circling Baita Gongyuan () as they recite mantras and spin prayer wheels. You can join the locals hanging out in the surrounding park. Turn left out of the bus station and just keep walking.

If you keep walking past Baita Gongyuan, there are **hot springs** ( *wenquan*; admission ¥15) 4km west of the centre.

### Outdoor Activities *OUTDOORS*

**Hiking** opportunities abound. The hills behind the monastery are one fine option. You could also attempt the two-day *kora* around Zaga Shenshan (), a holy mountain three hours' hike south of town. You'll need a tent. For more details, talk to Mr Zheng at Tian Restaurant.

Potala Inn, meanwhile, can help organise **horse trekking**.

Litang has a **sky burial** site behind the monastery. If you do attend a sky burial, be sure to remember exactly what you are watching and treat the ceremony, and all those involved, with the utmost respect. For more details, ask Mr Zheng at Tian Restaurant.

## Festivals & Events

One of the biggest and most colourful Tibetan festivals, the Litang Horse Festival, is an annual event that includes horse racing, stunt riding, dance competitions and an arts and crafts fair. It is usually held over several days from 1 August.

## Sleeping

### **Potala Inn** HOSTEL \$

(*Budala Dajjudian*; 📍 532 2533, 135 5198 9029; dm/tw ¥35/320, tr without bathroom ¥150; @📶) Run by a warm, English-speaking Tibetan woman called Medok, this large hostel has a mixed bag of rooms, ranging from basic bunk-bed dorms to Tibetan-style twins with private bathroom. Offers hiking trips, horse trekking and sky-burial and has free internet and wi-fi in the lobby area. One downside is the badly thought-out communal toilets, which are effectively out of action if anyone is using the one communal shower. Turn left from the bus station and it's on the right, set back from the main street.

### **Litang International Youth Guesthouse** HOTEL \$\$

(*Litang Guoji Qingnian Jiudian*; 📍 532 4666) Just opening when we were here, this place has tidy twins and doubles with attached bathrooms that were going for ¥160 because the hot water had yet to be connected, but will probably go for ¥200 to ¥300 once everything's ready. Next right after Potala Inn turning.

### **Night of Grassland** GUESTHOUSE \$\$

(*Caoyuan Zhiye*; 📍 532 2655, 189 9047 3777; tw ¥200-260; 📶) Smart twin rooms, with wi-fi and attached bathroom, set around a

garden courtyard. Popular with the overland 4x4 crew, so worth calling ahead (although little English spoken). Turn left out of the bus station then left after the Potala Inn turning. Signposted in English.

## Eating



### **Tian Restaurant** CHINESE, WESTERN \$

( *Tiantian Fanshi*; 📞 135 4146 7941; 108 Xingfu Donglu; 108 mains ¥10-30; 🕒 9am-11pm; 📍) Long-standing travellers' haven run by the ever-friendly, English-speaking ace chef Mr Zheng. Food is a good mix of Chinese, Tibetan and Western; there's also coffee and reliable travel advice. Turn left out of the bus station and it's on the left.

### **Tibetan Special Dishes** TIBETAN \$

( *Zangrenjia Tecan*; Xingfu Donglu; mains from ¥15; 🕒 8am-10pm; 📍) For more-authentic Tibetan food, try this simple place run by a friendly guy from Tagong. He doesn't speak English, but has an English menu. It's between the bus station and Tian Restaurant, on the left.

## Information

**China Post** ( *Zhongguo Youzheng*; Tuanjie Lu; 🕒 9-11.30am & 2-5.30pm) Turn left out of the bus station, then right at main roundabout crossroads.

**Internet cafe** ( *wangba*; Tuanjie Lu; per hr ¥5; 🕒 8.30am-midnight) Next to post office.

## Getting There & Away

It's normally easy to bag Kangding or Xinduqiao bus tickets but the other buses are through buses, so are often full by the time they reach Litang. Minivans (around ¥10 to ¥20 more expensive than buses) hang around outside the bus station to save the day. The quickest way north to Ganzi (¥110; around five hours) is to take a minivan via Xinlong. No public buses ply this route.

Public buses:

**Batang** ¥63, 3½ hours, one daily (around 3pm)

**Daocheng** ¥48, four hours, one daily (around 1.30pm)

**Kangding** ¥87, eight hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Xiangcheng** ¥65, five hours, one daily (around 1.30pm)

**Xinduqiao** ¥63, six hours, one daily (6.30am)



## DAOCHENG (DABPA)





 0836

Although the small town centre is fairly modern these days, Daocheng still packs bags of rural charm and makes a lovely base from which to explore the magnificent Yading Nature Reserve. Even if you don't visit Yading, you could easily rest up for a couple of days here, walking or cycling around the hills and barley fields, which are scattered with Tibetan monasteries.

### **Sleeping**

#### **Freedom Inn Youth Hostel** HOTEL \$

( Ziyouyi;  189 9047 6036, 130 5645 2058; [www.inoat.com](http://www.inoat.com); dm/tw/tr ¥25/60/80; ) Dexi Jie (), the quiet lane directly opposite Here Cafe, is the nicest place to base yourself. Three hostels in particular are worth checking out. Our favourite is Freedom Inn, managed by the same friendly crew that run Here Cafe. Large, clean rooms with ensuite bathrooms are excellent value, and there's wi-fi and a pleasant garden courtyard. Take the second right off Dexi Jie.

Also recommended are **Yading Backpackers Hostel** ( Yading Ren Shequ;  135 0829 5808; [www.yading.net](http://www.yading.net); dm/tw ¥30/120; @) , where small rooms are set around the courtyard of a beautiful Tibetan blockhouse (first right off Dexi Jie); and **De Ji Zang Jia Hostel** ( Deji Zangjia Kezhan;  133 3079 0114, 150 7086 9707; dm/tw ¥25/90; @) , similar to Yading Backpackers (on the left, at 3 Dexi Jie).

### **Eating**

 **Here Cafe** CAFE \$

( *Gaoyuan Fanying Kafeiguan*; ☎ 572 8667; mains ¥15-30; 🕒 9am-midnight; 📶) This wonderfully rustic cafe, housed in a Tibetan blockhouse, is ground zero for travellers in Daocheng. It does great coffee (from ¥25), plenty of beer (from ¥15) and a small range of very tasty dishes. It also has free wi-fi. The manager speaks a bit of English; other staff more so. All are friendly, and happy to dish out advice on how best to visit the surrounding countryside, including Yading Nature Reserve. The cafe is on your left as you enter the town, 100m before the bus station.

### **i** Information

You can rent **bicycles** (*per day* ¥15) from a place on the right-hand side of Dexi Jie, the lane opposite Here Cafe. Look for the sign reading (*zixingche chuzu hang*; bike rental).

### **i** Getting There & Away

Two buses leave daily at 6am. One goes to Chengdu (¥245, 20 hours), via Litang (three hours) and Kangding (¥135, 10 hours). The other goes southwest to Shangri-la (Zhongdian; ¥114, 10 hours) in Yunnan province, via Xiangcheng (three hours). You can buy tickets from 2pm the day before, although you cannot buy tickets to Litang or Xiangcheng until the morning the bus leaves. Minivans (per person ¥60) are more common for these two destinations.

Minivans are the only option for Yading Nature Reserve (¥50, three hours).

WORTH A TRIP

## YADING NATURE RESERVE

The magnificent **Yading Nature Reserve** (*Yading Fengjingqu*; admission ¥150) centres on three sacred snow-capped mountains, which form a holy trinity around forested valleys, wonderfully clear rivers and glacier-fed lakes. It is, quite simply, one of China's most stunning pieces of scenery, but it's also been a highly revered region for local Tibetans for more than 800 years. For them, each of the three peaks, whose Tibetan names mean 'wisdom', 'power' and 'compassion', represent bodhisattvas, and joining Buddhist pilgrims on the 30km, 12-hour *kora* (holy hike) around the highest peak can be a hugely rewarding

experience.

The three mountains – Chenresig, Chana Dorje and Jampelyang – are all around 6000m high, and even the hiking trails are around 4000m above sea level, so be sure to have acclimatised properly before you set off on a trek.

The *kora* is around 6032m **Chenresig** (; Xiannairi), the tallest of the three peaks, and takes about 12 hours (although Tibetan pilgrims do it in less than eight hours). To avoid one very long day of walking, we recommend camping halfway round, although you'll have to bring all your own gear and supplies. The path is easy to follow as long as you remember to keep the mountain to your right, and to always take the right-hand turn when there's a choice of paths.

If you don't have the time or the energy for the full *kora*, you can do some shorter walks within the reserve. There are also short horse rides available, as well as electric carts that shuttle visitors up to, and back from, the Luorong Grassland area.

The main entrance is at a small settlement called **Longlong Ba** (). From here you can hike to the 800-year-old **Changgu Monastery** (; Zhonggu Si; 3km; one hour), then to the **Luorong Grasslands** (; Luorong Niuchang; 6km, two hours), which offer incredible views of all three peaks and is as far as most domestic tourists go. From here, you can continue to **Milk Lake** (; Niunai Hai; 5km, three hours), which is a 30-minute walk from the stunning **Five-colour Lake** (; Wuse Hai) and approximately halfway round the mountain.

The best times to visit the reserve are May to June and September to early October.

### Getting There & Away

Take a shared minivan (per person ¥50, three hours) from **Daocheng** to the entrance at Longlong Ba.

Tickets for the reserve are bought 35km before Longlong Ba, at the small town of **Riwa** (). Your driver will know to stop here en route. Three kilometres before Longlong Ba is **Yading Village** (; Yading Cun), where there are a number of simple guesthouses if you want to make an early start on the *kora*. There is sometimes a free shuttle bus from Yading Village to **Longlong Ba**, but if you're not planning to stop in Yading Village, ask your driver to take you all the way to Longlong Ba from Daocheng.

## XIANGCHENG (CHAKTRENG)

📞 0836

If you want to break your journey into or out of Yunnan province, then this small but modern town makes a comfortable stop. There's an attractive **monastery** (*admission* ¥15) at the top end of the town, commanding fine views.

Friendly **Seven Lake Hotel** ( *Qihu Binguan*; 📞 582 5059; *tw without/with bathroom* ¥40/70; 📶), just up from the bus station on the left, has simple but well-priced rooms and a top-floor teahouse and bar with wi-fi.

Further up on your right, just before the town square, **Jiaozi Dian** (dishes from ¥7; ☺ 7.30am-7.30pm) specialises in boiled dumplings (; *shuijiao*; per *jin* (500g; ¥26); half a *jin* (*ban jin*) is plenty, but also does a killer bowl of *gan banmian* (; mincemeat dry noodles; ¥7 to ¥9).

### **i** Getting There & Away

Two buses leave daily at 6am. One goes south to Shangri-la (Zhongdian; ¥85, eight hours). The other is for Kangding (¥151.50, 12 hours), but note you won't be sold tickets on this bus for Litang even though it's en route. You need to take a shared minivan instead (¥80, four to five hours). A shared minivan to Daocheng (three hours) is around ¥60.

## NORTHERN SICHUAN

Hiking, or even camping, in the stunning Jiuzhaigou National Park or heading out on horseback around Songpan are how most travellers experience the carpets of alpine forest, swaths of grasslands, icy lakes and snow-topped mountains of northern Sichuan. You can also travel north from here into Gansu, Shaanxi or even Qinghai, or loop round towards western Sichuan via Danba.

---

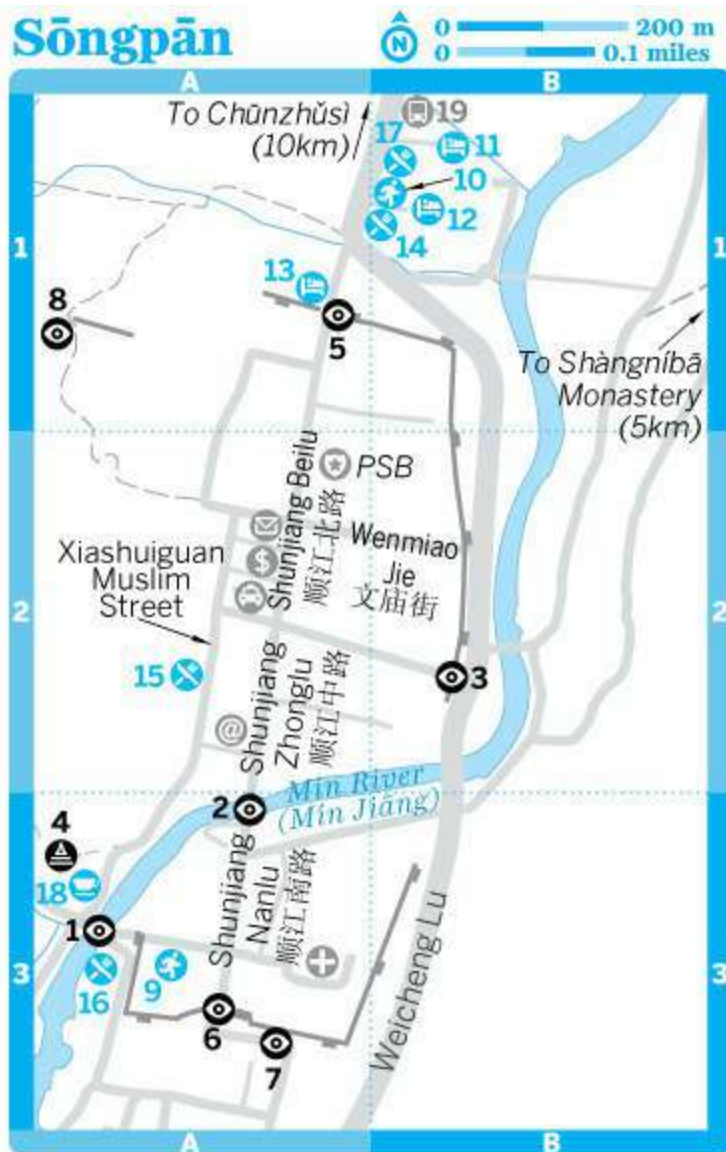
## Songpan

📍 0837 / POP 71,650

Horse trekking into the woods and mountains is the main attraction of this laid-back, historic town, but the hiking's also good and there's a reasonably strong backpacker vibe, which makes Songpan a good place to catch up on the latest travel tales.

Note, in midwinter (December to March) Songpan shuts down almost completely. Many guesthouses and restaurants, including Emma's Kitchen, are closed then. However, horse trekking is still possible.





## Songpan

### Sights

- 1 [Covered Bridge](#) A3

---

- 2 [Covered Bridge](#) A3

---

- 3 East Gate B2

---

- 4 [Guanyin Ge](#) A3

---

5 [North Gate](#) A1

6 [South Gate](#) A3

7 [South Gate](#) A3

8 [West Gate](#) A1

## Activities, Courses & Tours

9 [Qiqile Madui](#) A3

10 [Shunjiang Horse Treks](#) B1

## Sleeping

11 [Old House Hotel](#) B1

12 [Shunjiang Guesthouse](#) B1

13 [Sun River International Hotel](#) A1

## Eating

14 [Emma's Kitchen](#) B1

15 [Muslim restaurants](#) A2

16 [Shengdi Zangjiale](#) A3

17 [Song in the Mountain](#) B1

## Drinking

18 [Teahouses](#) A3

## Transport

19 [Bus Station](#) B1

## Sights

Songpan's part-rebuilt **town wall** may be less than 10 years old but its **ancient gates** are original Ming-dynasty structures going back some 600 years. Note the horse carvings at the foot of the two south gates, half swallowed up by the ever-rising level of the road. The only original part of the **old wall** is by the rebuilt West Gate, which overlooks the town from its hillside perch.

Two wooden **covered bridges** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; Gusong Qiao), the bases of which are genuinely old, span the Min River. On

the western side of the river is [Guanyin Ge](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (), a small temple near the start of a hillside trail that offers good views over Songpan.

## **Activities**

### **Horse Trekking** *HORSE TREKKING*

One of the most popular ways to experience the idyllic mountain forests and emerald-green lakes surrounding Songpan is by joining up with a horse trek. Guides take you through pristine valleys and forests aboard a not-so-big, very tame horse. Many people rate this experience as a highlight of their travels in this region.

[Shunjiang Horse Treks](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*Shunjiang Luyou Madui*; 📞 723 1201, 139 0904 3501) have been offering horse treks to foreign tourists for years (despite slightly ropey English-language skills). On offer is anything from one- to 14-day treks and trips can be tailored to suit you.

One of the most popular treks is a three- or four-day trek to [Ice Mountain](#) (; Xueyuding), a spectacular trip through unspoilt scenery.

Rates are ¥200 to ¥230 per person per day, all-inclusive. The guides take care of everything: you won't touch a tent pole or a cooking pot unless you want to. The only additional charge is entrance to the different sites and national parks visited on some of the trips, but you'll be warned of these before you set out.

The majority of travellers seem happy with their services, but we do sometimes receive reports of apathetic guides showing a lack of environmental awareness. For comparison, you may want to also make enquiries with the less-established but well-run [Qiqile Madui](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( 📞 723 4138, 135 6879 2936; *per day per person ¥200*), although they are less accustomed to dealing with foreign tourists.

### **Hiking** *HIKING*

The surrounding hills are equally good for hiking. One option is to hike

up to the only remaining part of the original town wall, by [West Gate](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) . It takes around one hour. There are three paths up, meaning you can complete a round trip. One starts beside the stream north of North Gate. Another leads up the hill from the post office, while a third is accessed via Guanyin Ge temple. It's also possible to hike for about two hours to [Shangniba Monastery](#) (; Shangniba Simiao) in the eastern hills. Ask at Emma's Kitchen for more details.

WORTH A TRIP

## HUANGLONG NATIONAL PARK

A trip to [Huanglong National Park](#) (*Huanglong Jingqu*; [www.huanglong.com](http://www.huanglong.com); *Yellow Dragon Valley*; adult ¥200; ☀ 7am-6pm) is essentially a very expensive three-hour walk up and down one small valley. The valley, however, is stunning, and its terraced, coloured limestone ponds of blues, turquoises, yellows and greens are exquisite. It's certainly worth the trip if you've got the cash. And it's perfect picnic territory. The best time to come is between May and October, and preferably in July and August.

By the park entrance is a modern [visitor centre](#) with restaurant, teahouse and free left-luggage room. You can pick up a free English-language leaflet with a map of the park here, too. There are a couple of expensive tour-group hotels by the entrance, but most people day trip it from Songpan or Jiuzhaigou.

It's reasonably easy to snag a lift in a bus or minivan from here to Jiuzhaigou. For Songpan, you'll probably have to find a lift to Chuanzhu Si (; ¥25, one hour), from where you can take a shared taxi to Songpan (¥10). Note, there's an airport shuttle bus to Jiuzhaigou (¥100), which stops here for long enough for passengers to tour the park.

## Sleeping

### [Shunjiang Guesthouse](#) GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*Shunjiang Zizhu Luguan*; 📍 723 1064, 139 0904 3501; *Shunjiang Beilu*; dm ¥30, d/tw ¥80; 📶) The owners of Shunjiang Horse Treks company run this simple guesthouse with decent rooms around an open courtyard. It can be freezing here in cold weather, but bathrooms

have heat lamps and 24-hour hot water, and beds come with electric blankets. Rates tend to double in July and August.

## Old House Hotel *GUESTHOUSE* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Guyun Kezhan*; 📍 723 1368; *Shunjiang Beilu*; *dm/s/tw* ¥30/80/100; @📶) Right by the bus station, this attractive old-style, three-storey wooden building has small but clean rooms off an interior courtyard. English-speaking staff, 24-hour hot water and wi-fi. Again, rates tend to double during the summer holidays.

## Sun River International Hotel *HOTEL* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Taiyanghe Guoji Dajjudian*; 📍 723 5000; *Shunjiang Beilu*; *d/tw* ¥600/680, *discounted to* ¥200/280; 📶) Dark, gloomy corridors lead to decent enough spacious midrange rooms.

## Eating

To see where Songpan's large Hui Muslim population gets its fix of noodles, head to [Xiashuiguan Muslim Street](#) () where you'll find a cluster of small [Muslim restaurants](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*dishes* ¥10-15; 🕒 8am-9.30pm) with English signs but no English menus. Typical offerings include *Lanzhou lamian* (; Lanzhou pulled noodles), *gan banmian* (; minced-meat dry noodles), *daoxiao mian* (; knife-sliced noodles) and *yangza tang* (; sheep innards soup).



## Emma's Kitchen *CAFE, RESTAURANT* \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( *Xiao Ouzhou Xicanting*; *Shunjiang Beilu*; 📍 723 1088, 131 0837 2888, *emma china@hotmail.com*; *mains* ¥15-50; 🕒 8am-late; @📶) Songpan's main travellers' hang-out is this laid-back cafe that serves fresh coffee, pizza and other Western fare, along with a number of Chinese dishes. Emma is exceedingly helpful and can sort out almost anything from laundry or train tickets to packed lunches for your horse

trek. Also has internet (per hour ¥6) and CD burning (per disk ¥15). At the time of research, Emma had plans to convert the back of the cafe into a few guestrooms. Email her for the latest.

A couple of doors along, [Song in the Mountain Restaurant](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), run by the helpful Sarah Yang, has a similar menu (minus the fresh coffee) with slightly cheaper prices.

## [Shengdi Zangjiale](#) *TIBETAN* \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(*mains* ¥10-35; ☺ 7am-9pm; 📞) An OK range of Tibetan dishes served inside traditional tents or at open-air tables set around a tree-shaded riverside garden.

## **Drinking**

Along the Min River (; Min Jiang), on the southern edge of town, are several small [teahouses](#) [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (*tea* ¥5-10; ☺ 8am-6pm) where you can while away the afternoon with the locals.

## **Information**

**Agricultural Bank of China** (*Nongye Yinhang; Shunjiang Beilu*)  
Foreign-friendly ATM.

**China Post** (*Zhongguo Youzheng; Shunjiang Beilu; ☺ 9-11.30am & 2-5.30pm*)

**Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 723 3778; Shunjiang Beilu; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 3-6pm)** Can usually renew visas in one day.

## **TIBET'S NO-GO REGIONS**

At the time of research, foreigners were forbidden from travelling overland from Sichuan into Tibet proper because Tibet's far eastern prefecture of Chamdo, which borders Sichuan, was completely off limits. Likewise, the north Sichuan prefecture of Aba has, for a long time now, been off limits. During March (which contains some politically sensitive anniversaries), and usually April, too, Tibet is often completely closed to foreigners. This

temporary closure has in recent years extended to Sichuan's Ganzi prefecture, too. Check the China and Tibet branches of Lonely Planet's online forum, [Thorn Tree](#) ([www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree)), for the latest information.

## **i** Getting There & Around

### Air

See the Jiuzhaigou section ([Click here](#)) for information on flying to this area. There's no public transport between Songpan and the airport. A taxi should be around ¥100.

### Bus

Buses leaving **Songpan bus station** (; keyunzhan) include:

**Chengdu** ¥92 to ¥121, eight hours, three daily (6am, 6.30am and 7am)

**Huanglong National Park** ¥28, two hours, two daily (6am and 2pm)

**Jiuzhaigou** ¥32, 2½ hours, two daily (9am and 1pm)

**Ma'erkang** ¥105 to ¥120, seven hours, one daily (6.20am)

**Zöige** ¥46, three hours, two daily (10am and 2.30pm)

---

## Jiuzhaigou National Park

 0837 / POP 62,000

The stunning Unesco World Heritage Site of **Jiuzhaigou National Park** (*Jiuzhaigou Fengjing Mingshengqu; Nine Village Valley National Park*; [www.jiuzhai.com](http://www.jiuzhai.com); admission May–mid-Nov ¥220, mid-Nov–Apr ¥80, shuttle bus ¥90; ☀ 7am–6pm) is one of Sichuan's star attractions. More than two million people visit the park every year to gawp at its famous bluer-than-blue lakes, its rushing waterfalls and its deep green trees backed by snowy mountain ranges.

Add into the mix kilometres of well-maintained boardwalk trails and ecotourism camping trips and you'll begin to get a feel for Jiuzhaigou's charms.

The best time to visit is September through to November, when

you're most likely to have clear skies and (particularly in October) blazing autumn colours to contrast with the turquoise lakes. Summer is the busiest but also rainiest time. Spring can be cold but still pleasant, and winter, if you're prepared for frigid temperatures, brings dramatic ice-coated trees and frozen-in-place waterfalls (as well as lower prices).

Peak-time tickets for students and over-60s are ¥110. Over-70s and children under six can enter for free.

Jiuzhaigou means 'Nine Village Valley' and refers to the region's nine Tibetan villages. According to legend, Jiuzhaigou was created when a jealous devil caused the goddess Wunosemo to drop her magic mirror, a present from her lover the warlord god Dage. The mirror dropped to the ground and shattered into 118 shimmering turquoise lakes.





## Jiuzhaigou

### Top Sights

[Zharu Temple](#) **B1**

### Sleeping

[1 Jiuzhaigou Grand Hotel](#) **B1**

2 [Uncle Jiang's Family Guesthouse](#) **A1**

---

## Eating

3 [Abu Luzi](#) **A1**

---

## Drinking

4 [Star Cafe](#) **B1**

---

## Information

5 [Park Entrance](#) **A1**

---

6 [Visitors Centre & Tickets](#) **A1**

---

## Transport

7 [Bus Station](#) **B1**

---

8 [Nuorilang Bus Station](#) **A3**

---

## Sights

### Lakes & Waterfalls *LAKES*

The main road follows Zechawa River (Zechawa He) up Shuzheng Valley, as it runs past Heye Village (Heye Cun) to **Sparkling Lake** (; Huohua Hai), the first in a series of lakes filled by the **Shuzheng Waterfall** (; Shuzheng Pubu).

A walking trail begins north of Sparkling Lake and runs along the eastern edge of the river up to **Nuorilang Waterfall** (; Nuorilang Pubu). Here, the road branches in two, with the eastern road leading to **Long Lake** (; Chang Hai) and **Five-Coloured Pool** (; Wucai Chi); and the western road to **Swan Lake** (; Tian'e Hai). The western route has a greater concentration of attractions, most of which are accessible from the quiet forest trail leading from **Mirror Lake** (; Jinghai) to **Panda Lake** (; Xiongmao Hai). Views from this trail are particularly good, especially of the waterfall known as **Pearl Shoals** (; Zhenzhutan Pubu).

The eastern route is almost better done by bus as the narrow road

sees a great deal of traffic and there are fewer 'sights'. Nevertheless, the two lakes at the far end, Long Lake and Five-Coloured Pool, are both well worth a visit.

From the park entrance to Nuorilang Waterfall is about 14km. It's a further 17.5km along the western road to Swan Lake and another couple of kilometres on to the **Virgin Forest**, which is as far as the road goes. On the eastern route it's about 18km from Nuorilang Waterfall to Long Lake.

## Zharu Temple *TEMPLE*

Offline map

The first official site inside the park proper is the Tibetan Zharu Temple (; Zharu Si; Zaru Gompa in Tibetan), in the Zharu Valley. The bus doesn't stop here, but it's only a short walk from the ticket office; turn left at the first fork off the main road.

## HOW TO 'DO' JIUZHAIGOU

- » **Start early** Get into the park as close to the 7am opening as you can. Not only will you have more time, but you'll also beat the later-sleeping tour groups.
- » **Go up first** Since much of the most spectacular scenery is in the park's higher reaches, you'll see the highlights first if you take the (hop-on,-hop-off) bus to the top and walk or ride down. Head first to either Long Lake or Swan Lake, work your way down to the Nuorilang junction, then go up the other fork. Later in the day you can see the lakes between Nuorilang and the entrance.
- » **Get out of the bus** Walking trails run throughout the park, and by walking, you'll steer clear of the biggest crowds. The walking trails are generally on the opposite side of the lakes from the road, so you'll have more peace and quiet, too.
- » **Pack a lunch** Dining options inside the park are limited and expensive. If you bring your own food, you can picnic away from the hordes.

## Activities

As part of the park's **ecotourism program** ( 773 7811; [ecotourism@jiuzhai.com](mailto:ecotourism@jiuzhai.com); visitors centre; 1-/2-/3-day hikes

¥560/1360/1960) visitors can now hike along and even camp inside the Zharu Valley, just east of the main tourist valley. This is an extremely rare opportunity in China and numbers are strictly limited so it's highly advisable to email or phone ahead, especially if you want to camp. Prices include English-speaking guides, all camping equipment and main meals (although you may want to bring along some fruit and snacks), but do not include the park entrance fee. The multiday hikes include time to visit the main park without a guide after your hike. Check the park website or ask at the visitors centre (; youke zhongxin) for more details.

For those who like to do things on their own, there are great **hiking** opportunities all over this area, although be sure to steer clear of the national park itself. One option is to hike around the hills near Zhuo Ma's homestay; Zhuo Ma can advise you on where's good. She also arranges short **horse treks** (2hr; ¥180) from the village, and helps run **Tibetan cookery classes** (2-3hr; per person incl a meal ¥150) at Abu Luzi restaurant.

## **Sleeping**

There's an almost endless supply of hotels around Pengfeng Village (; Pengfeng Cun), so don't worry if the options listed here are full. Staying inside the park is not allowed.

### **Zhuo Ma's** HOMESTAY \$

(Zhuoma; 📞 135 6878 3012; [www.zhuomajiuzhaigou.hostel.com](http://www.zhuomajiuzhaigou.hostel.com); per person ¥180) A genuine Tibetan homestay, this beautifully decorated wood cabin in a tiny village about 10km up the valley from the main park has six simple rooms and a wonderfully accommodating family. The lovely Zhuo Ma speaks some English and is on hand to welcome foreign guests. Her mother (*amma*) is the host and cooks the meals. There's a common bathroom with shower, and prices include three meals a day, and pick-up from the bus station (otherwise it's around ¥50 in a taxi).

If you're coming from Songpan you could ask the driver to drop you on the main road at Shansi Village (; Shansi Zhai). Zhuo Ma's is about

a 15-minute walk up a dirt track from there. Any problems, just call Zhuo Ma.

## Uncle Jiang's Family Guesthouse HOSTEL \$

Offline map

(*Jiuzhai Renjia Qingnian Lushe*; 📍 777 4455; [www.jzrjhostel.com](http://www.jzrjhostel.com); *Pengfeng Village; Pengfeng Cun*; dm/tw ¥30/80; @📶) There are five or six run-of-the-mill youth hostels within 100m of each other in Pengfeng Village. This one is the furthest from the park entrance, but has the best hostel vibe, with friendly staff and a decent cafe-restaurant area in the lobby. Expect prices to rise to ¥100/180 (dorms/twins) from July to October.

## Jiuzhaigou Grand Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

(*Jiuzhaigou Guibinlou Fandian*; 📍 773 9066, 773 5555; *r incl breakfast from ¥696, discounted to ¥200*) You can't beat the location, just beside the park entrance gate. The rooms themselves are fairly average midrange units, but they're large and many have views of either the mountains or the small river that runs alongside the hotel. Expect to pay at least ¥480 from July to October.

## Eating & Drinking

Pengfeng Village is stuffed full with cheap Sichuanese restaurants. There's also a cluster along the pleasant riverside walkway called Bianbian Jie. Inside the park you can buy pricey snacks and drinks. Otherwise, there's a restaurant (also pricey) at the Nuorilang junction.



## Abu Luzi TIBETAN \$\$

Offline map

(*Abu Luzi Fengqing Zangcanba*; 📍 139 9042 1118, 135 6878 3012; [www.abuluzi.com](http://www.abuluzi.com); *Pengfeng Village; Pengfeng Cun*; *dishes from ¥35*; 🕒 11am-11pm; 📶) The most genuine Tibetan restaurant in Jiuzhaigou, this excellent place, run by the same family behind Zhuo Ma's homestay – Zhuo Ma's brother, Ke Zhu, is a trained chef – has

an extensive menu of delicious Tibetan dishes. **Tibetan cookery classes** (¥150) are also held here.

## Star Cafe CAFE \$

Offline map

( *Taibai Lou*; 📍 773 9839; 23 *Bianbian Jie*; 23 mains ¥20-45; ☺ 11.30am-midnight; 📶📺) The coolest hang-out in town, Star Cafe has a decent selection of fresh coffee (from ¥20), beer (from ¥15) and wine, plus a good range of international dishes (¥20 to ¥45). There's also wi-fi and patio seating by the river.

## THE ROAD TO GANSU

Those heading north into Gansu province will need to bus-hop their way from Songpan. First stop is **Zöige** (; Ruo'ergai), a small, dusty Tibetan town set among the remote plateau grasslands and with a distinct frontier-town feel to it. The grasslands here burst into life with wildflowers in late summer, and it's possible to arrange horse trekking, although facilities aren't as good as in Songpan, and English-language skills among those organising them are pretty much nonexistent.

**Shuguang Binguan** ( 📍 0837-229 2988; *tw* ¥100) has decent rooms with private bathroom. Turn left out of the bus station and walk 100m. There are plenty of eating options on this road (Shuguang Jie) too.

Zöige buses go to Songpan (¥42, three hours, 10am and 2.30pm) and Langmusi (¥21, two hours, 2.30pm), an enchanting monastery town that straddles the Sichuan–Gansu border and from where you can catch onward transport towards Lanzhou.

Be aware that altitudes are high out here (Zöige is at 3500m) and temperatures often plummet to uncomfortable levels. In winter, snow sometimes renders roads unpassable, so buses can be sporadic.

## **i** Information

An **ATM** (; Zidong Guiyuan Ji) at the park entrance accepts foreign cards, as does the China Construction Bank (near the bus station) and Agricultural Bank of China (in Pengfeng Village), where you can also change cash. There is a number of **internet cafes** (; wangba) in Pengfeng Village.

The park has an excellent English-language website at [www.jiuzhai.com](http://www.jiuzhai.com). You can also get information from the visitors centre at the park entrance.

## **i** Getting There & Around

### **Air**

More than a dozen daily flights link Chengdu with Jiuzhaigou Airport (officially called Jiu Huang Airport). Other direct flights include Beijing, Shanghai, Hangzhou, Chongqing, Kunming and Xi'an.

Buses to Jiuzhaigou (¥45, 1½ hours) meet arriving flights. A taxi from the airport is about ¥200.

There's also an airport bus that stops first at Huanglong National Park, waiting long enough for passengers to tour the park, and then continues on to Jiuzhaigou (¥100).

### **Bus**

Buses leaving from **Jiuzhaigou bus station** (; qichezhan) include those listed below. Note, you can travel to western Sichuan, via Ma'erkang and Danba, without having to go to Chengdu.

**Chengdu** ¥145 to ¥220, 10 hours, four daily (6am, 7am, 7.30am and 8am)

**Chongqing** ¥200, 12 hours, one daily (7.30am)

**Guangyuan** ¥88, eight hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Huanglong National Park** ¥45, three hours, two daily (7am and 7.30am)

**Lanzhou** ¥237, 11 hours, one daily (7am)

**Ma'erkang** ¥150, nine hours, one daily (8am)

**Songpan** ¥33, two hours, one daily (7.30am)



1

**1. Tiān'ānmén Square, Běijīng**

The symbolic centre of the Chinese universe, Tiān'ānmén Square is the world's largest public square.

**2. Yùyuán Gardens, Shànghǎi**

A charming example of Ming-dynasty garden design.



2

**3. Chinese opera**

Chinese opera's colourful blend of singing, mime, dancing and acrobatics can be seen at Húguāng Guild Hall, Běijīng.

**4. Bamboo Sea, Sìchuān**

A national park with swaying bamboo forest, walking trails and waterfalls.



4





© SHIPING ALLEY / GETTY IMAGES



© ANKITY / NOLI WOLFGANG OEDMA 401



© SHIPING ALLEY / GETTY IMAGES

1



3



© 2019 ALAMY / NORDEN / ALAMY



### 1. Rice terraces, Guāngxī

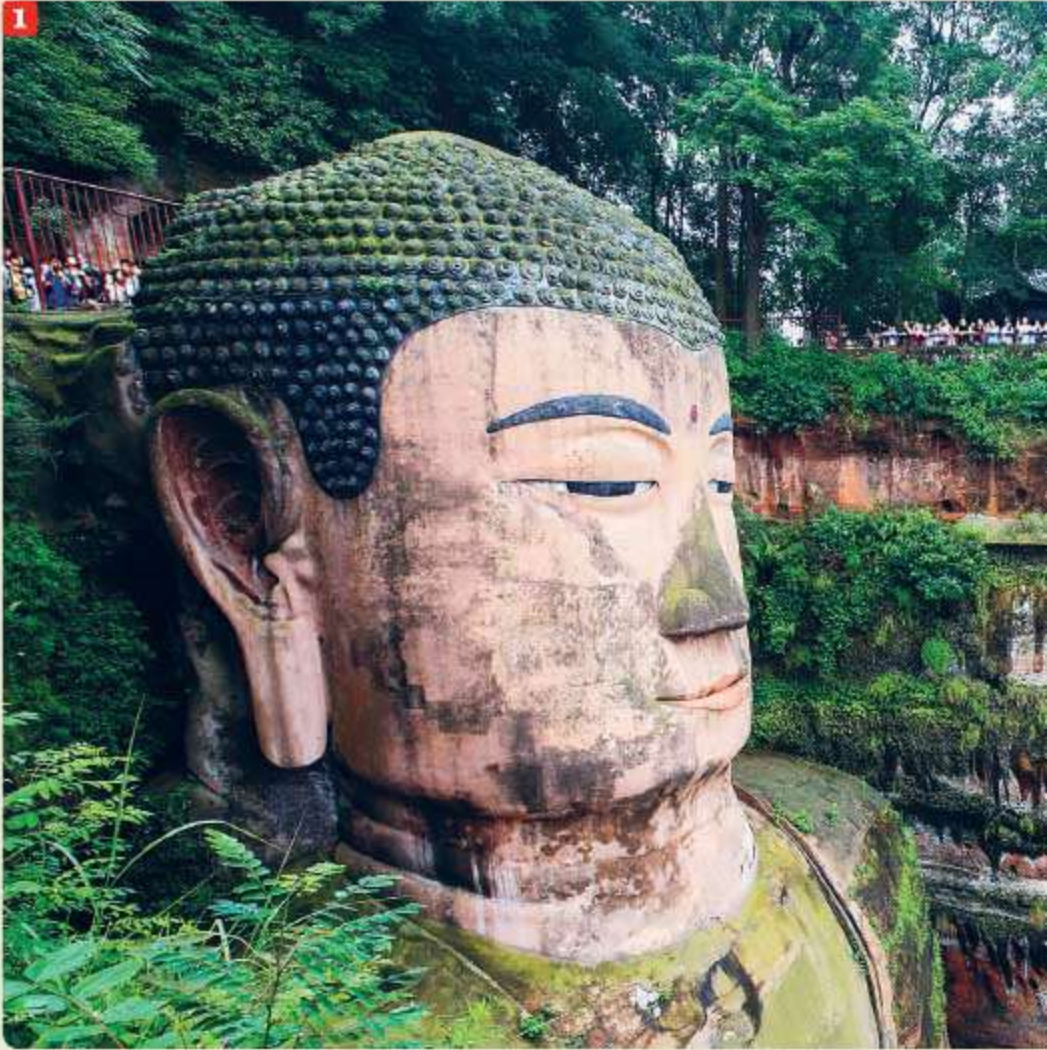
The rice terraces around Gullin provide excellent hiking opportunities within an archetypal Chinese landscape.

### 2. Golden Summit, Éméi Shān

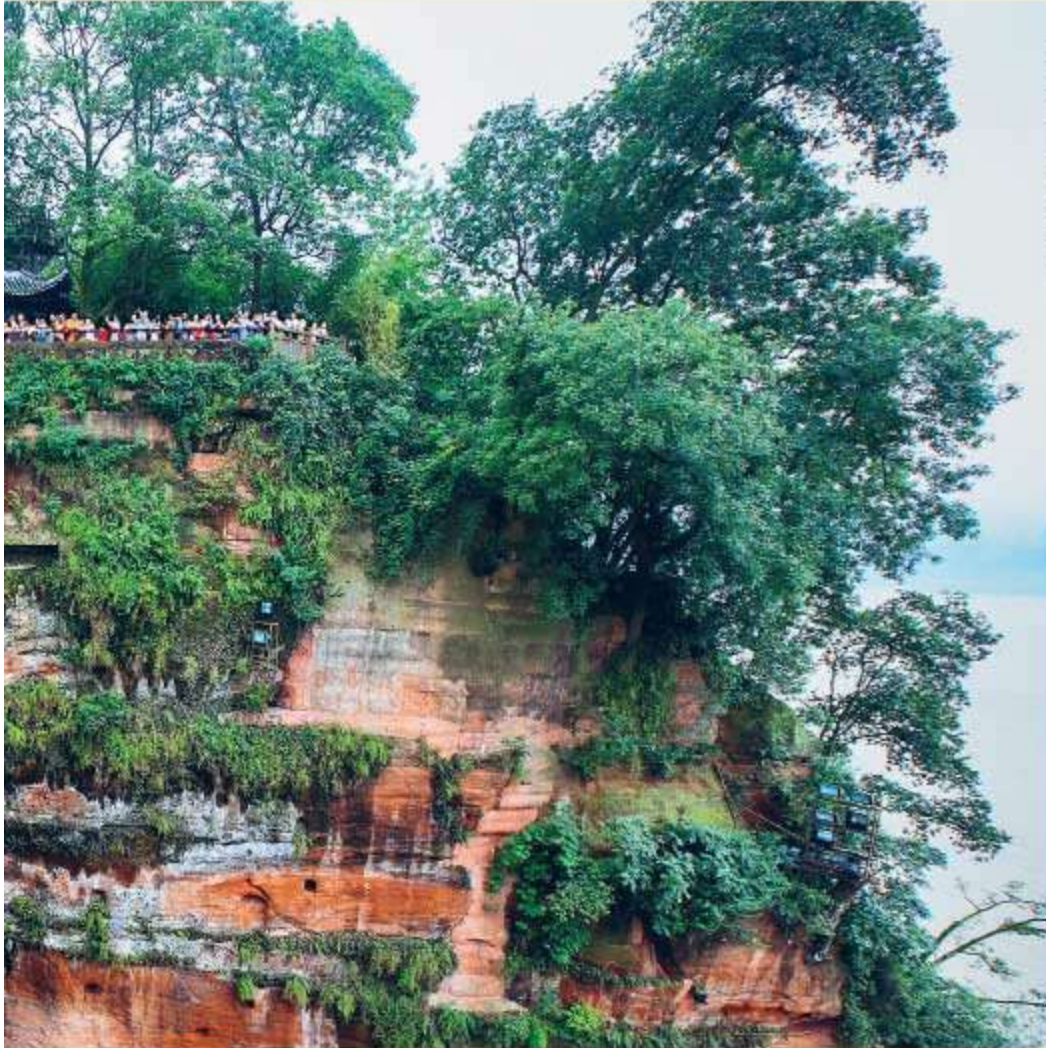
Golden Summit is the highest point on Mt Emei, one of China's four most famous Buddhist mountains.

3. **Lama Temple, Běijīng**  
Worshippers burn incense at Běijīng's unmissable Lama Temple during Chinese New Year.





© SHUTTERSTOCK/ARTYMAKERS



FROM LEFT PHOTO: GETTY IMAGES & ©

**1. Grand Buddha, Lèshān**

Seventy-one metres tall and 1200 years old, the Grand Buddha is carved into the cliff face overlooking the Dādú River.

**2. Jade Market, Hong Kong**

Some 450 stalls in Kowloon sell all varieties and grades of jade, so make sure you know your nephrite from your jadeite.

**3. Zhuang ethnic minority, Guǎngxī**

The Zhuang, China's largest minority group, make up 32% of Guǎngxī's population.



2  
© SHENNY ALLIEN / GETTY IMAGES & ©



1

© SHONENKI/ISTOCK.COM/SHONENKI



2

KIRKINSHU / GETTY IMAGES ©



3

JOHN W. BANAGAN / GETTY IMAGES ©

**1. West Lake, Zhèjiāng**

The very definition of classical beauty in China. West Lake is lined by willow, plum and peach trees and crossed by half-moon bridges.

**2. Giant panda cub, Sichuān**

Sichuān's capital Chéngdū is home to China's national icon at the Giant Panda Breeding Research Base.

**3. Lijiāng, Yúnnán**

A Unesco World Heritage Site, Lijiāng is a maze of cobble streets, wooden buildings and gushing canals.



# Chongqing

POP 28 MILLION / CITY POP 7 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Chongqing City](#)

[Dazu Buddhist Caves](#)

[Zhongshan](#)

[Laitan](#)

[Songji](#)

---

## Why Go?

Dominated by its namesake capital city, the municipality of Chongqing () is a relatively new creation, having split from Sichuan province in the 1990s. But the area it now covers has played a significant role throughout Chinese history, and is still a region of fantastic natural beauty.

Thanks to the mighty Yangzi River (Chang Jiang), which powers its way through here, this region has long been one of strategic military importance, with many a famous battle fought on its muddy waters; waters so powerfully persistent that they carved out one of China's greatest natural wonders, the magnificent Three Gorges.

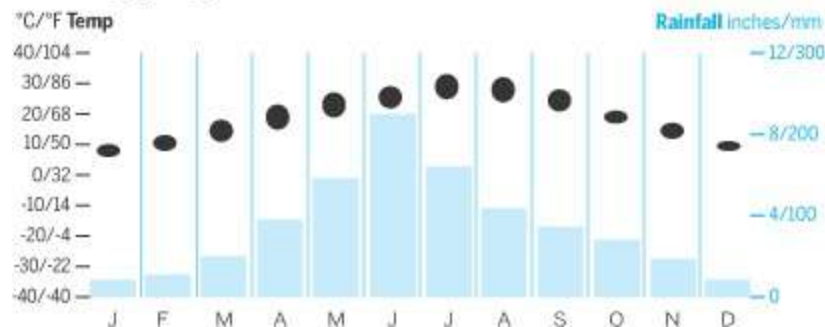


Humans too have left their indelible mark, with a panoply of ancient Buddhist sculptures, dozens of seemingly lost-in-time villages and, of course, the megalopolis that is Chongqing; one of the fastest-growing and most alluring cities in all of China.

---

## When to Go

### Chóngqìng



**Apr & May** Winter chill has lifted; full force of summer sweatbox yet to arrive, but still rainy.

**Jul & Aug** It's hot; temperatures top 40°C and Chongqing City resembles a steam bath.

**Sep & Oct** Like spring: manageable temperatures; a good time to explore the countryside.

---

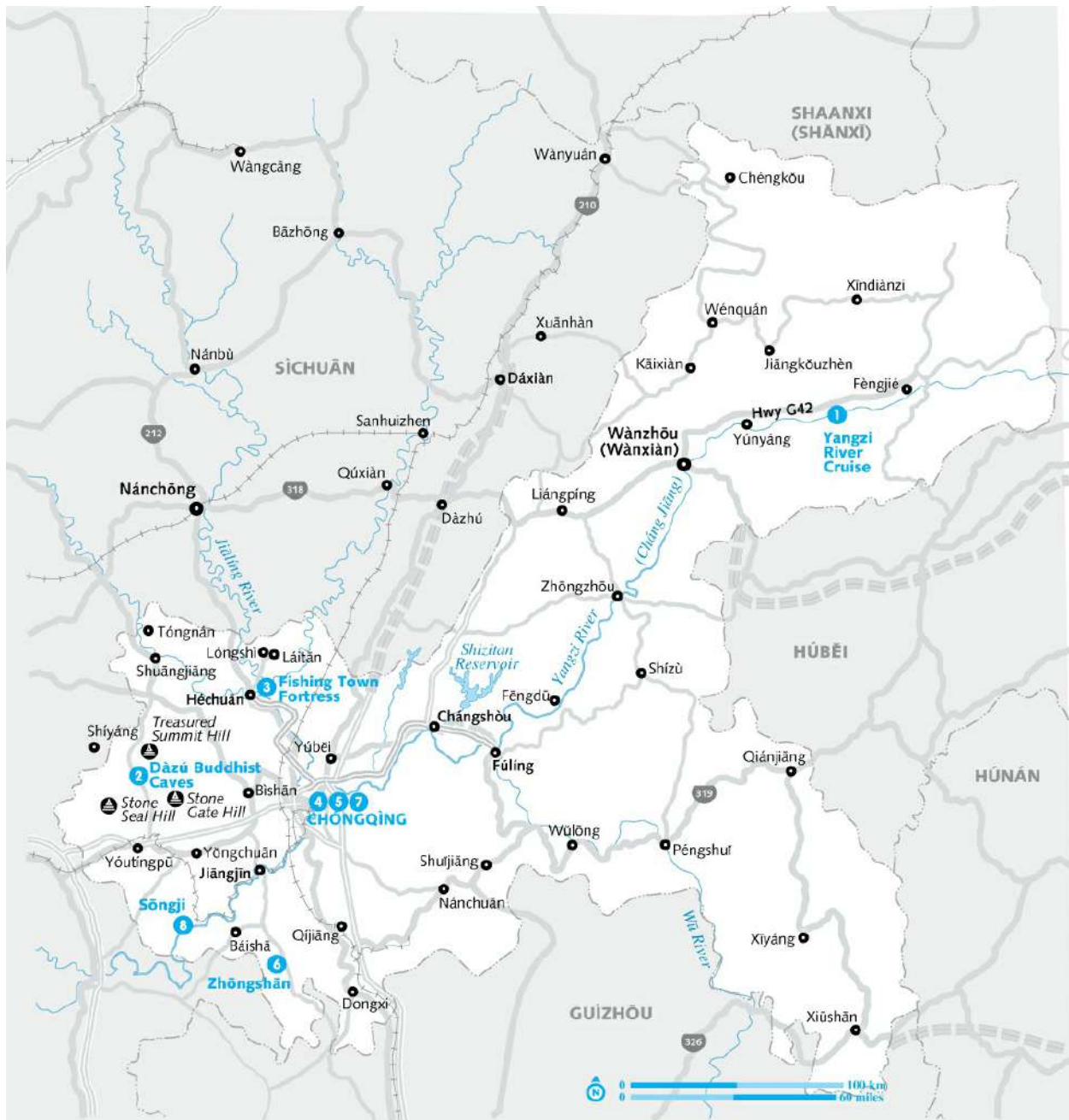
## Best for History

- » Dazu Buddhist Caves ([Click here](#))
- » Fishing Town Fortress ([Click here](#))
- » Chongqing's city gates ([Click here](#))

---

## Best for Scenery

- » Three Gorges ([Click here](#))
- » Fishing Town Fortress ([Click here](#))
- » Zhongshan ([Click here](#))



## Chongqing Highlights

- 1 Shift down a gear or two as you float past the awe-inspiring Three Gorges on board a **Yangzi River Cruise** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Gasp in wonder at the exquisite ancient artwork of the **Dazu Buddhist Caves** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Hike the ruins of **Fishing Town Fortress** ([Click here](#)), one of

China's greatest battlefields

4 Tuck into the world's most mouth-numbing **hotpot** ([Click here](#)) at Yefu Huoguo

5 Pull up a stool and sample the delights of *shaokao*, Chongqing's no-nonsense **streetside barbeques** ([Click here](#))

6 See traditional wooden stilt housing in the ancient riverside village of **Zhongshan** ([Click here](#))

7 Track down the last few remains of **Chongqing's ancient city wall** ([Click here](#))

8 Wander the cobblestones, or just chill in a teahouse in the Ming dynasty village of **Songji** ([Click here](#))

## History

Stone tools unearthed along the Yangzi River valleys show that humans lived in this region two million years ago. The ancient Ba kingdom ruled from here more than 2000 years before subsequent Qin, Sui and Southern Song dynasty rulers took over. From 1938 to 1945, Chongqing city (previously known as Chungking) became the Kuomintang's wartime capital. It was here that representatives of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP), including Zhou Enlai, acted as 'liaisons' between the Kuomintang and the communists headquartered at Yan'an, in Shaanxi province.

Refugees from all over China flooded into the city during WWII. More followed when the construction of Three Gorges Dam forced more than one million people to be relocated.

In 1997 Chongqing separated from Sichuan province and became a municipality under the direct control of the central government.

The city became the focus of attention in 2012 for its role in one of modern China's biggest political scandals, when Gu Kailai, the wife of Chongqing's Communist Party boss Bo Xilai, was convicted of murdering British businessman Neil Heywood. Allegations of corruption, extortion and even espionage surrounded the case. Bo was stripped of his office and eventually expelled from the Communist Party, although at the time of research he had yet to face any criminal trial himself.

## Language

In addition to standard Mandarin Chinese, Chongqing residents also speak Sichuanese. It's a Mandarin dialect, but pronunciation is different enough that it's often difficult for those who speak standard Chinese to understand. Two words visitors will often hear are *yaode* (pronounced 'yow-day', meaning 'yes' or 'ok') and *meide* (pronounced 'may-day', meaning 'no').

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥200

\$\$ ¥200 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥40

\$\$ ¥40 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

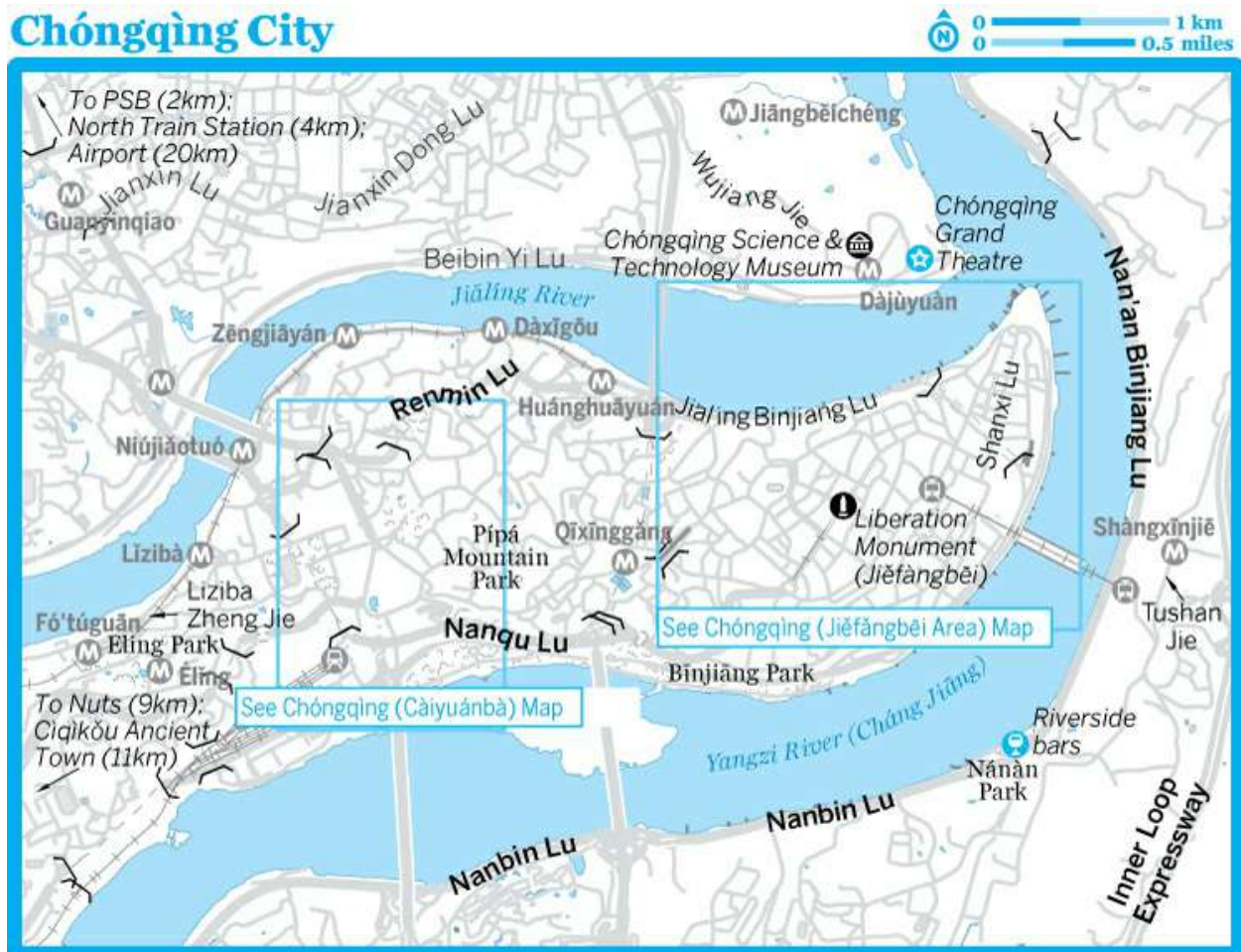
## Chongqing City

The one-time capital of the ancient Ba kingdom, Chongqing City – once a walled river fortress – is now one of the fastest-growing cities on earth. Billions of *yuan* have gone into its development, launching a major construction surge that shows no sign of slowing, but despite rampant modern development, a gritty old-China atmosphere remains around the river docks and the fascinating hillside alleyways that link them to the rest of the city.

Chongqing is sometimes mistakenly referred to as the biggest city in the world. It isn't. Figures for the whole municipality's population edge the 30 million mark, but these are made up of a number of towns and cities. The city of Chongqing itself has a mere seven million

inhabitants, for now.

## Chóngqing City



## 👁️ Sights & Activities

Arhat Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Luohan Si; [Offline map](#); Luohan Si Jie; admission ¥10; 🕒 8am-6pm)

Built around 1000 years ago, this still-active temple is now sandwiched between skyscrapers. A notable feature is the corridor flanked by intricate rock carvings found just after you enter the complex, but the main attraction here is Arhat Hall (; Luohan Tang), off to your right just after the corridor, which contains 500 terracotta arhats (a Buddhist term for those who have achieved enlightenment and who pass to nirvana at death). Between the stone-carvings corridor and the temple proper there is a reasonably priced vegetarian restaurant (dishes ¥12-35; 🕒 10am-5pm) with a photo menu.

## Huguang Guild Hall MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Huguang Huiguan; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6393 0287; Dongshuimen Zhengjie; admission ¥30; 🕒 9am-6pm, tickets not sold after 5pm) You could spend several hours poking around the beautifully restored buildings in this gorgeous museum complex, which once served as a community headquarters for immigrants from the Hu (Hunan and Hubei) and Guang (Guangdong and Guangxi) provinces who arrived in Chongqing several hundred years ago. There are rooms filled with artwork and furniture, a temple, a teahouse and several stages for Chinese opera performances. Free-to-watch rehearsals of Yueju (an operatic style originating from Zhejiang province) and Jingju (Beijing Opera) are held every Thursday and Saturday, usually between 3pm and 6pm.

## Ancient City Gates RUIN

( Guchengmen) Sadly, only fragments remain of Chongqing's once magnificent Ming dynasty city wall, which stretched 8km around the Jiefangbei peninsula and which was more than 30m tall in places. Of the 17 gates which punctuated the wall before demolition began in 1927, two are still standing. The charming, moss-hewn Dongshui Men [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)) is on a pathway beside the Yangtze River Hostel. Larger, and partly restored is Tongyuan Men [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)), a short walk from Exit 1 of Qixinggang metro station. You can walk along the wall for a short stretch at both locations. If you're interested in seeing how the wall once encircled the old city, look for the carved map of ancient Chongqing on the public square at Chaotianmen, itself once a city gate.


## CHONGQING'S STILT HOUSING


Once a striking feature of the Chongqing skyline, stilt houses (; *diao jiao lou*) were, in many ways, the predecessor to the modern skyscraper; sprawling vertically rather than horizontally to save space. Their design also served to keep family units in close quarters despite the uneven terrain of hilly Chongqing. They were built on a bamboo or fir frame that was fitted into bore holes drilled into the mountainside, and their thin walls were stuffed

with straw and coated with mud to allow for cooling ventilation in a city that swelters in summer.

Modernisation has turned stilt housing into a symbol of poverty, and as a result it has all but disappeared in the city centre. A wonderful exception is the tall, rickety-looking wooden building to your left as you stand at the top of the 18 Steps Lane viewing platform . You can also see two small stilt houses in Xinmin Jie, not far from Urban Trails Youth Hostel. And many stilt houses still survive in the villages around Chongqing municipality, with some fine examples in the alleyways of Songji and particularly by the river in Zhongshan.

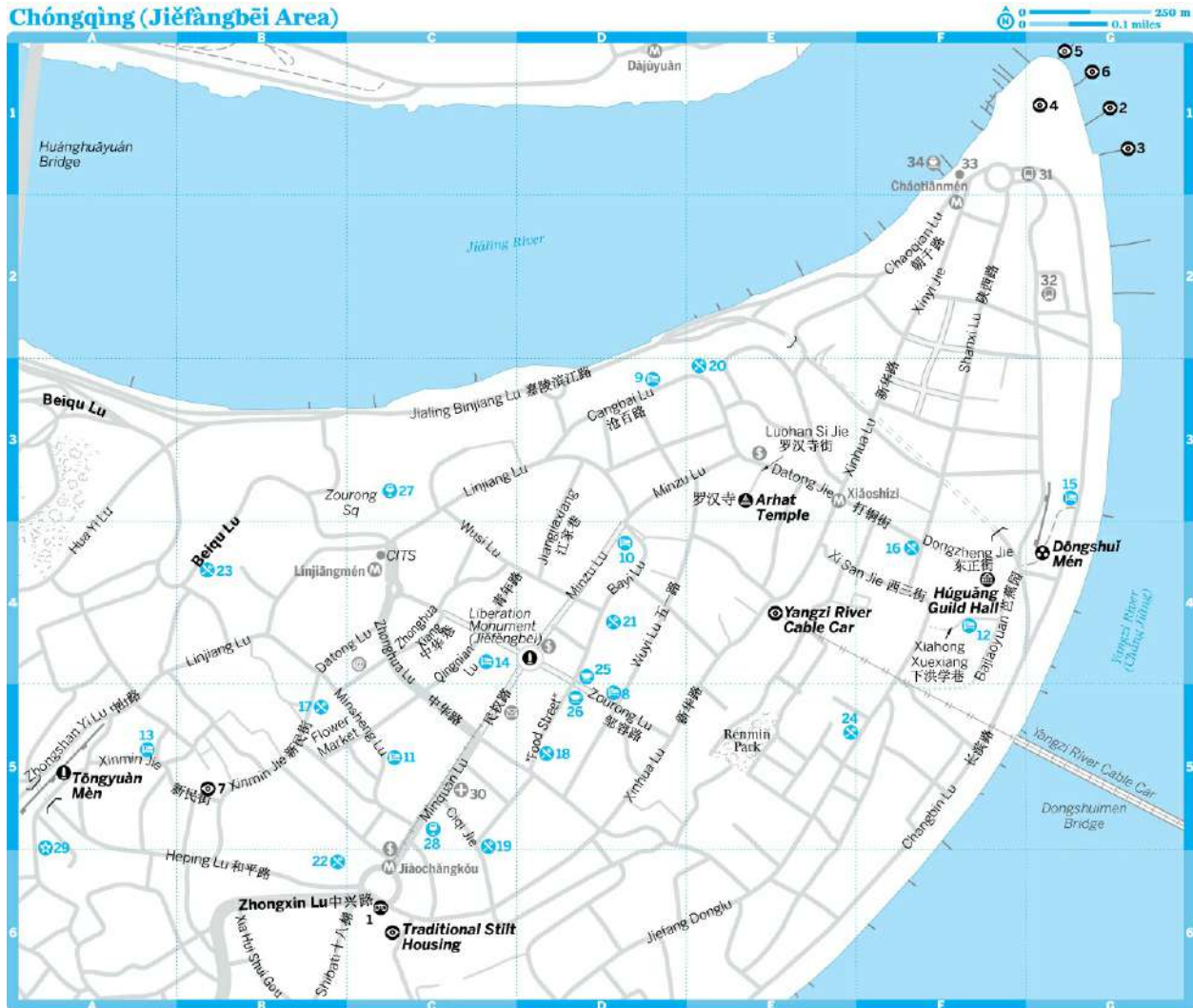
## Ciqikou Ancient Town OLD TOWN

( Ciqikou Guzhen; [Offline map](#);  Ciqikou) The opportunity to glimpse slices of old Chongqing makes it worth riding out to this part of town, on the Jialing River west of the centre. Most of the buildings, many dating to the late Ming dynasty, have been restored for tourists, and the main drag can feel like a carnival, especially on weekends, but away from the central street, a living, working village remains. You can easily lose yourself in its narrow lanes, peeking into homes and tiny storefronts. And there's plenty to eat here, both in the alleys and overlooking the river.

It's also worth poking your head inside Baolun Si ( admission ¥5;  7am-6pm), one of Ciqikou's only remaining temples. Its main building is more than 1000 years old. The quiet alley the temple is on, Heng Jie (), is one of the most pleasant places to explore, and contains a string of cute cafes with wi-fi and fresh coffee.

Ciqikou has its own metro station on Line 1.

## Chóngqing (Jiěfāngběi Area)



## Chongqing (Jiefangbei Area)

### 📍 Top Sights

[Arhat Temple](#) E3

[Dongshui Men](#) G4

[Huguang Guild Hall](#) F4

[Tongyuan Men](#) A5

[Traditional Stilt Housing](#) C6

[Yangzi River Cable Car](#) E4

### 📍 Sights

1 [18 Steps Lane Viewing Platform](#) C6

2 Chaotiangong Cruise Boat G1

3 Chaotianmen Cruise Boat G1

4 Chaotianmen Sq G1



5 Jinbi Huanggong Cruise Boat G1

6 Man Jiang Hong Cruise Boat G1

7 [Traditional Stilt Housing](#) B5

 Sleeping

8 [Harbour Plaza](#) D5

9 [Hongyadong Dajjudian](#) D3

10 [Intercontinental](#) D4

11 JW Marriott C5

12 [Sunrise Mingqing Hostel](#) F4

13 [Urban Trails Youth Hostel](#) A5

14 [Xinhua Hotel](#) C4

15 [Yangtze River Hostel](#) G3

 Eating

16 Evening shaokao barbecues F4

17 Evening shaokao barbecues B5

18 Evening shaokao barbecues D5

19 Late-night shaokao barbecues C5

20 [Liuyishou Huoguo](#) E3

21 [Shunfeng 123](#) D4

22 [Uncle](#) B6

23 [Yefu Huoguo](#) B4

24 [Zhao'er Huoguo](#) E5

 Drinking

25 [Cafe Lavazza](#) D4

26 [Caffe Molinari](#) D5

27 [Cici Park](#) C3

28 [De Yi Shi Jie](#) C5

 Entertainment

29 [Chongqing Sichuan Opera House](#) A5

 Shopping

[Hongyadong Dajjudian](#) (see 9)

Information

30 24-hr Pharmacy C5

[Harbour Plaza Travel Centre](#) (see 8)

 Transport

- 31 Chaotianmen Bus Stop G1
- 32 Chaotianmen Long-distance Bus Station G2
- 33 Chongqing Ferry Port ticket hall F1
- 34 Three Gorges Ferry Port F1

Yangzi River Cable Car CABLE CAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Changji a ng suodao; [Offline map](#); one-way ¥5; 🕒 7am-10pm) A ride on the creaky old Yangzi River cable car is slightly disconcerting, but gives you a wonderful bird's-eye view of the murky waters and the cityscape beyond. It drops you off near the riverside bar and restaurant strip on Nan'an Binjiang Lu ([Click here](#)). The cable car is by Exit 5 of Xiaoshizi station on Line 1.

## THE TOUGHEST PORTERS IN CHINA

Ever since the first Chongqing-ers couldn't bear the thought of carrying their buckets of water from the river up to their cliff-side homes, there's been a need for a special kind of porter. A porter who can lift more than his bodyweight and lug that load up and down hills all day long. A porter who can't use a trolley like in other cities, or a bike or a rickshaw, but instead works on foot using only the cheapest of tools: a bamboo pole, or 'bangbang', and a length of rope.

Known as the Bangbang Army, these porters have been bearing the city's weights on their shoulders for hundreds of years, but their numbers really exploded in the 1990s when the government began resettling millions who lived along the Yangzi River. Many came from the countryside with little education and no relevant skills, and soon became part of the 100,000-strong workforce. Unregulated and poor, 'bangbang' porters earn around ¥30 per day to work in one of China's hottest, hilliest cities, lugging heavy loads up and down steep hills. When you consider some of the wealth that's been pumped into the city in recent years (just look across the river at the Grand Theatre), it's perhaps surprising that this age-old trade still thrives. But for now, at least, the Bangbang Army continues to be an integral feature of the alleyway-riddled areas that link this fast modernising city to its old docks.

**FREE** Three Gorges Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Sanxia Bowuguan; [Offline map](#); 236 Renmin Lu; 🕒 9am-4pm) This sleek museum showcases the history of settlement in the Chongqing

region. A 1st-floor exhibition on the Three Gorges includes a model of the dam, and you can learn more about southwest China's minority cultures through their clothing and artwork. Some exhibits have better English captions than others, but the artefacts are well presented throughout. Take metro Line 2 to Zengjiayan station, exit A.

## Sleeping

If you fancy splashing the cash, the Marriott ([www.marriott.com](http://www.marriott.com)) and Intercontinental ([Offline map Google map](http://www.ihotelsgroup.com/intercontinental) ([www.ihotelsgroup.com/intercontinental](http://www.ihotelsgroup.com/intercontinental))) are both located centrally.



Yangtze River Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xiyuan Qingnian Lushe; [Offline map](#); 📍 6310 4270; [www.chongqinghostels.com](http://www.chongqinghostels.com); 80 Changbing Lu; 80 dm/s/d from ¥40/90/160; 📶@📶) Overlooking the Yangzi River and backing onto one of the remaining stretches of Chongqing's ancient city wall, this friendly, well-run hostel is a smart choice if you don't mind climbing steps to walk into town. Rooms are bright and clean, and female-only dorms are available. There's a pool table and a restaurant-cafe in the lobby area as well as another lovely cafe upstairs. They provide reliable travel advice without giving it the hard sell, making this a good place to book your Yangzi River cruises.

Urban Trails Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xiyuan Jiefangbei Qingnian Lushe; [Offline map](#); 📍 6303 3925; 115 Xinmin Jie; 115 dm/s/d ¥35/90/140, tw ¥140; 📶@📶) This ordinary white-tiled budget hotel was recently converted into a youth hostel and taken under the wing of Yangtze River Hostel. It's still very un-hostel-like – no fresh coffee, no Western breakfasts, no travel desk – but the rooms are clean and comfortable, staff members are very friendly and helpful and it's located on an alluring alleyway. Narrow, winding, stone-paved Xinmen Jie is full of old Chongqing flavours with remnants of old stones walls and, if you look hard enough, a couple of old stilt houses (see boxed text, [Click here](#)).

Hongyadong Dajjudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 📍 6399 2888; 56 Cangbai Lu; 56 s/d from ¥618/778, with river view ¥678/878, discounted to s/d ¥368/448, with river view ¥388/498; 🌐📶) This huge complex hugging the cliff side overlooking the Jialing River comes with restaurants, bars, shopping streets, a theatre and this pretty decent hotel. The whole complex is new, and the rooms are clean and modern, but it's been built in the style of Chongqing's once ubiquitous stilt buildings so some find it a little twee. The river views are superb, though.

Harbour Plaza HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chongqing Haiyi Jiudian; [Offline map](#); 📍 6370 0888; [www.harbour-plaza.com/hpcq](http://www.harbour-plaza.com/hpcq); Wuyi Lu; r from ¥1300, discounted to ¥618; 🌐📶📺) Rooms are spacious and elegant in this smart, centrally located hotel, and come with wide-screen TV, fridge, safe and internet connection (¥80 per day). Otherwise, decent bathrooms come with a very small tub which doubles as a shower. The travel desk on the 3rd floor can help with Yangzi River cruises.

Sunrise Mingqing Hostel COURTYARD HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shangyue Mingqing Kezhan; [Offline map](#); 📍 6393 1579; [www.srising.com](http://www.srising.com); 23 Xiahong Xuexiang (down steps from 26 Jiefang Donglu); 23 ( 26 ); dm/d from ¥69/239, discounted to ¥49/159; 🌐📶📺) Facing the western wall of Huguang Guild Hall, this recently renovated Qing dynasty courtyard hotel lacks the atmosphere of a youth hostel (probably because there's no restaurant, cafe or bar), but is nonetheless a gorgeous place to stay. Rooms are beautifully decorated with dark-wood furniture and have cute bathrooms, and it's fun getting here, down the steep alley off Jiefang Donglu. The surrounding area, with its wonderful old-Chongqing flavours, has been slated for demolition so the neighbourhood may resemble a building site by the time you get here.

Perfect Time Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Chunzhen Niandai Qingnian Lushe; 📍 6547 7008; [www.hostelchongqing.com](http://www.hostelchongqing.com); 2 Zhong Jie, Ciqikou; 2 dm/s/tw ¥35/80/160; 🌐📶📺) If you fancy the charms of Ciqikou rather than the city centre, this friendly hostel has helpful staff and a lovely cafe

terrace overlooking the river. At the end of the main tourist strip.

Xinhua Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xinhua Jiudian; [Offline map](#); 📍 6355 7777; 9 Qingnian Lu; 9 tw from ¥828, discounted to ¥398; 📞) Elegant, low-lit interior with spacious, well-equipped rooms (TV, fridge, safe) and good-sized bathrooms with separate shower and tub. A stone's throw from Liberation Monument so about as central as it gets.

## Eating

Chongqing is all about hotpot (; *huoguo*) : a fiery cauldron of head-burning *lajiao* (; chillies) and mouth-numbing *huajiao* (; Sichuan peppers) into which is dipped deliciously fresh ingredients, from vegetables and tofu to all types of fish and meat. It's a dish best sampled with a group of friends. Indeed, hotpot restaurants tend to be among the liveliest you'll find. But don't underestimate a hotpot's bite. This part of China is renowned for spicy food, and it doesn't come spicier than hotpot.

How hot you go is up to you – *bu la* (; not spicy, but in Chongqing this will still be spicy), *wei la* (; mildly spicy), *zhong la* (; medium spicy), *zui la* (; very spicy) and *jia ma jia la* (; extra, extra spicy).

Another great thing to sample in Chongqing is *shaokao* (; barbeque skewers), the perfect point-and-eat street food. Just choose your skewers, hand them over and wait for them to come back spiced and grilled. Select from *doufu pi* (; tofu skin), *xiao mantou* (; mini steamed rolls), *niangao* (; sticky rice cake), *qiezi* (; eggplant/aubergine), and *jiucaai* (; leek) among other ingredients.

We've marked some of our favourite *shaokao* barbeque spots on the map, but there are others all over the city. Most *shaokao* places in Chongqing also do bowls of pigs brain (; *naohua*) as a side dish. We dare you.

Noodles are another firm favourite in Chongqing. See boxed text, [Click here](#).



Shunfeng 123 SICHUANESE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 123; Shunfeng Yao Er San; [Offline map](#); Dabuhui Shopping Centre, West Bldg, 3rd fl, Jiefangbei; dishes ¥10-50; ☺ 10am-9pm) Mouth-wateringly good, high-quality Sichuanese food, and some pan-Asian dishes too, at the Jiefangbei branch of one of Chongqing's best-value high-end restaurants. Everything is tasty, but we loved the *jiaowang chanzui tu* (; rabbit and peppers; ¥38) and the *shanhu xia* (; coral shrimp; ¥36). For dessert, don't miss the *mizhi chashao su* (; secret recipe meat-filled pastries; ¥3 each). Enter through a lift accessed from Bayi Lu (). Photo menu.

Zhao'er Huoguo HOTPOT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 128 Jiefang Donglu, 3rd fl; 128 dipping ingredients ¥4-20; ☺ 11.30am-2pm & 5.30-9pm) They say if you only try one hotpot in Chongqing it should be Zhao'er's. It is rightly lauded. There are various pots to choose from: The nine-sectioned pot (; *jiugongguo*) allows you to separate the flavours of your raw ingredients (ideal if one of you is vegetarian), although the broth is shared, while the two-sectioned *yuanyang guo* (), which costs an extra ¥28, has a clear broth that is separated completely from the spicy one. You may be asked if you want your broth spicy (; *hongde*) or clear (; *qingde*) and therefore spiceless. Assuming you opt for spicy, you need to say how spicy; mild (; *weila*), medium (; *zhongla*) or very spicy (; *tela*). We highly advise you plump for mild! As well as all the usual hotpot raw ingredients (see boxed text opposite), the speciality here is fresh lamb tripe (; *xian maodu*). The water spinach (; *kongxin cai*) is also particularly good. No English sign or menu.

Yefu Huoguo HOTPOT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Beiqu Lu, 15 Linjiangmen; 15 ingredients ¥3-15; ☺ 9am-4am) Seats are of the plastic stool variety, and if you're fussy about hygiene you might want to consider somewhere else, but if you truly love hotpot, welcome to heaven. This place is widely regarded as the most mouth-numbing hotpot in Chongqing. They pile in the chillies, of course, but what they use more of here than anywhere else are Sichuan peppercorns; expect your head to be buzzing as you leave. Unless you're hardcore, insist on *wei la* (; mildly spicy), although even

that will be *very* spicy. The delicious *xianzha surou* (; deep-fried pork) is already cooked. Everything else needs to be dunked. From Linjiangmen metro station (), walk along Beiqu Lu, following the road right, left, and it's on your left up a small flight of stairs (blue sign).

## HOTPOT MENU

The best hotpot restaurants are entirely local affairs so you have about as much chance of finding an English menu as you have of being able to eat the thing without your nose running. As with many dishes in Chongqing, the first thing to establish when ordering hotpot is how hot you want it ([Click here](#)). Then you'll be given a menu checklist of raw ingredients that you will later cook in your pot. Here are some of our favourites for you to look out for on the menu:

- » *yangrou juan* (; wafer-thin lamb slices)
- » *fei niurou* (; beef slices)
- » *xian maodu* (; fresh tripe, usually lamb)
- » *xian yachang* (; strips of duck intestine)
- » *lao doufu* (; tofu slabs)
- » *ou pian* (; slices of lotus root)
- » *xian huanghua* (; chrysanthemum stalks)
- » *tu dou* (; potato slices)
- » *bai cai* (; cabbage leaves)
- » *mu'er* (; mushroom)
- » *kongxin cai* (; water spinach)

Uncle CANTONESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Biao Shu; [Offline map](#); Riyueguang Zhongxin Sq, 89 Minquan Lu; 89 mains ¥20-40; ☺ 11am-11pm; 📍) If your body needs a break from Chongqing's fiery chillies, head to this Guangzhou restaurant chain, modelled on a type of Hong Kong teahouse-cum-canteen. It's young, friendly, brightly lit and serves a good variety of tasty Cantonese dishes – lots of soups as well as noodle and rice meals. Portions are

hearty, meaning most dishes are meals in themselves. It's at the back of a public square, under the giant TV screen. English menu.

Made in Kitchen CHINESE WESTERN \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chufang Zhizao; [Offline map](#); 📍 6363 6228; Three Gorges Museum, 236 Renmin Lu; 236 dishes ¥30-130; 🕒 11am-10.30pm; 🍷) Fine dining with tip-top service and a fabulous menu, including excellent steak and a good choice of imported wines (from ¥200). Has a pan-Asian menu as well as a Western-food menu. Located underneath the Three Gorges Museum; the entrance is down to the left as you face the museum entrance. Metro Line 2 to Zengjayan station, Exit A.

Liuyishou Huoguo HOTPOT \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); 46 Cangbai Lu, 3rd fl; 46 3 dipping ingredients ¥6-20; 🕒 10am-midnight) The hotpot here is decent enough, and the atmosphere is congenial, but the real attraction is the view; dine on Chongqing's signature dish as you gaze out across the Jialing River. You'll be pushed to find a river-view table at peak eating times, so perhaps come earlier or later than you'd usually eat. Take the lift to the right of Motel 168. No English.

## CHONGQING NOODLES

Chongqing's are particular fond of noodles and you'll find noodle joints all over the region. They rarely have English menus or signs – just look for the character (*mian*; noodles) and you're good to go.

Specialities here include *xiaomian* ( ) – or *mala xiaomian* ( ) – which is common for breakfast despite being very spicy, and *liangmian* ( ) which are delicious despite being served cold. Noodles in Chongqing are served by the *liang* ( ; 50g). Two- *liang* ( ; *er liang*) or three- *liang* ( ; *san liang*) portions are most common. Expect to pay between ¥5 and ¥10 for a bowl. Remember; *wo neng chi lade* (I like my food spicy); *bu yao tai la* (not too spicy, please).

### Noodles Menu

; *mala xiaomian*; spicy noodles

; *liangmian*; cold noodles

; *niurou mian*; beef noodles



; *jidan mian*; egg noodles

; *suanla fen*; tangy glass noodles

; *feichang mian*; pig intestine noodles



## Chongqing (Caiyuanba)

📍 Sights

1 [Three Gorges Museum](#) A1

🍴 Eating

2 [Made in Kitchen](#) A1

Information

3 [Global Doctor Chongqing Clinic](#) A2

 Transport

4 [Airport Shuttle Bus](#) A1

5 Caiyuanba Bus Station A3

6 Caiyuanba Old Station A3

7 Escalator entrance A3

## Drinking & Entertainment

As well as the places listed below, there are also cafes and bars at the Hongyadong hotel complex ([Click here](#)), overlooking the Jialing River, plus a string of riverside bars (; *jiuba*; [Offline map](#)), cafes and restaurants on Nan'an Binjiang Lu (); take the cable car over the Yangzi, then walk down to the river and turn left. From there, walk 15 minutes along the river or hop on any bus for one stop. The cable car stops running at 10pm.

De Yi Shi Jie [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; [Offline map](#)) is a public square surrounded by tacky bars, karaoke joints and the city's biggest nightclubs.

For traditional teahouses, head to Ciqikou Ancient Town ([Click here](#)) and look for signs for (*chayuan*; tea garden).

 Cici Park BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( [Offline map](#); Xixi Gongyuan; 2 Linjiang Lu; 2 beer from ¥15; 🕒 7pm-4am) The most laid-back bar in Chongqing, Cici's has chilled-out music and loungey, bohemian furnishings with outdoor seating on the square too. Beers are affordable, mixers start at ¥25 and there's local plum wine (; *meizi jiu*; ¥10) that comes in a cute bottle with a thimble cup. It's on a big open square on the roof of a small shopping complex whose frontage has been made to look like the long-disappeared decorative archway, Linjiang Pai ().

Nuts LIVE MUSIC

( Jianguo Julebu; [Offline map](#); www.douban.com/host/nutsclub, in Chinese; Shazhong Lu, Shapingba district; beer from ¥5; 🕒 8pm-2am) This pint-sized club is the best place to see local bands playing live.

It's right by Chongqing University so gets a decent crowd in. Live music tends to be weekends only, from 8pm to 10pm, and usually carries a ¥30 cover charge. At other times there are DJs. You can walk here from Shapingba metro station; straight along Hanyu Lu ( ) then left down Shazhong Lu ( ); 20 minutes.

Caffe Molinari CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Moli Kafei; [Offline map](#); cnr Food St & Zourong Lu; espresso ¥18, ice cream ¥16; ☎ 9.30am-11.30pm) A tree-shaded street-side terrace cafe adding a touch of Italian gelaterie to the centre of Chongqing's modern shopping district. Cafe Lavazza [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), on the other side of Zourong Lu, does similar fare for similar prices.

Chongqing Sichuan Opera House THEATRE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chongqingshi Chuanjuyuan; [Offline map](#); ☎ 6371 0153; 76 Jintang Jie; 76 tickets ¥15-20; ☎ 2pm) Holds a 2½-hour performance of Sichuan opera every Saturday afternoon.

## Shopping

For top-name brands, head to the glitzy shopping malls around the Liberation Monument ( ; Jiefangbei; [Offline map](#)). For souvenirs, try the unashamedly touristy 3rd floor of Hongyadong (56 Cangbai Lu; 56 ), below the hotel of the same name, or head to Ciqikou Ancient Town ([Click here](#)).

## CITY RIVER CRUISES

Chongqing looks best from the water, especially at night when the city flashes with neon. The so-called Two-river Cruises ( ; *liangjiang youchuan*) last for around two hours and leave every afternoon (2pm to 3pm) and evening (7pm to 8pm) from Chaotianmen Dock, and can be a fun way of getting an alternative view of this unique metropolis. There are a number of boats offering the same service. The difference in prices reflects the quality and age of the boats. The four boats listed below were the most popular at the time of research. Although there are cruises every day, not all the boats run every day. The boats have no English signs and very little English is spoken on board. You can eat on board, although menus are in Chinese only, and the food is pretty expensive (dishes ¥30 to ¥80). Prices listed below are for evening cruises, which are much more popular (and more worthwhile). Expect to get tickets for as little as ¥25 or ¥35 for an afternoon cruise. Buy

your tickets from the end of the jetty leading to the boat in question.

### Cruise Boats

**Chaotiangong** (¥128), **Chaotianmen** (¥148), **Jinbi Huanggong** (¥138), **Man Jiang Hong** (¥88)

## Information

### Internet Access

There are internet cafes all over the city, including three or four by Caiyuanba Train Station. Look for the characters (*wangba*).

**Huihui Wangba** ( [Offline map](#); 1st fl, 20-40 Zhonghua Xiang; 20-40 1 per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr)

### Medical Services

**24-hour pharmacy** ( Yaodian; [Offline map](#); 63 Minquan Lu; 63 ☺ 24hr) Western medicine, ground floor; Chinese medicine, 1st floor.

**Global Doctor Chongqing Clinic**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Huanqiu Yisheng Chongqing Zhensuo; [Offline map](#); ☎ 8903 8837; Suite 701, 7th fl, Office Tower, Hilton Hotel, 139 Zhongshan Sanlu; 139 7 701 ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri) A 24-hour emergency service is available by dialling the general clinic number.

### Money

ATMs are everywhere, and most accept foreign cards. We've marked a couple on our map.

**HSBC** ( Huifeng Yinhang; [Offline map](#); Minquan Lu; ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri) Only small, but has money-exchange facility.

**ICBC** (Industrial & Commercial Bank of China; Gongshang Yinhang; [Offline map](#); ☺ 9am-6pm) On Minzu Lu beside the Liberation Monument. Has a dedicated money-exchange facility.

### Post & Telephone

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Minquan Lu; [Offline map](#); ☺ 9am-7pm) You can top up your Chinese phone and buy SIM cards at the China Mobile store (open 9am to 9pm) on the 1st floor.

### Public Security Bureau

**PSB** ( Gong'anju; ☎ 6396 1994; 555 Huanglong Lu; 555 ☺ 9am-noon & 1-5pm) Extends visas. Accessed from Ziwei Zhilu (). Take metro Line 3 to Tangjia Yuanzi (). Leave from exit 2, go up the escalator, turn left then first right, then keep going until you see the large building

with flags on your right (10 minutes).

#### Travel Agencies

Yangtze River Hostel ([Click here](#)) can arrange tours of all types (including Three Gorges cruises) and has better English-language speakers than the travel agencies and ticket offices around town. They charge minimal commission.

**Harbour Plaza Travel Centre** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Haiyi Luyou Zhongxin; [Offline map](#); 📍 6373 5664; 3rd fl, Harbour Plaza, Wuyi Lu; 🕒 8am-10pm) Staff here are helpful, speak OK English and can book air tickets and arrange Three Gorges cruises.

### Getting There & Away

#### Air

Chongqing's Jiangbei Airport ( ) is 25km north of the city centre, and connected to the metro system. As always, it's easiest to book online. Try [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) or [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net). Alternatively, buy tickets at the **China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; [Offline map](#); 📍 6383 9777; 8th fl, 151 Zourong Lu; 151 🕒 9.30am-5.30pm Mon-Fri). Some English is spoken. Because of the high-speed rail link, there are no longer flights between Chongqing and Chengdu. Direct flights include:

**Beijing** ¥1120, 2½ hours

**Kunming** ¥550, 70 minutes

**Shanghai** ¥920, 2½ hours

**Xi'an** ¥470, 90 minutes

**Wuhan** ¥500, 90 minutes

#### Boat

Chongqing is the starting point for hugely popular cruises down the Yangzi River through the magnificent Three Gorges. For all the details, [Click here](#).

#### Bus

Chongqing has several long-distance bus stations, but most buses use Caiyuanba bus station (; Caiyuanba qichezhan; [Offline map](#)) beside the main (old) train station. Destinations include:

**Chengdu** (in Sichuan) ¥104 to ¥114, four hours, every hour (8am to 6.50pm)

**Chishui** (in Guizhou) ¥66 to ¥72, 4½ hours, four daily (8.40am,

12.30pm, 3.20pm and 6.30pm)

**Dazu** ¥55, 2½ hours, every hour (7am to 9pm)

**Hechuan** ¥30, 90 minutes, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 8.30pm)

**Jiangjin** ¥25, 70 minutes, every 30 minutes (6.40am to 8pm); leaves from Caiyuanba Old Station

**Songji** ¥43, two hours, one daily (1.20pm)

**Wanzhou** ¥114, 3½ hours, hourly (8am to 6.15pm)

**Yibin** (in Sichuan) ¥90 to ¥99, three to four hours, hourly (6.35am to 8.30pm)

**Yongchuan** ¥36, 90 minutes, every 20 minutes (6.30am to 9.20pm)

Buses for Fengjie (¥163, five hours, four daily, 8.30am, 11.30am, 3.30pm and 7pm) from where you can catch the Three Gorges hydrofoil or ferry, leave from Longtousi bus station (; Longtousi qichezhan), which is on metro Line 3 (station name: ; Longtousi).

#### Train

New, faster trains, including the D class ‘bullet’ train to and from Chengdu, use Chongqing’s new North Station (; Chongqing Beizhan; off [Offline map](#)), but some others, such as the train to **Kunming** use the older train station at Caiyuanba (; [Offline map](#)).

Destinations include:

**Beijing West** hard sleeper ¥391, 23 to 31 hours, five daily (9.45am, 11.21am, 1.41pm, 8.32pm and 11.50pm)

**Chengdu East** hard seat ¥98, two to 2½ hours, 12 daily (8am to 9.27pm)

**Guilin** hard sleeper ¥164, 20 hours, one daily (8.43pm)

**Kunming** hard sleeper ¥246, 19 hours, two daily (9.10am and 2.11pm)

**Lhasa** hard sleeper ¥712, 45 hours, every other day (8.11pm)

**Shanghai** hard sleeper ¥428, 28 hours, two daily (7.46am and 3.19pm)

**Xi’an** hard sleeper ¥179, 10 to 11 hours, five daily (9.16am, 11.02am, 11.48am, 5.35pm and 8.11pm)



## Getting Around

Airport

Metro Line 3 goes from the airport (; *jichang*) into town (¥6, 45 minutes, 6.22am to 10.30pm). Note, the metro is signposted as 'Light Rail' (; *qinggui*) at the airport.

The **airport shuttle bus** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( *jichang daba*; ¥15, 45 minutes) meets all arriving planes and takes you to Meizhuanxiao Jie (), a small road off Zhongshan Sanlu (), via a couple of stops in the north of the city. Bus 461 goes from Zhongshan Sanlu to Chaotianmen (). To get to the metro, turn left onto Zhongshan Sanlu and go straight over the large roundabout. Niujiatuo () station will be on your left.

Shuttle buses going to the airport run from 6am to 8pm.

A taxi is around ¥50.

#### Bus

Local bus fares are ¥1 or ¥2. Useful routes:

**Bus 105** North Train Station–Linjiangmen (near Liberation Monument)

**Bus 120** Chaotianmen–Caiyuanba Train Station

**Bus 141** North Train Station–Chaotianmen

**Bus 419** North Train Station–Caiyuanba Train Station

**Bus 461** Chaotianmen–Zhongshan Sanlu (for airport bus)

**Bus 462** Zhongshan Sanlu (airport bus)– Liberation Monument

#### Metro

Chongqing's part-underground, part-sky train **metro system** ( *guidao*; per trip ¥2-6, roughly 6.30am-10.30pm) links the Jiefangbei peninsula with parts of the city, including the airport and the two train stations.

Signs are bilingual but, unhelpfully, the metro map is in Chinese characters only.

The metro station for Caiyuanba Train Station is called Lianglukou () and is accessed via one of the world's longest escalators (; *da futi*; ¥2).

#### Taxi

Fares start at ¥5. A taxi from Jiefangbei to Nuts nightclub should cost around ¥35. It's around ¥50 to the airport.

## Dazu Buddhist Caves

The fabulous rock carvings of Dazu (Dazu Shiku) are a Unesco World

Heritage site and one of China's four great Buddhist cave sculpture sites, along with those at Dunhuang, Luoyang and Datong. The Dazu sculptures are the most recent of the four, but the artwork here is arguably the best.

Scattered over roughly 40 sites are thousands of cliff carvings and statues (with Buddhist, Taoist and Confucian influences), dating from the Tang dynasty (9th century) to the Song dynasty (13th century). The main groupings are at Treasured Summit Hill and North Hill.

## Sights

### Treasured Summit Hill ROCK CARVINGS

( Baoding Shan; admission ¥135, combination ticket with North Hill ¥170; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) Of all the stunning sculptures at this site, the centrepiece is a 31m-long, 5m-high reclining Buddha depicted entering nirvana, with the torso sunk into the cliff face. Next to the Buddha, with a temple built around her for protection, is a mesmerising gold Avalokiteshvara (or Guanyin, the Goddess of Mercy), which was undergoing extensive renovation at the time of research. Her 1007 individual arms fan out around her, entwined and reaching for the skies. Each hand has an eye, the symbol of wisdom. It is believed these sculptures were completed over roughly 70 years, between 1174 and 1252.

Treasured Summit Hill differs from other cave sites in that it incorporates some of the area's natural features – a sculpture next to the reclining Buddha, for example, makes use of an underground spring.

The site is about 15km northeast of Dazu town and is accessed on shuttle buses (¥3, 20 minutes, until 7pm) that leave from Dongguan zhan bus stop. Dazu has two bus stations; old and new. Buses from Chongqing drop you at Dazu's old bus station (; *laozhan*). Buses from Chengdu drop you at Dazu's new bus station (; *xinzhan*). From either, take bus 101 (¥1) or a ¥10 cycle rickshaw ride to get to Dongguan zhan bus stop.

Once at the site, it's a 10-minute walk from where the bus drops you off, past numerous restaurants, guesthouses and souvenir stalls, to the entrance to the sculptures. Buses returning from Treasured



Summit Hill run until 6pm.

### North Hill ROCK CARVINGS

( Bei Shan; admission ¥90, combination ticket with Treasured Hill Summit ¥170; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) This site, originally a military camp, contains some of the region's earliest carvings. The dark niches hold several hundred statues. The collection is smaller than at Treasured Summit Hill and some are in poor condition, but it is still well worth a visit.

The pleasant, forested North Hill is about a 30-minute hike – including many steps – from Dazu town; turn left out of the old bus station and keep asking the way. It's ¥15 in a taxi.

### South Hill ROCK CARVINGS

( Nan Shan; admission ¥5; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) This modest site really only has one set of carvings, but makes a nice appetiser before you delve into the main courses at North Hill and Treasured Summit Hill. It's behind the old bus station and takes around 15 minutes to walk to. It's ¥10 in a taxi.

### Other Sights ROCK CARVINGS

Those with a particular interest in Buddhist rock carvings might like to try to get out to the almost never visited carvings at Stone Gate Hill (; Shimen Shan), 19km southeast of Dazu, or those at Stone Seal Hill (; Shizhuan Shan), 20km southwest of town. You'll have to take a taxi. The truly adventurous might like to catch a bus to the tiny town of Shiyang (), just over the border in Sichuan province, which has a rarely visited collection of Song dynasty Buddhist rock carvings and is about as un-touristy as it gets. Buses to Shiyang leave from Dazu's old bus station. When you get there, keep asking for Pilu Dong (; Buddha Vaironcana Cave); it's walking distance. From Shiyang, you can continue by bus to Chengdu.

## **Sleeping**

The hotel attached to Jinfuyuan Restaurant ( Jinfuyuan Jiudian; 📍 4372 4666; r ¥80-100) is about 50m from Dazu's old station (turn left) and makes a handy base for your sculpture-seeking adventures.

## **Getting There & Away**

Buses from Dazu old station:

**Chongqing** ¥55, 2½ hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 6pm)

**Shiyang** ¥10, one hour, every 40 minutes (7.20am to 5.40pm)

**Yongchuan** (for Songji) ¥22, 90 minutes, every 45 minutes (7.10am to 5.40pm)

Buses from Dazu new station:

**Chengdu** ¥94 to ¥106, four hours, four daily (7.15am, 8.55am, 9.50am and 2pm)

**Hechuan** (for Laitan) ¥20 to ¥25, 2½ hours, four daily (7.50am, 11.20am, 2pm and 5.10pm)

**Leshan** ¥106, 4½ hours, one daily (7.20am)

**Zigong** ¥54, 3½ hours, two daily (8am and 1.30pm)

## Zhongshan

Chongqing's once-ubiquitous stilt-style homes are an endangered species these days, but visit this gorgeous riverside village and you'll find plenty of them to gawp at. The old town (; *guzhen*) is essentially one long street lined with wooden homes on stilts above the riverbank. Walk down to the river and look up at the houses to see their support structures. You can also hike along the other side of the river.

Many residents of these old houses have turned their front rooms into storefronts. While some hawk souvenir trinkets, others sell locally made products such as chilli sauce or jugs of rice wine. Popular snacks include squares of smoked tofu (; *yanxun doufu*; ¥1), and sweet doughy rice cakes filled with ground nuts.

Above the river are several restaurants (dishes ¥10 to ¥60) and teahouses. There's even a small bar (at No 63). And there are at least half a dozen guesthouses (rooms ¥30 to ¥80); look for signs saying (*zhusu*; lodgings). Most are small, but clean and have a shared shower room. Some rooms have cracking river views. If you're stuck for choice, try the guesthouse run by Mrs Zhao – Zhao Shike ( 📞 138 8320 9407; r ¥30-60). She doesn't speak English but is welcoming. A couple of doors down Yi Xian Lou ( dishes ¥5-50) does decent food (no English menu). Look for *guzhen laolarou* (; cured pork fried with

green chillies; ¥30), *heshui doufu* (; river water tofu; ¥5) and *ye cai* (; a type of spinach grown in the hills here; literally ‘wild veg’; ¥10).

To get here from Chongqing, change buses at Jiangjin (), from where buses leave for Zhongshan (¥12, two hours, roughly every 30 minutes from 5.30am to 4.45pm). The last bus back to Jiangjin is at 4.20pm. The last bus from Jiangjin back to Chongqing is at 7pm. You can also head south into Guizhou province from Jiangjin, via Zunyi (; ¥110, 3½ hours, 8.35am and 2.35pm), or north to the caves at Dazu (; ¥53, two hours, 11.30am and 2.10pm).

## Laitan

The main attraction in this ancient walled village overlooking the Qu River is a towering Buddha ( Erfo Si; admission ¥20) carved into a hillside and surrounded by more than 1000 mini-statues. The Buddha dates to the 12th or 13th century. At roughly 14m tall, it pales in comparison to the giant Buddha at Leshan, but it’s still quite impressive – and far less visited.

A short walk from the Buddha is the village temple (admission ¥5), which is still in use.

Allow time to wander around the village, which is more than 1000 years old, checking out the small shops and eateries. Laitan *mijiu* (; rice wine) is a local speciality.

Although it is possible to visit Laitan in a day trip from Chongqing, some people might like to stay the night within the village walls at the neat and tidy Huilong Kezhan ( ☎ 023-4256 1999; r ¥128). There’s nothing special about the guesthouse itself (although it’s clean and well looked after), but staying here gives you the chance to experience the nontouristy side of this ancient village, once all the day-trippers have left.

From Chongqing, change buses at Hechuan. You’ll be dropped at the town centre bus station, called *keyun zongzhan* (). Turn right out of this station and take local bus 202 (¥1) to the larger bus station on the edge of town, called *keyun zhongxin zhan* (); it’s the last stop. From there, there are three direct buses to Laitan (¥10, 50 minutes, 10.10am, 1.35pm and 4.10pm) as well as regular buses to Longshi

(¥9.50, 45 minutes). From Longshi, minibuses (¥2, five minutes) leave for Laitan from outside the bus station.

The last buses back to Chongqing from Hechuan are 6pm (from *keyun zongzhan*) and 6.30pm (from *keyun zhongxin zhan*).

WORTH A TRIP

## FISHING TOWN FORTRESS

Famed throughout China for being one of the great ancient battlefields, the 700-year-old Fishing Town Fortress (Diaoyu Cheng; admission ¥60) is surrounded by rushing rivers on three sides and perched on top of a 300m-tall rocky mountain. This was the last stand of the Southern Song dynasty and famously, in the 13th century, the fortress withstood the mighty Mongol armies for an incredible 36 years, during which time an estimated 200 battles were fought here. Mongol leader Mongke Khan was killed in one of them, forcing the Mongol armies to retreat and, ultimately, preventing them from continuing their planned conquest towards Africa.

The fortress was protected by an 8km-long, 30m-tall double wall, punctuated with eight gate towers. Much of the outer wall and all the main gates remain today; some partly restored, others crumbling away. There is little here in terms of facilities (bring a picnic) but it's a fascinating and peaceful place to walk around; narrow stone pathways lead you through the forest, past Buddhist rock carvings, gravestones, bamboo groves, ponds, caves, the wall and its gateways and some fabulous lookout points. There's a map on the back of your ticket, but sights not to miss include the serene 11m-long, 1000-year-old Sleeping Buddha (; Wofu), cut into the overhang of a cliff, Huguo Temple (; Huguo Si), dating from the Tang dynasty, although largely rebuilt, and the Imperial Cave (; Huangdong), an ancient drainage passage with steps leading down to it, clinging to the outside of the fort wall.

To reach the fortress, take a bus from Chongqing to Hechuan, then take local bus 111 (walk out of Hechuan bus station, cross the road and turn left) to Diaoyucheng (¥2.50, 40 minutes), which is the last stop. You may be herded onto another bus 111 as you leave the

outskirts of town. The last bus back to Chongqing from Hechuan is at 6pm.

## Songji

Cobblestone alleyways housing temples, teahouses, old gateways and some wonderful courtyard homes are perfect for aimless strolls in this still-lived-in Ming dynasty village on the banks of the Yangzi River.

If you're looking for a focus, seek out the Chen Family Compound (Chen Jia Dayuan; admission ¥2), the historic home of the village's most prominent family. This sprawling structure once contained more than 100 rooms. What remains of the compound is much smaller, but its walls are extensively decorated with family photos and memorabilia. Actor Joan Chen (Bernardo Bertolucci's *The Last Emperor* and Ang Lee's *Lust, Caution*) is the family member best known outside China.

On a bluff above the river, about a 20-minute walk from the old town, is the Dongyu Temple (; Dongyu Miao), home to a 9.5m-tall Buddha and some gruesome dioramas depicting various hells (impaling, scalding, having your tongue ripped out).

Songshan Binguan ( 📞 023-4954 6078; r from ¥80; 🌃 ) has smart clean doubles, some with river views. Nearby Guzhen Jiudawan ( dishes ¥15-30; 🕒 9am-8pm) is a nicely renovated old courtyard that has been turned into a restaurant-cum-teahouse. There's a selection of Chinese teas here plus a well-priced menu of mostly Sichuanese dishes. To guide yourself around the lanes, take a photo of the large wooden bilingual map at the entrance to the old town (; *guzhen*), just down towards the river from where the bus drops you.

There's one direct bus from Chongqing (¥43, two hours, 1.20pm). Otherwise, catch a bus to Yongchuan, from where minibuses to Songji (¥9, 70 minutes) leave every 20 minutes. The last bus back to Yongchuan leaves Songji at about 5.30pm. The last bus from Yongchuan to Chongqing leaves at 6.50pm.

# Cruising the Yangzi

Top of section

## Includes »

[The Three Gorges](#)

[Chongqing to Wanzhou](#)

[Wanzhou to Yichang](#)

[Luxury Cruises](#)

[Tourist Boats](#)

[Passenger Ships](#)

[Hydrofoil](#)

---

## Why Go?

Travel in China is often a terrestrial and sedentary experience, with agonising bus rides, colossal freeways, traffic jams, dusty mountain roads, marathon train journeys and daily victories hard won over stupefying distances. So the Yangzi Cruise – on China’s longest and most scenically impressive river – enjoys special significance as a trip where the destination is irrelevant compared to the greater drama of the journey. It’s an occasion to put the travel schedule on ice, hang up one’s hat and admire an astonishing panorama sliding past.

---

## When to Go

**December–March** The low season; rates are cheaper and the journey is more serene.

**April & May** The best weather, but the highest prices and rowdiest crowds.

**October & November** Cooler climes but the crowds are back.

---

## The Three Gorges

Few river panoramas have inspired as much awe as the Three Gorges (; Sanxia). Well-travelled Tang dynasty poets and men of letters have gone weak-kneed before them. Voluble emperors and hard-boiled communist party VIPs have been rendered speechless. Flotillas of sightseers have mega-pixelled their way from Chongqing to Yichang. For as long as many Yangzi boat hands can remember, the Three Gorges have been a member of the prestigious China Tour triumvirate, rubbing shoulders with the Terracotta Warriors and the Great Wall.

Yet the gorges these days get mixed press. Some travellers have their socks well and truly blown away; others arrive in Yichang scratching their heads and wondering what all the fuss was about. The route's natural scenery is certainly far more dramatic than its historical sights, often crammed with historical allusions obscure to all but Chinese minds; temples and so forth along the way can be crowded, while uniform riverine towns and settlements are modern-looking rather than twee and charming. To some, the gorges' dramatic appearance can become rather repetitive, especially overlong Xiling Gorge (Xiling Xia). The reservoir built up behind the Three Gorges Dam – a body of water almost the length of England – has certainly taken its toll as much more is now inundated.

But if you don't expect to swoon at every bend in the river, journeying downriver is a stimulating and relaxing adventure, not least because of the change of pace and perspective.

---

## The River

The journey puts you adrift on China's mightiest – and the world's third-longest – river, the gushing 6300km Yangzi River (; Chang Jiang). Starting life as trickles of snow melt in the Tanggula Shan of southwestern Qinghai, the river then spills from Tibet, swells through seven Chinese provinces, sucks in water from hundreds of tributaries and powerfully rolls into the Pacific Ocean north of Shanghai.

# The Effects of the Three Gorges Dam

The dwarfing chasms of rock, sculpted over aeons by the irresistible volume of water, are the Yangzi River's most fabled stretch. Yet the construction of the controversial and record-breaking Three Gorges Dam (; Sanxia Daba) cloaked the gorges in as much uncertainty as their famous mists: have the gorges been humbled or can they somehow shrug off the rising waters?

In brief, the gorges have been undoubtedly affected by the rising waters. The peaks are not as towering as they once were, nor are the flooded chasms through which boats travel as narrow and pinched. The effect is more evident to seasoned boat hands or repeat visitors. For first-timers the gorges still put together a dramatic show.

## FAST FACTS

- » The Three Gorges Dam is the world's largest artificial generator of electric power from a renewable source.
- » The Three Gorges Dam is designed to withstand an earthquake of 7 on the Richter scale.
- » Plans for the Three Gorges Dam date from 1919, when Sun Yatsen (Sun Zhongshan) saw its huge potential for power generation.
- » The Yangzi River will deposit more than 500 million tonnes of silt every year into the reservoir behind the dam.
- » The Yangzi River has caused hundreds of catastrophic floods, including the disastrous inundation of 1931, in which an estimated 145,000 people died.

## THE ROUTE

Apocryphally the handiwork of the Great Yu, a legendary architect of the river, the gorges – Qutang, Wu and Xiling – commence just east of Fengjie in Chongqing province and level out west of Yichang in Hubei province, a distance of around 200km. The principal route for those cruising the Yangzi River is therefore between the cities of Chongqing



and Yichang.

The route can be travelled in either direction, but most passengers journey downstream from Chongqing.

If you buy your ticket from an agency, ensure you're not charged upfront for the sights along the way, as you may not want to visit them all and some of the entrance fees are as steep as the surrounding inclines. The only ticket really worth buying in advance is for the popular Little Three Gorges tour, which is often full ([Click here](#)).

## Yangzi River (Cháng Jiāng)



## Chongqing to Wanzhou

The initial stretch is slow-going and unremarkable, although the dismal view of factories gradually gives way to attractive terraced countryside and the occasional small town.

Passing the drowned town of Fuling (), the first port of call is at **Fengdu** (), 170km from Chongqing city. Long nicknamed the City of Ghosts (; Guicheng), the town is just that: inundated in 2009, its residents were moved across the river. This is the stepping-off point for crowds to clamber up **Ming Shan** ( admission ¥60; cable car ¥20), with its theme-park crop of ghost-focused temples.

Drifting through the county of Zhongzhou, the boat takes around three hours to arrive at **Shibaozhai** ( *Stone Treasure Stockade*; admission ¥80; ☺ 8am-4pm) on the northern bank of the river. A 12-storey, 56m-high wooden pagoda built on a huge, river-water-encircled rock bluff, the structure dates to the reign of Qing dynasty emperor Kangxi (1662–1722). Your boat may stop for rapid expeditions up to the tower and for climbs into its interior.

Most morning boats moor for the night at partially inundated **Wanzhou** (; also called Wanxian). Travellers aiming to get from A to B as fast as possible while taking in the gorges can skip the Chongqing to Wanzhou section by hopping on a three-hour bus and then taking either the hydrofoil or a passenger ship from the Wanzhou jetty.

---

## Wanzhou to Yichang

Boats departing from Wanzhou soon pass the relocated **Zhang Fei Temple** ( *Zhangfei Miao*; admission ¥20), where short disembarkations may be made. **Yunyang** (), a modern town strung out along the northern bank of the river, is typical of many utilitarian settlements. Boats drift on past ragged islets, some carpeted with small patchworks of fields, and alongside riverbanks striated with terraced slopes, rising like green ribbons up the inclines.

The ancient town of **Fengjie** (), capital of the state of Kui during the periods known as the 'Spring and Autumn' (722–481 BC) and 'Warring States' (475–221 BC), overlooks Qutang Gorge, the first of the three gorges. The town – where most ships and hydrofoils berth – is also the entrance point to half-submerged **White King Town** ( *Baidicheng*; admission ¥50), where the King of Shu, Liu Bei, entrusted his son and kingdom to Zhu Geliang, as chronicled in *The Romance of the Three Kingdoms*.

**Qutang Gorge** (; Qutang Xia), also known as Kui Gorge (; Kui Xia), rises dramatically into view, towering into huge vertiginous slabs of rock, its cliffs jutting out in jagged and triangular chunks. The shortest and narrowest of the three gorges, 8km-long Qutang Gorge is over almost as abruptly as it starts, but is considered by many to be the most awe-inspiring. The gorge offers a dizzying perspective onto huge strata despite having some of its power robbed by the rising waters. On the northern bank is **Bellows Gorge** (; Fengxiang Xia), where nine coffins were discovered, possibly placed here by an ancient tribe.

After Qutang Gorge the terrain folds into a 20km stretch of low-lying land before boats pull in at the riverside town of **Wushan** (), situated high above the river. Many boats stop at Wushan for five to six hours so passengers can transfer to smaller tour boats for trips along the **Little Three Gorges** (*Xiao Sanxia*; tickets ¥150-200) on the Daning River (; Daning He). The landscape is gorgeous, and some travellers insist that the narrow gorges are more impressive than their larger namesakes.

Back on the Yangzi River, boats pull away from Wushan to enter the penultimate Wu Gorge, under a bright-red bridge. Some of the cultivated fields on the slopes overhanging the river reach almost illogical angles.

**Wu Gorge** (; Wu Xia) – the Gorge of Witches – is stunning, cloaked in green and carpeted in shrubs, its sides frequently disappearing into ethereal layers of mist. About 40km in length, its towering cliffs are topped by sharp, jagged peaks on the northern bank. A total of 12 peaks cluster on either side, including **Goddess Peak** (; Shennu Feng) and **Peak of the Immortals** (; Jixian Feng). If you're fortunate, you'll catch the sunrise over Goddess Peak.

Boats continue floating eastward out of Wu Gorge and into Hubei province, past the mouth of **Shennong Stream** (; Shennong Xi) and the town of Badong () on the southern bank, along a 45km section before reaching the last of the three gorges.

At 80km, **Xiling Gorge** (; Xiling Xia) is the longest and perhaps least impressive gorge; sections of the gorge in the west have been submerged. Note the slow-moving cargo vessels, including long freight ships loaded with mounds of coal, ploughing downriver to

Shanghai. The gorge was traditionally the most hazardous, where hidden shoals and reefs routinely holed vessels, but it has long been tamed, even though river traffic slows when the fog reduces visibility.

Apart from some of the top-end luxury cruises, most tour boats no longer pass through the monumental **Three Gorges Dam**. The passenger ferries and hydrofoils tend to finish (or begin) their journey at **Taiping Creek Port** (; Taipińgxi Gang), upstream from the dam. From here, two types of shuttle bus wait to take you into Yichang (one hour). One is free and takes you to the old ferry port (; *lao matou*) in the centre of town. The other costs ¥10 and drops you at Yichang East Train Station (; Huoche Dongzhan). Ordinary tourist boats tend to use **Maoping Port** (; Maoping Gang), from where you can at least see the dam, and which is also connected to Yichang via shuttle buses.

## BOATS

There are four categories of boats: luxury cruises, tourist boats, passenger ships and hydrofoil.

---

### Luxury Cruises

The most luxurious passage is on international-standard cruise ships (*haohua youlun*), where maximum comfort and visibility accompany a leisurely agenda. Trips typically depart Chongqing mid-evening and include shore visits to all the major sights (Three Gorges Dam, Little Three Gorges et al), allowing time to tour the attractions (often secondary to the scenery). Cabins have air-con, TV (perhaps satellite), fridge/minibar and sometimes more. These vessels are aimed specifically at Western tourists and are ideal for travellers with time, money and negligible Chinese skills. The average duration for such a cruise is three nights and three to four days.

#### BEST TOP-END CRUISES

**Viking River Cruises** ([www.vikingrivercruises.com](http://www.vikingrivercruises.com)) Very luxurious cruise, offering five-day

cruises from Chongqing to Wuhan, as part of a larger 12-day tour of China; complete tour UK£1995.

**Century Cruises** ([www.centuryrivercruises.com](http://www.centuryrivercruises.com)) Claims to be the most luxurious cruise service on the Yangzi. Ships are new, service is first class and facilities are top notch. Chongqing to Yichang tickets booked through Harbour Plaza Travel Centre ([Click here](#)) start at ¥3150.

**Victoria Cruises** ([www.victoriacruises.com](http://www.victoriacruises.com)) Comfortable four- to five-day trips between Chongqing and Yichang; Older boats than Century, but also has excellent English-speaking guides. From ¥2950, through Harbour Plaza Travel Centre ([Click here](#)).

---

## Tourist Boats

Typically departing from Chongqing at around 9pm, ordinary tourist cruise ships (*putong youlun*) usually take just under 40 hours to reach Yichang (including three nights on board). Some boats stop at all the sights; others stop at just a few (or even none at all). They are less professional than the luxury tour cruises and are aimed more at domestic travellers (Chinese food, little spoken English). Cabins in all classes are fairly basic, but come with AC and a TV and usually have an attached bathroom with a shower. It is possible to book packages that take you first by bus from Chongqing to Wanzhou, where you board a vessel for the rest of the trip. This reduces the journey by one night.

In theory, you can buy tickets on the day of travel, but booking one or two days in advance is recommended. Fares tend to be similar whether you buy them from an agency or direct from the ticket hall, but it's worth shopping around to check. If buying a ticket through an agent, ensure you know exactly what the price includes.

**Special class** (; *tedeng*) ¥1750, two-bed cabin

**1st class** (; *yideng*) ¥950, two-bed cabin

**2nd class** (; *erdeng*) ¥610 to ¥630, four-bed cabin

**3rd class** (; *sandeng*) ¥510 to ¥530, six-bed cabin

---

## Passenger Ships

Straightforward passenger ships (*ke chuan*) are cheap, but can be disappointing because you sail through two of the gorges in the dead of night. Stops are frequent, but hasty, and they pass by the tourist sights. Journeys between Chongqing and Yichang take around 36 hours; between Fengjie and Yichang, around 12 hours. Toilets are shared, and soon get pretty grotty. There are no showers, but there are sinks and power sockets in the twin cabins (as well as TVs, which usually don't work). Meals on board are decent and cheap (¥10 per meal!) but there is no choice of dishes, so take along your own food and drinks in case you don't like what's on offer.

Eastbound boats leave Chongqing at 10pm and Fengjie at 6pm. For westbound journeys, shuttle buses, which connect with the boats, leave Yichang's old ferry port at 4.30pm and 8pm, although the 8pm trip only goes as far as Fengjie.

Tickets can usually be bought on the day of travel.

Chongqing to Yichang fares:

**1st class** (; *yideng*) ¥830, twin cabin

**2nd class** (; *erdeng*) ¥540 to ¥560, twin cabin

**3rd class** (; *sandeng*) ¥440 to ¥460, four- to six-bed dorm

**4th class** (; *siding*) ¥300 to ¥330, eight-bed dorm

Fengjie to Yichang fares:

**1st class** ¥343

**2nd class** ¥212

**3rd class** ¥147

**4th class** ¥119

---

## Hydrofoil

Yangzi River hydrofoils (*kuai ting*) are a dying breed. There are now just three per day and they only run between Fengjie and Yichang. Regular buses, though, connect Fengjie with Chongqing (¥165, five hours, 7am to 6.30pm) so this is still a quick and reasonably convenient way of seeing the Three Gorges.

Hydrofoils are passenger vessels and are not geared towards

tourists, so there's no outside seating. Visibility is OK (albeit through perspex windows), but if you stand by the door you can get a good view. Food and refreshments are served on board, but the food isn't great. Hydrofoils make regular but very brief stops at towns along the river for embarkation and disembarkation.

At the time of research, times of departure and prices for tickets bought at the relevant port's official ticket office were as follows (note, the Yichang times of departure are for the free shuttle buses which leave from Yichang's old port before connecting with the hydrofoils which leave from a newer port 45km upstream):

**Yichang to Fengjie** ¥240, four to five hours (7.20am, 9.50am and 1.20pm)

**Fengjie to Yichang** ¥230, four to five hours (8.30am, 11am and 2pm)

If you get stuck for the night in Fengjie, **Fenggang Binguan** (☎ 023-5683 4333; *r from* ¥80), attached to the ferry port, has large clean rooms, some with river views. Run by a friendly family, but no English spoken; no English sign.

## TICKETS

In Chongqing or Yichang, most hotels, hostels and travel agents can sell you a trip on either the luxury cruise ships or the ordinary tourist boats. In either city, passenger ferry tickets have to be bought at the ferry port ticket halls, which also sell ordinary tourist boat tickets. For the hydrofoil, you can buy westbound tickets in Yichang from the Three Gorges Tourist Centre, at the old ferry port. Eastbound tickets must be bought at the ticket hall in Fengjie, where the hydrofoil starts its journey. You can no longer buy hydrofoil tickets in Chongqing.

The price of your ticket will include the one-hour shuttle bus ride to/from the old ferry port in the centre of Yichang from/to one of the two newer ferry ports, about 45km upstream, where almost all boats now leave from or terminate at.

---

## Chongqing

**Harbour Plaza Travel Centre** Specialises in luxury cruises, but also

sells ordinary tourist boat tickets. Staff are friendly and speak OK English. See [Click here](#).

**Yangtze River Hostel** Mostly sells tickets for the ordinary tourist boats, but can arrange luxury cruises too. Excellent English skills. See [Click here](#).

**Chongqing Ferry Port ticket hall** (*Chongqinggang Shoupiao Dating*; [Map](#) [Offline map](#); ☺ 7am-10pm) Cheapest place to buy ordinary tourist boat tickets, and the only place that sells passenger ferry tickets. No English spoken.

---

## Yichang

**China International Travel Service** (*CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe*; ☎ 0717-625 3088; *Yunji Lu*; ☺ 8.30am-5.30pm) Sells luxury cruises to Chongqing (from ¥2800), tourist boat tickets to Chongqing (¥930 to ¥1020) and hydrofoil tickets to Fengjie (¥450). Some English spoken. It's 500m from Yiling Hotel, walking away from the river. From Yichang Hotel, turn right out of the hotel, then first left and it's on your left after 500m.

**Three Gorges Tourist Centre** (*Sanxia Youke Zhongxin*; ☎ 0717-622 2143; *Yanjiang Dadao*; ☺ 7am-8pm) Commission-free, so cheaper than CITS. Sells hydrofoil tickets to Fengjie (¥240) plus passenger ferry tickets to various destinations between Yichang and Chongqing. Minimal English spoken, but staff members are young and helpful. Enter the modern tourist centre (no English sign) and head to the ticket counters at the far right of the building.

**Yangtze River International Travel** (*Yichang Changjiang Guoji Luxingshe*; ☎ 0717-692 1808; ☺ 7am-8pm) Slightly cheaper than CITS for ordinary tourist-boat tickets to Chongqing (from ¥880). Also sells luxury cruises. Housed inside the Three Gorges Tourist Centre, but has a separate desk beside the passenger-boat ticket counters.

---

## Fengjie



**Fengjie Ferry Port ticket hall** ( *Fengjie Gang Shoupiaoting*; [Map](#) [Offline map](#) ) Sells passenger ferry tickets in either direction, plus hydrofoil tickets to Yichang (¥230). Don't expect to be able to board tourist boats from here because tickets are usually sold out in Chongqing or Yichang.

---

## Wuhan

**Pathfinder Youth Hostel** Sells tickets for westbound trips from Yichang, which include the bus from Wuhan to Yichang. See [Click here](#).



# Xinjiang

POP 21.5 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Urumqi](#)

[Turpan](#)

[Hami \(Kumul\)](#)

[Kashgar](#)

[Karakoram Highway](#)

[Yarkand](#)

[Hotan](#)

[Cherchen](#)

[Bu'erjin](#)

[Kanas Lake Nature Reserve](#)

[Yining](#)

---

## Why Go?

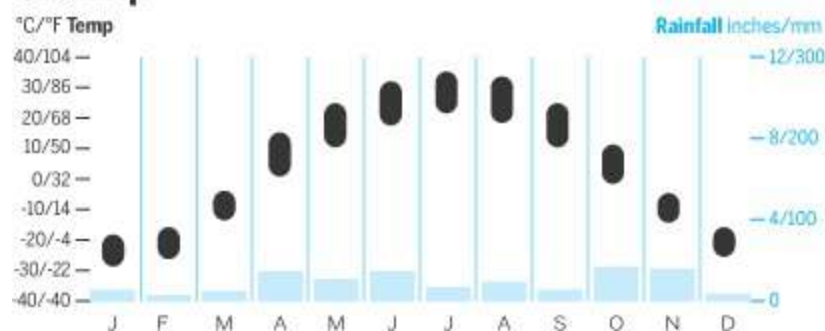
The old Chinese proverb 'Heaven is high and the Emperor is far away' could well have been spoken about Xinjiang ( China's far-flung and restive western frontier. Xinjiang and distant Beijing have been at odds since time immemorial, but the cultural differences between the two are just what make this province so attractive to travellers. Central

Asian culture is still very much alive in this Uighur homeland, from the irresistible smell of teahouse kebabs to the sound of the call to prayer from the neighbourhood mosque. There is much to entice Silk Road travellers here, including ruined desert cities, camel treks, bustling bazaars and a fascinating mix of peoples. Equally awesome are the landscapes, ranging from the scorching sands of the Taklamakan Desert to the cool forests and lakes of the Tian Shan (Heavenly Mountains). A journey to Chinese Turkestan is above all a trip into the past, along desert tracks that for centuries served as the superhighways of the Asian continent.

---

## When to Go

### Ürümqi



**Mar** Nauryz (New Year) festivals held in Kazakh and Kyrgyz villages.

**Aug** Celebrate the grape-harvest festival in Turpan.

**Sep** Autumnal colours at Kanas Lake and Hemu.

---

## Best Bazaars

- » Sunday market, Hotan ([Click here](#))
- » Livestock market, Kashgar ([Click here](#))
- » Sunday bazaar, Kuqa ([Click here](#))
- » Sunday market, Yarkand ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Off The Beaten Track

- » Shipton's Arch ([Click here](#))

- » Hemu Trek to Kanas Lake ([Click here](#))
- » Hiking around Muztagh Ata ([Click here](#))
- » Subashi ruins ([Click here](#))



## Xinjiang Highlights

- 1 Follow the footprints of Marco Polo along the **Southern Silk Road** ([Click here](#)), a string of ancient cities on the fringes of the Taklamakan Desert
- 2 Overnight in a yurt and attend a Tajik wedding amid the dramatic mountain scenery of the **Karakoram Highway** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Explore the ancient ruined cities of **Jiaohe** ([Click here](#)) and **Gaochang** ([Click here](#)), near the laid-back oasis town of Turpan
- 4 Hagggle for a fat-tailed sheep at the timeless Sunday livestock market at **Kashgar** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Trek by foot or horse over the spectacular Altai mountains from Hemu to **Kanas Lake Nature Reserve** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Explore the story of Central Asian silk in **Hotan** ([Click here](#)), from cocoon-spun thread at a silk workshop to shopping for *atlas* cloth in

the city's fascinating bazaars.

7 Pause on the Northern Silk Road at **Kuqa** ([Click here](#)), for its authentic bazaar and nearby Buddhist ruins

## History

By the end of the 2nd century BC the expanding Han dynasty had pushed its borders west into what is now Xinjiang. Military garrisons protected the fledgling trade routes, as silk flowed out of the empire in return for the strong Ferghana horses needed to fight nomadic incursions from the north. Chinese imperial rule waxed and waned over the centuries, shrinking after the collapse of the Han and reasserting itself during the 7th-century Tang, though central control was tenuous at best. A Uighur kingdom based at Khocho thrived from the 8th century and oversaw the Central Asian people's transformation from nomads to farmers and from Manichaeans to Buddhists.

It was during Kharakhanid rule in the 10th to 12th centuries that Islam took hold in Xinjiang. In 1219, Yili (Ili), Hotan and Kashgar fell to the Mongols and their various successors controlled the whole of Central Asia until the mid-18th century, when the Manchu army marched into Kashgar.

In 1865 a Kokandi officer named Yaqub Beg seized Kashgaria, proclaimed a short-lived independent Turkestan, and made diplomatic contacts with Britain and Russia. The Manchu army eventually returned and two decades later Kashgaria was formally incorporated into China's newly created Xinjiang (New Frontier) province. With the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911, Xinjiang came under the chaotic and violent rule of a succession of Muslim and Chinese warlords, over whom the Kuomintang (the Nationalist Party) had very little control. In the 1930s and 1940s there were two attempts in Kashgar and Ili respectively to establish an independent state of Eastern Turkestan, but both were short-lived.

Since 1949, China's main social goal in Xinjiang has been to keep a lid on ethnic separatism while flooding the region with Han settlers. The Uighurs once composed 90% of Xinjiang's population; today they make up less than 50%. China's 'Develop the West' campaign has used the region's oil resources to ramp up the local economy but the increased arrival of Han settlers has only exacerbated ethnic tensions.

In 2008 street protests and bomb attacks rocked the province and in 2009 communal violence between Han and Uighur civilians in downtown Urumqi led to around 200 deaths and 1700 injuries, according to Chinese police reports. The whole province came under - quasi-martial law, with thousands of Uighurs arrested and an internet black-out that lasted for 10 months.

To this day Uighur and Han communities remain effectively segregated in most Xinjiang towns. As long as economic marginalisation, cultural restrictions and ethnic discrimination continue to fuel Uighur resentment, isolated incidents of political violence look likely to continue in the restive province.

## **Climate**

Xinjiang's climate is one of extremes. Turpan is the hottest spot in the country – up to 47°C in summer (June to August), when the Tarim and Jungar Basins aren't much cooler. As daunting as the heat may seem, spring (April and May) is not a particularly good time to visit, with frequent sandstorms making travel difficult and dust clouds obscuring the landscape. Winters (November to March) see the mercury plummet below 0°C throughout the province, although March is a good time to catching some festivals. Late May through June and September through October (especially) are the best times to visit.

## **Language**

Uighur, the traditional lingua franca of Xinjiang, is part of the Turkic language family and thus fairly similar to other regional languages, such as Uzbek, Kazakh and Kyrgyz. The one exception is Tajik, which is related to Persian.

The Han Chinese in Xinjiang don't speak Uighur. Vice versa, many Uighurs can't, or won't, speak Mandarin. Now learning Mandarin is mandatory in Uighur-language schools (but not the other way round), and is exclusively used in universities, nominally to provide more economic opportunities to the Uighurs. But resistance to Sinicisation is steadfast, out of concerns the Uighur culture and tradition will be diluted.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥170

\$\$ ¥170 to ¥280

\$\$\$ more than ¥280

### Eating

\$ less than ¥20

\$\$ ¥20 to ¥35

\$\$\$ more than ¥35



#### Getting There & Away

You can fly between Xinjiang and most domestic cities, Central Asia and a couple of cities further afield, including Moscow and Tehran; for details, [Click here](#).

There are overland border crossings with Pakistan (Khunjerab Pass), Kyrgyzstan (Irkeshtam and Torugart Passes) and Kazakhstan (Korgas, Alashankou, Tacheng and Jimunai). The Qolma Pass to Tajikistan may conceivably open to foreign travel in the coming years. All of these border crossings are by bus, except Alashankou, China's only rail link to Central Asia.

Heading back into mainland China, the obvious route is the train following the Silk Road through Gansu. More rugged approaches are the mountain roads from Charklik to Qinghai, and Karghilik to Ali (Tibet).



#### Getting Around

The railway from Gansu splits near Turpan, with one branch heading west through Urumqi to Yining and Kazakhstan, and the other going southwest to Kashgar and Hotan.

Distances are large in Xinjiang and buses are often sleepers. On-board entertainment usually includes kung fu film marathons cranked to the hilt. Shared taxis run along many of the bus routes, taking up to

half as long and costing twice as much as buses. Shared taxis only depart when full.

Flying around the province can save a lot of time and tickets are often discounted by up to 60%. Flights are sometimes cancelled for lack of passengers or due to bad weather.

## WHICH TIME IS IT?

Making an appointment in Xinjiang is not just a matter of asking what time, but also 'which time?' All of China officially runs on Beijing time (*Beijing shijian*). Xinjiang, several time zones removed from Beijing, however, runs duelling clocks: while the Chinese tend to stick to the official Beijing time, the locals set their clocks to unofficial Xinjiang time (*Xinjiang shijian*), two hours behind Beijing time. Thus 9am Beijing time is 7am Xinjiang time. Most government-run services, such as the bank, post office, bus station and airlines, run on Beijing time, generally operating from 10am to 1.30pm and from 4pm to 8pm to cater to the time difference. Unless otherwise stated, we use Beijing time in this chapter.

## CENTRAL XINJIANG

### Urumqi

📍 0991 / POP 1.7 MILLION

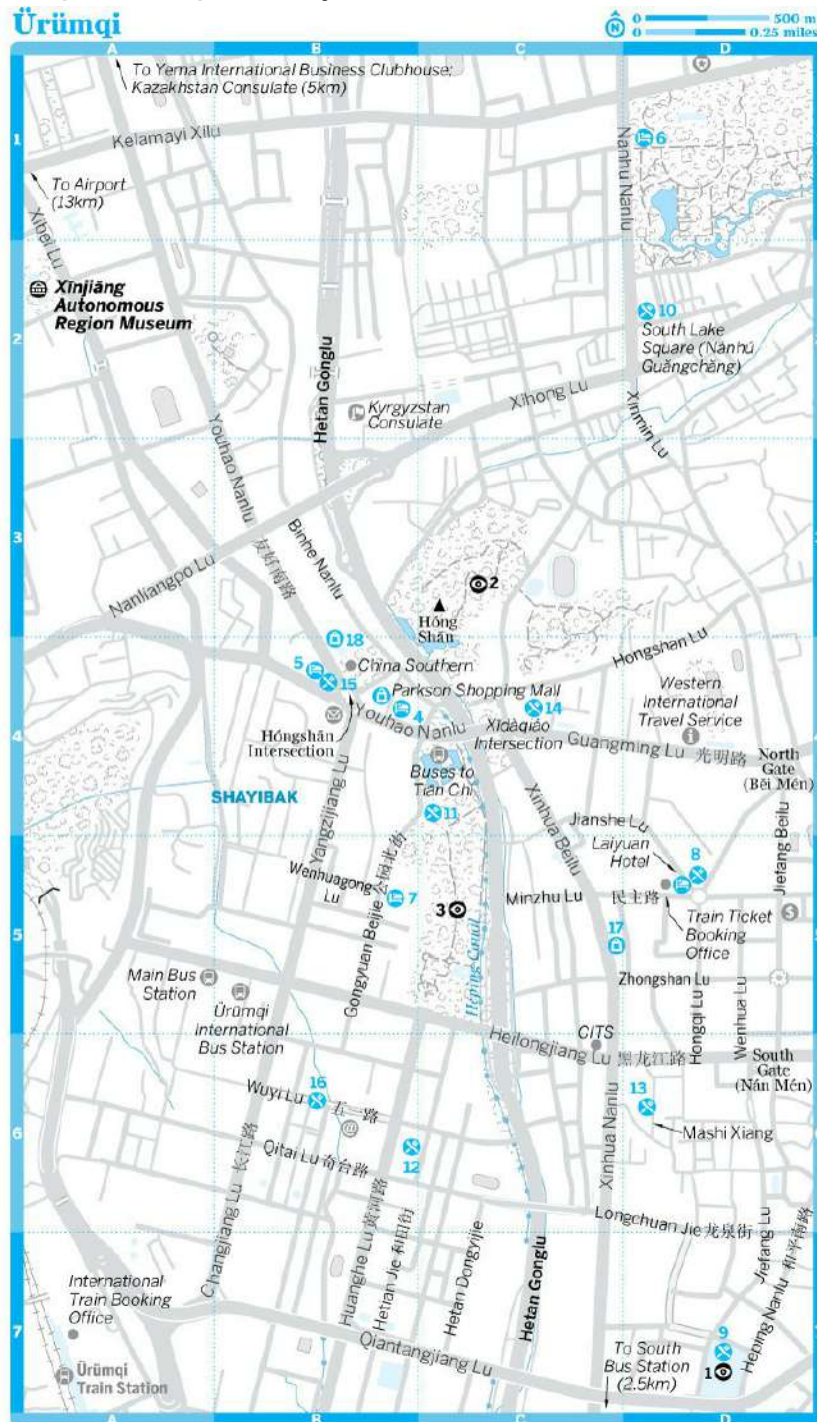
Urumqi's close to two million residents live in a city that sprawls 20km across a fertile plain in the shadow of the Tian Shan. High-rise apartments and tower blocks form a modern skyline that will soon dash any thoughts of spotting wandering camels and ancient caravanserais.

As a fast-growing Central Asian hub the city does business with traders from Beijing to Baku and plays host to an exotic mix of people, including burly Kazakh and Russian 'biznezmen' from the former Soviet Union. Cyrillic signs and fragrant corner kebab stands add a Central Asian feel, though in reality over 75% of Urumqi's inhabitants are Han Chinese.

Urumqi is not a historic city, but the provincial museum is excellent and there are some interesting Uighur districts. If you find yourself



hanging around for a Kazakh or Kyrgyz visa, consider a side trip to Tian Chi or Turpan, or possibly both.



Urumqi

 Top Sights

[Xinjiang Autonomous Region Museum](#) A2

## Sights

- 1 [Erdaoqiao Market](#) D7
- 2 [Hongshan Park](#) C3
- 3 [People's Park](#) C5

## Sleeping

- 4 [Maitian International Youth Hostel](#) B4
- 5 [Pea Fowl Mansions](#) B4
- 6 [Silver Birches International Youth Hostel](#) D1
- 7 [Super 8](#) B5

## Eating

- 8 [Aroma](#) D5
- 9 [Carrefour](#) D7
- 10 [Carrefour](#) D2
- 11 [Fubar](#) C4
- 12 [May Flower](#) B6
- 13 [Texas Cafe](#) D6
- 14 [The Vine Cafe](#) C4
- 15 [Tianfu Zhengcai](#) B4
- 16 [Wuyi Night Market](#) B6

## Shopping

- 17 [Foreign Languages Bookshop](#) C5
- 18 [Outdoor Gear](#) B4

## Sights & Activities



Xinjiang Autonomous Region Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Xinjiang Zizhiqu Bowuguan; 132 Xibei Lu; admission free; 🕒 10am-6pm Tue-Sun) Xinjiang's massive provincial museum is a must for Silk Road aficionados. The highlight is the locally famous 'Loulan Beauty', one of the 3800-year-old desert-mummified bodies of Indo-European ancestry that became symbols of Uighur independence in the 1990s. Other exhibits include some amazing silk and sculpture from Astana and an introduction to all of the province's minorities. A free English audiotour is available for a ¥100 deposit. From the Hongshan Intersection, take bus 7 or 912 for four stops and ask to get off at the

museum (*bowuguan*).

Erdaoqiao Market BAZAAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Erdaoqiao Shichang; Jiefang Nanlu) The Erdaoqiao Market and nearby International Bazaar (Guoji Dabazha) have undergone extensive 'redevelopment' in recent years and are now aimed more at Chinese tour groups than Uighur traders. Planted in the bazaar is a replica of the Kalon Minaret from Bukhara in Uzbekistan (though the 12th-century original doesn't have an elevator inside it). The surrounding streets are worth a stroll for their Uighur markets and snack stalls.

Hongshan Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hongshan Gongyuan; admission ¥10; ☀️ dawn-dusk) More of an amusement park, but with good city views, particularly from the 18th-century hilltop pagoda. The main southern entrance is to the north of the Xidaqiao Intersection.

People's Park PARK

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Renmin Gongyuan; admission ¥5; ☀️ 7.30am-dusk) A green oasis, with north and south entrances.

## **Sleeping**

Maitian International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Maitian Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 459 1488; [www.xjmaitian.com](http://www.xjmaitian.com); 726 Youhao Nanlu; 726 dm ¥45-60, r ¥150; @📶) On the east side of the Parkson Shopping Mall, centrally located Maitian has simple doubles and dorms, some with private bathrooms, and a pleasant common area/bar. The shared bathrooms are pretty grotty, but the rooms do get a regular cleaning. Book ahead in summer. Private rooms are discounted from November to mid-April.

Silver Birches International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Baihualin Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 488 1428; [www.yhaxinjiang.com](http://www.yhaxinjiang.com);

186 Nanhu Nanlu; 186 dm ¥40-60, tw ¥160; @📶) The English-speaking staff at this hostel are very friendly and can help organise trips and onward transport. It's a bit out of the centre but rooms are modern and it has a peaceful location beside a park. Take bus 104 from Renmin Guangchang or bus 537 from the railway station and get off at South Lake Sq (Nanhu Guangchang).

Pea Fowl Mansions HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kongque Dasha; 📍 452 2988; 489 Youhao Nanlu; 489 tw from ¥260; 🌳) If you can overlook the peeling paint, loose wallpaper and scruffy hallways, the irresistibly useful location makes this a decent choice. Discounts of 40% are usually available. It's right by Hongshan Intersection, the drop-off point for airport buses.

Yema International Business Clubhouse HOTEL \$\$\$

(Yema Guoji Shangwu Huiguan; 📍 768 8888; 158 Kunming Lu; 158 d incl breakfast ¥318-698; 🌳@📶) This elegant and surprisingly stylish modern hotel has an art gallery, wine bar and restaurant, mixing traditional Chinese design with urban chic. It even has its own zoo out the back with rare animals including Przewalski horses (wild horses indigenous to Central Asia). There is a range of rooms, from less expensive Japanese-style doubles to larger rooms in the main tower. The hotel is located north of the city, next to the Kazakhstan embassy.

Super 8 HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 8 Suba Jiudian; 📍 559 0666; [www.super8.com.cn](http://www.super8.com.cn); 140 Gongyuan Beijie; 140 tw ¥268-308; 🌳📶) Quietly located behind People's Park, this is the best of the budget chain hotels, representing good value with its ultra-neat rooms, modern bathrooms and free Chinese-style breakfast.

## Eating & Drinking



May Flower UIGHUR \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wuyuehua; cnr Wuyi Lu & Hetian Jie; meals ¥25-55; 🕒 11am-midnight) From the delicious Uighur cuisine to the pleasant faux-

courtyard setting, May Flower is a feast for the senses. Try the speciality, *polo* (rice pilaf; *zhuafan*), along with a few sticks of shish kebab and a glass of pomegranate juice, then sit back and enjoy the traditional live music (8pm).

Aroma MALTESE \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( A'nuoma Xicanting; 196 Jianshe Lu; meals ¥40-100; ☺ noon-midnight; 📶) A Maltese chef who somehow washed up in Urumqi runs this cosy and warm bistro. Pizzas, pastas and risottos are local favourites, or sink your teeth into a tasty steak. Most of the ingredients are either home-grown or homemade. It's opposite the Laiyuan Hotel.

The Vine Cafe CAFE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Deman Kafei; 📍 230 4831; 20th fl, Times Square Apartments, Xidaqiao; 20 coffee ¥15-25, meals ¥25-60; ☺ 1.30-10.30pm Tue-Sun; 📶📶) Run by friendly Arlette from Curaçao, this fine cafe brings you savoury West Indian cuisine in a coffeehouse atmosphere. Dishes are flavourful and the cheesecake is divine, but portions are more suited to a light snack than a full meal. The new location in an office block is uninspiring, so ring ahead in case it's moved again.

Tianfu Zhengcai SHANGHAINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 459 5913; 17 Lanxiuyuan Xijie; mains ¥15-40) A cosy and friendly neighbourhood place just northwest of the Hongshan Intersection, featuring tasty eastern Chinese dishes. Try the Shanghai-style braised meatballs (*hongshao shizi tou*; ) or tiger skin peppers with braised eggplant (*hupi lazi shaoqiezi*; . It's at the end of a side alley beside the Bingtuan Hotel.

Fubar PUB \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Fuba; 40 Gongyuan Beijie; beer ¥25, mains ¥35-65; ☺ 11am-2am; 📶📶) Fubar is run by an Irish expat who is happy to pull a pint for bedraggled Silk Road travellers. The menu consists of classic pub grub, with tasty pizzas, burgers and bottles of imported beer (¥35 to ¥50). Young expat teachers and volunteers congregate here, making this a good place to get the skinny on activities around Urumqi. It's on

a street of bars and clubs if you want to make a big night of it.

Texas Cafe TEX-MEX \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dekesasi Xicanting; [www.texascafe.weebly.com](http://www.texascafe.weebly.com); 55 Mashi Xiang; meals ¥35-70; ☹️ 1-11pm, closed Tue; 📞) This Lone Star–inspired place serves great Tex-Mex treats including nachos, fajitas, burritos and steaks. It’s hidden down an alley of vine trellises so be persistent. The owner is a native Texan, so you know it’s authentic.

Wuyi Night Market SNACKS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Wuyi Yeshi; Wuyi Lu; ☹️ 8-11pm) This animated night market is worth a visit for its shish kebabs and handmade noodles. Bus 51 from Hongshan Intersection to south bus station stops at its entrance on Changjiang Lu.

Carrefour SUPERMARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jialefu) The branches of this French supermarket chain, notably in Erdaoqiao Market and near Silver Birches International Youth Hostel, are good for produce and both have excellent value cafeterias.

## Shopping

Foreign Languages Bookshop BOOKS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Waiwen Shudian; Xinhua Beilu; ☹️ 10.30am-8pm) Just south of Minzhu Lu.

Outdoor Gear OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shanze Huwai Yongpin; 70 Youhao Nanlu) Sells tents, sleeping bags, stoves and gas canisters. Also rents sleeping bags and tents.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Jiefang Beilu & Dongfeng Lu; ☹️ 10am-6.30pm Mon-Fri, 11am-3.30pm Sat & Sun) Can handle most transactions and has an ATM (and at other branches).

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; 📞 282 1428; [www.xinjiangtour.com](http://www.xinjiangtour.com); 33 Renmin Lu; ☹️

10am-7.30pm Mon-Fri) This office runs standard tours around the province and can supply a driver and English-speaking guide.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Hongshan Intersection; ☎ 10am-10pm)

**Green Power Internet Cafe** ( Luse Dongli Wangba; 190 Wuyi Lu; per hr ¥4; ☎ 24hr)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 281 0452, ext 3456; Kelamayi Donglu; ☎ 10am-1.30pm & 4-6pm Mon-Fri) Not much hassle extending visas here.

**Western International Travel Service** ( Daxibu Guoji Luxingshe; ☎ 885 0256; Bogeda Binguan, 253 Guangming Lu) This agency has the best rates around for trips to Kanas Lake.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

International flights include Almaty (Kazakhstan), Bishkek and Osh (Kyrgyzstan), Baku (Azerbaijan), Tbilisi (Georgia), Istanbul (Turkey), Islamabad (Pakistan), Moscow (Russia), Dushanbe (Tajikistan), Tashkent (Uzbekistan) and Tehran (Iran). Some of these are seasonal and many are suspended without warning.

You can get to Urumqi from almost anywhere in China. Destinations within Xinjiang include Altay (Aletai), Hotan (Hetian), Kashgar (Kashi), Kuqa (Kuche), Tacheng and Yining. **China Southern** ( Nanfang Hangkong Shoupiao chu; ☎ 95539; 576 Youhao Nanlu) has the most flights to and around Xinjiang, with a central booking office in the Southern Airlines Pearl International Hotel.

### Bus

Two long-distance bus stations in Urumqi serve northern and southern destinations. The **main bus station** ( nianzigou changtu qichezhan; Heilongjiang Lu) has sleeper buses to the following:

**Bu'erjin** ¥150 to ¥160, 13 hours, two daily (11.15am and 8.10pm)

**Hami** ¥119 to ¥139, one daily (8.30pm)

**Yining** ¥160 to ¥170, 11 to 14 hours, almost hourly (9am to 9pm)

Bus 2 runs from the train station to Hongshan, passing Heilongjiang Lu on the way.

The **south bus station** (nanjiao keyunzhan) has frequent departures

to the following:

**Hotan** ¥370 to ¥390, 20 hours, crossing the Taklamakan Desert.

**Kashgar** ¥253 to ¥264, 24 hours

**Kuqa** ¥140 (¥230 to ¥280 sleeper), 10 to 14 hours

**Turpan** ¥36 to ¥45, 2½ hours, every 20 minutes

There is also a once-daily bus that travels to Cherchen (¥280 to ¥300, 16 hours) on the southern Silk Road, departing at 7pm. A seat in a private car to Turpan costs ¥85 and takes around two hours.

BRT bus 2 runs between Xidaqiao and the south bus station, bus 51 or 7 will get you there from Hongshan Intersection, and bus 104 will get you here from the South Lake Square.

Train

The **train booking office** (huoche shoupiaochu; 225 Jianshe Lu, next to Laiyuan Hotel; commission ¥5; 🕒 8.30am-10pm) in the city centre has much shorter queues than the main southern train station.

Destinations (hard/soft sleeper):

**Beijing** (T70) ¥652/1006, 42 hours (8.03pm)

**Chengdu** (K454) ¥552/854, 49 hours (2.05pm)

**Dunhuang** (K728) ¥240/374, 15 hours (7.51pm)

**Hami** (K9782) ¥149/224, 7 ¼ hours (11.56pm)

**Kashgar** (K9786) ¥345/529, 26 hours (9.50am)

**Kuqa** (5806) ¥126/200, 16 hours (10.10pm)

**Lanzhou** (T296) ¥390/600, 21 hours (2.54pm); one of many options.

**Shanghai** (T54) ¥699/1079, 44 hours (5.20pm)

**Xi'an** (1044) ¥287/494, 34 hours (11.46pm)

**Yining** (5815) ¥151/234, 11 hours (9.10pm)

**Yining** (K9789) ¥157/245, 10½ hours (10.54pm)

### **i** Getting Around

The airport is 16km northwest of the centre; a taxi costs about ¥40. An airport bus (¥10) runs straight south through town via Hongshan Intersection to the train station, departing when full. In the city centre, an airport shuttle (¥10, free for China Southern passengers) leaves from the Southern Airlines Pearl International Hotel on the hour from 6am to 10pm. You'll need to arrive 10 minutes early to get a seat.



The fastest and most useful buses are the BRT (Bus Rapid Transit) expresses, which dodge traffic by having their very own bus lanes. BRT 1 runs from the railway station to Hongshan Intersection and then north up Beijing Nanlu. BRT 3 runs from the south bus station up Jiefang Lu to Hongshan Intersection and then similarly north. Fares are a flat ¥1. See [www.chinabrt.org](http://www.chinabrt.org) for a route map.

Other useful buses (¥1) include bus 7, which runs up Xinhua Lu from the southern bus station through the Xidaqiao and Hongshan Intersections, and bus 52 from the train station to Hongshan Intersection.

## **BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO KAZAKHSTAN**

If you have a Kazakhstan visa, you can go to Almaty (upper/lower bunk ¥440/460, 24 hours) in Kazakhstan by the daily 7pm bus departing from Urumqi international bus station (☎ 587 8637; Wulumuqi guoji yunshu qichezhan), behind the main bus station. Expect delays of several hours at the Korgas customs posts. A longer but more pleasant trip is to break the journey in Yining.

Trains currently depart Urumqi twice weekly for Almaty, Kazakhstan (K9795, via Alashankou) on Monday and Saturday at midnight. The journey takes a slow 32 hours, six of which are spent at Chinese and Kazakh customs. Tickets cost ¥919 to ¥948 and can only be purchased in the lobby of the Ya'ou Jiudian (next to the train station), at the booking office ( wang alamutu huochepiao shoupiaochu; ☎ 10am-1pm & 3.30-6pm Sat, Mon, Wed & Thu). There is also a Monday service (9797) to the Kazakh capital of Astana. Another option is to take local train 5802 to Alashankou (12 hours, hard/soft sleeper ¥123/187), departing Urumqi at 10.05pm, and arrange your own onward transport at the border.

At the time of research you could get a 30-day tourist visa at the Kazakhstan consulate in Urumqi ([Click here](#)). Visas take five days to be issued, cost ¥140 (paid into the local China Construction Bank) and you need one passport photo and copy of your passport and China visa. Visas generally specify your entry date into Kazakhstan. To get to the consulate take bus No 52 or BRT 1 from Hongshan Intersection to the Jingguan Xueyuan () stop.

## **Tian Chi**

Two thousand metres up in the Tian Shan range is Tian Chi (Heaven

Lake; admission ¥170), a small, long, steely-blue lake nestled below the view-grabbing 5445m Peak of God (Bogeda Feng). Scattered across the Swiss-style, spruce-covered slopes are Kazakh yurts and lots of sheep. It was a paradise described in Vikram Seth's wonderful travelogue *From Heaven Lake*, but it's seriously overhyped now; hundreds of day-tripping local tourists almost drown out the strains of 'We Are the World' that are piped from plastic tree trunks. There is still some beautiful backcountry here but you need to make some serious effort these days to have a meaningful experience.

To escape the hordes, horse treks offer stunning views of the Tian Shan range. Horse guides will find you once you arrive at the lake or arrange a trek at the yurt camps. From the main viewpoint signed hiking paths lead up into the mountains, including 9.3km to Mawei Shan (Horse Tail Mountain), which is also reached by road. A circuit leads around the lake in about four hours but the strenuous western side has some serious ups and downs. There are temples to explore on both the east and west shores. Regardless of the temperature in Urumqi, take warm clothes and rain gear, as the weather can be unpredictable.

In late May, Kazakhs set up yurts around the lake for tourists (¥100 per person with three meals); Rashit (☎ 138 9964 1550; [www.rashityurt.com](http://www.rashityurt.com)) is the most popular host for backpackers. Alternatively, you can camp here. It's best to bring food as there is not much in the area. The yurt owners sometimes require ID, so make sure to bring your passport.

Tourist buses to the Tian Chi car park leave Urumqi around 9am from the north gate of People's Park, giving you around three hours at the lake. Most stop at major hotels to pick up passengers before leaving town. In the low season they may not run at all. The return fare is ¥40 and the trip takes about 2½ hours one way. From the ticket office everyone boards a bus to a parking lot just before the lake.

## Turpan

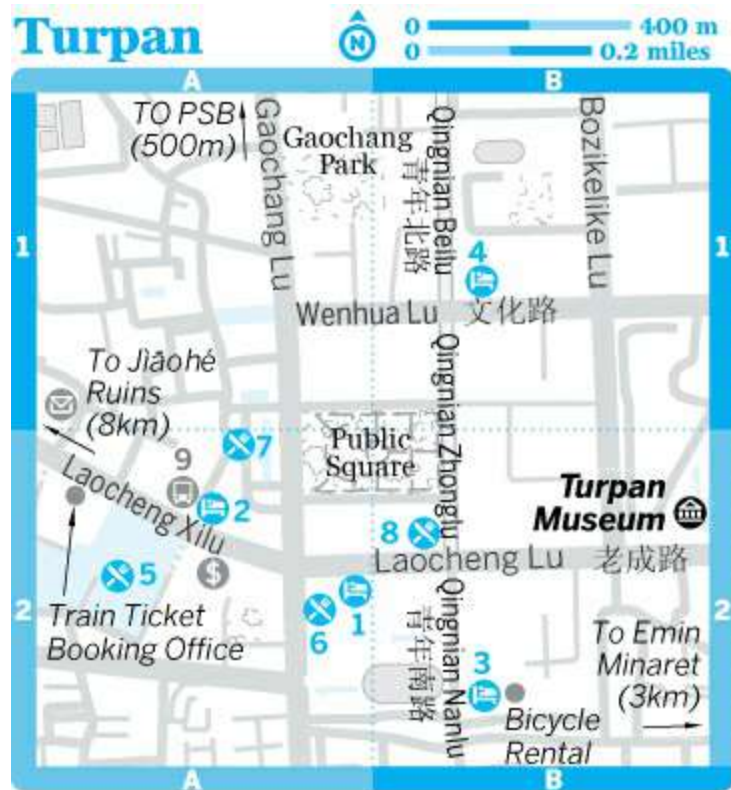
☎ 0995 / POP 57,900

Turpan (Tulufan) is China's Death Valley. At 154m below sea level, it's the second-lowest depression in the world and the hottest spot in

China. In July and August temperatures soar above 40°C, forcing the local population and visiting tourists into a state of semi-torpor.

Despite the heat, the ground water and fertile soil of the Turpan depression has made this a veritable oasis in the desert, evidenced by the nearby centuries-old remains of ancient cities, imperial garrisons and Buddhist caves.

The town of Turpan itself is a fairly recent creation but it has an extremely mellow vibe. Recovering from a day's sightseeing over a cold Xinjiang beer under the grape vines on a warm summer evening is one of the joys of travelling through the province.



Turpan

📍 Top Sights

[Turpan Museum](#) B2

🛏 Sleeping

1 [Tianhe Binguan](#) A2

2 [Transportation Hotel](#) A2

3 [Tulufan Binguan](#) B2

4 [Xizhou Dajjudian](#) B1

## Eating

5 [Bazaar](#) A2

6 [Hanzada Restaurant](#) A2

[John's Information Cafe](#) (see 3)

7 [Night Market](#) A2

8 Restaurants B2

## Transport

9 [Long-Distance Bus Station](#) A2

## Sights

Emin Minaret MINARET

(Emin Ta; admission ¥30; 🌅 dawn-dusk) Emin Hoja, a Turpan general, founded this splendid Afghan-style structure in 1777. Also known as Sugong Ta after Emin's son Suleiman, its bowling pin shape is decorated with a dozen brick motifs, including flowers and waves. You can't climb the minaret itself so many travellers are satisfied with snapping a photograph from the entrance without paying the admission fee.

Biking or strolling the 3km to get there is half the fun, the dusty, tree-lined Uighur streets an evocative – and fascinating – glimpse into old Turpan. If the heat is too much, hop on bus 6 eastbound from the corner of Gaochang Lu and Laocheng Lu and walk the last 500m.

 Turpan Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#)

(Tulufan Bowuguan; Laocheng Lu; 🕒 10.30am-6.30pm Tue-Sun) Xinjiang's second-largest museum houses a rich collection of relics recovered from archaeological sites across the Turpan Basin, and there are also dinosaur fossils and a couple of local mummies. Pop in here before signing up for a tour; the photos of nearby sites might help you decide which ones to visit.

## Sleeping

Tulufan Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

(📞 856 8888; tlfbg@126.com; 2 Qingnian Nanlu; 2 dm ¥50, d incl

breakfast ¥160-200; 🌐📍) The white-tile exterior of the old-school Turpan Hotel is uninspiring, but things improve when you enter the Arabian Nights–style lobby. The subterranean triple-bed dorms are musty but cool and come with a shower. The pricier double rooms are cleaner and newer than the old-fashioned cheapies. Bike hire and internet access are bonuses, though the swimming pool is drier than the Taklamakan Desert.

Tianhe Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

(; 📍 862 6999; 969 Laocheng Lu; d ¥188; 🌐📍) The spacious, modern and clean rooms here come with a computer, making them easily the best value in town, though you might have to gently persuade them to take foreigners. Discounts of 20% are standard.

Transportation Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Jiaotong Binguan; 📍 625 8688; 230 Laocheng Xilu; 230 tw ¥480; 🌐) Small but comfortable, modern rooms make this a super-convenient option next to the bus station. Rates come with breakfast. Discounts of 60% are standard.

Xizhou Dajjudian HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( 📍 855 4000; 8 Qingnian Beilu; 8 tw incl breakfast ¥460; 🌐📍) A clean and friendly option, with an ugly pink and white exterior. Some rooms have internet-enabled computers. Discounts of 20%.

## Eating

There are several Uighur food stalls hidden in the bazaar [Offline map](#) opposite the bus station. The string of restaurants that set up tables under the vine trellises on Qingnian Lu are a fine place to savour a cold drink and bowl of *laghman* (pulled noodles; ¥15).

Night Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( yeshi; Gaochang Lu; dishes from ¥10; 🕒 7pm-midnight) Come dusk dozens of stalls set up shop by the fountains to the west of the main central square. Grab a cold beer and choose from fried fish, *shaguo* (casseroles), goat's feet soup and cumin-scented kebabs.

## Hanzada Restaurant UIGHUR \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Hanzada Haohua Canting; Gaochang Lu; mains ¥15-40) Popular with locals for its ornate Central Asian decor (think painted alabaster and chintzy chandeliers) and diner-style booths. The picture menu helps sort out the noodles from the *polo* and *dapanji* (Hui-style spicy chicken, potatoes and peppers), all of which are excellent.

## John's Information Cafe INTERNATIONAL \$

[Offline map](#)

(☎ 150 2626 8966; Qingnian Nanlu; dishes from ¥12; ☎ 7am-10pm, May-Oct; @📍) This backpacker refuge has a quiet location in the backyard of the Tulufan Binguan. Western and Chinese dishes are offered and the ice-cream sundae is a treat in Turpan's blistering heat. There is little in the way of traveller information.

### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Laocheng Lu; ☎ 9.30am-12.30pm & 4.30-7.30pm) Changes cash and travellers cheques.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Laocheng Lu; ☎ 10am-8pm) West of the Bank of China.

**Internet Cafe** ( wangba; 2 Qingnian Nanlu; per hr ¥10) The lobby of the Tulufan Binguan is one of the only places in town to allow internet access to foreigners.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Gaochang Lu) North of the city centre; will likely refer you to the capital.

### Getting There & Away

The nearest train station is at Daheyan (), 54km north of Turpan. You can buy tickets in Turpan at the **train booking office** ( huoche shoupiao chu; Laocheng Xilu; commission ¥5; ☎ 9am-1pm, 3.30-8pm), located inside a China Mobile office. The fastest train to Kashgar (¥320/490, 23 hours) is the K9786, departing at midnight.

From the **long-distance bus station**[Offline map](#) ( changtu qichezhan; Laocheng Lu), minibuses to Daheyan (¥11, one hour) run approximately every 30 minutes between 8.30am and 7.30pm. If you miss the last bus, shared taxis run to Daheyan (per person ¥20) from a lot behind the bus station, near the night market.

Buses to Urumqi (¥45, 2½ hours) run every 20 minutes between 8am and 8pm, or take a shared taxi from near the night market (¥80 per seat). There is one daily sleeper bus at 3pm to Kashgar (¥292 to ¥320, 22 hours). A bus to Hami (¥89, seven hours) departs at 10.30am. For Dunhuang (¥160, 12 hours) in Gansu take the 8pm sleeper bus.

### **i** Getting Around

Public transport around Turpan is by taxi, minibus or bicycle. Bicycles (about ¥5 per hour), available from John's Information Cafe, are convenient for the town and the Emin Minaret.

## **Around Turpan**

Some of Turpan's surrounding sights are fascinating and others are a waste of time. Turpan's long-distance bus station has buses going to a couple of the spots, but it won't save you much. The easiest way to see them is on a customised day tour – don't worry, local drivers *will* find you. Several travellers have recommended English-speaking Tahir (☎ 150 2626 1388; [tahirtour8@yahoo.com](mailto:tahirtour8@yahoo.com)). For four people, figure on paying ¥60 to ¥70 per person. You'll be gone for the day, so don't underestimate the desert heat. Essential survival gear includes a water bottle, sunscreen, sunglasses and a hat.

You can safely bypass the Astana Graves (Asitana Gumuqu; admission ¥20), since the most interesting finds of this imperial cemetery are in museums in Urumqi and Turpan. Some buses stop at Grape Valley (Putao Gou; admission ¥60) for lunch, but there are grapevines all around Turpan, none of which charge admission.

Other underwhelming add-ons include visits to a karez (kan'erjing; admission ¥40), a museum dedicated to the uniquely Central Asian-style system of underground aqueducts, and Aydingkul Lake (Aiding Hu; admission ¥10), the second-lowest lake in the world. Be forewarned that it's more of a muddy, salt-encrusted flat than a lake.

Near Bezeklik Caves and Tuyoq are the Flaming Mountains (Huoyan Shan; admission ¥40), the midday appearance of which is aptly compared to multicoloured tongues of fire. The Flaming Mountains were immortalised in the Chinese classic *Journey to the*

West, when Sun Wukong (the Monkey King) used his magic fan to extinguish the blaze. There's no need to pay the entry fee, as you can see the mountains anywhere on the roadside from Hami or Gaochang.

## **JIAOHE RUINS**

Also called Yarkhoto, Jiaohe (admission ¥40) was established by the Chinese as a garrison town during the Han dynasty. It's one of the world's largest (6500 residents lived here), oldest (1600 years old) and best-preserved ancient cities, impressive in its scale rather than detail. Get an overview of the site at the central governor's complex then continue along the main road past a large monastery to a 10m-tall pagoda surrounded by 100 smaller pagoda bases.

The ruins are 8km west of Turpan. Take bus No 101 (¥1) to its terminus at the Xincheng ( ) crossroads and then take a microbus (¥4) to the ruins (Jiaohe Gucheng). It's possible to cycle here from Turpan.

## **TUYOQ**

Set in a green valley fringed by the Flaming Mountains, the mud-constructed village Tuyuq (Tuyugou; admission ¥30) offers a glimpse of 'traditional' Uighur life and architecture (traditional as long as you overlook the entry fee and gate). Tuyuq has been a pilgrimage site for Muslims for centuries, and the devout claim that seven trips here equal one trip to Mecca. On the hillside above the village (near the road) is the *mazar*, or tomb (admission ¥20), said to hold the first Uighur to convert to Islam and still an object of pilgrimage. Don't leave town without trying some of the locally produced mulberry juice or dried berries (¥10), available near the tomb entrance.

Up the gorge is a series of Buddhist caves dating back to the 3rd century AD (thus the earliest discovered Buddhist caves in Xinjiang), though they were closed at the time of research.

Tuyuq is often looped into a tour with the Flaming Mountains and Bezeklik Caves.

## **GAOCHANG (KHOCHO) RUINS**

Originally settled in the 1st century BC, Gaochang (admission ¥40) rose to power in the 7th century during the Tang dynasty. Also known as Khocho, or sometimes Karakhoja, Gaochang became the Uighur



capital in AD 850 and was a major staging post on the Silk Road until it burnt in the 14th century. Texts in classical Uighur, Sanskrit, Chinese and Tibetan have all been unearthed here, as well as evidence of a Nestorian church and a significant Manichaean community – a dualistic Persian religion that borrowed figures from Christianity, Buddhism and Hinduism.

Though the earthen city walls, once 12m thick, are clearly visible, not much else is left standing other than a large Buddhist monastery in the southwest. To the north, adjacent to an adobe pagoda, is a two-storey structure (half underground), purportedly the ancient palace.

## **BEZEKLIK CAVES**

This cave complex (Bozikelike Qianfo Dong; admission ¥20) has a fine location and interesting history, though the caves are essentially empty. The site is famous for having many of its distinctive murals cut out of the rock face by German archaeologists in 1905. Bezeklik means ‘Place of Paintings’ in Uighur.

## **Hami (Kumul)**

 0902 / POP 365,000

Hami, with its famously sweet melons, was a much-anticipated stop on the Silk Road for ancient travellers. Marco Polo suggested one possible reason why: according to local custom men allowed passing caravanmen to spend the night with their wives. No such tradition exists today but Hami is still worth a stop; there are enough sights to keep you busy for a day and the town is a convenient halfway point between Turpan and Dunhuang.

A Bank of China ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Guangchang Beilu) is located just north of the main square (Shidai Guangchang).

### **Sights**

All four of the following sights are together, near the main bus station and 5km south of the train station; a taxi between the two is about ¥10.

Hami Kings Mausoleum TOMBS

( Hami Wangling; Huancheng Lu; admission ¥40; ☺ 9.30am-7.30pm)  
The main site in Hami is this peaceful complex of tombs containing the nine generations of Hami kings who ruled the region from 1697 to 1930. The green-tiled main tomb is of the seventh king Muhammed Bixir, with family members and government ministers housed in Mongolian-style buildings to the side.

#### Hami Museum MUSEUM

( Hami Bowuguan; Huancheng Lu; ☺ 9.30am-noon & 4-7.30pm; ☺ Tue-Sun) Across from the Hami Kings Mausoleum, this mildly interesting museum spotlights mummies and dinosaurs found in the region, including a cool fossilised nest of dinosaur eggs.

#### Kumul Muqam Heritage Centre MUSEUM

( Hami Mukamu Chuan-cheng Zhongxin; admission ¥15; ☺ 9am-1pm & 4-7pm) This eye-catching building focuses specifically on *muqam*, the classical form of Uighur music. Groups of four or more are usually treated to a short concert (¥25).

#### Mansion of the Hami Kings HISTORIC SITE

( Hami Huiwang Fu; admission ¥40; ☺ 9am-8pm) Opposite the Heritage Centre is a tacky reconstruction of an earlier palace destroyed in the Muslim uprising of the 1930s. It's not really worth the admission price.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Jiangnan Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 231 2112; Qianjin Xilu; d ¥120) The cheapest of the dozen or so decent hotels around the train station. The simple but clean rooms make it the best budget choice.

### Jiuchongtian Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 231 5656; 4 Tianshan Beilu; d ¥188-208; 🌟🌟) A definite step up, with clean and fresh rooms, some with computers. With your back to the train station, it's 50m straight ahead, on the right.

## Getting There & Away

Long-distance buses depart from the south bus station (nanjiao keyunzhan), located 200m east of the Hami Kings Mausoleum. Apart

from the buses below there are also shared taxis to Turpan (¥300) and Urumqi (¥400) and a dozen daily trains, as well as daily flights to Urumqi (¥1180).

**Dunhuang** ¥85, 9am

**Jiuquan** ¥130, 9am

**Turpan** ¥89, six hours, 10am

**Urumqi** ¥125 to ¥140, nine hours; 11am, 1pm and 8pm

Local bus No 3 runs from the train station to the south bus station and museum via the central bus station.

## Around Hami

### BARKOL LAKE

If the summer heat of Hami is unbearable, take a day trip out to the cooler climes of Barkol Lake (Balikun Hu), on the north side of the Tian Shan. Kazakh herders set up their yurts here in summer and offer horse riding for ¥10 per hour.

To reach the yurts, first take a bus from Hami's central bus station (; zhongxin chezhan; cnr Jianguo Beilu & Guangchang Beilu) to Balikun town (¥25, three hours, hourly between 8.30am and 5.30pm). From Balikun it's 16km to the yurts. A return taxi starts at ¥50.

Along the route from Hami, keep an eye out for the remains of ancient beacon towers slowly disintegrating by the roadside.

## Kuqa

☞ 0997 / POP 77,000

Part of an excellent triangular itinerary with Kashgar and Hotan, Kuqa (Kuche) is well worth a couple of days for its interesting bazaars and excursions to the surrounding desert ruins.

The once thriving city-state, then known as Qiuci, was a major centre of Buddhism and was famed in Tang-era China for its music and dancers. Here Kumarajiva (AD 344–413), the first great translator of Buddhist sutras from Sanskrit into Chinese, was born to an Indian father and Kuqean princess, before later being abducted to central

China to manage translations of the Buddhist canon. When the 7th-century monk Xuan Zang passed through nearby Subashi, he recorded that two enormous 30m-high Buddha statues flanked Kuqa's western gate, and that the nearby monasteries held over 5000 monks.

The bus station is east of town on Tianshan Lu, and the train station is a further 5km southeast.

## Sights

### Qiuci Palace MUSEUM

( Kuche Wangfu; Linjilu Jie; admission ¥55; ☎ 9am-8.30pm) Located in the old town, 3.5km west of the centre, is the newly restored (ie rebuilt) Qiuci Palace, the residence of the kings of Qiuci until the early 20th century. The museum has a good collection of Buddhist frescoes, some from the nearby Kumtura and Simsim caves, and there are human remains from the surrounding desert ruins. Behind the museum, the ancestral hall displays the history of the Qiuci kings and photos of the life of the last king, Dawud Mahsut, now an elderly local party official. Nearby is an impressive section of Qing-dynasty city wall.

Take bus 3 on Tianshan Lu and get off as the road curves into Linjilu Jie.

### Sunday Bazaar BAZAAR

Every Sunday a large bazaar ( Laocheng Baza) is held about 2.5km west of the modern town, next to a bridge over the Kuqa River on Renmin Lu. It doesn't quite rival Kashgar's, but you won't find any tour buses here. A small livestock market also takes place here on Fridays.

The charming nearby Rasta Mosque ( Resitan Qingzhen Si) draws a throng of worshippers at Friday lunchtime. North of here, through the old town, is the large but less animated Great Mosque ( Qingzhen Dasi; admission ¥15), built in 1931 on the site of a 16th-century original.

To get here from the new town, take buses 1 or 3 from Tianshan Lu.

### Maulana Ashiddin Mazar TOMB

( Molana Eshiding Maza) This timeless green-tiled mosque and tomb of a 13th-century Arabian missionary is surrounded by a sea of graves

and overflows with worshippers at Friday lunchtime prayers. It's a 10-minute walk from the Kuche Binguan, along mulberry-tree-lined Wenhua Lu.

Ten minutes' walk from the mazar, located just off the junction of Tianshan Xilu and Wenhua Lu, are the extremely faint ruins of Old Qiuci ( Qiuci Gucheng).

## **Sleeping & Eating**

Jiaotong Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Traffic Hotel; 📍 712 2682; 194 Tianshan Lu; 194 d with/without bathroom from ¥120/80; 🏠) Located next to the bus station, this place has a range of acceptable rooms, from decent budget doubles with common squat toilets and showers to spacious doubles with tiled floors (¥160). Hot water runs after 9pm.

Kuche Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 712 2901; 17 Jiefang Beilu; old/new block tw ¥180/280; 🏠) Kuqa's main hotel has fresh rooms with plush carpets in the new block and scruffier but acceptable rooms in the quiet old block. Rates include breakfast. It's located near the city centre. Catch a taxi here.



Uchar Darvaza Bazaar MARKET \$

( Wuqia Nonghuo Shichang) The best place for Uighur food is this food street at the junction of Tianshan Zhonglu and Youyi Lu. Kebabs, noodles and *samsas* (baked mutton pies) are all served hot and fresh, though our favourites are the chicken kebabs served with sombrero-sized local nan bread. Some stalls start to close at 9pm, others only set up from 10pm.

### **Information**

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 25 Tianshan Donglu; 🕒 9.30am-6.30pm Mon-Fri) East of the centre, with an ATM. Travellers cheques are not accepted.

**Xinxin Wangba** ( cnr Wenhua Lu & Youyi Lu; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24 hr)

### **Getting There & Away**

**AIR** The new airport 35km west of the city has daily flights to Urumqi

(¥1120). A taxi there costs ¥30.

**BUS** The bus station has a variety of sleepers heading east to Urumqi (¥207 to ¥262, 12 hours). For Kashgar (¥150, 16 hours) you have to wait for a sleeper from Urumqi to pass and hope that it has berths. There are hourly connections to Aksu (¥50, four hours), where you can connect to Kashgar. Two sleepers depart for Hotan (¥180 to ¥190, eight hours) at noon and 4pm.

**TRAIN** The train station is southeast of the centre at the end of the No 6 bus line. A taxi costs ¥10. The fast K9787 to Kashgar (hard/soft sleeper ¥183/276) leaves inconveniently at 2.20am. More convenient trains to Urumqi (hard seat/sleeper ¥116/200) include the 5808 at 6.43pm and the fast K9788 at 11.52pm (soft sleeper ¥326).

### **i** Getting Around

Taxi rides are a standard ¥5 per trip, with pedicabs, tractors and donkey carts around half this.

## Around Kuqa

### **KIZIL THOUSAND BUDDHA CAVES**

Seventy-five kilometres northwest of Kuqa are the Kizil Thousand Buddha Caves (Kezi'er Qianfo Dong; admission ¥55; ☺ daylight), an important site in the development of Serindian Buddhist art, with murals dating from as early as the 3rd century. Kizil is clearly influenced by Central Asian art and may in turn have inspired grottoes further east such as the Mogao Caves at Dunhuang.

Of the more than 230 caves here, only six are open to the public at any one time, and only a couple of these have any real murals. Several of the caves were stripped by German archaeologist Albert Von le Coq, while the others have been defaced by both Muslims and Red Guards. If you have spare time, consider the hike through the desert canyon to the spring Qianlei Quan ( ).

A return taxi from Kuqa will cost around ¥200 and takes 90 minutes each way. Add on stops in Subashi and the 13.5m-tall Han-dynasty watchtower ( fenghuotai; admission ¥15) at Kizilgah for just ¥240.

### **SUBASHI RUINS**

The best of Kuqa's surrounding ruins is Subashi (admission ¥25; ☺ daylight), a Buddhist complex that thrived from the 3rd to 13th centuries. Most people visit the west complex, with its large central *vihara* (monastery) and two large pagodas. For an adventure, hike across the Kuqa River to the dramatic but little-visited eastern complex (admission ¥25). A return taxi to Subashi, 23km northeast of Kuqa, costs about ¥60; you'll need to pay extra waiting time if you want to visit the eastern ruins.

## SOUTHWEST XINJIANG – KASHGARIA

The Uighurs' heartland is Kashgaria, the rough-but-mellifluous-sounding historical name for the western Tarim Basin. Consisting of a ring of oases lined with poplar trees, it was a major Silk Road hub and has bristled with activity for more than 2000 years, with the weekly bazaars remaining the centre of life here to this day.

### Kashgar

📞 0998 / POP 350,000

Locked away in the westernmost corner of China, physically closer to Tehran and Damascus than to Beijing, Kashgar (Kashi) has been the epicentre of regional trade and cultural exchange for more than two millennia.

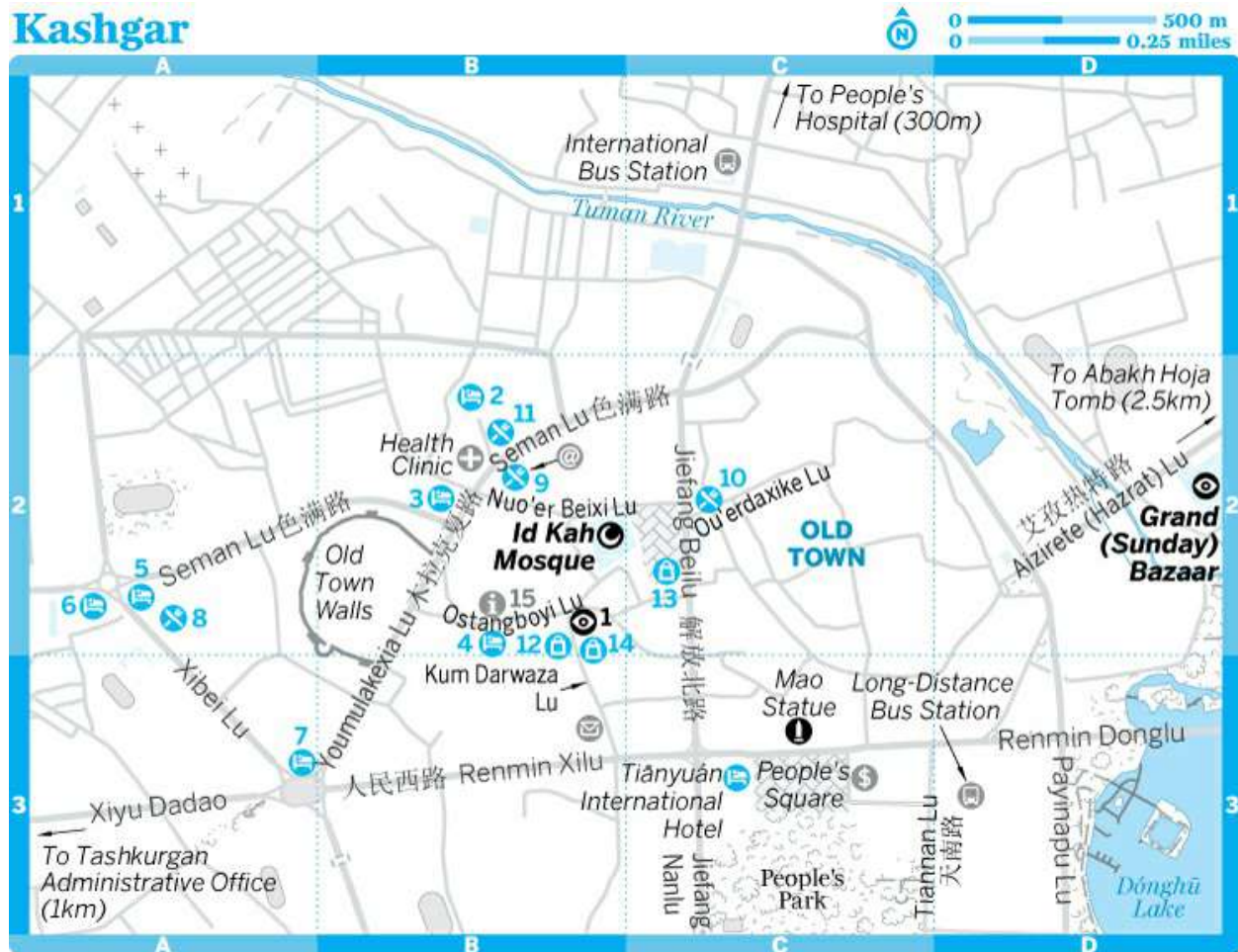
In recent years modernity has swept through Kashgar like a sandstorm. The roads, rail and planes that now connect the city to the rest of China have brought waves of Han migrant workers and huge swaths of the old city have been bulldozed in the name of economic 'progress'.

Yet, in the face of these changes, the spirit of Kashgar lives on. Uighur craftsmen and artisans still hammer and chisel away in side alleys, traders haggle over deals in the boisterous bazaars and donkey carts still trundle their way through the suburbs. And the Sunday livestock market is the real deal, no matter how many tour buses roll up.

So soak it in for a few days, eat a few kebabs, chat with the local carpet sellers, and prepare your trip along the southern Silk Road to

Hotan, over the Torugart or Irkeshtam Passes to Kyrgyzstan or south along the stunning Karakoram Hwy to Pakistan.

## Kashgar



### Kashgar

#### 📍 Top Sights

[Grand \(Sunday\) Bazaar](#) D2

[Id Kah Mosque](#) B2

#### 📍 Sights

1 [Ostangboyi Tea House](#) B2

#### 🛏 Sleeping

2 [Chini Bagh Hotel](#) B2

3 [Eden Hotel](#) B2

4 [Kashgar Old Town Youth Hostel](#) B2

5 [Sahar Hotel](#) A2

6 [Semän Binguän](#) A2

7 [Yambu Hotel](#) A3



## Eating

8 [Altun Orda](#) A2

[John's Cafe](#) (see 6)

9 [Karakorum Cafe](#) B2

10 [Night Market](#) C2

11 [Pakistan Cafe](#) B2

## Shopping

12 [Ahmed Carpet Shop](#) B2

13 [Ilhas Supermarket](#) C2

14 [Uighur Musical Instrument Factory](#) B2

## Information

15 [Kashgar Guide](#) B2

[Old Road Tours](#) (see 6)

[Uighur Tours](#) (see 2)

## Sights

Grand (Sunday) Bazaar BAZAAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dabazha; Yengi Bazaar; Aizirete Lu; 🕒 daily) Kashgar's main bazaar is open every day but really kicks it up a gear on Sundays. Step carefully through the jam-packed entrance and allow your five senses to guide you through the market; the pungent smell of cumin, the sight of scorpions in a jar, the sound of *muqam* music from tinny radios, the taste of hot *samsas* (baked mutton dumplings) and the feel of soft sheepskin caps are seductive, and overwhelming. A section on the northern side of the market contains everything of interest to foreign visitors, including the spice market, musical instruments, fur caps, kitschy souvenirs and carpets. A taxi to the market is ¥5.

Sunday Livestock Market BAZAAR

( Dongwu Shichang; Mal Bazaar; 🕒 8am-6pm Sun) No visit to Kashgar is complete without a trip to the Livestock Bazaar. Since it only occurs once a week you'll need to plan accordingly. The day begins with Uighur farmers and herders trekking into the city from nearby villages. By lunchtime just about every sellable sheep, camel, horse, cow and donkey within 50km has been squeezed through the

bazaar gates. Trading is swift and boisterous between the old traders; animals are carefully inspected and haggling is done with finger motions. Happy buyers then stuff the sheep in the back of a taxi or truck and lurch away. It's dusty, smelly, crowded and totally wonderful. Keep an ear out for the phrase '*Bosh-bosh!*' ('Coming through!') or you risk being ploughed over by a cartload of fat-tailed sheep.

In 2012 the market relocated to the northwestern suburbs. A taxi here costs ¥15; it's a good idea to pay it to wait for your return. Alternatively take bus No 8 to People's Hospital and then jump on a motorised pedicab (¥2). Tour buses usually arrive in the morning so consider an early afternoon visit. A few simple stalls offer hot *samsas* if you get peckish.

If you miss the Sunday Market, don't despair: there are plenty of other markets in Xinjiang to visit. Try the Sunday market in Hotan or Kuqa, the Monday market in Upal or the Tuesday market in Charbagh.

#### Old Town OLD TOWN

Sprawling on both sides of Jiefang Lu are alleys lined with Uighur workshops and adobe houses right out of an early-20th-century picture book. Houses range in age from 50 to 500 years old and the lanes twist haphazardly through neighbourhoods where Kashgaris have lived and worked for centuries. It's a great place for strolling, peeking through gates, chatting up the locals and admiring the craftsmen as they bang on tin and chase copper.

Sadly, the Chinese government has shown little affection for the old town and has spent the past two decades knocking it down, block by block. During our short stay we witnessed dozens of old homes bulldozed.

The shrinking pockets of old neighbourhoods that do remain tend to be hard to spot. Check out the streets southeast of the Night Market or the craft stalls on Kum Darwaza street, north of the post office. The nearby Ostangboyi Teahouse at the main crossroads is one of the last traditional teahouses in town.

Avoid the residential area to the north of Donghu Park by the ferris wheel, as it has been turned into a tourist trap complete with entry ticket.

At the eastern end of Seman Lu stands a 10m-high section of the

Old Town walls, which are at least 500 years old.

## Id Kah Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Ai Tiga'er Qingzhen Si; Id Kah Sq; admission ¥20) The yellow-tiled Id Kah Mosque, which dates from 1442, is the spiritual and physical heart of the city. Enormous, its courtyard and gardens can hold 20,000 people during the annual Qurban Baiyram (also known as Eid, or Id) celebrations, which fall in September or October for the next few years.

Non-Muslims may enter, but not during prayer time. Dress modestly, including a headscarf for women. Take off your shoes if entering carpeted areas and be discreet when taking photos.

The stalls outside the mosque are a good place to pick up a striped *khalat* (cloak) or traditional Uighur *doppi* (skullcap).

## Abakh Hoja Tomb TOMB

( Xiangfeimu; Abakh Hoja Maziri; admission ¥30; ☺ daylight) On the northeastern outskirts of town is the Abakh Hoja Tomb (1640), covered in splendidly mismatched glazed tiles and best known among Uighurs as the resting place of Abakh Hoja, famed 17th-century Sufi and political leader. Purportedly among others interred is Iparhan, his granddaughter. Known to the Chinese as Xiang Fei (Fragrant Concubine), she was either the beloved but homesick concubine of the Emperor Qianlong and thus a symbol of national unity (the Chinese version), or a Uighur resistance leader who was captured and taken to Beijing where she died broken-hearted (Uighur version). Don't miss the ornately carved pillars of the separate winter, summer and Friday mosques. Take bus 20 from People's Square heading east until the last stop, then walk 500m. A taxi is ¥10.

## Shipton's Arch (Tushuk Tagh) NATURAL ARCH

This natural rock arch (the Uighur name means 'mountain with a hole in it') is reputedly the tallest on earth. The first Westerner to describe it was the British mountaineer and last British consul-general in Kashgar, Eric Shipton, during his visit to the region in 1947.

Successive expeditions attempted to find it without success until a team from *National Geographic* rediscovered the arch in 2000. The arch, located 80km northwest of Kashgar, is a half-day excursion

involving an hour's drive towards the Irkeshtam Pass, followed by 20km on a dirt track (currently being paved) and then a 30-minute hike, at times scrambling through the narrowest part of the gorge over small ladders. Kashgar-based tour operators can arrange a day trip with guide for ¥800 to ¥1000 per car. There is talk of introducing a ¥30 entry fee. Bring sturdy shoes, a fleece, snacks and water.

### Mor Pagoda RUINS

( Mu'er Fota; admission ¥15; ☺ daylight) At the end of a 45km drive northeast of town are the ruins of Ha Noi, a Tang-dynasty town built in the 7th century and abandoned in the 12th century. Little remains apart from an enigmatic pyramid-like structure and the impressive four-tiered Mor Pagoda. A round trip taxi, including waiting time, costs ¥100 to ¥150.

### Tours

Uighur Tour, Old Road Tours, and Kashgar Guide organise four-day treks around Muztagh Ata, overnighiting in tents, yurts or villages, as well as overnight camel tours into the dunes fringing the Taklamakan Desert around Davakul Lake or Yarkand (see the Information section [Click here](#)). For a real challenge, consider biking the Karakoram Hwy.

### Sleeping

Accommodation can be tighter on the days preceding the Sunday Market.

Eden Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Haierbage Dafandian; 📞 266 4444; [www.xjeden.com](http://www.xjeden.com); 148 Seman Lu; d ¥198-218 🌐📍) The quiet rooms and excellent location (next to Chini Bagh) of this midrange hotel make it the best value in town. The staff speak English and there's an excellent attached Turkish restaurant. Rates include a good breakfast.

Chini Bagh Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qiniwake Binguan; 📞 298 2103; 144 Seman Lu; dm ¥70, tw ¥180-280; 🌐📍) The Chini Bagh, immortalised in William Dalrymple's

travelogue *In Xanadu*, is located on the grounds of the former British consulate (1901–1951). Its several buildings contain an eclectic collection of rooms, from three-bed dorms to a new five-star complex. The best standard rooms are in the main building, though renovations are planned for all rooms. The central location is convenient for the old town. Visit the Chinese restaurant behind the north block to see the old consulate building.

#### Seman Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 258 2129; 337 Seman Lu; tw without bathroom ¥60, tw ¥150-220; @) A labyrinthine complex with myriad rooms. The cheapest doubles are just about acceptable, but the common toilets and showers could do with a clean. More expensive (but garish) ensuite rooms are next to the former Russian consulate out the back. The staff are very friendly and helpful.

#### Kashgar Old Town Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kashi Laocheng Qingnian Lushe; 📍 282 3262; [www.pamirinn.com](http://www.pamirinn.com); 233 Ostangboyi Lu; 233 dm ¥35, r without bathroom ¥90; @📶) Nestled in the old city, this atmospheric place is set around a courtyard where overlanders hang out on *shyrdaks* (Kyrgyz-style felt carpets), swapping stories and travel info. The rooms are bare, the toilets simple and the beds are rock hard, but staff speak English and there's cheap laundry and free internet access.

#### Maitian Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Maitian Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 262 0595; [www.yhaks.com](http://www.yhaks.com); Renmin Donglu Nan 1 Xiang; dm ¥35-45, tw with bathroom ¥80; 📶) This hostel east of East Lake (Donghu) is fresh, piney and modern, and popular with Chinese backpackers, but has an uninspiring location in the modern part of town. Bus 28 from Id Kah Mosque and the train station takes you there; get off on the east side of the bridge, then head south for 300m down the alley named Renmin Donglu Nan 1 Xiang.

#### Yambu Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinzuo Dafandian; 📍 258 8888; 198 Renmin Xilu; d ¥588; 🌐@) A good bet for affordable, modern and spacious midrange comfort (rates

are generally discounted by 60%) but check a couple of rooms as standards vary. As ever, the back rooms are quietest.

Sahar Hotel BUDGET HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Seha'er Binguan; 📍 258 1122; 348 Seman Lu; d ¥70-80) A friendly but dowdy hotel whose customers are mostly Pakistani, Tajik and Uighur traders. The hotel offers some of the cheapest ensuite rooms available to foreigners, though they are pretty simple. Rooms on the 3rd floor are best.

## Eating

Kashgar is one of the best places in Xinjiang to try the full gamut of Uighur food.



Night Market MARKET \$

( yeshi; Ou'erdaxike Lu; meals from ¥10; 🕒 8pm-midnight Xinjiang time) The night market across Jiefang Beilu from the Id Kah Mosque is a great place to sample local fare. Among the goodies are fried fish, chickpeas, kebabs, fried dumplings known as *hoshan* and bubbling vats of goat's head soup. Top off a meal with a glass of tart pomegranate juice or freshly churned vanilla- scented ice cream.

Karakorum Cafe CAFE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(87 Seman Lu; mains ¥20-48; 🕒 9am-11.30pm; 📶📺) Smart-looking but slightly sterile cafe serving Western-style breakfasts, sandwiches, desserts and coffee (¥10–28) in an oasis of delicious quiet. The bathroom should win an award as the cleanest in Xinjiang.

Altun Orda UIGHUR \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jin'ao'erda Shicai; Xibei Lu; dishes from ¥25) Perfect for a celebration or last Kashgar meal, Altun Orda is a sumptuously decorated Uighur restaurant famous for its roasted mutton (¥78), *gosh nan* (meat pie) and *mirizlig samsa* (pastry with raisins and almonds). There are branches across Xinjiang.

Pakistan Cafe PAKISTANI \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Seman Lu; mains ¥10-14) This simple, family-run place outside the Chini Bagh Hotel is a fine place to chat with the fascinating mix of visiting Afghans, Tajiks and Pakistanis over a cup of milky masala chai. The menu is limited to whatever happens to be on the stove at the time but generally includes *keema* (minced lamb), *chapatis* (unleavened bread), mutton curry and *dal* (lentil curry). The nearby Shwarma Restaurant offers similar fare a couple of doors down.

John's Cafe INTERNATIONAL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yuehan Zhongxi Canting; [www.johncafe.net](http://www.johncafe.net); 337 Seman Lu; mains from ¥20; ☺ May-Oct; 📍) In the courtyard of Seman Binguan, this is a popular backpacker hang-out, offering both Western (pricey) and Chinese (cheaper) dishes. Management also arrange local tours.

## UIGHUR FOOD

Uighur cuisine includes all the trusty Central Asian standbys, such as kebabs, *polo* (pilau rice) and *chuchura* (dumplings), but has benefited from Chinese influence to make it the most enjoyable region of Central Asia in which to eat.

Uighurs boast endless varieties of *laghman* (pulled noodles; *lamian* in Chinese), though the usual topping is a combination of mutton, peppers, tomatoes, eggplant and garlic shoots. *Suoman* are torn noodle squares fried with tomatoes, peppers, garlic and meat, with *suoman goshsiz* the vegetarian variety. *Suoman* can be quite spicy, so ask for *lazasiz* (without peppers) if you prefer a milder version.

Kebabs are another staple and are of a much better standard than the ropey *shashlyk* of the Central Asian republics. *Jiger* (liver) kebabs are the low-fat variety. *Tonor* kebabs are larger and baked in an oven *tonor* (tandoori) style. True kebab connoisseurs insist on *kovurgah kebab* or *bel kebab*, made from rib and waist meat respectively. Most are flavoured with *zir* (cumin).

*Nan* (breads) are a favourite staple and irresistible when straight out of the oven and sprinkled with poppy seeds, sesame seeds or fennel. They make a great plate for a round of kebabs, especially the Hotanese variety, which are more than 2ft wide. Most Uighur restaurants serve small cartons of delicious *ketik* (yoghurt) to accompany your meal.

Other snacks include *serik ash* (yellow, meatless noodles), *nokot* (chickpeas), *pintang* (meat and vegetable soup) and *gang pan* (rice with vegetables and meat). Most travellers understandably steer clear of *opke*, a broth of bobbing goat's heads and coiled, stuffed intestines.

*Samsas* (baked mutton dumplings) are available everywhere, but the meat-to-fat ratio varies wildly. Hotan and Kashgar offer huge meat pies called *daman* or *gosh girde*.

For dessert try *morozhenoe* (vanilla ice cream churned in iced wooden barrels), *kharsen meghriz* (fried dough balls filled with sugar, raisins and walnuts, also known as *chiker koimak*) or *dogh* (sometimes known as *doghap*), a delicious mix of shaved ice, syrup, yoghurt and iced water. As with all ice-based food, try the latter at your own risk. *Tangzaza* are triangles of glutinous rice wrapped in bamboo leaves covered in syrup. Anyone else hungry yet?

Anyone with a sweet tooth should look for carts selling *matang* (walnut fruit loaf), and *sokmak*, a delicious paste of walnuts, raisins, almonds and sugar, sold by the 500g jar (¥20–30) at honey and nut stalls. It's fine to ask for a free sample.

Xinjiang is justly famous for its fruit, whether it be *uruk* (apricots), *uzum* (grapes), *tawuz* (watermelon), *khoghun* (sweet melon) or *yimish* (raisins). The best grapes come from Turpan; the sweetest melons from Hami. Markets groan with the stuff from July to September.

Meals are washed down with *kok chai* (green tea), often laced with nutmeg or rose petals. The one local beer worth going out of your way for is bottled Xinjiang Black Beer, a dark lager-style brew.

## Shopping

For serious shopping go to the Old Town, ready to bargain. Kum Darwaza Lu is the best starting point, at least until threatened redevelopment changes the place. The Grand Bazaar has a decent selection but prices tend to be higher. Hats, teapot sets, copper and brass ware, kebab skewers and Uighur knives are among the best souvenirs.

### Grand (Sunday) Bazaar MARKET

( Dabazha; Aizirete Lu; ☺ daily) Most carpet dealers display their wares at the Sunday Market pavilion. The rugs here are made of everything from silk to synthetics and finding traditional designs can be difficult. The brightly coloured felt Kyrgyz-style *shyrdaks* are a good buy; don't pay more than ¥450 for a large one. Be careful when you shop.

### Ahmed Carpet Shop CARPETS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(📍 283 1557; 49 Kum Darwaza Lu) Ahmed and his son run this Old Town carpet shop, offering a good selection of antique and new carpets, *gilims* and *shyrdaks* from across Central Asia.

### Uighur Musical Instrument Factory MUSICAL INSTRUMENTS



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(272 Kum Darwaza Lu) You'll find long-necked stringed instruments here running the gamut from souvenirs to collectors' items. If any traditional performances are on, owner Mohammed will know where to find them. There are several places with the same name on the same street.

Ilhas Supermarket SUPERMARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yihelasi Chaoshi; ☹️ 10am-midnight; Jiefang Beilu) An excellent choice of Turkish and Central Asian goods underneath the Id Kah plaza.

### Information

Travellers have lost money or passports to pickpockets at the Sunday Market, so keep yours tucked away.

Kashgar is the most conservative corner of Xinjiang and the one place where you will see women's faces obscured by headscarves or veils. Some foreign women walking the streets alone have been sexually harassed. It is wise for women travellers to dress as would be appropriate in any Muslim country, covering arms and legs.

#### Internet Access

**Effendi Internet Cafe** ( Afanti Wangba; 87 Seman Lu; per hr ¥3; ☹️ 24hr) Above the Karakorum Cafe.

#### Laundry

**Angel Dry Cleaners** ( Tianshi Ganxidian; Seman Lu; ☹️ 10am-11.30pm) Laundry service just north of the Chini Bagh Hotel.

#### Medical Services

**Health Clinic** ( zhensuo; Seman Lu) The Chini Bagh Hotel can put you in touch with this English-speaking clinic.

**People's Hospital** ( Renmin Yiyuan; Jiefang Beilu) North of the river.

#### Money

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; People's Sq; ☹️ 9.30am-1.30pm & 4-7pm) Changes travellers cheques and cash and has a 24-hour ATM. You can also sell yuan back into US dollars at the foreign-exchange desk if you have exchange receipts; this is a good idea if you are headed to Tashkurgan, where the bank hours are erratic.

#### Post

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; 40 Renmin Xilu; ☹️ 9.30am-8pm)

The 2nd floor handles all foreign letters and packages.

Public Security Bureau

(PSB; Gong'anju; 111 Youmulakexia Lu; ☎ 9.30am-1.30pm & 4-8pm)  
Visa extensions take three to four days, dependent on the political climate.

Travel Agencies

**Ablimit 'Elvis' Ghopar** (📞 138 9913 6195; elvis ablimit@yahoo.com)  
Local English-speaking Uighur carpet dealer Elvis organises city-wide cultural trips, with a special emphasis on Uighur classical music and the Kashgar carpet market. Find him at the Saqiya Teahouse near Id Gah Mosque.

**Kashgar Guide** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📞 295 1029; [www.kashgarguide.com](http://www.kashgarguide.com), [www.xinjiangtravel.com](http://www.xinjiangtravel.com); 407 Ostangboyi Lu)  
Run by Imam Husan, opposite the Kashgar Old Town Youth Hostel. It organises transport and excursions, and can link you up with other budget-minded travellers to help share costs.

**Old Road Tours** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📞 220 4012, 138 9913 2103; [www.oldroadtours.com](http://www.oldroadtours.com); 337 Seman Lu) One of the best, run by Abdul Wahab and operating out of the Seman Binguan.

**Uighur Tours** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📞 298 1073; [www.kashgartours.com](http://www.kashgartours.com); 144 Seman Lu) Ali Tash runs this recommended agency based in the Chini Bagh Hotel.

### **Getting There & Away**

It's imperative when you buy tickets in Kashgar to verify 'which time' the ticket is for ([Click here](#)). It should be Beijing time, but this isn't always the case.

**AIR** A dozen daily flights depart for Urumqi (¥1800). A handy **air ticket agent** (Xinjiang Jichang Jituan Jipiao Daishouchu; 📞 296 6666; 8 Renmin Donglu) is located at the Tianyuan International Hotel.

**BUS** Domestic buses use the **long-distance bus station** (diqu keyunzhan; Tiannan Lu). There are six buses for Hotan (¥92 to ¥128, seven to 10 hours) between 9am and 9pm, but it's more enjoyable to stop off in Yengisar (¥13, 1½ hours), Yarkand (¥32 to ¥40, three hours) or Karghilik (¥41 to ¥54, four hours). Buses to these towns run at least hourly. Faster shared taxis also run to all these places for twice the bus fare; a ticket office just inside the entrance sells tickets.

Sleeper buses to Urumqi (¥265 to ¥285, 22 hours) depart from the **international bus station** every 45 minutes between 10am and 8.30pm. There are also sleepers to Kuqa (¥157 to ¥172, 12 hours) every two hours between noon and 8pm.

**TRAIN** Daily trains to Urumqi depart at 8.18am and 2.44pm (train 9788) and take 32 and 24 hours, respectively. Sleeper tickets on the faster train cost ¥345/529. Train 5826 from Urumqi continues to Hotan (10 hours) at 10.30am, stopping at Yengisar (two hours), Yarkand (four hours) and Karghilik (5½ hours) en route. You can buy tickets from the **train booking office** (huoche shoupiao chu; Tiannan Lu; commission ¥5; ☎ 9.30am-1pm & 3-8pm) at the long-distance bus station.

### **i** Getting Around

**TO/FROM THE AIRPORT** The airport is 13km northeast of the town centre. One shuttle bus (¥10) meets all incoming flights. Just tell the driver your destination in town. A taxi should cost ¥15 but drivers often ask for double this. Bus 2 goes directly to the airport from People's Square and Id Kah Mosque.

**BICYCLE** Mountain bikes can sometimes be hired at the Chini Bagh Hotel for ¥50 per day. The **Giant Bike Shop** ( Jie'ante Zixingche; ☎ 640 1616; 37 Jiangkang Lu) also rents bikes for ¥50 per day. It's located 1.5km south of town opposite the Three Fortune Hotel (; Sanyun Binguan).

**BUS** Useful bus routes are buses 2 (Jiefang Lu north to the international bus station and the airport), 9 (international bus station to the Chini Bagh Hotel and Seman Binguan), 20 (China Post to Abakh Hoja Tomb) and 28 (Id Kah Mosque to the train station). The fare is ¥1.

**TAXI** Taxis are metered and the flag fall is ¥5. Nowhere in town should cost more than ¥14.

## **BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO KYRGYZSTAN, PAKISTAN & TAJIKISTAN**

### To Kyrgyzstan

There are two passes into Kyrgyzstan: the Torugart Pass, which leads to Bishkek, and the Irkeshtam Pass, which goes to Osh. Getting to Osh (¥570, two days) is straightforward, with a sleeper bus leaving Kashgar's international bus station ( guoji qichezhan; Jiefang Beilu) at 9am on Mondays (and perhaps Thursday if demand warrants it). Another option is to take a shared taxi from the station to Uluk Chat (¥30 per seat) and change there. Hiring a car to Irkeshtam through an agency costs around ¥700. Road construction in 2012 should speed up the trip.

Crossing the Torugart requires more red tape, for which you will need a travel agency's help: [Click here](#). You will need to have pre-arranged transport on the Kyrgyz side, which travel agents can arrange with their contacts in Naryn or Bishkek. Rates for a Chinese 4WD to meet/drop you off at Torugart Pass average US\$225, which includes transportation, guide and permits (minimum two-day processing). A car/minibus all the way to Naryn is US\$420/490 for up to three/six people. Vehicles need a special permit to travel to the border. The border is technically open year round but closed at weekends.

Kyrgyzstan visas are available from the consulate in Urumqi ([Click here](#)). Visa fees depend on the speed of service (ranging from same day to a week). Bring one passport photo and a copy of your passport and visa and arrive early because the consulate is only open for two hours a day. You have to pay the visa fee at a nearby branch of the Bank of China.

### To Pakistan

Buses to/from Sost (¥370, two days) in Pakistan leave Kashgar's international bus station ( guoji qichezhan; Jiefang Beilu) daily at noon. However, if there are fewer than 10 passengers the bus may not depart until the following day. The 500km trip stops overnight at Tashkurgan, where customs procedures are conducted. If you are already in Tashkurgan, the fare to Sost is ¥225. You can also hire a car from one of the tour outfits in Kashgar.

### To Tajikistan

The 4362m Qolma (Kulma) Pass linking Kashgar with Murghab (via Tashkurgan), opened in 2004 to local traders. As of 2012 it was still closed to foreign travellers, though there is renewed talk of opening the pass as a full international crossing.

## Karakoram Highway

The Karakoram Hwy (KKH; Zhongba Gonglu) over the Khunjerab Pass (4800m) is one of the world's most spectacular roads and China's gateway to Pakistan. For centuries this route was used by caravans plodding down the Silk Road. Khunjerab means 'valley of blood' – local bandits used to take advantage of the terrain to slaughter merchants and plunder caravans.

Facilities en route are being gradually improved, but take warm

clothing, food and drink on board with you – once stowed on the bus roof it will be unavailable on the journey. Check the state of the highway well ahead of time.

In 2010 a massive landslide on the Pakistani side blocked a river and created a new 20km-long lake that submerged the highway, causing disaster for the people of the Hunza Valley and big headaches for travellers. Check Lonely Planet's Thorn Tree ([www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree)) for updates.

Even if you don't plan to go to Pakistan, it's still worth heading up the highway at least to Tashkurgan. It's possible to do a day trip to Karakul Lake and back but it's much better to spend a night or two up in these gorgeous mountains. Some travellers hire bikes in Kashgar, get a lift up to Tashkurgan and cycle back for an exciting three-day journey.

During times of political tension foreigners need a permit from a travel agent to get past the checkpoint at Ghez. This was the case in 2011, but not in 2012, so check in advance with a Kashgar travel agency.

## **KASHGAR TO TASHKURGAN**

Travelling up the KKH to Tashkurgan is a highlight of Kashgaria. The journey begins with a one-hour drive through the Kashgar oasis to Upal (Wupa'er in Chinese), where most vehicles stop for breakfast, especially during the interesting Monday market. The renovated Tomb of Mahmud Kashgari (admission ¥30), a beloved local 11th-century scholar, traveller and writer, is a potential excursion but it's far from unmissable. The tomb is about 2.5km from the market on the edge of Upal hill.

Two hours from Kashgar you enter the canyon of the Ghez River (Ghez Darya in Uighur), with its dramatic claret-red sandstone walls. Ghez itself is a major checkpoint; photographing soldiers or buildings is strictly prohibited. At the top of the canyon, 3½ hours above the plain, you pop out into a huge wet plateau ringed with mountains of sand, part of the Sarikol Pamir, and aptly called Kumtagh (Sand Mountain) by locals.

Soon Kongur Mountain (Gongge'er Shan; 7719m) rises up on the

left side of the road, followed by heavily glaciated Muztagh Ata (Mushitage Shan; 7546m). The main stopping point for views is Karakul Lake, a glittering mirror of glacial peaks 194km from Kashgar. From here you can hike into the hills or circumnavigate the lake. Kashgar Guide and Old Road Tours ([Click here](#)) can organise five-day trekking tours around the lake to Subash village or the Muztagh Ata base camp (4500m), overnighing in tents, villages and Kyrgyz yurts along the way. The trek (US\$50 to US\$70 per day) includes food, permits, guide and even a camel to haul your gear. Avoid the obvious fenced tourist centre, which has a ¥50 entry fee, restaurant (mains ¥40 to ¥80), concrete yurt accommodation (¥50) and touristy horse rides (¥50). More authentic accommodation is available at the southern end of the lake.

The journey climbs to a pass offering fine views, then meanders through high mountain pastures dotted with grazing camels and yaks, before passing the turn-off to the Qolma Pass (currently closed to foreigners). The final major town on the Chinese side is Tashkurgan at 3600m. You could easily kill a couple of hours wandering the streets and visiting the small museum at the Folk Culture Centre (admission ¥30; ☺ 10am-5pm) at the central crossroads (marked by the eagle statue).

On the outskirts of town, close to the river, is Tashkurgan Fort (Shitoucheng, admission ¥30), whose 1400-year-old stone (*tash*) fortifications (*kurgan*) give the town its name. The ruins were one of the filming locations for the movie *Kite Runner*. The boggy valley below is dotted with Tajik yurts in summer and offers some spectacular views back towards the fort.

Some travellers head up to the Khunjerab Pass for a photo opportunity on the actual border. Note that you need a border permit (available in Kashgar) and a guide, which most tour agencies can arrange.

Officially, the border opens daily between 1 May and 31 October. However, the border can open late or close early depending on conditions at the Khunjerab Pass. The Chinese customs and immigration formalities are done at Tashkurgan (technically 3km down the road towards Pakistan). Then it's 126km to the last checkpoint at

Khunjerab Pass, the actual border, where your documents are checked again before you head into Pakistan. Pakistan immigration formalities are performed at Sost. In late 2011 Pakistani visas were *no longer available* to tourists on arrival (and visas are difficult to get in Beijing), so the safest option is to arrive in China with a visa obtained in your home country. Check the current situation as this could change.

## Sleeping

Jiaotong Bilingual HOTEL \$

( ☎ 0998-342 1192; dm ¥50, d ¥140-160) The bus station hotel has fresh and modern doubles and dorms with simple shared bathrooms. Bus passengers en route to Sost generally overnight here.

Crown Inn HOTEL \$\$\$

( Huangguan Dajiudian; ☎ 0998-342 2888; [www.crowninntashkorgan.com](http://www.crowninntashkorgan.com); 1 Pami'er Lu; d with breakfast ¥580; @📶) This plush Singaporean-run hotel offers comfortable, bright rooms and a good restaurant (mains ¥48 to ¥108).



### Getting There & Away

From Kashgar daily buses run to Tashkurgan from the long-distance bus station, leaving at 10am, 11am and noon (¥51, six hours). Shared taxis also depart from the city's **Tashkurgan Administration Office** ( Tashiku'ergan Banshichu; 166 Xiyu Dadao Lu; 166 ), in the west of town.

Three buses depart Tashkurgan for Kashgar (¥51) between 8.30am and 10am; if you miss them, a shared taxi costs ¥100 per person. The bus to Sost (¥250) leaves Tashkurgan at 10am.

From Kashgar it's 118km to the Ghez checkpoint, 194km to Karakul Lake, 283km to Tashkurgan and 380km to the Pakistani border.

A car to Karakul Lake and back costs around ¥800 through a Kashgar travel agency.

## SOUTHERN SILK ROAD

The Silk Road east of Kashgar splits into two threads in the face of the Taklamakan Desert, the second largest sandy desert in the world. The

northern thread follows the modern road and railway to Kuqa and Turpan. The southern road charts a more remote course between desert sands and the towering Pamir and Kunlun mountain ranges.

There are no jaw-dropping sights here, but the off-the-grid journey takes you about as far into the Uighur heartland as you can get. It's possible to visit the southern towns as a multiday trip from Kashgar before crossing the Taklamakan Desert to Urumqi, or as part of a rugged backdoor route into Tibet or Qinghai.

For wonderfully detailed but somewhat dated information on the southern Silk Road check out [www.centralasiatraveler.com](http://www.centralasiatraveler.com).

## Yengisar

The tiny town of Yengisar (Yingjisha) is synonymous with knife production. A lesser-known but more sensitive fact is it's the birthplace of the Uighur's icon of nationalism, Isa Yusuf Alptekin (1901–95), the leader of the First East Turkestan Republic in Kashgar who died in exile in Istanbul.

There are dozens of knife shops here, most of them strung along the highway; ask for the 'knife factories' (; *xiaodaochang* in Chinese; *pichak chilik karakhana* in Uighur). Each worker makes the blade, handle and inlays himself, using only the most basic of tools. To get there from the main bus station, hop in a taxi (¥5) for the 3km trip to the knife shops. They are right on the main road, so you'd even pass them on the way to Yarkand. Note that knives are prohibited in check-in luggage, so you'll have to ship them home.

Buses pass through the town regularly en route to Yarkand (¥28, 1½ hours) and Kashgar (¥13, 1½ hours).

## Yarkand

At the end of a major trade route from British India, over the Karakoram Pass from Leh, Yarkand (Shache) was for centuries an important caravan town and regional centre for the trade in cashmere wool. This traditional and conservative town is well worth a stop.

Modern Yarkand is split into a Chinese new town and a Uighur old town to its east. Take a right upon exiting the bus station to get to the



main avenue. Once there, take another right and flag down any public bus, which will take you past the Shache Binguan, 1km east of the bus station; the old town and the Altun Mosque complex are 1km further.

## Sights

### Altun Mosque Complex MOSQUE, CEMETERY

( Aletun Qingzhen Si) Yarkand's main sights are clustered around its charming central 18th-century mosque. Next to the mosque in the modern square is the Mausoleum of Ammanisahan (admission ¥15), commemorating a 16th-century local Uighur queen and musician famed for her work collecting Uighur *muqam* music. Behind the tomb is the central mazar (tomb) of her husband Sultan Sayid Khan, the founder of the Yarkand dynasty of rulers (1514–1682). The surrounding sprawling cemetery is home to several other impressive shrines, with white flags marking the graves of *pir* (holy men). There are normally groups of elderly Uighurs praying here.

### Old Town NEIGHBOURHOOD

The old town to the east of the Altun Mosque is well worth a stroll; craftsmen still work their wares with ball-peen hammers and grindstones and several workshops churn out traditional Uighur instruments. To get here take the dirt lane headed east, just south of the Altun Sq, and keep going. Eventually you'll link up with Laocheng Lu and can return west back to the new town.

Yarkand has a Sunday Market a block north of the Altun Mosque, though it's considerably smaller than those of Kashgar or Hotan.

## Sleeping & Eating

There are several good restaurants by Altun Sq, including the Altun Handan Restaurant, with traditional Uighur food and decor.

### Xinsheng Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 852 7555; 4 Xincheng Lu; 4 tw ¥180; @📶) This place has clean and modern rooms with internet cables in the rooms, making it a good choice. Rates come with breakfast. It's on the main road, just beside the gates of the Shache Binguan.

### Subhi Altun Hotel HOTEL \$

( Subiyi Aletun Binguan; 📍 851 2222; cnr A'letun Lu & Laocheng Lu; tw/tr ¥138/238) This Uighur hotel has clean rooms, a little rough at the edges, but with a perfect location across from the Altun Mosque complex. Unmarried couples and alcohol are frowned upon.

Altun Kasir Restaurant UIGHUR \$

( Jingong Meishi; Xincheng Lu; mains ¥12-25) A friendly and pleasant place five minutes' walk west of the Subhi Altun Hotel, and fronted by a row of green shrubbery. The picture menu makes life easier.

### Getting There & Away

Buses leave half-hourly to Kashgar (¥40, three hours), Yengisar (¥28, 1½ hours) and Karghilik (¥12, 1½ hours). Three buses daily take the expressway to Hotan (¥58, five hours), and six leave for Urumqi (¥310 to ¥340, 25 hours). Faster shared taxis also depart when full to Kashgar (¥60), Yengisar (¥40) and Karghilik (¥25).

## Karghilik

Karghilik (Yecheng) is of importance to travellers as the springboard to the fantastically remote Hwy 219, the Xinjiang–Tibet highway that leads to Ngari (Ali) in far west Tibet.

The main attraction in town is the 15th-century Friday Mosque (Jama Masjid) and the surrounding adobe-walled backstreets of the old town.

The town of Charbagh, located 10 minutes' drive towards Yarkand, has a large market on Tuesday.

### Sleeping & Eating

The paranoid PSB assumes all foreigners are trying to sneak into Tibet and so limit you to one of the following options.

There are busy Uighur eateries outside the Friday Mosque and 24-hour food stalls across from the bus station.

Jiaotong Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 728 5540; 1 Jiaotong Lu; r ¥120-150; 🌟) The Traffic Hotel has a quiet back block with reasonably clean ensuite rooms and a front building with much grimmer rooms with shared bathroom (¥80–¥100).

Qiaogelifeng Dengshan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

(📍 748 5000; 9180 Ling-gongli; 9180 r ¥130-190; 📶📶) The 'K2 Hotel' is the better place to stay but the location isn't great if you're only passing through. Board bus 2 outside the bus station or take a taxi for ¥10. It's 6km from the bus station.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Buses to Yarkand (¥10) and Kashgar (¥34, four hours) leave every half-hour until 8.30pm. Every two hours until 8.30pm there is a bus to Hotan (¥34, five hours), or take a faster shared taxi for ¥85 per seat. The newly paved 1100km road to Ali, in western Tibet, branches off from the main Kashgar–Hotan road 6km east of Karghilik. The only way to (legally) take the highway is by organising a Land Cruiser tour with an agent in Lhasa. See Lonely Planet's *Tibet* guide for details.

## Hotan

📍 0903 / POP 130,000

Hotan has long been known as the epicentre of the central Asian and Chinese jade trade. Locally unearthed jade artefacts have been dated to around 5000 BC and it is believed that Hotan (Hetian; also known as Khotan) attracted Chinese traders along the Jade Road even before they headed westward to open up the Silk Road. In 5th century AD the Hotanese were also the first to learn the secret of Chinese silkmaking, and later established themselves as the region's foremost carpet weavers.

Hundreds of shops across town continue to offer a huge selection of local jade. In the old days prospectors would feel for river stones in the moonlight using only their bare feet; these days mechanical dredgers dig for jade on an industrial scale.

Today Hotan is largely a Chinese city, but it still has some fascinating old neighbourhoods and markets and retains a cultural authenticity that is increasingly hard to find in Kashgar. What makes the 500km-long slog from Kashgar really worthwhile is the fantastic Sunday Market, the largest and least visited in Xinjiang.

Beijing Xilu is the main east–west axis running past the enormous main square (Tuanjie Guangchang), with its paternalistic statue of

Mao looking down on an undersized Uighur craftsman.

## Hotan



Hotan

📍 Top Sights

[Sunday Market](#) D1

📍 Sights

1 [Hotan Cultural Museum](#) A1

🛏 Sleeping

2 [Jiaotong Binguan](#) C1

3 [Tarim Hotel](#) B2

4 [Yudu Dajiudian](#) B2

🍴 Eating

5 [Arom Restaurant](#) B1

6 [Marco's Dream Cafe](#) C2

7 [Uighur Night Market](#) C2

## 📍 Sights

Sunday Market MARKET

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

() Hotan's most popular attraction is its weekly Sunday market. The covered market bustles every day of the week but on Sundays it swamps the northeast part of town, reaching fever pitch between noon

and 2pm Xinjiang time. The most interesting parts to head for are the *doppi* (skullcap) bazaar, the colourful *atlas* (tie-dyed, handwoven silk) cloth to the right of the main entrance and the *gilim* (carpet) bazaar, across the road. Nearby Juma Lu ( ) is worth a stroll for its traditional medicine and spice shops.

The small but authentic Sunday livestock bazaar is about 2km further east, near the Jade Dragon Kashgar River on Donghuan Beilu; take bus 10, 5 or 101 to the junction then walk 500m north.



## SILK

Prices for *atlas* vary wildly depending on whether the cloth is pure silk or a satin mix, whether it's handmade (coarser) or machine made (softer and glossier but not as nice) and whether it uses natural or chemical dyes. A 6m-long piece of pure silk costs up to ¥500, with real silk scarves around ¥100 to ¥180.



### Carpet Factory HANDICRAFTS CENTRE

( *ditan chang*; ☺ 10am-7pm) On the eastern bank of the Jade Dragon Kashgar River is this large factory (*gilim karakhana* in Uighur). It's primarily set up for group visits but you can look around the various halls when open. Even with up to 10 weavers, one sq mt of wool carpet takes 20 days to complete. To get here, take bus 5 from Hotan bus station and get off at the last stop.

### Silk Workshop HANDICRAFTS CENTRE

( *sichou shougong gongyi*; ☺ 10am-7.30pm) Past the carpet factory, northeast of Hotan, is the small town of Jiya ( ), a traditional centre for silk production. Visitors can wander the recently renovated workshop (*atlas karakhana* in Uighur) to see how the silk is spun from silk cocoons, then dyed and woven, all using traditional methods. A return trip by taxi to the workshop, taking in the carpet factory, costs ¥80. Buses run frequently to Jiya (¥2) from inside Hotan's east bus station.

### Mazar of Imam Asim TOMB

A few kilometres beyond Jiya lies the tomb complex of Imam Asim (Tomb of Four Imams). It's a popular pilgrimage site, particularly

during May, and you'll likely see groups of Uighurs praying and chanting at the desert shrine, which is slowly being engulfed by the Taklamakan Desert. The best day to visit is Thursday, when a pilgrim market springs up by the roadside, about 2km before the tomb, and buses run direct to the site from Hotan's east bus station. At other times buses to Jiya drop you 3km from the site, from where you should be able to hire a motorised cart.

 Hotan Cultural Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Hetian Bowuguan; Beijing Xilu; 🕒 9.45am-1pm & 4-7.30pm, closed Wed) West of the centre is the regional museum. The main attractions are a fine painted wooden coffin and two 1500-year-old Indo-European mummies unearthed from the nearby Imam Musa Kazim Cemetery. There are also some fascinating finds from ancient Niya, including a large wooden pillar, a 2000-year-old bow and arrow and wooden tablets engraved with Indian-influenced Kharoshthi script. Take buses 2 or 6 from the town centre to get here (bus 6 runs from the bazaar).

Melikawat Ruins ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITE

( Malikewate Gucheng; admission ¥10) The deserts around Hotan are peppered with the faint remains of abandoned cities. The most interesting are those of Melikawat, 25km south of town, a Tang-dynasty settlement with wind-eroded walls, Buddhist stupas and the remains of pottery kilns. Some scholars believe Melikawat was a capital city of the Yutian state (206 BC–AD 907), an Indo-European civilisation that thrived during the height of the Silk Road. A taxi should cost about ¥100 to Melikawat.

Rawaq Pagoda ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITE

The 9m-tall Rawaq Pagoda is an intriguing but remote sight, about 50km north of Hotan, then 8km off the Cross-Desert Highway. You'll need to buy a ticket (¥200 to ¥450) in advance to visit. Contact the Cultural Department (Wenhua ju; 📞 0903-618 2018) at Hotan Museum for information on this and other specialised archaeological sites.

 **Sleeping**

Tarim Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Talimu Dafandian; 📍 206 7777; 135 Aqiale Xilu; 135 d ¥198; 🌟🌟🌟🌟 )  
New four-star hotel with fresh, modern rooms, some with computers (add ¥20), that make it the best value midrange choice. It's a block southwest of the main square.

Yudu Dajiudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 202 3456; 11 Guangchang Lu; 11 tw ¥238 ) The three-star 'Jade Capital' has spacious and modern rooms, with a useful location on the west side of the main square. You can buy air tickets in the lobby.

Jiaotong Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 203 2700; Taibei Xilu; d with/without bathroom ¥160/100; 🌟 ) The bus station hotel is worn out and overpriced but it's the only real budget option. The shared bathrooms are awful, so consider the en suite rooms or do without.

## Eating

Uighur Night Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Weizuren Yeshi; Guangchang Donglu; 🕒 7pm-midnight ) On the southeast corner of the square; a good place to grab such goodies as *tonur kebab* (whole roast sheep) and *chuchvara* (meat dumplings in broth), topped off with sweet *tangzaza* (sticky rice with syrup and yoghurt).

Marco's Dream Cafe CAFE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Make Yizhan; [www.marcodreamcafe.blogspot.com](http://www.marcodreamcafe.blogspot.com); 57 Youyi Lu; mains ¥18-30; 🕒 1.30-9.30pm Tue-Sun; 📺 ) This Malaysian-run restaurant serves a nice range of southeast Asian dishes, including curried chicken, plus cakes and coffee (¥6 to ¥10). The friendly English-speaking owners can provide excellent travel advice.

Arom Restaurant UIGHUR \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(cnr Tanaiyi Beilu & Nawage Lu; mains ¥14) Locals recommend this

place for the best *polo* in town, served succulent and moist with delicious yoghurt. Alternatively head to the branch across the road for good-value set meals (¥15).

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Urumqi Nanlu & Aqiale Lu; ☎ 9.30am-1.30pm & 4-8pm Mon-Fri) Cashes travellers cheques, in the southwest of town.

**China Construction Bank** ( Zhongguo Jianshe Yinhang; cnr Beijing Lu & Youyi Lu; ☎ 9.30am-1pm & 4-6.30pm Mon-Fri) Has ATMs that accept foreign cards.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; ☎ 251 6090; 3F, 23 Tunken Lu) Located to the south off Urumqi Nanlu. Can arrange tours to a silk factory, as well as expensive excursions to the ruins at Yotkan and Melikawat.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 691 Yingbin Lu; ☎ 10am-1pm & 4.30-7.30pm Mon-Fri) Can extend visas in one day. Take bus 3 to its terminus at the corner of Yingbin Lu and Tunken Lu in the southern suburbs.

**Southern Silk Road Travel Information Center** (☎ 137 7929 1939; [www.southernsilkroadtour.com](http://www.southernsilkroadtour.com); [treklab@gmail.com](mailto:treklab@gmail.com); Wulumuqi Nanlu) Local guide Kurbanjan runs private tours along the southern Silk Road from the Hetian Binguan.

### **i** Getting There & Away

**AIR** There are a dozen flights daily between Hotan and Urumqi (¥1680). The airport is 10km southwest of town; a taxi there costs ¥20.

**BUS & CAR** There are two bus stations in Hotan. Most buses leave from the main station on Taibei Xilu, from where there are nine buses to Kashgar (¥128, seven to 10 hours) from 9.30am to 10pm. These buses also stop at Karghilik (¥52, five hours) and Yarkand (¥71, six hours).

Buses to Urumqi (¥257 to ¥387, 25 hours) head straight across the desert on one of two cross-desert highways. A daily bus to Kuqa (¥168 to ¥185, eight hours) departs at 2pm and 8pm.

Shared taxis also run to Karghilik (¥90), Yarkand (¥120) and Kashgar (¥200).



To continue east along the southern Silk Road, head to the east bus station (; *dongjiao keyunzhan*) 2km east of downtown. One bus (sometimes a sleeper, sometimes a normal bus) leaves at 10.30am for Cherchen (¥124 to ¥160, 10 hours) and there are buses every two hours to Niya (¥63, four hours).

**Train** The railway line from Kashgar reached Hotan in 2011. A single daily train leaves at 10.20am for Urumqi (hard/soft sleeper ¥241/390, 36 hours), via Kashgar (hard seat ¥34, 9 hours).

### Getting Around

Bus 101 runs from the main bus station on Taibei Xilu, past the Sunday Market to the east bus station, 1km away. Metered taxis cost around ¥8 within town; figure on ¥15 to the train station and ¥30 to the airport.

## Cherchen

 0996 / POP 60,000

The next major stop along the southern Silk Road is Cherchen (Qiemo), 580km away via the townships of Keriya (; Yutian) and Niya (; Minfeng). The road initially passes the towering Kunlun Mountains that mark the border with Tibet to the south, before crossing impressive sand dunes and then stony desert for the last 300km to Cherchen.

From Cherchen bus station head right (north) along Aita Lu to the first set of traffic lights at Wenhua Lu: continue straight for the Hongzao Shangwu Bilingual and museum. Take a right at the next block on Sichou Lu (Silk Road!) for the Kunyu Bilingual. A taxi/cart to the hotels costs ¥10/3.

To visit the main sights outside Cherchen go first to the Cherchen Museum as you need to take a guide with you to unlock the gates. Guides can help arrange a taxi.

### Sights

 Cherchen Museum MUSEUM

( Qiemo Xian Bowuguan; 🕒 9.30am-1.30pm, 4-7.30pm) Relics from

Cherchen's main sights are on display at this new regional museum, alongside displays ranging from yetis in the Altun Tagh mountains to the travels of explorer Sven Hedin. It's in the northwest of town, by the huge new government square.

#### Toghraklek Manor HISTORIC BUILDING

( Tuohulake Zhuangyuan; admission ¥20) Cherchen's main sight is this fine example of early-20th century Kashgarian architecture, built in 1911 for a local warlord. It's 2.5km west of town.

#### Zaghunluq Ancient Mummy Tomb TOMB

( Zagunluke Gumuqun Jingdian; admission ¥30) This 2600-year-old tomb contains a dozen or so naturally mummified bodies, still sporting shreds of colourful clothing. The site is a further 4km west of the Toghraklek Manor, on the edge of the desert. Figure on ¥50 for a taxi to both sites.

## **Sleeping**

### Hongzao Shangwu Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 761 1888; Aita Lu; r ¥138-158; 🌟🌟🌟) Clean, fresh and spacious rooms make this the best value option, next to the bazaar, though some bathrooms are cleaner than others. The pricier rooms come with computers.

### Jiaotong Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 762 7088; d with/without bathroom ¥100/60; 🌟🌟🌟) If you are just transiting overnight the bus station hotel has small but acceptable rooms, the best with computers (extra ¥20).

### Yudu Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

( 📍 762 5150; old/new block d incl breakfast ¥150/488) Party cadres live it up in this government-run option next to the (currently defunct) airport. There's a four-star main building and a much cheaper and run-down old block, both set in spacious and quiet grounds.

### Kunyu Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 762 6555; Tuanjie Beilu; d ¥120-140) Decent option next to the central town square.

## **Getting There & Away**

There is a sleeper bus at 7pm to Urumqi (¥280 to ¥300, 16 hours) and

a 10am and 7pm bus to Korla (¥170, six hours); both of these go via the Cross-Desert Hwy. There is no bus service to Kuqa. The bus to Hotan (¥127 to ¥177, 10 hours) leaves at 10am and is normally a sleeper bus. A daily 10am bus (¥61, four hours) continues 350km east to Charklik.

## Charklik

Charklik (Ruoqiang; not to be confused with Karghilik further west) is a soulless, modern Chinese city, but there are several ancient ruined cities nearby. The most famous is remote Loulan ( ), located some 260km northeast of Charklik, but you'll probably have to join a very pricey group tour to visit as permits can run into the thousands of dollars. The ruined fortress and stupa of Miran ( ) is closer, located just 7km southeast of the modern town of Miran (which is 85km northwest of Charklik). It's also cheaper – group permits cost around ¥400 to ¥500. Contact CITS ([www.xinjiangtour.com](http://www.xinjiangtour.com)) in Urumqi for help with the paperwork.

If you get stuck in town, the Yin Hai Binguan ( ☎ 0996-710 5018; Shengli Lu; d ¥120; ☎) is a clean and good value option, 100m south of the bus station.

From Charklik you can complete the Taklamakan loop by taking a bus to Korla (¥94, six hours, every two hours) Alternatively, you can continue east over the mountains to Golmud in Qinghai (¥230, 12 hours) on a daily 6pm sleeper bus. If for some reason that's not running, you'll have to take the daily bus to Yitunbulake/Shimiankuang (¥96, 10am) and then change for the short hop to Huatugou, to catch one of two daily buses to Golmud (¥104, six hours).

## NORTHERN XINJIANG

This region of thick evergreen forests, rushing rivers and isolated mountain ranges is historically home to pastoral nomads. It was closed to foreigners until the 1990s, due to the proximity of the sensitive Russian, Mongolian and Kazakhstan borders.

# Bu'erjin

☞ 0906 / POP 60,000

Bu'erjin, 620km north of Urumqi, marks the end of the desert-like Jungar Basin and the beginning of the lush sub-Siberian birch forests and mountains to the north. The town's population is mainly Kazakh, but there are also Russians, Han, Uighurs and Tuvans.

If you have some time to kill, stroll to the southern limits of town to the Erqis (Irtysh) River, where dozens of stone *balbals* (Turkic grave markers) line the river embankment. From here the river flows eventually into the Arctic Ocean; the only major river in China to do so. In summer, you'll be confronted with swarms of biting insects around dusk, so stock up on insect repellent.

## Sleeping & Eating

Hotel rates peak between July and September and are discounted by up to 70% at other times.

Shenxian Wan Dajiudian HOTEL \$

(☞ 652 1325; 5 Shenhu Lu; 5 tw ¥140) The Immortal Bay Hotel has clean rooms and an efficient staff that are willing to negotiate the price. From the bus station, turn left and then right at the first intersection. It's about 200m down on the left.

Burqin Tourist Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Bu'erjin Luvyou Binguan; ☞ 651 0099; 4 Wolongwan Xilu; 4 d from ¥488; ☺ May-Nov) Large, dependable hotel with two-, three- and four-star blocks. Rooms are generally discounted by up to 65%.

Jian'an Binguan HOTEL \$

( ' ☞ 652 0688; Wenming Lu; d ¥120-200) This cheapie opposite the bus station doesn't have official permission but will accept foreigners, making it the best budget value in town. The three wings offer different grades of rooms.

Night Market MARKET \$

( Heti Yeshi; Hebin Lu; mains from ¥10; ☺ 7pm-midnight) Specialising in grilled fish, fresh yoghurt and *kvas* (a yeasty brew popular in Russia), this riverside night market makes for very atmospheric dining. To find it, walk south on Youyifeng Lu and keep going until the street

dead ends: it's on the right. A second night market is in the alley (Meishi Jie) opposite People's Hospital (; Renmin Yiyuan), between Youyifeng Lu and Kanasi Lu.

### **i** Information

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Zhongguo Gongshang Yinhang; Huancheng Nanlu; ☺ 10am-1.30pm & 4-6.30pm) Couldn't change money at time of research but plans to in the future.

**Tianhe Wangba** ( Meishi Jie; ☺ 9am-midnight; per hr ¥3) Internet cafe located at the western end of the smaller night market.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; cnr Yueliangwan Lu & Youyifeng Lu)

### **i** Getting There & Away

**AIR** Nearby Altay has an airport with year-round daily flights to/from Urumqi (¥1180).

**BUS** There are both day (¥148, 10 hours) and night buses (¥170 to ¥180, 12 hours) to Urumqi. Hourly buses run to Altay (Aletai; ¥20 to ¥24, 1½ hours) between 10am and 7pm. Six buses a day run to Jimunai (¥20, two hours) on the border with Kazakhstan.

**SHARED TAXI** Faster shared taxis run from outside the bus station to Urumqi (¥250 per seat) and Altay (¥40).

**TRAIN** The overnight K9791 train departs Urumqi at 8pm for Beitun (; 12½ hours; ¥183/276). From here a limited number of shared taxis make the 90km ride on to Bu'erjin (¥40), or take bus No 1 to Beitun bus station (¥10) and change there. Buy your return train tickets in advance as there is currently no ticket office in Bu'erjin.

## **Kanas Lake Nature Reserve**

Stunning Kanas Lake is a long finger of water nestled in the southernmost reaches of the Siberian taiga ecosystem, pinched in between Mongolia, Russia and Kazakhstan. Most of the local inhabitants are Kazakh or Tuvan. Chinese tourists (and the occasional foreigner) descend on the place like locusts in summer, but with a little effort it's just about possible to escape the crowds. Many come hoping

for a cameo by the Kanas Lake Monster, China's Nessie, who has long figured in stories around yurt campfires to scare the kids. She appears every year or two, bringing loads of journalists and conspiracy hounds.

The whole area is only accessible from mid-May to mid-October, with ice and snow making transport difficult at other times. The gorgeous autumn colours peak around mid-September.

## Sights & Activities

About 160km from Bu'erjin the road comes to an end at Jiadengyu, basically a collection of hotels near the entrance to the Kanas Lake Nature Reserve (Hanasi Hu Ziran Baohuqu; adult/student ¥150/120). Buy a ticket and board a tourist bus (per person ¥80, unlimited rides), which carries you 16km up the canyon to a tourist base. The journey includes three photo stops along the way, including Crouching Dragon Bay (; Wolong Wan), Moon Bay (; Yueliang Wan) and Immortal Bay (; Shenxian Wan).

At the tourist base you can change buses to take you the final 2km to Kanas Lake. The old Tuvan village lines the road, just past the tourist base. (The new Tuvan village is 2km to the west, across the river.) From the final stop it's a five-minute walk to the lake. At the lakeshore you can take a speedboat ride (¥120, 40 minutes) halfway up the lake. A boardwalk along the shore takes you 4.5km up the side of the lake to a vantage point. It's also possible to walk downstream from the dock along the river. The bus terminus is also the starting point for white-water-rafting trips (¥200, 40 minutes), which operate until mid-August.

A great day hike is to the lookout point, Guanyu Pavilion (; Guanyu Ting; 2030m). It's a long, ambling walk from the village; from the lookout there are superb panoramas of the lake and nearby grasslands. It's possible to reach the pavilion by horse – horsemen in the village offer the trip for ¥150 (plus another ¥150 for the guide). The easiest way up is by bus (¥30 one way) from the new Tuvan village. The bus gets close to the top, from where you walk 1066 steps (20 minutes) to the pavilion.

The entry ticket and bus ticket are good for two days. Once you are

in the park, no one checks your ticket, so you can stay as long as you like and use the hop on, hop off bus service to get between the lake and village.

A more adventurous route to the reserve is a two-day horse trek from the valley of Hemu ( student/adult ¥48/60, plus ¥100 bus fee), 70km southeast of Kanas Lake, via Karakol (Black Lake, or Hei Hu). It's not all that cheap: a guide is ¥200 per day, horse rental is ¥150 per day, and you also have to pay for the guide's horse. You can save money by trekking in on foot. From Hemu it's a seven- to 10-hour walk to Karakol, where Kazakh yurts offer accommodation between June and October. After a night at the lake, walk along the south shore and then continue west for six to seven hours to the old Tuvan village. On day two you won't find much water on the trail, so load up at Black Lake before setting off. The bus fee is waived if you enter this way, but someone may track you down and charge you for an admission ticket.

You can reach Hemu by bus from Bu'erjin but it's faster to get a shared taxi; just make sure it will take you all the way to the village and not just to the gate where you pay the admission fee, which is some 20km before the village. The road to Hemu was being upgraded in 2012. A bus (¥200) is also available from the main Kanas Lake gate at Jiadengyu; the price includes the admission ticket to Hemu.

## Tours

The four-day trip out of Urumqi with Western International Travel Service ([Click here](#)) is an excellent deal. For around ¥700 you get an air-con minibus (10 hours), two nights in Bu'erjin, a park entrance ticket and one night's lodging at the lake. This company operates some of the facilities and activities in the park, including the rafting and boating trips.

## Sleeping & Eating

The best place to stay is at a homestay in the old or the new Tuvan village. There are several homestays but none have signs, so you'll have to ask around. The homestays are basic, usually just a spare bedroom. You'll pay between ¥50 and ¥100 for a bed depending on the season, plus about ¥20 to ¥30 per meal.

One option is the guesthouse owned by a Tuvan man, Banzan ()

135 6518 7064), who lives about 200m past the school (; *xuexiao*) in the old Tuvan village near the main road about 2km before the lake. Banzan's family are performers, so you may get to see some traditional singing and dancing. Look for the fading green sign with the picture of a man playing the flute.

In the new village across the river, ask for Hadala Beka (☎ 137 7905 4663), who has a guesthouse with three rooms. To find it on your own, first go to the new village, walk down the main road and look for the large solar panels on your left. The guesthouse is on the far side of the solar panels.

If you need running water and flush toilets, there are plenty of hotels at the tourist base. Try the Lanhu Binguan (Blue Lake Hotel; ☎ 0906-632 6008; r ¥200-480), located in a yurt-shaped building near the bus parking lot.

Food in the reserve is expensive and monotonous; bring your own supplies.

In Hemu, you can stay at the AHA International Youth Hostel (☎ 0991-886 8118; [www.yhakanas.com](http://www.yhakanas.com); dm ¥60, d ¥120), a rustic wood-cabin hostel and comfortable base for exploring the village and nearby mountains.

### **Getting There & Away**

See the Tours section also.

**AIR** Kanas airport, 50km south of the reserve, has flights to and from Urumqi (¥1460, one hour) in July and August only. A shuttle (¥40) meets all incoming flights.

**BUS** There is no public bus to the main gate at Jiadengyu, but two buses per day go to Hemu (¥50, four hours) at 10am and 4pm. The buses leave outside the bus station at Bu'erjin and the village school in Hemu respectively.

**TAXI** A share taxi to Jiadengyu from Bu'erjin is ¥80 per person, though passengers can be hard to find before June. Rates to Hemu cost the same. Taxi drivers will look for you at Bu'erjin's bus station.

## **Yining**

☎ 0999 / POP 300,000



Located on the historic border between the Chinese and Russian empires, Yining (Yili, or Gulja) has long been subject to a tug-of-war between the two sides. The city was occupied by Russian troops between 1872 and 1881, and in 1962 there were major Sino-Soviet clashes along the Ili River (Yili He). There are no unmissable sights here but it's a pleasant, untouristed stop on route to Sayram Lake or Kazakhstan.

The bus station is 3km from the centre at the northwest end of Jiefang Lu, the main thoroughfare through town. An internet cafe ( ☺ 24hr) is located on the south side of People's Sq.

## Sights

The heart of the city is People's Square (Renmin Guangchang), a popular place to fly kites. The south side is lined with ice cream, fruit and kebab stands.

From the square's southwest corner continue south into the Uighur old town, past the 260-year-old Shanxi Mosque ( ) and workshops making traditional-style leather Uighur boots. Look for the old Uzbek Masjid (Uzbek mosque), then head through backstreets west to Jiefang Nanlu and the modern Saudi-style Baytullah Mosque.

## TUGLUGH TIMUR KHAN MAUSOLEUM

Fans of medieval history and Timurid architecture will enjoy making a half-day detour from Yining to this unassuming blue-tiled tomb ( tuhuluke tiemuerhan maza; admission ¥15). Tuglugh was the 14th-century khan of eastern Chaghatai (or Mughalistan), an offshoot of the Mongol empire centered on the surrounding city of Almaliq, itself once a major medieval Central Asian trade centre. The tomb is covered with an intricate web of blue majolica tiles and incised terracotta that recalls tombs from Samarkand. Nothing remains of Almaliq.

To get here take a minibus or shared taxi from outside Yining bus station to Qingshuihe ( ), then walk a couple of hundred metres to shared taxi No 61 for the short transfer to Liushiyi Tuan ( ; ¥10 per seat). The tomb is easily visited en route to the Kazakh border at Korgas.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Yili Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 802 3799; 8 Yingbin Lu; 8; tw ¥160-388; 🌟 ) Yili's former Soviet consulate is full of character and super-quiet if not booked out by a group of Maotai-slurping visiting party officials. A bust of Lenin greets you at the entrance, beyond which is a forest of chirping birds and 1950s Russian dachas. The Zixiangge Coffee Club, just inside the gate, offers fancy Western-style meals (mains ¥50 to ¥100) and quiet internet access.

### V8 Shangwu Jiudian HOTEL \$

(V8 📍 819 8555; Jiefang Lu; d ¥128-148; 🌟@) The new bus station hotel offers immaculate and excellent value rooms with flat-screen TVs, internet-enabled computers and gold carpets. Hopefully management will maintain the place and not hike prices as it becomes popular.

### Chaishi Kuaican UIGHUR \$

( Yingbin Lu; mains ¥8-15) We came back again and again to this cafeteria just outside the Yili Binguan. The *laghman* and noodles with egg and tomato are excellent, as are the various set meals that come served in a wooden bucket of rice (; *mutongfan*). Wash it all down with a glass of Russian-style kvass (; *gewasi*), a fermented, slightly alcoholic drink made from bread.

### Riverside Restaurants UIGHUR \$

Just to the south of town is a line of open-air restaurants where you can sit and watch the mighty Ili River (Ili Daria in Uighur, Yili He in Chinese) slide by over a bottle of honey-flavoured kvass. To get there, hop on bus 2, get off at the last stop and cross the bridge over the river.

## Getting There & Away

From the **main bus station** (*zhou keyunzhan*) there are buses to Urumqi (¥150 to ¥180, nine to 12 hours) and Bole (¥53, four hours, hourly), and sleepers to Korla (¥200 to ¥220, 18 hours). Buses also run every 30 minutes for the Kazakh border at Korgas (¥20, 90 minutes). Buses 1, 101 and 12 run from the centre to the bus station. Buses to Almaty (¥250, 12 hours) depart at 7.30am from an

unpromising parking lot on Yingayati Lu, east of Renmin Sq. Buy your ticket the day before and expect to spend hours at customs. You must have a Kazakhstan visa.

There are two daily trains to Urumqi (11 hours), the 5816 (hard/soft sleeper ¥151/234) at 7.42pm and the K9790 (hard/soft sleeper ¥162/245) at 9.50pm. The station is 8km northwest of the city centre; buses 10, 16, 201 and 401 go there or take a taxi for ¥15. There's a useful **train ticket office** (☎ 8.30am-5.30pm & 6-8pm; commission ¥5) on Shengli Beilu, a block north from the east side of People's Square.

There are several flights a day to Urumqi (¥1320); tickets are available from the **Xinjiang Airport Group** (☎ 803 1888), by the gate of the Yili Binguan. The airport is 5km north of town (¥10 taxi).

## Sayram Lake

Vast Sayram Lake (Sailimu Hu), 120km north of Yining and 90km west of Bole, is an excellent spot to get a taste of the Tian Shan range (Tengri Tagh in Kazakh). The lake is especially colourful during June and July, when the alpine flowers are in full bloom.

While there is some food around, the selection is pricey and limited, so take what you need. In the height of summer, there are Kazakh yurts (about ¥40 per night including three meals) scattered around the lake willing to take boarders. Admission to the lake is ¥40.

By bus, Sayram Lake is two hours from Bole or three hours from Yining; any bus passing between the two cities can drop you by the lake. They usually stop at its southwestern corner, where you'll find horses for hire and plenty of yurt accommodation in summer. Coming from Yining, the last section of road is a spectacular series of mountain bridges and tunnels.



# Gansu

POP 26.4 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Lanzhou](#)

[Xiahe](#)

[Hezuo](#)

[Langmusi](#)

[Wuwei](#)

[Zhangye](#)

[Mati Si](#)

[Jiayuguan & Around](#)

[Dunhuang](#)

[Tianshui](#)

[Pingliang](#)

---

## Why Go?

Synonymous with the Silk Road, the slender province of Gansu flows east to west along the Hexi Corridor, the gap through which all manner of goods once streamed from China to Central Asia. The constant flow of commerce left Buddhist statues, beacon towers, forts,

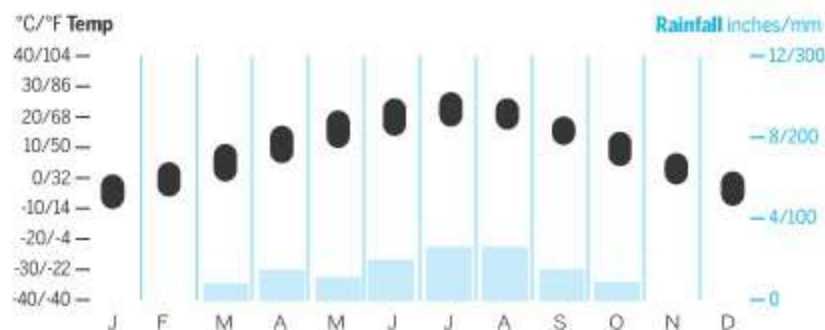
chunks of the Great Wall and ancient trading towns in its wake.

Gansu () offers an entrancingly rich cultural and geographic diversity. Historians immerse themselves in Silk Road lore, art aficionados swoon before the wealth of Buddhist paintings and sculptures, while adventurers hike to glaciers, ride camels through the desert and tread along paths well worn by Tibetan nomads. The ethnic diversity is equally astonishing: in Linxia, the local Hui Muslims act as though the silk route lives on; in Xiahe and Langmusi a pronounced Tibetan disposition holds sway, while other minority groups such as the Bao'an and Dongxiang join in the colourful minority patchwork.

---

## When to Go

### Lánzhōu



**Feb & Mar** Join the Tibetan pilgrims for the magnificent Monlam Festival in Xiahe.

**Apr & May** Before the full heat of summer switches on.

**Sep & Oct** For crisp northern Gansu autumnal colours, blue skies and cooler climes.

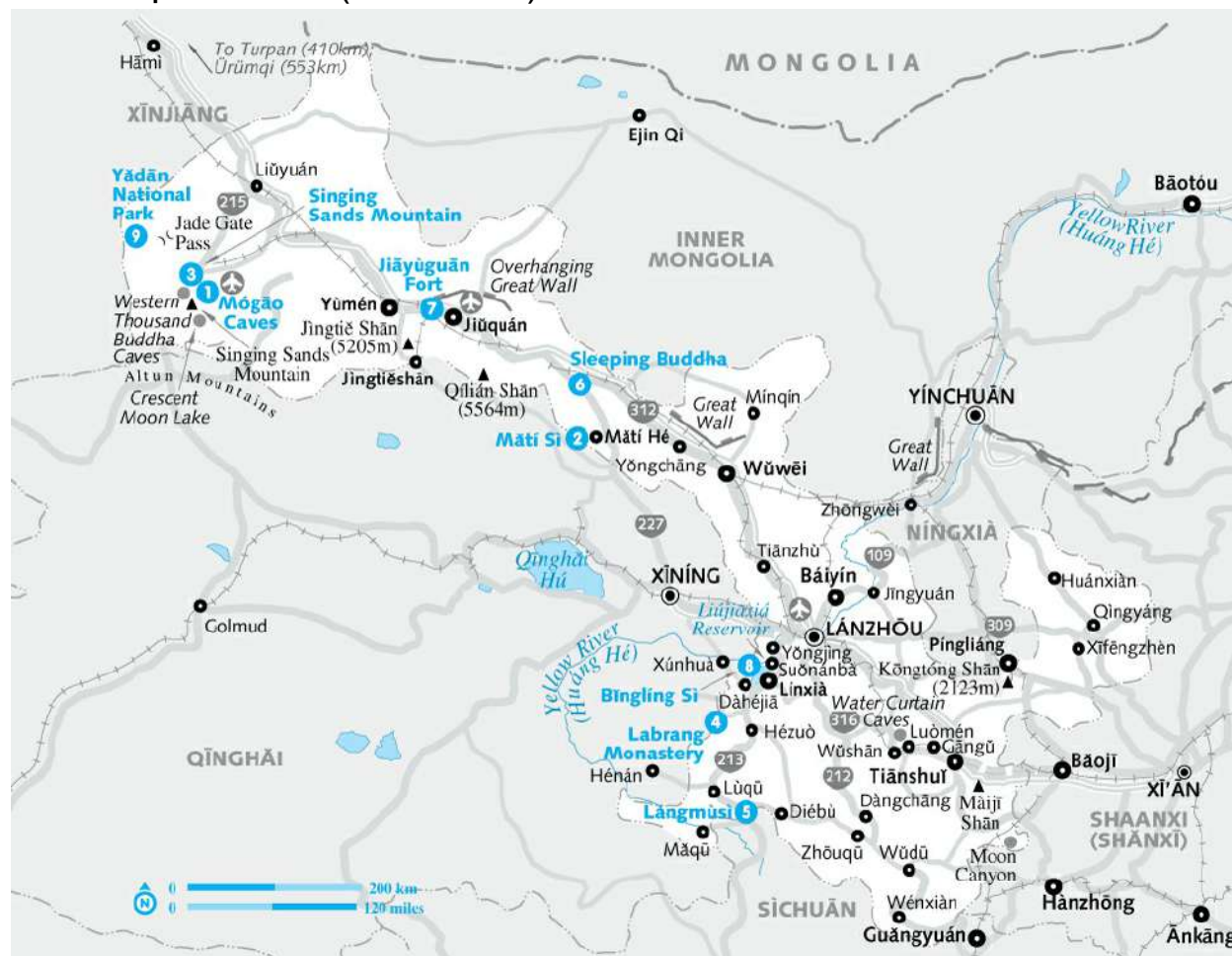
---

## Best Landscapes

- » Yadan National Park ([Click here](#))
- » Singing Sands ([Click here](#))
- » Road to Bingling Si ([Click here](#))
- » Ganjia Grasslands ([Click here](#))
- » Langmusi ([Click here](#))

## Best Buddhist Sites

- » Mogao Caves ([Click here](#))
- » Zhangye Great Buddha Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Yulin Grottoes ([Click here](#))
- » Labrang Monastery ([Click here](#))
- » Milarepa Palace ([Click here](#))



## Gansu Highlights

- 1 Peruse the astonishing **Mogao Caves** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Relax and explore the venerable Buddha Caves at the Horse Hoof Monastery, **Mati Si** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Camp beneath the stars amid the vast dunes of the **Singing**

**Sands Mountain** ([Click here](#)) near Dunhuang

- 4 Go with the Tibetan flow around the **Labrang Monastery** ([Click here](#)) *kora* in Xiahe
- 5 Hike to your heart's content through the fantastic scenery around **Langmusi** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Stand head-to-head with the vast **Sleeping Buddha** ([Click here](#)) of Zhangye
- 7 Feel the Gobi wind in your hair as you stand on the ramparts of **Jiayuguan Fort** ([Click here](#)) in Jiayuguan
- 8 Ride through a mesmerising terraced landscape on the road to **Bingling Si** ([Click here](#))
- 9 Walk in a dried-out desert lake and marvel at the eroded landforms at **Yadan National Park** ([Click here](#))

## History

Although the Qin dynasty had a toehold on eastern Gansu, the first significant push west along the Hexi Corridor came with the Han dynasty. An imperial envoy, Chang Ch'ien, was dispatched to seek trading partners and returned with detailed reports of Central Asia and the route that would become known as the Silk Road. The Han extended the Great Wall through the Hexi Corridor, expanding their empire in the process. As trade along the Silk Road grew, so did the small way stations set up along its route; these grew into towns and cities that form the major population centres of modern Gansu. The stream of traders from lands east and west also left their mark in the incredible diversity of modern Gansu. The Buddhist grottoes at Mogao, Maiji Shan and elsewhere are testament to the great flourishing of religious and artistic schools along the Silk Road.

The mixing of cultures in Gansu eventually led to serious tensions, which culminated in the Muslim rebellions of 1862 to 1877. The conflict left millions dead and virtually wiped out Gansu's Muslim population. Ethnic tensions have never really left the province as the pro-Tibetan demonstrations in Xiahe in 2008 illustrate.

Though remote from the investment banks and manufacturing hubs along the east coast of China, Gansu is not a poor province. Gross Domestic Product has been growing at a higher rate than the already

blistering national average and massive investments in clean energy are fuelling the transformation of both the natural and urban landscapes.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥150

\$\$ ¥150 to ¥500

\$\$\$ more than ¥500

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

## Climate

Gansu rarely sees any rain outside of the southern regions, and dust storms can whip up, particularly in the spring, so it's good to come prepared with face masks and even antibiotic eye drops. Winters are nippy from November to March. Summer temperatures in the desert regions can top 40°C.

## Language

Gansu has its own group of regional Chinese dialects, loosely known as Gansuhua (part of the northwestern Lanyin Mandarin family). On the borders of Qinghai and Sichuan there is a significant Tibetan population speaking the Tibetan Amdo dialect.



### Getting There & Around

Lanzhou has flights around the country; other airports such as Dunhuang and Jiayuguan only have a handful of flights to major cities, with fewer flights in the winter.



Both trains and buses are handy for connecting the province's Silk Road sights. For southern Gansu you are largely at the mercy of (sometimes painfully slow) buses.

## **LANZHOU & SOUTHERN GANSU**

Lanzhou is a major transportation hub employed by most travellers as a springboard for elsewhere. The Tibetan-inhabited areas around Xiahe and Langmusi are the principal enticements – perfect stopovers for overlanders heading to or from Sichuan.

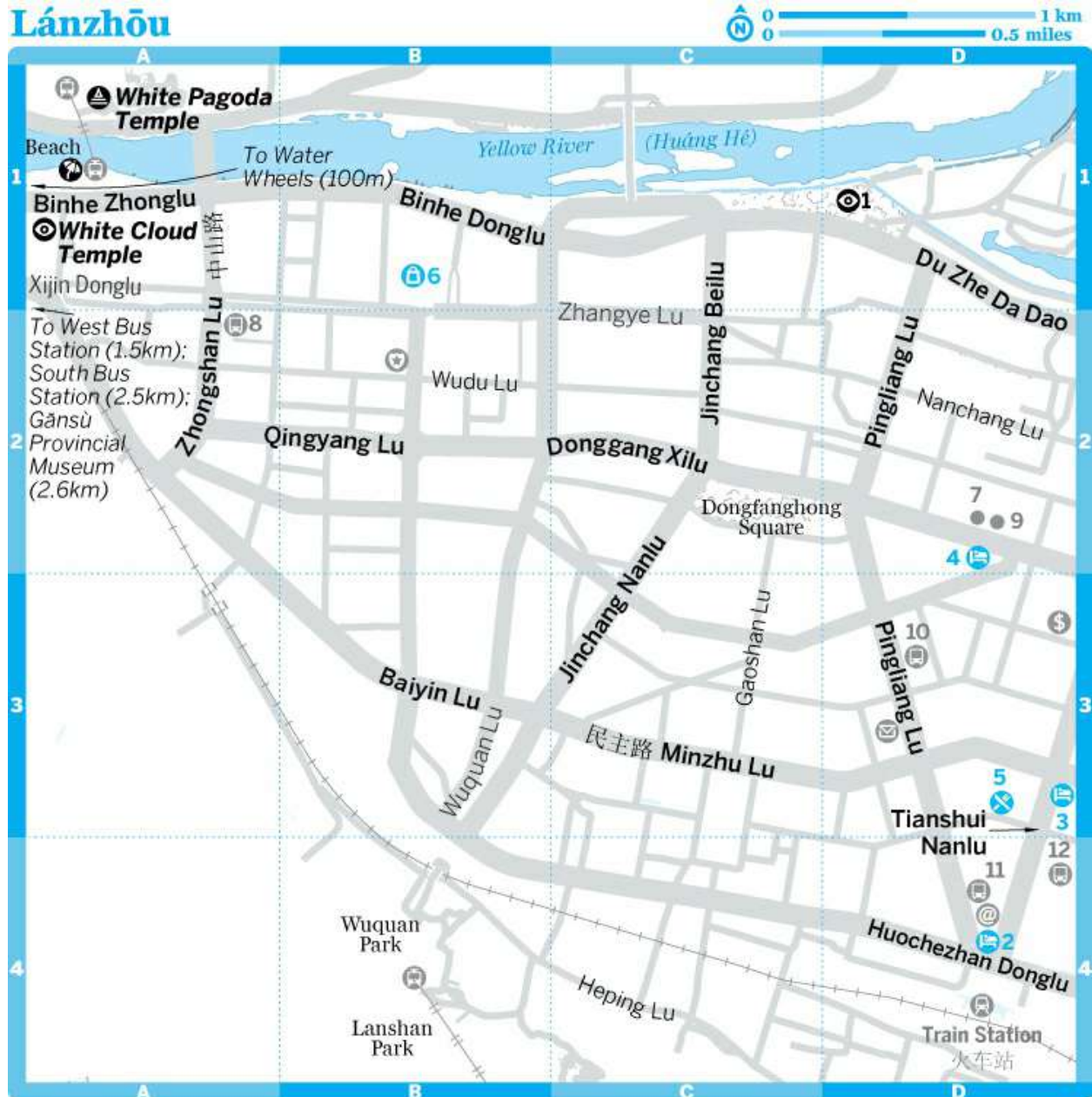
### **Lanzhou**

📍 0931 / POP 2.17 MILLION

Roughly at China's cartographic bullseye, Gansu's elongated capital marks the halfway point for overlanders trekking across the country. Growing up on a strategic stretch of the Yellow River (Huang He), and sitting between competing Chinese and Central Asian empires, Lanzhou frequently changed hands. Trapped between mountains, modern Lanzhou has frequent bad-air days when a grey sun sets anaemically over a hazy city.

The city sprawls in an inelegant east–west concrete melange for over 20km along the southern banks of the Yellow River. There are some attractive neighbourhoods along the northwest, and a pleasant riverside promenade, but most travellers will spend their time around the train station, home to an assortment of hotels and eateries.

# Lánzhōu



Lanzhou

📍 Top Sights

[White Cloud Temple](#) A1

[White Pagoda Temple](#) A1

📍 Sights

1 [Water Wheels](#) D1

🛏 Sleeping

2 [Hualian Binguan](#) D4

3 [Jinjiang Inn](#) D3

4 [JJ Sun Hotel](#) D2

 Eating

5 Hezheng Lu Night Market Entrance D3

 Shopping

6 [Chenghuang Miao](#) B1

Information

7 [Gansu Airport Booking Office](#) D2

 Transport

8 Bus 111 to South Bus Station A2

9 [China Eastern Airlines](#) D2

10 [East Bus Station](#) D3

11 [Main Long-Distance Bus Station](#) D4

12 [Tianshui Bus Station](#) D4

## Sights

 [Gansu Provincial Museum](#) MUSEUM

( Gansu Sheng Bowuguan; Xijin Xilu; 🕒 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) This sparkling museum has an intriguing collection of Silk Road artefacts, including inscribed Han- dynasty wooden tablets used to relay messages along the Silk Road. The graceful Eastern Han (25 BC–AD 220) bronze horse galloping upon the back of a swallow is known as the Flying Horse of Wuwei. Unearthed at Leitai, it has been reproduced across northwestern China. Among other items on view are Persian coins, some lovely Bodhisattva statues from Tiantishan and a collection of dinosaur skeletons. Bus 1, which departs from the train station, goes here.

 [White Pagoda Temple](#) BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(; Baita Si) This temple, originally built during the Yuan dynasty (1206–1368), stands near the zenith of White Pagoda Park ( Baita Shan; 🕒 6.30am-8.30pm), which winds up the near treeless northern bank of the Yellow River. The park also contains a collection of fake traditional pavilions, courtyards and temples. Enter from a gate on the north side

of Zhongshan Bridge or catch a cable car (up/down/return ¥35/25/45) on the south side a few blocks to the east. Bus 34 from the train station drops you off near the cable car.

White Cloud Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Baiyun Guan; Binhe Zhonglu; ☺ 7am-5.30pm) This largely rebuilt Qing-dynasty Taoist temple is an oasis of reverential calm at the heart of the city.

Water Wheels WATER WHEELS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shuiche Yuan; admission ¥6; ☺ 8am-6.30pm) These massive wooden structures are copies of irrigation devices that once lined the Yellow River. A few kilometres east, look for a larger collection of about a dozen wheels ( Lanzhou Shuiche Bolan Yuan; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-10pm).

## Sleeping

Most budget hostels around the train station won't accept foreigners (or are too dreary to recommend) and throughout the city even many midrange places are off limits, including some nationwide chains.

Hualian Binguan HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 499 2000; [www.lzhfbg.com](http://www.lzhfbg.com); 7-9 Tianshui Nanlu; 7-9 d/tw ¥319/399; 📞) This 360-room monster has comfortable updated rooms with broadband internet, a restaurant and a big lobby with a travel agency. The staff are friendly, but you'll have to put up with some traffic noise if you get a lower floor. The hotel is directly opposite the train station and has an English sign outside reading 'Lanzhou Mansions'. Expect discounts of 50%.

JJ Sun Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Yangguang Jiudian; 📍 880 5511; [www.jjsunhotel.com](http://www.jjsunhotel.com); 589 Donggang Xilu; 589 tw/d ¥800/900; 📞) This good four-star choice has well-groomed, spacious and affordable rooms. There's a pleasant wood-panelled restaurant on the 2nd floor. Discounts of 40% are usual.

## Lanzhou Huar Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Lanzhou Hua'er Guoji Qingnian Lushe'; 📍 9925 9808; Zone D, Lanzhou Creative Industry Park, 704 Duan Jia Tan Lu; 704 D dm/d without bathroom ¥35/135; 📶) Set in a warehouse area slowly morphing into a creative park, this friendly hostel has large dorm and private rooms. The unsegregated bathrooms are spic and span, and there is laundry, wi-fi, and an open loft area for lounging about and getting to know your fellow travellers. Contact the hostel if you want to catch a bus here, as it requires a transfer. A taxi from the train station costs ¥10.

## Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Zhixing; 📍 861 7333; Tianshui Nanlu; tw ¥219-289; 📶📶) Neat and tidy express business-style hotel around 1km north of the train station with unfussy, compact and well-maintained rooms and snappy service. No discounts, but great value.

## Eating

Lanzhou enjoys nationwide fame (take that as you will) for its *niuroumian* (牛肉面), beef noodle soup that's spicy enough to make you snort. Two handy phrases are '*jia rou*' (加肉; add beef) and '*buyao lajiao*' (不要辣; without chillies). There are plenty of places to try the dish on Tianshui Nanlu as you head up the road from the train station. This street is also lined with restaurants serving dumplings and noodle dishes. Most places have picture menus.

## Nengrenju HOTPOT \$\$

( 216 Tianshui Lu; hotpot starting at ¥20; 🕒 11am-10pm; 📍) At this tasty Beijing-style *shuan yangrou* (涮羊肉; traditional lamb hotpot) the pot of broth costs ¥20, after which you can add sliced mutton (¥30), greens (¥10) and various other dishes. If you go solo expect to spend at least ¥50. The restaurant is about 100m past the intersection with Minzhu Lu.

## Hezheng Lu Night Market MARKET \$

( Hezheng Lu Yeshichang Rukou) This bustling somewhat ramshackle market, extending from Tianshui Lu to Pingliang Lu, is terrific for savouring the flavours of the northwest. The mix of Hui, Han and

Uighur stalls offer everything from goat's head soup to steamed snails, *roujiabing* (; mutton served inside a 'pocket' of flat bread), lamb dishes seasoned with cumin, *dapanji* (; large plate of spicy chicken, noodles and potatoes), Sichuan hole-in-the-wall outfits, dumplings, spare-rib noodles and more.

## Shopping



Chenghuang Miao ANTIQUES

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( City God Temple; 202 Zhangye Lu) Jesus would probably not approve but this stately former house of Taoist worship has been turned into one of Lanzhou's best shopping venues. Vendors sell everything from Mao kitsch, to calligraphy, tea sets, exotic stones and some truly beautiful pottery, woodwork and antiquities. The temple is set back on the north side of Zhangye Lu (a pedestrian-only road) about 500m east of Zhongshan Lu.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Tianshui Lu; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri) Has an ATM and changes travellers cheques on the 2nd floor.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) On the 2nd floor, to the right of Hualian Binguan.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 871 8610; 482 Wudu Lu; ☺ 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri) The foreign-affairs branch is on the 2nd floor. Visa extensions take several days; one photo required.

**Western Travel Agency** ( Xibu Luxingshe; ☎ 882 0529; 486 Donggang Xilu) On the 2nd floor of the west wing of Lanzhou Fandian at the corner of Donggang Xilu and Tianshui Nanlu. Offers tours around Lanzhou (as far south as Xiahe) and ticket bookings.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Among other cities, Lanzhou has flights to Beijing (¥1340), Dunhuang (¥1380), Jiayuguan (¥1080), Kunming (¥1410), Shanghai (¥1750) and Xi'an (¥600).

**Gansu Airport Booking Office**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Gansu Jichang Shoupiao Zhongxin; ☎ 888 9666; 616 Donggang Xilu; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) Can book all air tickets at discounted prices.

#### Bus

Lanzhou has several bus stations, all with departures for Xining. The **main long-distance bus station**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( changtu chezhan; Pingliang Lu) is now just a ticket office, outside which you catch a shuttle bus 30 minutes before departure for the **east bus station**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( qiche dongzhan; Pingliang Lu). Most bus journeys back into Lanzhou end up at the east bus station; if you want to rough it on a sleeper to Zhangye or Jiayuguan, buy a ticket directly at that station.

A new bus station had opened at the time of writing 150m east of the train station on Huochezhan Donglu. It offers most of the same routes as the main long-distance and east bus stations.

For journeys to the south of Gansu head to the **south bus station** ( qiche nanzhan; Langongping Lu).

From the main long-distance bus station:

**Pingliang** ¥119, five hours, hourly (7am to 6pm)

**Tianshui** ¥75.50, four hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 6pm)

**Wuwei** ¥62.5, four hours, once daily (8.50am)

**Xining** ¥59, three hours, every 30 minutes (7.10am to 8.10pm)

**Yinchuan** ¥124, six hours, seven per day (7am to 8pm)

The following services depart from the south bus station:

**Hezuo** ¥74, four hours, every 20 minutes (8am to 5pm)

**Langmusi** ¥117, eight hours, two daily (8.40am and 9.40am)

**Linxia** ¥35, three hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 7pm)

**Xiahe** ¥75, four hours, five daily (7am to 3pm)

The **west bus station** ( qiche xizhan; Xijin Xilu) has frequent departures to Liujiaxia (¥19.50, 2½ hours, 7am to 6pm) if you are heading to Bingling Si.

Hidden off the main street, the **Tianshui bus station**[Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Tianshui Qichezhan; Tianshui Lu) has buses for eastern Gansu, including Luomen (¥55, four hours, hourly). To find the station, look for a large WC sign and turn right into the narrow alley.

## Train

Lanzhou is the major rail link for trains heading to and from western China. In summer buy your onward tickets a couple of days in advance to guarantee a sleeper berth. For Xining you are probably better off taking a bus, as service is more frequent and Xining's train station has moved to the outskirts of town. For Dunhuang make sure to get a train to the town itself and not Liuyuan, a time-wasting 180km away. For details on trains to Lhasa, [Click here](#).

There are frequent trains to the following:

**Dunhuang** hard/soft sleeper ¥246/383, 13 hours (two per day direct to Dunhuang at 5.50pm and 7.10pm; the rest go to Liuyuan)

**Jiayuguan** hard/soft seat ¥103/160, seven to eight hours; hard/soft sleeper ¥179/275, 11 hours

**Urumqi** hard/soft sleeper ¥365/574, 24 hours

**Wuwei** hard/soft seat ¥44/72, 3½ hours

**Xi'an** hard/soft sleeper ¥164/252, nine hours

**Zhangye** hard/soft seat ¥76/119, five to six hours

## Getting Around

Lanzhou's streets are filled with vehicles these days and traffic jams are common. Give yourself plenty of time to get around, especially if you have a morning bus or train to catch. The airport is 70km north of the city. Airport buses leave hourly from 5am to 7pm in front of **China Eastern Airlines** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Dongfang Hangkong Gongsi; 586 Donggang Xilu). The trip costs ¥30 and takes 60 minutes. A taxi costs around ¥150 though you might be able to find a shared taxi across the street from where the airport buses leave.

Useful bus routes:

**Buses 1 and 6** From the train station to the west bus station via Xiguan Shizi.

**Bus 111** From Zhongshan Lu (at the Xiguan Shizi stop; 111 ) to the south bus station.

**Buses 7 and 10** From the train station up the length of Tianshui Nanlu before heading west and east, respectively.

Public buses cost ¥1; taxis are ¥7 for the first 3km. A taxi from the train station to the south bus station costs ¥15.



## THE BUDDHA CAVES & POTATO TERRACES OF BINGLING SI

With its relative inaccessibility, Bingling Si ( admission ¥50) is one of the few Buddhist grottoes in China to have survived the tumultuous 20th century unscathed. Which is a good thing, as during a period spanning 1600 years, sculptors dangling from ropes carved 183 niches and sculptures into the porous rock of steep canyon walls. Today the cliffs are isolated by the waters of the Liujiaxia Reservoir (Liujiaxia Shuiku) on the Yellow River and hemmed in by a ring of dramatic rock citadels. The cave art can't compare to Dunhuang but the setting and the remarkable terraced landscaped you pass getting here make Bingling Si an unmissable day trip from Lanzhou. As with other Silk Road grottoes, wealthy patrons, often traders along the route west, sponsored the development of Bingling Si, which reached its height during the prosperous Tang dynasty. The star of the caves is the 27m-high seated statue of Maitreya, the future Buddha, but some of the smaller, sway-hipped Bodhisattvas and guardians, bearing an obvious Indian influence, are equally exquisite.

As you loop around past the Maitreya cave, consider hiking 2.5km further up the impressive canyon to a small Tibetan monastery. There might also be jeeps running the route.

You can visit Bingling Si as a day trip from Lanzhou or en route to Linxia. The caves are reached via the town of Liujiaxia either by boat or taxi. Frequent buses from Lanzhou's west bus station (¥19.50, 2½ hours) run to Liujiaxia and will drop you off a short walk from the boat ticket office (1km before Liujiaxia itself) or at the town's main bus station, where you can hire a taxi. Try to catch the earliest buses possible from Lanzhou (starting at 7am) to avoid getting stuck on the way back. The last return bus to Lanzhou leaves at 6.30pm.

The going rate for a covered speedboat (seating up to eight people) is ¥700 for the one-hour journey. The boat ticket office is good at hooking up independent travellers with small groups; expect to pay

around ¥100 per person in this case.

Surprisingly, the much more scenic route to the caves is by taxi (¥250 return). Out of Liujiaxia, the road runs high into the rugged hills above the reservoir, and for 90 minutes you will twist and turn, dip and rise through a wonderland of potato-growing terraces laddering and layering every slope, mound, outcrop and ravine. The final descent to the green-blue reservoir, with its craggy backdrop, is sublime.

If heading to Linxia after the caves, there are frequent buses from the station at Liujiaxia.

## Linxia

### TRANSPORT HUB

📞 0930 / POP 198,600

Han China runs out of steam and hits the buffers here in this overt stronghold of Chinese Islam. Linxia isn't quite a destination in itself, but many travellers break up the trip to or from Xiahe or points in Qinghai.

### Sleeping & Eating

As you walk out of the bus station onto Jiefang Lu, you'll find both sides lined with small noodle restaurants and decent budget hotels all asking around ¥68 to ¥88 for a room without a bathroom and ¥158 to ¥188 for one with.

About 1km north of the train station (head right as you exit), on the west (left) of Zhongxin Guangchang (; Centre Sq) look for a night market with rows of vendors selling lamb kebabs (¥1 each) and *sha guo* (; mini hotpots; ¥10).

## MINORITY COMMUNITIES AROUND LINXIA

Spilling over a ridge high above Linxia and home to both Hui and Dongxiang minorities, the little market town of Suonanba (; population 12,000) has a single street that's a hive of activity, with locals trading wares and occasional shepherds shooing flocks about.

The town is sometimes also called Dongxiang ( ) after the surrounding county. The Dongxiang people speak an Altaic language and are believed to be descendants of 13th-century immigrants from Central Asia, moved forcibly to China after Kublai Khan's Middle East conquest.

Dahejia ( ; population 4500), with sweeping views over the Yellow River, towering red cliffs and (in summer) verdant green terraces, is equally a kaleidoscope of colour. The surrounding area is home to a significant population of Bao'an ( ), Muslims who speak a Mongolic language. The Bao'an are famed for producing knives and share cultural traits with the Hui and Dongxiang. Their Mongol roots come out during summer festivals, when it is possible to see displays of wrestling and horse riding.

To Suonanba, frequent minibuses (¥7, one hour) head up on the pleasant journey past terraced fields from Linxia's east bus station.

You can visit Dahejia when travelling on the road between Linxia and Xining. Most buses between the two will stop here. From Linxia you can also catch a frequent minibus (¥25, three hours) from the station called *chengjiao qiche zhan* ( ) on the outskirts of town.

## Jinhe Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 631 1301; Qian He Yanlu; tw without/with bathroom ¥88/168; 🌐📞 )

In this alcohol-free hotel, rooms sport a relaxed modern design with just a few carpet stains to spoil the effect. From the south bus station exit, turn right and walk 300m to the first big intersection. Cross and turn left down Qian He Yanlu. The hotel is about 50m down.

### **i** Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Jiefang Lu; 🕒 8.30am-5pm Mon-Fri) is 400m up Jiefang Lu to the right as you exit the south bus station. There's a 24-hour ATM here and you can change travellers cheques.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Linxia has three long-distance bus stations: south (*nanzhan*), west (*xizhan*) and east (*dongzhan*). You may be dropped off at the west bus station but it is of little use otherwise. Bus 6 links the south and the west bus stations, or a taxi is ¥5.

From the east bus station:

**Dongxiang** ¥7, one hour, frequent

**Liujiaxia** ¥16, three hours, frequent

From the south bus station:

**Hezuo** ¥30, two hours, every 30 minutes

**Lanzhou** ¥34, three hours, every 20 minutes

**Xiahe** ¥31, 2½ hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 5pm)

**Xining** ¥64, eight hours, one daily (6am)

One interesting side route is to the Mengda Nature Reserve in Qinghai. The fastest way here is a bus to Dahejia (see boxed text below), followed by a taxi for the last 15km.

If you're on the slow road to Qinghai, buses to Xunhua (¥50, 3½ hours, 8am to 3.30pm) leave every hour or two from a courtyard behind the Tianhe Fandian () hotel. To get here, walk about 300m from the south bus station (turning right as you exit) to the first intersection and then turn right and walk 350m to the hotel. From Xunhua you'll find onward transport to Xining or Tongren.

## Xiahe

☞ 0941 / POP 70,000

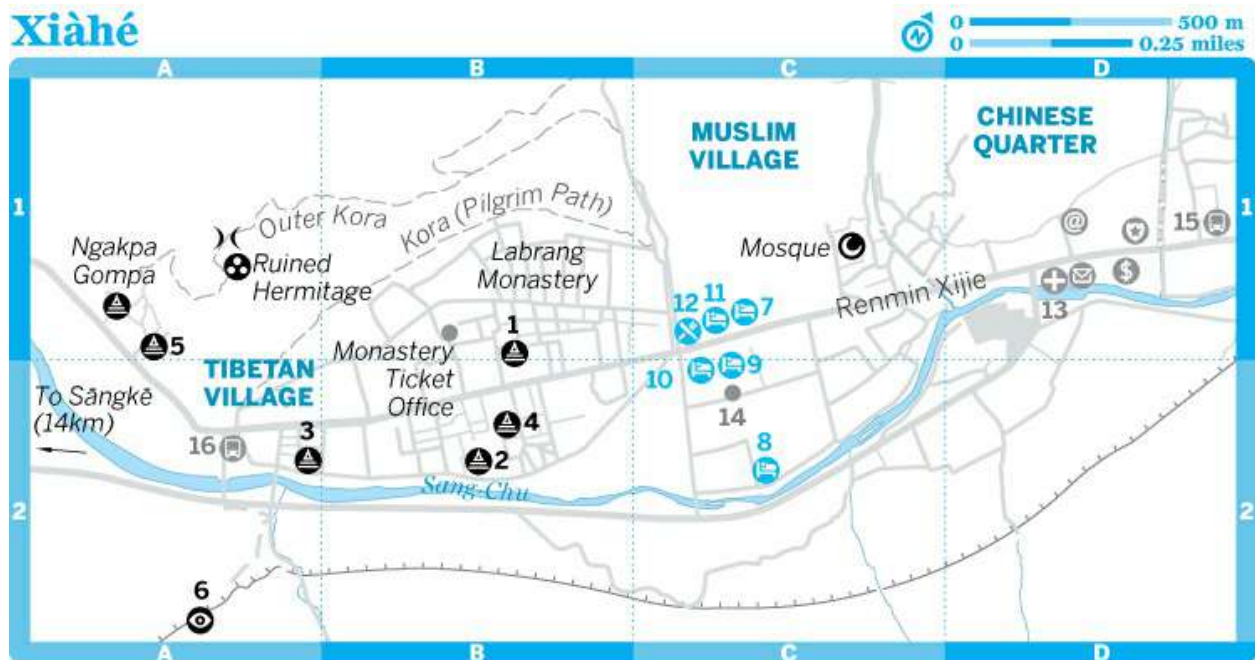
The alluring monastic town of Xiahe attracts an astonishing band of visitors: backpack-laden students, insatiable wanderers, shaven-headed Buddhist nuns, Tibetan nomads in their most colourful finery, camera-toting tour groups and dusty, itinerant beggars. Most visitors are rural Tibetans, whose purpose is to pray, prostrate themselves and seek spiritual fulfilment at holy Labrang Monastery (Labuleng Si).

In a beautiful mountain valley at 2920m above sea level, Xiahe has a certain rhythm about it and visitors quickly tap into its fluid motions. The rising sun sends pilgrims out to circle the 3km *kora* (pilgrim path) that rings the monastery. Crimson-clad monks shuffle into the temples to chant morning prayers. It's easy to get swept up in the action, but some of the best moments come as you set your own pace, wandering about town or in the splendid encircling mountains.

The Xiahe area was long part of the Tibetan region of Amdo. As a microcosm of southwestern Gansu, the three principal ethnic groups are represented here. In rough terms, Xiahe's population is 50% Tibetan, 40% Han and 10% Hui. Labrang Monastery marks the division between Xiahe's mainly Han and Hui Chinese eastern quarter and the scruffy Tibetan village to the west.

Despite Xiahe's ostensible tranquillity, these ethnic groups don't necessarily mix peacefully. The Tibetan community maintains a strong solidarity with their brethren on the plateau, and demonstrations and rioting here in the wake of the 2008 riots in Lhasa led to the region being closed for nearly two years.

## Xiàhé



### Xiahe

#### Sights

- 1 [Barkhang](#) B1
- 2 [Dewatsang Chapel](#) B2
- 3 [Gongtang Chörten](#) A2
- 4 [Hall of Hayagriva](#) B2
- 5 [Nunnery](#) A1
- 6 [Thangka Display Terrace](#) A2

#### Sleeping

- 7 [Labrang Baoma Hotel](#) C1
- 8 [Labrang Red Rock International Hostel](#) C2
- 9 [Overseas Tibetan Hotel](#) C2
- 10 [Tara Guesthouse](#) C2
- 11 [White Stupa Hotel](#) C1

#### Eating

Cesar Restaurant (see 12)

[Everest Cafe](#) (see 9)

12 [Nomad Restaurant](#) C1

Information

13 Deshengtang Pharmacy D1

14 [OT Travels & Tours](#) C2

 Transport

15 Bus Station D1

16 Buses to Dajiutan A2

## Sights

Labrang Monastery MONASTERY

( Labuleng Si; admission ¥40) With its endless squeaking prayer wheels (3km in total length), hawks circling overhead and the deep throb of Tibetan trumpets resonating from the surrounding hills, Labrang is a monastery in the entire sense of the word.

In addition to the chapels, residences, golden-roofed temple halls and living quarters for the monks, Labrang is also home to six *tratsang* (monastic colleges or institutes), exploring esoteric Buddhism, theology, medicine, astrology and law. Many of the chapel halls are illuminated in a yellow glow by yak-butter lamps, their strong-smelling fuel scooped out from voluminous tubs. Even if Tibet is not on your itinerary, the monastery sufficiently conveys the esoteric mystique of its devout persuasions, leaving indelible impressions of a deeply sacred domain.

Labrang Monastery was founded in 1709 by Ngagong Tsunde (E'angzongzhe in Chinese), the first-generation Jamyang (a line of reincarnated Rinpoches or living Buddhas ranking third in importance after the Dalai and Panchen lamas), from nearby Ganjia. The monastery is one of the six major Tibetan monasteries of the Gelugpa order (Yellow Hat sect of Tibetan Buddhism). The others are Ganden, Sera and Drepung monasteries near Lhasa; Tashilhunpo Monastery in Shigatse; and Kumbum (Ta'er Si; [Click here](#)) near Xining, Qinghai.

At its peak, Labrang housed nearly 4000 monks, but their ranks greatly declined during the Cultural Revolution. Numbers are recovering, and are currently restricted to 1800 monks, drawn from Qinghai, Gansu, Sichuan and Inner Mongolia.

## Main Buildings

The only way to visit the interior of the most important buildings is with a tour, which generally includes the Institute of Medicine, the Manjushri Temple, the Serkung (Golden Temple) and the main Prayer Hall (Grand Sutra Hall), plus a museum of relics and yak-butter sculptures. English tours (per person ¥40) of the monastery leave the ticket office (; Shoupiao chu) around 10.15am and 3.15pm; take the morning tour if you can, as there's more to see. An alternative is to latch on to a Chinese tour. Even better is to show up at around 6am or 7am to be with the monks. At dusk the hillside resonates with the throaty sound of sutras being chanted behind the wooden doors.

## Other Buildings

The rest of the monastery can be explored by walking the *kora* (see boxed text, [Click here](#)). Although many of the temple halls are padlocked shut, there are a couple of separate smaller chapels you can visit, though one never knows when they will be closed for unexplained reasons. Some charge admission, though again, if no one is staffing the ticket booth just go in.

The three-storey Barkhang [Offline map](#) (admission ¥10) is the monastery's traditional printing press. With rows upon rows of more than 20,000 wood blocks for printing, it's well worth a visit, and photos are allowed. The Barkhang is off the main road down a small side lane. Ask your guide for the latest opening hours.

The Hall of Hayagriva [Offline map](#) (; Matou Mingwang Dian; Hall of Horsehead Buddha), destroyed during the Cultural Revolution, was reopened in 2007. A repository of vivid and bright murals, the hall also encapsulates a startlingly fierce 12m-high effigy of Hayagriva – a wrathful manifestation of the usually calm Avalokiteshvara (Guanyin) – with six arms and three faces. The hall is down a side lane almost directly across from the lane to the Barkhang.

With an interior splashed with murals and illuminated by a combination of yak-butter lamps and electric light bulbs by the thousand, the 31m-tall Gongtang Chörten [Offline map](#) (Gongtang Baota; admission ¥20) is a perennial favourite with visitors. Head up to the roof for views across a landscape dotted with the port-red figures of monks. At the rear of the stupa look for a Sleeping Buddha (; Wofu),

which depicts Sakyamuni on the cusp of entering nirvana. Both the stupa and the chapel below are accessed by gates that face the river. If you follow the *kora* path you will pass by them.

The Dewatsang Chapel [Offline map](#) ( Dewacang Wenshu Fodian; admission ¥10), built in 1814, ranges over four floors and houses a vast 12m-statue of Manjushri (Wenshu) and thousands of Buddhas in cabinets around the walls.

Access to the rest of the monastery area is free, and you can easily spend several hours just walking around and soaking up the atmosphere in the endless maze of mud-packed walls. The Tibetan greeting in the local Amdo dialect is ‘*Cho day mo?*’ (How do you do?) – a great icebreaker.

The best morning views of the monastery come from the Thangka Display Terrace [Offline map](#), a popular picnic spot, or the forested hills south of the main town.

Nunnery BUDDHIST

[Offline map](#)

This nunnery (; *ani gompa* in Tibetan, *nigu'an* in Chinese) is on the hill above the Tibetan part of town. The higher *kora* path begins just to the left of here.

## Tours

Lohsang at OT Travels & Tours and the staff at Tara Guesthouse are both excellent resources for information and tours of the surrounding area.

## WALK LIKE A TIBETAN

Following the 3km *kora* (pilgrim path) encircling Labrang Monastery is perhaps the best approach to grasping its layout, scale and significance. Lined with long rows of squeaking prayer wheels, whitewashed *chörtens* (Tibetan stupas) and chapels, the *kora* passes Gongtang Chörten and Dewatsang Chapel. Tibetan pilgrims with beads in their hands and sunhats on their heads, old folk, mothers with babies and children, shabby nomads and more walk in meditative fashion clockwise along the path (called *zhuanjingdao*, ‘scripture-turning way’ in Chinese), rotating prayer wheels as they go. Look also for the tiny meditation cells on the northern hillside.

For a short hike, the more strenuous outer *kora* path takes about an hour and climbs



high above the monastery. To reach the start, head past the monastery's western edges and about one block into the Tibetan village look for a large signpost (in Tibetan but it's the only one around) on the right. Follow the alley up, and make your way to the ridge, where you wind steeply uphill to a collection of prayer flags and the ruins of a hermitage. The views of the monastery open up as you go along. At the end of the ridge there's a steep descent into town.

## Festivals & Events

Festivals are central to the calendar for both the devotional monks and the nomads who stream into town from the grasslands in multicoloured splendour. Tibetans use a lunar calendar, so dates for individual festivals vary from year to year.

### Monlam (Great Prayer) Festival BUDDHIST

This festival starts three days after the Tibetan New Year, which is usually in February or early March. On the morning of the 13th day of the festival, more than 100 monks carry a huge *thangka* (sacred painting on cloth) of the Buddha, measuring more than 30m by 20m, and unfurl it on the hill facing the monastery. This is accompanied by spectacular processions and prayer assemblies.

On the 14th day there is an all-day session of Cham dances performed by 35 masked dancers, with Yama, the lord of death, playing the leading role. On the 15th day there is an evening display of butter lanterns and sculptures. On the 16th day the Maitreya statue is paraded around the monastery.

During the second month (usually starting in March or early April) there are several interesting festivals, with a procession of monastery relics on the seventh day.

## Sleeping

Overseas Tibetan Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Huaqiao Fandian; 📞 712 2642; [www.overseastibetanhotel.com](http://www.overseastibetanhotel.com); 77 Renmin Xijie; 77 dm ¥50, d ¥200-300; @📶) Well-run and bustling place, owned by the energetic and bouncy Jesuit-educated Lohsang, a likeable Tibetan with faultless English who runs the *kora* most

mornings. The winter of 2012 saw a complete renovation of the guesthouse including the adoption of solar power to ensure 24/7 hot showers. Services include internet access (¥5) in the lobby, the Everest Cafe (with free wi-fi), bike hire (per day ¥20), laundry and a travel agency.

Labrang Red Rock International Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Labuleng Hongshi Guoji Qingnian Luguan; 📍 712 3698; 253 Yagetang; 253 8-/4-bed dm ¥40/45, d ¥120; @) This Tibetan-themed, very quiet hostel has varnished pine-wood rooms, solar-powered hot showers, internet, a restaurant and bar area, and a beautiful display of *thangka*. Doubles are clean and spacious, and YHA card holders get a discount. To get here, walk past the Tara Guesthouse, turn left and then left again at the last street before the river.

Tara Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#)

( Zhuoma Lushe; 📍 712 1274; 268 Yagetang; 268 dm ¥15, s/tw without bathroom ¥30-40/¥60-100, d with bathroom ¥180; 📶) This long-running budget place is run by monks from Sichuan and has frugal dorms, small, comfortable *kang* rooms (shared shower room, no phone), and larger doubles with private bathrooms. Lower-floor rooms are arranged around a courtyard while those on the upper floors have bright common sitting areas. The attached restaurant serves some of the best *momo* (Tibetan dumplings; ¥15) around. English is spoken at the front desk.

Labrang Baoma Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Labuleng Baoma Binguan; 📍 712 1078; [www.labranghotel.com](http://www.labranghotel.com); 77 Renmin Xijie; 77 5-bed dm ¥35, r from ¥480; @) Pleasant and vibrantly colourful hotel with friendly staff, nice interior Tibetan-style courtyard and comfortable en suite doubles. Discounts of 50% are common.

White Stupa Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Qudeng Gabu Binguan; 📍 712 2866; Renmin Xijie; d/tw ¥168/288; @) Directly across from the Overseas Tibetan Hotel, this friendly place has clean bright rooms with en suite bathrooms and broadband

internet. Expect discounts of 20%.

## Eating & Drinking

For those of you who can't make it to Tibet, Xiahe provides an opportunity to develop an appetite for the flavours of the Land of Snows, whether it's *momo*, *tsampa* (a porridge of roasted barley flour), yak-milk yoghurt or throat-warming glasses of the local firewater. Most hotels and guesthouses have their own attached restaurants, and it seems the entire 2nd floor of the main street is all eateries; finding an English menu in this crowd is not hard.



### Gesar Restaurant TIBETAN \$

(dishes ¥8-35; 📶) This simple, family-run restaurant on the 1st floor of the same building as the Nomad Restaurant, takes care to bring out tasty dishes with very fresh ingredients (the yoghurt is the best around). There's a long selection of real vegetarian dishes, as well as stews, traditional Tibetan staples such as *momo*, *tsampa* and fried bread, and a decent a la carte Western breakfast menu.

Nomad Restaurant TIBETAN \$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Mumin Qiquan Fanzhuang; dishes ¥5-35; 📶📶) From the commanding views of the monastery and *kora* route of this 3rd-floor perch, get into the swing of things with some hot yak milk, boiled yak meat (¥58), a bowl of *tsampa*, a plate of *momo* and a volatile shot of Nomad barley alcohol. Western breakfast items, fruit shakes and a good range of Chinese dishes round out the menu.

Everest Cafe CAFE \$

### [Offline map](#)

(77 Renmin Xijie; 77 dishes ¥15-40; 🕒 7am-late; 📶📶) Attached to the Overseas Tibetan Hotel, this is a popular spot for set Western breakfasts (¥25), lunch or a late-night beer.

## Shopping

Xiahe is an excellent place to look for Tibetan handicrafts, so why not don a cowboy hat or a Tibetan trilby, enshroud yourself in a *chuba* (Tibetan cloak), light up some juniper incense, wrap your head in a

furry yellow monk's hat, jump into a pair of monk's boots, flap a prayer flag or shell out for brocaded silks, *thangka*, Tibetan-style tents or a silver teapot? Stacks of handicraft shops line the upper part of the main road, before the monastery walls, and some painting shops are found off the lower *kora* route alongside the river.


### **Information**

Free wi-fi is becoming increasingly common in restaurants, and the Overseas Tibetan Hotel has computers for ¥5 per hour in the lobby. Internet cafes around town require Chinese ID, though some will allow you to use their ID. Try the **internet cafe** (; wangba; per hr ¥3) in the far back left corner of the modern plaza across from China Post.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; ☎ 8am-6pm)

**Deshengtang Pharmacy** ( Deshengtang Yaodian) Western, Chinese and Tibetan medicine; just west of China Post.

**Industrial & Commercial Bank of China** (ICBC; Gongshang Yinhang) Has an ATM and changes US dollars but not travellers cheques.

**OT Travels & Tours**[Offline map](#) ( 1390 9419 888; amdolosang@hotmail.com) This reliable travel agency at the Overseas Tibetan Hotel can arrange cars and guides to nearby sights, and also specialises in overland tours from Lanzhou, Xining and Chengdu to Xiahe.

### **Getting There & Away**

There is no airport in Xiahe, nor do trains run there, but it's regularly serviced by bus. Most travellers head on to either Lanzhou or Sichuan; the road less travelled takes you over the mountains to Tongren in Qinghai.

The following bus services depart from Xiahe:

**Hezuo** ¥14.50, one hour, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 5.30pm)

**Langmusi** ¥72, four hours, one daily (7.40am)

**Lanzhou** ¥75, four hours, four daily (6.30am, 7.30am, 8.30am and 2.30pm)

**Linxia** ¥31, two hours, every 30 minutes (6am to 5.30pm)

**Tongren** ¥31, 2½ hours, one daily (7.30am)

**Xining** ¥78, seven hours, one daily (6.10am)

If you can't get a direct ticket to/from Lanzhou, take a bus to Linxia or Hezuo and change there. If you are heading to Xining, note that buses run there every 40 minutes from Tongren.

### **i** Getting Around

Hotels and restaurants hire bikes for ¥20 per day. Taxis cost ¥1 to ¥2 per seat for a short trip around town, including to the bus station and monastery.

## **Around Xiahe**

### **SANGKE GRASSLANDS**

Expanses of open grassland dotted with Tibetans and their grazing yak herds highlight a trip to the village of Sangke (), 14km from Xiahe. Development has turned the area into a small circus, complete with touristy horse rides and fake tourist yurts, but there is good hiking in the nearby hills and you can keep going to more distant and pristine grasslands in the direction of Amchog. You can cycle up to Sangke in about one hour. A taxi costs ¥50 return. Note that the grasslands are best in the summer months.

### **GANJIA GRASSLANDS**

The Ganjia Grasslands (Ganjia Caoyuan), 34km from Xiahe, aren't as pretty as at Sangke but there is more to explore. From Xiahe the bumpy road crosses the Naren-Ka pass before quickly descending into wide grasslands dotted with herds of sheep and backed by ever-more dramatic mountain scenery. Past Ganjia Xian village, a side road climbs 12km to Nekhang ( Baishi Ya Rong dong; admission ¥20), a cave complex where pilgrims lower themselves down ropes and ladders into two sacred underground chambers. A Dutch traveller fell to his death here in 2006, and to prevent the same fate we advise avoiding this place.

Just up the road from the caves is Trakkar Gompa ( Baishiya Si; admission ¥15), a monastery of 90 monks set against a stunning backdrop of vertical rock formations. From Trakkar it's a short drive to the 2000-year-old Han-dynasty village of Bajiao ( Karnang in Tibetan;

admission ¥10). The remarkable 12-sided walls here still shelter a small living community. From the village it's a short 5km diversion to the renovated Tseway Gompa ( Zuohai Si; admission ¥20), one of the few Bön monasteries in Gansu. Make sure you circumnavigate any holy site counterclockwise in the Bön fashion. There are great views of Bajiao from the ridge behind the monastery.

A four- to five-hour return trip to the Ganjia Grasslands costs around ¥180 for a taxi from Xiahe. If you want an English-speaking driver and guide (which will cost more), contact OT Travels & Tours.

## Hiking

It's possible to hike over several days from the Ganjia Grasslands to 4636m-high Dalijia Shan (; Dalijia Mountain), but you will need to be well equipped. Summer is the best season for such treks as you have more daylight hours and warmer weather. There are also treks between Tibetan villages and around Daowei Tibetan Village (; Daowei Zangzu Xiang; also called Guru).

OT Travels & Tours in Xiahe ([Click here](#)) can advise on these and other trips and arrange a car for four people for ¥350 and an English-speaking guide (for another ¥350); they can also arrange fun camping trips for overnighing on the grasslands.

## Hezuo

 0941 / POP 76,000

The booming regional capital of Gannan () prefecture, Hezuo is a transit point for travellers plying the excellent overland route between Gansu and Sichuan provinces. The city is also the sight of the incredible Milarepa Palace, a bewitching Tibetan temple ranging spectacularly over nine floors.

Hezuo is a fairly compact town, with a large public square (; Wenhua Guangchang) roughly halfway between the two bus stations. You'll find banks with ATMs around the square. Most taxi rides around town cost ¥2.

## Sights

## Milarepa Palace BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Sekhar Gutok; Jiuceng Foge; admission ¥20; ☺ 7am-6pm) About 2km from the bus station along the main road towards Xiahe is this towering temple, ringed by prayer wheels. The port-coloured building is highly unusual in the Tibetan world in that different spiritual leaders from varying sects are worshipped on each floor. The ground-floor hall is a powerful spectacle: a galaxy of Bodhisattvas, Buddhist statues and celestial figures gloomily illuminated by yak-butter lamps. Climb upstairs to a further rich display of lamas and living Buddhas on the 2nd floor. More deities muster on the 4th floor and an unsettling array of fearsome, blue and turquoise tantric effigies awaits on the 6th floor. Make your way to the 8th floor for further effigies of Sakyamuni and Guanyin, and views over the hills and town. The town's main monastery, Tso Gompa (admission free; ☺ 8am-6pm), is next door. A taxi here costs ¥2 to ¥3 from the central main bus station.

### **Sleeping & Eating**

There are restaurants around the public square, and also around the bus stations. Across the road from the entrance to the central main station, look for a Muslim restaurant (dishes ¥4-10) with a picture menu outside. Try the *ganbanmian* (; ¥10), a type of spaghetti bolognese with hand-pulled noodles.

With Xiahe just an hour to the north there is little reason to stay here, and cheap hotels are loath to take foreigners. If you get stuck, the Gannan Fandian ( 📞 821 4733; Maqu Xilu; tw ¥180-260, discounts of 20%; \*@) has decent, clean and bright doubles with shower and internet; it's on the southwest corner of the public square.

### **Getting There & Away**

Hezuo is where buses from Zöige (Ruo'ergai), in Sichuan, and Langmusi and Xiahe meet. There is a train booking office just outside the central bus station (though no trains pass through here).

Services from the central main bus station (; *changtu qichezhan*) :

**Lanzhou** ¥74, four hours, every 30 minutes

**Linxia** ¥30, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes

**Xiahe** ¥14.50, 1½ hours, every 30 minutes

From the south bus station (; *qiche nan zhan*) :

**Langmusi** ¥33 to ¥50, three hours, three daily (7am, 10.20am and 12.20pm)

**Zöige** ¥78, 3½ hours, one daily (7.30am)

A taxi between the two bus stations costs ¥2 per person, or take bus 1 (¥1).

## Langmusi

📍 0941 / POP 3000

Straddling the border between Sichuan and Gansu is Langmusi (Taktsang Lhamo in Tibetan), an expanding and modernising alpine Amdo Tibetan village nestled among steep grassy meadows, evergreen forests of slender pine trees brushing the sky, crumbling stupas, piles of *mani* stones and snow-clad peaks. Lovely and moist compared to the lowlands, Langmusi is a delightful place, surrounded by countless red and white monastery buildings, flapping prayer flags and the mesmerising sound of monks chanting at twilight.

The White Dragon River (; Bailong Jiang) divides the town into two and the Sichuan side has quickly become the far nicer part to stay in. From where the bus drops you off on the scruffy main street, walk up the road about three blocks and then turn left. The well-paved street runs a few blocks up to the Kerti monastery and is lined with a range of hostels, hotels and eateries.

### Sights

Kerti Gompa MONASTERY

( Geerdi Si; admission valid 3 days ¥30) Rising up on the Sichuan side of the river is this monastery – otherwise dubbed the Sichuan Monastery – built in 1413, home to around 700 monks, and composed of five temples and colleges. A short walk from the monastery stand small pavilions built over a brook whose waters power a round-the-clock revolving of prayer wheels housed inside (the *ne plus ultra* of holiness)! Just across from the entrance is a small Hui Muslim village with yellow houses and central mosque. The best time to visit the monastery is in the morning (7am to 8am and 10.30am to 1pm) and



late afternoon (6pm to 8pm).

### Serti Gompa MONASTERY

( Saichi Si; admission ¥30) On the Gansu side, higher up the hill, is this smaller monastery with golden- and silver-roofed halls. The monastery dates from 1748 and is simply referred to as Gansu Monastery. The best time to visit is in the morning (7am to 8am and 10.30am to 1pm) and late afternoon (6pm to 8pm). At all times of day the views are lovely from up here.

## Activities

### Hiking

Bountiful hiking opportunities radiate in almost every direction. For reasonably priced guides for all-day or overnight treks, including Huagaishen Shan (; 4200m), see the horse-trekking companies on the following page.

Southwest of Kerti Gompa is Namogorge (; Namogorge), which makes for a superlative two- to three-hour (return) hike. The gorge contains several sacred grottoes, one dedicated to the Tibetan goddess Palden Lhamo, the other known as the Fairy Cave (; Xiannu Dong), which gives the town its Tibetan name (*langmu* meaning fairy). Cross rickety bridges flung over the gushing stream, trek past piles of *mani* stones and prayer flags, and hike on into a splendid ravine. After about 30 minutes of clambering over rocks you reach a grassy plain surrounded by towering peaks.

Another popular trek is the hike along the White Dragon River to the river's source (; Bailong Jiang Yuantou), where Chinese hikers go in search of *chongcao* (), a coveted herb used in Chinese medicine.

A lovely walk heads out over the hills along a narrow paved road from the stupa at Serti Gompa to the small village of Jikehe Cun (). This hike can be combined with the White Dragon River source. When you reach the village, simply follow the loop and then head down a dirt path towards the valley below. Watch out for local dogs.

For some glorious open views over Xiahe, trek up the coxcomblike Red Stone Mountain (; Hongshi Ya). To start, turn right one street down (heading out of Langmusi) past the intersection where the bus

drops you off.

## Horse Trekking

The mountain trails around Langmusi offer spectacular riding opportunities. There are two outfits in town offering similar one- to four-day treks overnighting at nomads' tents and with the option of climbing nearby peaks along the way. Langmusi Tibetan Horse Trekking (☎ 667 1504; [www.langmusi.net](http://www.langmusi.net)), across from the Black Tent Cafe, is the more established outfit. Horse rental per day is ¥260 for a single traveller; ¥200 for two or more. In addition to guide, food and sleeping bags, trips include a package on nomad culture.

Wind Horse Trekking (☎ 151 0944 1588), opposite the China Telecom office on the main road, offers similar packages starting at ¥180 per day (bring your own sleeping bag).

Both companies have friendly English-speaking staff and are good sources of travel information.

## Biking

With long, rambling and relatively quiet highways nearby, and many dirt tracks snaking into the hills, Langmusi is well worth exploring on two wheels. In addition to biking up to Red Stone Mountain and to the source of the White Dragon River, two distant lakes, both around 40km from town, are popular destinations. See Langmusi Tibetan Horse Trekking for details and also bike rentals (per day ¥60-80).

## Festivals & Events

If you are in the area in late July, head out to Maqu ( ) to see the annual horse races. The dates change each year, so try contacting the Langmusi Binguan hotel to find out when it is being held. Maqu is 67km west of Langmusi. Travellers cafes and hotels in Langmusi can arrange transport to the town.

## Sleeping

Jia Zhou Guesthouse HOSTEL \$

( Jiazhou Luguan; ☎ 138 9396 8011;

[jiazhouguesthouse.wordpress.com](http://jiazhouguesthouse.wordpress.com); dm/d/tw without bathroom

¥30/60/80; 📶) With its wild west boarding house exterior, Tibetan-

styled interiors and English-speaking host, this guesthouse is a solid budget choice on the road to Kerti Gompa. Rooms are small but tidy and open onto a balcony overlooking the street. There's an attached restaurant and bar with outdoor seating and free wi-fi.

#### Langmusi Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Langmusi Da Jiudian; 📞 667 1555; langmusihotel@yahoo.com.cn; d ¥666-699, tr ¥700, discounts of up to 70%) This friendly four-storey hotel is the most upscale in Langmusi and offers very pleasant, clean and spacious rooms in either standard or Tibetan styling. It's on the road towards Kerti Gompa, literally across from the ticket booth.

#### Yong Zhong Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Yongzhong Binguan; 📞 667 1032; tw ¥180-220; 📧📶) On the Sichuan side of town, just down from Kerti Gompa, is this pleasant family-run hotel with small, bright, modern rooms all with air-con and 24-hour hot water. There's also a free computer with internet downstairs in the shop where you access the hotel. Expect discounts of 30%.

#### Langmusi Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 667 1086; tibetanyakboy@ yahoo.co.uk; dm ¥30, d/tw with shower ¥160-180, discounts of 30%) Just up the side road from where the bus drops you off is this friendly English-speaking place with basic three-bed dorms, and clean en suite rooms that are starting to show a bit of wear and tear.

#### Nomads Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Lupeng Qingnian Lushe; 📞 667 1460; dm ¥30, tw ¥60-80; 📧📶) Popular with Chinese backpackers, this friendly place on the main street has scruffy and basic dorms, doubles with shared toilet, homey foyer and bar. Can arrange treks.

## Eating

English menus are common in this town, and practically every backpacker-oriented guesthouse and hostel has its own attached restaurant-bar serving a combination of Western, Tibetan and Chinese dishes. On the Sichuan side of town you'll find a dozen pleasant small restaurants serving Sichuanese, Yunnanese and Tibetan dishes. For cheap noodles, head to the Muslim restaurants across from the

entrance to Kerti Gompa.

Talo Restaurant TIBETAN, BREAKFAST \$\$

( Dalao Canting; dishes ¥10-38; ☺ 7.30am-9pm; 📶📶 ) Decorated with yak skulls, prayer flags and *thangka*, this friendly upstairs Tibetan restaurant has a good breakfast menu (dishes ¥4 to ¥12) embracing pancakes, apple rings and omelettes, plus a host of Tibetan and Chinese staples.



Black Tent Cafe TIBETAN, CAFE \$\$

( Hei Zhanpeng Kafei; dishes ¥25-50; ☺ 8am-10pm; 📶📶 ) Great service, a funky Tibetan-style interior, rooftop seating and a good little menu offering Western and Tibetan dishes are just some of the highlights of this 2nd-floor cafe run by the folks at Langmusi Tibetan Horse Trekking. Our only complaint is the price of beer: ¥12 for a small can! The cafe is just up the side street from the intersection where the bus drops you off.

### **i** Information

There is nowhere to change money and no ATMs that accept foreign cards. Wi-fi is widely available at hostels and cafes. The **PSB** (; Gonganju) is just down from the Langmusi Hotel.

### **i** Getting There & Away

There's one daily bus to Zöige (Ruo'ergai; ¥28, 2½ hours) at 7am which arrives with time to connect with the bus to Songpan. There are three daily buses to Hezuo (¥38, three hours), departing at 6.30am, 7.20am and noon. The one daily bus to Xiahe (¥72) leaves at 2pm. Note that while there is a daily bus from Lanzhou to Langmusi, there is no return bus. For the latest schedule see [www.langmusi.net](http://www.langmusi.net).

## HEXI CORRIDOR

Bound by the Qilian Shan range to the south and the Mazong (Horse's Mane) and Longshou (Dragon's Head) ranges to the north, the narrow strip of land that is Hexi Corridor (; Hexi Zoulang), around which the province is formed, was once the sole western passage in and out of the Middle Kingdom.

# Wuwei

📍 0935 / POP 509,000

Wuwei stands at the strategic eastern end of the Hexi Corridor. It was from here, two millennia prior, that the emperors of China launched their expeditionary forces into the unknown west, eventually leading them to Jiayuguan and beyond. Temples, tombs and traditional gates hint at Wuwei's Silk Road past, while the rapidly modernising city has some pleasant squares and pedestrian streets.

Wuwei is compact enough that with the exception of Haizang Temple you can walk to all the sights in an afternoon. Most travellers base themselves in the southern part of town near the rebuilt South Gate (南). The city's main square, Wenhua Guangchang (文化广场; Culture Sq), is about 1km directly north of the gate on Bei Dajie. A pedestrian-only street runs west of the square.

## Sights

The following sights are written in the order you would approach them starting from the South Gate.

### Confucius Temple TEMPLE

( Wenmiao; admission ¥30; 🕒 8am-6pm) This Ming-era temple is divided into Confucian Temple and Wenchang Hall sections. Both display some fine examples of traditional architecture, with the former fronted by the grand wooden Lingxing Gate. There are also quiet gardens and stele-filled pavilions. The most important stele features the extinct Xixia language carved into one side and a Chinese translation on the other: a sort of Rosetta stone, the stele has allowed researchers to understand the once unintelligible Xixia texts. The stele is now housed in a small museum (🕒 8.30am-6pm) on the left side of the square as you exit the temple; your ticket for the Confucius Temple allows you inside. To reach the temple, head east from the South Gate along pleasant Mingqing Fanggu Wenhua Jie to the square at the end (about 600m).

### Kumarajiva Pagoda BUDDHIST PAGODA

( Luoshisi Ta) Located 400m north of Wenhua Guangchang off Bei Dajie, this pagoda is a brick structure originally dating to 488.

Dedicated to the great translator of Buddhist sutras (whose tongue was buried beneath the pagoda), the pagoda was toppled during the great earthquake in 1927 and rebuilt. Pilgrims circumambulate the pagoda in clockwise fashion.

### Leitai Si HISTORIC SITE

( Lei Tai Dong Lu; admission ¥45; ☺ 8am-6pm) The pride and joy of the city, the bronze Flying Horse of Wuwei ( ) was discovered here in 1969 and has since been adopted as the unofficial symbol of Gansu. It was found in a secret tomb beneath this temple, built on top of steep earthen ramparts. While it's a thrill to explore a 2000-year-old tomb, there is precious little inside. The Flying Horse is now displayed in the Gansu Provincial Museum ([Click here](#)).

The site is 1.2km north of Wenhua Guangchang. Turn right at Lei Tai Dong Lu. Note that you'll need your passport to enter the park where the tomb is located.

### Haizang Temple BUDDHIST

( Haizang Si; admission ¥10; ☺ 6am-6pm) A short trip on bus 5 (¥2) or taxi (¥15 to ¥20) outside town takes you to the entrance of a shabby park (admission ¥2), at the back of which is this temple, a fascinating active monastery. The Three Sages Hall (Sansheng Dian) contains a 'hermaphroditic Guanyin' (it's at the back of the temple). Dating to the Ming dynasty, the raised Wuliang Palace (Wuliang Dian) was once used to store sutras but now houses a reclining Buddha in a glass cabinet. In addition to a venerably old post-and-beam interior (check out the fading carvings and paintings on the main posts), an absorbing feature is the minute pavilion to the right of the entrance containing a well whose 'magic waters' (; *shenshui*) are said to connect by subterranean streams to a Holy Lake (; Shenghu) in the Potala Palace in Lhasa. Drinking the well water is said to cure myriad ailments.

## Sleeping & Eating

The best place to situate yourself is around the South Gate. Mingqing Fanggu Wenhua Jie extends east from the gate and is an attractive street lined with restaurants, coffee shops and a KTV or two.

### Zi Yun Ge Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Ziyunge Jiudian; ☎ 225 3888; Mingqing Fanggu Wenhua Jie; s/d/tr

¥198/280/218; ☎@) Just east of the South Gate, this great hotel has bright, comfortable and spacious rooms with showers and new furnishings. You can often net a standard double for around ¥140.

Wuwei Nanchengmen Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 231 9999; 62 Nan Dajie; tr without bathroom ¥108, d/tw with bathroom ¥138/158; @) Almost touching the northwest side of the South Gate is this friendly hotel with small tidy rooms sporting disproportionally spacious bathrooms. The hotel entrance is down a short alley. Discounts of 15% to 20% are usually available.

Wangjia Jiaozi Guan DUMPLINGS \$

( 📍 Wenmiao Guangchang; dumplings ¥12-24; 🕒 6.30am-10.30pm) In the square across from the Confucius Temple sits this satisfying dumpling shop with a picture menu. Try a plate of *guotie* (; fried dumplings).

### Information

There's a **Bank of China** (; Zhongguo Yinhang) on the west end of the pedestrian shopping street (; Buxing Shangye Jie) where you can change money. There's also a branch with a 24-hour ATM behind the Zi Yun Ge Hotel. Internet cafes in Wuwei require Chinese ID.

### Getting There & Around

Bus

Express buses run from the long-distance bus station (), 1.5km southwest of Wenhua Guangchang to:

**Jiayuguan** ¥96, seven hours, two daily (7.30am and 9.30am)

**Lanzhou** ¥65, four hours, every 30 minutes (7am to 6pm)

**Zhangye** ¥58, four, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 6pm)

Train

The station is 3.5km southwest of Wenhua Guangchang; the two are connected by buses 1 and 2 (¥1). Taxis start at ¥4 and most rides around town are around ¥4 to ¥7. There are frequent trains to the following:

**Dunhuang** hard/soft sleeper ¥195/302, 10 hours (two per day directly to Dunhuang at 9.21pm and 10.46pm; other trains drop you off at Liuyuan)

**Jiayuguan** hard/soft seat ¥70/108, five to six hours

**Lanzhou** hard/soft seat ¥47/72, 3½ hours

**Zhangye** hard/soft seat ¥41/61, three hours

## Zhangye

📍 0936 / POP 260,000

Most people use this mid-size Silk Road town as a jumping-off base for the unique cliff temples at nearby Mati Si. But budget at least the afternoon here. There's a colossal Buddha ensconced inside one of China's best preserved wooden temples that deserves an extended visit.

The main road through town (as far as the traveller is concerned) is divided into Xi (West) Dajie and Dong (East) Dajie, depending which direction it radiates from the drum tower. Jianfu Jie intersects with Xi Dajie a few blocks from the drum tower and heading north takes you to a pleasant eating street while south leads to the Great Buddha Temple and Wooden Pagoda.

### Sights



#### Great Buddha Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Dafo Si; admission ¥41; 🕒 8am-6pm) Originally dating to 1098 (Western Xia dynasty), this behemoth of a temple contains an astonishing 35m-long sleeping Buddha – China's largest of this variety – surrounded by mouldering clay arhats (Buddhists who have achieved enlightenment) and Qing-dynasty murals. Until the 1960s, small children would clamber into the huge Buddha and play around inside his tummy.

Apart from the statue, take a good look at the main hall and the woodwork, including the doors and the exquisite brackets supporting the roof eaves. This is one of the few wooden structures from this era still standing in China and there is a wealth of traditional symbols to examine. There are also several other temples and halls to explore, as well as the impressive white earth stupa (; *tu ta*) dating from the Ming dynasty, when this vast temple complex was called Hongren Temple (; Hongren Si).



The temple is off Jianfu Jie across a large square. From Xi Dajie head south about 1km.

### Wooden Pagoda BUDDHIST PAGODA

( Muta Jianfu Jie; admission ¥5; ☺ 8am-noon & 2.30-6pm) In the town's main square stands this brick and wooden structure. Though first built in AD 528, the present structure is a thorough reconstruction from 1926.

## Sleeping & Eating

For meals, head 300m west of the drum tower and look for Mingqing Jie ( ), an alley of faux-Qing architecture lined with dozens of clean, friendly restaurants with picture menus. There is also a food court on the northeast side of the drum tower beside the China Construction Bank.

### Ganzhou Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Ganzhou Binguan; 📍 888 8822; 373 Nan Dajie; d & tw ¥399; 🌟🌟) A solid if entirely generic midrange hotel with bright modern rooms, courteous staff and a good location just 150m south of the drum tower. Discounts of up to 50% make this a great choice when the average stained and fading no-star in town charges only slightly less.

### Huayi Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📍 824 2118; Dong Dajie; d without bathroom ¥40, d/tw ¥90/98; 🌟🌟) You get what you pay for with the cheapest rooms, but otherwise this is a surprisingly clean and tidy budget hotel with rooms showing a minimum of wear and tear. In-room broadband internet is a definite bonus, as is the location just east of the drum tower.

## Information

There's an **internet cafe** ( wangba; 3rd fl; per hr ¥3) on the southwest corner of the drum tower intersection. The **Bank of China** (; Zhongguo Yinhang) on Dong Dajie can change travellers cheques and has a 24-hour ATM.

## Getting There & Around

### Bus

The town has three bus stations, in the south, east and west. The west bus station (*xiguan zhan*) has the most frequent departures. In

addition to the following there are also buses to Xining and Golmud.

**Dunhuang** ¥180, 12 hours, one per day (6.30pm)

**Jiayuguan** ¥50.50, four hours, hourly (9.30am to 5.10pm)

**Lanzhou** ¥128, eight hours, hourly (7am to 1.30pm, sleepers after that)

**Wuwei** ¥56, four hours, every 30 minutes (7.20am to 5pm)

Train

The **train booking office** [Offline map](#) (12 Oushi Jie; 12 ☺ 8am-6pm) is near a Marco Polo statue (the great explorer spent a year in town). To get here walk west of the drum tower and turn right (north) at Oushi Jie.

**Dunhuang** hard/soft sleeper ¥145/223, 7½ hours (two daily at 12.19am and 2.04am; day trains all go to Liuyuan)

**Jiayuguan** hard/soft seat ¥38/57, two to three hours

**Lanzhou** hard/soft seat ¥76/119, six to seven hours

A taxi to/from the train station is ¥10, or take bus 1 (¥1). The station is 7km northeast of the city centre. From either bus station to the hotels costs ¥4 to ¥5. Bus 4 runs past the west bus station from Dong or Xi Dajie.

## Mati Si

Carved into the cliff sides in foothills of the grand Qilian Mountains (Qilian Shan), the venerable Buddhist grottoes of Mati Si make for a fine short getaway from the hectic small towns along the Hexi Corridor. There's excellent hiking in the nearby hills, and a decent range of simple accommodation and food in the nearby village from May to September. Come in July to see the mountain valleys carpeted in blue wildflowers.

### Sights & Activities

Horse riding is a popular activity. Prices are fixed up to ¥200 for a four-hour ride. Note it costs ¥20 just to enter into the general village/grotto scenic area.

Mati Si CAVES, BUDDHIST

() Mati Si translates as Horse Hoof Monastery, a reference to a legendary event in which a heavenly horse left a hoof imprint in a grotto. Between the 5th and 14th centuries a series of caves were almost as miraculously built in sheer sandstone cliffs and filled with carvings, temples and meditation rooms. The caves are reached via twisting staircases, balconies, narrow passages and platforms that will leave your head spinning.

The grottoes are not in one area but spread over many sections. The most accessible are the Thousand Buddhas Caves ( Qian Fo Dong Shiku; admission ¥35) just past the entrance gate to the scenic area. Within this complex is the Puguang Temple where you'll find the relic of the horse foot imprint. The Mati Si North Caves ( Matisi Bei Dong; admission ¥35) are just above the village (2km up the road from the Thousand Buddhas Caves). Other collections of grottoes are scattered about the cliff faces, as are utilitarian caves that were formerly used as dwellings by local people.

Both or neither of the main caves may be open if you arrive outside May to September.

## Hiking

There are several good day hikes around Mati Si, including the five-hour loop through pine forest and talus fields to the Linsong Waterfall (; Linsong Pubu) and back down past Sword Split Stone (; Jianpishi). For unrivalled panoramas, take the elevatorlike ascent of the ridge starting across from the white chörten just above the village at Sanshisantian Shiku ().

## Sleeping & Eating

If you're adequately prepared for camping, some overnight trips are possible. The tiny village also has several basic guesthouses. Call Mr Hua (☎ 130 859 2081; tw ¥60) to book at a friendly family-run place and arrange a pick-up at Mati He. Decent meals can be had at a couple of village restaurants or head up into the fields towards the mountains to one of several large comfortable tents serving Tibetan-style fare (including butter-milk tea and *tsampa*).

## Getting There & Away

Buses leave every 30 minutes from Zhangye's south bus station for the crossroads village of Mati He (; ¥9.50, 1½ hours, 6.40am to 5.40pm), from where you can catch a minibus or taxi (¥30) for the final 7km or so.

Direct buses to Mati Si depart at 7.35am, 8.25am and 9.15am from May to September. The last bus back to Mati He or possibly Zhangye leaves before 5pm. Check with locals on the exact time.

A one-way taxi from Zhangye will cost around ¥80.

WORTH A TRIP

## THE RAINBOW ROCKS OF ZHANGYE

Multicoloured rock formations, known in China as Danxia rocks (; Zhangye Danxia), have been getting a bit of attention recently after six well-known formations in the south were inscribed as Unesco World Heritage sites. If you are renting a taxi to go to Mati Si, consider taking a side trip to Zhangye's spectacularly colourful examples. The swirling rainbow palette and the scale of the formations is astonishing.

From Zhangye a taxi to both Mati Si and the rocks will cost around ¥200.

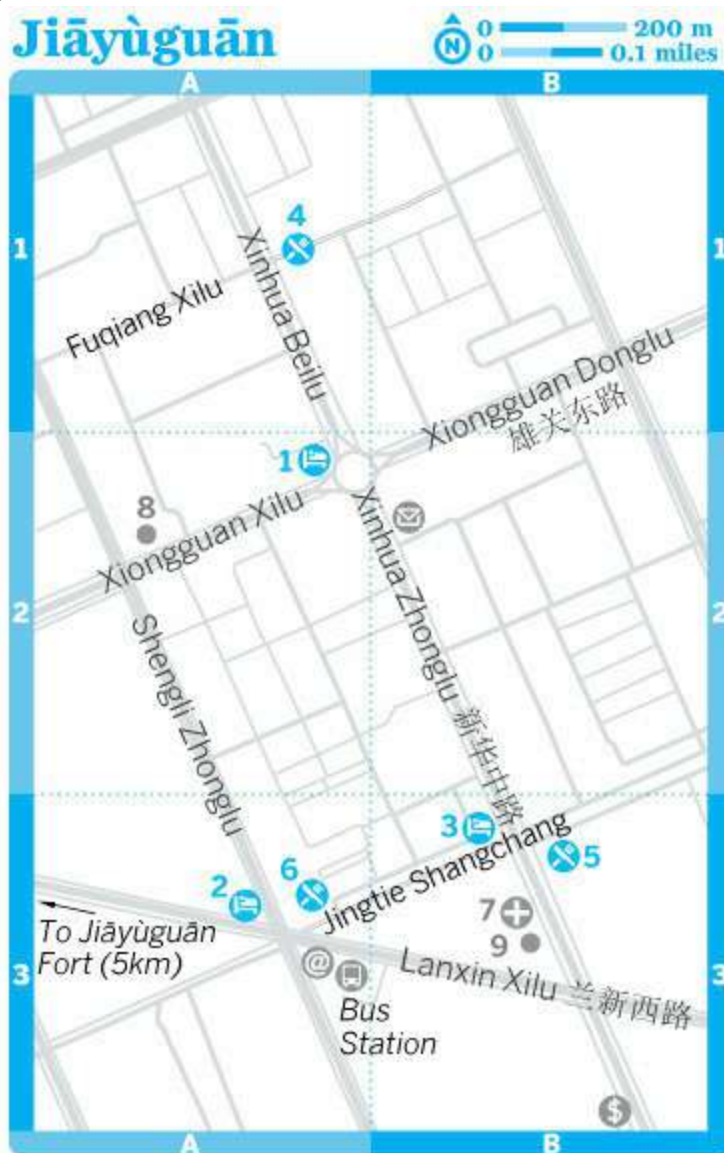
## Jiayuguan & Around

📍 0937 / POP 170,000

You approach Jiayuguan through the forbidding lunar landscape of north Gansu. It's a fitting setting, as Jiayuguan marks the symbolic end of the Great Wall, the western gateway of China proper and, for imperial Chinese, the beginning of the back of beyond. One of the defining points of the Silk Road, a Ming-dynasty fort was erected here in 1372 and Jiayuguan came to be colloquially known as the 'mouth' of China, while the narrow Hexi Corridor, leading back towards the *neidi* (inner lands), was dubbed the 'throat'.

You'll need plenty of imagination to conjure up visions of the Silk Road, as modern Jiayuguan is a city of straight roads and identikit blocks, almost as if airlifted into position from North Korea. But the Jiayuguan Fort is an essential part of Silk Road lore and most

certainly worth a visit.



Jiayuguan

 Sleeping

1 [Jiayuguan Binguan](#) A2

2 [Jinye Binguan](#) A3

3 [Liangshiju Zhaodaisuo](#) B3

 Eating

4 [Fuqiang Market Entrance](#) A1

5 [Jingtie Xiaochicheng](#) B3

6 [Yuan Zhong Yuan](#) A3

Information

7 [People's No 1 Hospital](#) B3

 Transport

8 Bicycle Hire A2

9 [Train Booking Office](#) B3

## Sights

With the exception of the Wei Jin Tombs, all the sites below are covered by a single entrance ticket to the Jiayuguan Fort. A taxi to all the sights (including the tombs), which are all outside town, is likely to cost ¥200 for the half-day. Just to the sites covered by the fort ticket will cost ¥100 to ¥150 depending on how long you stay to look at things.

### Jiayuguan Fort FORTRESS

( Jiayuguan Chenglou; admission ¥100; 🕒 8am-6pm) One of the classic images of western China, the fort guards the pass between the snowcapped Qilian Shan peaks and the Hei Shan (Black Mountains) of the Mazong Shan range.

Built in 1372, the fort was christened the 'Impregnable Defile Under Heaven'. Although the Chinese often controlled territory far beyond the Jiayuguan area, this was the last major stronghold of imperial China – the end of the 'civilised world', beyond which lay only desert demons and the barbarian armies of Central Asia.

Towards the eastern end of the fort is the Gate of Enlightenment (; Guanghua Lou) and in the west is the Gate of Conciliation (; Rouyuan Lou), from where exiled poets, ministers, criminals and soldiers would have ridden off into oblivion. Each gate dates from 1506 and has 17m-high towers with upturned flying eaves and double gates that would have been used to trap invading armies. On the inside are horse lanes leading up to the top of the inner wall. On the west-facing side of the Gate of Enlightenment are the shadowy remains of slogans praising Chairman Mao, blasted by the desert winds. A further prolix quote from Mao stands out in yellow paint on the south wall of Wenchang Pavilion (; Wenchang Ge).

Near the fort entrance gate is the excellent Jiayuguan Museum of the Great Wall (🕒 8.30am-6pm), with photos, artefacts, maps, Silk Road exhibits and models to show just how the fort and wall crossed

the land.

### Overhanging Great Wall HISTORIC SITE

(; Xuanbi Changcheng) Running north from Jiayuguan, this section of wall is believed to have been first constructed in 1539, though this reconstruction dates from 1987. It's quite an energetic hike up to excellent views of the desert and the glittering snowcapped peaks in the distance. The wall is about 9km north of the fort.

### First Beacon Platform of the Great Wall HISTORIC SITE

(; Changcheng Diyi Dun) Atop a 56m-high cliff overlooking the Taolai River south of Jiayuguan, the remains of this beacon platform are not much to look at (they resemble a shaped pile of dirt), but the views over the river in their dramatic gorge are impressive and you can walk alongside attached vestiges of Ming-era Great Wall. When visiting, your driver will likely first drop you off at a subterranean viewing platform (labelled the 'Underground Valley' and featuring a glass-bottomed platform that extends out over the canyon) about 150m from the beacon platform.

### Wei Jin Tombs TOMB

( Xincheng Weijinmu; admission ¥31; ☀ 8.30am-7.30pm) These tombs date from approximately AD 220–420 (the Wei and Western Jin periods) and contain extraordinarily fresh brick wall paintings (some ineptly retouched) depicting scenes from everyday life, from making tea to picking mulberries for silk production. There are literally thousands of tombs in the desert 20km east of Jiayuguan, but only one is currently open to visitors, that of a husband and wife. The small museum is also worth a look. A taxi here will cost around ¥70 so it's worth paying a little more (¥100) to also visit Yemawan Bao Yizhi (), a former walled town with dramatically crumbling remains. Nearby are some unrestored sections of the Great Wall dotting farm fields and free to access.

## **Sleeping**

### Kanghui Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Kanghui Binguan; 📞 620 3456; [www.jygcct.com](http://www.jygcct.com); tw/tr ¥208/288; 🌐📧 ) Wide windows, high ceilings and very spacious rooms (and bathrooms) are highlights at this tidy business hotel in the centre of

town. The place was undergoing renovation at the time of writing and prices were expected to rise about ¥20. Discounts of 30% are typical.

Jinye Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 620 1333; 12 Lanxin Xilu; 12 d/tr without shower ¥100/180, tw/tr ¥200; 🍷@) The en suite rooms are a bit of a tight squeeze but overall good value at this hotel with a useful location by the bus station. The cheapest rooms are a bit tatty and the shared bathrooms could be cleaner. Expect discounts of 40%.

Jiayuguan Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 620 1588; 1 Xinhua Beilu; 1 d/tw from ¥669/768; 🍷@) Room interiors come from the standard design catalogue for modern three-star hotels, and include computers with broadband internet access. Other services include a restaurant serving Western-style food, a spa, ticket agent and attentive staff. Discounts of 30% to 40% are common.

Liangshiju Zhaodaisuo GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 682 1544; 2nd fl, 24 Xinhua Zhonglu; s/tw/tr without shower ¥45/58/60, tw ¥78) This clean and well-run guesthouse is central and good value.

## Eating

For breakfast ask or look around for small shops selling *baozi* (; steamed meat- or veggie-filled buns) and *doujiang* (; soya milk).



Yuan Zhong Yuan Restaurant SICHUANESSE \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yuanzhongyuan Jiudian; Jingtie Shangchang; dishes ¥12-48; ☺ 9am-9pm) Directly across from the bus station on the far side of a small park is this pleasant Sichuan restaurant nice enough for a first date. Try its *gongbao jiding* (; spicy chicken and peanuts), *tieban doufu* (; fried tofu) or a *yuxiang rousi* (; stir-fried pork and veggie strips) good for a single diner.

Fuqiang Market MARKET \$

(; Fuqiang Shichang) For a fast, hot meal in the evenings, especially



barbecued lamb washed down with beer, try the food stalls at this market, north of the traffic circle.

Jingtie Xiaochicheng MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jingtie Market; 🕒 10am-10pm) At this busy market, off Xinhua Zhonglu, load up on lamb kebabs, *roujiamo* (), wonton soup, dumplings, roast duck and more.

### **i** Information

The **Bank of China** (; Zhongguo Yinhang) south of the Lanxin Xilu intersection on Xinhua Zhonglu has an ATM and can change money. Look for an **internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr) beside the bus station .

### **i** Getting There & Away

Jiayuguan has an airport with flights to Beijing, Shanghai and Lanzhou but most people arrive by bus or train.

**Bus**

Doubling as a billiards hall, Jiayuguan's bus station (; qichezhan) is by a busy four-way junction on Lanxin Xilu, next to the main budget hotels.

**Dunhuang** ¥73, five hours, four daily (9am to 2.30pm)

**Lanzhou** ¥160, 12 hours, three daily sleepers

**Wuwei** ¥95, seven hours, five daily (two in the morning, three in the afternoon)

**Zhangye** ¥50, four hours, hourly (6.40am to 4.20pm)

**Train**

Most trains to Dunhuang stop at Liuyuan (180km away). Direct trains are few and not well scheduled.

**Lanzhou** hard/soft seat ¥103/160, seven to eight hours; hard/soft sleeper ¥179/275, nine hours

**Urumqi** hard/soft sleeper ¥246/384, 15 hours

**Zhangye** hard/soft seat ¥38/57, two to three hours

Purchase tickets at the **train booking office** [Offline map](#) ( huochezhan shoupiaochu; 28 Xinhua Zhonglu; 🕒 8am-noon & 1-4pm Mon-Fri, to 3.30pm Sat & Sun) near the **People's No 1 Hospital** [Offline map](#)

[Google map](#) ( Diyi Renmin Yiyuan; Xinhua Zhonglu), next to the China

Construction Bank. Note that you can't buy tickets here for Jingtieshan (for the July 1st Glacier) but must purchase these directly at the station.

Jiayuguan's train station ( ) is southwest of the town centre. Bus 1 runs here from Xinhua Zhonglu (¥1). A taxi costs under ¥10.

### **i** Getting Around

The Jiugang Binguan West Building rents bikes (; chuzu zixingche) for ¥30 per day from 9.30am (¥400 deposit). Bus 1 (¥1) runs from the train station to the bus station. A taxi to the airport (25 minutes) costs ¥50.

WORTH A TRIP

## **JULY 1ST GLACIER**

About 90km southwest of Jiayuguan, this glacier ( Qiyi Bingchuan; admission ¥101) sits high in the Qilian Shan range at 4300m. In summer it's a great place to come to escape the heat of the desert below. If you arrive in the spring or autumn, expect a very cold and forbidding place.

From the ticket office base the 5km-long trail starts out in alpine scrub before running along the rocky borders of the glacial moraine. The views are stupendous in any direction. Expect three to four hours to reach the glacier, scramble up to the closest icy tongue, snap a few pictures, and return. Note that while the sign at the ticket office says you are at 3800m, that is almost certainly wrong by at least 500m. Coming from Jiayuguan (at 1500m altitude) you should have minimum problem with the altitude.

The glacier is reached via the train to the iron-ore town of Jingtieshan (; tickets ¥4.50), departing from Jiayuguan's train station at 7am. It's a scenic 2½-hour ride up a deep river canyon and at the station there may be a minibus to take you up the final 20km to the glacier ticket office. Otherwise try to bargain for a ride in a worker's truck. Either way expect to pay at least ¥50 each way, more if you are the only traveller.

The return train to Jiayuguan leaves Jingtieshan at 5pm, allowing you plenty of time to do this hike as a day trip. If you have a group, consider renting a taxi in Jiayuguan (¥600 to ¥800). In all cases

come prepared with food, water, and warm and wet weather gear.

## Dunhuang

 0937 / POP 187,000

The fertile Dunhuang oasis has long been a refuge for weary Silk Road travellers. Most visitors stayed long enough only to swap a camel and have a feed; but some settled down and built the forts, towers and magnificent cave temples that are now scattered over the surrounding area. These sites, along with some dwarfing sand dunes and desertscares, make Dunhuang a magnificent place to visit.

Despite its remoteness, per capita income in Dunhuang is among the highest in China, thanks to a recent push into wind and solar energy production (see boxed text, [Click here](#)). The town is now thoroughly modern, but there's no doubt it has maintained its distinction. With clean tree-lined streets, slow-moving traffic, bustling markets, budget hotels, cafes and souvenir shops, it also has remained as much an oasis for the weary traveller as ever.

### Sights

Though relatively small, Dunhuang is a great walking town with wide sidewalks and endless narrow alleys opening up into squares, markets and the lives of ordinary citizens. The riverside is worth a visit if only to see if you are brave enough to cross to the platforms in the middle of the stream.

 Dunhuang Museum MUSEUM

( Dunhuang Bowuguan; Mingshan Lu; ☀ 8am-6.30pm) Outside of town on the road to the dunes is this newly opened museum that takes you on an artefact-rich journey through the Dunhuang area (from prehistoric to Qing-dynasty times) via hallways designed to make you feel as if you were in a cave. You can easily walk here in 15 minutes from the centre of town. Bring your passport for admission.

### Sleeping

Competition among Dunhuang's hotels is fierce, and you should get significant discounts (50% or more) outside of summer.

There are a dozen or so smaller business-type hotels along Mingshan and Yangguan Zhonglu. They tend to be around ¥200 in the off-season and ¥300 to ¥400 in the height of summer.



Charley Johng's Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#)

( Meng Tuoling Qingnian Lushe; 📞 138 9376 3029; dhzhzh@163.com; 3F, 11 Qingcheng; 11 3 dm/d ¥35/120; @📶 ) The latest in the Charley Johng backpacking empire is this well-run, well-placed and well-appointed hostel literally in the night market area behind the mosque. Reception and rooms are on the 3rd floor (so you avoid the market smells), where you'll also find a wide inner courtyard, laundry and English travel information. Dorm rooms are clean and basic while the doubles are spacious and have their own powerful showers. The hostel is down a small alley so drop by Charley Johng's Cafe first for directions.

Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Dunhuang Shanzhuang; 📞 888 2088; [www.dunhuangresort.com](http://www.dunhuangresort.com); Dunyue Lu; dm ¥80, d ¥350-1200; 📶@📶 ) Around 2km from Singing Sands Mountain, this four-star resort is tastefully designed with Central Asian rugs, a cool stone floor and Chinese antiques. Four-bed dorms are in the student building way round the back, and the cheaper doubles (with bathrooms) are in the 'Professional Quarters'. The hotel's rooftop restaurant has without doubt the best outdoor perch in Dunhuang. A taxi from town costs ¥10, or take minibus 3 (¥1). There are off-season discounts of 20% to 40%.

Dune Guesthouse HOSTEL \$

( Yuequan Shanzhuang Qingnian Lushe; 📞 138 9376 3029; dhzhzh@163.com; dm ¥30, r & cabins with shared bathroom ¥100) Nearly at the base of the Singing Sands Mountain, and surrounded by flowering gardens and grapevines, this chilled-out backpackers' retreat is superbly located. Cabins are set among the fruit trees; doubles and dorms around the central courtyard. All rooms share showers and toilets (it would be nice if the latter were kept a bit cleaner). A taxi here is ¥15, or catch minibus 3 to the terminus, walk north (back towards town) a short way, take the first turn left on the

other side of the road past the vines and follow the signs. The guesthouse is run by the folks at Charley Johng's Cafe, so make enquiries there first.

Dunhuang Legend Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Dunhuang Feitian Dajiudian; 📞 885 3888; [www.dhlegendhotel.com](http://www.dhlegendhotel.com); Mingshan Lu; d & tw from ¥888; 🌟🌟🌟🌟) Rooms at this four-star (clearly slipping down the rankings if anyone was counting) Chinese-oriented hotel are spacious and well furnished. In summer they are good value when discounts bring the rates down to about ¥500, and other very basic two-stars in town are charging not much less.



Dunhuang

🛏 Sleeping

- 1 [Charley Johng's Hostel](#) B2
- 2 [Dunhuang Legend Hotel](#) A1
- 3 [Feitian Binguan](#) A2
- 4 [Gongyi Meishu Zhaodaisuo](#) A1

🍴 Eating

5 Bu Ji Lu Rou Huang Mianguan B2

6 [Charley Johng's Cafe](#) A2

7 [Oasis Cafe](#) B2

8 [Shazhou Night Market](#) B1

🌟 Entertainment

9 [Dunhuang Theatre](#) A1

Information

Feitian Travel Service (see 3)

📍 Transport

10 [Air Ticket Office](#) B1

11 Minibus Stand A2

12 [Train Booking Office](#) B2

13 [Train Booking Office](#) B1

Gongyi Meishu Zhaodaisuo GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#)

( 📞 884 0919; Yangguan Zhonglu; s & tw without bathroom ¥80) This very basic guesthouse is in a courtyard opposite the China Life Insurance Company. As you enter the courtyard look left for the blue sign with red characters. Rooms are on the 3rd floor and ¥50 in the off-season. Note the guesthouse has bathrooms but no showers.

Mogao Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Mogao Bingan; 📞 885 1777; 12 Mingshan Lu; 12 d/tw from ¥308/428; 🌐📶📶) With its excellent location downtown near restaurants and shops, this is one of the better options for the single traveller who wants a private room. There's in-room broadband and wi-fi in the lobby. Off-season the smaller doubles go for around ¥188.

Feitian Bingan HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 882 2337; [www.fttravel.cn](http://www.fttravel.cn); 22 Mingshan Lu; 22 d/tw ¥428/458; 🌐📶📶) This long-standing two-star hotel has a good location on one of Dunhuang's major streets. Rooms are small but tidy and well lit.

## Eating

There are restaurants large and small all over Dunhuang, many with English or picture menus. For *niuro mian* (; beef noodles) head to any number of restaurants along Xiyu Lu.

Several Western travellers' cafes can be found in town with dishes in the ¥10 to ¥20 mark. In addition to providing internet access and bike hire, these are good spots to exchange information with other travellers.

Shazhou Night Market MARKET \$\$

[Offline map](#)

( Shazhou Yeshe; ☺ morning-late) Extending from Yangguan Lu south to Xiyu Lu, this market is both a place to eat and to socialise. Off Yanguang Lu are dozens of well-organised stalls with English signs explaining what they sell: expect Sichuan, Korean noodles, dumplings, claypot, barbecue including *roujiamo* ( ) and Lanzhou noodles. Also look out for cooling cups of *xingpishui* ( ; apricot juice; ¥5).

There is also an evening-only open-air seating area nearby with singing, music bands and roast lamb by the platter or skewer. Along with the seated areas along Fanggu Shangye Yitao Jie, this is the most expensive place to eat barbecued meat. For a better deal try the alleys radiating east. The same lamb skewer that costs ¥8 in the main areas will cost ¥3 to ¥5 here.



Zhaixing Ge CHINESE, INTERNATIONAL \$\$

( Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel; Dunyue Lu; dishes ¥18-38; ☺ 7am-1pm & 4.30pm-midnight; 📍) Part of the Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel, this superb rooftop restaurant is ideal for a meal (the Western buffet breakfast is well regarded by travellers) or a sundowner gazing out over the golden sand dunes with someone you love. Dishes are priced reasonably and not much more than places in town. Try the Uighur bread or the surprisingly good thick-crust pizza.

Bu Ji Lu Rou Huang Mianguan DONKEY MEAT \$\$

( Shazhou Nanlu; dishes ¥12-38, set meals from ¥35; ☺ 10am-10pm) Donkey meat with yellow noodles is a local speciality and this is one popular place to try it. The restaurant has a banquet hall feel but prices are fine for one or two people. If you've never had it, donkey tastes like roast beef and set meals are served with noodle dishes topped with tofu.

Charley Johng's Cafe BREAKFAST, CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#)

( Fengwei Canguan; Mingshan Lu; dishes ¥6-20; ☎ 8.30am-10pm 📍 )  
Tasty Western-style breakfast items including scrambled eggs, muesli with yoghurt, and pancakes are available all day either a la carte or as a set. There are also sandwiches, and a host of Chinese dishes such as stir-fries and dumplings.

## Drinking

The alley behind Charley Johng's Hostel has a row of stylish cafes with couch seating and free wi-fi that also serve as bars in the evening. In summer the Silk Road Dunhuang Hotel hosts a beer garden at the entrance to the grounds, while their stylish rooftop Zhaixing Ge (☎ 4.30pm-midnight) offers peerless views over the desert to go with a beer or a glass of local red wine.

Oasis Cafe CAFE

[Offline map](#)

( Luzhou Kafeiguan; Fanggu Shangye Yitiao Jie; ☎ 2-11pm Tue-Sun; 📶📍 ) Surely the best smoothies and milkshakes (blueberry, peach, kiwifruit and more; ¥14) in northwest China and some of the finest coffee, too. With excellent homemade hamburgers and pizza, you can spend a long time relaxing at this chilled-out spot run by an Oklahoman.

## Entertainment

There are often night-time opera and other music performances in the square behind Charley Johng's Hostel. This is also a good place to go if you have children, as there are several large free play areas.

Dunhuang Goddess ( Dunhuang Shennu; tickets ¥220; ☎ 8.30pm ) is an 80-minute acrobatic dramatisation of stories on the walls of the Mogao Caves. It's held at the Dunhuang Theatre [Offline map](#) (; Dunhuang Dajuyuan); English subtitles are provided.

## THE WINDY ROAD TO A CLEANER CHINA

Unless you sleep the entire way, the road from Jiayuguan to Dunhuang will likely impress you as much for the endless spinning turbines as the stark desert landscape. In 2011 the



windswept northern region was the site of nearly two dozen energy farms, and 5000 (and growing) individual turbines. At the industry centre in Jiuquan (southeast of Jiayuguan) dozens of companies are yearly cranking out several thousand more.

Once the cradle of China's oil industry, Gansu had been experimenting with wind power since 1996. During the first decade, installed capacity barely rose to 100MW (1GW is the capacity of a large coal or nuclear power plant). Then in 2005, the Chinese government announced it would push into clean energy in a massive way (forced in part by its rapidly deteriorating environment), pledging US\$700 billion for development over the next decade. By 2020, Beijing declared, 15% of the country's energy would be produced by wind, solar, biomass and hydropower.

In 2007 the National Development and Reform Commission approved construction of a 10GW wind farm in Gansu. Similar large-scale wind farms were then approved in Xinjiang, Inner Mongolia, Jilin and Hebei, and recently, work began on offshore farms in Jiangsu and Shandong and slow-wind farms in the south of China. An industry was born overnight and by 2011 nationwide capacity had reached 62GW and was growing by 20GW a year!

The pace of change has been breathtaking. From 2006 to 2010, the wind industry experienced triple-digit growth, and from an initial six green energy companies the number rose to more than 100. But rapid progress brought troubles. Installed capacity, for example, was far outpacing the rate at which it could be absorbed by the national electric grid. There were also serious issues with nonstandard installation of turbines, poor component quality and equipment malfunction. In 2012 Premier Wen Jiabao declared that the government needed to rein in its 'blind' expansion of the industry and strengthen overall planning.

According to China's current wind-power development plan, no more than 15GW of installed capacity will be connected annually to the grid. To facilitate this, \$US590 billion will also go towards expanding and modernising China's electrical transmission system.

China is determined to become a global leader in green energy production, but within its borders heavily polluting coal thermal plants will still generate most of the country's electricity for decades. Coal production is expected to increase, for example, from 3.2 to 4 billion tonnes by 2020 as the nation literally adds another 1000GW of capacity (which incredibly is the current *total* capacity of the US).

Long-term projections have wind potentially accounting for 30% of all new installed capacity after 2020 and up to one-third of all capacity by 2050. With an equally strong push into solar, hydro and nuclear, China's electrical production could one day become among the cleanest in the world.

## Information

Ask at any of the Western cafes in town for tourist info; they can also help with tours from camel rides to overnight camping excursions. Wi-fi is widely available in cafes, high-speed internet in hotel rooms, and there's an **internet cafe** ( Wangba; cnr Mingshan Lu & Xiyu Lu; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr).

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Yangguan Zhonglu; ☎ 8am-noon & 2-6pm Mon-Fri) Has a 24-hour ATM and changes travellers cheques.

**Feitian Travel Service** ( Feitian Luxingshe; ☎ 138 3070 6288, 885 2318; Feitian Binguan, Mingshan Lu) Can arrange buses to Mogao, local tours and car hire.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; ☎ 886 2071; Yangguan Zhonglu; ☎ 8am-noon & 3-6.30pm Mon-Fri) Two days needed for visa extension.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Apart from November to March, when there are only flights to/from Lanzhou and Xi'an, there are regular flights to/from Beijing (¥1880), Lanzhou (¥1380), Shanghai (¥2460), Urumqi (¥710) and Xi'an (¥1680).

Seats can be booked at the **air ticket office** [Offline map](#) (☎ 8.30am-6.30pm) in the lobby of the Youzheng Binguan hotel (), west of China Post.

### Bus

Dunhuang's new station (; *qichezhan*) is on Sanwei Lu (a five-minute walk to downtown) has buses to the following:

**Golmud** ¥99, nine hours, two daily (9am and 7.30pm)

**Jiayuguan** ¥72, five hours, three daily (10.10am, 10.45am and 12.50pm)

**Lanzhou** ¥226, 17 hours, three daily (11am, 3pm and 5pm), all sleepers

**Liuyuan** () ¥20, eight per day (7.30am to 6.30pm)

**Urumqi** ¥198, 14 hours, one daily (7pm), sleeper. May stop in Turpan.

### Train

Dunhuang's station is 10km east of town but for some destinations, such as Beijing West and Urumqi, you'll have to leave from Liuyuan Station, a crazy 180km away.

**Lanzhou** hard/soft sleeper ¥246/383, 14 hours (two per day at 9.32am and 6.58pm; more trains leave from Liuyuan Station)

**Turpan** (from Liuyuan Station) hard/soft sleeper ¥164/252, eight to nine hours

**Urumqi** (from Liuyuan Station) hard/soft sleeper ¥195/302, 11 hours  
To purchase tickets to Lanzhou, head to the **train booking office** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (; huochepiao Fashoudian; ☺ 8am-noon & 1-4pm) behind the mosque. For tickets to Urumqi head to the **train booking office** (tielushoupiaochu; ☺ 8.30am-8pm) on Yangguan Lu. Both charge a ¥5 commission.

### **i** Getting Around

Dunhuang's airport is 13km east of town; taxis cost ¥25. The train station is on the same road as the airport and costs a similar amount. Bus 1 runs to the train station from Mingshan Lu from 7.30am to 9pm. If you are heading to Liuyuan Train Station (for trains to Urumqi), catch a bus or a shared taxi (per person ¥45) from out front of the bus station on Sanwei Lu. Give yourself at least three hours to get to Liuyuan station (including waiting for the taxi to fill up with other passengers).

Taxis around town start at ¥5.

You can hire bikes from the travellers' cafes for ¥5 per hour. Getting to some of the outlying sights by bike is possible, but hard work at the height of summer.

## **Around Dunhuang**

Most people visit the Mogao Caves in the morning, followed by the Mingsha Shan sand dunes in the late afternoon. Note that it can be above 40°C in the desert during the summer so go prepared with water, a sunhat and snacks.

### **SILK ROAD RAIDERS**

In 1900 the self-appointed guardian of the Mogao Caves, Wang Yuanlu, discovered a hidden library filled with tens of thousands of immaculately preserved manuscripts and paintings, dating as far back as AD 406.

It's hard to describe the exact magnitude of the discovery, but stuffed into the tiny room were texts in rare Central Asian languages, military reports, music scores, medical prescriptions, Confucian and Taoist classics, and Buddhist sutras copied by some of the greatest names in Chinese calligraphy – not to mention the oldest printed book in

existence, the *Diamond Sutra* (AD 868). In short, it was an incalculable amount of original source material regarding Chinese, Central Asian and Buddhist history.

Word of the discovery quickly spread and Wang Yuanlu, suddenly the most popular bloke in town, was courted by rival archaeologists Auriel Stein and Paul Pelliot, among others. Following much pressure to sell the cache, Wang Yuanlu finally relented and parted with an enormous hoard of treasure. During his watch close to 20,000 of the cave's priceless manuscripts were whisked off to Europe for the paltry sum of £220.

Still today, Chinese intellectuals bitter at the sacking of the caves deride Stein, Pelliot and other 'foreign devils' for making off with a national treasure. Defenders of the explorers point out that had the items been left alone they may have been lost during the ensuing civil war or the Cultural Revolution.

## MOGAO CAVES

The Mogao Caves (Mogao Ku) are, simply put, one of the greatest repositories of Buddhist art in the world. At its peak, the site housed 18 monasteries, more than 1400 monks and nuns, and countless artists, translators and calligraphers. Wealthy traders and important officials were the primary donors responsible for creating new caves, as caravans made the long detour past Mogao to pray or give thanks for a safe journey through the treacherous wastelands to the west. The traditional date ascribed to the founding of the first cave is AD 366.

The caves fell into disuse after the collapse of the Yuan dynasty and were largely forgotten until the early 20th century, when they were 'rediscovered' by a string of foreign explorers (see boxed text above).

Entrance to the caves (low/high season ¥100/180; 🕒 8.15am-6pm May-Oct, 9.15am-5.30pm Nov-Apr, tickets sold till 1hr before closing) is strictly controlled – it's impossible to visit them on your own. The general admission ticket grants you a two-hour tour (display great interest at the start as your guide has the discretion to make this longer) of around 10 caves, including the infamous Library Cave (cave 17) and a related exhibit containing rare fragments of manuscripts in classical Uighur and Manichean. Excellent English-speaking guides are available (and included in the admission price) at 9am, noon and 2pm, and you should be able to arrange tours in other languages as well.

Of the 492 caves, 20 'open' caves are rotated fairly regularly, so

recommendations are useless, but tours always include the two big Buddhas, 34.5m and 26m tall respectively. It's also possible to visit some of the more unusual caves for ¥100 to ¥500 per cave. Note that in some of the caves later frescoes may cover earlier wall paintings.

Photography is strictly prohibited everywhere within the fenced-off caves area. And if it's raining, snowing or sand storming, the caves will be closed.

After the tour it's well worth visiting the Dunhuang Research Centre, where eight more caves, each representative of a different period, have been flawlessly reproduced, along with selected murals. The 15-minute video on the paintings in cave 254 is also worth watching.

If you have a special interest in the site, check out the International Dunhuang Project (<http://idp.bl.uk>), an online database of digitalised manuscripts from the Library Cave at Mogao.

## Sights

Northern Wei, Western Wei & Northern Zhou Caves CAVES, BUDDHIST

The earliest caves are distinctly Indian in style and iconography. All contain a central pillar, representing a stupa (symbolically containing the ashes of the Buddha), which the devout would circle in prayer. Paint was derived from malachite (green), cinnabar (red) and lapis lazuli (blue), expensive minerals imported from Central Asia.

The art of this period is characterised by its attempt to depict the spirituality of those who had transcended the material world through their asceticism. The Wei statues are slim, ethereal figures with finely chiselled features and comparatively large heads. The Northern Zhou figures have ghostly white eyes. Don't be fooled by the thick, black modernist strokes – it's the oxidisation of lead in the paint, not some forerunner of Picasso.

Sui Caves CAVES, BUDDHIST

The Sui dynasty (AD 581–618) began when a general of Chinese or mixed Chinese-Tuoba origin usurped the throne of the northern Zhou dynasty and reunited northern and southern China for the first time in 360 years.

The Sui dynasty was short-lived and very much a transition between the Wei and Tang periods. This can be seen in the Sui caves: the graceful Indian curves in the Buddha and Bodhisattva figures start to give way to the more rigid style of Chinese sculpture.

### Tang Caves CAVES, BUDDHIST

During the Tang dynasty (AD 618–907), China pushed its borders westward as far as Lake Balkash in today's Kazakhstan. Trade expanded and foreign merchants and people of diverse religions streamed into Chang'an, the Tang capital.

This was Mogao's high point. Painting and sculpture techniques became much more refined, and some important aesthetic developments, notably the sex change (from male to female) of Guanyin and the flying *apsaras*, took place. The beautiful murals depicting the Buddhist Western Paradise offer rare insights into the court life, music, dress and architecture of Tang China.

Some 230 caves were carved during the Tang dynasty, including two impressive grottoes containing enormous, seated Buddha figures. Originally open to the elements, the statue of Maitreya in cave 96 (believed to represent Empress Wu Zetian, who used Buddhism to consolidate her power) is a towering 34.5m tall, making it the world's third-largest Buddha. The Buddhas were carved from the top down using scaffolding, the anchor holes of which are still visible.

### Post-Tang Caves CAVES, BUDDHIST

Following the Tang dynasty, the economy around Dunhuang went into decline, and the luxury and vigour typical of Tang painting began to be replaced by simpler drawing techniques and flatter figures. The mysterious Western Xia kingdom, which controlled most of Gansu from 983 to 1227, made a number of additions to the caves at Mogao and began to introduce Tibetan influences.



#### Getting There & Away

The Mogao Caves are 25km (30 minutes) southeast from Dunhuang. The first green bus (one way ¥8) leaves at 8am or 9am (and possibly other times depending on the season, so enquire at the Western cafes) from the intersection across from the Dunhuang Hotel; buses return at noon, 2pm and 4pm. A return taxi costs from ¥100 to ¥150 for a day, whereas you can usually find a taxi willing to just take you

back to Dunhuang from the caves for ¥40.

Some people ride out to the caves on a bicycle, but be warned that half the ride is through total desert – hot work in summer.

## **SINGING SANDS MOUNTAIN & CRESCENT MOON LAKE**

Six kilometres south of Dunhuang at Singing Sands Mountain (Mingsha Shan; admission ¥120; ☺ 6am-9pm), the desert meets the oasis in most spectacular fashion. From here it's easy to see how Dunhuang gained its moniker 'Shazhou' (Town of Sand). The climb to the top of the dunes – the highest peak swells to 1715m – is sweaty work, but the view across the undulating desert sands and green poplar trees below is awesome. Hire a pair of bright orange shoe protectors (; *fangshaxue*; ¥10) or just shake your shoes out later.

At the base of the colossal dunes is a famous yet underwhelming pond, Crescent Moon Lake (Yueyaquan). The dunes are a no-holds-barred tourist playpen, with camel rides (per person ¥80) as well as dune buggies, 'dune surfing' (sand sliding), paragliding (jumping off the dunes with a chute on your back) and even microlighting. But if your sole interest is in appreciating the dunes in peace, it's not hard to hike away from the action.

You can ride a bike to the dunes in around 20 minutes. Minibus 3 (¥1) shuttles between Dunhuang and the dunes from 7.30am to 9pm, departing from Mingshan Lu. A taxi costs ¥15 one way.

Western cafes in Dunhuang offer overnight camel trips to the dunes; Charley Johng's charges ¥400 per person for the ride and an overnight stay in a tent. There are also five- to eight-day expeditions out to the Jade Gate Pass, Liuyuan and even as far as Lop Nor in the deserts of Xinjiang.

## **YADAN NATIONAL PARK & JADE GATE PASS**

The weird, eroded desert landscape of Yadan National Park (Yadan Guojia Dizhi Gongyuan; incl tour ¥80) is 180km northwest of Dunhuang, in the middle of the Gobi Desert's awesome nothingness. A former lake bed that eroded in spectacular fashion some 12,000 years ago, the strange rock formations provided the backdrop to the last scenes of Zhang Yimou's film *Hero*. The desert landscape is dramatic, but you can only tour the site on a group minibus, so there's

little scope to explore on your own.

To get to Yadan you have to pass by (and buy a ticket to) the Jade Gate Pass (Yumen Guan; admission ¥40), 102km from Dunhuang. Both this and the South Pass (; Yang Guan), 78km west of Dunhuang, were originally military stations, part of the Han dynasty series of beacon towers that extended to the garrison town of Loula'n in Xinjiang. For caravans travelling westward, the Jade Gate marked the beginning of the northern route to Turpan, while the South Pass was the start of the southern route through Miran. The Jade Gate derived its name from the important traffic in Khotanese jade.

The entry fee includes a small museum (with scraps of real Silk Road silk); a nearby section of Han-dynasty Great Wall built in 101 BC and impressive for its antiquity and lack of restoration; and the ruined city walls of Hecang Cheng, 15km away on a side road.

The best way to get here is to take one of two daily minibus tours (per person for 7am departure ¥76, for 2pm departure ¥86), which you can book through Charley Johng's Cafe or Hostel. The 10- to 12-hour tours include a stop at the Jade Gate Pass and the Western Thousand Buddha Caves ( Xi Qianfo Dong; admission ¥20; ☺ 8.30am-6.30pm), 35km west of Dunhuang, where there are 16 caves hidden in the cliff face of the Dang He gorge, ranging from the Northern Wei to the Tang dynasties.

## **YULIN GROTTOS**

About 180km south of Dunhuang, the 40-plus caves (Yulin Ku; admission ¥45, ☺ 9am-5pm, tickets sold till 1hr before closing) of the Yulin Grottoes face each other across a narrow canyon. The interior art spans a 1500-year period, from the Northern Wei to the Qing dynasty. Many show a distinctive Tibetan influence.

While the art at the Mogao Caves is considered higher quality, the frescoes here are better preserved; there is little of the oxidation and thickening of painted lines so prevalent at Mogao. It's also intriguing to observe the original carved interior tunnels that formerly connected the caves.

The only way to get out here is to rent a minivan (¥400) for the half-day. Excellent English guides are available on-site for ¥15.



# EASTERN GANSU

Most travellers speed through eastern Gansu, catching mere glimpses from the train window as they shuttle between Lanzhou and Xi'an. This is a shame because the area contains some spectacular Silk Road remnants at Maiji Shan that are well worth stopping for.

## Tianshui

 0938 / POP 450,000

Tianshui's splendid Buddhist caves at nearby Maiji Shan entice a consistent flow of visitors to this otherwise bland provincial town. Or is that two towns? Modern Tianshui is actually two very separate districts 15km apart: there is the railhead sprawl, known as Maiji Qu (; formerly Beidao), and the central commercial area to the west, known as Qinzhou Qu () and where you'll arrive if coming in by bus. The two sections are lashed together by a long freeway that runs through a hilly corridor.

Maiji Shan is 35km south of the train station.

### Sights

Tianshui's main draw are the grottoes at Maiji Shan. Within walking distance of the Tianshui Dajudian hotel are two temples worth checking out if you have time to kill.

#### Fuxi Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

( Fuxi Miao; off Jiefang Lu, Qincheng; admission ¥30; 🕒 8am-6pm)

This Ming-dynasty temple was founded in 1483, and more recently cracked during the Sichuan earthquake of 2008. The main hall is a grand post and beam structure with intricate wooden lattice door panels: look for traditional symbols such as bats, dragons, peonies, cranes and swastikas. On the ceiling bright original paintings of the 64 hexagrams (varying combinations of the eight trigrams used in the *Ching*) draw the eye upwards.

#### Yuquan Temple TAOIST TEMPLE

( Yuquan Guan; Renmin Xilu, Qincheng; adult/student ¥20/10; 🕒 8am-6pm) Ascending in layers up the hillside above Qincheng, this Taoist


temple has been a place of worship since the Tang dynasty. Most of the buildings have been restored in recent decades, but this is still a pleasant, green and rambling shrine with a number of ancient cypress trees.

## Sleeping

Tianshui has plenty of accommodation in both parts of town.




### **QINZHOU QU**

Tianshui Dajiudian HOTEL \$


(  828 9999; 1 Qinzhou Dazhong Nanlu; 1 d/T his popular hotel is a solid choice in the Qinzhou Qu district. The bus to Maiji Shan is just 200m south and restaurants abound. Standard en suite rooms and those with shared bathrooms are pretty much identical in cleanliness, size and furnishings, and are usually discounted up to 40%.

### **MAIJI QU**

New Leaf Inn HOTEL \$

( Xin Ye Jiudian;  261 8808; Longchang Lu; d & tw ¥138;  ) This small business hotel has clean bright rooms with IKEA-style furnishings. The hotel is about 200m east (left as you exit) of the train station on the far side of Longchang Lu.

Wanhui Zhaodaisuo GUESTHOUSE \$

(  492 7976; Longchang Lu; s & d without bathroom ¥40, tw ¥90) This serviceable guesthouse is about 100m west (right as you exit) of the train station. Look for the China Post office and then continue down a few more doors. Reception's on the 3rd floor.

## Eating

Tianshui is famed for its *mianpi* ( ) noodles, which can be found everywhere. In Qinzhou, good claypot, Sichuan and noodle snack stalls, as well as fruit and nut sellers can be found around the Tianshui Dajiudian.

Tasty *roujiamo* ( ) and other fine snack food in Maiji Qu fill Erma Lu, a pedestrian mall two blocks directly south of the train station. One place to try is Beidao Qingzhen Laozihao Niurou Mianguan ( Erma Lu;

dishes ¥4-12; ☺ 24hr).

Get a ticket from the kiosk out front and collect your beef noodles (*niuroumian*) and flatbread (*shaobing*) from the kitchen window. The noodles are infused with dollops of scarlet-red chilli oil, and you can point for side dishes of spicy cabbage, cucumber and other vegetables.

There's no English sign, but it's nearly opposite an ICBC bank.

### **i** Information

There's a **Bank of China** (; Zhongguo Yinhang) with a 24-hour ATM three blocks directly south from the train station almost at the river. An **internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥2.50; ☺ 24hr) can be found on the 2nd floor heading up to the Wanhui Zhaodaisuo in Maiji Qu.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Bus

Buses from the long-distance bus station in Qinzhou:

**Gangu** ¥15, 90 minutes, every 15 minutes

**Huixian** ¥35, three hours, hourly (7.20am to 6pm)

**Lanzhou** ¥74, four hours, every 20 minutes (7.20am to 7pm)

**Linxia** ¥99, seven hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Luomen** ¥25, two hours, three daily (7am, 11am and 2.30pm)

**Pingliang** ¥65, five hours, hourly (7am to 3pm)

Train

Tianshui is on the Xi'an–Lanzhou rail line; there are dozens of daily trains in either direction.

**Lanzhou** hard/soft seat ¥52/81, four hours

**Xi'an** hard/soft seat ¥51/78, five hours

### **i** Getting Around

Taxis shuttle passengers between Qinzhou (from both the city bus station 200m south of Tianshui Dajjudian and also from the long-distance bus station) and the train station in Maiji Qu. It costs ¥10 per person (¥40 for the whole taxi). Alternatively, take the much slower bus 1 or 6 (¥3, 40 minutes).

## Around Tianshui

## MAIJI SHAN

Set among wild and lush green hills southeast of Tianshui, the riveting grottoes of Maiji Shan (Haystack Mountain) hold some of China's most famous Buddhist rock carvings.

### Sights

Maiji Shan CAVES, BUDDHIST

(admission ¥70; 🕒 8am-6pm) The cliff sides are riddled with niches and statues carved principally during the Northern Wei and Zhou dynasties (AD 386–581), with later additions. Vertigo-inducing catwalks and steep spiral stairways cling to the cliff face, affording close-ups of the art. Within the hard-to-miss Sui-dynasty trinity of Buddha and bodhisattvas is the largest statue on the mountain: the cave's central effigy of Buddha tops out at 15.7m. When the statue was restored three decades ago, a handwritten copy of the *Sutra of Golden Light* was discovered within the Buddha's fan.

It's not certain just how the artists managed to clamber so high; one theory is that they created piles from blocks of wood reaching to the top of the mountain before moving down, gradually removing them as they descended.

A considerable amount of pigment still clings to many of the statues – a lot of which are actually made of clay rather than hewn from rock – although you frequently have to climb up steps to peer at them through tight mesh grills. Also in many caves there is no natural illumination, so the figures of the Bodhisattvas sit hunched in the gloom or the frescoes are indiscernible. Much, though, is clearly visible and most of the more impressive sculptures decorate the upper walkways, especially at cave 4. A number of the statues were slightly damaged by the Sichuan earthquake of 2008 but have been repaired.

The entire undertaking is rounded off with a crescent of hawker stalls and a row of food stalls selling delicious spicy cold noodle dishes as well as teas and soft drinks.

An English-speaking guide charges ¥70 for the day. It's possible to view normally closed caves (eg cave 133) for an extra fee of ¥500 per group.

The admission ticket includes entry to Ruiying Monastery ( Ruiying Si), at the base of the mountain, which acts as a small museum of selected statues. Across the lot from the monastery is the start of a trail to a botanic garden (zhiwuyuan; admission free with ticket), which allows for a shortcut back to the entrance gate through the forest.

You can also climb Xiangji Shan (). For the trailhead, head back towards the food stall area you passed on the way in and look for a sign down a side road to the left.

## Sleeping

There are several places where you can spend the night, including cabins within the botanical gardens at the Hotel Arboretum ( Zhiwuyuan Shanzhuang; 📞 223 1025; zawszhotel@126.com; cabins ¥386). There are also simple guesthouses (¥40 to ¥50) in the village about 1km before the entrance gate. Just wander in and your intentions will be clear.



### Getting There & Away

Green bus 34 (¥5, 40 minutes) leaves every 10 minutes from in front of the Tianshui train station. The first bus leaves at 6am and the last returns around 6pm. The bus may drop you at the crossroads, 5km before the site, from where a taxi van will cost ¥5 per seat to the ticket office.

Bus 5 leaves from the bus terminal just south of the Tianshui Dajiudian in Qin Zhou at 8.30am and returns at 2.30pm. Taxis wait for passengers (per person ¥30) at the same location most of the morning.

From the ticket office at Maiji Shan you can walk the last 2km to 3km to the caves or take the **tour buggy** (guangguan che; return ¥15).

## Pingliang

📞 0933 / POP 106,800

A booming Chinese mid-sized town, Pingliang is a logical base for visits to the nearby holy mountain of Kongtong Shan. The train station is in the northeastern part of town and the main bus station in the far western part. Xi Dajie is the main street in town and where you'll find

hotels, restaurants and banks.

## Sights

### Kongtong Shan TEMPLES

( admission ¥120; ☀ 7am-5pm) Kongtong Shan is one of the 12 principal peaks in the Taoist universe. It was first mentioned by the philosopher Zhuangzi (399–295 BC), and illustrious visitors have included none other than the Yellow Emperor. Numerous paths lead over the hilltop past dozens of picturesque (though entirely restored) temples to the summit at over 2100m. While the mountain is an enchanting place to hike, those looking for much genuine historical artefacts or ambience will be disappointed.

From the north gate visitor centre (pick up a free map here to orientate yourself) catch a bus to Zhongtai (¥32) or Xiangshan (¥48), both essentially small visitor areas on the mountain with paths radiating out to lookouts and temples.

Kongtong Shan is 11km west of Pingliang. A taxi costs ¥20, or you can catch bus 16 (¥1) on Xi Dajie and then transfer to bus 13 (¥2) when you reach Kongtong Dadao. Bus 13 drops you off right in front of the main visitor centre before continuing on to the East Gate. At the end of your visit you can walk down from Zhongtai to the East Gate and catch bus 13 back to town.

## Sleeping & Eating

Just around the corner from Hongyun Binguan, look for the Sizhong Alley market (Sizhong Xiang shichang). There are numerous restaurants here, and more food stalls serving noodles, spicy hotpot, barbecued meats, as well as fresh fruit.

### Hongyun Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 822 6399; Xi Dajie; d/tw without bathroom ¥128/158, tw ¥188; 🌐📧 ) The hotel has a friendly guesthouse atmosphere and surprisingly pleasant rooms reached by a very narrow staircase. All rooms have computers and broadband internet, and there are discounts of up to 30%.

### Pingliang Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

( ☎ 821 9485; Xi Dajie; tw ¥588; \*@) The top hotel in town is just off the main road in a large complex. Expect discounts up to 40%.

## Getting There & Away

### Bus

The following services depart from Pingliang's main bus station, in the western part of town on Lai Yuan Lu:

**Guyuan** ¥24, 1½ hours, frequent

**Lanzhou** ¥105, five hours, hourly (6.30am to 5.30pm)

**Tianshui** ¥65, seven hours, one daily (9am)

**Xi'an** ¥88, six hours, every 40 minutes (6.20am to 6pm)

For Tianshui there are more frequent departures from the east bus station (*qiche dongzhan*).

### Train

It's better to take a bus to Xi'an as trains either leave or arrive at very inconvenient hours. There's one sleeper train daily to Lanzhou (hard/soft sleeper ¥97/151, 11 hours) leaving at 9.18pm.

Bus 1 (¥2) runs from the train station to Xi Dajie. A taxi costs ¥10.

From Xi Dajie to the bus station costs ¥4 or take bus 16 (¥1).



# Ningxia

POP 6.4 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Yinchuan](#)

[Zhongwei](#)

[Guyuan](#)

---

## Why Go?

With its raw landscape of dusty plains and stark mountains, sliced in two by the Yellow River (Huang He), there is a distinct *Grapes of Wrath* feel to Ningxia (). Outside the cities, it's a timeless landscape where farmers till the yellow earth just like their ancestors did.

Yet Ningxia was once the frontline between the empires of the Mongols and the Han Chinese and there is a host of historic sites here, ranging from little-seen Buddhist statues to the royal tombs of long-past dynasties, as well as ancient rock carvings that predate any emperor. And as the homeland of the Muslim Hui ethnic minority, Ningxia is culturally unique, too.

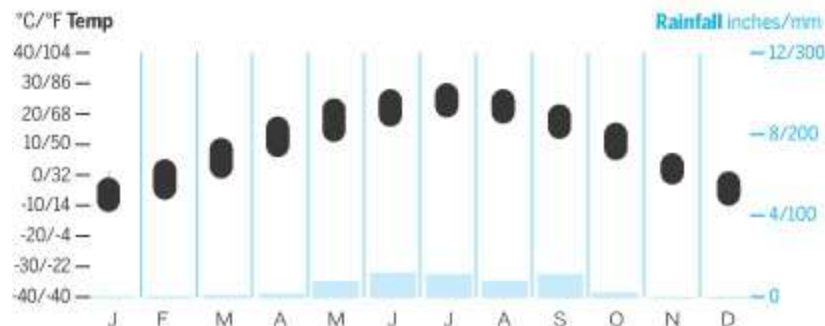
Then there's the chance to camp out under the desert sky, or float down the Yellow River on a traditional raft. Best of all, Ningxia sees few foreign visitors so it seems like you have the place all to yourself.



---

## When to Go

### Yínchuān



**Aug** Annual wolf berry festival in Zhongning County (east of Zhongwei).

**Oct** It's cooling down and time to play Lawrence of Arabia in the little-visited Tengger Desert.

**Nov** The Yellow River festival in Yinchuan features concerts and folk dancing.

---

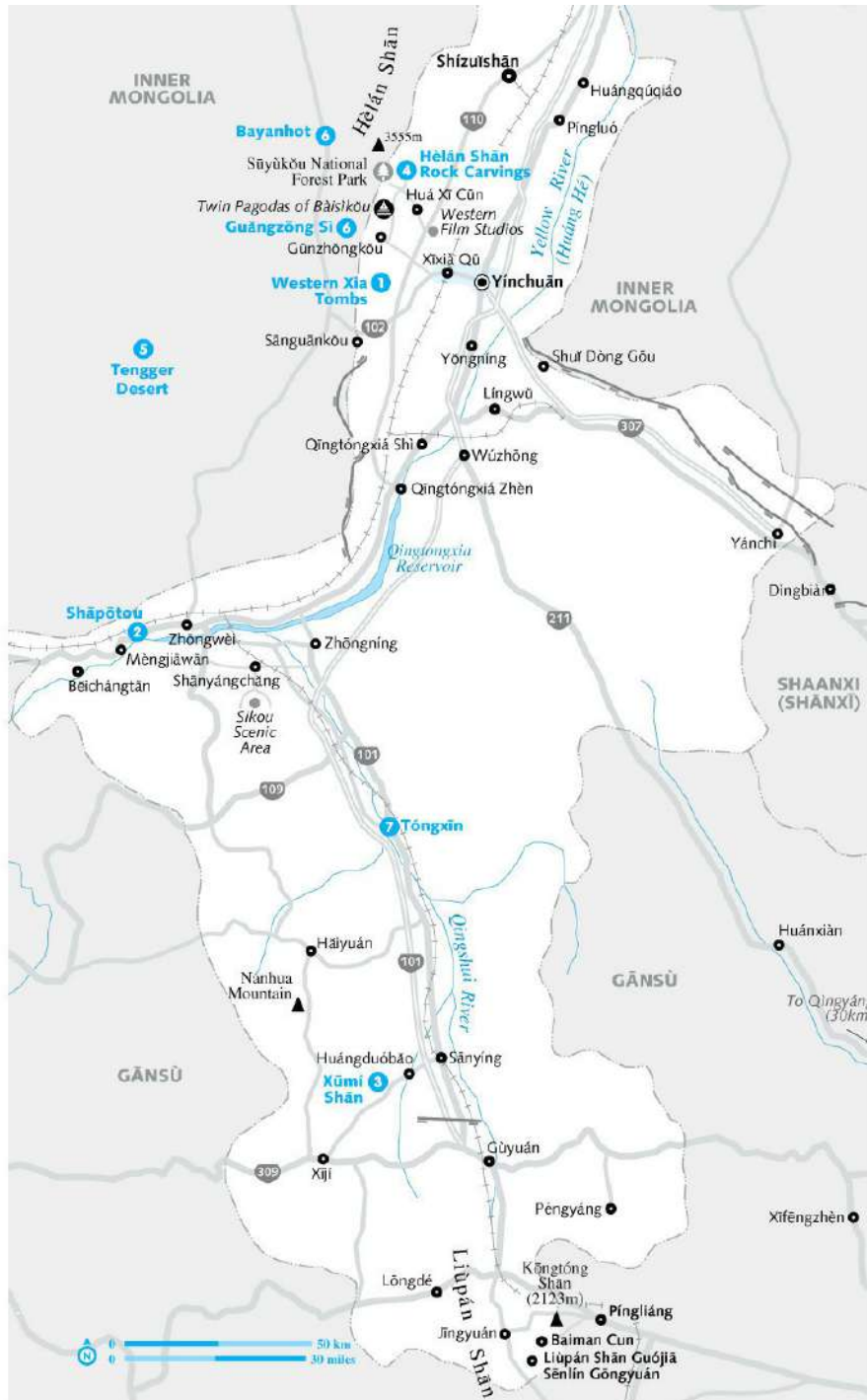
## Best Historic Sites

- » Western Xia Tombs ([Click here](#))
- » Helan Shan rock carvings ([Click here](#))
- » Xumi Shan ([Click here](#))
- » Shu i Dong Gou ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Temples

- » Qingzhen Da Si ([Click here](#))
- » Gao Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Guangzong Si ([Click here](#))
- » Yanfu Si ([Click here](#))



## Ningxia Highlights

- ① Visit the imperial **Western Xia Tombs** ([Click here](#)) outside Yinchuan, a rare reminder of this long-extinct culture
- ② Raft down the Yellow River or slide down the sand dunes at

desert playground **Shapotou** ([Click here](#))

③ Explore the little-seen Buddhist grottoes with hundreds of statues at **Xumi Shan** ([Click here](#))

④ Check out the utterly unique rock carvings at **Helan Shan** ([Click here](#)), which date back thousands of years

⑤ Hop on a camel and trek into the **Tengger Desert** ([Click here](#)) for an overnight stay

⑥ Investigate Mongol culture at lonely sites around **Bayanhot** ([Click here](#)), **Guangzong Si** ([Click here](#)) and **Yanfu Si** ([Click here](#))

⑦ Get way off the beaten track at Tongxin's marvellous Ming-era **Great Mosque** ([Click here](#))

## History

Ningxia had been on the periphery of Chinese empires ever since the Qin dynasty, but it took centre stage in the 10th century AD when the Tangut people declared the establishment of the Xixia (Western Xia) empire in the face of Song opposition. The empire was composed of modern-day Gansu, Ningxia, Shaanxi and western Inner Mongolia, but it soon collapsed in the face of Mongol might.

The Mongol retreat in the 14th century left a void that was filled by both Muslim traders from the west and Chinese farmers from the east. Tensions between the two resulted in Ningxia being caught up in the great Muslim Rebellion that convulsed northwest China in the mid-19th century.

Once part of Gansu, Ningxia is China's smallest province, although technically it is an autonomous region for the Muslim Hui ethnic minority, who make up one-third of the population, rather than an official province. It remains one of the poorest areas of China, with a sharp economic divide between the more fertile, Han Chinese-dominated north and the parched, sparsely populated south.

## Climate

Part of the Loess Plateau, Ningxia is composed primarily of arid mountain ranges and highlands. Summer temperatures soar during the day, and precipitation is generally no more than a fond memory. Winters are long and often freezing; spring is lovely, though blustery.

## Language

Ningxia's dialect is grouped together with the northwestern dialects of Gansu and Qinghai, an umbrella group known to linguists as Lanyin Mandarin.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥250

\$\$ ¥250 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥50

\$\$\$ more than ¥50



### Getting There & Around

Ningxia's capital Yinchuan is the only viable flight hub, but Ningxia is so small you can cross it in a few hours. Buses go everywhere, sometimes slowly, while trains connect the major cities.

## Yinchuan

0951 / POP 510,379

In the sun-parched land that is Ningxia, Yinchuan has managed to thrive. The Tangut founders chose this spot wisely as their capital, planting the city between a source of water (the Yellow River) and a natural barrier from the Gobi Desert (the Helan Shan mountains).

Modern-day Yinchuan is predominantly Han, although its many mosques reveal its status as the capital of the Hui peoples' homeland. But the most interesting sights, the Western Xia Tombs and Helan

Shan to the west of the city, predate both the Han and the Hui. Yinchuan is also a handy jumping-off point for longer trips to western Inner Mongolia.

## Sights

Yinchuan is divided into three parts. Xixia Qu (; New City), the new industrialised section, is on the western outskirts. Jinfeng Qu () is the central district (the train station is on Jinfeng's western edge). Xingqing Qu (; Old City) is 12km east of the train station and has most of the town's sights and hotels.

### Ningxia Museum MUSEUM

( Ningxia Bowuguan; Renmin Guangchang; ☺ 9am-5pm Tue-Sun) Located halfway between the New and Old Cities, this cavernous, well-mounted museum contains an extensive collection of rock art, Silk Road-era pottery and ancient Korans as well as the requisite hall of communist propaganda and Mao fun facts. It's a good starting point if you want to learn something of Hui culture. Bus 102 passes nearby.

### Chengtiansi Ta PAGODA

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinning Nanjie; admission ¥18; ☺ 9am-5pm) The most impressive site in the old town – climb the 13 storeys of steep, narrow stairs for 360-degree views of Yinchuan. The pagoda is also known as Xi Ta (; West Pagoda) and dates back almost 1000 years to the Western Xia dynasty, although it has been rebuilt several times since.

### Haibao Ta PAGODA

( Minzu Beijie; admission ¥10; ☺ 9am-5pm) This fifth-century pagoda is set on the grounds of a well-maintained monastery. Also known as Bei Ta (; North Pagoda), the nine-storey pagoda was toppled by an earthquake in 1739 and rebuilt in 1771 in the original style. Visitors are no longer able to climb it. Take minibus 20 north on Jinning Beijie for five stops to the Beita Lukou () and then walk north for 15 minutes.

## Sleeping

There's no shortage of places to stay in the Old City, but the accommodation is a mostly uninspired mix of chain hotels and

overpriced, old-school two- and three-star joints. Nor are there any hostels in Yinchuan (or anywhere in Ningxia). But if you're willing to splash out, then the quality of hotels improves dramatically.

Carnation Chain Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Kangnaixin Liansuo Jiudian; 📍 602 0788; 16 Yuhuang Nanjie; 16 d ¥248-278, discounts of 30%; 🌐📧) With its cheerful bright yellow walls, welcoming staff and compact and clean modern rooms, this is one of the best deals in the Old City. All rooms come with computers, while the more expensive ones have heart-shaped beds for romantics. Discounts even in high season take the prices below ¥200.

Ningfeng Binguan HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 609 0222; [www.ningfenghotel.com](http://www.ningfenghotel.com); 6 Jiefang Dongjie; 6 d ¥688, discounts of 20%; 🌐📧) A solid choice which is as comfortable as many more expensive hotels in Yinchuan and better located. Rooms are big and well organised, and the bathrooms are nice and up-to-date. There's a Chinese restaurant on site and a few of the helpful staff can speak some English.

Kempinski Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

( Kaibinsiji Fandian; 📍 516 5888; [www.kempinski.com/yinchuan](http://www.kempinski.com/yinchuan); 160 Beijing Zhonglu; 160 d ¥1786, discounts of 10%; 🚗🌐📧📶🚰)

Yinchuan's luxury option comes with all the trimmings: huge, comfy beds, posh bathrooms and efficient staff, as well as a swimming pool, spa and a German-themed restaurant that has excellent, if expensive, beer. You should be able to score a bigger discount outside the peak summer season (when it is advisable to book ahead).

Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinjiang Zhixing Luguan; 📍 602 9966; [www.jinjianginns.com](http://www.jinjianginns.com); 15 Gulou Beijie; 15 d ¥269; 🌐📧📶) Ever-reliable chain hotel that has spotless modern rooms with broadband access (wi-fi in the lobby) and a great location just north of the Drum Tower.

Hao Jia Fandian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 385 8998; 192 Liqun Dongjie; 192 d & tw ¥398, discounts of 50%;  
 🍴📍) It's a little gloomy here, but the rooms themselves are reasonably sized and come with OK bathrooms. The generous discounts make it a decent deal.



## Yinchuan

📍 Top Sights

[Chengtiansi Ta](#) B2

🛏 Sleeping

1 [Carnation Chain Hotel](#) D1

2 [Hao Jia Fandian](#) D2

3 [Jinjiang Inn](#) C1

4 [Ningfeng Binguan](#) B1

🍴 Eating

5 [Bai Gong](#) D2

6 [Da Ma Jiaozi Guan](#) C1

7 [Hong Yuan Shuai](#) C1

8 [Xianhe Lou](#) D2

9 [Xianhe Lou](#) D2

🚗 Transport

10 Minibus 20 B1

## Eating & Drinking

Like the rest of northwest China, noodles are a staple here. Every restaurant serves them and in many places in Ningxia they will be all you can find to eat.



Xianhe Lou CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 204 Xinhua Dongjie; dishes from ¥10; 🕒 24hr) You can't go wrong at this landmark restaurant which never closes and caters for both big spenders and those on a budget. You could splash out on the pricey fish dishes or the great *kaoyangpai* (; barbecued ribs), but you can also get a huge plate of beef noodles for just ¥10. Cold dishes are on display, as is the production line of *shuijiao* (boiled ravioli-style dumplings) which are a house speciality. They are sold by the *jin* but a half *jin* (¥18) is normally enough for two people. There's another smaller **branch** which shuts at 10pm around the corner on Zhongshan Nanjie. Picture menu.

Da Ma Jiaozi Guan DUMPLINGS \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 32 Jiefang Dongjie; dumplings from ¥15; 🕒 11am-10.30pm) Popular joint dedicated to Chinese dumplings. They come by the *jin*, but you can order a half *jin*, and there are all sorts of beef, lamb and veggie options. There are plenty of cold dishes, soups and meat and fish dishes available, too, as well as the inevitable noodle choices. Picture menu.

Bai Gong DIM SUM \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 82 Yuhuang Nanjie; dim sum from ¥15; 🕒 24hr) Waiters here push around carts piled high with all forms of delicious steamed dumplings, as well as more esoteric nibbles like spicy chicken feet. It offers good variety for solo travellers, but you may need to order a few to quench your appetite. You can also choose a wide range of more expensive dishes from the picture menu.

Hong Yuan Shuai NOODLES \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 75 Jiefang Dongjie; noodles from ¥11; 🕒 7am-9pm) Succumb to the



inevitable and join the hordes of locals slurping tasty big bowls of noodles at this busy place. Point and choose at what others are eating; cold dishes (¥4) are on display for you.

### **Information**

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 170 Jiefang Xijie; ☺ 8am-noon & 2.30-6pm) You can change travellers cheques and use the ATM at this main branch. Other branches change cash only.

**China Comfort International Travel Service** (CCT; Kang Hui Luyou; ☎ 504 5678; [www.chinasilkroadtour.com](http://www.chinasilkroadtour.com); 317 Jiefang Xijie; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-6pm Mon-Fri) Organises desert trips, rafting and permits for Ejina Qi.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Jiefang Xijie & Minzu Beijie)

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; Chaoyang Xiang; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) On the left-hand side of the road as you walk south from Jiefang Dongjie and on the 2nd floor.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 472 Beijing Donglu; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-6.30pm Mon-Fri) For visa extensions. Take bus 3 from the Drum Tower.

### **Getting There & Away**

Air

Flights connect Yinchuan with Beijing (¥1090), Chengdu (¥1110), Guangzhou (¥1320), Shanghai (¥900), Urumqi (¥1080) and Xi'an (¥360). Buy tickets at [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) or [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net).

Bus

The main bus station (; nanmen qichezhan) is 5km south of Nanmen Sq on the road to Zhongwei.

Bus departure times from the long-distance bus station:

**Bayanhot** ¥30, two to three hours, half-hourly (6.30am to 6pm)

**Guyuan** (express) ¥90, four to five hours, half-hourly (7.30am to 6pm)

**Lanzhou** ¥140, six hours, two daily (7.20am and 3.40pm)

**Xi'an** ¥181, eight to 10 hours, five daily (8.30am to 6.30pm)

**Yan'an** ¥136, eight to nine hours, five daily (8am to 5.30pm)

**Zhongwei** (express) ¥53, two to three hours, hourly (8am to 5.30pm)

If you're heading north to Inner Mongolia, you need the northern bus station (; beimen chezhan). Bus 316 (¥1) trundles between it and the

main bus station.

The express buses (*kuaike*) to Zhongwei and Guyuan are far quicker than the much slower local buses that stop at every village along the way.

#### Train

Yinchuan is on the Lanzhou–Beijing railway line, which runs via Hohhot (11 hours) and Datong (13 hours) before reaching Beijing (19 hours). If you're heading for Lanzhou (hard/soft sleeper ¥131/195, eight hours), the handy overnight K915 train leaves at 10.40pm. For Xi'an (14 hours), try train 2653 (hard/soft sleeper ¥195/302) leaving at 5.06pm.

The train station is in Xixia Qu, about 12km west of the Old City centre. Book sleeper tickets well in advance.

### Getting Around

The airport is 25km from the Old City centre; buses (¥15) leave from in front of the Civil Aviation Administration of China office on Changcheng Donglu, just south of Nanmen Sq. A taxi to/from the airport costs around ¥50.

Between 6am and 11.30pm bus 1 (¥1) runs from the long-distance bus station to Nanmen Sq in the Old City, along Jiefang Jie and then on to the train station in Xixia Qu. Count on a minimum 40- to 50-minute trip. Taxis cost ¥7 for the first 3km. A taxi between the train station and the Old City costs ¥20 to ¥30.

## THE HUI

The Hui (回) are perhaps China's most unusual ethnic minority; the only people to be designated as one solely because of their religious beliefs. Nor do they have their own language, speaking only Mandarin, while they are scattered throughout every province of the country with nearly 80% of the 10 million–odd Hui living outside their official homeland.

Their origins date back more than 1000 years to the time of the Silk Road, when trade thrived between China and the Middle East and Central Asia. Arab traders intermarried with the local women and now most Hui are ethnically indistinguishable from the Han Chinese. What marks them out is their adherence to Islam.

Most Hui men wear white skullcaps, while many women don headscarves. The more educated can read and speak Arabic, a result of studying the Koran in its original language. For many young Hui, learning Arabic is the path to a coveted job as a translator

for the Chinese companies on the east coast doing business in the Middle East.

Although the Hui can be found all over China, they are most numerous in the northwest provinces of Gansu, Ningxia and Shaanxi. True to their origins as traders and caravanserai operators, many Hui are still engaged in small businesses, especially the running of restaurants.

## Around Yinchuan

### WESTERN XIA TOMBS

The Western Xia Tombs (Xixia Wangling; admission ¥60; 🕒 8am-7pm), which look like giant beehives, are Ningxia's most famous sight. The first tombs were built a millennium ago by Li Yuanhao, the founder of the Western Xia dynasty. There are nine imperial tombs, plus 200 lesser tombs, in an area of 50 sq km. The one you'll see is Li Yuanhao's, a 23m-tall tomb originally constructed as an octagonal seven-storey wooden pagoda. All that remains is the large earthen core. Permits, usually organised through local tour operators, are required to visit other tombs in the area.

The examples of Buddhist art in the good site museum (🕒 8am-5.30pm) offer a rare glimpse into the ephemeral Western Xia culture, and point to clear artistic influences from neighbouring Tibet and Central Asia. There are also many fascinating artefacts excavated from Li Yuanhao's tomb.

The tombs are 33km west of Yinchuan. A return taxi costs around ¥150 (including waiting time). You could take bus 2 to its terminus in Xixia Qu and then take a cheaper taxi (¥25 each way) from there. The site is also on the road towards Bayanhot, if you are headed that way.

### HELAN SHAN

The rugged Helan Mountains have long proved an effective barrier against both nomadic invaders and the harsh Gobi winds. They were the preferred burial site for Xixia monarchs, and the foothills are today peppered with graves and honorific temples.

### Sights

## Rock Carvings ARCHAEOLOGICAL SITE

( Helanshan Yanhua; admission ¥70; ☺ 8am-6.30pm) By far the most significant sight here are the ancient rock carvings, thought to date back 10,000 years. There are more than 2000 pictographs depicting animals, hunting scenes and faces, including one (so local guides like to claim) of an alien, and they are the last remnants of the early nomadic tribes who lived in the steppes north of China.

The ticket price includes entry to the world's only **museum** dedicated to ancient rock art and a ride in a golf cart to the valley containing the rock carvings. Don't miss the image of the Rastafarian-like sun god (climb the steps up the hill on the far side of the valley).

## Twin Pagodas of Baisikou PAGODA

( Baisikou Shuangta; admission ¥10; ☺ 8am-6.30pm) About 10km west of the rock carvings are the Twin Pagodas of Baisikou. You can't climb the pagodas, but they're an impressive sight against the backdrop of the barren mountains: 13 and 14 storeys high and decorated with intricate animal faces and Buddha statuettes.

## Suyukou National Forest Park PARK

( Suyukou Guojia Senlin Gongyuan; admission ¥60; ☺ 7am-5pm) Halfway between the pagodas and the rock carvings is the Suyukou National Forest Park. It's a good place to start exploring the mountains themselves. You can hike up the trails from the car park or take the cable car (up/down ¥50/30) straight up to cool pine-covered hills.

## Western Film Studios FILM LOCATION

( Zhenbeibao Xibu Yingcheng; admission ¥80; ☺ 8am-6pm) On the way back to Yinchuan you can stop at the Western Film Studios, where the famed Chinese movie *Red Sorghum* was shot, as well as countless other films and TV shows. Hugely popular with Chinese tour groups, who swarm all over it in the summer, it's fun to explore the fake fortress and recreations of old Ming and Qing streets.



### Getting There & Away

The only way to get around the Helan Shan sites is by taxi. The cheapest way to do it is to take bus 17 from the Yinchuan train station to the Western Film Studios (¥5) and then hire a taxi from there (¥100). Alternatively, you can hire a minibus from the train station for

¥200 return to do the loop of the sights. You could combine that with a visit to the Western Xia Tombs for around ¥300.

## SHUI DONG GOU

The archaeological site of Shui Dong Gou (admission ¥60, ¥130 for through ticket; ☺ 8am-6pm), 25km east of Yinchuan, right on the border with Inner Mongolia, has been turned into something of an adventure theme park. The site is divided into two parts; the first is a museum that resembles Jabba the Hut's bunker and which contains the Palaeolithic-era relics first uncovered here in 1923.

From there, it's a golf cart ride to an unrestored section of the Great Wall dating back to the Ming dynasty. Then it's a walk, boat trip, donkey- and camel-cart ride to a fortress with an elaborate network of underground tunnels once used by Chinese soldiers defending the Great Wall. The renovated tunnels include trap doors, false passages and booby traps.

The catch is that the admission price to Shui Dong Gou only lets you into the site itself. Everything else – the museum, fort and all transport – costs extra, making this an expensive day out. Unless you fancy an 8km walk around the complex, the cheapest way to do it is to buy the through ticket (; *tongpiao*) for ¥130.

Five buses a day run past Shui Dong Gou (¥10) from Yinchuan's main bus station, starting at 8.20am. To return, wait by the highway and flag down any passing Yinchuan-bound bus.

## BAYANHOT

Bayanhot (known to the Chinese as Alashan Zuoqi) is not actually in Ningxia; it's across the border in Inner Mongolia. But the most convenient way to access Bayanhot is from Yinchuan, and a visit here is a good introduction to both Mongol culture and the vast deserts and high blue skies of far western Inner Mongolia.

The original Mongol town was centred on the small 18th-century temple Yanfu Si ( admission ¥5; ☺ 8am-noon & 3-6pm). Completed in 1742, it once housed 200 lamas; around 30 are resident here now.

Next door is the local museum Alashan Bowuguan ( admission ¥40; ☺ 9am-5.30pm), the former home of the local prince, the Alashan Qin

Wang. A well-restored, Qing-era complex of buildings and courtyards, there are photos of the last prince (1903–68) and his family, plus some of their personal effects.

Bayanhot means 'Rich City' in Mongolian and there's a thriving jade trade here. Numerous shops deal in it and there's a small market in front of the museum. Bargain hard if you're in a buying mood.

Frequent buses depart from Yinchuan's main bus station for Bayanhot (¥30, two to three hours) between 6.30am and 6pm. If you want to travel further west into Inner Mongolia from Bayanhot there are two buses a day to Ejina Qi (¥104, eight hours) at 8am and 8.20am. One daily bus goes to Alashan Youqi (¥121, six hours) at 7.10am. Note: you need a permit to travel to Ejina Qi, which can be arranged by travel agents in Yinchuan.

## **AROUND BAYANHOT**

Once one of the most magnificent monasteries in Inner Mongolia, Guangzong Si ( admission ¥80; ☺ 8am-6pm) has a stunning setting in the mountains 38km south of Bayanhot. At its height, some 2000 monks lived here. So important was the monastery that the main prayer hall, Gandan Danjaling Sum, contains the remains of the sixth Dalai Lama inside the golden stupa that dominates it.

Tragically, the monastery was demolished during the Cultural Revolution; a 1957 photo in the main prayer hall gives you an idea of how big it once was. The temples have since been rebuilt, but in the last couple of years a hotel, yurt restaurants and a supremely tacky shopping street have been added to the complex to entice domestic tour groups here.

There are good walking trails in the mountains behind the complex; take the path to the right of the main temple and follow it for one hour to a grassy plateau with fantastic views.

From Bayanhot, a taxi to the monastery and then back to the highway (where you can flag down any Yinchuan-bound bus) is ¥120. On your way back to Yinchuan, look out for the crumbling, yet still mighty, remains of the Great Wall at Sanguankou (). Some sections are up to 10m high and 3m wide.

# Zhongwei

 0955 / POP 1 MILLION

With its wide streets and relaxed feel, Zhongwei easily wins the prize for Ningxia's best-looking and friendliest city. It's an ideal base for a trip up the Yellow River or further afield into the Tengger Desert (Tenggeli Shamo).

## Sights

Gao Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Gao Miao; Gulou Beijie; admission ¥30; 🕒 7.30am-7pm) One of the more extraordinary temples you'll find in China, this eclectic shrine has at various times catered to the needs of Buddhism, Confucianism and Taoism. It's still a funky mishmash of architectural styles, but the revitalised Buddhist deities have muscled out the original Taoists and Confucians.


The real oddity here is the former bomb shelter, built beneath the temple during the Cultural Revolution, which has been converted into a Buddhist hell-haunted house. The eerie, dimly lit tunnels contain numerous scenes of the damned having their tongues cut out, being sawn in half or stoked in the fires of hell, while their screams echo all around. Great stuff.

## Sleeping

A number of hotels in Zhongwei won't accept foreigners.


Zhongwei Dajiudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(  702 5555; 66 Gulou Beijie; 66 d & tw ¥368; 🌐📧) Big, surprisingly comfortable rooms with decent-sized beds and modern showers are on offer here. Outside peak season, discounts are normally available.

Zhonghui Shangwu Binguan HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(  701 0808; 61 Changcheng Dongjie; 61 d & tw ¥98-148; 🌐📧) The rooms have seen some wear and tear and could be cleaner, but the price is great, the staff amenable and the location very convenient.

The more expensive rooms come with computers; the cheaper ones lack air-con.

Fengmao Yuan Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 📍 709 1555; 65 Changcheng Dongjie; 65 tw ¥298, discounts of 25%; 🍴@) A standard two-star joint but one with reasonably sized, clean rooms.



Zhonghui

📍 Sights

1 [Gao Temple](#) A1

🛏 Sleeping

2 [Fengmao Yuan Jiudian](#) B1

3 [Zhonghui Shangwu Binguan](#) B1

4 [Zhongwei Dajiudian](#) B1

🍴 Eating

5 [Hong Yun Lai Han Canting](#) A1

6 [Night Market](#) A2



## Eating & Drinking

On summer nights, with the lit-up Drum Tower acting as a beacon, the locals eat and drink alfresco at numerous locations around the centre of town.

Night Market MARKET \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Yeshi; off Xinglong Beijie; dishes ¥7-20) A Dante's Inferno of flaming woks and grills, the night market is made up of countless stalls in the alleys running left off Xinglong Beijie (which is lined with Chinese-style bars). There are tonnes of cheap eats. Two favourites to check out are *roujiamo* (; fried pork or beef stuffed in bread, sometimes with green peppers and cumin) and *shaguo* (; mini hotpot).

Hong Yun Lai Han Canting CHINESE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 52 Changcheng Xijie; dishes from ¥14; ☺ 9am-9.30pm) Solid restaurant serving up northern Chinese classics, as well as claypot dishes and the inevitable noodle options. Small picture menu.

### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Gulou Beijie & Gulou Dongjie; ☺ 9am-5pm) One of many around town.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Gulou Xijie)

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; 121 Changcheng Dongjie; per hr ¥2.50; ☺ 9am-1am) About 200m east of the Fengmao Yuan Jiudian ([Click here](#)).

**Ningxia Desert Travel Service** ( Ningxia Shamo Luxingshe; 📞 702 7776, 186 0955 9777; [www.nxdesert.com](http://www.nxdesert.com)) Pricy but professional outfit for camel and rafting trips ([Click here](#)). Contact the English-speaking manager Billy.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 📞 706 0597; Silou Dong Nanjie; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5pm) About 4km south of the Drum Tower.

### Getting There & Away

Bus

The long-distance bus station (; changtu qichezhan) is 2.5km east of the Drum Tower, on the southern side of Gulou Dongjie. Take bus 1 or

a taxi (¥4). Frequent buses to Yinchuan (¥53, three hours) leave every half-hour from 6.30am to 6pm. There are five buses a day to Tongxin starting from 9am (¥26, 2½ hours) and two express buses daily to Guyuan (¥70, four hours, 10am and 2.30pm).

Buses to Xi'an (¥180, eight hours, 6pm) run every other day from in front of the train station. There's also a daily night bus to Lanzhou (¥80, four hours), which departs from the Drum Tower at 10pm.

#### Train

You can reach Yinchuan in 2½ hours (¥25). It's five hours to Lanzhou (hard seat/hard sleeper ¥47/101) and 12 hours to Xi'an (hard/soft sleeper ¥170/254). For Guyuan (¥33, 3½ hours) take the Xi'an train.

## Around Zhongwei

### SHAPOTOU

The desert playground of Shapotou (admission ¥90; ☀ 7.30am-6.30pm), 17km west of Zhongwei, lies on the fringes of the Tengger Desert at the dramatic convergence of sand dunes, the Yellow River and lush farmlands. It's based around the Shapotou Desert Research Centre, which was founded in 1956 to battle the ever-worsening problem of desertification in China's northwest.

These days, though, Shapotou is almost an amusement park. You can zipline (¥80) or hang-glide (¥100) on a wire across the Yellow River or go sand-sledding (¥30) or bungee jumping (¥160).

It's also a good place to raft the churning Yellow River. The traditional mode of transport on the river for centuries was the *yangpi fazi* (leather raft), made from sheep or cattle skins soaked in oil and brine and then inflated. At Shapotou you can roar upstream on a speedboat and return on a traditional raft. Prices range from ¥80 to ¥240, depending on how far you go. You can also combine the boat/raft ride with a camel ride (¥110).

Shapo Shanzhuang ( 📞 0955-768 9073; r ¥268; ☀ Apr-Oct) is a basic but comfortable hotel near the dunes. Meals are available.

Buses (¥4) run between Zhongwei and Shapotou from 7.30am to 6.30pm. You can pick them up on Changcheng Xijie about 200m past the Gao Temple on the opposite side of the road. Taxis cost ¥30/50

one way/return.

## TENGER DESERT

If you fancy playing Lawrence of Arabia, make a trip out to the Tengger Desert, a mystical landscape of shifting sand dunes and the occasional herd of two-humped camels. Shapotou lies on the southern fringe, but it's definitely worth heading deeper into the desert to avoid the crowds. The sun is fierce out here, so you'll need a hat, sunglasses and plenty of water. Nights are cool, so bring a warm layer.

Ningxia Desert Travel Service in Zhongwei ([Click here](#)) offers overnight camel treks through the desert, with a visit to the Great Wall by car, for ¥500 per person per day for a group of four. The price includes transport, food and guide. Ask your guide to bring along a sand sled for a sunset surfing session. Drinking beers around the campfire under a starry sky tops off the experience. The desert trek can be combined with a rafting trip down the Yellow River.

WORTH A TRIP

## TONGXIN

South of Zhongwei, the Han Chinese-dominated cities of northern Ningxia give way to the Hui heartland. Journeying here takes you deep into rural Ningxia, through villages of mud-brick houses where the minarets of the numerous mosques tower over the endless cornfields.

Of all the mosques in Ningxia, the most hallowed is Tongxin's Qingzhen Da Si (Great Mosque; admission free). Dating back to the 14th century, although the present mosque was built in 1573 and then renovated in 1791, it was the only one of Ningxia's 1000-odd mosques to avoid the ravages of the Cultural Revolution. As such, it's a near-perfect example of Ming-era and Qing-era temple architecture. Not until you get up close and notice the crescents that top the pagoda roofs does it become apparent that it's a mosque. Enclosed by high brick walls, stone stairs lead up to a courtyard complex where the prayer hall is flanked by intricate wooden carvings.

That the mosque survived the wrath of the Red Guards is solely because of Tongxin's impeccable revolutionary history. Mao Zedong himself visited Qingzhen Da Si when he passed through in June 1936 on the Long March. Tongxin was also the site of one of the last battles between the Red Army and the Nationalist forces in September 1949. Just south of the mosque is a **museum** commemorating these events, although it was closed at the time of writing.

Unsurprisingly, Tongxin has a very strong Muslim feel. There are always students in residence at the mosque training to be imams and they will greet you with a *salaam alaikum* and show you around. Tongxin is also one of the few places in China outside of southern Xinjiang where you'll see women in veils and covered from head to toe in black.

Qingzhen Da Si is on the south side of town, a ¥5 taxi ride from the bus station on Jing-ping Jie. There are frequent express buses between Tongxin and Yinchuan (¥52, three hours), making a long day trip possible. The last bus back to Yinchuan leaves at 4pm. You could also visit from Zhongwei (¥26, 2½ hours), or stop for a couple of hours if you are heading further south to Guyuan (¥26, two hours). If you get stuck here, try the Hui Chun Binguan (☎ 0953-803 1888; d ¥138; 📍) opposite the bus station.

## Guyuan & Around

☎ 0954

An expanding but still small and very new city, Guyuan makes a convenient base for exploring little-visited southern Ningxia. Few foreigners make it down here, so expect some attention from the overwhelmingly Hui locals. Make sure to bring cash, too; precious few ATMs in this part of the world accept foreign cards.

### Sights & Activities

Xumi Shan CAVE

( admission ¥50; 🕒 8am-6.30pm) These Buddhist grottoes (Xumi is the Chinese transliteration of the Sanskrit *sumeru*, or Buddhist

paradise) some 50km northwest of Guyuan are southern Ningxia's must-see sight.

Cut into the five adjacent sandstone hills are 132 caves housing more than 300 Buddhist statues dating back 1400 years, from the Northern Wei to the Sui and Tang dynasties. Cave 5 contains the largest statue, a colossal Maitreya (future Buddha), standing 20.6m high. Further uphill, the finest statues are protected by the Yuanguang Temples (caves 45 and 46; sixth century) and Xiangguo (cave 51; seventh century), where you can walk around the interior and examine the artwork up close – amazingly, the paint on several of the statues is still visible in places.

To reach the caves, take a bus from Guyuan to Sanying (; ¥7, one hour). They depart from Wenhua Xilu, by the two big hospitals opposite the night market. From Sanying you'll have to hire a taxi for the 40km return trip (¥100 including waiting time) to Xumi Shan.

Liupan Shan Guojia Senlin Gongyuan PARK

( Liupan Mountain National Forest Park; admission ¥65; ☺ 7am-5pm) Those on the trail of Genghis Khan will want to visit southern Ningxia's other highlight Liupan Shan, where some believe the great man died in 1227. Legend has it that he fell ill and came here to ingest medicinal plants native to the area, but perished on its slopes (it's much more likely he died elsewhere).

The mountain is now a protected area. A walking trail leads 3km up a side valley to a waterfall. About 5km further up the main valley is a clearing with some stone troughs and tables that locals say was used by the Mongols during their stay.

To get here, take a bus from Guyuan's main bus station to Jingyuan (; ¥16, one hour) and then hire a taxi for the final 18km to the reserve (¥80 return). A return taxi from Guyuan will cost ¥200.

Guyuan Museum MUSEUM

( Guyuan Bowuguan; Xicheng Jie; ☺ 9am-4.30pm Tue-Sun) For such an out-of-the-way place, Guyuan's museum is rather good, with Neolithic-era artefacts, Tangut ceramics and some fine figurines from the Northern Wei dynasty. Decent English captions, too.

## **Sleeping & Eating**

### Delong Business Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Delong Shangwu Jiudian; ☎ 286 3918; Wenhua Xilu; tw ¥260, discounts of 40%; 🌟🌟) Friendly, helpful staff and good-sized rooms with modern bathrooms make this the pick of the hotels along Wenhua Xilu.

### Liupanshan Binguan HOTEL \$

( ☎ 202 1666; 77 Zhongshan Nanjie; 77 d & tw ¥196, discounts of 30%; 🌟🌟) The rooms at this long-standing hotel look their age these days, but they are quiet and it still makes a decent base. Foreigners will be directed to the rear annexe, where there's also a restaurant.

### Night Market MARKET \$

This alley of food stalls (; Xiaochi Cheng) runs till very late and specialises in delicious mini hotpot (), as well as *shaokao* (barbecue) and noodles. Dishes start at ¥11 and are on display, so you can pick and choose. It's down a covered arcade off Wenhua Xilu and directly opposite two big hospitals.

### **i** Getting There & Away

Guyuan is on the Zhongwei–Baoji railway line, with trains to Xi'an (hard/soft sleeper ¥118/175, eight hours), Yinchuan (hard seat/sleeper ¥54/108, six hours) and Lanzhou (hard sleeper ¥92, 9½ hours), but sleeper tickets are near impossible to get and the majority of trains depart in the middle of the night. To get to the train station you'll need to take bus 1 or a taxi (¥5).

Buses from the long-distance bus station:

**Lanzhou** ¥95, nine hours, one daily (8am)

**Tianshui** ¥65, seven hours, one daily (6.30am)

**Tongxin** ¥26, 2½ hours, hourly (9.45am to 4.40pm)

**Xi'an** ¥101, seven hours, hourly (7am to 1.30pm)

**Yinchuan** ¥90, four hours, every half-hour (7am to 6.10pm)

**Zhongwei** ¥70, two daily (10.10am and 3pm)



# Inner Mongolia

POP 24.9 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Hohhot](#)

[Shangdu \(Xanadu\)](#)

[Baotou](#)

[Genghis Khan Mausoleum](#)

[Cave Temple](#)

[Haila'er](#)

[Manzhouli](#)

---

## Why Go?

Mongolia. The word alone stirs up visions of nomadic herders, thundering horses and, of course, the warrior-emperor Genghis Khan. The Mongols conquered half the known world in the 13th century and while their empire is long gone, visitors are still drawn to this magical land wrapped up in both myth and legend.

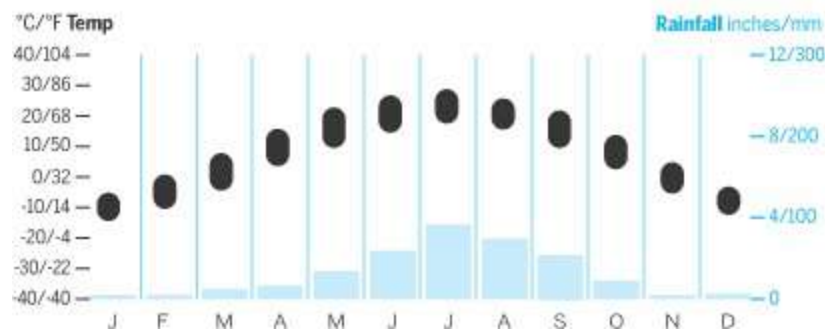
Travellers heading north of the Great Wall half expect to see the Mongol hordes galloping along. The reality is quite different as 21st-century Inner Mongolia (; Nei Menggu) is a wholly different place from Mongolia itself. The more-visited south of the province is industrialised

and very much within the realm of China's modern economic miracle. The Mongolia of your dreams exists off the tourist route, amid the shimmering sand dunes of the Badain Jaran Desert or the vast grasslands in the north. Some effort is required to reach these areas but the spectacular scenery makes it worthwhile.

---

## When to Go

### Hohhot



**Jul** Hohhot and other regions host the annual Naadam festival.

**Aug & Sep** The best time to see the grasslands and ride Mongolia's famed horses.

**Oct** The poplar trees change colours at Ejina Qi.

---

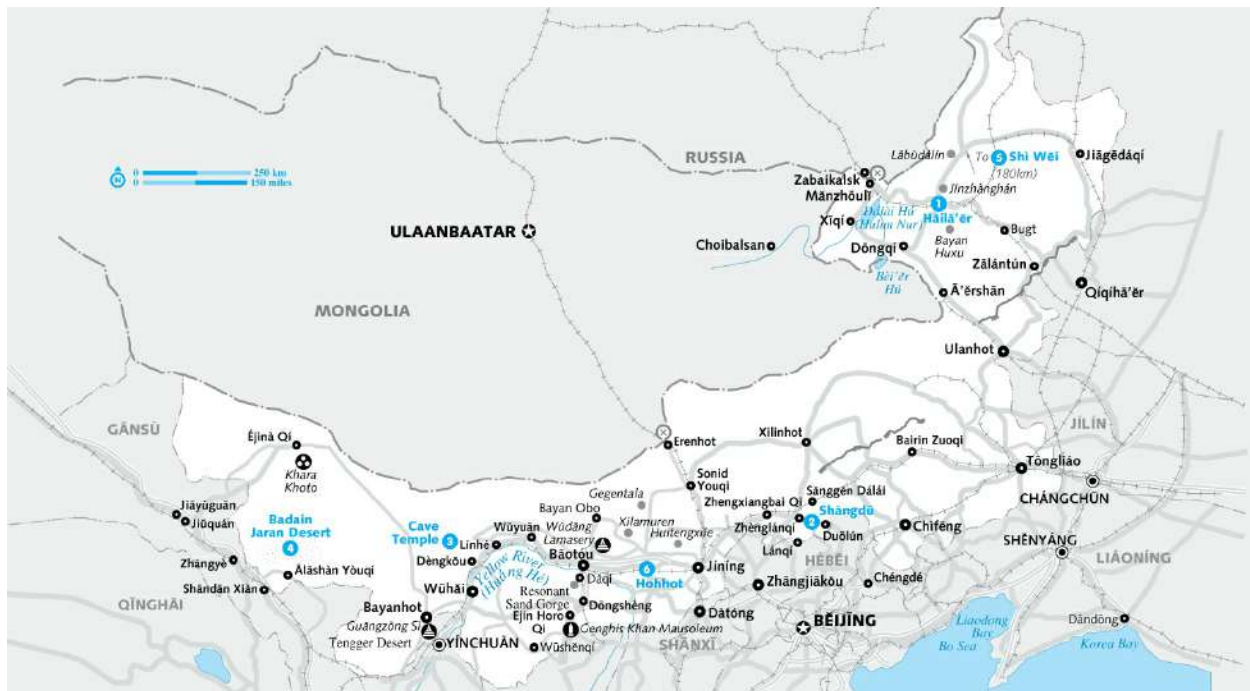
## Best Natural Wonders

- » Hulunbei'er Grasslands ([Click here](#))
  - » Badain Jaran Desert ([Click here](#))
  - » A'ershan National Forest Park ([Click here](#))
  - » Hulun Hu ([Click here](#))
- 

## Best Temples

- » Cave Temple ([Click here](#))
- » Wudang Lamasery ([Click here](#))
- » Wuta Pagoda ([Click here](#))
- » Ganjur Monastery ([Click here](#))





## Inner Mongolia Highlights

- 1 Saddle up and go for a horse ride around the glorious grasslands near **Haila'er** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Wander amid the ancient walls of **Shangdu** ([Click here](#)) and contemplate the lost greatness of Kublai Khan's pleasure dome
- 3 Journey across the desert and into the mountains to explore the legendary **Cave Temple** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Mount a camel and set off across the dunes of the **Badain Jaran Desert** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Mingle with the Chinese-speaking ethnic Russians at the unique village of **Shi Wei** ([Click here](#)) near the Russian border
- 6 Listen to the groaning chants of Mongolian monks at the colourful monasteries of **Da Zhao** ([Click here](#)) and **Xilitu Zhao** ([Click here](#)) in Hohhot

## History

The nomadic tribes of the northern steppes have always been at odds with the agrarian Han Chinese, so much so that the Great Wall was built to keep them out. But it acted more like a speed bump than an

actual barrier to the Mongol hordes.

Genghis Khan and grandson Kublai rumbled through in the 13th century, and after conquering southern China in 1279 Kublai Khan became the first emperor of the Yuan dynasty. But by the end of the 14th century the Mongol empire had collapsed, and the Mongols again became a collection of disorganised roaming tribes. It was not until the 18th century that the Qing emperors finally gained full control of the region.

A divide-and-conquer policy by the Qing led to the creation of an 'Inner' and 'Outer' Mongolia. The Qing opened up Inner Mongolia to Han farmers, and waves of migrants came to cultivate the land. Outer Mongolia was spared this policy and, with backing from the USSR, it gained full independence in 1921.

Now, Mongolians make up only 15% of Inner Mongolia's population. Most of the other 85% are Han Chinese, with a smattering of Hui, Manchu, Daur and Ewenki.

Inner Mongolia's economy has boomed in recent years thanks to extensive mining of both coal and rare earth minerals. That growth has come at great environmental cost. The mines have swallowed up pastureland at alarming rates and desertification is the root cause of the dust storms that envelop Beijing each spring. Only the far north of the region has escaped heavy industrialisation and the economy here is largely based on cattle ranching and tourism.

## **Climate**

Siberian blizzards and cold air currents rake the Mongolian plains from November to March. June to August brings pleasant temperatures, but the west is scorching hot during the day.

The best time to visit is between July and September, particularly to see the grasslands, which are green only in summer. Make sure you bring warm, windproof clothing, as even in midsummer it's often windy, and evening temperatures can dip to 10°C or below.

## **Language**

The Mongolian language is part of the Altaic linguistic family, which includes the Central Asian Turkic languages and the now defunct

Manchurian. Although the vertical Mongolian script (written left to right) adorns street signs, almost everyone speaks standard Mandarin.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥250

\$\$ ¥250 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥50

\$\$\$ more than ¥50



### Getting There & Away

Inner Mongolia borders Mongolia and Russia. There are border crossings at Erenhot (Mongolia) and Manzhouli (Russia), which are stopovers on the Trans-Mongolian and Trans-Manchurian Railways, respectively. To Mongolia, you can also catch a local train to Erenhot, cross the border and take another local train to Ulaanbaatar (with the appropriate visa). Possible air connections include Hohhot to Ulaanbaatar or Haila'er to Choibalsan (eastern Mongolia).

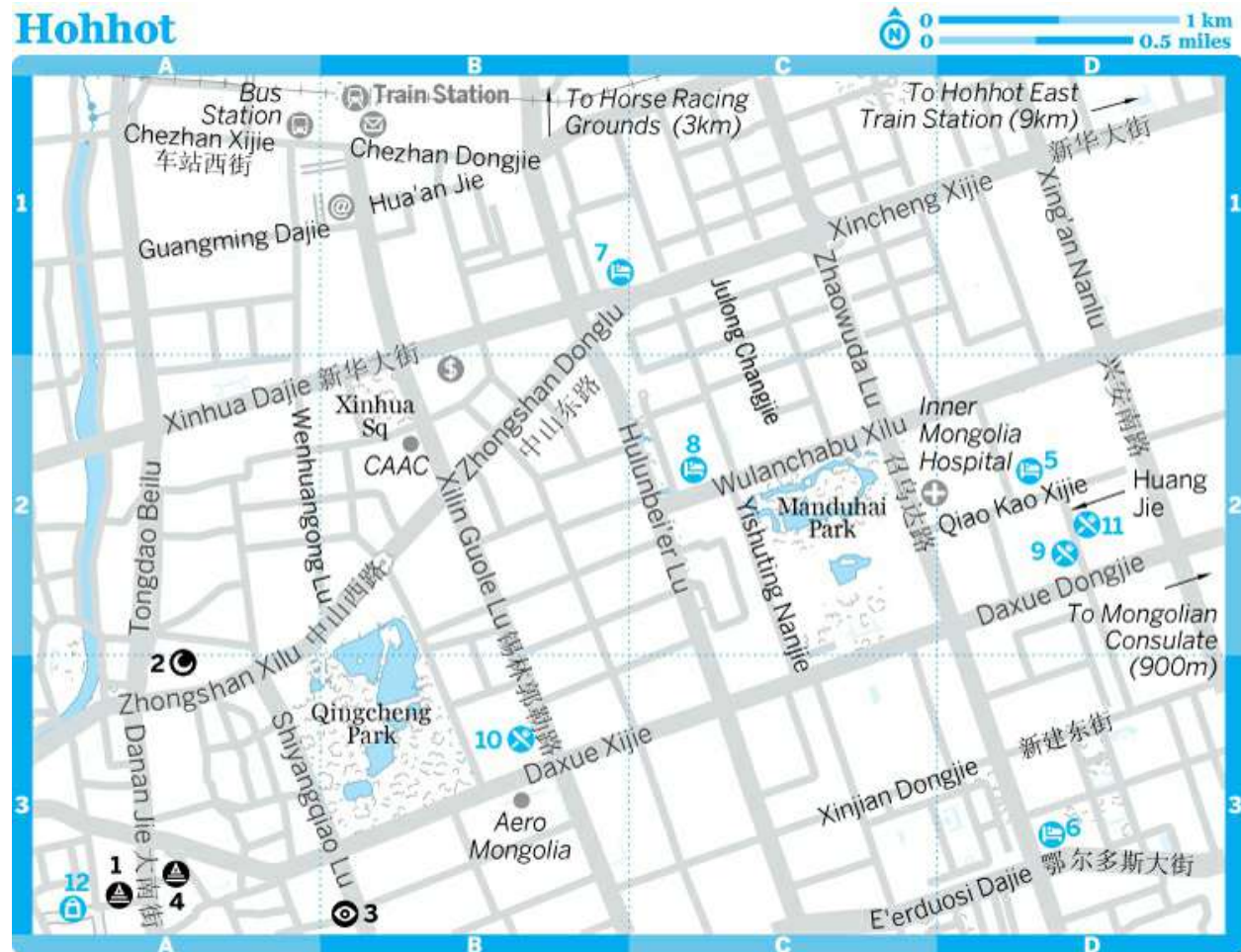
## Hohhot

0471 / POP 817,529

Founded by Altan Khan in the 16th century, the capital of Inner Mongolia is an increasingly prosperous city. Hohhot (known in Mandarin as Huhehaote) means 'Blue City' in Mongolian, a reference to the arching blue skies over the grasslands. Streets are attractively tree-lined (although the roads are traffic-snarled) and there are a

handful of interesting temples and pagodas in the town – enough to keep you busy for a day or two before heading to the hinterlands.

## Hohhot



### Hohhot

#### Sights

- 1 [Da Zhao](#) A3
- 2 [Great Mosque](#) A3
- 3 [Wuta Pagoda](#) B3
- 4 [Xilitu Zhao](#) A3

#### Sleeping

- 5 [Anda Guesthouse](#) D2
- 6 [Binyue International Hostel](#) D3
- 7 [Jinjiang Inn](#) B1
- 8 [Nei Menggu Fandian](#) C2

#### Eating

- 9 [Wuzhumuqin Naichaguan Si Fendian](#) D2

- 10 [Xiaofei Yang Huoguo Cheng](#) B3
- 11 [Xinjiang Hongliu Zhuangyuan](#) D2

 Shopping

- 12 [Souvenir Shops](#) A3

## Sights

Wuta Pagoda PAGODA

[Offline map](#)

( Wuta Si; Wutasi Houjie; admission ¥35; ☺ 8am-6pm) This striking, Indian-influenced, five-tiered pagoda was completed in 1732. Its main claim to fame is the Mongolian star chart around the back, though the engraving of the Diamond Sutra (in Sanskrit, Tibetan and Mongolian), extending around the entire base of the structure, is in much better condition. Bus 1 runs by the pagoda.

Da Zhao MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Danan Jie; admission ¥35; ☺ 8am-7pm) Da Zhao is a large, well-maintained lamasery (monastery for lamas) that is still used as a temple. In the sacred main prayer hall you may come upon groups of Mongol monks chanting and praying (usually at 9am).

Xilitu Zhao MONASTERY

[Offline map](#)

( Danan Jie; admission ¥30; ☺ 7.30am-6.30pm) Across the main boulevard is this simpler, more peaceful monastery, the purported stomping ground of Hohhot's 11th Living Buddha (he actually works elsewhere). Monks chant at 9am and 3pm.

 Inner Mongolia Museum MUSEUM

( Nei Menggu Bowuyuan; Xinhua Dongdajie; ☺ 9am-5.30pm Tue-Sun) This massive museum has a distinctive sloping roof supposed to resemble the vast steppes of Mongolia. It's one of the better provincial museums, with everything from dinosaurs and Genghis Khan to space-age rockets. Take bus 3 from Xinhua Dajie or pay ¥14 for a cab.

Great Mosque MOSQUE

### [Offline map](#)

( Qingzhen Dasi; 28 Tongdao Beilu) North of the old town is the Great Mosque. Built in the Chinese style, it dates from the Qing dynasty and was being brushed-up at the time of writing. You can look around as long as you don't enter the prayer hall.

### Guanyin Si TEMPLE

() Close to Da Zhao and at the end of a restored Qing-era shopping street, is the enormous new temple complex Guanyin Si with an oversized stupa (), which the locals circumambulate.

## Festivals & Events

### Naadam TRADITIONAL, SPORTS

The week-long summer festival known as Naadam features traditional Mongolian sports such as archery, wrestling and horse racing. It takes place at Gegentalu in July and is very popular with domestic tour groups.

## Sleeping



### Anda Guesthouse GUESTHOUSE \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Anda Luguan; 📞 691 8039, 159 475 19807; andaguesthouse@hotmail.com; Qiao Kao Xijie; dm/d ¥60/180; @📶 )  
Now the go-to place for backpackers in Hohhot, thanks to its friendly, English-speaking, mostly Mongolian staff and cosy atmosphere; the Anda has compact dorms and decent-sized, bright doubles. The dorm bathrooms especially could be cleaner, but there's a small lounge, kitchen facilities and a cute courtyard. The staff are eager to show off Mongolian culture and can organise trips to the grasslands, as well as to the Kubuqi Desert and the Great Wall. Finding the place can be difficult; call ahead and get a pick-up from the train station. If you want to search for it, start by taking bus 2, 37 or 61 to the Inner Mongolia Hospital ( A ; Nei Menggu Yiyuan Dalou A zuo), then walk west for six minutes on Qiao Kao Xijie. It's down an unmarked alley almost opposite the northern end of Huang Jie. Look for the blue sign.

### Binyue International Hostel HOSTEL \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Binyue Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 660 5588; fax 431 0808; 52 Zhaowuda Lu; 52 dm ¥60, d & tw ¥180-200; 🌐📧) More like an old-fashioned hotel than a true hostel, Binyue caters overwhelmingly to domestic travellers. The doubles and twins here are actually comfortable and good value. Some of the dorms too come with their own bathrooms and broadband connections, although the beds are hard. From the train station, take bus 34 southeast to Normal University (; Shifan Daxue). The hostel is behind the big hotel of the same name.

Nei Menggu Fandian HOTEL \$\$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Inner Mongolia Hotel; 📞 693 8888; [www.nmg hotel.com](http://www.nmg hotel.com); Wulanchabu Xilu; d ¥660-1480; 🌐📧📶🚰) Despite competition from upmarket Western chains, this 14-storey high-rise is still the nicest hotel you'll find in Hohhot, featuring fine, recently updated rooms with big, comfy beds, a pool and health centre. You can dine Mongolian-style in concrete yurts out back. Some staff speak English. Prices drop outside the peak summer season.

Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$

( Jinjiang Zhixing Luguan; 📞 666 8111; [www.jinjianginns.com](http://www.jinjianginns.com); 61 Xinhua Dajie; 61 d ¥249; 🌐📧) Big branch of the ultra-efficient chain hotel that has spotless, if somewhat bland, rooms that come with free broadband access.

## Eating

Mongolia's notable culinary contribution is *huoguo* (; hotpot), a refined version, so the story goes, of the stew originally cooked in soldiers' helmets. *Yangrou* (; mutton), *mian* (; noodles), *doufu* (; tofu), *mogu* (; mushrooms) and other vegies are added to the bubbling cauldron.

For an excellent selection of Mongolian and Chinese restaurants, head down to Huang Jie (; Yellow Street), which is lined with about 40 small eateries. There are a few Mongolian music bars nearby; ask at Anda Guesthouse ([Click here](#)) for the latest hot spot.



Wuzhumuqin Naichaguan Si Fendian MONGOLIAN \$

### [Offline map](#)

( Wuzhumuqin Tea Restaurant Fourth Branch; Huang Jie; meals from ¥25; ☺ 7am-midnight) This small restaurant serves Mongol ‘soul food’, including juicy *jiaozi* (; dumplings), *makhtai shul* (; meat soup) and *suutai tsai* (; salty milk tea), along with hunks of lamb on the bone and beef (served by the *jin*). Look for the large yellow and blue sign above the door.

Xiaofeiyang Huoguo Cheng MONGOLIAN HOTPOT \$\$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Little Fat Sheep Hotpot City; Xilin Guole Lu; for 2 people from ¥60; ☺ 11am-1.30am; 📷) Giant branch of the popular and reliable Inner Mongolian chain serving Mongolia’s most famous culinary export. Decent cuts of lamb and beef, a wide choice of fresh vegies and mushrooms and a fun atmosphere.

Xinjiang Hongliu Zhuangyuan CHINESE XINJIANG \$\$

### [Offline map](#)

( Huang Jie; meals from ¥35; ☺ 11.30am-2am) With an outdoor area that’s busy until the wee hours and smoke billowing off the giant grill, this place specialises in Uighur cuisine from the far western province of Xinjiang. The chunky and succulent lamb kebabs (¥7) – nothing like the scrawny, fatty ones sold by street vendors – are especially good. Dishes are pricier than in other Uighur eateries, but the food is authentic and tasty. Picture menu.

## Shopping

Souvenir Shops SOUVENIRS

### [Offline map](#)

( Biaoji Dianpu) To the west of Da Zhao monastery, this Qing-era street is packed with souvenir stalls selling fake Mongolian tat, jade, Buddhist and Mao memorabilia. South of Da Zhao is a kitschy open-air shopping plaza done up as a *hutong* (narrow alley), which was being expanded at the time of writing and attracts hordes of tour groups.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Xinhua Dajie) Has a 24-hour



ATM available.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; Chezhan Dongjie) To the left as you exit the train station.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; Xilin Guole Lu; per hr ¥4; ☺ 24hr) Large internet cafe about 200m south of the train station.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Chilechuan Dajie; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5pm Mon-Fri) For visa extensions and other enquiries, the foreign-affairs bureau is to the left of the main building, outside the gated compound.

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO MONGOLIA

Two direct trains run between Hohhot and Ulaanbaatar (hard/soft sleeper ¥970/1480), the Mongolian capital, on Monday and Friday at 10.05pm. The same train stops in Erenhot (; Erlanhaote; hard seat/hard sleeper ¥36/82, eight hours), at the Mongolian border. Erenhot is listed on Chinese train timetables as Erlian ().

There are also five daily buses to Erenhot (¥89, six hours), leaving between 8am and 1.30pm. From here you can catch a jeep across the border (about ¥50) and continue to Ulaanbaatar on the daily 5.50pm local train.

Aero Mongolia ( Kong Menggu; ☎ 138 4818 7711; [www.aeromongolia.mn](http://www.aeromongolia.mn); 36 Daxue Xijie) flies from Hohhot to Mongolia on Monday, Wednesday and Friday for ¥1445. The schedule changes in winter. The office is in the Xuefu Kangdu building, tower A, Room 806 ( A 806 ).

If you need a visa, head for the Mongolian consulate ( Menggu Lingshiguan; 5 Dongying Nanjie; 5 ☺ 8.30am-12.30pm Mon, Tue & Thu). Most travellers can get a 30-day visa, although some are only given 21 days. The visa costs ¥260 and takes four days to process. A rush visa (¥495) can be obtained the following day. US citizens do not need a visa to visit Mongolia. To find the consulate, travel east on Daxue Dongjie, turn left on Dongying Nanjie and look for the consulate 200m on the left.

Note that there is also a consulate in Erenhot (Menggu Lingshi; ☺ 8.30am-4.30pm Mon-Fri). To find the consulate from the bus station, walk half a block east to the T-junction and head left. Walk north along this road (Youyi Beilu) for 10 minutes until you see the red, blue and yellow Mongolian flags on your left. A 30-day rush tourist visa (¥495) can be obtained the next day.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Daily flight destinations (routes are reduced in winter) include Beijing (¥500), Xi'an (¥830), Haila'er (¥1000), Manzhouli (¥860), Chifeng (¥780), Xilinhot (¥400) and Shanghai (¥1350). Book flights on [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net) or [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com).

#### Bus

Hohhot's main bus station (; *changtu qichezhan*) is next door to the train station.

**Baotou** ¥40, two hours, every 30 minutes (6.40am to 7.30pm)

**Beijing** ¥150, six to eight hours, 15 daily (7.25am to 9pm)

**Datong** ¥80, four hours, hourly (6.30am to 7.20pm)

**Dongsheng** ¥63, three hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 7.20pm)

#### Train

From Hohhot, express trains go to the following:

**Baotou** ¥25, two hours, 16 daily

**Beijing** hard/soft sleeper ¥170/254, 10 hours, 13 daily

**Datong** hard seat/hard sleeper ¥39/93, four hours, 10 daily

**Xilinhot** hard/soft sleeper ¥170/254, 11 hours, one daily

**Yinchuan** hard/soft sleeper ¥175/264, 10 hours, six daily

Sleeper tickets are hard to come by in July and August; hotel travel desks can book them for a ¥30 commission.

### Getting Around

Useful bus routes include bus 1, which runs from the train station to the old part of the city, via Zhongshan Xilu; bus 33, which runs east on Xinhua Dajie from the train station; and bus 5, which plies the length of Xilin Guole Lu. Tickets for local buses are ¥1.

Hohhot's airport is 15km east of the city. The airport bus (¥10) leaves from **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; ☎ 696 4103; Xilin Guole Lu). A taxi will cost about ¥35 on the meter (flag fall ¥6).

## Around Hohhot

In the middle of the fields, 7km east of the airport (about 22km from Hohhot), is Bai Ta ( White Pagoda; admission ¥35), a striking seven-storey octagonal tower built during the Liao dynasty. A steep, double-

barrelled staircase leads to a small shrine room at the top. Few travellers come here so you will feel like you have the place to yourself. A taxi from Hohhot will cost around ¥60 to ¥70 return.

About 110km north of Hohhot is the grassland area of Xilamuren (Xilamuren), with dozens of yurt camps that cater mainly to the Chinese market. Nearby mining operations have accelerated infrastructure development, so don't come this way if you are looking for a true wilderness experience. Xilamuren is worth considering if you want to try your luck on a Mongolian horse, but if you are hoping for a taste of traditional Mongolian life you'll need to look elsewhere.

If you want to avoid the tourist camps at Xilamuren, Anda Guesthouse ([Click here](#)) in Hohhot can set you up at the home of a local family; day trips start from ¥290 (including one meal) or ¥390 for an overnight trip (including three meals). Horse riding is an extra ¥90 per hour.

There are more yurt camps at Gegentala (Gegentala) and Huitengxile (Huitengxile). Both are two to 2½ hours from Hohhot, but are even less authentic than Xilamuren and very crowded with domestic tour groups.

#### LOCAL KNOWLEDGE

## ZHAMSU: A GRASSLANDS LIFE

Mongolian Zhamsu, now 50, has spent his entire life living in the grasslands of Xilamuren ([Click here](#)).

**What was your life like growing up?** My parents were nomad herders. We lived in a *ger* (yurt). We had more than 300 sheep, 10 cows and 10 horses. I started to help herding when I was seven. Life was hard, but it was less complicated.

**How different are the grasslands now?** There are more people and fewer animals. The government has banned herding in our area until 2016 to protect the grasslands. So now I live in a house and our *ger* is for tourists to stay in. I still have 20 sheep, but only for the guests to eat, and a few horses for people to ride.

**Is Mongolian culture still strong in Inner Mongolia?** Not really. Fewer children speak Mongolian now and many young people move to the cities. They speak Mandarin and accept Chinese culture

because they think that will lead to a better life. It's only in the grasslands that you can experience traditional Mongolian culture.

**Will you ever move to the city?** No, I can't imagine how I'd survive. I feel comfortable on the grasslands. I've lived with animals every day for the last 50 years. How could I live without them?

## Shangdu (Xanadu)

Explorer Marco Polo made it his final stop and poet Samuel Taylor Coleridge immortalised it in Western minds as the ultimate pleasure palace. Today Xanadu, or Shangdu ( Yuan Shangdu Yizhi; admission ¥30; ☺ 8am-6pm), is little more than a vast prairie with vague remnants of once mighty walls, but it is still a legendary destination thanks to its glory days as one of the most storied cities on earth.

Conceived by Kublai Khan, grandson of Genghis and the first Yuan emperor, as his summer capital, Shangdu's lifespan was relatively brief. Construction of the city started in 1252 and lasted four years, but it was overrun and destroyed by Ming forces in 1369.

Listed as a World Heritage Site by Unesco in June 2012, Shangdu actually consisted of three distinct cities: an outer city, imperial city and the palace city. All that is visible now are the outer and inner walls. From the ticket yurt, it's about 1.5km to the outer walls (a golf buggy will take you for ¥10). From there, you can walk another 500m to the inner ramparts. Paths through the wildflower-covered grassland that has swallowed up the city offer the chance for pleasant strolls and reflective musings on the vagaries of history.

Although Shangdu signifies distant wonders in the Western imagination, in truth it's not that isolated (275km northwest of Beijing). But it does feel remote, partly because of the huge empty prairie it sits in, and also because getting here requires some effort.

From Hohhot, a number of daily trains make the eight-hour run to Sanggen Dalai (). The best option is the K2052 (hard seat/hard sleeper ¥73/137), which leaves from Hohhot's posh east train station at 11.15am. Shared taxis (¥40 per person) will be waiting to carry you a further 80km south to the small city of Lanqi (). From Lanqi it's about a 20km taxi ride (¥150 return) down a mostly abysmal road to

Shangdu. Heading to Hohhot, take the K1814 train at 10.20am from Sanggen Dalai.

Lanqi's Xanadu Museum ( Shangdu Bowuguan; admission ¥20; ☺ 8am-5pm Tue-Sun) is worth visiting for the scale models that give a good impression of the sheer ambition of Shangdu, as well as for relics from the site, including ceramics and statues.

Shangdu's newfound status as a World Heritage site means Lanqi's hotels are hideously overpriced (but expect big discounts outside the peak summer season). The Jiadi Shangwu Binguan ( Shangdu Dajie; tw ¥200) is the most acceptable of the cheaper options. On Shangdu Dajie, you'll also find restaurants and a branch of the ICBC bank with an ATM that takes foreign cards.

## Baotou

### TRANSPORT HUB

Unlovely but booming Baotou sprawls across more than 20km of dusty landscape, much of it industrialised and polluted. However, if you're heading to the Wudang Lamasery and Genghis Khan's Mausoleum, or further west to the Cave Temple, you'll likely have to pass through and maybe stop a night.

Baotou is divided into eastern and western sections. The eastern district (Donghe) is the place to stay; if you're arriving by train make sure to get off at the East Baotou train station (Baotou dongzhan) and not the west station.

### Sleeping & Eating

Head to Nanmenwai Dajie for a selection of hotels, restaurants, banks and internet cafes within walking distance of the East Baotou train station and a short hop in a cab (¥6) from the east bus station, around which you can find cheap rooms for around ¥100.

Xihu Fandian HOTEL \$\$

(West Lake Hotel; 📍 414 4444; 10 Nanmenwai Dajie; 10 d ¥288; 📞📧)

A five-minute walk from the train station, this friendly place has plenty of clean, comfortable rooms with modern bathrooms. They're nearly always far cheaper than the advertised price, offering discounts of

30% to 40%. There's an internet cafe directly opposite.

## Getting There & Away

Air

Flights connect Baotou with Beijing (¥590). Buy tickets at [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net).

The airport is 2km south of the East Baotou train station. A taxi there is ¥15, but ¥30 if you're coming from it.

Bus

Bus 17 (¥1) runs from East Baotou bus station (; *donghe qichezhan*) to Nanmenwai Dajie.

**Dongsheng** ¥34, two hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 6.30pm)

**Hohhot** ¥40, three hours, every 30 minutes (6.30am to 7.30pm)

**Yan'an** (Shaanxi) ¥174, eight hours, one daily (11.50am)

**Yulin** (Shaanxi) ¥92, five hours, eight daily (6.30am to 4.30pm)

Train

Frequent trains between Hohhot and Baotou (¥25, two hours) stop at both the east and west stations.

**Beijing** hard/soft sleeper ¥175/264, 10 to 13 hours, 11 daily

**Lanzhou** hard/soft sleeper ¥231/352, 16 hours, three daily

**Taiyuan** hard/soft sleeper ¥175/264, 10 hours, three daily

**Yinchuan** hard/soft sleeper ¥137/205, seven hours, six daily

## Wudang Lamasery

Lying on the pilgrim route from Tibet to Outer Mongolia, this handsome, Tibetan-style monastery (Wudang Zhao; admission ¥60; ☀ 8am-6.30pm) saw considerable foot traffic from the time of its establishment in 1749. At its height it was the largest monastery in Inner Mongolia, housing 1200 monks belonging to the Gelugpa sect of Tibetan Buddhism. Around 50 monks are resident here these days, but the monastery's numerous outlying buildings, now occupied by local villagers, are a reminder of how important Wudang once was. At the time of writing, the immediate area around the monastery was being spruced up, an indication that the domestic tour group hordes are preparing to descend.

The monastery is 67km northeast of Baotou. To get here, take bus

7 (¥10, one hour) from the bus parking lot in front of East Baotou's train station to Shiguai (), 40km from Baotou. From Shiguai hire a taxi to the monastery (¥80 return). The last bus back to Baotou from Shiguai leaves around 6pm.

## Genghis Khan Mausoleum

Located 130km south of Baotou in the middle of absolutely nowhere is the Genghis Khan Mausoleum (Chengji Sihan Lingyuan; admission ¥110; ☺ 7am-7.30pm), China's tribute to the great Mongol warlord.

The first thing to know about this place is that old Genghis was not buried here. Instead, the mausoleum's existence is justified by an old Mongol tradition of worshipping Genghis Khan's personal effects, including his saddle, bow and other items. Kublai Khan established the cult and handed over care for the objects to the Darhats, a Mongol clan. Darhat elders kept the relics inside eight white tents, which could be moved in times of warfare.

In the early 1950s, the government decided to build a permanent site for the relics and constructed this impressive triple-domed building. By then, most of the relics had been lost or stolen (everything you'll see here is a replica). But even today, some of the guards at the site still claim descent from the Darhat clan.

The mausoleum, which the locals refer to as Chengling (), is 25km south of Ejin Horo Qi (; Yijin Huoluo Qi), which is abbreviated to just 'Yi Qi'. From there, you catch a bus (¥12, 30 minutes) that will let you off at a small tourist village with a handful of shops and hotels. You'll then have to catch a taxi (¥15) the final 5km to the mausoleum.

From Baotou there are two buses a day (¥42, 6.10am and 8.30am) to Ejin Horo Qi. Otherwise, there are buses every half hour from 6.30am to 6.30pm to Dongsheng (also known by its Mongolian name Ordos), from where frequent buses (¥12, one hour) connect with Ejin Horo Qi. Coming from Hohhot, there are buses to Dongsheng every 40 minutes or so from 6.30am to 7.20pm (¥63, four hours).

To return, take a cab back to the main highway and flag down any Dongsheng-bound bus. Buses should pass by regularly till about 5pm.

---

## GENGHIS' GRAVE

The great Genghis left stern instructions that his burial place be kept secret. Legend has it that the slaves who built his tomb were massacred afterwards by soldiers, who were then subsequently killed themselves to prevent anyone knowing the location of his grave. Archaeologists hunting for Genghis' final resting place have been further hampered by a reputed curse that has supposedly struck some down. Most historians assume that after his death (and no one knows where that occurred) in 1227, Genghis' body was taken back to Mongolia and buried near his birthplace in Khentii Aimag close to the Onon River.

## Cave Temple

The remote, little-visited Cave Temple (Agui Miao; admission free; ☺ 7am-6pm) is one of the oldest monasteries in Inner Mongolia. The journey here takes you out into the wild, through isolated farm country that gives way to semi-desert where camel herds roam, before you head the final 6km up a rough road in the Yinshan Mountains.

Taking its name from two caves that you can climb up to, construction of the monastery began in the mid-17th century and was expanded in 1831 by the famed Outer Mongolian monks, Danzan Ravjaa. The temples were destroyed during the Cultural Revolution but have since been rebuilt. At the time of writing, more renovations were taking place.

Look out for the most holy relic, a statue of Padmasambhava in the main hall, said to be fashioned by Padmasambhava himself. About 20 monks live here and one will probably guide you around the cave temples (and may offer you a bowl of mutton soup if you arrive in time for lunch).

The monastery is 90km from the city of Dengkou ( ) and the only way to get here is by taxi (¥250 including waiting time), which takes around 1½ hours.

The easiest way to reach Dengkou is to take a bus (¥75, four hours) from Baotou to the small city of Linhe ( ). From there, very frequent buses run from 6.30am to Dengkou (¥17, one hour). Back in Linhe, there are hourly buses to Yinchuan in nearby Ningxia from 7am to 3.10pm (¥90, four hours).



## INNER MONGOLIA'S FAR WEST

The golden deserts, shimmering lakes and ruined cities of western Inner Mongolia are fantastic places for adventures far from the beaten track. Visiting them, though, requires some logistical help. One destination is Khara Khoto (Black City; in Chinese Heicheng; admission ¥10; ☎ 8am-7pm), a ruined Tangut city built in 1032 and captured by Genghis Khan in 1226 (his last great battle). Khara Khoto continued to thrive under Mongol occupation, but in 1372 an upstart Ming battalion starved the city of its water source, killing everyone inside. Six hundred years of dust storms nearly buried the city, until the Russian explorer PK Kozlov excavated and mapped the site, and recovered hundreds of Tangut-era texts (kept at the Institute of Oriental Manuscripts in St Petersburg). Located about 25km southeast of Ejina Qi ( ), the allure here is the remoteness of the site and surrounding natural beauty. A great time to visit is late September to early October when the poplar trees are changing colours; but be warned that every hotel room in Ejina Qi will be booked out at this time.

The second tourist drawcard in these parts is the remote but stunning Badain Jaran Desert ( ; Badanjilin Shamo), a mysterious landscape of desert lakes, Buddhist temples and towering dunes. The dunes here are the tallest in the world, some topping 380m (incredibly, the same height as the Empire State Building). The closest town in the region, Alashan Youqi ( ), is a 30-minute drive from the dunes. Badanjilin Travel Service (☎ 0483-602 1618, 0483-602 6555; [www.badanjilin.cn](http://www.badanjilin.cn)), in the town, organises camel treks (from ¥80 to ¥120 per hour) and jeep tours for ¥1000 per day with English-speaking guides. They can also organise a car to Khara Khoto for ¥1600 return. Chengdu-based Navo Tours (☎ 028-8611 7722; [www.navo-tour.com](http://www.navo-tour.com)) runs five-day tours here (three days of which is in the desert) starting from Lanzhou with English-speaking guides for ¥9800 per person.

This part of Inner Mongolia is highly militarised (China's space city is nearby) and travel permits are required for the road between

Jiuquan and Ejina Qi, as well as Khara Khoto itself and the Badain Jaran Desert. Travel agents need at least three days to organise the necessary permits.

The closest rail links are Jiuquan and Zhangye in Gansu province. However, public transport between Gansu and Inner Mongolia is limited. A daily bus travels between Alashan Youqi and Shandan Xian (), but the best connections start with other Inner Mongolian towns such as Bayanhot. There are daily buses from Bayanhot to both Ejina Qi and Alashan Youqi.

## Haila'er

☞ 0470 / POP 240,369

Haila'er is the largest city in northern Inner Mongolia and a busy, ordinary place. But surrounding it are the Hulunbei'er Grasslands, a vast expanse of prairie that begins just outside the city and rolls northwards towards the Russian and Mongolian borders, seemingly forever. Superbly lush in July and August, the grasslands are a fantastic sight and *the* place in Inner Mongolia to saddle up a horse.

In the immediate area around Haila'er are several tourist yurt camps where you can eat, listen to traditional music and sometimes stay the night. Although they're not places where Mongolians actually live, you can still learn a bit about Mongolian culture, and the wide-open grasslands are a splendid setting. For a more authentic (and far more rustic) experience, you need to travel further away, although staying with local families in the grasslands is not easy to organise unless you speak a bit of Mandarin (or Mongolian).

Haila'er's main square is on Zhongyang Dajie, near Xingan Lu. Hotels and services are conveniently located near the main square. Buxing Jie, a pedestrian street just off Zhongyang Dajie, contains a few souvenir shops run by Mongolians. Meeting the owners is a good way to tap into the Mongolian community. Just past Buxing Jie is a mostly deserted, sad re-creation of a Qing-dynasty *hutong*, completed in 2010.

### Sights



## Ewenki Museum MUSEUM

( Ewenke Bowuguan; ☺ 8.30am-noon & 2.30-5.30pm) Roughly 20,000 Ewenki people live in northern Inner Mongolia, most in the Hulunbei'er Grasslands surrounding Haila'er. You can glimpse some of their history and culture at this well-mounted modern museum. The Ewenki have traditionally been herders, hunters and farmers; they are one of the few peoples in China to raise reindeer.

The museum is on the southeastern edge of town. Bus 3 (¥1) runs here from the main square; a taxi will cost ¥35 to ¥40 return. The museum is on the road to the Bayan Huxu Grasslands, so you could stop here on your way out of town.

## Underground Fortress FORTRESS

( Haila'er Yaosai Yizhi; admission ¥60; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) In the mid-1930s, during the Japanese occupation of Manchuria, this network of tunnels was constructed by the Japanese army in the grasslands north of Haila'er. The site now contains a museum, a monument, and old tanks and artillery guns to climb on. Inside the freezing, spooky tunnels you can peek into 'rooms' where soldiers bunked and a hospital was located.

The site is 4km northwest of the train station and you'll need an hour to see everything. A taxi between the tunnels and the town centre costs about ¥20. If you want the taxi to wait, then a round trip will be around ¥100. Bus 2 runs close to the fortress from the centre of town, but you'll still have to walk uphill for a mile to reach it. Alternatively, the tunnels are on the road to Jinzhanghan, so you might negotiate a stop here en route.



## Festivals & Events

### Naadam TRADITIONAL, SPORTS

The Haila'er Naadam (sports festival) is held annually in July on the grasslands just north of town. You'll see plenty of wrestling, horse racing and archery. The city is flooded with tour groups at this time, making it difficult to find a room, and hotel prices double (or more).



## Sleeping & Eating

Haila'er has a mostly undistinguished, overpriced selection of hotels. For real cheapies, with cell-like, windowless rooms for ¥60 to ¥80, try the alley directly opposite the entrance to the long-distance bus station on the other side of the road.

On summer nights, Buxing Jie and the surrounding alleys become a hub of outdoor *shaokao* (barbecue) places that are good for a beer and meeting the locals.

#### Tianxin Room Two HOTEL \$

( Tianxin Kefang Erbu; 📞 835 3675; 7 Tianxin Xiaoqu; 7 d ¥220; 🌟🌟)  
This annexe to the more expensive Tianxin Business Hotel (; Tianxin Shangwu Jiudian) has clean, decent-sized rooms with modern bathrooms, even if the staff can be grumpy and the place itself is tatty. The location is good and central: down a small lane 100m south of the main roundabout, just off Buxing Jie. Tell taxi drivers to take you to the Tianxin Business Hotel and it's 50m south of there.

#### Bei'er Dajjudian HOTEL \$\$

( Bei'er Hotel; 📞 835 8455; 36 Zhongyang Dajie; 36 d ¥300-480; 🌟🌟)  
With a large, bright lobby, welcoming staff and well-maintained rooms, this is the number-one midrange choice in town. It's advisable to book ahead here, especially in July and August.

#### Jinchuan Douhuazhuang HOTPOT \$\$\$

( 📞 834 6555; Xi Dajie; 2 people from ¥75; 🕒 10am-11pm) Big and bustling hotpot favourite with the locals; you can choose from a wide selection of meat, seafood and veggie options, as well as opting to make your broth less or more spicy. No English or picture menu, but the friendly waitresses will help you out. It's on the corner of Xi Dajie and Bei Xiejie, close to Zhongyang Dajie.

#### Moongun Choloo MONGOLIAN \$

(Tianxin Xiaoqu; dumplings from ¥20; 🕒 7am-9pm) Down an alley off Buxing Jie (and around the corner from Tianxin Room Two), this authentic Mongolian cafe serves fresh yoghurt, *buuz* (dumplings) and *airag* (fermented mare's milk). It's a good place to meet Buriat Mongols.

### Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; cnr Xingan Donglu & Zhongyang

Dajie) Next door to Bei'er Dajjudian in the centre of town.


**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Zhongyang Dajie & Yueju Xilu) Post and telephone office.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; lower level, cnr Zhongyang Dajie & Xingan Xilu; per hr ¥3) Diagonally opposite the Bei'er Dajjudian.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Alihe Lu) Opposite CITS in Hedong district on the east side of the river.

### **Getting There & Away**

Haila'er's small airport has direct daily flights to Beijing (¥1150, two hours) and Hohhot (¥1000, 2¼ hours). Go to [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net) or [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) to book flights.

**EZ Nis** ( 130 3041 2081; [www.eznisairways.com](http://www.eznisairways.com)), a Mongolian airline, flies to Mongolia two or three times per week, stopping in Choibalsan (¥680) and Ulaanbaatar (¥1458). If you plan to fly to Ulaanbaatar you can just buy the ticket online. If you want to stop in Choibalsan you need to get special permission from Mongolian immigration. EZ Nis can organise this in two days (email its office in Ulaanbaatar).

From the **long-distance bus station** ( changtu qichezhan; Jiaxinzi Lu, off Chezhan Jie), there are regular buses to Manzhouli (¥41, three hours) between 7.30am and 6pm.

Several daily trains go to Manzhouli (¥29, two to three hours). There are daily trains between Haila'er and Ha'erbin (hard/soft sleeper ¥125/192, 11 hours), Qiqiha'er (¥137/205, eight hours) and Beijing (¥418/642, 29 hours).

The train station is in the northwestern part of town. A taxi to the city-centre hotels is ¥12.

### **Getting Around**

There is no airport bus, but you can take a taxi to the airport for around ¥30. At the airport, though, taxi sharks wait for new arrivals and ask ¥60 to get into town.

Bus 7 runs from the train station past the bus station to Bei'er Dajjudian. Bus 1 runs from Hedong to the train station. Taxi fares start at ¥6.

## Around Haila'er

### JINZHANGHAN GRASSLANDS

Set along a winding river about 40km north of Haila'er, this grasslands camp (Jinzhanghan Caoyuan; 📞 133 2700 0919; 🕒 Jun-early Oct) has a spectacular setting, even if it is designed for tourists. You can occupy an hour or so looking around and sipping milk tea, spend the day horse riding (per hour ¥200) or hiking, or come for an evening of dinner, singing and dancing.

If you want to stay the night, you can sleep in one of the yurts (per person ¥100). There's no indoor plumbing but there is a toilet hut. To get here, you'll have to hire a taxi from Haila'er (about ¥300 return).

About 2km before the main camp there are a couple of unsigned family-run camps. Prices for food, accommodation and horse rental are about half what you pay at Jinzhanghan, but they are rather less organised.

### SHI WEI

A small Russian-style village of log cabins located right on the Eerguna River, which marks the border with Russia, Shi Wei is deep within the glorious grasslands. North of Haila'er, there are few permanent settlements, just the yurts of herders with their flocks of sheep and cows and strings of Mongolian ponies. Closer to the border, the rolling prairie becomes more wooded, as spindly white pine trees appear.

Shi Wei itself has been discovered by the domestic tourist hordes and is no longer the backwater it once was, although very few foreigners make it up here. But it's still fun to ride a horse along the riverbank (and at ¥40 per half hour, it's as good a deal for a horse ride as you'll get in Inner Mongolia these days), while gazing at the Russian village on the opposite bank.

Even more fascinating are the locals. Decades of intermarriage between the Russians and Chinese mean most are a unique blend of the two nationalities; some could easily pass for Russians.

Many families have turned their homes into guesthouses and/or restaurants. While some will charge ¥200 or more, you can still get a

room in a private house for around ¥50 to ¥100. Try Natascha (☎ 130 8851 4335) who has clean rooms for ¥50 in a separate annexe behind her house on the main drag. She and her husband will show you the family photos, which reveal how the local Russians and Chinese have intermingled over the generations.

To reach Shi Wei from Haila'er, first travel to Labudalin (; ¥36, two hours); buses leave every 30 minutes from 6.30am to 5.30pm. From Labudalin (sometimes called Eerguna) there are two buses per day heading to Shi Wei (¥35, three hours), departing at 9.30am and 3.30pm. Buses return to Labudalin at 8.30am and 9am. A taxi from Labudalin and back is ¥300.

## **SOUTH OF HĀILA'ER**

The road south from Haila'er leads 170km southwest to Dongqi (), known as Zuun Khoshuu in Mongolian. While in town you may spot dusty traders from Mongolia (the town is just 25km north of the border). Dongqi is listed on maps as Xinba'er Hu Zuoqi ().

About 18km northwest of Dongqi is the renovated Ganjur Monastery (). Founded in 1771, the monastery was the largest in Hulunbuir Banner (*banner* is a Qing-era administrative term; similar to a county). Today it is home to 13 monks and situated in very scenic surrounds. A basic yurt camp ( menggubao suying; per night ¥100) is located near the gate of the monastery.

Heading west from the monastery, the road leads through vast grasslands (with the occasional yurt-dwelling herder family) for about 105km to Xiqi (), which Mongols refer to as Baruun Khoshuu. The small city is inhabited largely by Barga people (a Mongolian clan). From here it's 23km on a rough track to the shores of Dalai Hu (Dalai Lake), where you'll find more yurt camps at a beach called Huangjin Hai'an (). Foreigners need a permit for Xiqi. Note that on maps, Xiqi is listed as Xinba'er Hu Youqi ().

Buses run every 50 minutes from 7am to 5.30pm between Haila'er and Dongqi (¥30, three hours). Travel between Dongqi and Xiqi is best done in a taxi so you can stop at the lake, monastery and yurts en route. It is around ¥100 between the towns, plus another ¥100 for a trip to the lake.

Alternatively, if you are heading east, the back roads lead from Dongqi to A'ershan. A bus (¥43, three hours) leaves at 8.10am, or you could take a direct bus from Haila'er (¥81, five hours) at 6.30am or 8.40am. There is good hiking in the hills around A'ershan (). From the town you could hire a taxi (¥400 return) to take you into the beautiful A'ershan National Forest Park ( A'ershan Guojia Selin Gongyuan; admission ¥180 May-Oct, ¥150 Nov-Apr). A'ershan is about 190km southeast of Dongqi and 370km from Haila'er. It is connected by train to Ulanhot (Wulanhaote).

## A YURT BY ANY OTHER NAME...

'Yurt', the common name for traditional Mongolian tents, is a Turkish word. The Mongolian word is *ger*, and the Chinese call them '*Menggu bao*' – literally 'Mongolian buns' – perhaps because the white structures with their conical tops resemble puffy steamed breads.

## Manzhouli

 0470 / POP 57,316

This laissez-faire border city, where the Trans-Siberian Railway crosses from China to Russia, is a pastel-painted boomtown of shops, hotels and restaurants catering to the Russian market. Unless you look Asian, expect shopkeepers to greet you in Russian. Manzhouli is modernising at lightning speed, but a few Russian-style log houses still line Yidao Jie.

Manzhouli is small enough to get around on foot. From the train station to the town centre, it's a 10-minute walk. Turn right immediately as you exit the station, then right again to cross the footbridge. You'll come off the bridge near the corner of Yidao Jie and Zhongsu Lu.

### Sights

Besides the Russian traders, Manzhouli's main attraction is Hulun Hu ( admission ¥30), one of the largest lakes in China. Called Dalai Nuur



(Ocean Lake) in Mongolian, it unexpectedly pops out of the grasslands like an enormous inland sea. You can hire a horse (¥100 per 30 minutes) or a quad bike (¥100 per 20 minutes), take a boat ride (¥10 per 20 minutes) or simply stroll along the rocky lakeshore. The only way to get to Hulun Hu, 39km southeast of Manzhouli, is to hire a taxi (about ¥200 return).

Halfway between the city and the Russian border is a bizarre park filled with giant Russian *matryoshka* dolls, many with portraits of famous historical figures, from Albert Einstein to Michael Jordan. The largest doll is a Russian-style restaurant. Next to the park is a museum of Russian art.

## Sleeping

There are a huge number of hotels and guesthouses in Manzhouli, all within walking distance of each other. Signs are in Russian – (pronounced ‘gastinitsa’) is the Russian word for ‘hotel’. Likewise, there are plenty of restaurants (*pectopah* in Russian), so just wander around a bit and see what takes your fancy.



Fengzeyuan Ludian GUESTHOUSE \$

( 📍 225 4099, 139 4709 3443; Yidao Jie; tw ¥200; @📶 ) Located inside a restored Russian log cabin (painted yellow and green), this friendly (and cheap for Manzhouli), guesthouse has large, clean rooms. Coming off the pedestrian bridge from the train station it’s the first building in front of you, next to the statue of Zhou Enlai. Don’t confuse this with the nearby Jixiang Luguan, which looks very similar but is closer to the road and more expensive.

Shangri-La HOTEL \$\$\$

( Xianggelila; 📍 396 8888; 99 Liudao Jie; 99 d ¥1388, ste ¥4588; 🚶♿️📶📺 ) Nothing indicates Manzhouli’s soaring status more than this new outpost of the Shangri-La chain; it’s surely the most remote of its hotels in China, if not all Asia. Geared towards visitors from across the border and local business types – the restaurants are Chinese and Russian – the efficient, smiling staff will drum up someone who can speak English. The very comfortable rooms offer views over the surrounding grasslands, and there’s a swimming pool and spa too.

Chenglin Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📍 623 8866; Sidao Jie; tw & d ¥280; @ ) Solid hotel with decent-sized rooms that come with computers. It's a block east of the main square at Sidao Jie and Haiguan Lu.

## Eating

Barguuzin BURIAT \$

( Batu Aqi'er; 📍 622 0121; cnr Erdao Jie & Zhongsu Lu; mains from ¥18; 🕒 6.30am- midnight) Run by Buriat Mongols, this popular place specialises in Mongolian and Russian cuisine and does good salads and soups. It's on two levels, one below the street: look for the blue sign on Erdao Jie. Picture menu.

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO RUSSIA

Buses to Zabaikalsk (¥72), over the Russian border, depart eight times daily between 7.40am and 1.30pm, but they tend to be much slower than the private cars (because the Chinese traders on your bus will take ages to get through customs). In Manzhouli you could ask around for a ride from a Russian trader (Russians get through faster). Otherwise, take a taxi to the border (¥40), 9km from town, and get a ride across from there with a Russian driver.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Yidao Jie) Near the junction with Haiguan Lu.

**China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; 📍 622 8319; 35 Erdao Jie; 🕒 8-11.30am & 2-4pm Mon-Fri) On the 1st floor of Guoji Fandian (International Hotel). Sells train tickets for Chinese cities.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Haiguan Jie & Sidao Jie) Post and telephone office.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; Yidao Jie; per hr ¥3; 🕒 24hr) About 50m east of the Jixiang Luguan.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; cnr Sandao Jie & Shulin

Lu)

### **i Getting There & Around**

Manzhouli has a small airport on the edge of town; a taxi to the airport will take about 15 minutes (¥40). There are daily flights to Beijing (¥1560, 2¼ hours) and, in summer, to Hohhot (¥860, 2½ hours).

You can reach Manzhouli by train from Haila'er (¥29, three to 3½ hours), Ha'erbin (hard/soft sleeper ¥222/338, 12 to 16 hours) or Qiqiha'er (hard/soft sleeper ¥175/264, 11 hours).

There are 12 buses a day to Haila'er (¥41, three hours, 7am to 5.30pm) from the main bus station on Wudao Jie. Taxis charge ¥10 for most trips around town.



# Qinghai

POP 5.6 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Xining](#)

[Tongren \(Repkong\)](#)

[Guide](#)

[Yushu \(Jyekundo\)](#)

[Golmud](#)

---

## Why Go?

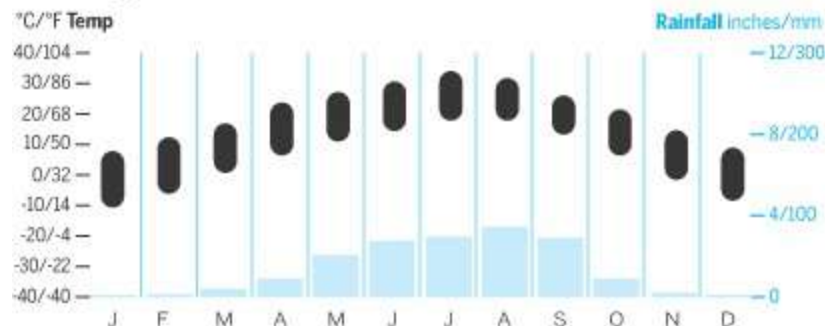
Big, bold and beautifully barren, Qinghai (), larger than any European country, occupies a vast swathe of the northeastern chunk of the Tibetan plateau. In fact, as far as Tibetans are concerned, this isn't China at all; it's Amdo, one of old Tibet's three traditional provinces. Much of what you'll experience here will feel more Tibetan than Chinese; there are monasteries galore, yaks by the hundred and nomads camped out across high-altitude grasslands.

Rough-and-ready Qinghai, which means Blue Sea in Chinese, is classic off-the-beaten-track territory, often with a last frontier feel to it. Travelling around is both inconvenient and uncomfortable, and you can go for days without meeting another tourist. But those wonderful moments of solitude, those middle-of-nowhere high-plateau vistas and the chance to discover some of the more remote communities of China's ethnic minorities make the long bus rides, the cold weather and the often head-achingly high altitude well worth bearing.

---

## When to Go

### Xīníng



**Jan & Feb** Tibetan New Year (Losar), with lots of pilgrims and celebrations at monasteries.

**Jul–Sep** Grasslands at their greenest; landscape dotted with nomad tents.

**Sep** Safest and most comfortable time for hiking around Mt Amnye Machen.

---

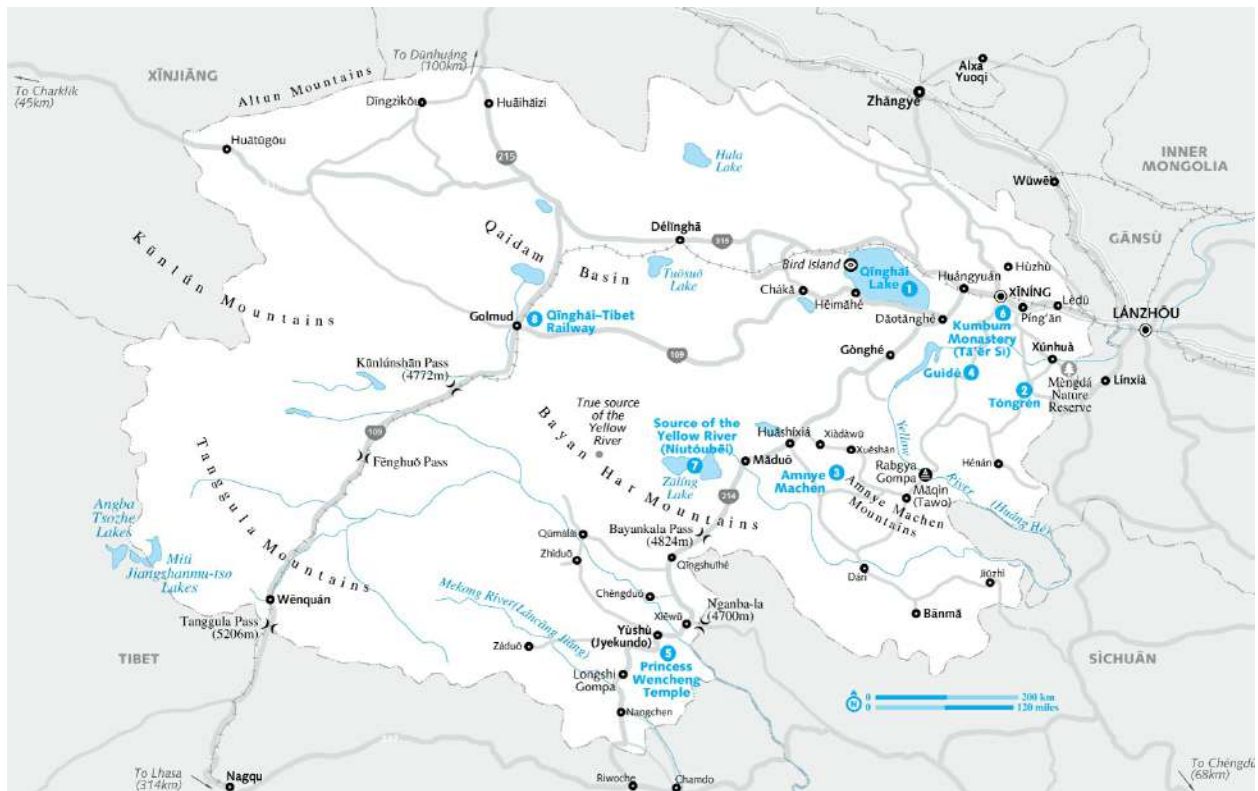
## Best Monasteries & Temples

- » Kumbum Monastery ([Click here](#))
- » Youning Si ([Click here](#))
- » Rongwo Gonchen Gompa ([Click here](#))
- » Princess Wencheng Temple ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Natural Sights

- » Amnye Machen ([Click here](#))
- » Mengda Nature Reserve ([Click here](#))
- » Zaling Lake ([Click here](#))
- » Nangchen County ([Click here](#))



## Qinghai Highlights

- 1 Birdwatch on the shores of **Qinghai Lake** ([Click here](#)), the largest in China
- 2 Buy a Tibetan *thangka* straight from the artist's easel in **Tongren** ([Click here](#))
- 3 Trek on **Amnye Machen** ([Click here](#)), eastern Tibet's most sacred mountain
- 4 Turn the world's largest prayer wheel near the walled Old Town of **Guide** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Sidestep the web of prayer flags on a hike around the hills beside **Princess Wencheng Temple** ([Click here](#))
- 6 Join the pilgrims and monks at **Kumbum Monastery** ([Click here](#)), one of the six great monasteries in the Tibetan world
- 7 Venture across the Qinghai–Tibet plateau to the **source of the Yellow River** ([Click here](#))
- 8 Take one of the world's great train rides, the **Qinghai–Tibet Railway** ([Click here](#)) to Lhasa, at Xining or Golmud

## History

The northern Silk Road passed through what is now Qinghai province, and in 121 BC the Han dynasty established a military base near modern Xining to counter Tibetan raids on trading caravans.

During the Yarlung dynasty, a time of great expansion of Tibetan power and influence, Qinghai was brought directly under Lhasa's control. After the collapse of the dynasty in AD 842, local rulers filled the ensuing power vacuum, some nominally acting as vassals of Song dynasty emperors.

In the 13th century all of Qinghai was incorporated into the Yuan empire under Genghis Khan. During this time the Tu began to move into the area around Huzhu, followed a century or so later by the Salar Muslims into Xunhua.

After the fall of the Yuan dynasty, local Mongol rulers and the Dalai Lamas in Lhasa wrestled for power. The Qing emperors restored the region to full Chinese control, setting it up as a prefecture with more or less the same boundaries as today. As in the past, however, they left administrative control in the hands of local elites.

Qinghai officially became a province of China in 1929 during the republican era, though at the time it was under the de facto control of the Muslim Ma clan. Qinghai was again made a province in 1949 with the establishment of the People's Republic of China.

In the late 1950s an area near Qinghai Lake (Qinghai Hu) became the centre of China's nuclear weapons research program. During the next 40 years, at least 30 tests were held at a secret base, the Qinghai Mine.

In April 2010, Yushu, a Tibetan town in remote southwest Qinghai, was devastated by a 7.1-magnitude earthquake. Thousands of people died – some say tens of thousands – but the rebuilding effort has been swift.

## Language

Most of the population in Qinghai speaks a northwestern Chinese dialect similar to that spoken in Gansu. Most Tibetans here speak the Amdo dialect. It's possible to travel almost everywhere using

Mandarin.



#### Getting There & Around

Most people arrive by train, usually into Xining, but after that train lines are limited, so long-distance buses are the order of the day. In more remote areas you'll often have no option but to hire a private vehicle or hitch. Off-the-beaten-track overland routes include south into Sichuan, at Aba or Shiqu, and north into Gansu or Xinjiang from Golmud. Routes southwest into Tibet are even more remote but are often closed to foreigners.

## PRICE INDICATORS

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥150

\$\$ ¥150 to ¥300

\$\$\$ more than ¥300

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥50

\$\$\$ more than ¥50

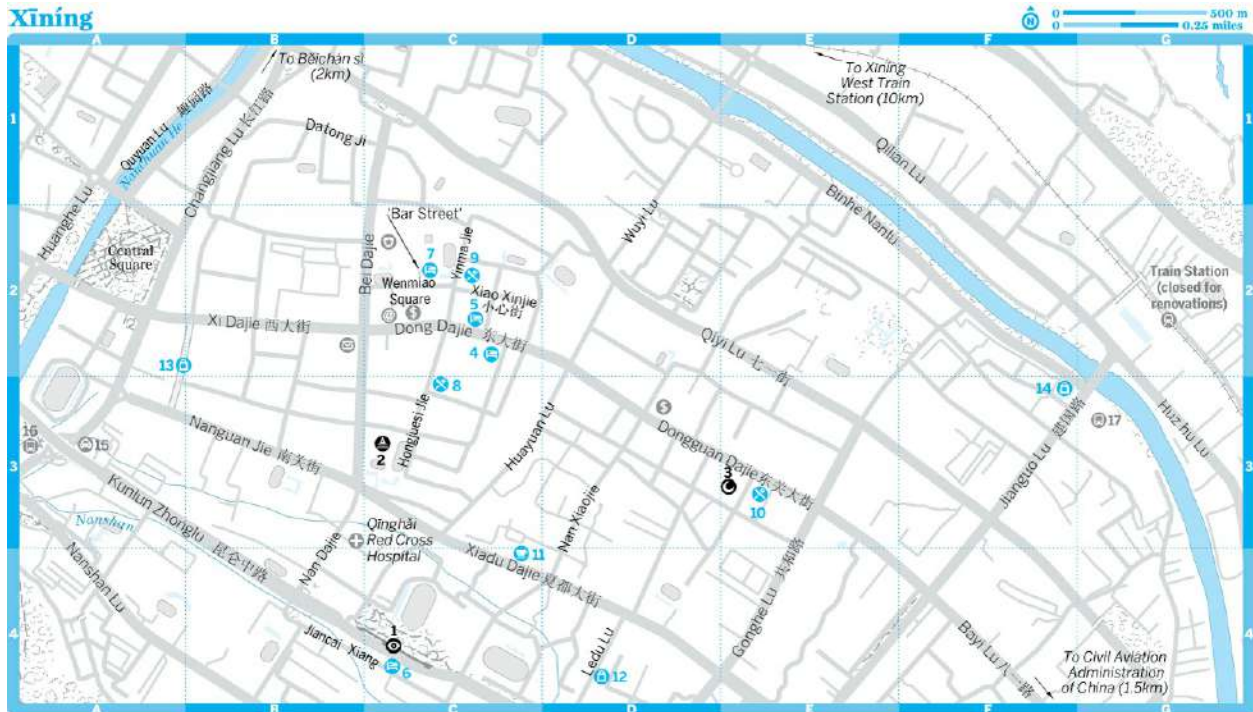
## Xining

📍 0971 / POP 1.2 MILLION

Perched on the eastern edge of the Tibetan plateau, this lively provincial capital makes a perfect springboard from which to dive into the surrounding sights and on to the more remote regions of Qinghai and beyond. The food and lodging are good, the air is fresh, and the populace is an interesting mix of Muslim (Hui, Salar and Uighur), Tibetan and Han Chinese.



## Xining



## Xining

### Sights

- 1 [City Wall](#) C4
- 2 [Golden Stupa Temple](#) C3
- 3 [Great Mosque](#) E3

### Sleeping

- 4 [Cheng Lin Hotel](#) C2
- 5 [Jinjiang Inn](#) C2
- 6 [Lete Youth Hostel](#) C4
- 7 [Sunshine Pagoda International Youth Hostel](#) C2

### Eating

- [Black Tent](#) (see 7)
- 8 [Mo Jia Jie Market](#) C3
  - 9 [Qinghai Tu Huoguo](#) C2
  - 10 [Zhenya Niurou Mian](#) E3

### Drinking

- 11 [Greenhouse](#) C4

### Shopping

- 12 [Amdo Cafe](#) D4
- 13 [Shuijing Xiang Market](#) A2

14 Tibetan Market F3

Information

[Snow Lion Tours](#) (see 4)

[Tibetan Connections](#) (see 6)

 Transport

15 Shared Taxis to Guide A3

16 Taxis to Kumbum Monastery A3

17 Xining Bus Station G3

## Sights

Tibetan Culture Museum MUSEUM

( Zang Wenhua Bowuguan; admission ¥60; 🕒 9.30am-5pm)

Previously known as the Tibetan Medicine Museum, this unusual place still focuses on traditional Tibetan medicine and includes old medical instruments, bags, scrolls and, in the astronomy section, a very large sand mandala. The highlight, though, is the incredible 618m-long *thangka* (Tibetan sacred art) scroll – the world’s longest – which charts pretty much the whole of Tibetan history. Completed in 1997 it’s by no means an ancient relic, but it is unfeasibly long. It took 400 artists four years to complete and is ingeniously displayed in a relatively small hall. Bus 34 (¥1) comes here from West Gate. Bus 1 also goes close. A taxi’s about ¥15 from the centre.

Beichan Si TEMPLE

( 🕒 8am-4pm) The main temple at the foot of this barren hillside is nothing special but halfway up the steep climb to the top you pass cave temples and shrines that are thought to be 1700 years old. A pagoda, and great views of the city, await you at the top. Turn left after you pass under the railway line and follow the road round to the temple entrance, or take a ¥6 cab.

 Qinghai Provincial Museum MUSEUM

( Qinghai Sheng Bowuguan; Xinning Sq, 58 Xiguan Dajie; 58 🕒 9am-4.30pm Mon-Sat) Scaled down in recent years, but still has some nice pieces recovered from excavations in Qinghai. The Tibetan carpet exhibition is worth seeing. Bus 1 goes here, or take bus 22 from Dongguan Dajie.

## Great Mosque MOSQUE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Qingzhen Dasi; 25 Dongguan Dajie; admission ¥15; 🕒 7am-8pm) About one-third of Xining's population is Muslim and there are more than 80 mosques across the city. But this is the big one. In fact, it's one of the largest mosques in China. Friday lunchtime prayers regularly attract 50,000 worshippers who spill out onto the streets before and afterwards. And during Ramadan as many as 300,000 come here to pray. The mosque was first built during the late 14th century and has since been restored. It's also worth visiting at night when the whole building is lit up with flashing neon lights. Non-Muslims can't enter the main prayer hall, but can stroll around the grounds.



## Golden Stupa Temple BUDDHIST TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jinta Si; 19 Hongjuesi Jie; 19 🕒 8am-4pm) Small temple named after long-destroyed golden *chörten* (Tibetan stupa). Used as a place of study by monks at Kumbum Monastery.

## City Wall RUIN

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chengqiang; Kunlun Zhonglu; ) One or two isolated sections of Xining's old city wall still remain, the most accessible being this short stretch on Kunlun Zhonglu.

## Sleeping

### Lete Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Liti Qingnian Lushe; 📍 820 2080; [www.xnlete.com](http://www.xnlete.com); 16th fl, Bldg No 5, International Village Apartments, 2-32 Jiancai Xiang; 5 16 dm ¥30-35, d without/with bathroom ¥120/180; @📶) This friendly hostel has the best backpacker vibe in Xining and is a great place to get the low-down on travelling in Qinghai and on to Tibet. The modern, multifloor layout includes cafe/bar, wide-screen TVs, laundry, kitchen and a small terrace that you can sleep out on in summer (¥35). Rooms are clean, bright and spacious, although the shared bathrooms are falling

apart at the seams. Staff members speak good English and the travel agency Tibetan Connections is two floors up.

Sunshine Pagoda International Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Tading Yangguang Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 821 5571; [www.tdyg-inn.com](http://www.tdyg-inn.com); 3rd fl, Wenmiao Sq, off Wenhua Jie; 3 dm/s/d ¥50/105/120; @ 📶) More popular with Chinese travellers than Westerners, this OK hostel is in the thick of the action if it's drinking you're after. Rooms are basic but tidy and there's a cosy cafe area.

Qinghai Sangzhu Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$\$

( Qinghai Sangzhu Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📍 359 4118; [www.qhhostel.com](http://www.qhhostel.com); 94 Huzhu Zhonglu; 94 dm ¥40-55, d ¥218, tr ¥240; @ 📶) This spacious hostel has a big lounge decorated with Tibetan artwork and clean rooms with comfortable beds. English is spoken and there's plenty of traveller information posted on the walls. On the downside, it's a few kilometres from the centre of town so you'll need to take a bus or taxi to get anywhere. Catch bus 32 or 33 on Dong Dajie, heading east. Once the bus turns onto Huzhu Lu it's another two stops (about 2km down the road).



## FULL HOUSE

Scoring a hotel room in Xining during the summer months can be surprisingly difficult, especially for foreigners as there is a shortage of places that will accept them. Book your room or dorm bed as early as possible, preferably one week in advance.

Cheng Lin Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Chenglin Dasha; 📍 491 1199; Dong Dajie; tw/d ¥260/280; 📶) Spacious, well-turned-out rooms with en suite shower come with dark-wood furniture, TV and kettle and are great value after discounts. No internet in the rooms, but there's an internet cafe (per hour ¥2 to ¥4) on the 3rd floor. Limited English.

Jinjiang Inn HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Jinjiang Zhixing; 📍 492 5666; [www.jinjianginns.com](http://www.jinjianginns.com); Dongda Jie; d incl breakfast ¥329; 🌐📧) This reliable chain hotel is in the heart of the city and has clean rooms and a helpful staff. Book well in advance in summer.

## Eating

Xining has a great range of food. Try the Tibetan district around the train station for cheap Tibetan fare. For Muslim food head to Dongguan Dajie, near the Great Mosque, or the northern stretch of Nan Xiaojie.

For snacks, try one of the cheap barbecue places (; *shaokao*) on Xiao Xinjie that stay open until the early hours, or head to Mo Jia Jie Market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) ( Mojjajia Shichang) where you can also sample a local favourite: *niang pi* (; spicy cold noodles ; ¥4).

Black Tent TIBETAN \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Heizhangfang Zanganba; 3rd fl; 18 Wenmiao Sq, 18 3 dishes ¥15-40; 🕒 10am-10pm; 📍) Authentic Tibetan nosh, including *tsampa* (roasted barley; ¥18), *momo* (dumplings; ¥22) and yak-butter yoghurt (¥12) as well as some tasty Nepalese dishes. Also serves yak-butter tea (per pot ¥24) and Qinghai's favourite local tipple, barley wine (; *qingke jiu*).

Qinghai Tu Huoguo HOTPOT \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 31 Yinma Jie; pots ¥58/78/98; 🕒 11am-10pm) Unlike its fiery Chongqing cousin, Qinghai's chilli-less hotpot, which comes in attractive copper pots, won't burn your head off when you eat it. This place has three different pot sizes, all of which include 10 different ingredients. If you can read Chinese, you can add more from the menu. The ¥58 version is plenty for two or three people. Dipping sauces – either *xiangla* (; chilli) or *suanni* (; garlic) – are ¥2 extra.

Zhenya Niurou Mian MUSLIM \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 24 Dongguan Dajie; noodles ¥5/6.50; 🕒 9am-10pm) Join the local Muslim population for their noodle fix at this busy place by the Great Mosque. There's no menu, but there are only two dishes: *niurou mian*

(; beef noodles ; ¥5) and *gan banmian* (; mincemeat noodles ; ¥6.50). *Suan tang* (; a small peppery soup) comes free.

## Drinking

If you like your bars to come with loud music, neon lights, booth seating and scantily clad waitresses head to Xining's so-called bar street ( *jiu ba jie*; beer from ¥6); three floors of bars, cafes and restaurants are set around Wenmiao Sq (; Wenmiao Guangchang) off Wenhua Jie. For a more mellow evening, stroll along Xiadu Dajie, which has about a dozen cafes.

Greenhouse CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Gulinfang Kafei; 222-22 Xiadu Dajie; 222-22 coffee from ¥13; ☺ 8am-10.30pm; 📶) Rustic split-level wood interior with smoothies and the best coffee in town.

## Shopping

In the lively Tibetan market ( Xizang Guangchang) near the train station you'll find stall after stall selling traditional fabrics and clothing.

Amdo Cafe HANDICRAFTS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Anduo Kafeiwu; 📍 821 3127; 19 Ledu Lu; ☺ 9am-8pm Mon-Sat; 📶) Profits from the lovely handmade Tibetan gifts (from ¥20) sold here go back to the local craftswomen. There's also decent coffee (from ¥10).

Shuijing Xiang Market SOUVENIRS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Shuijing Xiang Shangchang; ☺ 9am-6pm) Lively market running north-south between Xi Dajie and Nanguan Jie.

## Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; ☺ 9am-5pm Mon-Fri, 10am-4pm Sat & Sun) Branches on Dongguan Dajie, Dong Dajie and next to CAAC on Bayi Lu change cash and travellers cheques and have foreign-friendly ATMs.

**Post office** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Xi Dajie & Nan Dajie; ☺ 8.30am-6pm)

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 35 Bei Dajie; ☎ 8.30-11.30am & 2.30-5.30pm Mon-Fri) Can extend visas.

**Qinghai Red Cross Hospital** ( Qinghai Hongshizi Yiyuan; 📞 824 7545; Nan Dajie) English-speaking doctors available. Outpatients (; *menzhen bu*) has a 24-hour pharmacy (; *yaodian*).

**Snow Lion Tours** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📞 816 3350; [www.snowliontours.com](http://www.snowliontours.com); Cheng Lin Mansion, office 1212, 7 Dongdajie Lu) Run by knowledgeable English-speaking Tibetan guy; arranges treks, camping with nomads and Tibet permits. The office is located in the same building as the Cheng Lin Hotel.

**Tiantangniao Internet** ( Tiantangniao wangluo; Dong Dajie; per hr ¥2-3.50; ☎ 24hr) Second and 3rd floors.

**Tibetan Connections** [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) (📞 820 3271; [www.tibetanconnections.com](http://www.tibetanconnections.com); Jian Cai Xiang, 18th fl, International Village Bldg 5) Tibetan-managed agency organising treks, camp-outs and cultural tours in Qinghai, as well as Lhasa train tickets and permits. Above Lete Youth Hostel.

## Getting There & Away

### Air

Flights include Beijing (¥1600), Chengdu (¥990), Shanghai (¥1860), Yushu (¥1390), Golmud (¥1420, daily) and Xi'an (¥660). There are no direct flights to Lhasa. You must fly via Chengdu.

The **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; 📞 813 3333; 32 Bayi Xilu; ☎ 8.30am-5.30pm) has a booking office on the eastern edge of town.

### Bus

Destinations from Xining bus station (; *chezhan*):

**Banma** ¥173, 15 hours, one daily (4pm)

**Golmud** ¥160, 12 hours, three daily (2pm, 5pm and 6pm)

**Huashixia** ¥107, 10 hours, six daily

**Lanzhou** ¥59, three hours, every 30 minutes (7.20am to 6pm)

**Maqin** (Tawo) ¥126, 12 hours, eight daily (10.30am, 11.30am and 12.30pm are express buses)

**Tongren** ¥34, four hours, every 30 minutes (7.30am to 5pm)

**Xiahe** ¥78, six hours, one daily (7.15am)

**Xunhua** ¥32, five hours, every 30 minutes (7.20am to 4.50pm)

**Yushu** sleeper ¥206, 16 to 17 hours, six daily

**Zhangye** ¥102, five hours one daily (8am). In addition there are slower buses (¥75) taking seven hours, departing at 7am, 9am, 12.15pm and 6.30pm.

#### Minivan & Shared Taxi

Minivans depart to some of the same destinations one can reach by bus. They leave when full so you won't know how long you have to wait around, but once they go the trip will be shorter than the bus ride. These vehicles typically leave between 8am and 2pm.

**Golmud** ¥175, 10 hours, departs from opposite the bus station

**Guide** ¥50, 2½ hours, departs the northern side of the intersection on Kunlun Zhonglu (near the bridge)

**Maqin** (Tawo) ¥175, 10 hours, departs from opposite the bus station

**Tongren** ¥60, 2½ hours, departs from corner of Bayi Lu and Delingha Lu



## TRAIN TICKET TRAVAILS

Train tickets can be purchased at the main post office ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Xi Dajie & Nan Dajie; ☎ 8.30am-6pm) on the 2nd floor, which saves a long trip to the train station. Be aware that in the summer months tickets to most destinations sell out immediately and the only way to get one is through a travel agent (who may be able to score you a ticket from the mafia).

#### Train

At the time of writing the Xining train station (; huochē zhan) was closed for renovations and was not expected to reopen until 2013 or 2014. In the meantime, trains start/stop at the west train station (; xi huochē zhan), about 10km west of the city centre.

Lhasa-bound trains pass through Xining (hard/soft sleeper ¥504/796, 24 hours, eight daily from 3.04pm to 10pm) on their way towards the now world-famous Qinghai–Tibet Railway stretch of China's rail network, but the K9801 (3.04pm) actually starts here, so is usually easier to get tickets for. You will, of course, need all your Tibet papers



in order. Other destinations from Xining include:

**Beijing** sleeper ¥416, 22 to 24 hours, two daily (12.20am and 3.40pm)

**Chengdu** sleeper ¥300, 25 and 20½ hours, two daily (9.20am and 9.35am)

**Golmud** seat/sleeper ¥111/202, 9½ hours, 10 daily (3.04pm to 10pm)

**Lanzhou** seat/sleeper ¥38/89, 2½ hours, 11 daily (8am to 10.20pm)

**Xi'an** seat/sleeper ¥120/216, 10½ to 12½ hours, seven daily (5.49am to 10.15pm)

### **i** Getting Around

The airport is 27km east of the city. Shuttle buses (¥21, 30 minutes) leave roughly 1½ hours before flights from the CAAC office on Bayi Lu. Coming from the airport, this bus travels along Qiyi Lu as it moves through the city, eventually terminating a half block from Central Sq.

Bus 2 (¥1) runs from the bus station and along Dongguan Dajie to Central Sq before heading north to the west train station, a 40-minute ride. Taxis are ¥6 for the first 3km and ¥1.20 per kilometre thereafter.

## Around Xining

### **KUMBUM MONASTERY (TĀ'ER SI)**

One of the great monasteries of the Gelugpa (Yellow Hat) sect of Tibetan Buddhism, the Kumbum Monastery (Ta'er Si; admission ¥80; 🕒 8.30am-6pm) is in the small town of Huangzhong ( ), 26km south of Xining. It was built in 1577 on hallowed ground – the birthplace of Tsongkhapa, founder of the Gelugpa sect.

It's of enormous historical significance, and hundreds of monks still live here but, perhaps because it's such a big tourist attraction for this part of Qinghai, the atmosphere pales into comparison with other monasteries in Amdo. The artwork and architecture, however, remain impressive.

Nine temples are open, each with their own characteristics. The most important is the Grand Hall of Golden Tiles ( Dajinwa Dian), where an 11m-high *chörten* marks the spot of Tsongkhapa's birth. You'll see pilgrims walking circuits of the building and outside the entrance. Also worth seeking out is the Yak Butter Scripture Temple (

Suyouhua Guan) which houses sculptures of human figures, animals and landscapes carved out of yak butter.

Shared taxis (; *pinche*; ¥15 per seat, 30 minutes) leave from the southwest (and southeast) corner of Kunlun Bridge () to Huangzhong (). In addition, a slow bus (¥3, 50 minutes) comes by this intersection en route to the monastery – there is no number so look for in the windshield. An express bus (¥5.40, every 20 minutes) also leaves from a short distance bus station (; xining lu keyunzhan) just north of Xining Sq (near the Qinghai Provincial Museum). You can reach this local bus station by taking bus 25 from Dong Dajie.

## **YOUNING SI**

Well known throughout the Tibetan world, but rarely visited by tourists, this sprawling 17th-century hillside monastery in the Huzhu Tuzu () Autonomous County is also considered one of the greats of the Gelugpa order.

Famous for its academies of medicine and astrology, its scholars and its living Buddhas (*tulku*), Youning Si (Rgolung in Tibetan) was instrumental in solidifying Gelugpa dominance over the Amdo region. The monastery was founded by the Mongolian 4th Dalai Lama, and over time became a religious centre for the local Tu (themselves a distant Mongolian people). At its height, more than 7000 monks resided here; these days there are probably less than 200, all of whom are Tu.

The monastery lies at the edge of a forested valley, and many chapels perch wondrously on the sides of a cliff face. Give yourself a couple of hours to explore the whole picturesque area.

The easiest way to the monastery is to take a bus to Ping'an (¥5, one hour, six per hour), then hire a taxi (one way/return ¥50/90, 30 minutes). It is possible to bus it from Ping'an, but it involves a lot of waiting: take a bus bound for Huzhu () but get off at the turn-off for Youning Si (Youning Si lukou) then wave down a bus to the monastery. The monastery is about 25km north of Ping'an.

## **BIRTHPLACE OF THE 14TH DALAI LAMA**

About 30km southeast of the town of Ping'an, in the remote, sleepy village of Taktser (; Hongya Cun), set in a ring of high snow-brushed

mountains, is the birthplace of the 14th Dalai Lama (Dalai guju). The building is open to foreign visitors only when there are no political tensions in Tibet, and it's been closed to foreigners during March and April in recent years because of a number of sensitive dates during those months.

Assuming you are allowed in, you'll be able to visit the room where his Holiness was born (marked by a golden *chörten*), as well as a restored chapel that contains his former bed and throne. A side room displays some old family photos, including those of the Dalai Lama's parents, brothers and sister.

The Dalai Lama last visited here in 1955 en route to Beijing to meet with Chairman Mao. The previous (13th) Dalai Lama paused here en route to Labrang just long enough to predict his own next reincarnation. You can spot the building (No 055) by its large wooden gate tied with *katags* (white ceremonial scarves).

Take a bus to Ping'an (¥5, one hour), then take a cab (¥150 return, 50 minutes).

## BIRDWATCHING AT QINGHAI LAKE

China's largest lake, Qinghai Lake (; Qinghai Hu; Lake Kokonor; elevation 3600m) has become an over-touristy big-draw destination for large tour groups, but birdwatchers may still enjoy a trip here.

Bird Island ( Niao Dao; admission ¥115), on the western side of the lake, about 300km from Xining, is worth visiting from March to early June. The island (now in fact a peninsula) is the breeding ground for thousands of wild geese, gulls, cormorants, sandpipers, extremely rare black-necked cranes and other bird species. Perhaps the most interesting are the bar-headed geese that migrate over the Himalaya to spend winter on the Indian plains, and have been spotted flying at altitudes of 10,000m.

Every travel agency in Xining offers trips to Qinghai Lake. At the time of research, Tibetan Connections was offering a two-day camping trip for ¥700 (transport costs only). You could get to the lake much more cheaply if you hired a private minivan or taxi from Xining with a group of travellers.

The closest accommodation to Bird Island is Niao Dao Binguan ( 📞 0970-865 5098; r with breakfast from ¥380). You are still 16km from the island here, but you should be able to hire a taxi (¥50 return). Camping is another option.

A new, backpacker-friendly place to stay in the area is Muming Zhijia International Youth Hostel ( Mumin Zhijia Guoji Qingnian Lushe; 📞 0974-851 9511;

muminzhijiahostel@163.com; dm ¥40-55; @📶), a cosy guesthouse with lake views, *kang*-style beds and bikes for rent (¥60 to ¥70). Water comes in fits and starts. If you have your own tent you can pitch it here for ¥5. To get here from Xining, take a bus to Hatu (; ¥31, three hours) and ask the driver to let you off near An Zhi Farm (; Anzhi Nongchang).

## Tongren (Repkong)

📞 0973

For several centuries now, the villages outside the monastery town of Tongren (Repkong in Tibetan) have been famous for producing some of the Tibetan world's best *thangkas* and painted statues, so much so that an entire school of Tibetan art is named after the town. Visiting the Wutun Si monastery not only gives you a chance to meet the artists, but also to purchase a painting or two, fresh off the easel.

Tongren is set on the slopes of the wide and fertile Gu-chu river valley. The local populace is a mix of Tibetans and Tu. The valley and surrounding hills are easily explored on foot.

Everywhere is walking distance from the junction by Repkong Bridge (; Regong Qiao). With your back to the bridge, take the first right to the bus station (50m), the second right to Tongren Holiday Hotel (500m), go straight for Zhongshan Lu and turn left for Rongwo Gonchen Gumpa (750m).

### Sights

#### Rongwo Gonchen Gumpa MONASTERY

( Longwu Si; Dehelong Nanlu; admission ¥50) Tongren's main monastery is a huge and rambling maze of renovated chapels and monks' residences, dating from 1301. It's well worth a wander, and you'll need one or two hours to see everything. Your ticket includes entry into six main halls, although you may be able to take a peek inside others, too. There are more than 500 resident monks and every day dozens of them go into the courtyard outside the Hall of Bodhisattva Manjusri to take part in animated, hand-clapping debates. There's a map in English on a wooden board just inside the main gate.

#### Wutun Si MONASTERY

Sengeshong village, 6km from Tongren, is the place to head if you're interested in Tib-etan art. There are two monasteries, collectively known as Wutun Si ( ), that are divided into an Upper (Yango) Monastery ( Shang Si; admission ¥30), closest to town, and a Lower (Mango) Monastery ( Xia Si; admission ¥30). The monks will show you around whatever chapels happen to be open and then take you to a showroom or workshop. The resident artists are no amateurs – commissions for their work come in all the way from Lhasa, and prices aren't cheap. Artwork at the Upper Monastery is of an exceptionally high quality, but expect to pay hundreds of renminbi for the smallest *thangka*, thousands for a poster-sized one and tens or even hundreds of thousands for the largest pieces. Remember, though, that an A4-sized *thangka* takes one artist at least a month to complete, and larger pieces take two artists up to a year to finish. Just outside the Lower Monastery there are more showrooms and you'll find cheaper versions here (from ¥300), although the quality is still high.

The Lower Monastery is easily recognisable by eight large *chörten* out front. While there, check out the 100-year-old Jampa Lhakhang (Jampa Temple) and the new chapels dedicated to Chenresig and Tsongkhapa.

The Upper Monastery includes a massive modern *chörten* as well as the old *dukhang* (assembly hall) and the new chapel dedicated to Maitreya (Shampa in Amdo dialect). The interior murals here (painted by local artists) are superb.

To get here, take a minibus (¥2 per seat) from the intersection just uphill from Tongren bus station ticket office. The walk back from here is pleasant.

### Gomar Gompa MONASTERY

( Guomari Si; admission ¥10) Across the Gu-chu river valley from Wutun Si is the mysterious 400-year-old Gomar Gompa, a charming monastery that resembles a medieval walled village. There are 130 monks in residence living in whitewashed mud-walled courtyards and there are a few temples you can visit. The huge *chörten* outside the monastery entrance was built in the 1980s and is the biggest in Amdo. You can climb it, but remember to always walk clockwise. There are photos of the 14th Dalai Lama at the top.

To get here, turn left down a side road as you pass the westernmost of the eight *chörten* outside Wutun Si's Lower Monastery. Follow the road 1km across the river and turn right at the end on a main road. Then head up the track towards the giant *chörten*. Further up the valley is Gasar Gompa, marked by its own distinctive eight *chörtens*. Note that women may not be allowed into the Gomar Gompa or Gasar Gompa.



## BUNKING DOWN IN TONGREN

The northern half of Tongren (the newer Chinese side) has several hotels but only one that allows foreigners (the Tongren Holiday Hotel). The scruffier southern part of town, closer to the monastery, has numerous Tibetan-run hotels that do accept foreigners (although some may do so without registering your passport). If in doubt, wander along the main road towards the monastery and check a few places on the way.

### Sleeping & Eating

Regong Siheji Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 879 7988; 14 Dehelong Nanlu; 14 d from ¥160) This well-placed hotel is on the main road about 200m before the monastery. The colourful lobby leads up through startling gold hallways to bright and clean rooms with flat-screen TVs and well-maintained bathrooms.

Heping Binguan HOTEL \$

( 📞 872 4188; Maixiu Lu; d from ¥120) Offers large clean rooms overlooking a car park. Good value for money and they usually knock the price down to ¥100. From the bridge walk on the main road towards the monastery and make the first right turn; the hotel is down the street on the left.

Tongren Holiday Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Tongren Jiari Binguan; 📞 872 8277; Dehelong Beilu; d & tw from ¥198) This place is modern and has fairly clean and spacious rooms but they are overpriced and staff may not be willing to negotiate the price, except perhaps in the off season. An internet cafe is on the 1st

floor. It's next to the main square in the northern part of town.



### Homely Teahouse TIBETAN \$

( Wenxin Chayi; Dehelong Nanlu; dishes ¥8-14; ☺ 8am-midnight; 🍷 )  
This authentic Tibetan restaurant – with a yak skull hanging on the wall and plastic flowers throughout – serves *momo*, yoghurt and noodle soup and a range of beers and teas. It's located in a cosy two-storey wood-panelled building with excellent views of the valley, towards the end of the main road before the monastery.

### **i** Information

**China Construction Bank ATM** ( Jianshe Yinhang; Zhongshan Lu; )  
Foreign-card friendly.

**Internet cafe** ( wangba; per hr ¥3; ☺ 24hr) Inside China Telecom building, about 150m west of the bridge on the north side of the road (next to Telecom Hotel).

### **i** Getting There & Around

The scenery on the road from Xining is awesome as it follows a tributary of the Yellow River through steep-sided gorges, but the way out to Xiahe is even better, passing dramatic red rock scenery and the impressive Gartse Gumpa, where local Tibetan herders board the bus to sell fresh yoghurt. For Xiahe and Linxia, try to buy your ticket one day in advance. Faster share taxis to Xiahe (¥50) and Xining (¥60) wait at the intersection near the bridge

Buses from Tongren bus station include the following:

**Linxia** ¥38, three hours, one daily (8am)

**Xiahe** ¥26, three hours, one daily (8am)

**Xining** ¥34, four hours, every 40 minutes (7am to 4.20pm)

**Xunhua** ¥16, two hours, four daily (9.30am, 11am, 1pm and 3pm)

## Around Tongren

A nice side trip from Tongren is to Xunhua ( ), a tidy town in the Xunhua Salar Autonomous County, about 75km northeast of Tongren. The Salar Muslims have their origins in Samarkand and speak an isolated Turkic language, giving the region a Central Asian feel (and

cuisine).

About 30km from Xunhua is Heaven Lake (Tian Chi) at Mengda Nature Reserve ( Mengda Guojia Ziran Baohuqu; admission ¥90; 🕒 7am-6pm). The tiny lake is sacred for both Salar Muslims and Tibetan Buddhists, and is much hyped locally. There are, in truth, more picturesque lakes around Qinghai, but the road to the reserve – which follows the coppery-green Yellow River as it cuts its way through a fantastically scenic gorge of rust-red cliffs – is worth the trip alone. You'll find stunning photo opportunities around every turn.

From the main gate of the reserve you can ride horses (¥50, 30 minutes) to the lake or take a gas-powered buggy (free) to a small parking area, then walk the rest of the way.

To get to the reserve you'll need to hire a taxi from outside Xunhua bus station. Expect to pay at least ¥120 return, including waiting time. There are plenty of noodle restaurants opposite the bus station. *Mian pian* (; noodle squares; ¥5) is a local favourite. If you get stuck here, Jiaotong Binguan ( 📞 0972-881 2615; d/tw ¥160/240), beside the bus station, has comfortable rooms often discounted to less than ¥100.

There are four buses a day back to Tongren (¥16, 2½ hours, 9am, 11am, 1pm and 2pm), five to Linxia (¥30, three hours, 7.30am, 8.40am, 9.50am, noon and 2.30pm) and buses every 30 minutes to Xining (¥32, 3½ hours, 7am to 4pm). Share taxis to Xining (¥50, 2½ hours) wait outside the bus station.

## HIKING ON SACRED MT AMNYE MACHEN

The 6282m peak of Machen Kangri, or Mt Amnye Machen ( Animaqing Shan), is Amdo's most sacred mountain – it's eastern Tibet's equivalent to Mt Kailash in western Tibet. Tibetan pilgrims travel for weeks to circumambulate the peak, believing it to be home to the protector deity Machen Pomra. The circuit's sacred geography and wild mountain scenery make it a fantastic, though adventurous, trekking destination.

The full circuit takes around 11 days (including transport to/from Xining), though tourists often limit themselves to a half circuit. Several monasteries lie alongside the route.

With almost all of the route above 4000m, and the highest pass hitting 4600m, it's essential to acclimatise before setting off, preferably by spending a night or two at nearby Maqin (Tawo; 3760m). You can make a good excursion 70km north of town to Rabgya Gumpa ( Lajia Si), an important branch of Tibet's Sera Monastery. The best months to trek



are May to October, though be prepared for snow early and late in the season.

Most trekkers will be on an organised tour. See [Click here](#) for travel agencies that can arrange trips, including English-speaking Tibetan guides. Expect to pay around US\$140 per person per day, all-inclusive.

If you decide to head out on your own, take the bus to Huashixia () and then hitch a ride to Xiadawu (), or hire a vehicle for ¥300 to ¥400. In Xiadawu the starting point for the *kora* (holy hike) path is at Guru Gompa (; Geri Si), and from here follow the road east. After three days the road peters out near Xueshan () from where you can hitch a ride to Maqin (Tawo). If you intend to continue past Xueshan you'll need to ask a local to show you the *kora* footpath. In Xiadawu, a guide costs ¥120 to ¥150 per day, and it's about the same price for a packhorse or yak.

## Guide

 0974

As the Yellow River (; Huang He) flows down from the Tibetan Plateau it makes a series of sharp bends as it powers its way past historical Guide. Sitting on the riverbank here at sunset, with a beer in hand, is a great way to end the day. The old town (; *gucheng*), still largely enclosed within its crumbling 10m-high mud walls, also makes for a pleasant stroll and is a good base for your stay. But changes are afoot. In 2011 the government knocked down most buildings in the old town with a plan to redevelop the place into a major tourist attraction, complete with five-star hotels and a golf course. Get here soon before it's discovered by the masses.

### Sights & Activities

Jade Emperor Temple TEMPLE

( Yuhuang Ge; admission ¥60; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) The focal point of the old town is this small temple complex, built in 1592. It includes a three-storey pagoda, which can be climbed for good views, and a Confucius Temple (; Wen Miao).

Museum of Guide County MUSEUM

(admission free with temple ticket; ☺ 8.30am-6pm) The square beside the temple contains the small museum, which houses a handful of interesting Ming and Qing artefacts recovered from the local area, but lacks English captions. Near the museum, a small shop rents out

bikes for ¥8 per hour.

### Tibetan Prayer Wheel RELIGIOUS

( Zhonghua Fuyunlun) Around the back of the old town a dirt track leads down to the Yellow River and a large suspension bridge. From the bridge, turn left and walk about 1.2km to an enormous new gold-plated Tibetan prayer wheel, which is turned with the aid of rushing water from the Yellow River. The prayer wheel is 27m tall, 10m in diameter and weighs 200 tonnes, earning it a spot in the *Guinness World Records* as the world's largest prayer wheel. Inside the wheel are 200 copies of the Kangyur text and the base contains a large prayer hall. Near the wheel is a museum of Tibetan artefacts.

Continuing upstream for another 2km you'll come across a huge, recently built wooden water wheel (; *shuiche*) by a paved riverbank.

### Hot Springs HOT SPRINGS

( wenquan) If your legs need a rest after all that walking, hop in a taxi (¥15 to ¥20 one way) to Guide's hot springs, known locally as *reshui gou* (), which are a 13km-drive from town past some mightily impressive barren scenery. Here you can join the local Tibetans for a free outdoor bath. There are several guesthouses here where you can enter the pools for a fee of ¥20.

## Sleeping & Eating

The old farmers'-style courtyard guesthouses (; *nongjia yuan*) in Guide have been razed by government order and it's likely that in the coming years new hotels and guesthouses will appear in the old town.

### Youzheng Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( ☎ 855 0601; r ¥180) Located just outside the main gate to the old town is this decent option with 24-hour hot water and comfortable beds.

### Qing Xiang Yuan Farmhouse HOTEL \$

( Qingxiangyuan Nongzhuang; ☎ 855 4271; bed per person ¥30; dishes ¥10-60) Just behind the old town walls, on the corner of the road leading down to the river, this is a restaurant that manages to convert some of its dining areas into bedrooms. The big dining table in your room may feel a bit awkward, like a group is about to come in for

dinner.

Khawa Chain Tibetan Restaurant TIBETAN \$

( kawajian zangcan; dishes ¥10-60) A Tibetan-style place with *momo*, hearty soups and sizzling meat platters. It's on the main road in the old town.

### **i** Information

There are internet cafes (; *wangba*) on Yingbingo Xilu and Bei Dajie.

**China Construction Bank ATM** ( Jianshe Yinhang; 14 Yingbin Xilu; ) Accepts foreign cards. Turn left from the bus station and keep going.

### **i** Getting There & Around

The old town is 1.5km from the bus station. Turn left out of the station on Yingbin Xilu, then left again along Xi Jie and left once more down Bei Dajie and it will be directly in front of you. Three-wheel motorised rickshaws ply the streets of Guide. Most short trips cost ¥5.

There are regular buses back to Xining (¥25, 3½ hours, from 7.30am to 5.45pm). A bus to Maqin (Tawo; ¥87) travels on even days, departing at 9am.

## THE SOURCE OF THE YELLOW RIVER

For an adventurous side trip into remote Qinghai, and a chance to experience some stunning, barren, high-plateau scenery, head towards Zaling Lake ( Zaling Hu), where it's possible to find the source of arguably China's most revered waterway, the Yellow River ( Huanghe Yuantou).

The scenery around the two lakes here, and en route, is awesome. Wildlife you may spot includes fox, marmot, eagle, antelope and, of course, plenty of yaks. There's nowhere to stay or eat, so most people visit the lake as a day trip from the two-street town of Maduo (). It is possible to camp here in the summer but you'll need to be completely self-sufficient.

Remember this area, including Maduo (4260m), is over 4000m high so altitude sickness is a real risk. Consider coming from Yushu (3680m) rather than Xining (2275m) so you don't have to ascend too much in one go.

In Maduo it's easy to find Landcruisers to take you to the lake and back (¥800 per vehicle; three hours one way). Just left of Maduo bus station is Liangyou Binguan ( 📞 0975-834 5048; r ¥180-298; @ ) with clean, simple rooms and shared bathroom.

Note, the widely accepted source of the Yellow River, which is marked by an engraved stone tablet, is actually just the most accessible of a number of sources. Locals refer to it as *niutoubei* (). If you want to get to the very-hard-to-find true source of the Yellow River

you'll need a two-day round trip from Maduo (sleeping in the 4WD) and it will cost around ¥3000 per vehicle, assuming you can find a driver willing to take you.

The bus back to Xining from Maduo leaves at 7.30am.

## Yushu (Jyekundo)

📍 0976 / POP 28,000

Up until the spring of 2010, Yushu (Jyekundo is the name of the town itself while Yushu is the prefecture) and its surrounding areas gained notoriety as one of Qinghai's best new adventure-travel destinations. Yushu, with its remote location and hardy Tibetan population, was dotted with dozens of impressive monasteries, famous pilgrim sites and gorgeous wooded valleys that cried out for exploration. All that changed on 14 April 2010, when a 7.1-magnitude earthquake devastated the town, killing 2698 people (although some believe the true figure across the whole region to be more like 20,000).

After the earthquake most of Jyekundo's buildings were pulled down and an army of construction workers arrived to rebuild the city. Locals were housed in government-issued blue tents, giving the place the look and feel of a refugee camp (and a very dusty, noisy one at that). There are plenty of basic restaurants around but other facilities used by travellers – including hotels, banks and internet cafes – are in short supply.

Although the pace of rebuilding has been quick, we recommend travellers avoid Yushu until the reconstruction phase is mostly complete; that could happen by around 2014 (but 2015 is a better bet if you are making travel plans). You should check the latest, either with hostels in Xining, or online through Lonely Planet's Thorn Tree forum ([www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/thorntree)).

### Sights & Activities

Jyekundo Dondrubling Monastery **MONASTERY**

(Jiegu Si) First built in 1398, the Jyekundo Dondrubling Monastery suffered heavy damage from the earthquake (the main prayer hall was completely destroyed and a number of resident monks were killed). At

the time of research it was being rebuilt, albeit with concrete and other modern materials and probably won't be completed for a few more years. It's dramatically located in a ridge perched above town. You can walk here from town via the atmospheric mani lhakhang (chapel containing a large prayer wheel).

### Central Square SQUARE

( Gesa Guangchang) Yushu's central square includes a large statue of King Gesar of Ling, a revered Tibetan warrior-god whose epic deeds are remembered in the world's longest epic poem of the same name. At the time of research the square was undergoing massive renovation and the statue had been taken down.

## Festivals & Events

Yushu's spectacular three-day horse festival (25 to 28 July) has not been held since the earthquake, so double-check the latest before you make this part of your itinerary.

## Sleeping & Eating

The earthquake wiped out most hotels in Yushu and those that have sprung up since are mostly either temporary buildings or brothels (or both). The situation may well have improved by the time you read this and most taxi drivers will know the better places to stay. There are hundreds of restaurants around town, mostly housed in temporary tents.

### San Jiang Yuan International Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( San Jiang Yuan Guoji Dajiudian; ☎ 189 0976 1988, 139 9736 8378; d without/with bathroom ¥180/240) A temporary building made of white metal siding, located on the outskirts of town on the way to Xinzhai (). Despite the impermanence of the place, rooms have TV and (cold) running water. The hotel has an attached restaurant.

## Getting There & Away

**Air**

Yushu Batang Airport is 25km south of town. There are two daily flights to Xining (¥1390), with continuing service to Xi'an.

**Bus**

There is a temporary bus station 10km from Jyekundo, on the road

past the village of Xinzhai. Daily buses depart for Xining (¥206, six daily, 17 hours). You could stop at places along the way, such as Maduo (¥70). A second bus station has a daily bus for Chengdu (¥450, 29 hours) departing at 9.30am and a daily bus to Shiqu (Sêrshu; ¥40) leaving at 8am; this station is about 1km past Xinzhai village.

In addition to the temporary bus stands there are two minivan stands in town that handle long-distance routes. One is on the main road through town, just outside the new hospital. From here you can catch minivans to Nangchen (¥60, four to five hours) and Xining (¥230, 14 hours), both departing when full.

A second minivan stand has vehicles departing when full for Ganzi (¥180, 13 hours) and Kangding (¥330, 20 hours), both in Sichuan. To reach this minivan stand, walk north along the main road until you reach the T-intersection and turn right. The minivan stand is about 400m down this road.

Note that the bus stations are temporary and could change locations by the time you read this.

### **Getting Around**

A local bus (¥1) trundles between Yushu and Xinzhai village but it only seems to move once or twice an hour. Shared minivans (¥10) travel from the bus station to the town centre, departing when full. Taxis are prevalent around town and fares start at ¥10, rising steeply if you head anywhere out of town. A taxi to the airport is ¥50.

## **Around Yushu**

### **SENG-ZE GYANAK MANI WALL**

Just outside Yushu, on the road to Xiewu, is what is thought to be the world's largest *mani* wall, the Seng-ze Gyanak Mani (Mani Shicheng). *Mani* walls are piles of stones with Buddhist mantras carved or painted on them. Founded in 1715, the Seng-ze Gyanak Mani is said to now consist of an estimated two billion mantras, piled one on top of the other over hundreds of square metres. It's an astonishing sight that grows more and more marvellous as you circumambulate the wall with the pilgrims, turn dozens of prayer wheels, and head into the pile itself

for a moment of quiet reflection.

Seng-ze Gyanak Mani suffered heavy damage from the Yushu earthquake and at the time of research reconstruction work was ongoing. Despite the work it's still a popular pilgrimage site and is worth a visit. The wall is 3km east of Yushu in Xinzhai village.

## **PRINCESS WENCHENG TEMPLE**

History credits the Tang dynasty Chinese Princess Wencheng as being instrumental in converting her husband and Tibetan king, Songtsen Gampo, to Buddhism in the 7th century. In a valley 20km south of Yushu, a famous temple (Wencheng Gongzhu Miao) marks the spot where the princess (and possibly the king) paused for a month en route from Xi'an to Lhasa.

The inner chapel has a rock carving of Vairocana (Nampa Namse in Tibetan), the Buddha of primordial wisdom, allegedly dating from the 8th century. To the left is a statue of King Songtsen Gampo.

The temple, which suffered minor damage from the Yushu earthquake, is small, and few linger in it long, but allow time to explore the nearby hills. Here a sprawling spider's web of blue, red, yellow, white and pink prayer flags runs up the slopes, down the slopes and over the ravine, covering every inch of land, and is one of the most extraordinary sights imaginable.

A steep trail (a popular *kora* route for pilgrims) ascends from the end of the row of eight *chörtens* to the left of the temple. At the end of the trail head up the grassy side valley for some great hiking and stunning open views.

A taxi here from Yushu costs about ¥60. It's just off the road to the airport so you could stop here on your way to catching a flight.

## **MONASTERIES AROUND YUSHU**

The road from Yushu to Xiewu is dotted with monasteries set among beautiful landscapes, perfect for hiking. Worth visiting is Sebda Gompa ( Saiba Si), about 15km from Yushu. The main assembly hall at the monastery is impressive, but most surprising is the new chapel featuring a huge 18m statue of Guru Rinpoche, with smaller statues of his various manifestations on either side. The adjacent ethnographic museum (admission ¥10) has

some offbeat gems like traditional clothing, swords and stuffed animals. If you have more time you can explore the ruins of the old monastery on the ridge behind the *gompa* or do some great hiking in the opposite valley.

At Xiewu village, by the turn-off to Shiqu, is the Sakyapa-school Drogon Gompa ( Xiewu Si). Atop the hill is the scary *gönkhang* (protector chapel), adorned with snarling stuffed wolves and Tantric masks. Only men may enter this chapel.

Minivans ply the route between Yushu and Xiewu from where you should be able to get onward transport to Shiqu.

## NANGCHEN

 0976 / ELEV 3680M

The scenic county of Nangchen (Nangqian), a former Tibetan kingdom, is the end of the line for most travellers. Further south of here is the Qinghai–Tibet border, with roads to Riwoche and Chamdo, but any attempt to go here without the proper permits (and guide and driver) will land you in hot water.



### Sights

Most visit just for the drive from Yushu to the little county capital of Sharda (3550m). Four monasteries are scattered about town. The most recognisable is Sajiya Gompa (; Sajiya Si) perched on the hill above town like an old manor. You can hike even further up the hill behind the *gompa* for excellent views of the valley. In the town centre is Jiaba Gompa (; Jiaba Si) where Tibetans young and old appear each morning to turn prayer wheels and circumambulate the temple.

For a good excursion from town, travel 70km south on a rough road to the stunning Gar Gompa ( Ga'er Si), nestled on the ridge of a forested mountain. Wildlife is prevalent in the area, including blue sheep and monkeys. It's a popular spot for birdwatchers. A taxi from Sharda costs about ¥500 return.

### Sleeping & Eating

Kangba Jiudian HOTEL \$\$

(  187 0976 1333; Xingfu Lu; d without/with bathroom ¥180/288;  )  
Has a bright lobby and decent double rooms that usually get knocked



down to ¥150/200. The shared bathrooms are wretched so consider a room with attached bathroom (but running water is sporadic in either case). A smattering of English is spoken and wi-fi is available in the lobby. Its sign says 'Khampa Teahouse and Restaurant'.

**Nang Qian Binguan HOTEL \$**

( 📍 887 3333; Xingfu Lu; r ¥80) This is a grim place with tatty shared rooms that don't have a bathroom. There are some en suite doubles, but the owner was not letting them out when we visited.

**Niu Rou Mian Dawang NOODLES \$**

( Xingfu Lu; dishes ¥10-20; 🕒 8am-10pm) A popular place for noodles. Try the zha jiang mian ( ), a sort of spaghetti with meat sauce. It's a couple of doors down from Kangba Jiudian.



#### Information

**Agricultural Bank of China** ( Nongye Yinhang; Xingfu Lu) Near the main intersection but not all foreign cards work here, so don't count on getting cash if you're relying on ATMs.

**Guide** A useful local Tibetan guide in Sharda is English-speaking **Namdrak** ( 📍 153 0976 1019; namdraktsaka@yahoo.com), who can organise trips to nearby sites and Gar Gompa.

**Internet cafe** Cafes (; *wangba*) are on Xingfu Lu, reached by walking through the alley next to a bank (opposite Kangba Jiudian). You can also use wi-fi at the Kangba Jiudian.



#### Getting There & Away

##### Bus & Taxi

From the bus station on the main road, one daily bus goes to Xining (¥264, 20 to 24 hours) departing at 10am. Book at least one day in advance.

For Yushu (¥60, three to five hours) most locals travel by shared taxis, which assemble on the main road near the hotels. Major road construction was ongoing at the time of research.

## Golmud

### TRANSPORT HUB

For three decades Golmud ( Gëermu) had faithfully served

overlanders as the last jumping-off point before Lhasa. Bedraggled backpackers hung around the city's truck depot trying to negotiate a lift to the 'Roof of the World'. But since the completion of the Qinghai-Tibet railway, this lonesome backwater has become even less important as most Tibet travellers board the train elsewhere and blow right through town. Today it's mostly of use by travellers trying to get between Lhasa and Dunhuang (in Gansu) or Huatugou (en route to Xinjiang).

If you are stuck here for the night, try the centrally located Dongfang Binguan ( 📞 0979-841 0011; r ¥178-218), which has clean but unremarkable standard rooms that come equipped with an ADSL cable for laptop carriers. Slightly pricier rooms come with computers.

Both Bayi Lu and Kunlun Lu are lined with restaurants. Around the train station you can find Muslim places dishing out *ganban mian* (; spaghetti-style noodles with meat sauce; ¥6) or *niurou mian* (; beef noodles; ¥5).



#### Getting There & Away

Note that if you are heading for Dunhuang you'll need a special permit (; *luxing zheng*; ¥50) when boarding the bus. Permits are available from the **Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; 6 Chaidamu Lu; ☎ 8am-noon & 2.30-5pm Mon-Fri). The PSB can also extend visas. We've also heard reports that the PSB only allows tourists to stay one night in Golmud.

There are two daily buses to Dunhuang (¥102, seven to eight hours, 9am and 6pm) from the **main bus station** ( 📞 0979-845 3688). The evening one is a sleeper. Likewise, there are two daily buses to Huatugou (¥104, six hours, 10am and noon), the second again being a sleeper. From Huatugou you can catch buses to Charklik (Ruoqiang) in Xinjiang. Three buses depart for Xining (¥160, 12 to 14 hours, 4pm, 5pm and 7pm). There is also a sleeper bus to Charklik (Ruoqiang) (¥224, 10 hours, 1pm).

Trains to Lhasa (¥368, 15 hours, seven daily) tend to pass through Golmud late in the evening or at night; you'll need your Tibet permit to be in order to board it. Other destinations include Xining (¥191, 10 hours, 10 daily) and Lanzhou (¥242, 12 hours, six daily).



# Tibet

POP 3 MILLION

**Includes »**

[Lhasa](#)

[Around Lhasa](#)

[The Friendship Highway](#)

[Western Tibet](#)

---

## Why Go?

For centuries Tibet has held the imagination of spiritual seekers, mountain adventurers and intrepid travellers. For today's travellers the 'roof of the world' continues to promise breathtaking high-altitude scenery, awe-inspiring monasteries, epic road trips and a unique Himalayan culture that remains vibrant after a half-century of assault and repression. As you travel around Tibet, meeting crimson-robed monks and wild-haired pilgrims, you'll quickly find that the colour, humour and religious devotion of the immensely likeable Tibetan people is as much of a highlight as the big sights.

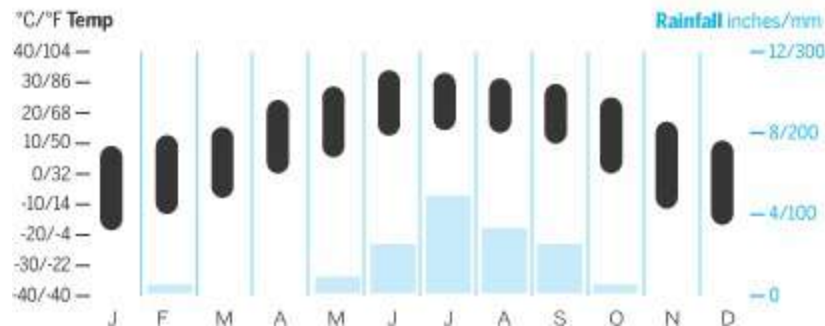
Tibet is changing fast, with ambitious new construction and transport projects unveiled seemingly every month. Moreover, the political tensions of recent years have resulted in strict travel restrictions on foreigners throughout the autonomous region. Despite all this, the magic of old Tibet is still there – you just to have to work a

bit harder to find it these days.

---

## When to Go

### Lhasa



**Mar** This politically sensitive month brings closures and permit problems; avoid.

**May–Sep** High season: warm weather, some rain in July/August, and good hiking.

**Apr & mid-Oct–Nov** A good time to visit, with fewer crowds and warm days.

---

## Best Monasteries

- » Drepung ([Click here](#))
- » Ganden ([Click here](#))
- » Samye ([Click here](#))
- » Sakya ([Click here](#))

---

## Best Views

- » Everest's north face from Rongphu Monastery ([Click here](#))
- » Nam-tso from Tashi Dor ([Click here](#))
- » Yamdrok-tso from the Kamba-la ([Click here](#))
- » Samye Monastery from Hepo Ri ([Click here](#))



## Tibet Highlights

- 1 Rub shoulders with Tibetan pilgrims in the holy city of **Lhasa** ([Click here](#))
- 2 Wonder at the murals of angels and demons in the 108 chapels of the **Gyantse Kumbum** ([Click here](#)), an architectural wonder
- 3 Erase the sins of a lifetime on the three-day pilgrim circuit around sacred **Mt Kailash** ([Click here](#))
- 4 Rouse yourself from a yak-wool tent or monastery guesthouse to catch first light at **Everest Base Camp** ([Click here](#))
- 5 Ride the planet's highest rails across the roof of the world on the **Qinghai–Tibet Railway** ([Click here](#)) to Lhasa
- 6 Explore the mandala-shaped chapels and stupas at **Samye Monastery** ([Click here](#)), Tibet's first monastery
- 7 Hire a vehicle for the week-long trip along the **Friendship Highway** ([Click here](#)) from Lhasa to Kathmandu, one of Asia's great road trips

## History

Recorded Tibetan history began in the 7th century AD, when the Tibetan armies began to assemble a great empire. Under King Songtsen Gampo, the Tibetans occupied Nepal and collected tribute from parts of Yunnan. Shortly afterwards the Tibetan armies moved north and took control of the Silk Road and the great trade centre of Kashgar, even sacking the imperial Chinese city of Chang'an (present-day Xi'an).

Tibetan expansion came to an abrupt halt in 842 with the assassination of anti-Buddhist King Langdarma; the region subsequently broke into independent feuding principalities. The increasing influence of Buddhism ensured that the Tibetan armies would never again leave their high plateau.

By the 7th century, Buddhism had spread through Tibet, though it had taken on a unique form, as it adopted many of the rituals of Bön (the indigenous pre-Buddhist belief system of Tibet). The prayer flags, pilgrimage circuits and sacred landscapes you'll see across modern Tibet all have their roots in the Bön religion.

From the 13th century, power politics began to play an increasing role in religion. In 1641 the Gelugpa ('Yellow Hat' order) used the support of Mongol troops to crush the Sakyapa, their rivals. It was also during this time of partisan struggle that the Gelugpa leader adopted the title of Dalai Lama (Ocean of Wisdom), given to him by the Mongols. From here on out, religion and politics in Tibet became inextricably entwined and both were presided over by the Dalai Lama.

With the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911, Tibet entered a period of de facto independence that was to last until 1950. In this year a resurgent communist China invaded Tibet, claiming it was 'liberating' over one million Tibetans from feudal serfdom and bringing it back into the fold of the motherland.

Increasing popular unrest in response to Chinese land reform resulted in a full-blown revolt in 1959, which was crushed by the People's Liberation Army (PLA). Amid popular rumours of a Chinese plot to kidnap him, the Dalai Lama fled to India. He was followed by an exodus of 80,000 of Tibet's best and brightest, who now represent the Tibetan government-in-exile from Dharamsala, India.

The Dalai Lama, who has referred to China's policies on migration as 'cultural genocide', is resigned to pushing for autonomy rather than independence, though even that concession has borne little fruit. The Chinese for their part seem to be waiting for him to die, positioning themselves to control the future politics of reincarnation. The Dalai Lama's tireless insistence on a non-violent solution to the Tibet problem led to him winning the Nobel Peace Prize in 1989, but despite global sympathy for the Tibetan cause, few nations are willing to raise the issue and place new business deals with China's rising economic superpower at risk.

The Chinese are truly baffled by what they perceive as the continuing ingratitude of the Tibetans. They claim that Tibet pre-1950 was a place of abject poverty and feudal exploitation. China, they say, has brought roads, schools, hospitals, airports, factories and rising incomes.

Many Tibetans, however, cannot forgive the destruction in the 1950s and 1960s of hundreds of monasteries and shrines, the restrictions on religious expression, the continued heavy military presence, economic exploitation and their obvious second-class status within their own land. Riots and protests in the spring of 2008 brought this simmering dissatisfaction out into the open, as Lhasa erupted into full-scale riots and protests spread to other Tibetan areas in Gansu, Sichuan and Qinghai provinces. The Chinese response was predictable: arrest, imprisonment and an increased police presence in many monasteries. The increasing desperation felt by many Tibetans has led to a spate of self-immolations by Tibetans across the region, including two in Lhasa's Barkhor Circuit in 2012. At the time of writing, riot police armed with fire extinguishers patrolled much of Lhasa's old town.

As immigration and breakneck modernisation continue, the government is gambling that economic advances will diffuse the Tibetans' religious and political aspirations. It's a policy that has so far been successful in the rest of China. Whether it will work in Tibet remains to be seen.

## PRICE INDICATORS

---

The following price indicators are used in this chapter:

### Sleeping

\$ less than ¥180

\$\$ ¥180 to ¥400

\$\$\$ more than ¥400

### Eating

\$ less than ¥30

\$\$ ¥30 to ¥80

\$\$\$ more than ¥80

## Climate

Most of Tibet is a high-altitude desert plateau at more than 4000m. Days in summer (June to September) are warm, sunny and generally dry but temperatures drop quickly after dark. It's always cool above 4000m and often freezing at night, though thanks to the Himalayan rain shadow there is surprisingly little snow in the 'Land of Snows'. Sunlight is very strong at these altitudes, so bring plenty of high-factor sunscreen and lip balm.

## Language

Most urban Tibetans speak Mandarin in addition to Tibetan. Even in the countryside you can get by with basic Mandarin in most restaurants and hotels, since they are normally run by Mandarin-speaking Han or Hui Chinese. That said, Tibetans are extremely pleased when foreign visitors at least greet them in Tibetan, so it's well worth learning a few phrases (see [Click here](#)).



Getting There & Away

**NEPAL ROUTE** The 865km road connecting Lhasa with Kathmandu is known as the Friendship Hwy. Currently the only means of transport for foreigners is a rented vehicle.

When travelling from Nepal to Lhasa, foreigners generally arrange



transport and permits through agencies in Kathmandu. Be careful with whom you organise your trip – the vast majority of complaints about Tibet that we receive have been about budget trips from Kathmandu. The most common option is a seven-day overland budget tour, which runs two or three times a week and costs from US\$350, plus visa fees and return flight costs (around US\$400). There are also fly-in, fly-out options, with Kathmandu–Lhasa flights operating four times a week. Regardless of what the agency says, you will probably end up with travellers from other companies. Accommodation en route is pretty simple. Most agencies advertising in Thamel are agents only; they don't actually run the trips and so will probably just shrug if there's a complaint. Better agencies in Kathmandu include the following:

**Ecotrek** (☎ 01-4424112; [www.ecotrek.com.np](http://www.ecotrek.com.np), [www.ecotreknepal.com](http://www.ecotreknepal.com); Thamel)

**Explore Nepal Richa Tours & Travel** (☎ 01-4423064; 2nd fl, Namche Bazaar Bldg, Tri Devi Marg, Thamel)

**Green Hill Tours** (☎ 01-4700803; Thamel)

**Royal Mount Trekking** (☎ 01-4241452; [www.royaltibet.com](http://www.royaltibet.com); Durbar Marg)

**Tashi Delek Nepal Treks & Expeditions** (☎ 01-4410746; [www.tashidelektreks.com.np](http://www.tashidelektreks.com.np); Thamel)

Whatever you do, when coming from Nepal do *not* underestimate the sudden rise in elevation; altitude sickness is very common. It is especially not recommended to visit Everest Base Camp within a few days of leaving Kathmandu. Heading to Nepal, you will arrange 4WD hire as part of your Tibet tour.

**QINGHAI ROUTE** Now that the railway connects Lhasa with Qinghai, there is no reason to suffer the long ride on the sleeper bus from Golmud. Bear in mind that it is much harder to get train tickets *to* Lhasa than *from* Lhasa, so flying in and taking a train out makes sense.

**OTHER ROUTES** Between Lhasa and Sichuan, Yunnan and Xinjiang provinces are some of the wildest, highest and most remote routes in the world. It's generally possible to enter and leave Tibet via these routes if you are travelling with an expensive organised tour and have the proper permits. In 2012 permits were impossible to obtain for

overland routes through eastern Tibet, but these may reopen soon.



#### Getting Around

These days almost all foreigners travel around Tibet in a rented 4WD. Public buses outside Lhasa are off limits to foreigners, and bus stations generally won't sell you a ticket.

As for cycling – it's possible, but currently expensive, as you still need a guide and transport, even if you're not travelling in it! For experienced cyclists, the Lhasa–Kathmandu trip is one of the world's great rides.

## Lhasa ལྷ་ས་

📍 089 / POP 400,000 / ELEV 3650M

Lhasa is the traditional, political and spiritual centre of the Tibetan world. Despite rampant Chinese-led modernisation, Tibet's premodern and sacred heritage survives in the form of the grand Potala Palace (former seat of the Dalai Lama); the ancient Jokhang Temple (Tibet's first and most holy); the great monastic towns of Sera, Drepung and Ganden; and the city's countless other smaller temples, hermitages, caves, sacred rocks, pilgrim paths and prayer-flag–bedecked hilltops.

Lhasa is a comfortable travellers' destination these days. There are dozens of good budget and midrange hotels and no shortage of excellent inexpensive restaurants. English is not widely spoken, but you'll have no trouble in the more popular hotels, restaurants, cafes and travel agencies. Lhasa is also currently the only place in Tibet where you have a certain freedom to explore without your guide, plus it's cheaper here than the rest of Tibet because you don't need to hire transport.

Lhasa divides clearly into a sprawling Chinese section to the west and a much smaller but infinitely more interesting Tibetan old town in the east, centred on the wonderful Barkhor area. The latter is easily the best place to be based, though at the time of research the oppressive military patrols, riot squads and undercover police in the Barkhor region gave the old town a darker than normal atmosphere.



## Sights & Activities

In addition to the main sights and activities listed here, Lhasa's old town is well worth exploring for its backstreet temples, craft shops and interesting Muslim neighbourhood.

## Lhasa



### Lhasa

#### 📍 Top Sights

[Barkhor](#) D2

[Norbulingka](#) A2

[Potala Palace](#) C2

#### 📍 Sights

1 [Chagpo Ri Rock Carvings](#) B2

2 Potala South Entrance C2

3 Potala Ticket Booking Office C2

4 [Tibet Museum](#) A2

#### Information

5 Nepali Consulate-General A2

6 Norbulingka Ticket Office A2

#### 📍 Transport

7 CAAC C2

8 City Train Ticket Office B2

9 Western (Main) Bus Station A2



## Barkhor PILGRIM CIRCUIT

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(བར་ཁོ་ལོ་ལོ་ལོ་; Bakuo; [Offline map](#)) It's impossible not to be swept up in the wondrous tide of humanity that is the Barkhor, a *kora* (pilgrim circuit) that winds clockwise around the Jokhang Temple. You'll swear it possesses some spiritual centrifugal force, as every time you approach within 50m, you somehow get sucked right in and gladly wind up making the whole circuit again! The crowd of pilgrims is captivating. Braided-haired Khambas from eastern Tibet swagger in huge *chubas* (cloaks) with ornate daggers; and Amdowa nomads from the northeast wear ragged sheepskins or, for women, incredibly ornate braids and coral headpieces. It's the perfect place to start your explorations of Lhasa, and the last spot you'll want to see before you bid the city farewell.

There are a couple of small temples that are worth exploring just off the circuit. From the northern side follow the alley south to the Meru Nyingba Monastery [Offline map](#) [Google map](#), a charming place that is normally packed with pilgrims. On the way back to the circuit pop into the orange-walled Jampa Lhakhang [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) with its huge, two-storey statue of Maitreya (Jampa in Tibetan).



## Jokhang Temple TEMPLE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(རྫོག་མང་ལོ་ལོ་; Dazhao Si; [Offline map](#); admission ¥85; ☀ 9am-1pm, 2-6pm) The 1300-year-old Jokhang Temple is the spiritual heart of Tibet: the continuous movement of awestruck pilgrims prostrating themselves outside are testament to its timeless allure.

The Jokhang was originally built to house an image of Buddha brought to Tibet by King Songtsen Gampo's Nepalese wife. However, another image, the Jowa Sakyamuni, was later moved here by the king's other wife (the Chinese Princess Wencheng), and it is this image that gives the Jokhang both its name and spiritual potency: Jokhang means 'chapel of the Jowo' and the central golden Buddha here is the most revered in all of Tibet.

The two-storeyed Jokhang is definitely best visited in the morning, though the crowds of yak-butter-spooning pilgrims can be thick.

Access is possible in the afternoon but the upper-floor chapels are shut and there are no pilgrims.



## Potala Palace PALACE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(པོ་ཏ་ལ་ཡོང་ཁང་; Budala Gong; [Offline map](#); admission May-Oct ¥200, Nov-Apr ¥100; 🕒 9.30am-3pm before 1 May, 9am-3.30pm after 1 May, interior chapels close 4.30pm) The magnificent Potala Palace, once the seat of the Tibetan government and the winter residence of the Dalai Lamas, is Lhasa's cardinal landmark. Your first sight of its towering, maroon and white fortress-like walls is a moment you'll remember for a long time.

An architectural wonder even by modern standards, the palace rises 13 storeys from 130m-high Marpo Ri (Red Hill) and contains more than a thousand rooms. Pilgrims and tourists alike shuffle down through the three storeys, trying to take in the thousands of statues and stupas in the magnificent chapels and prayer halls.

The first recorded use of the site dates from the 7th century AD, when King Songtsen Gampo built a palace here. Construction of the present structure began during the reign of the fifth Dalai Lama in 1645 and took divisions of labourers and artisans more than 50 years to complete. It is impressive enough to have caused Zhou Enlai to send his own troops to protect it from the Red Guards during the Cultural Revolution.

The layout of the Potala Palace includes the rooftop White Palace (the eastern part of the building), used for the living quarters of the Dalai Lama, and the central Red Palace, used for religious functions. The most stunning chapels of the Red Palace house the jewel-bedecked golden *chörten* (Tibetan stupa) tombs of several previous Dalai Lamas. The apartments of the 13th and 14th Dalai Lamas, in the White Palace, offer a more personal insight into life in the palace. Grand aesthetics and history aside, however, one can't help noticing that today it is essentially an empty shell, notably missing its main occupant, the Dalai Lama, and a cavernous memorial to what once was.

Tickets for the Potala are limited. The day before you wish to visit, your guide will take your passport and reserve a time slot for the next

day. The next day, be at the south entrance 30 minutes before the time on the voucher (tour groups use the southeast entrance).

After a security check, follow the other visitors to the stairs up into the palace. Halfway up you'll pass the actual ticket booth. Note that if you arrive later than the time on your voucher (or if you forget your voucher) you can be refused a ticket. Photography isn't allowed inside the chapels. After exiting the Potala on the north side you can walk part of the Potala *kora*.

### Sera Monastery MONASTERY

(སེ་ར་དགལ་སྐྱེ་པ་; Sela Si; admission ¥55; ☺ 9am-5pm) About 5km north of central Lhasa, this monastery was founded in 1419 by a disciple of Tsongkhapa and was, along with Drepung Monastery, one of Lhasa's two great Gelugpa monasteries.

About 600 monks are now in residence, well down from an original population of around 5000. The half-dozen main colleges feature spectacular prayer halls and chapels, though many were under renovation in 2012. Equally interesting is the monk debating that takes place from 3.30pm to 5pm in a garden next to the assembly hall in the centre of the monastery (not Sunday). As at Drepung, there's a fine hour-long *kora* path around the exterior of the monastery.

A taxi to Sera costs ¥10 from the old town, or it's a 30-minute bicycle ride from central Lhasa. There is a ¥15 to ¥30 fee per chapel for photography, and it's ¥850 for video.

From Sera Monastery it's possible to take a taxi or walk northwest for another hour to little-visited Pabonka Monastery. Built in the 7th century by King Songtsen Gampo, this is one of the most ancient Buddhist sites in the Lhasa region.

### Drepung Monastery MONASTERY

(རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་སྐྱེ་པ་; Zhebang Si; admission ¥50; ☺ 9.30am-5.30pm) A 1½-hour-long *kora* around this 15th-century monastery, 8km west of the old town, is among the highlights of Tibet. Along with Sera and Ganden monasteries, Drepung functioned as one of the three 'pillars of the Tibetan state' and was purportedly the largest monastery in the world, with around 7000 resident monks at its peak. Drepung means 'rice heap', a reference to the white buildings dotting the hillside.

The kings of Tsang and the Mongols savaged the place regularly,

though, oddly, the Red Guards pretty much left it alone during the Cultural Revolution. With concerted rebuilding, this monastic village once again resembles its proud former self and around 600 monks reside here. At lunchtime you can see the novices bringing in buckets of *tsampa* and yak-butter tea. In the afternoons you can often see Tibetan-style religious debating (lots of hand slapping and gesticulating) in the gardens at the back of the monastery. The best way to visit the monastery is to follow the pilgrim groups.

Nearby Nechung Monastery (admission ¥10; ☺ 8.30am-5pm), a 10-minute walk downhill, was once the home of the Tibetan state oracle and is worth a visit for its bloodcurdling murals.

Buses 18 and 25 (¥2) run from Beijing Donglu to the foot of the Drepung hill, from where a coach (¥1) runs up to the monastery. A taxi from the Barkhor area is ¥30. There is a sporadically enforced ¥10 to ¥20 charge per chapel for photography.

#### Chagpo Ri Rock Carvings HISTORIC SITE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

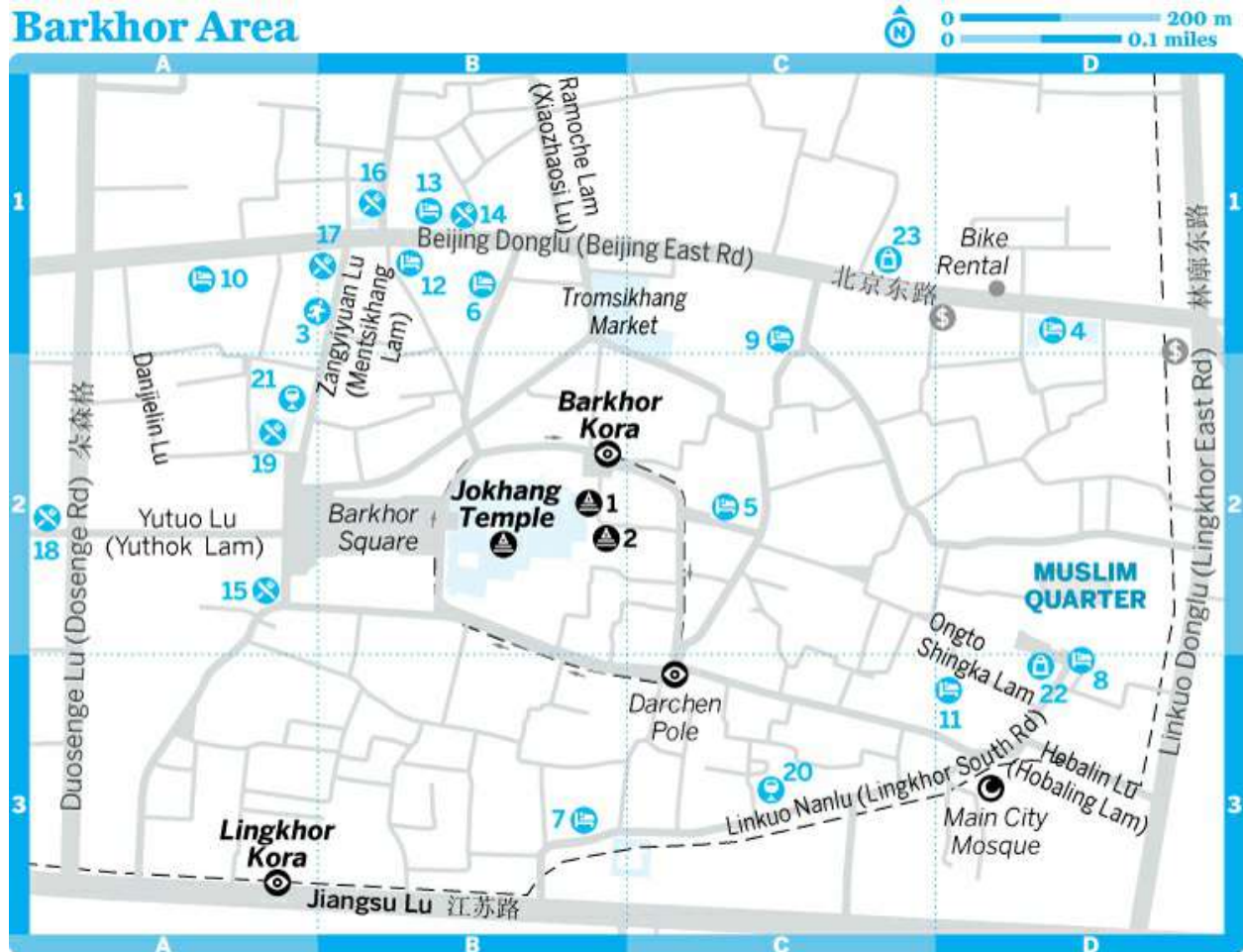
(Deji Zhonglu; admission ¥ 10; ☺ dawn-dusk) Throughout the day pilgrims prostrate themselves in front of this splinter of rock and its hundreds of painted rock carvings, some 1000 years old. Nearby are several stone carvers who have built a huge *chörten* from *mani* (prayer) stones carved onsite. The little-known site is well worth a visit. The carvings are on the southern flank of Chagpo Ri, southwest of the Potala.

#### Norbulingka PALACE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(འཇུག་པོ་གཞི་ཁྱིམ་; Luobulinka; [Offline map](#); Minzu Lu; admission ¥60; ☺ 9am-6pm) About 3km west of the Potala Palace is the Norbulingka, the former summer residence of the Dalai Lama. The pleasant park contains several palaces and chapels, the highlight of which is the New Summer Palace (Takten Migyu Podrang), built by the current (14th) Dalai Lama. It's debatable whether it's worth the entry fee.

## Barkhor Area



### Barkhor Area

📍 Top Sights

Barkhor Kora B2

[Jokhang Temple](#) B2

Lingkhor Kora A3

📍 Sights

1 [Jampa Lhakhang](#) B2

2 [Meru Nyingba Monastery](#) B2

📍 Activities, Courses & Tours

3 [Tenzin Blind Massage Centre](#) A1

🛏 Sleeping

4 Banak Shol Hotel D1

5 [Barkhor Namchen House](#) C2

6 [Dhood Gu Hotel](#) B1



- 7 [Gorkha Hotel](#) B3
- 8 [Heritage Hotel](#) D3
- 9 [House of Shambhala](#) C1
- 10 [Kyichu Hotel](#) A1
- 11 [Rama Kharpo](#) D3
- 12 Yabshi Phunkhang B1
- 13 [Yak Hotel](#) B1

#### Eating

- 14 Dunya Restaurant B1
- 15 [New Mandala Restaurant](#) A2
- 16 [Pentoc Tibetan Restaurant](#) B1
- 17 [Tashi I](#) B1
- 18 [Tibet Steak House](#) A2
- 19 [Woesser Zedroe Tibetan Restaurant](#) A2

#### Drinking

- 20 [Ani Sangkhung Nunnery Teahouse](#) C3
- [Dunya Bar](#) (see 14)
- 21 [Summit Cafe](#) A2

#### Shopping

- 22 [Dropenling](#) D3
- 23 [Outlook Outdoor Equipment](#) C1

**FREE** Tibet Museum MUSEUM

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(འབྲུག་རྒྱལ་ཁབ་མཚན་ལྷན་ཁང་; Xizang Bo-wuguan; [Offline map](#); Minzu Nanlu; 🕒 10am-5.30pm Tue-Sun) This museum has some interesting displays, if you can filter out the Chinese propaganda. The multiple halls cover everything from weapons to musical instruments, featuring some fine ancient *thangkas* (Tibetan sacred paintings). Look for the 18th-century golden urn (exhibit No 310) used by the Chinese to recognise their version of the Panchen Lama. A useful hand-held audio guide is available for ¥20. Photography is allowed.

Tenzin Blind Massage Centre MASSAGE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([Offline map](#); 📍 634 7591; Zangyiyuan Lu; 🕒 10am-11pm) There's no better way to recover from a trip than with a Chinese or Tibetan oil

massage (¥80 to ¥100) from the graduate of the impressive Braille Without Borders ([www.braillewithoutborders.org](http://www.braillewithoutborders.org)) massage school.

## Festivals & Events

Tibetan festivals are held according to the Tibetan lunar calendar, which usually lags at least a month behind the West's Gregorian calendar. The following is a brief selection of Lhasa's major festivals. Most are also celebrated elsewhere in Tibet.

### Losar Festival RELIGIOUS

Taking place in the first week of the first lunar month (February), there are performances of Tibetan opera, prayer ceremonies at the Jokhang and Nechung Monastery, and the streets are thronged with Tibetans dressed in their finest.

### Saga Dawa RELIGIOUS

The 15th day (full moon) of the fourth lunar month (May/June) sees huge numbers of pilgrims walking the Lingkor pilgrim circuit.

### Worship of the Buddha RELIGIOUS

During the second week of the fifth lunar month (June), the parks of Lhasa, in particular the Norbulingka, are crowded with picnickers.

### Drepung Festival RELIGIOUS

The 30th day of the sixth lunar month (July) is celebrated with the hanging at dawn of a huge *thangka* at Drepung Monastery. Lamas and monks perform opera in the main courtyard.

### Shötun Festival RELIGIOUS

The first week of the seventh lunar month (August) sees the unveiling of a giant *thangka* at Drepung Monastery, then moves down to Sera and down to the Norbulingka for performances of *Ihamo* (Tibetan opera) and some epic picnics.

### Palden Lhamo RELIGIOUS

The 15th day of the 10th lunar month (being November) has a procession around the Barkhor circuit bearing Palden Lhamo, protective deity of the Jokhang Temple.

### Tsongkhapa Festival RELIGIOUS

Much respect is shown to Tsongkhapa, the founder of the Gelugpa

order, on the anniversary of his death on the 25th day of the lunar month during December. Check for processions and monk dances at the monasteries at Ganden, Sera and Drepung.

DON'T MISS

## LHASA'S PILGRIM CIRCUITS

Lhasa's four main *kora*s (pilgrim circuits) are well worth walking, especially during the Saga Dawa festival, when the distinction between tourist and pilgrim can become very fine. Remember always to proceed clockwise.

- » **Nangkhor** Encircles the inner precincts of the Jokhang.
- » **Barkhor** Traces the outskirts of the Jokhang.
- » **Lingkhor** You can join the 8km-long circuit anywhere, but the most interesting section is from the southeastern old town to the Potala Palace.
- » **Potala Kora (Tsekhor)** An almost continuous circuit of prayer wheels, *chörtens* (Tibetan stupas), rock paintings and chapels encircles the Potala Palace. Stop for sweet tea en route at the charming teahouse by the three white *chörtens* on the northwest corner.

## Sleeping

Lhasa has a good range of accommodation for all budgets. Rates depend on visitor numbers but generally peak in July and August, with discounts of at least 20% at other times. A cluster of top-end hotels are planned to open in Lhasa in the coming years, including Intercontinental and Shangri-La properties.



Kyichu Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Jiqu Fandian; [Offline map](#); ☎ 633 1541; [www.kyichuhotel.com](http://www.kyichuhotel.com); 149/18 Beijing Donglu; r standard/deluxe from ¥380/500; 📶@📶) The Kyichu is a well-run place that's popular with repeat travellers to Tibet. Rooms are modern and pleasant, with Tibetan carpets, but the real selling points are the excellent service and peaceful garden courtyard (with wi-fi and espresso coffee). The garden-view rooms at the back

are the quietest. Reservations are essential and discounts are available in winter. Credit cards accepted.

Yak Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Ya Binguan; [Offline map](#); 📍 630 0008; 100 Beijing Donglu; dm ¥50, d ¥450-650, r VIP ¥880; 📶@📶) Once a backpacker favourite, the Yak is still one of Lhasa's most popular hotels, but it's now firmly midrange and most popular with French and Dutch tour groups. Best value are the Tibetan-style back-block rooms, normally discounted to ¥300. The deluxe rooms overlooking the street are larger but noisier.

Reservations are recommended. The included rooftop breakfast is excellent.

Rama Kharpo HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Rema Gabu Binguan; [Offline map](#); 📍 634 6963; [www.lhasabarkhor.com](http://www.lhasabarkhor.com); 5 Ongto Shingka Lam; dm ¥40-50, d/tr ¥160/220; 📶📶) This easily missed place is in the old town near the Muslim quarter. Both dorm and en suite rooms are comfortable and the dark, but pleasant cafe is a sociable meeting place, serving beer and simple food. Breakfast is included in rates. It's a popular budget option.

Banak Shol HOTEL \$

( Balangxue Binguan; [Offline map](#); 📍 632 3829; 8 Beijing Donglu; dm ¥50, d ¥120-150) Revamped in 2012, this Lhasa old-timer is once again a good budget option. The clean, fresh and spacious carpeted dorms with two to five beds are great value (the unrenovated rooms are less pleasant) and the new shower block is sparkling clean. The knackered ensuite rooms were awaiting renovation in 2013.

Dhood Gu Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Dungu Binguan; [Offline map](#); 📍 632 2555; [www.dhodgu-hotel.com](http://www.dhodgu-hotel.com); 19 Shasarsu Lu; 19 s/d/ste incl breakfast ¥450/530/650; @📶) Staff are a little cool at this three-star Nepalese-run hotel, but the old-quarter location and ornate Tibetan-style decor are great, even if rooms are a little small. Rates (with breakfast) are overpriced without the standard discount of 25%. Head to the rooftop bar for Potala views.

### House of Shambhala BOUTIQUE HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xiangbala Fu; [Offline map](#); ☎ 632 6533; [www.shambhalaserai.com](http://www.shambhalaserai.com); 7 Jiri Erxiang; 7 d incl breakfast ¥675-900; @📶) It can take a bit of hunting to locate Lhasa's first boutique hotel, but once you see the mustard-coloured exterior and impressive wooden doors in the old town, you'll know you're there. The hotel's 10 rooms sport a funky Tibetan design, with liberal use of wood, stone and antique furnishings; upper-floor rooms are best. From the fabulous rooftop terrace the views over the old quarter can really take you back in time. A 16-room annexe, the Shambhala Palace, is hidden deeper in the old town and is cheaper, with rooms from ¥350 to ¥500.

### Barkhor Namchen House GUESTHOUSE \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Bakuo Longqian Jiating Luguan; [Offline map](#); ☎ 679 0125; [www.tibetnamchen.com](http://www.tibetnamchen.com); dm/d ¥35/85; @📶) This small backstreet Tibetan-style guesthouse is a good budget choice. The old-town location is near perfect, the staff are friendly, and the Asian-style bathrooms and communal hot showers are clean enough. Rooms are fairly small and some have limited natural light (ask for an upper-floor room), but you can head to the good rooftop sitting room for fine views.

### Gorkha Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guo'erka Fandian; [Offline map](#); ☎ 627 1992; 45 Linkuo Nanlu; 45 r/ste ¥380/450; @) This atmospheric Nepali–Tibetan venture housed the Nepali consulate in the 1950s and still boasts traditional architecture. Rooms vary, so look at a few (the suites are perfect for families). It's in the south of the old town, near several lovely old temples. It's somewhat overpriced.

### Heritage Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guyi Jiudian; [Offline map](#); ☎ 691 1333; 11 Chaktsalgang Lu; d ¥300-360; 📶📶) Nice, stylish rooms in the old town, with helpful staff and a good Nepali restaurant onsite.



## VISITING MONASTERIES & TEMPLES

Most monasteries and temples extend a warm welcome to foreign guests. Please maintain this good faith by observing the following courtesies:

- » Always circumambulate monasteries, chapels and other religious objects clockwise, thus keeping shrines and *chörtens* (Tibetan stupas) to your right.
- » Don't touch or remove anything on an altar and don't take prayer flags or *mani* (prayer) stones.
- » Don't take photos during a prayer meeting. At other times always ask permission to take a photo, especially when using a flash. The larger monasteries charge photography fees, though some monks will allow you to take a quick photo for free. If they won't, there's no point getting angry – you don't know what pressures they may be under.
- » Don't wear shorts or short skirts in a monastery, and take your hat off when you go into a chapel.
- » Don't smoke in a monastery.
- » If you have a guide, try to ensure that he or she is Tibetan, as Chinese guides invariably know little about Tibetan Buddhism or monastery history.
- » Be aware that women are generally not allowed in protector chapels (*gönkhang*).

### Eating

The staple diet in Tibet is *tsampa* (porridge of roasted barley flour) and *bö cha* (yak-butter tea). Tibetans mix the two in their hands to create doughlike balls. *Momos* (dumplings filled with vegetables or yak meat) and *thugpa* (noodles with meat) are also local comfort food. Variations include *thanthuk* (fried noodle squares) as well as *shemdre* (rice, potato and yak-meat curry). For a Chinese–Tibetan menu reader, [Click here](#).

Lhasa is filled with restaurants serving a range of excellent Nepalese, Chinese, Tibetan and Western dishes. Unless noted otherwise, the places listed here are open for breakfast, lunch and dinner.



New Mandala Restaurant NEPALI \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xinmanzhai Canting; [Offline map](#); Zangyiyuan Lu; dishes ¥20-35; 📍)

The Nepali set meals here are excellent and the rooftop is a great place to savour the views of the Barkhor over a cold Lhasa Beer. The menu is the standard mix of Western, Nepali and Chinese food.

Tashi I INTERNATIONAL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(cnr Zangyiyuan Lu & Beijing Donglu; dishes ¥10-25; 🕒 8am-10pm; 📍)

) This old standard feels like a slice of old Tibet and is a mellow place to hang out. The newly revamped menu is strong on breakfasts and vegetable dishes. Try the *bobi* (chapattilike unleavened bread), which comes with seasoned cream cheese and fried vegetables or meat.

Tibet Steak House INTERNATIONAL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xizang Niupai Canting; [Offline map](#); Yuthok Lu; dishes ¥15-45; 🕒 8am-10pm; 📍)

This well-run restaurant serves a mix of excellent Continental and Nepali food in modern and fresh surroundings. The Indian dishes are particularly good (we recommend the chicken butter masala). It's run by the old Snowlands Restaurant, long a Lhasa favourite, which is planning a new restaurant on Zangyiyuan Lu.

Woeser Zedroe Tibetan Restaurant TIBETAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Guangming Zezhui Zang-cangan; [Offline map](#); Zangyiyuan Lu; mains ¥10-30; 🕒 lunch & dinner; 📍) This is where visiting and local Tibetans come to fill up after a visit to the Jokhang. Add some pleasant traditional seating and a perfect location to the Tibetan vibe and it's a logical lunch stop. The *momos* are recommended, especially the fried yak meat or cheese varieties.

Pentoc Tibetan Restaurant TIBETAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(dishes ¥10-20; 📍) For something authentically Tibetan, charming English-speaking Pentoc runs this local teahouse restaurant. It's a good place to try homemade Tibetan standards, such as *momos*, *thugpa*, *shemdre* (rice, potato and yak meat), plus butter tea and *chang* (barley beer). It's 20m down an alleyway off Beijing Donglu, on the left.

Dunya INTERNATIONAL \$\$

(📞 633 3374; [www.dunyarestaurant.com](http://www.dunyarestaurant.com); 100 Beijing Donglu; dishes ¥45-65; 📍) With its classy decor, wide-ranging dishes and interesting Indonesian-inspired specials, this foreign-run eatery is popular with travellers who need something reassuringly familiar. Sandwiches, yak burgers and pizzas are all good.

## Drinking

Tibetans consume large quantities of *chang* (a tangy alcoholic drink derived from fermented barley) and *bö cha*. The other major beverage is *cha ngamo* (sweet milky tea). Hole-in-the-wall Tibetan teahouses can be found all over the old town.



Ani Sangkhung Nunnery Teahouse TEAHOUSE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(29 Linkuo Nanlu; tea ¥2-8; 🕒 8am-5pm) If you're exploring the old town and need a break, make a beeline for this bustling teahouse in the courtyard of Lhasa's most important (and most politically active) nunnery. The location and atmosphere are superb.

Summit Cafe CAFE

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Dingfeng Kafeidian; [Offline map](#); coffee ¥17-27; 🕒 7.30am-10pm; 📶📍) Off Zangyiyuan Lu, the courtyard of the Shangbala Hotel is the place to head for Lhasa's best espresso hit. There's cosy seating, wi-fi, excellent coffee and great desserts.

Dunya Bar BAR

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

([www.dunyarestaurant.com](http://www.dunyarestaurant.com); 100 Beijing Donglu; bottled beers ¥15; 🕒 noon-midnight; 📍) This classy bar above the restaurant of the same name has a balcony and screens sports events.





## Shopping

Whether it's prayer wheels, *thangkas*, sunhats or imported muesli, you shouldn't have a problem finding it in Lhasa. The Barkhor circuit is especially good for buying spiritual souvenirs and pilgrim accessories, with stalls selling prayer flags, amulets, turquoise jewellery, Tibetan boots, cowboy hats, yak butter and juniper incense. Most of this stuff is mass-produced in Nepal. Haggle, haggle, haggle.



### Dropenling HANDICRAFTS


[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( 633 0898; [www.tibetcraft.com](http://www.tibetcraft.com); 11 Chaktsalgang Lu;  10am-7pm)

Wander through the Tibetan old town to this excellent shop established to bolster local handicrafts in the face of Nepali and Chinese imports. Quality and prices are top end. The shop is a little hard to find, but as you get nearer you'll see signs pointing the way. You can watch local craftspeople at work in the courtyard or take a two-hour walking tour (¥30) of old-town craft workshops. A branch showroom is due to open at the entrance to Barkhor Square.

### Outlook Outdoor Equipment OUTDOOR EQUIPMENT



[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(Kan Fengyun Bianhuan Yuanjing; [Offline map](#);  634 5589; 11 Beijing Donglu) The best of many local shops selling Chinese-made Gore-Tex jackets, fleeces, sleeping bags, stoves, tents and mats, and it also rents out equipment.



## Information

### Embassies

**Nepalese Consulate-General** ( Nibo'er Lingshiguan; [Offline map](#);  0891-681 3965; [www.nepalembassy.org.cn](http://www.nepalembassy.org.cn); 13 Luobulingka Beilu;  10am-noon Mon-Fri) Issues visas in 24 hours. The current fee for a 15-/30-/90-day visa is ¥175/280/700. Bring a visa photo. Chinese tourists have to get their visas here; foreigners will find it easier to obtain visas on the spot at Kodari, the Nepalese border town.

### Internet Access

The Summit Cafe, and Rama Kharpo and Kyichu hotels offer the most convenient free wi-fi for patrons. A couple of internet cafes operate on Beijing Donglu near the Banak Shol hotel.

### Medical Services

**120 Emergency Centre** ( Jijiu Zhongxin; [Offline map](#); 📍 633 2462; 16 Lingkhor Beilu) Part of People' s Hospital. Consultations cost around ¥150.

**Military Hospital** ( Xizang Junqu Zongyiyuan; 📍 625 3120; Niangre Beilu) Best for emergency surgery.

#### Money

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; [Offline map](#); Linkuo Xilu; 🕒 9am-6pm Mon-Sat, 10.30am-4pm Sun) Credit-card advances, bank transfers, foreign exchange and a 24-hour ATM.

**Bank of China (branch)** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; [Offline map](#); Beijing Donglu; 🕒 10am-4.30pm Mon-Fri, 11am-3.30pm Sat & Sun) The most conveniently located bank changes cash and travellers cheques, and has an ATM. It's between the Banak Shol and Kirey hotels.

#### Post

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; [Offline map](#); Beijing Donglu; 🕒 9am-8pm) East of the Potala Palace.

#### Public Security Bureau

**Lhasa City PSB** (PSB; Lasa Shi Gong'anju; [Offline map](#); 📍 624 8154; 17 Linkuo Beilu; 🕒 9am-12.30pm & 3.30-6pm Mon-Fri) Visa extensions are hard to obtain here, so do it somewhere else if possible. If you do get one, it will only be given a day or two before your visa expires, and only if you are on a tour.

## THE WORLD'S HIGHEST TRAIN RIDE

Since starting in 2006 the Qinghai–Tibet Railway has been the world's highest train ride. With the line topping the 5072m Tanggu-la Pass and with 80% of the Golmud to Lhasa stretch above 4000m, the railway is an impressive piece of engineering. Its 160km of bridges and elevated track were built over permafrost, so sections of cooling pipes were inserted to help keep the boggy ground frozen in summer. The cost? A cool US\$4.1 billion, and with extensions to Shigatse currently under construction, this figure is set to grow. The Chinese are rightfully proud of this engineering marvel, while many Tibetans aren't quite so sure. The railway brings cheaper (Chinese-made) goods and greater economic growth to the Tibetan Autonomous Region (TAR), but it also increases Han migration, delivering one million passengers to Lhasa every year. What the line does best is staple Tibet ever more firmly to the rest of China.

At the time of writing, foreigners needed a copy of their Tibet Tourism Bureau (TTB) permit to buy a ticket. On board passengers have access to piped-in oxygen, although the cabins are not actually pressurised. Soft-sleeper berths come with TVs, and speakers in

each cabin make periodic travel announcements about sights along the way. Schedules are designed to let passengers take in the best scenery during daylight hours.

Train departure times and fares to Lhasa (hard seat/hard sleeper/soft sleeper) from the following cities are listed below, but are subject to change. Note that tickets can be very hard to get in July and August, when many agencies impose a surcharge of around ¥200 to get tickets to Lhasa. Check [www.chinatibettrain.com](http://www.chinatibettrain.com) for the latest schedules. Services run daily unless noted:

**Beijing West** (T27), ¥389/767/1216, 44 hours, departure 8.09pm

**Chengdu** (T22/23), ¥331/671/1065, 44 hours, every other day, 9pm

**Chongqing** (T222/3), ¥355/754/1168, 44 hours, every other day, 7.55pm

**Guangzhou** (T264/5), ¥451/869/1472, 56 hours, 12.19pm (change trains in Xining)

**Lanzhou** (K917), ¥242/524/825, 27 hours, 12.13pm

**Shanghai** (T164/5), ¥406/797/1266, 48 hours, 7.52pm

**Xining** (K917, K9803), ¥226/495/783, 27 hours, 11.50am

## Getting There & Away

Air

It's generally possible to buy flights to Lhasa online on sites such as [www.expedia.com](http://www.expedia.com), [www.ctrip.com](http://www.ctrip.com) and [www.elong.net](http://www.elong.net). Most airline offices won't sell you a ticket to Lhasa without a permit, though many local travel agencies will.

Leaving Lhasa is a lot simpler, as tickets can be purchased (and changed) without hassle from the **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang; [Offline map](#); ☎ 682 5430; 1 Niangre Lu; 🕒 9am-7pm). Credit cards are not accepted. Flight connections continue to all major destinations in China. Note that tickets to Chengdu and Chongqing in particular are often discounted by up to 30%.

Flights to/from Lhasa include the following destinations:

**Ali** ¥2600, three weekly

**Beijing** ¥2630, daily

**Chengdu** ¥1700, 10 daily

**Chongqing** ¥1830, daily

**Guangzhou** (via Chongqing) ¥2700, daily

**Kathmandu** ¥3076 (US\$379 from Kathmandu), three weekly

**Kunming** (via Zhongdian) ¥2160, daily

**Shanghai Pudong** (via Xi'an) ¥2960, daily

**Xi'an** ¥1850, four weekly

**Xining** ¥1810, six weekly

**Zhongdian** ¥1580, seven weekly (summer only)

#### Bus

Foreigners are currently not allowed to travel around Tibet by public transport and so the bus station will not sell you a ticket. Should this change, there are buses from the long-distance station to Shigatse, Gyantse and beyond.

#### Train

You can buy train tickets up to 10 days in advance at the Lhasa **train station ticket office** (🕒 7am-10pm) on the southwest edge of town or at the central **city ticket office** (huochepiao daishouchu; [Offline map](#); Deji Zhonglu; 🕒 8am-5.30pm). Trains to Lhasa arrive in the evening. Departures from Lhasa include the following. All are daily unless noted.

**Beijing West** (T28), 42 hours, 1.45pm

**Chengdu** (T24), 44 hours, every other day, 7.57am

**Chongqing** (T224), 45 hours, every other day, 12.45pm

**Guangzhou** (T266), 58 hours, 12.05pm

**Lanzhou** (K918), 26 hours, 8.20am

**Shanghai** (T166), 48 hours, 11.25am

**Xining** (K918, K9802), 23 hours, 8.20am



## Getting Around

#### To/From the Airport

Gongkar airport is 65km south of Lhasa. Almost all tourists are picked up by their guide as part of their tour.

Airport buses (¥25, 75 minutes) leave up to 10 times a day between 7.30am and 1.30pm from in front of the CAAC building. The bus is free if you purchased your air ticket at the CAAC office.

A taxi to the airport costs between ¥150 and ¥200.

#### Bicycle

A good option for getting around Lhasa once you have acclimatised is

to hire a bike. There are a couple of bike-rental places (¥5 per hour) opposite the Banak Shol hotel.

#### Bus

Buses (¥2) travel frequently between Beijing Donglu and western Lhasa.

#### Taxi

Taxis charge a standard ¥10 to anywhere within the city. Few Chinese drivers know the Tibetan names for even the major sites. Bicycle rickshaws should charge around ¥5 for short trips but require some extended haggling *before* you set off.

## Around Lhasa

### **GANDEN MONASTERY** དགའ་ལྷན་གྲྀལ་

About 40km east of Lhasa, this monastery (Gandan Si; admission ¥45; ☺ dawn-dusk), founded in 1417 by Tsongkhapa, was the first Gelugpa monastery. Still the order's heart and soul, it's the one out-of-Lhasa sight to choose if your time is limited. Two *koras* offer astounding views over the braided Kyi-chu Valley and you'll probably meet more pilgrims here than anywhere else.

Some 400 monks have returned since the monastery was destroyed during the Cultural Revolution and extensive reconstruction has been under way for some time now, alongside a watchful police presence. There is a ¥20 fee per chapel for photography; ¥1500 for video.

Pilgrim buses leave for Ganden Monastery (¥35 return) around 6am from the corner of Yuthok Lam and Duosenge Lu, returning around 1.30pm. Tourists can sometimes take the bus if their guide accompanies them.

### **NAM-TSO** གནམ་མཚོ་

The waters of sacred Nam-tso (Namucuo; adult ¥120) shimmer with an almost transcendent turquoise, framed by strings of prayer flags and snowcapped mountain peaks. Geographically part of the Changtang Plateau, the huge lake is bordered to the north by the Tangula Shan range and to the southeast by 7111m Nyenchen Tanglha peak.

The scenery is breathtaking but so is the altitude: at 4730m it's

1100m higher than Lhasa. Do not rush here but instead count on a week in Lhasa at the minimum to avoid acute mountain sickness (AMS).

Most travellers head for Tashi Do Monastery in the southeastern corner of the lake. There are some fine walks up to the summits of the twin hills, as well as a short but pilgrim-packed *kora*. Half a dozen charmless metal guesthouses (d ¥80-180, q ¥200) offer food and accommodation between April and October; the best options are the Holy Lake Namtso Guesthouse or Sheep Hotel. Bedding is provided but nights here can be very cold. The paucity of toilets and lack of running water are an ecoli outbreak waiting to happen.

Nam-tso is 195km north of Lhasa, a four-hour paved drive over the 5190m Largen-la (*la* means 'pass'). It's much better to visit as an overnight, rather than a day trip. Even if independent travel returns, there is no public transport to the lake.

## **SAMYE MONASTERY** བསམ་ཡས་དགའ་པ་

About 170km southeast of Lhasa, set amongst the sand dunes on the north bank of the Yarlung Tsangpo (Brahmaputra) River is Samye Monastery (Sangye Si; admission ¥40; 🕒 7.30am-6pm), the first monastery in Tibet . Founded in AD 775 by King Trisong Detsen, Samye is famed not just for its pivotal role in the introduction of Buddhism to Tibet, but its unique mandala design: the main hall, or Utse, represents Mt Meru, the centre of the universe, while the outer temples represent the oceans, continents, subcontinents and other features of the Buddhist cosmology.

The Monastery Guesthouse ( Sangye Si Binguan; 📞 0891-783 6666; tr without bathroom ¥120, d with bathroom ¥180), just outside the northeast corner of the monastery walls has the best ensuite doubles in town and clean and fresh triples without a shower. The Friendship Snowland Restaurant (📞 136-1893 2819; meals ¥14-40; 🕒 8am-midnight), outside the east gate, serves good Chinese and Tibetan dishes, banana pancakes and milky tea in a cosy Tibetan atmosphere. Dorm rooms (¥50) with real mattresses (not foam) are available upstairs. There are several other decent accommodation options nearby, including the friendly Dawa Guesthouse ( Dawa Jiating Luguan; 📞 799 5171; dm ¥30).

If you are heading to Everest Base Camp or the Nepal border, a visit here will only add one day to your itinerary. You may have to detour briefly to the nearby town of Tsetang (; Zedang) for your guide to pick up a required travel permit. One good option is to take the paved road to Samye via Tsetang and then return via the remoter north bank road and interesting Dorje Drak Monastery.

## GANDEN TO SAMYE HIKE

One of the most popular treks in Tibet is the four- to five-day hike from Ganden Monastery to Samye Monastery, an 80km wilderness walk connecting two of Tibet's most important monasteries. It begins less than 50km from Lhasa and takes you over the high passes of the Shuga-la (5250m) and Chitu-la (5100m). Along the way are subalpine lakes, dwarf forests and meadows, all at high altitude, so it shouldn't be underestimated.

The situation for getting permits for hiking is the same as for normal travel in Tibet. Some agencies will let you arrange your own ad hoc trek (ie horse or yak hire and food), as long as you take a guide and arrange transport to and from the trailheads; others require a fully supported trek. Wind Horse Adventure (📞 0891-683 3009; [www.windhorsetibet.com](http://www.windhorsetibet.com); Lhasa) is one of the most professional trekking agencies in Lhasa, though it's not the cheapest. For further details of this trek and others in the Everest, Tsurphu and Shalu regions, see the trekking chapter of Lonely Planet's *Tibet* guide.

## The Friendship Highway

The 865km route between Kathmandu and Lhasa, known as the Friendship Hwy, offers without a doubt one of the world's great overland routes. At times sublime, at times unnerving, at times headache-inducing (the highest point is the Gyatso-la pass at 5100m), it's the yellow-brick road of Tibet, leading to some of the most magical destinations on the plateau.

For the sake of simplicity, we've included the side route from Lhasa to Shigatse via Yamdrok-tso and Gyantse in this section. This is the route most travellers take between the two towns and it's by far the more scenic and attraction-packed.

### YAMDROK-TSO ཡམ་རྩ་འབྲུག་མཚོ་

On the direct road between Gyantse and Lhasa, you'll probably catch

your first sight of coiling Yamdrok-tso (Yangzhuo Yongcuo; admission ¥40) from the summit of the Kamba-la pass (4794m). The lake lies several hundred metres below the road, and in clear weather is a fabulous shade of deep turquoise. Far in the northwest distance is the huge massif of Mt Nojin Kangtsang (7191m).

The small town of Nangartse along the way is essentially a lunch stop, with popular buffets (¥35 to ¥40) at the Lhasa and Yak restaurants, and most people overnight in Gyantse. A 20-minute detour or a two-hour walk from Nangartse brings you to Samding Monastery (admission ¥20), a charming place with scenic views of the surrounding area and lake.

From Nangartse to Gyantse you cross the 4960m Karo-la, site of the highest battle in British imperial history during the Younghusband invasion of 1903–04, where glaciers spill off the side peaks beside a popular viewpoint (admission ¥50). Avoid the ridiculous ‘admission fee’ by stopping further below the pass.

## **GYANTSE** རྒྱལ་རྩེ

 0892 / ELEV 3980M

The traditional town of Gyantse (Jiangzi) is famed for its monumental nine-tiered *chörten*, long considered one of Tibet’s architectural wonders. Historically, the town was at the centre of a thriving trans-Himalayan wood and wool trade, and Gyantse carpets were considered the best in Tibet. These days, Gyantse remains one of the less Chinese-influenced settlements, and wandering the backstreets around the monastery affords a rare picture of traditional urban Tibetan life.

### **Sights & Activities**

Gyantse has a great horse-racing and archery festival from 20 to 26 July, featuring traditional Tibetan fun and games like rock-lifting, yak-racing and tug-of-war.

**DON'T MISS**

## **GYANTSE KUMBUM**

The one unmissable sight in Gyantse, the spectacular Gyantse



Kumbum (literally ‘100,000 Images Stupa’) is the largest *chörten* in Tibet. A pilgrim path spirals up the inside of the monumental nine-tiered structure, passing 108 chapels, each filled with masterful original murals. Bring a torch (flashlight) to examine them in detail.

### Pelkhor Chöde Monastery MONASTERY

( Baijusi; admission ¥60; ☺ 9am-7pm, some chapels closed 1-3pm)

The high red-walled compound of this monastery, founded in 1418, once encircled 15 monasteries from three different orders of Tibetan Buddhism. The surviving assembly hall (straight ahead as you enter the compound) is worth a lingering visit for the fine murals, statues and butter-lamp-lit atmosphere. Just beside the assembly hall is the spectacular 15th-century Gyantse Kumbum .

### Gyantse Dzong FORT

(📍 817 2116; admission ¥40; ☺ 8.30am-8.30pm) The Gyantse Dzong towers above Gyantse on a finlike outcrop, and has outstanding views of the Pelkhor Chöde Monastery and surrounding valley. The fort was taken by the British in 1904 during their invasion of Tibet. Renovations in 2012 have spruced up the anti-imperialist displays. Entry is via the gate north of the main intersection, or drive up from the back side.

## Sleeping

Gyantse is a popular stop for 4WD tours and has a decent range of accommodation and food along north–south Yingxiong Nanlu.



### Yeti Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Yadi Huayuan Fandian; 📍 817 5555; [www.yetihoteltibet.com](http://www.yetihoteltibet.com); 11 Weiguo Lu; d incl breakfast ¥520; @📶) The revamped Yeti is an excellent midrange option, with 24-hour hot water, clean carpeted rooms, reliable wi-fi and a pleasant lobby restaurant, serving everything from yak steak to pizza. Discounts of 50% available.

### Jianzang Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Jianzang Fandian; 📍 817 3720; [jianzang\\_hotel@yahoo.com.cn](mailto:jianzang_hotel@yahoo.com.cn); 14 Yingxiong Nanlu; 14 q per bed ¥50, d ¥260-380) Long a popular place with 4WD groups, the smallish but modern rooms come with bathroom and the new blocks offer 24-hour hot water (the quads are less reliable). The 2nd-floor Tibetan-style restaurant is a decent option for

breakfast or a cup of tea. The manager featured in the BBC documentary *A Year in Tibet*.

## Eating

Yak Restaurant INTERNATIONAL \$\$

( Ya Meishi Canting; Yingxiong Nanlu; mains ¥15-35; ☺ 7am-11pm; 📍 ) The Yak offers backpacker treats such as French toast, yak burgers, sizzlers (dishes served on a hot, sizzling plate) and Western breakfasts. The owner prides herself on her French cuisine, so have a go at the yak-liver pâté or yak bourguignon.

Tashi Restaurant NEPALI \$\$

( Zhaxi Canting; Yingxiong Nanlu; mains ¥20-40; ☺ 7.30am-11pm; 📍 ) This Nepali-run place is the best bet for an Indian curry, though it also has the usual range of Western breakfasts, Italian and Chinese food. The decor is Tibetan but the Bollywood movies and Nepali music give it a subcontinental vibe.

Gyantse Kitchen TIBETAN \$\$

( Jiangzi Chufang; Shanghai Zhonglu; dishes ¥15-40; ☺ 7am-midnight; 📍 ) This local favourite serves all the usual suspects but also has a special menu of Tibetan dishes (tip: you can save money by ordering from the Chinese-language menu). It's opposite the huge Gyantse Hotel. The friendly Tibetan owner donates a portion of his income to support poor families in Gyantse.

### Getting There & Away

Most people visit Gyantse as part of a trip to the Nepal border, Mt Everest, or out west to Mt Kailash. Should the permit situation change, there are plenty of minibuses (1½ hours) and taxis (one hour) for the 90km trip between Shigatse and Gyantse.

## ALTITUDE SICKNESS

Altitude sickness (or acute mountain sickness, AMS) is no joke and it is quite common to discover that the nice travellers you met on the way into Lhasa have left the next day, sick as a dog (or worse) from the change in altitude. While medicines such as Diamox can certainly help, it's best to avoid shocking your system, by rising in altitude gradually.

Most people experience only minor symptoms (headaches, breathlessness) when flying in to Lhasa (3600m), as long as they take things easy for their first couple of days. The key is to ascend gradually, preferably less than 300m to 500m per day. Spend up to a week in and around Lhasa before heading to higher elevations like Nam-tso or Western Tibet and don't even think about heading straight to Everest Base Camp (5150m) from Kathmandu (1300m): you need at least two or three nights along the way, in places such as Nyalam (3750m) and Tingri (4250m).

If you are really concerned about AMS, spend some time at higher elevations in western Sichuan or Nepal before travelling to Lhasa.

See [Click here](#) for more information.

## SHIGATSE གཞལ་རྒྱལ་རྩ་རྒྱུ་རྩེ་

📍 0892 / POP 80,000 / ELEV 3850M

Shigatse (Rikaze) is the second-largest city in Tibet, and like Lhasa has two distinct faces: a Tibetan one and a Chinese one. The Tibetan section, running northeast of the high-walled Tashilhunpo Monastery, is filled with whitewashed compounds, dusty alleys and prayer-wheel-spinning pilgrims. The modern Chinese section has all the charm of a shopping mall but is where you'll find most restaurants and hotels and other life-support systems. With a new airport and a train line due to arrive by 2014, Shigatse looks set to grow even further.

### History

As the traditional capital of the central Tsang region, Shigatse was long a rival with Lhasa for political control of the country. The Tsang kings and later governors exercised their power from the imposing heights of the (recently rebuilt) Shigatse Dzong. Since the time of the Mongol sponsorship of the Gelugpa order, Shigatse has been the seat of the Panchen Lamas, the second-highest-ranking lamas in Tibet. Their centre was and remains the Tashilhunpo Monastery.

### Sights

Tashilhunpo Monastery MONASTERY

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

(བཀའ་འགྲུབ་ལྷན་པོ་དགའ་ལྷོ་རྩེ་; Zhashilunbu Si; admission ¥80; 🕒 9am-7pm) The seat of the Panchen Lama and one of Tibetan culture's six great

Gelugpa institutions (along with Drepung, Sera and Ganden monasteries in Lhasa; as well as Kumbum and Labrang in Qinghai and Gansu provinces, respectively). Built in 1447 by a nephew of Tsongkhapa, the monastery is the size of a small village, and lends itself to a half-day or more of exploration and discovery.

In addition to the mesmerising statue of Jampa (Maitreya) Buddha (at nearly 27m high it's the largest gilded statue in the world) in the Temple of the Maitreya, the monastery is famed for the opulent tombs of the fourth and 10th Panchen Lamas. The former saw 85kg of gold and masses of jewels used in its construction.

An hour-long *kora* starts at the southwest corner of the outer wall and heads up for views of the monastery and city. Descend to the pedestrian street or continue along the hill to the Potala-like Shigatse Dzong (fortress). The recently rebuilt structure is currently empty but a museum/gallery is planned.

## Sleeping

Gang Gyan Orchard Hotel HOTEL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Rikaze Gangjian Binguan; 📍 882 0777; 77 Zhufeng Lu; dm ¥50, d with bathroom ¥180) Right next to the traditional-carpet factory and just 100m from Tashilhunpo Monastery, the location here can't be beat. Rooms are large and comfortable, though rooms facing the courtyard are quieter than the noisy road. The shared bathrooms are clean but the hot water supply isn't the most reliable.

Tenzin Hotel HOTEL \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

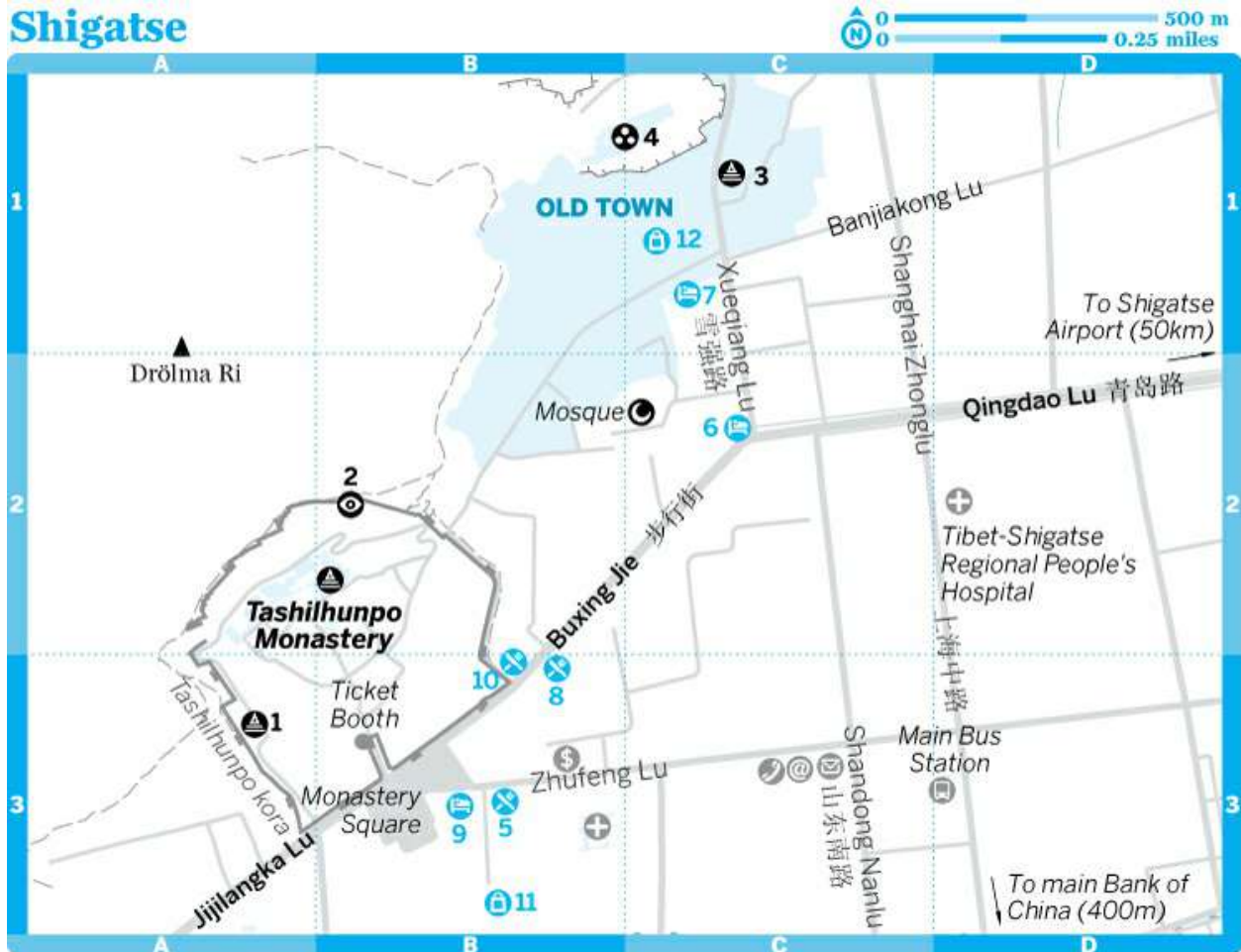
( Danzeng Binguan; 📍 882 2018; 8 Bangjiakong Lu; 8 dm ¥40, d with/without bathroom ¥160/120; 🚿) This place has long been popular with travellers. The courtyard can be a bit noisy but the decent rooms, old-town location and views from the restaurant more than compensate. The shared bathrooms usually have 24-hour hot water. The restaurant is a good place to hang out but only opens from June to August.

Tashi Chotar Hotel HOTEL \$\$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Zhaxi Quta Dajiudian; 📞 883 0111; [www.zxqthotel.com](http://www.zxqthotel.com); 2 Xueqiang Lu; d/tr ¥480/680; 🏨@) New and comfortable four-star place with Tibetan decor, internet cables, nice modern bathrooms and a good location. Single rooms come with a computer. Rates include breakfast.

## Shigatse



### Shigatse

#### 📍 Top Sights

[Tashilhunpo Monastery](#) B2

#### 📍 Sights

1 Chörten A3

2 Festival Thangka Wall B2

3 Mani Lhakhang C1

4 Shigatse Dzong C1

#### 🏨 Sleeping

5 [Gang Gyan Orchard Hotel](#) B3

6 [Tashi Chotar Hotel](#) C2

7 [Tenzin Hotel](#) C1

 Eating

8 [Songtsen Tibetan Restaurant](#) B3

9 [Third Eye Restaurant](#) B3

10 [Tibet Family Restaurant](#) B3

 Shopping

11 [Tibet Gang Gyen Carpet Factory](#) B3

12 [Tibetan Market](#) C1

## Eating



Tibet Family Restaurant TIBETAN \$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Fengsheng Canting; Phuntsho Serzikhang; dishes ¥8-20; ☺ 8am-10pm; 📍 ) This teahouse-style Tibetan place is our favourite for its excellent food, nice outdoor seating and friendly clientele of locals. It also boasts the perfect people-watching location, right at the end of the monastery *kora*. The food runs from simple and fresh vegetable dishes to more adventurous yak-meat dishes, all great value.

Songtsen Tibetan Restaurant INTERNATIONAL \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Songzan Xizang Canting; Buxing Jie; dishes ¥20-40; ☺ 8am-10pm; 📍 ) This popular Western-style place does hearty breakfasts. It has a great location on the pedestrian-only street and the Indian, Nepalese, Tibetan or Western fare is good.

Third Eye Restaurant NEPALI \$\$

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xuelian Canting; Zhufeng Lu; dishes ¥10-30; ☺ 9am-10pm; 📍 ) One of three solid Nepali-run restaurants in town, serving a huge range of decent Western dishes and Indian curries.

## Shopping

The Tibetan market [Offline map](#) [Google map](#) in front of the Tenzin Hotel is a good place to pick up souvenirs such as prayer wheels, rosaries and *thangkas*. There are also dozens of souvenir and craft shops along the pedestrian-only street (Buxing Jie). Bargain hard.

## Tibet Gang Gyen Carpet Factory CARPETS

[Offline map](#) [Google map](#)

( Xizang Gangjian Ditan Chang; [www.tibetgang-gyencarpet.com](http://www.tibetgang-gyencarpet.com); 9 Zhufeng Lu; ☺ 9am-1pm & 3-7pm Mon-Sat) This Tibetan– French joint venture hires and trains impoverished women to weave high-quality 100% Tibetan wool carpets. You can watch carpets being made on the premises and the factory will ship internationally.



### Information

The cheapest places to make calls are the many private telephone booths around town.

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; Shanghai Zhonglu; ☺ 9am-6pm Mon-Sat, 10am-4pm Sun) Changes travellers cheques and cash; with a 24-hour ATM. A more convenient branch on Zhufeng Lu changes cash and has an ATM.

**China Post** ( Zhongguo Youzheng; cnr Shandong Lu & Zhufeng Lu; ☺ 9am-6.30pm)

**Da M a y i Internet Cafe** ( Da Mayi Wangba; Zhufeng Lu; per hr ¥5; ☺ 24hr) Upper floor, next to China Telecom.

**Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju; Qingdao Lu; ☺ 9.30am-12.30pm & 3.30-6.30pm Mon-Fri, 10.30am-1.30pm Sat & Sun) Group travellers headed to western Tibet may have to wait for their guide to pick up or endorse a travel permit here. Try to avoid lunchtime, weekends or holidays.



### Getting There & Around

Foreigners are currently not allowed to take any of the plentiful transport to Lhasa (five hours), Gyantse (1½ hours), Saga, Sakya, Lhatse and various other points along the Friendship Hwy.

Shigatse's new airport, 50km east of the city, started flights in 2012 with a twice-weekly service to Chengdu (¥1910). The train line extension from Lhasa is due to arrive in 2014.

A taxi anywhere in Shigatse costs ¥10.

**SAKYA** སྐ་སྐ་

☎ 0892 / ELEV 4280M

In the 13th century, the monastic town of Sakya (Sajia) emerged as an

important centre of scholarship. Less than a century later the Sakya lamas, with Mongol military support, became the short-lived rulers of all Tibet. Still today the local colouring of buildings – ash grey with red and white vertical stripes – symbolises both the Rigsum Gonpo (the trinity of Bodhisattvas) and Sakya authority. For travellers the magnificent, brooding monastery, the visiting bands of pilgrims and the surrounding traditional village make Sakya a real highlight. It's one of our favourites and well worth an overnight stay.

## Sights

### Sakya Monastery MONASTERY

(admission ¥45; 🕒 9am-6pm) The main Sakya Monastery, built in 1268, is a massive, fortress-like compound, with high defensive walls. Inside, the dimly lit assembly hall exudes a sanctity few others can rival, including one of Tibet's great libraries (extra ¥10). The northern section of the monastery, on the other side of the Trum-chu (Trum River), has been mostly reduced to picturesque ruins, though restoration work is ongoing and it's worth exploring the *kora* path.

## Sleeping & Eating

### Manasarovar Sakya Hotel HOTEL \$\$

(Shenhu Sajia Binguan; 📞 824 2222; Gesang Zhonglu; dm/d/tr ¥30/280/380) There is a mix of rooms in the best hotel in town; the ones that overlook the road are probably best. The thick walls keep the place cold and dark but rooms are comfortable and there's hot water from 7pm to 10pm. The six-bed dorm rooms are OK; one includes a bathroom. There are superb views from the hotel's rooftop and good Western dishes in the rather charmless restaurant. Accommodation discounts of 20% to 30%.

### Sakya Lowa Family Hotel GUESTHOUSE \$

(Sajia Zhen Luwa Jiating Luguan; 📞 824 2156; 35 Baogang Beilu; per person ¥50-60) The Lowa is a cosy, family-run guesthouse with basic but clean rooms set around a central courtyard. Walls are brightly painted and accented with traditional motifs, but there are no showers and only shared pit toilets. It's around the corner from the Manasarovar Sakya Hotel, on the road to the northern monastery.



## Sakya Monastery Restaurant TIBETAN \$

( Saja Si Canting; dishes ¥7-15; ☺ 8am-9pm) This atmospheric monastery restaurant is always full of pilgrims chowing down on excellent *momos* and steaming glasses of *cha ngamo*.

## TIBET TRAVEL RESTRICTIONS

Troubled Tibet is essentially part of China, yet in many ways separate from it. Travel regulations here are much more restrictive than the rest of the nation; tourists currently need to arrange a guided tour in order to visit any place in the Tibetan Autonomous Region (TAR).

Authorities would say this is for tourists' protection, though it has more to do with foreigners' tendency to sympathise with the Tibetan cause and bear witness to political tensions. If you want to explore Tibetan areas independently by foot or public transport, you are currently better off heading to the Tibetan areas of Sichuan and Qinghai.

Travel regulations are in constant flux in Tibet and travel infrastructure is changing at head-spinning speed. Be sure to check current regulations with travel companies and check the designated Tibet branch of the Lonely Planet Thorn Tree (<http://thorntreelonlyplanet.com>). Tibet can completely close to foreigners without warning, as it did for several months in 2012.

At the time of research:

- » Foreign travellers need a Tibet Tourism Bureau (TTB) permit to get into Tibet and an Alien Travel Permit (and other permits) to travel outside Lhasa.
- » To get these permits you need to prebook an itinerary, a guide for your entire stay and transport for outside Lhasa with an agency, before travelling to Tibet.
- » In 2012 new requirements required groups to be a minimum of five people, all of the same nationality, making it that bit more difficult for individual travellers to cobble together a group. Tibetan travel agencies can sometimes help travellers get around these restrictions. Lonely Planet's Thorn Tree has a dedicated page to finding travel companions. These restrictions could well relax in 2013.
- » To get on a plane or train to Lhasa you generally need to show your TTB permit. For the plane you need the original, so your agency will courier that to you at an address in China (normally a hostel). A printout/copy is currently acceptable for the train.
- » You don't need to book transport for your time in Lhasa but you do need to visit the main monasteries with a guide.
- » For travel outside Lhasa you will need to prearrange transport hire (normally a 4WD). You cannot travel outside Lhasa independently and cannot take public transport.
- » Most agencies charge around ¥600 for permits, ¥250 per day for a guide and anywhere from US\$80 to US\$150 per day for 4WD hire (not per person). Many agencies let you book your own accommodation.

» Agencies can only apply for permits 15 days before departure, so there is invariably a last-minute rush to get permits posted to you in time. This obviously complicates booking flight and train tickets; we recommend booking a fully refundable ticket if possible.

» Travel from Nepal to Tibet brings its own complications, since foreigners can only travel on a group visa (a separate piece of paper), which is only valid from two to three weeks and is almost impossible to extend. If you already have a Chinese visa in your passport it will be cancelled. Group visas in Kathmandu cost US\$58 and take 10 days, or you can pay US\$118 for express service. US citizens pay a surcharge.

The companies listed here can arrange tours and permits for Tibet and are used to dealing with individual travellers. See [www.tibetgreenmap.com](http://www.tibetgreenmap.com) for other responsible Tibetan tour operators.

### Lhasa

» Namchen Tours (☎ 634 5009; [www.tibetnamchen.com](http://www.tibetnamchen.com)) Based at Barkhor Namchen House in Lhasa's old town. Contact Doko.

» Shigatse Travels (☎ 633 0489; [www.shigatsetravels.com](http://www.shigatsetravels.com); Yak Hotel, 100 Beijing Donglu) Higher-end tours.

» Spinn Cafe (☎ 136 5952 3997; [www.cafespinn.com](http://www.cafespinn.com); 135 Beijing Donglu) Clear and transparent; contact Kong.

» Tibet Highland Tours (☎ 691 2080, 189 0899 0100; [www.tibethighlandtours.com](http://www.tibethighlandtours.com); tibetanintibet@yahoo.cn; Zangyiyuan Lu) Contact Tenzin.

### Other Cities in China

» Leo Hostel (☎ 10-8660 8923; [www.leohostel.com](http://www.leohostel.com); 52 Dazhalan Xijie, Qianmen, Beijing) See [Click here](#).

» Mix Hostel (☎ 028-8322 2271; [www.mixhostel.com/tibet.htm](http://www.mixhostel.com/tibet.htm); 23 Renjiawan, Xinghui Xilu, Chengdu) See [Click here](#).

» Hello Chengdu International Youth Hostel (☎ 8196 7573, 8335 5322; [www.gogosc.com](http://www.gogosc.com)) Popular agency and hostel ([Click here](#)) in Chengdu.

» Snow Lion Tours (☎ 971-816 3350, 134 3932 9243; [www.snowliontours.com](http://www.snowliontours.com); Office 1212, Chenglin Mansion, 7 Dongdajie Lu, Xining) Contact Wangden Tsering.

» Tibetan Connections (☎ 135 1973 7734; [www.tibetanconnections.com](http://www.tibetanconnections.com); 16th fl, Bldg No 5, International Village Apartments, 2-32 Jiancai Xiang, Xining) Recommended.

» Wind Horse Adventure Tours (☎ 971-636 3008; [www.windhorseadventuretours.com](http://www.windhorseadventuretours.com); Qinghai International Business Centre, 12th fl, 27 Kunlun Zhonglu, Xining) Contact Tashi Phuntsok. Linked to Tibetan Connections.

For overland trips from Yunnan, consult companies such as Khampa Caravan ([www.khampacaravan.com](http://www.khampacaravan.com)), [Click here](#), and Haiwei Trails ([www.haiweitrails.com](http://www.haiweitrails.com)), [Click here](#), in Zhongdian, and China Minority Travel ([www.china-travel.nl](http://www.china-travel.nl)) in Dali, [Click here](#).

See also our Itineraries chapter for a permit-free alternative way to see Tibetan lands in Qinghai and Sichuan.



### Getting There & Away

Sakya is 25km off the Friendship Hwy. Most people stay overnight at Sakya en route to the Everest region. There is one daily minibus between Shigatse and Sakya.

## RONGPHU MONASTERY & EVEREST BASE CAMP རོངཔུ་མངའ་གྲོང་ཁང་། ཇོ་མོ་གླང་མ་རྩེ་གྲོང་ཁང་།

པོ་ཆུ་དགའ་པ་ ཇོ་མོ་གླང་མ་རྩེ་གྲོང་ཁང་།

Before heading to the Nepal border, or as part of a five-day excursion from Lhasa, many travellers make the diversion to iconic Everest Base Camp (EBC; 5150m). The clear vistas (if you are lucky) up a glacial valley to the sheer North Face are far superior to anything you'll see in Nepal. Everest is known locally as Chomolungma (sometimes spelt Qomolangma), or as Zhufeng in Chinese. Because EBC is a prime target for political protests, the Chinese army maintains a strong presence up here.

Vehicles can drive on a gravel road to Rongphu Monastery (admission ¥25), at 5000m reputedly the highest in the world, and then proceed just a few kilometres more to a ramshackle collection of nomad tents set near a China Post kiosk (the highest post office in the world). From here it's a one-hour walk (recommended if you aren't suffering from the altitude) or shuttle-bus ride (¥25) up a winding dirt road to EBC. Tourists are not allowed to visit the expedition tents of actual base camp.

Food and lodging are pretty limited up here (though the mobile phone reception is great!). The friendly Monastery Guesthouse (dm ¥40, tw without bathroom ¥160-200) at Rongphu has simple rooms but a cosy restaurant with Everest views. The ugly two-star hotel nearby is laughably overpriced. Another option is to stay in one of the nomad tents (per person ¥60) clustered around 5km before EBC. The tents are surprisingly warm and comfortable (those yak-dung stoves put out a fantastic amount of heat!) but even so, a sleeping bag is an excellent idea. Simple meals (¥20 to ¥25) and even canned beer are available but the shared toilets will haunt you. Keep your belongings locked in your vehicle.

EBC is about 90km off the Friendship Hwy on a dirt road over the 5050m Pang-la. Before you set off you'll need to stop in Baber ( Baiba

or New Tingri; 4250m) – or Old Tingri if coming from Nepal – to pay the Qomolangma National Park entrance fee of ¥400 per vehicle, plus ¥180 per passenger. Clarify with your agency whether you are expected to pay for both your vehicle and your guide (¥180).

If you need to spend the night in Baber, the Kangjong/Snowland Hotel ( Xueyu Binguan; 📞 136 3892 5738; dm ¥40, d with bathroom ¥180-200; @) is one of several good options, with modern rooms. The attached Tibetan-style restaurant (dishes ¥25-40) serves tasty hot meals and is a cosy place to kick back with a thermos of sweet tea. The hotel is in the middle of town at the crossroads to Shegar.

If you are headed from Everest to the Nepal border, note that the dirt road to Tingri via Zombuk village and the Lamna-la offers a handy shortcut.

## **TINGRI TO ZHANGMU** དང་རྩ་རྒྱུ་ལྷོ་ལྷོ་

The huddle of mudbrick buildings that comprises the old village of Tingri (Dingri; 4250m) now spreads about a kilometre down the Friendship Hwy. The views of the towering Himalayan peaks of Mt Everest (8848m) and Cho Oyu (8153m) across the sweeping plain make up for the truckstop feel.

Ruins on the hill overlooking Tingri are all that remain of the Tingri Dzong. This fort was destroyed in a late-18th-century Nepalese invasion. Many more ruins on the plains between Shegar and Nyalam shared the same history.

There are several Tibetan guesthouses and restaurants on the main highway, including the Tingri Snowland Hotel ( Dingri Xueyu Fandian; 📞 152 0802 7313; dm/d/tr ¥30/80/105) in the far west of the strip, which has basic but clean rooms and simple common hot showers (¥10). Also good is the Hehu Binguan ( 📞 136 4892 2335; dm ¥30-50, d with bathroom ¥260), a new place in the centre with good mattresses in the pricier dorms and some en suite rooms with carpet and toilet (but no hot water).

From Tingri down to Zhangmu on the Nepal border is an easy half-day's drive of just under 200km. If you are coming the other way you should break the trip into two days to aid acclimatisation. The highest point along the paved road is the Tong-la pass (4950m), 95km from

Tingri, from where you can see a horizon of 8000m Himalayan peaks.

The one-street town of Nyalam (Nielamu) is about 30km from the Nepal border and a usual overnight spot for 4WD trips from Nepal. Like all other hotels in town, the new Snowlands Hotel ( Xueyu Binguan; 📞 0892-827 2777; r without bathroom ¥280) is well overpriced but its rooms are the best in town, with shared hot-water bathrooms down the hall. Rates include breakfast. It can get booked out with Indian groups returning from Kailash.

After Nyalam, the road drops like a stone into a lush, deep forested gorge (trees!) lined with spectacular waterfalls, many of which are hundreds of metres high. You can feel the air getting thicker as you descend towards the subcontinent.

## ZHANGMU རྒྱལ་མཚོ་

📞 0892 / ELEV 2250M

The frenetic border town of Zhangmu (Khasa in Nepalese, Dram in Tibetan) hangs from the forested slopes above the tortuous final kilometres of the Friendship Hwy. The smells of curry and incense float in the air, and the babbling sound of fast-flowing streams cuts through the piercing squeals of truck brakes. After time on the barren high plateau, it's either a feast for the senses, or an unwelcome assault on the meditative mood you've been cultivating for the past weeks.

## 🛏 Sleeping & Eating

Caiyuan Binguan HOTEL \$\$

( 📞 874 5888; d ¥360; 🌿 ) Midrange Land Cruiser groups like this modern, new place for its clean, good quality rooms, en suite bathrooms and decent breakfasts, though it's somewhat overpriced. There's hot water in the evenings.

Lucien Sunny Youth Hostel HOSTEL \$

( Lusheng Yangguang Qingnian Lushe; 📞 874 2299; 49 Yingbin Lu; dm ¥35-45, d ¥150-170) The best value in town is this friendly Chinese youth hostel. The private rooms are clean and bright, with homey duvets and pebble-floor showers, though the dim dorms are not so good, with a bathroom divided only by a curtain.

## Sherpa Hotel HOTEL \$\$

( Xia'erba Jiudian; 📍 874 2098; d with/without bathroom ¥230/120)

The pink painted rooms are clean (if a little small) at this friendly hotel and hot water is available most of the time. The back rooms that face the valley are quietest and afford spectacular views. The Nepali curries in the restaurant are some of the best in town (dishes ¥15 to ¥40).



Information

**Bank of China** ( Zhongguo Yinhang; 🕒 9.30am-1pm & 3.30-6pm Mon-Fri, 10.30am-3pm Sat & Sun) Changes cash and travellers cheques into yuan, and also yuan into US dollars, euros or UK pounds. It doesn't deal in Nepalese rupees; for those go to the moneychangers that operate openly around town.

## CHINA'S REMOTEST ROAD

Highway 219, the 1100km-long road between Ngari (Ali) in western Tibet and Karghilik (Yecheng) in Xinjiang, crosses probably the world's remotest mountain terrain. The road is so remote that back in the late 1950s it took India an entire year to realise that China had built a road across what it considered its own territory (!), leading to a 1962 war between the two giants. The good news for travellers is that paving of the epic road was finally completed in 2012, making for a much smoother ride, including a potentially epic bike route.

Consider the route a three-day drive, with overnight stops in guesthouses at Domar, Sanshili Yingfang and Yecheng. Highlights of the trip include the monastery at old Rutok, the turquoise waters of Pangong-tso stretching into Ladakh, the sheer emptiness of Aksai-Chin and rare views of the jagged Kunlun Mountains. All the normal Tibet travel restrictions apply, so you need to organise Land Cruiser, guide and permits through an agency in Lhasa (or Kashgar). We advise you to start from Tibet, as the altitude gain from Karghilik (1230m) is particularly dangerous unless you are well acclimatised.

## Western Tibet

Tibet's far wild west, known in Tibetan as Ngari, has few permanent settlers, but is nevertheless a lodestone to a billion pilgrims from three major religions (Buddhism, Hinduism and Jainism). They are drawn to the twin spiritual power places of Mt Kailash and Lake Manasarovar,

two of the most legendary and far-flung destinations in the world.

Ngari is a blunt, expansive realm of salt lakes, Martian-style deserts, grassy steppes and snowcapped mountains. It's a mesmerising landscape, but also intensely remote: a few tents and herds of yaks may be all the signs of human existence one comes across in half a day's drive. The recent paving of the southern road to Kailash has made the week-long drive from Lhasa a lot more comfortable and it's now even possible to fly back from Ali.

Warm clothes are essential on any trip to the region, even in summer, and a sleeping bag is recommended. The three-day *kora* around Mt Kailash can be done without a tent but bringing one will give you added flexibility and comfort.

Accommodation along the way ranges from basic guesthouses to chilly hotel rooms. Few have attached bathrooms but most towns have at least one public bathhouse. Most towns now have well-stocked supermarkets, internet cafes and Chinese restaurants, though it's still worth bringing along a few treats, such as peanuts, chocolate bars and dehydrated food from home.

The only places to change money in Ngari are banks in Ali, and it's much easier to change US dollars as cash rather than travellers cheques. It's best just to bring what you expect to spend in renminbi.

## **When to Go**

May, June and from mid-September to early October are probably the best times for travel in the region. The summer months of July and August see the bulk of the rain, though it's still very limited. The Drölma-la pass on the Mt Kailash *kora* is usually blocked with snow from late October or early November until early April. The festival of Saga Dawa during May or June brings hundreds of pilgrims and tourists to the mountain.

## **Permits**

You'll need a fistful of permits to visit Ngari: a TTB permit, Alien Travel Permit, military permit, foreign affairs permit etc. The travel agency that organises your 4WD trip will need around two weeks to arrange these.



### Getting There & Away

Four-wheel-drive trips to Mt Kailash require a minimum 14 days. Add on three days to explore the Guge Kingdom at Tsaparang. One good option is to exit at Zhangmu, detouring from Saga to the Friendship Hwy via the lake of Peiku-tso. For details of the remoter and longer return route via the northern highway, see Lonely Planet's *Tibet* guide.

## BORDER CROSSING: GETTING TO NEPAL

After a passport check at Zhangmu, your 4WD will take you 8km down switchbacks to Chinese immigration (☺ 10am-5pm, sometimes closed 1.30-3.30pm), next to the Friendship Bridge and Nepal border post at Kodari. If for some reason you don't have transport, orange and blue taxis run this stretch for ¥10 per person.

At Nepali immigration (☺ 8.30am-4pm) in Kodari, you can get a visa for the same price as in Lhasa (US\$25/40/100 for a 15-/30-/90-day visa, or the equivalent in rupees). If you don't have a passport photo you'll be charged an extra US\$5. Nepal is 2¼ hours behind Chinese time.

There are four daily buses to Kathmandu (Rs 230 to Rs 350, 4½ hours) – the last bus at 1.30pm is express – or take a bus to Barabise (Rs 75 to Rs 125, three hours, last bus 5pm) and change. The easier option is to share a private vehicle with other travellers (Rs 3000 per car, or Rs 800 per seat; four to five hours). You'll struggle to find a driver after 5pm.

For further information, head to [shop.lonelyplanet.com](http://shop.lonelyplanet.com) to purchase a downloadable PDF of the Kathmandu chapter from Lonely Planet's *Nepal* guide.

## LHATSE TO KAILASH

From Lhasa most travellers take the faster, direct southern route to Ngari. It's a two- or three-day trip along the paved Friendship Hwy to the town of Lhatse (; Lazi), where there are several hotels, including the friendly Lhatse Tibetan Farmers Hotel ( Lazi Nongmiñ Luguan; ☎ 832 2333; dm ¥30, d with bathroom ¥120-150), which features new ensuite rooms out back and a cosy Tibet-style restaurant.

Turning off the Friendship Hwy just after Lhatse, Hwy 219 continues on a mostly paved road to the hamlet of Raga, near where the lesser-travelled northern route branches north. There are simple guesthouses (dm ¥30) in Raga but most groups continue 60km west



to the larger military town of Saga (; Saga), which has internet cafes and hot public showers. The Saga Binguan ( 📞 0892-820 2888; d with bathroom ¥360-420; 🌐📧) is at the town crossroads and has hot showers and Western bathrooms. Tibetan guesthouses such as the cosy Bo Tie The Clan Hotel (Bodo Dronkhang; Bozha Jiazu Luguan; dm per bed ¥30) are a 10-minute walk (800m) north of the centre.

It's possible to reach Darchen in one long day (490km) from Saga, though many groups split the scenic ride into two days. This also helps with the acclimatisation process. After Lhatse the altitude never drops below 4000m.

In grubby Paryang (; Payang), the Shishapangma Hotel ( Xixiabangma Binguan; dm/d per bed ¥40/100) is popular with Indian pilgrims. The central Tashi Hotel ( Zhaxi Luguan; dm ¥30) is a smaller, simpler Tibetan-style place. From Paryang to Darchen is 245km.

## **MT KAILASH** ཀངས་རི་ལྷོ་པ་ལྷོ་ཆུ་

Known in Tibetan as Kang Rinpoche, or 'Precious Jewel of Snow', the hulking pyramidal-shaped Mt Kailash (Gang Renbozhai Feng; 6714m) seldom needs to be pointed out to travellers: it just dominates the landscape. For Buddhists, Kailash is the abode of Demchok, a wrathful manifestation of Sakyamuni. For Hindus it is the domain of Shiva, the Destroyer and Transformer.

It's not hard to see why Kailash became associated long ago with the myth of a great mountain. More surprising is that this mountain was said to be the source of the four major rivers of Asia: and most astonishing that the legends are more or less true. The drainage system around Kailash and Lake Manasarovar is in fact the source of the Karnali (a major tributary of the Ganges), the Brahmaputra, Indus and Sutlej Rivers. A visit to Kailash puts you squarely in one of the geographical and spiritual centres of the world.

### **Activities**

Many pilgrims are often happy enough just to gaze at the southern face of Kailash (scarred in such a way that it resembles a swastika – a Buddhist and Hindu symbol of spiritual strength). But for Tibetans and most foreign travellers the purpose of coming here is to complete a *kora* around the mountain.

The *kora* begins in grubby Darchen (; Ta'erqin; 4560m), and takes (on average) three days to complete (though most Tibetans do it in one 15-hour day). The *kora* is not a climb to the top, but a walk around the central peak. The highest point is the 5630m Drölma-la Pass, though no point is below 4600m.

The first day is a 20km walk (six to seven hours) from Darchen to Dira-puk Monastery. The ascent is minimal, which allows you to take your time and enjoy the otherworldly landscape of the Lha-chu river valley. The second day is the hardest, as it involves the ascent to the Drölma-la pass, the steep descent down the pass to the Lham-chu Khir river valley, and hike to the Zutul-puk Monastery. Expect to take eight hours to complete this 18km stretch. The final day is a simple 14km (three hours) walk back to Darchen. Fit walkers can cover the *kora* in two days if they wish.

Any reasonably fit and acclimatised person should be able to complete the three-day walk, but come prepared with warm and waterproof clothing and equipment. Local guides and porters are available in Darchen for ¥120 a day. Larger groups often hire yaks to carry their supplies.

Travellers must normally register with the Public Security Bureau (PSB; Gong'anju) in Darchen. There is a ¥200 joint Kailash and Manasarovar entry fee.

WORTH A TRIP

## THE LOST KINGDOM OF GUGE

One worthwhile detour from Darchen is to the surreal ruins of the Guge Kingdom at Tsaparang (admission ¥200). The ruins, which seem to grow like a honeycomb out of the barren hills, were once the centre of one of Tibet's most prosperous kingdoms. The tunnels and caves are great fun to explore and the chapels offer superb examples of Kashmiri-influenced mural art. A trip here will add three days to your itinerary, but is worth it to see some outstanding scenery and one of Asia's little-known wonders.

From Darchen it's a day's drive to Zanda (; Zhada), the nearest town to Tsaparang (18km away), and home to spectacular Thöling Monastery.

## Sleeping & Eating

At the end of each day's walk there is accommodation (¥40 to ¥60) at the local monasteries or in a nearby guesthouse, though it's advisable to carry a tent if walking during July and August or the popular Saga Dawa festival. Instant noodles, tea and beer are available at nomad tents along the way, but bring hot drinks and snacks with you.

Most travellers spend a night in Darchen before the *kora*. Guesthouses offer basic accommodation (no running water, outdoor pit toilets). There are a couple of supermarkets and a public shower; internet might be available by the time you read this.

Pilgrim Hotel ( Chaosheng Binguan; dm ¥60) donates part of its profits to local monasteries; and Lhasa Holyland Guesthouse ( Lasa Shengdi Kangsang Luguang; ☎ 139-8907 0818; d ¥80-120) houses the local PSB office.

Darchen Aid the Poor Programme Hotel ( Ta'erqing Limin Fupin Binguan; mains ¥10-25) is a cosy Tibetan-style restaurant and our favourite place to eat; it also has decent rooms.

## **LAKE MANASAROVAR** མཚོ་མཁའ་ཕམ་ཏ

After their *kora*, most travellers head to Lake Manasarovar (Mapang Xiongcuo) or Mapham Yum-tso (Victorious Lake) to rest and gaze at the sapphire-blue waters and perfect snowcapped mountain backdrop. The lake is the most venerated in Tibet, and has its own five-day *kora*, accessible by jeep track.

Picturesque Chiu village, sight of the Chiu Monastery, overlooks the northwestern shore of the lake, and here you'll find a half-dozen identical friendly guesthouses (dm ¥50), some right down at the water's edge. Basic meals are available.

# Understand China



[CHINA TODAY](#)

[HISTORY](#)

[PEOPLE OF CHINA](#)

[RELIGION & BELIEFS](#)

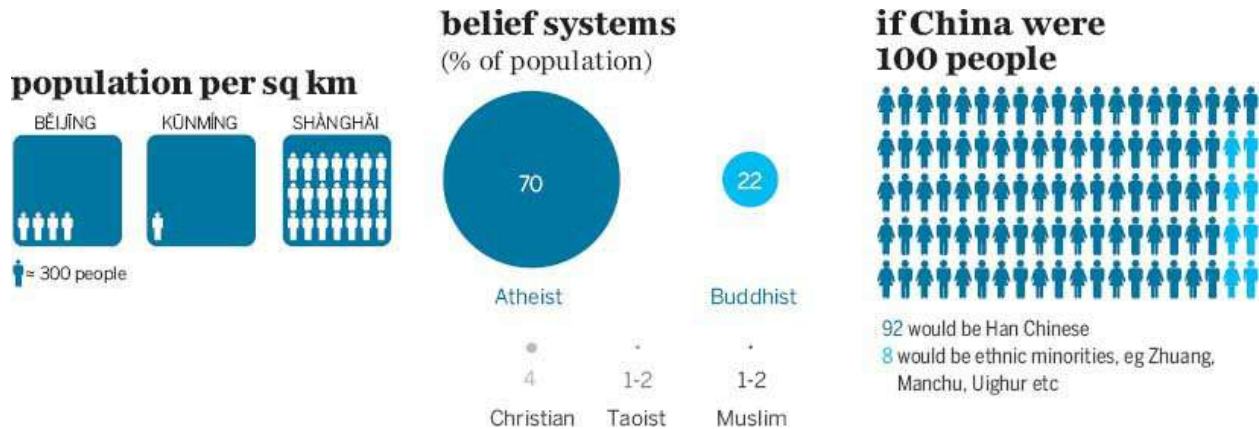
[CHINESE CUISINE](#)

[ARTS & ARCHITECTURE](#)

[CHINA'S LANDSCAPES](#)

[MARTIAL ARTS OF CHINA](#)

# China Today



## China Superpower?

For decades, the world has been hypnotised by China’s meteoric rise. Gazing into the statistics, it’s all too easy to see an emergent superpower, a picture made more compelling by a West crippled through austerity measures, high unemployment and rescue packages. Books such as *When China Rules the World* by Martin Jacques triumphantly declare the establishment of a new world order. As if to prove the point, China leaped past Japan to become the world’s second largest economy in 2011 with a purchasing power parity (PPP) GDP topping a whopping US\$11.4 trillion.

- » » Population: 1.34 billion
- » » GDP (PPP): \$11.44 trillion
- » » GDP per capita: \$8500
- » » Labour force: 795.5 million
- » » Unemployment: 6.5%
- » » Highest point: Mt Everest (8848m)
- » » Annual alcohol consumption (per person): 5.2L

China is hoovering up majority stakes in household Western firms, diligently extracting resources in Africa and aiming at the moon in an ambitious space programme. By the end of 2012, China was expected to have more high-speed rail lines than the rest of the world combined. In 2010, China overtook the US as the world’s largest energy consumer.

Behind the hype, however, China

still sees itself as a developing nation. China has colossal latent power by virtue of its size and population, but these dimensions hamper equal growth and generate complications. Development remains unwieldy and piecemeal: the Pudong skyline is striking, but China's per capita GDP puts it roughly on a level with East Timor, one of Asia's poorest nations.

Sabre rattlers (and neighbouring countries) see a rising military - superpower. The rapidly growing Chinese military budget topped US\$100 billion in 2012, but it remains dwarfed by the colossal US\$740 billion defence spending of the US. In fact, China's domestic security budget (US\$111 billion) exceeds investment in defence, suggesting an obsession with internal, rather than external, threats.

## Challenges

The sky is the limit for China, say many pundits. Naysayers see the start of a hangover as exports contract, overcapacity increases and the property market slides. Less partisan economists discern a levelling out and an adjustment to lower – but still vigorous compared to the West – growth rates. Whatever the scenario, China faces manifold challenges.

Inequality in China is among the most severe on the planet. Factoring in undisclosed income the wealthiest 10% of Chinese may earn 65 times that of the poorest 10%, according to *Bloomberg Businessweek*.

The urban middle class is rapidly expanding, but most of the wealth belongs to a narrow band of plutocrats. The wealth of incoming President Xi Jinping's family reportedly runs into hundreds of millions of US dollars, while outgoing Wen Jiabao's family amassed an astonishing US\$2.7 billion, according to a bombshell report by the *New York Times*. The relatives of disgraced Chongqing party chief Bo Xilai – expelled from the Communist Party and from China's top legislature amid allegations of corruption in 2012 – amassed riches exceeding US\$160 million. As wages in China rise, the days of infinite cheap labour may also be ending. More money in workers' pockets stimulates domestic demand, however, which China must do to break its dependence on exports and develop a more sustainable economic

model. Encouraging the Chinese to spend more is tricky, though, as income earners save much of their earnings to compensate for insufficient social-security safety nets.

The Hu Jintao era ended in 2012, and China prepared for a change in leadership with Xi Jinping set to succeed Hu as party secretary and president. Some see Xi Jinping as a potential reformer who will grapple with China's manifest challenges; others sense a more cautious man and a tenure that could see vested interests protected and the status quo upheld.

## **Dissent & Nationalism**

The Hu Jintao era took pains to stress social 'harmony', as part of China's formula of a 'peaceful rise'. It is perhaps not surprising that this policy coincided with a period of great social stress.

In its quest for harmony, Beijing has become less tolerant of dissent. Lawyers, human-rights advocates and democracy activists who attempt to organise resistance to Beijing's authority routinely face charges of endangering national security. Beijing reacted with venom to Liu Xiaobo's Nobel Peace Prize in 2010 after he had been sentenced to 11 years in prison for his democratic agenda in Charter 08, a manifesto initially signed by hundreds of Chinese intellectuals and human-rights activists calling for greater political democratic reforms.

Outspoken artist Ai Weiwei has become another sharp thorn in the side of the government. Ai was arrested in 2011 and charged with tax evasion, a charge the artist claims is politically motivated and has, to date, unsuccessfully appealed against.

To shore up support and divert criticism abroad, the Communist Party has long fostered nationalism, which can explode with sudden ferocity. The violent riots over the disputed Diaoyu Islands in 2012 revealed the depth of anti-Japanese sentiment in China, feelings that can be difficult to control once stirred.

China's resurgence is returning it to the prominence it enjoyed for much of its history. It is clear that China considers its moment has arrived, and that it must oppose attempts – whether by the West or Japan – to prevent it taking centre stage in the region.

---

## Top Books

**Dreaming in Chinese** (Deborah Fallows) Insightful observations of living among Chinese people and learning Mandarin in China.

**The Rape of Nanking** (Iris Chang) Puts into perspective China's deep-rooted ambivalence towards its island neighbour, Japan.

**Diary of a Madman & Other Stories** (Lu Xun) Astonishing tales from the father of modern Chinese fiction.

---

## Top Films

**Still Life** (Jia Zhangke; 2005) Bleak and hauntingly beautiful portrayal of a family devastated by the construction of the Three Gorges Dam.

**Raise the Red Lantern** (Zhang Yimou; 1991) The exquisitely fashioned tragedy from the sumptuous palette of the Fifth Generation.

**In the Mood for Love** (Wong Kar-Wai; 2000) Seductive, stylishly costumed and slow burning Hong Kong romance.

---

## Dos & Don'ts

» Never, ever fight to settle the bill if your Chinese host is determined to pay.

» Take off your shoes when visiting a Chinese person's home, or offer to.

» Never give a clock as a gift as it has morbid overtones.

---

## Myths

» The Chinese are all hard-working: for sure, but don't expect service with a smile at the train station ticket office.

» The Chinese are communists: some are, more aren't.

» You can see the Great Wall from space: motorways would be more visible as they're far wider.

» Fortune cookies are Chinese: originally Japanese, then popularised in the US, you won't find them in China.



# History

---

The epic sweep of China's history paints a perhaps deceptive impression of long epochs of peace periodically convulsed by break-up, internecine division or external attack. Yet for much of its history China has been in conflict either internally or with outsiders. Although China's size and shape has also continuously changed – from tiny beginnings by the Yellow River (Huang He) to the subcontinent of today – an uninterrupted thread of history runs from its earliest roots to the full flowering of Chinese civilisation. Powerful links connect the Chinese of today with their ancestors 5000 or 6000 years ago, creating the longest-lasting complex civilisation on earth.

## FROM ORACLE BONES TO CONFUCIUS

The earliest 'Chinese' dynasty, the Shang, was long considered apocryphal. However, archaeological evidence – cattle bones and turtle shells in Henan covered in mysterious scratches, recognised by a scholar as an early form of Chinese writing – proved that a society known as the Shang developed in central China from around 1766 BC. The area it controlled was tiny – perhaps 200km across – but Chinese historians have argued that the Shang was the first Chinese dynasty. By using Chinese writing on 'oracle bones', the dynasty marked its connection with the Chinese civilisation of the present day.

---

Ban Zhao was the most famous woman scholar in early China. Dating from the late 1st century AD, her work *Lessons for Women* advocated chastity and modesty as favoured female qualities.

---

Sometime between 1050 and 1045 BC, a neighbouring group known as the Zhou conquered Shang territory. The Zhou was one of many states competing for power in the next few hundred years, but developments during this period created some of the key sources of Chinese culture that

would last till the present day. A constant theme of the first millennium BC was conflict, particularly the periods known as the 'Spring and

Autumn' (722–481 BC) and 'Warring States' (475–221 BC).

The Chinese world in the 5th century BC was both warlike and intellectually fertile, in a way similar to ancient Greece during the same period. From this disorder emerged the thinking of Confucius (551–479 BC), whose system of thought and ethics underpinned Chinese culture for 2500 years ([Click here](#)). A wandering teacher, Confucius gave lessons in personal behaviour and statecraft, advocating an ordered and ethical society obedient towards hierarchies. Confucius' desire for an ordered and ethical world seems a far cry from the warfare of the time he lived in.

## ANCIENT ICONS

Tick off the most iconic sights dating from the very birth of the Chinese nation through the nation's imperial heydays.

**The Terracotta Warriors** ([Click here](#)) Silent and awe-inspiring emissaries from the dawn of China's imperial past.

**The** ([Click here](#)) Snaking across north China, mounting peaks, plunging into valleys and collapsing into ruin.

**The Forbidden City** ([Click here](#)) Ornate and privileged bastion of the Ming and Qing - dynasty emperors at the heart of Beijing.

**Mogao Caves** ([Click here](#)) China's most splendid collection of Buddhist art.

## EARLY EMPIRES

The Warring States period ended decisively in 221 BC. The Qin kingdom conquered other states in the central Chinese region and Qin Shi Huang declared himself emperor. The first in a line of rulers that would last until 1912, later histories portrayed Qin Shi Huang as particularly cruel and tyrannical, but the distinction is dubious as the ensuing Han dynasty (206 BC–AD 220) adopted many of the short-lived Qin's practices of government.

---

The first railroad in China was the

Qin Shi Huang oversaw vast public works projects, including walls built by some 300,000 men, connecting

Woosung Railway, which opened in 1876, running between Shanghai and Wusong; it operated for less than a year before being dismantled and shipped to Taiwan.

---

defences into what would become the Great Wall. He unified the currency, measurements and written language, providing the basis for a cohesive state.

Establishing a trend that would echo through Chinese history, a peasant, Liu Bang (256–195 BC), rose up and conquered China, founding the Han dynasty. The dynasty is so important that the name Han ) still refers to ethnic Chinese. Critical to the centralisation of power, Emperor Wu (140–87 BC) institutionalised Confucian norms in government. Promoting merit as well as order, he was the first leader to experiment with examinations for entry into the bureaucracy, but his dynasty was plagued by economic troubles, as estate owners controlled more and more land. Indeed, the issue of land ownership would be a constant problem throughout Chinese history, to today. Endemic economic problems and the inability to exercise control over a growing empire led to the collapse and downfall of the Han. Social problems included an uprising by Taoists (known as the Yellow Turbans). Upheaval would become a constant refrain in later Chinese dynasties.

---

Evidence from Han tombs suggests that a popular item of cuisine was a thick vegetable and meat stew, and that flavour enhancers such as soy sauce and honey were also used.

---

Han trade along the Silk Road demonstrated clearly that China was fundamentally a Eurasian power in its relations with neighbouring peoples. To the north, the Xiongnu (a name given to various nomadic tribes of Central Asia) posed the greatest threat to China. Diplomatic links were also

formed with Central Asian tribes, and the great Chinese explorer Zhang Qian provided the authorities with information on the possibilities of trade and alliances in northern India. During the same period, Chinese influence percolated into areas that would later become known as Vietnam and Korea.

## DISUNITY RESTORED

Between the early 3rd and late 6th centuries AD, north China

witnessed a succession of rival kingdoms vying for power while a potent division formed between north and south. Riven by warfare, the north was controlled by non-Chinese rule, most successfully by the northern Wei dynasty (386–534), founded by the Tuoba, a northern people who embraced Buddhism and left behind some of China's finest Buddhist art, including the famous caves outside Dunhuang ([Click here](#)). A succession of rival regimes followed until nobleman Yang Jian (d 604) reunified China under the fleeting Sui dynasty (581–618). His son Sui Yangdi contributed greatly to the unification of south and north through construction of the Grand Canal, which was later extended and remained the empire's most important communication route between south and north until the late 19th century. After instigating three unsuccessful incursions onto Korean soil, resulting in disastrous military setbacks, Sui Yangdi faced revolt on the streets and was assassinated in 618 by one of his high officials.

---

So far, some 7000 soldiers in the famous Terracotta Army have been found near Xi'an. The great tomb of the first emperor still remains unexcavated, although it is thought to have been looted soon after it was built.

---

## CONFUCIUS TEMPLES

Confucian temples (*wenmiao*) are typically lethargic and neglected shrines. This, however, is part of their appeal: they are peaceful, unhurried and often silent.

**Confucius Temple, Qufu** ([Click here](#)) The mother of all patriarchal temples, in Qufu, Confucius' birthplace.

**Confucius Temple, Beijing** ([Click here](#)) China's second largest Confucius temple and a haven of peace in Beijing.

**Confucius Temple, Jianshui** ([Click here](#)) Locals insist it's China's biggest temple.

**Confucius Temple, Pingyao** ([Click here](#)) Housing Pingyao's oldest building in one of China's most magnificent old towns.

**Confucius Temple, Xingcheng** ([Click here](#)) Said to be the oldest temple in China's - northeast.

---

## THE TANG: CHINA LOOKS WEST

The Tang rule (618–907) was an outward-looking time, when China embraced the culture of its neighbours – marriage to Central Asian people or wearing Indian-influenced clothes was part of the era’s cosmopolitan elan – and distant nations that reached China via the Silk Road. The Chinese nostalgically regard the Tang as their cultural zenith and Chinatowns around the world are called Tangrenjie (Tang People Streets) to this day. The output of the Tang poets is still regarded as China’s finest, as is Tang sculpture, while its legal code became a standard for the whole East Asian region.

---

Ding Ling’s novel *The Sun Shines on the Sanggan River* (1948) gives a graphic account of the violence, as well as the joy, that greeted land reform (ie redistribution) in China in the early 1950s.

---

The Tang was founded by the Sui general Li Yuan, his achievements consolidated by his son Taizong (r626–49). Chang’an (modern Xi’an) became the world’s most dazzling capital, with its own cosmopolitan foreign quarter, a population of a million, a market where merchants

from as far away as Persia mingled with locals and an astonishing city wall that eventually enveloped 83 sq km. The city exemplified the Tang devotion to Buddhism, with some 91 temples recorded in the city in 722, but a tolerance of and even absorption with foreign cultures allowed alien faiths a foothold, including Nestorian Christianity, Manichaeism, Islam, Judaism and Zoroastrianism.

---

A Chinese woodblock-printed copy of the *Diamond Sutra*, kept in the British Library, is the earliest dated printed book, created in 868. Visit the library website to turn the pages of the sutra online.

---

Taizong was succeeded by a unique figure: Chinese history’s sole reigning woman emperor, Wu Zetian (r 690–705). Under her leadership the empire reached its greatest extent, spreading well north of the Great Wall and far west into inner Asia. Her strong promotion of Buddhism, however,

alienated her from the Confucian officials and in 705 she was forced to abdicate in favour of Xuanzong, who would preside over the greatest

disaster in the Tang's history: the rebellion of An Lushan.

---

Toilet paper was first used in China, as early as the 6th century AD, when it was used by the wealthy and privileged for sanitary purposes.

---

Xuanzong appointed as generals members of minorities from the frontiers, in the belief that they were so far removed from the political system and society that ideas of rebellion or coups would not enter their minds. Nevertheless, it was An Lushan, a

general of Sogdian-Turkic parentage, who took advantage of his command in north China to make a bid for imperial power. The fighting lasted from 755 to 763, and although An Lushan was defeated, the Tang's control over China was destroyed forever. It had ceded huge amounts of military and tax-collecting power to provincial leaders to enable them to defeat the rebels, and in doing so dissipated its own power. This was a permanent change in the relationship between the government and the provinces; prior to 755, the government had an idea of who owned what land throughout the empire, but after that date the central government's control was permanently weakened. Even today, the dilemma has not been fully resolved.

---

The features of the largest Buddhist statue in the Ancestor Worshipping Cave at the Longmen Caves outside Luoyang are supposedly based on Tang female emperor Wu Zetian, a famous champion of Buddhism.

---

In its last century, the Tang withdrew from its former openness, turning more strongly to Confucianism, while Buddhism was outlawed by Emperor Wuzong from 842 to 845. The ban was later modified, but Buddhism never regained its previous power and prestige. The Tang decline

was marked by imperial frailty, growing insurgencies, upheaval and chaos.

## **THE SONG: CONFLICT & PROSPERITY**

Further disunity – the fragmentary-sounding Five Dynasties or Ten Kingdoms period – followed the fall of the Tang until the northern Song dynasty (960–1127) was established. The Song dynasty existed in a state of constant conflict with its northern neighbours. The northern Song was a rather small empire coexisting with the non-

Chinese Liao dynasty (which controlled a belt of Chinese territory south of the Great Wall that now marked China's northern border) and less happily with the western Xia, another non-Chinese power that pressed hard on the northwestern provinces. In 1126 the Song lost its capital, Kaifeng, to a third non-Chinese people, the Jurchen (previously an ally against the Liao). The Song was driven to its southern capital of Hangzhou for the period of the southern Song (1127–1279), yet the period was culturally rich and economically prosperous.

---

Ping pong (*pingpangqiu*) may be China's national sport (*guoqiu*), but it was invented as an after-dinner game by British Victorians who named it *wiff-waff* and first used a ball made from champagne corks.

---

The full institution of a system of examinations for entry into the Chinese bureaucracy was brought to fruition during the Song. At a time when brute force decided who was in control in much of medieval Europe, young Chinese men sat tests on the Confucian classics, obtaining office if

successful (most were not). The system was heavily biased towards the rich, but was remarkable in its rationalisation of authority, and lasted for centuries. The classical texts set for the examinations became central to the transmission of a sense of elite Chinese culture, even though in later centuries the system's rigidity failed to adapt to social and intellectual change.

---

Two Nestorian monks smuggled silkworms out of China in 550 AD, disclosing the method of silk production to the outside world.

---

China's economy prospered during the Song rule, as cash crops and handicraft products became far more central to the economy, and a genuinely China-wide market emerged, which would become even stronger during the Ming and Qing

dynasties. The sciences and arts also flourished under the Song, with intellectual and technical advances across many disciplines. Kaifeng emerged as an eminent centre of politics, commerce and culture.

The cultural quirk of foot binding appears to have emerged during the Song. It is still unknown how the custom of binding up a girl's feet in cloths so that they would never grow larger than the size of a fist began, yet for much of the next few centuries, it became a Chinese

social norm.

## RUINS

---

Many of China's historical artefacts may be in a state of perpetual ruin, but some vestiges get top-billing:

**Ruins of the Church of St Paul in Macau** ([Click here](#)) China's most sublime architectural wreck.

**Jiankou Great Wall** ([Click here](#)) No other section of the Great Wall does the tumble-down look in such dramatic fashion.

**Great Fountain Ruins** ([Click here](#)) Sublime tangle of Jesuit-designed stonework in the Summer Palace.

**Xanadu** ([Click here](#)) A vivid imagination is required to conjure up impressions of Kublai Khan's pleasure palace.

**Ming City Wall Ruins Park** ([Click here](#)) Beijing's last section of Ming city wall.

## MONGOLS TO MING

The fall of the Song reinforced notions of China's Eurasian location and growing external threats. Genghis Khan (1167–1227) was beginning his rise to power, turning his sights on China; he took Beijing in 1215, destroying and rebuilding it; his successors seized Hangzhou, the southern Song capital, in 1276. The court fled and, in 1279, southern Song resistance finally expired. Kublai Khan, grandson of Genghis, now reigned over all of China as emperor of the Yuan dynasty. Under Kublai, the entire population was divided into categories of Han, Mongol and foreigner, with the top administrative posts reserved for Mongols, even though the examination system was revived in 1315. The latter decision unexpectedly strengthened the role of local landed elites: since elite Chinese could not advance in the bureaucracy, they decided to spend more time tending their large estates instead. Another innovation was the use of paper money, although overprinting created a problem with inflation.

The Mongols ultimately proved less able at governance than warfare, their empire succumbing to rebellion within a century and



eventual vanquishment. Ruling as Ming emperor Hongwu, Zhu Yuanzhang established his capital in Nanjing, but by the early 15th century the court had begun to move back to Beijing, where a hugely ambitious reconstruction project was inaugurated by Emperor Yongle (r 1403–24), building the Forbidden City and devising the layout of the city we see today.

Although the Ming tried to impose a traditional social structure in which people stuck to hereditary occupations, the era was in fact one of great commercial growth and social change. Women became subject to stricter social norms (for instance, widow remarriage was frowned upon) but female literacy also grew. Publishing, via woodblock technology, burgeoned and the novel appeared.

Emperor Yongle, having usurped power from his nephew, was keen to establish his own legitimacy. In 1405 he launched the first of seven great maritime expeditions. Led by the eunuch general Zheng He (1371–1433), the fleet consisted of more than 60 large vessels and 255 smaller ones, carrying nearly 28,000 men. The fourth and fifth expeditions departed in 1413 and 1417, and travelled as far as the present Middle East. The great achievement of these voyages was to bring tribute missions to the capital, including two embassies from Egypt. Yet ultimately, they were a dead end, motivated by Yongle's vanity to outdo his father, not for the purpose of conquest nor the establishment of a settled trade network. The emperors after Yongle had little interest in continuing the voyages, and China dropped anchor on its global maritime explorations.

---

Paul French's *Midnight in Peking* (2012) is a gripping true-crime murder mystery examining the death of Pamela Werner in 1937 Peking.

---

The Great Wall was re-engineered and clad in brick while ships also arrived from Europe, presaging an overseas threat that would develop from entirely different directions.

Traders were quickly followed by missionaries, and the Jesuits, led by the formidable Matteo Ricci, made their way inland and established a presence at court. Ricci learned fluent Chinese and spent years agonising over how Christian tenets could be made attractive in a Confucian society with very different norms. The Portuguese presence linked China directly to trade with the New World, which had opened

up in the 16th century. New crops, such as potatoes, maize, cotton and tobacco, were introduced, further stimulating the commercial economy. Merchants often lived opulent lives, building fine private gardens (as in Suzhou) and buying delicate flowers and fruits.

The Ming was eventually undermined by internal power struggles. Natural disasters, including drought and famine, combined with a menace from the north: the Manchu, a nomadic warlike people, saw the turmoil within China and invaded.

## DIRTY FOREIGN MUD

Although trade in opium had been banned in China by imperial decree at the end of the 18th century, the *cohong* (local merchants' guild) in Guangzhou helped ensure that the trade continued, and fortunes were amassed on both sides. When the British East India Company lost its monopoly on China trade in 1834, imports of the drug increased to 40,000 chests a year.

In 1839, the Qing government sent Imperial Commissioner Lin Zexu to stamp out the opium trade once and for all. Lin successfully blockaded the British in Guangzhou and publicly burned the 'foreign mud' in Humen. Furious, the British sent an expeditionary force of 4000 men from the Royal Navy to exact reparations and secure favourable trade arrangements.

What would become known as the First Opium War began in June 1840 when British forces besieged Guangzhou and forced the Chinese to cede five ports to the British. With the strategic city of Nanking (Nanjing) under immediate threat, the Chinese were forced to accept Britain's terms in the Treaty of Nanking.

The treaty abolished the monopoly system of trade, opened the 'treaty ports' to British residents and foreign trade, exempted British nationals from all Chinese laws and ceded the island of Hong Kong to the British 'in perpetuity'. The treaty, signed in August 1842, set the scope and character of the unequal relationship between China and the West for the next half-century.

## THE QING: THE PATH TO DYNASTIC DISSOLUTION

After conquering just a small part of China and assuming control in the disarray, the Manchu named their new dynasty the Qing (1644–1911). Once ensconced in the (now torched) Forbidden City, the Manchu

realised they needed to adapt their nomadic way of life to suit the agricultural civilisation of China. Threats from inner Asia were neutralised by incorporating the Qing homeland of Manchuria into the empire, as well as that of the Mongols, whom they had subordinated. Like the Mongols before them, the conquering Manchu found themselves in charge of a civilisation whose government they had defeated, but whose cultural power far exceeded their own. The result was quite contradictory: on the one hand, Qing rulers took great pains to win the allegiance of high officials and cultural figures by displaying a familiarity and respect for traditional Chinese culture; on the other hand, the Manchu rulers were at great pains to remain distinct. They enforced strict rules of social separation between the Han and Manchu, and tried to maintain – not always very successfully – a culture that reminded the Manchu of their nomadic warrior past. The Qing flourished most greatly under three emperors who ruled for a total of 135 years: Kangxi, Yongzheng and Qianlong.

Much of the map of China that we know today derives from the Qing period. Territorial expansion and expeditions to regions of Central Asia spread Chinese power and culture further than ever. The expansion of the 18th century was fuelled by economic and social changes. The discovery of the New World by Europeans in the 15th century led to a new global market in American food crops, such as chillies and sweet potatoes, allowing food crops to be grown in more barren regions, where wheat and rice had not flourished. In the 18th century, the Chinese population doubled from around 150 million to 300 million people.

Historians now take very seriously the idea that in the 18th century China was among the most advanced economies in the world. The impact of imperialism would help commence China's slide down the table, but the seeds of decay had been sown long before the Opium Wars of the 1840s. Put simply, as China's size expanded, its state remained too small. China's dynasty failed to expand the size of government to cope with the new realities of a larger China.

## **FOREIGN CONCESSIONS & COLONIES**

China's coastline is dotted with a string of foreign concession towns that ooze charm and a sensation of 19th and early 20th century grandeur.

**Shanghai, French Concession** ([Click here](#)) Shanghai's most stylish concession goes to the French.

**Gulang Yu, Xiamen** ([Click here](#)) Thoroughly charming colonial remains on a beautiful island setting.

**Qingdao** ([Click here](#)) Wander the German district for cobbled streets and Teutonic - architecture.

**Hong Kong** ([Click here](#)) Outstanding ex-colonial cachet on the Guangdong coast.

**Macau** ([Click here](#)) An unforgettable cocktail of Cantonese and Portuguese flavour.

**Shamian Island** ([Click here](#)) Gentrified and leafy lozenge of Guangzhou sand, decorated with a handsome crop of buildings and streets.

## WAR & REFORM

For the Manchu, the single most devastating incident was not either of the Opium Wars, but the far more destructive anti-Qing Taiping Rebellion of 1850–64, an insurgency motivated partly by a foreign credo (Christianity). Established by Hakka leader Hong Xiuquan, the Heavenly Kingdom of Great Peace (Taiping Tianguo) banned opium and intermingling between the sexes, made moves to redistribute property and was fiercely anti-Manchu. The Qing eventually reconquered the Taiping capital at Nanjing, but upwards of 20 million Chinese died in the uprising.

The events that finally brought the dynasty down, however, came in rapid succession. Foreign imperialist incursions continued and Western powers nibbled away at China's coastline; Shanghai, Qingdao, Tianjin, Gulang Yu, Shantou, Yantai, Weihai, Ningbo and Beihai would all either fall under semicolonial rule or enclose foreign concessions. Hong Kong was a British colony and Macau was administered by the Portuguese. Attempts at self-strengthening – involving attempts to produce armaments and Western-style military technology – were dealt a brutal blow by the Sino-Japanese War of 1894–95. Fought over control of Korea, it ended with the humiliating destruction of the new Qing navy. Not only was Chinese influence in Korea lost, but Taiwan was ceded to Japan.

Japan itself was a powerful Asian example of reform. In 1868 Japan's rulers, unnerved by ever-greater foreign encroachment, had overthrown the centuries-old system of the Shogun, who acted as regent for the emperor. An all-out program of modernisation, including a new army, constitution, educational system and railway network was undertaken, all of which gave Chinese reformers a lot to ponder.

One of the boldest proposals for reform, which drew heavily on the Japanese model, was the program put forward in 1898 by reformers including the political thinker Kang Youwei (1858–1927). However, in September 1898 the reforms were abruptly halted, as the Dowager Empress Cixi, fearful of a coup, placed the emperor under house arrest and executed several of the leading advocates of change. Two years later, Cixi made a decision that helped to seal the Qing's fate. In 1900 north China was convulsed by attacks from a group of peasant rebels whose martial arts techniques led them to be labelled the Boxers, and who wanted to expel the foreigners and kill any Chinese Christian converts. In a major misjudgement, the dynasty declared in June that it supported the Boxers. Eventually, a multinational foreign army forced its way into China and defeated the uprising which had besieged the foreign Legation Quarter in Beijing. The imperial powers then demanded huge financial compensation from the Qing. In 1902 the dynasty reacted by implementing the Xinzheng (New Governance) reforms. This set of reforms, now half-forgotten in contemporary China, looks remarkably progressive, even set against the standards of the present day.

---

The oldest surviving brick pagoda in China is the Songyue Pagoda, on Song Shan in Henan province, dating to the early sixth century.

---

The Cantonese revolutionary Sun Yatsen (1866–1925) remains one of the few modern historical figures respected in both China and Taiwan. Sun and his Revolutionary League made multiple attempts to undermine Qing rule in the late 19th century, raising sponsorship and support from a wide-ranging combination of the Chinese diaspora, the newly emergent middle class, and traditional secret societies. In practice, his own attempts to end Qing rule were unsuccessful, but his reputation as a patriotic figure dedicated to a modern republic gained him high prestige among many

of the emerging middle-class elites in China, though much less among the key military leaders.

The end of the Qing dynasty arrived swiftly. Throughout China's southwest, popular feeling against the dynasty had been fuelled by reports that railway rights in the region were being sold to foreigners. A local uprising in the city of Wuhan in October 1911 was discovered early, leading the rebels to take over command in the city and hastily declare independence from the Qing dynasty. Within a space of days, then weeks, most of China's provinces did likewise. Provincial assemblies across China declared themselves in favour of a republic, with Sun Yatsen (who was not even in China at the time) as their candidate for president.

## OLD TOWNS & VILLAGES

For strong shades of historic China, make a beeline for the following old towns (*guzhen*) :

**Pingyao** ([Click here](#)) The best preserved of China's ancient walled towns.

**Fenghuang** ([Click here](#)) Exquisite riverside setting, pagodas, temples, covered bridges and ancient city wall.

**Hongcun** ([Click here](#)) Gorgeous Huizhou village embedded in the lovely south Anhui countryside.

**Tianluokeng Tulou Cluster** ([Click here](#)) Overnight in a photogenic Hakka roundhouse.

**Shaxi** ([Click here](#)) Flee modern China along Yunnan's ancient Tea-Horse Road.

**Zhenyuan** ([Click here](#)) Slot into low gear and admire the peaks, temples and age-old alleys of this riverside Guizhou town.

## THE REPUBLIC: INSTABILITY & IDEAS

The Republic of China lasted less than 40 years on the mainland (1912–1949) and continues to be regarded as a dark chapter in modern Chinese history, when the country was under threat from what many described as 'imperialism from without and warlordism from within'. Yet there was also breathing room for new ideas and culture. In terms of freedom of speech and cultural production, the republic

was a much richer time than any subsequent era in Chinese history. Yet the period was certainly marked by repeated disasters, rather like the almost contemporaneous Weimar Republic in Germany.

Sun Yatsen returned to China and only briefly served as president, before having to make way for militarist leader Yuan Shikai. In 1912 China held its first general election, and it was Sun's newly established Kuomintang (Nationalist; Guomindang, literally 'Party of the National People') party that emerged as the largest grouping. Parliamentary democracy did not last long, as the Kuomintang itself was outlawed by Yuan, and Sun had to flee into exile in Japan. However, after Yuan's death in 1916, the country split into rival regions ruled by militarist warlord-leaders. Supposedly 'national' governments in Beijing often controlled only parts of northern or eastern China and had no real claim to control over the rest of the country. Also, in reality, the foreign powers still had control over much of China's domestic and international situation. Britain, France, the US and the other Western powers showed little desire to lose those rights, such as extraterritoriality and tariff control.

The city of Shanghai became the focal point for the contradictions of Chinese modernity. By the early 20th century, Shanghai was a wonder not just of China, but of the world, with skyscrapers, art deco apartment blocks, neon lights, women (and men) in outrageous new fashions, and a vibrant, commercially minded, take-no-prisoners atmosphere. The racism that accompanied imperialism was visible every day, as Europeans kept themselves separate from the Chinese. Yet the glamour of modernity was undeniable too, as workers flocked from rural areas to make a living in the city, and Chinese intellectuals sought out French fashion, British architecture and American movies. In the prewar period, Shanghai had more millionaires than anywhere else in China, yet its inequalities and squalor also inspired the first congress of the Chinese Communist Party (CCP).

The militarist government that held power in Beijing in 1917 provided 96,000 Chinese who served on the Western Front in Europe, not as soldiers but digging trenches and doing hard manual labour. This involvement in WWI led to one of the most important events in China's modern history: the student demonstrations of 4 May 1919.

Double-dealing by the Western Allies and Chinese politicians who had made secret deals with Japan led to an unwelcome discovery for the Chinese diplomats at the Paris Peace Conference in 1919. Germany had been defeated, but its Chinese territories – such as Qingdao – were not to be returned to China but would instead go to Japan. Five days later, on 4 May 1919, some 3000 students gathered in central Beijing, in front of the Gate of Heavenly Peace, and then marched to the house of a Chinese government minister closely associated with Japan. Once there, they broke in and destroyed the house. This event, over in a few hours, became a legend.

The student demonstration came to symbolise a much wider shift in Chinese society and politics. The May Fourth Movement, as it became known, was associated closely with the New Culture, underpinned by the electrifying ideas of ‘Mr Science’ and ‘Mr Democracy’. In literature, a May Fourth generation of authors wrote works attacking the Confucianism that they felt had brought China to its current crisis, and explored new issues of sexuality and self-development. The CCP, later mastermind of the world’s largest peasant revolution, was created in the intellectual turmoil of the movement, many of its founding figures associated with Peking University, such as Chen Duxiu (dean of humanities), Li Dazhao (head librarian) and the young Mao Zedong, a mere library assistant.

## HISTORY BOOKS

---

» *The City of Heavenly Tranquillity: Beijing in the History of China* (Jasper Becker; 2009). Becker’s authoritative and heartbreaking rendering of Beijing’s transformation from magnificent Ming capital to communist–capitalist hybrid.

» *The Penguin History of Modern China: The Fall and Rise of a Great Power 1850–2008* (Jonathan Fenby; 2008). Highly readable account of the paroxysms of modern Chinese history

» *China, A History* (John Key; 2008). An accessible and well-written journey through Middle Kingdom history.



# THE NORTHERN EXPEDITION

After years of vainly seeking international support for his cause, Sun Yatsen found allies in the newly formed Soviet Russia. The Soviets ordered the fledgling CCP to ally itself with the much larger 'bourgeois' party, the Kuomintang. Their alliance was attractive to Sun: the Soviets would provide political training, military assistance and finance. From their base in Guangzhou, the Kuomintang and CCP trained together from 1923, in preparation for their mission to reunite China.

---

The Tang saw the first major rise to power of eunuchs. Often from ethnic minority groups, they were brought to the capital and given positions within the imperial palace. In many dynasties they had real influence

---

Sun died of cancer in 1925. The succession battle in the party coincided with a surge in antiforeign feeling that accompanied the May Thirtieth Incident when 13 labour demonstrators were killed by British police in Shanghai on 30 May 1925.

Under Soviet advice, the Kuomintang and CCP prepared for their 'Northern Expedition', the big 1926 push north that was supposed to finally unite China. In 1926–27, the Soviet-trained National Revolutionary Army made its way slowly north, fighting, bribing or persuading its opponents into accepting Kuomintang control. The most powerful military figure turned out to be an officer from Zhejiang named Chiang Kaishek (1887–1975). Trained in Moscow, Chiang moved steadily forward and finally captured the great prize, Shanghai, in March 1927. However, a horrific surprise was in store for his communist allies. The Soviet advisers had not impressed Chiang and he was convinced their intention was to take power in alliance with the Kuomintang as a prelude to seizing control themselves. Instead, Chiang struck first. Using local thugs and soldiers, Chiang organised a lightning strike by rounding up CCP activists and union leaders in Shanghai and killing thousands of them.

## KUOMINTANG RULE

Chiang Kaishek's Kuomintang government officially came to power in 1928 through a combination of military force and popular support. Marked by corruption, it suppressed political dissent with great

ruthlessness. Yet Chiang's government also kick-started a major industrialisation effort, greatly augmented China's transport infrastructure and successfully renegotiated what many Chinese called 'unequal treaties' with Western powers. In its first two years, the Kuomintang doubled the length of highways in China and increased the number of students studying engineering. The government never really controlled more than a few (very important) provinces in the east, however, and China remained significantly disunited. Regional militarists continued to control much of western China; the Japanese invaded and occupied Manchuria in 1931; and the communists re-established themselves in the northwest.

In 1934 Chiang Kaishek launched his own ideological counter-argument to communism: the New Life Movement. This was supposed to be a complete spiritual renewal of the nation, through a modernised version of traditional Confucian values, such as propriety, righteousness and loyalty. The New Life Movement demanded that the renewed citizens of the nation must wear frugal but clean clothes, consume products made in China rather than seek luxurious foreign goods, and behave in a hygienic manner. Yet Chiang's ideology never had much success. Against a background of massive agricultural and fiscal crisis, prescriptions about what to wear and how to behave lacked popular appeal.

The new policies did relatively little to change the everyday life for the population in the countryside, where more than 80% of China's people lived. Some rural reforms were undertaken, including the establishment of rural cooperatives, but their effects were small. The Nationalist Party also found itself unable to collect taxes in an honest and transparent way.

## HISTORIC CITIES

---

At the centre of things, China's cities have seen dynasties rise, topple and fall, leaving them littered with dynastic vestiges and age-old artefacts.

**Beijing** ([Click here](#)) Heritage, history and imperial grandeur, with the Great Wall to boot.

**Xi'an** ([Click here](#)) The granddaddy of China's old towns, enclosed by an intact Ming-dynasty wall with the Terracotta Warriors in the suburbs.

**Hangzhou** ([Click here](#)) Possibly China's best-looking city, with oodles of charm and history in spades.

**Nanjing** ([Click here](#)) Supreme city walls and imposing imperial Ming vestiges.

## THE LONG MARCH

The communists had not stood still and after Chiang's treachery, most of what remained of the CCP fled to the countryside. A major centre of activity was the communist stronghold in impoverished Jiangxi province, where the party began to try out systems of government that would eventually bring them to power. However, by 1934, Chiang's previously ineffective 'extermination campaigns' were making the CCP's position in Jiangxi untenable, as the Red Army found itself increasingly encircled by Nationalist troops. The CCP commenced its Long March, travelling over 6400km. Four thousand of the original 80,000 communists who set out eventually arrived, exhausted, in Shaanxi (Shanxi) province in the northwest, far out of the reach of the Kuomintang. It seemed possible that within a matter of months, however, Chiang would attack again and wipe them out.

The approach of war saved the CCP. There was growing public discontent at Chiang Kaishek's seeming unwillingness to fight the Japanese. In fact, this perception was unfair. The Kuomintang had undertaken retraining of key regiments in the army under German advice, and also started to plan for a wartime economy from 1931, spurred on by the Japanese invasion of Manchuria. However, events came to a head in December 1936, when the Chinese militarist leader of Manchuria (General Zhang Xueliang) and the CCP kidnapped Chiang. As a condition of his release, Chiang agreed to an openly declared United Front: the Kuomintang and communists would put aside their differences and join forces against Japan.

## WAR & THE KUOMINTANG

China's status as a major participant in WWII is often overlooked or forgotten in the West. The Japanese invasion of China, which began in 1937, was merciless, with the notorious Nanjing Massacre (also

known as the Rape of Nanjing; [Click here](#)) just one of a series of war crimes committed by the Japanese Army during its conquest of eastern China. The government had to operate in exile from the far southwestern hinterland of China, as its area of greatest strength and prosperity, China's eastern seaboard, was lost to Japanese occupation.

In China itself, it is now acknowledged that both the Kuomintang and the communists had important roles to play in defeating Japan. Chiang, not Mao, was the internationally acknowledged leader of China during this period, and despite his government's multitude of flaws, he maintained resistance to the end. However, his government was also increasingly trapped, having retreated to Sichuan province and a temporary capital at Chongqing. Safe from land attack by Japan, the city still found itself under siege, subjected to some of the heaviest bombing in the war. From 1940, supply routes were cut off as the road to Burma was closed by Britain, under pressure from Japan, and Vichy France closed connections to Vietnam. Although the US and Britain brought China on board as an ally against Japan after Pearl Harbor on 7 December 1941, the Allied 'Europe First' strategy meant that China was always treated as a secondary theatre of war. Chiang Kaishek's corruption and leadership qualities were heavily criticised, and while these accusations were not groundless, without Chinese Kuomintang armies (which kept one million Japanese troops bogged down in China for eight years), the Allies' war in the Pacific would have been far harder. The communists had an important role as guerrilla fighters, but did far less fighting in battle than the Kuomintang.

The real winners from WWII, however, were the communists. They undertook important guerrilla campaigns against the Japanese across northern and eastern China, but the really key changes were taking place in the bleak, dusty hill country centred on the small town of Yan'an, capital of the CCP's largest stronghold. The 'Yan'an way' that developed in those years solidified many CCP policies: land reform involving redistribution of land to the peasants, lower taxes, a self-sufficient economy, ideological education and, underpinning it all, the CCP's military force, the Red Army. By the end of the war with Japan, the communist areas had expanded massively, with some 900,000

troops in the Red Army, and party membership at a new high of 1.2 million.

---

Traditionally the dragon (*long*) was associated with the emperor and the male principle while the phoenix (*fenghuang*) was a symbol of the empress and the female principle.

---

Above all, the war with Japan had helped the communists come back from the brink of the disaster they had faced at the end of the Long March. The Kuomintang and communists then plunged into civil war in 1946 and after three long years the CCP won. On 1 October 1949 in Beijing, Mao declared

the establishment of the People's Republic of China.

Chiang Kaishek fled to the island of Formosa (Taiwan), which China had regained from Japan after WWII. He took with him China's gold reserves and the remains of his air force and navy, and set up the Republic of China (ROC), naming his new capital Taipei (, Taipei).

## MAO'S CHINA

Mao's China desired, above all, to exercise ideological control over its population. It called itself 'New China', with the idea that the whole citizenry, down to the remotest peasants, should find a role in the new politics and society. The success of Mao's military and political tactics also meant that the country was, for the first time since the 19th century, united under a strong central government.

Most Westerners – and Western influences – were swiftly removed from the country. The US refused to recognise the new state at all. However, China had decided, in Mao's phrase, to 'lean to one side' and ally itself with the Soviet Union in the still-emerging Cold War. The 1950s marked the high point of Soviet influence on Chinese politics and culture. However, the decade also saw rising tension between the Chinese and the Soviets, fuelled in part by Khrushchev's condemnation of Stalin (which Mao took, in part, as a criticism of his own cult of personality). Sino–Soviet differences were aggravated with the withdrawal of Soviet technical assistance from China, and reached a peak with intense border clashes during 1969. Relations remained frosty until the 1980s.

Mao's experiences had convinced him that only violent change

could shake up the relationship between landlords and their tenants, or capitalists and their employees, in a China that was still highly traditional. The first year of the regime saw some 40% of the land redistributed to poor peasants. At the same time, some one million or so people condemned as 'landlords' were persecuted and killed. The joy of liberation was real for many Chinese, but campaigns of terror were also real and the early 1950s were no golden age.

---

Mao Zedong is one of the most intriguing figures of 20th-century history. Philip Short's *Mao: A Life* (1999) is the most detailed and thoughtful recent account of his life in English.

---

As relations with the Soviets broke down in the mid-1950s, the CCP leaders' thoughts turned to economic self-sufficiency. Mao, supported by Politburo colleagues, proposed the policy known as the Great Leap Forward (Dayuejin), a highly ambitious plan to harness the power of socialist

economics to boost production of steel, coal and electricity. Agriculture was to reach an ever-higher level of collectivisation. Family structures were broken up as communal dining halls were established: people were urged to eat their fill, as the new agricultural methods would ensure plenty for all, year after year.

However, the Great Leap Forward was a horrific failure. Its lack of economic realism caused a massive famine and at least 20 million deaths; historian Frank Dikötter posits a much larger minimum figure of 45 million deaths in his *Mao's Great Famine* (2010). Yet the return to a semimarket economy in 1962, after the Leap had comprehensively ended, did not dampen Mao's enthusiasm for revolutionary renewal. This led to the last and most fanatical of the campaigns that marked Mao's China: the Cultural Revolution of 1966–76.

## SLOGANEERING

In communist China, political slogans were always one of the first instruments to hand in the propaganda department's ample tool chest. Typically painted in vermilion letters on walls, banners or posters, communist slogans were punchy, formulaic, systematic and unsophisticated. Their language was forthright and simple, appealing directly to the

masses. The emphasis on rote learning in Chinese education gave slogans added authority and easy memorability while their appearance everywhere reinforced the ever-presence and watchfulness of the communist state. During the Cultural Revolution they became increasingly violent and intimidating. Slogans from this period survive fitfully around China, including in the following places, although many have either been scrubbed out or buried beneath cement or plaster.

- » Nanjiecun ([Click here](#)) : literally everywhere
- » Chuandixia ([Click here](#)) : on external house walls in the village
- » 798 Art District, Beijing ([Click here](#)) : throughout the district
- » Hua'e Lou ([Click here](#)) : Hakka roundhouse in eastern Guangdong
- » Jiayuguan Fort ([Click here](#)) : in yellow letters and ghostly shadows on buildings and walls

## CULTURAL REVOLUTION

Mao had become increasingly concerned that post-Leap China was slipping into 'economism' – a complacent satisfaction with rising standards of living that would blunt people's revolutionary fervour.

Mao was particularly concerned that the young generation might grow up with a dimmed spirit of revolution. For these reasons, Mao decided upon a massive campaign of ideological renewal, in which he would attack his own party.

---

One product of the new freedom of the 1980s was a revived Chinese film industry. *Red Sorghum*, the first film directed by Zhang Yimou, was a searingly erotic film of a type that had not been seen since 1949.

---

Still the dominant figure in the CCP, Mao used his prestige to undermine his own colleagues. In summer 1966, prominent posters in large, handwritten characters appeared at prominent sites, including Peking University, demanding that figures such as Liu Shaoqi (president of the

PRC) and Deng Xiaoping (senior Politburo member) must be condemned as 'takers of the capitalist road'. Top leaders suddenly disappeared from sight, only to be replaced by unknowns, such as Mao's wife Jiang Qing and her associates, later dubbed the 'Gang of Four'. Meanwhile, an all-pervasive cult of Mao's personality took over. One million youths at a time, known as Red Guards, would flock to

hear Mao in Tian'anmen Sq. Posters and pictures of Mao were everywhere. The Red Guards were not ashamed to admit that their tactics were violent. Immense violence permeated throughout society: teachers, intellectuals and landlords were killed in their thousands.

---

During the Cultural Revolution, some 2.2 billion Chairman Mao badges were cast. Read *Mao's Last Revolution* (2006) by Roderick MacFarquhar and Michael Schoenhals for the history; see Zhang Yimou's film *To Live* (1994) to understand the emotions.

---

While Mao initiated and supported the Cultural Revolution, it was also genuinely popular among many young people (who had less to lose). However, police authority effectively disappeared, creative activity came to a virtual standstill and academic research was grounded.

The Cultural Revolution could not last. Worried by the increasing violence, the army forced the Red Guards off the streets in 1969. The early 1970s saw a remarkable rapprochement between the US and China: the former was desperate to extricate itself from the quagmire of the Vietnam war; the latter terrified of an attack from the now-hostile USSR. Secretive diplomatic manoeuvres led, eventually, to the official visit of US President Richard Nixon to China in 1972, which began the reopening of China to the West. Slowly, the Cultural Revolution began to cool down, but its brutal legacy survives today. Many of those guilty of murder and violence re-entered society with little or no judgment while today's CCP discourages open analysis and debate of the 'decade of chaos'.

## REFORM

Mao died in 1976, to be succeeded by the little-known Hua Guofeng (1921–2008). Within two years, Hua had been outmanoeuvred by the greatest survivor of 20th-century Chinese politics, Deng Xiaoping. Deng had been purged twice during the Cultural Revolution, but after Mao's death he was able to reach supreme leadership in the CCP with a radical program. In particular, Deng recognised that the Cultural Revolution had been highly damaging economically to China. Deng enlisted a policy slogan originally invented by Mao's pragmatic prime minister, Zhou Enlai – the 'Four Modernisations'. The party's task



would be to set China on the right path in four areas: agriculture, industry, science and technology, and national defence.

---

Life stories in China went through unimaginable transformations in the early 20th century. Henrietta Harrison's *The Man Awakened from Dreams* (2005) and Robert Bickers' *Empire Made Me* (2003) grippingly describe these changes for a rural scholar and a Shanghai policeman.

---

To make this policy work, many of the assumptions of the Mao era were abandoned. The first highly symbolic move of the 'reform era' (as the post-1978 period is known) was the breaking down of the collective farms. Farmers were able to sell a proportion of their crops on the free market, and urban and rural areas were also encouraged to establish small local

enterprises. 'To get rich is glorious,' Deng declared, adding, 'it doesn't matter if some areas get rich first.' As part of this encouragement of entrepreneurship, Deng designated four areas on China's coast as Special Economic Zones (SEZs), which would be particularly attractive to foreign investors.

Politics was kept on a much shorter rein than the economy, however. Deng was relaxed about a certain amount of ideological impurity, but some other members of the leadership were concerned by the materialism in reform-era China. They supported campaigns of 'antispiritual pollution', in which influences from the capitalist world were condemned. Yet inevitably the overall movement seemed to be towards a freer, market-oriented society.

The new freedoms that the urban middle classes enjoyed created the appetite for more. After student protests demanding further opening up of the party in 1985–86, the prime minister (and relative liberal) Hu Yaobang was forced to resign in 1987 and take responsibility for allowing social forces to get out of control. He was replaced as general secretary by Zhao Ziyang, who was more conservative politically, although an economic reformer. In April 1989 Hu Yaobang died, and students around China used the occasion of his death to organise protests against the continuing role of the CCP in public life. At Peking University, the breeding ground of the May Fourth demonstrations of 1919, students declared the need for 'science and democracy', the modernising watchwords of 80 years earlier, to be revived.

---

The Soviets withdrew all assistance from the PRC in 1960, leaving the great bridge across the Yangzi River at Nanjing half-built. It became a point of pride for Chinese engineers to finish the job without foreign help.

---

In spring 1989 Tian'anmen Sq was the scene of an unprecedented demonstration. At its height, nearly a million Chinese workers and students, in a rare cross-class alliance, filled the space in front of the Gate of Heavenly Peace, with the CCP profoundly embarrassed to have the world's

media record such events. By June 1989 the numbers in the square had dwindled to only thousands, but those who remained showed no signs of moving. Martial law was imposed and on the night of 3 June and early hours of 4 June, tanks and armoured personnel carriers were sent in. The death toll in Beijing has never been officially confirmed, but it seems likely to have been in the high hundreds or even more. Hundreds of people associated with the movement were arrested, imprisoned or forced to flee to the West.

For some three years, China's politics were almost frozen, but in 1992 Deng, the man who had sent in the tanks, made his last grand public gesture. That year, he undertook what Chinese political insiders called his 'southern tour', or *nanxun*. By visiting Shenzhen, Deng indicated that the economic policies of reform were not going to be abandoned. The massive growth rates that the Chinese economy has posted ever since have justified his decision. Deng also made another significant choice: grooming Jiang Zemin – the mayor of Shanghai, who had peacefully dissolved demonstrations in Shanghai in a way that the authorities in Beijing had not – as his successor by appointing him as general secretary of the party in 1989.

## HISTORY MUSEUMS

---

» Hong Kong Museum of History ([Click here](#)) One of the former British territory's best museums: a colourful narrative supported by imaginative displays.

» Shanghai History Museum ([Click here](#)) Excellent chronicle of Shanghai's colourful journey from 'Little Suzhou' to 'Whore of the

Orient' and beyond.

» Macau Museum ([Click here](#)) The ex-Portuguese territory's fascinating history brought vividly to life.

» Shaanxi History Museum ([Click here](#)) Eye-opening and informative chronicle of ancient Chang'an.

## 21ST CENTURY CHINA

From 2002, President Hu Jintao and Prime Minister Wen Jiabao made efforts to deal with growing regional inequality and the poverty scarring rural areas. China's lopsided development continued, however, despite a huge programme to develop the western regions, and help balance them with the booming east and south coast cities. By 2009, an in-flow of US\$325 billion had dramatically boosted GDP per capita in the western regions but a colossal prosperity gap survived and significant environmental challenges – from desertification to water shortages and soil erosion – persisted.

---

In the 18th century, the Chinese used an early form of vaccination against smallpox that required not an injection, but instead the blowing of serum up the patient's nose.

---

The question of political reform found itself shelved, partly because economic growth was bringing prosperity to so many, albeit in uneven fashion. Property prices – especially in the richer eastern coastal provinces – were rocketing and the export and investment-driven economy was

thriving. For many, the first decade of the 21st century was marked by spectacular riches for some – the number of dollar billionaires doubled in just two years – and property prices began moving dramatically beyond the reach of the less fortunate. This period coincided with the greatest migration of workers to the cities the world has ever seen.

---

To show that he was familiar with classical Chinese culture, emperor Kangxi sponsored a great encyclopaedia of Chinese culture, which is still read by scholars today.

China responded to the credit crunch of 2007 and the downturn in Western economies with a stimulus package of US\$586 billion between 2008 and 2009. Property and

---

infrastructure construction enjoyed spectacular growth, buffering China from the worst effects of the downturn, but the export sector contracted as demand dried up overseas. A barrage of restrictions on buying second properties attempted to flush speculators from the market and tame price rises. These policies partially worked but millions of flats across China lay empty – bought by investors happy to see prices rise – and entire ghost towns (such as Ordos in Inner Mongolia, built on the back of the coal rush) had already risen from the ground.

Despite resilient and ambitious planning (the high-speed rail network was massively expanded, the space programme set itself bold targets, some of the world's tallest buildings were flung up), the Chinese economy remained fundamentally imbalanced. Skewed towards the export industry and high-investment projects, it needed to build itself more securely on domestic demand to sustain long-term growth and protect itself from global downturns. Some analysts also sensed that the stimulus package had prompted an even greater over-capacity and over-investment in the Chinese economy, the world's second largest after overtaking Japan in 2011.

---

Chiang Kaishek's New Life Movement and the Chinese Communist Party ideology were attempts to mobilise society through renewal of the individual. But only the communists advocated class war.

---

As a permanent member of the UN Security Council and in its quest for economic and diplomatic influence in Africa and South America, China has a powerful international role. It is, however, hesitant to assume a more influential position in international affairs. China's preference for

remaining neutral but business-like may also be tested: crises such as the ever-volatile North Korean situation, Iran's nuclear ambitions, the Syrian conflict, the scramble for mineral resources in Africa, and energy resources around the globe, mean that China is having to make hard choices about which nations it decides to favour. Relations with the neighbours have become pricklier as China has grown in stature and territorial disputes with India, Japan, the Philippines and Vietnam have increasingly occupied the agenda.

---

# TIMELINE

---

## **c 4000 BC**

Archaeological evidence for the first settlements along the Yellow River (Huang He). Even today, the river remains a central cultural reference point for the Chinese.

---

## **c 1700 BC**

Craftsmen of the Shang dynasty master the production of bronzeware, in one of the first examples of multiple production in history. The bronzes were ritual vessels.

---

## **c 600 BC**

Laotzu (Laozi), founder of Taoism, is supposedly born. The folk religion of Taoism coexisted with later introductions such as Buddhism, a reflection of Chinese religion's syncretic, rather than exclusive, nature.

---

## **551 BC**

The birth of Confucius. Collected in *The Analects*, his ideas of an ethical, ordered society that operated through hierarchy and self-development would dominate Chinese culture until the early 20th century.

---

## **214 BC**

Emperor Qin indentures thousands of labourers to link existing city walls into one Great Wall, made of tamped earth. The stone-clad bastion dates from the Ming dynasty.

---

## **c 100 BC**

The Silk Road between China and the Middle East means that Chinese goods become known in places as far off as Rome.

---

## **c 100 BC**

Buddhism first arrives in China from India. This religious system ends up thoroughly assimilated into Chinese culture and is now more powerful in China than in its country of origin.

## **AD 755–763**

An Lushan rebels against the Tang court. Although his rebellion is put down, the court cedes immense military and fiscal power to provincial leaders, a recurring problem through Chinese history.

---

## **874**

The Huang Chao rebellion breaks out, which will help reduce the Tang empire to chaos and lead to the fall of the capital in 907.

---

## **c 1000**

The major premodern inventions – paper, printing, gunpowder, compass – are commonly used in China. The economy begins to commercialise and create a countrywide market system.

---

## **1215**

Genghis Khan conquers Beijing as part of his creation of a massive Eurasian empire under Mongol rule. The Mongols overstretch themselves, however, and neglect good governance.

---

## **1286**

The Grand Canal is extended to Beijing. Over time, the canal becomes a major artery for the transport of grain, salt and other important commodities between north and south China.

---

## **1298–99**

Marco Polo writes his famous account of his travels to China. Inconsistencies in his story have led some scholars to doubt whether he ever went to China at all.

---

## **1368**

Zhu Yuanzhang founds the Ming dynasty and tries to impose a rigid Confucian social order on the entire population. However, China is now too commercialised for the policy to work.

---

## **1406**

Ming Emperor Yongle begins construction of the 800 buildings of the Forbidden City. This complex, along with much of the Great

Wall, shows the style and size of late- imperial architecture.

---

### **1557**

The Portuguese establish a permanent trade base in Macau, the first of the European outposts that will eventually lead to imperialist dominance of China until the mid-19th century.

---

### **c 1600**

The period of China's dominance as the world's greatest economy begins to end. By 1800 European economies are industrialising and clearly dominant.

---

### **1644**

Beijing falls to peasant rebel Li Zicheng and the last Ming emperor Chongzhen hangs himself in Jingshan Park; the Qing dynasty is established.

---

### **1689**

The Treaty of Nerchinsk is signed, delineating the border between China and Russia: this is the first modern border agreement in Chinese history, as well as the longest lasting.

---

### **1793**

British diplomat Lord Macartney visits Beijing with British industrial products, but is told by the Qianlong emperor that China has no need of his products.

---

### **1823**

The British are swapping roughly 7000 chests of opium annually – with about 140 pounds of opium per chest, enough to supply one million addicts – compared to 1000 chests in 1773.

---

### **1839**

The Qing official Lin Zexu demands that British traders at Guangzhou hand over 20,000 chests of opium, leading the British to provoke the First Opium War in retaliation.

---

### **1842**

The Treaty of Nanjing concludes the first Opium War. China is forced to hand over Hong Kong island to the British and open up five Chinese ports to foreign trade.

---

### **1856**

Hong Xiuquan claims to be Jesus' younger brother and starts the Taiping uprising. With the Nian and Muslim uprisings, the Taiping greatly undermines the authority of the Qing dynasty.

---

### **1882**

Shanghai is electrified by the British-founded Shanghai Electric Company. Shanghai's first electricity-producing plant generates 654kw and the Bund is illuminated by electric light the following year.

---

### **1898**

Emperor Guangxu permits major reforms, including new rights for women, but is thwarted by the Dowager Empress Cixi, who has many reformers arrested and executed.

---

### **1898**

The New Territories adjoining Kowloon in Hong Kong are leased to the British for 99 years, eventually returning, along with the rest of Hong Kong, in 1997.

---

### **1900**

The Hanlin Academy in Beijing – centre of Chinese learning and literature – is accidentally torched by Chinese troops during the Boxer Rebellion, destroying its priceless collection of books.

---

### **1904–05**

The Russo–Japanese War is fought entirely on Chinese territory. The victory of Japan is the first triumph by an Asian power over a European one.

---

### **1905**

Major reforms in the late Qing, including the abolition of the 1000-



year-long tradition of examinations in the Confucian classics to enter the Chinese bureaucracy.

---

## **1908**

Two-year-old Puyi ascends the throne as China's last emperor. Local elites and new classes such as businessmen no longer support the dynasty, leading to its ultimate downfall.

---

## **1911**

Revolution spreads across China as local governments withdraw support for the dynasty, and instead support a republic under the presidency of Sun Yatsen (fundraising in the US at the time).

---

## **1912**

Yuan Shikai, leader of China's most powerful regional army, goes to the Qing court to announce that the game is up: on 12 February the last emperor, six-year-old Puyi, abdicates.

---

## **1915**

Japan makes the '21 demands', which would give it massive political, economic and trading rights in parts of China. Europe's attention is distracted by WWI.

---

## **1916**

Yuan Shikai tries to declare himself emperor. He is forced to withdraw and remain president, but dies of uremia later that year. China splits into areas ruled by rival militarists.

---

## **1925**

The shooting of striking factory workers on 30 May in Shanghai by foreign-controlled police inflames nationalist passions, giving hope to the Kuomintang party, now regrouping in Guangzhou.

---

## **1926**

The Northern Expedition: Kuomintang and communists unite under Soviet advice to bring together China by force, then establish a Kuomintang government.

## **1927**

The Kuomintang leader Chiang Kaishek turns on the communists in Shanghai and Guangzhou, having thousands killed and forcing the communists to turn to a rural-based strategy.

---

## **1930s**

Cosmopolitan Shanghai is the world's fifth-largest city (and the largest city in the Far East), supporting a polyglot population of four million people.

---

## **1930**

Chiang's Kuomintang government achieves 'tariff autonomy': for the first time in nearly 90 years, China regains the power to tax imports freely, an essential part of fiscal stability.

---

## **1931**

Japan invades Manchuria (northeast China), provoking an international crisis and forcing Chiang to consider anti-Japanese, as well as anticommunist, strategies.

---

## **1932**

War breaks out in the streets of Shanghai in February–March, a sign that conflict between the two great powers of East Asia, China and Japan, may be coming soon.

---

## **1935**

Mao Zedong begins his rise to paramount power at the conference at Zunyi, held in the middle of the Long March to the northwest, on the run from the Kuomintang.

---

## **1937**

The Japanese and Chinese clash at Wanping, near Beijing, on 7 July, sparking the conflict that the Chinese call the 'War of Resistance', which only ends in 1945.

---

## **1938**

Former prime minister Wang Jingwei announces he has gone over

to Japan. He later inaugurates a 'restored' Kuomin-tang government with Japan holding the whip hand over government.

---

### **1939**

On 3–4 May Japanese carpet bombing devastates the temporary Chinese capital of Chongqing. From 1938 to 1943, Chongqing is one of the world's most heavily bombed cities.

---

### **1941**

In the base area at Yan'an (Shaanxi), the 'Rectification' program begins, remoulding the Communist Party into an ideology shaped principally by Mao Zedong.

---

### **1941**

The Japanese attack the US at Pearl Harbor. China becomes a formal ally of the US, USSR and Britain in WWII, but is treated as a secondary partner at best.

---

### **1943**

Chiang Kaishek negotiates an agreement with the Allies that, when Japan is defeated, Western imperial privileges in China will end forever, marking the twilight of Western imperialist power in China.

---

### **1946**

Communists and the Kuomintang fail to form a coalition government, plunging China back into civil war. Communist organisation, morale and ideology all prove key to the communist victory.

---

### **1949**

Mao Zedong stands on top of the Gate of Heavenly Peace in Beijing on 1 October, and announces the formation of the PRC, saying 'The Chinese people have stood up'.

---

### **1950**

China joins the Korean War, helping Mao to consolidate his regime with mass campaigns that inspire (or terrify) the population.

## **1957**

A brief period of liberalisation under the 'Hundred Flowers Movement'. However, criticisms of the regime lead Mao to crack down and imprison or exile thousands of dissidents.

---

## **1958**

The Taiwan Straits Crisis. Mao's government fires missiles near islands under the control of Taiwan in an attempt to prevent rapprochement between the US and USSR in the Cold War.

---

## **1962**

The Great Leap Forward causes mass starvation. Politburo members Liu Shaoqi and Deng Xiaoping reintroduce limited market reforms, which will lead to their condemnation during the Cultural Revolution.

---

## **1966**

The Cultural Revolution breaks out, and Red Guards demonstrate in cities across China. The movement is marked by a fetish for violence as a catalyst for transforming society.

---

## **1972**

US President Richard Nixon visits China, marking a major rapprochement during the Cold War, and the start of full diplomatic relations between the two countries.

---

## **1973**

Deng Xiaoping returns to power as deputy premier. The modernising faction in the party fights with the Gang of Four, who support the continuing Cultural Revolution.

---

## **1976**

Mao Zedong dies, aged 83. The Gang of Four are arrested by his successor and put on trial, where they are blamed for all the disasters of the Cultural Revolution.

---

## **1980**

The one-child policy is enforced. The state adopts it as a means of reducing the population, but at the same time imposes unprecedented control over the personal liberty of women.

---

## **1987**

*The Last Emperor*, filmed in the Forbidden City, collects an Oscar for Best Picture, and marks a new openness in China towards the outside world.

---

## **1988**

The daring series *River Elegy (Heshang)* is broadcast on national TV. It is a devastating indictment of dictatorship and Mao's rule in particular, and is banned in China after 1989.

---

## **1989**

Hundreds of civilians are killed by Chinese troops in the streets around Tian'anmen Sq. No official reassessment has been made, but rumours persist of deep internal conflict within the party.

---

## **1997**

Hong Kong is returned to the People's Republic of China. Widespread fears that China will interfere directly in its government prove wrong, but politics become more sensitive to Beijing.

---

## **2001**

China joins the World Trade Organization, giving it a seat at the top table that decides global norms on economics and finance.

---

## **2004**

The world's first commercially operating Maglev train begins scorching a trail across Shanghai's Pudong District, reaching a top speed of 431km/hour.

---

## **2006**

The Three Gorges Dam is completed. Significant parts of the landscape of western China are lost beneath the waters, but energy is also provided for the expanding Chinese economy.

## **2008**

Beijing hosts the 2008 Summer Olympic Games and Paralympics. The Games go smoothly and are widely considered to be a great success in burnishing China's image overseas.

---

## **2008**

Violent riots in Lhasa, Tibet, again put the uneasy region centre stage. Protests spread to other Tibetan areas in Gansu, Sichuan and Qinghai provinces.

---

## **2008**

A huge 8.0 magnitude earthquake convulses Sichuan province, leaving 87,000 dead or missing and rendering millions homeless.

---

## **2009**

July riots in Urumqi leave hundreds dead as interethnic violence flares between Uighurs and Han Chinese. Beijing floods the region with soldiers and implements a 10-month internet blackout.

---

## **2010**

A huge 7.1-magnitude earthquake in the Qinghai region of the far west flattens the remote town of Yushu in April, killing thousands.

---

## **2011**

Two high-speed trains collide in July near Wenzhou in Zhejiang province, killing 40 people, the first fatal high-speed rail crash in China.

---

## **2012**

After the heaviest rainfall in 60 years, Beijing is inundated with epic summer floods; 77 people are killed by the floodwaters and 65,000 evacuated.

# People of China

---

Despite being the world's most populous nation – the stamping ground of roughly one-fifth of humanity – China is often regarded as being largely homogenous, at least from a remote Western perspective. This is probably because Han Chinese – the majority ethnic type in this energetic and bustling nation – constitute over nine-tenths of the population. But like Chinese cuisine, and of course the nation's mystifying linguistic Babel, you only have to cover a bit more mileage and turn a few extra corners to come face-to-face with a colourful mix of ethnicities.

## ETHNICITY

### Han Chinese

Han Chinese (Han zu) – the predominant clan among China's 56th recognised ethnic group – make up the lion's share of China's people, 92% of the total figure. When we think of China – from its writing system to its visual arts, calligraphy, history, literature, language and politics – we tend to associate it with Han culture.

---

The Naxi created a written language more than 1000 years ago using an extraordinary system of pictographs – the only hieroglyphic language still in use today.

---

The Han Chinese are distributed throughout China but are predominantly concentrated along the Yellow River, Yangzi River and Pearl River basins. Taking their name from the Han dynasty, the Han Chinese themselves are not markedly homogenous. China was ruled by non-

Han Altaic (Turk, Tungusic or Mongolian) invaders for long periods, most demonstrably during the Yuan dynasty (Mongols) and the long Qing dynasty (Manchu), but also under the Jin, the Liao and other eras. This Altaic influence is more evident in northern Chinese with their larger and broader frames and rounder faces, compared to their

slighter and thinner southern Han Chinese counterparts, who are physically more similar to the southeast Asian type. Shanghai Chinese for example are notably more southern in appearance; with their rounder faces, Beijing Chinese are quite typically northern Chinese. With mass migration to the cities from rural areas and the increased frequency of marriage between Chinese from different parts of the land, these physical differences are likely to diminish slightly over time.

---

Farwest China ([www.farwestchina.com](http://www.farwestchina.com)) is a useful website and blog covering the people, culture and landscapes of Xinjiang in China's northwest.

---

The Han Chinese display further stark differences in their rich panoply of dialects, which fragments China into a frequently baffling linguistic mosaic, although the promotion of Mandarin (Hanyu – or 'language of the Han') has blurred this considerably. The common written form of Chinese using

characters (Hanzi – or 'characters of the Han'), however, binds all dialects together.

## CHINA DEMOGRAPHICS

---

- » Population: 1.34 billion
- » Birth rate: 12.31 births per 1000 people
- » Percentage of people over 65 years of age: 8.9%
- » Urbanisation rate: 2.3%
- » Sex ratio (under age of 15): 1.17 (boys to girls)
- » Life expectancy: 74.8 years

## The Non-Han Chinese

A glance at the map of China reveals that the core heartland regions of Han China are central fragments of modern-day China's huge expanse. The colossal regions of Tibet, Qinghai, Xinjiang, Inner



Mongolia and the three provinces of the northeast (Manchuria – Heilongjiang, Jilin and Liaoning) are all historically non-Han regions, areas of which remain essentially non-Han today.

---

Around 35% of Omega watch sales occur in China while the nation is second only to the United States in its number of dollar billionaires.

---

Many of these regions are peopled by some of the remaining 8% of the population: China's 55 other ethnic minorities, known collectively as *shaoshu minzu* (; minority nationals). The largest minority groups in China include the Zhuang (), Manchu (; Man zu), Miao (), Uighur (; Weiwu'er zu), Yi (), Tujia (), Tibetan (; Zang zu), Hui (), Mongolian (; Menggu zu), Buyi (), Dong (), Yao (), Korean (; Chaoxian zu), Bai (), Hani (), Li (), Kazak (; Hasake zu) and Dai (). Population sizes differ dramatically, from the sizeable Zhuang in Guangxi to small numbers of Menba () in Tibet. Ethnic labelling can be quite fluid: the roundhouse-building Hakka (; Kejia) were once regarded as a separate minority, but are today considered Han Chinese.

China's minorities tend to cluster along border regions, in the northwest, the west, the southwest, the north and northeast of China, but are also distributed throughout the country. Some people are found in just one area (such as the Hani in Yunnan); others, such as the Muslim Hui ([Click here](#)), live all over China.

Wedged into the southwest corner of China between Tibet, Myanmar (Burma), Vietnam and Laos, fecund Yunnan province alone is home to more than 20 ethnic groups, making it one of the most ethnically diverse provinces in the country. See that chapter for an introduction to the minority peoples of the region.

## THE CHINESE CHARACTER

Shaped by Confucian principles, the Chinese are thoughtful and discreet, subtle but also pragmatic. Conservative and rather introverted, they favour dark clothing over bright or loud colours while their body language is usually reserved and undemonstrative, yet attentive.

The Chinese can be both delightful and mystifyingly contradictory.

One moment they will give their seat to an elderly person on the bus or help someone who is lost, and the next moment they will entirely ignore an old lady who has been knocked over by a motorbike.

Particularly diligent, the Chinese are inured to the kind of hours that may prompt a workers' insurrection elsewhere. This is partly due to a traditional culture of hard work but is also a response to the absence of social-security safety nets and an anxiety regarding economic and political uncertainties. The Chinese impressively save much of what they earn, emphasising the virtue of prudence. Despite this restraint, however, wastefulness can be astounding when 'face' is involved: mountains of food are often left on restaurant dining tables, particularly if important guests are present.

---

Despite their culture once ruling China during the Qing dynasty (1644–1911), possibly fewer than 70 native speakers of the Manchu language survive today.

---

Chinese people are deeply generous. Don't be surprised if a person you have just met on a train invites you for a meal in the dining carriage; they will almost certainly insist on paying, grabbing the bill from the waitress at blinding speed and tenaciously fighting off your attempts

to pay.

The Chinese are also an exceptionally dignified people. They are proud of their civilisation and history, their written language and their inventions and achievements. This pride rarely comes across as arrogance, however, and can be streaked with a lack of self-assurance. The Chinese may, for example, be very gratified by China's newfound world status, but may squirm at the mention of food safety.

The modern Chinese character has been shaped by recent political realities, and while Chinese people have always been reserved and circumspect, in today's China they can appear even more prudent. Impressive mental gymnastics are performed to detour contentious domestic political issues, which can make the mainland Chinese appear complicated, despite their reputation for being straightforward.

## CHINA'S 'ONE-CHILD POLICY'

The 'one-child policy' (actually a misnomer) was railroaded into effect in 1979 in a bid to keep China's population to one billion by the year 2000; the latest government estimate claims the population will peak at 1.5 billion in 2033. The policy was harshly implemented at first but rural revolt led to a softer stance; nonetheless, it generated much bad feeling between local officials and the rural population.

All non-Han minorities are exempt from the one-child policy. Han Chinese parents who were both single children can have a second child. Rural families are now allowed to have two children if the first child is a girl, but some have upwards of three or four kids. Additional children often result in fines and families having to shoulder the cost of education themselves, without government assistance. Official stated policy opposes forced abortion or sterilisation, but allegations of coercion continue as local officials strive to meet population targets.

Families who do abide by the one-child policy will often go to great lengths to make sure their child is male. In parts of China, this has resulted in a serious imbalance of the sexes – in 2010, 118 boys were born for every 100 girls. In some provinces the imbalance has been even higher. By 2020, potentially around 35 million men may be unable to find spouses.

Another consequence of the policy is a rapidly ageing population, with a projected one-third of the populace over the age of sixty by 2040.

As women can have a second child abroad, this led to large numbers of mainland women giving birth in Hong Kong (where the child also qualified for Hong Kong citizenship). The Hong Kong government is attempting to use new legislation to curb this phenomenon, dubbed 'birth tourism', as government figures revealed that almost half of babies born in the territory in 2010 were born to mainland parents.

In recent years signals have emerged that the one-child policy may be relaxed or revised in some provinces and cities.

## WOMEN IN CHINA

### Equality & Emancipation

Chairman Mao once said that women hold up half the sky and when Liu Yang became the first Chinese woman in space in 2012, his words took on a new meaning.

Women in today's China officially share complete equality with men; however, as with other nations that profess sexual equality, the reality is often far different. Chinese women do not enjoy strong political representation and the Chinese Communist Party remains a largely

patriarchal organisation. Iconic political leaders from the early days of the Chinese Communist Party were men and the influential echelons of the party persist as a largely male domain. Only a handful of the great scientists celebrated in a long photographic mural at Shanghai's Science and Technology Museum are women.

---

China has almost 90 cities with populations of five to 10 million people and more than 170 cities with between one and five million people.

---

The Communist Party after 1949 tried to outlaw old customs and put women on equal footing with men. It abolished arranged marriages and encouraged women to get an education and join the workforce.

Women were allowed to keep their maiden name upon marriage and leave their property to their children. In its quest for equality during this period however, the Communist Party seemed to 'desexualise' women, fashioning instead a kind of idealised worker/mother/peasant paradigm.

## Chinese Women Today

High-profile, successful Chinese women are very much in the public eye, but the relative lack of career opportunities for females in other fields also suggests a continuing bias against women in employment.

Women's improved social status today has meant that more women are putting off marriage until their late 20s or early 30s, choosing instead to focus on education and career opportunities. This has been enhanced by the rapid rise in house prices, further encouraging women to leave marriage (and having children) till a later age. Premarital sex and cohabitation before marriage are increasingly common in larger cities and lack the stigma they had several years ago.

Some Chinese women are making strong efforts to protect the rights of women in China, receiving international attention in the process. In 2010 the Simone de Beauvoir prize for women's freedom was awarded to Guo Jianmei, a Chinese lawyer and human rights activist, and filmmaker and professor Ai Xiaoming. Guo Jianmei also received the International Women of Courage Award in 2011.

## **Rural Women in China**

A strong rural-urban divide exists. Urban women are far more optimistic and freer, while women from rural areas, where traditional beliefs are at their strongest, fight an uphill battle against discrimination. Rural Chinese mores are heavily biased against females, where a marked preference for baby boys exists. China's women are more likely to commit suicide than men (in the West it is the other way around), while the suicide rate for rural Chinese women is around five times the urban rate.

# Religion & Beliefs

Despite the seemingly pragmatic nature of the Chinese people, ideas have always possessed a particular volatility and potency in the Middle Kingdom. It may have become alloyed with consumerism in today's China, but communism itself was a forceful ideology that briefly assumed supreme authority over the minds of China's citizens. The Taiping Rebellion of the 19th century fused Christianity with revolutionary principles of social organisation, almost sweeping away the Qing dynasty in the process and leaving 20 million dead in its horrifying 20-year spasm. The momentary incandescence of the Boxer Rebellion (1899–1901) drew upon a volatile cocktail of martial-arts practices and superstition, blended with xenophobia. The chaos of the Cultural Revolution is another reminder of what may happen in China when ideas assume the full supremacy and stature they seek.

The death of a young toddler, who was run over twice and ignored by nearly 20 passers-by in Foshan in 2011, prompted a passionate debate about morals in modern Chinese society.

The Chinese Communist Party (CCP) today remains fearful of ideas and beliefs that challenge its authority. Proselytising is not permitted, religious organisation is regulated and organisations such as Falun Gong ([Click here](#)) can be banned outright.

Despite these constraints, worship and religious practice is generally permitted and China's spiritual world provides a vivid and colourful backdrop to contemporary Chinese life.

## FALUN GONG

Falun Gong – a practice that merges elements of *qigong* -style regulated breathing and standing exercises with Buddhist teachings, fashioning a quasi-religious creed in the process – literally means 'Practice of the Dharma Wheel'. Riding a wave of interest in *qigong* systems in the 1990s, Falun Gong claimed as many as 100 million adherents in China by 1999. The technique was banned in the same year after over 10,000 practitioners stood in silent protest outside Zhongnanhai in Beijing, following protests in Tianjin when a

local magazine published an article critical of Falun Gong. The authorities had been unnerved by the movement's audacity and organisational depth, construing Falun Gong as a threat to the primacy of the CCP. The movement was branded a cult (*xiejiao*) and a robust, media-wide propaganda campaign was launched against practitioners, forcing many to undergo 're-education' in prison and labour camps. After the ban, the authorities treated Falun Gong believers harshly and reports surfaced of adherents dying in custody. The UK Chinese Embassy website ([www.chinese-embassy.org.uk](http://www.chinese-embassy.org.uk)) contains propaganda articles on the 'Falun Gong Cult'. Although comments on the articles are invited, there seems to be no messages from readers.

## Religion Today

China has always had a pluralistic religious culture, and although statistics in China are a slippery fish, an estimated 400 million Chinese today adhere to a particular faith. The CCP made strident efforts after 1949 to supplant religious worship with the secular philosophy of communism but since the abandonment of principles of Marxist–Leninist collectivism, this policy has significantly waned.

---

China's oldest surviving Buddhist temple is the White Horse Temple in Luoyang; other Buddhist temples may well have existed but have since vanished.

---

Religion is enjoying an upswing as the people return to religion for spiritual solace at a time of great change, dislocation and uncertainty. The hopeless, poor and destitute may turn to religion as they feel abandoned by communism and the safety nets it once assured. Yet the educated and

prosperous are similarly turning to religion for a sense of guidance and direction in a land many Chinese suspect has become morally bereft.

Religious belief in China has traditionally been marked by tolerance. Although the faiths are quite distinct, some convergence exists between Buddhism, Taoism and Confucianism, and you may discover shrines where all three faiths are worshipped.

Guanyin, the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy, finds her equivalent in Tianhou (Mazu), the Taoist goddess and protector of fisher folk, and the two goddesses can seem almost interchangeable. Other symbioses exist: elements of Taoism and Buddhism can be discerned in the thinking of some Chinese Christians, while the Virgin Mary finds a familiar toehold in the Chinese psyche owing to her physical

similarity with Guanyin.

## Buddhism

Although not an indigenous faith, Buddhism (Fo Jiao) is the religion most deeply associated with China and Tibet. Although Buddhism's authority had long ebbed, the faith still exercises a powerful influence over the spiritual persona of China. Many Chinese may not be regular temple-goers but they possess an interest in Buddhism; they may merely be 'cultural Buddhists', with a strong affection for Buddhist civilisation.

---

Beyond Tibet, China has four sacred Buddhist mountains, each one the home of a specific Bodhisattva. The two most famous mountains are Wutai Shan and Emei Shan, respectively ruled over by Wenshu and Puxiang.

---

Chinese towns with any history usually have several Buddhist temples, but the number is well down on pre-1949 figures. The small Hebei town of Zhengding, for example, has four Buddhist temples, but at one time had eight. Beijing once had hundreds of Buddhist temples, compared to the 20 or so you can find today.

Some of China's greatest surviving artistic achievements are Buddhist in inspiration. The largest and most ancient repository of Chinese, Central Asian and Tibetan Buddhist artwork can be found at the Mogao Caves in Gansu, while the carved Buddhist caves at both Longmen and Yungang are spectacular pieces of religious and creative heritage.

## Origins

Founded in ancient India around the 5th century BC, Buddhism teaches that all of life is suffering, and that the cause of this anguish is desire, itself rooted in sensation and attachment. Suffering can only be overcome by following the eightfold path, a set of guidelines for moral behaviour, meditation and wisdom. Those who have freed themselves from suffering and the wheel of rebirth are said to have attained nirvana or enlightenment. The term Buddha generally refers to the historical founder of Buddhism, Siddhartha Gautama, but is also sometimes used to denote those who have achieved enlightenment.



Siddhartha Gautama left no writings; the sutras that make up the Buddhist canon were compiled many years after his death.

## GUANYIN

The boundlessly compassionate countenance of Guanyin, the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy, can be encountered in temples across China. The goddess (more strictly a Bodhisattva or a Buddha-to-be) goes under a variety of aliases: Guanshiyin (literally 'Observing the Cries of the World') is her formal name, but she is also called Guanzizai, Guanyin Dashi and Guanyin Pusa, or, in Sanskrit, Avalokiteshvara. Known as Kannon in Japan and Guanyam in Cantonese, Guanyin shoulders the grief of the world and dispenses mercy and compassion. Christians will note a semblance to the Virgin Mary in the aura surrounding the goddess, which at least partially explains why Christianity has found a slot in the Chinese consciousness.

In Tibetan Buddhism, her earthly presence manifests itself in the Dalai Lama, and her home is the Potala Palace ([Click here](#)) in Lhasa. In China, her abode is the island of Putuoshan ([Click here](#)) in Zhejiang province, the first two syllables of which derive from the name of her palace in Lhasa.

In temples throughout China, Guanyin is often found at the very rear of the main hall, facing north (most of the other divinities, apart from Weituo, face south). She typically has her own little shrine and stands on the head of a big fish, holding a lotus in her hand. On other occasions, she has her own hall, often towards the rear of the temple.

The goddess (who in earlier dynasties appeared to be male rather than female) is often surrounded by little effigies of the *luohan* (or *arhat*; those freed from the cycle of rebirth), who scamper about; the Guanyin Pavilion ([Click here](#)) outside Dali is a good example of this. Guanyin also appears in a variety of forms, often with just two arms, but sometimes also in a multi-armed form (as at the Puning Temple in Chengde; [Click here](#)). The 11-faced Guanyin, the fierce horse-head Guanyin, the Songzi Guanyin (literally 'Offering Son Guanyin') and the Dripping Water Guanyin are just some of her myriad manifestations. She has traditionally been a favourite subject for *dehua* (white-glazed porcelain) figures, which are typically very elegant.

## Buddhism in China

Like other faiths such as Christianity, Nestorianism, Islam and Judaism, Buddhism originally reached China via the Silk Road. The earliest recorded Buddhist temple in China proper dates back to the 1st century AD, but it was not until the 4th century when a period of warlordism coupled with nomadic invasions plunged the country into disarray, that Buddhism gained mass appeal. Buddhism's sudden

growth during this period is often attributed to its sophisticated ideas concerning the afterlife (such as karma and reincarnation), a dimension unaddressed by either Confucianism or Taoism. At a time when existence was especially precarious, spiritual transcendence was understandably popular.

As Buddhism converged with Taoist philosophy (through terminology used in translation) and popular religion (through practice), it went on to develop into something distinct from the original Indian tradition. The most famous example is the esoteric Chan school (Zen in Japanese), which originated sometime in the 5th or 6th century, and focused on attaining enlightenment through meditation. Chan was novel not only in its unorthodox teaching methods, but also because it made enlightenment possible for laypeople outside the monastic system. It rose to prominence during the Tang and Song dynasties, after which the centre of practice moved to Japan. Other major Buddhist sects in China include Tiantai (based on the teachings of the Lotus Sutra) and Pure Land, a faith-based teaching that requires simple devotion, such as reciting the Amitabha Buddha's name, in order to gain rebirth in paradise. Today, Pure Land Buddhism is the most common.

## Buddhist Schools

Regardless of its various forms, most Buddhism in China belongs to the Mahayana school, which holds that since all existence is one, the fate of the individual is linked to the fate of others. Thus, Bodhisattvas – those who have already achieved enlightenment but have chosen to remain on earth – continue to work for the liberation of all other sentient beings. The most popular Bodhisattva in China is Guanyin, the Goddess of Mercy.

---

The Chinese verb for 'to know' is *zhidao* (知), literally 'know the *dao*' or 'to know the way', indicating a possible Taoist etymology.

---

Ethnic Tibetans and Mongols within China practise a unique form of Mahayana Buddhism known as Tibetan or Tantric Buddhism (Lama Jiao). Tibetan Buddhism, sometimes called Vajrayana or 'thunderbolt vehicle', has been practised since the early 7th century AD and is influenced by Tibet's pre-Buddhist Bon

religion, which relied on priests or shamans to placate spirits, gods and demons. Generally speaking, it is much more mystical than other forms of Buddhism, relying heavily on mudras (ritual postures), mantras (sacred speech), yantras (sacred art) and secret initiation rites. Priests called lamas are believed to be reincarnations of highly evolved beings; the Dalai Lama is the supreme patriarch of Tibetan Buddhism.

## Taoism

A home-grown philosophy-cum-religion, Taoism is also perhaps the hardest of all China's faiths to grasp. Controversial, paradoxical, and – like the Tao itself – impossible to pin down, it is a natural counterpoint to rigid Confucianist order and responsibility.

Taoism predates Buddhism in China and much of its religious culture connects to a distant animism and shamanism, despite the purity of its philosophical school. In its earliest and simplest form, Taoism draws from *The Classic of the Way and Its Power* (Taote Jing; Daode Jing), penned by the sagacious Laotzu (Laozi; c 580–500 BC) who left his writings with the gatekeeper of a pass as he headed west on the back of an ox. Some Chinese believe his wanderings took him to a distant land in the west where he became Buddha.

*The Classic of the Way and Its Power* is a work of astonishing insight and sublime beauty. Devoid of a god-like being or deity, Laotzu's writings instead endeavour to address the unknowable and indescribable principle of the universe, which he calls Dao (*dao*; 道), or 'the Way'. This way is the way or method by which the universe operates, so it can be understood to be a universal or cosmic principle.

---

Confucius Institutes around the world aim to promote Chinese language and culture internationally, while simultaneously developing its economic and cultural influences abroad.

---

The opening lines of *The Classic of the Way and Its Power* confess, however, that the treatise may fail in its task: 道可道，非常道；‘The way that can be spoken of is not the real way, the name that can be named is not the true name’. Despite this disclaimer, the 5000-character book, completed in

terse classical Chinese, somehow communicates the nebulous power and authority of 'the Way'. The book remains the seminal text of Taoism, and Taoist purists see little need to look beyond its revelations.

One of Taoism's most beguiling precepts, *wuwei* (inaction) champions the allowing of things to naturally occur without interference. The principle is enthusiastically pursued by students of Taiji Quan, Wuji Quan and other soft martial arts ([Click here](#)) who seek to equal nothingness in their bid to lead an opponent to defeat himself.

## Confucianism

The very core of Chinese society for the past two millennia, Confucianism (Rujia Sixiang) is a humanist philosophy that strives for social harmony and the common good. In China, its influence can be seen in everything from the emphasis on education and respect for elders to the patriarchal role of the government.

Confucianism is based upon the teachings of Confucius (Kongzi; [Click here](#)), a 6th-century-BC philosopher who lived during a period of constant warfare and social upheaval. While Confucianism changed considerably throughout the centuries, some of the principal ideas remained the same – namely an emphasis on five basic hierarchical relationships: father-son, ruler-subject, husband-wife, elder-younger, and friend-friend. Confucius believed that if each individual carried out his or her proper role in society (ie, a son served his father respectfully while a father provided for his son, a subject served his ruler respectfully while a ruler provided for his subject, and so on) social order would be achieved. Confucius' disciples later gathered his ideas in the form of short aphorisms and conversations, forming the work known as *The Analects* (Lunyu).

---

David Aikman's *Jesus in Beijing: How Christianity Is Transforming China and Changing the Global Balance of Power* (2003) predicts almost one third of Chinese turning to Christianity within 30 years.

---

Early Confucian philosophy was further developed by Mencius (Mengzi) and Xunzi, both of whom provided a theoretical and practical foundation for many of Confucius' moral concepts. In the 2nd century

---

BC, Confucianism became the official ideology of the Han dynasty, thereby gaining mainstream acceptance for the first time. This was of major importance and resulted in the formation of an educated elite that served both the government as bureaucrats and the common people as exemplars of moral action. During the rule of the Tang dynasty an official examination system was created, which, in theory, made the imperial government a true meritocracy. However, this also contributed to an ossification of Confucianism, as the ideology grew increasingly mired in the weight of its own tradition, focusing exclusively on a core set of texts.

Nonetheless, influential figures sporadically reinterpreted the philosophy – in particular Zhu Xi (1130–1200), who brought in elements of Buddhism and Taoism to create Neo Confucianism (Lixue or Daoxue) – and it remained a dominant social force up until the 1911 Revolution toppled the imperial bureaucracy. In the 20th century, intellectuals decried Confucian thought as an obstacle to modernisation and Mao further levelled the sage in his denunciation of ‘the Four Olds’. But feudal faults notwithstanding, Confucius’ social ethics have again resurfaced in government propaganda where they lend authority to the leadership’s emphasis on ‘harmony’ (*hexie*).

## NATIONALISM

In today’s China, ‘-isms’ (; *zhuyi* or ‘doctrines’) are often frowned upon. Any *zhuyi* may suggest a personal focus that the CCP would prefer people channel into hard work instead. ‘Intellectualism’ is suspect as it may clash with political taboos. ‘Idealism’ is non-pragmatic and potentially destructive, as Maoism showed.

Many argue that China’s one-party state has reduced thinking across the spectrum via propaganda and censorship, dumbing-down and an educational system that emphasises patriotic education. This has, however, helped spawn another ‘-ism’: nationalism.

Nationalism is not restricted to Chinese youth but it is this generation – with no experience of the Cultural Revolution’s terrifying excesses – which most closely identifies with its message. The *fenqing* (angry youth) have been swept along with China’s rise; while they are no lovers of the CCP, they yearn for a stronger China that can stand up to ‘foreign interference’ and dictate its own terms.

The CCP actively encourages strong patriotism, but is nervous about its transformation into nationalism and its potential for disturbance. Much nationalism in the PRC has little to

do with the CCP but everything to do with China; while the CCP has struggled at length to identify itself with China's civilisation and core values, it has been only partially successful. With China's tendency to get quickly swept along by passions, nationalism is an often unseen but quite potent force in today's China.

## Christianity

The explosion of interest in Christianity (Jidujiao) in China over recent years is unprecedented except for the wholesale conversions that accompanied the tumultuous rebellion of the pseudo-Christian Taiping in the 19th century.

Christianity first arrived in China with the Nestorians, a sect from ancient Persia that split with the Byzantine Church in 431 AD, who arrived in China via the Silk Road in the 7th century. A celebrated tablet – the Nestorian Tablet – in Xi'an records their arrival. Much later, in the 16th century, the Jesuits arrived and were popular figures at the imperial court, although they made few converts.

---

Believing he was the son of God and brother of Jesus Christ, Hakka rebel Hong Xiuquan led the bloody and tumultuous pseudo-Christian Taiping Rebellion against the Qing dynasty from 1856 to 1864.

---

Large numbers of Catholic and Protestant missionaries established themselves in the 19th century, but left after the establishment of the People's Republic of China in 1949. One such missionary, James Hudson Taylor from Barnsley in England, immersed himself in Chinese culture and is

credited with helping to convert 18,000 Chinese Christians and building 600 churches during his 50 years in China in the 19th century.

In today's China, Christianity is a burgeoning faith perhaps uniquely placed to expand due to its industrious work ethic, associations with first-world nations and its emphasis on human rights and charitable work.

Some estimates point to as many as 100 million Christians in China. However, the exact population is hard to calculate as many groups – outside the four official Christian organisations – lead a strict underground existence (in what are called 'house churches') out of fear of a political clampdown.

## Islam

Islam (Yisilan Jiao) in China dates to the 7th century, when it was first brought to China by Arab and Persian traders along the Silk Road. Later, during the Mongol Yuan dynasty, maritime trade increased, bringing new waves of merchants to China's coastal regions, particularly the port cities of Guangzhou and Quanzhou. The descendants of these groups – now scattered across the country – gradually integrated into Han culture, and are today distinguished primarily by their religion. In Chinese, they are referred to as the Hui.

Other Muslim groups include the Uighurs, Kazaks, Kyrgyz, Tajiks and Uzbeks, who live principally in the border areas of the northwest. It is estimated that 1.5% to 3% of Chinese today are Muslim.

## Communism & Maoism

Ironically (or perhaps intentionally), Mao Zedong, while struggling to uproot feudal superstition and religious belief, sprung to godlike status in China via a personality cult. In the China of today, Mao retains a semi-deified aura.

---

During the Cultural Revolution, many Christian churches around China served as warehouses or factories, and were gradually rehabilitated in the 1980s.

---

Communism sits awkwardly with the economic trajectory of China over the past 30 years. Once a philosophy forged in the white-hot crucible of civil war, revolution and the patriotic fervour to create a nation free from foreign interference, communism had largely run its credible course by the

1960s. By the death of Mao Zedong in 1976, the political philosophy had repeatedly brought the nation to catastrophe, with the Hundred Flowers Movement, the Great Leap Forward and the disastrous violence of the Cultural Revolution.

Communism remains the official guiding principle of the CCP. However, young communist aspirants are far less likely to be ideologues than pragmatists seeking to advance within the party structure. In real terms, many argue that communism has become an adjunct to the survival of the CCP.

Chinese Communism owes something to Confucianism. Confucius'

philosophy embraces the affairs of man and human society and the relationship between rulers and the ruled, rather than the supernatural world. Establishing a rigid framework for human conduct, the culture of Confucianism was easily requisitioned by communists seeking to establish authority over society.

With the collapse of the Soviet Union in 1989, Beijing became aware of the dangers of popular power and sought to maintain the coherence and strength of the state. This has meant that the CCP still seeks to impose itself firmly on the consciousness of Chinese people through patriotic education, propaganda, censorship, nationalism and the building of a strong nation.

---

Kaifeng in Henan province is home to the largest community of Jews in China. The religious beliefs and customs of Judaism (Youtai Jiao) have died out, yet the descendants of the original Jews still consider themselves Jewish.

---

Communism also has considerable nostalgic value for elderly Chinese who bemoan the loss of values in modern-day China and pine for the days when they felt more secure and society was more egalitarian.

Chairman Mao's portrait still hangs in abundance across China, from drum towers in Guangxi province to

restaurants in Beijing, testament to a generation of Chinese who still revere the communist leader. Until his spectacular fall from power in 2012, Chinese politician and Chongqing party chief Bo Xilai launched popular Maoist-style 'red culture' campaigns in Chongqing, which included the singing of revolutionary songs and the mass-texting of quotes from Mao's *Little Red Book*.

## Animism

Around 3% of China's population is animist, a primordial religious belief akin to shamanism. Animists see the world as a living being, with rocks, trees, mountains and people all containing spirits that need to live in harmony. If this harmony is disrupted, restoration of this balance is attempted by a shaman who is empowered to mediate between the human and spirit world. Animism is most widely believed by minority groups and exists in a multitude of forms, some of which have been influenced by Buddhism and other religions.





*Taoist temple, Sik Sik Yuen  
Wong Tai Sin, Hong Kong ([Click here](#))  
ANDREA PISTOLESI / GETTY IMAGES ©*

# Chinese Cuisine

---

Cooking plays a central role in both Chinese society and the national psyche. When Chinese people meet, a common greeting is ‘*Ni chifan le ma ?*’ – ‘Have you eaten yet?’ Work, play, romance, business and the family all revolve around food. Catalysts for all manner of enjoyment, meals are occasions for pleasure and entertainment, to clinch deals, strike up new friendships and rekindle old ones. To fully explore this tasty domain on home soil, all you need is a visa, a pair of chopsticks, an explorative palate and a passion for the unusual and unexpected.

## REAL CHINESE FOOD

Because it so skilfully exported its cuisine abroad, your very first impressions of China were probably via your taste buds. Chinatowns the world over teem with the aromas of Chinese cuisine, ferried overseas by China’s versatile and hard-working cooks. Sundays see flocks of diners filling Chinatowns to ‘yum cha’ and feast on dim sum. Chinese food is a wholesome and tasty point of contact between an immigrant Chinese population and everyone else.

---

Search on [www.bbcgoodfood.com](http://www.bbcgoodfood.com) for a mouth-watering selection of Chinese recipes and full instructions on throwing together some classic and less known dishes from around China.

---

But what you see – and taste – abroad is usually just a wafer-thin slice of a very hefty and wholesome pie. Chinese cuisine in the West is lifted from the cookbook of an emigrant community that largely originated from China’s southern seaboard. In a similar vein, the sing-song melodies of

Cantonese were the most familiar of China’s languages in Chinatowns, even though the dialect finds little purchase in China beyond Hong Kong, Macau, Guangdong and parts of Guangxi. So although you may be hard pressed to avoid dim sum and *cha siu* in your local Chinatown, finding more ‘obscure’ specialities from

elsewhere in China can be either a challenge or an expensive proposition. The 'Peking duck' at your local restaurant, for example, is at best a distant relative of the fowl fired up over fruit-tree wood in the ovens of Beijing *kaoyadian* (roast duck restaurants).

---

*Zongzi* (dumplings made of glutinous rice wrapped in bamboo or reed leaves) are eaten during the Dragon Boat festival.

---

To get an idea of the size of its diverse menu, remember that China is not that much smaller than Europe. Just as Europe is a patchwork of different nation states, languages, cultural traditions and climates, China is also a smorgasbord of dialects,

languages, ethnic minorities and extreme geographic and climatic differences, despite the common Han Chinese cultural overlays.

The sheer size of the land, the strength of local culture and differences in geography and altitude means there can be little in common between the cuisines of Xinjiang and Tibet, even though they are adjacent to each other. Following your nose (and palate) around China is one of the exciting ways to journey the land, so pack a sense of culinary adventure along with your travelling boots!

## TRAVEL YOUR TASTE BUDS

---

China is such a gourmand's paradise you won't know when to stop. In the north, fill up on a tasty dish of wontons (*hundun*) stuffed with juicy leeks and minced pork, or Mongolian hotpot (*Menggu huoguo*), a hearty brew of mutton, onions and cabbage.

Locals from China's arid northwest can pop a bowl of noodles topped with sliced donkey meat (*lurou huang mian*) under your nose or sizzling lamb kebobs (*kao yangrou*) in your fingers. Stop by Xian for warming bowls of mutton broth and shredded flat bread (*yangrou paomo*). A bowl of Lanzhou hand-pulled noodles (*la mian*) is a meal in itself.

In case you're pining for something sweet and savoury, head to Shanghai for delicious honey-smoked carp (*mizhi xunyu*) or a tongue-tingling plate of hot and sour squid (*suanla youyu*). Cleanse your palate with a glass of heady Shaoxing yellow wine (*Shaoxing huangjiu*) or the more delicate flavours of Dragonwell tea (*longjing cha*). It may not exactly give you wings, but a dish of Huangshan braised pigeon (*Huangshan dunge*) will definitely give you the stamina to clamber up the misty inclines of Huangshan.

Some like it hot, and little comes hotter than the fiery flavours of Sichuan. Begin with mouth-numbing mapo tofu (*mapo doufu*), followed by the celebrated spicy chicken with peanuts (*gongbao jiding*). If the smoke still isn't coming out of your ears, fish smothered in

chilli (*shuizhu yu*) should have you breathing fire. Alternatively, test your mettle with a volcanic Chongqing hotpot.

In the south, relax with morning dim sum in Guangzhou or a bowl of Cantonese snake soup (*she geng*) in one of the city's boisterous night markets. While in Macau, taste the Macanese dish *porco a alentejana*, a mouthwatering casserole of pork and clams.

## REGIONAL COOKING

The evolution of China's wide-ranging regional cuisines has been influenced by the climate, the distribution of crop and animal varieties, the type of terrain, proximity to the sea and the influence of neighbouring nations and the import of ingredients and aromas. Naturally sea fish and seafood is prevalent in coastal regions of China, while in Inner Mongolia and Xinjiang there is a dependence on meat such as beef and lamb.

---

Spanish traders in the early Qing dynasty first introduced red chilli pepper to China. Not only a spice, chillies are also a rich source of vitamins A and C.

---

Another crucial ingredient was history. The flight of the Song court south of the Chang Jiang (Yangzi River) from northern Jurchen invaders in the 12th century helped develop China's major regional cuisines. This process was further influenced by urbanisation, itself made possible by

the commercialisation of agriculture and food distribution, which saw the restaurant industry emerge and the further consolidation of regional schools. Further impetus came from the merchants and bureaucrats who travelled the land and from improved communications, such as the Grand Canal.

Many Chinese regions lay claim to their own culinary conventions, which may overlap and cross-fertilise each other. The cooking traditions of China's ethnic minorities aside, Han cooking has traditionally been divided into eight schools (; *zhonghua badacaixi*) :

- » **Chuan** (Sichuan cuisine)
- » **Hui** (Anhui cuisine)
- » **Lu** (Shandong cuisine)
- » **Min** (Fujian cuisine)

- » **Su** (Jiangsu cuisine)
- » **Xiang** (Hunan cuisine)
- » **Yue** (Cantonese/Guangdong cuisine)
- » **Zhe** (Zhejiang cuisine)

Although each school is independent and well defined, it is possible to group these eight culinary traditions into **Northern**, **Southern**, **Western** and **Eastern** cooking.

A common philosophy lies at the heart of Chinese cooking, whatever the school. Most vegetables and fruits are yin foods, generally moist and soft, possessing a cooling effect while nurturing the feminine aspect. Yang foods – fried, spicy or with red meat – are warming and nourish the masculine side. Any meal should harmonise flavours and achieve a balance between cooling and warming foods.

## Northern Cooking

With **Shandong** cooking (; *lucai*) – the oldest of the eight regional schools – at its heart, northern cooking also embraces Beijing, northeastern (Manchurian) and Shanxi cuisine, creating the most time-honoured and most central form of Chinese cooking.

In the dry north Chinese wheat belt an accent falls on millet, sorghum, maize, barley and wheat rather than rice (which requires lush irrigation by water to cultivate). Particularly well suited to the harsh and hardy winter climate, northern cooking is rich and wholesome (northerners partially attribute their taller size, compared to southern Chinese, to its effects). Filling breads – such as *mantou* () or *bing* (; flat breads) – are steamed, baked or fried while noodles may form the basis of any northern meal (although the ubiquitous availability of rice means it can always be found). Northern cuisine is frequently quite salty, and appetising dumplings (; *jiaozi*) are widely eaten, usually boiled and sometimes fried.

---

In 2010, diners in China were appalled to discover that one in 10 meals cooked in Chinese restaurants was prepared with cooking oil dredged up from sewers and drains.

---

As Beijing was the principal capital through the Yuan, Ming and Qing dynasties, Imperial cooking is a chief characteristic of the northern school. Peking duck is Beijing's signature dish, served with typical northern

ingredients – pancakes, spring onions and fermented bean paste. You can find it all over China, but it's only true to form in the capital, roasted in ovens fired up with fruit-tree wood.

With China ruled from 1644 to 1911 by non-Han Manchurians, the influence of northeast cuisine (*dongbei cai*) has naturally permeated northern cooking, dispensing a legacy of rich and hearty stews, dense breads, preserved foods and dumplings.

Meat roasting is also more common in the north than in other parts of China. Meats in northern China are braised until falling off the bone, or slathered with spices and barbecued until smoky. Pungent garlic, chives and spring onions are used with abandon and are also used raw.

The nomadic and carnivorous diet of the Mongolians also infiltrates northern cooking, most noticeably in the Mongolian hotpot and the Mongolian barbecue. Milk from nomadic herds of cattle, goats and horses has also crept into northern cuisine, as yoghurts (*suannai*) for example.

Hallmark northern dishes:

PINYIN	SCRIPT ENGLISH
<i>Beijing kaoya</i>	Peking duck
<i>jiao zha yangrou</i>	deep-fried mutton
<i>jiaozi</i>	dumplings
<i>mantou</i>	steamed buns
<i>qing xiang shao ji</i>	chicken wrapped in lotus leaf
<i>rou baozi</i>	steamed meat buns
<i>san mei doufu</i>	sliced bean curd with Chinese cabbage
<i>shuan yangrou</i>	lamb hotpot
<i>si xi wanzi</i>	steamed and fried pork, shrimp and bamboo shoot balls
<i>yuan bao li ji</i>	stir-fried pork tenderloin with coriander
<i>zao liu san bai</i>	stir-fried chicken, fish and bamboo shoots

## Southern Cooking

The southern Chinese – particularly the Cantonese – historically

spearheaded successive waves of immigration overseas, leaving aromatic constellations of Chinatowns around the world. Consequently, Westerners most often associate this school of cooking with China.

---

Streets around China reek with the powerful and popular aromas of stinky tofu (*chou doufu*), a form of fermented tofu with an aroma pitched somewhere between unwashed socks and rotting vegetation.

---

Typified by **Cantonese** cooking (; *yuecai*), southern cooking lacks the richness and saltiness of northern cooking, instead coaxing more subtle aromas to the surface. The Cantonese astutely believe that good cooking does not require much flavouring, for it is the *xian* (natural freshness) of the

ingredients that mark a truly high-grade dish. Hence the near obsessive attention paid to the freshness of ingredients in southern cuisine.

The hallmark Cantonese dish is dim sum (; Mandarin: *dianxin*). Yum cha (literally ‘drink tea’) – another name for dim sum dining – in Guangzhou and Hong Kong can be enjoyed on any day of the week. Dishes – often in steamers – are wheeled around on trolleys so you can see what you want to order. Well-known dim sum dishes include *guotie* (a kind of fried dumpling), *shaomai* (a kind of open pork dumpling), *chashaobao* (pork-filled bun) and *chunjuan* (spring rolls). The extravagantly named *fengzhua* (phoenix claw) is the name for the ever-popular steamed chicken’s feet. *Xiaolongbao* (steamed dumplings) are often sold in dim sum restaurants but are traditionally from Shanghai.

---

You will be charged for a wrapped up hand-cleaning wipe if you open it at your restaurant table; if you don’t use it, it should not appear on your bill.

---

The local regard for Cantonese food is evident in a popular Chinese saying: ‘Be born in Suzhou, live in Hangzhou, eat in Guangzhou and die in Liuzhou’. Suzhou was famed for its good-looking people, Hangzhou was a lovely place to live in, Guangzhou was

the best place to eat while Liuzhou was famed for the wood of its coffins!

**Fujian** cuisine (; *mincai*) is another important southern cooking

style, with its emphasis on light flavours and, due to the province's proximity to the East China Sea, seafood.

Hakka cuisine from the disparate and migratory Hakka people (Kejiazu) is another feature of southern Chinese cooking, as is the food of Chaozhou in eastern Guangdong.

Rice is the primary staple of southern cooking. Sparkling paddy fields glitter across the south; the humid climate, plentiful rainfall and well-irrigated land means that rice has been farmed in the south since the Chinese first populated the region during the Han dynasty (206 BC–AD 220).

Southern-school dishes include the following:

PINYIN	SCRIPT ENGLISH
<i>bai zhuo xia</i>	blanched prawns with shredded scallions
<i>dongjiang yanju ji</i>	salt-baked chicken
<i>gali ji</i>	curried chicken
<i>haoyou niurou</i>	beef with oyster sauce
<i>kao ruzhu</i>	crispy suckling pig
<i>mi zhi chashao</i>	roast pork with honey
<i>she rou</i>	snake
<i>tangcu liji/gulao rou</i>	sweet and sour pork fillets
<i>tangcu paigu</i>	sweet and sour spare ribs

## Western Cooking

The cuisine of landlocked Western China, a region heavily dappled with ethnic shades and contrasting cultures, welcomes the diner to the more scarlet end of the culinary spectrum. The trademark ingredient of the western school is the fiercely hot red chilli, a potent firecracker of a herb that floods dishes with an all-pervading spiciness. Aniseed, coriander, garlic and peppercorns are thrown in for good measure to add extra pungency and bite.

The standout cuisine of the western school is fiery **Sichuan** (; *chuancai*) food, one of China's eight regional cooking styles, renowned for its eye-watering peppery aromas. One of the herbs that differentiates Sichuan cooking from other spicy cuisines is the use of 'flower pepper' (*huajiao*), a numbing peppercorn-like herb that floods



the mouth with an anaesthetising fragrance in a culinary effect termed *mala* (numb and hot). A Sichuan dish you can find cooked up by chefs across China is the delicious sour cabbage fish soup (; *suancai*yu; wholesome fish chunks in a spicy broth). The Chongqing hotpot is a force to be reckoned with but must be approached with a stiff upper lip (and copious amounts of liquid refreshment). If you want a hotpot pitched between spicy and mild, select a *yuanyang* hotpot (y *uanyang huoguo*), a vessel divided yin-yang style into two different compartments for two different soup bases.

Sichuan restaurants are everywhere in China, swarming around train stations, squeezed away down food streets or squished into street markets with wobbly stools and rickety tables parked out front.

Another of China's eight regional schools of cooking, dishes from **Hunan** (; *xiangcai*) are similarly pungent, with a heavy reliance on chilli. Unlike Sichuan food, flower pepper is not employed and instead spicy flavours are often sharper, fiercer and more to the fore. Meat, particularly in Hunan, is marinated, pickled or otherwise processed before cooking, which is generally by stir or flash-frying.

For the lowdown on Muslim Uighur cuisine from China's northwest, see the boxed text ([Click here](#)) in the Xinjiang chapter. For a Chinese–Tibetan menu reader, [Click here](#).

Other western-school dishes:

PINYIN	SCRIPT ENGLISH
<i>bangbang ji</i>	shredded chicken in a hot pepper and sesame sauce
<i>Chongqing huoguo</i>	Chongqing hotpot
<i>dandan mian</i>	spicy noodles
<i>ganshao yan li</i>	stewed carp with ham and hot and sweet sauce
<i>huiguo rou</i>	boiled and stir-fried pork with salty and hot sauce
<i>mala doufu</i>	spicy tofu
<i>Maoshi Hongshaorou</i>	Mao Family Braised Pork
<i>shui zhu niurou</i>	spicy fried and boiled beef
<i>shuizhuyu</i>	fried and boiled fish, garlic sprouts and celery
<i>suancai</i> yu	sour cabbage fish soup
<i>yu xiang rousi</i>	fish-flavour pork strips
<i>zhacai rousi</i>	stir-fried pork or beef tenderloin with tuber mustard

## Eastern Cooking

The eastern school of Chinese cuisine derives from a fertile region of China, slashed by waterways and canals, glistening with lakes, fringed by a long coastline and nourished by a subtropical climate. Jiangsu province itself is the home of **Jiangsu** cuisine (; *sucai*) – one of the core regions of the eastern school – and is famed as the ‘Land of Fish and Rice’, a tribute to its abundance of food and produce. The region was also historically prosperous and in today’s export-oriented economy, the eastern provinces are among China’s wealthiest. This combination of riches and bountiful food created a culture of epicurism and gastronomic enjoyment.

South of Jiangsu, **Zhejiang** cuisine (; *zhecai*) is another cornerstone of Eastern cooking. The Song dynasty saw the blossoming of the restaurant industry here; in Hangzhou, the southern Song-dynasty capital, restaurants and teahouses accounted for two-thirds of the city’s business during a splendidly rich cultural era. At this time, one of Hangzhou’s most famous dishes – *dongpo rou* (named after the celebrated poet and governor of Hangzhou, Su Dongpo) – achieved fame.

Generally more oily and sweeter than other Chinese schools, the eastern school revels in fish and seafood, reflecting its geographical proximity to major rivers and the sea. Fish is usually *qingzheng* (; steamed) but can be stir-fried, pan-fried or grilled. Hairy crabs (*dazhaxie*) are a Shanghai speciality between October and December. Eaten with soy, ginger and vinegar and downed with warm Shaoxing wine, the best crabs come from Yangcheng Lake. The crab is believed to increase the body’s *yin* (coldness), so *yang* (warmth) is added by imbibing lukewarm rice wine with it. It is also usual to eat male and female crabs together.

As with Cantonese food, freshness is a key ingredient in the cuisine, and sauces and seasonings are only employed to augment essential flavours. Stir-frying and steaming are also used, the latter with Shanghai’s famous *xiaolongbao*, steamer buns filled with nuggets of pork or crab swimming in a scalding meat broth. Learning how to devour these carefully without the meat juice squirting everywhere and

scalding the roof of your mouth (or blinding your neighbour) requires some – quite enjoyable – practice.

With a lightness of flavour, **Anhui** cuisine (; *huicai*) – one of China's eight principle culinary traditions and firmly in the eastern cooking sphere – puts less emphasis on seafood. Braising and stewing of vegetables and wildlife from its mountainous habitats is a pronounced feature of this regional cuisine.

China's best soy sauce is also produced in the eastern provinces, and the technique of braising meat using soy sauce, sugar and spices was perfected here. Meat cooked in this manner takes on a dark mauve hue auspiciously described as 'red', a colour associated with good fortune.

Famous dishes from the eastern school include the following:

PINYIN	SCRIPT ENGLISH
<i>jiang cong chao xie</i>	stir-fried crab with ginger and scallions
<i>mizhi xunyu</i>	honey-smoked carp
<i>ning shi shanyu</i>	stir-fried eel with onion
<i>qiezhi yukuai</i>	fish fillet in tomato sauce
<i>qing zheng guiyu</i>	steamed Mandarin fish
<i>songzi guiyu</i>	Mandarin fish with pine nuts
<i>suanla youyu</i>	hot and sour squid
<i>xiaolongbao</i>	steamer buns
<i>youbao xiaren</i>	fried shrimp
<i>zha hei liyu</i>	fried black carp
<i>zha yuwan</i>	fish balls

## Home-Style Dishes

PINYIN	SCRIPT ENGLISH
<i>gongbao jiding</i>	spicy chicken with peanuts; kung pao chicken
<i>haoyou niurou</i>	beef with oyster sauce
<i>hongshao paigu</i>	red-braised spare ribs
<i>hongshao qiezi</i>	red-cooked aubergine
<i>hongshao yu</i>	red-braised fish
<i>huoguo</i>	hotpot

<i>huntun tang</i>	wonton soup
<i>jiachang doufu</i>	'homestyle' tofu
<i>jiaozi</i>	dumplings
<i>jidanmian</i>	noodles and egg
<i>qingjiao rou pian</i>	pork and green peppers
<i>shaguo doufu</i>	bean curd casserole
<i>suanlatang</i>	hot and sour soup
<i>tieban niurou</i>	sizzling beef platter
<i>xihongshi chaojidan</i>	fried egg and tomato
<i>xihongshi jidantang</i>	egg and tomato soup
<i>xihongshi niurou</i>	beef and tomato
<i>yuxiang qiezi</i>	fish-flavoured aubergine

Besides China's regional cuisines, there is a tasty variety of *jiachangcai* (home-style) dishes you will see all over the land, cooked up in restaurants and along food streets.

These include:

## DINING: THE INS & OUTS

### Chinese Restaurants

Chinese eateries come in every conceivable shape, size and type: from shabby, hole-in-the-wall noodle outfits with flimsy PVC furniture, blaring TV sets and well-worn plastic menus to gilded banquet-style restaurants where elegant cheongsam-clad waitresses will show you to your seat, straighten your chopsticks and bring you a warm hand towel and a gold-embossed wine list.

---

According to Greenpeace China, 57 billion disposable chopsticks are manufactured in China annually, the equivalent of 3.8 million trees.

---

In between are legions of very serviceable midrange restaurants serving cuisine from across China.

As dining in China is such a big, sociable and often ostentatious affair, many Chinese banqueting-style restaurants have huge round tables, thousand-candle-power electric lights and precious little sense of

intimacy or romance. Over-attentive and ever-present staff can add to the discomfort for foreigners.

## Dining Times

The Chinese eat early. Lunch usually commences from around 11.30am, either self-cooked or a takeaway at home, or in a street-side restaurant. Dinner kicks off from around 6pm. Reflecting these dining times, some restaurants open at around 11am to close for an afternoon break at about 2.30pm before opening again at around 5pm and closing in the late evening.

## Menus

In Beijing, Shanghai and other large cities, you may be proudly presented with an English menu (; *Yingwen caipu*). In smaller towns and out in the sticks, don't expect anything other than a Chinese-language menu and a hovering waitress with no English language skills. The best is undoubtedly the ever-handly photo menu. If you like the look of what other diners are eating, just point (; *wo yao nei ge*; 'I want that' – a very handy phrase). Alternatively, pop into the kitchen and point out the meats and vegetables you would like to eat. See the Language chapter ([Click here](#)) at the back of the book for handy phrases you can use for ordering food and drink.

## Desserts & Sweets

The Chinese do not generally eat dessert, but fruit – typically watermelon (*xigua*) or oranges (*cheng*) – often concludes a meal. Ice cream can be ordered in some places, but in general sweet desserts (*tianpin*) are consumed as snacks and are seldom available in restaurants.

## Table Manners

Chinese meal times are generally relaxed affairs with no strict rules of etiquette. Meals can commence in a Confucian vein before spiralling into total Taoist mayhem, fuelled by incessant toasts with *baijiu* (a white spirit) or beer and furious smoking by the men.

---

Meals typically unfold with one

It is quite common for banquets and dinners in China to finish abruptly, as everyone stands up and walks away in unison with little delay.

---

person ordering on behalf of a group. When a group dines, a selection of dishes is ordered for everyone to share rather than individual diners ordering a dish just for themselves. As

they arrive, dishes are placed communally in the centre of the table or on a lazy Susan, which may be revolved by the host so that the principal guest gets first choice of whatever dish arrives. Soup may appear midway through the meal or at the end. Rice often arrives at the end of the meal; if you would like it earlier, just ask.

It is good form to fill your neighbours' tea cups or beer glasses when they are empty. To serve yourself tea or any other drink without serving others first is bad form, and appreciation to the pourer is indicated by gently tapping the middle finger on the table.

When your teapot needs a refill, signal this to the waiter by simply taking the lid off the pot.

It's best to wait until someone announces a toast before drinking your beer; if you want to get a quick shot in, propose a toast to the host. The Chinese do in fact toast each other much more than in the West, often each time they drink. A formal toast is conducted by raising your glass in both hands in the direction of the toastee and crying out *ganbei*, literally 'dry the glass', which is the cue to drain your glass in one hit. This can be quite a challenge if your drink is 65% *baijiu*, and your glass is rapidly refilled to the meniscus after you drain it, in preparation for the next toast which may rapidly follow.

---

The Chinese word for tea (*cha*) has colloquially entered numerous different languages, including English (UK), Portuguese, Greek and Russian. The word 'tea' itself comes from the Fujian dialect for tea.

---

Smokers can light up during the meal, unless they are in the no-smoking area of a restaurant.

Depending on the restaurant, smokers may smoke through the entire meal. If you are a smoker, ensure you hand around your cigarettes to others as that is standard procedure.

Don't use your chopsticks to point at people or gesticulate with them and never stick your chopsticks upright in bowls of rice (it's a portent of death).

Last but not least, never insist on paying for the bill if someone else is tenaciously determined to pay – usually the person who invited you to dinner. By all means offer, but then raise your hands in mock surrender when resistance is met; to pay for a meal when another person is determined to pay is to make them lose face.

Chinese toothpick etiquette is similar to that found in other Asian nations: one hand excavates with the toothpick, while the other hand shields the mouth.

Chinese diners will often slurp their noodles quite noisily, which is not considered to be impolite.

## TIPPING

Tipping is never done at cheap restaurants in mainland China. Smart, international restaurants will encourage tipping but it is not obligatory and it's uncertain whether waiting staff receive their tips at the end of the night. Hotel restaurants automatically add a 15% service charge and some high-end restaurants may do the same.

## Street Food

Snacking your way around China is a fine way to sample the different flavours of the land while on the move. Most towns have a street market or a night market (; *yeshi*) for good-value snacks and meals so you can either take away or park yourself on a wobbly stool and grab a beer. Street markets such as Kaifeng's boisterous night market abound with choices you may not find in restaurants. Vocal vendors will be forcing their tasty creations on you but you can also see what people are buying and what's being cooked up, so all you have to do is join the queue and point.

## Eating with Kids

Similar to travelling with children in China, dining out with kids can be a challenge. Budget eateries won't have kids' menus; nor will they have booster seats. Smarter restaurants may supply these but it can be touch and go. In large cities you will be able to find more

restaurants switched on to the needs of families, especially Western restaurants that may have a play area, kids' menu, activities, booster seats and other paraphernalia.

## Breakfast

Breakfast in China is generally light, simple and over and done with quickly. The meal may merely consist of a bowl of rice porridge (; *zhou*) or its watery cousin, rice gruel (; *xifan*). Pickles, boiled eggs, steamed buns, fried peanuts and deep-fried dough sticks (; *youtiao*) are also popular, washed down with warm soybean milk. Breakfast at your Chinese hotel may consist of some or all of these. Coffee is rarely drunk at breakfast time, unless the family is modern, urban and middle class, but it's easy to find cafes, especially in large towns. Sliced bread (; *mianbao*) was once rare but is increasingly common, as is butter (; *huangyou*).

## Vegetarianism

If you'd rather chew on a legume than a leg of lamb, it can be hard going trying to find truly vegetarian dishes. China's history of famine and poverty means the consumption of meat has always been a sign of status, and is symbolic of health and wealth. Eating meat is also considered to enhance male virility, so vegetarian men raise eyebrows. Partly because of this, there is virtually no vegetarian movement in China, although Chinese people may forgo meat for Buddhist reasons. For the same reasons, they may avoid meat on certain days of the month but remain carnivorous at other times.

---

Organic (*youji*) food is experiencing considerable growth and popularity in China, partly as a result of concerns about food safety but also as a reflection of growing incomes.

---

You will find that vegetables are often fried in animal-based oils, while vegetable soups are often made with chicken or beef stock, so simply choosing vegetable items on the menu is ineffective. In Beijing and Shanghai you will, however, find a generous crop of vegetarian restaurants to

choose from alongside outfits such as Element Fresh ([Click here](#)), which has a decent range of healthy vegetarian options.



Out of the large cities, your best bet may be to head to a sizeable active Buddhist temple or monastery, where Buddhist vegetarian restaurants are often open to the public. Buddhist vegetarian food typically consists of ‘mock meat’ dishes created from tofu, wheat gluten, potato and other vegetables. Some of the dishes are almost works of art, with vegetarian ingredients sculpted to look like spare ribs or fried chicken. Sometimes the chefs go to great lengths to create ‘bones’ from carrots and lotus roots.

If you want to say ‘I am a vegetarian’ in Chinese, the phrase to use is (*wo chi su*).

## Tea

An old Chinese saying identifies tea as one of the seven basic necessities of life, along with firewood, oil, rice, salt, soy sauce and vinegar. The Chinese were the first to cultivate tea, and the art of brewing and drinking tea has been popular since Tang times (AD 618–907).

---

Traditionally one of the seven necessities of daily life in China, tea was once employed as a form of currency in the Middle Kingdom.

---

China has three main types of tea: green tea (*lu cha*), black tea (*hong cha*) and *wulong* (a semifermented tea, halfway between black and green tea). In addition, there are other variations, including jasmine (*chashui*) and chrysanthemum (*juhua cha*).

Some famous regional teas of China are Fujian’s *tie guanyin*, *pu’erh* from Yunnan and Zhejiang’s *longjing* tea. Eight-treasure tea (*babao cha*) consists of rock sugar, dates, nuts and tea combined in a cup; it makes a delicious treat. Tea is to the Chinese what fine wine is to the French: a beloved beverage savoured for its fine aroma, distinctive flavour and pleasing aftertaste.

## Alcoholic Drinks

### Beer

If tea is the most popular drink in China, then beer (; *pjiu*) is surely second. Many towns and cities have their own brewery and label, although a remarkable feat of socialist standardisation ensures a

striking similarity in flavour and strength. You can drink bathtubs of the stuff and still navigate a straight line. If you want your beer cold, ask for *liang de* (冰的), and if you want it truly arctic, call for *bingzhen de* (冰冻的).

---

The world's fifth largest producer of wine in 2010, China may become the world's sixth largest consumer of wine by 2014.

---

The best-known beer is Tsingtao, made with Lao Shan mineral water, which lends it a sparkling quality. It's originally a German beer since the town of Qingdao (formerly spelled 'Tsingtao') was once a German concession and the Chinese inherited

the brewery (see the boxed text, [Click here](#)), which dates to 1903, along with Bavarian beer-making ways.

Several foreign beers are also brewed in China. If you crave variety, many of the bars listed in this book should have a selection of foreign imported beers; prices will be high, however.

Also look out for black beer from Xinjiang and dark beers from other local breweries (eg Reeb beer in Shanghai), which offer more bite. Rather more alternative beers include Inner Mongolian milk beer and pineapple beer from Beijing.

## Wine

Surging demand for imported wines saw China and Hong Kong emerge as the world's largest consumer of Bordeaux wines in 2011. Expensive French reds (*hongjiu*) are treasured in a fashionable market that was only finding its feet a mere 15 years ago. Wine has become the drink of choice among an increasingly sophisticated business class eager to appear discerning and flamboyant. Unfortunately this also means you can pay way over the odds at restaurants in Shanghai or Beijing for imported wines. White wine consumption is increasingly associated with female drinkers in China.

China has also cultivated vines and produced wine for an estimated 4000 years, and Chinese wines are generally cheaper than imports from abroad. The provinces of Xinjiang and Ningxia in the distant northwest of China are famous for their vineyards.

## Spirits

The word 'wine' gets rather loosely translated – many Chinese 'wines'

are in fact spirits. Maotai, a favourite of Chinese drinkers, is a very expensive spirit called *baijiu* made from sorghum (a type of millet) and used for toasts at banquets. The cheap alternative is Erguotou, distilled in Beijing but available all over China; look out for the Red Star (Hongxing) brand. *Baijiu* ranges across the alcohol spectrum from milder forms to around 65% proof. Milder rice wine is intended mainly for cooking rather than drinking but can be drunk warm like sake.

---

China's huge market for fine wines has seen an explosion in the market for empty bottles. Empty bottles of Chateau Lafite Rothschild 1982 are especially prized by fraudsters who refill bottles with inferior vintages for resale.

---



*Qie zhi yu pian – a fish, tomato and capsicum dish*  
FOODCOLLECTION / GETTY IMAGES ©



*Tea ceremony*  
LONELY PLANET / GETTY IMAGES ©

# Arts & Architecture

---

China is custodian of one of the world's richest cultural and artistic legacies. Until the 20th century, China's arts were deeply conservative and resistant to change but in the last hundred years revolutions in technique and content have fashioned a dramatic transformation. Despite this evolution, China's arts – whatever the period – remain united by a common aesthetic that taps into the very soul and essence of the nation.

## AESTHETICS

In reflection of the Chinese character ([Click here](#)), Chinese aesthetics have traditionally been marked by restraint and understatement, a preference for oblique references over direct explanation, vagueness in place of specificity and an avoidance of the obvious in place of a fondness for the veiled and subtle. Traditional Chinese aesthetics sought to cultivate a more reserved artistic impulse, principles that compellingly find their way into virtually every Chinese art form, from painting to sculpture, ceramics, calligraphy, film, poetry, literature and beyond.

---

Consultant designer of the Bird's Nest, Chinese artist Ai Weiwei later distanced himself from the stadium, saying it was a 'pretend smile' of bad taste.

---

As one of the central strands of the world's oldest civilisation, China's aesthetic traditions are tightly woven into the Chinese cultural identity. For millennia, Chinese aesthetics were highly traditionalist and, despite coming under the influence of occupiers from the Mongols to the

Europeans, defiantly conservative. It was not until the fall of the Qing dynasty in 1911 and the appearance of the New Culture Movement that China's great artistic traditions began to rapidly transform. In literature the stranglehold of classical Chinese loosened to allow breathing space for *baihua* (colloquial Chinese) and a progressive

new aesthetic began to flower, ultimately leading to revolutions in all of the arts, from poetry to painting, theatre and music.

It is hard to square China's great aesthetic traditions with the devastation inflicted upon them since 1949. Confucius advocated the edifying role of music and poetry in shaping human lives, but 5th-century philosopher Mozi was less enamoured with them, seeing music and other arts as extravagant and wasteful. The communists took this a stage further, enlisting the arts as props in their propaganda campaigns, and permitting the vandalism and destruction of much traditional architecture and heritage. Many of China's traditional skills (such as martial arts lineages) and crafts either died out or went into decline during the Cultural Revolution. Many of the arts have yet to recover fully from this deterioration, even though opening up and reform prompted a vast influx of foreign artistic concepts.

## CALLIGRAPHY

Although calligraphy (; *shufa*) has a place among most languages that employ alphabets, the art of calligraphy in China is taken to unusual heights of intricacy and beauty. Although Chinese calligraphy is beautiful in its own right, the complex infatuation Chinese people have for their written language helps elucidate their great respect for the art of calligraphy.

---

The most abstract calligraphic form is grass or cursive script (*caoshu*), a highly fluid style of penmanship which even Chinese people have difficulty reading.

---

To understand how perfectly suited written Chinese is for calligraphy, it is vital to grasp how written Chinese works. A word in English represents a sound alone; a written character in Chinese combines both sound and a picture. Indeed, the sound element of a Chinese character – when present –

is often auxiliary to the presentation of a visual image, even if abstract.

Furthermore, although some Chinese characters were simplified in the 1950s as part of a literacy drive, most characters have remained unchanged for thousands of years. As characters are essentially images, they inadequately reflect changes in spoken Chinese over

time. A phonetic written language such as English can alter over the centuries to reflect changes in the sound of the language. Being pictographic, Chinese cannot easily do this, so while the spoken language has transformed over the centuries, the written language has remained more static.

This helps explain why Chinese calligraphy is the trickiest of China's arts to comprehend for Western visitors, unless they have a sound understanding of written Chinese. The beauty of a Chinese character may be partially appreciated by a Western audience, but for a full understanding it is also essential to understand the meaning of the character in context.

---

The five fundamental brushstrokes necessary to master calligraphy can be found in the character which means eternal or forever.

---

There are five main calligraphic scripts – seal script, clerical script, semicursive script, cursive script and standard script – each of which reflects the style of writing of a specific era. Seal script, the oldest and most complex, was the official writing

system during the Qin dynasty and has been employed ever since in the carving of the seals and name chops (stamps carved from stone) that are used to stamp documents. Expert calligraphers have a preference for using full-form characters (*fantizi*) rather than their simplified variants (*jiantizi*).

## BEST ART MUSEUMS AND GALLERIES

---

- » **Shanghai Museum** ([Click here](#)) An outstanding collection of traditional Chinese art and antiquities.
- » **Poly Art Museum** ([Click here](#)) Inspiring displays of traditional bronzes and Buddhist statues.
- » **Rockbund Art Museum** ([Click here](#)) Forward-thinking museum of contemporary art, just off the Bund.
- » **Hong Kong Museum of Art** ([Click here](#)) First-rate display of antiquities, paintings, calligraphy and contemporary Hong Kong art.



- » **M50** ([Click here](#)) Contemporary art in a converted Shanghai industrial zone.
- » **798 Art District** ([Click here](#)) Beijing's premier art zone, housed in a former electronics factory.
- » **Propaganda Poster Art Centre** ([Click here](#)) Shanghai treasure trove of propaganda art from the communist golden age.
- » **Beaugeste** ([Click here](#)) Tiny Shanghai gallery dedicated to contemporary photography.

## PAINTING

### Traditional Painting

Unlike Chinese calligraphy, no 'insider' knowledge is required for a full appreciation of traditional Chinese painting. Despite its symbolism, obscure references and occasionally abstruse philosophical allusions, Chinese painting is highly accessible. For this reason, traditional Chinese paintings – especially landscapes – have long been treasured in the West for their beauty.

As described in Xie He's 6th century AD treatise, the *Six Principles of Painting*, the chief aim of Chinese painting is to capture the innate essence or spirit (*qi*) of a subject and endow it with vitality. The brush line, varying in thickness and tone, was the second principle (referred to as the 'bone method') and is the defining technique of Chinese painting. Traditionally, it was imagined that brushwork quality could reveal the artist's moral character. As a general rule, painters were less concerned with achieving outward resemblance (that was the third principle) than with conveying intrinsic qualities.

Early painters dwelled on the human figure and moral teachings, while also conjuring up scenes from everyday life. By the time of the Tang dynasty, a new genre, known as landscape painting, had begun to flower. Reaching full bloom during the Song and Yuan dynasties, landscape painting meditated on the surrounding environment. Towering mountains, ethereal mists, open spaces, trees and rivers, and light and dark were all exquisitely presented in ink washes on silk.

Landscape paintings attempted to capture the metaphysical and the absolute, drawing the viewer into a particular realm where the philosophies of Taoism and Buddhism found expression. Humanity is typically a small and almost insignificant subtext to the performance. The dream-like painting sought to draw the viewer in rather than impose itself on them.

On a technical level, the success of landscapes depended on the artists' skill in capturing light and atmosphere. Blank, open spaces devoid of colour create light-filled voids, contrasting with the darkness of mountain folds, filling the painting with *qi* and vaporous vitality. Specific emotions are not aroused but instead nebulous sensations permeate. Painting and classical poetry often went hand in hand, best exemplified by the work of Tang-dynasty poet/artist Wang Wei (699–759).

## Modern Art

### Socialist-Realism

After 1949, classical Chinese techniques were abandoned and foreign artistic techniques imported wholesale. Washes on silk were replaced with oil on canvas and China's traditional obsession with the mysterious and ineffable made way for concrete attention to detail and realism.

---

For in-depth articles and reviews of contemporary Chinese arts and artists, click on [www.newchineseart.com](http://www.newchineseart.com), run by the Shanghai-based gallery Art Scene China.

---

By 1970 Chinese artists had aspired to master the skills of socialist-realism, a vibrant communist-endorsed style that drew from European neoclassical art, the lifelike canvases of Jacques-Louis David and the output of Soviet Union painters. Saturated with political symbolism and propaganda, the blunt

artistic style was produced on an industrial scale.

The entire trajectory of Chinese painting – which had evolved in glacial increments over the centuries – had been redirected virtually overnight. Vaporous landscapes were substituted with hard-edged panoramas. Traditional Taoist and Buddhist philosophy was overturned and humans became the master of nature. Dreamy vistas

were out; smoke stacks, red tractors and muscled peasants were in.

## **Propaganda Art**

Another art form that found a fertile environment during the Mao era was the propaganda poster. Mass produced from the 1950s onwards and replicated in their thousands through tourist markets across China today, the colourful Chinese propaganda poster was a further instrument of social control in a nation where aesthetics had become subservient to communist orthodoxy.

With a prolific range of themes from chubby, well-fed Chinese babies to the Korean War, the value of physical education, the suppression of counterrevolutionary activity and paeans to the achievements of the Great Leap Forward or China as an earthly paradise, propaganda posters were mass-produced and ubiquitous. The golden age of poster production ran through to the 1980s, only declining during Deng Xiaoping's tenure and the opening up of China to the West.

The success of visual propaganda lay in its appeal to a large body of illiterate or semiliterate peasants. The idealism, revolutionary romanticism and vivid colouring of Chinese propaganda art brought hope and vibrancy to a time that was actually often colourless and drab while adding certainty to an era of great hardship and struggle.

## **Post-Mao**

It was only with the death of Mao Zedong in September 1976 that the shadow of the Cultural Revolution – when Chinese aesthetics were conditioned by the threat of violence – began its retreat and the individual artistic temperament was allowed to thrive afresh.

Painters such as Luo Zhongli employed the realist techniques gleaned from China's art academies to depict the harsh realities etched in the faces of contemporary peasants. Others escaped the suffocating confines of socialist realism to navigate new horizons. A voracious appetite for Western art brought with it fresh concepts and ideas, while the ambiguity of exact meaning in the fine arts offered a degree of protection from state censors.

One group of artists, the Stars, found retrospective inspiration in Picasso and German Expressionism. The ephemeral group had a

lasting impact on the development of Chinese art in the 1980s and 1990s, paving the way for the New Wave movement that emerged in 1985. New Wave artists were greatly influenced by Western art, especially the iconoclastic Marcel Duchamp. In true nihilist style, the New Wave artist Huang Yongping destroyed his works at exhibitions, in an effort to escape from the notion of 'art'. Political realities became instant subject matter as performance artists wrapped themselves in plastic or tape to symbolise the repressive realities of modern-day China.

## Beyond Tian'anmen

The Tian'anmen Square protests in 1989 fostered a deep-seated cynicism that permeated artworks with loss, loneliness and social isolation. An exodus of artists to the West commenced. This period also coincided with an upsurge in the art market as investors increasingly turned to artworks and money began to slosh about.

---

Discovered by amateur astronomer William Kwong Yu Yeung in 2001, the main belt asteroid – 83598 Aiweiwei – was named after Chinese artist Ai Weiwei in 2001.

---

Much post-1989 Chinese art dwelled obsessively on contemporary socioeconomic realities, with consumer culture, materialism, urbanisation and social change a repetitive focus. More universal themes became apparent, however, as the art scene matured. Meanwhile,

many artists who left China in the 1990s have returned, setting up private studios and galleries. Government censorship remains, but artists are branching out into other areas and moving away from overtly political content and China-specific concerns.

Cynical realists Fang Lijun and Yue Minjun fashioned grotesque portraits that conveyed hollowness and mock joviality, tinged with despair. Born in the late 1950s, Wang Guangyi took pop art as a template for his ironic pieces, fused with propaganda art techniques from the Cultural Revolution.

---

In 2010 a Qing-dynasty Chinese vase sold for £53.1 million after being discovered in the attic of a house in

Born just before the Cultural Revolution in 1964 and heavily influenced by German expressionism, Zeng Fanzhi explored the notions of

northwest London and put up for auction.

---

alienation and isolation – themes commonly explored by Chinese artists during this period – in his *Mask* series from the 1990s. Introspection is a

hallmark of Zeng's oeuvre. In 2008 Christie's in Hong Kong sold Zeng Fanzhi's painting *Mask Series 1996 No. 6* (featuring masked members of China's communist youth organisation, the Young Pioneers) for US\$9.7 million, which is the highest price yet paid for a contemporary Chinese artwork.

Also born in the early 1960s, Zhang Dali is another artist who gave expression to social change and the gulf between rich and poor, especially the circumstances of the immigrant worker underclass in Beijing.

## Contemporary Directions

Most artists of note and aspiration gravitate to Beijing (or Shanghai perhaps) to work.

Ai Weiwei, who enjoys great international fame partly due to his disobedient stand, best exemplifies the dangerous overlap between artistic self-expression, dissent and conflict with the authorities. Arrested in 2011 and charged with tax evasion, Ai Weiwei gained further publicity for his temporary *Sunflower Seeds* exhibition at the Tate Modern in London. Ai's Shanghai studio was torn down in January 2011, a move the artist said was prompted by his activism. Local authorities said the building was 'illegal'.

## CERAMICS

China's very first vessels – dating back more than 8000 years – were simple handcrafted earthenware pottery, primarily used for religious purposes. The invention of the pottery wheel during the late Neolithic period, however, led to a dramatic technological and artistic leap.

Over the centuries, Chinese potters perfected their craft, introducing many new exciting styles and techniques. The spellbinding artwork of the Terracotta Warriors in Xi'an reveals a highly developed level of technical skill achieved by Qin-dynasty craftsmen. Periods of artistic development, under the cosmopolitan Tang dynasty, for example,

prompted further stylistic advances. The Tang dynasty 'three-colour ware' is a much admired type of ceramic from this period, noted for its vivid yellow, green and white glaze. Demand for lovely blue-green celadons grew in countries as distant as Egypt and Persia.

The Yuan dynasty saw the first development of China's standout 'blue and white' (*qinghua*) porcelain. Cobalt blue paint, from Persia, was applied as an underglaze directly to white porcelain with a brush, the vessel was covered with another transparent glaze, and fired. This technique was perfected during the Ming and such ceramics became hugely popular all over the world, eventually acquiring the name 'China-ware', whether produced in China or not.

Although many kilns were established over China, the most famous was at Jingdezhen in Jiangxi province, where royal porcelain was fired up.

During the Qing dynasty, porcelain techniques were further refined and developed, showing superb craftsmanship and ingenuity. British and European consumers dominated the export market, displaying an insatiable appetite for Chinese vases and bowls decorated with flowers and landscapes. Stunning monochromatic ware is another hallmark of the Qing, especially the ox-blood vases, imperial yellow bowls and enamel -decorated porcelain. The Qing is also notable for its elaborate and highly decorative wares.

Jingdezhen remains an excellent place to visit ceramic workshops and purchase various types of ceramic wares, from Mao statues to traditional glazed urns. The Shanghai Museum has a premier collection of porcelain, while several independent retailers in Beijing and Shanghai also sell more modish and creative pieces.

## **SCULPTURE**

The earliest sculpture in China dates to the Zhou and Shang dynasties, when small clay and wooden figures were commonly placed in tombs to protect the dead and guide them on their way to heaven.

With the arrival of Buddhism, sculpture turned towards spiritual figures and themes, with sculptors frequently enrolled in huge carving projects for the worship of Sakyamuni. Influences also arrived along

the Silk Road from abroad, bringing styles from as far afield as Greece and Persia, via India. The magnificent Buddhist caves at Yungang in Shanxi province date back to the 5th century and betray a noticeable Indian influence.

Chisellers also began work on the Longmen Caves in Henan province at the end of the 5th century. The earliest effigies are similar in style to those at Yungang, revealing further Indian influences and more other-worldliness in their facial expressions. Later cave sculptures at Longmen were completed during the Tang dynasty and reveal a more Chinese style.

The most superlative examples are at the Mogao Caves at Dunhuang in Gansu province, where well-preserved Indian and central Asian–style sculptures, particularly of the Tang dynasty, carry overtly Chinese characteristics – many statues feature long, fluid bodies and have warmer, more refined facial features.

The Shanghai Museum has a splendid collection of Buddhist sculpture, as does Capital Museum and the Poly Art Museum, both in Beijing.

Beyond China's grottoes, other mesmerising Chinese sculpture hides away in temples across China. The colossal statue of Guanyin in Puning Temple in Chengde is a staggering sight, carved from five different types of wood and towering over 22m in height. Shuanglin Temple outside Pingyao in Shanxi province is famed for its painted statues from the Song and Yuan dynasties.

## LITERATURE

### Classical Novels

Until the early 20th century, classical literature (; *guwen*) had been the principal form of writing in China for thousands of years. A breed of purely literary writing, classical Chinese employed a stripped-down form of written Chinese that did not reflect the way people actually spoke or thought. Its grammar differed from the syntax of spoken Chinese and it employed numerous obscure Chinese characters.

---

Classical Chinese maintained divisions between educated and

The *I Ching* (Yijing; Book of Changes) is the oldest Chinese text and is used for divination. It is comprised of 64 hexagrams, composed of broken and continuous lines, that represent a balance of opposites (yin and yang), the inevitability of change and the evolution of events.

---

uneducated Chinese, putting literature beyond the reach of the common person and fashioning a cliquy lingua franca for Confucian officials and scholars.

Classical novels evolved from the popular folk tales and dramas that entertained the lower classes. During the Ming dynasty they were penned in

a semivernacular (or 'vulgar') language, and are often irreverently funny and full of action-packed fights.

Probably the best-known novel outside China is *Journey to the West* (Xiyou Ji) – more commonly known as *Monkey*. Written in the 16th century, it follows the misadventures of a cowardly Buddhist monk (Tripitaka; a stand-in for the real-life pilgrim Xuan Zang) and his companions – a rebellious monkey, lecherous pig-man and exiled monster-immortal – on a pilgrimage to India. In 2007 a Chinese director collaborated with Damon Albarn of the virtual band Gorillaz to transform the story into a circus opera that has played to considerable international acclaim.

The 14th-century novel *The Water Margin/Outlaws of the Marsh/All Men are Brothers* (Shuihu Zhuan) is, on the surface, an excellent tale of honourable bandits and corrupt officials along the lines of Robin Hood. On a deeper level, though, it is a reminder to Confucian officials of their right to rebel when faced with a morally suspect government (at least one emperor officially banned it).

## Modern Literature

### Early-20th-Century Writing

Classical Chinese maintained its authority over literary minds until the early 20th century, when it came under the influence of the West.

Torch-bearing author Lu Xun wrote his short story *Diary of a Madman* in 1918. It was revolutionary stuff. Apart from the opening paragraph, Lu's seminal and shocking fable is written in colloquial Chinese.

---



---

Published by the Chinese University of Hong Kong Research Centre for Translation, *Renditions* is an excellent journal of Chinese literature in English translation covering works from classical Chinese to modern writing.

---

For Lu Xun to write his short story in colloquial Chinese was explosive, as readers were finally able to read language as it was spoken. *Diary of a Madman* is a haunting and unsettling work and from this moment on, mainstream Chinese literature would be written as it was thought and

spoken: Chinese writing had been instantly revolutionised.

Other notable contemporaries of Lu Xun include Ba Jin (*Family*; 1931), Mao Dun (*Midnight*; 1933), Lao She (*Rickshaw Boy/Camel Xiangzi*; 1936) and the modernist playwright Cao Yu (*Thunderstorm*). Lu Xun and Ba Jin translated a great deal of foreign literature into Chinese.

## Contemporary Writing

A growing number of contemporary voices have been translated into English, but far more exist in Chinese only. The provocative Nobel Prize-winning Mo Yan (*Life and Death are Wearing Me Out*; 2008), Yu Hua (*To Live*; 1992) and Su Tong (*Rice*; 1995) have written momentous historical novels set in the 20th century; all are excellent, though their raw, harrowing subject matter is not for the faint of heart.

Zhu Wen mocks the get-rich movement in his brilliantly funny short stories, published in English as *I Love Dollars and Other Stories of China* (2007). It's a vivid and comic portrayal of the absurdities of everyday China.

'Hooligan author' Wang Shuo (*Please Don't Call Me Human*; 2000) is one of China's best-selling authors with his political satires and convincing depictions of urban slackers. Alai (*Red Poppies*; 2002), an ethnic Tibetan, made waves by writing in Chinese about early-20th-century Tibetan Sichuan – whatever your politics, it's both insightful and a page-turner. Emigre Ma Jian (*Red Dust*; 2004) writes more politically critical work; his debut was a Kerouacian tale of wandering China as a spiritual pollutant in the 1980s. China's most renowned dissident writer, Gao Xingjian, won the Nobel Prize for Literature in 2000 for his novel *Soul Mountain*, an account of his travels along the Yangzi after being misdiagnosed with lung cancer. All of his work has

been banned in the PRC since 1989.

---

*Wolf Totem* (2009) by Jiang Rong is an astonishing look at life on the grasslands of Inner Mongolia during the Cultural Revolution and the impact of modern culture on an ancient way of life.

---

Controversial blogger Han Han (<http://blog.sina.com.cn/twocold>) catapulted himself into the literary spotlight with his novel *Triple Door*, a searing critique of China's educational system.

In his novel *Banished*, poet, essayist, short-story writer and blogger

Han Dong reaches to his own experiences during the Cultural Revolution for inspiration. Winner of the Man Asian Literary Prize in 2010, Bi Feiyu's *Three Sisters* is a poignant tale of rural China during the political chaos of the early 1970s. In *Northern Girls*, Sheng Keyi illuminates the prejudices and bigotries of modern Chinese society in her story of a Chinese girl arriving as an immigrant worker in Shenzhen.

For a taste of contemporary Chinese short-story writing with both English and Chinese, buy a copy of *Short Stories in Chinese: New Penguin Parallel Text* (2012). *The Picador Book of Contemporary Chinese Fiction* (2006) brings together a range of different contemporary voices and themes into one accessible book.

## NON-NATIVE TONGUES

---

Beyond translations of famous Chinese works, an accessible corpus of literature exists from Chinese emigres conceiving works in English and French.

» *Wild Swans* (Jung Chang; 1992) Prize-winning autobiographical saga about three generations of Chinese women struggling to survive the tumultuous events of 20th-century China. Chang is also the co-author of the controversial best-selling biography *Mao: The Unknown Story* (2005).

» *Ocean of Words* (1996) , *Waiting* (1999), *The Bridegroom* (2000) , *The Crazy* (2002) , *War Trash*, *A Free Life* (2007) The most prolific of the diaspora writers, Ha Jin has won both the National Book Award (USA) and the PEN/Faulkner Award (among others).

» *A Thousand Years of Good Prayers* (Yiyun Li; 2006) Prize-winning short stories depicting the lives of everyday Chinese caught up in the changes of the past two decades.

» *Death of a Red Heroine* (2000), *A Loyal Character Dancer* (2002), *When Red is Black* (2004), *A Case of Two Cities* (2006), *Red Mandarin Dress* (2007), *The Mao Case* (2009) Qiu Xiaolong's insightful Inspector Chen novels feature a literary-minded cop and a vivid street-level portrayal of changing Shanghai.

» *The People's Republic of Desire* (Annie Wang; 2006) A candid exploration of sexuality in modern Beijing.

» *On the Smell of an Oily Rag* (Yu Ouyang; 2008) Clever cross-cultural observances from a Chinese emigre living in Australia.

## FILM

### Early Cinema

The moving image in the Middle Kingdom dates to 1896, when Spaniard Galen Bocca unveiled a film projector and blew the socks off wide-eyed crowds in a Shanghai teahouse. Shanghai's cosmopolitan verve and exotic looks would make it the capital of China's film industry, but China's very first movie – *Conquering Jun Mountain* (an excerpt from a piece of Beijing opera) – was actually filmed in Beijing in 1905.

---

*The Book and the Sword* by Jin Yong/Louis Cha (2004) is China's most celebrated martial-arts novelist's first book. The martial-arts genre (*wuxia xiaoshuo*) is a direct descendant of the classical novel.

---

Shanghai opened its first cinema in 1908. In those days, cinema owners would cannily run the film for a few minutes, stop it and collect money from the audience before allowing the film to continue. The golden age of Shanghai film-making came in the 1930s when the city had over 140 film

companies. Its apogee arrived in 1937 with the release of *Street Angel*, a powerful drama about two sisters who flee the Japanese in northeast China and end up as prostitutes in Shanghai; and

*Crossroads*, a clever comedy about four unemployed graduates. Japanese control of China eventually brought the industry to a standstill and sent many film-makers packing.

## **Communist Decline**

China's film industry was stymied after the Communist Revolution, which sent film-makers scurrying to Hong Kong and Taiwan, where they played key roles in building up the local film industries that flourished there. Cinematic production in China was co-opted to glorify communism and generate patriotic propaganda. The days of the Cultural Revolution (1966–76) were particularly dark. Between 1966 and 1972, just eight movies were made on the mainland, as the film industry was effectively shut down.

## **Resurgence**

It wasn't until two years after the death of Mao Zedong, in September 1978, that China's premier film school – the Beijing Film Academy – reopened. Its first intake of students included Zhang Yimou, Chen Kaige and Tian Zhuangzhuang, who are considered masterminds of the celebrated 'Fifth Generation'.

The cinematic output of the Fifth Generation signalled an escape from the dour, colourless and proletarian Mao era, and a second glittering golden age of Chinese film-making arrived in the 1980s and 1990s with their lush and lavish tragedies. A bleak but beautifully shot tale of a Chinese Communist Party cadre who travels to a remote village in Shaanxi province to collect folk songs, Chen Kaige's *Yellow Earth* aroused little interest in China but proved a sensation when released in the West in 1985.

It was followed by Zhang's *Red Sorghum*, which introduced Gong Li and Jiang Wen to the world. Gong became the poster girl of Chinese cinema in the 1990s and the first international movie star to emerge from the mainland. Jiang, the Marlon Brando of Chinese film, has proved both a durable leading man and an innovative, controversial director of award-winning films such as *In the Heat of the Sun* and *Devils on the Doorstep*.

Rich, seminal works such as *Farewell My Concubine* (1993; Chen Kaige) and *Raise the Red Lantern* (1991; Zhang Yimou) were

garlanded with praise, receiving standing ovations and winning major film awards. Their directors were the darlings of Cannes; Western cinema-goers were entranced. Many Chinese cinema-goers also admired their artistry, but some saw Fifth Generation output as pandering to the Western market.

In 1993 Tian Zhuangzhuang made the brilliant *The Blue Kite*. A heartbreaking account of the life of one Beijing family during the Cultural Revolution, it so enraged the censors that Tian was banned from making films for a decade.

Each generation charts its own course and the ensuing Sixth Generation – graduating from the Beijing Film Academy post-Tian'anmen Square protests – was no different.

---

The 2010 remake of *the Karate Kid*, starring Jackie Chan, is set in Beijing and authentically conveys the city despite having nothing to do with karate.

---

Sixth Generation film directors eschewed the luxurious beauty of their forebears, and sought to capture the angst and grit of modern urban Chinese life. Their independent, low-budget works put an entirely different and more cynical spin on mainland Chinese film-making, but their darker

subject matter and harsh film style (frequently in black and white) left many Western viewers cold.

Independent film-making found an influential precedent with Zhang Yuan's 1990 debut *Mama*. Zhang is also acclaimed for his candid and gritty documentary-style *Beijing Bastards* (1993).

Meanwhile, *The Days*, directed by Wang Xiaoshui, follows a couple drifting apart in the wake of the Tian'anmen Square protests. Wang also directed the excellent *Beijing Bicycle* (2001), inspired by De Sica's *Bicycle Thieves*.

## Contemporary Film

Jia Zhangke has emerged as the most acclaimed of China's new filmmakers. His meditative and compassionate look at the social impact of the construction of the Three Gorges Dam on local people, *Still Life* (2006), scooped the Golden Lion at the 2006 Venice Film Festival.

In mainstream cinema, many Chinese films are highly commercially

motivated, frequently epic in scale and aimed at the China/Hong Kong/Taiwan market.

Historical *wuxia* (martial arts) cinema is enduringly popular in China and typified much film-making in the noughties, with larger-than-life films like *Hero* (2002; Zhang Yimou), *House of Flying Daggers* (2004; Zhang Yimou) and *The Banquet* (2006; Feng Xiaogang) leading the way. Epic historical war dramas such as *Red Cliff* (2008 and 2009; John Woo) and *The Warlords* (2007; Peter Chan) belong to a similar genre. The Hong Kong director Wong Kar-wai is particularly notable for seductively filmed classics such as *In the Mood for Love* (2000) and *2046* (2004).

In a protectionist move, Beijing caps the number of foreign films that can be shown annually in cinemas to around 20. The film industry in China still has to outmanoeuvre taboos with directors walking on eggshells (even oblique criticism of the authorities remains professionally hazardous).

## CHINESE OPERA

Contemporary Chinese opera, of which the most famous is Beijing opera (; *Jingju*), has a continuous history of some 900 years. Evolving from a convergence of comic and ballad traditions in the Northern Song period, Chinese opera brought together a disparate range of forms: acrobatics, martial arts, poetic arias and stylised dance.

---

In 2011 an ink and brush painting by artist Qi Baishi (1864–1957) sold for ¥425 million (US\$65 million) at auction.

---

Operas were usually performed by travelling troupes who had a low social status in traditional Chinese society. Chinese law forbade mixed-sex performances, forcing actors to act out roles of the opposite sex. Opera troupes were frequently associated

with homosexuality in the public imagination, contributing further to their lowly social status.

Formerly, opera was performed mostly on open-air stages in markets, streets, teahouses or temple courtyards. The shrill singing and loud percussion were designed to be heard over the public throng, prompting American writer PJ O'Rourke to say it was 'as if a

truck full of wind chimes collided with a stack of empty drums during a birdcall contest’.

Opera performances usually take place on a bare stage, with the actors taking on stylised stock characters who are instantly recognisable to the audience. Most stories are derived from classical literature and Chinese mythology, and tell of disasters, natural calamities, intrigues or rebellions.

As well as Beijing opera, other famous Chinese operatic traditions include Cantonese opera ([Click here](#)), Kunqu (from the Jiangnan region), Min opera (from Fujian) and Shanghai opera.

## ART DECO IN SHANGHAI

Fans of art deco must visit Shanghai. The reign of art deco is one of the city’s architectural high-water marks and the city boasts more art deco buildings than any other city, from the drawing boards of the French firm Leonard, Veysseyre and Kruze, and others. Largely emptied of foreigners in 1949, Shanghai mostly kept its historic villas and buildings intact, including its fabulous art deco monuments. The Peace Hotel, Bank of China building, Cathay Theatre, Green House, Paramount Ballroom, Broadway Mansions, Liza Building, Savoy Apartments, Picardie Apartments and Majestic Theatre are all art deco gems. For a comprehensive low-down on the style, hunt down a copy of *Shanghai Art Deco* by Deke Erh and Tess Johnston.

## ARCHITECTURE

### Traditional Architecture

Four principal styles governed traditional Chinese architecture: imperial, religious, residential and recreational. The imperial style was naturally the most grandiose, overseeing the design of buildings employed by successive dynastic rulers; the religious style was employed for the construction of temples, monasteries and pagodas; while the residential and recreational style took care of the design of houses and private gardens.

---

Major art festivals include Beijing’s

Whatever the style, Chinese buildings traditionally followed a

798 International Art Festival, China International Gallery Exposition and Beijing Biennale, the Shanghai Biennale, Guangzhou Triennial and Hong Kong's one-day Clockenflap festival.

---

similar basic ground plan, consisting of a symmetrical layout oriented around a central axis – ideally running north–south, to conform with basic feng shui (*fengshui*) dictates and to maximise sunshine – with an enclosed courtyard (*yuan*) flanked by buildings on all

sides.

In many aspects, imperial palaces are glorified courtyard homes (south-facing, a sequence of courtyards, side halls and perhaps a garden at the rear) completed on a different scale. Apart from the size, the main dissimilarity would be guard towers on the walls and possibly a moat, imperial yellow roof tiles, ornate dragon carvings (signifying the emperor), the repetitive use of the number nine and the presence of temples.

Many residential quarters of the well-to-do and temples or halls within imperial palaces were protected by a spirit wall (*yingbi*) at their entrance, designed to thwart bad spirits, but also to put a stop to prying eyes. Despite the loss of countless spirit walls, China remains dotted with them, often obsolete as the buildings they once shielded have vanished. Datong's Nine Dragon Screen is a spectacular example.

Behind the entrance in palaces and wealthier residential buildings stood a public hall; behind this was the private living quarters, erected around another courtyard with a garden; most buildings were constructed as one-storey edifices. A sense of harmony prevailed over the entire design, ordered by symmetry and a certain reserve, which also meant that no one particular structure took precedence. Compounds were enlarged simply by adding more courtyards.

## BATTLE OF THE BUDDHAS

China's largest ancient Buddha gazes out over the confluence of the waters of the Dadu River and the Min River at Leshan in Sichuan. When the even bigger Buddha at Bamiyan in Afghanistan was demolished by the Taliban, the Leshan Buddha enjoyed instantaneous promotion to the top spot as the world's largest. The Buddha in the Great Buddha Temple



at Zhangye in Gansu province may not take it lying down, though: he is China's largest 'housed reclining Buddha'. Chinese children once climbed inside him to scamper about within his cavernous tummy.

Lounging around in second place is the reclining Buddha in the Mogao Caves, China's second largest. The vast reclining Buddha at Leshan is a whopping 170m long and the world's largest 'alfresco' reclining Buddha. Bristling with limbs, the Thousand Arm Guanyin statue in the Puning Temple's Mahayana Hall in Chengde also stands up to be counted: she's the largest wooden statue in China (and possibly the world). Not to be outdone, Hong Kong fights for its niche with the Tian Tan Buddha Statue, the world's 'largest outdoor seated bronze Buddha statue'.

## Religious Architecture

Chinese Buddhist, Taoist and Confucian temples tend to follow a strict, schematic pattern. All temples are laid out on a north–south axis in a series of halls, with the main door of each hall facing south.

With their sequence of halls and buildings interspersed with breezy open-air courtyards, Chinese temples are very different from Christian churches. The roofless courtyards allow the weather to permeate within the temple and permits *qi* (; spirit) to circulate, dispersing stale air and allowing incense to be burned.

### Buddhist Temples

Once you have cracked the logic of Buddhist temples, you can discover how most temples conform to a pattern. The first hall and portal to the temple is generally the Hall of Heavenly Kings, where a sedentary, central statue of the tubby Bodhisattva Maitreya is flanked by the ferocious Four Heavenly Kings. Behind is the first courtyard, where the Drum Tower and Bell Tower may rise to the east and west, and smoking braziers may be positioned.

---

For a taste of Kazakh folk music from northwest Xinjiang province, listen to *Eagle* by Mamer, an intriguing collection of songs described as 'Chinagrass' by their composer.

---

The main hall is often the Great Treasure Hall sheltering glittering statues of the past, present and future Buddhas, seated in a row. This is the main focal point for worshippers at the temple. On the east and west interior wall of the hall are often 18 *luohan* (arhat – a Buddhist who has achieved

enlightenment) in two lines, either as statues or paintings. In some temples, they gather in a throng of 500, housed in a separate hall. A statue of Guanyin (the Goddess of Mercy) frequently stands at the rear of the main hall, facing north, atop a fish's head or a rocky outcrop. The goddess may also have her own hall and occasionally presents herself with a huge fan of arms, in her 'Thousand Arm' incarnation. The awesome effigy of Guanyin in the Mahayana Hall at Puning Temple in Chengde is the supreme example.

The rear hall may be where the sutras (Buddhist scriptures) were once stored, in which case it will be called the Sutra Storing Building. A pagoda may rise above the main halls or may be the only surviving fragment of an otherwise destroyed temple. Conceived to house the remains of Buddha and later other Buddhist relics, pagodas also contained sutras, religious artefacts and documents.

## **Taoist Temples**

Taoist shrines are more nether-worldly than Buddhist shrines, although the basic layout echoes Buddhist temples. They are decorated with a distinct set of motifs, including the *bagua* (eight trigrams) formations, reflected in eight-sided pavilions and halls, and the Taiji yin/yang (*yin/yang*) diagram. Effigies of Laotzu, the Jade Emperor and other characters popularly associated with Taoist myth, such as the Eight Immortals and the God of Wealth, are customary.

Taoist door gods, similar to those in Buddhist temples, often guard temple entrances; the main hall is usually called the Hall of the Three Clear Ones, devoted to a triumvirate of Taoist deities.

Taoist monks (and nuns) are easily distinguished from their shaven-headed Buddhist confreres by their long hair, twisted into topknots, straight trousers and squarish jackets.

## **Confucian Temples**

Confucian temples bristle with steles celebrating local scholars, some supported on the backs of *bixi* (mythical tortoise-looking dragons). A statue of Kongzi (Confucius) usually resides in the main hall, overseeing rows of musical instruments and flanked by disciples. A mythical animal, the *qilin* (a statue exists at the Summer Palace in Beijing), is commonly seen. The *qilin* was a chimera that only

appeared on earth in times of harmony. The largest Confucian temple in China is at Qufu in Shandong, Confucius' birthplace.

## Modern Architecture

Architecturally speaking, anything goes in today's China. You only have to look at the Pudong skyline to find a melange of competing designs, some dramatic, inspiring and novel, others rash. The skyline represents a nation brimming over with confidence, zeal and money.

---

In China, tower blocks are only built to last for 25 to 30 years. In 2009 a newlybuilt Shanghai tower block collapsed, killing one worker and raising further concerns about quality control.

---

If modern architecture in China is regarded as anything post-1949, then China has ridden a rollercoaster ride of styles and fashions. In Beijing, stand between the Great Hall of the People (1959) and the National Centre for the Performing Arts (2008) and weigh up how far China travelled in 50

years. Interestingly, neither building has clear Chinese motifs. The same applies to the form of Beijing's CCTV Building, where a continuous loop through horizontal and vertical planes required some audacious engineering.

While many of China's interior provinces lack the cash to build anything too daring or grandiose, the coastal areas are an architect's dreamland – no design is too outrageous, zoning laws have been scrapped, and the labour force is large and inexpensive. Planning permission can be simple to arrange – often all it requires is sufficient *guanxi* (connections).

Many of the top names in international architecture – IM Pei, Rem Koolhaas, Norman Foster, Kengo Kuma, Jean-Marie Charpentier, Herzog & de Meuron – have all designed at least one building in China in the past decade. Other impressive examples of modern architecture include the National Stadium (aka the 'Bird's Nest'), the National Aquatics Center (aka the 'Water Cube') and Beijing South train station, all in Beijing; and the art deco–esque Jinmao Tower, the towering Shanghai World Financial Center, Tomorrow Square and the Shanghai Tower in Shanghai. In Hong Kong, the glittering 2 International Finance Center on Hong Kong Island and the

International Commerce Center in Kowloon are each prodigious examples of modern skyscraper architecture.

## GARDENS

Originally conceived as either imperial parks or as private compounds attached to residences, Chinese gardens differ in philosophy to European garden design. Like an ink painting, Chinese garden design was rooted in the Chinese notion of the natural world and humankind's place within it. Chinese gardens aimed to echo nature in miniature, from mountains and hills to lakes, ponds and vegetation. Colours are frequently subdued while gardens are typically small, enclosed and restrained.

---

A dark and Gothic image in the West, the bat is commonly used in Chinese porcelain, wood designs, textiles and artwork as it is considered a good luck omen.

---

There is a focus on the arrangements of rocks and rockeries, the placing of ponds and the use of foliage, small trees and shrubs. Pavilions, walkways, corridors and bridges incorporate the human world, but these are never overbearing features.

The landscapes of a traditional Chinese painting are central to a successful garden. Windows may be found strategically placed to frame a particular view, and in private compounds, plants were grown against a backdrop of whitewashed walls, which recalled the empty space of a painting. Mountains (*shan*) and water (*shui*) are essential components of traditional paintings, and find themselves replicated in garden design through rockeries and fish-filled ponds. The play of light is similarly a vital ingredient, playing off water surfaces, reflecting from white walls and casting shadows.

Another important feature of gardens is symbolism. Plants were chosen as much for their symbolic meaning as their beauty (the pine for longevity, the peony for nobility), and the giant eroded rocks suggest mountains as well as the changing, indefinable nature of the Tao. Likewise, the names of gardens and halls are often literary allusions to ideals expressed in classical poetry.

Gardens were particularly prevalent in southeastern China south of

the Yangzi River, notably in Hangzhou and Suzhou.



*Poet Li Po depicted on a Qing-dynasty plate*  
DE AGOSTINI / GETTY IMAGES ©



*Buddhist monastery, Gansu*  
ZHAN TIAN / GETTY IMAGES ©

# China's Landscapes

---

## THE LAND

The world's third-largest country – on a par size-wise with the USA – China covers an immense 9.5 million sq km, only surpassed in area by Russia and Canada. Straddling natural environments as diverse as subarctic tundra in the north and tropical rainforests in the south, this massive land embraces the world's highest mountain range and one of its hottest deserts in the west, to the steamy, typhoon-lashed coastline of the South China Sea. Fragmenting this epic landscape is a colossal web of waterways, including one of the world's mightiest rivers – the Yangzi (; Chang Jiang).

## Mountains

China has a largely mountainous and hilly topography, commencing in precipitous fashion in the vast and sparsely populated Qinghai–Tibetan plateau in the west and levelling out gradually towards the fertile, well-watered, populous and wealthy provinces of eastern China.

---

It is predicted that China will have around half a million electric, hybrid, fuel-cell or alternatively fuelled vehicles on the streets by 2015.

---

This mountainous disposition sculpts so many of China's natural scenic wonders, from the glittering Dragon's Backbone Rice Terraces of Guangxi to the exhilaration of Mt Everest, the stunning beauty of Jiuzhaigou National Park in Sichuan, the ethereal peaks of misty Huangshan in Anhui, the vertiginous inclines of Hua Shan in Shaanxi (Shanxi), the divine karst geology of Yangshuo in Guangxi and the volcanic drama of Heaven Lake in Jilin.

Averaging 4500m above sea level, the Qinghai–Tibetan region's highest peaks thrust up into the Himalayan mountain range along its southern rim. The Himalayas, on average about 6000m above sea level, include 40 peaks rising dizzyingly to 7000m or more. Also

known as the planet's 'third pole', this is where the world's highest peak, Mt Everest – called Zhumulangmafeng by the Chinese – thrusts up jaggedly from the Tibet–Nepal border. Low temperatures, high winds and intense solar radiation are regional characteristics.

---

*China Dialogue*  
([www.chinadialogue.net](http://www.chinadialogue.net)) is a resourceful dual-language website that seeks to promote debate on China's immense environmental challenges.

---

This vast high-altitude region (Tibet alone constitutes one-eighth of China's landmass) is home to an astonishing 37,000 glaciers, the third-largest mass of ice on the planet after the Arctic and Antarctic. This enormous body of frozen water ensures that the Qinghai–Tibetan

region is the source of many of China's largest rivers, including the Yellow (Huang He), Mekong (Lancang Jiang), and Salween (Nu Jiang) Rivers and, of course, the mighty Yangzi, all of whose headwaters are fed by snowmelt from here. Global warming, however, is inevitably eating into this glacial volume, although experts argue over how quickly they are melting.

Tibet is also an immense storehouse of mineral wealth, helping to clarify its Chinese name (; Xizang; 'Western Treasure House'). Deep within the mountains of Tibet lie enormous deposits of gold, copper, uranium, lithium, lead and other valuable minerals and ores.

This mountain geology further corrugates the rest of China, continuously rippling the land into spectacular mountain ranges. There's the breathtaking 2500km-long Kunlun range, the mighty Karakoram mountains on the border with Pakistan, the Tian Shan range in Xinjiang, the Tanggula range on the Qinghai–Tibetan plateau, the Qinling mountains and the Greater Khingan range (Daxingan Ling) in the northeast.

## **MOUNTAINS, MYTH & MAGIC**

Steeped in legend and superstition and infused with spirits and deities, China's mountains have long been cherished by devout bands of Taoists and Buddhists who erected temples and founded monastic communities on their slopes. Mt Kailash and many other peaks in Tibet are powerfully associated with Buddhist divinities and Bodhisattvas, drawing legions



of pilgrims and worshippers to complete a *kora* (pilgrim path) around their slopes. Outside Tibet, each of China's five sacred Buddhist mountains has its ruling Bodhisattva, whose presence permeates their shrines, gullies and peaks. In Putuoshan it is the merciful Guanyin (see the boxed text, [Click here](#)) who is worshipped; in Wutai Shan, erudite Wenshu (Manjushri) is the presiding deity. Hua Shan, Song Shan, Wudang Shan and other Taoist peaks are famed for the recluses who retreated to their crags and caves to cultivate 'internal power' and devise esoteric martial-arts skills ([Click here](#)).

## Deserts

China contains head-spinningly huge – and growing – desert regions that occupy almost one-fifth of the country's landmass, largely in its mighty northwest. These are inhospitably sandy and rocky expanses where summers are torturously hot and winters bone-numbingly cold. North towards Kazakhstan and Kyrgyzstan from the plateaus of Tibet and Qinghai lies Xinjiang's Tarim Basin, the largest inland basin in the world. This is the location of the mercilessly thirsty Taklamakan Desert – China's largest desert and the world's second largest mass of sand after the Sahara Desert. China's biggest shifting salt lake, Lop Nur (the site of China's nuclear bomb tests) is also here.

---

The World Health Organisation estimates that air pollution causes more than 650,000 fatal illnesses per year in China, while more than 95,000 die annually from consuming polluted drinking water.

---

The harsh environment shares many topographical features in common with the neighbouring nations of Afghanistan, Kyrgyzstan and Kazakhstan, and is almost the exact opposite of China's lush and well-watered southern provinces. But despite the scorching aridity of China's

northwestern desert regions, their mountains (the mighty Tian Shan, Altai, Pamir and Kunlun ranges) contain vast supplies of water, largely in the form of snow and ice.

Northeast of the Tarim Basin is Urumqi, the world's furthest city from the sea. The Tarim Basin is bordered to the north by the lofty Tian Shan range – home to the glittering mountain lake of Tian Chi – and to the west by the mighty Pamirs, which border Pakistan. Also in Xinjiang is China's hot spot, the Turpan Basin, known as the 'Oasis of Fire' and entered in the record books as China's lowest-lying region

and the world's second-deepest depression after the Dead Sea in Israel. China's most famous desert is, of course, the Gobi, although most of it lies outside the country's borders.

---

In 2012, the last of the Three Gorges Dam's huge turbines was connected to the energy grid, meaning the dam now supplies 11% of China's hydroelectric power generation.

---

The Silk Road into China steered its epic course through this entire region, ferrying caravans of camels laden with merchandise, languages, philosophies, customs and peoples from the far-flung lands of the Middle East. Today the region is rich in fossil fuels, containing one-third of China's

known gas and oil reserves as well as vast and unexploited coal deposits and a growing number of sizeable wind farms, especially in Gansu (see boxed text [Click here](#)).

East of Xinjiang extend the epic grasslands and steppes of Inner Mongolia – China's largest production centre for mining rare earth metals and the nation's largest coal-producing region – in a huge and elongated belt of land that stretches to the erstwhile Manchuria.

## Rivers & Plains

The other major region comprises roughly 45% of the country and contains 95% of the population. This densely populated part of China descends like a staircase from west to east, from the high plateaus of Tibet and Qinghai to the fertile but largely featureless plains and basins of the great rivers that drain the high ranges. As a general rule of thumb, as you head east towards the seaboard, provinces become wealthier.

These plains are the most important agricultural areas of the country and the most heavily populated. It's hard to imagine, but the plains have largely been laid down by siltation from the Yangzi and other great rivers throughout many millennia. The process continues: the Yangzi alone deposits millions of tonnes of silt annually and land at the river mouth is growing at a rate of 100m a year. Hardly any significant stands of natural vegetation remain in this area, although several mountain ranges are still forested and provide oases for wildlife and native plants.

At about 5460km long and the second-longest river in China, the Yellow River ( Huanghe) is touted as the birthplace of Chinese civilisation and has been fundamental in the development of Chinese society. The mythical architect of China's rivers, the Great Yu, apocryphally noted 'Whoever controls the Yellow River controls China'. Because of heavy siltation, the river bed in some reaches rises high above the north China plains (outside Kaifeng, the river is some 10m above ground level).

China's longest river, the Yangzi (the 'Long River'), is one of the longest rivers in the world. Its watershed of almost 2 million sq km – 20% of China's land mass – supports 400 million people. Dropping from its source high on the Tibetan plateau, it runs for 6300km to the sea, of which the last few hundred kilometres is across virtually flat alluvial plains.

The Yangzi has been an important thoroughfare for humans for centuries, used throughout China's history for trade and transport; it even has its own unique wildlife, but this has been threatened by the controversial, power-generating Three Gorges Dam. The dam is partly designed to thwart the Yangzi's propensity to flood – floodwaters that have historically inundated millions of hectares and destroyed hundreds of thousands of lives.

## **SOUTH–NORTH WATER DIVERSION PROJECT**

Water is the lifeblood of economic and agricultural growth, but as China only possesses around 7% of the world's water resources (with almost 20% of its population), the liquid is an increasingly precious resource.

North China is a region of low rainfall and faces a grim water crisis. Farmers are draining aquifers that have taken thousands of years to accumulate, while Chinese industry is using three to 10 times more water per unit of production than developed nations. Meanwhile, water usage in large cities such as Beijing and Tianjin continues to climb as migrants move in from rural areas. By some estimates, the aquifers of north China may only survive for another 30 years.

To combat the water crisis, the CCP embarked on the construction of the US\$62 billion South–North Water Diversion Project, a vast network of rivers, canals and lakes lashing north and south. The logic is to divert surplus water from the Yangzi River to the dwindling and long overexploited Yellow River.

There are concerns that pollution in the Yangzi River waters will become progressively

concentrated as water is extracted, while Yangzi cities such as Nanjing and Wuhan are increasingly anxious they will be left with less water. Alarm has also arisen at the pollution in channels – including the Grand Canal, which links Hangzhou with north China – earmarked to take the diverted waters. There are worries that these polluted reaches are almost untreatable, making elements of the project unviable.

Critics also argue that the project, which will involve the mass relocation of hundreds of thousands of people, will not address the fundamental issue of China's water woes – the absence of policies for the sustainable use of water as a precious resource.

## Fields & Agriculture

China's hills and mountains may sculpt a dramatic and sublime backdrop for travellers, but they have long been a massive agricultural headache for farmers. Small plots of land are eked out in patchworks of land squashed between hillsides or rescued from mountain cliffs and ravines, in the demanding effort to feed 20% of the world's population with just 10% of its arable land.

Astonishingly, only 15% of China's land can be cultivated so hillside gradients and inclines are valiantly levelled off, wherever possible, into bands of productive terraced fields. Many home gardens in suburban China are dedicated to crops while every available patch of land elsewhere is requisitioned for small-scale agricultural use, from idle land beneath flyovers to strips of earth alongside pavements. The result is an irregularly-shaped patchwork of small fields and plots, frequently covered with plastic sheeting to retain moisture, and a scarcity of land put to common use (eg football pitches). Because of the division of agricultural land into so many small plots, large-scale mechanisation (which would improve efficiency) is difficult.

## THE SHAPE OF THINGS TO COME

Huge targets for satellite calibration, vast fractal antennas, massive missile shooting ranges or the handiwork of alien civilisations, no one seemed to have a plausible explanation for the colossal geometric forms in west China that sent rumours fizzing about the internet in 2011. The bizarre shapes – some up to a mile in length – range from immense concentric circles to gigantic grids and networks of crazy lines, all clearly visible on Google Maps. Distributed over Gansu and Xinjiang provinces, at least one is in the region of Dunhuang in Gansu province. As some of the shapes were discovered in the

vicinity of Lop Nur (China's nuclear testing ground), conspiracy theorists were quick to speculate feverishly. Some claimed the huge grids could be superimposed onto the road layouts of Washington DC and other US cities (indicating a military purpose), while others asserted the Chinese had acquired alien technology. To date, no convincing explanation has been made (although one giant shape was identified as the world's largest potash fertiliser plant).

## WILDLIFE

China's size, diverse topography and climatic disparities support an astonishing range of habitats for a variety of animal life. Scattered from steamy tropical rainforests in the deep southwest to subarctic wilderness in the far north, from the precipitous mountains of Tibet to the low-lying deserts of the northwest and the huge Yangzi River, China's wild animals comprise nearly 400 species of mammal (including some of the world's rarest and most charismatic species), more than 1300 bird species, 424 reptile species and more than 300 species of amphibian. The Tibetan plateau alone is the habitat of more than 500 species of birds, while half of the animal species in the northern hemisphere can be found in China.

---

Since becoming a net oil importer in 1993, China imported more than five million barrels of oil per day in 2011, a figure only surpassed by the European Union and the US.

---

It is unlikely you will see many of these creatures in their natural habitat unless you are a specialist, or have a lot of time, patience, persistence, determination and luck. If you go looking for large animals in the wild on the off chance, your chances of glimpsing one are virtually nil. But

there are plenty of pristine reserves within relatively easy reach of travellers' destinations such as Chengdu and Xi'an. More and more visitors are including visits to protected areas as part of their itinerary for a look at China's elusive wildlife residents – outside of China's rather pitiful zoos.

## Mammals

China's towering mountain ranges form natural refuges for wildlife, many of which are now protected in parks and reserves that have

escaped the depredations of loggers and dam-builders. The barren high plains of the Tibetan plateau are home to several large animals, such as the *chiru* (Tibetan antelope), Tibetan wild ass, wild sheep and goats, and wolves. In theory, many of these animals are protected but in practice poaching and hunting still threaten their survival.

The beautiful and retiring snow leopard, which normally inhabits the highest parts of the most remote mountain ranges, sports a luxuriant coat of fur against the cold. It preys on mammals as large as mountain goats, but is unfortunately persecuted for allegedly killing livestock.

The Himalayan foothills of western Sichuan support the greatest diversity of mammals in China. Aside from giant pandas, other mammals found in this region include the panda's small cousin – the raccoon-like red panda – as well as Asiatic black bears and leopards. Among the grazers are golden takin, a large goatlike antelope with a yellowish coat and a reputation for being cantankerous, argali sheep and various deer species, including the diminutive mouse deer.

The sparsely populated northeastern provinces abutting Siberia are inhabited by reindeer, moose, bears, sables and Manchurian tigers.

Overall, China is unusually well endowed with big and small cats. The world's largest tiger, the Manchurian Tiger (*Dongbeihu*) – also known as the Siberian Tiger ([Click here](#)) – only numbers a few hundred in the wild, its remote habitat being one of its principal saviours. Three species of leopard can be found, including the beautiful clouded leopard of tropical rainforests, plus several species of small cat, such as the Asiatic golden cat and a rare endemic species, the Chinese mountain cat.

Rainforests are famous for their diversity of wildlife, and the tropical south of Yunnan province, particularly the area around Xishuangbanna, is one of the richest in China. These forests support Indo-Chinese tigers and herds of Asiatic elephants.

---

China has earmarked a staggering US\$140 billion for an ambitious program of wind farms; ranging from Xinjiang province to Jiangsu province in the east, the huge wind farms are due for completion in 2020.

The wild mammals you are most likely to see are several species of monkey. The large and precocious Pere David's macaque is common at Emei Shan in Sichuan, where bands often intimidate people into handing

---

over their picnics; macaques can also be seen on Hainan's Monkey Island.

Several other monkey species are rare and endangered, including the beautiful golden monkey of Fanjing Shan and the snub-nosed monkey of the Yunnan rainforests. But by far the most endangered is the Hainan gibbon, numbering just a few dozen individuals on Hainan island thanks to massive forest clearance.

The giant panda (*xiongmao* – literally 'bear cat') is western Sichuan's most famous denizen, but the animal's solitary nature makes it elusive for observation in the wild, and even today, after decades of intensive research and total protection in dedicated reserves, sightings are rare. A notoriously fickle breeder (the female is only on heat for a handful of days each spring), there are approximately 1600 pandas in the Chinese wilds according to World Wildlife Fund. Interestingly, the panda has the digestive tract of a carnivore (like other bears), but has become accustomed to exclusively eating bamboo shoots and leaves. However, the panda's digestive tract is unable to efficiently break down plant matter so the mammal needs to consume huge amounts to compensate and spends much of its time eating, clearing one area of bamboo before moving on to another region.

## Birds

Most of the wildlife you'll see in China will be birds, and with more than 1300 species recorded, including about 100 endemic or near-endemic species, China offers some fantastic birdwatching opportunities.

Spring is usually the best time, when deciduous foliage buds, migrants return from their wintering grounds and nesting gets into full swing.

**BirdLife International** ([www.birdlife.org/regional/asia](http://www.birdlife.org/regional/asia)), the worldwide bird conservation organisation, recognises 12 Endemic Bird Areas (EBAs) in China, nine of which are wholly within the country and three of which are shared with neighbouring countries.

Although the range of birds is huge, China is a centre of endemism for several species and these are usually the ones that visiting birders will seek out. Most famous are the pheasant family, of which China boasts 62 species, including many endemic or near-endemic species.

Other families well represented in China include the laughing thrushes, with 36 species; parrotbills, which are almost confined to China and its near neighbours; and many members of the jay family. The crested ibis is a pinkish bird that feeds on invertebrates in the rice paddies, and was once found from central China to Japan.

Among China's more famous large birds are cranes, and nine of the world's 14 species have been recorded here. In Jiangxi province, on the lower Yangzi, a vast series of shallow lakes and lagoons was formed by stranded overflow from Yangzi flooding. The largest of these is Poyang Lake, although it is only a few metres deep and drains during winter. Vast numbers of waterfowl and other birds inhabit these swamps year-round, including ducks, geese, herons and egrets. Although it is difficult to reach and infrastructure for birdwatchers is practically non-existent, birders are increasingly drawn to the area in winter, when many of the lakes dry up and attract flocks of up to five crane species, including the endangered, pure white Siberian crane.

Parts of China are now well-established on the itineraries of global ecotour companies. **Bird Watching China** ([www.birdwatchingchina.com](http://www.birdwatchingchina.com)) specialises in arranging birdwatching and photography tours to China; the **China Bird Watching Network** ([www.chinabirdnet.org](http://www.chinabirdnet.org)) has useful links to birdwatching societies across China.

---

One of the aims of the Three Gorges Dam is to help prevent flooding on the Yangzi River. The river has caused hundreds of catastrophic floods, including the disastrous inundation of 1931, in which an estimated 145,000 died.

---

Recommended destinations include Zhalong Nature Reserve, one of several vast wetlands in Heilongjiang province. Visit in summer to see breeding storks, cranes and flocks of wildfowl before they fly south for the winter. Beidaihe, on the coast of the Bohai Sea, is well known for migratory birds. Other breeding grounds and

wetlands include Qinghai Hu in Qinghai, Caohai Lake in Guizhou, Jiuzhaigou in Sichuan and Mai Po Marsh in Hong Kong. For the latter, the **Hong Kong Bird Watching Society** ([www.hkbws.org.hk](http://www.hkbws.org.hk)) organises regular outings and publishes a newsletter in English.



Most birdwatchers and bird tours head straight for Sichuan, which offers superb birding at sites such as Wolong. Here, several spectacular pheasants, including golden, blood and kalij pheasants, live on the steep forested hillsides surrounding the main road. As the road climbs up, higher-altitude species such as eared pheasants and the spectacular Chinese monal may be seen. Alpine meadows host smaller birds, and the rocky scree slopes at the pass hold partridges, the beautiful grandala and the mighty lammergeier (bearded vulture), with a 2m wingspan.

## Reptiles & Amphibians

Native to China, the Chinese alligator – known as the ‘muddy dragon’ – is one of the smallest of the world’s crocodilians, measuring only 2m in length, and is harmless to humans. Owing to habitat clearance and intense pressure to turn its wetlands to agriculture along the lower Yangzi, fewer than 150 of these reptiles survive in the wild. A captive breeding program has been successful, and a number of the rare reptiles have been tagged and released back into the wild from a reserve in Anhui.

The cold, rushing rivers of the southwestern mountains are home to the world’s largest amphibian, the giant salamander. This enormous amphibian can reach 180cm in length and feeds on small aquatic animals. Unfortunately, it is now critically endangered in the wild and, like so many other animals, hunted for food.

More than 300 other species of frog and salamander occur in China’s waterways and wetlands, and preying on them is a variety of snakes, including cobras and vipers. One of China’s more unusual national parks is Snake Island, near Dalian in Liaoning province. This 800-hectare dot in the Bohai Sea is uninhabited by people, but supports an estimated 130,000 Pallas’ pit vipers, an extraordinary concentration of snakes that prey on migrating birds that land on the island every spring and autumn in huge numbers. By eating several birds each season, the snakes can subsist on lizards and invertebrates for the rest of the year until migration time comes round again.

---

## THE YANGZI DOLPHIN

The Yangzi floodway was big enough to favour the evolution of distinct large river creatures, including the Yangzi dolphin (*bajji*) and Chinese alligator, both now desperately endangered. The Yangzi dolphin, one of just a few freshwater dolphin species in the world (others occur in the Ganges and Amazon River systems) and by far the rarest, migrated to the Yangzi River from the Pacific Ocean more than 20 million years ago and adapted itself to its freshwater habitat. The dolphin largely lost the use of its eyes in the gloomy Yangzi waters and instead steered a course through the river using a form of sonar.

From being quite commonplace – around 6000 dolphins still lived in the Yangzi River during the 1950s – numbers fell drastically during the three decades of explosive economic growth from the 1970s, and the last confirmed sighting was in 2002. The creature is a victim – one of many – of human activity in the region, succumbing to drowning in fishing nets and lethal injuries from ships' propellers.

## Plants

China is home to more than 32,000 species of seed plant and 2500 species of forest tree, plus an extraordinary plant diversity that includes some famous 'living fossils' – a diversity so great that Jilin province in the semifrigid north and Hainan province in the tropical south share few plant species. Many reserves still remain where intact vegetation ecosystems can be seen firsthand, but few parts of the country have escaped human impact. Deforestation continues apace in many regions and vast areas are under cultivation with monocultures such as rice.

Apart from rice, the plant probably most often associated with China and Chinese culture is bamboo, of which China boasts some 300 species. Bamboos grow in many parts of China, but bamboo forests were once so extensive that they enabled the evolution of the giant panda, which eats virtually nothing else, and a suite of small mammals, birds and insects that live in bamboo thickets. Most of these useful species are found in the subtropical areas south of the Yangzi, and the best surviving thickets are in southwestern provinces such as Sichuan.

Many plants commonly cultivated in Western gardens today originated in China, among them the ginkgo tree, a famous 'living fossil' whose unmistakable imprint has been found in 270 million-year-

old rocks. The unique and increasingly rare dove tree or paper tree, whose greatly enlarged white bracts look like a flock of doves, grows only in the deciduous forests of the southwest.

---

Changqing Nature Reserve in Shaanxi province is well worth a visit for its relatively unspoilt montane forest and the chance to see giant pandas in the wild. Find out more at [www.cqpanda.com](http://www.cqpanda.com).

---

Deciduous forests cover mid-altitudes in the mountains, and are characterised by oaks, hemlocks and aspens, with a leafy understorey that springs to life after the winter snows have melted. Among the more famous blooms of the understorey are rhododendrons and azaleas, and

many species of each grow naturally in China's mountain ranges. Best viewed in spring, some species flower right through summer; one of the best places to see them is at Sichuan's Wolong Nature Reserve. Both rhododendrons and azaleas grow in distinct bands at various heights on the mountain sides, which are recognisable as you drive through the reserve to the high mountain passes. At the very highest elevations, the alpine meadows grazed by yaks are often dotted with showy and colourful blooms.

Deforestation has levelled huge tracts of China's once vast and beautiful primeval forests. At the end of the 19th century, 70% of China's northeast was still forest. Unsustainable clear-cutting in the 20th century – especially during the Great Leap Forward – was not banned there until the mid-1980s, by which time only 5% of old-growth woodland remained. Logging controls were more strictly enforced after the floods of 1998, when deforestation was identified as contributing to the floodwaters. Since then a vigorous replanting campaign was launched to once again cover huge tracts of China with trees, but these cannot restore the rich biodiversity that once existed.

A growing number of international wildlife travel outfits arrange botanical expeditions to China, including UK-based **Naturetrek** ([www.naturetrek.co.uk](http://www.naturetrek.co.uk)), which arranges tours to Yunnan and Sichuan.

## Endangered Species

Almost every large mammal you can think of in China has crept onto the endangered species list, as well as many of the so-called 'lower'

animals and plants. The snow leopard, Indo-Chinese tiger, chiru antelope, crested ibis, Asiatic elephant, red-crowned crane and black-crowned crane are all endangered.

Deforestation, pollution, hunting and trapping for fur, body parts and sport are all culprits. The Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora (CITES) records legal trade in live reptiles and parrots, and high numbers of reptile and wildcat skins. The number of such products collected or sold unofficially is anyone's guess.

Despite the threats, a number of rare animal species cling to survival in the wild. Notable among them are the Chinese alligator in Anhui, the giant salamander in the fast-running waters of the Yangzi and Yellow Rivers, the Yangzi River dolphin in the lower and middle reaches of the river (although there have been no sightings since 2002), and the pink dolphin of the Hong Kong islands of Sha Chau and Lung Kwu Chau. The giant panda is confined to the fauna-rich valleys and ranges of Sichuan, but your best chances for sighting one is in Chengdu's Giant Panda Breeding Research Base ([Click here](#)).

---

In 2010, six of China's *danxia* (eroded reddish sandstone rock), karst-like geological formations, were included in Unesco's World Heritage List. The list includes Chishui ([Click here](#)) in Guizhou province. The rocks can also be seen outside Zhangye in Gansu.

---

Intensive monoculture farmland cultivation, the reclaiming of wetlands, river damming, industrial and rural waste, and desertification are reducing unprotected forest areas and making the survival of many of these species increasingly precarious. Although there are laws against killing or capturing rare wildlife, their struggle for survival is further complicated as

many remain on the most-wanted lists for traditional Chinese medicine and dinner delicacies.

In Tibet, the chiru antelope has long been hunted for a fleece that provides a lucrative type of wool. Despite conservation efforts, poaching still continues in an area that is hard to effectively monitor due to its size and a lack of human resources.

## THE ENVIRONMENT

China may be vast, but with two-thirds of the land either mountain, desert or uncultivable, the remaining third is overwhelmed by the people of the world's most populous nation. For social, economic and political reasons, China is experiencing its – and the world's – most rapid period of urbanisation in history. All this means the city can impinge in inescapable fashion. For the first time in its history, China's city dwellers outnumbered rural residents in 2011, with an urbanisation rate set to increase to 65% by 2050. In the same year, it was announced that nine urban areas in Guangdong province would congeal into a single metropolitan area, twice the size of Wales, 26 times the size of London, supporting a population of 42 million. The speed of development – and the sheer volume of poured concrete – is staggering. During the next 15 years, China is expected to build urban areas equal in size to 10 New York Cities.

---

In 2010 China overtook the USA as the world's largest energy consumer; in the same year the nation replaced Japan as the world's second- largest economy and is tipped to overtake the USA by 2030 (some say by 2020).

---

Beyond urban areas, deforestation and overgrazing have accelerated the desertification of vast areas of China, particularly in the western provinces. Deserts now cover almost one-fifth of the country and China's dustbowl is the world's largest, swallowing up 200 sq km of arable land every month.

For decades China neglected the environment as it was costly to protect and slowed the pace of economic development; environmental concerns were parked on the back-burner to be dealt with once the national economy had developed. China embarked on a course of development first, clean up later. The World Bank calculates the annual cost of pollution alone in China at almost 6% of the national GDP; when all forms of environmental damage are incorporated, the figure leaps as high as 12%, meaning China's final environmental costs may overshadow economic growth.

## TOP BOOKS ON CHINA'S ENVIRONMENT

---

- » *When a Billion Chinese Jump* (2010) Jonathan Watts' sober and engaging study of China's environmental issues.
- » *The River Runs Black: The Environmental Challenge to China's Future* (2010; 2nd edition) Elizabeth Economy's frightening look at the unhappy marriage between breakneck economic production and environmental degradation.
- » *The China Price: The True Cost of Chinese Competitive Advantage* (2008) Alexandra Harney's telling glimpse behind the figures of China's economic rise.
- » *China's Water Crisis* (2004) Ma Jun rolls up his sleeves to examine the sources of China's water woes.
- » *Mao's War Against Nature* (2001) Judith Shapiro looks at the ideological clash between communism and the environment.

## A Greener China?

China is painfully aware of its accelerated desertification, growing water shortages, shrinking glaciers, acidic rain, contaminated rivers, caustic urban air and polluted soil. The government is keenly committed, on a policy level, to the development of greener and cleaner energy sources. China's leaders are also seeking to devise a more sustainable and less wasteful economic model for the nation's future development.

There is evidence of ambitious and bold thinking: in 2010 China announced it would pour billions into developing electric and hybrid vehicles; Beijing committed itself to overtaking Europe in renewable energy investment by 2020; wind farm construction (in Gansu, for example) continues apace ([Click here](#)); and China leads the world in production of solar cells. It aims to reduce energy use per unit of GDP by more than 15% before 2015.

---

China's Bayan Obo Mining District in Inner Mongolia produces roughly half of the world's rare earth metals, elements essential for the production

While China's system of governance allows it to railroad bold initiatives, it also encourages a reliance on technological 'solutions' and huge engineering programs to combat

of mobile phones, high-definition TVs, computers, wind turbines and other products.

---

environmental problems. For example, China is seeking to answer its water crisis by diverting Yangzi River waters to thirsty north China, when other

solutions may be a more sustainable policy.

Some greener initiatives, such as the Three Gorges Dam, sport green credentials in some areas (no greenhouse gases, renewable energy source, small carbon footprint) but are environmentally unsound in others (water-polluting, seismic effects, local climate change). In 2012, China finally responded to the US Embassy's publication of atmospheric pollution figures for Beijing by insisting foreign governments stop releasing data.

Public protests – sometimes violent – against polluting industries have proliferated in recent years across China and have scored a number of notable victories, including the 2012 demonstrations in Shifang (Sichuan), which led to the cancellation of a planned US\$1.6 billion copper smelting facility.

One of China's main energy quandaries is coal. China's coal-fired growth comes at a time when the effort to tackle global warming has become a chief global priority. Coal is cheap, easy to extract and remains China's primary energy source, accounting for almost 70% of power requirements. China extracts more coal than any other nation and possesses the world's third-largest deposits. Huge untapped reserves in the northwest await exploitation, vast coalfields in Inner Mongolia are being mined and the economics of coal use in China make it a very cheap and reliable fuel source.

Domestic demand for coal leapt almost 10% in 2011 compared to an increase of 2.7% for crude oil in the same year. Coal is not only dirty but an unrenovable resource. Experts predict China may hit 'peak coal' – the point of maximum production, after which the industry will fall into decline – as early as 2020, or even earlier.



*Karst mountains and agricultural villages, Guǎngxi province ([Click here](#))*  
HARALD SUND / GETTY IMAGES ©



# Martial Arts of China

Unlike Western fighting arts – Savate, kickboxing, boxing, wrestling etc – Chinese martial arts are deeply impregnated with religious and philosophical values. And, some might add, a morsel or two of magic. Many eminent exponents of *gongfu* ( ) – better known in the West as kungfu – were devout monks or religious recluses who drew inspiration from Buddhism and Taoism and sought a mystical communion with the natural world. Their arts were not leisurely pursuits but were closely entangled with the meaning and purpose of their lives.

---

Several Chinese styles of *gongfu* include drunken sets, where the student mimics the supple movements of an inebriate.

---

Often misinterpreted, *gongfu* teaches an approach to life that stresses patience, endurance, magnanimity and humility. For those who truly take to the Chinese martial arts, it's a rewarding journey with a unique destination. When two people

discover they share an interest in martial arts, it's the cue for an endless exchange of techniques and anecdotes.

## STYLES & SCHOOLS

China lays claim to a bewildering range of martial-arts styles, from the flamboyant and showy, inspired by the movements of animals or insects (such as Praying Mantis Boxing) to schools more empirically built upon the science of human movement (eg Wing Chun). Some pugilists stress a mentalist approach, although others put their money on physical power. On the outer fringes are the esoteric arts, abounding with metaphysical feats, arcane practices and closely guarded techniques.

Many fighting styles were once secretively handed down for generations within families and it is only relatively recently that outsiders have been accepted as students. Some schools, especially

the more obscure of styles, have been driven to extinction partly due to their exclusivity.

---

Iron Shirt (*tieshan*) is an external *gongfu qigong* training exercise that circulates and concentrates the *qi* in certain areas to protect the body from impacts during a fight.

---

Some styles also found themselves divided into competing factions, each laying claim to the original teachings and techniques. Such styles may exist in a state of schism, where the original principles have become either distorted or lost. Other styles though have become part of the mainstream

and flourished; Wing Chun in particular has been elevated into a globally recognised art, largely due to its associations with Bruce Lee.

Unlike Korean and Japanese arts such as Taekwondo or Karate-do, there is frequently no international regulatory body that oversees the syllabus, tournaments or grading requirements for China's individual martial arts. Consequently students of China's myriad martial arts may be rather unsure of where they stand or what level they have attained. With no standard syllabus, it is often down to the individual teacher to decide what to teach students, and how quickly.

## Hard School

Although there is considerable blurring between the two camps, Chinese martial arts are often distinguished between hard and soft schools. Typically aligned with Buddhism, the hard or 'external' (; *waijia*) school tends to be more vigorous, athletic and focussed on the development of power. Many of these styles are related to Shaolin Boxing and the Shaolin Temple in Henan province.

---

Praying Mantis master Fan Yook Tung once killed two stampeding bulls with an iron-palm technique.

---

Shaolin Boxing is forever associated with Bodhidharma, an ascetic Indian Buddhist monk who visited the Shaolin Temple and added a series of breathing and physical exercises to the Shaolin monk's sedentary

meditations. The Shaolin monk's legendary endeavours and fearsome physical skills became known throughout China and beyond. Famous external schools include Baimei Quan (White Eyebrow Boxing) and

Chang Quan (Long Boxing).

## Soft School

Usually inspired by Taoism, the soft or 'internal' Chinese school (; neijia) develops pliancy and softness as a weapon against hard force. Taichi (Taiji Quan) is the best known soft school, famed for its slow and lithe movements and an emphasis on cultivating *qi* (energy). Attacks are met with yielding movements that smother the attacking force and lead the aggressor off balance. The road to Taichi mastery is a long and difficult one, involving a re-education of physical movement and suppression of one's instinct to tense up when threatened ([Click here](#)). Other soft schools include the circular moves of Bagua Zhang and the linear boxing patterns of Xingyi Quan, based on five basic punches – each linked to one of the five elements of Chinese philosophy – and the movements of 12 animals.

## Forms

Most students of Chinese martial arts – hard or soft – learn forms (; *taolu*), a series of movements linked together into a pattern, which embody the principal punches and kicks of the style. In essence, forms are unwritten compendiums of the style, to ensure passage from one generation to the next. The number and complexity of forms varies from style to style: taichi may only have one form, although it may be very lengthy (the long form of the Yang style takes around 20 minutes to perform). Five Ancestors Boxing has dozens of forms, while Wing Chun only has three empty-hand forms.

## Qigong

Closely linked to both the hard and especially the soft martial-arts schools is the practice of *qigong*, a technique for cultivating and circulating *qi* around the body. *Qi* can be developed for use in fighting to protect the body, as a source of power or for curative and health-giving purposes.

*Qi* can be developed in a number of ways – by standing still in fixed postures or with gentle exercises, meditation and measured breathing techniques. Taichi itself is a moving form of *qigong* cultivation while at

the harder end of the spectrum a host of *qigong* exercises aim to make specific parts of the body impervious to attack.

## BAGUA ZHANG

One of the more esoteric and obscure of the soft Taoist martial arts, Bagua Zhang ( Eight Trigram Boxing, also known as Pa-kua) is also one of the most intriguing. The Bagua Zhang student wheels around in a circle, rapidly changing direction and speed, occasionally thrusting out a palm strike.

---

Zhang Sanfeng, the founder of taichi, was supposedly able to walk more than 1000 *li* (around 350 miles) a day; others say he lived for more than 200 years!

---

Bagua Zhang draws its inspiration from the trigrams (an arrangement of three broken and unbroken lines) of the classic *Book of Changes* (Yijing or I Ching), the ancient oracle used for divination. The trigrams are typically arranged in circular form and it is this pattern that is traced out by the Bagua

Zhang exponent. Training commences by just walking the circle so the student gradually becomes infused with its patterns and rhythms.

A hallmark of the style is the exclusive use of the palm, not the fist, as the principal weapon. This may seem curious and perhaps even ineffectual, but in fact the palm can transmit a lot of power – consider a thrusting palm strike to the chin, for example. The palm is also better protected than the fist as it is cushioned by muscle. The fist also has to transfer its power through a multitude of bones that need to be correctly aligned to avoid damage while the palm sits at the end of the wrist. Consider hitting a brick wall as hard as you can with your palm (and then imagine doing it with your fist!).

The student must become proficient in the subterfuge, evasion, speed and unpredictability that are hallmarks of Bagua Zhang. Force is generally not met with force, but deflected by the circular movements manifested in students through their meditations upon the circle. Circular forms – arcing, twisting, twining and spinning – are the mainstay of all movements, radiating from the waist.

Despite being dated by historians to the 19th century, Bagua Zhang is quite probably a very ancient art. Beneath the Taoist overlay, the

movements and patterns of the art suggest a possibly animistic origin, which gives the art its timeless rhythms.

## WING CHUN

Conceived by a Buddhist nun called Ng Mui from the Shaolin Temple, who taught her skills to a young girl called Wing Chun (), this is a fast and dynamic system of fighting that promises quick results for novices. Wing Chun (Yong Chun) was the style that taught Bruce Lee how to move and, although he ultimately moved away from it to develop his own style, Wing Chun had an enormous influence on the Hong Kong fighter and actor.

Wing Chun emphasises speed rather than strength. Evasion, rapid strikes and low kicks are the hallmarks of the style. Forms are simple and direct, dispensing with the pretty flourishes that clutter other styles.

The art can perhaps best be described as scientific. There are none of the animal forms that make other styles so exciting and mysterious. Instead, Wing Chun is built around its centre line theory, which draws an imaginary line down the human body and centres all attacks and blocks along that line. The line runs through the sensitive regions: eyes, nose, mouth, throat, heart, solar plexus and groin and any blow on these points is debilitating and dangerous.

---

The linear movements and five punches of the internal Chinese martial art Body-Mind Boxing (Xingyi Quan) possibly evolved from spear-fighting techniques.

---

The three empty hand forms – which look bizarre to non-initiates – train arm and leg movements that both attack and defend this line. None of the blocks stray beyond the width of the shoulders, as this is the limit of possible attacks, and punches follow the same theory. Punches are

delivered with great speed in a straight line, along the shortest distance between puncher and punched. All of this gives Wing Chun its distinctive simplicity.

## COURSES, BOOKS & FILMS

---

Martial-arts courses can be found in abundance across China, from Beijing, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Wudang Shan in Hubei, Yangshuo in Guangxi and the Shaolin Temple in Henan. See under Courses in these sections for more.

Try to track down a copy of John F Gilbey's *The Way of a Warrior*, a tongue-in-cheek, expertly written and riveting account of the Oriental fighting arts. *Meditations on Violence: A Comparison of Martial Arts Training & Real World Violence* by Sgt Rory Miller is a graphic, illuminating and down-to-earth book on violence and its consequences that is also well worth reading.

For metaphysical pointers, soft-school adherents can dip into Laotzu's terse but inspiring *The Classic of the Way and Its Power* ([Click here](#)). For spectacular (if implausible) Wing Chun moves and mayhem, watch *Ip Man* (2008), starring the indefatigable Donnie Yen.

A two-person training routine called *chi sau* (sticky hands) teaches the student how to be soft and relaxed in response to attacks, as pliancy generates more speed. Weapons in the Wing Chun arsenal include the lethal twin Wing Chun butterfly knives and an extremely long pole, which requires considerable strength to handle with skill.

# Survival Guide

---

## **DIRECTORY A-Z**

[Accommodation](#)

[Activities](#)

[Business Hours](#)

[Children](#)

[Customs Regulations](#)

[Discount Cards](#)

[Electricity](#)

[Embassies & Consulates](#)

[Gay & Lesbian Travellers](#)

[Insurance](#)

[Internet Access](#)

[Language Courses](#)

[Legal Matters](#)

[Money](#)

[Passports](#)

[Post](#)

[Public Holidays](#)

[Safe Travel](#)

[Telephone](#)

[Visas](#)

[Volunteering](#)

[Weights & Measures](#)

## **TRANSPORT**

[GETTING THERE & AWAY](#)

[Entering China](#)

[Air](#)

[Land](#)

[River](#)

[Sea](#)

[GETTING AROUND](#)

[Air](#)

[Bicycle](#)

[Boat](#)

[Bus](#)

[Car & Motorcycle](#)

[Local Transport](#)

**[CHINA BY TRAIN](#)**

[The Chinese Train Network](#)

[Trains](#)

[Travelling by Train](#)

[Ticket Types](#)

[Ticketing](#)

[Internet Resources](#)

**[HEALTH](#)**

**[BEFORE YOU GO](#)**

[Insurance](#)

[Vaccinations](#)

[Medical Checklist](#)

[Websites](#)

[Further Reading](#)

**[IN CHINA](#)**

[Availability of Health Care](#)

[Infectious Diseases](#)

[Traveller's Diarrhoea](#)



[Environmental Hazards](#)

[Women's Health](#)

[Traditional Chinese Medicine](#)

**[LANGUAGE](#)**

# Directory A-Z

---

---

## Accommodation

From rustic homesteads, homestays, youth hostels, student dormitories, guesthouses, courtyard lodgings, boutique hotels and historic residences to five-star towers, China's accommodation choice is impressive, on a national level. The choice varies enormously, however, between regions and cities. Top-tier cities such as Beijing, Shanghai, Hangzhou and Hong Kong sport a rich variety of accommodation options but other towns may have a poor supply, despite being inundated with visitors. In fact, many travellers decide where to visit in China on the strength of the local accommodation choice.

## Rooms & Prices

### ROOMS

All rooms in this book come with private bathroom or shower room, unless otherwise stated. Rooms are generally easy to procure, but phone ahead to reserve a room in popular tourist towns (such as Hangzhou), especially for weekend visits.

Most rooms in China fall into the following categories:

**Double rooms** ( ; *shuang ren fang* or *biaozhun jian*) In most cases, these are twins, ie with two beds.

**Single rooms** ( ; *danjian*).

**Large-bed rooms** ( ; *dachuang fang*) With a large single bed.

**Suites** ( ; *taofang*) Available at most midrange and top-end hotels.

**Dorms** ( ; *duorenfang*) Usually, but not always, available at youth hostels (and at a few hotels).

**Business rooms** ( ; *shangwu fang*) Usually equipped with computers.

## PRICES

Accommodation in this book is divided by price category, identified by the symbols \$ (budget), \$\$ (midrange) or \$\$\$ (top end); accommodation prices vary across China, so refer to each chapter for that region's budget breakdown, identified at the start of the chapter.

Prices listed in this book are the rack rate, which generally reflects the most you are expected to pay. However, at most times of the year discounts are in effect which can range from 10% to 60%; bargain for the best rate at reception. Rooms reach their maximum price during the big holiday periods at the start of May and October each year. In some towns (such as Hangzhou), there may be a pricier weekend rate (Friday and Saturday). International credit cards are generally only acceptable at midrange hotels and above, always have cash in case.

You usually have to check out by noon. If you check out between noon and 6pm you will be charged 50% of the room price; after 6pm you have to pay for another full night.

## Restrictions & Hassles

Note that quite a number of hotels in China will say they do not accept foreigners. This can be a source of great frustration when you discover cheaper guesthouses are off-limits to non-Chinese and you find yourself steered towards more expensive lodgings, restricting foreigners to midrange and top-end hotels. All hotels listed in this book accept foreign guests.

## PRACTICALITIES

---

» » There are four types of plugs – three-pronged angled pins, three-pronged round pins, two flat pins or two narrow round pins. Electricity is 220 volts, 50 cycles AC.

» » The standard English-language newspaper is the (censored) *China Daily* ([www.chinadaily.com.cn](http://www.chinadaily.com.cn)). China's largest circulation Chinese-language daily is the *People's Daily* (*Renmin Ribao*). It has an English-language edition on [www.english.peopledaily.com.cn](http://www.english.peopledaily.com.cn).

Imported English-language newspapers can be bought from five-star hotel bookshops.

» » Listen to the **BBC World Service**

([www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/tuning](http://www.bbc.co.uk/worldservice/tuning)) or **Voice of America**

([www.voa.gov](http://www.voa.gov)); however, the websites can be jammed. Chinese

Central TV (CCTV) has an English-language channel – CCTV9.

Your hotel may have ESPN, Star Sports, CNN or BBC News 24.

» » China officially subscribes to the international metric system, but you will encounter the ancient Chinese weights and measures system that features the *liang* (tael; 37.5g) and the *jin* (catty; 0.6kg). There are 10 *liang* to the *jin*.

## Booking

Booking online can help you secure a room and obtain a good price, but remember you should be able to bargain down the price of your room at hotel reception (except at youth hostels and the cheapest hotels) or over the phone. To secure accommodation, always plan ahead and book your room in advance during the high season. Airports at major cities often have hotel-booking counters that offer discounted rates.

Useful accommodation websites:

**Ctrip** (☎ 800 820 6666; [www.english.ctrip.com](http://www.english.ctrip.com))

**Elong** (☎ 800 810 1010; [www.elong.com](http://www.elong.com))

## Checking In

At check-in you will need your passport; a registration form will ask what type of visa you have. For most travellers, the visa will be L; for a full list of visa categories, [Click here](#). A deposit (; *yajin*) is required at most hotels; this will be paid either with cash or by providing your credit-card details. If your deposit is paid in cash, you will be given a receipt and this will be returned to you when you check out.

## Camping

There are few places where you can legally camp and as most of China's flat land is put to agricultural use, you will largely be limited to

remote, hilly regions. Camping is more feasible in wilder and less populated parts of west China. In certain destinations with camping possibilities, travel agencies and hotels will arrange overnight camping trips or multiday treks, in which case camping equipment will be supplied.

## Courtyard Hotels

Largely confined to Beijing, courtyard hotels have rapidly mushroomed. Arranged around traditional *siheyuan* (courtyards), rooms are on ground level. Courtyard hotels are charming and romantic, but are often expensive and rooms are small, in keeping with the dimensions of courtyard residences. Facilities will be limited so don't expect a swimming pool, gym or subterranean garage.

## Business Chain Hotels

Dotted around much of China, budget business chain hotels can sometimes be a decent alternative to old-school two- and three-star hotels, with rooms around the ¥150 to ¥200 mark. In recent years, however, their once-pristine facilities have sometimes come to resemble the threadbare clunkers they aimed to replace. Still, their sheer ubiquitousness means you can usually find accommodation (but look at the rooms first). They often have membership/loyalty schemes which make rooms cheaper. Brands include:

Home Inn ([www.homeinns.com](http://www.homeinns.com))

Jinjiang Inn ([www.jinjianginns.com](http://www.jinjianginns.com))

Motel 168 ([www.motel168.com](http://www.motel168.com))

## HOTEL DISCOUNTS

Always ignore the rack rate and ask for the discounted price or bargain for a room, as discounts usually apply everywhere but youth hostels (except for hostel members) and the cheapest accommodation; you can do this in person at reception, or book online. Apart from during the busy holiday periods (the end of April and first few days of May, the first week of October and Chinese New Year), rooms should be priced well below the rack rate and are rarely booked out. Discounts of 10% to 60% off the tariff rate (30% is typical) are the norm, available by simply asking at reception, by phoning in advance to reserve a room or by booking online at Ctrip (<http://english.ctrip.com>). We have listed both the rack rate and the discount you should expect to receive at each hotel, where these apply.

## Guesthouses

The cheapest of the cheap are China's ubiquitous guesthouses (; *zhaodaisuo*). Often found clustering near train or bus stations but also dotted around cities and towns, not all guesthouses accept foreigners and Chinese skills may be crucial in securing a room. Rooms (doubles, twins, triples, quads) are primitive and grey, with tiled floors and possibly a shower room or shabby bathroom; showers may be communal.

Other terms for guesthouses:

- » » (*ludian*)
- » » (*luguan*)
- » » means rooms available
- » » means rooms available today
- » » (*zhusu*) means accommodation

## Homesteads

In more rural destinations, small towns and villages, you should be able to find a homestead (; *nongjia*) with a small number of rooms in the region of ¥50 (bargaining is possible); you will not need to register. The owner will be more than happy to cook up meals for you as well. Showers and toilets are generally communal.

## Hostels

If you're looking for efficiently run budget accommodation, turn to China's youth hostel sector. **Hostelling International** (☎ 020-8751 3731; [www.yhachina.com](http://www.yhachina.com)) hostels are generally well run; other private youth hostels scattered around China are unaffiliated and standards at these may be variable. Book ahead in popular towns as rooms can go fast.

Superb for meeting like-minded travellers, youth hostels are typically staffed by youthful English-speakers who are also well informed on local sightseeing and transport. The foreigner-friendly vibe in youth hostels stands in marked contrast to many Chinese hotels. Double rooms in youth hostels are frequently better than

midrange equivalents, often just as comfortable and better located and they may be cheaper (but not always). Many offer wi-fi, while most have at least one internet terminal (free perhaps, free for 30 minutes or roughly ¥5 to ¥10 per hour). Laundry, book-lending, kitchen facilities, bike rental, lockers, noticeboard, bar and cafe should all be available, as well as possibly pool, ping pong, DVDs, PlayStation and other forms of entertainment. Soap, shower gel and toothpaste are generally not provided, although you can purchase them at reception.

Dorms usually cost between ¥40 and ¥55 (discounts of around ¥5 for members). They typically come with bunk beds but may have standard beds. Most dorms won't have an ensuite shower, though some do; they should have air-con. Many hostels also have doubles, singles, twins and maybe even family rooms; prices vary but are often around ¥150 to ¥250 for a double, again with discounts for members. Hostels can arrange ticketing or help you book a room in another affiliated youth hostel. Book ahead (online if possible) as rooms are frequently booked out, especially at weekends or the busy holiday periods.

## **HOTEL TIPS**

---

- » » Ask your hotel concierge for a local map
- » » The standard of English is often better at youth hostels than at midrange or some high-end hotels
- » » Your hotel can help with ticketing, for a commission
- » » See the Accommodation section of the Language chapter for a handy primer of Chinese phrases
- » » Almost every hotel has a left-luggage room, which should be free if you are a guest in the hotel
- » » Always bargain for a room

## **Hotels**

Hotels vary wildly in quality within the same budget bracket. The star rating system employed in China can also be misleading: hotels may be awarded four or five stars when they are patently a star lower in ranking. The best rule of thumb is to choose the newest hotel in each category as renovations can be rare. Deficiencies may not be immediately apparent, so explore and inspect the overall quality of the hotel; viewing the room up front pays dividends.

China has few independent hotels of real distinction, so it's generally advisable to select chain hotels that offer a proven standard of international excellence. Shangri-La, Marriott, Hilton, St Regis, Ritz-Carlton, Marco Polo and Hyatt all have a presence in China and can generally be relied upon for high standards of service and comfort.

Note that:

- » » English skills are often poor, even in some five-star hotels.
- » » Most rooms are twins rather than doubles, so be clear if you specifically want a double.
- » » Virtually all hotel rooms, whatever the price bracket, will have air-conditioning and a TV.
- » » Very cheap rooms may have neither telephone nor internet access.
- » » Wi-fi is increasingly common in hostels and midrange and up hotels (but might be only in the lobby).
- » » Late-night telephone calls from 'masseurs' are still common in budget and lower midrange hotels.
- » » All hotel rooms are subject to a 10% or 15% service charge.
- » » Practically all hotels will change money for guests, and most midrange and top-end hotels accept credit cards.
- » » A Western breakfast may be available, certainly at four-star establishments.
- » » The Chinese method of designating floors is the same as that used in the USA, but different from, say, that used in Australia. What would be the ground floor in Australia is the 1st floor in China, the 1st is the 2nd, and so on.

In China, hotels are called:

- » » *binguan* ()
- » » *dafandian* ()



- » » *dajjudian* ()
- » » *fandian* ()
- » » *jiudian* ()

## BOOK YOUR STAY ONLINE

---

For more accommodation reviews by Lonely Planet authors, check out [hotels.lonelyplanet.com](http://hotels.lonelyplanet.com). You'll find independent reviews, as well as recommendations on the best places to stay. Best of all, you can book online.

### Temples & Monasteries

Some temples and monasteries (especially on China's sacred mountains) provide accommodation. They are cheap, but ascetic, and may not have running water or electricity.

### University Accommodation

Some universities provide cheap and basic accommodation either in their foreign-student dormitory buildings (; *liuxuesheng lou*) or more expensive rooms at their experts' building (; *zhuanjia lou*), where visiting teachers often stay.

---

## Activities

Grab copies of expat magazines in Beijing, Hong Kong, Guangzhou and Shanghai for information on activities such as golf, running, horse riding, cycling, football, cricket, hiking and trekking, swimming, ice skating, skiing, skateboarding, waterskiing and rock climbing.

---

## Business Hours

China officially has a five-day working week. Saturday and Sunday are public holidays.

- » » Banks, offices and government departments open Monday to Friday (roughly 9am until 5pm or 6pm), possibly closing for two hours

in the middle of the day; many banks are also open Saturdays and maybe Sundays.

» » Post offices are generally open seven days a week.

» » Museums generally stay open on weekends and may shut for one day during the week.

» » Travel agencies and foreign-exchange counters in tourist hotels are usually open seven days a week.

» » Department stores, shopping malls and shops are open daily from 10am to 10pm.

» » Internet cafes are typically open 24 hours, but some open at 8am and close at midnight.

» » Restaurants open from around 10.30am to 11pm; some shut at around 2pm and reopen at 5pm or 6pm.

» » Bars open in the late afternoon, shutting around midnight or later.

---

## Children

More comfortable in the large cities of Hong Kong, Beijing and Shanghai, children are likely to feel out of place in smaller towns and in the wilds. With the exception of Hainan, China has a dreary selection of beaches. Ask a doctor specialising in travel medicine for information on recommended immunisations for your child.

## Practicalities

» » Baby food, nappies and milk powder: widely available in supermarkets.

» » Restaurants: few have baby chairs.

» » Train travel: children shorter than 1.4m can get a hard sleeper for 75% of the full price or a half-price hard seat. Children shorter than 1.1m ride free, but you have to hold them the entire journey.

» » Air travel: infants under the age of two fly for 10% of the full airfare, while children between the ages of two and 11 pay half the full price for domestic flights and 75% of the adult price for international flights.

» » Sights and museums: many have children's admission prices, for children under 1.1m or 1.3m in height.

» » Always ensure your child carries ID in case they get lost.

For more information on travelling with children, consult the following:

- » » *Travel with Children* (Brigitte Barta et al)
- » » *Take the Kids Travelling* (Helen Truskowski)
- » » *Adventuring with Children* (Nan Jeffrey)
- » » *Travels with Baby: The Ultimate Guide for Planning Trips with Babies, Toddlers, and Preschool-Age Children* (Shelly Rivoli)
- » » *Take-Along Travels with Baby: Hundreds of Tips to Help During Travel with Your Baby, Toddler, and Preschooler* (Shelly Rivoli)

---

## Customs Regulations

Chinese customs generally pay tourists little attention. 'Green channels' and 'red channels' at the airport are clearly marked. You are not allowed to import or export illegal drugs, or animals and plants (including seeds). Pirated DVDs and CDs are illegal exports from China – if found they will be confiscated. You can take Chinese medicine up to a value of ¥300 when you depart China.

Duty free, you're allowed to import:

- » » 400 cigarettes or the equivalent in tobacco products.
- » » 1.5L of alcohol.
- » » 50g of gold or silver.
- » » A camera, video camera and similar items for personal use only.

As well:

- » » Importation of fresh fruit and cold cuts is prohibited.
- » » You can legally only bring in or take out ¥6000 in Chinese currency, although there are no restrictions on foreign currency (but declare any cash exceeding US\$5000 or its equivalent in another currency).

Objects considered antiques require a certificate and a red seal to clear customs when leaving China. Anything made before 1949 is considered an antique, and if it was made before 1795 it cannot legally be taken out of the country. To get the proper certificate and red seal, your antiques must be inspected by the **State Administration of Cultural Heritage** (Guojia Wenwu Ju; [www.sach.gov.cn](http://www.sach.gov.cn), Chinese only; ☎ 010-5988 1572; 10 Chaoyangmen Beidajie) in Beijing.

---

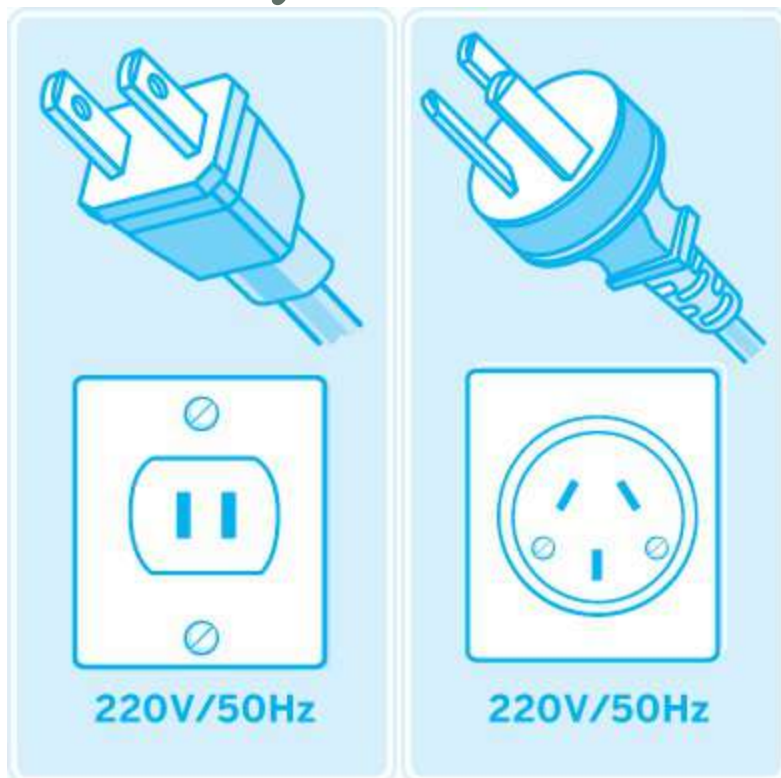
## Discount Cards

Seniors over the age of 65 are frequently eligible for a discount, so make sure you take your passport when visiting sights as proof of age.

An International Student Identity Card (ISIC; €12) can net students half-price discounts at many sights (but you may have to insist).

---

## Electricity



---

## Embassies & Consulates

### Embassies

There are two main embassy compounds in Beijing – Jianguomenwai and Sanlitun . Embassies are open from 9am to noon and 1.30pm to 4pm Monday to Friday, but visa departments are often only open in the morning. For visas, you need to phone to make an appointment.

**Australia** (☎ 010-5140 4111; [www.china.embassy.gov.au](http://www.china.embassy.gov.au); 21 Dongzhimenwai Dajie)

**Canada** (☎ 010-5139 4000; fax 010-6532 4072;  
[www.canadainternational.gc.ca](http://www.canadainternational.gc.ca); 19 Dongzhimenwai Dajie)

**France** (☎ 010-8531 2000; fax 010-8531 2020; [www.ambafrance-cn.org](http://www.ambafrance-cn.org); 60 Tianze Lu)

**Germany** (☎ 010-8532 9000; fax 010-6532 5336;  
[www.peking.diplo.de](http://www.peking.diplo.de); 17 Dongzhimenwai Dajie)

**India** (☎ 010-8531 2500; fax 010-8531 2515;  
[www.indianembassy.org.cn](http://www.indianembassy.org.cn); 5 Liangmaqiao Beijie)

**Ireland** (☎ 010-6532 2691; fax 010-6532 6857;  
[www.embassyofireland.cn](http://www.embassyofireland.cn); 3 Ritan Donglu)

**Kazakhstan** (☎ 010-6532 6182; fax 010-6532 6183; 9 Sanlitun Dongliujie)

**Laos** (☎ 010-6532 1224; fax 010-6532 6748; 11 Sanlitun Dongsijie)

**Mongolia** (☎ 010-6532 1203; fax 010-6532 5045;  
[www.mongolembassychina.org](http://www.mongolembassychina.org); 2 Xiushui Beijie)

**Myanmar** (☎ 010-6532-0359; fax 010-6532-0408;  
[www.myanmarembassy.com/chinese](http://www.myanmarembassy.com/chinese); 6 Dongzhimenwai Dajie)

**Nepal** (☎ 010-6532 1795; fax 010-6532 3251;  
[www.nepalembassy.org.cn](http://www.nepalembassy.org.cn); 1 Sanlitun Xiliujie)

**Netherlands** (☎ 010-8532 0200; fax 010-8532 0300;  
[www.hollandinchina.org](http://www.hollandinchina.org); 4 Liangmahe Nanlu)

**New Zealand** (☎ 010-8532 7000; fax 010-6532 4317;  
[www.nzembassy.com/china](http://www.nzembassy.com/china); 1 Ritan Dong Erjie)

**North Korea** (☎ 010-6532 1186; fax 010-6532 6056; 11 Ritan Beilu)

**Pakistan** (☎ 010-6532 2504/2558; fax 010-6532 2715; 1 Dongzhimenwai Dajie)

**Russia** (☎ 010-6532 1381; fax 010-6532 4851; [www.russia.org.cn](http://www.russia.org.cn); 4 Dongzhimen Beizhongjie)

**South Korea** (☎ 010-8531 0700; fax 010-8531 0726; 20 Dongfang Donglu)

**UK** (☎ 010-5192 4000; fax 010-5192 4239;  
<http://ukinchina.fco.gov.uk>; 11 Guanghai Lu)

**USA** (☎ 010-8531 3000; fax 010-8531 4200; <http://beijing.usembassy-china.org.cn>; 55 Anjialou Lu)

**Vietnam** (☎ 010-6532 1155; fax 010-6532 5720; [www.vnemba.org.cn](http://www.vnemba.org.cn);  
32 Guanghua Lu)

## Consulates

### CHENGDU

**France** (☎ 028-6666 6060; 30th fl, Times Sq, 2 Zongtongfu Lu)

**Germany** (☎ 028-8528 0800; 25th fl, Western Tower, 19 Renmin  
Nanlu 4th Section)

**Pakistan** (☎ 028-8526 8316; 8th fl, Western Tower, 19 Renmin Nanlu  
4th Section)

**USA** (☎ 028-8558 3992; 4 Lingshiguan Lu)

### CHONGQING

**Canada** (☎ 023-6373 8007; Suite 1705, 17th fl, Metropolitan Tower,  
68 Zourong Lu)

**UK** (☎ 023-6369 1500; Suite 2801, 28th fl, Metropolitan Tower, 68  
Zourong Lu)

### ERENHOT

**Mongolia** (Menggu Lingshiguan; [Click here](#) for details)

### GUANGZHOU

**Australia** (☎ 020-3814 0111; fax 020-3814 0112; 12th fl,  
Development Centre, 3 Linjiang Dadao)

**Canada** (☎ 020-8611 6100; fax 020-8611 6196; Room 801, China  
Hotel Office Tower, Liuhua Lu)

**France** (☎ 020-2829 2000; fax 020-2829 2045; Room 810, 8th fl,  
Main Tower, Guangdong International Hotel, 339 Huanshi Donglu)

**Germany** (☎ 020-8313 0000; fax 020-8516 8133; 14th fl, Main Tower,  
Yuehai Tianhe Bldg, 208 Tianhe Lu)

**India** (☎ 020-8550 1501; Room 1401-1402, 14th fl, HNA Tower, 8  
Linhe Zhonglu)

**Netherlands** (☎ 020-3813 2200; fax 020-3813 2299;  
<http://guangzhou.nlconsulate.org>; Teem Tower, 208 Tianhe Lu)

**New Zealand** (☎ 020-8667 0253; Room 1055, China Hotel Office Tower, Liuhua Lu)

**Russia** (☎ 020-8518 5001; 26a Fazhan Zhongxin Bldg, 3 Linjiang Dadao)

**UK** (☎ 020-8314 3000; fax 020-8332 7509; 2nd fl, Main Tower, Guangdong International Hotel, 339 Huanshi Donglu)

**USA** (☎ 020-8121 8000; fax 020-8121 8428; 5th fl, Tianyu Garden, 136-142 Linhe Zhonglu)

## **HOHHOT**

**Mongolia** (Menggu Lingshiguan; 5 Dongying Nanjie; 🕒 8.30am-12.30pm Mon, Tue, Thu)

## **HONG KONG**

**Australia** (☎ 852-2827 8881; 23rd fl, Harbour Centre, 25 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai)

**Canada** (☎ 852-3719 4700; 12-14th fl, One Exchange Sq, 8 Connaught Pl, Central)

**France** (☎ 852-3752 9900; 26th fl, Tower II, Admiralty Centre, 18 Harcourt Rd, Admiralty)

**Germany** (☎ 852-2105 8777; 21st fl, United Centre, 95 Queensway, Admiralty)

**India** (☎ 852-3970 9900; [www.cgihk.gov.in](http://www.cgihk.gov.in); 26A United Centre, 95 Queensway, Admiralty)

**Ireland** (☎ 852-2527 4897; 1408 Two Pacific Pl, 88 Queensway, Admiralty)

**Japan** (☎ 852-2522 1184; [www.hk.emb-japan.go.jp](http://www.hk.emb-japan.go.jp); 46-47th fl, One Exchange Sq, 8 Connaught Pl, Central)

**Laos** (☎ 852-2544 1186; 14th fl, Arion Commercial Centre, 2-12 Queen's Rd West, Sheung Wan)

**Nepal** (☎ 852-2369 7813; [www.nepalconsulatehk.org](http://www.nepalconsulatehk.org); 715 China Aerospace Tower, Concordia Plaza, 1 Science Museum Rd, Tsim Sha Tsui)

**Netherlands** (☎ 852-2522 5127; Room 5702, 57th fl, Cheung Kong

Centre, 2 Queen's Rd, Central)

**New Zealand** (☎ 852-2525 5044; Room 6501, 65th fl, Central Plaza, 18 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai) **Russia** (☎ 852-2877 7188; 21st fl, Sun Hung Kai Centre, 30 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai)

**UK** (☎ 852-2901 3000; 1 Supreme Court Rd, Admiralty)

**USA** (☎ 852-2523 9011; 26 Garden Rd, Central)

**Vietnam** (☎ 852-2591 4510; vnconsul@netvigator.com; 15th fl, Great Smart Tower, 230 Wan Chai Rd, Wan Chai)

## **JINGHONG**

**Laos** (1st fl, King Land Hotel, 6 Jingde Lu; 🕒 8.30-11.30am & 1.30-4pm)

## **KUNMING**

**Laos** (☎ 0871-316 8916; Ground fl, Kunming Diplomat Compound, 6800 Caiyun Beilu)

**Myanmar** (☎ 0871-816 2810; 99 Yingbin Lu, Guandu District Consular Zone)

**Thailand** (☎ 0871-316 8916; fax 0871-316 6891; Ground fl, South Wing, Kunming Hotel, 145 Dongfeng Donglu)

**Vietnam** (☎ 0871-352 2669; Kai Wah Plaza Hotel, 157 Beijing Lu)

## **LHASA**

**Nepal** (☎ 0891-681 3965; [www.nepalembassy.org.cn](http://www.nepalembassy.org.cn); 13 Norbulingka Beilu; 🕒 10am-noon Mon-Fri) On a side street between the Lhasa Hotel and Norbulingka.

## **QINGDAO**

**Japan** (☎ 0532-8090 0001; fax 0532-8090 0009; 59 Xiang gang Donglu)

**South Korea** (☎ 0532-8897 6001; fax 0532-8897 6005; 8 Qinling Lu)

## **SHANGHAI**

**Australia** (☎ 021-2215 5200; [www.shanghai.china.embassy.gov.au](http://www.shanghai.china.embassy.gov.au);



22nd fl, CITIC Sq, 1168 West Nanjing Rd)

**Canada** (☎ 021-3279 2800; [www.shanghai.gc.ca](http://www.shanghai.gc.ca); 8th fl, 1788 West Nanjing Rd)

**France** (☎ 021-6103 2200; [www.consulfrance-shanghai.org](http://www.consulfrance-shanghai.org); Suite 201, 2nd fl, Haitong Securities Bldg, 689 Guangdong Rd)

**Germany** (☎ 021-3401 0106; [www.shanghai.diplo.de](http://www.shanghai.diplo.de); 181 Yongfu Rd)

**India** (☎ 021-6275 8881; 1008 Shanghai International Trade Centre, 2201 West Yan'an Rd)

**Ireland** (☎ 021-6279 8729; 700a Shanghai Centre, 1376 West Nanjing Rd)

**Japan** (☎ 021-5257 4766; [www.shanghai.cn.emb-japan.go.jp](http://www.shanghai.cn.emb-japan.go.jp); 8 Wanshan Rd)

**Nepal** (☎ 021-6272 0259; 16a, 669 West Beijing Rd)

**Netherlands** (☎ 021-2208 7288; 10th fl, Tower B, DawningCenter, 500 Hongbaoshi Rd)

**New Zealand** (☎ 021-5407 5858; Room 1605-1607A, 16th fl, The Centre, 989 Changle Rd)

**Russia** (☎ 021-6324 8383; fax 021-6324 2682; 20 Huangpu Rd)

**UK** (☎ 021-3279 2000; fax 021-6279 7651; Room 319, 3rd fl, Shanghai Centre, 1376 West Nanjing Rd)

**USA** (<http://shanghai.usembassy-china.org.cn>) French Concession (☎ 021-6279 7662; 1469 Middle Huaihai Rd); Jing'an (☎ 021-3217 4650, after-hour emergency number for US citizens 021-3217-4650; 8th fl, Westgate Tower, 1038 West Nanjing Rd)

## SHENYANG

**France** (☎ 024-2319 0000; fax 024-2319 0001; 34 Nanshisan Weilu)

**North Korea** (☎ 024-8690 3451; fax 024-8690 3482; 37 Beiling Dajie)  
North Korea visas are more likely to be obtained at the North Korean embassy in Beijing.

**Russia** (☎ 024-2322 3927; fax 024-2322 3907; 31 Nanshisan Weilu)

**South Korea** (☎ 024-2385 3388; 37 Nanshisan Weilu)

**USA** (☎ 024-2322 1198; fax 024-2323 1465; 52 Shisi Weilu)

## URUMQI

**Kazakhstan** (Hasakesitan Lingshiguan; ☎ 0991-369 1444; 216 Kunming Lu; ☀ 9am-1pm Mon-Fri) If you're applying for a visa, show up early and don't expect calls to be taken.

**Kyrgyzstan** (38 Hetan Beilu; ☀ noon-2pm Mon-Fri) There's a small blue door to the side of the Aipai (Central Asian) Hotel. Visas (¥475) take one week, or more for express of three days or same day. Bring one passport photo and a copy of your passport and visa (pay at the nearby Bank of China and arrive before opening time to get it done). You can also get a visa once you've arrived at Bishkek airport.

## WUHAN

**France** (☎ 027-6579 7900; fax 027-8577 8426; Rooms 1701-1708, Wuhan International Trade Center, 568 Jianshe Dadao)

---

## Gay & Lesbian Travellers

Greater tolerance exists in the big cities than in the more conservative countryside, but even in urban areas, gay and lesbian visitors should be quite discreet. You will often see Chinese same-sex friends holding hands or putting their arms around each other, but this usually has no sexual connotation.

**Spartacus International Gay Guide** (Bruno Gmunder Verlag) Best-selling guide for gay travellers, also available as an iPhone App.

**Utopia** ([www.utopia-asia.com/tipschin.htm](http://www.utopia-asia.com/tipschin.htm)) Tips on travelling in China and a complete listing of gay bars nationwide.

---

## Insurance

Carefully consider a travel-insurance policy to cover theft, loss, trip cancellation and medical eventualities. Travel agents can sort this out for you, although it is often cheaper to find good deals with an insurer online or with a broker. Worldwide travel insurance is available at [www.lonelyplanet.com/travel\\_services](http://www.lonelyplanet.com/travel_services). You can buy, extend and claim online anytime – even if you're already on the road.

Some policies specifically exclude ‘dangerous activities’ such as scuba diving, skiing and even trekking. Check that the policy covers ambulances or an emergency flight home.

Paying for your airline ticket with a credit card often provides limited travel accident insurance – ask your credit-card company what it’s prepared to cover.

You may prefer a policy that pays doctors or hospitals directly rather than reimbursing you for expenditures after the fact. If you have to claim later, ensure you keep all documentation.

See also the Insurance section ([Click here](#)) in the Health chapter.

---

## Internet Access

China’s relationship with the internet is notoriously prickly. Wi-fi accessibility in hotels, cafes, restaurants and bars is generally OK, especially in the big cities. For those using internet cafes, however, problems exist. You will need ID to get online at most internet cafes yet some cities and towns (often provincial capitals or large towns) insist on seeing Chinese ID, barring foreigners from getting online. The best option is to bring a wi-fi enabled mobile phone or laptop or use your hotel computer or broadband internet connection rather than be at the mercy of internet cafes not accepting foreigners.

Up to 10% of websites are traditionally inaccessible in China due to censorship; access to some newspapers articles and other links can suddenly vanish. Social networking sights such as Facebook and Twitter are inaccessible in China; YouTube is also inaccessible.

Internet cafes are listed under the Information section for destinations throughout the book. In large cities and towns, the area around the train station generally has internet cafes.

Rates at internet cafes range from around ¥2 to ¥5 per hour; small deposits are usually required. Opening hours are usually 24 hours.

Youth hostels should have internet access in common areas; if access is not gratis, rates will be around ¥5 per hour. Throughout this book the internet icon (@) is used in hotel reviews to indicate the presence of an internet cafe or a terminal where you can get online; wi-fi areas are indicated with a wi-fi icon (📶).

---

## Language Courses

Learning Chinese in China is big business. Weigh up fees and syllabus carefully and check online reviews – some schools are pricey and may use teaching methods unsuited to Westerners. Consider where you would like to study: the Beijing accent and setting has obvious cachet, but a course in a setting such as Yangshuo can be delightful.

---

## Legal Matters

Anyone under the age of 18 is considered a minor; the minimum age for driving a car is 18. The age of consent for marriage is 22 for men and 20 for women. There is no minimum age restricting the consumption of alcohol or use of cigarettes.

China's laws against the use of illegal drugs are harsh, and foreign nationals have been executed for drug offences (trafficking in more than 50g of heroin can result in the death penalty); in 2009 a British citizen was executed for smuggling drugs (despite protestations that he was mentally impaired). The Chinese criminal justice system does not always ensure a fair trial and defendants are not presumed innocent until proven guilty. Note that China conducts more judicial executions than the rest of the world put together – up to 10,000 per year (27 per day) according to some estimates. If arrested, most foreign citizens have the right to contact their embassy.

---

## Money

Consult the Need to Know chapter ([Click here](#)) for a table of exchange rates.

The Chinese currency is the renminbi (RMB), or 'people's money'. The basic unit of RMB is the yuan (; ¥), which is divided into 10 jiao (), which is again divided into 10 fen (). Colloquially, the yuan is referred to as *kuai* and jiao as *mao* (). The fen has so little value these days that it is rarely used.

The Bank of China issues RMB bills in denominations of ¥1, ¥2, ¥5, ¥10, ¥20, ¥50 and ¥100. Coins come in denominations of ¥1, 5 jiao, 1 jiao and 5 fen. Paper versions of the coins remain in circulation.

Hong Kong's currency is the Hong Kong dollar (HK\$). The Hong Kong dollar is divided into 100 cents. Bills are issued in denominations of HK\$10, HK\$20, HK\$50, HK\$100, HK\$500 and HK\$1000. Copper coins are worth 50c, 20c and 10c, while the \$5, \$2 and \$1 coins are silver and the \$10 coin is nickel and bronze. The Hong Kong dollar is pegged to the US dollar at a rate of US\$1 to HK\$7.80, though it is allowed to fluctuate a little.

Macau's currency is the pataca (MOP\$), which is divided into 100 avos. Bills are issued in denominations of MOP\$10, MOP\$20, MOP\$50, MOP\$100, MOP\$500 and MOP\$1000. There are copper coins worth 10, 20 and 50 avos and silver-coloured MOP\$1, MOP\$2, MOP\$5 and MOP\$10 coins. The pataca is pegged to the Hong Kong dollar at a rate of MOP\$103.20 to HK\$100. In effect, the two currencies are interchangeable and Hong Kong dollars, including coins, are accepted in Macau. Chinese renminbi is also accepted in many places in Macau at one-to-one. You can't spend patacas anywhere else, however, so use them before you leave Macau. Prices quoted in this book are in yuan unless otherwise stated.

## **ATMs**

Bank of China and the Industrial & Commercial Bank of China (ICBC) 24-hour ATMs are plentiful, and you can use Visa, MasterCard, Cirrus, Maestro Plus and American Express to withdraw cash. All ATMs accepting international cards have dual language ability. The network is largely found in sizeable towns and cities. If you plan on staying in China for a long period, it is advisable to open an account at a bank with a nationwide network of ATMs, such as the Bank of China. HSBC and Citibank ATMs are available in larger cities. Keep your ATM receipts so you can exchange your yuan when you leave China.

The exchange rate on ATM withdrawals is similar to that for credit cards, but there is a maximum daily withdrawal amount. Note that banks can charge a withdrawal fee for using the ATM network of another bank, so check with your bank before travelling.

ATMs are listed in the Information sections of destinations throughout this book. To have money wired from abroad, visit Western Union or Moneygram ([www.moneygram.com](http://www.moneygram.com)).

## **COSTS IN CHINA**

Although the days when China was very cheap are a nostalgic memory – and some prices can be eye-watering – you can still experience China affordably with judicious planning. Admission prices to many big-ticket sights can leap way above inflation, while other once-free sights may suddenly impose access fees. The practice of keeping admission costs low to encourage travellers to spend on other parts of the local economy (hotels, restaurants, shops) has made little headway in China. Other admission prices (The Forbidden City, for example) can be extremely good value, however, and an increasing number of museums are free.

Transport in China remains reasonably priced, but colossal distances between sights means this all stacks up, especially if you fly. When choosing destinations, weigh up transport costs, the latest admission fees, journey times and accommodation prices. As prices can jump without warning, find out the latest ticket price before heading to far-off and difficult to reach destinations.

You can empty your wallet dining at expensive restaurants, but you can still feed yourself cheaply at the budget end; note however that prices in city and town supermarkets are comparable to, and often pricier, than those in the West. Accommodation remains affordable and often cheap, but some cheap hotels and guesthouses will not take foreigners ([Click here](#)). Bars are increasingly pricey, but buying beer from small shops is very inexpensive.

## **Credit Cards**

In large tourist towns, credit cards are relatively straightforward to use, but don't expect to be able to use them everywhere, and always carry enough cash; the exception is in Hong Kong, where international credit cards are accepted almost everywhere (although some shops may try to add a surcharge to offset the commission charged by credit companies, which can range from 2.5% to 7%). Check to see if your credit card company charges a foreign transaction fee (usually between 1% and 3%) for purchases in China.

Where they are accepted, credit cards often deliver a slightly better exchange rate than banks. Money can also be withdrawn at certain

ATMs in large cities on credit cards such as Visa, MasterCard and Amex. Always carry cash for purchasing train tickets.

## **Moneychangers**

It's best to wait till you reach China to exchange money as the exchange rate will be better. Foreign currency and travellers cheques can be changed at border crossings, international airports, branches of the Bank of China, tourist hotels and some large department stores; hours of operation for foreign-exchange counters are 8am to 7pm (later at hotels). Top-end hotels will generally change money for hotel guests only. The official rate is given almost everywhere and the exchange charge is standardised, so there is little need to shop around for the best deal.

Australian, Canadian, US, UK, Hong Kong and Japanese currencies and the euro can be changed in China. In some backwaters, it may be hard to change lesser-known currencies; US dollars are still the easiest to change.

Keep at least a few of your exchange receipts. You will need them if you want to exchange any remaining RMB you have at the end of your trip.

## **Tipping**

Almost no one in China (including Hong Kong and Macau) asks for tips. Tipping used to be refused in restaurants, but nowadays many midrange and top-end eateries include their own (often huge) service charge; cheap restaurants do not expect a tip. Taxi drivers throughout China do not ask for or expect tips.

## **Travellers Cheques**

With the prevalence of ATMs across China, travellers cheques are not as useful as they once were and cannot be used everywhere, so always ensure you carry enough ready cash. You should have no problem cashing travellers cheques at tourist hotels, but they are of little use in budget hotels and restaurants. Most hotels will only cash the cheques of guests. If cashing them at banks, aim for larger banks such as the Bank of China or ICBC.

Stick to the major companies such as Thomas Cook, Amex and

Visa. In big cities travellers cheques are accepted in almost any currency, but in smaller destinations, it's best to stick to big currencies such as US dollars or UK pounds. Keep your exchange receipts so you can change your money back to its original currency when you leave.

---

## Passports

You must have a passport (; *huzhao*) on you at all times; it is the most basic travel document and all hotels will insist on seeing it for check-in. It is now mandatory to present your passport when buying train tickets; you will also need it for using internet cafes that accept foreigners.

The Chinese government requires that your passport be valid for at least six months after the expiry date of your visa. You'll need at least one entire blank page in your passport for the visa.

Take an ID card with your photo in case you lose your passport and make photocopies of your passport: your embassy may need these before issuing a new one. You should also report the loss to the local Public Security Bureau (PSB).

Long-stay visitors should register their passport with their embassy.

---

## Post

The international postal service is generally efficient, and airmail letters and postcards will probably take between five and 10 days to reach their destinations. Domestic post is swift – perhaps one or two days from Guangzhou to Beijing. Intracity post may be delivered the same day it's sent.

China Post operates an express mail service (EMS) that is fast, reliable and ensures that the package is sent by registered post. Not all branches of China Post have EMS.

Major tourist hotels have branch post offices where you can send letters, packets and parcels. Even at cheap hotels you can usually post letters from the front desk. Larger parcels may need to be sent from the town's main post office for a contents check and a customs



form will be attached to the parcel.

In major cities, private carriers such as **United Parcel Service** (☎ 800 820 8388; [www.ups.com](http://www.ups.com)), **DHL** (Dunhao; ☎ 800 810 8000; [www.cn.dhl.com](http://www.cn.dhl.com)), **Federal Express** (Lianbang Kuaidi; ☎ 800 988 1888; <http://fedex.com/cn>) and **TNT Skypak** (☎ 800 820 9868; [www.tnt.com/express/zh\\_cn](http://www.tnt.com/express/zh_cn)) have a pick-up service as well as drop-off centres; call their offices for details.

If you are sending items abroad, take them unpacked with you to the post office to be inspected; an appropriate box or envelope will be found for you. Most post offices offer materials for packaging (including padded envelopes, boxes and heavy brown paper), for which you'll be charged. Don't take your own packaging as it will probably be refused. If you have a receipt for the goods, put it in the box when you're mailing it, since the parcel may be opened again by customs further down the line.

---

## Public Holidays

The People's Republic of China has a number of national holidays. Some of the following are nominal holidays that do not result in leave. It's not a great idea to arrive in China or go travelling during the big holiday periods as hotels prices reach their maximum and transport can become very tricky.

**New Year's Day** 1 January

**Chinese New Year** 31 January 2014, 19 February 2015; a week-long holiday for most.

**International Women's Day** 8 March

**Tomb Sweeping Festival** 5 April; a popular three-day holiday period.

**International Labour Day** 1 May; for many it's a three-day holiday.

**Youth Day** 4 May

**International Children's Day** 1 June

**Dragon Boat Festival** 12 June 2013, 2 June 2014, 20 June 2015

**Birthday of the Chinese Communist Party** 1 July

**Anniversary of the Founding of the People's Liberation Army** 1 August

**Moon Festival** end of September

**National Day** 1 October; the big one, a week-long holiday.

---

## Safe Travel

### Crime

Travellers are more often the victims of petty economic crime, such as theft, than serious crime. Foreigners are natural targets for pickpockets and thieves – keep your wits about you and make it difficult for thieves to get at your belongings. Incidences of crime increase around the Chinese New Year, but be vigilant at all times.

High-risk areas in China are train and bus stations, city and long-distance buses (especially sleeper buses), hard-seat train carriages and public toilets.

Take a money belt for your cash, passport and credit cards.

Travelling solo – especially if you are female – carries obvious risks; it's advisable to travel with someone else or in a small group. Even in Beijing, single women taking taxis have been taken to remote areas and robbed by taxi drivers, so don't assume anywhere is safe.

### LOSS REPORTS

If something of yours is stolen, report it immediately to the nearest Foreign Affairs Branch of the Public Security Bureau (PSB; ; Gong'anju). Staff will ask you to fill in a loss report before investigating the case.

A loss report is crucial so you can claim compensation if you have travel insurance. Be prepared to spend many hours, perhaps even several days, organising it. Make a copy of your passport in case of loss or theft.

### Scams

Con artists are widespread. Well-dressed girls flock along Shanghai's East Nanjing Rd, the Bund and Beijing's Wangfujing Dajie, asking single men to photograph them on their mobile phones before dragging them to expensive cafes or Chinese teahouses, leaving them

to foot monstrous bills. 'Poor' art students haunt similar neighbourhoods, press-ganging foreigners into art exhibitions where they are coerced into buying trashy art.

Taxi scams at Beijing's Capital Airport are legendary; always join the queue at the taxi rank and insist that the taxi driver uses his or her meter. Try to avoid pedicabs and motorised three wheelers wherever possible; we receive a litany of complaints against pedicab drivers who originally agree on a price and then insist on an alternative figure (sometimes 10 times the sum) once you arrive at the destination.

Be alert at all times if you decide to change money or buy tickets (such as train tickets, [Click here](#)) on the black market, which we can't recommend.

Always be alert when buying unpriced goods (which is a lot of the time): foreigners are frequently ripped off. Always examine your restaurant bill carefully for hidden extras and if paying by credit card ensure there are no extra charges.

## GOVERNMENT TRAVEL ADVICE

The following government websites offer travel advisories and information on current hot spots.

**Australian Department of Foreign Affairs & Trade** (☎ 1300 139 281; [www.smarttraveller.gov.au](http://www.smarttraveller.gov.au))

**British Foreign & Commonwealth Office** (☎ 0845-850-2829; [www.fco.gov.uk/countryadvice](http://www.fco.gov.uk/countryadvice))

**Canadian Department of Foreign Affairs & International Trade** (☎ 800-267 6788; [www.dfait-maeci.gc.ca](http://www.dfait-maeci.gc.ca))

**US State Department** (☎ 888-407 4747; <http://travel.state.gov>)

## Transport

Traffic accidents are the major cause of death in China for people aged between 15 and 45, and the World Health Organization (WHO) estimates there are 600 traffic deaths per day. On long-distance buses, you may find there are no seatbelts or the seatbelts are virtually unusable through neglect, inextricably stuffed beneath the

seat. Outside of the big cities, taxis are unlikely to have rear seatbelts fitted.

Your greatest danger in China will almost certainly be crossing the road, so develop 360-degree vision and a sixth sense. Crossing only when it is safe to do so could perch you at the side of the road in perpetuity, but don't imitate the local tendency to cross without looking. Note that cars frequently turn on red lights in China, so the green 'walk now' man does not mean it is safe to cross.

---

## Telephone

### Mobile Phones

A mobile phone should be the first choice for calls. If you have the right phone (eg Blackberry, iPhone, Android) and are in a wi-fi zone, **Skype** ([www.skype.com](http://www.skype.com)) and **Viber** ([www.viber.com](http://www.viber.com)) can make calls either very cheap or free. China Mobile outlets and some newspaper kiosks can sell you a SIM card, which will cost from ¥60 to ¥100 depending on the phone number (numbers with eights in them are more expensive, numbers with fours are cheaper) and will include ¥50 of credit. When this runs out, you can top up by buying a credit-charging card (*chongzhi ka*) from China Mobile outlets and some newspaper stands. Ensure your mobile is unlocked for use in China. Buying a mobile phone in China is also an option as they are generally inexpensive. Cafes, restaurants and bars in larger towns and cities are frequently wi-fi enabled.

### Landlines

If making a domestic call, look out for very cheap public phones at newspaper stands ; *baokanting*) and hole-in-the-wall shops ; *xiaomaibu*); you make your call and then pay the owner. Domestic and international long-distance phone calls can also be made from main telecommunications offices and 'phone bars' ; *huaba*). Cardless international calls are expensive and it's far cheaper to use an internet phone (IP) card. Public telephone booths are rarely used now in China but may serve as wi-fi hot spots (as in Shanghai).

Area codes for all cities, towns and destinations appear in the

relevant chapters.

## Phonecards

Beyond Skype or Viber, using an IP card on your mobile or a landline phone is much cheaper than calling direct, but they can be hard to find outside the big cities. You dial a local number, punch in your account number, followed by a pin number and finally the number you wish to call. English-language service is usually available. Some IP cards can only be used locally, while others can be used nationwide, while still others are no good for international calls, so it is important to buy the right card (and check the expiry date).

## VISA TYPES

There are eight categories of visas (for most travellers, an L visa will be issued).

TYPE	ENGLISH NAME	CHINESE NAME
C	flight attendant	<i>chengwu</i>
D	resident	<i>dingju</i>
F	business or student	<i>fangwen</i>
G	transit	<i>guojing</i>
J	journalist	<i>jizhe</i>
L	travel	<i>luxing</i>
X	long-term student	<i>liuxue</i>
Z	working	<i>gongzuo</i>

---

## Visas

### Applying for Visas

### FOR CHINA

Apart from visitors on visa-free transit stays ([Click here](#)) in Beijing and Shanghai, citizens of Japan, Singapore, Brunei and San Marino, all visitors to China require a visa, which covers the whole of China, although there remain restricted areas that require an additional permit from the PSB. Permits are also required for travel to Tibet (see boxed text, [Click here](#)), a region that the authorities can suddenly bar foreigners from entering.

Your passport must be valid for at least six months after the expiry date of your visa (nine months for a double-entry visa) and you'll need at least one entire blank page in your passport for the visa. For children under the age of 18, a parent must sign the application form on their behalf.

At the time of writing, the visa application process had become more rigorous and applicants were required to provide the following:

- » » A copy of your flight confirmation showing onward/return travel.
- » » For double-entry visas, you need to provide flight confirmation showing all dates of entry and exit.
- » » If staying at a hotel in China you must provide confirmation from the hotel (this can be cancelled later if you stay elsewhere).
- » » If staying with friends or relatives, you must provide a copy of the information page of their passport, a copy of their China visa and a letter of invitation from them.

At the time of writing, prices for a standard single-entry 30-day visa were as follows:

- » » UK£30 for UK citizens
- » » US\$130 for US citizens
- » » US\$30 for citizens of other nations

Double-entry visas:

- » » UK£45 for UK citizens
- » » US\$130 for US citizens
- » » US\$45 for all other nationals

Six-month multiple-entry visas:

- » » UK£90 for UK citizens
- » » US\$130 for US citizens
- » » US\$60 for all other nationals

A standard 30-day single-entry visa can be issued in four to five

working days. In many countries, the visa service has been outsourced from the Chinese embassy to a **Chinese Visa Application Service Centre** ([www.visaforchina.org](http://www.visaforchina.org)), which levies an extra administration fee. In the case of the UK, a single-entry visa costs UK£30, but the standard administration charge levied by the centre is an additional UK£36 (three-day express UK£48, postal service UK£54). In some countries, such as the UK, France, the US and Canada, there is more than one service centre nationwide. Visa Application Service Centres are open Monday to Friday.

A standard 30-day visa is activated on the date you enter China, and must be used within three months of the date of issue. Sixty-day and 90-day travel visas are harder to get. To stay longer, you can extend your visa in China.

Visa applications require a completed application form (available from the embassy, visa application service centre or downloaded from its website) and at least one photo (normally 51mm x 51mm). You generally pay for your visa when you collect it. A visa mailed to you will take up to three weeks. In the US and Canada, mailed visa applications have to go via a visa agent, at extra cost. In the US, many people use the **China Visa Service Center** (☎ in the USA 800 799 6560; [www.mychinavisa.com](http://www.mychinavisa.com)), which offers prompt service. The procedure takes around 10 to 14 days. **CIBT** ([www.uk.cibt.com](http://www.uk.cibt.com)) offers a global network and a fast and efficient turnaround.

## VISA-FREE TRANSITS

Citizens from 45 nations (including the US, Australia, Canada, France, Brazil and the UK) can now stay in Beijing for 72 hours without a visa as long as they are in transit to other destinations outside China, have a third-country visa and an air ticket out of Beijing (they are not allowed to venture beyond Beijing). Similarly, citizens from the same nations can also transit through Shanghai for 72 hours visa-free, with the same conditions.

Hong Kong is a good place to pick up a China visa. **China Travel Service** (CTS; ; Zhongguo Luxingshe) will be able to obtain one for you, or you can apply directly to the **Visa Office of the People's**

**Republic of China** (☎ 852-3413 2300; [www.fmco-prc.gov.hk/eng](http://www.fmco-prc.gov.hk/eng); 7th fl, Lower Block, China Resources Centre, 26 Harbour Rd, Wan Chai; 🕒 9am-noon & 2-5pm Mon-Fri).

Be aware that American and UK passport holders must pay considerably more for their visas. You must supply two photos. Prices for China visas in Hong Kong are as follows:

» » **Standard visa** One-/two-/three-day processing time  
HK\$500/400/200

» » **Double-entry visa** One-/two-/three-day processing time  
HK\$600/500/300

» » **Multiple-entry six-month visa** One-/two-/three-day processing time  
HK\$800/700/500

» » **Multiple-entry (one, two, three year)** HK\$1100, 1000, 800

Five-day cash-only visas (¥160 for most nationalities, ¥469 for British, US citizens excluded) are available at the **Luohu border crossing** (Lo Wu; 🕒 9am-10.30pm) between Hong Kong and Shenzhen, valid for Shenzhen only. The same visa is also available at **Huanggang** (🕒 9am-1pm & 2.30-5pm) and **Shekou** (🕒 8.45am-12.30pm & 2.30-5.30pm).

Three-day visas are also available at the **Macau–Zhuhai border** (¥160 for most nationalities, ¥469 for British, US citizens excluded; 🕒 8.30am-12.15pm, 1-6.15pm & 7-10.30pm). US citizens have to buy a visa in advance in Macau or Hong Kong.

Be aware that political events can suddenly make visas more difficult to procure or renew.

When asked about your itinerary on the application form, list standard tourist destinations; if you are considering going to Tibet or western Xinjiang, just leave it off the form. The list you give is not binding. Those working in media or journalism may want to profess a different occupation; otherwise, a visa may be refused or a shorter length of stay than that requested may be given.

## FOR HONG KONG

At the time of writing, most visitors to Hong Kong, including citizens of the EU, Australia, New Zealand, the USA and Canada, could enter and stay for 90 days without a visa. British passport holders get 180



days, while South Africans are allowed to stay 30 days visa-free. If you require a visa, apply at a Chinese embassy or consulate before arriving. If you visit Hong Kong from China, you will need a double-entry, multiple-entry visa or a new visa to re-enter China.

## **FOR MACAU**

Most travellers, including citizens of the EU, Australia, New Zealand, the USA, Canada and South Africa, can enter Macau without a visa for between 30 and 90 days. Most other nationalities can get a 30-day visa on arrival, which will cost MOP\$100/50/200 per adult/child under 12/family. If you're visiting Macau from China and plan to re-enter China, you will need to be on a multiple-entry or double-entry visa.

## **Visa Extensions**

### **FOR CHINA**

The Foreign Affairs Branch of the local PSB deals with visa extensions.

First-time extensions of 30 days are usually easy to obtain on single-entry tourist visas; a further extension of a month may be possible, but you may only get another week. Travellers report generous extensions in provincial towns, but don't bank on this. Popping across to Hong Kong to apply for a new tourist visa is another option.

Extensions to single-entry visas vary in price, depending on your nationality. At the time of writing, US travellers paid ¥185, Canadians ¥165, UK citizens ¥160 and Australians ¥100. Expect to wait up to five days for your visa extension to be processed.

The penalty for overstaying your visa in China is up to ¥500 per day. Some travellers have reported having trouble with officials who read the 'valid until' date on their visa incorrectly. For a one-month travel (L) visa, the 'valid until' date is the date by which you must enter the country (within three months of the date the visa was issued), not the date upon which your visa expires.

### **FOR HONG KONG**

For tourist-visa extensions, inquire at the **Hong Kong Immigration Department** (☎ 852-2852 3047; [www.immd.gov.hk](http://www.immd.gov.hk); 2nd fl, Immigration Tower, 7 Gloucester Rd, Wan Chai; 🕒 8.45am-4.30pm Mon-Fri, 9-11.30am Sat). Extensions (HK\$160) are not readily granted unless there are extenuating circumstances such as illness.

## FOR MACAU

If your visa expires, you can obtain a single one-month extension from the **Macau Immigration Department** (☎ 853-2872 5488; Ground fl, Travessa da Amizade; 🕒 9am-5pm Mon-Fri).

## Residence Permits

The 'green card' is a residence permit, issued to English teachers, foreign expats and long-term students who live in China. Green cards are issued for a period of six months to one year and must be renewed annually. Besides needing all the right paperwork, you must also pass a health exam, for which there is a charge. Families are automatically included once the permit is issued, but there is a fee for each family member. If you lose your card, you'll pay a hefty fee to have it replaced.

---

## Volunteering

Large numbers of Westerners work in China with international development charities such as **VSO** ([www.vso.org.uk](http://www.vso.org.uk)), which can provide you with useful experience and the chance to learn Chinese.

**Global Vision International** (GVI; [www.gvi.co.uk](http://www.gvi.co.uk)) Teaching in China.

**Global Volunteer Network** ([www.globalvolunteernetwork.org](http://www.globalvolunteernetwork.org))

Connecting people with communities in need.

**Joy in Action** (JIA; [www.joyinaction.org](http://www.joyinaction.org)) Establishing work camps in places in need in south China.

**World Teach** ([www.worldteach.org](http://www.worldteach.org)) Volunteer teachers.

## MEASUREMENT CONVERSIONS

METRIC	CHINESE IMPERIAL	
1m ( <i>mi</i> )	3 <i>chi</i>	3.28 ft
1km ( <i>gongli</i> )	2 <i>li</i>	0.62 miles
1L ( <i>gongsheng</i> )	1 <i>sheng</i>	0.22 gallons
1kg ( <i>gongjin</i> )	2 <i>jin</i>	2.20 pounds

---

## Weights & Measures

The metric system is widely used in China. However, traditional Chinese weights and measures persist, especially in local markets. Fruit and vegetables are weighed by the *jin* (500g). Smaller weights (for dumplings, tea etc) are measured in *liang* (50g).

# Transport

---

## GETTING THERE & AWAY

Flights, cars and tours can be booked online at [www.lonelyplanet.com](http://www.lonelyplanet.com).

---

## Entering China

No particular difficulties exist for travellers entering China. The main requirements are a passport that's valid for travel for six months after the expiry date of your visa and a visa (992); however note that documents required for visa application have become more rigorous. As a rule, visas for most nationalities cannot be obtained at the border (apart from five-day visas for Shenzhen at the Hong Kong–Shenzhen border and three-day visas at the Zhuhai–Macau border; US citizens excluded on both counts). In general, visas are not required for Hong Kong or Macau; if you enter Hong Kong or Macau from China and wish to re-enter China, you'll need either a multiple-entry visa or a new visa. For travel to Tibet, see the boxed text on [Click here](#). Chinese immigration officers are scrupulous and highly bureaucratic, but not overly officious. Travellers arriving in China will receive a health declaration form and an arrivals form to complete.

## CLIMATE CHANGE & TRAVEL

---

Every form of transport that relies on carbon-based fuel generates CO<sub>2</sub>, the main cause of human-induced climate change. Modern travel is dependent on aeroplanes, which might use less fuel per kilometre per person than most cars but travel much greater distances. The altitude at which aircraft emit gases (including CO<sub>2</sub>) and particles also contributes to their climate change impact. Many websites offer 'carbon calculators' that allow people to estimate the carbon emissions generated by their journey and, for those who wish to do so, to offset the impact of the greenhouse gases emitted with contributions to portfolios of

climate-friendly initiatives throughout the world. Lonely Planet offsets the carbon footprint of all staff and author travel.

---

## Air

### Airports

Hong Kong, Beijing and Shanghai are China's principal international air gateways. From 2012, China Southern commenced flights between London Heathrow and Baiyun International Airport in Guangzhou.

**Baiyun International Airport** (Xinbaiyun Jichang; ☎ 020-3606 6999-3) In Guangzhou; receiving an increasing number of international flights.

**Capital Airport** (Shoudu Jichang; ☎ 010-6454 1100; <http://en.bcia.com.cn>) Beijing's international airport; three terminals.

**Hong Kong International Airport** (☎ 852-2181 8888; [www.hongkongairport.com](http://www.hongkongairport.com)) Located at Chek Lap Kok on Lantau island, in the west of the territory.

**Hongqiao Airport** (Hongqiao Jichang; ☎ 021-6268 8899/3659) In Shanghai's west; domestic flights, some international connections.

**Pudong International Airport** (Pudong Guoji Jichang; ☎ 021-96990) In Shanghai's east; international flights.

### Airlines Flying to/from China

The following list comprises airlines flying into Beijing, Hong Kong, Shanghai, Guangzhou, Kunming and Macau; for all other cities, see the relevant destination section.

**Aeroflot Russian Airlines** ([www.aeroflot.ru](http://www.aeroflot.ru))

**Air Canada** ([www.aircanada.ca](http://www.aircanada.ca))

**Air China** ([www.airchina.com](http://www.airchina.com))

**Air France** ([www.airfrance.com](http://www.airfrance.com))

**Air Koryo** (☎ in Beijing 010-6501 1557)

**Air Macau** ([www.airmacau.com.mo](http://www.airmacau.com.mo))

**Air New Zealand** ([www.airnewzealand.com](http://www.airnewzealand.com))

**AirAsia** ([www.airasia.com](http://www.airasia.com))

**Alitalia** ([www.alitalia.com](http://www.alitalia.com))

**All Nippon Airways** ([www.ana.co.jp](http://www.ana.co.jp)) Also flies to Dalian, Qingdao, Shenyang, Tianjin and Xiamen.

**American Airlines** ([www.aa.com](http://www.aa.com))

**Asiana Airlines** ([www.flyasiana.com](http://www.flyasiana.com)) Also flies to Changchun, Chengdu, Chongqing, Guangzhou, Guilin, Haerbin, Nanjing, Xi'an and Yantai.

**Austrian Airlines** ([www.aua.com](http://www.aua.com))

**British Airways** ([www.britishairways.com](http://www.britishairways.com))

**Cathay Pacific** ([www.cathaypacific.com](http://www.cathaypacific.com))

**China Airlines** ([www.china-airlines.com](http://www.china-airlines.com))

**China Eastern Airlines** ([www.ce-air.com](http://www.ce-air.com))

**China Southern Airlines** ([www.cs-air.com](http://www.cs-air.com))

**Delta Air Lines** ([www.delta.com](http://www.delta.com))

**Dragonair** ([www.dragonair.com](http://www.dragonair.com))

**El Al Israel Airlines** ([www.elal.co.il](http://www.elal.co.il))

**Emirates Airline** ([www.emirates.com](http://www.emirates.com))

**Ethiopian Airlines** ([www.flyethiopian.com](http://www.flyethiopian.com))

**EVA Airways** ([www.evaair.com](http://www.evaair.com))

**Garuda Indonesia** ([www.garuda-indonesia.com](http://www.garuda-indonesia.com))

**Hong Kong Airlines** ([www.hkairlines.com](http://www.hkairlines.com))


**Iran Air** ([www.iranair.com](http://www.iranair.com))

**Japan Airlines** ([www.jal.com](http://www.jal.com)) Also flies to Qingdao, Dalian and Xiamen.

**Kenya Airways** ([www.kenya-airways.com](http://www.kenya-airways.com))

**KLM** ([www.klm.nl](http://www.klm.nl))

**Korean Air** ([www.koreanair.com](http://www.koreanair.com)) Also flies to Qingdao and Shenyang.

**Lao Airlines** ( in Kunming 0871-312 5748; [www.laoairlines.com](http://www.laoairlines.com))

**Lufthansa Airlines** ([www.lufthansa.com](http://www.lufthansa.com))

**Malaysia Airlines** ([www.malaysia-airlines.com.my](http://www.malaysia-airlines.com.my))

MIAT Mongolian Airlines ([www.miat.com](http://www.miat.com))  
Nepal Airlines ([www.nepalairlines.com.np](http://www.nepalairlines.com.np))  
Pakistan International Airlines ([www.piac.com.pk](http://www.piac.com.pk))  
Philippine Airlines ([www.philippineairlines.com](http://www.philippineairlines.com))  
Qantas Airways ([www.qantas.com.au](http://www.qantas.com.au))  
Qatar Airways ([www.qatarairways.com](http://www.qatarairways.com))  
Royal Jordanian Airlines ([www.rj.com](http://www.rj.com))  
Scandinavian Airlines ([www.sas.dk](http://www.sas.dk))  
Shanghai Airlines ([www.shanghai-air.com](http://www.shanghai-air.com))  
Silk Air ([www.silkair.com](http://www.silkair.com))  
Singapore Airlines ([www.singaporeair.com](http://www.singaporeair.com))  
Swiss International Airlines ([www.swiss.com](http://www.swiss.com))  
Thai Airways International ([www.thaiairways.com](http://www.thaiairways.com))  
Tiger Airways ([www.tigerairways.com](http://www.tigerairways.com))  
Trans Asia Airways ([www.tna.com.tw](http://www.tna.com.tw))  
United Airlines ([www.ual.com](http://www.ual.com))  
Uzbekistan Airways ([www.uzairways.com](http://www.uzairways.com))  
Vietnam Airlines ([www.vietnamair.com.vn](http://www.vietnamair.com.vn))  
Virgin Atlantic ([www.virgin-atlantic.com](http://www.virgin-atlantic.com))

## **Tickets**

The cheapest tickets to Hong Kong and China exist on price comparison websites or in discount agencies in Chinatowns around the world. Budget and student-travel agents offer cheap tickets, but the real bargains are with agents that deal with the Chinese, who regularly return home. Airfares to China peak between June and September.

The cheapest flights to China are with airlines requiring a stopover at the home airport, such as Air France to Beijing via Paris, or Malaysia Airlines to Beijing via Kuala Lumpur.

The best direct ticket deals are available from China's international carriers, such as China Eastern Airlines, Air China or China Southern Airlines.

Beyond internet travel websites – Expedia ([www.expedia.com](http://www.expedia.com)) and

Travelocity ([www.travelocity.com](http://www.travelocity.com)) for example – flight comparison websites weigh up the best prices from airline websites, travel agents, search engines and other online sources and are highly versatile, but tend to quote similar fares. They include the following:

**Fly.com** ([www.fly.com](http://www.fly.com))

**Kayak** ([www.kayak.co.uk](http://www.kayak.co.uk))

**Momondo** ([www.momondo.com](http://www.momondo.com))

**Travelsupermarket** ([www.travelsupermarket.com](http://www.travelsupermarket.com))

**Skyscanner** ([www.skyscanner.net](http://www.skyscanner.net))

## **Australia**

From Australia, Hong Kong is a popular gateway to China. However, fares from Australia to Hong Kong are generally not that much cheaper than fares to Beijing or Shanghai. Qantas, China Eastern, Air China, China Southern and Cathay Pacific all fly direct to Beijing, Shanghai, Hong Kong or Guangzhou. The cheapest flights go via Jakarta, Manila, Bangkok or Kuala Lumpur.


## **Canada**

From Canada, fares to Hong Kong are often higher than those to Beijing. Air Canada has daily flights to Beijing and Shanghai from Vancouver. Air Canada, Air China and China Eastern Airlines sometimes run supercheap fares.

## **Continental Europe**

Generally, there is little variation in airfare prices from the main European cities. The major airlines and travel agents usually have a number of deals on offer, so shop around. **STA Travel** ([www.statravel.com](http://www.statravel.com)) and **Nouvelles Frontières** ([www.nouvelles-frontieres.fr](http://www.nouvelles-frontieres.fr)) have branches throughout Europe.

## **Japan**

Daily flights operate between Tokyo and Beijing, as well as regular flights between Osaka and Beijing. Daily flights link Shanghai to Tokyo and Osaka, and there are flights from Japan to other major cities in China, including Guangzhou, Dalian and Qingdao. Try **STA Travel** ( in Tokyo 03-5391 2922; [www.statravel.co.jp](http://www.statravel.co.jp)).



## **New Zealand**

Air New Zealand has flights to Hong Kong, Shanghai and China Southern flies daily to Guangzhou.

**Flight Centre** (☎ 0800 24 35 44; [www.flightcentre.co.nz](http://www.flightcentre.co.nz))

**STA Travel** (☎ 0800 474 400; [www.statravel.co.nz](http://www.statravel.co.nz))

## **Singapore**

Chinatown Point Shopping Centre on New Bridge Rd has a good selection of travel agents. **STA Travel** (☎ 6737 7188; [www.statravel.com.sg](http://www.statravel.com.sg)) has three offices in Singapore.

## **UK & Ireland**

British Airways flies to Hong Kong, Beijing and Shanghai; Virgin Atlantic flies to Shanghai; China Eastern flies to Shanghai and Hong Kong; and Cathay Pacific flies to Hong Kong. The cheapest flights include KLM to China via Amsterdam, Air France via Paris, or Singapore Airlines via Singapore.

Travel agents in London's Chinatown dealing with flights to China include:

**Jade Travel** (☎ 020-7734 7726; [www.jadetravel.co.uk](http://www.jadetravel.co.uk); 5 Newport Pl)

**Omega Travel** (☎ 020-7439 7788; [www.omegatravel.ltd.uk](http://www.omegatravel.ltd.uk); 53 Charing Cross Rd)

**Reliance Tours Ltd** (☎ 0800 018 0503; [www.reliance-tours.co.uk](http://www.reliance-tours.co.uk); 12-13 Little Newport St)

## **USA**

Airlines flying either to Shanghai or Beijing from the US include Air China, American Airlines, China Eastern, Delta Airlines, Hainan Airlines and United Airlines. Airlines flying direct to Hong Kong include American Airlines, Delta Airlines, United Airlines and Cathay Pacific. The cheapest tickets to Hong Kong are offered by Chinese-run bucket shops in San Francisco, Los Angeles and New York.

## **Vietnam**

Air China flies between Ho Chi Minh City and Beijing, Guangzhou, Shanghai and Hong Kong. Vietnam Airlines flies from Hanoi to

Shanghai, Guangzhou, Beijing and Hong Kong. China Southern Airlines flights are via Guangzhou.

---

## Land

China shares borders with Afghanistan, Bhutan, India, Kazakhstan, Kyrgyzstan, Laos, Mongolia, Myanmar (Burma), Nepal, North Korea, Pakistan, Russia, Tajikistan and Vietnam; the borders with Afghanistan, Bhutan and India are closed. There are also official border crossings between China and its special administrative regions, Hong Kong ([Click here](#) and [Click here](#)) and Macau ([Click here](#)).

Lonely Planet *China* guides can be confiscated by officials, primarily at the Vietnam–China border.

## Kazakhstan

Border crossings from Urumqi to Kazakhstan are via border posts at Korgas, Alashankou, Tacheng and Jimunai ([Click here](#)). Ensure you have a valid Kazakhstan visa (obtainable, at the time of writing, in Urumqi, or from Beijing) or China visa. See the Xinjiang chapter for further details.

Apart from Alashankou, which links China and Kazakhstan via train, all other border crossings are by bus; you can generally get a bike over, however. Two trains weekly (32 hours) run between Urumqi and Almaty ([Click here](#)), and one train per week runs to Astana.

Remember that borders open and close frequently due to changes in government policy; additionally, many are only open when the weather permits. It's always best to check with the **Public Security Bureau** (PSB; Gong'anju) in Urumqi for the official line.

## Kyrgyzstan

There are two routes between China and Kyrgyzstan: one between Kashgar and Osh, via the Irkeshtam Pass; and one between Kashgar and Bishkek, via the dramatic 3752m Torugart Pass. See [Click here](#) for details.

## Laos

From the Mengla district in China's southern Yunnan province, you can enter Laos via Boten in Luang Nam Tha province, while a daily bus runs between Vientiane and Kunming and also from Jinghong to Luang Nam Tha in Laos ([Click here](#)).

On-the-spot visas for Laos are available at the border, the price of which depends on your nationality (although you cannot get a China visa here). See the Yunnan chapter ([Click here](#)) for more details.

## **Mongolia**

From Beijing, the Trans-Mongolian Railway trains and the K23 trains ([Click here](#)) run to Ulaanbaatar. Two trains weekly run between Hohhot and Ulaanbaatar, and there are also regular buses between Hohhot and the border town of Erenhot (Erlan). Mongolian visas on the Chinese side can be acquired in Beijing, Hohhot and Erenhot. See the Inner Mongolia chapter ([Click here](#)) for more details.

## **Myanmar (Burma)**

The famous Burma Road runs from Kunming in Yunnan province to the Burmese city of Lashio. The road is open to travellers carrying permits for the region north of Lashio, although you can legally cross the border in only one direction – from the Chinese side (Jiegao) into Myanmar; however, at the time of writing the border was not open to foreign travellers and flying in was the only option. See [Click here](#) for more details. Myanmar visas can only be arranged in Kunming or Beijing.

## **Nepal**

The 865km road connecting Lhasa with Kathmandu is known as the Friendship Highway ([Click here](#)), currently only traversable by rented vehicle (for foreign travellers). It's a spectacular trip across the Tibetan plateau, the highest point being Gyatso-la Pass (5100m).

Visas for Nepal can be obtained in Lhasa, or at the border at Kodari. See [Click here](#) for practical information about the journey and the border crossing.

When travelling from Nepal to Tibet, foreigners still have to arrange transport through tour agencies in Kathmandu. Access to Tibet can, however, be restricted for months at a time without warning.

## North Korea

Visas for North Korea are difficult to arrange, and at the time of writing it was impossible for US and South Korean citizens. Those interested in travelling to North Korea from Beijing should contact Nicholas Bonner or Simon Cockerell at **Koryo Tours** (☎ 010-6416 7544; [www.koryogroup.com](http://www.koryogroup.com); 27 Beisanlitun Nan, Beijing).

Four international express trains (K27 and K28) run between Beijing train station and Pyongyang.

## Pakistan

The exciting trip on the Karakoram Hwy ([Click here](#)), said to be the world's highest public international highway, is an excellent way to get to or from Chinese Central Asia. There are buses from Kashgar for the two-day trip to the Pakistani town of Sost via Tashkurgan when the pass is open; see the Xinjiang chapter ([Click here](#)) for more details.

## Russia

At the time of writing, the train from Ha'erbin East to Vladivostok was no longer running but you could take the train to Suifenhe and take an onward connection there.

The Trans-Mongolian (via Erenhot) and Trans-Manchurian (via Ha'erbin) branches of the Trans-Siberian Railway run from Beijing to Moscow; [Click here](#) for more information.

There are also border crossings 9km from Manzhouli ([Click here](#)) and at Heihe.

## Tajikistan

At the time of writing, the Qolma (Kulma) Pass, linking Kashgar with Murghab, was not yet open to foreign travellers. See [Click here](#) for more information.

## Vietnam

Visas are unobtainable at border crossings; Vietnam visas can be acquired in Beijing ([Click here](#)), Kunming ([Click here](#)), Hong Kong ([Click here](#)) and Nanning ([Click here](#)). Chinese visas can be obtained in Hanoi.

## FRIENDSHIP PASS

China's busiest border with Vietnam is at the obscure Vietnamese town of Dong Dang, 164km northeast of Hanoi. The closest Chinese town to the border is Ping-xiang in Guangxi province, about 10km north of the actual border gate. See [Click here](#) for information about the border crossing, and for transport between Pingxiang and Vietnam.

Seven Hanoi-bound buses run from Nanning via the Friendship Pass; twice-weekly trains (T5 and T6) connect Beijing and Hanoi (via Nanning) while Border Yunnana daily train (T8701 and T8702) links Hanoi with Nanning.

## HEKOU

The Hekou–Lao Cai border crossing is 468km from Kunming and 294km from Hanoi. At the time of writing, the only way to reach Vietnam via Hekou was by bus from Kunming; [Click here](#).

## MONG CAI

A third, but little-known border crossing is at Mong Cai in the northeast corner of the country, just opposite the Chinese city of Dongxing and around 200km south of Nanning.

## INTERNATIONAL TRAIN ROUTES

In addition to the Trans-Siberian and Trans-Mongolian rail services, the following routes can be travelled by train:

- » » Hung Hom station in Kowloon (Jiulong; Hong Kong; [www.throughtrain.kcrc.com](http://www.throughtrain.kcrc.com); [Click here](#)) to Guangzhou, Shanghai, Beijing.
- » » Pyongyang (North Korea) to Beijing ([Click here](#))
- » » Almaty (Kazakhstan) to Urumqi ([Click here](#))
- » » Astana (Kazakhstan) to Urumqi ([Click here](#))
- » » Beijing to Ulaanbaatar ([Click here](#))
- » » Beijing to Hanoi ([Click here](#))

For more information and advice on international trains from Beijing, see the box on international trains ([Click here](#)) in the Beijing chapter.

---

## River

At the time of writing, fast ferries from Jinghong in Yunnan to Chiang Saen in Thailand had been suspended; [Click here](#) for more information.

---

## Sea

### Japan

There are weekly ferries between Osaka and Kobe and Shanghai ([Click here](#)). From Tianjin (Tanggu), a weekly ferry runs to Kobe in Japan; [Click here](#). There are also twice-weekly boats from Qingdao to Shimonoseki; [Click here](#).

Check in two hours before departure for international sailings.

### South Korea

International ferries connect the South Korean port of Incheon with Weihai, Qingdao ([Click here](#)), Yantai ([Click here](#)), Tianjin (Tanggu; [Click here](#)), Dalian ([Click here](#)) and Dandong ([Click here](#)). There are also boats between Qingdao and Gunsan ([Click here](#)).

In Seoul, tickets for any boats to China can be bought from the **International Union Travel Agency** (☎ 822-777 6722; Room 707, 7th fl, Daehan Ilbo Bldg, 340 Taepyonglo 2-ga, Chung-gu). In China, tickets can be bought cheaply at the pier, or from **China International Travel Service** (CITS; Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe) for a very steep premium.

To reach the International Passenger Terminal from Seoul, take the Seoul-Incheon commuter train (metro Line 1 from the city centre) and get off at the Dongincheon station. The train journey takes 50 minutes. From Dongincheon station it's either a 45-minute walk or five-minute taxi ride to the ferry terminal.

## Sea Routes



## GETTING AROUND

For travel around China by train, see the China by Train chapter ([Click here](#)).

---

### Air

Despite being a land of vast distances, it's quite straightforward to navigate your way terrestrially around China by rail and bus if you have time. The high-speed rail network in particular has vastly expanded over the last decade, shrinking journey times and competing with airlines.

China's air network is extensive and growing. The civil aviation fleet is expected to triple in size over the next two decades, up to 56 new airports have been planned for construction and scores more are to be expanded or upgraded. Air safety and quality have improved considerably, but the speed of change generates its own problems: a serious shortage of qualified personnel to fly planes means China will need a reported 18,000 new pilots by 2015.

Shuttle buses usually run from **Civil Aviation Administration of China** (CAAC; Zhongguo Minhang) offices in towns and cities throughout China to the airport, often running via other stops; see the Getting Around sections of relevant chapters. For domestic flights, arrive at the airport one hour before departure.

Remember to keep your baggage receipt label on your ticket as you will need to show it when you collect your luggage. Planes vary in style and comfort. You may get a hot meal, or just a small piece of cake and an airline souvenir. On-board announcements are delivered in Chinese and English.

## **Airlines in China**

The CAAC is the civil aviation authority for numerous airlines which include:

**Air China** (✈ in China 95583; [www.airchina.com.cn](http://www.airchina.com.cn))

**Chengdu Airlines** (✈ in Chengdu 028-6666 8888; [www.chengduair.cc](http://www.chengduair.cc))

**China Eastern Airlines** (✈ in Shanghai 95530; [www.ceair.com](http://www.ceair.com))

**China Southern Airlines** (✈ in Guangzhou 4006 695 539; [www.csair.com/en](http://www.csair.com/en)) Serves a web of air routes, including Beijing, Shanghai, Xi'an and Tianjin.

**Hainan Airlines** (✈ in Hainan 950712; [www.hnair.com](http://www.hnair.com))

**Shandong Airlines** (✈ 400-60-96777; [www.shandongair.com.cn](http://www.shandongair.com.cn))

**Shanghai Airlines** (✈ in Shanghai 95530; [www.ceair.com](http://www.ceair.com)) Owned by China Eastern Airlines.

**Shenzhen Airlines** (✈ in Shenzhen 95080; [www.shenzhenair.com](http://www.shenzhenair.com))

**Sichuan Airlines** (✈ in Chengdu 4008 300 999; [www.scal.com.cn](http://www.scal.com.cn))

**Spring Airlines** (✈ in Shanghai 800 820 6222; [www.china-sss.com](http://www.china-sss.com))



Has connections between Shanghai and tourist destinations such as Qingdao, Guilin, Xiamen and Sanya.

**Tianjin Airlines** (✈ in Tianjin 950710; [www.tianjin-air.com](http://www.tianjin-air.com))

Some of the above airlines also have subsidiary airlines. Not all Chinese airline websites have English-language capability. Airline schedules and airfares are listed within the relevant chapters.

The CAAC publishes a combined international and domestic timetable in both English and Chinese in April and November each year. This timetable can be bought at some airports and CAAC offices in China. Individual airlines also publish time-tables, which you can buy from ticket offices throughout China.

## Tickets

Except during major festivals and holidays, tickets are easy to purchase, with an oversupply of airline seats. Purchase tickets from branches of the CAAC nationwide, airline offices, travel agents or the travel desk of your hotel; travel agents will usually offer a better discount than airline offices. Discounts are common, except when flying into large cities such as Shanghai and Beijing on the weekend, when the full fare can be the norm; prices quoted in this book are the full fare. For cheap flights, visit [www.elong.com](http://www.elong.com), [www.Ctrip.com](http://www.Ctrip.com) or [www.travelzen.com](http://www.travelzen.com) (note that some users have reported difficulty using foreign credit cards on Ctrip). Fares are calculated according to one-way travel, with return tickets simply costing twice the single fare. If flying from Hong Kong or Macau to mainland China, note that these are classified as international flights; it is much cheaper to travel overland into Shenzhen, Zhuhai or Guangzhou and fly from there.

You can use credit cards at most CAAC offices and travel agents. Departure tax is included in the ticket price.

---

## Bicycle

Bikes (; *zixingche*) are an excellent method for getting around China's cities and tourist sights. They can also be invaluable for exploring the countryside surrounding towns such as Yangshuo.

## Hire

A growing number of cities – Hangzhou for example – have foreigner-friendly bike hire networks with docking stations dotted around the town. You will need to show your passport and hand over a sizeable deposit (around ¥300) but usage fees are generally very good value, with a cost structure that generally encourages shorter journeys (sometimes free for the first hour). Otherwise the best places to try are youth hostels which rent out bicycles, as do many hotels, although the latter are more expensive. Bicycle-hire outlets that cater to travellers are listed in destination chapters.

Bikes can be hired by the day or by the hour and it is also possible to hire for more than one day. Rental rates vary depending on where you find yourself, but rates start at around ¥10 to ¥15 per day in cities such as Beijing.

## Touring

Cycling through China allows you to go when you want, to see what you want and at your own pace. It can also be an extremely cheap, as well as a highly authentic, way to see the land.

You will have virtually unlimited freedom of movement but, considering the size of China, you will need to combine your cycling days with trips by train, bus, boat, taxi or even planes, especially if you want to avoid particularly steep regions, or areas where the roads are poor or the climate is cold.

A basic packing list for cyclists includes a good bicycle-repair kit, sunscreen and other protection from the sun, waterproofs, fluorescent strips and camping equipment. Ensure you have adequate clothing, as many routes will be taking you to considerable altitude. Road maps in Chinese are essential for asking locals for directions.

**Bikechina** ([www.bikechina.com](http://www.bikechina.com)) arranges tours and is a good source of information for cyclists coming to China.

---

## Boat

Boat services within China are limited, especially with the growth of high-speed rail and expressways. They're most common in coastal areas, where you are likely to use a boat to reach offshore islands

such as Putuoshan or Hainan, or the islands off Hong Kong. The Yantai–Dalian ferry will probably survive because it saves hundreds of kilometres of overland travel.

The best-known river trip is the three-day boat ride along the Yangzi (Chang Jiang) from Chongqing to Yichang ([Click here](#)). The Li River (Li Jiang) boat trip from Guilin to Yangshuo ([Click here](#)) is a popular tourist ride.

Hong Kong employs an out-and-out navy of vessels that connects with the territory's myriad islands, and a number of boats run between the territory and other parts of China, including Macau, Zhuhai, Shekou (for Shenzhen) and Zhongshan. See [Click here](#) for details.

Boat tickets can be purchased from passenger ferry terminals or through travel agents.

---

## Bus

Long-distance bus (; *changtu gonggong qiche*) services are extensive and reach places you cannot reach by train; with the increasing number of intercity highways, journeys are getting quicker.

### Buses & Stations

Routes between large cities sport larger, cleaner and more comfortable fleets of private buses, some equipped with toilets and hostesses handing out snacks and mineral water; shorter and more far-flung routes still rely on rattling minibuses into which as many fares as possible are crammed. Buses often wait until they fill up before leaving, or (exasperatingly) trawl the streets looking for fares.

Sleeper buses (; *wopu keche*) ply popular long-haul routes, costing around double the price of a normal bus service. Bunks can be short, however, and buses are claustrophobic and impossible to escape if there is a fire.

Bus journey times given throughout this book should be used as a rough guide only. You can estimate times for bus journeys on nonhighway routes by calculating the distance against a speed of 25km per hour.

All cities and most towns have one or more long-distance bus

stations (; *changtu qichezhan*), generally located in relation to the direction the bus heads in. Most bus stations have a left-luggage counter. In many cities, the train station forecourt doubles as a bus station.

## **Tickets**

Tickets are getting more expensive as fuel prices increase but are cheaper and easier to get than train tickets; turn up at the bus station and buy your ticket there and then. The earlier you buy, the closer to the front of the bus you will sit, although you may not be able to buy tickets prior to your day of travel.

Tickets can be hard to procure during national holiday periods.

## **Dangers & Annoyances**

Breakdowns can be a hassle, and some rural roads and provincial routes (especially in the southwest, Tibet and the northwest) remain in bad condition. Precipitous drops, pot holes, dangerous road surfaces and reckless drivers mean accidents remain common. Long-distance journeys can also be cramped and noisy, with Hong Kong films and cacophonous karaoke looped on overhead TVs. Drivers continuously lean on the horn (taking an MP3 player is crucial for one's sanity). Note the following when travelling by bus.

- » » Seat belts are a rarity in many provinces.
- » » Take plenty of warm clothes on buses to high-altitude destinations in winter. A breakdown in frozen conditions can prove lethal for those unprepared.
- » » Take a lot of extra water on routes across areas such as the Taklamakan Desert.

---

## **Car & Motorcycle**

Hiring a car in China has always been complicated or impossible for foreign visitors and in mainland China is currently limited to Beijing and Shanghai, cities that both have frequently gridlocked roads.

Throw in the dangers, complexity of Chinese roads for first-time users and the costs of driving in China and it makes more sense to use the subway/metro system and taxis, both of which are cheap and efficient

in Beijing and Shanghai. Hiring a car with a driver from your hotel is possible, but it's generally far cheaper and more convenient to hire a taxi ([Click here](#)) for the day instead.

## Driving Licence

To drive in Hong Kong and Macau, you will need an International Driving Permit. Foreigners can drive motorcycles if they are residents in China and have an official Chinese motorcycle licence. International driving permits are generally not accepted in China.

## Hire

Beijing Capital Airport has a **Vehicle Administration Office** ( cheguansuo; ☎ 010-6453 0010; 🕒 9am-6pm Mon-Sun) where you can have a temporary three-month driving licence issued (an international driver's licence is insufficient). This will involve checking your driving licence and a simple medical exam (including an eyesight test). You will need this licence before you can hire a car from **Hertz** ( ☎ 400-888-1336; [www.hertzchina.com](http://www.hertzchina.com)), which has branches at Capital Airport. Check out the Hertz office ( ☎ 021-6085 1900; Terminal 2; 🕒 8am-8pm Mon-Fri & 9am-6pm Sat-Sun) at Shanghai's Pudong International Airport for how to obtain a temporary licence in Shanghai. There are also branches in both central Beijing and Shanghai. Hire cars from Hertz start from ¥230 per day (up to 150km per day; ¥20,000 deposit). **Avis** ( ☎ 400 882 1119) also has a growing network around China, with car rental starting from ¥200 per day (¥5000 deposit). See the Hong Kong and Macau chapters for details on car hire in each of those territories.

## Road Rules

Cars in China drive on the right-hand side of the road. Even skilled drivers will be unprepared for China's roads: in the cities, cars lunge from all angles and chaos abounds.

---

## Local Transport

Long-distance transport in China is good, but local transport is less efficient, except for cities with metro systems. The choice of local

transport is diverse but vehicles can be slow and overburdened, and the network confusing for visitors. Hiring a car is often impractical, while hiring a bike can be inadequate. Unless the town is small, walking is often too tiring. On the plus side, local transport is cheap, taxis are usually ubiquitous and affordable, and metro systems continue to rapidly expand in large tourist towns.

## **Bus**

With extensive networks, buses are an excellent way to get around town, but foreign travellers rarely use them. Ascending a bus, point to your destination on a map and the conductor (seated near the door) will sell you the right ticket. The conductor will usually tell you where to disembark, provided they remember. In conductor-less buses, you put money in a slot near the driver as you embark.

- » » Fares are very cheap (usually ¥1 to ¥2) but buses may be packed.
- » » Navigation is tricky for non-Chinese speakers as bus routes at bus stops are generally listed in Chinese, without Pinyin.
- » » In Beijing and Shanghai and other large tourist towns, stops will be announced in English.
- » » Always have change ready if there is no conductor on the bus.
- » » Buses with snowflake motifs are air-conditioned.
- » » Traffic can make things slow.

## **Subway, Metro & Light Rail**

Going underground or using light rail is fast, efficient and cheap; most networks are either very new or relatively recent and can be found in a rapidly growing number of cities, including Beijing, Shanghai, Suzhou, Xi'an, Hangzhou, Tianjin, Chengdu, Shenzhen, Wuhan and Hong Kong.

## **Taxi**

Taxis (; *chuzu qiche*) are cheap and easy to find. Taxi rates per kilometre are clearly marked on a sticker on the rear side window of the taxi; flag fall varies from city to city, and depends upon the size and quality of the vehicle. Rates are listed in the Getting Around section of destinations.

Most taxis have meters but they may only be switched on in larger

towns and cities. If the meter is not used (on an excursion out of town, for example, or when hiring a taxi for the day or half-day), negotiate a price before you set off and write the fare down. If you want the meter used, ask for *dabiao* (的). Also ask for a receipt (; *fapiao*); if you leave something in the taxi, the taxi number is printed on the receipt so it can be located.

Note that:

- » » Congregation points include train and long-distance bus stations, but usually you can just flag taxis down.
- » » Taxi drivers rarely speak any English so have your destination written down in characters.
- » » If you have communication problems, consider using your mobile to phone your hotel for staff to interpret.
- » » You can hire taxis on a daily or half-day basis, often at reasonable rates (always bargain).
- » » To use the same driver again, ask for his or her card (; *mingpian*).
- » » In many provinces, taxis often cover long-distance bus routes. They generally charge around 30% to 50% more but are much faster. You need to wait for four passengers.

## Other Local Transport

A variety of ramshackle transport options exist across China; always agree on a price in advance (preferably have it written down).

- » » **Motor pedicabs** are enclosed three-wheeled vehicles (often the same price as taxis).
- » » **Pedicabs** are pedal-powered versions of motor pedicabs.
- » » **Motorbike** riders also offer lifts in some towns for what should be half the price of a regular taxi. You must wear a helmet – the driver will provide one.

# China by Train

---

Trains are the best way to travel long distance around China in reasonable speed and comfort. They are also adventurous, exciting, fun, practical and efficient, and ticket prices are reasonable to boot. Colossal investment over recent years has put high-speed rail at the heart of China's rapid modernisation drive. You really don't have to be a trainspotter to find China's railways a riveting subculture and you get to meet the Chinese people at their most relaxed and sociable.

---

## The Chinese Train Network

One of the world's most extensive rail networks, passenger railways penetrate every province in China and high-speed connections are suddenly everywhere. In line with China's frantic economic development and the pressures of transporting 1.4 billion people across the world's third-largest nation, expansion of China's rail network over the past decade has been mindboggling.

The network was due to total 110,000km by the end of 2012.

The railway to Lhasa in Tibet began running in 2006, despite scepticism that it could ever be laid, so you can climb aboard a train in Beijing or Shanghai and alight in Tibet's capital (although ticket scarcity for trains into Lhasa means it's easier to fly in and take the train out). Lines are poking further into Tibet, with a line to Shigatse expected by 2014. Thousands of miles of track are laid every year and new express trains have been zipping across China since 2007, shrinking once daunting distances. State-of-the-art train stations are ceaselessly appearing, many to serve high-speed links.

With the advent of high-speed D, G and C class express trains, getting between major cities is increasingly a breeze (albeit far more expensive than regular fast trains). In 2011, an ultra-high-speed



railway was unveiled between Beijing and Shanghai, compressing the journey to around five hours. A high-speed link should connect Beijing and Xi'an by 2014. High-speed rail has put the squeeze on numerous domestic air routes and the punctuality of trains sees far fewer delays than airports.

A fatal high-speed train crash in Wenzhou in 2011 that killed 40 people was blamed on flawed equipment and management errors. The accident attracted a lot of public attention, particularly when compared to Japan's high-speed network (operating without a single fatality since the 1960s). After the crash, expansion of the (loss-making) high-speed program was scaled back, but the network continues to grow.

For international trains to and from China, see the Transport chapter ([Click here](#)).

---

## Trains

Chinese train numbers are usually (but not always) prefixed by a letter, designating the category of train.

### HIGH-SPEED TRAINS

TYPE	PINYIN	CHINESE	TOP SPEED
C class	Chengji		350km/h
D class	Dongche		250km/h
G class	Gaotie		350km/h

### High Speed Trains

The fastest, most luxurious and expensive intercity trains are the streamlined, high-speed C, D and G trains, which rapidly shuttle between major cities, such as Beijing and Tianjin and Beijing and Shanghai.

High-speed C class trains are currently limited to the route between Beijing and Tianjin. D class trains were the first high-speed trains to appear and breathlessly glide around China at high speed, offering substantial comfort and regular services. D class temperature-regulated 1st-class carriages have mobile and laptop chargers, seats are two abreast with ample legroom and TV sets. Second-class carriages have five seats in two rows. Doors between carriages open with electric buttons. G class trains are faster than D class trains and lines include Beijing to Shanghai, Wuhan to Guangzhou and Zhengzhou to Xi'an. Luggage space on G class trains is very limited. The *Shanghai Maglev* is China's fastest train with a top speed of 431km/h, but the route is limited to a 30km section between Pudong International Airport and Longyang Rd metro station.

Less fast express classes include the overnight Z class trains, while further down the pecking order are T and K class trains, which are older and more basic.

There are also numbered trains that do not commence with a letter; these are *pukuai* () or *puke* () trains, with a top speed of around 120km/h.

## CHINA TRAIN ROUTES

ROUTE	DURATION	FARE (SEAT/SLEEPER)
Beijing West–Liuyuan (for Dunhuang)	24hr	Hard/soft sleeper ¥458/705
Beijing West–Guilin	23hr	Hard seat/sleeper ¥242/438
Beijing–Haerbin	9hr	2nd/1st class ¥267/333
Beijing South–Hangzhou	6½hr	2nd/1st class ¥631/1058
Beijing West–Kunming	38hr	Hard seat/sleeper ¥320/578
Beijing West–Lhasa	44hr	Hard/soft sleeper ¥766/1189
Beijing South–Qingdao	4½hr	2nd/1st class ¥315/475
Beijing South–Shanghai	5hr	2nd/1st class ¥555/935

Beijing South–Tianjin	33min	2nd/1st class ¥55/66
Shanghai Hongqiao–Hangzhou	1hr	2nd/1st class ¥78/124
Shanghai–Hong Kong	18½hr	Hard seat/sleeper ¥226/409
Shanghai–Lhasa	48hr	Hard seat/sleeper ¥406/845
Shanghai–Nanjing	1½hr	2nd/1st class ¥135/230
Shanghai Hongqiao–Wuhan	6hr	2nd/1st class ¥265/317
Shanghai Hongqiao–Xiamen	8hr	2nd/1st class ¥339/408
Shanghai–Xi'an	14hr	Hard sleeper/soft sleeper ¥333/511
Chengdu–Chongqing North	2hr	2nd/1st class ¥98/117
Guangzhou South–Shenzhen North	40min	2nd/1st class ¥75/100
Hohhot–Yinchuan	10hr	Hard/soft sleeper ¥175/264
Kunming–Chengdu	20hr	2nd/1st class ¥143/263
Lanzhou–Urumqi	21hr	Hard seat/hard sleeper ¥215/390
Urumqi–Kashgar	24hr	Hard/soft sleeper ¥345/529
Wuhan–Guangzhou South	4hr	2nd/1st class ¥445/710
Xi'an–Zhengzhou	2hr	2nd/1st class ¥230/370
Xi'an North–Urumqi	34hr	Hard/soft sleeper ¥287/494

## Travelling by Train

Trains are generally highly punctual in China and are usually a safe way to travel. Train stations are often conveniently close to the centre of town. Travelling on sleeper berths at night means you can frequently arrive at your destination first thing in the morning, saving a night's hotel accommodation. Think ahead, get your tickets early and you can sleep your way around a lot of China.

On entering a large station (eg Shanghai South Train Station), you will have to find the correct waiting room number, displayed on an

illuminated screen as you walk in.

## REGULAR TRAINS

TYPE	PINYIN CHINESE	TOP SPEED
Z class (express)	<i>zhida</i>	160km/h
T class	<i>tekuai</i>	140km/h
K class	<i>kuaisu</i>	120km/h

Trolleys of food and drink are wheeled along carriages during the trip, but prices are high and the selection is limited. You can also load up on mineral water and snacks at stations, where hawkers sell items from platform stalls. Long-distance trains should have a canteen carriage (; *canting chexiang*); they are sometimes open through the night.

In each class of sleeper, linen is clean and changed for each journey; beds are generally bedbug-free. Staff rarely speak English, except sometimes on the high-speed express trains.

If taking a sleeper train, you will be required to exchange your paper ticket for a plastic or metal card with your bunk number on it. The conductor then knows when you are due to disembark, and will awake you in time to return your ticket to you. Hold on to your paper ticket for possible inspection at the train station exit.

Some do's and don'ts regarding train travel:

» » Don't leave it till the very last minute to board your train, as queues outside the main train station entrance can be shocking.

» » You are required to pass your bags through a security scanner at the train station entrance.

» » On long train trips, load up with snacks, food and drinks for the journey.

» » On a non-sleeper, ask a member of staff or a fellow passenger to tell you when your station arrives.

» » If you are a light sleeper, take earplugs on sleepers as there's usually a snorer.

## TRAVELLING THE TRANS-SIBERIAN RAILWAY

Rolling out of Europe and into Asia, through eight time zones and over 9289km of taiga, steppe and desert, the Trans-Siberian Railway and its connecting routes constitute one of the most famous and most romantic of the world's great train journeys.

There are, in fact, three railways. The 'true' **Trans-Siberian** line runs from Moscow to Vladivostok. But the routes traditionally referred to as the Trans-Siberian Railway are the two branches that veer off the main line in eastern Siberia for Beijing.

Since the first option excludes China, most readers of this book will be choosing between the **Trans-Mongolian** and the **Trans-Manchurian** railway lines. The Trans-Mongolian route (Beijing to Moscow, 7865km) is faster, but requires an additional visa and another border crossing – on the plus side, you also get to see some of the Mongolian countryside. The Trans-Manchurian route is longer (Beijing to Moscow, 9025km).

See Lonely Planet's *Trans-Siberian Railway* for further details.

### Routes

#### TRANS-MONGOLIAN RAILWAY

Trains offer deluxe two-berth compartments (with shared shower), 1st-class four-berth compartments and 2nd-class four-berth compartments. Tickets for 2nd-class/deluxe compartments cost from around ¥4049/6527 to Moscow, ¥1430/2250 to Ulaanbaatar and ¥3000/4800 to Novosibirsk. Ticket prices are cheaper if you travel in a group.

» » From Beijing: train K3 leaves Beijing Train Station on its five-day journey to Moscow at 7.45am every Wednesday, passing through Datong, Ulaanbaatar and Novosibirsk, arriving in Moscow the following Monday at 1.58pm.

» » From Moscow: train K4 leaves at 9.35pm on Tuesdays, arriving in Beijing Train Station the following Monday at 2.04pm. Departure and arrival times may fluctuate slightly.

#### TRANS-MANCHURIAN RAILWAY

Trains have 1st-class two-berth compartments and 2nd-class four-berth compartments; prices are similar to those on the Trans-Mongolian Railway.

» » From Beijing: train K19 departs Beijing Train Station at 11pm on Saturday arriving in Moscow (via Manzhouli) the following Friday at 5.58pm.

» » From Moscow: train K20 leaves Moscow at 11.55pm on Saturday, arriving at Beijing Train Station the following Friday at

5.32am. Departure and arrival times may fluctuate slightly.

### Visas

Travellers will need Russian and Mongolian visas for the Trans-Mongolian Railway, as well as a Chinese visa. These can often be arranged along with your ticket by travel agents such as China International Travel Service (CITS).

Mongolian visas – either two-day transit visas (¥180) or 30-day tourist visas (¥270) – take three to five days to process. Urgent visas can be arranged in one day for a surcharge. A transit visa is easy to get (present a through ticket and a visa for your onward destination). The situation regarding visas changes regularly, so check with a Mongolian embassy or consulate. All Mongolian embassies shut for the week of National Day (Naadam), which officially falls around 11 to 13 July.

Russian transit visas (one-week/three-day/one-day process US\$50/80/120) are valid for 10 days if you take the train, but will only give you three or four days in Moscow at the end of your journey. You need one photo, your passport and the exact amount in US dollars. You will also need a valid entry visa for a third country plus a through ticket from Russia to the third country. You can also obtain a 30-day Russian tourist visa, but the process is complicated.

### Buying Tickets

Book well in advance (especially in summer); in Beijing tickets can be conveniently purchased and booked in advance in central Beijing from **CITS** (Zhongguo Guoji Luxingshe; [www.cits.net](http://www.cits.net); ☎ 010-6512 0507; Beijing International Hotel, 9 Jianguomen Neidajie), for a mark-up. **Monkey Shrine** ([www.monkeyshrine.com](http://www.monkeyshrine.com); Youyi Youth Hostel, 43 Beisanlitun Lu) in Beijing also arranges trips, and has an informative website with a downloadable brochure. There's another **branch** (☎ 852-2723 1376; Liberty Mansion, Kowloon) in Hong Kong.

Abroad, tickets (and sometimes visas) can be arranged through an agency:

**Intourist UK** ([www.intouristuk.com](http://www.intouristuk.com))

**Russia Experience** (☎ 0845 521-2910; [www.trans-siberian.co.uk](http://www.trans-siberian.co.uk))

**Trans-Sputnik Nederland** ([www.trans-sputnik.nl](http://www.trans-sputnik.nl))

**Vodkatrain** ([www.vodkatrain.com](http://www.vodkatrain.com))

### Useful Websites

**The Man in Seat 61** ([www.seat61.com/Trans-Siberian](http://www.seat61.com/Trans-Siberian)) Reams of information on travelling the Trans-Siberian Railway.

---

## Ticket Types

It is possible to upgrade (; *bupiao*) your ticket once aboard your train. If you have a standing ticket, for example, find the conductor and upgrade to a hard seat, soft seat, hard sleeper, soft sleeper (if there are any available) or different class.

# TRAIN TICKETS

TICKET TYPE	PINYIN	CHINESE
soft sleeper	<i>ruanwo</i>	
hard sleeper	<i>yingwo</i>	
soft seat	<i>ruanzuo</i>	
hard seat	<i>yingzuo</i>	
standing ticket	<i>wuzuo</i> or <i>zhanpiao</i>	

## Soft Sleeper

Soft sleepers are a very comfortable way to travel and work perfectly as mobile hotels; tickets cost much more than hard-sleeper tickets and often sell out, however, so book early. Soft sleepers vary between trains and the best are on the more recent D and Z class trains. All Z class trains are soft-sleeper trains, with very comfortable, up-to-date berths. A few T class trains also offer two-berth compartments, with their own toilet. Tickets on upper berths are slightly cheaper than lower berths. Expect to share with total strangers. If you are asleep, an attendant will wake you to prepare you to disembark so you will have plenty of time to ready your things.

Soft sleeper carriages contain:

- » » Four air-conditioned bunks (upper and lower) in a closed compartment.
- » » Bedding on each berth and a lockable door to the carriage corridor.
- » » Meals, flat-screen TVs and power sockets on some routes.
- » » A small table and stowing space for your bags.
- » » Each compartment is equipped with its own hot-water flask, filled by an attendant.

## Hard Sleeper

Hard sleepers are available on slower and less modern T, K and N

class trains, as well as trains without a letter prefix. As with soft sleeper, they serve very nicely as an overnight hotel.

There is a small price difference between the numbered berths, with the lowest bunk (; *xiapu*) the most expensive and the highest bunk (; *shangpu*) the cheapest. The middle bunk (; *zhongpu*) is good, as all and sundry invade the lower berth to use it as a seat during the day, while the top one has little headroom and puts you near the speakers. As with soft sleepers, an attendant will wake you well in advance of your station.

Hard-sleeper tickets are the most difficult of all to buy; you almost always need to buy these a few days in advance. Expect:

- » » Doorless compartments with half a dozen bunks in three tiers.
- » » Sheets, pillows and blankets on each berth.
- » » A no-smoking policy.
- » » Lights and speakers out at around 10pm.
- » » Each compartment is equipped with its own hot-water flask, filled by an attendant.
- » » Trolleys passing by selling food and drink.
- » » A rack above the windows for stowing your baggage.

## Seats

Soft-seat class is more comfortable but not nearly as common as hard-seat class. First-class (; *yideng*) and 2nd-class (; *erdeng*) soft seats are available in D, C and G class high-speed trains.

First-class comes with TVs, mobile phone and laptop charging points, and seats arranged two abreast.

Second-class soft seats are also very comfortable; staff are very courteous throughout. Overcrowding is not permitted. On older trains, soft-seat carriages are often double-decker, and are not as plush as the faster and more modern high-speed express trains.

Hard-seat class is not available on the faster and plusher C, D and G class trains, and is only found on T and K class trains and trains without a number prefix; a handful of Z class trains have hard seat. Hard-seat class generally has padded seats, but it's hard on your sanity; often unclean and noisy, and painful on the long haul.

Since hard seat is the only class most locals can afford, it's packed



to the gills.

You should get a ticket with an assigned seat number; if seats have sold out, ask for a standing ticket, which gets you on the train, where you may find a seat or can upgrade; otherwise you will have to stand in the carriage or between carriages (with the smokers).

Hard-seat sections on China's newer trains are air-conditioned and less crowded.

---

## Ticketing

### Buying Tickets

The Achilles heel of China's overburdened rail system, buying tickets can be a pain.

Most tickets are one way only, with prices calculated per kilometre and adjustments made depending on class of train, availability of air-con, type of sleeper and bunk positioning.

Some tips on buying train tickets:

- » » Never aim to get a hard-sleeper (or increasingly, soft-sleeper) ticket on the day of travel – plan ahead.
- » » Most tickets can be booked in advance between two and 10 days prior to your intended date of departure.
- » » Buying tickets for hard-seat carriages at short notice is usually no hassle, but it may be a standing ticket rather than a numbered seat.
- » » Tickets are only purchasable with cash.
- » » You will need your passport when buying a ticket (the number is printed on your ticket) at all train ticket offices.
- » » Most automated ticket machines (eg at Shanghai Train Station) require Chinese ID and your passport will not work; you will need to queue at the ticket window.
- » » Tickets for hard sleepers are usually obtainable in major cities, but are trickier to buy in quiet backwaters.
- » » As with air travel, buying tickets around the Chinese New Year and the 1 May and 1 October holiday periods can be very hard, and prices increase on some routes.
- » » Tickets on many routes (such as to Lhasa) can be very hard to get

in July and August so prepare to take a flight to distant destinations.

» » Expect to queue for up to half an hour or more for a train ticket at the station.

» » Try to use train ticket offices outside of the station (addresses are listed through the book).

» » Avoid black market tickets: your passport number must be on the ticket.

» » There are no refunds for lost train tickets.

Your ticket will display:

» » The train number.

» » The name of your departure and destination stations in Chinese and Pinyin.

» » The time and date of travel.

» » Your carriage and seat (or berth) number.

» » The ticket price.

» » Your passport number (second from bottom).

## **Ticket Offices**

Ticket offices (; *shoupiating*) at train stations are usually to one side of the main train station entrance. Automated ticket machines operate on few routes and usually don't accept foreign passports as ID. At large stations there should be a window manned by someone with basic English skills.

Alternatively, independent train ticket offices usually exist elsewhere in town where tickets can be purchased for a ¥5 commission without the same kind of queues; these are listed throughout the book. Larger post offices may also sell train tickets. Your hotel will also be able to rustle up a ticket for you for a commission, and so can a travel agent.

Telephone booking services exist, but operate only in Chinese.

You can buy tickets online at [www.12306.cn](http://www.12306.cn) but the website is Chinese language only and you will need a Chinese bankcard. It's cheaper to buy your ticket at the station, but tickets can be bought online at:

**Travel China Guide** ([www.travelchinaguide.com](http://www.travelchinaguide.com))

**China Trip Advisor** ([www.chinatripadvisor.com](http://www.chinatripadvisor.com))

**China Train Timetable** ([www.china-train-ticket.com](http://www.china-train-ticket.com))

For trains from Hong Kong to Shanghai, Guangzhou or Beijing, tickets can be ordered online at no mark-up from **KCRC** ([www.mtr.com.hk](http://www.mtr.com.hk)).

You can also find English-language train timetables on these websites, as printed timetables for the entire country (¥7), published every April and October, are only available in Chinese.

To get a refund (; *tui piao*) on an unused ticket, windows exist at large train stations where you can get 80% of the ticket value back.

---

## Internet Resources

**Seat 61** ([www.seat61.com/China.htm](http://www.seat61.com/China.htm))

**Travel China Guide** ([www.travelchinaguide.com](http://www.travelchinaguide.com))

**Tielu** ([www.tielu.org](http://www.tielu.org), in Chinese)

**China Tibet Train** ([www.chinatibettrain.com](http://www.chinatibettrain.com))

# Health

---

China is a reasonably healthy country to travel in, but some health issues should be noted. Pre-existing medical conditions and accidental injury (especially traffic accidents) account for most life-threatening problems, but becoming ill in some way is not unusual. Outside of the major cities, medical care is often inadequate, and food and waterborne diseases are common. Malaria is still present in some parts of the country, and altitude sickness can be a problem, particularly in Tibet.

In case of accident or illness, it's best just to get a taxi and go to hospital directly.

The following advice is a general guide only and does not replace the advice of a doctor trained in travel medicine.

## **BEFORE YOU GO**

- » » Pack medications in their original, clearly labelled containers.
- » » If you take any regular medication, bring double your needs in case of loss or theft.
- » » Take a signed and dated letter from your physician describing your medical conditions and medications (using generic names).
- » » If carrying syringes or needles, ensure you have a physician's letter documenting their medical necessity.
- » » If you have a heart condition, bring a copy of your ECG taken just prior to travelling.
- » » Get your teeth checked before you travel.
- » » If you wear glasses, take a spare pair and your prescription.

In China you can buy some medications over the counter without a doctor's prescription, but not all, and in general it is not advisable to buy medications locally without a doctor's advice. Fake medications and poorly stored or out-of-date drugs are also common, so try and

take your own.

---

## Insurance

- » » Even if you are fit and healthy, don't travel without health insurance – accidents happen.
- » » Declare any existing medical conditions you have (the insurance company *will* check if your problem is pre-existing and will not cover you if it is undeclared).
- » » You may require extra cover for adventure activities such as rock climbing or skiing.
- » » If you're uninsured, emergency evacuation is expensive; bills of more than US\$100,000 are not uncommon.
- » » Ensure you keep all documentation related to any medical expenses you incur.

---

## Vaccinations

Specialised travel-medicine clinics stock all available vaccines and can give specific recommendations for your trip. The doctors will consider your vaccination history, the length of your trip, activities you may undertake and underlying medical conditions, such as pregnancy.

- » » Visit a doctor six to eight weeks before departure, as most vaccines don't produce immunity until at least two weeks after they're given.
- » » Ask your doctor for an International Certificate of Vaccination (otherwise known as the 'yellow booklet'), listing all vaccinations received.
- » » The only vaccine required by international regulations is yellow fever.

Proof of vaccination against yellow fever is only required if you have visited a country in the yellow-fever zone within the six days prior to entering China. If you are travelling to China directly from South America or Africa, check with a travel clinic as to whether you need a yellow-fever vaccination.

---

# RECOMMENDED VACCINATIONS

---

The World Health Organization (WHO) recommends the following vaccinations for travellers to China:

**Adult diphtheria and tetanus (ADT)** Single booster recommended if you've not received one in the previous 10 years. Side effects include a sore arm and fever. An ADT vaccine that immunises against pertussis (whooping cough) is also available and may be recommended by your doctor.

**Hepatitis A** Provides almost 100% protection for up to a year; a booster after 12 months provides at least another 20 years' protection. Mild side effects such as a headache and sore arm occur in 5% to 10% of people.

**Hepatitis B** Now considered routine for most travellers. Given as three shots over six months; a rapid schedule is also available. There is also a combined vaccination with hepatitis A. Side effects are mild and uncommon, usually a headache and sore arm. Lifetime protection results in 95% of people.

**Measles, mumps and rubella (MMR)** Two doses of MMR is recommended unless you have had the diseases. Occasionally a rash and a flulike illness can develop a week after receiving the vaccine. Many adults under 40 require a booster.

**Typhoid** Recommended unless your trip is less than a week. The vaccine offers around 70% protection, lasts for two to three years and comes as a single shot. Tablets are also available; however, the injection is usually recommended as it has fewer side effects. A sore arm and fever may occur. A vaccine combining hepatitis A and typhoid in a single shot is now available.

**Varicella** If you haven't had chickenpox, discuss this vaccination with your doctor.

The following immunisations are recommended for travellers spending more than one month in the country or those at special risk:

**Influenza** A single shot lasts one year and is recommended for those over 65 years of age or with underlying medical conditions such as heart or lung disease.

**Japanese B encephalitis** A series of three injections with a booster after two years. Recommended if spending more than one month in rural areas in the summer months, or more than three months in the country.

**Pneumonia** A single injection with a booster after five years is recommended for all travellers over 65 years of age or with underlying medical conditions that compromise immunity, such as heart or lung disease, cancer or HIV.

**Rabies** Three injections in all. A booster after one year will then provide 10 years' protection. Side effects are rare – occasionally a headache and sore arm.

**Tuberculosis** A complex issue. High-risk adult long-term travellers are usually recommended to have a TB skin test before and after travel, rather than vaccination. Only one vaccine is given in a lifetime. Children under five spending more than three months in China should be vaccinated.

Pregnant women and children should receive advice from a doctor who specialises in travel medicine.

---

## Medical Checklist

Recommended items for a personal medical kit:

- » » Antibacterial cream, eg mucipirocin
- » » Antibiotics for diarrhoea, including norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin or azithromycin for bacterial diarrhoea; or tinidazole for giardia or amoebic dysentery
- » » Antibiotics for skin infections, eg amoxicillin/clavulanate or cephalexin
- » » Antifungal cream, eg clotrimazole
- » » Antihistamine, eg cetirizine for daytime and promethazine for night-time
- » » Anti-inflammatory, eg ibuprofen
- » » Antiseptic, eg Betadine
- » » Antispasmodic for stomach cramps, eg Buscopan
- » » Decongestant, eg pseudoephedrine
- » » Diamox if going to high altitudes
- » » Elastoplasts, bandages, gauze, thermometer (but not mercury), sterile needles and syringes, safety pins and tweezers
- » » Indigestion tablets, such as Quick-Eze or Mylanta
- » » Insect repellent containing DEET
- » » Iodine tablets to purify water (unless you're pregnant or have a thyroid problem)
- » » Laxative, eg coloxyl
- » » Oral-rehydration solution (eg Gastrolyte) for diarrhoea, diarrhoea 'stopper' (eg loperamide) and antinausea medication (eg prochlorperazine)
- » » Paracetamol
- » » Permethrin to impregnate clothing and mosquito nets
- » » Steroid cream for rashes, eg 1% to 2% hydrocortisone
- » » Sunscreen
- » » Thrush (vaginal yeast infection) treatment, eg clotrimazole pessaries or Diflucan tablet
- » » Urinary infection treatment, eg Ural

---

## Websites

Centers for Disease Control & Prevention (CDC; [www.cdc.gov](http://www.cdc.gov))

Lonely Planet ([www.lonelyplanet.com](http://www.lonelyplanet.com))

MD Travel Health ([www.mdtravelhealth.com](http://www.mdtravelhealth.com)) Provides complete travel-health recommendations for every country; updated daily.

World Health Organization (WHO; [www.who.int/ith](http://www.who.int/ith)) Publishes the excellent *International Travel & Health*, revised annually and available online at no cost.

## HEALTH ADVISORIES

---

It's usually a good idea to consult your government's travel-health website before departure, if one is available.

Australia ([www.dfat.gov.au/travel](http://www.dfat.gov.au/travel))

Canada ([www.travelhealth.gc.ca](http://www.travelhealth.gc.ca))

New Zealand ([www.mfat.govt.nz/travel](http://www.mfat.govt.nz/travel))

UK ([www.dh.gov.uk](http://www.dh.gov.uk)) Search for travel in the site index.

USA ([www.cdc.gov/travel](http://www.cdc.gov/travel))

---

## Further Reading

*Healthy Travel – Asia & India* (Lonely Planet) Handy pocket size, packed with useful information.

*Traveller's Health* by Dr Richard Dawood.

*Travelling Well* ([www.travellingwell.com.au](http://www.travellingwell.com.au)) by Dr Deborah Mills.

## IN CHINA

---

## Availability of Health Care

Good clinics catering to travellers can be found in major cities. They are more expensive than local facilities but you may feel more



comfortable dealing with a Western-trained doctor who speaks your language. These clinics usually have a good understanding of the best local hospital facilities and close contacts with insurance companies should you need evacuation.

Self-treatment may be appropriate if your problem is minor (eg traveller's diarrhoea), you are carrying the relevant medication and you cannot attend a clinic. If you think you may have a serious disease, especially malaria, do not waste time – get to the nearest quality facility. To find the nearest reliable medical facility, contact your insurance company or your embassy. Hospitals are listed in the Information section in cities and towns throughout the book.

---

## **Infectious Diseases**

### **Dengue**

This mosquito-borne disease occurs in some parts of southern China. There is no vaccine so avoid mosquito bites. The dengue-carrying mosquito bites day and night, so use insect-avoidance measures at all times. Symptoms include high fever, severe headache and body ache. Some people develop a rash and diarrhoea. There is no specific treatment – just rest and paracetamol. Do not take aspirin. See a doctor to be diagnosed and monitored.

### **Hepatitis A**

A problem throughout China, this food-and-waterborne virus infects the liver, causing jaundice (yellow skin and eyes), nausea and lethargy. There is no specific treatment for hepatitis A; you just need to allow time for the liver to heal. All travellers to China should be vaccinated.

### **Hepatitis B**

The only sexually transmitted disease that can be prevented by vaccination, hepatitis B is spread by contact with infected body fluids. The long-term consequences can include liver cancer and cirrhosis. All travellers to China should be vaccinated.

### **Japanese B Encephalitis**

A rare disease in travellers; however, vaccination is recommended if you're in rural areas for more than a month during summer months, or if spending more than three months in the country. No treatment available; one-third of infected people die, another third suffer permanent brain damage.

## **Malaria**

Malaria has been nearly eradicated in China; it is not generally a risk for visitors to the cities and most tourist areas. It is found mainly in rural areas in the southwestern region bordering Myanmar, Laos and Vietnam, principally Hainan, Yunnan and Guangxi. More limited risk exists in the remote rural areas of Fujian, Guangdong, Guizhou and Sichuan. Generally, medication is only advised if you are visiting rural Hainan, Yunnan or Guangxi.

To prevent malaria:

- » » Avoid mosquitoes and take antimalaria medications (most people who catch malaria are taking inadequate or no antimalaria medication).
- » » Use an insect repellent containing DEET on exposed skin (natural repellents such as citronella can be effective, but require more frequent application than products containing DEET).
- » » Sleep under a mosquito net impregnated with permethrin.
- » » Choose accommodation with screens and fans (if it's not air-conditioned).
- » » Impregnate clothing with permethrin in high-risk areas.
- » » Wear long sleeves and trousers in light colours.
- » » Use mosquito coils.
- » » Spray your room with insect repellent before going out for your evening meal.

## **Rabies**

An increasingly common problem in China, this fatal disease is spread by the bite or lick of an infected animal, most commonly a dog. Seek medical advice immediately after any animal bite and commence postexposure treatment. The pretravel vaccination means the post-bite treatment is greatly simplified.

If an animal bites you:

» » Gently wash the wound with soap and water, and apply an iodine-based antiseptic.

» » If you are not prevaccinated, you will need to receive rabies immunoglobulin as soon as possible, followed by a series of five vaccines over the next month. Those who have been prevaccinated require only two shots of vaccine after a bite.

» » Contact your insurance company to locate the nearest clinic stocking rabies immunoglobulin and vaccine. Immunoglobulin is often unavailable outside of major centres, but it's crucial that you get to a clinic that has immunoglobulin as soon as possible if you have had a bite that has broken the skin.

### **Schistosomiasis (Bilharzia)**

This disease occurs in the central Yangzi River (Chang Jiang) basin, carried in water by minute worms that infect certain varieties of freshwater snail found in rivers, streams, lakes and, particularly, behind dams. The infection often causes no symptoms until the disease is well established (several months to years after exposure); any resulting damage to internal organs is irreversible. Effective treatment is available.

» » Avoid swimming or bathing in fresh water where bilharzia is present.

» » A blood test is the most reliable way to diagnose the disease, but the test will not show positive until weeks after exposure.

### **Typhoid**

Typhoid is a serious bacterial infection spread via food and water. Symptoms include headaches, a high and slowly progressive fever, perhaps accompanied by a dry cough and stomach pain. Vaccination is not 100% effective, so still be careful what you eat and drink. All travellers spending more than a week in China should be vaccinated.

## **DRINKING WATER**

Follow these tips to avoid becoming ill.

» » Never drink tap water.

- » » Bottled water is generally safe – check the seal is intact at purchase.
- » » Avoid ice.
- » » Avoid fresh juices – they may have been watered down.
- » » Boiling water is the most efficient method of purifying it.
- » » The best chemical purifier is iodine. It should not be used by pregnant women or those with thyroid problems.
- » » Water filters should also filter out viruses. Ensure your filter has a chemical barrier such as iodine and a pore size of less than 4 microns.

---

## Traveller's Diarrhoea

Between 30% and 50% of visitors will suffer from traveller's diarrhoea within two weeks of starting their trip. In most cases, the ailment is caused by bacteria and responds promptly to treatment with antibiotics.

Treatment consists of staying hydrated; rehydration solutions such as Gastrolyte are best. Antibiotics such as norfloxacin, ciprofloxacin or azithromycin will kill the bacteria quickly. Loperamide is just a 'stopper' and doesn't cure the problem; it can be helpful, however, for long bus rides. Don't take loperamide if you have a fever, or blood in your stools. Seek medical attention if you do not respond to an appropriate antibiotic.

- » » Eat only at busy restaurants with a high turnover of customers.
- » » Eat only freshly cooked food.
- » » Avoid food that has been sitting around in buffets.
- » » Peel all fruit, cook vegetables and soak salads in iodine water for at least 20 minutes.

## Amoebic Dysentery

Amoebic dysentery is actually rare in travellers and is overdiagnosed. Symptoms are similar to bacterial diarrhoea – fever, bloody diarrhoea and generally feeling unwell. Always seek reliable medical care if you

have blood in your diarrhoea. Treatment involves two drugs: tinidazole or metronidazole to kill the parasite in your gut, and then a second drug to kill the cysts. If amoebic dysentery is left untreated, complications such as liver or gut abscesses can occur.

## **Giardiasis**

Giardiasis is a parasite relatively common in travellers. Symptoms include nausea, bloating, excess gas, fatigue and intermittent diarrhoea. 'Eggy' burps are often attributed solely to giardia, but are not specific to the parasite. Giardiasis will eventually go away if left untreated, but this can take months. The treatment of choice is tinidazole, with metronidazole a second option.

## **Intestinal Worms**

These parasites are most common in rural, tropical areas. Some may be ingested in food such as undercooked meat (eg tapeworms) and some enter through your skin (eg hookworms). Infestations may not show up for some time, and although they are generally not serious, some can cause severe health problems later if left untreated. Consider having a stool test when you return home.

---

# **Environmental Hazards**

## **Air Pollution**

Air pollution is a significant problem in many Chinese cities. People with underlying respiratory conditions should seek advice from their doctor prior to travel to ensure they have adequate medications in case their condition worsens. Take treatments such as throat lozenges, and cough and cold tablets.

## **Altitude Sickness**

There are bus journeys in Tibet, Qinghai and Xinjiang where the road goes above 5000m. Acclimatising to such extreme elevations takes several weeks at least, but most travellers come up from sea level very fast – a bad move! Acute mountain sickness (AMS) results from a rapid ascent to altitudes above 2700m. It usually commences within 24 to 48 hours of arriving at altitude, and symptoms include headache,

nausea, fatigue and loss of appetite (feeling much like a hangover).

If you have altitude sickness, the cardinal rule is that you must not go higher as you are sure to get sicker and could develop one of the more severe and potentially deadly forms of the disease: high-altitude pulmonary oedema (HAPE) and high-altitude cerebral oedema (HACE). Both are medical emergencies and, as there are no rescue facilities similar to those in the Nepal Himalaya, prevention is the best policy.

AMS can be prevented by 'graded ascent'; it is recommended that once you are above 3000m you ascend a maximum of 300m daily with an extra rest day every 1000m. You can also use a medication called Diamox as a prevention or treatment for AMS, but you should discuss this first with a doctor experienced in altitude medicine. Diamox should not be taken by people with a sulphur drug allergy.

If you have altitude sickness, rest where you are for a day or two until your symptoms resolve. You can then carry on, but ensure you follow the graded-ascent guidelines. If symptoms get worse, descend immediately before you are faced with a life-threatening situation. There is no way of predicting who will suffer from AMS, but certain factors predispose you to it: rapid ascent, carrying a heavy load, and having a seemingly minor illness such as a chest infection or diarrhoea. Make sure you drink at least 3L of noncaffeinated drinks daily to stay well hydrated. The sun is intense at altitude so take care with sun protection.

## **Heat Exhaustion**

Dehydration or salt deficiency can cause heat exhaustion. Take time to acclimatise to high temperatures, drink sufficient liquids and avoid physically demanding activity.

Salt deficiency is characterised by fatigue, lethargy, headaches, giddiness and muscle cramps; salt tablets may help, adding extra salt to your food is better.

## **Hypothermia**

Be particularly aware of the dangers of trekking at high altitudes or simply taking a long bus trip over mountains. In Tibet it can go from being mildly warm to blisteringly cold in minutes – blizzards can

appear from nowhere.

Progress from very cold to dangerously cold can be rapid due to a combination of wind, wet clothing, fatigue and hunger, even if the air temperature is above freezing. Dress in layers; silk, wool and some artificial fibres are all good insulating materials. A hat is important, as a lot of heat is lost through the head. A strong, waterproof outer layer (and a space blanket for emergencies) is essential. Carry basic supplies, including food containing simple sugars, and fluid to drink.

Symptoms of hypothermia are exhaustion, numb skin (particularly the toes and fingers), shivering, slurred speech, irrational or violent behaviour, lethargy, stumbling, dizzy spells, muscle cramps and violent bursts of energy.

To treat mild hypothermia, first get the person out of the wind and/or rain, remove their clothing if it's wet, and replace it with dry, warm clothing. Give them hot liquids – not alcohol – and high-calorie, easily digestible food. Early recognition and treatment of mild hypothermia is the only way to prevent severe hypothermia, a critical condition that requires medical attention.

## **Insect Bites & Stings**

Bedbugs don't carry disease but their bites are very itchy. Treat the itch with an antihistamine.

Lice inhabit various parts of the human body, most commonly the head and pubic areas. Transmission is via close contact with an affected person. Lice can be difficult to treat, but electric lice combs/detectors can be effective (pick one up before travelling); otherwise you may need numerous applications of an antilice shampoo such as permethrin. Pubic lice (crab lice) are usually contracted from sexual contact.

Ticks are contracted by walking in rural areas, and are commonly found behind the ears, on the belly and in armpits. If you have had a tick bite and experience symptoms such as a rash, fever or muscle aches, see a doctor. Doxycycline prevents some tick-borne diseases.

---

## **Women's Health**

Pregnant women should receive specialised advice before travelling. The ideal time to travel is in the second trimester (between 14 and 28 weeks), when the risk of pregnancy-related problems is at its lowest and pregnant women generally feel at their best. During the first trimester, miscarriage is a risk; in the third trimester, complications such as premature labour and high blood pressure are possible. Travel with a companion and carry a list of quality medical facilities for your destination, ensuring you continue your standard antenatal care at these facilities. Avoid rural areas with poor transport and medical facilities. Most of all, ensure travel insurance covers all pregnancy-related possibilities, including premature labour.

Malaria is a high-risk disease in pregnancy. The World Health Organization recommends that pregnant women do not travel to areas with chloroquine-resistant malaria.

Traveller's diarrhoea can quickly lead to dehydration and result in inadequate blood flow to the placenta. Many drugs used to treat various diarrhoea bugs are not recommended in pregnancy. Azithromycin is considered safe.

Heat, humidity and antibiotics can all contribute to thrush. Treatment is with antifungal creams and pessaries such as clotrimazole. A practical alternative is a single tablet of fluconazole (Diflucan). Urinary tract infections can be precipitated by dehydration or long bus journeys without toilet stops; bring suitable antibiotics.

Supplies of sanitary products may not be readily available in rural areas. Birth-control options may be limited, so bring adequate supplies of your own form of contraception.

---

## Traditional Chinese Medicine

Traditional Chinese Medicine (TCM) views the human body as an energy system in which the basic substances of *qi* (; vital energy), *jing* (; essence), *xue* (; blood) and *tiye* (; body fluids, blood and other organic fluids) function. The concept of yin () and yang () is fundamental to the system. Disharmony between yin and yang or within the basic substances may be a result of internal causes (emotions), external causes (climatic conditions) or miscellaneous



causes (work, exercise, stress etc). Treatment includes acupuncture, massage, herbs, diet and qi gong (), which seeks to bring these elements back into balance. Treatments can be particularly useful for treating chronic diseases and ailments such as fatigue, arthritis, irritable bowel syndrome and some chronic skin conditions.

Be aware that 'natural' does not always mean 'safe'; there can be drug interactions between herbal medicines and Western medicines. If using both systems, ensure you inform both practitioners what the other has prescribed.

# Language

## WANT MORE?

For in-depth language information and handy phrases, check out Lonely Planet's *China Phrasebook*. You'll find it at [shop.lonelyplanet.com](#), or you can buy Lonely Planet's iPhone phrasebooks at the Apple App Store.

Discounting its many ethnic minority languages, China has eight major dialect groups: Pǔtōnghuà (Mandarin), Yue (Cantonese), Wu (Shanghainese), Minbei (Fuzhou), Minnan (Hokkien-Taiwanese), Xiang, Gan and Hakka. These dialects also divide into subdialects.

It's the language spoken in Běijīng which is considered the official language of China. It's usually referred to as Mandarin, but the Chinese themselves call it Pǔtōnghuà (meaning 'common speech'). Pǔtōnghuà is variously referred to as Hànyǔ (the Han language), Guóyǔ (the national language) or Zhōngwén or Zhōngguóhuà (Chinese). With the exception of the western and southernmost provinces, most of the population speaks Mandarin (although it may be spoken there with a regional accent). In this chapter, we have included Mandarin, Cantonese, Tibetan, Uighur and Mongolian.

## MANDARIN

### Writing

Chinese is often referred to as a language of pictographs. Many of the basic Chinese characters are in fact highly stylised pictures of what they represent, but around 90% are compounds of a 'meaning' element and a 'sound' element.

A well-educated, contemporary Chinese person might use between 6000 and 8000 characters. To read a Chinese newspaper you need to know 2000 to 3000 characters, but 1200 to 1500 would be enough to get the gist.

Theoretically, all Chinese dialects share the same written system. In practice, Cantonese

adds about 3000 specialised characters of its own and many of the dialects don't have a written form at all.

### Pinyin & Pronunciation

In 1958 the Chinese adopted Pinyin, a system of writing their language using the Roman alphabet. The original idea was to eventually do away with Chinese characters. However, tradition dies hard, and the idea was abandoned.

Pinyin is often used on shop fronts, street signs and advertising billboards. Don't expect all Chinese people to be able to use Pinyin, however. In the countryside and the smaller towns you may not see a single Pinyin sign anywhere, so unless you speak and read Chinese you'll need a phrasebook with Chinese characters.

Below we've provided Pinyin alongside the Mandarin script.

### Vowels

a	as in 'father'
ai	as in 'aisle'
ao	as the 'ow' in 'cow'
e	as in 'her' (without 'r' sound)
ei	as in 'weigh'
i	as the 'ee' in 'meet' (or like a light 'r' as in 'Grrr!' after o, ch, r, s, sh, z or zh)
ian	as the word 'yen'
ie	as the English word 'yeah'
o	as in 'or' (without 'r' sound)
ou	as the 'oa' in 'boat'
u	as in 'flute'
ui	as the word 'way'
uo	like a 'w' followed by 'o'
yu/ü	like 'ee' with lips pursed

## Consonants

c	as the 'ts' in 'bits'
ch	as in 'chop', but with the tongue curled up and back
h	as in 'hay', but articulated from further back in the throat
q	as the 'ch' in 'cheese'
sh	as in 'ship', but with the tongue curled up and back
x	as the 'sh' in 'ship'
z	as the 'ds' in 'suds'
zh	as the 'j' in 'judge' but with the tongue curled up and back

The only consonants that occur at the end of a syllable are *n*, *ng* and *r*.

In Pinyin, apostrophes are occasionally used to separate syllables in order to prevent ambiguity, eg the word *píng'ān* can be written with an apostrophe after the 'g' to prevent it being pronounced as *pín'gān*.

## Tones

Mandarin is a language with a large number of words with the same pronunciation but a different meaning. What distinguishes these homophones (as these words are called) is their 'tonal' quality – the raising and the lowering of pitch on certain syllables. Mandarin has four tones – high, rising, falling-rising and falling, plus a fifth 'neutral' tone that you can all but ignore. Tones are important for distinguishing meaning of words – eg the word *mā* has four different meanings according to tone, as shown below. Tones are indicated in Pinyin by the following accent marks on vowels:

high tone	mā (mother)
rising tone	má (hemp, numb)
falling-rising tone	mǎ (horse)
falling tone	mà (scold, swear)

## Basics

When asking a question it is polite to start with *qǐng wèn* – literally, 'May I ask?'.

Hello.	你好。	Nǐhǎo.
Goodbye.	再见。	Zàijiàn.
How are you?	你好吗?	Nǐhǎo ma?
Fine. And you?	好。你呢?	Hǎo. Nǐ ne?
Excuse me.		
(to get attention)	劳驾。	Lǎojià.
(to get past)	借光。	Jièguāng.
Sorry.	对不起。	Duìbùqǐ.
Yes./No.	是。/不是。	Shì./Búshì.
Please ...	请……	Qǐng ...
Thank you.	谢谢你。	Xièxiè nǐ.
You're welcome.	不客气。	Bù kèqì.

## KEY PATTERNS – MANDARIN

To get by in Mandarin, mix and match these simple patterns with words of your choice:

### How much is (the deposit)?

(押金)多少? (Yājīn) duōshǎo?

### Do you have (a room)?

有没有(房)? Yǒuméiyǒu (fáng)?

### Is there (heating)?

有(暖气)吗? Yǒu (nuǎnqì) ma?

### I'd like (that one).

我要(那个)。 Wǒ yào (nàge).

### Please give me (the menu).

请给我(菜单)。 (Qǐng gāiwǒ) (càidān).

### Can I (sit here)?

我能(坐这儿)吗? Wǒ néng (zuòzhèr) ma?

### I need (a can opener).

我想要(一个开罐器)。 Wǒ xiǎngyào (yíge kāiguān qì).

### Do we need (a guide)?

需要(向导)吗? Xūyào (xiàngdǎo) ma?

### I have (a reservation).

我有(预订)。 Wǒ yǒu (yùdìng).

### I'm (a doctor).

我(是医生)。 Wǒ (shì yīshēng).

### What's your name?

你叫什么名字? Nǐ jiào shénme míngzì?

### My name is ...

我叫…… Wǒ jiào ...

### Do you speak English?

你会说英文吗? Nǐ huìshuō Yīngwén ma?

### I don't understand.

我不明白。 Wǒ bù míngbái.

## Accommodation

### Do you have a single/double room?

有没有(单人/套房)房? Yǒuméiyǒu (dānrén/tào) fáng?

### How much is it per night/person?

每天/人多少钱? Měi tiān/rén duōshǎo qián?

campsite	露营地	lùyíngdì
guesthouse	宾馆	bīnguǎn
hostel	招待所	zhāodàisuǒ
hotel	酒店	jiǔdiàn
air-con	空调	kōngtiáo
bathroom	浴室	yùshì
bed	床	chuáng
cot	张婴儿床	zhāng yīng'ér chuáng
window	窗	chuāng

## Signs – Mandarin

入口	Rùkǒu	Entrance
出口	Chūkǒu	Exit
问讯处	Wènxūnchù	Information
开	Kāi	Open
关	Guān	Closed
禁止	Jìnzhǐ	Prohibited
厕所	Cèsuǒ	Toilets
男	Nán	Men
女	Nǚ	Women

## Directions

Where's (a bank)?  
(银行)在哪儿? (Yínháng) zài nǎr?

What's the address?  
地址在哪儿? Dìzhǐ zài nǎr?

Could you write the address, please?  
能不能请你  
把地址写下来? Néngbunéng qǐng nǐ  
bǎ dìzhǐ xiě xiàlái?

Can you show me where it is on the map?  
请帮我找它在  
地图上的位置。 (Qǐng bāngwǒ zhǎo tā zài  
dìtú shàng de wèichí.

Go straight ahead.  
一直走。 Yízhí zǒu.

Turn left.  
左转。 Zuǒ zhuǎn.

Turn right.  
右转。 Yòu zhuǎn.

at the traffic lights 在红绿灯 zài hónglǜdēng

behind 背面 bèimiàn

far 远 yuǎn

in front of ... ……的前面 ... de qiánmian

near 近 jìn

next to 旁边 pángbiān

on the corner 拐角 guǎijiǎo

opposite 对面 duìmiàn

## Eating &amp; Drinking

What would you recommend?  
有什么菜可以  
推荐的? Yǒu shénme cài kāyī  
tuījiàn de?

What's in that dish?  
这道菜用什么  
东西做的? Zhèdào cài yòng shénme  
dōngxi zuòde?

That was delicious.  
真好吃。 Zhēn hǎochī.

The bill, please!  
买单! Mǎidān!

Cheers!  
干杯! Gānbēi!

I'd like to reserve  
a table for ... 我想预订  
一张……  
的桌子。 Wǒ xiǎng yùdìng  
yízhāng ...  
de zhuōzi.  
(eight) o'clock (八)点钟 (bā) diǎnzhōng  
(two) people (两个)人 (liǎngge) rén

I don't eat ... 我不吃…… Wǒ bùchī ...  
fish 鱼 yú  
nuts 果仁 guǒrén  
poultry 家禽 jiāqín  
red meat 牛羊肉 niúyángròu

## Key Words

appetisers	凉菜	liángcài
bar	酒吧	jǔbā
bottle	瓶子	píngzi
bowl	碗	wǎn
breakfast	早饭	zǎofān
cafe	咖啡屋	kāfēiwū
children's menu	儿童菜单	értóng càidān
(too) cold	(太)凉	(tài) liáng
dinner	晚饭	wǎnfàn
dish (food)	盘	pán
food	食品	shípín
fork	叉子	chāzi
glass	杯子	bēizi
halal	清真	qīngzhēn
highchair	高凳	gāodēng
hot (warm)	热	rè
knife	刀	dāo
kosher	犹太	yóutài
local specialties	地方小吃	dìfāng xiǎochī
lunch	午饭	wǔfàn
main courses	主菜	zhǔ cài
market	菜市	càishì
menu (in English)	(英文) 菜单	(Yīngwén) càidān
plate	碟子	diézi
restaurant	餐馆	cānguǎn
(too) spicy	(太)辣	(tài) là
spoon	勺	sháo
vegetarian food	素食食品	sùshí shípín

## Meat &amp; Fish

beef	牛肉	niúròu
chicken	鸡肉	jīròu
duck	鸭	yā
fish	鱼	yú

lamb	羊肉	yānròu
pork	猪肉	zhūròu
seafood	海鲜	hǎixiān

### Fruit & Vegetables

apple	苹果	píngguǒ
banana	香蕉	xiāngjiāo
bok choy	小白菜	xiǎo báicài
carrot	胡萝卜	húluóbo
celery	芹菜	qíncài
cucumber	黄瓜	huángguā
'dragon eyes'	龙眼	lóngyǎn
fruit	水果	shuǐguǒ
grape	葡萄	pútáo
green beans	扁豆	biǎndòu
guava	石榴	shíliú
lychee	荔枝	lǐzhī
mango	芒果	mángguǒ
mushroom	蘑菇	mógū
onion	洋葱	yáng cōng
orange	橙子	chéngzi
pear	梨	lí
pineapple	凤梨	fēnglí
plum	梅子	méizi
potato	土豆	tǔdòu
radish	萝卜	luóbo
spring onion	小葱	xiǎo cōng
sweet potato	地瓜	dìguā
vegetable	蔬菜	shūcài
watermelon	西瓜	xīguā

### Other

bread	面包	miànbāo
butter	黄油	huángyóu
egg	蛋	dàn
herbs/spices	香料	xiāngliào
pepper	胡椒粉	hújiāo fěn
salt	盐	yán

### Question Words – Mandarin

How?	怎么?	Zěnmě?
What?	什么?	Shénme?
When?	什么时候?	Shénme shíhòu?
Where?	哪儿?	Nǎr?
Which?	哪个?	Nǎge?
Who?	谁?	Shuí?
Why?	为什么?	Wèishénme?

soy sauce	酱油	jiāngyóu
sugar	砂糖	shātáng
tofu	豆腐	dòufu
vinegar	醋	cù
vegetable oil	菜油	càiyóu

### Drinks

beer	啤酒	píjiǔ
Chinese spirits	白酒	báijiǔ
coffee	咖啡	kāfēi
(orange) juice	(橙)汁	(chéng) zhī
milk	牛奶	niúniǎi
mineral water	矿泉水	kuàngquán shuǐ
red wine	红葡萄酒	hóng pútáo jiǔ
rice wine	米酒	mǐjiǔ
soft drink	汽水	qìshuǐ
tea	茶	chá
(boiled) water	(开)水	(kāi) shuǐ
white wine	白葡萄酒	bái pútáo jiǔ
yoghurt	酸奶	suānnǎi

### Emergencies

Help!	救命!	Jiùmìng!
I'm lost.	我迷路了。	Wǒ mílù le.
Go away!	走开!	Zoukāi!

### There's been an accident.

出事了。	Chūshì le.
Call a doctor!	(Qǐng jiào yīshēng lái!
Call the police!	(Qǐng jiào jǐngchá!
I'm ill.	Wǒ shēngbìng le.
It hurts here.	Zhèlǐ tòng.
Where are the toilets?	Cèsuǒ zài nǎr?

### Shopping & Services

I'd like to buy ...	Wǒ xiǎng mǎi ...
I'm just looking.	Wǒ xiān kànkan.
Can I look at it?	Wǒ néng kànkan ma?
I don't like it.	Wǒ bù xǐhuan.

## Numbers – Mandarin

1	一	yī
2	二/两	èr/liǎng
3	三	sān
4	四	sì
5	五	wǔ
6	六	liù
7	七	qī
8	八	bā
9	九	jiǔ
10	十	shí
20	二十	èrshí
30	三十	sānshí
40	四十	sìshí
50	五十	wúshí
60	六十	liùshí
70	七十	qīshí
80	八十	bāshí
90	九十	jiǔshí
100	一百	yībǎi
1000	一千	yīqiān

How much is it?

多少钱?

Duōshǎo qián?

That's too expensive.

太贵了。

Tàiguì le.

Can you lower the price?

能便宜一点吗?

Néng piányi yídiǎn ma?

There's a mistake in the bill.

账单上

有问题。

Zhàngdān shàng  
yǒu wèntí.

ATM	自动取款机	zìdòng qǔkuǎn jī
credit card	信用卡	xìnyòng kǎ
internet cafe	网吧	wǎngbā
post office	邮局	yóujú
tourist office	旅行社	lǚxíng diàn

## Time &amp; Dates

What time is it?

现在几点钟?

Xiànzài jǐdiǎn zhōng?

It's (10) o'clock.

(十)点钟。

(Shí) diǎn zhōng.

Half past (10).

(十)点三十分。

(Shí) diǎn sānshífēn.

morning	早上	zǎoshang
afternoon	下午	xiàwǔ
evening	晚上	wǎnshàng

yesterday	昨天	zuótiān
today	今天	jīntiān
tomorrow	明天	míngtiān

Monday	星期一	xīngqī yī
Tuesday	星期二	xīngqī èr
Wednesday	星期三	xīngqī sān
Thursday	星期四	xīngqī sì
Friday	星期五	xīngqī wǔ
Saturday	星期六	xīngqī liù
Sunday	星期天	xīngqī tiān

January	一月	yīyuè
February	二月	èryuè
March	三月	sānyuè
April	四月	sìyuè
May	五月	wúyuè
June	六月	liúyuè
July	七月	qīyuè
August	八月	bāyuè
September	九月	jiǔyuè
October	十月	shíyuè
November	十一月	shíyīyuè
December	十二月	shíèryuè

## Transport

## Public Transport

boat	船	chuán
bus (city)	大巴	dàbā
bus (intercity)	长途车	chángtú chē
plane	飞机	fēijī
taxi	出租车	chūzū chē
train	火车	huǒchē
tram	电车	diànchē

I want to go to ...

我要去……

Wǒ yào qù ...

Does it stop at (Hāerbīn)?

在(哈尔滨)能下

车吗?

Zài (Hā'ěrbīn) néng xià  
chē ma?

At what time does it leave?

几点钟出发?

Jǐdiǎnzhōng chūfā?

At what time does it get to (Hángzhōu)?

几点钟到

(杭州)?

Jǐdiǎnzhōng dào  
(Hángzhōu)?

Can you tell me when we get to (Hángzhōu)?

到了(杭州)

请叫我,好吗?

Dào le (Hángzhōu)

qǐng jiào wǒ, hǎo ma?

I want to get off here.

我想这儿下车。

Wǒ xiǎng zhèr xiàchē.

When's the ... (bus)?	……(车) 几点走?	… (chē) jǐdiǎn zǒu?
first	首趟	Shǒutàng
last	末趟	Mòtàng
next	下一趟	Xià yītàng

A ... ticket to (Dàlián).	一张到 (大连)的 ……票。	Yīzhāng dào (Dàlián) de … piào.
1st-class	头等	tóuděng
2nd-class	二等	èrděng
one-way	单程	dānchéng
return	双程	shuāngchéng

aisle seat	走廊的 座位	zǒuláng de zuòwèi
cancelled	取消	qǔxiāo
delayed	晚点	wǎndiǎn
platform	站台	zhàntái
ticket office	售票处	chòupiàochù
timetable	时刻表	shíkè biǎo
train station	火车站	huǒchēzhàn
window seat	窗户的 座位	chuānghu de zuòwèi

## Driving & Cycling

bicycle pump	打气筒	dǎqìtǒng
child seat	婴儿座	yīng'érzuò
diesel	柴油	cháiyóu
helmet	头盔	tóukuī
mechanic	机修工	jīxiūgōng
petrol	汽油	qìyóu
service station	加油站	jiāyóu zhàn

I'd like to hire a ...	我要租 一辆……	Wǒ yào zū yīliàng ...
4WD	四轮驱动	sìlún qūdòng
bicycle	自行车	zìxíngchē
car	汽车	qìchē
motorcycle	摩托车	mótuōchē

Does this road lead to ...?  
这条路到……吗? Zhè tiáo lù dào ... ma?

How long can I park here?  
这儿可以停多久? Zhèr kěyǐ tíng duōjiǔ?

The car has broken down (at ...).  
汽车是(在……)坏的。Qìchē shì (zài ...) huài de.

I have a flat tyre.  
轮胎瘪了。Lùntāi biē le.

I've run out of petrol.  
没有汽油了。Méiyóu qìyóu le.

## CANTONESE

Cantonese is the most widely used Chinese language in Hong Kong, Macau, Guǎngdōng, parts of Guǎngxī and the surrounding region. Cantonese speakers use Chinese characters, but pronounce many of them differently from a Mandarin speaker. Also, Cantonese adds about 3000 characters of its own to the character set. Several systems of Romanisation for Cantonese script exist, and no single one has emerged as an official standard. In this chapter we use Lonely Planet's pronunciation guide, designed for maximum accuracy with minimum complexity.

## Pronunciation

In Cantonese, the *ng* sound can appear at the start of a word. Words ending with the consonant sounds *p*, *t*, and *k* are clipped. Many speakers, particularly young people, replace the *n* with an *l* at the start of a word – eg *náy* (you) often sounds like *láy*. Where relevant, our pronunciation guide reflects this change.

The vowels are pronounced as follows: *a* as the 'u' in 'but', *ai* as in 'aisle' (short), *au* as the 'ou' in 'out', *ay* as in 'pay', *eu* as the 'er' in 'fern', *eu* as *eu* followed by *i*, *ew* as in 'blew' (short, with lips tightened), *i* as the 'ee' in 'deep', *iu* as the 'yu' in 'yuletide', *o* as in 'go', *oy* as in 'boy', *u* as in 'put', *ui* as in French *oui*.

Tones in Cantonese fall on vowels (*a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*) and on *n*. The same word pronounced with different tones can have a different meaning, eg *gwát* (dig up) vs *gwát* (bones). There are six tones, divided into high- and low-pitch groups. High-pitch tones involve tightening the vocal muscles to get a higher note, while lower-pitch tones are made by relaxing the vocal chords to get a lower note. Tones are indicated with the following accent marks: *ˊ* (high), *ˋ* (high rising), *ˎ* (low falling), *ˏ* (low rising), *ˑ* (low), *˒* (level – no accent mark).

## Basics

Hello.	哈佬 •	hǎo-lǎo
Goodbye.	再見 •	zài-jian
How are you?	你幾好 啊嗎?	nǐ jǐ hǎo ā ma
Fine.	幾好 •	jǐ hǎo
Excuse me.	對唔住 •	deui-ng-jew
Sorry.	對唔住 •	deui-ng-jew
Yes./No.	係/不係 •	hai/ng-hai
Please ...	唔該……	ng-goi ...
Thank you.	多謝 •	dō-jē

What's your name?  
你叫乜嘢名? nǐ giu mət-yē mǎng aa

My name is ...  
我叫…… ngáw giu ...

Do you speak English?  
你識唔識講  
英文啊? lǎy sik-ŋg sik gáwng  
ying-mán aa

I don't understand.  
我唔明。 ngáw ŋg mǐng

## Accommodation

campsite	營地	yíng-dá
guesthouse	賓館	bīn-guǎn
hostel	招待所	jiāo-dāi-suǒ
hotel	酒店	jiǔ-diàn

Do you have a ... room?	有冇…… 房? yǎu-mǎo ... fáng	yǎu-mǎo ... fáng
double	雙人	shuāng-rén
single	單人	dān-rén

How much is it per ...?	……幾多 錢? yǎo ... jǐ-duō qián	yǎo ... jǐ-duō qián
night	晚	wǎn
person	個人	gè rén

## Directions

Where's ...?	……喺邊度?	... hái bin-dù
What's the address?	地址係?	dì-zhǐ jī hǎi

left	左邊	zuǒ-bian
on the corner	十字路口	sāp-jī-lò-háu
right	右邊	yòu-bian
straight ahead	前面	qián-mian
traffic lights	紅綠燈	hóng-lǜ-dēng

## Eating & Drinking

What would you recommend?  
有乜嘢好介紹? yǎu mǎo yé hǎo jiè-shào

That was delicious.  
真好味。 jīn hǎo-mèi

I'd like the bill, please.  
唔該我要埋單。 ŋg gá yǎu ngáw yiu mǎi-dān

Cheers!  
乾杯! gān-bēi

I'd like to book a table for ...	我想 訂張檯， ……嘅。	ngáw séung dǐng jǎung tóy ... gē
--	--------------------	--

(eight) o'clock	(八) 點鐘	(bā) diǎn-jǒng
--------------------	-----------	-------------------

(two) people	(兩)位	(liǎng) wèi
--------------	------	-------------

## Numbers – Cantonese

1	一	yāt
2	二	yí
3	三	sāam
4	四	say
5	五	ŋg
6	六	lyk
7	七	chāt
8	八	baat
9	九	gáu
10	十	sap
20	二十	yí-sap
30	三十	sāam-sap
40	四十	say-sap
50	五十	ŋg-sap
60	六十	lyk-sap
70	七十	chāt-sap
80	八十	baat-sap
90	九十	gáu-sap
100	一百	yāt baak
1000	一千	yāt chān

bar	酒吧	jiǔ-bào
bottle	樽	zūn
breakfast	早餐	zǎo-chān
cafe	咖啡屋	gā-fē-ŋgúk
dinner	晚飯	wǎn-fǎn
fork	叉	chā
glass	杯	bēi
knife	刀	dāo
lunch	午餐	ŋg-chān
market	街市 (HK)	gāi-sí
	市場 (China)	sí-chāung
plate	碟	dí
restaurant	酒樓	jiǔ-lóu
spoon	羹	gāng

## Emergencies

Help!	救命!	gau-mang
I'm lost.	我瀟失路。	ngáw dǎwng-sák-lò
Go away!	走開!	jiǔ-hòy

Call a doctor!	
快啲叫醫生!	faai-dí giu yí-sǎng

Call the police!	
快啲叫警察!	faai-dí giu gíng-chaat

I'm sick.	
我病咗。	ngáw beng-jáw



## Shopping & Services

I'd like to buy ... 我想買……	ngáw séung mǎi ...
How much is it? 幾多錢?	gǎy-dǎw chin
That's too expensive. 太貴啦。	taai gwai laa
There's a mistake in the bill. 帳單錯咗。	jeung-dāan chaw jǎw

internet cafe	網吧	mǎiwng-bàa
post office	郵局	yāu-gūk
tourist office	旅行社	lǎui-hàng-sǎ

## Time & Dates

What time is it? 幾點鐘?	而家 幾點鐘?	yí gāa gǎy-dim-jǔng
It's (10) o'clock. (十)點鐘。	(十)點鐘。	(sǎp)-dim-jǔng
Half past (10). (十)點半。	(十)點半。	(sǎp)-dim bun

morning	朝早	jiu-jǎ
afternoon	下晝	hǎa-jau
evening	夜晚	ye-mǎan
yesterday	癩日	kǎm-yat
today	今日	gǎm-yat
tomorrow	听日	ting-yat

## Transport

boat	船	séwn
bus	巴士 (HK) 公共 汽車 (China)	báa-si gúng-gung hǎy-chè
train	火車	fǎw-chè
A ... ticket to (Panyu).	一張去 (番禺)嘅 ……飛。	yát jeung heui (pún-yéw) ge ... fǎy
1st-class	頭等	tǎu-dǎng
2nd-class	二等	yí-dǎng
one-way	單程	dāan-ching
return	雙程	séung-ching

At what time does it leave?  
幾點鐘出發? gǎy-dim-jǔng chéut-faa

Does it stop at ...?  
會唔會……停呀? wuj-ŋg-wuj hǎi ... ting aa

At what time does it get to ...?  
幾點鐘到……? gǎy-dim-jǔng do ...

## TIBETAN

Tibetan is spoken by around six million people, mainly in Tibet. In urban areas almost all Tibetans also speak Mandarin.

Most sounds in Tibetan are similar to those found in English, so if you read our coloured pronunciation guides as if they were English, you'll be understood. Note that **á** is pronounced as the 'a' in 'ago', **ǎ** as the 'er' in 'her', and **ǔ** as the 'u' in 'flute' but with a raised tongue. A vowel followed by **n**, **m** or **ng** indicates a nasalised sound (pronounced 'through the nose'). A consonant followed by **h** is aspirated (accompanied by a puff of air).

There are no direct equivalents of English 'yes' and 'no' in Tibetan. Although it may not be completely correct, you'll be understood if you use **la ong** for 'yes' and **la men** for 'no'.

Hello.	བུ་མཁའ་བདེ་ལེགས།	ta-chi de-tek
Goodbye.		
(if staying)	ག་ལེར་ལེགས།	ka-lee pay
(if leaving)	ག་ལེར་བུ་ལགས།	ka-lee shu
Excuse me.	དོད་ཅེས་དག།	gong-da
Sorry.	དོད་ཅེས་དག།	gong-da
Please.	ལུགས་རྗེ་གཟིགས།	tu-jay-sig
Thank you.	ལུགས་རྗེ་ཅེ།	tu-jay-chay

How are you?  
ལྟེན་རང་སྐྱབས་ལུགས་  
བདེ་ལོ་ཡིན་ལས།

kay-rǎng ku-su  
de-po yin-bay

Fine. And you?  
བདེ་ལོ་ཡིན། ལྟེན་རང་ཡང་  
སྐྱབས་ལུགས་བདེ་ལོ་ཡིན་ལས།

de-bo yin kay-rǎng-yǎng  
ku-su de-po yin-bay

What's your name?  
ལྟེན་རང་གི་མཚན་ལ་  
ག་ཟེ་རེད།

kay-rǎng gi tsen-lá  
ká-ray-ray

My name is ...  
ངའི་མིང་ལ་ ... རེད།

ngay-ming la ... ray

Do you speak English?  
ལྟེན་རང་བཤུན་རྗེ་སྐད་  
ཤེས་ཀྱི་ཡོད་ལས།

kay-rǎng in-ŋi-kay  
shing-ŋi yǎ-bay

I don't understand.  
ངའི་མ་སྐད།

ha ko ma-song

How much is it?  
མོང་ག་ཚད་རེད།

gong kǎ-tsay ray

Where is ...?  
... ག་བར་ཡོད་རེད།

... ka-bah yǎ-ray

## UIGHUR

Uighur is spoken all over Xinjiang. In China, Uighur is written in Arabic script. The phrases in this chapter reflect the Kashgar dialect.

In our pronunciation guides, stressed syllables are indicated with italics. Most consonant sounds in Uighur are the same as in English, though note that **h** is pronounced with a puff of air. The vowels are pronounced as follows: **a** as in 'hat', **aa** as the 'a' in 'father', **ee** as in 'sleep' (produced back in the throat), **o** as in 'go', **ö** as the 'e' in 'her' (pronounced with rounded lips), **u** as in 'put', and **ü** as the 'i' in 'bit' (with the lips rounded and pushed forward). Stressed syllables are in italics.

### Basics

Hello.	ئەسسالامۇ	as-saa-laa-mu
	ئەلەيكمۇ.	a-lay-kom
Goodbye.	خەير-خوش.	hayr-hosh
Excuse me.	ئۆزۈڭدە كەڭە	ka-chü-rüŋ ga
	قانداق	kaan-daak
	باردۇ؟	baar-i-du
Sorry.	ئۆزۈڭدە كەڭە	ka-chü-rüŋ
Yes.	ھەھە.	ee-ä-ä
No.	ياق.	yaak
Please.	مەھرەمەت.	ma-ree-am-mat
Thank you.	رەخمەت سىزگە.	rah-mat siz-ga

### How are you?

قانداق  
ئەھۋالغىز؟

kaan-daak  
a-ee-vaa-li-ngiz

### Fine. And you?

ياخشى، سىزچۇ؟

yaah-shi siz-chu

### What's your name?

سىزنىڭ  
ئىسمىڭىز نىمە؟

siz-ning  
is-mi-ngiz ni-ma

### My name is ...

... مېنىڭ ئىسمىم

mi-ning is-mim ...

### Do you speak English?

سىز ئىنگلىزچە  
بىلەمسىز؟

siz ing-gi-lis-ka  
bi-lam-siz

### I don't understand.

چۈشەنمىدىم.

man chu-shan-mi-dim

### How much is it?

قانچە پۇل؟

kaan-cha pool

### Where is ...?

... نەدە؟

... na-da

## MONGOLIAN

Mongolian has an estimated 10 million speakers. The standard Mongolian in the Inner Mongolia Autonomous Region of China is based on the Chahar dialect and written using a cursive script in vertical lines (ie from top to bottom), read from left to right. So if you want to ask a local to read the script in this section, just turn the book 90 degrees clockwise. Our coloured pronunciation guides, however, should simply be read the same way you read English.

Most consonant sounds in Mongolian are the same as in English, though note that **r** in Mongolian is a hard, trilled sound, **kh** is a throaty sound like the 'ch' in the Scottish *loch*, and **z** is pronounced as the 'ds' in 'lads'. As for the vowels, **ä** is pronounced as in 'there', **ö** as in 'alone', **o** as 'e' with rounded lips, **oo** as a slightly longer **o**, **u** as in 'cut' and **ü** as in 'good'.

In the pronunciation guides, stressed syllables are in italics.

### Basics

Hello.		sän bän nö
Goodbye.		ba-yur-të
Excuse me / Sorry.		öch-lë-rë
Yes.		teem
No.		oo-gway
Thank you.		ba-yur-laa
How are you?		sän bän nö
Fine. And you?		sän cän cän nö
What's your name?		tan-në al-dur
My name is ...		min-nee nur ...
Do you speak English?		ta-ang-gul hui mu-tun nö
I don't understand.		bee oil-og-sun-gway
How much is it?		hut-tee jös vë
Where's ...?		... haa-bëkh vë

## GLOSSARY

**apsara** – Buddhist celestial being  
**arhat** – Buddhist, especially a monk, who has achieved enlightenment and passes to nirvana at death

**běi** – north; the other points of the compass are *dōng* (east), *nán* (south) and *xī* (west)

**biānjiè** – border

**biéshù** – villa

**bīnguǎn** – hotel

**bixī** – mythical tortoiselike dragon

**Bodhisattva** – one worthy of nirvana who remains on earth to help others attain enlightenment

**Bōn** – pre-Buddhist indigenous faith of Tibet

**bówùguǎn** – museum

**CAAC** – Civil Aviation Administration of China

**cadre** – Chinese government bureaucrat

**cāntīng** – restaurant

**cǎoyuán** – grasslands

**CCP** – Chinese Communist Party

**chau** – land mass

**chéngshì** – city

**chí** – lake, pool

**chop** – carved name seal that acts as a signature

**chörten** – Tibetan *stupa*

**CITS** – China International Travel Service

**cūn** – village

**dàdào** – boulevard

**dàfàndiàn** – large hotel

**dàjiē** – avenue

**dàjiǔdiàn** – large hotel

**dǎo** – island

**dàpùbù** – large waterfall

**dàqiáo** – large bridge

**dàshà** – hotel, building

**dàxué** – university

**déhuà** – white-glazed porcelain

**ditiě** – subway

**dōng** – east; the other points of the compass are *běi* (north), *nán* (south) and *xī* (west)

**dòng** – cave

**dòngwùyuán** – zoo

**fàndiàn** – hotel, restaurant

**fēng** – peak

**fēngjǐngqū** – scenic area

**gé** – pavilion, temple

**gompa** – monastery

**gōng** – palace

**gōngyuán** – park

**gōu** – gorge, valley

**guǎn** – pass

**gùjū** – house, home, residence

**hǎi** – sea

**hāitān** – beach

**Hakka** – Chinese ethnic group

**Han** – China's main ethnic group

**hé** – river

**hú** – lake

**huáqiáo** – overseas Chinese

**Hui** – ethnic Chinese Muslims

**huǒchēzhàn** – train station

**huǒshān** – volcano

**hútòng** – a narrow alleyway

**jiāng** – river

**jiǎo** – unit of *renminbi*; 10

*jiǎo* equals 1 *yuán*

**jiàotáng** – church

**jīchǎng** – airport

**jiē** – street

**jié** – festival

**jīn** – unit of weight; 1 *jīn* equals 600g

**jīngjù** – Beijing opera

**jìniànbēi** – memorial

**jìniànguǎn** – memorial hall

**jiǔdiàn** – hotel

**jū** – residence, home

**junk** – originally referred to Chinese fishing and war vessels with square sails; now applies to various types of boating craft

**kang** – raised sleeping platform

**KCR** – Kowloon–Canton Railway

**kora** – pilgrim circuit

**Kuomintang** – Chiang Kaishek's Nationalist Party; now one of Taiwan's major political parties

**lama** – a Buddhist priest of the Tantric or Lamaist school; a title bestowed on monks of particularly high spiritual attainment

**lǎng** – Shànghǎi alleyway

**lín** – forest

**líng** – tomb

**lìshǐ** – history

**lóu** – tower

**LRT** – Light Rail Transit

**lù** – road

**lǚguǎn** – guesthouse

**luóhàn** – Buddhist, especially a monk, who has achieved enlightenment and passes to nirvana at death; see also *arhat*

**mah jong** – popular Chinese game for four people; played with engraved tiles

**mátou** – dock

**mén** – gate

**ménpiào** – entrance ticket

**Miao** – ethnic group living in Guizhōu

**miào** – temple

**MTR** – Mass Transit Railway

**mù** – tomb

**nán** – south; the other points of the compass are *běi* (north), *dōng* (east) and *xī* (west)

**páilou** – decorative archway

**Pinyin** – the official system for transliterating Chinese script into roman characters

**PLA** – People's Liberation Army

**Politburo** – the 25-member supreme policy-making

authority of the Chinese Communist Party

**PRC** – People's Republic of China

**PSB** – Public Security Bureau; the arm of the police force set up to deal with foreigners

**pùbù** – waterfall

**qì** – life force

**qiáo** – bridge

**qìchēzhàn** – bus station

**rénmín** – people, people's  
**renminbi** – literally 'people's money'; the formal name for the currency of China, the basic unit of which is the *yuán*; shortened to RMB

**sampan** – small motorised launch

**sānlún mótuōchē** – motor tricycle

**sānlúnchē** – pedal-powered tricycle

**SAR** – Special Administrative Region

**sēnlín** – forest

**shān** – mountain

**shāngdiàn** – shop, store

**shěng** – province, provincial

**shì** – city

**shí** – rock

**shìchǎng** – market

**shíkū** – grotto

**shíkùmén** – literally 'stone-gate house'; type of 19th-century Shànghǎi residence

**shòupiàochù** – ticket office

**shuǐkù** – reservoir

**sì** – temple, monastery

**sīhéyuàn** – traditional courtyard house

**stupa** – usually used as reliquaries for the cremated remains of important *lamas*

**tǎ** – pagoda

**thangka** – Tibetan sacred art

**tíng** – pavilion

**wān** – bay

**wǎngbā** – internet café

**wēnquán** – hot springs

**xī** – west; the other points of the compass are *dōng* (east), *běi* (north) and *nán* (south)

**xī** – small stream, brook

**xiá** – gorge

**xiàn** – county

**xuěshān** – snow mountain

**yá** – cliff

**yán** – rock or crag

**yóujú** – post office

**yuán** – basic unit of *renminbi*

**yuán** – garden

**zhào** – lamasery

**zhāodàisuǒ** – guesthouse

**zhīwúyuán** – botanic gardens

**zhōng** – middle

**Zhōngguó** – China

**zìrán bǎohùqū** – nature reserve

behind  
the  
scenes

## SEND US YOUR FEEDBACK

We love to hear from travellers - your comments keep us on our toes and help make our books better. Our well-travelled team reads every word on what you loved or loathed about this book. Although we cannot reply individually to postal submissions, we always guarantee that your feedback goes straight to the appropriate authors, in time for the next edition. Each person who sends us information is thanked in the next edition - and the most useful submissions are rewarded with a free book.

Visit [lonelyplanet.com/contact](http://lonelyplanet.com/contact) to submit your updates and suggestions or to ask for help. Our award-winning website also features inspirational travel stories, news and discussions.

Note: We may edit, reproduce and incorporate your comments in Lonely Planet products such as guidebooks, websites and digital products, so let us know if you don't want your comments reproduced or your name acknowledged. For a copy of our privacy policy visit [lonelyplanet.com/privacy](http://lonelyplanet.com/privacy).

## OUR READERS

**Many thanks to the travellers who used the last edition and wrote to us with helpful hints, useful advice and interesting anecdotes:**

**A** Joao Aleluia, Mark Allison, Christine Amrhein **B** Richard Balsik, Marieke Blaakmeer, Nick Botham, Cam Bowman, Julia Broska, Dorian Burt **C** Eulalia Calveras, Jamie Carstairs, Javier Castro Guinea, Igor Chabrowski, Sonny Chan, Anirban Chatterjee, Christina Cheng, Gabriel Chew, Alison Clark, Mate Cobrnic, Susan Cofer Jones, Meodi Cohen & Yossi Margoninsky, Philip Corthout, Christine Counsell, Pippa Curtis **D** Bertrand Daigneault, Antonio De Biase, Marianne De Swart, Wolfgang Deuster, Christine Doyle, Clemens Durrschmid **E** Jenna Eakins, Ros Edwards, Amir Eltahan, Jos Emmerik, Richard

Emms **F** Caroline Fink, Mark Fisher, Jordan Flory, Yuji Fujimoto **G** Marcelo Gareca, Anja Gatzsche, Ferran Gonzalez-Franquesa, Tim Grady, Jeff Grigor **H** Stephanie Hancock, Grace Harris, Nicholas Harris, Elvira Hautvast, Tom Hay, Desmond Hennelly, Daniel Holz, Dana Howell **J** Bruce Jackson, Alpha Jacobson, Wenchi Jin, Jim Jodie, Gary Jones, Marco Jonker **K** Marleen Kaag, Tobias Kalenscher, Magnus Köhler, Björn Krämer, Uta Kreimeier **L** Martin Lægård Poulsen, Lisanne Lee, Pieter Lerou, David Levin, Yoni Levin, Daniel Lidonnici, Peter Lin, Harris Lindenfeld, Louise Linder & Rombout Kampen, Sarah Linten, Paul Lippevelt, Mary Longenbaker, Eladio Lopez, Leonardo Losoviz **M** Anne Mahon, Alex Matos, Deborah McGruther, Andreas Messerli, Alphee Michelot, Yuval Mizrakli & Naama Melumad, Sander Molenaar, Elena Morara, Julie & Cameron Muir **N** Rachel Nachtrieb, Amar Nanda, Urša & Klemen Naveršnik, Eric Neemann, Francisco Javier Nuñez **O** Oonagh O'Hare, Suzanne O'Keefe, Liz O'Sullivan, Onur Oznar **P** John Paer, Stefano Pelli, Alex Phillips, Caroline Pitt, Wai Poc, Ernesto Priarollo **R** James Robinson, Jairo Romero, Marian Rosenberg, Shai Roth **S** Nickolay Salo, Jonas Schulze, Lucy Schumer, Giovanni Segre, Inbal Shani, Gerald Slocock, Jim Smith, Jonathan Spars, Alexandra Staley, Karoline Steinbacher, Victoria Steven, Vilhelm Stokstad **T** Shohei Takashiro, Annie Taylor Chen, Twan Ten Haaf, Bart Ter Haar Romeny, Paulien Ter Meulen, Jean-Claude Thelen, Yanagi Tsuyoshi, Simon Tunderman **U** Manouk Uijtdehaag, Viktoria Urbanek, Hanna Van Egmond, Joris Van Der Mijnsbrugge **V** Sarah Van Beek, Lotte Van Ekert, Karine Van Malderen, Yvonne Van Sambeek & Jan Neels, Benny Verbercht **W** Jess Watt, Marco Weber, Michael Weigh, Nigel West, James & Tamara Wharton, Timo Wiese, Jon Winkels, Alexandra Winter, Elizabeth Wright, Candice Wu **Y** Foo Yee Ling **Z** Jean Zimmermann

## **AUTHOR THANKS**

### **Damian Harper**

Thanks first and foremost to Dai Min, Dai Lu, Li Jianjun, Katarina Nilsson, the resourceful authors of the Sanlian/Lonely Planet *Guizhou* guide (Yi Xiaochun, Wu Yaoyao and Dong Yi), Edward Li and Maggie Zhang. Thanks also to everyone else I bumped into along the way and

gratitude as ever to the warm and hospitable folk of China.

### **Piera Chen**

A warm thank you to Ulysses Hwang, Yangyi, Reeve Wong and Carmen Ng for their generosity and wonderful company. Thanks also to Jeremy Chan, Andrew Kwong and Herman Lee for precious, electronically transmitted wisdom. To Mr Kong Xianzhu and all the cab drivers who have enriched my journey and this book with their humour and local know-

ledge, *xiexie*. And as always, much love and gratitude to my husband, Sze Pang-cheung.

### **Chung Wah Chow**

Sincerest thanks to Sean Yap, Cui Qun, Sun Hui and Li Yang, authors of Lonely Planet's domestic guide series, for their in-depth knowledge of respective regions. To Winter Wong, Xing Xing, Lola Liu, Eugenia Lo, Josh Stenberg and Ben Potter, for their company and insider tips on Jiangsu. To Huang Song, Rayne Ong, Peter Li and Au Oi Sing, for invaluable help and sharing of thoughts on Fujian. My eternal thanks to Haider Kikabhoy. Your love and support make it all possible.

### **David Eimer**

Special gratitude goes to Li Xinying for her invaluable help. Thanks to Damian Harper for his support and patience, as well as to Emily Wolman, Barbara Delissen and Mark Griffiths at Lonely Planet. As ever, thanks to the many people who provided tips along the way, whether knowingly or unwittingly.

### **Tienlon Ho**

Many thanks to Jin Liu, Emma, Marcus Murphy, Neil Bhullar and Daniel McCrohan for helping me on this journey. Special thanks goes to Lijie Han who generously lent a hand in this and other projects. I am especially grateful to AJ Wang who never met a challenge he couldn't crack. Thank you Ken Ho, Wenhuei Ho and Tienfong Ho for their incomparable knowledge and enthusiasm, and to Jon Adams who did the dishes and made me laugh, among many other things.

### **Robert Kelly**

A warm thanks to everyone who helped make this one of my best trips ever. Emily Wolman and Damian Harper at Lonely Planet, you guys are great as always. Elizabeth, your hospitality (and banana bread) are legendary for good reasons. Deepest thanks also to the friends who held the fort down while I was away. And finally: to Tania Simonetti for being in the right place at the right time in a sandstorm.

### **Michael Kohn**

Countless folks helped at every step of the journey. Special thanks to Mei (Lijiang), Dave Shaw (Dali), Shirley (Shaxi), Steven (Jinghong), Hendrik Heyne and Tenzin (Shangri-la), Lina and Jane (Kunming), Tsomo (Xining) and to Chris, Wendy, Jane and Bobby (Xi'an). Cheers to some of my fellow travel mates, Oscar Robinson, Clare Johnson, Kimberly Hagner, Nicole Mahnert and Matan Kavel. At Lonely Planet thanks, as always, to Emily Wolman and Damian Harper.

### **Shawn Low**

As always thanks to the CE: Emily for believing and more importantly, hiring! Cheers also to CA: Damian (yet another one done and dusted! We'll find time for that beer one day). Thanks to the LP crew who are working on this: eds, cartos, MEs, MCs, LDs etc. I've been behind the scenes and know how hard you all work. Much love to Wyn-Lyn: can't wait for our future adventures together.

### **Bradley Mayhew**

Thanks to Ali Tash and Abdul Wahab for lots of great information in Kashgar. Bhutti and Tenzin in Lhasa were lifesavers in getting me around Tibet despite all the restrictions. Cheers to Malong for his Beijing crashpad.

### **Daniel McCrohan**

Thanks to all the travellers I met on the road, for tips, recommendations and good company. For expert advice and insiders' info, thank you to Iain Shaw, Gil Miller, David Goodman-Smith, Kevin Li (all Beijing), Jamin York, Angela Lankford, Kris Rubesh, Kieran Fitzgerald (all Sichuan), Roger Geden (Hubei) and Gong Ying (Chongqing). A big *ni hao* to my mum and the rest of my family and friends in the UK; love you all. Extra special love, as always, to my



amazing wife Taotao and our two little angels.

## **Christopher Pitts**

As always, thanks to everyone who offered valuable insight or who provided company along the way. In Shanghai, much gratitude is due to Gerald and May Neumann for their hospitality and great suggestions. Thanks as well to Miranda Yao, Wang Xinhai, Laure Romeyer, Claudio Valsecchi, Sandy Chu, Lynn Ye, Caroline and Antoine Lebouc, and Sam Maurey (Shanghai), and You Shaojun, Tingting, Kangkang, Meiling, Su, Little Book and Rose for turning what could have been an overwhelming Qingming Festival in Wuyuan into a fun-filled trip. Special thanks also to Shanghai co-author Damian Harper, and to Emily Wolman, Barbara Delissen, Annelies Mertens, Mark Griffiths and all those who work behind the scenes. And love to Perrine, Elliot and Celeste, who provide more inspiration than they'll ever know.

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

Climate map data adapted from Peel MC, Finlayson BL & McMahon TA (2007) 'Updated World Map of the Köppen-Geiger Climate Classification', Hydrology and Earth System Sciences, 11, 163344.

Illustrations [Click here](#) and [Click here](#) by Michael Weldon.

Cover photograph: Army of Terracotta Warriors, Xi'an, Shaanxi (Shanxi), John W Banagan/Getty Images.

### **Ebook thanks to**

Jennifer Bilos, Samantha Curcio, Mark Germanchis, Liz Heynes, Craig Kilburn, Matt Langley, Chris Lee Ack, Nic Lehman, Alex Leung, Corine Liang, Ross Macaw, Jared O'Loughlin, Piers Pickard, Matt Swaine

# Icons Legend

These symbols will help you find the listings you want:

- |            |                    |                       |
|------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Sight      | Festivals & Events | Entertainment         |
| Activities | Sleeping           | Shopping              |
| Courses    | Eating             | Information/Transport |
| Tours      | Drinking           |                       |

These symbols give you the vital information for each listing:

- |                   |                       |             |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------|
| Telephone Numbers | Wi-Fi Access          | Bus         |
| Opening Hours     | Swimming Pool         | Ferry       |
| Parking           | Vegetarian Selection  | Metro       |
| Nonsmoking        | English-Language Menu | Subway      |
| Air-Conditioning  | Family-Friendly       | London Tube |
| Internet Access   | Pet-Friendly          | Tram        |
|                   |                       | Train       |

Reviews are organised by author preference.

Look out for these icons:

- Our author's recommendation
- No payment required
- A green or sustainable option

*Our authors have nominated these places as demonstrating a strong commitment to sustainability – for example by supporting local communities and producers, operating in an environmentally friendly way, or supporting conservation projects.*

## Map Legend

### Sights

- Beach
- Buddhist
- Castle
- Christian
- Hindu
- Islamic
- Jewish
- Monument
- Museum/Gallery
- Ruin
- Winery/Vineyard
- Zoo
- Other Sight

### Activities, Courses & Tours

- Diving/Snorkelling
- Canoeing/Kayaking
- Skiing
- Surfing
- Swimming/Pool
- Walking
- Windsurfing
- Other Activity/Course/Tour

### Sleeping

- Sleeping
- Camping

### Eating

- Eating

### Drinking

- Drinking
- Cafe

### Entertainment

- Entertainment

### Shopping

- Shopping

### Information

- Post Office
- Tourist Information

### Transport

- Airport
- Border Crossing
- Bus
- Cable Car/Funicular
- Cycling
- Ferry
- Metro
- Monorail
- Parking
- S-Bahn
- Taxi
- Train/Railway
- Tram
- Tube Station
- U-Bahn
- Other Transport

### Routes

- Tollway
- Freeway
- Primary
- Secondary
- Tertiary
- Lane
- Unsealed Road
- Plaza/Mall
- Steps
- Tunnel
- Pedestrian Overpass
- Walking Tour
- Walking Tour Detour
- Path

### Boundaries

- International
- State/Province
- Disputed
- Regional/Suburb
- Marine Park
- Cliff
- Wall

### Population

- Capital (National)
- Capital (State/Province)
- City/Large Town
- Town/Village

### Geographic

- Hut/Shelter
- Lighthouse
- Lookout
- Mountain/Volcano
- Oasis
- Park
- Pass
- Picnic Area
- Waterfall

### Hydrography

- River/Creek
- Intermittent River
- Swamp/Mangrove
- Reef
- Canal
- Water
- Dry/Salt/Intermittent Lake
- Glacier

### Areas

- Beach/Desert
- Cemetery (Christian)
- Cemetery (Other)
- Park/Forest
- Sportsground
- Sight (Building)
- Top Sight (Building)

## OUR STORY

A beat-up old car, a few dollars in the pocket and a sense of adventure. In 1972 that's all Tony and Maureen Wheeler needed for the trip of a lifetime - across Europe and Asia overland to Australia. It took several months, and at the end - broke but inspired - they sat at their kitchen table writing and stapling together their first travel guide, *Across Asia on the Cheap*. Within a week they'd sold 1500 copies. Lonely Planet was born.

Today, Lonely Planet has offices in Melbourne, London and Oakland, with more than 600 staff and writers. We share Tony's belief that 'a great guidebook should do three things: inform, educate and amuse'.

## OUR WRITERS

### Damian Harper

Coordinating Author, Shanghai, Zhejiang, Guizhou

After graduating with a degree in Chinese in the days when it was still an unfashionably exotic choice, Damian relocated to Hong Kong to see out the last year of British rule. Since undertaking a leg-busting nine-province journey for the sixth edition of this book in 1997, Damian has tumble-weeded his way around China, working on multiple editions of *China*, *Shanghai* and *Beijing*, contributing to *Hong Kong* and *China's Southwest* and road-testing incalculable hotel beds, hole-in-the-wall menus and wayside watering holes.

Read more about Damian at:

[lonelyplanet.com/members/damianharper](http://lonelyplanet.com/members/damianharper)

### Piera Chen

Hong Kong, Macau, Guangdong

Piera's acquaintance with Guangdong began when she was a teenager living in Hong Kong. Some of her family had settled in southern China, so it was here that she learnt how to smoke, ride a bike and coax a water leech away – skills that came in handy during her research trips for this book. Piera has worked on Lonely Planet

titles *Hong Kong*, *Hong Kong Encounter* and the previous edition of *China*.

Read more about Piera at: [onelyplanet.com/members/pierachen](http://onelyplanet.com/members/pierachen)

## **Chung Wah Chow**

Jiangsu, Fujian, Hong Kong

Born with restless feet, Chung Wah has travelled extensively both in her native Hong Kong and elsewhere, and is forever returning to China for trips ranging from village stays in Yunnan to upriver treks in Qinghai. She contributed to the previous two editions of this book and co-authored Lonely Planet's *Hong Kong*. In this edition, she (un)covered the coastal beauty of southern China and fell for the region's sublime culture and seafood. She considers herself a resident tourist in Hong Kong.

Read more about Chung Wah at: [lonelyplanet.com/members/cwchow](http://lonelyplanet.com/members/cwchow)

## **David Eimer**

Beijing, Tianjin & Hebei, Shanxi, Ningxia, Inner Mongolia

David first came to China in 1988, when cars and foreigners were both in short supply. After spells working as a journalist in LA and his native London, David spent seven years living in Beijing. His travels have taken him to almost every province in the Middle Kingdom. David has co-authored the last three editions of both the *China* and *Beijing* guides. Now based in Bangkok, he contributes to a variety of newspapers and magazines in the UK.

## **Tienlon Ho**

Shandong, Hunan

Tienlon grew up in Worthington, Ohio, where the best Chinese food was always at her house. She's moved around a lot since then but keeps mostly to places where it's easy to find live seafood and mangosteens, including Shanghai, Hong Kong, Bangkok, Singapore, New York, and currently San Francisco where she writes about food, travel and other things. She previously worked on Lonely Planet's *Southwest China* guide. You can find her at [tienlon.com](http://tienlon.com).

## **Robert Kelly**

Liaoning, Jilin, Heilongjiang, Hainan, Gansu

Born in Vancouver, Canada, Robert first landed in China in the mid-1980s, and has been a regular visitor since 2003. For the past 16 years Robert has lived in Taiwan, where he is currently working on a documentary about the loss of traditional Taoist temple arts. On his sixth trip to China for Lonely Planet Robert covered the boggy north, the tropical south, and the Silk Road province of Gansu. For an art and adventure lover, it doesn't get much better than that.

## **Michael Kohn**

Shaanxi, Yunnan, Qinghai

After studying journalism at the University of California, Michael launched a career as a foreign correspondent, reporting for a handful of media outlets including the BBC and Reuters. His first trip to China was in 1994 when he visited **Beijing** and Tibet on a university study program. This is his third tour of duty for Lonely Planet's *China*, having researched Gansu, Xinjiang, Inner Mongolia and **Ningxia** in earlier editions. Michael is based in Ulaanbaatar. His work can be read online at [www.michaelkohn.us](http://www.michaelkohn.us).

## **Shawn Low**

Anhui, Henan, Guangxi

Shawn grew up in hot, humid, food-crazy Singapore but later made his way further south to less hot, less humid, food-crazy Melbourne (Australia, not Florida). He's spent the past six years working for Lonely Planet as an editor, commissioning editor, author, TV host and travel editor. When not exploring his love-hate relationship with China, Shawn finds time to eat and drink his way through other parts of Asia. Find him on Twitter @shawnlow and all other social media @shawn\_low.

## **Bradley Mayhew**

Xinjiang, Tibet

Bradley has been drawn to China's borderlands since travelling to Kashgar and Lhasa 20 years ago, while studying Chinese at Oxford University. Bradley wrote first editions of Lonely Planet's guides to *Southwest China* and *Shanghai* and is the coordinating author of

*Tibet, Bhutan, Central Asia and Nepal*. He recently starred in a five-part Arte/SWR TV documentary retracing the route of Marco Polo from Venice across Iran and Afghanistan to Kublai Khan's summer capital at Xanadu in inner Mongolia. See what he's currently up to at [www.bradleymayhew.blogspot.com](http://www.bradleymayhew.blogspot.com).

Read more about Bradley at: [lonelyplanet.com/members/nepalibrad](http://lonelyplanet.com/members/nepalibrad)

## **Daniel McCrohan**

Beijing, The Great Wall, Hubei, Sichuan, Chongqing, Cruising the Yangzi

Daniel has been in China since 2005 and currently lives with his wife and children in a courtyard home, tucked away down an alley behind Beijing's Drum Tower. He has written more than a dozen Lonely Planet guidebooks on China and India, is the creator of the smartphone app *Beijing on a Budget*, and is the co-host of the Lonely Planet television series *Best in China*. Find out more on his website: [danielmccrohan.com](http://danielmccrohan.com) or follow him on Twitter @danielmccrohan.

Read more about Daniel at:

[lonelyplanet.com/members/danielmccrohan](http://lonelyplanet.com/members/danielmccrohan)

## **Christopher Pitts**

Shanghai, Jiangxi

Chris started his university years studying classical Chinese poetry before a week in 1990s Shanghai (en route to school in Kunming) abruptly changed his focus to the idiosyncracies of modern China. Several years in Asia memorising Chinese characters got him hooked, and he returns whenever he can to immerse himself in one of the world's most fascinating languages. He's written for Lonely Planet's *China* since 2004 and is also co-author of the *Shanghai* guide. Visit him online at [www.christopherpitts.net](http://www.christopherpitts.net).

Although the authors and Lonely Planet have taken all reasonable care in preparing this book, we make no warranty about the accuracy or completeness of its content and, to the maximum extent permitted, disclaim all liability arising from its use.

**Published by Lonely Planet Publications Pty Ltd**

ABN 36 005 607 983

13th edition – May 2013

ISBN 9781743216408

© Lonely Planet 2013 Photographs © as indicated 2013

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be sold or hired without the written permission of the publisher. Lonely Planet and the Lonely Planet logo are trademarks of Lonely Planet and are registered in the US Patent and Trademark Office and in other countries. Lonely Planet does not allow its name or logo to be appropriated by commercial establishments, such as retailers, restaurants or hotels. Please let us know of any misuses: [lonelyplanet.com/ip](http://lonelyplanet.com/ip).